9TH EDITION

DISEASES OF SWINE

EDITED BY

Barbara E. Straw
Jeffery J. Zimmerman
Sylvie D’Allaire
David J. Taylor

with 128 authoritative contributors
selected for their recognized leadership in this field
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section I</th>
<th>Physical Examination, Diagnosis, and Body Systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Herd Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Immune System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Diseases of the Digestive System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Diseases of the Mammary Glands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Diseases of the Nervous and Locomotor Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Diseases of the Reproductive System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Diseases of the Respiratory System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Diseases of the Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Diseases of the Urinary System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Interpretation of Laboratory Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Differential Diagnosis of Disease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section II</th>
<th>Viral Diseases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Porcine Adenovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>African Swine Fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Porcine Circovirus Diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Classical Swine Fever and Other Pestiviruses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Porcine Cytomegalovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Encephalomyocarditis Virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Porcine Enteric Picornaviruses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Porcine Enteric Caliciviruses and Astroviruses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Hemagglutinating Encephalomyelitis Virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Japanese Encephalitis and West Nile Viruses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Porcine Epidemic Diarrhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Porcine Parvovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Porcine Reproductive and Respiratory Syndrome Virus (Porcine Arterivirus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Aujeszky's Disease (Pseudorabies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Rotavirus and Reovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Paramyxoviruses: Rubulavirus, Menangle, and Nipah Virus Infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Swine Influenza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Swine Pox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Transmissible Gastroenteritis and Porcine Respiratory Coronavirus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contributing Authors

Numbers in parentheses beside names refers to chapters.

C. L. Afonso (29)
United States Department of Agriculture
Agricultural Research Service
Plum Island Animal Disease Center
Box 848
Greenport, NY 11944
USA

Gordon M. Allan (14)
Veterinary Sciences Division
Stoney Road
Stornont
Belfast BT4 3SD
Northern Ireland

Glen W. Almond (6)
College of Veterinary Medicine
North Carolina State University
4700 Hillsborough Street
Raleigh, NC 27606
USA

Sandra F. Amass (68)
Dept. of Veterinary Clinical Sciences
Purdue University
VCS/Lynn, 625 Harrison Street
West Lafayette, IN 47907-1248
USA

David E. Anderson (70)
Dept. of Veterinary Clinical Sciences
College of Veterinary Medicine
The Ohio State University
601 Vernon L. Tharp Street
Columbus, OH 43210-1089
USA

C. A. Baldwin (32)
Veterinary Diagnostic and Investigational Laboratory
College of Veterinary Medicine
University of Georgia
Tifton, GA 31793-3000
USA

Ron O. Ball (58)
Dept. of Agricultural, Food and Nutritional Sciences
University of Alberta
Edmonton, Alberta, T6G 2P5
Canada

Laura Batista (6)
Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
University of Montreal
P.O. Box 5000
St. Hyacinthe, Quebec J2S 7C6
Canada

Angela Baysinger (68)
Department of On Farm Food Safety
Farmland Foods
Route 2, Box 45
Bruning, NE 68322
USA

D. A. Benfield (24)
Ohio Agricultural Research and Development Center
The Ohio State University
1680 Research Services Building
Wooster, OH 44691
USA

Patricia C. Blanchard (10)
California Animal Health and Food Safety Laboratory
University of California-Davis
18830 Road 112
Tulare, CA 93274
USA
viii CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Janice C. Bridger (19)
Dept. of Pathology & Infectious Disease
The Royal Veterinary College
Royal College Street
London, NW1 0TU
United Kingdom

Ian H. Brown (28)
Veterinary Laboratories Agency – Weybridge
New Haw, Addlestone
Surrey KT15 3NB
United Kingdom

Ranald D. A. Cameron (8)
University of Queensland
7 Teague Street, Indooroopilly
Brisbane, Queensland 4068
Australia

C. Cargill (53)
Livestock Systems Alliance
Roseworthy Campus
University of Adelaide
Roseworthy, SA 5371
Australia

Thomas L. Carson (60)
Veterinary Diagnostic Laboratory
Diagnostic and Production Animal Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA

Kin-Chow Chang (61)
Molecular Medicine Laboratory
Institute of Comparative Medicine
University of Glasgow Veterinary School
Bearsden Road, Glasgow G61 1QH
Scotland

Greg M. Cronin (51,62)
Animal Welfare Science Centre
Department of Primary Industries
Werribee Centre East
600 Sneydes Rd
Werribee VIC 3030
Australia

Ross S. Cutler (62)
Ross Cutler and Associates Ptx Ltd
140 The Parade
Ocean Grove, Victoria 3226
Australia

Sylvie D’Allaire (6,63)
Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
University of Montreal
P.O. Box 5000
St. Hyacinthe, Quebec J2S 7C6
Canada

Peter R. Davies (53,69)
Dept. of Veterinary Population Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
University of Minnesota
1988 Fitch Ave
St. Paul, MN 55108
USA

Scott A. Dee (9)
Dept. of Veterinary Population Medicine
University of Minnesota
St. Paul, MN 55108
USA

M. F. de Jong (34)
Animal Health Service
P.O. Box 9 NL 7400 AA Deventer
Netherlands

Cornelius F. M. de Lange (66)
Dept. of Animal & Poultry Science
Ontario Agricultural College
University of Guelph
Guelph, Ontario, N1G 2W1
Canada

Aldo Dekker (31)
Institute for Animal Health & Science
Research Brach, Houtribweg 39
Postbus 65
8200 AB Lelystad
Netherlands

Gustavo Delhon (29)
United States Department of Agriculture
Agricultural Research Service
Plum Island Animal Disease Center
Box 848
Greenport, NY 11944
USA

Catherine E. Dewey (1,5,11,66)
Department of Population Medicine
Ontario Veterinary College
University of Guelph
Guelph, Ontario, N1G 2W1
Canada

Mariano Domingo (14)
Centre de Recerca en Sanitat Animal (CReSA)
Departament de Sanitat i Anatomia Animals
Facultat de Veterinaria
Universitat Autonoma de Barcelona
08193 Bellaterra
Barcelona
Spain
Richard Drolet (9,63)
Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
University of Montreal
P.O. Box 5000
St. Hyacinthe, Quebec J2S 7C6
Canada

J. P. Dubey (52)
USDA, ARS, ANRI
Animal Parasitic Diseases Lab
BARC-East Building 1001, Room 1
Beltsville, MD 20705
USA

G. E. Duhamel (46)
Dept. of Veterinary and Biomedical Sciences
University of Nebraska-Lincoln
Lincoln, NE 68583
USA

Bernard C. Easterday (28)
University of Wisconsin-Madison
School of Veterinary Medicine
2015 Linden Dr
Madison, WI 53706
USA

Neil Edington (16)
Royal Veterinary College
Dept. of Pathology & Infectious Disease
Royal College Street
London, NW1 OTU
United Kingdom

Sandra A. Edwards (67)
School of Agricultural Food and Rural Development
University of Newcastle
Newcastle Upon Tyne NE1 7RU
United Kingdom

W. A. Ellis (41)
Veterinary Research Laboratories
Stoney Road
Stormont
Belfast BT4 3SD
Northern Ireland

François Elvinger (32)
Dept. of Large Animal Clinical Sciences
VA-MD Regional College of Veterinary Medicine
Virginia Polytechnic Institute & State University
Phase II, Duckpond Drive
Blacksburg, VA 24061-0442
USA

Peter R. English (67)
Ardachadh, Upper Lenie
Drummadrochit, Inverness IV63 6XF
Scotland

V. Anthony Fahy (62)
Bendigo Agricultural and Veterinary Center
Box 125
Bendigo, Victoria 3550
Australia

John M. Fairbrother (38)
The Escherichia coli Laboratory
Groupe de Recherche sur les Maladies Infectieuses du Porc
Faculté de Médecine Vétérinaire
Université de Montréal
C.P. 5000
Saint-Hyacinthe, Quebec J2S 7C6
Canada

Chantal Farmer (4)
Centre de R&D sur le Bovin Laitier et el Porc
Agriculture et Agroalimentaire Canada
P.O. Box 90
Lennoxville, Quebec J1M 1Z3
Canada

C. Fellström (48)
Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
Swedish University of Agricultural Sciences
Uppsala
Sweden

William L. Flowers (6)
Dept. of Animal Science
North Carolina State University
Raleigh, NC 27695-7621
USA

David Fraser (67)
Faculty of Agricultural Sciences
University of British Columbia
Vancouver, British Columbia V6T 1Z4
Canada

Robert M. Friendship (54,71)
Dept. of Population Medicine
Ontario Veterinary College
University of Guelph
Guelph, Ontario N1G 2W1
Canada

Ian A. Gardner (10)
Dept. of Medicine and Epidemiology
School of Veterinary Medicine
One Shields Ave
University of California-Davis
Davis, CA 95616
USA

Connie J. Gebhart (44)
Dept. of Pathobiology
College of Veterinary Medicine
University of Minnesota
St Paul, MN 55108
USA
CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Harold W. Gonyou (64)
Prairie Swine Center Inc.
P.O. Box 21057
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan S7H 5N9
Canada

Marcelo Gottschalk (33,47)
Groupe de Recherche sur les Maladies Infectieuses du Porc
Faculté de Médecine Vétérinaire, Université de Montréal,
Saint-Hyacinthe, Quebec J2S 7C6
Canada

R. W. Griffith (45)
Dept. of Veterinary Microbiology and Preventive Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA

Carlton L. Gyles (38)
Dept. of Pathobiology
Ontario Veterinary College
University of Guelph
Guelph, Ontario N1G 2W1
Canada

Patrick G. Halbur (32)
Dept. of Veterinary Diagnostic & Production Animal Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA

David J. Hampson (46,48,65)
School of Veterinary and Biomedical Sciences
Murdoch University
Murdoch, Western Australia 6150
Australia

P. H. Hemsworth (51)
Animal Welfare Science Centre
Univ. of Melbourne and Dept. of Primary Industries
600 Sneydes Rd
Werribee VIC 3030
Melbourne
Australia

Louise M. Henderson (37)
USDA, APHIS, VS, CVB
1800 Dayton Road
Ames, IA 50010
USA

Robert Higgins (47)
Département de Pathologie et Microbiologie,
Faculté de Médecine Vétérinaire, Université de Montréal,
Saint-Hyacinthe, Quebec J2S 7C6
Canada

Phillip G. Hoyt (55)
Dept. of Veterinary Clinical Sciences
School of Veterinary Medicine
Louisiana State University
Baton Rouge, LA 70803
USA

Han Soo Joo (21)
Department of Clinical and Population Sciences
College of Veterinary Medicine
University of Minnesota
St. Paul, MN 55108
USA

Sven Erik Jorsal (7)
Danish Institute for Food and Veterinary Research
Bülowsvæj 27
DK 1790 Copenhagen V
Denmark

Peter D. Kirkland (27)
Virology Laboratory
Elizabeth Macarthur Agricultural Institute
PMB 8, Camden, NSW 2570
Australia

Steven B. Kleiboeker (12)
Veterinary Medical Diagnostic Laboratory
University of Missouri
1600 East Rollins
Columbia, MO 65211
USA

Christian Klopfenstein (4)
Centre de Développement du Porc du Québec
2795 Boul. Laurier, Bureau 340
Ste-Foy, Quebec G1V 4M7
Canada

Nick J. Knowles (18,19)
Dept. of Vesicular Disease Control
Institute for Animal Health
Pirbright Laboratory, Ash Road
Pirbright, Woking, Surrey GU24 0NF
United Kingdom

Frank Koenen (17)
Dept. of Virology
Veterinary & Agrochemic Research Center (CODA/CERVA)
Groeselberg 99
B-1180 Ukkel
Belgium

John Korslund (35)
National Swine Programs Liaison
USDA APHIS VS AHP NCAHP EST
4700 River Road, Unit 43
Riverdale, MD 20373
USA
Jean Le Dividich (65)
INRA-UMRVP
St-Gilles 35590
France

Stéphane P. Lemay (64)
Institut de Recherche et de Développement en
Agroenvironnement
120-A, Chemin Ste-Foy
Deschambault, Quebec G0A 1S0
Canada

Marie-Frédérique Le Potier (15)
Agence Française de Sécurité Sanitaire des Aliments (AFSSA)
Laboratoire d’Etudes et de Recherches Avicoles et Porcines
Zoopole Beaucairenne-Les Croix, BP 53
22440 Ploufragan
France

David S. Lindsay (52)
Center for Molecular Medicine and Infectious Diseases
Dept. of Biomedical Sciences and Pathobiology
Virginia-Maryland Regional College of Veterinary Medicine
Virginia Tech
1410 Prices Fork Road
Blacksburg, VA 24061-0342
USA

Juan Lubroth (31)
Infectious Disease Group
FAO Animal Health Service
Animal Production & Health Division
Viale delle Terme di Caracalla 00100
Rome
Italy

A. P. MacMillan (35)
Central Veterinary Laboratory
New Haw
Addlestone, Surrey KT15 3NB
England

Guy-Pierre Martineau (4)
Ecole Nationale Vétérinaire de Toulouse
23 Chemin de Capelles
B.P. 87614
Toulouse Cedex 3, 31076
France

Steven McOrist (44)
QAF Industries
Corowa
NSW 2646
Australia

X. J. Meng (32)
Center for Molecular Medicine & Infectious Diseases
Dept. of Biomedical Sciences & Pathobiology
VA-MD Regional College of Veterinary Medicine
Virginia Polytechnic Institute & State University
1410 Price’s Fork Road
Blacksburg, VA 24061-0342
USA

William L. Mengeling (23)
4220 Phoenix Street
Ames, IA 50014
USA

Alain Mesplède (15)
Agence Française de Sécurité Sanitaire des Aliments (AFSSA)
Laboratoire d’etudes et de Recherches Avicoles et Porcines
UR Virologie Immunologie Porcines
Zoopole Beaucairenne-Les Croix, BP 53
22440 Ploufragan
France

D. K. Meyerholz (45)
Dept. of Veterinary Pathology
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA

P. S. Miller (57)
Dept. of Animal Science
University of Nebraska
Lincoln, NE 68583-0908
USA

Jan Mousing (7)
Danish Institute for Food and Veterinary Research
Bülowsvej 27, DK-1790 Copenhagen V
Denmark

Michael P. Murtaugh (24)
Dept. of Veterinary Pathobiology
University of Minnesota
1971 Commonwealth Avenue
St. Paul, MN 55108
USA

P. J. O’Brien (58)
Pfizer Global Research and Development
Sandwich Laboratories (ipc330)
Sandwich, Kent, CT13 9NJ
England

Simone R. Oliveira (40)
Veterinary Population Medicine Department
College of Veterinary Medicine
University of Minnesota
244 Vet D L
1333 Gortner Avenue
St. Paul, MN 55108
USA
xii CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Christopher W. Olsen (28)
Dept. of Pathobiological Sciences
School of Veterinary Medicine
University of Wisconsin-Madison
2015 Linden Drive
Madison, WI 53706
USA

Fernando Osorio (24)
Dept. of Veterinary & Biomedical Sciences
University of Nebraska-Lincoln
Lincoln, NE 68583-0905
USA

G. D. Osweiler (56)
Dept. of Veterinary Diagnostic & Production Animal Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA

Z. K. Pejsak (25)
National Veterinary Research Institute
Partyzantow 57
24-100 Pulawy
Poland

Maurice B. Pensaert (20,22)
Laboratory of Veterinary Virology
Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
Ghent University
Salisburylaan 133
9820 Merelbeke
Belgium

Carlos Pijoan (40,43)
Dept. of Clinical and Population Sciences
College of Veterinary Medicine
University of Minnesota
1988 Fitch Avenue
St. Paul, MN 55108
USA

K. B. Platt (21)
2154 College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA

John R. Pluske (65)
School of Veterinary and Biomedical Sciences
Murdoch University
Murdoch, Western Australia 6150
Australia

John F. Prescott (71)
Dept. of Pathobiology
Ontario Veterinary College
University of Guelph
Guelph, Ontario N1G 2W1
Canada

Vicki J. Rapp-Gabrielson (40)
Pfizer Animal Health
Veterinary Medicine Research and Development
Building 190 MS 39
7000 Portage Road
Kalamazoo, MI 49001
USA

D. E. Reese (57)
Dept. of Animal Science
University of Nebraska
Lincoln, NE 68583-0908
USA

Dan L. Rock (29)
United States Department of Agriculture
Agricultural Research Service
Plum Island Animal Disease Center
Box 848
Greenport, NY 11944
USA

Luis Rodríguez (31)
United States Department of Agriculture
Agricultural Research Service
Plum Island Animal Disease Center
Box 848
Greenport, NY 11944
USA

James A. Roth (2)
College of Veterinary Medicine
Dept. of Veterinary Microbiology & Preventive Medicine
Iowa State University
2156 Vet Med Bldg
Ames, IA 50011
USA

Linda J. Saif (26,30)
Food Animal Health Research Program
Ohio Agricultural Research & Development Center
The Ohio State University
Wooster, OH 44691
USA

Guy St. Jean (70)
School of Veterinary Medicine
Ross University
P.O. Box 334
Basseterre, St. Kitts
West Indies

José Manuel Sánchez-Vizcaíno (13)
Catedrático del Área de Sanidad Animal
Universidad Complutense
Facultad de Veterinaria
Avenida Puerta de Hierro s/n
28040 Madrid
Spain
CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Heidi Schleicher (35)
USDA, APHIS, VS, NVSL
Brucella and Mycobacterium Reagents Team
1800 Dayton Ave
Ames, IA 50010
USA

K. J. Schwartz (45)
Dept. of Veterinary Diagnostic & Production Animal Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA

Joaquim Segalés (14)
Centre de Recerca en Sanitat Animal (CRESA)
Departament de Sanitat i Anatomia Animals
Facultat de Veterinaria
Universitat Autonoma de Barcelona
08193 Bellaterra
Barcelona
Spain

Karol Sestak (30)
Tulane University Primate Center
Tulane University School of Medicine
18703 Three Rivers Road
Covington, LA 70433
USA

E. W. Skov-Jensen (39)
Staby-Ulfborg-Tim Veterinarians
Bygvaenget 25
DK-6990 Ulfborg
Denmark

W. J. Smith (59)
85 Station Road
Banchory
Aberdeenshire AB31 5YP
Scotland

J. Glenn Songer (36)
Dept. of Veterinary Science and Microbiology
The University of Arizona
Tucson, AZ 85721-0090
USA

Vibeke Sørensen (7)
Danish Institute for Food and Veterinary Research
Bülowsvej 27
DK 1790 Copenhagen V
Denmark

E. Murray Spicer (62)
Bendigo Agricultural and Veterinary Center
Box 125
Bendigo Victoria 3550
Australia

Katharina D.C. Stärk (69)
Swiss Federal Veterinary Office
P.O. Box
CH-3003 Bern
Switzerland

Michael J. Stear (61)
Institute of Comparative Medicine
University of Glasgow Veterinary School
Beardsden Road
Glasgow, G61 1QH
Scotland

Alberto Stephano (27)
Stephano Consultores, S.C.
Villa de Gaudalupe 234
Villa del Campestre
Leon, Guanajuato, C.P. 37129
Mexico

Gregory W. Stevenson (24, 26)
Animal Disease Diagnostic Laboratory
College of Veterinary Medicine
Purdue University
West Lafayette, IN 47907
USA

T. Bonner Stewart (55)
Dept. of Pathobiological Sciences
School of Veterinary Medicine
Louisiana State University
Baton Rouge, LA 70803
USA

William C. Stoffregen (35)
Brucellosis Research Project
Bacterial Diseases of Livestock Research Unit
National Animal Disease Center
USDA-ARS
2300 Dayton Ave., Box 70
Ames, IA 50010
USA

Barbara E. Straw (1, 11, 59)
Dept. of Large Animal Clinical Science
College of Veterinary Medicine
Michigan State University
East Lansing, MI 48824
USA

David J. Taylor (33, 36, 50)
Glasgow University Veterinary School
Beardsden Road
Beardsden, Glasgow G61 1QH
Scotland

Eileen L. Thacker (2, 42)
2118 Veterinary Microbiology & Preventive Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA
xiv CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Charles O. Thoen (49)
Dept. of Microbiology, Immunology & Preventive Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011
USA

Jill R. Thomson (3,48)
Scottish Agricultural College Veterinary Services
Bush Estate, Penicuik
Midlothian EH26 OQE
Scotland

Montserrat Torremorell (24)
Pig Improvement Company
3033 Nashville Road
Franklin, KY 42135
USA

Marian J. Truszczyński (25)
National Veterinary Research Institute
Partyzantow 57
24-100 Pulawy
Poland

E. R. Tulman (29)
United States Department of Agriculture
Agricultural Research Service
Plum Island Animal Disease Center
Box 848
Greenport, NY 11944
USA

Kristien Van Reeth (28)
Laboratory of Virology
Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
Ghent University
Salisburylaan 133
9820 Merelbeke
Belgium

Philippe Vannier (15)
Agence Française de Sécurité Sanitaire des Aliments (AFSSA)
Laboratoire d’Etudes et de Recherches Avicoles et Porcines
Zoopole Beaucemaine-Les Croix, BP S3
22440 Ploufragan
France

H. C. Wegener (39)
Head of Research
Danish Veterinary Institute
Copenhagen
Denmark

Carolyn A. Wilson (32)
Division of Cellular and Gene Therapies
Office of Cellular, Tissues, and Gene Therapies
Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research
Food and Drug Administration
8800 Rockville Pike, HFM-725
Bethesda, MD 20892
USA

M. R. Wilson (11)
RR 4
Rockwood, Ontario N0B 2K0
Canada

Richard L. Wood (37)
620 River Oak Drive
Ames, IA 50010
USA

Sang-Geon Yeo (22)
College of Veterinary Medicine
Kyungpook National University
Daegu, 702-701
South Korea

Kyoung-Jin Yoon (16)
Dept. of Veterinary Diagnostic & Production Animal Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011-1250
USA

Lijuan Yuan (26)
Food Animal Health Research Program
Ohio Agricultural Research & Development Center
The Ohio State University
1680 Madison Avenue
Wooster, OH 44691
USA

Yuanhui Zhang (64)
Dept. of Agricultural Engineering
University of Illinois
1304 W. Pennsylvania
Urbana, IL 61801
USA

Jeffery J. Zimmerman (24)
Dept. of Veterinary Diagnostic & Production Animal Medicine
College of Veterinary Medicine
Iowa State University
Ames, IA 50011-1250
USA
Diseases and production technology are often referred to by different common names in different parts of the world. The following terms have been used interchangeably at the authors’ discretion: pseudorabies/Aujesky’s disease, hog cholera/classical swine fever, pleurisy/pleuritis, specific pathogen free/minimal disease, and weaner pig/nursery pig.

Occasionally, outdated terms will be used when appropriate in a historical context, such as (1) mastitis-metritis-aggalactia (MMA) instead of postpartum dysgalactia syndrome (PPDS) and (2) stillbirth-mummification, embryonic death-infertility (SMEDI) rather than porcine parvovirus infection.

The officially accepted name changes for bacteria have been used in the text. Some that have changed in recent years include *Actinobaculum suis* (earlier *Actinomyces suis*, *Eubacterium suis*, and *Corynebacterium pyogenes*) and *Brachyspira hyodysenteriae* (earlier *Serpulina hyodysenteriae* and *Treponema hyodysenteriae*).
Physical Examination, Diagnosis, and Body Systems

1  Herd Examination
2  Immune System
3  Diseases of the Digestive System
4  Diseases of the Mammary Glands
5  Diseases of the Nervous and Locomotor Systems
6  Diseases of the Reproductive System
7  Diseases of the Respiratory System
8  Diseases of the Skin
9  Diseases of the Urinary System
10 Interpretation of Laboratory Results
11 Differential Diagnosis of Disease
The rapid trend toward large, intensive, confinement-rearing swine production units and the emergence of herd managers with high levels of education and specialized swine experience has caused a change in the type of service required from veterinary practitioners. The hobby farmer with a few sows as a sideline enterprise may still require a veterinarian to help castrate piglets, farrow a sow, or examine a pen of ill pigs. Specialized pig farmers generally have little need for these traditional services; however, they do require the assistance of professional consultants who can help them solve complex disease, management, environmental, and production problems. Veterinarians also work with producers to ensure pork safety and the welfare of the pigs under their care.

On large swine units the veterinarian functions as part of a consulting team that may be composed of a nutritionist, engineer, marketing expert, geneticist, and accountant. Veterinarians are uniquely suited to coordinate this team, but this leadership role requires that a veterinarian must keep up-to-date with developments in a wide range of fields. The health management veterinarian must be knowledgeable enough to discuss feeding programs with a nutritionist or a ventilation problem with an engineer. The swine health management veterinarian must also be familiar with the complex biological system of a pig farm to differentiate normal and abnormal states. Finally, the swine veterinarian will use herd-based diagnostic skills to provide modern, cost-effective disease-management programs.

Often the ill-defined production problems on large swine farms are precipitated by such factors as poor housing, infectious disease, or poor management of animals or farm personnel. Educating and motivating the herdsmen rather than concentrating on disease conditions of the pig can solve many of these complex production problems. The task of helping farmers to make long-term decisions, motivating them to carry these out, and demonstrating to them the cost benefits of this advice is difficult, partly because of the long time span involved. Good record-keeping and the use of production targets are the cornerstones of such a program. Likewise, regular visits and ongoing discussions with follow-up written reports go a long way to make health management programs successful. This chapter provides an overview of the expectations of a herd health veterinarian working with a specific unit and offers charts of normal values as a reference.

THE HERD HEALTH VISIT

Understand the Producer’s Goals for the Unit
The veterinarian must determine the goals of the herd’s owner and manager. The recommendations for one producer who wants to eradicate disease will be different from those given to a producer who wants to develop a treatment and prevention program for the diseases in the barn.

Review Production Records
Examine monthly reproductive records for at least 12 months. Determine which parameters are below target and conduct a more thorough investigation of factors that affect these parameters. Alter target values for all parameters as the production unit changes over time. Averages for some specific parameters are listed in Table 1.1. More detail is found in Chapter 6.

Review nursery and grow/finish records for each barn filled over the past 12 months. If the unit is managed in a continuous flow basis, be sure that the values are biologically plausible. Specifically determine growth rate and compare this to the expected values in slow-, moderate-, and fast-growing pigs (Table 1.2). If the farm keeps accurate feed records, analyze the feed conversion rates and margin over feed as well. An evaluation of payment records from the packing plant will be useful to enhance the return per pig marketed.

Then determine the average and range of morbidity and mortality for each age group of pigs. Examine the causes and timing of morbidity and mortality to deter-
mine whether disease control programs continue to be appropriate for the unit. Identify seasonal trends in morbidity and mortality. Average nursing pig mortality rates around the world are estimated to range from 12.7% in the U.K. to 19.7% in the U.S.A. (Barnett et al. 2001). Typically, nursery barn mortality ranges from 2–5% and grower-finisher pig mortality ranges from 0.5–3%. The average sow mortality of 6% has increased over time (Abiven et al. 1998; Deen and Anil 2003). In 2002, mortality by country ranged from a low value of 3.6% in Columbia to a high of 8.0% in the United States based on PigCHAMP records (Deen and Anil 2003). There are also large farm-to-farm differences in sow mortality. In the study by Abiven et al. (1998), annual sow mortality ranged from 0–20%. See Chapter 63 for more details on sow culling and mortality.

Farms that have both stalls and pens for sow housing have a lower culling rate due to reproductive failure, lameness, age, death, and euthanasia than farms that have only pens (Paterson et al. 1997, cited by Barnett et al. 2001). Sows housed in pens for a portion of gestation are expected to have reduced farrowing time (Ferket and Hacker 1985), reduced lameness in gilts (Hale et al. 1984), and less joint damage (Fredeen and Sather 1978).

To complete the record analyses, identify problems and prioritize areas according to those with most economic concern. Make lists of short-term and long-term goals. Record questions that arise from the record analyses to be reviewed during the herd visit. Make copies of reports in either table for graph form. Produce a summary of the findings to be included in the final herd report.

**Review Production Flow**

Draw a detailed map of the whole production facility or system. For a farrow-to-finish facility this will be the details for one site. If the production system is multisite, include all sites in your production map. To the map add information such as number of barns, number of rooms per barn, number of pens per room, and size of each pen. Finally add the age and weight of pigs as they enter and exit the pens. The production records will provide expected values for production flow, such as number of sows, pigs weaned per litter, growth rate, and mortality rate. Using this information, determine the maximum number of pigs each pen, room, barn, and site will accommodate. Together with the facility design, determine if there is sufficient space for the anticipated production.

The pen area required per pig is determined by the maximum size and number of pigs housed in the pen (Table 1.3). If pigs are not provided adequate space, growth rate will be reduced as overcrowding begins. To enhance the use of space, some producers over stock a pen with lightweight pigs when they first arrive in a facility and then move 1/4 to 1/3 of the pigs to another pen as they grow. Another option for finisher pigs is to market the heaviest pigs at a slightly lower weight, thus alleviating the potential for overcrowding. A space savings of 3% will be gained if the first group of animals is marketed at 5 kg below the typical weight (Gonyou and Stricklin 1998). An allometric measurement of space allowance takes into consideration the floor area required by the pig over a wide range of weights. Research has shown that using the equation area = k × (body weight) 0.667, where area is measured in m² and body weight in kg, if the coefficient k is maintained at 0.33, the pigs will not be overcrowded. More detail about the impact of space on productivity is found in Chapter 64.

The area recommended for sows varies widely from 1.4 to 3.6 m²/pig due to different housing designs and expectations determined by country (English et al. 1982; Jensen 1984; Barnett et al. 2001). When space is insufficient, sows have reduced reproductive performance and show a chronic stress response. There is a reproductive advantage to providing 3 m²/pig over 2 m²/pig (Jensen 1984). Outdoor housed sows will each require 1.1 m² (12.8 ft²) on a slab area, 0.7 m² (7.7 ft²) in a shed for sleeping and an additional space for cooling in a mud hole or a sprinkler area.

When pigs are housed in large groups, there is additional free space compared to housing smaller groups with the same area per pig (Barnett et al. 2001). If sows are kept in relatively small groups, they need 2.4 to 3.6

---

**Table 1.1.** Country-specific sow productivity averages based on PigCHAMP records collected in 2002.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Farms</th>
<th>Cull rate (%)</th>
<th>Death rate (%)</th>
<th>Nonproductive sow days</th>
<th>Farrowing rate (%)</th>
<th>Born alive/litter</th>
<th>Stillborn/litter</th>
<th>Mummies/litter</th>
<th>Lactation length (da)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>38.3</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>59.8</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>19.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>36.5</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>57.9</td>
<td>79.3</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>20.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>39.9</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>52.7</td>
<td>82.5</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>32.9</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>55.7</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>21.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>44.7</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>74.8</td>
<td>71.7</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>18.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Deen and Anil (2003).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age (days)</th>
<th>Slow Weight</th>
<th>Daily Gain in the Previous 20 Days</th>
<th>Moderate Weight</th>
<th>Daily Gain in the Previous 20 Days</th>
<th>Ideal Weight</th>
<th>Daily Gain in the Previous 20 Days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>8–10</td>
<td>3.6–4.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>18–22</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>33–40</td>
<td>5.0–0.60</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>18–22</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>54–64</td>
<td>24.5–29.1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>33–40</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>82–95</td>
<td>37.3–43.2</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>54–64</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>110–126</td>
<td>50.0–57.3</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>82–95</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>138–157</td>
<td>62.7–71.4</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>110–126</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>165–187</td>
<td>75.0–85.0</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>138–157</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>191–216</td>
<td>86.8–98.2</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>165–187</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20–60</td>
<td>0.63–0.75</td>
<td>284–341</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>191–216</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60–180</td>
<td>1.32–1.47</td>
<td>598–667</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>191–216</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0–180</td>
<td>1.06–1.20</td>
<td>482–545</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>191–216</td>
<td>5.5–6.4</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1.3. Recommended space per pig by phase of production.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Indoor</th>
<th>Slotted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area per pig in m² (ft²)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gilts</td>
<td>1.86 (20)</td>
<td>1.49 (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sows</td>
<td>2.2 (24)</td>
<td>1.86 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farrow pen</td>
<td>8 (88)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farrow crate</td>
<td>4.4 (48)</td>
<td>4.4 (48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boars</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>1.86 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursing</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2.0 (22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery 20 kg</td>
<td>.37 (4)</td>
<td>.28 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery 40 kg</td>
<td>.37 (4)</td>
<td>.40 (4.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grower 60 kg</td>
<td>.56 (6)</td>
<td>.53 (5.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finish 80 kg</td>
<td>.74 (8)</td>
<td>.67 (7.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finish 110kg</td>
<td>.75 (8)</td>
<td>.75 (8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


m²/pig. This is important with respect to aggression in sows. If sows are provided sufficient space, group size has little impact on aggression. However, if space is restricted, aggression increases as group size increases. Similarly, rectangular pens are essential if space is restricted; otherwise, square pens will suffice. If gilts are provided with only 1.4 m²/pig the pen must also include full stalls for feeding.

Providing individual feeding stalls within a large pen has the advantage of allowing both individualized feeding and a safe refuge for subordinate sows (Barnett et al. 2001). Partial stalls also provide similar advantages. The benefit is maximized if the sows are fed in these partial stalls. Another alternative is to build a maze or a series of partitions within the large pen to provide escape zones and sleeping areas for small social groups of sows.

Almost all sows in Europe, the U.K., North America, and Australia farrow in crates (Barnett et al. 2001). Farrowing crates are primarily used to reduce preweaning mortality rates by reducing the sow’s ability to lie down quickly thereby reducing crushing. Other features include reducing the space used by the piglet, providing a creep area with supplemental heat and draft reduction and slatted floors to improve hygiene. A farrowing crate area will encompass a total width of 1.8 m and a length of 2.4 m. The slotted area of the floor of a farrowing pen should not exceed 10 mm otherwise newborn pigs will get their feet caught in the hole (English et al. 1982). The back gate of the farrowing crate should be at least 750 mm wide to enable personnel to assist the sow during farrowing (English et al. 1982). The creep area will be offset to allow 0.8 m wide on the side with the supplementary heat and 0.3 m wide on the other side for the pigs to nurse. Sow pens used for farrowing tend to be 6–10 m², whereas crates are typically 4 m².

Outdoor housing is used for one quarter of sows living in the U.K. and New Zealand, 2–4% of sows in Denmark, 7–9% of sows in France and 5–6% of sows in Australia (Barnett et al. 2001). Welfare issues of concern for these sows include health and disease, predation, access to food and water, protection against weather extremes, mutilations, use of electric fences, paddock rotation, and stocking density. To preserve pastures, producers may use nose rings, which discourage foraging. Huts used as shelter in the cold months must provide 1.3 m²/sow so that timid sows will enter the shelter. Paddocks must provide shelter from wind and well-drained soil. In Australia, outdoor housing is limited to areas with few days over 30°C and limited rainfall. Sows housed outdoors have a higher variation in back fat, a longer outside claw length and a lower farrowing rate (Barnett et al. 2001).

Access to Feed and Water

Onto the map of the facility, insert number and type of feeders and waterers. Determine whether there are sufficient feeders and waterers for the maximum number and size of pig expected to live in the pen.

Pigs consume 10% of their own body weight in water per day, and more in hot weather. One liter of water weighs 1 kg. Therefore, a 100 kg pig will consume at least 10 liters of water per day (Table 1.4). This is important to determine access to water and for water medication. For more information on medication, see Chapter 71. Pigs drink 80% of their water in conjunction to when they feed. Also, pigs prefer to eat and drink at daybreak, and then off and on throughout the day and the evening, but spend the night sleeping. Nursery pigs eat more frequently than grower pigs, which in turn eat more frequently than finisher pigs. If water or feeder access is limited, submissive pigs will be forced to eat and drink during the night. When access to water is insufficient, there is an increase in aggression (see Chapter 64).

Table 1.4. Recommended water requirements, water flow rate, and feeder space per pig by phase of production.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feeder Space/Pig</th>
<th>Water Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restricted feed</td>
<td>l/day l/minute mm (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestating sows</td>
<td>12–25   2 457–610 (18–24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactating sow</td>
<td>10–30    2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boar</td>
<td>20      2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursing</td>
<td>1       0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery</td>
<td>2.8     1         254 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grower</td>
<td>7–20    1.4       260 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finish</td>
<td>10–20   1.7       330 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad libitum</td>
<td>Nursing 2.8 1 60 (2.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery</td>
<td>7–20    1.4       65 (2.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finish</td>
<td>10–20   1.7       76 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Baxter (1984); Patience and Thacker (1989); Swine Care Handbook, 2003; Muirhead and Alexander (1997).
weight gain is decreased because feed intake is decreased, and there is an increase in the variation in pig body weight by age (see Chapter 66). There should be no more than 4 pigs for each feeder space in an ad libitum feed management system. One water nipple can accommodate 10 to 15 pigs. The waterers and feeders must be spaced adequately so that a pig drinking from one water nipple cannot obstruct the ability of another pig to get to a second water nipple. If water is provided in a trough, there must be 300 mm per 20 finisher pigs or 15 sows (Muirhead and Alexander 1997). Water bowls accommodate 17 to 20 pigs. Farrowing crates need to be equipped with water nipples or bowls for both the sow and the piglets.

Feeding dry sows three times per day is associated with lower sow mortality than feeding twice a day, which in turn was associated with lower mortality than feeding once a day (Abiven et al. 1998). Farms feeding dry meal or wet meal had lower mortality than those feeding pelleted ration, likely due to the decreased occurrence of torsions. Dry sows are typically fed 1.5 times their maintenance requirements which is approximately 0.6 of their ad libitum feed intake (Barnett et al. 2001).

Electronic feeders typically accommodate 40 sows per unit (Barnett et al. 2001). Provided the feeder design is appropriate to discourage vulva biting, these feeders work well in stable groups of sows. In dynamic groups, aggression may continue to be a problem because feeding order cannot be established. This may reduce reproductive performance. Group feeding sows in pens continues to provide an unfair advantage to dominant sows who gain significantly more weight during gestation than submissive sows (Bours and Edwards 1994).

**Temperature**

Upper and lower critical temperature is dependent on the floor type, amount of feed provided to pigs, live weight, number of animals in the pen, drafts (or wind speed for outdoor pigs), rain, ability to gain shelter, and—for sows—stage of pregnancy (see Table 1.5). Typically, dry sows are fed 1.5 times their maintenance requirements. The lower critical limit is the temperature below which a pig will use extra feed to maintain its body temperature (Barnett et al. 2001). Pigs provided with straw in the winter months will tolerate a lower temperature. For every 5°C below the lower critical temperature, sows will need to be fed an extra 250 g feed/day. For every 1°C below the lower critical temperature for grower/finisher pigs, each pig will have to consume an extra 3.3 kg of feed to reach market weight.

Pigs held above the upper critical temperature will experience decreased feed intake. For sows, this subsequently results in lower reproductive performance and lower milk production. Boars and sows kept at 23–27°C will have reduced fertility (English et al. 1982). Pigs held above the upper critical temperature should be provided with drip coolers for indoor pigs and wallows for outdoor pigs. If straw is provided, the upper critical temperature will be substantially lower than if pigs sleep on a concrete floor.

Ideally, sows will be kept between 21 and 22°C. Newborn pigs will have a creep area maintained at 28–30°C. Newly weaned pigs should be kept at 26–28°C depending on their age and size at weaning. Temperature is gradually reduced each week so that they are at 22°C when they are moved to the grower barn (Curtis 1983). Grower/finisher pigs prefer to be kept in 15–20°C. It is essential that temperature does not fluctuate rapidly over time.

**Begin the Herd Visit with History-Taking**

Ask the manager/owner about his/her concerns. This will ensure that these problem areas are addressed during your discussion and as you walk through the barn. Follow this with a complete history-taking, including the topics covered in the following sections.

**Herd Security.** Were any animals brought onto the farm recently? What are the quarantine and isolation procedures for new stock? Are there one or more sources of breeding stock, nursery, or grower pigs? What steps are taken to control human and animal traffic? How are animals loaded out of the farm? Are livestock trucks clean on arrival? Take note of the biosecurity protocols used for human traffic. (See Chapter 68 for a complete description of biosecurity concerns.)

**Table 1.5.** Lower and upper critical temperatures (°C) by size of pig based on feeding level and flooring type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Units of Feeda</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dry Concrete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry Concrete Straw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature degrees celcius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCTb Sows</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery 20 kg</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery 40 kg</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growers 60 kg</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finishers 80 kg</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry Concrete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry Concrete Slatted Floor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature degrees celcius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCTc Sows</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery 1 kg</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery 5 kg</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery 20 kg</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursery 40 kg</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growers 60 kg</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finishers 80 kg</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


aFeed provided at 1, 2, or 3 times maintenance.

bLower critical temperature.

cUpper critical temperature.

NA = not available.
Genetics
What is the genetic composition of the herd? What procedures are used to guarantee that proper matings will take place? What selection criteria are used for boars, gilts, and sows? Is there a family or breed relationship between animals experiencing the disease?

Breeding Management. In units using natural mating, what is the boar-to-sow ratio? How frequently are individual boars used? Does mating occur in a pen or is hand mating used? With hand mating, what sanitary precautions are taken between boars? In units using artificial insemination, what percent of females are bred this way? Is semen purchased or collected on farm? What are the handling and storage procedures for the semen? How is estrus detection done? How frequently and at what times are sows and gilts mated? When and how is pregnancy diagnosis done? What is the conception rate for sows and gilts? What is the farrowing rate for sows and gilts? How many females return to estrus 21 days after mating and at other intervals? Have abortions been noted?

Farrowing Performance. Are sows washed prior to entering the farrowing area? Are sows induced to farrow and if so, what is the protocol? How frequently do sows require assistance to farrow? What procedure is used for cross-fostering? What are the size of litters and the total born alive, mummies, and stillbirths? What do piglets weigh at birth and weaning? What is the average and range in lactation length? How often are sows weaned?

Mortality. What is the current state of mortality on the farm? If mortality was not fully described in the records, ask questions relating to the historical pattern of mortality. What is the average and range in mortality by phase of production. Within each phase, when does the mortality occur? Is there a seasonal pattern to mortality? What are the clinical observations in pigs just before they die? What is the appearance of the dead pig? Have these types of mortalities occurred previously? What has been done, if anything, to determine the cause of these mortalities?

Medications and Immunizations. What vaccines are used routinely in the herd? What animals are vaccinated and at what time? Is there a routine worming program for sows, boars, and growing pigs? How are external parasites controlled? What medications are used in the feed? Are drugs used at a growth-promoting or therapeutic level? Is drug usage rotated? What injectable treatments are given to sick pigs? Has the producer completed and maintained a quality assurance program? Are there written standard vaccination and treatment protocols displayed as a reference for all employees?

Feed. Is feed grown on the farm or purchased? Where and how is feed mixing done? What nutrient composition is intended for each class of pig? How is feed stored and delivered to the pigs? What quantity of feed is given to limit-fed pigs, and how is the feed measured?

Disease Outbreak. What was the progression of signs within a pig? How old was the pig when signs started? How long did illness persist? Is recovery complete or is pig unthrifty? In the group affected, what is the morbidity and mortality? Has treatment been used, and to what effect? What is the course of disease within the herd? Did the disease start with an explosive outbreak or was it insidious? What animals were originally affected? What animals has disease spread to? Did the initial disease picture differ from the later signs? Is disease becoming more or less severe? Are any other animals besides pigs affected? What is the distribution of affected animals? Is disease sporadic or endemic? Are affected animals grouped by litter, pen, or building? Is one sex affected to a greater extent than the other? Were any changes in management made prior to the outbreak of the disease? Has this problem occurred before on this farm?

Disease Affecting Pigs in Litters. Are whole litters affected, or is incidence sporadic within litters? Are the biggest or smallest pigs affected? Are litters of gilts or of sows more frequently or severely affected?

“Walk Through” the Barns
It is essential to walk through the barns to observe the pigs for clinical signs of disease, abnormal behaviors, availability of space, water, and feed and also to assess the environment/ventilation. Visit all phases of production even if the producer does not have specific concerns in all areas.

Be sure to talk with all farm employees. Each person will have his/her own concerns and observations. As the veterinarian you can address these problems and encourage the employees to reach their potential. Employees will ask you to examine individual pigs showing specific clinical problems. Although swine health management deals with the group of animals, many of these individuals provide an excellent measurement of the whole. These discussions provide an opportunity to review treatment protocols and euthanasia decisions. The welfare of specific pigs and the decisions about pigs in the hospital pen will be discussed during the walkthrough. People working in the barn need to deal with individual pigs to raise the welfare in the barn.

Details of clinical examination are outlined in the systems chapters. Observe the body condition of the sows and compare this to the descriptions in Table 1.6 and Figure 1.1. Normal values for temperature, respiration, and heart rate are outlined in Table 1.7. Using Table 1.8 as a guide, determine the state of management and the health of the pigs in the farrowing room with undesirable physical problems. Discuss the treatment and
Pelvic bones very prominent. Deep cavity around the tail head.

Pelvic bones obvious but some slight cover. Cavity around tail head.

Pelvic bones covered.

Pelvic bones only felt with firm pressure. No cavity around tail.

Pelvic bones impossible to feel. Root of tail set deep in surrounding fat.

Pelvic bones impossible to feel. Folds of fat obscure the vulva in sows.

Prominent and sharp throughout the length of the backbone.

Prominent.

Covered but can be felt.

Impossible to feel vertebral bone.

Midline appears as a slight hollow between rolls of fat.

Individual ribs very prominent.

Rib cage less apparent. Difficult to see individual ribs.

Covered but can be felt.

Not possible to feel ribs.

Thick fat cover.

Thick fat cover.

Table 1.6. Body condition evaluation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numerical Score</th>
<th>Pelvic Bones (Ilium, Ischium) Tail Head</th>
<th>Loin</th>
<th>Vertebrae</th>
<th>Ribs</th>
<th>Inches (mm) of Backfat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Pelvic bones very prominent. Deep cavity around the tail head.</td>
<td>Loin very narrow. Sharp edge on transverse spinal process. Flank very hollow.</td>
<td>Prominent</td>
<td>Individual ribs very prominent.</td>
<td>0.5 (13) or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pelvic bones obvious but some slight cover. Cavity around tail head.</td>
<td>Loin narrow. Only very slight cover to edge of transverse spinal process. Flank rather hollow.</td>
<td>Prominent</td>
<td>Rib cage less apparent. Difficult to see individual ribs.</td>
<td>0.6 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Pelvic bones covered.</td>
<td>Edge of transverse spinal processes covered and rounded.</td>
<td>Visible over the shoulder. Some cover farther back.</td>
<td>Covered but can be felt.</td>
<td>0.7 (17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pelvic bones only felt with firm pressure. No cavity around tail.</td>
<td>Edge of transverse spinal processes felt only with firm pressure.</td>
<td>Felt only with firm pressure.</td>
<td>Rib cage not visible. Very difficult to feel any ribs.</td>
<td>0.8 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Pelvic bones impossible to feel. Root of tail set deep in surrounding fat.</td>
<td>Impossible to feel bones. Flank full and rounded.</td>
<td>Impossible to feel vertebrae.</td>
<td>Not possible to feel ribs.</td>
<td>0.9 (23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pelvic bones impossible to feel. Folds of fat obscure the vulva in sows.</td>
<td>Thick fat cover.</td>
<td>Midline appears as a slight hollow between rolls of fat.</td>
<td>Thick fat cover.</td>
<td>1.0 (25)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.7. Temperature and respiration and heart rate of pigs of different ages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age of Pig</th>
<th>Rectal Temperature (Range ± 0.3°C, 0.5°F)</th>
<th>Respiratory Rate (Breaths/Min)</th>
<th>Heart Rate (Beats/Min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Newborn</td>
<td>39.0°C / 102.2°F</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>200–250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 hr</td>
<td>36.8°C / 98.3°F</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>200–250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 hr</td>
<td>38.0°C / 100.4°F</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>200–250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 hr</td>
<td>38.6°C / 101.5°F</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>200–250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaned piglet (20–40 lb) (9–18 kg)</td>
<td>39.2°C / 102.6°F</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>200–250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growing pig (60–100 lb) (27–45 kg)</td>
<td>39.3°C / 102.7°F</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>200–250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finishing pig (100–200 lb) (45–90 kg)</td>
<td>38.8°C / 101.8°F</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>200–250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sow in gestation</td>
<td>38.7°C / 101.7°F</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>200–250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sow 24 hr prepartum</td>
<td>38.7°C / 101.7°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 hr prepartum</td>
<td>38.9°C / 102.0°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 hr prepartum</td>
<td>39.0°C / 102.2°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth of first pig</td>
<td>39.4°C / 102.9°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 hr postpartum</td>
<td>39.7°C / 103.5°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 hr postpartum</td>
<td>40.0°C / 104.0°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 week postpartum until weaning</td>
<td>39.3°C / 102.7°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 day postweaning</td>
<td>38.6°C / 101.5°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boar</td>
<td>38.4°C / 101.1°F</td>
<td>35–45</td>
<td>50–60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prevention of these problems with the employees responsible for that area of the production unit. Examine the nursery, grower, and finisher pigs. Specifically determine if they are managed in an all-in, all-out manner and that the room or barn is properly cleaned and disinfected between groups and allowed to dry for a few days before refilling. The pigs should not vary in body weight by age by more than 10%. There should be no indications of clinical disease, such as skin lesions, diarrhea, coughing, or sneezing. Pigs should not be exhibiting vices and should be dunging in the appropriate area. Commonly observed problems include high pig density (refer to Table 1.3); large variation in body weight; runts or poor-doing pigs; coughing, sneezing, or nasal dis-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Desirable</th>
<th>Undesirable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physical condition</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Body condition</strong></td>
<td>Normal weight.</td>
<td>Thin, fat, or obese.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cleanliness</strong></td>
<td>Sows have been thoroughly washed.</td>
<td>Inverted, juvenile, or overcrowded teats; glands hot, red, swollen, painful; abnormal milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mammary glands</strong></td>
<td>At least 12 prominent, evenly spaced nipples.</td>
<td>Purulent, bloody, or foul-smelling discharge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vulval discharges</strong></td>
<td>Watery, clear-to-whitish fluid.</td>
<td>Burns from the heat lamp. Abrasions or calluses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Skin</strong></td>
<td>Unblemished.</td>
<td>Anemia. Hyperkeratinization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feet and legs</strong></td>
<td>Normal stance and movement.</td>
<td>Spaylegged, foot lesions, difficulty getting up or lying down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feed</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amount</strong></td>
<td>4–6 lb (2–2.5 kg), plus 1 lb (0.5 kg) for each pig in the litter.</td>
<td>Less than the desired level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feeder condition</strong></td>
<td>Clean, large capacity, and easily accessible.</td>
<td>Dirty, broken, containing old or moldy feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water</strong></td>
<td>Unlimited supply of fresh water.</td>
<td>Fouled water, inadequate flow or inaccessible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Environment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Temperature</strong></td>
<td>Between 60°F and 75°F (16–24°C).</td>
<td>Too cold or too hot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Floor design</strong></td>
<td>Proper spacing between slats, good traction, nonabrasive.</td>
<td>Slippery material. Sharp edges on slats, uneven slats. Slots sized to trap teats and dewclaws.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Floor condition</strong></td>
<td>Clean and dry.</td>
<td>Dirty, wet, cracked or broken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crate design</strong></td>
<td>Right size for sow. Permits good exposure of underline.</td>
<td>Too large, allowing sows to flop over and crush pigs. Bottom bar hinders nursing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Light</strong></td>
<td>12–14 hr daily at 200 lux.</td>
<td>Too dark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Baby Pigs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physical condition</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Birth weight</strong></td>
<td>Average of 3 lb (1.3 kg) or greater.</td>
<td>Average is less than 3 lb (1.3 kg).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Litter sizes</strong></td>
<td>Litters are matched to rearing capacity of sows.</td>
<td>Wide variation in litter size, with 20% or more containing 8 or fewer pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weights within the litter</strong></td>
<td>Less than 1 lb (0.5 kg) difference between the largest and smallest pigs.</td>
<td>More than 1 lb (0.5 kg) difference between the largest and smallest pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Skin</strong></td>
<td>Unblemished.</td>
<td>Knee abrasions, facial lacerations, teat necrosis, anemia, exudative epidermitis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Locomotion</strong></td>
<td>Normal gait and anatomy.</td>
<td>Splayleg, swollen joints, foot lesions, lameness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infectious disease</strong></td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Diarrhea, sneezing, unthriftness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Teeth</strong></td>
<td>Clipped on day-old pigs. Gums pink and healthy.</td>
<td>Teeth not clipped. Infected gums.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tails</strong></td>
<td>Clipped neatly or left long.</td>
<td>Clipped tails are swollen, red, or infected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feed</strong></td>
<td>Fresh creep feed given daily.</td>
<td>None or stale feed offered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water</strong></td>
<td>Fresh water easily accessible to piglets.</td>
<td>None, inaccessible, or foul water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Environment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Temperature</strong></td>
<td>Creep area provided with temperature of 85–90°F (29–32°C).</td>
<td>Piling or lying next to the sow. Pigs too hot and avoiding the heat lamp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drafts</strong></td>
<td>Air evenly distributed throughout the building.</td>
<td>Incoming air moving directly onto litters of pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Floor design</strong></td>
<td>Good traction for pigs in the nursing area.</td>
<td>Slippery flooring material. Slats laid so that slot length is perpendicular to the sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Floor condition</strong></td>
<td>Clean, dry; bedded if appropriate.</td>
<td>Dirty, wet, cracked, broken, or exposed aggregate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Management</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flow</strong></td>
<td>All-in/all-out animal flow.</td>
<td>Continuous farrowing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building use</strong></td>
<td>All farrowings occur within a few days.</td>
<td>Farrowings are spread out over 1 or 2 weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Farrowing schedule</strong></td>
<td>Pigs weaned at the same time.</td>
<td>Pigs are weaned at various times and ages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sanitation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cleanliness</strong></td>
<td>Excess manure and afterbirth removed daily.</td>
<td>Accumulation of manure in the farrowing crates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>“Downtime”</strong></td>
<td>Building is empty for a few days between farrowing batches.</td>
<td>Wet bedding. Poor fly control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Washing procedures</strong></td>
<td>High-pressure washer is used to remove all organic material. Porous surfaces sealed or disinfected.</td>
<td>New batch added the same day or the day after the previous batch was weaned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 1.8.** Examination of pigs in the farrowing area.
charge; anemia; skin abrasions; diarrhea; rectal prolapse or stricture; hernias; hematomas of the ears; umbilical sucking; and belly nosing. If the environment is not adequate, some problems that may be observed include bitten tails or ears, dunging in the eating or sleeping areas, pigs piling if it is too cold, or pigs panting and lying in the manure if it is too hot. Specific environmental problems include rough or abrasive floor surface or broken slats, inadequate feeder space or plugged feeders, inadequate waterers, plugged nipples, dirty water bowls, inadequate cleaning, manure in the corners of the pen and under the feeders, and cold and drafty barns.

Food Safety
Discuss the medications used in the feed and water, and as injectables to ensure these are essential (see Chapter 71 for more specifics on medications). Arrange to update the Quality Assurance program on the farm to ensure the wholesomeness of the pork being produced. Set up a drug recording and animal tracking system for the unit. Create summaries of standardized treatment plans and vaccination protocols that will be displayed in the farm office. These ensure that all employees follow the same protocols. If feed is mixed on the farm, create similar protocols for all feed that is to be manufactured.

Disease Status
The disease status of the farm can be measured by clinical signs, postmortem examination of dead pigs or those that you cull during your visit, vaccination use, slaughter-check examinations, and serological profiling. Use all or some of these to understand the diseases that are present and those that are causing problems on the farm. Postmortem evaluations must be conducted on at least three pigs during a disease outbreak to ensure that the disease process affecting the group is identified. Untreated pigs in the early phases of the disease provide ideal samples. Live animals must be submitted to diagnose enteric illness. More details about disease investigation can be found in other chapters.

Review the disease control measures being used, including vaccinations, antibiotic use, early weaning, multisite production and gilt introductions. Ensure that all vaccinations and antibiotics are essential. Alter the disease control measures if diseases are not being properly controlled.

Serial serological sampling helps determine the epidemiology of the disease within the herd. Blood samples can be taken from 10 pigs in each age category to determine when passive immunity wanes and active immunity is present, or pigs can be individually ear-tagged and then followed over time. Chapter 10 provides more detail about interpretation of tests at the pig and herd levels.

Biosecurity
Determine the biosecurity of the farm with respect to the presence of birds, rodents, and other animal species. Review the movement and access of the facility to people, trucks, incoming feed and pig movement. Identify where biosecurity can be improved, keeping in mind the realistic risks of the current biosecurity system. For detailed information on biosecurity, see Chapter 68.

Welfare
Has the producer enrolled in a welfare assurance program? If there is a formal program in your area, such as the Swine Welfare Assurance ProgramSM available, encourage the producer to participate in the program (Johnson 2004). If such a program does not exist, determine the welfare of the farm and discuss areas for improvement. The specific areas of focus in the SWAPSM program include herd health and nutrition, caretaker training, animal observation, body condition scoring, euthanasia, handling and movement, facilities, emergency support, and continuing assessment and education.

1.1. Sows just after weaning. Using the criteria in Table 1.6, from left to right their body condition scores are 1, 3, 4, and 6.
Goals
Set short-term goals to address the concerns of the personnel and to work on conditions of immediate economic importance. Discuss long-term goals, including the improvement of production parameters, herd disease status, and personnel issues.

Begin the collection of data for production parameters of importance. Examples include mortality tallies, movement of pigs in and out of barns, and weighing a sample of pigs in and out of the barn.

In large facilities, it is worthwhile to conduct field trials to determine the expected improvements to changes in management or disease control prior to making the change in the whole system.

Follow-up
Schedule a time for a return visit, plan what changes are to be made between now and then, identify the specific outcomes expected, and arrange for further sample collection (i.e., slaughter check or submission of dead pigs to postmortem). Provide a written report summarizing both the successes and problems observed during the review of the records and the herd visit. Outline the expected changes in the form of a checklist so that the producer can refer to these easily. Review this letter prior to the subsequent herd visit.

BLOOD SAMPLING
Blood collection in swine is difficult because of the inaccessibility of good veins and arteries. Many different techniques using various sites have been described. Some of these techniques have some role in experimental work with pigs, but if the practicing veterinarian is to sample blood of a number of pigs with some degree of speed and collect a reasonable volume, the technique of sampling from the jugular vein or the anterior vena cava must be mastered (Brown 1979; Muirhead 1981). Alternatively, some veterinarians prefer to use the orbital sinus for routine blood collection. Appropriate blood collection techniques for various sizes of pig are given in Table 1.9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Type of Pig</th>
<th>Needle Size</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anterior vena cava</td>
<td>Up to 100 lb (45 kg)</td>
<td>20 g. 1.5 in. (38 mm)</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Danger of damaging the vagus nerve. Vacutainer usable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100–250 lb (45–133 kg)</td>
<td>18 g. 2.5 in. (65 mm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>16 g. 3.5 in. (90 mm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jugular vein</td>
<td>Any age</td>
<td>20 g. 1.5 in. (38 mm)</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>More difficult to do. Vacutainer usable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adult pigs</td>
<td>20 g. 1 in. (25 mm); scalpel blade</td>
<td>1–2 mL</td>
<td>Possible hematoma; possible contaminated sample.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear veins</td>
<td>Adult pigs</td>
<td>20 g. 1 in. (25 mm)</td>
<td>5–10 mL</td>
<td>Requires practice. Vacutainer usable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail</td>
<td>Adult pigs</td>
<td>20 g. 1 in. (25 mm)</td>
<td>5–10 mL</td>
<td>Slow. Unaesthetic. Possible postcollection orbital hemorrhage and pressure on the globe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital sinus</td>
<td>Up to 40 lb (18 kg)</td>
<td>20 g. 1 in. (25 mm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40–120 lb (18–54 kg)</td>
<td>16 g. 1.5 in. (38 mm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120 lb–adult (54+ kg)</td>
<td>14 g. 1.5 in. (38 mm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Anterior Vena Cava
Depending on the size of the pig, it is restrained either standing by means of a hog snare (Figure 1.2) or manually by holding the front legs (Figure 1.3). The position of the standing pig is important; the head should be raised, the body straight, and the front legs well back. In the standing pig, the jugular groove is traced to its caudal limit just anterior to the thoracic inlet. The needle is inserted at the caudal end of the jugular groove and directed dorsally and somewhat caudomedially along an imaginary line that passes through the top of the opposite shoulder. The location of some of the major veins are shown in Figure 1.4. When drawing blood samples from either the anterior vena cava or the jugular vein, the blood is taken from the right side, since the right vagus nerve provides less innervation to the heart and diaphragm than the left vagus. If the vagus nerve is accidentally punctured, the pig may show dyspnea, cyanosis, and convulsive struggling.

Jugular Vein
The pig is restrained in a standing position as for sampling from the anterior vena cava. The needle is inserted in the jugular groove about 5 cm cranial to the thoracic inlet. The needle is directed dorsally and slightly medially.

Ear Veins
The ear veins are raised by slapping the ear and maintained by a rubber band around the base (Figure 1.5). Venipuncture is done with a quick thrusting stab to prevent the vein from rolling away from the needle. A syringe should be used, since vacutainer collection usually results in collapse of the vein. Alternatively, the ventral ear vein may be incised with a scalpel cut made into and parallel to the vein and the blood collected in a tube as it drips from the incision.

Tail Vessels
Collection from tail vessels is possible only in mature pigs whose tails have not been docked. The tail is held vertically and the needle directed toward the point of junction of the tail with the body (Muirhead 1981).
Orbital Venous Sinus
Large pigs are restrained by snare and smaller ones held manually, with care to restrain the snout securely. A needle is placed at the medial canthus of the eye just inside the nictitating membrane and advanced medially and slightly anteroventrally until it punctures the venous sinus. Blood is allowed to drip out of the needle and is collected in an open-top tube (Huhn et al. 1969).

Cephalic Vein
Blood may be withdrawn from the cephalic vein by restraining the pig on its back with the front legs stretched backward and a little outward from the body. The vein is visible under the skin (see Figure 1.4) and is raised with digital pressure (Tumbleson et al. 1968; Sankari 1983).

Miscellaneous Methods
Cardiac puncture (Calvert et al. 1977) and femoral venipuncture techniques (Brown et al. 1978) have been described.

Indwelling Catheters
Indwelling catheters have been used for research that requires repeated blood sampling or minimal excitement of the pig. Investigators have described techniques for placing catheters in the femoral artery and vein (Weirich et al. 1970; Jackson et al. 1972), subcutaneous ab-

SAMPLE COLLECTION

Feces are best collected directly from the rectum by hand using a disposable glove. The sample can be kept in the glove after inversion. Urine is collected by catching a midstream sample. Females can be catheterized with the aid of an otoscope or speculum. In barrows it is not possible to exteriorize the penis because of adhesions between the penis and sheath. Procedures for tonsilar swabbing, biopsy, and scraping have been described by Mengeling et al. (1992) and Brown et al. (1995). Briefly, the pig is sedated using a drug with analgesic properties, the jaw is held open with a speculum, and one person provides illumination while another person takes the tonsilar sample. Scraping is best accomplished with a long-handled spoon that has had the bowl sharpened.

REFERENCES

The immune system is comprised of a variety of components that cooperate to defend the host against infectious agents. These components generally can be divided into innate (or nonspecific) immune defense mechanisms and adaptive (or acquired) immune defense mechanisms. The innate defense mechanisms are not antigen specific. They are present in a normal animal and do not require previous exposure to antigen, and they are capable of responding almost immediately to an infectious agent. The major components of the innate immune system are complement, antimicrobial peptides, phagocytic cells (macrophages, neutrophils, and eosinophils), natural killer (NK) cells, and some types of interferon. These components are very important in controlling an infection during the first few days of an initial exposure to an agent. The innate immune system controls infection until the adaptive immune system can be activated and it is important in directing the immune system to produce both antibody and cell-mediated immune responses.

B and T lymphocytes and their products are the components of the adaptive immune response system. This antigen-driven system requires 2–3 weeks to reach optimal functional capacity after the first exposure to antigen. Upon second exposure to antigen, the specific immune response system reaches optimal activity much more rapidly due to the anamnestic, or memory, response. A major mechanism by which B and T lymphocytes enhance resistance to disease is activating the innate defense mechanisms (phagocytic cells, NK cells, and complement) and increasing their efficiency.

Providing immunity at mucosal surfaces and to the newborn piglet are especially difficult challenges for the immune system and for the swine producer. The nature of these special problems are discussed as well as generalities about vaccination to improve immunity at mucosal surfaces and in newborn pigs.

If an animal is immunosuppressed due to stress, a preexisting viral infection, immunotoxicants, or nutritional factors, the innate defense mechanisms may not function optimally. In addition, an adaptive immune response may be slow to develop, and have altered to decreased efficacy and thus be inadequate to control both primary and secondary pathogens. This can result in clinical disease due to an infectious agent that would normally be controlled.

The immune system has potent mechanisms for protecting the pig from infectious and neoplastic diseases. If the immune system is overstimulated or is not appropriately regulated, it may cause hypersensitivity reactions. This can occur in response to infection, vaccination, environmental or dietary antigens, or even against normal host tissues.

PHYSIOLOGY OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

Innate Defense Mechanisms

Physical, Chemical, and Microbial Barriers. Physical, chemical, and microbial barriers to infection at body surfaces are a very important part of resistance to disease. These factors include the epithelial cells, bactericidal fatty acids, normal flora, the mucous layer and the flow of mucus, low pH, bile, and numerous enzymes. More detailed information on physical, chemical, and microbial barriers to infection may be found in chapters dealing with specific organ systems.

An important family of molecules that helps form a chemical barrier to limit infection at epithelial surfaces and attack invading bacteria are the antimicrobial peptides. Over 750 antimicrobial peptides have been described in eukaryotes. They are being actively investigated as an alternative to antibiotics for clinical use in antimicrobial therapy. At least 14 antimicrobial peptides have been described in the pig (Brogden et al. 2003). The antimicrobial peptides are relatively small cationic peptides, which vary in structure and antimicrobial activity. They are found predominantly at mucosal surfaces and in phagocytic cells. Some are also found in other tissues. Many have broad spectrum activity against gram-negative bacteria, gram-positive bacteria, and fungal
organisms. Some have a more limited spectrum of activity. The concentration of some of the antimicrobial peptides increases in response to inflammation or microbial infection (Brogden et al. 2003).

Complement. The complement system is an enzyme cascade system similar to the coagulation system and is composed of at least 20 serum proteins. In a cascade system the first component is activated, which in turn activates the next component, which in turn activates the next component, etc., until the reaction is completed. Since the sequential steps involve enzymes, the system is greatly amplified as it proceeds. The components of the mammalian complement system can be divided into the classical pathway, the alternative pathway, the mannan-binding (MB) pathway, the membrane attack complex, and regulatory proteins. The complement system is very important in mediating the inflammatory response and controlling bacterial infections. It also plays a prominent role in allergic and hypersensitivity reactions. The classical pathway is triggered primarily by antigen-antibody complexes consisting of IgG and IgM. The alternative pathway may also be activated by antigen-antibody complexes (IgA and IgE) and by certain bacterial products, such as endotoxin or proteases released by tissue damage. The MB pathway recognizes molecules on the surface of bacteria that differ from those present on the host cells. All three pathways end in the splitting of the third component of complement (C3) and start the formation of the membrane attack complex.

The complement system has many important biologic activities. Activation of any of the three pathways causes vasodilation and increased vascular permeability resulting in serum components (including antibody and complement) entering the tissues to help control infection. Complement components produced during activation are chemotactic and attract phagocytic cells to the site of infection. They also coat or opsonize infectious agents to increase their uptake by phagocytic cells. A very important function of the membrane attack pathway of complement is the destruction of cell membranes including some bacterial cell membranes.

The complement system is important for mediating inflammation and controlling bacterial infections. However, since it is so potent it is also capable of causing serious and even life-threatening damage if it is activated in an unregulated fashion. Therefore, there are numerous regulators of complement present in the serum. These regulators help control and stop the complement reaction once it has started.

Toll-like Receptors. Toll-like receptors (TLRs) are a key component of innate immunity (Check 2004; Cullor 1992). TLRs are a family of cell surface molecules that bind to various molecules derived from microbes, such as lipopolysaccharide, peptidoglycans, CpG rich unmethylated oligonucleotides, and double-stranded RNA. They are the primary method for early detection of and response to microbial invasion. Binding of microbial components to TLRs initiates an inflammatory response that helps activate other aspects of innate immunity and initiate the acquired immune response. Bacterial derived vaccine adjuvants enhance immune response to vaccines through binding to TLRs. At least three TLRs have been described in swine and more are likely to exist (Muneta et al. 2003; Shimosato et al. 2003).

Phagocytic Cells. Phagocytic cells are responsible for engulfing, killing, and digesting invading bacteria. They also play an important role in controlling viral and fungal infections and in killing cancer cells. There are two main types of phagocytic cells: the granulocytes or polymorphonuclear leukocytes, which include neutrophils and eosinophils, and the mononuclear phagocytes, which include the circulating monocytes in the blood and the tissue macrophages. All these cell types are phagocytic and are capable of all the reactions that are described below for neutrophils. In addition, macrophages play an important role in processing antigens and presenting them to lymphocytes to initiate and facilitate the cell-mediated and humoral immune responses.

Granulocytes. Neutrophils are produced in the bone marrow and are released into the blood. The half-life of neutrophils in the blood stream is approximately 8 hours; they then enter the tissues. In the healthy individual the neutrophils are eliminated from the intestinal tract rapidly in response to Escherichia coli infection in the pig (Sellwood et al. 1986). Neutrophils in the circulation tend to marginate in the capillaries by loosely associating with the endothelial cells. In swine, neutrophils seem to have a high affinity for margination in the capillaries of the lung (Ohgami et al. 1989).

The principal function of the neutrophil is the phagocytosis and destruction of invading microorganisms. The neutrophil is well-equipped to perform this function and has several mechanisms for destroying microorganisms. To be effective, the neutrophil must first come into the vicinity of the invading microorganism. This is achieved by the chemotactic attraction of the neutrophil to the site. Chemotactic factors may be produced directly by certain microorganisms, be generated by the cleavage of certain complement components, or be released by sensitized lymphocytes at the site of infection or inflammation. The chemotactic factors will diffuse away from the site to form a gradient. When the chemotactic factors reach a capillary they cause the endothelial cell membrane and the neutrophil membrane to increase the expression of adhesion proteins. The neutrophils then adhere to the endothelial cells and leave the capillary by diapedesis. Once in the tissues, the
neutrophils will migrate along the chemotactic factor gradient toward the source of the chemotactic factor and will thus arrive at the site of infection; they may begin to ingest the microorganisms if those agents are susceptible to phagocytic activity. Most pathogenic microorganisms must be opsonized before they can be ingested; bacteria are opsonized by the attachment of specific antibody and/or complement to their surface. The opsonization process facilitates ingestion. When a neutrophil comes into contact with an opsonized particle, it will attempt to surround the particle with pseudopodia and ingest it by the process of phagocytosis. The ingested particle will be within a membrane-bound vesicle called a phagosome.

The neutrophil cytoplasm contains two main types of membrane-bound lysosomes or granules: primary or azurophilic granules and secondary or specific granules. These lysosomes contain numerous hydrolytic enzymes that have been quantitated in porcine neutrophils (Chibber and Castle 1983) and at least six cationic antibacterial peptides (Brogden et al. 2003; Kokryakov et al. 1993; Shi et al. 1994; Storici et al. 1994; Zanetti et al. 1994) that are important to the bactericidal activity of the neutrophil. After a particle is ingested and is inside a phagosome, the neutrophil will “degranulate”; some of the lysosomes will fuse with the phagosome and release their contents into the phagosome with the ingested particle. The antibacterial peptides act by permeabilizing bacterial membranes. Neutrophils die after a short time at sites of inflammation. The hydrolytic enzymes are released and contribute to the inflammatory response and tissue destruction.

In addition neutrophils have potent bactericidal mechanisms that are due to the oxidative metabolism of the neutrophil. When a neutrophil is stimulated by an opsonized particle a burst of oxidative metabolism results in the production of hydrogen peroxide ($\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$), superoxide anion ($\text{O}_2^-$), the hydroxyl radical (OH$^-$), and perhaps singlet oxygen ($\text{O}_2^+$). All of these components can damage microbial organisms. The $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ formed after phagocytosis may also react with halide ions in a reaction catalyzed by a myeloperoxidase enzyme that is released from the primary granules. This reaction is one of the most potent bactericidal mechanisms of the neutrophil, and is also potentially fungicidal and virucidal.

Neutrophils also control certain viral infections via a mechanism referred to as antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) in which antibodies form a bridge between the neutrophil and the virus-infected target cell. The neutrophil will then attempt to destroy the target cell. The mechanism of this cell destruction is not known but is thought to involve a direct membrane-to-membrane interaction. Porcine neutrophils are very active at ADCC, even in the fetus and newborn (Yang and Schultz 1986; Zarkower et al. 1982).

The eosinophil is capable of the same phagocytic and metabolic functions as the neutrophil, but to a different extent. The eosinophil is not as active as the neutrophil in destroying bacteria but is important in the host’s defense against the tissue phase of certain parasitic infections. The eosinophil is geared more toward exocytosis than phagocytosis. That is, rather than ingesting and killing small particles like bacteria, it can efficiently attach to and kill migrating parasites that are too large to be ingested. Eosinophils are also important in helping to control certain types of allergic responses.

**Mononuclear Phagocytes.** The mononuclear phagocytic system is made up of circulating monocytes, fixed macrophages, wandering macrophages (histiocytes), and dendritic cells. Monocytes are produced in the bone marrow and released into the blood stream where they will circulate before migrating into the tissues to become macrophages and dendritic cells. The fixed macrophages are found lining the endothelium of capillaries (particularly in the lungs) and the sinuses of the spleen, bone marrow, and lymph nodes. Tissue macrophages are important for trapping and removing foreign antigens from the blood stream and lymph. Wandering macrophages are derived from blood monocytes and are found throughout the tissues of the body. In certain locations, they differentiate into specialized types of macrophages, such as the glial cells in the nervous system, Langerhans cells in the skin, and Kupffer cells in the liver. Dendritic cells are specialized cells that originate from myeloid or lymphoid precursors and assist in presenting antigens to lymphocytes, specifically T cells. Immature dendritic cells are located in the various tissues throughout the body. Upon activation, they migrate to the peripheral lymphoid organs where they mature and become important cells in the activation and differentiation of T lymphocytes (Bautista et al. 2002; Carrasco et al. 2001; Johansson et al. 2003; Summerfield et al. 2003).

Macrophages are capable of all the activities described above for neutrophils. Macrophages are said to be the second line of defense. They are slower to arrive at sites of inflammation and are not as aggressive as neutrophils in the first few minutes of contact with microorganisms. However, macrophages are capable of much more sustained activity against pathogens than are neutrophils. They are able to kill certain types of bacteria that are resistant to killing by neutrophils because of this sustained activity. This is especially true if the macrophages have been activated by cytokines secreted by T lymphocytes.

A very important function of macrophages and dendritic cells is the processing of antigen and presentation of antigen to T lymphocytes. This is an essential step in the initiation of a cell-mediated immune response and for facilitating an efficient antibody response by B lymphocytes. The interaction of macrophages and dendritic cells with antigen and T and B lymphocytes is described later.
Alveolar macrophages phagocytize inhaled particles, including low numbers of bacteria that they may encounter (Chitko-McKown et al. 1991). After ingesting the particles they leave the alveolus either through the airways, where they move up the mucociliary escalator, or by migrating out of the alveolus between alveolar epithelial cells and being carried through lymphatic drainage to local lymph nodes. There, they present the antigens they have captured to lymphocytes to initiate an immune response.

Pulmonary intravascular macrophages are found adhered to endothelial cells in the vasculature of the lung (Chitko-McKown and Blecha 1992; Winkler 1988; Winkler and Cheville 1987). They are prominent in pigs and some other species. They are believed to be important in removing infectious agents from the blood of swine. Pulmonary intravascular macrophages are primarily involved in defense against septicemia rather than protection from respiratory disease. Pulmonary intravascular macrophages that are actively clearing bacteria from the bloodstream (especially gram-negative bacteria or free endotoxin), may release cytokines and arachidonic acid metabolites, which contribute significantly to pulmonary inflammation (Bertram 1986; Crocker et al. 1981a,b).

Natural Killer Cells. Natural killer (NK) cells are lymphoid cells of the innate immune system and can kill a variety of nucleated cells without previous antigenic stimulation. NK cells in most species are also called large granular lymphocytes because of the presence of granules in their cytoplasm. NK cells in most species are part of the null cell population because they are distinct from B cells, T cells, and macrophages. In most species NK cells have Fc receptors for IgG and can mediate antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) against most antibody-coated mammalian cells. When mediating ADCC these cells have been called killer (K) cells.

Natural killer cells in the pig differ markedly from NK cells found in other species. NK activity in swine is mediated by small granular lymphocytes that have the CD2 T cell marker (Duncan et al. 1989; Ferguson et al. 1986) and are, therefore, not null cells (Duncan et al. 1989). Swine NK cells are slower in initiating the lytic process against typical target cells (YAC-1 lymphoma or K-562 myeloid leukemia cells) than cells responsible for NK activity in other species (Ferguson et al. 1986). In swine there is evidence that the NK cell activity and the K cell activity are from two distinct populations of lymphocytes (Kim and Ichimura 1986; Yang and Schultz 1986). Swine NK cells are capable of lysing cells infected with transmissible gastroenteritis virus and pseudorabies virus (Evans and Jaso-Friedmann 1993).

The activity of NK cells in many species is increased in the presence of interferon gamma (IFN-γ) and interleukin (IL)-2. Swine NK cells have been shown to respond to an interferon inducer (poly I:C), IL-2, human interferon alpha, and human IL-1α with enhanced NK activity (Evans and Jaso-Friedmann 1993; Knoblock and Canning 1992; Lesnick and Derbyshire 1988). Therefore, NK cells are an important part of the innate defense mechanisms and also participate in a cell-mediated immune response by enhanced activity through cytokine activation.

Humoral and Cell-Mediated Immunity
Clonal Selection and Expansion. An important concept that is basic to understanding the immune response is the clonal selection process. Each mature T or B lymphocyte in the body has receptors on its surface that it uses to recognize antigens. All of the antigen receptors on one lymphocyte recognize exactly the same antigen (or small group of antigens). All of the lymphocytes that recognize exactly the same antigen make up a “clone” and they all arisen from the same ancestor cell. There are millions of clones of T and B lymphocytes. Each clone may contain from a few hundred to a few million cells. The lymphocytes are in a resting stage as they circulate through blood, enter the lymph nodes through the postcapillary venules, percolate through the lymph nodes and reenter the bloodstream. In the lymph nodes (or other secondary lymphatic tissues) the lymphocytes come in contact with antigens that have arrived there through the afferent lymphatics and have been trapped by macrophages or dendritic cells. Each lymphocyte responds to only one specific antigen, which it recognizes through its antigen receptor. Therefore, the vast majority of lymphocytes that contact an antigen in the lymph node cannot respond to it. In an animal that never has been exposed to a particular infectious agent before, there are relatively few lymphocytes in each clone that can recognize a particular antigen. The first step, in producing an effective primary immune response is expansion of the clone of lymphocytes that recognize the antigen. The T and B lymphocytes that contact the antigen are stimulated to undergo a series of cell divisions so that within a few days there will be enough lymphocytes in the clone to mount an effective humoral and/or cell-mediated immune response. If the animal has been exposed to the antigen previously, the clone of lymphocytes has already been expanded, so fewer cycles of cell division are required to produce enough lymphocytes to mount an immune response. This can result in protection induced by vaccination or previous exposure even if there is no remaining detectable antibody. The cells present in the expanded clone are called memory cells. If the previous exposure has been relatively recent, there still will be circulating antibody and effector T lymphocytes, which can act immediately to control the infection.

Cellular Interactions in the Induction of the Immune Response. The induction of clonal expansion and the
immune response requires a complex interaction of macrophages, T lymphocytes, and B lymphocytes. Macrophages attempt to phagocytize and destroy infectious agents. After the infectious agent is partially degraded by the macrophage, antigenic fragments from it appear bound to MHC class II molecules on the macrophage surface where they contact T lymphocytes. Macrophages (and other specialized antigen-presenting cells) have a high density of class II MHC molecules on their surface. T helper (Th) cells are needed to help initiate the immune response. They can only efficiently recognize foreign antigens that are on a cell surface bound to a class II MHC molecule. Cytotoxic T (Tc) cells are important for killing cells infected with intracellular pathogens and cancer cells. They can recognize only foreign antigens that have been processed intracellularly and transported to a cell surface bound to an MHC class I molecule. Therefore, Th and Tc cells cannot respond to free soluble antigen or to whole bacteria or viruses. Because the MHC class I and class II molecules play a key role in antigen presentation to T lymphocytes, they are capable of having a significant influence on the nature of the immune response. The MHC molecules in all species are highly polymorphic or differ genetically between individuals. The MHC molecules in swine are called the swine leukocyte antigen (SLA) complex molecules. The type of SLA molecules that a pig inherits has some influence on their immune response to pathogens and their ability to resist some infectious diseases (Löfstedt et al. 1983; Lunney 1994).

In addition to antigen and class II MHC molecule contact, the Th cell also requires the presence of cytokines released by the antigen presenting cell or other T cells and contact with co-stimulatory molecules on the surface of the antigen presenting cell for complete activation. Interleukin-1 (IL-1) is an important molecule released by macrophages that are processing antigen. IL-1 is a protein molecule that is a key mediator of the host response to infection through its ability to induce fever and neutrophilia, among other things. A very important function of macrophage-produced IL-1 is its action on Th cells to cause them to secrete IL-2, which induces T cells to undergo mitosis and clonal expansion. B cells are also capable of processing antigen and presenting it to Th cells on MHC II molecules. During secondary immune responses, B cells are thought to be the main type of antigen-presenting cell.

It has been documented that the cytokines secreted by macrophages, dendritic cells, and other T cells play a crucial role in the initiation and maintenance of immune responses against both viral and bacterial pathogens in pigs (Cho and Chae 2003; Thanawongnuwech and Thacker 2003; Thanawongnuwech et al. 2001; Zuckermann et al. 1998). Similar to other species, the CD4+ T cells differentiate into Th1 cells (Fischer et al. 2000). The Th1 cells differentiate into two cell types known as Th1 and Th2 that differ in function and are differentiated only by their cytokine profile. A Th1 cytokine profile includes the production of IL-2 and interferon gamma (IFN-γ), which activate macrophages and stimulate Tc and B cell proliferation. In contrast, Th2 cells, which inhibit macrophage activation and promote predominantly B cell activity, produce IL-4 and IL-10. High concentrations of IL-10 are associated with the induction of T regulatory cells or Th3 cells, which are thought to mediate a form of “tolerance” (Groux 2001). The Th3 cells actively down-regulate pathological antigen-specific immune responses and are thought to be important in regulation of mucosal immune responses and respiratory tract homeostasis (Groux et al. 1998).

Th cells are very important in initiating the B cell response resulting in antibody production. B cells contact antigen through immunoglobulins bound to their surface, which act as receptors. Antigens do not have to be presented on MHC class II molecules by macrophages for a B cell to recognize them. An optimal B cell response to antigen requires the help of soluble factors released by Th cells and contact with co-stimulatory molecules on the Th cell surface. This Th cell help is needed for B cell mitosis and clonal expansion and for switching the class of antibody produced from IgM to IgG, IgA, or IgE.

**Lymphocyte Subpopulations.** Lymphocyte subpopulations are defined by the presence of certain molecules on their surface identified by a CD number that designates similar molecules in all species. CD stands for cluster of differentiation. More than 29 CD molecules have been identified on the surface of porcine leukocytes (Haverson et al. 2001). Over 247 CD molecules have been identified on human or mouse leukocytes, and there are probably at least that many on porcine leukocytes also.

Lymphocyte subpopulations in the blood of pigs differ markedly from other species. Young pigs have high blood lymphocyte counts compared to most other mammals (approximately $10^7$/ml). Up to 50% of these lymphocytes are null cells, which lack most surface markers characteristic of B or classical T lymphocytes (Duncan et al. 1989; Hirt et al. 1990; Saalmuller and Bryant 1994). These null cells do not recirculate between the blood and lymphatic tissues, and they differ from null cells in other species in that they do not have NK cell activity. The majority of null lymphocytes are gamma delta ($\gamma \delta$) T cells. The T cells which predominate in the blood of man and mice and which recognize peptide antigens presented on MHC molecules are called alpha beta (αβ) T cells. Their antigen receptor is made up of an α and a β chain and they have either a CD4 or CD8 molecule to assist in their interactions with MHC molecules. The antigen receptors on $\gamma \delta$ T cells are made up of a γ and a δ chain. The majority of porcine $\gamma \delta$ T cells do not have CD4 or CD8 molecules associated with them because they recognize intact antigen molecules. Unlike the αβ T cells, they do not require antigen processing.
and presentation on MHC molecules (Chien et al. 1996). Pigs and other ungulates have a much higher population of γδ T cells in the blood than other mammals that have been studied. γδ T cells are located predominantly along mucosal surfaces, especially as intraepithelial lymphocytes in the intestine, and are thought to be important in protecting mucosal surfaces from infection and perhaps in oral tolerance (Thielke et al. 2003). γδ T cells proliferate in the intestine and actively recirculate through the intestinal lymphatics to the blood stream and back to the gut (Thielke et al. 2003). The role of the thymus and intestinal epithelium in development of γδ T cells is not understood. A subset of circulating porcine γδ T cells can act as antigen presenting cells and present antigen to T helper cells via MHC II molecules (Takamatsu et al. 2002). Forcine γδ T cells are capable of producing gamma interferon and proliferating in response to recall antigens in vitro and can be cytotoxic (Lee et al. 2004; Takamatsu et al. 2002).

Swine T lymphocytes have at least three unusual properties compared to other species (Lunney and Pescovitz 1987):

- Approximately 25% of swine peripheral blood T cells express both the CD4 and CD8 antigens on their surface. It has been suggested that many of these dual expressing T cells are memory cells; however, the functional significance of having both CD4 and CD8 on the same cells is not known (Pescovitz et al. 1994; Zuckermann and Husmann 1996). Peanut agglutinin has been shown to selectively bind to porcine memory CD4⁺CD8⁺ T cells and could therefore be used to isolate these cells (Hernandez et al. 2002).
- The ratio of CD4⁺ to CD8⁺ T cells is normally approximately 0.6 in pigs, which is reversed compared to other species. A normal ratio of CD4⁺/CD8⁺ in humans is 1.5–2.0.
- Resting CD8⁺ cells in swine preferentially express class II MHC antigens. The significance of these differences between swine T lymphocytes and those of other species is not completely understood.

Lymphocyte Circulation. The lymph node structure and lymphocyte circulation are markedly different in the pig compared to man or other domestic species (Binns 1982). Recirculation of lymphocytes from blood to lymphoid tissues is very important for bringing antigen into contact with lymphocytes for recognition. Circulation of B cells, αβ T cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells through lymph nodes is also important for facilitating cellular interactions needed for the induction of the immune response as described above. Lymphocytes are produced in the bone marrow, but mature in the thymus (αβ T cells) and the secondary lymphoid tissues (B cells) in the pig. T and B lymphocytes circulate in the blood for approximately 30 minutes before entering the tissues. Porcine lymph nodes are structurally in-
their surface and recognize only antigen associated with MHC class I molecules on a cell surface. MHC class I molecules present peptide antigens derived from proteins synthesized within the cell, such as viral proteins. The $T_C$ cells directly attack host cells that have foreign antigen (e.g., viral antigen) presented on MHC class I molecules on their surface. These cells do not attack free bacteria or viruses. $T_C$ cell activity specific for hog cholera virus, African swine fever virus, and pseudorabies virus have been demonstrated in pigs that have recovered from infection (Martins et al. 1993; Pauly et al. 1995; Zuckermann et al. 1990). $T_C$ cells kill target cells by making direct contact, releasing granzymes onto the cell surface, and inducing apoptosis (programmed cell death) in the target cells. Production of cytokines, including IL-12 and IFN-$\gamma$, by $T_H$ cells are required for the activation of $T_C$ lymphocytes and the elimination of cells infected with intracellular pathogens, especially viruses.

**Immunoglobulins**

**Production of Immunoglobulins.** B lymphocytes from clones that have never been stimulated by antigen have monomeric IgM antibody molecules on their surface that act as antigen receptors. All of the IgM molecules on one B cell are specific for the same antigen. When a B cell is stimulated by antigen and cytokines produced by $T_H$ cells it begins to undergo mitosis. This results in the formation of many more B cells with IgM receptors that also recognize the same antigen. Some of these newly formed B cells differentiate into plasma cells that secrete IgM. As the antigen-specific IgM antibody concentration begins to increase in the blood, activated $T_H$ cells produce the cytokines that signal the B cells to switch from IgM production to IgG, IgA, or IgE production (Crawley and Wilkie 2003; Crawley et al. 2003). These B cells then rearrange their genetic material to produce antibody molecules with the same antigenic specificity (i.e., the same light-chain structure and variable portion of the heavy chain) but of a different antibody class (i.e., the constant heavy portion of the antibody molecule is changed). Changing the antibody class gives the antibody molecules different properties. The class of antibody that the $T_H$ cells cause the B cells to switch to depends to a large extent upon the nature of the antigen and the location in the body where the antigen was trapped. $T_H$ cells located in lymph nodes and the spleen tend to induce B cells to switch to IgG production. $T_H$ cells located in Peyer’s patches or under other mucosal surfaces tend to induce B cells to switch to IgA and/or IgE production, depending on the nature of the antigen and the genetic predisposition of the individual.

Antibody molecules have a variety of activities in host defense, although they alone cannot kill infectious agents. Antibody molecules can coat infectious agents to prevent them from attaching to or penetrating host cells, they can agglutinate infectious agents to reduce their infectivity, and they can directly bind to and neutralize toxins. A very important function of antibody is that it marks infectious agents for destruction by complement, phagocytic cells, and/or cytotoxic cells.

**Classes of Immunoglobulins.** Characteristics of the various classes of porcine immunoglobulin were thoroughly reviewed in a previous edition of this book (Porter 1986), and in a recent review article (Crawley and Wilkie 2003).

IgG is the predominant Ig class in the serum of the pig and other species. It accounts for more than 80% of the Ig in serum and colostrum (Table 2.1). The two main

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2.1.</th>
<th>Concentration of porcine immunoglobulins (mg/ml) in body fluids.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IgG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adult sow serum</td>
<td>24.3 ± 0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colostrum</td>
<td>61.8 ± 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk (24 hours)</td>
<td>11.8 ± 4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk (48 hours)</td>
<td>8.2 ± 3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk (3–7 days)</td>
<td>1.9 ± 0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk (8–35 days)</td>
<td>1.40 ± 0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intestinal fluid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piglet</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sow</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follicle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diestrus</td>
<td>18.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estrus</td>
<td>25.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine secretions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diestrus</td>
<td>0.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estrus</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervicovaginal mucus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diestrus</td>
<td>6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estrus</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Used with permission from Veterinary Clinical Immunology, R.E.W. Halliwell and N.T. Gorman, editors. W.B. Saunders Company, 1989.
subclasses of IgG are IgG₁ and IgG₂ (Metzger and Fougereau 1968), with IgG₁ predominating in serum and colostrum. IgG₃ and IgG₄ subclasses are found in lesser concentrations.

An 18S Ig has been described that is antigenically similar to IgG₃ and is found in low levels in normal serum and colostrum (Kim et al. 1966). Newborn piglets also possess a 5S IgG, which may not have light chains and may not be functional (Franek and Riha 1964; Stertzl et al. 1960).

IgM accounts for approximately 5–10% of the total Ig in serum and colostrum (refer to Table 2.1). The IgM is a pentamer held together by disulfide bonds and has a sedimentation coefficient of 17.8S (Porter 1969).

The porcine immune system produces far more IgA than any other class of antibody; however, most of the IgA is found on mucosal surfaces, rather than in the serum. IgA is present in swine serum as 6.4S monomers and as 9.3S dimers, which are two monomers bound together with a J chain (Halpern and Koshash 1970; Mestecky et al. 1971; Porter and Allen 1972). IgA at mucosal surfaces is mostly dimeric IgA with a J chain and associated secretory component (see the section on mucosal immunity below).

Porcine IgE has been shown to have the same physicochemical properties as in other species, including the characteristic of losing biologic activity when serum is heated to 56°C (Roe et al. 1993). A polyclonal antiserum for porcine IgE inhibited a passive cutaneous anaphylaxis reaction, identified a sparse population of plasma cells in the lamina propria of the gut and mesenteric lymph nodes of parasitized pigs, and reacted with human IgE in Western blotting. Antibodies against human IgE and bovine IgE have been shown to react with a homocytotropic immunoglobulin in swine serum (Barratt 1972; Nielsen 1977).

Polyclonal and Monoclonal Antibodies. Antibody produced by an animal in response to an infection or vaccination is polyclonal and recognizes multiple antigens. Infectious agents are complex antigens with many different antigenic specificities on their surface; therefore, they stimulate many clones of B and T lymphocytes to respond. This results in a heterogenous mixture of antibodies that recognizes a wide variety of surface molecules on the microorganism. This broad spectrum of antibodies that are produced and are present in the serum are most helpful to the animal in overcoming infection. It is sometimes a disadvantage, however, if one wishes to use the serum for developing diagnostic reagents. The polyclonal antibodies produced in response to one infectious agent may cross-react with another infectious agent and thus interfere with the specificity of the assay.

Monoclonal antibodies are commonly produced in research laboratories and often overcome many of the disadvantages of polyclonal antisera for diagnostic and (less commonly) therapeutic purposes. Monoclonal anti-
bodies are the result of expansion of one clone from a single B lymphocyte and therefore are all identical. All of the antibody molecules present in a monoclonal antibody preparation are specific for the same antigenic determinant. This helps reduce the problem of cross-reactivity between microorganisms in diagnostic tests. Monoclonal antibodies produced against a protective antigen on a microorganism could possibly be used in therapy or prevention of disease. Since they can be produced in very high concentrations and purity, a much lower volume of monoclonal antibody compared to a polyclonal antibody solution can be used to immunize animals passively. This reduces the risk of serious reaction to the passively administered antibody and its extraneous protein.

Cytokines. Cytokines are small protein or glycoprotein molecules that are secreted by cells and serve as intercellular signaling molecules. All cells of the immune system are capable of secreting and being influenced by cytokines. Cytokine secretion is usually transient and occurs in response to specific stimuli. The cytokines that are secreted may act locally if they are secreted in low concentrations, or they may have systemic effects if they are secreted in higher concentrations. A cytokine will act only on a cell that has specific receptors for it. Regulation of cytokine receptor expression is an important mechanism for controlling the response to cytokines.

Information regarding cytokine biology has increased rapidly in recent years. Most of the new information on cytokine biology was first developed in mice or humans. However, because of the economic importance of pigs, and their importance in biomedical research, considerable information has been published recently regarding porcine cytokines (Murtaugh 1994; Murtaugh and Foss 1997, 2002). The porcine cytokines that have been studied are generally similar to their homologue in man or mice. Over 30 porcine cytokines have been described and partially characterized (Murtaugh 1994; Murtaugh and Foss 1997). A currently active field of research studies the various cytokines produced in response to disease (Darwich et al. 2003; Suradhat and Thanawongnuwech 2003; Thanawongnuwech and Thacker 2003). The information obtained from these studies helps us understand both how pathogens cause disease as well as how the immune system functions to control disease.

Cytokines can generally be categorized into four groups based on their functions (Abbas et al. 1994). One group of cytokines is important in mediating innate immunity. This includes the type I interferons (alpha and beta) and the proinflammatory cytokines that include IL-1, IL-6, and tumor necrosis factor α (TNFα). Type I interferon production occurs in response to viral infections by many cell types. Type I interferons can be detected within a few hours of viral infection and make
cells resistant to virus infection, increase NK cell activity, and increase the MHC molecule expression on cell surfaces, thus increasing antigen presentation to T cells.

The proinflammatory cytokines (IL-1, IL-6, and TNFα) are produced primarily by macrophages in response to bacterial infection and require no previous exposure. They may also be produced in response to viral, protozoal, or fungal infections, or tissue damage. The proinflammatory cytokines stimulate the liver to produce acute phase proteins and stimulate the release of amino acids from muscle tissue, and may induce cachexia or wasting in chronic infections. In addition, they induce fever, loss of appetite, and fatigue if present in high-enough concentrations. In low levels, these cytokines promote leukocyte adhesion to endothelial cells and diapedesis of leukocytes into the tissues as well as migration of macrophages and dendritic cells to the secondary lymph nodes, resulting in the activation of the adaptive immune response. Their presence in small amounts is required for an effective immune response. However, in large quantities they can induce hypovolemic shock and death.

A second group of cytokines regulate lymphocyte activation, growth, and differentiation. These are produced mainly by the TH lymphocytes in response to antigen recognition. Four important cytokines in this group are IL-2, IL-4, IL-12 and transforming growth factor β (TGF-β). IL-2 stimulates T and B cells that have recognized antigen to proliferate. It also activates NK lymphocytes to have increased cytotoxic activity. IL-4 is important for effective IgE-mast cell-eosinophil inflammatory reactions required to control some parasites and may result in allergic symptoms to non-parasite antigens. IL-12 activates NK lymphocytes and induces CD4+ cells to differentiate into TH1 cells and assists in the maturation of CD8+ cells into Tc cells. TGF-β is primarily a negative regulator of the immune response. It inhibits many activities of lymphocytes and may be a signal for shutting off the immune response.

A third group of cytokines are those that regulate immune-mediated inflammation. They are produced mainly by TH and TC cells, and their primary function is to activate or deactivate the cells of the innate immune system. Interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) causes cells to be resistant to virus infection (similar to alpha and beta interferons), and it is also a potent activator of macrophages, neutrophils, and NK cells. TNF-β often acts synergistically with IFN-γ to activate phagocytic cells. TNF-β can also activate endothelial cells resulting in diapedesis of leukocytes into sites of inflammation. IL-5 is secreted by TH cells and acts to increase eosinophil production and to activate eosinophils resulting in an increased ability to kill parasites. IL-10, secreted by T cells and macrophages is important in suppressing macrophage function and maintaining homeostasis of the respiratory tract.

The fourth group of cytokines stimulate hemato-

poiesis through the expansion and differentiation of bone marrow progenitor cells. They are called colony stimulating factors (CSFs). IL-3 is a CSF that stimulates the production of all of the types of leukocytes. Granulocyte-macrophage CSF (GM-CSF) stimulates the production of granulocytes and macrophages. Granulocyte CSF (G-CSF) stimulates the production of granulocytes only. The CSFs also may enhance the antimicrobial activities of mature neutrophils and macrophages.

**Mucosal Immunity**

Providing immunity at mucosal surfaces is a difficult problem due to frequent exposure to infectious agents. The components of the immune system described previously may not function well in the microenvironment on the mucosal surface, and their contribution to protective immunity varies with the mucosal surface. For instance IgG, complement, and phagocytic cells function efficiently in the lower respiratory tract and in the uterus but not in the lumen of the gut.

An important component of immunity at mucosal surfaces is the secretory IgA system, which responds to antigens that enter the body through mucosal surfaces. Specialized epithelial cells called dome cells or M cells are found overlying aggregations of gut and bronchus associated lymphoid tissues. These dome cells pinocytose antigen and transport it across the epithelial layer. The antigen may then be processed by antigen-presenting cells and presented to T and B lymphocytes.

Lymphocytes in the bloodstream tend to segregate into two populations: those that circulate between the bloodstream and the systemic lymphoid tissues and those that circulate between the bloodstream and lymphoid tissues associated with mucosal surfaces. Because of the nature of the TH cells, which home to mucosal surfaces, antigens that enter through mucosal surfaces tend to induce an IgA or IgE response. In some cases antigens that enter through the intestinal tract may induce oral tolerance, resulting in suppression of IgG antibody responses.

In the mucosal lymphoid tissues, B cells that have been stimulated by antigen and induced by TH cells to switch to produce IgA will leave the submucosal lymphoid tissue and reenter the bloodstream. These lymphocytes will exit the bloodstream at submucosal surfaces and locate in the lamina propria where they will differentiate into plasma cells that will secrete dimeric IgA. Many of these cells will return to the same mucosal surface from which they originated, but others will be found at other mucosal surfaces throughout the body. Therefore, oral immunization can result in the migration of IgA precursor cells to the bronchi and subsequent secretion of IgA onto the bronchial mucosa. Oral immunization with live or inactivated *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* has also been shown to result in the trafficking of T cells and IgG positive lymphocytes to the bronchoalveolar space and production of IgA in the
bronchoalveolar space (Delventhal et al. 1992; Hensel et al. 1994; Pabst et al. 1995). There is a special affinity for lymphocytes that have been sensitized in the gut of the sow to migrate to the mammary gland to become plasma cells and secrete IgA into the milk.

The dimeric IgA secreted by the plasma cells in the lamina propria will bind to the polyimmunoglobulin receptor on the basal membrane of mucosal epithelial cells. The dimeric IgA and polyimmunoglobulin receptor are then transported to the mucosal surface of the epithelial cell where the polyimmunoglobulin receptor is cleaved. The cleavage product is called the secretory component and remains bound to the dimeric IgA. The secretory component is important for protecting the IgA molecule from proteolytic enzymes and also serves to anchor the IgA into the mucous layer so that it forms a protective coating on the mucosal surface.

Secretory IgA plays an important role in immunity at mucosal surfaces by agglutinating infectious agents, preventing attachment of infectious agents to epithelial cells, and neutralizing toxins. Other components of the immune response may also be important in protection against various types of infection at mucosal surfaces. For example, neutrophils in the pig can migrate into the intestinal lumen in large numbers in response to antigen-antibody complexes. The recruitment of neutrophils into the intestinal lumen is dependent upon the presence of antibody that may be circulating IgG antibody (Bellamy and Nielsen 1974), colostral antibody (Sellwood et al. 1986), or locally induced IgA class antibody (Bhogal et al. 1987). The immigration of neutrophils into the lumen of the gut and their subsequent destruction has been shown to result in an increased concentration of lactoferrin, lysozyme, and cationic proteins. These substances may also contribute to immunity to bacterial infections in the gut.

T lymphocytes are important mediators of immunity at mucosal surfaces (Dunkley et al. 1995). This is especially true for respiratory infections caused by facultative intracellular bacterial pathogens. T lymphocytes also play a role in immunity in the intestinal tract. Pigs have high numbers of intraepithelial lymphocytes, which are predominantly γδ T cells and Tc cells (Salmon 1987; Thielke et al. 2003). The Tc cells in contact with intestinal epithelial cells are likely to be important in destroying virus-infected epithelial cells. The γδ T cells proliferate in the intestine and recirculate through the lymphatic and blood vessels back to the intestine. They can produce IFN-γ, be cytotoxic, and act as antigen-presenting cells through MHC II molecules (Lee et al. 2004; Takamatsu et al. 2002).

More detailed information on the various aspects of mucosal immunity may be found in chapters in this book dealing with specific organ systems or specific pathogens. The role for lymphocytes in the respiratory immune system of the pig has been reviewed (Pabst and Binns 1994).

Immunity in the Fetus and Neonate
All components of the native and acquired immune systems of the pig develop in utero and are functional at birth. However, they are generally less efficient than in the adult (Hammerberg et al. 1989). Since the normal newborn piglet has not yet been exposed to antigen, humoral and cell-mediated immune responses to infectious agents have not yet been developed. After exposure to infectious agents it will take 7–10 days for a primary antibody or cell-mediated immune response to develop. During this time resistance to infection depends upon the actions of the innate defense mechanisms and antibody, which is passively transferred from the sow to the piglet. In the pig there is virtually no transfer of antibody across the placenta. The epitheliocorial placentation of the sow has several tissue layers between maternal and fetal circulation, which prevents antibody transfer. In the sow, as in other large domestic species, passive transfer of antibody from mother to offspring occurs through the colostrum. The sow concentrates antibody in the colostrum during the last days of gestation. This antibody is largely transferred intact across the gut epithelial cells into the circulation of the newborn piglet. The passive transfer of antibody from sow to piglet in the colostrum and milk is very important for neonatal survival and is discussed in more detail below.

Innate Defense Mechanisms. The newborn piglet has low levels of hemolytic complement activity at birth. The level of hemolytic complement activity is related to the birth weight, with heavier pigs having significantly higher concentrations of complement in the serum (Rice and L’Ecuyer 1963). In colostrum-deprived pigs the hemolytic complement activity gradually increases during the first 36 days of life. Piglets allowed to suckle colostrum have higher titers of hemolytic complement than colostrum-deprived piglets during the first 3 weeks of life. This suggests that some of the complement components that are present in limiting amounts are transferred through the colostrum to the piglet (Rice and L’Ecuyer 1963).

The level of natural interferon alpha production by porcine blood mononuclear cells was shown to be low at birth and to gradually increase until adult age, with a significant increase around puberty (Nowacki et al. 1993).

Phagocytic cells are present in newborn animals but generally have reduced phagocytic activity as compared to adult animals (Osburn et al. 1982). Alveolar macrophages from 1-day-old pigs had reduced oxidative killing mechanisms compared to alveolar macrophages from adult pigs. By 7 days of age, these aspects of alveolar macrophage function had reached adult levels of activity (Zeidler and Kim 1985). Neonatal pigs have low numbers of pulmonary intravascular macrophages, which can increase up to fourteenfold by 30 days of age.
(Winkler and Cheville 1987). Since phagocytes depend on complement and/or antibodies to opsonize many infectious agents, the overall efficiency of phagocytosis may be reduced due to inadequate levels of complement and antibodies. Neutrophils from fetal pigs have been shown to have antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity activity against chicken red blood cells, which is comparable to that of adult pigs. Neutrophils from neonatal pigs have also been shown to rapidly emigrate into the lumen of the gut in response to the presence of E. coli and colostral antibody (Sellwood et al. 1986; Yang and Schultz 1986).

**Acquired Immune Mechanisms.** The percentage of CD2⁺, CD4⁺, and CD8⁺ T lymphocytes increases with age over the first several weeks of life in specific pathogen-free pigs (Bianchi et al. 1992; Joling et al. 1994). The lymphocyte blastogenic responsiveness to mitogens has been shown to be low after birth and to increase by 4 weeks of age (Becker and Misfeldt 1993). The mucosal lymphoid system is also less developed at birth and matures over the next few weeks of life (Jericho 1970; Ramos et al. 1992).

Natural killer cell activity has been shown to be absent in the peripheral blood of fetal pigs and to be low in pigs of less than 2 weeks of age (Yang and Schultz 1986).

**Passive Transfer in the Neonate.** Pigs are born with almost no serum antibody and absorb colostrum that is enriched in IgG, IgG₂, and IgA as compared to the serum of sows. It has approximately the same concentration of IgM as serum (refer to Table 2.1). When the pig suckles, the colostrum is replaced with milk, which has much lower immunoglobulin content. From 3 days of age until the end of lactation, IgA is the predominant antibody found in sow milk. The percentage of immunoglobulin in the mammary gland derived from serum and locally produced in the mammary gland is different in colostrum and milk and varies with the immunoglobulin class (Table 2.2).

All three major classes of Ig (IgG, IgA, and IgM) are absorbed from the colostrum into the circulation of newborn pigs (Curtis and Bourne 1971; Porter 1969).

**Table 2.2.** Origin of porcine colostral and milk immunoglobulins (Stokes and Bourne 1989).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Percent Derived from Plasma (%)</th>
<th>Percent Locally Synthesized (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colostrum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgM</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgG</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgA</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgM</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgG</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgA</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IgA, however, is absorbed less efficiently than the other classes of antibody (Hill and Porter 1974; Porter 1973). This is apparently because much of the IgA in porcine colostrum is dimeric IgA lacking secretory component (Porter 1973). Neonatal colostrum-deprived piglets have been shown to express secretory component in the gut, which tends to localize in the mucus of the crypt areas (Allen and Porter 1973). Because of the affinity of the dimeric IgA and IgM for secretory component, it has been suggested that IgA and IgM are bound in association with secretory component and held in the mucus of the crypt areas and are, therefore, less efficiently absorbed from the colostrum (Butler et al. 1981). The IgA present in sow’s milk throughout the suckling period may also bind to the secretory component in the crypt areas and provide relatively continuous protection against intestinal pathogens.

Intestinal absorption of immunoglobulin from the colostrum normally ceases by 24–36 hours after birth. If pigs suckle normally, the efficiency of absorption decreases with a half-life of about 3 hours (Speer et al. 1959). Lecce et al. (1961) found that the period of time that the intestine could absorb antibodies was extended up to 5 days in starved pigs, which were maintained by parental administration of nutrients. Therefore, piglets that have not had an opportunity to eat during the first 24–36 hours may still benefit from colostrum ingestion.

Neonatal pigs have been shown to absorb colostral lymphocytes from their intestinal tract into the blood stream (Tuboly et al. 1988; Williams 1993). By 24 hours cells derived from colostrum were found in the liver, lung, lymph nodes, spleen, and gastrointestinal tissue. Pigs that had absorbed the colostral lymphocytes had higher lymphocyte blastogenic responses to mitogens than control pigs. It is not clear whether the passively transferred lymphocytes also transfer clinically significant cell-mediated or antigen-specific immunity from the sow to the piglet.

**HYPERSENSITIVITIES**

Hypersensitivities are conditions in which there is an excessive response to an antigen to which the animal has previously been exposed. The clinical signs are due to the immune response to the antigen rather than to a direct action of the antigen or pathogens. Although hypersensitivity conditions can be divided into four types based on their mechanism of action, it is not unusual for clinical hypersensitivity conditions to involve more than one of the four types of hypersensitivity.

*Type I or immediate type* hypersensitivity involves the synthesis of specific IgE antibodies. The IgE molecules preferentially bind to Fc receptors on the surface of tissue mast cells. When the same antigen is encountered subsequently it will bind to the IgE on the mast cell surface (if there is a sufficiently high concentration of IgE specific for the antigen) and cause the mast cell to re-
lease numerous pharmacologically active substances, which are responsible for the clinical signs (e.g., histamine, serotonin, kinins, prostaglandins, and others). Type I hypersensitivities may be localized to a particular region or organ or may be systemic (anaphylaxis) (Eyre 1980). Information on naturally occurring localized type I hypersensitivities in pigs is not readily available, although it has been reproduced experimentally (Helm et al. 2003; Roe et al. 1993). Acute systemic anaphylaxis in pigs is due primarily to systemic and pulmonary hypertension, leading to dyspnea and death. In some pigs the intestinal tract may also be involved (Tizard 1987).

A type II hypersensitivity response (or cytotoxic type hypersensitivity) involves the presence of antibodies directed against cell membrane antigens. These may be normal tissue antigens in the case of autoimmune diseases or foreign antigens (e.g., drugs, viral antigens, or bacterial antigens) that have adhered to the cell surface. Type II hypersensitivities have been reported in pigs in which autoantibodies have formed against erythrocytes, thrombocytes, or neutrophils. This results in a depletion of the respective cell type and the associated clinical signs that one would expect (anemia, bleeding diathesis, or increased susceptibility to infection, respectively). These autoantibodies may arise from blood transfusions, from the use of vaccines that contain blood products, or in multiparous sows that develop antibodies against the alloantigens shared by the sire and dam. These autoantibodies may arise in the intestinal tract (formerly Eperythrozoon suis) due to the development of autoantibodies against the red blood cells induced by the organism (Messick 2004).

A type III hypersensitivity (or immune-complex type hypersensitivity) involves the presence of antigen-antibody complexes in the circulation or tissue. These immune complexes can fix complement and, therefore, may initiate an inflammatory response, attract neutrophils to the site, and damage cell membranes. The immune complex–mediated glomerulonephritis associated with chronic hog cholera virus, African swine fever virus, and possibly PCV2 infections are examples of this type of hypersensitivity. The immune complexes formed in response to these diseases may also cause polyarteritis nodosa, a systemic vasculitis. Immune complex deposition in swine kidneys is apparently common. One study evaluated 100 kidneys collected at slaughter with no apparent macroscopic lesions. Ninety-seven of the kidneys had IgG deposits and 98 had C3 deposits as demonstrated by immunocytochemistry. The significance of these immune complex deposits in the kidney is unknown; however, the clinical diagnosis of glomerular disease in swine is rare (Shirota et al. 1986).

A type IV hypersensitivity (or delayed-type hypersensitivity) is mediated by sensitized T cells releasing cytokines. It does not involve antibody. The tuberculin skin test is a classic type IV hypersensitivity reaction. Delayed-type hypersensitivity is believed to play a role in some cases of food hypersensitivity in pigs. Very little work has been reported on other clinical conditions involving delayed-type hypersensitivity in pigs. Transfer of delayed-type hypersensitivity between genetically matched pigs by transfer of lymphocytes has been demonstrated (Binns et al. 1996).

Food hypersensitivity is thought to be responsible for some cases of post-weaning diarrhea and reduced growth performance in piglets (Stokes et al. 1987; Stokes and Bourne 1989; Li et al. 1990, 1991; Friesen et al. 1993). This apparently involves the formation of both IgG antibodies and a type IV or delayed-type hypersensitivity. Following the introduction of a new protein antigen to the diet, a small proportion (<0.002%) of that protein is absorbed intact inducing an antibody and/or cell-mediated response. Normally, a systemic antibody response (IgG) is suppressed (oral tolerance) and a local mucosal antibody response persists. The local antibody prevents further absorption of the intact protein. Oral tolerance prevents an immune response to most of the proteins that are absorbed. Therefore, following the introduction of new dietary antigen, animals may pass through a brief phase of hypersensitivity before the development of a protected state of tolerance.

In pigs that were weaned abruptly and placed on a soya-containing diet, soya protein was detected in the sera of all animals for up to 20 days postweaning. A delayed-type hypersensitivity skin test reaction to soya proteins was transiently present in the soya-fed group. The changes in gut morphology (crypt hyperplasia and villous atrophy) and the malabsorption associated with early weaning suggested that these changes occur as a result of a transient hypersensitivity to antigen in the postweaning diet. These intestinal changes can facilitate growth and disease production by E. coli. Feeding of large amounts of soya prior to the withdrawal of milk prevents the postweaning malabsorption and diarrhea (Stokes et al. 1987).

**IMMUNODEFICIENCY AND IMMUNOSUPPRESSION**

Primary or secondary immunodeficiencies increase the susceptibility of animals to disease induced by typically
low to nonpathogenic microbes. A primary immunodeficiency is defined as a disorder of the immune system with a genetic basis. A secondary immunodeficiency is a disorder in which the animal is genetically capable of normal immune function, but some secondary factor is impairing resistance to disease.

Clinical findings that are associated with immunodeficiencies include:

1. Illness from organisms of normally low pathogenicity or from an attenuated live vaccine
2. Recurrent illnesses that are unusually difficult to control
3. Failure to respond adequately to vaccination
4. Unexplained neonatal illness and death affecting more than one animal in a litter
5. A variety of disease syndromes occurring concurrently in a herd

A large number of primary immunodeficiencies have been reported in humans; however, there are no reports of primary immunodeficiencies in pigs. This is probably due to the relatively low value of the individual piglet and the expense and difficulty associated with diagnosing a primary immunodeficiency. In addition, sows and boars that produce nonvigoruous litters are not kept in the breeding herd.

A common cause of secondary immunodeficiency is failure of passive transfer of adequate levels of maternal antibody through the colostrum to the piglet. This has been discussed earlier in this chapter. Other potential causes of secondary immunodeficiency (or immunosuppression) include:

1. Physical or psychological distress
2. Immunosuppressive infectious agents
3. Inadequate nutrition
4. Immunotoxic substances

**Physical and Psychological Distress.** There is ample evidence that both physical and psychological distress can suppress immune function in animals, leading to an increased incidence of infectious disease. Excess heat or cold, crowding, mixing, weaning, limit-feeding, shipping, noise, and restraint are stressors that are often associated with intensive animal production and have been shown to influence immune function in various species (Kelley 1985). Distress-induced alterations in immune function are mediated by interactions between the neuroendocrine and immune systems. The study of these multisystem interactions initially focused on the secretion and influence of glucocorticoids, which suppress several aspects of immune function. However, pigs are more resistant to the immunosuppressive effects of glucocorticoids compared to some other species (Flaiming et al. 1994). It is now recognized that there are many mechanisms by which the neuroendocrine system can alter immune function; in addition, the immune system is capable of altering the activity of the neuroendocrine system (Breazile 1987; Dunn 1988; Kelley 1988).

Weaning is certainly a stressful event for domestic animals. Piglets are usually separated from the sow, handled, regrouped with unfamiliar pigs, and shifted from a liquid to a solid diet. Weaning at 2, 3, or 4 weeks of age (but not at 5 weeks of age) has been shown to decrease the in vivo and in vitro response of porcine lymphocytes to phytohemagglutinin (Blecha et al. 1983). This is considered to be a measure of the lymphocyte’s ability to undergo clonal expansion to initiate an immune response. These same parameters were suppressed in artificially reared neonatal piglets compared to their sow-reared littermates (Blecha et al. 1986; Hennessy et al. 1987). Early weaning of pigs at 3 weeks of age suppressed the ability of mesenteric lymph node cells to produce IL-2 (Bailey et al. 1992). Weaning (at 5 weeks of age) 24 hours after the injection of sheep red blood cells (RBCs) decreased the antibody response to the sheep RBCs. Weaning 2 weeks prior to injecting the sheep RBCs did not decrease the antibody response (Blecha and Kelley 1981). However, successful vaccination strategies at the time of weaning are frequently reported in the field.

Regrouping of pigs at the time of weaning or at 2 weeks after weaning significantly increased their plasma cortisol concentration. However, there were no measurable changes in lymphocyte blastogenesis or antibody responses at the time of elevated plasma cortisol concentration (Blecha et al. 1985).

Crowding or restraint may also stress pigs sufficiently to decrease their immune responsiveness. Housing 8 pigs (11.5–18 kg) per group in pens with 0.13 m² of floor space per pig significantly reduced their phytohemagglutinin skin test response as compared to pigs given twice as much space (Yen and Pond 1987). When young pigs were restrained for 2 hours per day over a 3-day period, they had a significantly elevated plasma cortisol concentration (Blecha et al. 1986; Hennessy et al. 1987). Early weaning of pigs at 3 weeks of age suppressed significantly the ability of mesenteric lymph node cells to produce IL-2 (Bailey et al. 1992). Weaning (at 5 weeks of age) 24 hours after the injection of sheep red blood cells (RBCs) decreased the antibody response to the sheep RBCs. Weaning 2 weeks prior to injecting the sheep RBCs did not decrease the antibody response (Blecha and Kelley 1981). However, successful vaccination strategies at the time of weaning are frequently reported in the field.

Immunosuppressive Infectious Agents. Certain infectious agents are capable of suppressing immune function, making the animal more susceptible to secondary infections. For example, infection with *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae*, *A. pleuropneumoniae*, virulent or vaccine strains of hog cholera virus, porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) virus, or pseudorabies virus increases the susceptibility of pigs to *Pasteurella multocida*, increasing the severity of pneumonia (Chung et al. 1993; Done and Paton 1995; Fuentes and Pijoan...
The mechanism of the immunosuppression induced by these agents has not been completely characterized. A cytotoxin from *A. pleuropneumoniae* is toxic for alveolar macrophages (Chung et al. 1993; Dom et al. 1992; Tarigan et al. 1994). The pseudorabies virus has been shown to replicate in monocytes and alveolar macrophages and to impair their bactericidal and cytotoxic functions (Chinsakchai and Molitor 1992; Iglesias et al. 1989a, b; Iglesias et al. 1992). Porcine parvovirus replicates in alveolar macrophages, as well as lymphocytes, and has been shown to impair macrophage phagocytosis and lymphocyte blastogenesis (Harding and Molitor 1988). Swine influenza virus and PRRS virus also replicate in alveolar macrophages and PRRS virus is lytic to infected macrophages (Bautista et al. 1993; Charley 1983).

PRRS virus and porcine circovirus type 2 (PCV2) both appear to modulate the immune response at many levels. Specific details about the pathogenesis of these two viruses are covered elsewhere in this book. However, it is important to recognize that much of their impact on the swine industry is due to their ability to modulate or alter the ability of the immune system to control other pathogens. The mechanism used by these pathogens to alter the immune response is currently unknown; however, studies have demonstrated that PRRS virus induction of cytokines that induce a Th2-type of response, as characterized by increased IL-10 levels and decreased IFN-γ production, may play a role in the immunosuppression associated with infection (Thanawongnuwech and Thacker 2003). Thus, although neither of these viruses is classically immunosuppressive, their ability to modulate the immune system allows persistence of the viruses in the host.

In addition to modulation of the immune system by viruses, bacteria including *M. hyopneumoniae*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, and *S. choleraesuis* have each been shown to alter porcine neutrophil function (Coe et al. 1992; DeBey et al. 1994; Roof et al. 1992a, b). In addition, *M. hyopneumoniae* also appears to induce a preferential Th2 type of response that may further decrease the ability to control respiratory pathogens (Thanawongnuwech and Thacker 2003; Thanawongnuwech et al. 2000).

**Nutritional Influences on Immunity.** Both malnutrition and overfeeding may result in impairment of immune function and increased susceptibility to disease due to a deficiency or excess of proteins or calories, or a relative imbalance in vitamin or trace mineral content. Animals under intensive production conditions typically have a completely controlled diet. Therefore, it is very important that the diet, especially the vitamin and trace mineral content, be optimally formulated. Key vitamins and minerals for optimal immune function include vitamins A, C, E, and the B complex vitamins; copper (Cu); zinc (Zn); magnesium (Mg); manganese (Mn); iron (Fe); and selenium (Se). The balance of these constituents is especially important since an excess or deficiency in one component may influence the availability or requirement for another (Tengerdy 1986).

It is difficult to predict the optimal diet for immune function. There is very little research data in this area for swine. The dietary requirements for optimal immune function may differ from the requirements to avoid deficiencies as judged by traditional methods. Relatively small imbalances of a particular nutrient may suppress immune function, whereas a more severe deficiency must occur before the classical clinical evidence of deficiency of that nutrient is recognized. In addition, stress or the demands of rapid growth may change dietary requirements for optimal immune function.

Dietary and injectable vitamin E and selenium have been evaluated for their influence on antibody levels in young pigs. Dietary vitamin E supplementation increased the antibody response to *E. coli* (Ellis and Vorhies 1976). Supplemental (dietary or injectable) vitamin E and/or selenium treatment in pigs beginning at 4 to 5 weeks of age increased their antibody response to sheep RBCs (Peplowski et al. 1981). Dietary vitamin E and selenium also increased the proliferation response of pig lymphocytes to phytohemagglutinin (Larsen and Tolleruds 1981).

**Immunotoxic Substances.** In other species, various compounds—including heavy metals, industrial chemicals, pesticides, and mycotoxins—have been shown to be immunosuppressive at very low levels. These compounds may be detrimental to the immune system and predispose animals to infectious diseases at levels that do not cause other symptoms of toxicity (Koller 1979). Very little immunotoxicology research has been conducted in swine. Aflatoxins in the feed of young pigs have been shown to impair immunity to erysipelas, to enhance the severity of clinical signs due to salmonellosis, and to enhance susceptibility to an oral inoculation with *Brachyspira hyodysenteriae* (Cysewski et al. 1978; Joes et al. 1981; Miller et al. 1978).

**GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF VACCINATION**

For over 100 years scientists have known that animals may develop immunity to diseases if exposed to either the killed infectious agent or a live strain of the agent that has been modified so it does not cause disease. This approach led to the development of many successful vaccines in the early 1900s. However, it soon became apparent that for certain diseases this simple approach was not effective. An animal, for example, might produce antibody in response to vaccination, but still develop the disease, demonstrating that circulating antibody alone is not protective. The challenge of developing vaccines for these diseases is to understand the basis for suc-
cessful immunity, and then to develop vaccines that induce this type of immunity. It is apparent that different diseases require different types of immunity for protection and the type of vaccine (modified live versus killed), route of administration, and type of adjuvant make a difference in the type of immune response.

General principles regarding vaccine efficacy and vaccine failure will be discussed here. It must be remembered that there are exceptions to these general principles for specific vaccines and specific diseases. Information regarding protective immunity and vaccination for specific diseases may be found in other chapters of this book.

Selective Induction of Different Types of Immunity

It is relatively easy to develop a vaccine that will induce the production of IgG and IgM antibodies in the bloodstream. However, the vaccine may not induce antibodies against the important antigens of the infectious agent, and antibodies alone do not kill infectious agents. Some disease-causing organisms are resistant to control by circulating antibodies. These organisms must be controlled by the cell-mediated immune system or the secretory IgA system. It is more difficult to develop a safe and effective vaccine that induces these types of immunity.

The nature of the vaccine and the route of administration are important for influencing the type of immunity induced. Subcutaneous or intramuscular injection of a killed vaccine will stimulate the immune system to produce both IgM and IgG. However, there is very little production of IgA to protect the mucosal surfaces. In addition, killed vaccines are generally less effective in inducing cell-mediated immunity.

Optimal induction of cell-mediated immunity generally requires a modified live vaccine capable of replicating in the animal or a killed vaccine with a highly effective adjuvant. Modified live vaccine viruses have been attenuated to be of reduced virulence. The attenuation must be shown to be stable; therefore, reversion to virulence is a rare event. New adjuvants and other novel vaccine technologies are being developed that show promise for inducing cell-mediated immunity (Roth and Henderson 2001; Spickler and Roth 2003). There are killed vaccines that have been available for many years and have been effective in controlling certain systemic-type diseases. These are generally diseases that can be controlled by the presence of IgG in the circulation. For those diseases where T cell-mediated immunity is needed for protection, it is important to characterize the response of the various T cell subsets to the vaccine antigens. Several methods exist for evaluating T cell responses to antigens in domestic species (Sandbulte and Roth 2004).

Protecting the animal from infection at mucosal surfaces such as the intestinal tract, respiratory tract, mammary glands, and reproductive tract is especially difficult for the immune system. The antibodies responsible for humoral immunity and the lymphocytes responsible for cell-mediated immunity are predominantly in the blood stream and tissues and they are typically not found on the mucosal surfaces. Therefore, although lymphocytes assist in preventing systemic invasion through the mucosal surface, they are often not very effective at controlling infection on the mucosal surface. Even in the lung and the mammary gland, where IgG and lymphocytes are found in relative abundance, they are not able to function as effectively as in the tissues. Protection on mucosal surfaces is due in large part to secretory IgA, Tc cells, and γδ T cells, as discussed earlier.

The route of vaccine administration can be important when attempting to induce mucosal immunity. To induce secretory IgA production at mucosal surfaces, it is best for the vaccine to enter the body via a mucosal surface. This can be accomplished by feeding the vaccine to the animal, aerosolizing the vaccine so the animal will inhale it, or by intramammary exposure. If a sow is exposed to an infectious agent in her intestinal tract, she may respond by producing secretory IgA not only in her own intestinal tract, but also in her mammary gland. The sow passes the IgA against the infectious agent to the piglet when it suckles, thus protecting the piglet from infectious agents present in the sow’s intestine. This protection will last only as long as the piglet continues to suckle. Enteric infections by many organisms are not controlled by the presence of IgG and IgM in the bloodstream or by a systemic cell-mediated immune response. If a modified live vaccine is given by injection, but goes to a mucosal surface to replicate, it may also induce a secretory IgA response. In addition, killed vaccines for some respiratory pathogens, such as M. hyorhinovium and swine influenza virus, are capable of stimulating an IgA response to challenge.

Vaccination Failure. There are many reasons why animals may develop disease even though they have been vaccinated (Roth 1999). Potential reasons for vaccine failure include:

1. Insufficient time occurred after vaccination to develop immunity.
2. Something happened to the vaccine to make it ineffective.
3. The physiologic status of the animal impaired the response to the vaccine.
4. The animal was immunosuppressed at some point after vaccination.
5. The animal was exposed to an overwhelming challenge dose.
6. The duration of immunity after vaccination was not adequate.
7. Important antigenic differences exist between vaccine and field strains.
8. Interference occurs when multiple vaccines are administered concurrently.

By being aware of these factors, veterinarians and producers can help minimize the occurrence of vaccine failures.

Occurrence of Disease Shortly After Vaccination. The host requires several days after vaccination before an effective immune response will develop. If the animal encounters an infectious agent prior to or near the time of vaccination, the vaccine may not have time to induce immunity. The animal may come down with clinical disease resulting in an apparent vaccination failure. In this situation, disease symptoms will appear shortly after vaccination and may be mistakenly attributed to vaccine agent causing the disease. Modified live vaccine viruses consisting of attenuated virus may be capable of producing disease in immunosuppressed animals.

Alterations in the Vaccine. Improperly handled and administered vaccines may fail to induce the expected immune response in normal, healthy animals. Modified live bacterial and viral vaccines are effective only if the agent in the vaccine is viable and able to replicate in the vaccinated animal. Observing proper storage conditions and proper methods of administration are very important for maintaining vaccine viability. Failure to store the vaccine at refrigerator temperatures or exposure to light may inactivate the vaccine. Even when stored under appropriate conditions, the vaccine loses viability over time. Therefore, vaccines that are past their expiration date should not be used. The use of chemical disinfectants on syringes and needles can inactivate modified live vaccines if there is any residual disinfectant. The use of an improper diluent or the mixing of vaccines in a single syringe may also inactivate modified live vaccines. Diluent for lyophilized vaccines are formulated specifically for each vaccine. A diluent which is appropriate for one vaccine may inactivate a different vaccine. Some vaccines and diluents contain preservatives that may inactivate other modified live vaccines. For these reasons, multiple vaccines should not be mixed in a single syringe unless that particular combination has been adequately tested to insure there is no interference.

Host Factors Contributing to Vaccine Failure. Vaccine failures may occur because a vaccinated animal is not able to respond appropriately to the vaccine. Vaccine failure in young animals may be due to the presence of maternal antibody, which prevents adequate response to vaccination. It can also be due to immunosuppression from a variety of causes, as discussed previously.

Maternal antibodies derived from colostrum are a well-known cause of vaccine failure. These antibodies in the piglets’ circulation may neutralize or remove the antigen before it can induce an immune response. Typically, virulent infectious agents are capable of breaking through maternal immunity earlier than modified live or killed vaccines. This means that even if young animals are immunized frequently, there is still often a period when they are vulnerable to infection. Vulnerability occurs between the time that young animals lose their maternal antibody and before they develop their own active immune response. This period can be shortened by the use of less-attenuated modified live vaccines or the use of killed vaccines with high antigenic mass. Overcrowding and poor sanitation exacerbate the problem of inducing immunity in young animals before they come down with clinical disease.

Because only one vaccination is commonly recommended for large domestic animals, the timing of the vaccination is important. If the vaccine is administered too soon, it may be ineffective because of the presence of maternal antibody. If the vaccine is administered after all maternal antibodies are gone from animals in the herd, there may be a prolonged period of vulnerability before they develop their own immune response. Most veterinarians and producers decide that because of time and expense considerations it is impractical to vaccinate young pigs frequently. However, frequent vaccination may be justified in cases of unusually high disease incidence.

Immunosuppression due to a variety of factors including stress, malnutrition, concurrent infection, or immaturity or senescence of the immune system may also lead to vaccination failure. If the immunosuppression occurs at the time of vaccination, the vaccine may fail to induce an adequate immune response. If the immunosuppression occurs sometime after vaccination, disease may occur due to reduced immunity in spite of an adequate response to the original vaccine. Therapy with immunosuppressive drugs (e.g., glucocorticoids) may also cause this to occur.

Another concern is that some modified live vaccines are capable of inducing disease in the immunosuppressed animal. Modified live vaccines are tested for safety in normal, healthy animals. They are not recommended for use in animals with compromised immune systems. Therefore, these vaccines should not be used in animals that are immunosuppressed for any reason. This includes animals in the first few weeks of life unless the vaccine has been specifically tested in animals this young. When it is necessary to vaccinate animals under these conditions, killed vaccines should be used.

Overwhelming Challenge Dose. Most vaccines do not produce complete immunity to disease. They provide an increased ability to resist challenge by infectious agents. If a high challenge dose of organisms is present due to overcrowding or poor sanitation, the immune system may be overwhelmed, resulting in clinical disease.
Vaccine Efficacy. Vaccines that are licensed by the United States Department of Agriculture have been tested to determine that they are safe and effective. However, “effective” is a relative term. It does not mean that the vaccine must be able to induce complete immunity under all conditions that may be found in the field. This would not be realistic since the immune system is not capable of such potent protection under adverse conditions.

To be federally licensed, the vaccine must have been tested under controlled experimental conditions. The vaccinated group must have had significantly less disease than the nonvaccinated control group. This testing is typically done on healthy, nonstressed animals under good environmental conditions and with a controlled exposure to a single infectious agent. Vaccines may be much less effective when used in animals that are under stress, incubating other infectious diseases, or exposed to a high dose of infectious agents due to overcrowding or poor sanitation.

It is important to remember that for most diseases the relationship between the infectious agent and the host is sufficiently complicated that vaccination cannot be expected to provide complete protection. The vaccine can increase the animal's resistance to disease, but this resistance can be overwhelmed if good management practices are not followed.

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 2 IMMUNE SYSTEM 33
Diseases of the gastrointestinal tract that affect pigs between neonatal and finishing stages continue to be some of the greatest factors that limit the efficiency and profitability of pig production globally. Advances in effective disease control measures such as development of new vaccines and antimicrobial products have provided new approaches to disease control. However, this is countered by increasing awareness of other issues such as development of antimicrobial resistance, the ban or limitation of the use of antimicrobial growth promoters in some countries, and increasing public awareness and expectation of food safety—particularly in relation to salmonellosis and food residues. Salmonellae surveillance and control have become a major objective in many countries following the schemes initiated in Scandinavia. This has demanded new standards of hygiene and care involving a whole-chain approach to disease control. However, there is also increasing public concern over intensive farming systems and consumer demands for more natural and welfare-friendly methods of farming that allow pigs to express normal rooting behavior through availability of substrate. To these ends, legislation has been introduced in some countries and this is likely to increase, thus presenting new challenges for pig producers and veterinarians in relation to effective control of enteric infections. Organic product is increasing in popularity and requires alternative approaches to enteric disease prevention.

In parallel with these practical issues, there has been substantial ongoing research into the enteric physiology and immunology in the pig. This work provides the foundation for future practical advances in enteric disease control and is briefly reviewed in the following sections. Thereafter there is an overview of enteric diseases (which are covered in depth in other chapters).

ANATOMIC AND HISTOLOGIC FEATURES

The conformation and growth efficiency of the pig has changed dramatically over the years as the result of genetic selection and production of suitable hybrids. However, the gut morphology is apparently unchanged and an area of little focus or attention. The exception is the development of genotypes resistant to F18 and F4 (K88) Escherichia coli infections in which pigs do not possess the required receptor for these organisms to cause disease.

Gut maturation occurs rapidly after birth in response to factors such as oxygenation; enteral nutrient presentation; and hormones, particularly cortisol (Sangild 2001). Neonatal hypoxia is associated with intestinal dysfunction and an increased incidence in neonatal enterocolitis (Cohen et al. 1991; Powell et al. 1999). At birth the sudden increase in blood arterial oxygen is a vital factor in gut development. Common occurrences such as delayed parturition or congenital pneumonic infections could be initiating factors for neonatal diarrhea. After birth the small intestine undergoes a rapid growth in response to enteral presentation of nutrients (Burrin et al. 2000). This is stimulated by a wide range of factors such as hormones and growth factors (Sangild 2001). Good intake of milk in the early stages of life is important for rapid gut growth as well as promoting piglet vigor and provision of colostral immunity.

During the first 3–4 weeks of life fetal enterocytes which have high endocytotic activity are gradually replaced by adult type enterocytes devoid of such activity. The process occurs in a proximal-to-distal direction in the intestine and is an important part of intestinal maturation (Baintner 1986). Changes in enterocyte generation influence the expression of brush border enzymes. Lactose activity is high in the newborn pig and steadily decreases to become minimal after weaning, whereas sucrase and maltase activities are low in the newborn but increase after weaning (Pluske et al. 1997). Intestinal maturation can be hastened in the unweaned pig by feeding kidney bean lectin (Phaseolus vulgaris) (Pusztai et al. 1999; Biernat et al. 2001; Rådberg et al. 2001). This dietary means of promoting rapid gut maturation could be of value in reducing or preventing postweaning diarrhea problems in pigs in the future.
Weaning is associated with adverse effects, such as abrupt withdrawal of sow’s milk, low and variable feed intake, growth stasis, and compromised integrity of the small intestinal epithelium. Changes in gut morphology at weaning include reduced villus height and increased crypt depth (Hampson 1986; Kelly et al. 1991). These adverse effects can be diet-dependent and diet-independent (McCracken et al. 1995). Villus length reduces by 30–40% at days 4 to 7 postweaning but increases back to 94% of original length at 14 days postweaning (Verdonk et al. 2001a). Additionally, a reduction in the length of microvilli occurs at 3–7 days after weaning (Cera et al. 1988). There is a significant relationship between voluntary feed intake and mucosal architecture (Makkink et al. 1994; Pluske et al. 1996b). Low feed intakes or a period of starvation postweaning reduces the villus height throughout the small intestine particularly in the proximal jejunum. To minimize the changes, diets high in milk products, cooked cereals, and low levels of antigenicity are utilized. Raw cereals have a significant adverse effect on gut mucosa as compared with cooked cereals, which are thought to improve postweaning growth (Lawlor et al. 2001). Anorexia at weaning might contribute to local inflammation in the piglet’s small intestine (McCracken et al. 1999). With low nutrient intake paracellular transport is higher and this increases over the first 4 days after weaning (Verdonk et al. 2001b). Therefore it would appear that the integrity of the gut mucosa is worse in piglets with low intake levels postweaning due to higher permeability of the tight junctions between cells (paracellular transport route), but permeability of the mucosa cells is not affected. The dietary changes at weaning and the resultant villus atrophy and crypt hyperplasia leads to decreased digestive and absorptive capacities in the intestine (Pluske et al. 1997, Rådberg et al. 2001). Other factors of importance are poor feed consumption, inflammation in response to bacterial metabolites, rotavirus, and hypersensitivity to antigenic components of the diet (Kenworthy 1976; Hampson and Kidder 1986; Kelly 1990). These physiological changes can result in alterations in the number and balance of the enteric bacterial flora often allowing enteropathogenic bacteria to proliferate, resulting in serious postweaning enteropathies such as colibacillosis. The morphological and functional changes in the small intestine of the newly weaned pig have been reviewed by Pluske (2001).

Transport associated stress of pigs has been shown to lower the intestinal pH and result in increased intestinal permeability. Permeability is the highest immediately after transportation and decreases after 2–3 hours of rest (van der Meulen et al. 2001). Translocation of bacteria and/or endotoxins from the gut into the systemic circulation is possible due to increased permeability (Zucker and Krüger 1998; Berg 1999). This might explain the increase in disease problems seen after transportation (Berends et al. 1996).

**PHYSIOLOGY AND NUTRITION**

The intestinal mucosa receives nutrients from 2 sources—the diet (brush border membrane) and the systemic circulation (baso-lateral membrane). The gut tissues have their own particular nutrient requirements for growth and function. The gastrointestinal tissues in the young growing pig utilize nearly 50% of the dietary amino acid intake and 30–50% of the dietary lysine, leucine, and phenylalanine plus 85% of threonine (Burrin et al. 2001). A substantial proportion of the essential amino acid needs and glucose needs are derived from the arterial circulation rather than from direct dietary sources. The amino acids are utilized in many ways, such as the formation of secretory mucins (Stoll et al. 1998), biosynthesis of other amino acids (Stoll et al. 1999), glutathione (Reeds et al. 1997) and nucleic acids (Perez and Reeds 1998). Nutrient supply for the neonate is derived solely from colostrum and milk. Additionally, colostrum and milk contain a large number of biologically active peptides that have important functions in regulating growth and differentiation of intestinal tissues. Targeted expression of key genes for production of milk peptides holds potential for the future (Kelly and Coutts 1997). On low protein diets, the lysine requirements of the gut remain relatively high and are preferentially met, which limits the systemic availability of lysine for lean tissue growth (Ebner et al. 1994). Exposure to microbial antigens (both pathogenic and nonpathogenic) stimulates a proinflammatory acute-phase response (MacRae 1993; Johnson 1997), which results in the loss of dietary amino acids and reduced deposition of body protein (e.g., reduced growth rate). The use of in-feed antibiotic growth promoters enhances growth rates by limiting this process.

Dietary carbohydrates are comprised of sugars, oligosaccharides, starch, and nonstarch polysaccharides. The enzyme activity responsible for carbohydrate degradation adapts according to the age of the pig and dietary composition. In the young pig there is efficient prececal digestion of lactose during suckling, and sucrose and starch after weaning. Carbohydrates that do not get digested in the small intestine are fermented in the large intestine by a diverse population of anaerobic bacteria. These are mostly nonstarch polysaccharides (NSPs).

Increasing the amount of fermentable carbohydrates and straw in the diet increases the total gastrointestinal tract weight by approximately 8% and 7%, respectively. With fermentable carbohydrates the main weight increase occurs in the colon, whereas with straw it occurs in the stomach and colon (Rijnen et al. 2001).

Most of the starches used in pig diets are highly digestible, with up to 98% of digestion occurring in the small intestine (Glitsø et al. 1998; Bach Knudson and Canibe 2000). Nonstarch polysaccharides (fiber) are present in cereals such as barley, wheat, oats, and rye.
Although there is some digestion of NSPs in the small intestine, the major site of NSP degradation is in the large intestine. Passage of ingesta through the large intestine generally takes from 20–40 hours, allowing time for bacterial degradation. The most common bacterial isolates are *Streptococcus* sp., *Lactobacillus*, *Fusobacterium*, *Eubacterium*, *Bacteroides*, and *Peptostreptococcus* (Moore et al. 1987). Fermentation of carbohydrates and NSPs in the large intestine results in the production of short chain fatty acids, mainly acetate, propionate and butyrate, and the gases H₂, CO₂, and CH₄. Increasing the level of NSP entering the large intestine results in higher activity of microflora (Bach Knudsen et al. 1991; Jensen and Jørgensen 1994), increased production of short chain fatty acids (Giusi-Perier et al. 1989), and increased production of gases (Jensen and Jørgensen 1994). Short chain fatty acids are rapidly absorbed from the large intestine and may provide up to 24% of the maintenance energy requirements for growing pigs (Yen et al. 1991) and potentially even more for adults. The total tract digestibility of NSPs is influenced by a number of complex factors, such as the source of NSPs, the level of inclusion in the diet, the solubility, the degree of lignification, the age and weight of the animal, the transit time, and the microbial composition (Bach Knudsen and Jørgensen 2001). Adult animals are more capable of degrading fiber than growing pigs due to the greater intestinal volume and slower transit times. Adaptation to dietary changes in terms of digestibility of NSP residues is considered to take 3–5 weeks (Longland et al. 1993).

In weaner pigs the use of enzyme combinations has been found to increase the apparent ileal digestibility of feeds based on hullless barley, which have high beta-glucan concentrations (Yin et al. 2001). Due to the improved apparent ileal digestibility there was also a reduction in hind gut fermentation. Similarly, the addition of certain enzymes to wheat-based diets of growing pigs has been found to have beneficial effects (Hazzledine and Partridge 1996). There is increasing interest in the role of dietary factors, especially NSP and feed processing methods in so-called nonspecific colitis of pigs (Strachan et al. 2002, Thomson et al. 2004). This condition is thought to be an important precursor to other forms of colitis in pigs although the pathogenesis of this diet-associated form of colitis is poorly understood.

**IMMUNOLOGY**

For the first 24–48 hours of life the pig intestine is capable of absorbing macromolecules including immunoglobulins by pinocytosis, providing the neonate with passive immunity from colostrum (Weström et al. 1984). Although this process commences prepartum, the major absorptive function occurs postnatally (Sangild et al. 1999). This is a specific maturation process that is timed to maximize immunoglobulin uptake shortly after birth. Piglets born prematurely have a lower capacity for protein absorption than piglets born at full term (Sangild et al. 1997). Therefore fetal maturity is an important factor in successful immunoglobulin uptake from the colostrum.

The intestinal immune system of the young pig is very immature and its slow development may result in increased susceptibility to disease (Stokes et al. 2001). Intestinal lymphoid tissue is present in the form of mesenteric lymph nodes, intestinal Peyer's patches, and lymphocytes distributed through the mucosal lamina propria and intraepithelial sites. In the jejunum there are between 11–26 discrete Peyer’s patches containing multiple lymphoid follicles (B lymphocytes) separated by T cells. Plasma cells containing IgM, IgG, and IgA are present in the subepithelial lymphoid dome and between the follicles (Brown and Bourne 1976). The dome region contains dendritic-type cells that express high levels of MHC II antigens. Microfold cells (M cells) that are thought to absorb luminal antigens occur in the overlying lymphoepithelium (Gebert et al. 1994). In the mature pig the intestinal lamina propria is heavily populated with lymphocytes. Plasma cells and B cells predominate in the crypt area, whereas T cells are found mainly in the villi, CD8⁺ cells occur in the subepithelial sites, and CD4⁺ occur in association with capillary plexuses in the lamina propria (Vega-Lopez et al. 1993). The majority of intraepithelial lymphocytes express CD2, but in mature pigs a high proportion also express CD8 (Stokes et al. 2001).

Functionally the intestinal immune mechanisms play a complex role in preventing and controlling harmful intestinal infections while tolerating many dietary antigens and nonharmful antigens from the intestinal flora. The surface epithelium serves as an effective barrier, providing it remains intact. IgA antibodies play an important defensive role. Significant quantities of dietary protein are absorbed across the intestinal mucosa (Wilson et al. 1989; Telemo et al. 1991). So-called “intestinal tolerance” to dietary proteins has been demonstrated in the pig, where immune responses to the dietary proteins are regulated to prevent inflammatory reaction and tissue damage associated with foreign protein absorption (Bailey et al. 1993). The interaction between the different components of the intestinal immune system is complex, and the basis of inflammation and apoptosis versus down regulation of immune responses is the subject of ongoing research.

Development of the pig’s intestinal immune system occurs in response to antigen exposure. Full development of lymphoid tissue can take 7–9 weeks and can be delayed by early weaning at 3–4 weeks of age, as carried out in most modern pig-producing countries (Vega-Lopez et al. 1995). This, among many other factors, predisposes to postweaning diarrhea associated with enterotoxigenic *E. coli* or other pathogens. There is also increasing interest in the role of glutamine in intestinal immune function. Glutamine is an important nitrogen
source for enterocytes and plays a key role in maintaining mucosal cell integrity and gut barrier function (den Hond et al. 1999). Key functions of lymphocytes are dependent on glutamine provision (Graham et al. 2000). Glutamine depletion results in immunosuppression, whereas glutamine administration has been found to have significant beneficial effects on the gut mucosal structure and intestinal immune function of piglets after weaning (Pierzynowski et al. 2001). Other studies on enhancing intestinal immune function of piglets at weaning have included feeding nucleotides for 2–4 weeks after weaning. This was found to have an immune enhancing effect on piglets through improving T-cell-mediated responses (Cameron et al. 2001). This is an important area of research because finding cost-effective methods of enhancing immune responses in the young weaner would bring significant benefits to the pig industry.

**GUT FLORA**

The intestinal flora of the pig is extremely complex and diverse making it difficult to study quantitatively and qualitatively. However this is an area of increasing interest in relation to maintenance of gut health and optimal function. The intestinal microflora of the large intestine has been studied and reviewed by Robinson et al. (1981, 1984).

Marked changes occur in the gut environment (for example, pH and organic acids) and microbial activity along the gastrointestinal tract of pigs (Bach Knudson et al. 1991, 1993). Differences in the diet composition can impose further changes and could affect the diversity of the gut microflora. In an experiment involving diets containing different levels of soluble and insoluble NSP, a medium to high content of NSP resulted in higher microbial diversity in the small intestine (Högberg et al. 2001). The presence of fermentable carbohydrates in the diet stimulates gut microbial activity resulting in the production of organic acids.

The potential value of prebiotics (compounds, other than dietary nutrients, that act as substrates for populations of beneficial microbial organisms in the gut) and probiotics (preparations containing beneficial bacteria) has been the subject of many studies in relation to gut health and prevention of enteric infections. Prebiotics achieve their beneficial effects in two ways. First, compounds such as fructooligosaccharides can be fermented by favorable bacteria (e.g., *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli*) giving them competitive advantage (Houdijk 1998; Nemcová et al. 1999). Second, mannose-containing compounds added to the diet result in binding with pathogenic bacteria that have mannose-specific lectins in fimbiae—for example, *E. coli* and *Salmonella*. This reduces attachment of pathogenic bacteria to receptor sites on gut mucosal cells (McDonald et al. 2002). Inulin is a natural polymer of fructose extracted from chicory that is considered to have prebiotic properties (Gibson and Roberfroid 1995; Roberfroid et al. 1998). Digestion of inulin in weaned pigs is mainly microbial and takes place in the large intestine. There, it modifies the profile of fermentation metabolites resulting in an increase in N-valerate and propionate and a decrease in acetate and ammonia (Rossi et al. 1997). Using an in vitro adhesion assay for *E. coli*, 5% inulin was found to partially inhibit adhesion of F4 positive *E. coli* to the small intestinal villi. The study also suggested that inulin might have immunomodulatory effects by boosting IgA and IgM antibodies in pigs exposed to foreign proteins (Rossi et al. 2001). In newly weaned pigs, addition of fructooligosaccharide and/or sugar beet pulp to the diet tended to increase the number of intestinal *Bifidobacterium* species and reduce the level of *E. coli*, although there was little difference in the incidence of diarrhea (Kleingebink et al. 2001). The population of *Bifidobacterium* species is variable in piglets and constitutes less than 1% of the total bacterial population (Mikkelsen and Jensen 2001). Certain plant metabolites may interact with short chain fatty acids to create inhibitory conditions for pathogens such as *E. coli* 0157 (Duncan et al. 1998). The use of prebiotic is likely to be an area of growing scientific interest in the future.

Probiotics work on the principle of competitive exclusion of pathogenic bacteria and have been used successfully, for example, to control *Yersinia* infection in pigs (Asplund et al. 1996). Feeding probiotic bacteria, especially *Lactobacillus* species and *Bifidobacterium* species, may help with controlling enteric infections postweaning when the resident microflora are not yet stable. However, probiotics may also inhibit adherence of enteropathogenic *E. coli* and other gram-negative bacteria to enterocytes through occupying receptor sites (Spencer and Chesson 1994; Mack et al. 1999). This has potential for improved control of a wide range of enteric infections, particularly those of zoonotic importance such as *Salmonella* species and *Campylobacter* species. *Salmonella* infections in pigs are common resulting in clinical salmonellosis or subclinical disease (Lax et al. 1995). Up to 30% of finisher pigs might shed *Salmonella*, thereby presenting risk of carcass contamination at slaughter (Berends et al. 1996). *Campylobacter* is one of the most common causes of human enteric disease and has been isolated from a wide range of raw meats, including pork (Stern et al. 1985; Fricker and Park 1989; Zanetti et al. 1996). The predominant species in pigs is *Campylobacter coli* (Stern et al. 1985; Weitjens et al. 1993, 1997; Young et al. 2000); however, some pig farms can also have a high prevalence of *Campylobacter jejuni* (Harvey et al. 1999). Contact with the sow during the suckling period results in a high prevalence of *Campylobacter* in piglets, whereas piglets removed from the sow after 24 hours and reared in isolation units have significantly less *Campylobacter* (Harvey et al. 2001).
CONTROL OF ENTERIC INFECTIONS THROUGH DIETARY INTERVENTIONS

Following the European Union ban on the use of the majority of antibiotic growth promoters, alternative measures to control the number and activity of intestinal bacteria have been explored. These include changes in management practices, feeding, hygiene, and the use of products such as probiotics, prebiotics, enzymes, herbs and plant extracts, prefermented feeds, and organic acids (Thomke and Elwinger 1998). Additionally, selective breeding for resistance; improving the pig's immune response through the use of vaccines, cytokines, and other immunomodulatory agents; organic acids; inorganic chemicals—for example, zinc oxide; and use of specific bacteriophages or bacteriocins are also possible (Hampson et al. 2001). The mechanisms by which antimicrobial agents enhance growth and feed efficiency are poorly understood (Commission on Antimicrobial Feed Additives 1997; Anderson et al. 1999). Two of the suggested mechanisms are inhibition of subclinical bacterial infection and less translocation of pathogens, and changing the small intestinal mucosal structure, mainly by increasing villus height promoting uptake of nutrients from the digesta. Finding effective non-antimicrobial alternatives requires a good understanding of the mechanisms that promote the beneficial effects in different age groups of pigs.

Dietary Fiber and Cereals

Different forms of fiber in the diet can influence the composition and metabolic activity of the large intestinal microflora in pigs (Varel et al. 1982; Varel and Pond 1985; Bach Knudson et al. 1991; Jensen and Jorgenson 1994; Reid and Hillman 1999). However, little is known about the ways in which the commensal colonic microflora interacts with pathogenic bacteria; therefore, the basis of dietary control of infectious enteric diseases is not understood. Other ways in which diet could influence pathogenic enteric infections include changing the amount or balance of substrates available for the organism at particular sites, influencing the viscosity, accessibility to receptor sites, and/or intestinal motility. For example, different cereal types and particle sizes have been shown to alter epithelial cell proliferation and lectin binding patterns of the epithelium of the large intestine of pigs (Brunsgaard 1998). The diet can also influence intestinal function. Components in boiled rice inhibit secretion in the small intestine and therefore reduce the magnitude of secretory diarrhea due to pathogens such as enterotoxigenic E. coli (Mathews et al. 1999).

One of the most well-recognized examples of dietary effects on enteric pathology is gastric ulceration, in which ulceration of the pars oesophagea occurs particularly in growing and finishing pigs. Such lesions can be associated with reduced growth rates (Ayles et al. 1996) but more importantly can be a cause of gastric hemorrhage and perforation leading to acute illness and death (Friendship 1999). Many studies have demonstrated a strong association between finely ground high wheat diet and gastric ulceration (Accioly et al. 1998). The role of bacteria in the pathogenesis is unclear. The spiral bacterium Helicobacter heilmannii has been associated with gastric ulceration in some studies (Barbosa et al. 1995, Queiroz et al. 1996), whereas in other studies, the association was weak or equivocal (Phillips 1999). Experimental inoculation of gnotobiotic pigs with H. heilmannii failed to produce lesions of gastric ulceration in pigs fed on a carbohydrate-enriched liquid diet (Krakowa et al. 1998). However inoculation of pigs with Lactobacillus sp. and Bacillus sp. when fed the same diet did produce ulcers, possibly due to fermentation by these bacteria in the presence of readily available dietary substrate. It is possible that production of short chain fatty acids produced through the fermentation process resulted in ulceration (Krakowa et al. 1998).

Early studies on the influence of diet in postweaning colibacillosis have shown that high concentrations of dietary protein (21%) predispose to the condition (Prohaszka and Baron 1980), whereas highly digestible milk-based weaner diets were associated with reduced postweaning diarrhea (English 1981). Conversely, inclusion of fiber sources was suggested to reduce the severity and incidence of postweaning diarrhea (Bertschinger et al. 1978, Bolduan et al. 1988). Later studies compared the effects of feeding different postweaning diets in experimental E. coli challenge model. Diets included a highly digestible cooked rice/animal protein diet with or without the addition of guar gum or 50% pearl barley as sources of additional soluble NSP and a commercial wheat/lupin-based diet (McDonald et al. 1997, 1999, 2001). Significantly more E. coli were isolated from the small intestines of piglets fed the soluble NSP supplemented diet and the wheat/lupin-based diet than the highly digestible rice/animal protein diet alone. The reason for the increased E. coli numbers in piglets fed the “provocative” diets is uncertain, but factors involving the amount of substrate in the small intestine, the viscosity of the ingesta, the rate of intestinal motility, and different fermentation processes within the small intestine were all potentially significant.

Most work has been done on the influence of diet on swine dysentery. Whereas a cooked rice diet was found to be protective in some studies (Siba et al. 1996) it was not in others (Kirkwood et al. 2000, Lindeman et al. 2003). Feeding the cooked rice diet to pigs already affected with swine dysentery did not reduce the duration or severity of disease (Durmic et al. 2000). In a study of different cereal types, feeding steam-flaked maize or sorghum reduced the incidence of the disease (Pluske et al. 1996a). Soluble NSP and resistant starch were identified as important factors promoting large intestinal fermentation and bacterial colonization, whereas with the
addition of a source of mainly insoluble NSP (oat chaff) the diet remained protective (Pluske et al. 1998). Addition of enzymes to wheat-based diets or the use of heat extrusion to increase digestibility of starch in the small intestine were tested in terms of their potential protective effects in swine dysentery but neither processes prevented colonization (Durmic et al. 2000). Likewise the use of a sorghum-based diet was tested as sorghum is inherently low in soluble NSPs but this diet was not protective against swine dysentery (Durmic 2000). However, the grind size of diets was important, with significantly more pigs developing swine dysentery with coarsely ground wheat or sorghum than with these grains finely ground (Hampson et al. 2001). In porcine colonic spirochetosis, pigs on the cooked rice diet developed infection later and to a lesser extent than pigs on wheat-based diet (Hampson et al. 2000; Lindercrona et al. 2004).

Carriage of Oesophagostomum dentatum in pigs is enhanced by diets rich in insoluble fiber (Petkevicius et al. 1997).

Organic Acids and their Salts, Inorganic Compounds, and Fatty Acids

Alternatives to antibiotic inclusion in weaner diets have included the use of organic acids and their salts such as potassium diformate (Roth et al. 1998). Addition of 1.8% potassium diformate to a piglet starter ration decreased the counts of total anaerobic bacteria, lactic acid bacteria, yeasts, and coliforms in the digesta from the stomach, distal small intestine, cecum, and midcolon over a period of 4 weeks after weaning (Canibe et al. 2001). The apparent antimicrobial effects were attributed to the protons and anions formed from formic acid after passing through the bacterial cell wall. These have a disruptive effect on protein synthesis and inhibit bacterial enzymes, thereby reducing bacterial replication (Partenen and Mroz 1999). Other studies agree that coliform counts in the stomach and proximal colon decrease when levels of formic acid increase (Kirchgessner et al. 1992, Gabert et al. 1995), or when potassium diformate is used (Février et al. 2001). Supplementation of weaner diet with organic acids or other salts have been shown to reduce the incidence of postweaning diarrhea and improve growth performance of piglets (Sutton et al. 1991). When the coliform inhibitory effects of various organic acids were compared, the results going from most effective to least effective were benzoic, fumaric, lactic, butyric, formic, and propionic acid.

Feed supplemented with 2500 ppm zinc oxide has been shown to reduce postweaning diarrhea and has been widely used in commercial pig production, but the mechanism of action is unclear (Holm 1998). In a study of the effects of zinc oxide on the enteric flora, no differences were recorded between the zinc oxide-supplemented group and control group, in terms of the number of coliforms, enterococci, or Clostridium perfrin-

gen's excreted per gram of feces. However, there was an overall reduction in the diversity of the fecal coliform flora in the zinc oxide–treated pigs. In the second week postweaning zinc oxide treated pigs showed significant increases in growth rate over controls (Melin et al. 2001). However recent European Union (EU) legislation limits the maximum permissible level of zinc inclusion in pig diets to 150 ppm in EU member states (EU regulation No 1334/2003).

Fermented Liquid Feeds

Liquid feeding can improve the feed intake, growth, feed conversion, and health of weaner piglets (Brooks et al. 1996). However, steeping feed in water promotes bacterial proliferation in the feed, which reduces the quality of the feed and presents health risks. Feeding fermented liquid feed has been used as a means of controlling enteric infections through acidification. As part of the diet for newly weaned pigs, fermented liquid feed had beneficial effects on the villus height and ratio of villus height to crypt depth in the proximal jejunum (Scholten et al. 1999), as compared with the diet without fermented liquid wheat. The mechanism is uncertain but it could have been due to a lower pH, increased levels of organic acids, and an altered microbiological status. The use of fermented liquid feed in newly weaned piglets caused a significant reduction in the coliform population in the terminal ileum, cecum, and colon compared with piglets fed dried feed (Jensen and Mikkelsen 1998; Moran et al. 2001). Feed was prepared by inoculating the diet with lactic acid bacteria (Lactobacillus plantarum) and steeping it for 5 days at 25°C before feeding. Fermentation prevents bacterial colonization and spoilage of the liquid diet by enteropathogens and other spoilage bacteria. The fermentation temperature is important in relation to bacterial survival. E. coli was eliminated more effectively at 37°C than 20°C (Beal et al. 2001). There were also strain differences in terms of E. coli survival in fermented liquid feed, with F4 (K88) being the most resistant to killing by fermentation than others (Beal et al. 2001). The effect of temperature has implications for the management of fermented liquid feed systems. Cold-shock proteins help E. coli survive at lower temperature (Phadtare et al. 1999). Prefermented diets not only lower the acidity of the diet but also reduce the soluble NSP content of the diet (Hampson et al. 2001).

Piglets showed a significant preference for freshly prepared liquid feed over fermented liquid feed when given the choice (Demeckova et al. 2001). To prevent spoilage, chlorine dioxide added at 300 ppm was found to eliminate coliforms from liquid feeds for young piglets without adversely affecting palatability or growth performance (Demeckova et al. 2001). Chlorine dioxide is a strong oxidizing and phonatizing agent with broad antimicrobial spectrum, being active against bacteria and viruses (Junli et al. 1997). Addition of chlorine dioxide to freshly prepared wet feed did not signifi-
cantly alter the intake, as compared with nonsanitized freshly prepared wet feed. Chlorine dioxide is reported to kill *E. coli* through loss of permeability control of the outer bacterial cell membrane (Berg et al. 1986).

**REHYDRATION OF DIARRHEIC PIGLETS**

Oral rehydration fluids are used in piglets with acute diarrhea especially during outbreaks of enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC) and rotavirus infections. Studies in rats and clinical studies in children have shown that reducing the osmolality of oral rehydration solutions has beneficial effects on the course of diarrhea and the clinical outcome (Thillainayagam et al. 1998). Using an experimental pig model Kiers et al. (2001a) demonstrated that solutions with low osmolality promoted intestinal fluid absorption, although ETEC infection resulted in a decrease in net fluid absorption independent of osmolality, as compared with that of unaffected tissue.

In an experimental model mold-fermented soya bean products were found to be beneficial in maintaining fluid balance during postweaning ETEC infection through preventing fluid loss (Kiers et al. 2001b). The mechanism is uncertain. It might interfere with the attachment of *E. coli* to epithelial cells or modulate the effects of toxin in the intestine.

**REGIONAL DISEASES AND PATHOLOGY OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM**

**The Oral Cavity**

There are several recognized congenital defects affecting the oral cavity. Cleft palate and palatoschisis are both multifactorial developmental abnormalities. Cleft palate in piglets has occurred with feeding poisonous plants such as poison hemlock (*Conium maculatum*) or wild tree tobacco (*Nicotiana glauca*) to sows or gilts in early pregnancy (Keeler and Crowe 1983; Panter et al. 1985). Likewise, accidental contamination of sow feed with seeds of *Crotalaria retusa* during pregnancy has resulted in palatoschisis in piglets (Hooper and Scanlan 1977). Brachygnathia superior (shortness of maxillae) is an inherited condition that is progressive and may be confused with progressive atrophic rhinitis. Hyper trophy of the tongue is a rare congenital anomaly in pigs that interferes with normal sucking behavior. Epitheliogenesis imperfecta affects gingiva and tongue and can be seen as irregular, well-demarcated red areas that are devoid of epithelial tissue.

Oral lesions arising from traumatic damage are relatively common. Gingivitis and periodontal inflammation is usually associated with poor teeth clipping technique resulting in damage to the gingival epithelium. Stomatitis and tooth root abscesses may follow. *Fusobacterium necrophorum* is a common isolate from such lesions. Pigs have a diverticulum of the pharynx in the posterior wall immediately above the esophagus. Barley awns and other fibrous materials can lodge there and penetrate the pharynx causing pharyngeal cellulitis. This is usually seen only in young pigs. Stomatitis can also be caused by irritant chemicals, such as caustic or toxic compounds, and by physical burns. Blistering and erosion of the snout epithelium can arise due to sunburn.

A number of important infectious diseases show lesions on the snout and oral tissues. These are primarily the viral vesicular diseases, including foot and mouth disease, swine vesicular disease, and vesicular stomatitis. Lesions include blanching of the epithelium, vesicles, erosions, and epithelial flaps. Sunburn and occasionally parvovirus infection can cause lesions on the snout resembling vesicular diseases. Ulcerative glossitis and stomatitis have been reported in piglets with exudative epidermitis. Piglets may also develop ulcers on the dorsum of the tongue and occasionally on the hard palate associated with *Staphylococcus hyicus* infection (Andrews 1979). Oral erosions and ulcers can also be seen in piglets with congenital swine pox. *Actinobacillus lignieresii* can cause swelling and inflammation of the tongue, with nodule and ulcer formation. Soft tissues of the pharynx and neck can also be affected. Of the parasitic infections, *Trichinella spiralis* can affect the tongue and muscles of mastication. *Gongylonema* species has been found in the mucosa of the tongue in grazing pigs where they cause mild, localized inflammation (Zinter and Migaki 1970).

The tonsils have a strategic role in immune surveillance of the oropharynx. A host of bacterial agents, including *Streptococcus suis* and Pasteurellae, are frequently carried in the tonsils. Crypt inflammation and lymphoid hyperplasia are associated with bacterial infections. Necrotizing tonsillitis occurs in Aujeszky’s disease; the tonsils being the site of primary virus replication (Terpstra and Wensvoort 1988). Tonsillitis is also a feature of swine vesicular disease. Hemorrhagic necrotizing tonsillitis can occur in pigs with anthrax.

There are few reported problems concerning the salivary glands in pigs, but sialoadenitis occurs in vitamin A deficiency (Barker et al. 1993). The interlobular ducts of the salivary glands undergo squamous metaplasia leading to salivary stasis, secondary infection, and purulent inflammation. This results in pronounced swelling of salivary glands. Epithelial degeneration of salivary ducts is seen in swine vesicular disease.

**The Esophagus**

Conditions affecting the esophagus are uncommon but include hyperkeratosis, parakeratosis, mycotic infection, obstructions, and traumatic lesions. Hyperkeratosis and thickening of the epithelium are associated with vitamin A deficiency or chlorinated naphthalene toxicity. Parakeratosis of the esophagus occurs in pigs with cutaneous parakeratosis due to zinc deficiency. Parakeratotic thickening of the epithelium of the distal
esophagus, with basal hyperplasia of the epithelium is commonly seen in pigs with ulceration of the pars oesophagea of the stomach. Reflux esophagitis is recognized in some pigs with ulceration of the pars oesophagea. The gastric secretion has corrosive effects on the squamous epithelium resulting in mucosal erosion, ulceration, and inflammation.

Mycotic esophagitis caused by *Candida albicans* can occur in suckling piglets and weaners that are immunocompromised and have been given repeated antibiotic treatment or in piglets in which the mucosal flora has been significantly disrupted for some reason.

Obstruction and/or perforation of the esophagus are associated with ingestion of large objects such as stones, potatoes, apples, or corncobs. Perforation can result from ingestion of sharp objects such as fence wire or nails. Inflammation and subsequent stricture are sequelae that affect the esophagus at the site of perforation. Such conditions lead to dysphagia and distension of the esophagus cranial to the site of obstruction or stricture. Encephalitis affecting the medulla oblongata and/or the nuclei or tracts of the cranial nerves involved in swallowing (V, IX, X, XII) also results in dysphagia. Such conditions are very rare in the pig. Nematode parasites (*Gongylonema* species) occasionally occur in the esophageal mucosa leaving serpentine-shaped tracts. However, these parasites do not appear to have any adverse effects in pigs.

**The Stomach**

Conditions affecting the stomach are mainly physical or functional in nature, the most important being gastrointestinal ulceration affecting the pars oesophagea. The prevalence in growing and finishing pigs varies between farms but it can be high under modern conditions of pig husbandry. The majority of lesions are subclinical, and most studies indicate that mild lesions have little impact on growth or production. Severe ulceration of the pars oesophagea is associated with clinical illness and death. Pigs become anorexic, pale, with intermittent melena, and they die suddenly due to gastric hemorrhage. In such cases, ulcers are substantial lesions. The cause is unclear, but repeated studies have shown that finely ground rations and a high wheat component in the diet are significant factors. Clinically, hemorrhage from gastric ulcers should be differentiated from other causes of melena including proliferative hemorrhagic enteropathy, swine dysentery, and intestinal torsion. This condition is described in more depth in the chapter specifically relating to gastric ulceration (Chapter 54).

Gastric overdistension can occur in adult pigs especially in sows but the cause is uncertain. It is thought to be associated with excessive intake of finely ground grain and water, resulting in excessive fermentation and gaseous distension. Gastric volvulus is thought to be due to rapid intake of large quantities of feed and water followed by physical activity in a competitive group situation. Clockwise torsion is apparently most common, although torsion can occur in either direction about the long axis of the stomach. The spleen is often involved and becomes extremely enlarged due to blood engorgement (Morin et al. 1984). The stomach becomes massively distended with gas and fluid, and intense mucosal congestion develops. This condition is rapidly fatal. Gastric foreign bodies such as stones are frequently found in stomachs of outdoor sows that are maintained on stony ground. Stone chewing is a regular activity and swallowing of the stones is thought to be accidental. Large quantities of gastric stones have been recorded in some sows, limiting the capacity of feed intake and resulting in loss of body condition.

Gastric venous infarction occurs in pigs, usually in association with severe bacterial infections or toxemia. The lesion can also be seen in classical swine fever. The mucosa in the fundic area becomes reddish black in color and caseous mucosal necrosis may be evident. Thrombosis of capillaries and venules in the mucosa and submucosa with fibrin-plugging is the cause of infarction. Multifocal areas of gastric infarction have also been recorded in cases of porcine dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome (PDNS), due to fibrinoid vasculitis of capillaries. Edema of the stomach wall is a characteristic change in edema disease caused by specific strains of *E. coli*. Edema affects the submucosa, particularly on the greater curvature of the stomach. Other conditions causing gastric edema include hypoproteinemias, arsenic toxicity, and portal hypertension. In these conditions, edematous changes are less pronounced than those of “edema disease.”

Gastritis in pigs is most commonly associated with ulceration of the pars oesophagea and the inflammatory sequelae affecting tissue in the cardiac zone of the stomach, as previously mentioned. Candidiasis of the pars oesophagea may occur in association with preulcerative epithelial hyperplasia and parakeratosis. Gastritis could occur due to accidental intake of toxic compounds—such as arsenic, thallium, formalin, bronopol, and phosphatic fertilizers—and by the toxic principles in bitterweed (*Hymenoxon odorata*) or the blister beetle (*Epicanta* sp.). In commercial farming, such conditions are very rare and should be easy to exclude. Mycotic gastritis is occasionally seen in piglets, usually in association with repeated use of antibiotics. Lesions present as multifocal yellowish plaques on the gastric mucosa, with intense congestion of the peripheral gastric mucosa. Fungal hyphae colonize the mucosa and invade tissue and capillaries resulting in thrombosis. Agents are usually zygomycetes such as *Rhizopus, Absidia* or *Mucor* species. *Aspergillus* species involvement is rare (Mahanta and Chaudhury 1985).

Parasitic gastritis is now rare in commercial pig farms. Of the parasites that can cause gastritis, *Hyoscyronylus rubidus* is of most importance because it is associated with poor growth rates or loss of body condition in
adult pigs. Other parasites that can cause mild gastritis in heavy infections include *Ascarops* sp., *Simondsia* sp., and *Physcocephalus* sp. The parasite *Gnathostoma* sp. invades the mucosa and undergoes development within inflammatory cysts in the submucosa. In heavy infestations this parasite can cause thickening of the stomach wall.

**The Intestinal Tract**

Atresia ani is the most common congenital defect of the intestinal tract of pigs and it is believed to be hereditary (Norrish and Rennie 1968). It arises due to failure of perforation of the membrane separating endodermal hindgut from ectodermal anal membrane. Evident at birth, the defect can be corrected by minor surgery unless atresia of the rectum is also present. Persistent Meckel’s diverticulum is a rare anomaly in which there is persistence of the omphalomesenteric duct. It presents as a tube of intestinal tissue similar to ileum that branches from the intestine to the umbilicus. Occasionally, it can be involved in abdominal catastrophes such as intestinal strangulation.

Intestinal displacement and obstruction is common in pigs, and a number of different conditions arise.

Rectal prolapse is relatively common in growing pigs and is associated with a number of factors resulting in an increase in intraabdominal pressure. These include persistent coughing, straining associated with enteritis and diarrhea, excessive huddling of pigs kept in cold conditions, pigs gorging on liquid feeding, and feeding of flatulent diets. Feeds high in zearalenone have also been associated with rectal prolapse. Some prolapses resolve spontaneously, but more commonly the tissue becomes traumatized or removed by penmates followed by scar formation as part of the healing process. This results in rectal stricture and progressive obstruction leading to marked distension of the colon (Figure 3.1). Such pigs fail to thrive and die unless corrective action is taken. Rectal stricture can also be a sequel to ulcerative proctitis of ischemic origin caused by *Salmonella enterica* Typhimurium infection. Occasionally, severe intestinal prolapse can accompany vaginal prolapse, via laceration to the vaginal fornix. Intestinal impaction and obstruction can occur in a variety of situations—for example, deaths have occurred in piglets maintained on woodshavings or other fibrous materials such as peat due to impaction of the ileum or colon with such materials (Figure 3.2). On occasions, heavy infestations of *Ascaris suum* have been found to cause small intestinal impaction in piglets. Herniation of the intestine is most commonly associated with a patent umbilicus. Small lesions are of little consequence, but large pendulous lesions become traumatized, with increased risk of intestinal strangulation within the hernia, unless the defect is corrected surgically.

Torsion of the long axis of the mesentery is a common condition in pigs and leads to rapid death. The torsion may involve small intestine or both small and large intestine (Figure 3.3). Rotation is usually anticlockwise when viewed from the ventrocaudal aspect. Torsion is associated with pigs making sudden unpredictable movements, such as sudden deceleration combined with abrupt changes in direction, particularly when the gut is filled—for example, after feeding or drinking a large volume of water, or when the intestines are gas-filled due to pigs being on a highly fermentable ration. Once torsion occurs, pigs rapidly develop distension of the abdomen. The intestinal loops become very turgid and reddish black in color. The mesenteric vasculature is extremely engorged due to obstruction to the venous return. Other forms of intestinal catastrophe, such as volvulus of a short length of small intestine followed by strangulation of the affected portion, occur more rarely.

Many forms of inflammatory and degenerative changes can affect small and large intestine. In its simplest form, loss of surface enterocytes occurs with enteropathogenic *E. coli* and viral infections, including ro-
tavirus and coronaviruses. Fluid exudation is a consequence of this epithelial loss and results in watery diarrhea and dehydration. Villous atrophy is particularly associated with coronavirus and rotavirus infections. Intestinal erosion and necrotizing enteritis in young pigs is often associated with *C. perfringens* type C infection. *Cryptosporidium (C. parvum)* infection in neonatal piglets causes villous atrophy, stunting and fusion of villi, with diarrhea due to malabsorption. Intestinal ulceration is associated with salmonellosis and ulcerative typhlocolitis, with swine dysentery. So-called “button ulcers” alert concerns of classical swine fever, but they are also associated with *Salmonella choleraesuis* infection and porcine dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome (Figure 3.4). Similar lesions have also been recorded in pigs infected with bovine viral diarrhea virus (Terpstra and Wensvoort 1988). Degeneration of intestinal crypt epithelium is associated with coccidial infection and bovine viral diarrhea virus infection. In coccidiosis due to *Isospora suis* damage caused by coccidial development in the villous and crypt epithelium will result in villous atrophy, intestinal erosions, and fibrinonecrotic enteritis, mainly affecting the distal jejunum and ileum. Hyperplasia of crypt epithelium is the major feature of *Lawsonia intracellularis* infection and leads to thickening of the mucosa in the ileum and/or colon (Figure 3.5). Inflammatory cell infiltration occurs in response to any cause of disruption to the epithelial barrier as well as enteropathogenic infections. Mucosal microabscesses are a feature of yersiniosis; both *Yersinia enterocolitica* and *Y. pseudotuberculosis* affect pigs.

Diseases affecting the intestinal tract are among the most important economic problems affecting pig production. The prevalence of diseases in pigs varies between countries, farming systems and units with different health status. Within farms the disease situation is dynamic and the prevalence can alter quite dramatically between batches for no apparent reason. Multiple enteric infections can occur concurrently, giving rise to complex clinical disease patterns and difficulties in arriving at successful control measures. The major diseases are mentioned only briefly here; detailed descriptions of all are given in other chapters.

In neonatal piglets, enterotoxigenic *E. coli* remains the most important disease, with *C. perfringens* type C causing problems in certain units, most notably in outdoor farming systems (Figure 3.6). Both diseases can be controlled by vaccination of breeding stock provided piglets receive adequate colostrum intake within hours of birth, prior to intestinal “closure.” The availability of breeding stock that is genetically resistant to *E. coli* F4 (K88) strains heralds a new and exciting era in the control of enteric disease through genetic selection. Other infections that are commonly reported in the young unweaned pig include rotavirus and coccidiosis (*I. suis*), with cryptosporidia also being implicated in some units. It is rare for *Salmonella* infection to cause significant enteric disease in unweaned pigs though subclinical infection, and shedding can occur as a result of contact with sow feces. The viral diseases transmissible gastroenteritis (TGE) and porcine epidemic diarrhea (PED) cause severe morbidity and mortality in susceptible piglets. Vomiting and wasting disease caused by
hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis virus is associated with vomiting and wasting in suckling piglets, but it appears to have reduced in prevalence globally over the last 10–15 years. Porcine adenovirus infection is usually asymptomatic but occasionally is associated with diarrhea and vomiting, with reduced growth rates in piglets from 2–7 weeks of age. Bovine viral diarrhea virus, though a known pathogen of pigs, is rarely reported. Clostridium difficile is a recognized cause of necrotizing colitis in suckling piglets and it is also of zoonotic importance. However it appears to be a rare or rarely reported infection of pigs. Strongyloides sp. can affect pigs ranging from 10 days of age up to 3 months old. Parasites colonize the anterior half of the small intestine and cause villous atrophy and granulomatous enteritis, resulting in diarrhea and ill thrift.

A number of these preweaning infections are also capable of causing disease in young weaners. Postweaning E. coli continues to be a major cause of postweaning diarrhea and mortality, and diseases such as rotavirus, coccidiosis, and cryptosporidiosis can rarely affect piglets up to 6 weeks of age. The disease patterns in units change dramatically when immunosuppression is a feature. The emergence of postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS), which has occurred in many countries, has dramatically altered patterns of enteric disease. The generalized lymphoid depletion that occurs in weaners with PMWS includes depletion of intestinal Peyer’s patches and mesenteric lymph nodes. In units with PMWS, the age range of susceptibility to diseases such as rotavirus, cryptosporidiosis, and coccidiosis increases up to 4–6 weeks, and these enteric diseases play a significant role in the general ill-thrift problems suffered by pigs.

Diarrhea is a feature of PMWS outbreaks and in many instances no enteropathogenic agents are isolated or detected. Histologically the jejunum and ileum may show a viral-type enteropathy, primarily villous atrophy. Whether this is directly related to the disease pathogenesis or whether it is caused by one or more opportunistic viruses that are unrecognized as yet remains unknown. Another equally important feature associated with PMWS is mild bacterial-type colitis. Often bacterial cultures fail to show any recognized bacterial pathogen but yield a mixed growth of commensal-type organisms. Histology of the colon shows mixed bacterial infection of crypts and surface epithelium, accompanied by crypt inflammation and goblet cell hyperplasia in chronic cases. This suggests that there is an opportunistic bacterial overgrowth or dysbacteriosis in the colon of affected pigs, possibly associated with altered enteric immune processes.

Through growing and finishing periods the most important economic-limiting diseases continue to be swine dysentery, porcine proliferative enteropathy (PPE), and porcine colonic spirochetosis. In PPE, significant progress has been made with the development of serological tests that can be used for herd profiling and more recently, development of an orally administered vaccine that has proved successful in controlling PPE in commercial units. In contrast, there are no commer-
cially available serological tests for swine dysentery or porcine colonic spirochetosis, and to date, vaccine studies have proved unsuccessful. The prevalence of Brachyspira pilosicoli varies between countries. This infection is becoming increasingly recognized as a cause of diarrhea and reduced growth rates. The infection may also be mild or subclinical. Mixed infections involving Brachyspira hyodysenteriae, Brachyspira pilosicoli, L. intracellularis, Salmonella sp., and Yersinia sp. are common in grow-finish herds with diarrhea and colitis (Figure 3.7). Achieving the correct diagnosis and finding effective control measures pose significant challenges for the swine veterinarian.

The prevalence of parasitic infections varies considerably between units. Many units have achieved total freedom of enteric parasites, such as Ascaris suum, Oesophagostomum sp., Trichuris sp., and Hyostrongylus sp. However “white spot liver” is commonly reported on abattoir surveys indicating that A. suum infection is still a notable health problem in some units (Figure 3.8). Trichuris suis and Oesophagostomum sp. can be causes of colitis that are often overlooked until nonresponse to antibiotic agents results in further investigation. Rarely, coccidiosis (I. suis) can cause acute enteritis and colitis in naive young adult pigs that are introduced into a heavily infected environment. Similarly, the hemorrhagic enteropathy form of PPE can cause acute hemorrhagic diarrhea and deaths in naive young adult pigs introduced into an infected environment. Eimeria sp. affect older pigs when exposed to yards and pasture contaminated with oocysts. Some Eimeria sp. are considered to be potentially pathogenic, causing villous atrophy and enteritis. Balantidium coli is commonly present in the large intestine of pigs. It is a commensal organism but commonly invades the mucosa if other degenerative or necrotizing lesions are present.

In addition to the common endemic diseases already mentioned, the serious epidemic diseases classical swine fever (CSF) and African swine fever (ASF) have an important enteric component. Suspected outbreaks should be reported and investigated appropriately in order to control the outbreak and limit the spread of infection. TGE and PED can cause severe diarrhea in all age groups of pigs in addition to the serious morbidity and mortality that occur in suckling piglets in particular. In Aujeszky’s disease, necrotizing enteritis can affect the distal small intestine in addition to the more commonly recognized lesions of necrotizing rhinitis and tonsillitis. Control of TGE, CSF, ASF, and Aujeszky’s disease by vaccination is the best method of control in some countries where disease eradication is not possible due to geographic, social, or political reasons or where there is a constant and uncontrollable threat from wildlife vectors.

The Liver

Congenital anomalies affecting the pig liver are rare. One recognized condition is a cystic anomaly affecting bile ducts. The liver is enlarged and shows numerous fluctuating cystic lesions containing bile. The enlarged liver causes abdominal distension and piglets have poor viability.

Traumatic conditions affecting the liver are important. In neonatal piglets, rupture of the liver and fatal hemorrhage is a consequence of trauma, usually inflicted accidentally by the sow. Torsion of one or more liver lobes can affect pigs of any age. It usually affects the left lateral lobe and results in infarction of the lobe. Death occurs due to shock or hepatic rupture and hemorrhage. Hepatosis dietetica is a diet-associated condition in which there is massive hepatic necrosis. Experimentally, concurrent deficiencies of sulphur-containing amino acids, tocopherols, and selenium are required for development of hepatosis dietetica. The pathogenesis is not fully understood but it is thought to be associated with formation of free radicals and their subsequent...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Gross Lesions</th>
<th>Histological Lesions</th>
<th>Laboratory Confirmation—Commonly Used Methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotavirus</td>
<td>1 day to 7 weeks old. Most frequent at 2–3 weeks of age.</td>
<td>Watery to pasty diarrhea, may be subclinical. Varying degrees of dehydration.</td>
<td>Fluid ingesta, pale intestines. Sparse stomach contents.</td>
<td>Moderate villous atrophy.</td>
<td>Virus detection: PAGE, PCR, ELISA detection kits. Tissue IHC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coronaviruses: TGE virus PED virus</td>
<td>All ages.</td>
<td>Watery diarrhea. Rapid dehydration. Vomiting often seen.</td>
<td>Thin-walled pale intestine, sparse content.</td>
<td>Severe villous atrophy.</td>
<td>Bacterial detection by PCR, culture of feces or tissue. Histopathology, IHC, ISH of tissue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lawsonia intracellularis</em></td>
<td>From approximately 5 weeks old to young adults.</td>
<td>Usually pasty to sloppy diarrhea. In PHE watery hemorrhagic (port wine colored) diarrhea, pale carcass, weakness, ataxia.</td>
<td>Ileitis and/or colitis. Thickenened mucosa, sometimes necrotic or ulcerated. In PHE, blood clots in ileum and/or colon, carcass pale.</td>
<td>Crypt epithelial hyperplasia, crypt abscesses. Small curved rods in hyperplastic epithelial cells (silver stain). In PHE, blood exudation into crypts through intact epithelium.</td>
<td>Bacterial detection by PCR on feces or intestinal mucosa. Histopathology, IP, IHC, ISH on tissue. Antibody detection by serology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Brachyspira hyodysenteriae</em></td>
<td>From approximately 6 weeks old to adult.</td>
<td>Pasty, sloppy diarrhea, may be mucoid hemorrhagic. Lethargy.</td>
<td>Typhlo-colitis, fibrinous pseudomembranes, exudation, erosions, ulceration, hemorrhage. Mucoid content in chronic cases.</td>
<td>Epithelial erosions, goblet-cell hyperplasia, inflammation, fibrin exudation, hyperplasia crypts with mucus. Large spirochetes present (silver stain).</td>
<td>Bacterial detection by PCR, culture of feces or tissue. Histopathology, IHC, ISH of tissue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Brachyspira pilosicoli</em></td>
<td>From approximately 6 weeks to 4 months old.</td>
<td>Pasty, sloppy diarrhea.</td>
<td>Mild to moderate colitis. Lesions milder than <em>B. hyodysenteriae</em>.</td>
<td>Similar to <em>B. hyodysenteriae</em> but milder. End-on attachment of spirochetes to surface epithelium seen in some cases.</td>
<td>Bacterial detection by PCR, culture of feces or tissue. Histopathology, IHC, ISH of tissue.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 3.1. Differential diagnosis of some common enteric diseases of swine (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Gross Lesions</th>
<th>Histological Lesions</th>
<th>Laboratory Confirmation—Commonly Used Methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Salmonella sp.</em></td>
<td>All ages after weaning (rarely preweaning).</td>
<td>Variable, watery mucohemorrhagic. Most infections subclinical.</td>
<td>Fibrinous or hemorrhagic, ulcers, lesions in small and/or large intestine.</td>
<td>Diffuse or focal ulcers, neutrophil infiltration, fibrinous thrombi.</td>
<td>Bacterial detection by culture, serotype, phage type. Antibody detection by mix-ELISA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Yersinia sp.</em></td>
<td>From approximately 6 weeks to 4 months old.</td>
<td>Pasty, sloppy diarrhea.</td>
<td>Mild enteritis and/or colitis.</td>
<td>Mild chronic, active enteritis and/or colitis, microabscesses, granulomas.</td>
<td>Bacterial detection by culture.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** EPEC = enteropathogenic *E. coli*; ETEC = enterotoxigenic *E. coli*; IF = immunofluorescence; IHC = immunohistochemistry; ISH = in situ hybridization; PAGE = polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis; PCR = polymerase chain reaction test; PED = porcine epidemic diarrhea; PHE = proliferative hemorrhagic enteropathy; TGE = transmissible gastroenteritis.
adverse effects. It affects rapidly growing pigs and causes sudden death.

Many systemic diseases cause nonspecific changes in the liver, including congestion and inflammatory cell infiltration. Hemorrhages are a feature of septicemia, for example, salmonellosis, especially \textit{S. choleraesuis} infection. Multifocal white nodules, so-called “paratyphoid nodules,” are associated with chronic \textit{S. choleraesuis} infection. Parasitism is undoubtedly the most common condition affecting the liver. Migrating \textit{Ascaris suum} larvae cause mechanical damage in the form of hemorrhagic tracts that initiate intense inflammation. Reactive changes, both repair of tissue and hypersensitivity reaction to excretory and secretory products of larvae, cause eosinophil infiltration and fibrosis. “White spot” livers are an economic loss to the farmer (Figure 3.9). In heavy infestations, adult ascarids can migrate up the bile duct or pancreatic duct causing obstruction, jaundice, and cholangitis (Figure 3.10). Other parasitic infections affecting the liver include \textit{Cysticercus tениcolis}, the metacestode of the tapeworm \textit{Taenia hydatigena} (of dogs). Cysts can sometimes be found in the pig peritoneal cavity, often attached to the liver. Immature cysticerci migrate through the liver causing tortuous hemorrhagic tracts before emerging to encyst. \textit{Stephanurus dentatus} infection results in migratory tracts and hepatitis. Portal phlebitis with thrombus formation in the portal vein are additional features following oral infection.

Toxicities affecting the liver can be acute or chronic in nature. Cresol toxicity is caused by exposure to tar compounds that might have been used in construction of piggery buildings, accidental environmental spillage, or “clay pigeons” used as shooting targets. Lesions include severe hepatocellular necrosis leading to sudden death. Chronic cresol toxicity results in jaundice, ascites, and anemia on account of chronic, progressive destruction of hepatic tissue. Iron toxicity occurs occasionally in neonatal piglets, with deaths occurring within 24 hours of iron-dextran administration. Toxicity is associated with marginal or deficient vitamin E and selenium status. Iron-catalyzed lipoperoxidation occurs in liver and muscle resulting in hepatic necrosis and hepatic hemorrhages. Aflatoxicosis is caused by the use of cereals contaminated with \textit{Aspergillus} species or \textit{Penicillium puberulum}. Lesion development is a chronic process in which there is liver hypertrophy and progressive fibrosis. The condition results in reduced growth rates and liver condemnations.

The Pancreas

There has been little focus on pancreatic conditions in pigs. Pancreatic hypoplasia is rare and associated with poor growth in individual weaner pigs. The pancreatic duct can be invaded by \textit{Ascaris suum} in piglets with heavy infestations. This can lead to obstruction of the pancreatic duct resulting in pancreatic necrosis and acute pancreatitis.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{image1.png}
\caption{3.9. “White spot” liver in a 5-month-old pig, associated with Ascaris suum larval migration.}
\end{figure}

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{image2.png}
\caption{3.10. Ascaris suum in the common bile duct of a 6-week-old piglet that was heavily infested.}
\end{figure}

REFERENCES

physiology of pigs. je Lindberg, bogle, eds. Wallingford, uk: cab international, pp. 109–120.


Hampson DJ, Robertson ID, La T, Oxberry SL, Pethick DW. 2000.


Siiba PM, Pethick DW, Hampson DJ. 1996. Pigs experimentally infected with Serpulina hylosenteriae can be protected from developing swine dysentery by feeding them a highly digestible diet. Epidemiol Infect 116:207–216.


Inadequate sow milk production leads to reduced piglet growth and, in certain cases, to increased mortality in the litter. The first section of this chapter focuses on a good understanding of the normal physiologic processes involved in the initiation and maintenance of sow lactation and on how these processes relate to piglet growth and mortality. Factors affecting the milk production of sows are numerous but can be synthesized in three major groups:

1. The number of lactocytes (or epithelial cells) producing the milk (see mammary gland)
2. The intensity of milk synthesis by lactocyte (see physiology)
3. The capacity of the other organs and systems to supply the nutrients needed by the mammary gland (see homeorhesis)

The second section of this chapter covers some strategies to increase overall milk production of sows (see manipulating milk production) and the possible etiologies of early lactational problems (see infectious and noninfectious causes of postpartum dysgalactia syndrome) as well as treatment and prevention procedures.

**MILK PRODUCTION OF SOWS**

**Measuring Milk Production**

Measuring milk production in the sow is more complicated than in other farm animals. The small teats and the large number of functional mammary glands (12–14) make hand or mechanical milking difficult. Moreover, since milk is not available continually after the colostral phase, milk ejection must be stimulated and sows would have to be milked more than 24 times a day to mimic the piglets (Hernandez et al. 1987). Consequently, sow milk production is usually estimated by taking a number of measurements during the day and extrapolating to the whole day. Seven to eight measurements over a 24-hour period are reported to provide a good estimate of daily milk production (Salmon Legagneur 1965; Mahan et al. 1971). After the colostral phase, milk letdown has to be initiated with exogenous oxytocin (see oxytocin in the treatment section).

Best results are obtained by methods using the piglets to estimate sow milk output. However, in the first part of lactation, when milk production aptitude is greater than the ingestion capacity of the piglets, these methods underestimate the milk production capacity of the mammary gland. In the second part of lactation, when milk supply is a limiting factor for piglet growth, these methods should give a good estimation of the milk production capacity of the sow.

**Milking the Sow.** Sows can either be hand-milked, which requires a lot of manual labor, or milked with a milking machine. The first sow milking machine was developed following the discovery of the role of oxytocin for milk ejection (Salmon Legagneur 1959). More recently, milking machines have been used to compare milk production between teats (Fraser et al. 1985) and breeds (Grun et al. 1993a). The use of a milking machine has been reported to give much more repeatable estimates of sow milk production than those obtained by hand milking (Fraser et al. 1985); yet, these are not available commercially.

**Sow Weight Loss During Suckling Periods.** Weighing the sow before and after a suckling period is another recognized but seldom used approach for measuring milk production. Its greatest drawback is a major lack of precision because the weight ratio between milk ejected during each nursing period and sow body weight is approximately 1:1000 (Salmon Legagneur 1956).

**Weigh-Suckle-Weigh.** The weigh-suckle-weigh (WSW) method has been used extensively during the past years and involves repeated weighing of piglets, preceding and following nursing, for a certain number of sucklings. Apart from the suckling periods, the piglets do not
have access to the teats. The general approach is to remove the piglets from the sow 1 hour prior to the first suckling period. The following nursing periods occur at fixed intervals varying between 45 and 60 minutes, and last on average 4–5 minutes. Before each suckling period, the piglets are placed on a cold or wet surface to induce urination and defecation. The piglets can be weighed individually, as half the litter, or as a litter (Barber et al. 1955; Salmon Legagneur 1956; Mahan et al. 1971; Lewis et al. 1978; Noblet and Etienne 1989). The first two estimations should generally be discarded because of their great variability (Speer and Cox 1984). One of the main problems with this technique is to adjust for piglet urinary, fecal, and metabolic losses.

**Piglet Growth.** Although conceptually simple, measuring piglet growth has not generally been considered sufficiently precise for lactation studies. The first studies reported that piglet growth was a poor predictor of sow milk production ($R^2 < 0.50$) (Salmon Legagneur 1956; Lewis et al. 1978). These low predictions were likely due to the difficulty in adequately estimating sow milk production. Indeed, recent work demonstrated that milk production over different parts of lactation can be adequately predicted by using piglet growth ($R^2$ between 0.84 and 0.96) (Noblet and Etienne 1989). Based on these equations and other observations, a conversion efficiency of approximately 4.5 g of milk per gram of growth has been estimated (Lewis et al. 1978; Noblet and Etienne 1989).

**Body Water Turnover.** Milk production can also be estimated by measuring water turnover in the piglet. This method measures the dilution of endogenous water by water absorbed from nursing (MacFarlane et al. 1969). Each piglet receives a known quantity of deuterium-labeled water by parenteral injection, prior to nursing. The difference in isotope concentration preceding and following nursing represents the dilution effect of milk absorption and is directly related to sow milk production. A correlation of 0.96 was found between the estimated and the actual milk intake of artificially reared piglets using this technique (Prawirodirdgo et al. 1987).

**Pattern of Milk Production**
Sow milk production is usually described in four phases: the colostral, ascending, plateau, and descending phases. Sows in modern production units usually do not reach the descending phase because they are weaned during the plateau phase at less than 28 days of lactation.

Typical sow milk production curves are presented in Figure 4.1 (Toner et al. 1996); they are similar to those presented by others (Noblet and Etienne 1986; Shoennherr et al. 1989; Grun et al. 1993b). In the latter publications, the end of the ascending phase was around day 14 postpartum, whereas it was reported to occur later (22–28 days) in some other publications (Elsley 1971; Harkins et al. 1989). This discrepancy may be related to differences in breeds, nutrition, and parities of the sows and in the methodology used to estimate milk production.

**Colostral Phase.** The term *colostrum* describes the mammary secretions obtained during the few days before and/or after parturition. Colostrum usually contains more proteins, mainly immunoglobulins; less fat; and less sugar than the milk produced after initiation of lactation (Dorland 1985). Mammary secretions contain 157, 130, 9, and 6 grams of protein per liter at 0, 6, 12, and more than 12 hours after the first suckling, respectively (Klobasa et al. 1987). Consequently, the colostral phase probably ends between 12 and 24 hours after the first suckling.

Mammary secretions obtained during the first 12 hours postpartum contain large amounts of immunoglobulins (60–80 g/L) (Klobasa et al. 1987). During this short period of time, mammary secretions are continuously available to the piglets, whereas after the colostral phase, milk availability becomes cyclical (de Passillé and Rushen 1989a). Within 48–72 hours postpartum, piglets establish a teat order in which each piglet consistently sucks from one or two specific teats (Fraser 1976; de Passillé et al. 1988; Roychoudhury et al. 1995). Within 48 hours after parturition, any unsuckled mammary gland goes through involution and becomes nonfunctional (Atwood and Hartmann 1993). Consequently, daily milk production and total milk production during lactation are proportional to the number of suckled mammary glands or to the number of piglets in the litter ($R^2 > 0.95$) (Auldist et al. 1998).

**Ascending Phase.** The ascending phase of lactation (approximately day 0 to 10) is explained by an increase in nursing frequency as well as an increase in the volume of milk obtained at each nursing. Nursing fre-
frequency doubled between day 2 and day 10 of lactation (17 vs. 35 nursings/day) (Jensen et al. 1991) and the quantity of milk obtained at each nursing is reported to increase from 29 to 53 g between the first and the third week of lactation (Campbell and Dunkin 1982).

During the ascending phase, sow milk production is adjusted to the needs of the piglets. Indeed, between days 4 and 8, litters of heavier piglets (4.45 kg at day 4) consume more milk (9.1 vs. 7.6 L/day) than litters of lighter piglets (1.92 kg) (King et al. 1997). It is well known that most piglets do not consume much creep feed before they are at least 10 days old (Aumaitre and Salmon Legagneur 1961). During the first 2 weeks of lactation, the heavier piglets at birth (1.39 kg) ingest more milk than their lighter littermates (0.89 kg); however, the milk consumption relative to body weight (g/kg of live weight) is similar for all piglets (Campbell and Dunkin 1982). The larger consumption observed among the heavier piglets was explained by a larger volume ingested at each nursing. It appears that during the ascending phase of lactation, the dynamic equilibrium state between the piglets needs and sow milk nutrient output is so well harmonized that litter size (8 vs. 11) has very little effect on piglet weight before day 7 of lactation (Klopfenstein et al. 1999) (Table 4.1).

Plateau Phase. After day 10 of lactation, milk production is maximal (Figure 4.1) (King et al. 1997); therefore, piglet growth may be inhibited by insufficient milk supply during the later part of lactation, and this inhibition will be greater with longer lactation and in larger litters (Table 4.1). The weight difference between suckling piglets supplemented or not with cow’s milk between days 7 and 28 of lactation was 140 g on day 14, 756 g on day 21, and 1761 g on day 28 (Reale 1987). Supplementation with milk replacer from day 3 to weaning also increased average piglet weight by 120 g on day 7, 340 g on day 14, and 910 g on day 21 (Wolter et al. 2002). It was also reported that, in a 21-day lactation, the growth limitation of suckling piglets could be more than 2 kg per pig (Harrell et al. 1993). When piglets are weaned at an early age (14–16 days), which is part of a new management procedure in the swine industry, the limiting effect is likely to be smaller.

Composition of Sow Milk

Sow milk is a complex water solution containing more than 100 different chemical components. The major components are lactose, proteins (casein, alpha-lactalbumin, beta-globulins, serum albumins, immunoglobulins G and A), lipids, lactocytes, leucocytes (neutrophils, eosinophils, lymphocytes, and macrophages), bivalent ions (calcium, phosphorus, and magnesium) and electrolytes (sodium, potassium, and chloride). The relative concentrations of these components vary according to the stage of lactation (Table 4.2). During the colostral phase protein content decreases rapidly mainly because of the fall in the concentrations of immunoglobulins.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Milk Components</th>
<th>Day 1–2</th>
<th>Day 10–15</th>
<th>Difference</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lactose (mmol/L)</td>
<td>160 ± 10</td>
<td>190 ± 10</td>
<td>+30</td>
<td>(Konar et al. 1971)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium (mmol/L)</td>
<td>25 ± 5</td>
<td>18 ± 5</td>
<td>−7</td>
<td>(Konar et al. 1971)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium (mmol/L)</td>
<td>75 ± 5</td>
<td>50 ± 5</td>
<td>−25</td>
<td>(Konar et al. 1971)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride (mmol/L)</td>
<td>25 ± 5</td>
<td>18 ± 5</td>
<td>−7</td>
<td>(Konar et al. 1971)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium (mmol/L)</td>
<td>12 ± 3</td>
<td>50 ± 3</td>
<td>+38</td>
<td>(Perrin 1955)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphate (mmol/L)</td>
<td>12 ± 1</td>
<td>14 ± 1</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>(Perrin 1955)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium (mmol/L)</td>
<td>4 ± 1</td>
<td>4 ± 1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(Perrin 1955)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total protein (g/L)</td>
<td>64 ± 6</td>
<td>51 ± 5</td>
<td>−13</td>
<td>(Klobasa et al. 1987)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipids (g/L)</td>
<td>65 ± 15</td>
<td>65 ± 15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(Klobasa et al. 1987)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somatic cells (k¢/ml)2</td>
<td>1060 ± 790</td>
<td>2012 ± 990</td>
<td>+952</td>
<td>(Schollenberger et al. 1986)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leucocytes (k¢/ml)2</td>
<td>748 ± 509</td>
<td>886 ± 519</td>
<td>+138</td>
<td>(Schollenberger et al. 1986)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactocytes (k¢/ml)1–2</td>
<td>152 ± 103</td>
<td>503 ± 315</td>
<td>+351</td>
<td>(Schollenberger et al. 1986)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anucleate cells (k¢/ml)1</td>
<td>147 ± 160</td>
<td>727 ± 63</td>
<td>+580</td>
<td>(Schollenberger et al. 1986)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% de leucocytes</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>−26</td>
<td>(Schollenberger et al. 1986)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2. Variation of sow milk composition (mean ± std) between the first days (day 1–2) and the plateau phase (day 10–15) of lactation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Litter Size</th>
<th>Age of the Piglets (Days)</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>28</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>2.82</td>
<td>4.62</td>
<td>6.42</td>
<td>8.21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.85</td>
<td>2.78</td>
<td>4.38</td>
<td>6.18</td>
<td>7.91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>2.72</td>
<td>4.40</td>
<td>6.18</td>
<td>7.89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1.88</td>
<td>2.72</td>
<td>4.21</td>
<td>5.60</td>
<td>7.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Data from a data base of 2000 piglet weights from the Agriculture Canada Research Station, Lennoxville, Quebec.

Source: adapted from Klopfenstein 2003.

1k¢ = 1000 cells.

2Somatic cells found in the first colostrum (<12 hours) contains many more cells than milk obtained at day 1–2 (>8000 k¢/ml, 98% leucocytes) (Evans et al. 1982; Magnusson et al. 1991).

3Leucocytes are the sum of neutrophils, eosinophils, lymphocytes, and macrophages.
Somatic Cells of Normal Milk. The somatic cell content of mammary secretions from healthy sows is much greater than that in milk of healthy cows: between 1 and 4 million cells per milliliter (M¢/ml) in sows (Evans et al. 1982; Schollenberger et al. 1986; Hurley and Grieve 1988; Magnusson et al. 1991; Drendel and Wendt 1993a; Klopfenstein 2003) compared to less than 1 million cells in cows (Paape et al. 1963). The first mammary secretions obtained at parturition contain many more somatic cells (>8 M¢/ml) than milk obtained later in lactation (Evans et al. 1982; Magnusson et al. 1991). These somatic cells are mainly composed of epithelial cells and leucocytes. The relative concentrations of the various cell types vary with the stage of lactation. In milk collected during the colostral phase, most cells are leucocytes (>98%), whereas during the rest of lactation (days 7, 14, and 28), the cells are predominantly epithelial cells (Evans et al. 1982; Schollenberger et al. 1986; Magnusson et al. 1991).

Somatic Cells of Mastitic Milk. Somatic cells content found in the milk of infected mammary glands is similar (12–35 M¢/ml) to those observed during the colostral phase or during involution (Drendel and Wendt 1993b). Somatic cells found in the milk of infected glands are mainly (>75%) leucocytes. Therefore, during sow lactation, a cellular content over 12 M¢/ml with a increased proportion of leucocytes is an indication of mammary gland alteration. However, during the colostral phase, we cannot, solely based on milk cellular content, discriminate between mammary gland infection and retarded lactogenesis (Drendel and Wendt 1993b).

MAMMARY GLAND

Anatomy

External Structure. The mammary glands of swine are located in two parallel rows along the ventral body wall, from the thoracic region to the inguinal area. In commercial breeds, their number varies generally between 12 and 18 per animal (Labroue et al. 2001) whereas pigs of the Meishan breed can have up to 22 mammary glands (personal communication, L. Maignel, Canadian Center of Swine Improvement, www.ccsi.ca). As suggested by Muirhead (1991), boars and gilts should be retained for breeding only if they have 14 well-placed normal nipples. The rows of teats should be parallel because when the teats diverge from a straight line just before and after the umbilicus, the sows have poor teat presentation therefore limiting accessibility of the teats to the piglets. Sows with poor teat presentation usually have large girth widths, which tends to spread the teat rows apart. Poor teat placement could be a major reason for failure of sows to rear 11 or 12 piglets (Muirhead 1991).

The glands are attached to the ventral body wall by adipose and connective tissue arising from the abdominal fascia. Each mammary gland normally has one teat, or nipple, with two separate teat canals. When the teat sphincter is not visible (inverted teat) it has a 50% chance of remaining blind. Functional supernumerary smaller teats can also be found. Paired vestigial non-functional accessory teats, not connected to glandular tissue, may also occur (Molenat and Thibeault 1977; Labroue et al. 2001).

Internal Structure. The microscopic and macroscopic anatomy of the porcine mammary gland has been described by Barone (1978), Schummer et al. (1981), and Calhoun and Stinson (1987). In the nulliparous sow, the mammary gland consists of cell buds distributed among fat and connective tissue, whereas in the lactating gland, the connective tissue is largely displaced by glandular parenchyma. The mammary glands of the lactating sow are composed of a compound tubuloalveolar tissue with the secretory units arranged in lobules. The lobules are lined by epithelial cells, generally described as lactocytes, which synthesize milk. These secreting units are connected by a nonsecreting duct system to an ostium found on the teat. There are usually two complete gland systems within each mammary gland of the pig. The glandular tissue of one system usually interdigitates with the other, although the components of the two systems are independent. Usually, each teat has two openings, one for each glandular system, but sometimes a third ostium can be seen. In these animals, one ostium ends blindly and has no glandular tissue.

The arterial, venous, and lymphatic circulation of the mammary glands in swine is provided on each side of the ventral midline by a network that extends longitudinally from the axillary to the inguinal regions (Barone 1978; Schummer et al. 1981; Lignereux et al. 1996) (Figure 4.2). Moreover, in swine there is a venous anastomosis between the right and left mammary gland of each pair of glands.

Nerve supply to the cranial mammary glands differs from that to the inguinal glands. Cranial mammary glands receive their innervation from the last eight or nine thoracic nerves while inguinal mammary glands receive their innervation mainly from the pudendal nerve (Gandhi and Getty 1969a,b; Ghoshal 1975). A more complete anatomical and histological description of the porcine mammary gland can be found in the seventh edition of Diseases of Swine (Smith et al. 1992).

Mammogenesis

The extent of mammary growth is largely related to the number of lactocytes present and has a determinant impact on milk capacity of the sow. Mammary growth starts at the fetal stage but occurs mainly postnatally and, to a greater extent, at the end of gestation; yet it still takes place during lactation.

The mammary glands of newborn piglets have a poorly developed duct system and are largely composed
of subcutaneous stromal tissue (Hughes and Varley 1980). Accumulation of mammary tissue and mammary DNA (which is indicative of cell number) is slow until 90 days of age, at which time the rate of accretion of mammary tissue and DNA increases four- to sixfold (Sorensen et al. 2002a). By the time the gilt is mated, the mammary gland is still very small but it consists of an extensive duct system with various budlike outgrowths (Turner 1952).

In pregnant gilts, quantitative development of the mammary glands is slow in the first two-thirds of pregnancy, while almost all accumulation of mammary tissue and DNA takes place in the last third of gestation (Hacker and Hill 1972; Kensinger et al. 1982; Sorensen et al. 2002a). The mammary glands undergo major histological changes as the adipose and stromal tissues are replaced by lobuloalveolar tissue to become the milk secretory apparatus (Hacker and Hill 1972; Kensinger et al. 1982). Both histological changes and differences in DNA concentrations in mammary tissues from gilts indicate increased tissue differentiation between days 75 and 90 of gestation, with maximum cell concentrations present by day 90 (Kensinger et al. 1982).

Allometric mammary gland development occurs mainly during the last 10 days of gestation and continues during lactation (Hurley 2001). Average mammary gland wet weight of gilts was reported to remain fairly stable (approximately 100 g) up to day 110 of gestation and to increase up to 373 g by day 112 (Sorensen et al. 2002a). Average mammary weight of the suckled glands then increased linearly from 381 g on day 5 of lactation up to 593 g on day 21 (57% increase) (Kim et al. 1999). Another study showed that mammary gland wet weight increased by 70, 20, and 30% between day 113 of gestation and day 26 of lactation, for sows of parity 1, 2, and 3, respectively (Beyer et al. 1994). The increase in mammary volume during lactation is mainly the consequence of mammary gland cellular hyperplasia, rather than hypertrophy, as demonstrated by DNA analysis (Kim et al. 1999).

Factors Affecting Mammary Gland Development

Hormones. Estrogens are important for mammogenesis (Kensinger et al. 1986) and the shift in the rate of mammary development occurring at approximately 90 days of age is likely linked to the onset of ovarian activity (Sorensen et al. 2002a). The finding that mammary development is enhanced with the onset of puberty in gilts corroborates this and even suggests that early onset of puberty may be beneficial for mammogenesis in swine (Farmer et al. 2004b). Prolactin was recently shown to have a great impact on the mammary development taking place before puberty. When injected to gilts for a period of 28 days, starting at 75 kg body weight, porcine prolactin stimulates mammary development through an increase in the number of milk secretory cells (Palin and Farmer 2004). The impact of such a treatment on future sow milk yield still needs to be determined.

During pregnancy, the formation of lobuloalveolar cells is related to increases in estrogen and progesterone concentrations in the maternal circulation (Ash and Heap 1975), while concentrations of prolactin remain low (Dusza and Krzymowska 1981). After day 105 of pregnancy, decreasing progesterone and increasing estrogen concentrations are related to a tremendous increase in metabolic activity of the mammary gland (Robertson and King 1974; Knight et al. 1977; Kensinger et al. 1986). The mechanism by which estrogens affect the mammary epithelium is not known; it is possible that they induce prolactin receptors in the mammary gland. There is also a positive association between prolactin levels and mammary wet weight at day 110 of gestation, which may be due to the effect of prolactin on...
water movement into the gland (Kensinger et al. 1986). Prolactin was recently shown to play an essential role for mammogenesis in pregnant swine. Inhibition of prolactin in the last third of pregnancy drastically decreases mammary development in gilts (Farmer et al. 2000) and the timing of its necessary action for mammogenesis was more specifically identified as being from days 90 to 109 of gestation (Farmer and Petitclerc 2003).

Buttle (1988) reported that ovariectomy, but not removal of the corpora lutea, of gilts at day 60 of gestation delays the onset of lobuloalveolar development in the mammary glands, suggesting that the ovarian stroma or follicles produce a factor stimulating the onset of lobuloalveolar development. Later, Hurley et al. (1991) demonstrated that relaxin replacement therapy after ovariectomy restores mammary parenchymal development. Therefore relaxin plays a major role in promoting mammogenesis in gilts during the last third of pregnancy. Relaxin increases growth of parenchyma and decreases mammary fat pad while having no effect on the cellular composition of mammary parenchyma. The mechanism of action of relaxin on mammary development is unknown, yet it seems likely that it requires estrogen priming as well as interaction with other mammotropic hormones, such as prolactin (Hurley et al. 1991).

**Nutrition.** Feeding of gilts or sows in the two periods of rapid mammary development (i.e., from 90 days of age until puberty and during the last third of gestation) can have a major impact on the extent of this development. Sorensen et al. (2002b) suggested that a period of ad libitum feeding before puberty is needed to maximize mammary growth in gilts. In accordance, Lyvers-Peffer and Rozeboom (2001) showed that decreasing energy intake of gilts at specific periods between 9 and 25 weeks of age reduces weight of parenchymal tissue and tends to lower mammary DNA at the end of gestation. Farmer et al. (2004b) also demonstrated that a 20% feed restriction, starting at 90 days of age, decreases mammary parenchymal tissue mass by 26% at 210 days of age in gilts. On the other hand, feeding a lower protein diet (14.4% vs. 18.7% crude protein) during that same period decreases mammary fat pad while having no effect on the cellular composition of mammary parenchyma. The mechanism of action of relaxin on mammary development is unknown, yet it seems likely that it requires estrogen priming as well as interaction with other mammotropic hormones, such as prolactin (Hurley et al. 1991).

Mammary Gland Involution

Suckled mammary glands of sows undergo dramatic changes during the initial 7 days after weaning, with significant changes occurring even as early as 2 days after weaning (Ford et al. 2003). Mammary gland wet weight decreases from 485.9 g on the day of weaning (at 22 days postpartum) to 151.5 g by 7 days after weaning; mammary DNA also decreases from 838.8 mg to 278.4 mg for this same period of time. These changes in gland wet weight and DNA during the period of mammary gland involution in the sow represent losses of over two-thirds of the parenchymal mass and nearly two-thirds of the cells that were present on the day of weaning (Ford et al. 2003). Mammary gland involution in the sow is a rapid process, which is probably irreversible within 2 or 3 days postweaning, but it is a process that also occurs in early lactation. Indeed, once teat order is established, mammary glands that are not regularly suckled begin to regress through involution. This regression occurs rapidly during the first 7 to 10 days postpartum and seems to be affected by dietary nutrient levels (Kim et al. 2001). Mammary glands that are not suckled during lactation undergo no further reduction in parenchymal tissue during the first 7 days after weaning (Ford et al. 2003). It is of interest to mention that mammary glands that are suckled during lactation are larger than the nonsuckled glands at the end of involution. This may suggest more mammary tissue being available for redevelopment during the subsequent pregnancy and, therefore, greater productivity in the next lactation (Ford et al. 2003). On the other hand, a Norwegian study showed that inactive mammary glands for one or two lactation may have full milk yield in the subsequent lactation (Gut-à Porta et al. 2004).

The abrupt cessation of lactation in sows when milk production is at a maximum (3 to 4 weeks) brings about drastic changes in metabolic activity of the mammary glands and endocrine status. There is a decrease in milk lactose, a transient decrease followed by an increase in milk glucose and increases in plasma lactose and glucose (Atwood and Hartmann 1995), which is due to alterations in the status of the tight junctions between mam-
PHYSIOLOGY OF MILK PRODUCTION

Milk Synthesis

Lactocytes are highly specialized cells that have the capacity to synthesize sugars, proteins, and lipids (Akers 2002). One gram of mammary tissue has the potential to produce 1.67 ml of milk per day (Akers 2002). Lactocytes are rich in mitochondria, rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER), and RNA (ribosomal, messenger and transport), and they have a large Golgi apparatus that allows protein and lactose synthesis (Mepham 1987). The cellular concentration of these functional organelles can be used as indicators of intensity of milk component synthesis.

Proteins. Sow milk proteins (50–70 g/L) are mainly constituted of caseins (25–30 g/L), beta-globulins (approximately 5 g/L), IgA (5 g/L), alpha-lactalbumins (approximately 3 g/L) and smaller amounts of other proteins (IgG, IgM, serum albumins, etc.) (Klobasa and Butler 1987; Dodd et al. 1994). Most of these proteins are synthesized from amino acids present in the serum and excreted from the Golgi in the alveoli with lactose, water, and electrolytes (Mepham 1983, 1987; Trottier et al. 1997). The uptake of amino acids by mammary gland tissue was recently studied and reported (Hurley et al. 2000; Jackson et al. 2000; Bryson et al. 2001).

The intensity of protein synthesis by the mammary gland is often estimated by the RNA/DNA ratio. In sows, this ratio is less than 1 at 90 days of gestation, equal to 2 at parturition, and higher than 2.5 on day 4 of lactation (Kensinger et al. 1982). These findings therefore support the idea that the intensity of protein synthesis increases between the end of gestation and parturition but also continues to change at least during the first days of lactation.

Lactose. Lactose is the most predominant molecule in milk and is synthesized in the Golgi apparatus from glucose molecules. The Golgi apparatus is a cellular component that is permeable to glucose and nonpermeable to lactose (Leong et al. 1990). This physical characteristic is one of the fundamental mechanisms allowing the creation of an osmotic gradient essential to milk secretion (Peaker 1978). In sows’ milk, the concentration of lactose increases from 89 mmol/L up to 175 mmol/L between parturition and day 7 of lactation, and then remains stable up to day 28 (Klobasa et al. 1987). This supports the idea that the intensity of milk synthesis by lactocytes increases up to day 7 of lactation; however, the extent of protein and of lactose synthesis (milk volume) are not necessarily similar. Indeed, the concentration of milk protein goes down whereas that of lactose increases as lactation proceeds (Klopfenstein 2003) (Table 4.2).

Lipids. The lipids present in sow milk are mainly triglycerides (>95%) and they vary in length because they originate from three different sources: from fatty acids obtained from the digestive tract, from those obtained by tissue lipolysis, or synthesized de novo from glucose and organic acids (Mepham 1987; Migdal 1991).

Minerals. Milk contains many mineral substances (approximately 7 g/L) (Noblet and Etienne 1986). The most common minerals (5–75 mmol/L) are sodium, potassium, chloride, calcium, phosphorus, and magnesium (Park et al. 1994) (Table 4.2). Traces (<1 mmol/L) of sulfur, zinc, boron, copper, aluminum, molybdenum, and manganese can also be found (Park et al. 1994). These minerals are either free in solution or bound to proteins.

Lactogenesis

The initiation of the capacity of the mammary gland to synthesize unique milk components such as lactose, casein, and lipids is termed lactogenesis and is often described as a two-phase process. Lactogenesis phase I refers to preparation of the mammary tissue for the synthesis of milk components, and lactogenesis phase II, generally occurring around parturition, describes the start of important milk synthesis and secretion (Hartmann et al. 1995).

Abundant quantities of milk components appear in the alveoli between days 90 and 105 of gestation, thereby indicating the beginning of the lactogenic process (Kensinger et al. 1982). However, hardly any secretion can be obtained from the teats until parturition, and then suddenly, around the time of farrowing, copious mammary secretion can be easily extracted from the glands. This could be related to serum transudation (Figure 4.3) occurring because of the major vascular reorganization taking place at farrowing. Indeed, serum volume increases by more than 20% prior to parturition to supply the uterus (Matte and Girard 1996) and as farrowing proceeds, the excess serum needs to be eliminated and could very well be excreted through the mammary glands. At the end of gestation and during the colostral phase, the junctions between epithelial cells surrounding the alveoli are not tight and allow serum transudate.
to leak from the bloodstream into the mammary secretions and milk components to leak from the mammary gland alveoli back to the bloodstream (Figure 4.3). Although serum transudation may contribute to the volume of colostrum obtained by the piglets, its contribution is most likely very short in duration.

During the colostral phase, lactose is present in high concentrations in the plasma of sows (>200 mmol/L) (Hartmann et al. 1984), and all the immunoglobulins G found in mammary secretions originate from the plasma (Bourne and Curtis 1973). On the other hand, during lactation, plasma lactose concentrations are low (<100 mmol/L) (Hartmann et al. 1984), and most of the immunoglobulins present in the mammary secretions are synthesized locally (Bourne and Curtis 1973). Similar patterns were found for the plasmatic concentrations of milk whey proteins during the colostral and lactation phases in swine (Dodd et al. 1994).

The onset of milk component synthesis is closely related to the decline in serum progesterone concentrations seen during farrowing (Robertson and King 1974; Hartmann et al. 1984). Moreover, exogenous progesterone administration during late pregnancy delays the beginning of copious milk synthesis in the sow (Whiteley et al. 1990). Progesterone withdrawal is therefore considered to be the hormonal signal for the initiation of copious milk synthesis in swine. It is likely that the decrease in progesterone has the function of priming the gland, whereas withdrawal of colostrum from the glands would trigger the initiation of copious milk secretion (Hartmann et al. 1995). Prolactin is also a key hormone for the onset of lactation in sows, as in various other species (Tucker 1985). In the pregnant sow, suppression of the prepartum peak of prolactin inhibits subsequent milk production (Whitacre and Threlfall 1981; Taverne et al. 1982).

**Milk Ejection**

During the colostral phase, and particularly during parturition and the first hours afterward, colostrum ejection is elicited with ease. At parturition, distension of the cervix for the passage of the piglets and movements of the sow are enough to lead to colostrum ejection (Fraser 1984). Moreover, a sow can cause milk to spurt from the teats by pressing them with her back leg during an attempt to rise (Castren et al. 1989). Colostrum ejections are often as frequent as every 10–20 minutes, and the period of high intramammary pressure, permitting colostrum withdrawal, may be sustained for a minute or more. However, once 50–100 ml of colostrum have been removed, the intramammary pressure is reduced to the point that further withdrawal is more difficult (Fraser 1984).

After the colostral phase, and for the rest of lactation, milk ejection is cyclical, with approximately 24 cycles per day (Whittemore and Fraser 1974; Lewis and Hurnik 1985; Castren et al. 1993). The removal of milk from the alveoli and ductal system of the porcine mammary glands requires a neuroendocrine milk ejection reflex elicited by piglets massaging the udder (Fraser 1980). This reflex consists of an afferent neural pathway and an efferent pathway involving the release of oxytocin and the ejection of milk (Hartmann and Holmes 1989). The activation of neural receptors within the teats of the mammary gland by the nuzzling and suckling of piglets stimulates the release of oxytocin from the posterior pituitary. Oxytocin then stimulates the contraction of myoepithelial cells surrounding the alveolar lumen, thereby forcing milk through the ductal system to the teats (Ellendorf et al. 1982). The amount of oxytocin released during sucklings is not dependent on the massaging time or the number of piglets massaging the udder, but a certain amount of udder stimulation is needed to trigger oxytocin release (Algers et al. 1990). On the other hand, growth rate of piglets is not affected by the peak amplitude in intramammary pressure (Kent et al. 2003), which is linked to oxytocin levels. The increase in circulating oxytocin concentrations can occur up to 30 seconds before milk ejection (Ellendorf et al. 1982), which is very short in duration and lasts only 10–20 seconds (Fraser 1980). Whitely et al. (1985) observed acute episodic releases of relaxin in the blood of sows, both when piglets suckled and after the administration of oxytocin. These authors suggested that relaxin could oppose the action of oxytocin and/or provide a negative feedback on the hypothalamus for the suppression of oxytocin secretion.

During sow lactation not all nursings are successful. Two types of unsuccessful sucklings can be distinguished: those affecting some piglets of a litter and those affecting the whole litter. Among the latter, one must distinguish between sucklings terminated by the piglets and those terminated by the sow (Illmann and Madlafousek 1995). Unsuccessful sucklings affecting the
whole litter become more frequent after the colostral phase, both in a natural environment (Castren 1993) and in confinement (Fraser 1977). They are characterized by an absence in rise in intramammary pressure, associated with a lack of increase in plasma oxytocin (Ellendorf et al. 1982). During the first 10 days of lactation the proportion of unsuccessful sucklings is reported to be between 20% and 40% (Fraser 1977; Jensen et al. 1991). Although frequent and requiring a lot of energy from the piglets, ejection failures may be a functional part of nursing in pigs and may play a role in maintaining lactation (Algers 1993). This is supported by the fact that plasma concentrations of lactogenic hormones tend to rise after an unsuccessful nursing (Rushen et al. 1993). On the other hand, an external stress can lead to failed milk ejections; for example, placing sows in a novel environment increases the chance that the subsequent nursing attempt will fail to lead to milk ejection (Rushen et al. 1995). This stress-induced inhibition of milk ejection is not due to increased concentrations of cortisol or adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) but is likely caused by an opioid-mediated inhibition of oxytocin (Rushen et al. 1995). It is of interest to note that even if it increases the chances of unsuccessful sucklings, the stress of a novel environment does not lead to a general increase in the threshold of stimulation of the mammary gland that is required for oxytocin release (Rushen et al. 1995).

Control of Milk Production

Milk Removal. Removal of milk from the mammary glands is of utmost importance in order to maintain milk secretion. Indeed, suckling and milk removal are the major stimulators of mammary growth during lactation in the sow and mammary glands that are underdeveloped at parturition can still grow rapidly in response to suckling (Hurley 2001). As milk is secreted from the mammary epithelial cells into the alveolar lumen, milk components accumulate in the lumen. One of these components is an autocrine factor, termed feedback inhibitor of lactation or FIL (Peaker and Wilde 1987), which is known to feed back and inhibit further milk secretion from alveolar epithelial cells. Indeed, milk stasis in alveolar spaces is known to be the primary stimulus for the end of lactation and involution of alveoli in swine (Boyd et al. 1995). Removal of milk therefore removes FIL and allows for continued milk secretion. Milk accumulation in the gland also causes an increase in intramammary pressure, which reduces blood flow to the tissue (Hurley 2001). Furthermore, the stimulus of suckling or massaging the mammary glands by the piglets brings about increases in circulating prolactin concentrations in the sow (Spinka et al. 1999), which is a known galactopoietic hormone (Farmer 2001). The importance of milk removal may also be shown by the fact that a drastic increase in nursing stimulus increases milk energy output (Sauber et al. 1994). Moreover, on days 7 and 8 of lactation, nursing frequency plays a crucial role in adjusting total daily milk output (Spinka et al. 1997). Piglet behavior is therefore important in modulating sow milk production, but the effect of nursing behaviors could be due either to more complete milk removal or to modified hormonal release (Ellendorf et al. 1982).

Nursing Frequency. As described earlier, the increase in nursing frequency is one of the major factors explaining the observed increasing milk production during the ascending phase of milk production. Nursing frequency is approximately 17 per day at parturition, it increases up to 35 per day at the peak of lactation (day 8 to 10), and then it tends to decrease slightly (20 to 30 per day) up to weaning (Jensen et al. 1991; Spinka et al. 1997; Puppe and Tuchscherer 2000; Farmer et al. 2001; Fisette et al. 2004; van den Brand et al. 2004). The slight decrease in nursing frequency in late lactation is indicative of a lower maternal investment.

Nursing frequency seems to be similar between day and night on day 10 of lactation, whereas it decreases during the night on day 17 (van den Brand et al. 2004). Nursing frequency also tends to be greater in sows on a low feeding level. This could easily be explained by the fact that piglets suckled by sows fed a low feeding level have a greater feeding motivation due to the lower milk yield. On the other hand, it is also possible that sows with a low feed intake terminate nursings more often due to their greater restlessness (van den Brand et al. 2004).

Hormonal Control. The activation of neural receptors within the mammary glands by the nuzzling and suckling of piglets stimulates not only the release of oxytocin from the posterior pituitary but also the release of prolactin, growth hormone (GH), ACTH, and thyroid-stimulating hormone from the anterior pituitary. Hormones from the anterior pituitary have the function of maintaining the synthesis of milk from the mammary epithelial cells (Delouis 1986).

The role of GH for milk production can be either direct or indirect (Flint 1995). Its direct role is via its implication as a regulator of nutrient partitioning for milk component synthesis. Its indirect role is via an increase in the concentrations of insulin-like growth factor I (IGF-I), which acts upon the mammary epithelial cells. When circulating levels of GH and IGF-I were reduced in lactation by immunizing sows against GH-releasing factor, milk yield (measured by the WSW method) was significantly decreased yet the growth rate of the piglets was unaltered (Armstrong et al. 1994). It was concluded that GH may have a facilitative, rather than an essential, role in support of lactation in sows.

Until recently, the role of prolactin once lactation is initiated was not clear. It was originally thought that prolactin might be important in the prefarrowing period (Smith and Wagner 1980) but was not essential for
milk synthesis in later lactation (Benjaminsen 1981a; Bevers et al. 1983; Mattioli and Seren 1985). Yet, in a recent study where the secretion of prolactin was systematically inhibited at various stages of lactation, the weight gain of piglets was suppressed in the week during which prolactin secretion was suppressed (Farmer et al. 1997). These results therefore clearly demonstrate that prolactin is essential for both the initiation and the maintenance of milk production in sows. This is in agreement with results of Plaut et al. (1989), who showed that the binding of prolactin to its receptor is a major effector of milk production in sows.

Thyroid hormones are required for various metabolic functions, such as oxygen consumption and protein synthesis by the mammary gland, that are closely related to milk production (Tucker 1985). The tripeptide thyrotropin-releasing factor (TRF) also stimulates the release of thyroid hormones and of prolactin in the circulation of sows (Dubreuil et al. 1990), which could lead to a possible involvement in the control of milk production.

**HOMEORHESIS**

The gestation and lactation periods are two complex physiological processes that imply dynamic changes in behavior and body composition. These dynamic changes are related to modifications in energy, protein, water, and mineral metabolisms, and they are particularly important around the time of farrowing. The dynamic equilibrium between all different characteristics needed to carry through gestation and lactation has been described by the Greek term *homeorhesis* (Bauman and Currie 1980). Although the change from gestation to lactation has an impact on almost all systems of the sow, the present chapter will cover only those that are most crucial for the initiation and maintenance of lactation.

**Sow Behavior**

Four behavioral changes have been observed between the end of gestation and the beginning of lactation in sows maintained under natural conditions:

1. Approximately 24 hours before parturition, the sow becomes hyperactive and leaves her group in order to build a nest.
2. On the day of parturition and the following day, the sow spends most of her time in or within a few meters of the nest, mainly resting and nursing her piglets. She leaves the nest only to drink or urinate.
3. During the next days (3–10), the sow extends her foraging excursions in time and in distance, while the piglets remain in the nest.
4. After day 10, the sow leaves the nest with her piglets, and the whole family joins the herd (Jensen 1986; Stangel and Jensen 1991; Jensen et al. 1993).

Sows maintained in farrowing crates tend to have similar behaviors (Meunier Salaun et al. 1991; Cronin et al. 1994, 1996; Klopfenstein 2003) (Figure 4.4). The day before farrowing, the number of position changes, the proportion of time spent standing and water intake increase substantially compared to the preceding days (Figure 4.4). After farrowing, sows are very lethargic (95% in lateral recumbency) in their crates and they stand up mainly for feeding. After day 3, sows gradually decrease their time in lateral recumbency to attain less than 50% at day 21.

The nursing behavior of sows changes over the lactation period and is probably related to the milk supply. During the first days after parturition, when milk production is greater than the piglets’ needs, most (>85%) of the sucklings are initiated by the sow and are terminated by the piglets. After the fourth week of lactation, when the milk supply becomes limited for the needs of the piglets, most sucklings are initiated by the piglets and terminated by the sow (Jensen 1988; Jensen et al. 1991). Results during the period of midlactation are not as clear. According to the work of Boe (1991), on day 10, 80% of the sucklings are still initiated by the sow, but according to the observations of Jensen et al. (1991), this proportion might be only 55%. The sow terminates the sucklings by leaving the piglets or by rolling over on her belly and hiding her udder to limit access (de Passillé and Rushen 1989a).

**Energy Metabolism**

The heat excreted by each sow almost doubles between the end of gestation and the beginning of lactation (18 vs. 35 MJ per day) (Noblet and Close 1980; Noblet and Etienne 1987). This increased heat production is the consequence of the intensity of the metabolic activity necessary to sustain milk production. This extra heat production has an impact on rectal temperature and heat stress management during lactation.

**Rectal Temperature.** The normal rectal temperature of healthy gestating sows is reported to be between 38.3°C and 38.5°C (King et al. 1972; Elmore et al. 1979; Messias de Bragança et al. 1997; Klopfenstein et al. 1997; Klopfenstein 2003), with little variation between studies. After parturition and during lactation, the rectal temperature of sows in crates is reported to increase by 1°C (King et al. 1972; Elmore et al. 1979). Healthy lactating sows have difficulty maintaining stable rectal temperatures, values as low as 38.4°C (Cornette 1950; Ringarp 1960) and as high as 40.5°C (Messias de Bragança et al. 1997) have been reported. These wide variations are most likely the consequence of the heat stress induced by increased internal heat production and high environmental temperatures in farrowing rooms. Consequently, feed intake, room temperature, and type of housing affect the capacity of lactating sows to maintain their body temperature. Restricted-fed sows have
lower rectal temperatures than sows fed ad libitum (Moser et al. 1987; Persson et al. 1989; Messias de Bragança et al. 1997). Similarly, GH supplementation, which alters sow metabolism, increased rectal temperature (estimated weekly from days 14 to 35) from 39.1°C to 39.8°C (Toner et al. 1996).

Finally, the expected rectal temperature of lactating primiparous sows is higher than that of multiparous sows (39.6 vs. 39.3°C) (Klopfenstein 2003). This increased rectal temperature observed in lactating sows must be considered as physiological hyperthermia and should not be confused with fever. All these observations suggest that lactating sows housed in confinement are more likely to suffer from heat stress because they are fed ad libitum with high-energy diets, their environment is kept warm for the piglets, and the sows have no access to a cool floor to dissipate the excess heat.

Heat Stress. Lactating sows are extremely vulnerable to heat stress due to their large body size, high metabolic rate (Lynch 1977) and lack of functional sweat glands which prevents dissipation of heat via transpiration (Marzulli and Callahan 1957). They are often exposed to ambient temperatures higher than their upper critical temperature, being in the range of 20–25°C. High temperatures during lactation decrease sow voluntary feed intake (Messias de Bragança et al. 1997; Quiniou and Noblet 1999), increase weight loss, decrease milk production, and hence decrease litter growth rates (Messias de Bragança et al. 1997; Prunier et al. 1997), and also delay the return to estrus of weaned sows (see review by Prunier et al. 1996). Furthermore, sow mortality (and loss of litter) is also associated with high ambient temperatures (D’Allaire et al. 1996) and is largely due to cardiovascular failure.

Fever or Hyperthermia? Fever is defined as an increase in central temperature as a consequence of an increase in the thermoregulatory setpoint (Robinson 1997). Fever is the normal response to systemic infections or to the action of some pyrogenic substances (e.g., endotoxins, interleukins, etc.) (Robinson 1997). Hyperthermia on the other hand, is usually defined as the increase in body temperature observed when the heat production exceeds the heat output capacity (Robinson 1997).

In the lactating sow, there is a lot of confusion on the expected sow normal rectal temperature after farrowing. According to some authors the expected rectal temperature of the healthy lactating sow is 39.5°C (see rectal temperature); others consider that the puerperal sow with a rectal temperature higher or equal to 39.3°C is diseased (see sow rectal temperature and PPDS).

Nutrient Availability
The nutrients required by mammary tissue for milk synthesis come from the diet and from body reserves. Mammary glands are the primary users of absorbed nutrients in lactating sows and virtually dictate the dietary nutritional needs (Boyd et al. 1995). Indeed, it was shown that 65–70% of the total energy requirement of a lactating sow is to support milk production (Ahern and Williams 1992). Of the total uptake of plasma metabolites by mammary tissue, glucose accounts for approximately 61%, amino acids 24%, triglyceride fatty acids (TGFA) 12%, and acetate 1% (Spincer et al. 1969). Approximately 53% of the glucose taken up by the mammary gland is partitioned to lactose and 34% is oxidized. The other 13% is used for the synthesis of triglyceride-glycerol, milk fatty acids, and amino acids (Linzell et al. 1969). It is of interest to note that in the presence of both acetate and glucose, sow mammary tissue will preferentially utilize acetate for fatty acid synthesis (Bau- man et al. 1970). Therefore it is conceivable that more glucose could be made available for mammary metabolism by raising TGFA levels in the diet (Boyd et al. 1995).

Mammary tissue of lactating sows is very active with respect to transport and metabolism of amino acids. Boyd et al. (1995) ranked each amino acid on the basis of relative uptake by mammary tissue. The order of amino acids was almost identical for mammary uptake and milk composition, but it was also reported that the mammary uptake of branched-chain amino acids (valine, leucine) and arginine may be greater than suggested by the milk amino acid pattern (Boyd et al. 1995; Trottier et al. 1997). Milk production is ultimately energy-dependent, so that the need in amino acid for milk synthesis depends on the amount of dietary energy available (Tokach et al. 1992), thereby reinforcing the importance of glucose sources and of a right balance of nutrients in sow feeding management.

Sow milk contains large amounts of calcium, phosphorus, and magnesium. These bivalent ions found in the milk are transferred from the digestive tract and from bone reserves. Apparent digestive bioavailability of these bivalent ions is known to be low (3–50%) (National Research Council 1998). Intestinal absorption and renal absorption of these minerals is closely regulated by a hormonal system (parathormone, calcitriol, calcitonine), whereas active absorption from the digestive tract requires the synthesis of a transport protein (Greco and Stabenfeldt 1997). After parturition, the availability of bivalent ions may affect initiation of lactation. This problem is well known in cows (Goff 2000) and is often suspected in sows.

Water Availability
Water intake patterns observed between the end of gestation and the beginning of lactation are presented in Figure 4.4. Hourly water intake increases from approximately 1 L/hour at the end of gestation to attain 2.6 L/hour 12 hours before the end of parturition (Klopfenstein 2003). Water intake can be very low in some sows during the first 24 hours following parturition (less than 10 L/day). After this period of transition, water in-
take increases gradually to attain 20 to 35 L per day during lactation. The increased water intake just prior to farrowing can be due to the occurrence of nesting behavior but is also the consequence of greater water needs. Indeed, during the hours preceding parturition, there is a rapid increase in the water content of the reproductive system to allow the process of parturition (Dobson 1988).

PIGLET GROWTH, MORTALITY, IMMUNITY, AND BEHAVIOR

The newborn piglet is totally dependent on sow's colostrum and milk as a source of protein for growth, energy to maintain body temperature, and immunoglobulins for protection against diseases. Sow milk and colostrum provide the best nutrients for the nutritional needs of the piglets. The biological value of milk protein in swine is very close to 1 (Williams 1995) and the amino acid balance in sow's milk is very similar to that in the lean tissue of pigs (King et al. 1993a).

Piglet Growth

From birth to weaning, piglets from larger litters tend to be lighter than piglets from smaller litters (Dyck and Swierstra 1987; Van der Lende and de Jager 1991; Le Dividich et al. 2004). This difference is the consequence of lower piglet birth weight and, in some cases, of lower milk supply per piglet in large litters. Average piglet birth weight is reported to decrease by approximately 30–40 g for each additional piglet in the litter (Van der Lende and de Jager 1991; Le Dividich et al. 2004). Although average piglet weight decreases with litter size, selection of hyperprolific sows over 10 years had no effect on average piglet weight (Tribout et al. 2003) because it also increased the expected weight of piglets of similar litter sizes. The expected mean birth weight of Large White piglets has not changed (1.45 kg) between 1977 and 1988 although litter size increased from 10.2 to 11.2 piglets. Interestingly, the expected average piglet birth weight for a litter size of 10.7 piglets increased from 1.37 kg to 1.46 kg over the same decade (Tribout et al. 2003).

Growth rate, usually measured as average daily gain (ADG), is related to individual piglet weight at birth (Tyler et al. 1990; Castren et al. 1991; Le Dividich et al. 2004). The expected maximal ADG of a newborn piglet weighing 1.3 kg is lower than that of a piglet with a birth weight of 2.3 kg. It is therefore necessary to take into account initial weight when comparing ADG between piglets. When piglet weights are mathematically corrected for a standard birth weight (1.4 kg), the effect of litter size is absent on day 3, is small on day 7, and becomes greater as lactation proceeds (Table 4.1). These data show that milk production becomes a limiting factor for piglet growth when the sow has attained her maximal milk production capacity (day 10 to 15).

Piglet Mortality

Although swine production is becoming more sophisticated, piglet losses between birth and weaning remain a serious problem for the industry. Preweaning mortalities are often higher than 10% of liveborn piglets and most of these occur during the first week after parturition (English and Morrison 1984; Dyck and Swierstra 1987; de Passillé and Rushen 1989b; Le Cozler et al. 2004). These losses can be explained by litter and piglet characteristics or by inadequate sow milk production.

The effect of litter size on mortality is quadratic. Piglet losses increase only in the largest litters (Guthrie et al. 1987; Fahmy and Bernard 1971; Dyck and Swierstra 1987) and are probably related to an insufficient number of functional mammary glands to supply milk for all the piglets (Chertkov 1986; Bilkei et al. 1994). The main causes (>75%) of mortality are emaciation and piglet crushing by the sow (English and Morrison 1984; Fraser 1990; Le Cozler et al. 2004). Piglets losses due to emaciation occur mainly on days 4 and 5 after birth as a result of poor nutrition during the first days postpartum (Dyck and Swierstra 1987). Piglets crushed by the sow often had poor gains during the first postnatal days (Dyck and Swierstra 1987). Piglet mortalities are not uniformly distributed between litters. Most of them occur among a few litters (see problem litters) with poorer growth rates during the first days after birth (Pettigrew et al. 1986; Dyck and Swierstra 1987; Thompson and Fraser 1988; de Passillé and Rushen 1989a,b; Fraser and Phillips 1989; Klopfenstein et al. 1995, 1997; Klopfenstein 2003). Most of these problem litters are thought to be the consequence of some inadequate mammary function during the initiation of lactation.

Immune Protection of the Piglet

Newborn piglets rely on colostrum for passive transfer of immunity (Bourne 1976) because there is little or no placental transfer of antibodies in the pig (Rapacz and Hasler Rapacz 1982). The absorption of immunoglobulins from the sow's colostrum causes closure of the intestine for the passage of these large proteins (Klobasa et al. 1991), suggesting that absorption is possible only during the first feedings after birth. Twenty-four hours postnatally, artificially reared piglets receiving 6 hourly feedings of 25 ml of sow colostrum followed by hourly feedings of cow's milk had plasmatic immunoglobulins concentrations similar to those of naturally fed piglets (Klobasa et al. 1991). Increasing the number of hourly feedings of colostrum from 6 to 12, 18, or 24 did not increase the concentrations of plasma immunoglobulins in piglets. On the other hand, allowing the piglets to fast for periods of up to 24 hours after birth before giving them access to their first colostrum intake did not decrease serum immunoglobulins concentrations 12 and 18 hours after feeding (Klobasa et al. 1990). Therefore, closure of the gut system for the passage of immunoglobulins is dependent on the quantity of colostrum in-
gested rather than on time since birth. Six feedings of colostrum should be sufficient to give adequate immune protection to the piglets.

Passive immunity transfer from the sow to the piglet is essential for protection against diseases. The quantity of IgG ingested by each piglet is affected by birth order due to the rapid changes in colostrum composition taking place between onset of farrowing and birth of the last piglet (Klobasa et al. 2004; Le Dividich et al. 2004). Piglets dying before weaning are reported to have lower plasmatic immunoglobulin concentrations after parturition (Hendrix et al. 1978; Tyler et al. 1990); yet this association disappears when birth weight is used as a covariate (Tyler et al. 1990). Moreover, the probability of dying is not increased among last-born piglets, even though they obtain less immunoglobulins than first-born piglets (Le Dividich et al. 2004). These results, although surprising, can be explained by the fact that most mortalities are the consequence of inadequate nutrition rather than diseases.

**Piglet Behavior**

The nursing behavior of piglets changes over the lactation period. During the colostral phase, newborn piglets move from teat to teat in a “teat-sampling” process (Hartslock and Graves 1976), enabling them to receive a “free meal” of colostrum (de Passillé and Rushen 1989a; Fraser and Rushen 1992). Udder massaging by the sow increases her grunting rate, which coincides with the release of oxytocin (Algers et al. 1990). During this phase, piglets often fight and are very noisy. After 1–3 minutes of udder massaging, which is one of the longest periods among mammals, the sow increases her grunting rate, which coincides with the release of oxytocin (Algers et al. 1990).

1. Piglets start by vigorously massaging the sow’s udder, which is necessary for triggering the oxytocin release. During this phase, piglets often fight and are very noisy. After 1–3 minutes of udder massaging, which is one of the longest periods among mammals, the sow increases her grunting rate, which coincides with the release of oxytocin (Algers et al. 1990).

2. When piglets hear the signal, they become very quiet, keeping the teats in their mouths and waiting for their meal.

3. As soon as milk ejection occurs, the piglets drink the milk with rapid jaw movements.

4. After milk ejection, which lasts only for 10–20 seconds, the piglets continue to massage the udder for a short period of time.

No milk can be obtained by the piglets during either the pre- or postejection massaging phases. Therefore, even if piglets are often seen at the mammary gland, milk is available for only a very short period of time—less than 10 minutes per day (10–20 seconds per milk ejection, 17–30 ejections per day). Failure of milk ejection is indicated by the absence of rapid grunting from the sow and of rapid-mouth movement from the piglets as well as no change in intramammary pressure. Milk ejection failure is due to a lack of pulsatile release of oxytocin during the massaging phase (Ellendorf et al. 1982), which can be brought about by undue stress to the sow.

During the first 8 hours after birth, newborn piglets suckle an average of seven different teats and are often involved in fights (de Passillé and Rushen 1989a). The frequency of teat disputes is not affected by litter size, but piglets suckling many teats are involved in more disputes. Regardless of teat position, the piglet with a teat in its mouth at the beginning of a dispute has a higher probability of winning (de Passillé and Rushen 1989a). Within 48–72 hours postpartum, piglets establish a teat order in which each piglet consistently sucks from one or two specific teats (Roychoudhury et al. 1995). Piglets prefer the anterior teats (Vales et al. 1992), most likely because sows are more responsive to stimulation of these teats than they are to stimulation of the inguinal teats (Fraser 1976). This increased responsiveness could be due to the different nerve supply between front and rear teats (see the section on anatomy). The anatomical and physiological differences between front and rear teats could induce different milk yields. Indeed, piglets suckling the front teats were reported to be heavier at weaning than piglets suckling the caudal teats (Kornblum et al. 1993; Hoy et al. 1995).

**MANIPULATING MILK PRODUCTION**

Insufficient milk production to meet piglet needs usually occurs when the maximal milk production capacity is attained (7–15 days). This is usually considered a physiological limitation because it affects all sows sooner or later during lactation. Many management strategies have been studied to overcome this physiological limitation and they are discussed in this section.

**Feeding Strategies**

Milk production requires a great supply of substrates, which come from two sources: the lactation diet and the sow’s body reserves. The relative importance of nutrient intake seems to change as lactation progresses. Body reserves might be sufficient in early lactation compared with late lactation to compensate for inadequate nutrient intake (Pettigrew 1995). Accordingly, severe restriction of feed intake during lactation has no impact on litter growth in the first week postpartum, whereas it markedly decreases litter growth during the fourth week of lactation. The size of this reduction depends on the amount of body reserves at farrowing; gilts with lower body reserves being affected most (Mullan and Williams 1989). A survey of 25,000 lactating sows (Koketsu 1994, as reported by Pettigrew 1995) showed that the impact
of lactating sows feed intake on litter weight becomes larger as lactation progresses.

The intake of protein/amino acids by lactating sows is critical for their overall lactation performance because of the great nutrient requirements to maintain milk production. Lysine is typically the first limiting amino acid for lactating sows and it was established that 26 g of dietary lysine is needed per kg of litter growth/day (Sohn and Maxwell 1999). When looking at nitrogen balance of lactating sows, Dourmad et al. (1998) demonstrated that, in order to achieve a zero protein balance, 45–55 g/day of crude lysine are required for normal- to high-yielding sows, respectively. Among the branched chain amino acids, both valine and isoleucine, but not leucine, appear to increase milk production as indicated by increased litter weight gain (Kerr 1997, as cited by Sohn et al. 1999). These amino acids can be metabolized to succinyl-CoA and can therefore potentially serve as a source of energy for the mammary gland (Sohn and Maxwell 1999). Indeed, McNamara and Pettigrew (2002) showed that sows can mobilize amino acids from muscle to support mammary growth and milk production, yet they also demonstrated that an increased energy intake can partially relieve the effects of decreased protein intake on milk production.

From various studies designed to determine the relation between milk production and dietary energy, Williams (1995) noted that each suckling piglet grows an extra 1 g/day for each MJ of metabolizable energy consumed by the sow. In recent studies, sows were fed through a stomach cannula in order to override the normal mechanisms that limit feed intake. Matzat et al. (1990) showed a linear relationship between milk output and energy intake of sows, whereas Pluske et al. (1995b) demonstrated a ceiling to milk production from gilts, whereby piglet growth did not respond beyond 75 MJ of metabolizable energy. It therefore seems that gilts and sows might partition energy differently during lactation, and this partitioning is most likely under hormonal regulation. Such a ceiling for lactational performance was also observed in first-parity sows offered increasing amounts of protein (King et al. 1993b).

When attempting to increase sow milk yield, one must keep in mind that as the milk production capacity of a sow is increased, her nutrient requirements for milk synthesis are also elevated. It is therefore important to ensure that lactational feed intake of sows is maximized and that lean-tissue gain during pregnancy is sufficient so that the sows’ milk production capacity is not compromised. Various feeding management systems have been used in an attempt to increase sow feed intake. Increasing feed consumption of sows by 8% through wet-feeding had no impact on average daily gains of piglets over an 18-day lactation period (Genest and D’Allaire 1995). Similarly, the use of a bulky diet in gestation increased average lactational feed intake of sows by 8% without improving mean litter weight (Farmer et al. 1996). Increasing daily feeding frequency from 2 to 3 (Genest and D’Allaire 1995) or 2 to 4 (Farmer et al. 1996) during lactation also had no effect on feed intake. The addition of fat to the sow’s diet in order to increase energy density, and energy intake, of sows during lactation was also studied. However, it did not lead to a less-negative energy balance in the sows but resulted in fatter piglets when sows were fed at a high feeding level (van den Brand et al. 2000).

**Nursing Interval**

Refilling of the mammary glands with milk was reported to be almost complete within 35 minutes after a suckling bout (Spinka et al. 1997), and the frequency of gland emptying was found to play a major role in regulating milk secretion and mammary gland development (Auldist et al. 2000). These last authors increased suckling frequency via cross-suckling, using piglets from another litter, which could not be done commercially. However, it is known that sows within a farrowing room will synchronize their nursings (Wechsler and Brodmann 1996), and this is likely due to the auditory stimulus from the other animals. Experiments were therefore carried out in which the typical sow suckling grunts were recorded and played back to sows and their litters during lactation in an attempt to stimulate nursing frequency. These playbacks can indeed stimulate nursings (Stone et al. 1974). However, the results on piglet growth are variable between studies, with no effect to an 8% increase when a recording of sow suckling grunts was played at 35–42 minute intervals (Cronin et al. 2001; Fisette et al. 2004). On the other hand, playbacks at 35-minute intervals increased mammary parenchymal cell number in sows at the end of lactation (Farmer et al. 2004a). Present results suggest that use of this management practice throughout lactation is not optimal and further work is needed to establish such things as the ideal time in lactation to play these recordings, the optimal interval to be used, and whether there is a habituation effect. It is evident, however, that efforts should be made to encourage greater suckling frequency and to minimize disruption of suckling behavior in farrowing houses in order to maximize sow milk yield.

**Exogenous Hormones**

The important endocrine control of sow milk yield suggests that exogenous hormones could be used to stimulate milk production. Studies were therefore performed to determine the possible impacts of various peptidic hormones on sow milk yield and piglet performance. Growth hormone (GH) or GH-releasing factor (GHRF) received considerable attention since greater concentrations of GH could allow more nutrients to be utilized for milk synthesis (Farmer 1995). Early studies reported an important increase in milk yield (15–22%), leading to improved piglet growth rates (Harkins et al. 1989). But those results could not be reproduced in further trials.
(Smith et al. 1991). Furthermore, Michelchen and Ender (1991) stated that the effect of GH on milk yield is not greater in sows having large litters (13 vs. 8 piglets). The effects of GH on milk composition are also contradictory, whereas reduced voluntary feed intake during lactation and greater body weight and backfat losses of sows receiving GH during lactation are consistent findings in all studies.

The decreased feed intake likely limits the lactation response to GH and leads to an increased use of body reserves to maintain milk production. The addition of 8% fat in the lactation diet could not prevent these losses of backfat in GH-treated sows (Cromvell et al. 1992). Exogenous GH may also have detrimental consequences on sow health (Smith et al. 1991; Cromvell et al. 1992), with some animals dying of bleeding stomach ulcers (Smith et al. 1991) or of apparent heat stress in the peripartal period. It is suggested that sows may be more sensitive to exogenous GH than growing pigs and that the adverse effects of GH in lactating sows may be dose-dependent (Smith et al. 1991). It is apparent that GH does play a role in the regulation of milk yield, but whether this role is an essential or a facilitative one is not known (Armstrong et al. 1994).

The secretion of GH is under the dual control of a GHRF (Guillemin et al. 1982) and a GH-inhibiting factor named somatotropin-release inhibitory factor (SRIF) (Brazeau et al. 1973). Active immunization against SRIF was used as a tool to increase concentrations of GH in sows, but the great variability in animal response to this treatment makes it an unreliable method (Farmer et al. 1990, 1991). The use of GHRF, on the other hand, consistently increases GH concentrations, with sow showing an increased responsiveness to chronic injections (Dubreuil et al. 1987). However, massive doses of GHRF (12 mg thrice daily) did not affect sow milk yield, milk composition, or piglet performance, but decreased weight, backfat thickness, and feed intake of sows on the fourth week of lactation (Farmer et al. 1992). Nevertheless, blood urea was reduced indicating that GHRF-injected sows utilized proteins more efficiently, thereby enabling them to maintain their milk production and litter performance in spite of a decreased feed intake. When combining administration of GHRF with a feeding management designed to optimize feed intake of lactating sows (Farmer et al. 1996), there was only a tendency for piglet weights to be greater. However, the increase in sow feed intake was not as large as expected and was mostly seen in early lactation. It is therefore likely that a management system having a greater effect on sow feed intake is needed for GHRF to exert its maximal effects on milk yield and piglet growth.

Daily intramuscular injections of 50 or 100 mg/sow of thyrotropin-releasing factor (TRF) increased the average daily weight gain of piglets (Wung et al. 1977), but subcutaneous injections of 9 µg/kg given twice daily during lactation had no effect on piglet growth (Dubreuil et al. 1990). Due to its small size, TRF can be absorbed intact by the digestive tract and when 200 mg of TRF were added daily to the feed of sows, piglet weight was increased by 0.7 and 1.1 kg on days 20 and 27 of lactation, respectively, but the weaning to estrus interval went from 4.8 to 36.9 days, making such a treatment totally inadequate for swine producers (Cabell and Esbenshade 1990).

Sows showing spontaneous lactation failure harbor abnormally low concentrations of prolactin (Whitacre and Threlfall 1981). This may explain the 8% increase in litter weight gain observed in gilts (but not sows) receiving a single injection of porcine prolactin on day 1 of lactation (Dusza et al. 1991). Two studies were carried out to determine the effects of chronic injections of prolactin from day 107 of gestation and during lactation, on milk production of sows (Crenshaw et al. 1989; King et al. 1996). Neither of these showed any effect on milk yield and it was postulated that since injections were started before there were any piglets to remove milk from the mammary glands, premature involution of the secretory units of the mammary glands might have taken place (Boyd et al. 1995). In a later study where prolactin was injected to sows from days 2 to 23 of lactation, sow and piglet performances were still unaffected (Farmer et al. 1999). These results also indicated that virtually all prolactin receptors are generally saturated in lactating sows, thereby preventing any beneficial effects of further increasing prolactin concentrations. Studies on the control of prolactin receptor numbers and affinity in lactating sows are therefore needed.

**POSTPARTUM DYSGALACTIA SYNDROME**

Inadequate and insufficient colostrum and milk production occurs in some sows during the puerperal period usually lasting up to 72 hours after birth of the first piglet. Historically, puerperal lactation problems have been considered to be a cause or a consequence of a pathological condition named as the mastitis-metritis and agalactia syndrome (MMA). As discussed in the first part of this chapter, poor lactation performance can also be explained by three major physiological factors:

1. Inadequate or insufficient mammary gland development
2. Inadequate or insufficient milk synthesis
3. Inadequate adaptation to lactation homeorhesis.

Therefore, postpartum sow lactation problems are more adequately described as postpartum dysgalactia syndrome (PPDS), which is preferred by the authors over the more traditionally used MMA syndrome. Indeed, the latter term has created a lot of confusion because it is assumed that all three symptoms are present in the case of early lactation problems, which is not necessarily the case.
Clinical Signs of PPDS

The primary clinical signs of a sow’s inability to produce a sufficient amount of milk and colostrum are piglet growth retardation and increased mortalities. In this chapter, litters with high mortalities and low growth rates during the first days after parturition will be called problem litters. They remain a frequent observation in modern farrowing units, and veterinarians are often consulted to reduce their incidence. Unfortunately, they can be identified with certainty only when the piglets show retarded growth and high mortality, because litter characteristics at birth are poor predictors of future performances. Close observation of the piglets’ behavior is one of the best methods for early detection of problem litters (Whittemore and Fraser 1974). These piglets fight more and for longer periods, lose weight, and remain close to the sow between sucklings (Algers and de Passillé 1991).

Early detection of sows with postpartum lactation problems is difficult because most of them do not show any clear clinical signs (Klopfenstein 2003). Temporal variation of sow behavior (Figure 4.4) and body condition were similar among sows nursing litters with poor (≤77 g/kg/day—problem litters) and normal (>77 g/kg/day—normal litters) growth rates between the end of parturition (time 0) and 132 h postpartum (Klopfenstein 2003). In the last study, the major differences between sows nursing problem and normal litters were related to milk composition (Table 4.3). Also, sows nursing problem litters drank less water (0.36 L/h) and had lower skin temperature (0.64°C) (Figure 4.4), higher serum phosphate (+0.10 mmol/L), and higher calcium (+0.05 mmol/L) concentrations at hours 36 and 60 of lactation. Rectal temperatures of sows nursing problem litters were similar to those of the others sows at the end of gestation (96 h) and at the beginning of lactation (12 h, 36 h, 60 h) but were slightly higher at 132 h (39.6 vs. 39.4°C) postpartum. The latter study confirmed that milk production of sows nursing problem litters is different compared to the other sows but showed that there is no easy way for the farmer to identify these sows early after parturition. Moreover, in the later study, only 2 sows among the 29 sows nursing problem litters were diseased in the postpartum period. This is a good representation of what is seen in many herds. A few sows presenting PPDS are diseased but many more are apparently normal.

Prevalence of PPDS

Although PPDS is observed in some herds, there is a lot of confusion on the prevalence of postpartum lactation problems due to the subjectivity related to some of the criteria used to identify the affected sows. Indeed the most common criterion used to identify sows affected by lactation problems is based on postpartum rectal temperature. The use of the rectal temperature criteria to classify sows as diseased or normal is adding confusion to our understanding of the pathogenesis of PPDS.

Sow Rectal Temperature and PPDS

For some historical reasons, there seems to be a general consensus that postpartum rectal temperatures higher than 39.3 or 39.5°C categorize sows as being affected by PPDS (Hermansson et al. 1978b; Goransson 1989b; Persson et al. 1989; Madec and Leon 1992; Hoy 2004). However, as discussed previously, this criterion should be seriously questioned because the proposed thresholds are equal or even below the expected rectal temperature of lactating primiparous and multiparous sows (see fever or hyperthermia?).

The use of rectal temperature to classify sows as diseased or normal has led to the publication of paradoxical results. In some instances, litters from sows identified as being “severely affected by early lactation problems (MMA)” because of high rectal temperature (>39.5°C) had better growth rate and lower mortality than litters from nonaffected sows (Furniss 1987; Persson et al. 1989). Moreover, the proposed cut-off to

Table 4.3. Temporal variation of some milk components (least square means) of sows nursing litters with slow (≤77 g/kg/day—Problem litters—PL) and normal (>77 g/kg/day—Normal litters—NL) growth rates between the end of parturition (time 0) and 132 hours postpartum (PP).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Milk Components</th>
<th>36 Hours PP</th>
<th>60 Hours PP</th>
<th>132 Hours PP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>NL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose (mmol/L)</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium (mmol/L)</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium (mmol/L)</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride (mmol/L)</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total protein (g/L)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipids (g/L)</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leucocytes (k/µL)</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactocytes (k/µL)</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% of leucocytes</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Significant difference between NL and PL (p <0.05)

k/µL = 1000 cells.
classify sows was never adjusted for parity even though the expected rectal temperature of primiparous sows is higher (approximately 0.3°C) than that of multiparous sows (Klopfenstein 2003). Accordingly, it was reported that 43% of gilts and 29% of multiparous sows have postpartum rectal temperatures higher than 39.3°C and it was assumed that all these sows were affected by MMA (Hoy 2003). The belief that higher rectal temperature identifies sows with PPDS is so generally accepted that many researchers use this criterion to identify diseased animals without estimating piglet growth and preweaning mortalities. Many published results on the MMA syndrome where piglet growth and/or litter mortality were not estimated are not included in this chapter since it is very difficult to assess whether the sows classified as “diseased” did in fact have lactation problems.

**INFECTIOUS CAUSES OF PPDS**

**Sows with Clinical Signs of Disease**

A number of postpartum lactation problems (<72 hours) are certainly the consequence of some inflammatory process related to localized or systemic infections. Localized tissue infection usually translates into measurable clinical signs such as pain, inflammation (heat), reddening and edema (Cotran et al. 1999). A localized infection can eventually affect the whole animal. Major clinical signs of a diseased sow in the postpartum period are fever (>40°C), lethargy, anorexia and eventually constipation. The main diseases affecting postpartum and lactating sows are urinary tract infections, endometritis, mastitis. Moreover, severe milk production problems were reported with the porcine respiratory and reproduction syndrome (PRRS) (see Chapter 24). Gross and microscopic pathological evaluation of the reproductive systems of diseased and normal sows in the postpartum period suggest that endometritis is rare (Ringarp 1960; Jones 1976; Middleton-Williams et al. 1977) whereas lactation problems seem to be more frequent in sows with renal infections (Berner 1984, 1988).

Sows that were diseased in the peripartum period have increased circulating serum concentrations of acute phase proteins (haptoglobin-HPT and alpha 1-acid glycoprotein—AGP) and serum cortisol during lactation (Mirko and Bilkei 2004). The concentration of HPT was increased on days 1, 5, and 10 and normal on days 15 and 20 of lactation; AGP was normal on days 1 and 5 and increased on days 10, 15, and 20; serum cortisol concentration was elevated during the whole lactation. Litter performance of the diseased sows of the previous study was very poor (22% mortality) and is certainly related to the incapacity of these sows to produce sufficient amounts of milk.

**Mastitis**

Mastitis is a clear pathological entity observed in some lactating sows (Ringarp 1960; Middleton-Williams et al. 1977; Hermansson et al. 1978b; Halgaard 1983). The diseased mammary glands are warm to the touch and swollen, with a blotted appearance (Jones 1971). When many glands are involved, the sows often go off feed and have high rectal temperatures (>40°C) (Middleton-Williams et al. 1977; Halgaard 1983). The bacteria isolated from infected glands are mainly coliforms (Escherichia coli, Klebsiella sp, Enterobacter and Citrobacter) and bacteria of the genera Staphylococcus sp. and Streptococcus sp. (Armstrong et al. 1968; Ross et al. 1981; Persson et al. 1996).

In acute and severe mastitis, necrotic and purulent lesions are present in the mammary glands (Middleton-Williams et al. 1977), milk synthesis is altered and, when many glands are affected, piglet growth is decreased. The suppuration starting at the beginning of the infectious process can become a permanent granuloma that can be observed in culled sows. In one survey in Germany, 23% of 1000 culled sows had granulomatous lesions on some mammary glands (Bollwahn and Meermier 1989). In another survey in Sweden, the prevalence of granulomatous mastitis in sows from different farms varied from 0 to 50% (mean 16% at weaning). Most affected sows (76%) had only one mammary gland with macroscopic lesions (Hulten et al. 2003). These data show that mastitis can affect many sows but that most of the time severe lesions are found only in a few glands.

In some studies on the importance of mastitis as a pathological entity, it is not always clear whether the sows were selected for the presence of mastitis or because the litter had retarded growth and high mortality. When sows were selected for necropsy on the basis of poor piglet performance, no macroscopic lesions consistent with mastitis were found (Nachreiner et al. 1971). Instead, mammary tissue from sows with problem litters appeared nonfunctional because it did not contain abundant quantities of milk (Martin et al. 1967; Nachreiner et al. 1971). Moreover, the higher cellular content found in the milk of sows nursing problem litters (Table 4.3) was considered to be the consequence of a concentration effect related to lower milk production rather than an indication of mastitis because the proportion of leucocytes (leucocytes/total cells) was similar in the milk of sows nursing problem and normal litters (Klopfenstein 2003). Therefore, we must consider that some problem litters are the consequence of sow mastitis but that many others are likely unrelated to it.

**Endotoxemia**

The absorption of endotoxins from gram-negative bacteria was proposed as an explanation for early lactation problems. Indeed, some sows (<33%) with problem litters are positive for circulating endotoxins (Morkø et al. 1983; Pejsak and Tarasiuk 1989). Exogenous administration of gram-negative endotoxins also suppresses serum prolactin concentrations and increases sow rectal tem-
perature and respiratory rate (Nachreiner and Ginther 1974; Elmore et al. 1978; Smith and Wagner 1984, 1985b; Tarasiuk and Pejsak 1986; de Ruijter et al. 1988). However, the effects of injection of endotoxins are of short duration, with sows fully recovering within 8 hours of injection (de Ruijter et al. 1988). Even though a continuous infusion of endotoxins causes severe piglet growth retardation (Ferguson et al. 1984), a single massive dose only retards piglet growth during the 5–8 hours after the injection (Smith and Wagner 1985b). The origin of endotoxins remains unclear, but may be urinary tract inflammation, mastitis, uterine infection, or the intestine.

Sows with Subclinical Forms of Disease
Lactation problems of some sows could be the consequence of a subclinical form of the diseases aforementioned. This hypothesis is very popular because it can explain the disproportionate between the number of sows showing clinical signs of disease (rare) and those nursing problem litters (more frequent). This theory is often used as a justification for the common practice of a systematic use of antibiotics and antiinflammatory drugs for the postpartum sow.

NONINFECTIOUS CAUSES FOR PPDS

Mammary Gland Development
Allometric mammary gland development occurs mainly during the last third of gestation and continues during lactation (see mammogenesis). Mammary gland development varies between sows and could certainly explain some lactation problems related to PPDS.

The number of piglets in the litter should always be adjusted to the number of functional mammary glands. Teat malformation, inverted nipples can prevent the piglets from nursing (Labroue et al. 2001). Sows with an insufficient number of functional mammary glands should be culled.

Intensity of Milk Synthesis
Concentrations of milk lactose increase during the first days of lactation (Table 4.3) and this increase is slower among sows affected by PPDS during the first 72 hours after parturition (Klopfenstein 2003). Factors explaining the slower increase in milk synthesis among sows nursing problem litters are not known but could be the consequence of retarded lactogenesis or insufficient mammary gland development at parturition.

Homeorhesis
Sow Behavior. Some sows are aggressive and attempt to bite or crush their piglets soon after parturition, while others refuse mammary access to the piglets. These problems are more characteristic of first-parity sows, and chemical tranquilization is usually sufficient to cause the sow to relax and nursing to proceed normally.

Energy Balance. A recent study showed that serum concentrations of nonesterified fatty acids (NEFA) and glucose are lower in sows nursing litter with high preweaning mortalities (more than 1 piglet dying (Valros et al. 2003). This in conjunction with the well-known detrimental effects of heat stress on sow lactation performance indicates that the capacity of the sow to manage her energy balance is certainly a critical point. Problems of energy balance adjustments after parturition are well documented in cows (Drackley 1999) but have not yet been extensively studied in sows.

Water Balance. Water management around parturition can certainly explain some lactation problems related to PPDS. The shape of the temporal variation in water intake around parturition (Figure 4.4) indeed suggests that water availability prior to parturition is a critical point that needs to be considered in the farrowing room. Postpartum constipation observed in some sows affected by PPDS could be due to insufficient water intake before parturition.

Bivalent Ions Balance. Problems related to metabolic balance adjustment of bivalent ions (calcium, phosphorous and magnesium) are well-described in cows (Goff 2000) and are often suspected in sows. Hermansson et al. (1978a) reported that sows affected by agalactia problems had lower circulating calcium and magnesium concentrations. Klopfenstein (2003) observed higher serum phosphorus and calcium concentrations in sows nursing litters with lower growth rates. Moreover, DeRouchey et al. (2003) were able to increase piglet survivability up to day 10 by feeding sows a diet with a low electrolyte balance from day 109 of gestation and during lactation. This strategy is often used in dairy cows and is known for its beneficial impact on calcium and phosphorus balance in the postpartum cow. The later observations suggest that inadequate adjustment of bivalent ions balance after parturition might explain some lactation problems related to PPDS of sows.

Hormonal Balance. As early as 1967, an endocrine role in the pathogenesis of agalactia was suggested (Martin et al. 1967). Agalactic sows had smaller ovaries and thyroid glands and larger adrenal glands than control sows. In a later study, there was no difference in the size of these three glands but thyroid function was depressed in agalactic sows (Wagner 1972). More recently, it was shown that the hormonal status of first-litter sows with hypogalactia or agalactia differs from that of healthy sows. Concentrations of cortisol both before and after farrowing and prepartum levels of glucose were lower in hypogalactic sows (Samanc et al. 1992). Finally, de Passillé et al. (1993) noted a relationship between poor piglet performance and high concentrations of progesterone in the blood of sows after parturition.
**Feed Toxicity.** Grain contamination with ergot by-products produced by *Claviceps purpurea* has been reported to cause lactation failure in sows (Penny 1970; Anderson and Werdin 1977). Ergot derivates are known to suppress prolactin release (Whitacre and Threlfall 1981; Bevers et al. 1983; Smith and Wagner 1985a), which could in turn inhibit mammary growth and lactation. Diagnosis is based on a history of grain changes and sudden appearance of a great number of affected sows with flaccid mammary glands and carpal erosions but normal rectal temperature. However this condition is rare.

**TREATMENT**

Every producer wants to maintain the health of the sows and prevent poor litter performance. Veterinarians are placed in a delicate situation when they are called upon to propose treatment for a poorly defined problem for which overtreatment is certainly leading to increased costs of production and unjustified medication overuse. A good strategy to reduce the consequences of PPDS should be based on three levels of intervention:

1. Defining a treatment for the truly diseased postpartum sows
2. Rapidly identifying the problem litters of sows without clinical manifestations and determining a treatment for those sows and piglets
3. Reducing the incidence of problem litters in the herd by addressing the risk factors

**The Diseased Sow**

The treatment of choice for the diseased sows is antibiotic and/or antiinflammatory treatment to help cure the disease. Moreover, sow treatment must also ensure adequate mammary gland function to sustain piglet growth. In the worst cases, the best strategy is to foster the piglets of the diseased sow to another healthy sow.

Systematic treatment of all sows after farrowing with an antibiotic and sometimes with nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAID) is a common practice in modern farrowing houses. Different strategies for the systematic administration of antibiotics were proposed:

1. Adding antibiotics to the feed from 7 days prepartum to 7 days postpartum, which could decrease piglet mortality by 43% (7.34% vs. 4.18%) and increase weaning weights by 8% (Tabjara et al. 1992)
2. Daily injections of antibiotics for the first 2 days postpartum (Rose et al. 1996)
3. In-feed medication and one injection of antibiotics on the day of parturition (Schoning and Plonait 1990)

Although all these strategies can be used when a whole herd is severely affected by PPDS, systematic treatment of all sows should be only short-term to avoid medication overuse.

**Antibiotics.** The selection of an antibiotic should be based on its spectrum of activity against bacterial organisms identified in postpartum diseased sows and thought to be related to PPDS. Unfortunately, identifying the most common bacterium related to the diseased sows is often difficult due to the diversity of the clinical signs.

**Nonsteroidal Antiinflammatory Drug (NSAID).** NSAID treatments seem to have a beneficial effect on health of affected sows. Treatment strategies usually consist of one
treatment on the day of parturition and sometimes a second treatment the next day. Drugs that have been proposed are: flunixin (2 mg/kg) (Cerne et al. 1984), tolprofenamic acid (2–4 mg/kg) (Rose et al. 1996), meloxicam (0.4 mg/kg) (Hirsch et al. 2003; Hoy and Friton 2004).

**Stimulating Milk Production**

One of the objectives of the treatment strategy is to stimulate milk flow as rapidly as possible to minimize the consequence of PPDS. Repeated use of oxytocin is certainly the most frequent treatment administered to sows to stimulate milk production.

**Oxytocin.** Parenteral administration of synthetic oxytocin is a very efficient way to trigger milk ejection. The manufacturers’ recommended dose for sows varies from 30 to 50 IU intramuscularly (Canadian Animal Health Institute 2001). In our experience, intramuscular injections of oxytocin do not always trigger the milk ejection process and more predictable results are obtained with intravenous injections of 10 IU. The variable response with intramuscular injections might be related to the product being deposited between muscles or in the fat pad and to the very short half-life of oxytocin. In fact, the short half-life (6–7 minutes) of oxytocin is the reason why it can be administered safely at hourly intervals for at least 6 hours (Knaggs 1967).

Although efficient and considered as safe, repeated use of oxytocin might have some detrimental effects on sows. Indeed, its use was reported to be related to poorer herd performance in some epidemiological studies (Bilkei Papp 1994; Ravel et al. 1996). Moreover, somatic cell counts in sow’s milk were found to increase with oxytocin administration, and this was more apparent when oxytocin was injected intramuscularly than intravenously (Garst et al. 1999).

**Prolactin Stimulators.** Prolactin and prolactin-stimulators were suggested as methods to stimulate milk synthesis of sows affected with PPDS. Purified porcine prolactin is commercially available only in minute quantities. Therefore, most research on PPDS treatment with prolactin has focused on stimulating prolactin release. Administration of various phenothiazine and butyrophenone tranquillizers (e.g., chlorpromazine, ace-tylpromazine, haloperidol, and azaperone) significantly increases prolactin concentrations in various species; however, they have generally not been effective in stimulating prolactin release in the pig (Smith and Wagner 1985a). Thyroid-stimulating hormone was shown to be effective in increasing prolactin concentrations in swine but for such short duration (<45 minutes) that it is unlikely to be clinically useful (Smith and Wagner 1985a).

**Vaccinations**

Sow mammary glands initially infected with coliform bacteria do not appear to develop resistance to subsequent infections (Bertschinger and Buhlmann 1990), thereby suggesting that the development of a vaccine for the prevention of coliform mastitis is unlikely. On the other hand, vaccination against urinary tract infections at 4 and 2 weeks before parturition was reported to increase the overall lactation performance of sows (Pejsak et al. 1988).

**Supportive Treatment for Piglets**

Once problem litters are identified, the main objectives are to avoid piglet dehydration and provide an alternative source of energy. Observations suggest that piglets will drink appreciable amounts of tap water on the first day following birth, particularly if milk supply is limited (Fraser et al. 1988). Water intake is further increased when using a specially designed water dispenser with air bubbles (Phillips and Fraser 1991). It was speculated that under low milk intake conditions, water intake may help prevent dehydration and promote survival of the piglets. Low-birth-weight piglets suckling a sow affected with PPDS need to be transferred rapidly to another sow with good milking capacity. The lower milk production of affected sows will be less detrimental to piglets of heavy birth weight, and most of them may still reach acceptable weaning weights. Moreover, piglets can be efficiently raised with a combination of milk replacers and highly digestible adapted feed.

**PREVENTION AND RISK FACTORS**

One of the keys in reducing the incidence of problem litters in a herd is the identification and correction of specific risk factors. Factors related to mammary gland development, milk synthesis, and inadequate lactation homeorhesis are certainly crucial. However, because of the complexity of the underlying causes of PPDS, other specific risk factors associated with a high prevalence of problem litters have been described. These factors are not necessarily of an etiologic nature; however, the interplay between some of them will increase the incidence of PPDS. The identified risk factors are mainly related to sow body condition at farrowing, sow constipation, housing and environment.

**Sow Body Condition**

Maintaining optimal body condition of all sows in the herd is important to reduce the prevalence of PPDS. This is not always easy, because a small error in the amount of feed distributed over the whole gestation period can lead to overweight or underweight sows at the time of parturition (Martineau and Klopfenstein 1996). Sows maintained in pens have more variable body weights, the most aggressive often being overweight while submissive animals are underweight (Martineau 1990; Marchant 1997). Fat sows are also more likely to take longer to farrow (Bilkei 1992; Madec et al. 1992) and to have more stillborn piglets (Zaleski and Hacker 1993; Bilkei Papp 1994).
Sow Constipation
Postpartum constipation was observed in some sows nursing problem litters (Ringarp 1960; Hermansson et al. 1978b). Feeding high-fiber diets in late gestation was therefore proposed and has been widely used in order to decrease the incidence of early lactation problems (Ringarp 1960; Wallace et al. 1974). When fibers are simply added to a diet, the concentrations of the other components are decreased accordingly (Sandstedt et al. 1979; Jensen 1981; Sandstedt and Sjogren 1982; Goransson 1989a,b). As previously discussed, sow water availability is certainly a crucial factor to consider because insufficient water intake just before farrowing can certainly enhance postpartum constipation. Moreover, low postpartum water intake and low activity level of the sows were also proposed as risk factors for early lactation problems (Fraser and Phillips 1989).

Housing and Environment
Housing and general herd management can affect the prevalence of sows affected by PPDS. In one study, there were more litters with starving piglets in herds where the sows farrowed in confinement than when they farrowed on the pasture (Backstrom et al. 1982). Sows are exposed to many changes when they are moved from the gestating room to the farrowing room. Research results, however, do not suggest that these changes are harmful to sows. Indeed, allowing sows to adapt to the new environment for more than a week, rather than only a few days, before parturition was not associated with a lower prevalence of problem litters (Klopfenstein et al. 1995). Stray voltage in the farrowing unit was also suspected as a source of lactation problems (Gillespie 1984); yet, recent research did not support this hypothesis (Robert et al. 1996). Regular washing of the farrowing unit was reported to be associated with lower preweaning mortality (Ravel et al. 1996).

Sow and piglet management around parturition, although difficult to assess, is known to be extremely important. Supervision and attendance at farrowing time is reported to decrease the number of stillborn piglets and preweaning mortality (Holyoake et al. 1995). Care must be taken to ensure that the sow and piglets are able to drink from the watering system in the farrowing room. Attention must be given to the quality of the environment. Slippery floors are one of the main causes of low activity of lactating sows and may lead to many health problems, including PPDS, and to reduced feed and water intakes. On the other hand, more interventions at farrowing are not always a good practice. Indeed, obstetric aid by either herd managers or veterinarians results in a fourfold increase in the sow’s risk of acquiring early lactation problems (Jorsal 1986) and increases the incidence of postfarrowing vulvar discharges and endometritis (Bara and Cameron 1996).

Temperature control in the farrowing room is certainly a crucial factor affecting sow lactation performance (see heat stress). It is essential to provide a localized warm environment for newborn piglets but the temperature requirement of the sow must also be taken into consideration since her zone of thermoneutrality is much lower than that of piglets. In modern swine units, where farrowings are managed as all-in/all-out on a room basis, it is much easier to adjust the temperature according to the physiological state of the sow and her piglets. We generally recommend that room temperature be maintained warm (20–22°C) for the 2–3 days after farrowing to favor piglet survival. However, after this crucial period, room temperature can be gradually decreased to attain 18°C or even 15°C on day 10 of lactation (Farmer et al. 1998). Indeed, when an adequate draft-free heat zone is provided for the piglets, the ambient temperature can be decreased to 15°C on day 8 of lactation with no detrimental effects on sow and litter performances. It is important that the extra heat provided is directed away from the sow and her udder and that it be rapidly removed, when not needed, to favor the sow’s well-being and maximize her milk production. One must also keep in mind that position of the heat lamps has an impact on the spatial behavior of neonatal pigs (Titterington and Fraser 1975).

Others
Feeding Strategy. It was hypothesized that a reduced feed consumption in first days of lactation decreases the incidence of lactation failure. However, gradually increasing feed consumption of sows in the first week postpartum instead of feeding ad libitum within 16 hours of farrowing also showed no advantage for litter performance or occurrences of lactation failure (Moser et al. 1987).

Prostaglandins on the Farrowing Day. Prostaglandins are luteolytic agents causing a prepartum decline in progesterone and the release of relaxin from the corpora lutea. They are widely used for the induction of farrowing (Ehnvall et al. 1977), resulting in an immediate and sharp increase in prolactin concentrations lasting approximately 6 hours (Hansen 1979). In some herds with a significant percentage of gilts and sows showing PPDS, induction of parturition with the F series of prostaglandins has proven effective in reducing the incidence of PPDS (Cerne and Jochle 1981; Holtz et al. 1983), whereas it had no effect in other herds (Ehnvall et al. 1977; Hansen 1979). Prostaglandins could be effective in treating PPDS caused by retarded lactogenesis since incomplete luteolysis of corpora lutea can lead to high progesterone concentrations, which inhibit lactogenesis. Moreover, postpartum administration of prostaglandins can have a beneficial effect on uterine involution and prevention of severe clinical endometritis (Waldmann and Heide 1996).

Vitamin E. Some research has suggested a relationship between diets deficient in selenium and vitamin E, and
sow lactational problems (Trapp et al. 1970; Whitehair and Miller 1986). The exact mode of action has not been established, but these microelements may give some protection against endotoxins because they both play a role in the maintenance of cellular integrity and in leukocyte function (Elmore and Martin 1986). On the other hand, primary deficiencies are uncommon since vitamin E and selenium are generally supplemented in feed. In fact, increasing dietary levels of vitamin E from 30 to 60 IU did not decrease the prevalence of MMA diagnosed subjectively at parturition based on udder hardness and vulvar discharge (Mahan et al. 2000). In another study, injections of vitamin E (400 IU) and selenium (3 mg) to sows three times during gestation, while they were fed normal levels of these nutrients, increased the survival rate of piglets but did not affect litter weights at weaning (Chavez and Patton 1986).

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 4  DISEASES OF THE MAMMARY GLANDS 79


Cronin GM, Simpson GJ, Hemsworth PH. 1994. The be-


Clinical signs of lameness and neurological problems are common in swine herds. Lameness is the second most important cause of culling in breeding-stock animals and hence results in lost opportunity in reproductive performance. Preweaning and postweaning polyserositis and meningitis cause decreases in production. Although cases of nutritional deficiencies and poisonings are rare, they are nonetheless extremely important to diagnose. To diagnose a lameness or neurological problem, begin with a thorough herd evaluation followed by clinical examinations of individual animals. Determine whether the clinical signs are primarily due to the musculoskeletal system or the neurological system to narrow the list of differentials and to focus the clinical examination.

LOCOMOTOR PROBLEMS
Clinical Approach to a Lameness Problem in a Herd
The objectives of the herd examination for a lameness problem include determining the age group(s) affected, the most prominent clinical signs, and the onset and prevalence of the clinical signs. It is essential to examine the affected animals as well as their environment.

To evaluate lameness in the breeding herd, begin by examining the sows in farrowing crates and gestation stalls while they are prone. Record the number of sows that have hoof cracks, hoof wall damage, sole lesions, foot rot, long lateral toes, dewclaw damage, and soft-tissue damage. Most sows will remain prone if you handle their feet gently. Next, encourage all sows to stand. Note the number of sows with clinical lameness, the severity of the lameness, whether the clinical signs involve one or more than one leg, if it is predominantly a forelimb or hindlimb lameness, and the parity and stage of gestation of the sows affected. Palpate joints and soft tissue of the clinically affected legs and lift the leg to examine the foot to determine the primary source of the lameness. Take the sows out of the crates to observe their gait. Describe the severity of the lameness using the following terms: stiffness, weight bearing, resting the leg on the ground or carrying the leg while standing still, weight bearing or carrying the leg during ambulation, and ability to stand and walk without assistance.

Once the stalled animals are observed, examine the sows housed in pens. Note whether the lameness is associated with a specific housing type. Examine the feet of the sows that are lying down, watch the sows move about, and determine the prevalence and severity of the lameness in this group of animals. Specifically look for reluctance to move, degree of difficulty in standing, stiffness, stance with legs under the body, and weight bearing on all limbs.

Depending on the extent of the problem, you may wish to cull a representative group of sows to conduct a complete examination of all joints, feet, and vertebral column. Examine all putative causes of the lameness such as nutrition; relocation of the sows during gestation; and housing conditions, especially floors, including solid versus slatted, slipperiness, roughness, and wetness.

For growing animals, determine the range in severity of clinical signs and whether one or more legs are involved per animal. Examine animals that are acutely and chronically affected, observe their movement, palpate the joints and then each leg looking for heat, swelling, and response to pain. Examine all age groups of animals on the farm, not just those with the most severe signs. The causative factors may be in the environment of younger animals. If the producer has treated pigs, discuss the response to treatment. Finally, select a representative sample of nontreated pigs for a post-mortem examination.

Preweaning Pigs
The most common conditions affecting the locomotor system of preweaning pigs will be covered in this section; others can be found in Table 5.1.
Splayleg. Splayleg is a congenital abnormality causing paresis in newborn pigs. This problem of hindlimb adduction affects approximately 0.4% of live births (Ward 1978). The annual rate in pigs born to German Landrace boars between 1982 and 2000 ranged from 0.26% to 0.69% but did not decrease over time due to selection (Beissner et al. 2003). An examination of 47,323 litters born to German Landrace boars from artificial insemination units showed that the frequency of splayleg was not reduced by selection over a 14-year period (Beissner et al. 2003). The problem is widespread, common, and typically affects only 1–4 pigs per litter and just a few litters at a time. Usually individual herd prevalence is less than 1%; however, sporadic increases occur when the prevalence reaches 8% or higher (Ward and Bradley 1980).

The condition has been associated with low birth weight, slippery floors, Fusarium toxicity, choline or methionine deficiency in sow diets, Large White and Landrace pigs, and short gestation lengths (Ward 1978). Farrowing induction may result in a higher prevalence of splayleg especially if producers do not first determine the normal gestation length in their herd. Some studies have suggested that one cause of splayleg was a deficiency in the sow’s diet of choline and methionine which are essential for normal myelin production (Cunha 1968; Kornegay and Meacham 1973). The study by Cunha (1968) did not mention the use of controls. However, others have refuted this suggestion (Dobson 1971). In clinical trials on two farms, Dobson (1971) showed that adding 3 g choline and 5 g methionine to the sows’ daily ration had no effect on the occurrence of splayleg.

Although some researchers describe muscle hypoplasia as the cause of the clinical signs, myofibrillar hypoplasia is normal in all newborn pigs. At one day of age, myofibrils do not fill the muscle cells completely in splayleg or in normal pigs (Ward and Bradley 1980). Also, the vasculature, nervous supply, neuromuscular bundles, and the myelination of the intramuscular nerves are the same between healthy and affected pigs. Clinically 3-day-old pigs show improved movement and the myofibrils increase in size, reducing the extramyofibrillar space. By 6 days of age, the splaylegged pigs do not differ from normal pigs clinically or in the histology of the muscles. In all pigs, myofibrils and nuclei continue to increase in size.

Splayleg is caused by a reduction in the axonal diameter and myelin sheath thickness of the fibers that innervate the hindlimb adductors (Szalay et al. 2001). The pathways from the upper to the lower motor neurons, specifically the lumbar spinal motor neurons are impaired. In affected pigs, nerves at the level of L6 regions near the surface of the spinal cord are somewhat myelinated, whereas deeper areas are unmyelinated. This is particularly obvious in the ventral and lateral funiculi. These areas are responsible for innervation of the hindlimb. Myelination is required for normal impulses to be conducted along nerve fibers. The oligodendroglia form the myelin sheath as the final step in the formation and maturation of the neural pathways. Typically, the lumbar region is myelinated earlier than more rostral sections. It is not known why this problem with myelination occurs in these splaylegged pigs.

Myelin is produced by the fetus’ oligodendrocytes. This production appears to occur in two phases. The first peak occurs 2 weeks prior to birth and the second 3 weeks after birth. If pigs live past the first couple of weeks, the myelin sheath is properly developed during this second phase.

Clinically pigs show extreme abduction of the limbs with an inability to stand. Splayleg affects the hindlimb adductors and in severe cases, the forelegs are also involved (Szalay et al. 2001). Clinically signs are similar in the high prevalence periods. Typically half of the affected pigs die due to starvation and overlying, because the pigs have a hard time reaching the udder, retaining hold of the nipple, competing with their littermates and moving out of the sow’s lying space. Affected pigs can be kept alive if they are fed artificially, provided with supplemental colostrum and heat, assisted to nurse, cross-
fostered to reduce competition, and have their limbs taped in a natural standing pose. Pigs that live past the first week of life will recover completely.

**Polyarthritis.** Polyarthritis is a common problem in preweaned pigs and affects approximately 18% of litters and 3.3% of pigs after 4 days of age (Nielsen et al. 1975). Mortality due to polyarthritis is about 1.4% and is highest in the winter. Most affected pigs will die by 3 weeks of age, but 32% of the pigs do not die until 4–5 weeks of age. There is a lower incidence of polyarthritis in female pigs and in pigs from multiparous sows, small litters, closed herds, and herds that do not have their pigs’ teeth clipped or tails docked (Nielsen et al. 1975; Smith and Mitchell 1976). Pigs with polyarthritis are more likely to have necrotizing gingivitis than healthy pigs. Different instruments should be used for the teeth and the tails at processing. Instruments should be disinfected between piglets, and the tail and navel sprayed with a disinfectant (Nielsen et al. 1975).

Haemolytic streptococci cause 65% of the cases but staphylococci and *Escherichia coli* are also frequent causes (Nielsen et al. 1975; Smith and Mitchell 1976). The joint lesions include increased synovial fluid, hyperemia of synovial membranes, fibrinous periarthritis, and joint swelling due to exudate and abscesses. The carpal, elbow, hock, and hip joints are most frequently affected. Often the meninges and brain are congested, and there is turbid cerebrospinal fluid, concurrent pneumonia, endocarditis, and gingivitis (Nielsen et al. 1975). The pathogenesis involves the individual pig’s ability to eliminate pyogenic organisms before they multiply in the joints (Nielsen et al. 1975). Early treatment with antibiotics will reduce the duration of illness and mortality. Pigs need to be examined carefully for signs of lameness, particularly at 10 and 18 days of age (Nielsen et al. 1975).

**Skin Abrasions.** Skin abrasions occurring bilaterally on hindlegs and forelegs are evident within a few hours of birth. Rough floor surfaces increase the chance of skin abrasions and therefore the opportunity for the invasion of microorganisms. Although 98% of 3-day-old pigs have skin abrasions, only 11% of pigs are severely affected and most lesions heal within 2–3 weeks of life (Svendsen et al. 1979; Furniss et al. 1986). The incidence of skin abrasions is highest on old cement floors, intermediate on punch metal and new cement floors, and lowest on plastic-coated woven wire. The incidence increases if the size and shape of the slot is large compared to the piglet’s foot size and in litters suckling sows with hypogalactia (Smith and Mitchell 1976). The slot width in farrowing crate floors should not exceed 10 mm.

**Postweaning Lameness**

**Infectious Arthritis.** Infectious arthritis causes slaughter condemnations equivalent to 2 whole carcasses and 49.6 partial carcasses per 10,000 pigs slaughtered (Evans and Pratt 1978). Pigs condemned due to arthritis are more likely to have erysipelas or pneumonia than pigs not condemned (Evans and Pratt 1978).

**Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae.** *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* affects nursery to adult pigs. It is a widespread but uncommon disease affecting up to 75% of pigs in a pen, with 10% mortality (Buddle 1987). Chronic erysipelas results in a progressively increasing lameness and weight loss over 2–3 weeks, with palpably normal joints. It causes a rheumatoid-like proliferative arthritis in the joints of the long bones, spondylitis, and spondylarthritides. The polyarthritis develops in four stages: hypertrophic villous synovitis, pannus formation and articular surface degeneration, fibrous ankylosis, and bony ankylosis. The disease may stop at one of these stages and the animal will undergo remission; otherwise the disease becomes chronic and the animal becomes unthrift.

Clinically, the animals shift their weight from leg to leg and may have periods of remission. Early in the disease the joints are swollen, warm, and slightly painful, but in the later stages, joints become firm and nodular, with palpable periarticular enlargements and restricted joint movement (Vaughan 1969). Pigs with erysipelas prefer to lie down and have a stilted gait and poor growth rate (Grabell et al. 1962). Animals support themselves on the tips of their digits and have flexed carpi; hocks are together and feet are under the body, with the back arched. There is no palpable fluid or purulent matter in the joints.

There is moderate improvement after treatment with penicillin. Although it is difficult to isolate *E. rhusiopathiae* from chronic cases, it can be isolated from 65% of lame grower-finisher pigs and it causes large abattoir losses due to polyarthritis.

**Mycoplasma hyosynoviae.** *Mycoplasma hyosynoviae* is relatively rare and affects up to 10% of the animals, although in some herds 50% of the animals are involved (Buddle 1987). Clinically 3- to 6-month-old pigs experience a sudden onset of lameness over 3–10 days. The organism lives in the respiratory tract and is spread via inhalation (Burch 1986). *Mycoplasma hyosynoviae* causes severe lameness with minimal swelling of stifles, shoulders, elbows, and tarsus joints. Pigs show a shifting lameness, stiff or staggering gait, kneeling, or dog-sitting. Approximately 10–20% will become chronic and progress to recumbency. Pathologic features include fibrinous arthritis, edematous, hyperemic, hypertrophied synovial membrane, and serosanguineous synovial fluid. Treatment with either tiamulin or lincomycin at 10 mg/kg daily for 3 days reduces lameness and improves daily gain (Burch and Goodwin 1984).

**Polyserositis.** Polyserositis occurs most commonly in 4- to 12-week-old pigs, and more frequently in autumn
and winter than in spring and summer (Miniats et al. 1986). *Haemophilus parasuis* is isolated most frequently (36%), followed by *M. hyorhinis* (18%) and then *Streptococcus suis* and *Pasteurella multocida*. These pigs experience peracute death or lameness, inability to rise, swollen joints, and respiratory distress.

**Mycoplasma hyorhinis.** *Mycoplasma hyorhinis* typically affects pigs at 7 weeks of age and is associated with the decline of passive immunity (Ross and Spear 1973). This is a widespread disease but uncommon and sporadic and results in low morbidity (5–15%) and mortality (<10%) (Buddle 1987). Clinically affected animals carry affected legs because of acute, severe pain. Several joints are moderately hot and swollen, especially carp- us, shoulder, tarsus, and stifle (Buddle 1987). There is also polyserositis, causing abdominal breathing and reluctance to move. Occasionally the lesions will spontaneously resolve but more typically pigs experience chronic ill thrift. The gross postmortem lesions include distension of the joint capsule, hyperemia, edema, and fibrin deposits of the synovial membrane (Roberts et al. 1963). The chronic lesions include hyperemia, hypertrophy and yellow discoloration of the synovial membrane, and bone atrophy. The tonsils and mucous membranes of the respiratory tract of sows provide the reservoir for *M. hyorhinis* (Ross and Spear 1973). Typically the organism is introduced with new breed- ing stock. A synergistic effect of other conditions, such as concurrent *E. coli* infections or poor management, is required to initiate clinical signs (Frus and Feenstra 1994).

**Haemophilus parasuis** (Glasser’s Disease). *Haemophilus parasuis* (Glasser’s disease) causes a severe peracute and acute lameness, depression, fever, dyspnea, hot swollen joints, reluctance to stand or move, tremor, paralysis, and sudden death (Nielsen and Danielsen 1975; Smart et al. 1986; Hoefling 1994). Pigs recovering from the acute phase may have chronic arthritis. Experimentally infected pigs will be reluctant to move 36 hours post infection. By 60 hours, they have swollen joints and exhibit lateral recumbence (Vahle et al. 1997).

*Haemophilus parasuis* is a commensal organism living in the upper respiratory tract of pigs. It can be isolated from the nasal and oral cavities and trachea (Oliveira and Pijoan 2004). *H. parasuis* can cause acute suppura- tive rhinitis with loss of cilia in the nasal and tracheal mucosa (Vahle et al. 1997). This may be the portal of entry. When *H. parasuis* causes acute septicemia and sudden death, this is due to disseminated intravascular coagulation in response to the bacteria’s endotoxin.

The disease is widespread and relatively common. Outbreaks occur due to regrouping pigs, at 1–2 weeks postweaning, and when naive breeding stock are moved to an endemically infected herd.

The prevalence of clinical disease due to *H. parasuis* in nursery pigs appears to have increased since the 1980s. The change may be due to either the use of off- site early weaning facilities, porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRSV), or porcine cir- covirus type 2 (PCV2). Maternal immunity wanes at 6 to 8 weeks of life. Most pigs have not been colonized by the *H. parasuis* bacteria before they are weaned. As maternal immunity wanes, the whole population of nursery pigs is susceptible to infection, which enables outbreaks in these nursery barns (Oliveira et al. 2001). In nurseries af- fected with PRRSV, pigs often exhibit polyarthritis as well as clinical signs involving other organ systems. In these herds, lameness can affect as many as 80% of the pigs and typically is the result of multiple etiologies, in- cluding *H. parasuis*, *S. suis*, *M. hyorhinis*, and *E. rhu- siopathiae* (Kern 1994).

If pigs are infected with PRRSV a week before the *H. parasuis* infection, the alveolar macrophages have a marked decrease in their ability to kill the bacteria (Solano et al. 1998). In vitro research conducted by the same laboratory found different results (Segales et al. 1998). One-third of the pigs affected by postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome in Korea were dually infected by porcine circovirus type 2 and *H. parasuis* (Kim et al. 2002).

Clinical *H. parasuis* is diagnosed by clinical signs; presence of lesions such as fibrinopurulent exudates in the peritoneal, pericardial, and pleural cavities; meningitis; arthritis; and bacterial culture of the organism (Vahle et al. 1997). The bacteria are fastidious and there- fore, PCR assays may be used to improve the sensitivity of identifying the bacteria in clinical cases (Oliveira et al. 2003). However, the positive PCR test must be fol- lowed by culture for further characterization prior to implementing a control program.

Conventional pig farms typically have multiple strains of *H. parasuis* (Smart et al. 1988). The strains iso- lated from nasal swabs are often not the same strains iso- lated from systemically infected pigs from the same farm (Smart et al. 1993). A new indirect hemagglutination test used on 300 isolates from North American sub- missions to diagnostic laboratories showed that serovars 4, 5, 7, and 13 were the most prevalent (Tadjine et al. 2004). Oliveira et al. (2003) found serovar 4 and nonty- pable isolates to be the most prevalent in U.S. herds.

If treated early, affected pigs will respond to systemi- cally administered penicillin (Desrosiers et al. 1986). Both commercially available and autogenous vaccines have been used prior to the introduction of breeding stock to reduce incidence of clinical signs (Smart et al. 1986, 1993; Miniats and Smart 1988).

Often *H. parasuis* problems in nursery and grower pigs can be controlled by the use of commercial or auto- genous vaccines. However, consistent control of *H. para- suis* has been difficult because of the serovar diversity and the lack of cross protection between strains (Oliveira and Pijoan 2004).
Lameness in Growing Pigs and Breeding Animals

The differential diagnosis of lameness in growing and breeding animals includes mainly foot rot, leg injuries, epiphysiolysis, apophysiolysis, osteochondrosis, arthrosis, osteomalacia, fractures, and arthritis (Penny 1979; Wells 1984) (Table 5.2). Leg weakness is a term used to describe lameness due to osteochondrosis, arthrosis, epiphysiolysis, and apophysiolysis. In several studies, osteochondrosis, which is a generalized dyschondroplasia, was found to be the most common cause of lameness in breeding-age animals (Grondalen 1974a; Reiland 1975; Hill et al. 1984; Dewey et al. 1993). The second most important cause of lameness was foot lesions, either foot rot, overgrown claws, or torn dewclaws (Dewey et al. 1993). However, outbreaks of foot problems occur in breeding herds, where up to 100% of the sows are affected (Penny 1979).

Culling Due to Lameness. Lameness is the second most common cause of culling in breeding animals, representing 10–20% of all culled sows (Walker et al. 1966; Reiland 1975; Dagorn and Aumaitre 1978; Karlberg 1979; Friendship et al. 1986; Dewey et al. 1992). In a comparative study of Landrace sows, lameness caused the culling of 20.5% of the low-backfat line, but only 13.8% of the high-backfat line (Grondalen and Vangen 1974). Between 30% and 40% of boars at performance stations and approximately 24% of boars at artificial insemination units are culled for leg weakness; 75% of the latter are less than 18 months of age (Grondalen 1974g; Reiland 1975). Sow herds in France with a lameness prevalence of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Epidemiology</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apophysiolysis</td>
<td>Gradual onset, hind feet slide forward, difficulty in standing, arched back, dog-sitting; progresses to lateral recumbency, crepitation of ischial tuberosity</td>
<td>May be end stage of leg weakness syndrome or may occur independently</td>
<td>Separation of ischial tuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asymmetrical hindquarter syndrome</td>
<td>Reduced muscle mass in hip or thigh; normal gait</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Reduced muscle mass in hip or thigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back-muscle necrosis</td>
<td>Occurs in 5- to 12-month-old pigs; difficult movement due to swollen, hot, uni- or bilateral lesion of back; chronic muscle atrophy</td>
<td>Rare, sporadic, sudden onset; part of porcine stress syndrome</td>
<td>Pale, soft, exudative necrosis and hemorrhage of back muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epiphysiolysis capitis femoris</td>
<td>Sudden onset of severe lameness in one or both hindlegs; reluctance or inability to stand, dog-sitting, squealing, crepitation and pain over hip, muscle wasting</td>
<td>Part of leg weakness syndrome, often seen in newly weaned gilts</td>
<td>Separation of femoral head at epiphyseal plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot-and-mouth disease</td>
<td>Reluctance to stand or move; depression; fever; small vesicles on snout, coronary band, and teats and between claws; vesicle ruptures leaving hemorrhagic, granular, eroded surfaces; underrunning of hoof horn</td>
<td>Reportable disease; all ages, rapid spread, high morbidity, 5% mortality</td>
<td>Acute deaths in piglets, irregular grayish foci on myocardium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastitis, metritis, agalactia</td>
<td>Lameness, heat, front feet painful, digital pulse in fetlock region, stiff gait, reluctance to move</td>
<td>Widespread, common, sporadic, lameness uncommon</td>
<td>Laminitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melioidosis</td>
<td>Usually subclinical; occasionally acute septicemia, anorexia, nasal discharge, cough, posterior paresis, death</td>
<td>Zoonotic disease; uncommon, sporadic</td>
<td>Multiple abscesses with caseous, green, purulent matter in subcutis, lymph nodes, lung, spleen, and liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteodystrophia fibrosa</td>
<td>Signs range from mild, shifting lameness to inability to stand; shortened, curved long bones, enlarged joints and facial bones</td>
<td>Absolute or relative calcium deficiency, morbidity up to 100%; secondary hyperthyroidism in grain-fed pigs due to high phosphorus and low calcium</td>
<td>Distorted bones; bone and marrow replaced with fibrous tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>Slight to severe lameness due to sprains and bruising; hoof cracks and cuts</td>
<td>Widespread, common, affects all ages</td>
<td>Referable to clinical signs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
at least 15% had higher mortality rates than herds with less lameness (Abiven et al. 1998). Lameness is frequently a cause of euthanasia in sows (D’Allaire et al. 1987). In one study, locomotor problems caused 9% of the culling and 28% of sow deaths (D’Allaire et al. 1987). Reiland (1975) examined 230 boars and sows culled for lameness and found few cases of foot rot and concluded that hoof lesions were of secondary importance in leg problems.

The culling rate due to lameness in sows varies from farm to farm, suggesting that leg weakness is a major problem on certain farms. In a survey of Ontario farms, it ranged from 0–38%, with an average of 11%, and was associated with a high culling rate for sows and high proportions of gilts to sows in the breeding herd (Dewey et al. 1992). The culling rate due to lameness in start-up herds (26% ± 13%) was higher than in established herds (8% ± 6%) (Dewey et al. 1992). Herds that are repopulating have a larger proportion of young breeding-age animals and a higher level of culling for lameness.

The housing factors associated with high levels of culling due to lameness were slatted floors for finisher pigs or sows, the use of individual sow stalls, and a high density of pigs in the finishing area. These findings suggest that a change of housing design may result in reducing the culling rate due to lameness and that attention to the way young replacement stock is housed and handled may be very important with respect to subsequent longevity and soundness. Floor type and quality, the size of the space between the slats, the width of the slat, the flooring material, and the type of ground for outdoor housed pigs all impact the prevalence and cause of lameness in pigs. Housing pigs indoors on concrete is associated with lameness in pigs (Barnett et al. 2001). Farms that have both stalls and pens for sow housing had a lower culling rate due to lameness than farms that had only pens (Paterson et al. 1997 cited by Barnett et al. 2001). However, muddy conditions and stones in the paddock cause lameness in pigs housed outdoors (Barnett et al. 2001). Sows housed in pens for a portion of gestation are expected to have reduced farrowing time (Ferket and Hacker 1985), reduced lameness in gilts (Hale et al. 1984), and less joint damage (Fredeen and Sather 1978).

Many sows culled for lameness have more than one problem causing the clinical signs. The primary cause of lameness is likely associated with genetics, predominant feed ingredients, housing type (specifically, intensive versus extensive), floor type, and drainage. Associations between the culling rate due to lameness in sows and various housing factors involving finisher pigs indicate that the environment of the young growing animal may have an effect on the skeletal system that becomes apparent only later in life. This would suggest that managers of herds with higher than acceptable levels of lameness in the sow herd should examine the flooring and housing systems used for the young replacement animals in addition to the sows’ environment.

Infectious Arthritis. Infectious arthritis is generally of minor importance as a cause of sow culling and affects 2.5% of culled boars (Grondalen 1974b, c; Grondalen and Vangen 1974; Nakano et al. 1979a). In Reiland’s (1975) study of animals culled for lameness, the clinical signs were due to infectious arthritis in 18% of the sows that were less than 18 months of age and in 64% of the sows that were older than 18 months. Most of these animals had spondylitis, osteomyelitis, and/or arthritis of the hock joint which were caused by *E. rhusiopathiae*, streptococci, or *Arcanobacterium pyogenes*. The chronic proliferative arthritis and disicophasyolysis of the vertebral column were secondary to lesions of osteochondrosis.

If osteotropic bacteria such as streptococci or *Arcanobacterium pyogenes* affect joints with a fracture or epiphysiolysis, the primary lesion cannot be determined (Reiland 1975). In supplicative infectious arthritis, if the bacteria enter the joint by direct penetration, only one joint is involved, but if the bacteria are spread from a septic focus—such as infected hoof lesions, fight wounds, skin abrasions, or uterine infections—polyarthritides ensues. The clinical signs of arthritis are heat, swelling, pain of the affected joint, refusal to bear weight on the leg, pyrexia, and anorexia (Hill et al. 1986).

Osteochondrosis. Osteochondrosis is a noninfectious, degenerative, generalized condition of cartilage. It is manifested as an abnormal differentiation of both physseal and epiphyseal cartilage with secondary bony changes (Reiland 1975; Hill et al. 1985; Palmer 1985). Osteochondrosis is the major cause of leg weakness in growing boars and sows (Grondalen 1974c, i, 1981; Reiland 1975; Nakano et al. 1979a; Palmer 1985). The incidence and severity of lesions due to osteochondrosis increase from 10 to 20 weeks of age or from 60 to 120 kg liveweight (Nakano et al. 1981b; Aherne and Brennan 1985). In animals 4–18 months of age, osteochondrosis affects the weight-bearing joints (Hill et al. 1985).

Predilection Sites. Lesions of osteochondrosis are generally found in several joints in the affected animal. The medial part of the joint is most severely affected (Grondalen 1974a; Reiland 1975; Nakano et al. 1981b). Osteochondrosis can be located in the following areas, listed in descending order of severity of lesions (Reiland 1975; Palmer 1985):

1. Articular-epiphyseal lesions: stifle, elbow, lumbar synovial intervertebral joints, hock, shoulder, and hip
2. Growth plate lesions: distal ulna, distal femur, costochondral junction, femoral head, humeral head, ischiatic tuberosity, and thoracolumbar vertebrae
3. Epiphysiolysis and apophysiolysis lesions: glenoid cavity, ischiatic tuberosity, capital femoral epiphysis, vertebral epiphyses, anconeal process, and distal ulnar epiphysis
Pathogenesis. Osteochondrosis occurs when the mechanism of endochondral bone formation is disturbed in various predilection sites, but its pathogenesis is not clear (Grondalen 1974a; Reiland 1975). It is uncertain which tissue component is abnormal and initiates the onset of the lesions: the chondrocytes, the cartilage matrix, or the blood vessels (Hill 1990). The matrix of cartilage is mainly composed of collagen fibers, water, and proteoglycans, which are protein-glycosaminoglycan (GAG) complexes that exist in free form or in aggregates bound by hyaluronic acid. Failure of endochondral ossification is associated with cell necrosis and reduced amounts of proteoglycans and collagen in the tissue. Osteochondritis dissecans and superficial fractures of the cartilage are associated with clusters of chondrocytes and a less than normal concentration of proteoglycans (Nakano et al. 1979a). More than 98% of the total GAG content of the pig’s distal femoral articular cartilage is chondroitin sulfate, and its concentration decreases with increasing age from 3 days to 30 weeks (Nakano et al. 1979b). In normal animals, in the force-bearing areas of the stifle joint, the articular cartilage is thickened and contains more chondroitin sulfate and less collagen than in the non–force-bearing areas, indicating that chondroitin sulfate is used for shock absorption (Nakano et al. 1979a). As the pig grows, the joint cartilage does not mature properly, which leaves the joint surfaces prone to damage from mechanical stress.

Local overloading in the joint is a factor in the pathogenesis of osteochondrosis (Grondalen 1974b, e, i; Nakano et al. 1979a, 1981b; Reiland and Anderson 1979). The lesions may be due to a disturbance of the metaphyseal blood flow caused by a local overloading of one part of the joint (Grondalen 1974d). The mechanical stress in heavy pigs on immature cartilage causes a circulatory disturbance at the osteochondral junction, which contributes to the lesions of dyschondroplasia (Walker et al. 1966; Nakano et al. 1981b). Epiphysiolysis of the femoral head, fractures of bone trabeculae, and worn humeral head cartilage in boars may be due to overloading caused by functionally weak muscles, ligaments, cartilage, or bone or by poor conformation (Grondalen 1974b, f, i; Grondalen and Vangen 1974). This stress causes the joint cartilage to be torn or eroded, leaving exposed bone.

The growth plates that close last are most susceptible to osteochondrosis. Growth plate defects occur when the plate is displaced along the plane of the eosinophilic streaks and then bone unites the epiphysis to the metaphysis, functionally closing the plate (Palmer 1985). Premature closure of the proximal femoral growth plate will lead to a short femoral head and reduced lengthwise growth of the femur, which may cause excessive wear of the acetabular cartilage, subluxation of the femoral head, rupture of the teres ligament, or epiphysiolysis of the femoral head (Grondalen 1974a, b). Osteochondritis dissecans develops when a fissure in the subarticular cartilage extends to the articular surface, creating a flap of cartilage (Palmer 1985).

Growth Rate and Backfat. The modern domestic pig is the product of genetic selection for rapid growth, low feed consumption, long carcass length, low backfat, and high carcass yield of lean meat (Reiland 1975). Bone growth and closure of growth plates occur with age rather than with the weight of the pig or the energy content of the diet (Grondalen 1974e). Pigs reach sexual maturity at 5–6 months of age but do not have a mature skeleton until 18 months of age. Adolescence, the time period between 6 and 18 months, is when the clinical signs of osteochondrosis are seen in the pig. The prevalence of osteochondrosis is related to the pig’s rate of gain and backfat thickness, which in turn are functions of both genetics and management practices (Grondalen 1974i; Reiland 1975). Rapid weight gain may increase the mechanical stress on the weight-bearing regions of immature cartilage (Aherne and Brennan 1985). If the growth rate of pigs is slowed by feeding only 50–60% of the feed recommended for their weight range, the clinical signs and the severity of the lesions of osteochondrosis are decreased (Grondalen 1974g; Reiland 1975; Nakano et al. 1979a). There is no evidence that osteochondrosis is related to nutritional excesses or deficiencies. The incidence of osteochondrosis increases with the age and the liveweight of the pig.

Genetics, Breed, and Conformation. Heredity plays a significant role in the leg weakness complex partly due to the inheritance of poor conformational features (Grondalen 1974h, i). Osteochondrotic lesions are correlated with desirable production variables (Grondalen 1974e; Reiland et al. 1978; Webb et al. 1983). The conformation of the pig’s body, feet, and legs affects the incidence of osteochondrosis (Aherne and Brennan 1985). Exterior conformation traits that are associated with an increased incidence of osteochondrosis and poor locomotion are long back, narrow lumbar region, broad hams, short hindlegs, cross-legged forelegs, sloping pasterns of the forelegs, and small medial hooves on the hindlegs (Grondalen 1974a, f, g). Choosing replacement stock without these exterior conformation traits may significantly reduce culling due to leg weakness (Grondalen 1974g).

Compression, Overloading, and Physical Stress. Physical stress plays a part in the etiology of osteochondrosis, arthrosis, intervertebral disk degeneration, spondylosis, and epiphysiolysis (Grondalen 1974i; Nakano et al. 1979a). Mechanical stress on the joints leading to lesions of osteochondrosis can be caused by local overloading of cartilage or bone tissue, rapid growth rate or weight gain, poor joint stability, or weak cartilage and bone tissue (Grondalen 1974i). Joint stability is a function of musculature, ligaments, and joint shape.
Clinical Signs. Clinical osteochondrosis is a chronic, progressive, shifting lameness affecting one or more limbs in pigs from 4 to 18 months of age (Reiland 1975; Hill 1990). Affected animals will prefer to spend time lying down, will not bear weight on the affected leg(s), and will favor different legs at different times. By 18 months, the incidence of clinical osteochondrosis decreases, because either the animals have been culled or their lesions have healed (Reiland 1975). The articular cartilage is devoid of nerves, but pain is caused by an increased production of joint fluid and swelling of the joint capsule that occur secondary to the lesions of osteochondrosis (Reiland 1975; Aherne and Brennan 1985).

Animals with severe osteochondrosis or arthrosis of the elbow are often clinically sound unless the lesion is a displaced anconeal process (Grondalen 1974b; Nakano et al. 1982). Osteochondrosis of the stifle causes a severe lameness and is seen in animals less than 1 year of age (Grondalen 1974b). Young sows with a separation of the tuber ischii dog-sit with their hindlegs directed forward, and if forced to rise, they stand for only a short time (Hill et al. 1986). Severe arthrosis of the hock joint, mild arthrosis of the medial condyle of the femur, and repaired lesions of separated tuber ischii all cause little discomfort in sows (Grondalen 1974b). Osteochondrosis of the vertebrae, with or without spondylolysis, results in kyphosis (Hill 1990). Proximal femoral epiphysiolysis causes an acute severe lameness, and if the lesion is bilateral, the animal is unable to rise (Hill 1990). Boars that are lame due to osteochondrosis spend a lot of time lying down, show stiffness when moving, and are unable to mount and breed (Grondalen 1974g; Reiland 1975; Nakano et al. 1981a).

Diagnosis. To diagnose osteochondrosis, first rule out all other causes of lameness. Examine suspect animals clinically and then examine a representative sample at postmortem. Sows can be followed to slaughter to examine the feet, stifle, hip and elbow joints, and cut half of the vertebral column. Proximal femoral epiphysiolysis must be differentiated from a femoral fracture, paraplegia due to a lumbosacral fracture, or a spinal canal abscess (Hill 1990). Although the definitive diagnosis of osteochondrosis is made by histologic examination of affected joints, 69% of cases can be diagnosed after clinical and gross postmortem examination (Hill et al. 1984; Dewey et al. 1993).

Gross Postmortem Lesions. Osteochondrosis is manifested as osteochondritis dissecans, epiphysiolysis, deformities of bones, and arthrosis (Palmer 1985). Affected articular cartilage may be invaginated below the level of the surrounding cartilage and may be thick and yellowish or thin and reddish (Grondalen 1974a; Reiland 1975). The border between the cartilage and bone is uneven and its surface may be wrinkled (Reiland 1975). Joints severely affected with osteochondrosis have an increase in the amount of synovial fluid, ruptures, hemorrhages of the joint capsule and ligaments, thickened joint capsule, and villous proliferation of the synovial membrane (Grondalen 1974b; Nakano et al. 1981b).

A fissure running parallel to the joint surface separates the outer layers of cartilage from the deeper layers or may occur at the osteochondral junction (Grondalen 1974a). The fissure may extend to the articular surface, creating a cartilage flap (Grondalen 1974a; Palmer 1985). Secondary lesions include hemorrhages, connective tissue proliferation and necrosis in the subchondral bone, osteophyte production, and chip bone fractures (Grondalen 1974a; Palmer 1985). Epiphyseal separation can either be complete—as in the head of the femur and the tuber ischii—or partial—as in the distal epiphyseal plate of the ulna (Palmer 1985).

In advanced cases of osteochondrosis, the long bones of the extremities are shorter and the metaphyses are flared. The femoral and humeral heads are flattened and have short necks, and the head is lower than the major trochanter. Premature closure of the distal ulnar growth plate causes a volar deviation of the distal radius, a fractured anconeal process, and a more semicircular, semilunar notch.

Osteochondrosis of the spine occurs in the thoracolumbar region, causing the synovial joint surfaces to vary in shape and size, with the tip of the joint avulsed and connected to the rest of the joint by a fibrous tissue band. In animals older than 18 months, osteophyte production occurs and joints may become ankylosed (Reiland 1975). Intervertebral disks have a nucleus pulposus that is hemorrhagic, granular, yellowish, firm, and almost absent or changed to a homogenous, darkly colored mass. Epiphyseal separation of the tuber ischii is often associated with signs of repair and arthrosis and may cause a fracture through the primary and secondary spongiosa (Grondalen 1974b; Palmer 1985).

Histologic Lesions. Histologic lesions of osteochondrosis involving the growth cartilage of the physis and the epiphysis include foci of metaphyseal dysplasia, eosinophilic streaks, intracartilagenous cavities, and protrusions or invaginations of cartilaginous plates (Grondalen 1974e, g; Reiland 1975; Nakano et al. 1979a; Hill et al. 1984; Palmer 1985). Histologic lesions of osteochondrosis were seen in 94% of culled sows (Dewey et al. 1993).

Treatment. Pigs with a foreleg lameness due to osteochondrosis may respond to 6 weeks of rest in a pen with secure footing, sufficient room for exercise, and freedom from being mounted by other animals. Affected animals need to be rested for 6 weeks prior to being used for breeding. Boars and multiparous sows with clinical signs of the hindleg or those with a recurring foreleg lameness should be culled. Some boars that are lame due to damaged cartilage become clinically sound when put
out on dirt lots (McPhee and Laws 1976; Fredeen and Sather 1978; Nakano et al. 1981a).

A non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug, meloxicam, was recently approved for use in dogs and cattle and received marketing approval for pigs in Europe (Friton et al. 2003). In double blind, clinical trials, pigs affected with noninfectious causes of lameness had improved lameness scores, improved feed intake, and reduced retreatment rates 4 days after the treatment compared to pigs given a placebo.

**Preventing Leg Weakness.** Gilts’ joints mature with age rather than with weight. Rapidly growing gilts that are fed ad libitum experience joint stress due to their weight. Overfeeding gilts results in increased leg weakness problems and increased culling due to lameness (Jorgensen and Sorensen 1998). Gilts were fed semi–ad libitum (ad libitum for two 30-minute feeding episodes per day), at the recommended Danish standard or 75% of the Danish standard. Sows in the semi–ad libitum group had higher overall leg weakness scores and tended to have weaker pasterns and long accessory digits in the forelimbs. Over the life of the sows twice as many sows were culled for leg weakness in the ad libitum–fed group compared to the other groups. The age sows were culled for lameness was younger in the ad libitum group than the other groups.

A gilt that is moved, exposed to a new floor type, mixed with a new group of animals, or trucked to a new farm will experience stress to her joints. Mating and pregnancy are also potential sources of mechanical stress. Restricted exercise in either a stall or a small pen causes lameness, leg weakness, and poor muscle development. The area per finisher pig and the number of finisher pigs per pen will affect the culling rate due to lameness in sows. Osteochondrosis is associated with rapid weight gain and mechanical stress to joints. Replacement gilts should be selected at the nursery or grower stage. By 150 days of age they should be housed with other gilts in a pen with good secure footing and 10 square feet (1.3 m²) per animal. Their feed should be restricted and they should be bred on their second or third observed estrus.

**Arthrosis.** Arthrosis (arthropathy, osteoarthrosis, or osteoarthritis) is a nonspecific, degenerative condition of cartilage that develops in chronic joint disease (Palmer 1985). Lesions of osteoarthrosis include fibrillation of joint cartilage, ulceration of the articular surface, osteophyte production, and thickened synovial membrane and joint capsule (Palmer 1985). Lesions of osteochondrosis that affect the joint surface fill with fibrocartilaginous tissue, which is then replaced by osseous repair tissue (Grondalen 1974b; Nakano et al. 1979a; Palmer 1985). The incidence and severity of arthrosis increases with the increasing age of the animal (Reiland 1975). In Reiland’s (1975) study of culled sows, the incidence in sows less than 18 months of age was 7%, and in those older than 18 months, it was 82%. Arthrosis is usually secondary to osteochondrosis (Reiland 1975). Arthrosis of the hock is severe and the incidence is high, but it is of minor significance with respect to clinical lameness (Grondalen 1974b).

**Foot Problems.** Torn dewclaws, overgrown lateral digits on the hindfeet, or foot rot are either the first or second most important cause of lameness in sows (Smith and Robertson 1971; Penny 1979; Dewey et al. 1993). Dry sows that are housed on partially slatted concrete floors may have their dewclaws torn as their feet slide out in an attempt to stand. Overgrown lateral digits are seen in animals without exercise, especially those kept on nonabrasive floors such as plastic or steel slats. These sows should have their hooves or dewclaws trimmed on a regular basis. Floors with rough edges or sharp prominences that cause abrasions and floors with poor drainage increase the incidence of foot rot.

**Foot Rot.** Foot rot begins as a crack in the wall of the hoof which starts at the volar surface and extends two-thirds of the way to the coronary band (Penny 1979). Secondary infection of the crack by *Fusobacterium necrophorum, Arcanobacterium pyogenes*, or spirochetes leads to a deep necrotic ulcer of the laminae and coronary band or a necrotic track which may reach the coronary band and form an ulcer (bus foot) or an infection of the deep flexor tendon or phalangeal bones and joints (Vaughan 1969). If the crack does not become infected, it is termed a false sand-crack and does not cause lameness (Hill et al. 1986). Clinically, foot rot causes a unilateral lameness in which the animal is reluctant to bear weight on the affected limb. This contributes to clumsiness and bad mothering in sows and impotencia coeundi in boars (Penny et al. 1963; Hill et al. 1986). Foot rot and associated foot lesions (heel, toe, and sole erosions, white line lesions, and false sand-crack) are seen in 64% of slaughter weight pigs (Penny et al. 1963). In a similar survey done by Backstrom et al. (1980), almost 50% of slaughter pigs had moderate to severe foot lesions, particularly on the pads, sole, and lateral digits.

Lesions of foot rot are commonly seen on the lateral claws of the hindlegs (Simmins and Brooks 1988). Hoof injuries often occur in the lateral claw of animals with uneven claws where the lateral claw is larger than the medial claw (Penny et al. 1963; Vaughan 1969; Grondalen 1974a; Penny 1979). The uneven claw may also cause the animal to stand and walk with an abnormal gait (Penny 1979). Crated animals have fewer hoof lesions than penned animals (Bane et al. 1980). There was a positive, significant, linear relationship between the gross postmortem scores for the foot lesions and the clinical grade and the parity of the sow. The older sows suffered from foot trouble more frequently than the younger sows (Dewey et al. 1993).
Fractures. Fractures occur when animals struggle to free a limb from between slats or under feed troughs or pen rails or when they fall on slippery concrete or during transport (Vaughan 1969; Hill et al. 1986). Clinically there is a sudden onset of severe lameness in one leg, the animal carries the leg, and there is crepitation and pain on palpation (Buddle 1987). The condition is widespread but rare.

Floors

Lameness is associated with many factors and cannot usually be blamed on only one factor. Housing appeared to be an important factor influencing the level of lameness that an individual herd experienced. Floor types affect the incidence of foot and limb disorders (Elliot and Doige 1973; Perrin et al. 1978; Newton et al. 1980; MAFF 1981; Nakano et al. 1981a; Hani and Troxler 1984). A survey of Pig Health Scheme Herds showed that 44% of farms with slatted floors had pigs with injuries, whereas only 28% of farms with solid floors had pigs with injuries caused by flooring (MAFF 1981). Good perforated floors require a durable, low-cost, nonslip, nonabrasive surface and acceptable levels of cleanliness and ease of cleaning (Smith and Mitchell 1976). In sows, lameness is influenced by the floor types used for sows and gilts as well as those used during their rearing period. Concrete floors cause more foot and leg problems than earthen floors or deep straw bedding, and injuries occur more frequently on perforated floors (Nakano et al. 1981b). Perforated floors such as partially slatted or fully slatted concrete or metal slats cause more lameness than solid concrete floors. In the farrowing crates, plastic and steel slats cause more lameness than solid floors. The best floor type for the development of feet and legs is a solid floor with bedding.

It is difficult to obtain the correct balance between nonslipperiness and nonabrasiveness with solid concrete floors. Rough floors are created by using sand of the wrong particle size or by allowing the surface to be broken down by wear or by organic acid in the urine. Poorly laid concrete floors cause abrasions to areas such as the spine of the scapula, the hooves, and the soles. Slippery concrete causes ataxia and tendon swelling, and newly laid concrete causes lameness due to its slippery qualities as well as its surface chemicals. Wet concrete pens cause cracked and bruised soles, which can lead to secondary infections (Penny 1979; MAFF 1981). Substandard concrete may be improved by using bedding, laying a new concrete floor, or coating the concrete with chlorinated rubber, epoxy resin, or polyurethane paints (MAFF 1981).

The floor types associated with culling rates for lameness in sows include steel or plastic slats in the farrowing crates, partially slatted concrete floors and fully slatted concrete floors for sow pens, partially slatted sow stalls with metal slats, and partially slatted concrete floors used for the finisher pigs. The edges of concrete slats are often too rough and the slats may be placed too far apart, causing abrasions of the coronary band and the accessory digits. Plastic slats are too slippery and cause the sow’s feet to be overgrown, leading to secondary damage to the accessory digits (MAFF 1981). Foot pad lesions and hoof cracks are positively correlated with hoof and sole length. The hoof length and sole length are the longest on plastic slats, followed by aluminum, steel, and concrete.

Rough concrete floors, sharp-edged concrete slats, and slats of other materials often result in severe foot injuries, which can lead to changes in the way the pig walks. An altered gait may change the joint congruence, causing overloading in the joint and subsequent cartilage damage (Aherne and Brennan 1985). Also, both insecure footing and foot lesions increase the mechanical stress to joints, which in turn increases the incidence of leg weakness (Nakano et al. 1981b). There is an increase in leg weakness on perforated floors (Nakano et al. 1981b; Dewey 1988). Raising pigs on deep straw bedding rather than partially slatted concrete floors decreases the incidence of gait abnormalities and claw injuries and may decrease the incidence of clinical osteochondrosis (Hani and Troxler 1984; Dewey 1988).

There are unique sources of injury related to estrus detection and mating. Specifically, introducing a boar to non-estrus females increases the injury rate. Conducting estrus detection and mating in a specific mating pen reduces the cull rate for injuries. Farms that house sows in stalls for the first 3 weeks postweaning have a lower cull rate than farms that have only pens for sow housing. The prevalence of injuries including those causing lameness is higher in facilities where pigs are fearful of humans (Barnett et al. 2001).

Breeding pens that are too small, have right-angled corners or slippery floors increase the chance for injuries and lameness in boars and sows (Barnett et al. 2001). Dry, nonslip floors in large octagonally shaped pens used only for breeding are preferable (Hemsworth et al. 1989).

Exercise

Pigs given exercise and pigs penned with other animals have significantly better gait scores and less lameness and posterior paresis than pigs denied exercise or individually housed (Elliot and Doige 1973; Grondalen 1974a; Fredeen and Sather 1978). Inactive individually housed animals have a reduction in cortical bone mass and have muscular weakness. Pigs that are exercised have increased muscle strength and are more agile, allowing them surer movement on slippery floors (Elliot and Doige 1973; Grondalen 1974a, g, i). This may be one of the reasons that gilts and sows in loose housing systems are less prone to culling for leg weakness problems. The duration of confinement is correlated positively to the degree of joint damage (Grondalen 1974i; Fredeen and Sather 1978; Hani and Troxler 1984). Boars given exercise have fewer conformational abnormalities such as
bowlegs, flexion of the carpus, and sickle hocks than boars that are confined (Perrin and Bowland 1977). Perrin et al. (1978) found that floor type did not influence the degree of joint lesions, but Fredeen and Sather (1978) stated that floor and housing type in the nursing period may increase the piglets’ susceptibility to joint damage after weaning.

### Diet Causing Locomotor or Neurologic Problems

Diets in modern pig production are typically made of locally grown grains supplemented with a protein source, vitamins, and minerals. Deficient soil or mixing errors in feed manufacture can result in nutritional deficiencies or toxicities (Silvertsen et al. 1992) (Table 5.3).

#### Table 5.3. Lameness and neurological entities caused by nutritional deficiencies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deficiency</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Epidemiology</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>Incoordination, paresis, posterior paralysis, excessive flexion of hocks and forelegs, recumbency, occasionally sudden death</td>
<td>Rare: unsupplemented diets, deficient soil</td>
<td>Aortic rupture in sudden death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manganese</td>
<td>Newborns: weak at birth, head tilt, incoordination and poor balance, inability to suckle Growers: shifting lameness, dogsitting, short bowed legs, thick hocks, weak joints Sows: stillbirths, irregular estrous cycle, return to estrus, dysgalactia</td>
<td>Rare: progeny of manganese-deficient sows</td>
<td>Thickened mucosa of colon and cecum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niacin</td>
<td>Ataxia, quadriplegia, posterior paralysis, anorexia, reduced growth rate, diarrhea, anemia, dermatitis, alopecia</td>
<td>Unsupplemented corn diets low in tryptophan</td>
<td>Congestion, edema, reddened colon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pantothenic acid</td>
<td>Goose-stepping gait, incoordination, dermatitis with pericentral exudate and alopecia, diarrhea</td>
<td>Rare: nonbalanced diets of waste products or corn</td>
<td>Pale areas in muscles, petechiae and white streaks in cardiac muscle, subcutaneous edema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium (vitamin E and selenium, white muscle)</td>
<td>Affects all ages, especially 30–60 kg: sudden death, ataxia, stiff staggering gait, weakness, paralysis, depression, anorexia, recumbency</td>
<td>Less common, found in selenium-deficient area</td>
<td>Widespread, uncommon, water deprivation, then drinking excessively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Newborns: stillbirth, micro-or anophthalmia, cleft palate, edema, high morbidity and mortality Nursery pigs: progressive neurological dysfunction, incoordination, swaying gait, restlessness, dog-sitting, posterior paralysis, lordosis, blindness, reduced growth</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
<td>Thickened mucosa of colon and cecum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>Nursery pigs: enlarged joints and costochondral junctions, decreased average daily gain, stiff gait, lameness</td>
<td>Rare: high morbidity, low mortality</td>
<td>Hydrocephalus, small cranium, herniation of spinal cord in lumbar region, thick epithelial surfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water (salt poisoning)</td>
<td>Peracute: tremors, prostration, running movements, death Acute: repeated seizures at 3–7 minute intervals, twitching face and ears, dog-sitting, head up and back, falling over, violent paddling, salivation then recovery and walking away, apparent blindness, wandering aimlessly</td>
<td>Widespread, uncommon, water deprivation, then drinking excessively</td>
<td>Edema of meninges, flattened cerebral cortex, hyperemia, erosions of stomach mucosa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The table provides a detailed list of nutritional deficiencies affecting pig health, including the clinical signs, epidemiology, and pathology associated with each deficiency.
**Biotin.** Biotin (vitamin H) is a B vitamin. The bioavailability of biotin in pig feed varies with the major ingredients of the feed (Brooks 1982). Corn is a good natural source of biotin (Bane et al. 1980; Hamilton and Veum 1984), but diets based on cereals such as barley that are low in available biotin may not provide sufficient biotin for horn integrity (Simmins and Brooks 1988). This makes the hoof wall prone to trauma on hard floor surfaces (Bane et al. 1980).

The response of sows with foot lesions to the addition of biotin in the feed is variable because although some may be biotin deficient, there are many causes of foot lesions (Penny et al. 1980; Grandhi and Strain 1980; Brooks 1982; Bryant et al. 1985). Biotin deficiency causes foot lesions due to soft hooves (Penny et al. 1980). Biotin supplementation of feed, 1,160 µg/kg during gestation and 2,320 µg/kg during lactation compared to 160 µg/kg, decreases the rate of claw lesions in gilts. However, it does not heal lesions in parity 2 and 3 sows with lesions prior to supplementation (Penny et al. 1980). Biotin may also be administered via injection at 250 µg/kg body weight in pregnant animals or 150 µg/kg in lactating animals (Brooks et al. 1977). Supplementary d-biotin at 1 mg/kg feed increases the compressive strength and the hardness of the sidewall regions of the pig’s hoof and decreases the hardness of the heel bulb (Webb et al. 1984). The heel bulb acts as a cushion, absorbing energy on contact and spreading the weight of the pig over the area of the foot. Biotin supplementation may reduce the likelihood of injury to the foot and allow an increase of 8% in the floor slot-to-slat ratio from 61% to 69% for 100 kg pigs (Webb et al. 1984). As a preventive measure, pigs weighing 25 kg and more may be given biotin supplementation (Simmins and Brooks 1988).

**Osteoporosis.** Osteoporosis is caused by an excess resorption of bone and results in endosteal thinning of the trabeculae and cortices (Spencer 1979). In mid-to-late lactation or the early postweaning period, osteoporosis occurs as the sows’ bones decalcify to mobilize calcium for milk production. The periosteal surface has a slightly increased mineralization rate. These sows may develop fractures of their vertebrae, femurs, and phalanges. Clinically this occurs as lameness, or “downer” sow syndrome, late in lactation or when the sow is moved by the boar or another sow. Typically the syndrome occurs late in the first or second lactation or during the postweaning period (Gayle and Schwartz 1980).

The diagnosis is made by identifying thinned cortices. The specific gravity of the bone will be less than 1.018, whereas the specific gravity is 1.022 or more in normal sows (Spencer 1979). A cross section of the sixth rib shows a cortex to total area ratio of less than 0.2 (normal sows have a ratio greater than 0.3). Serum calcium and phosphorus will be within normal levels (Gayle and Schwartz 1980). Osteoporosis is caused by inadequate levels of dietary calcium, phosphorus, or vitamin D. Recommended daily intake levels for lactating and gestating sows are as follows: calcium, 37.5 g and 10 g; phosphorus, 25 g and 10 g; and vitamin D, 660 IU per kg of feed (Gayle and Schwartz 1980). Reduced exercise from prolonged periods in crates may predispose sows to osteoporosis (Spencer 1979) because of changes in pH and oxygen tension in the bones (Gayle and Schwartz 1980). Denaturalization occurs due to the higher levels of parathyroid hormone (PTH) in lactating sows. PTH controls renal synthesis of the active form of vitamin D₃, which is responsible for trabecular bone mobilization. Exertion or slipping of these sows may cause spontaneous fractures of their pelvic bones, femurs, or lumbosacral vertebrae, leading to various degrees of stiffness, lameness, or posterior paralysis (Hill et al. 1986). Fractures in old sows, especially those of the glenoid surface, may be caused by a bone weakened by osteochondrosis (Reiland 1975). Prevention includes adequate dietary vitamins and minerals, lactation limited to 4 weeks, and breeding gilts after 7 months of age (Gayle and Schwartz 1980).

**Poisoning**

Poisonings occur when pigs consume products in their surroundings, such as rodent bait or excess amounts of compounds normally found in swine feeds (Table 5.4).

**Arsanilic Acid.** Arsanilic acid is fed to pigs either to promote growth or to treat swine dysentery. Overdoses of arsanilic acid decrease growth rate and cause head tremor, progressive blindness, ataxia, and paresis. Pigs remain bright, alert, and even euphoric. The onset of neurological signs begins 4–6 days after ingesting high levels (1000–2000 g/ton) of arsanilic acid, but at lower levels (600 g/ton) the onset of clinical signs is much slower and growth rate is not depressed. If the drug is removed, the symptoms stop progressing and may regress (Hardin et al. 1968). Other clinical signs are seen in pigs poisoned with 3-nitro-4-hydroxy phenyl arsonic acid (Rice et al. 1980). Symptoms are not visible until the pigs are moved or exercised. After exercise there is trembling of the muscles of the shoulders, hams, and backs followed by violent tremors, incoordination, and extreme agitation and screaming. The seizure lasts for 1 minute, after which the animal lies down and the trembling ceases. Diagnosis is confirmed by identifying arsenicals in the urine. On postmortem examination, the bladder is distended, and there is degeneration of the optic nerves, optic tracts, and peripheral nerves (Hardin et al. 1968).

**Insecticide.** Organophosphate and organochlorine poisoning occurs in pigs due to inadvertent mixing or spilling of insecticides used for rootworm control in corn crops (Frank et al. 1991). Most pigs (70%) consuming contaminated feed die within hours of ingesting.
### Table 5.4  Lameness and neurological entities caused by ingested poisons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Poison</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Epidemiology</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Furanzolidone</td>
<td>Ataxia, paresis, convulsions, inappetence, vomiting, feed refusal</td>
<td>Rare: overdose of drug concentrate</td>
<td>Hemorrhage, thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hygromycin B</td>
<td>Loss of balance, ototoxicity causing ataxia, cata-</td>
<td>Problem if fed continuously; prevent with a schedule of 2 months on, 2 months off</td>
<td>Cataracts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>racts causing blindness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>Salivation, diarrhea, anorexia, hypersensitivity, squealing, tremors, ataxia, enlarged joints, blindness, convulsions, death</td>
<td>Rare: oil used to treat mange</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal reddening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>Unaware of surroundings, dysphagia, chewing, incoordination, wandering, blindness, loud vocalizations, paresis, tremor, lateral recumbency, paddling, coma, death</td>
<td>Rare: alkylmercurial compounds used as fungicides in grain</td>
<td>Cerebral atrophy, enlarged pale kidney cortex, pale shrunken liver, necrotizing suppurrative pharyngitis, focal erosive gastritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrite</td>
<td>Sudden death without struggling, tremors, weakness, ataxia, recumbency, convulsions, dyspnea, cyanosis, tachycardia, brown mucus membranes</td>
<td>Rare: consumption of preformed nitrite (microbial action on nitrates in whey)</td>
<td>Dark brown blood; endocardial hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus</td>
<td>Vomiting (smells like garlic), diarrhea with or without blood, abdominal pain, jaundice. Gastrointestinal signs followed by convulsions, coma, death</td>
<td>Rare: consumption of rodent bait</td>
<td>Jaundice, carcass smells like garlic, enlarged mottled liver, cataract inflammation of GI tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium monofluoracetate</td>
<td>Intermittent paddling, tonic-clonic convulsions, persistent vomiting</td>
<td>Rare: consumption of rodent bait</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Weak hind end, knuckling of pasterns, bowed legs, reluctance to stand, standing with legs under body and back arched, development of short legs, swollen nonpainful joints due to premature closure of epiphysial plates; thin cortices, slow growth, hyperesthesia, red skin</td>
<td>Rare: oversupplementation (young pigs fed &gt;200,000 µg/kg within 14 days)</td>
<td>Short diaphysis; rotated and enlarged epiphyses of leg bones; pitted articular surfaces; congenital defects of heart, eye, rectovaginal area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Enlarged shoulder joints, stiff gait, anorexia, reduced growth rate, rough coat</td>
<td>Rare: dairy products stored in galvanized containers and then fed to pigs</td>
<td>Hemorrhage into joint cavities, arthritis of head of humerus, red mucosa in GI tract</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

these products. Organophosphates cause pulmonary edema, myocardial hemorrhage, and cholinesterase inhibition, which results in cholinesterase levels of zero in whole blood of affected animals. These chemicals do not persist in the affected animal, so the meat is not hazardous to the consumer. Organochlorines cause convulsions. Although animals recover once the contaminated food is removed, these chemicals persist in meat and milk; therefore, it may not be possible to return the animal to the food chain (Frank et al. 1991). Chemical analysis of the feed is used for the definitive diagnosis. The best preventive measure is to store the chemicals separately from the swine feeds.

**Selenium.** Selenium is an essential nutrient and is required at 0.3 ppm for growing pigs; however, at more than 4 ppm it becomes toxic (Stowe et al. 1992; Stowe and Herdt 1992). Affected pigs have a decreased feed intake and an incoordinated gait and then become paraplegic or quadriplegic due to segmental spinal cord lesions. They remain bright and alert and occasionally show muscle fasciculation and occasional vomiting. With severe poisonings pigs are in lateral recumbency, show flaccid paralysis, and lose sensation to the skin (Buddle 1987). The diagnosis can be made from a history of feed-mixing error by measuring the selenium levels in the blood, or by identifying spinal cord lesions that include bilaterally symmetrical focal malacia of the gray matter of the ventral horns, a mottled liver, dehydrated carcass, and visceral edema. Once the toxic feed is removed, the majority of pigs will recover but will have a stiff gait and icterus.
monoparesis to a single limb. Paresis refers to the presence of muscle weakness that allows the animal to perform functions with some degree of normality. Hemi-plegia and hemi-paralysis refer to partial loss of function on one side of the body, paraplegia and paraparesis to both pelvic limbs, tetraplegia and tetraparesis to all four limbs, hemi-plegia and hemi-paralysis refer to partial loss of function on one side, and monoplegia and monoparesis to a single limb.

Table 5.5. Lameness and neurological entities caused by inhaled toxins.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Poison</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Epidemiology</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbon dioxide</td>
<td>Anxiety, staggering, coma, death at &gt;400,000 ppm, increased respiratory rate and depth at &gt;50,000 ppm</td>
<td>Rare: inadequate ventilation in winter</td>
<td>Dark colored blood and tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide</td>
<td>Lethargy, incoordination, coma, death due to hypoxia, increased stillbirths and neonatal death, abortion storm</td>
<td>Rare: malfunction of fossil-fuel or gas heaters and poor ventilation</td>
<td>Cherry red blood, bronchodilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen sulfide</td>
<td>Sudden death if &gt;400 ppm; listlessness, incoordination, spasms, coma, respiratory depression, cyanosis</td>
<td>Rare: poor ventilation after agitation of effluent; dangerous for humans, rotten egg smell</td>
<td>Cyanosis, pulmonary edema, congestion, emphysema</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cassia sp.** *Cassia* plant species seeds in grain sorghum cause decreased appetite, incoordination, ataxia, staggering, decreased weight gain, and increased mortality in grower pigs (Flory et al. 1992). A similar syndrome is found in chickens, where the plant causes muscle atrophy and pallor.

**Inhaled Toxins.** Pigs are susceptible to inhaled toxins due to the confinement housing systems. These toxins are described in Table 5.5.

**PRIMARY NEUROLOGIC DYSFUNCTION**

**Clinical Examination**

The purpose of the neurological examination is to determine the extent of the neurologic deficits and the location of the lesion. The neurological examination begins with a complete physical examination of the animal(s) involved. Specific history questions include previous illness, behavioral changes, seizures, head tilt, circling, and presence of pain or paresis. After observing the pig in its pen, move the pig into the alleyway, out of its normal surroundings. Allow the pig to become familiar with the area so that you can fully appreciate its behavior. Watch carefully for visual difficulties, proprioceptive loss on slippery floors, purposeful movements, mental status, gait, posture, and evidence of trauma (Kornegay and Seim 1996). Serial examinations are performed to determine the static nature of the clinical signs. Observations may be recorded using the examination form shown in Figure 5.1. Evaluation of cerebral spinal fluid may help differentiate neurologic problems with similar clinical signs (Ebeid et al. 1997).

Specific terminology is used in neurologic examinations to denote loss of function. Plegia and paralysis describe complete loss of sensory and motor function of an extremity. Paresis is partial loss of sensation and complete or partial loss of motor function. Tetraparesis refers to all four limbs, paraparesis to both pelvic limbs, hemiparesis to the front and the hindlimb on one side, and monoparesis to a single limb.

Posture is evaluated in a resting standing position and then after moving the pig into a prone position to determine whether it can regain a normal posture. The clinical signs and their referent lesions are as follows: vestibular abnormalities causing a continuous head tilt; spinal cord lesions, an abnormal truncal posture; proprioceptive deficits, an improper positioning of legs; flaccidity referring to decreased muscle tone, whereas spasticity is an increased muscle tone. Palpate the muscles carefully and systematically, comparing one side to the other. Specifically look for size, tone, strength, normal contour, repetition, and normal motion.

A normal gait requires the neurologic organization of the brain, spinal cord, and peripheral nerves. Proprioceptive abnormalities, which can be caused by a lesion at any level, are seen as knuckling, misplacement of a foot, or scuffing of the hoof. Proprioceptive positioning is tested by flexing the claw so the dorsal position is on the floor and watching how quickly the foot returns to normal positioning. A worn dorsal hoof wall and skin abrasions may signify chronic problems. Paresis, a disruption of the voluntary motor pathways, involves the cerebral cortex, brain stem, and the peripheral nerves. Ataxia is a lack of coordination and usually involves the cerebellum, vestibular system, or spinal cord. Purposeful movement is a conscious attempt to move the animals’ legs. Weakly ambulatory or nonambulatory animals drag their legs. In these animals, watch hip movement and pushing with their feet; support the animal with the tail. Lack of purposeful movement suggests severe but possibly reversible spinal cord injury.

Examination of thoracic limbs in lightweight animals can be accomplished by supporting the full weight of the hind end of the animal and allowing the animal to walk forward on one (hopping) or both forelegs (wheelbarrowing). Slow initiation of movement refers to lesions in the cervical spinal cord, brain stem, or cerebral cortex. Exaggerated movements indicate cervical spinal cord, lower brain stem, or cerebellar lesions. The hopping test with poor initiation suggests proprioceptive deficits, but poor movement is due to motor deficits. In the extensor
postural thrust, the thorax is supported and the animal is lowered to the floor so that one can watch for caudal, symmetric walking movements of the hindlegs. Hemi-walking and hemi-standing are performed by supporting the forelimbs and hindlimbs of one side of the body and watching for lateral walking movements. These two tests are evaluated the same way as the wheelbarrow test.

There are two placing tests: tactile placing without vision, where the animal’s eyes are covered, and visual placing, where the pig can see the surface it is approaching. Lift the animal and touch the forelegs at or below the carpus to a table; the pig should immediately place the feet on the table or with visual placing should anticipate by reaching for the table. Visual placing requires intact visual pathways to the cerebral cortex and to the motor cortex and motor pathways to the peripheral nerves. Normal tactile placing with abnormal visual placing suggests a sight disorder. The opposite suggests a sensory pathway lesion. Cortical lesions produce a contralateral (opposite) abnormality, but a lesion below the midbrain produces same-side (ipsilateral) deficit.

**Spinal Cord Lesions**

Vaughan (1969) suggests that the most common cause of posterior paralysis in pigs of all ages is compression of the spinal cord by an abscess that occurs secondary to an infection in the intervertebral disks, vertebral bodies, or paravertebral tissues. Clinical signs begin with incoordination of the hindquarters, which rapidly progresses to flaccid paraplegia, pyrexia, and local swelling of the tissues over the abscess (Vaughan 1969; Buddle 1987). Pigs continue to eat and drink and appear alert. The occurrence is widespread and sporadic, and morbidity is low. Diagnoses are made by identifying the abscess

---

**5.1. Neurologic clinical examination form (adapted from Kornegay and Seim 1996).**
in the spinal canal. In adult animals the most likely causes are an excess load on the disks causing premature disk degeneration or primary osteochondrosis of the vertebrae (Grondalen 1974b). In growing animals spinal cord abscesses are secondary to tail biting. The animals require euthanasia.

To identify a spinal cord lesion, attempt to localize the pain to an extremity or the cervical, thoracolumbar, or lumbosacral areas. Determine whether the pain or paresis is acute or chronic, progressive or static, persistent or intermittent, sharp or dull. The type of pain and paresis can be used to determine whether the spinal injury is extradural, intradural but extramedullary, or intramedullary. Extradural lesions, such as intervertebral disk extrusion, discospondylitis, or vertebral osteomyelitis, present with acute persistent and progressive pain and paresis. Intradural-extradural lesions cause chronic dull pain with a slowly progressive paresis. Intramedullary lesions, such as a vascular insult, cause acute sudden but short-lived pain and acute persistent paresis that is not progressive.

Spinal or myotatic reflexes test the sensory and motor components of the reflex arc and the descending motor pathways. It is easier to localize spinal reflexes to the hindlimbs than to the thoracic limbs (Table 5.6). The spinal reflex response can be normal, absent, or depressed, indicating a lower motor neuron (LMN) problem, or exaggerated, indicating an upper motor neuron (UMN) problem. The descending pathways from the brain and spinal cord normally inhibit the reflex, and thus, a UMN problem results in an exaggerated response.

Additional indications of LMN problems include poor strength, flaccid muscle tone, muscle fasciculation, early neurogenic muscle atrophy, and easy bladder expression. UMN problems are associated with variable but strong reflex strength, spastic muscle tone, late disease muscle atrophy, clonus, difficult bladder expression, and absent root sensation. Clonus is sustained quivering of the muscles after the reflex response, which is palpable but not visual.

The perineal or anal sphincter reflex is tested by stimulating the perineum with forceps (Kornegay and Seim 1996). Contraction of the anal sphincter suggests function of the sacral spinal cord and pudendal nerve. The urinary bladder is innervated by both autonomic (hypogastric and pelvic) and somatic (pudendal) nerves. Spastic bladder outflow and difficult expression (UMN) occur with lesions above S2–S3, whereas lack of sphincter tone and easily expressed bladder occur with lesions of S2–S3 (LMN). Unconscious tail wagging may occur with urination or the anal sphincter reflex and can occur with complete transection of the sacral spinal cord.

The crossed extensor reflex is elicited by pinching the coronary band on the down limb when the pig is in lateral recumbency. Use a gentle stimulus or the animal will attempt to stand. The extension of the upper limb corresponds to a UMN lesion affecting the descending inhibitory pathway of the spinal cord. Panniculus reflex (cutaneous trunci reflex) is the twitching of the cutaneous trunci muscle on both sides of the dorsal midline at the point and cranial to the point of stimulation. Begin testing at the fifth lumbar vertebra and continue cranially. No response will occur one to two segments caudal to the spinal cord lesion.

Deep pain perception tests the functional integrity of the spinal cord. It is the most important prognostic test but should be applied at the end of the physical examination to get reliable responses to the prior tests. Apply painful stimuli to each limb and the tail. The pig will vocalize, look, or attempt to move away. The withdrawal of the limb is not a behavioral response. Spinal cord injuries result in sequential losses of function as follows: first, proprioception, then voluntary motor function, superficial pain sensation, and finally deep pain sensation. The return of function follows the reverse order. The amount of spinal cord compression will be determined by the measurable functional loss. Loss of deep pain sensation indicates a poor prognosis.

Hyperpathia is a behavioral response (vocalization, turning to look, or moving away from examiner) elicited by applying pressure to the spinous processes or paraspinous muscles of the thoracic and lumbar region or the transverse processes of the cervical region. Pain perception occurs at the level of the spinal cord injury. The sensory-level response also helps determine the location of the lesion. Pinpricks are applied to the back from the seventh lumbar vertebra cranially. The part of the back between where the normal behavioral response and the depressed response is observed is two segments caudal to the level of the injury. Lesions can be localized to specific spinal nerves using referent clinical signs and corresponding vertebral bodies (refer to Table 5.6).

Once the location of the lesion has been identified, the signalment, history, and physical examination can be used to determine a list of differential diagnoses (refer to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site and Vertebral Number</th>
<th>Spinal Cord Segments</th>
<th>Neurologic Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Craniocervical: C1–C4</td>
<td>C1–C5</td>
<td>UMN to the forelimbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UMN to the hindlimbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caudocervical: C5–T1</td>
<td>C6–T2</td>
<td>LMN to the forelimbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracolumbar: T2–L3</td>
<td>T3–L3</td>
<td>Normal forelimbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbosacral: L4–L6</td>
<td>L4–S3</td>
<td>Normal forelimbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LMN hindlimbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacral: L5</td>
<td>S1–S3</td>
<td>Normal forelimbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Normal hindlimbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LMN tail and anus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Kornegay and Seim (1996).

aUMN, upper motor neuron problem; LMN, lower motor neuron problem.
Figure 5.1). General diagnostic categories can be determined using the history of pain or paresis. Infarctions of the spinal cord and fractures of vertebrae cause acute/static pain/paresis. Degenerative, inflammatory, traumatic, or pressure necrosis, such as a spinal cord abscess, causes acute progressive signs. Degenerative or inflammatory processes cause chronic/progressive clinical signs.

Cerebral Cortex and Forebrain

Diseases affecting the cerebral cortex or thalamus (forebrain) cause an altered mental attitude, seizures, blindness with a pupillary light reflex, circling (ipsilateral), compulsive walking, and head pressing (Kornegay and Seim 1996). The four levels of altered mental attitude are

- Depression or a decreased responsiveness
- Stupor, which is unresponsive but arousable
- Coma, which is unresponsive and not arousable
- Mania or delirium with excessive motor activity

Stupor and coma are caused by a problem with the cerebral cortex or the reticular activating system of the brain stem. Mania is due to diseases of the cerebral cortex, particularly the limbic system. Depression may be due to any systemic disease and may not involve the brain. Some causes of abnormal neurological function are listed in Table 5.7; others are described in more detail in this section.

### Table 5.7. Diseases causing neurological symptoms in postweaned pigs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Epidemiology</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Botulism</td>
<td>Progressive, flaccid paralysis; weakness; incoordination; staggering; recumbency; vomiting; pupillary dilation; deep, labored breathing; salivation; involuntary urination and defecation; death 1–6 days after onset</td>
<td>Rare, sporadic: feeding decomposing food such as garbage or dead fish</td>
<td>No gross lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebrospinal angiopathy</td>
<td>Blindness, head tilt, circling</td>
<td>5 weeks postweaning, may be a sequel to edema disease</td>
<td>No gross lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edema disease (enterotoxemic colibacillosis)</td>
<td>Sudden death of best pigs; acute disease; depression, head pressing, difficulty standing, swaying hind end, knuckle over on front end, tremor, paddling, clonic convulsions, flaccid paralysis; characteristic subcutaneous edema of eyelids, conjunctiva, forehead, and throat; residual incoordination</td>
<td>Sporadic, uncommon, outbreaks 2 weeks postweaning, low morbidity, high case fatality rate, caused by specific serotypes of <em>E. coli</em></td>
<td>Subcutaneous edema of eyelids, forehead, throat, ventral abdomen, hocks, elbows, stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog cholera (swine fever)</td>
<td>Severe systemic illness, depression, fever, anorexia, conjunctivitis, death, weak staggering gait, reddening of skin, watery diarrhea, convulsions and death after 1–3 weeks</td>
<td>Exotic to North America; mortality up to 90%, low-virulence strain mortality 1–60%; spreads easily; only affects pigs</td>
<td>Petechiae of kidneys, larynx, bladder, mucous membranes; infarcts in spleen; hemorrhage of lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listeriosis</td>
<td>Trembling, incoordination, stilted gait on forelegs, posterior paralysis; neonates with septicemia, sudden death</td>
<td>Widespread, rare; organism in soil</td>
<td>Congested lymph nodes, yellow fluid in body cavities, red liver with necrotic foci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabies</td>
<td>Sudden onset; progressive disease of incoordination, dullness, prostration, and death within 3 days; alternating periods of pronounced irritation: twitching, snout rubbing, chewing, swallowing, salivating, and recumbency; attacking other pigs or humans; apparent thirst but swallowing difficult; pushing forward and circling in kneeling position</td>
<td>Rare: reportable, zoonotic disease</td>
<td>No gross lesions; submit brain for diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stachybotryotoxicosis</td>
<td>Dermatitis of snout, teats of sucking pigs, nasal exudate, depression, vomiting, tremors, anemia, sudden death, abortion</td>
<td>Toxin of <em>Stachybotrys atra</em> from hay or straw that depresses erythropoiesis and is epithelionecrotic</td>
<td>No gross lesions; submit brain for diagnosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hydrocephalus. Hydrocephalus is an accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) within the brain. It may be congenital or acquired—secondary to encephalitis or meningoencephalitis. Congenital hydrocephalus may be caused by vitamin A deficiency (refer to Table 5.3) or a lethal defect that is inherited as an autosomal recessive trait in Durocs (O’Hara and Shortridge 1966). Clinical signs vary from compulsive walking, head pressing, blindness, and seizures to a more mild form indicated by strabismus and stunted growth. Animals with a primary encephalitis will have signs of multifocal brain involvement.

Hypoglycemia. Hypoglycemia is a common problem in weak newborn pigs who do not nurse regularly. Early clinical signs include tachycardia, tremor, nervousness, vocalization, and irritability. As the hypoglycemia progresses, hypothermia, visual disturbances, mental dullness, confusion, depression, and seizures occur. Other causes of neurologic abnormalities in the newborn pig include congenital tremor and hypoxia (Table 5.8).

Encephalitis. Encephalitis, an inflammation of the brain, causes central vestibular disease.

### Table 5.8. Neurological problems in preweaned pigs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Epidemiology</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congenital tremor</td>
<td>Varies from fine muscle tremor to whole-body shaking to severe muscle spasms causing the pigs to jump or dance; signs are present at birth, increase in severity with stimulation, decrease during sleep, and decrease progressively with age</td>
<td>Widespread, uncommon: depending on cause, may affect most pigs in most litters for 2–3 months or sporadically affect a few pigs in a few litters</td>
<td>Small cerebellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type A I</td>
<td>Most litters, &gt;40% pigs, high mortality</td>
<td>Hog cholera</td>
<td>Small cerebellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type A II</td>
<td>Most litters, &gt;40% pigs, low mortality</td>
<td>Unknown virus</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type A III</td>
<td>Few litters, 25% pigs, high mortality, male Landrace</td>
<td>Genetic recessive, Landrace</td>
<td>Small spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type A IV</td>
<td>Few litters, 25% pigs, high mortality, defective vision, all Saddlebacks</td>
<td>Genetic recessive, Saddleback</td>
<td>Small spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type A V</td>
<td>Most litters, &gt;90% pigs, high mortality, any breed</td>
<td>Trichlorfon toxicity</td>
<td>Small cerebellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type B</td>
<td>Variable clinical signs</td>
<td>Unknown cause</td>
<td>Small cerebellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Hungry squealing pigs, progress to inappetence, huddling, lethargy, shivering, weak squealing when moved, coma, convulsions, death</td>
<td>Common: caused by starvation, sporadic among litters, affects smallest pigs or whole litter if chilled at birth; factors: hypoxia, temperature, teat access, litter size, available milk, housing, and disease</td>
<td>Thin pig with empty stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia/anoxia</td>
<td>Postpartum central nervous system depression, inability to suck, walking backward or in circles, dog-sitting, reluctance to compete, weak, increased mortality due to starvation, hypothermia, overlying, disease</td>
<td>Common and widespread: associated with dystocia, old, fat, or thin sows, umbilical cord rupture, last pigs in large litter, heat stress, carbon monoxide poisoning</td>
<td>Meconium on pig’s body, in mouth and trachea; hemorrhages and edema of thorax, heart, and thymus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
occardial necrosis. Diagnosis is made after a history of mosquito swarming and positive serum virus neutralization tests for EEEV.

**Japanese Encephalitis Flavivirus.** Japanese encephalitis flavivirus (JEV) is reported to cause encephalitis in pigs occasionally (Yamada et al. 2004). The virus is amplified in the pig and then transmitted via mosquitoes to other species. Researchers observed a nonsuppurative meningoencephalitis in pigs clinically affected by a wasting syndrome thought to be caused by JEV. Subsequently, when researchers injected JEV into SPF, 3-week-old pigs the pigs developed a fever (40–41°C), depression, and hindlimb tremor (Yamada et al. 2004). The JEV caused nonsuppurative encephalitis, neuronal necrosis, neurophagia, glial nodules, and perivascular cuffing. This neurotropism may be age dependent.

**Blue Eye Disease.** Blue eye disease caused by the pig paramyxovirus causes central nervous system damage and mortality in nursing pigs (Ramirez-Herrera et al. 2001). Morbidity and mortality due to the virus range from 20% to 90% and from 40% to 100%, respectively. Clinically affected pigs show cutaneous hyperexcitability, incoordination, hindlimb paralysis and convulsions. The CNS lesions include focal and diffuse gliosis, perivascular cuffing, glial and neural necrosis, and meningitis. Pigs injected intramuscularly with live virus develop protective immunity. However, the infected nerves near the injection site have a decreased inner fiber diameter and myelin sheath disaggregation. The virus appears to reach the CNS in a retrograde fashion.

**Porcine Circovirus Type 2 (PCV2).** An outbreak of sudden death and acute nervous signs including paddling, tremors, and lateral recumbency occurred in all ages of pigs in one Canadian herd in 2004 (Youssef et al. 2004). PCV2 was identified by immunohistochemistry in the foci of inflammation of the brain and spinal cord in 7 of 10 pigs submitted to the diagnostic laboratory. However, the brain did not test positive for PCV2 by PCR. The tentative diagnosis was viral encephalomyelitis with a secondary bacterial infection due to *S. suis* (2 piglets), *S. equisimilis* (1 piglet) or *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* (1 sow).

**Hepatic Encephalopathy.** Hepatic encephalopathy may have multifocal lesions in the central nervous system (CNS), but the clinical signs are primarily due to forebrain involvement. Hepatic encephalopathy occurs when neurotoxic substances build up in the bloodstream due to dysfunction of the liver. Clinical signs include blindness, ataxia, head pressing, seizures, and aggression. There will also be signs referable to liver disease, such as anorexia, weight loss, and diarrhea.

**Cerebellum**

The cerebellum controls unconscious proprioception; hence, dysfunction is seen clinically as truncal ataxia, broad-based stance, dysmetria (either hypermetria or hypometria), and an intention tremor (Kornegay and Seim 1996). Intention tremor is the involuntary trembling caused by intentional movement. Dysmetria is the improper measuring of distance in muscular acts, either overstepping (hypermetria) or underreaching (hypometria).

**Cerebellar Hypoplasia.** Cerebellar hypoplasia causes pigs to sit with their forelimbs extended or to assume a tripod sitting position. The clinical signs are nonprogressive and other CNS signs are not present.

**Vestibular Disease**

Vestibular disease is seen clinically as a head tilt involving a deviation of the head from a horizontal plane, or nystagmus, which is an involuntary oscillation of the eyes. Peripheral lesions are not associated with the ascending or descending tracts, so there is no paresis or conscious proprioceptive deficit, animals are not depressed, and nystagmus is always rotatory or horizontal with the fast phase opposite the head tilt and does not vary with head tilt. However, central lesions frequently cause depression, tetraparesis, and nystagmus that varies with head position and may cause other cranial nerve deficits. Most lesions cause ipsilateral clinical signs but the paradoxical vestibular disease causes contralateral signs.

**Otitis Media.** Otitis media (peripheral vestibular disease) is usually due to progressive external otitis (Kornegay and Seim 1996). The external ear is inflamed and contains debris, and the pig may be sensitive to manipulation of the ear. Vestibular disease causes a head tilt toward the affected side, horizontal nystagmus, and ataxia, which may include circling or falling. The animals remain bright and the appetite is normal (Buddle 1987). The condition is widespread but uncommon and sporadic. Treatment involves parenteral antibiotics and treatment of the primary external otitis.

Otitis media and interna may be common sequelae to *S. suis* infections. Most pigs (20) in a group of 28 diagnosed with meningitis due *S. suis* had either otitis media or interna (Madsen et al. 2001). Exudative otitis interna with a positive immunohistochemistry test for *S. suis* was found in 71% of the pigs. The scala tympani was affected in all of the pigs. Most of these pigs also had a perineuritis along the vestibulocochlear nerve. This nerve is likely a conduit to the CNS infection. Half of the pigs with both ears available for observation were affected bilaterally. This otitis interna can develop by the meningogenic and tympanogenic routes. A chronic, suppurative, otitis media was diagnosed in 34% of the pigs. Pigs recovering from *S. suis* meningitis may have residual
congenital tremors (CT) (myoclonia congenita, trembles, jumpy pig disease) is a congenital abnormality caused by hypomyelination or demyelination of the brain and spinal cord. Unlike in splaylegged pigs where the deficit in myelin formation specifically affects the motor system, with CT there is an overall reduction of myelin in the spinal cord (Lamar and Van Sickle 1975).

Affected animals have a generalized tremor involving the entire body, especially the head and limbs (O’Hara and Shortridge 1966; Done 1968; Patterson and Done 1977; Edmonds et al. 1985). The tremor increases in intensity when the pigs are aroused and subsides when the pigs are sleeping (Done 1968). Pigs affected by CT have clonic contractions of the skeletal muscles. Posterior paresis and splayed hindlegs may occur with the tremor. The tremor can be distinguished from the primary head tremor due to cerebellar disease because the tremor becomes less pronounced at rest and more pronounced during excitement. The tremor is due to excessive irritability of the spinal reflexes. In the Netherlands, CT affects 0.2% of pigs (Smidt 1972). An examination of 47,323 litters born to German Landrace boars from artificial insemination units showed that the frequency of congenital tremor was reduced by selection over a 14-year period (Beissner et al. 1992). The annual rate ranged from 0.23% to 0.01% but was 0.02% in 2000.

There are six categories of CT, which can be inherited or caused by viruses or toxins (refer to Table 5.8). These categories also differ by pathological lesion and prevalence within a herd. Types A and B are distinguished by morphologic changes. Type AI, caused by either the wild type or vaccine hog cholera virus produces hypoplasia, dysgenesis and cortical dysplasia of the cerebellum. The spinal cord is small and has half the normal compliment of myelin (Done 1976a). Both AI and AII produce a smaller white and gray matter areas in cross sections of the spinal cord (Done et al. 1984, 1986). In Type AII, there is significant demyelination, reduced spinal cord lipid content, and depressed and aberrant cerebroside synthesis. Type AIII causes a deficiency of oligodendrocytes with concomitant hypoplasia of the cord and reduced lipid and cellular content. Piglets infected by the PR virus and born with CT have demyelination of the cerebellum. Type AV is caused by the ingestion of an antiparasitic drug, Neguvon (metrifonate, trichlorfon) by pregnant sows (Berge et al. 1987). This leads to cerebral, cerebellar, and spinal cord hypoplasia and demyelination and a decrease in the activity of neurotransmitter synthesizing enzymes.

Type AII is transmissible and is the most common form in North America. Typically other CNS functions, such as vision, reflexes, and pain, are normal; however, type AIV causes defective vision (Done 1968).

Hines and Lukert (1994) reproduced CT by inoculating sows with tissue culture fluid from the kidneys of affected pigs. They believed the piglets were infected with porcine circovirus and that this virus caused the deficient myelin. The four sows remained healthy but produced piglets with varying degrees of trembling. In the United States, PCV2 was believed to be associated with CT type AII in four Midwestern farms (Stevenson et al. 2001). The porcine circoviruses isolated from pigs with either clinical congenital tremors type AII or postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS) were examined to determine their genetic similarities (Choi et al. 2002). The samples each came from a different farm. The genomes of the viruses taken from CT and PMWS had 99% sequence identity with one another. Congenital tremors can also be caused by PCV1. This virus shares only 72% nucleotide sequence identity with the PCV2 that causes CT. PCV requires cell division. It is hypothesized that PCV can infect nervous tissues in the fetus only when neural cell division is occurring.

Clinical signs in affected pigs occur within hours of birth. The tremor may be fine or gross, producing twitching of the muscles of the neck and limbs that decreases when the pig is at rest and stops when the pig is sleeping. Pigs with fine tremor continue to walk and nurse. However, gross tremors will affect the ability of the pig to walk, nurse, and compete with littermates. Pigs born with CT may also exhibit splayleg. Mortality in these pigs is caused by starvation, hypothermia or crushing. In animals that survive, the severity of the tremors decrease over time and are usually resolved by 4 weeks of age. Gilt litters are more frequently affected than those of older sows because the females develop immunity to the infectious agents over time. Start-up gilt herds may experience an outbreak of the disease lasting 18 weeks.

Treatment for CT is aimed at reducing mortality. Affected pigs are to be provided with additional heat and assisted to feed. Control of CT depends on identifying and addressing the cause. For types AIII and AIV, eliminating genetic carriers from the herd is important. No affected pigs should be kept for breeding. For AV, trichlorfon is to be avoided in sows. All other types of CT will depend on disease control programs. This may include exposing open sows to the affected piglets so that transfer of infectious agents will occur. The herd is to be
considered infectious until there has been a 4-month period with no affected litters (Done 1976b).

A tremor similar to congenital tremor is seen in 3- to 6-month-old pigs (Gedde-Dahl and Standal 1970). Clinically the pigs have a tremor of the head and shoulder that varies in intensity but subsides when the pigs lie down. The problem clusters by litter and occurs more frequently in females. It is associated with high growth rates, lean carcasses, and pale-colored meat.

Seizures
Seizures are involuntary, paroxysmal brain disturbances clinically appearing as uncontrolled muscle activity (Kornegay and Seim 1996). Generalized seizures originate within the cerebral cortex, thalamus, or brain stem and are associated with symmetrical clinical dysfunction. Focal seizures lead to clinical signs that help localize the lesion. Temporolimbic seizures cause behavioral changes such as aggression or biting at the air. Focal motor seizures appear as tonic movements contralateral to the lesion and then within seconds spread to a generalized seizure. Seizures can be caused by encephalitis, neoplasia, or hydrocephalus. Most of the lesions are progressive and usually increase in frequency and severity. Toxins, such as organophosphate and chlorinated hydrocarbons, and internal toxicities, such as hepatic encephalopathy and hypoglycemia, can cause seizures.

**Bacterial Meningitis.** Bacterial meningitis may cause focal or diffuse CNS problems, which are progressive unless the affected pigs are treated. The problem is widespread, common but sporadic, with a low morbidity and high mortality. It can be associated with overcrowding and inadequate cleaning. Often the first symptom is sudden death. Affected pigs show depression, incoordination, hyperesthesia, tremor, circling, paresis, opisthotonos, recumbency, paddling, nystagmus, convulsions, and death. Postmortem lesions include congestion, edema, and purulent discharge of meninges.

**Streptococcus suis.** Streptococcus suis type 2 is one of the most common causes of meningitis. Additionally, this bacteria causes arthritis, septicemia with sudden death, endocarditis, polyserositis, and pneumonia in pigs (Reams et al. 1994; Madsen et al. 2002b). Of 42 pigs in one study, 27 had meningitis, 19 had polyserositis, 9 had polyarthritis, and 2 had endocarditis (Madsen et al. 2002b). Other lesions included hepatomegaly (17), bronchopneumonia (14), exudative otitis media (12) pleuritis (9), and pericarditis (4).

Clinically the animals exhibit depression, fever, anorexia, incoordination, paralysis, paddling, opisthotonos, tetanic spasms, and death (Buddle 1987). Infection with S. suis is widespread and common, often occurs 2 weeks after moving pigs, and is associated with overcrowding and poor ventilation. Affected pigs are typically in the nursery phase but may range in age from 1 to 22 weeks (Madsen et al. 2002b).

Piglets acquire S. suis infection during farrowing from contact with the sow, her feces, and the environment (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). The pharyngeal and palatine tonsils, infected in 52% of the pigs, were the main portals of entry for the bacteria and then the bacteria appeared to spread via the lymph system because they were cultured from the lymph nodes of the upper respiratory tract (Madsen et al. 2002b). In pigs infected experimentally via aerosol, S. suis was isolated from the palatine and/or nasopharyngeal tonsils of all pigs (Madsen et al. 2002a). In systemically infected pigs, the bacterium was also found in the mandibular lymph node. This suggests lymphogenous spread. Additionally, spread of S. suis appears to occur hematogenously from the palatine tonsils and intracellularly with the bacteria crossing the blood brain barrier. Bacteria can be found intracellularly in alveolar macrophages and tracheobronchial lymph nodes. The bacteria appear to invade the epithelium of the tonsils. Using porcine brain microvascular endothelial cells researchers have shown that S. suis can invade the cells that are component parts of the blood brain barrier (Vanier et al. 2004). This may explain the pathogenesis of meningitis. Interestingly, 7 hours after antibiotic treatment, intracellular viable S. suis were still found in porcine brain microvascular endothelial cells (Vanier et al. 2004).

S. suis diagnosis is enhanced by using bacterial culture in combination with immunohistochemistry (Madsen et al. 2002b). Culture rate is highest from the lateral cerebral ventricles or other parts of the brain. Half of the pigs are systemically infected with S. suis. The most prominent serotype of S. suis diagnosed from clinical cases changes by geographic region and time (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). In Canada, serotype 2 is diagnosed only 15% of the time, whereas in France it is the primary isolate 70% of the time. In Europe, serotypes 9 and 1 are most prominent after serotype 2 (Wisselink et al. 2002). Serotype 14 in the UK and serotypes 1/2 and 5 in Canada appear to be prominent causes of disease.

Effective vaccines against S. suis have not been produced because of the variation within and between serotypes and lack of knowledge of the virulence factors (Wisselink et al. 2002). Several types of vaccines have been used, but results have been inconsistent (Smith et al. 1999; Wisselink et al. 2002). (For more information, see Chapter 47.)

There is a high case fatality rate, but if treated early, pigs can recover with no residual clinical signs. Pigs should be removed from the group, put in a warm, dry environment, fed and watered by hand, and treated parenterally for 3–5 days. Of 689 isolates of S. suis from diagnostic laboratories and abattoirs in Japan, all were susceptible to amoxicillin and sulfamethoxazole plus trimethoprim (Kataoka et al. 2000). Most were suscepti-
Table 5.9. Infectious diseases causing neurological problems in preweaned pigs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Epidemiology</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial meningitis</td>
<td>Sudden death, depression, fever, incoordination, hyperesthesia, tremor, circling, paresis, opisthotonos, recumbency, paddling, clonic convulsions</td>
<td>Sporadic but common, low morbidity, high case fatality, secondary to stresses such as overcrowding, continual-flow production, meningoencephalitis</td>
<td>Congestion, edema, purulent exudate in meninges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis (HEV)</td>
<td>4- to 7-day-old pigs, sudden-onset anorexia, depression, hyperesthesia, trembling, incoordination, progressive posterior paralysis, paddling, convulsions, coma and death within 10 days (vomiting, constipation, emaciation)</td>
<td>Virus widespread, rapid spread leads to herd immunity, 2–3 week outbreak, mortality 50–100% in affected litters</td>
<td>Pneumonia, conjunctivitis, corneal opacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetanus</td>
<td>Ataxia progressing to stiff gait, muscle rigidity, erect ears, straight tail, lateral recumbency, opisthotonos, legs extended backward, death; loud noises cause tetanic spasms</td>
<td>Rare, associated with castration</td>
<td>No gross lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxoplasmosis</td>
<td>Neonates: diarrhea, dyspnea, cough, tremor, weakness, staggering, increased mortality; survivors exhibit ataxia and blindness</td>
<td>Infection might be common in certain areas, but symptoms are rare, associated with cats.</td>
<td>Serofibrinous exudate in cavities; small gray nodules in lungs, liver, spleen, lymph nodes, and fetal membranes; ulcers in small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sows: stillbirths, fetal death, prolonged gestation</td>
<td>Infection might be common in certain areas, but symptoms are rare, associated with cats.</td>
<td>Serofibrinous exudate in cavities; small gray nodules in lungs, liver, spleen, lymph nodes, and fetal membranes; ulcers in small intestine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

References


Bryant KL, Kornegay ET, Knight JW, Veit HT, Notter DR. 1985. Supplemental biotin for swine. III. Influence of supplementa-
tion to corn and wheat based diets on the incidence and severity of toe lesions, hair and skin characteristics, and structural soundness of sows housed in confinement during four parities. J Anim Sci 60:154–162.


Cunha TJ. 1968. Spradlled hind legs may be a result of choline defici-

ble to penicillin G, ampicillin, and amoxicillin. Tri-

methoprim and sulfonamides penetrate the blood-CSF barrier. Penicillin, ampicillin, and cephalosporin will also penetrate the barrier in the presence of meningitis. Other infectious causes of neurologic problems in preweaned pigs are described in Table 5.9.
CHAPTER 5  DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS AND LOCOMOTOR SYSTEMS


Reproductive Anatomy in the Sow

Development of the Ovaries and Uterus

Early studies indicated that embryonic gonad in the pig embryo is recognizable at 24–36 days postcoitum (PC) (Christenson et al. 1985). The ovaries of the fetal gilt develop from stromal tissue of the genital ridge and primordial germ cells that migrate to the genital ridge from the embryonic yolk sac. At approximately 31–32 days PC, the fetal gonad in female pigs is differentiated to an ovary with egg nests, which are clusters of primary oocytes within the stromal tissue. Meiosis is common in most ovaries by 50 days PC. All germ cells are in egg nests until 60 days PC, at which time primordial follicles are observed (Oxender et al. 1979). Primordial follicles account for the majority of ovarian follicles from 95 days PC to 90 days after birth. Egg nests can still be seen in the gilt’s ovaries at birth, and formation of follicles continues during the first few weeks after birth (Morbeck et al. 1992). Primary follicles first appear in the ovaries at 70 days PC and secondary follicles are observed about the time of birth. Tertiary (antral) follicles are rarely observed in pigs younger than 60 days of age; however, one or more tertiary follicles are observed in ovaries from pigs at 60–90 days of age (Oxender et al. 1979). As demonstrated by Greenwald (1978), the number of tertiary follicles peaks at 130 days of age, but most of them (67%) are atretic.

Perhaps the most appropriate summary of prepubertal development includes the following stages: the first stage of development from birth to 70 days, 70 days to 140 days, a variable time of resting stage from 20 weeks until puberty, and the changes associated with puberty (Dyck and Swierstra 1983). The first stage is typified by linear growth proportional to the age of the gilt. The second period commences with the appearance of tertiary follicles and an increase in ovarian and uterine weight relative to body weight. The third period or resting stage is characterized by minimal changes in ovarian follicles, ovarian weight, and uterine weight. Finally, the female pig undergoes significant physiological changes, such as preovulatory growth of follicles and increased oviduct and uterine weight, as the gilt approaches puberty.

Female differentiation of the genital ducts in pigs is comparable to most mammals. The cranial part of the Mullerian duct develops into the oviduct and the middle part develops into the uterus. The caudal part of the Mullerian duct and the urogenital sinus contribute to the vagina and vestibule. During the period from birth to 70 days of age, the uterine wall and endometrium increase in thickness, and the uterine glands commence differentiation. At birth, the uterus comprises three layers (luminal epithelium, stroma, and myometrium) with little organization. The change in the uterine wall thickness is attributed to the profound increase in the development of uterine glands and glandular epithelium and the organization of the myometrium into two layers. Furthermore, folding of endometrium also takes place during this period. It is generally accepted that uterine development during the first 2 months after birth does not require stimulation by ovarian steroids. Nevertheless, development can be altered by treatment of the neonatal gilt with estrogen (Bartol et al. 1993). At approximately 70 to 80 days, uterine growth accelerates. This accelerated growth continues until puberty when there is an abrupt increase in the size of the entire female reproductive tract. It is important to note that morphologic development of the uterine glands, endometrium, and myometrium essentially is complete by approximately 120 days of age even though puberty seldom occurs prior to 150 days.

Rearing Influences on Ovarian and Uterine Function

Numerous studies were conducted to examine the influence of rearing environment on the onset of puberty in
female pigs. Most reports focused on advancing the onset of puberty or, conversely, identifying factors that delay puberty. Growth rate and nutrition, genetics, boar exposure, management stimuli, social environment, and climatic environment clearly have the potential to influence the onset of puberty. With some notable exceptions, the studies infer that ovarian and/or uterine function was altered, based on the subsequent reproductive performance, i.e., litter size.

If one considers the three stages of prepubertal development prior to the onset of puberty, it should not be surprising that rearing conditions during the first few weeks after birth can have a permanent effect on the reproductive capacity of the mature gilt and sow. For example, litter size during the suckling period can influence the reproductive traits of pigs. Nelson and Robison (1976) used cross-fostering to rear full-sib gilts in litters of 6 or 14 until weaning at 8 weeks of age. Beyond 8 weeks, gilts were co-mingled and provided access to feed and water ad libitum. Age at puberty did not differ, but ovulation rate, number of embryos in first pregnancy, and number of pigs born alive in the first litter were greater in gilts reared in small than in those reared in large litters (Nelson and Robison 1976; van der Steen 1985). In addition, the administration of low levels of estrogen to gilts from birth to 13 days of age reduced the number of viable conceptuses and lowered embryonic survival, effects attributable to a dysfunctional uterus (Bartol et al. 1993).

Studies that examined the influence of rearing or social environment on puberty have provided controversial results. The number of gilts per pen and stocking density were shown to stimulate, impair, or have no effect on sexual maturation. However, rearing environment cannot be ignored—particularly, its effects on subsequent reproductive performance. This was exemplified when gilts between 2 (30 kg body weight (BW)) and 6 months (100 kg BW) of age were reared as full-sib gilts in low- or high-density pens (Kuhlers et al. 1985). There were no differences in growth rates; however, gilts reared in low-density pens had heavier pituitary glands, adrenal glands, brains, uteri and ovaries at 100 kg and delivered larger litters at first farrowing (Rahe et al. 1987).

Replacement gilts should receive optimal care during the entire prepubertal period, beginning at birth. Replacement gilts should be reared in smaller-sized litters and provided with an environment that encourages above average rate of gain. Replacement gilts should be reared in pens with lower densities.

**Follicle Growth**

Ovarian follicles undergo a gradual maturation in prenatal pigs during the later stages of gestation and the first few postnatal months. In fact, primordial and primary follicles comprise about 80% of ovarian structures in the pig at birth, but the ovary is unresponsive to gonadotropins as assessed by stimulation of follicle growth (Christenson et al. 1985). Tertiary follicles, capable of endocrine function are observed in the ovaries of gilts between 60–90 days after birth (Dyck and Swierstra 1983). These ovaries are responsive to gonadotropins with increased steroidogenesis and ovulation.

Activation and growth of primordial follicles occur continuously throughout the gilt or sow's life. Continuous activation and growth are necessary because follicular development from the primordial stage to the ovulatory stage requires between 80 to 100 days (Morbeck et al. 1992). This 3-month development period is noteworthy and may provide an explanation, at least in part, of how certain factors influence follicle development and ovulation. For example, follicle growth was initiated 3 months prior to a gilt reaching puberty at 180 days of age. Similarly, a follicle that ovulates in a sow after weaning started to grow during the early to mid-trimester of preceding pregnancy.

The prolonged period of follicle growth has significant implications in reproductive management. Perhaps the best example of how management factors alter follicle growth is related to feed intake during lactation. It previously was demonstrated that feed restriction during lactation has detrimental effects on the postweaning performance of sows (Koketsu et al. 1996). Feed restriction during lactation increased weaning-to-estrus interval, impaired early follicle development, and decreased ovulation rate (Miller et al. 1996; Zak et al. 1997). Presumably, changes in metabolism affect follicular development and growth.

In fact, there is considerable evidence that nutritional and metabolic control of follicular growth is mediated by metabolic hormones and growth factors, particularly insulin-like growth factor I (IGF-I) and its binding proteins (IGFBPs) (Cox 1997). During the estrous cycle, the ovulatory population of follicles increases growth between about day 14 and day 16. Between day 16 and estrus, follicular atresia is the fate of approximately 50% of medium-sized follicles. The precise mechanisms that determine whether a follicle grows to an ovulatory diameter or undergoes atresia remain poorly understood; however, follicular atresia is considered a balance between “survival” and atretogenic factors. Factors that favor follicle survival include epidermal growth factor, nerve growth factor, IGF-I, gonadotropins, activin and estrogen, while atretogenic factors include testosterone, gonadotropin releasing hormone (GnRH), and interleukins (Hsueh et al. 1994). It is evident that follicular growth and development is a complex system involving numerous factors and hormones. In addition, the influences of nutritional and metabolic factors on the hypothalamus-hypophyseal-ovarian axis and gonadotropin release must also be considered as important factors in follicular growth (Kemp et al. 1995).
REPRODUCTIVE ENDOCRINOLOGY IN THE SOW

Endocrinology of Puberty
During the prenatal period, luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle stimulating hormone (FSH) concentrations are low or undetectable before day 80 of gestation, and then acutely increase during the last weeks of gestation (Elsaesser et al. 1976; Colenbrander et al. 1982a). Similarly, estrogen concentrations are low at days 50–60 PC and increase significantly by day 75 (Ford et al. 1979). After birth, blood concentrations of steroids of placental origin decrease rapidly (Elsaesser and Foxcroft 1978). There is negligible secretion of estrogen by the ovary for 2–3 months after birth, and progesterone levels are low from birth to first ovulation (Esbenshade et al. 1982; Karlbom et al. 1982).

After birth, patterns of LH and FSH diverge. Serum concentrations of LH are highest around the time of birth and then decrease gradually, reaching a nadir during the second month of life (Camous et al. 1985; Grieger et al. 1986). In contrast, concentrations of FSH increase from the time of farrowing, plateau at approximately 8 weeks of age, and then gradually decline. A further reduction of FSH occurs near the end of the prepubertal period, coincident with growth of estrogen-secreting follicles.

Although spontaneous steroidogenesis appears to be minimal until just before puberty, the porcine ovary evidently is able to respond to gonadotropins. Using hourly injections of GnRH to stimulate LH release, Pressing et al. (1992) effectively mimicked a high-frequency pattern of LH secretion in gilts at 70, 100, 150, and 190 days of age. Follicular growth and ovulation was stimulated in all gilts 100 days of age or older and some gilts at 70 days of age. Consequently, it is apparent that the integration of the pituitary-ovarian axis is complete in the gilt between 70 and 100 days of age and that spontaneous activation of this axis requires a central signal for onset of puberty.

As puberty approaches, there is an increased pulsatile release of gonadotropins that stimulates the progressive development of ovarian follicles. The gonadotropins act to promote follicular development and consequently steroidogenesis. As the follicles develop, there is increased secretion of estrogen (Esbenshade et al. 1982; Karlbom et al. 1982; Camous et al. 1985). Estrogen peaks immediately prior to the pubertal estrus, which coincides with an increase in LH secretion, characterized by a change in pulse frequency and amplitude and the preovulatory surge of LH (Elsaesser and Foxcroft 1978; Lutz et al. 1984).

Endocrinology of the Estrous Cycle
Ovarian follicles, which are destined to ovulate, grow from approximately 4–5 mm in diameter on day 15 (day 0 = first day of standing estrus) of the estrous cycle to an ovulatory diameter of 8–12 mm (Figures 6.1A and 6.1B). The follicular phase begins when the corpora lutea (CL) regress and is associated with high-frequency, low-amplitude pulses of LH. The higher frequency pulses of LH contribute to maturation of the developing follicles, and there is an associated increase in estradiol and inhibin from these follicles. Estradiol and inhibin suppress FSH. Elevated estradiol acts at the hypothalamus to elicit a prolonged release of GnRH, which triggers the LH surge. In addition, estradiol contributes to estrous behavior and morphological changes in the reproductive tract. The LH surge is necessary to induce ovulation with the subsequent release of ova. Onset of estrus usually coincides with the preovulatory LH surge, and females may be sexually receptive for 1 to 3 days (Figure 6.2). As a general rule, female pigs ovulate at approximately two-thirds of the way through estrus (Soede et al. 1995).

The follicular phase ends at the LH surge, because LH triggers biochemical changes in follicles, leading to a decrease in estradiol and inhibin and an increase in progesterone. After estrus, estradiol, inhibin, and progesterone are low and this leads to a postestrual surge of FSH. This postestrual surge of FSH may be important for promoting growth of follicles to develop for the next follicular phase. Following ovulation, collapsed follicles are 4–5 mm in diameter. Blood rapidly fills the central cavity of the follicles. These blood-filled structures are referred to as corpora hemorrhagica (CH; Figure 6.1C). Luteinization of the follicular remnants results in the formation of multiple CL. Luteinization is a rapid process and the early CL is capable of producing progesterone within a few hours after ovulation. The CL production of progesterone increases by 2–4 days after estrus and continues to increase until a maximum is achieved during mid-diestrus. By day 5–6, the CL have reached their mature diameter of 9–11 mm and the central cavities are completely replaced by luteal tissue (Figure 6.1D). Female pigs are not sexually receptive during these periods of progesterone production.

Failure to initiate pregnancy results in regression of the CL, a decline in serum progesterone concentrations and a return to estrus. Degeneration of the CL typically commences at approximately days 13–15, coinciding with increased concentrations of the luteolysin, prostaglandin-F2α (PGF2α). Follicular recruitment begins on days 13–15 and follicles continue to enlarge concomitant with regression of the CL (Figure 6.1A). It is common to observe small follicles of less than 5 mm in the absence of CL in anestrous sows (Figure 6.1E).

Endocrinology of Pregnancy and Parturition
The CL lifespan is extended throughout pregnancy (Figure 6.1F) due to the maternal recognition of pregnancy (days 10–14 after ovulation and successful mating). Both maternal and conceptus factors play important roles in maternal recognition of pregnancy;
however, estrogen, secreted by the conceptuses, may be considered the primary factor that triggers a series of events to maintain the CL of pregnancy. Maternal recognition of pregnancy occurs when developing conceptuses exert an effect that prevents luteolysis (Bazer 1989). In a nonpregnant pig, the uterine endometrium secretes PGF2α in an endocrine fashion, resulting in an increase in the amount of PGF2α reaching the ovary via the utero-ovarian vein and the uterine artery (Figure 6.3). In a pregnant pig, PGF2α is secreted in an exocrine fashion into the uterine lumen rather than into the utero-ovarian vein. The transition from endocrine to exocrine secretion between day 10 and 12 of pregnancy coincides with the initiation of estrogen secretion by the pig conceptuses (Fisher et al. 1985). In addition, pregnant animals show an increase in secretion of PGE2, a luteotropic prostaglandin produced by the endometrium or conceptuses. This shifts the ratio of luteotropic to luteolytic prostaglandins in a favorable direction for maintenance of CL function. Furthermore, maternal

6.1. Porcine ovaries. A) New follicles (arrow) commencing to develop among corpora lutea. The ovary was collected at approximately day 15–16 of the estrous cycle. B) Large, preovulatory follicles. C) Corpora hemorrhagica (CH). The CH form shortly after ovulation. D) Mature corpora lutea. The ovary was collected during diestrus. E) Ovary collected from an anestrous sow. Note the small follicles (<5 mm; arrow) and the absence of corpora lutea. F) Mature corpora lutea. The ovary was collected from a pregnant sow during midgestation.

6.2. Endocrine changes during the periestrous period relative to the peak LH concentrations. Peak LH concentrations typically coincide with the onset of standing estrus. The arrows indicate the period of proestrus, and the bar shows the intensity of signs indicative of estrus.
and conceptus-derived steroid hormones, growth factors, and cytokines, as well as integrins and their ligands, have interrelated roles in mediating adhesion between the conceptus and maternal uterine epithelium (Jaeger et al. 2001). These complex interactions between the conceptus and the uterus are critical to successful implantation in pigs.

Progesterone is required throughout pregnancy in the pig, and the primary source of progesterone is the CL. One corpus luteum is enough to maintain pregnancy, provided that the reduction in CL is done in a stepwise manner (Thomford et al. 1984). Ovariectomy, enucleation of CL or treatment with a luteolytic prostaglandin all cause abortion. The CL are autonomous for the first 2 weeks after estrus and thereafter require only basal LH support to continue to secrete progesterone (First and Bazer 1983). Progesterone concentrations in blood increase to peak values by day 12 after mating and remain elevated, thereby causing myometrial quiescence (Anderson 1987). Hypophyseal lutetotropic support is required during most of pregnancy to sustain CL function. Plasma concentrations of estrone sulfate show a transient increase during the fourth week of pregnancy because of production of estrogens by the feto-placental unit. Estrogens then decline until about day 80 when unconjugated estrogens and estradiol-17β increase to peak values just prior to parturition.

As term approaches, a series of endocrine events (Figure 6.4), presumably initiated by the fetal pigs, lead to parturition. Fetuses initiate parturition through fetal pituitary release of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), which stimulates production of glucocorticoids by the fetal adrenal. Cortisol stimulates increased release of PGF$_{2\alpha}$ from the gravid uterus, which promotes luteolysis and thereby decreases concentrations of progesterone. This facilitates an increased frequency of uterine contractions and the initiation of parturition (First et al. 1982; First and Bazer 1983). The elevated PGF$_{2\alpha}$ concentrations also promote the release of relaxin from the CL and oxytocin from the neurohypophysis.
Relaxin and oxytocin are required for the relaxation of the cervix and promotion of myometrial activity, respectively.

**Pseudopregnancy**

Pseudopregnancy occurs when CL are maintained beyond the expected time of luteolysis in the absence of viable fetuses. Short pseudopregnancy has been defined as an interestrus interval of at least 3 days beyond normal for a gilt or sow with a minimum duration of at least 23 days (Pusateri et al. 1996). Long pseudopregnancy has been defined as an interestrus interval of more than 50 days. The extended interestrus interval is associated with an extension of luteal function because luteolysis is delayed.

Pseudopregnancy can be induced by treating gilts or sows with estrogen beginning on day 11 or 12 of an estrous cycle. Short-term treatment with estradiol (i.e., treatment on day 11 and 12) will induce short pseudopregnancy in most animals, but longer-term treatment (treatment for 8–9 days beginning on day 11 or 12) is required to induce consistent long pseudopregnancy. Gilts that consume moldy corn contaminated with *Fusarium roseum* that produces zearalenone may show either short or long pseudopregnancy.

**Endocrinology of Lactation**

Sows experience three reproductive phases after farrowing, namely, the hypergonadotrophic phase, the transition phase, and the normalization phase (Britt 1996a). After parturition, the CL regress to form corpora albicantia (CA). The CA gradually regress during lactation and are less than 2 mm in diameter at the time of weaning. During the last few days of pregnancy, follicles develop on the ovary. These follicles initially are present in the first 1 or 2 days of lactation. This hypergonadotrophic phase is associated with elevated LH and FSH concentrations, declining estrogens and progesterone (Sesti and Britt 1994) and large, preovulatory sized follicles. Due to suckling-induced inhibition of GnRH secretion and decreased LH and FSH, the large follicles regress within a few days after farrowing. Low levels of gonadotropins, minimal ovarian activity, and low concentrations of estradiol and progesterone characterize the transition phase from day 3 to 14 (Cox et al. 1988; Sesti and Britt 1994). Normalization occurs beyond day 14 when there is an increase in LH and FSH, number of medium and preovulatory sized follicles, and estradiol (Sesti and Britt 1993). Although suckling suppresses estrus by preventing release of GnRH from the hypothalamus, hourly pulses of GnRH will induce estrus and ovulation within 7 days. This attests to the central role the GnRH plays in regulating follicular growth and estrous cycles in both gilts and sows (Cox and Britt 1982).

The uterus is enlarged after farrowing, but involution during this period is rapid with remarkable decreases in weight and length in 2 to 3 days. During the transition phase, the uterus continues to undergo involution, with weight and length reaching a stable plateau by approximately day 14 (Varley 1982).

**MANAGEMENT OF REPRODUCTIVE PROCESSES: DETECTION OF ESTRUS**

**Proestrual Changes**

Estrus is the period of sexual receptivity during which sows and gilts display a characteristic pattern of both anatomical changes and behaviors culminating in the immobilization response or standing reflex. The first signs of approaching estrus are increased activity and vocalizations. Sows housed in crates commonly move backward and forward or from side to side within the crate and often attempt to nibble or nose females in adjacent crates. Sometimes these sows will paw at the front door of the crate and chant to animals in adjacent crates. In pens, characteristic activities include sniffing, nuzzling the rear and fore flanks, and attempting to mount or ride other females. Sows attempting to mount or actually riding other females may be either in estrus or approaching estrus.

Reddening and swelling of the vulva usually accompany or occur shortly after the increased activity. The change in size and color of the vulva is the result of an increase in blood flow and retention of fluids. As a result, the external lips of the vulva often are pushed outward exposing a portion of its highly vascular inner lining. Due to these changes, the opening to the vagina often appears to increase in size. In females that are not in heat, the external lips of the vulva are curled inward and block the opening to the vagina giving it a small, puckered appearance. The size and color change of the vulva are greatest just prior to when females will exhibit the immobilization reflex. Reddening and swelling of the vulva often do not appear to occur in older parity sows because the change in color and size are masked by the loose, flabby skin around the vulva caused by repeated deliveries.

The presence of a sticky discharge and enlargement of the clitoris usually occur immediately before and during the standing reflex. When females are in heat, the clitoris is engorged with blood, which causes it to protrude outward and have a bright red color. When females are not in heat, the clitoris is flat and has a pale, light pink color. To observe the clitoris, it is necessary to pull the external lips of the vulva apart and outward. This exposes the internal fold where the lips join and the clitoris is located. Mucus obtained from the inside lining of the vulva from sows that are not in heat has a slimy or slick feel. Just prior to the initiation of the standing reflex, the consistency of the mucus changes and becomes tacky or sticky. Assessment of the consistency of the mucus commonly is referred to as the “thumb check.” The thumb check is performed by wiping the inside lining of the vulva with the thumb to ob-
tain a sample of mucus. Then, the thumb and first finger are pressed together and slowly pulled apart. The sample is considered sticky or tacky if small strands of mucus remain connected to both the thumb and pointer as they are drawn apart. In most cases, an engorged clitoris and sticky mucus are good indications that the female is in or within a few hours of exhibiting standing heat.

**Standing Reflex**

The standing reflex is the most common behavior associated with sexual receptivity and serves as the reference point upon which most breeding regimens are based. Duration of the standing reflex has been reported to be between 46 and 53 hours for sows and 36 and 48 hours for gilts (Signoret et al. 1972; Kemp and Soede 1996). The variation associated with these estimates is considerable, indicating that expression of the standing reflex is influenced by a number of environmental factors (Hemsworth and Barnett 1990). The successful expression and identification of the standing reflex depends upon interactions between internal and external stimuli. High concentrations of estradiol produced by preovulatory follicles are the internal stimuli, while pheromones produced by the boar serve as the external cues. Elevated estradiol levels invoke changes in the central nervous system that gives the female the ability to exhibit the standing reflex. However, it is the presence of the male pheromone, 5-alpha androsterone, that is believed to be the catalyst for the immobilization response (Hughes et al. 1990). Female pheromones may also be involved because the presence of estrual sows has been shown to stimulate and synchronize estrous behaviors in weaned sows and peripubertal gilts (Pearce and Pearce 1992).

The immobilization response requires a tremendous expenditure of energy because it involves the isometric contraction of most of the pig’s skeletal muscle. This is why sows exhibiting the standing reflex often appear to quiver or tremble. Most females are only able to maintain this immobilized state for 15–30 minutes before muscles become fatigued (Levis and Hemsworth 1995). When this happens, females enter a period of refractoriness during which they are not able to exhibit a normal standing reflex. This phenomenon is called *habituation* and commonly occurs in situations where sows have continual, fence-line contact with boars. Habituation can be prevented and the standing reflex enhanced by providing short, daily periods of boar exposure or by physical separation of as little as 1 meter (Hemsworth and Barnett 1990).

Pheromones produced by boars are the most potent and effective inducer of the standing reflex in receptive females. Running a boar in front of sows in crates while a breeding technician applies back pressure is a common and effective method of estrous detection. Sows in heat will move forward and assume the standing reflex as the boar moves in front of the crate. When back pressure is applied, females that are truly in heat will actually push back—a natural response for a sow that is preparing to be mounted by the boar. Sows in crates are probably not in estrus if they try to move away from back pressure, even though they might show some other signs of estrus. In pens, sows will move to the front of the pen as the boar passes. If back pressure is applied and the sow is in heat, then she will exhibit the standing reflex. If back pressure is applied and the sow is not in heat, then she usually will run away from the back pressure. Estrous females housed in pens will sometimes attempt to follow the movement of a boar as he passes in front of their pen. This is due to the fact that sexually receptive females seek out males more so than males finding sows that are in heat.

**Ovulatory Dynamics in Relation to Estrus**

In general, ovulation in pigs begins 36–44 hours after the onset of estrus and lasts 1–3 hours. Most follicles (68–95%) appear to ovulate over a short period of time, while a minority ovulates over a longer interval. Nevertheless, onset and duration of ovulation are extremely variable within and among herds (Flowers and Esbenshade 1993). For example, in the study of Weitzel and co-workers (1992), average duration from the onset of estrus to ovulation was 44.4 hours; but the means for animals in the first and fourth quartiles were 26.2 and 57.9 hours, respectively—a difference of 30 hours. Using real-time ultrasonography, Kemp and Soede (1996) demonstrated that most of the variation associated with the time of ovulation was due to differences in the duration of estrus.

They concluded that ovulation occurs when estrus is about 70% completed; thus, for a gilt that exhibits the standing reflex for 1 day, ovulation would be expected to begin about 17 hours after the onset of estrus, but for one that exhibits a 2-day estrus, ovulation would not begin until 34 hours after onset of estrus.

**INSEMINATION**

**Timing and Frequency**

From a physiological perspective, successful breeding regimens consistently create a situation in which an adequate number of viable spermatozoa are present in the oviduct prior to ovulation (Dziuk and Polge 1965). Thus, insemination must be coordinated with ovulation. This is usually accomplished by adjustment of the timing and frequency of matings based on the onset of estrus. However, relationships between ovulation and onset of estrus vary considerably within and among herds (Flowers and Esbenshade 1993). Consequently, reproductive performance could differ considerably among herds using identical mating regimens.

Kemp and Soede (1996) conducted a comprehensive evaluation of the relationship between timing of insemination relative to ovulation and fertility. Time of ovulation was monitored by realtime ultrasonography.
Results indicated that if a mating occurred 0–24 hours prior to ovulation, then fertilization rates were greater than 90%. The insemination dose used in the study was 3 billion spermatozoa that were 24 ± 6 hours old at artificial insemination (AI). Thus it appears that the minimum requirement for the timing and frequency of AI is one mating each day of estrus. Based on this information, one might question the importance of multiple matings within a 24-hour period. Although it is possible that two matings during the 24-hour period before ovulation might result in an improvement in fertilization rates, the 90% in the study of Kemp and Soede (1996) is generally accepted as being close to the maximal rate normally achieved in swine (Polge 1978).

Insemination Dose
Two aspects of insemination dose that affect fertility are the total number of viable spermatozoa and the total volume inseminated. The volume of the insemination dose is an important stimulus for activation of uterine smooth muscle activity, which is responsible for movement of spermatozoa from the site of deposition (cervix) to the site of fertilization (oviduct). Volumes of at least 60–80 ml appear to be required for optimal sperm transport (Baker et al. 1968). A positive relationship exists between number of sperm cells inseminated and number that enter the oviduct when insemination doses are between 1 and 8 billion (Baker et al. 1968). However, the effects of oviductal sperm numbers on litter size and farrowing rate have not been clearly established. Insemination doses between 2 and 5 billion spermatozoa are generally considered sufficient to ensure adequate fertility (Weitze 1991).

Breeding Technician
The technical competence of breeding technicians and reproductive performance within a herd are often assumed to be positively correlated; as the skill level increases, so do farrowing rates and litter size. Documentation that this assumption is true has been provided by two types of studies. In a survey of swine farms experiencing suboptimal reproduction in the southeastern United States, it was estimated that the main problem on 30% of these farms was associated with the skill level of the breeding technicians (Flowers 1996a,b). Poor detection of estrus was found to be the predominant problem rather than poor insemination or semen handling techniques. It is not appropriate to use these data from a retrospective study as evidence for a cause and effect relationship; however, a prospective study characterized AI breeding technicians within a single commercial swine operation (Flowers 1996a,b). In that study, matings administered by technicians occurred simultaneously within the same production environment. Thus observed differences were due to the influence of the breeding technician and not other confounding factors. Data from this study demonstrated two important concepts: breeding technicians had a large influence on farrowing rates and litter size, and performance of breeding technicians did not remain constant over time. There was a 1036-pig difference in total pigs produced between the best and worst technicians based on 220 sows bred over 13 weeks. If this trend continued for an entire year in this herd, then there would be approximately a 4000-pig difference between the best and worst technician. Farrowing rates of sows supervised by 5 out of 6 technicians exhibited significant fluctuations during the 13-week study. These changes over time could be explained by environmental or animal factors that influenced the entire herd because farrowing rates for some individuals decreased and for others increased. Based on the magnitude of these changes, the ability to monitor reproductive performance of sows on a breeding technician basis would be of great value. However, to accomplish this, record keeping programs must include breeding technician as an independent variable and matings for a given female must be administered by the same individual.

CONTROL OF REPRODUCTIVE PROCESSES
Control of the onset of estrus has been approached along two lines: the induction of ovulation in acyclic, anovulatory females and the regulation of the luteal phase of the estrous cycle in cyclic, ovulatory pigs. The latter approach has utilized suppression of ovarian activity via the administration of oral-active progestosterone or synthetic progestins. Presently, the most common exogenous hormone combination for induction of follicle growth and ovulation in acyclic females is a combination of 400 IU of equine chorionic gonadotropin (eCG) and 200 IU of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG).

Induction and Synchronization of First Estrus in Gilts
To induce puberty successfully in a group of gilts, it is important to know the pubertal status of the group and the usual age of onset of puberty under the conditions on the specific farm. Gilts that are within approximately 1–2 months of natural onset of puberty will respond to treatment with gonadotropins by expressing estrus and continuing to cycle. If gilts are too young, they may express estrus, but then return to an anestrous state. If gilts have already cycled, they usually will not respond to gonadotropin treatment by showing estrus.

Puberty can be induced in gilts by treatment with a single injection of 400 IU of eCG and 200 IU of hCG. Gilts usually show estrus 3–6 days after treatment (Britt et al. 1989). The percentage of gilts that show estrus in a group may vary considerably, but most gilts ovulate even if they do not show estrus (Tilton et al. 1995). The response rate is enhanced if gilts are given daily boar stimulation by direct physical contact beginning at the time of treatment. Gilts respond best if they are held on the finishing floor until the time of injection and are
moved and injected on the same day. Failure to respond to this combination may be associated with treating gilts that have already reached puberty.

**Synchronization of Second Estrus in Gilts**

One can theoretically resynchronize second estrus in treated gilts by giving a luteolytic dose of PGF$_{2\alpha}$ approximately 18 days after the injection of 400 IU of eCG and 200 IU of hCG (Britt 1996b). Pig CL do not undergo luteolysis in response to a single standard luteolytic dose of PGF$_{2\alpha}$ during the first 12 days of the estrous cycle, but beyond the 12th day PGF$_{2\alpha}$ will induce luteolysis. If most gilts in a group are between day 12 and 17 of an estrous cycle, one should be able to synchronize estrus by giving a single injection of PGF$_{2\alpha}$. Most gilts should be beyond day 12 of an estrous cycle 18 days after injection of gonadotropins. If these gilts are given a luteolytic dose of PGF$_{2\alpha}$, their second estrus should be more synchronous than if they remained untreated.

**Synchronization of Estrus in Pregnant Gilts**

The porcine CL remain unresponsive to the acute administration of PGF$_{2\alpha}$ or its analogs until days 12 to 14 after ovulation. As the porcine CL typically commence natural regression due to endogenous prostaglandins at days 14–17, there is only a transient period when a single treatment with exogenous prostaglandins hastens the onset of estrus. Repeated PGF$_{2\alpha}$ injections between days 5 and 10 will reduce the duration of the estrous cycle; however, the labor and cost preclude this technique from practical application.

In contrast to the relative unresponsiveness of the CL to PGF$_{2\alpha}$ during diestrus, PGF$_{2\alpha}$ is effective for inducing luteolysis, abortion, and prompt return to estrus in pregnant (and pseudopregnant) gilts beyond the second week of pregnancy (Pressing et al. 1987). One method for synchronization is to penmate gilts for 3 weeks and then, treat with PGF$_{2\alpha}$ 2 weeks later (Britt 1996b). This technique is effective, but ages at first farrowing and nonproductive sow days are increased.

**Synchronization of Estrus with Progestin**

Cyclic gilts can be synchronized by administering a progestin for 14–18 days (Britt 1996b). The progestin inhibits follicular maturation and estrus while permitting the CL to regress naturally. When the progestin is withdrawn, follicles mature and estrus occurs beginning about 3 days later. Several studies demonstrated that feeding altrenogest at the rate of 15–20 mg per day was effective for synchronizing estrus, and subsequent litter size was normal or slightly increased (Davis et al. 1985). Treated gilts exhibit estrus 4–9 days after completion of a 14-day treatment period. The product is administered on an individual gilt basis by top-dressing the animal’s daily feed allowance. It is critical that each gilt receives the recommended 15 mg each day, because underfeeding may lead to cystic ovarian degeneration.

**Induction of Ovulation in Early Lactation in Sows**

Initial studies demonstrated that ovulation was induced in about 75% of sows by giving hCG on the day of farrowing (Britt et al. 1997). These sows form CL that eventually regress spontaneously. If CL were induced by treatment with hCG on the day of farrowing, weaning could occur any time before day 21 but the sow would not be expected to be in heat until day 21 or slightly after. Furthermore, PGF$_{2\alpha}$ could be given after day 14–16 to induce premature luteolysis, and the sow should be in heat 3–5 days later. Despite initial success with this method of synchronization, subsequent reports indicated that the method did not have sufficient reliability for commercial sow farms (Kirkwood et al. 1999).

**Induction of Estrus in Weaned Sows**

Anestrus after weaning is more likely to occur during the summer and fall and is more common in primiparous than multiparous sows (Britt 1986). Incidence of anestrus can be reduced substantially by treating with gonadotropin at weaning (Bates et al. 1991); therefore, an effective strategy during periods when anestrus is likely to occur at a high rate is to treat sows at weaning with a combination of eCG and hCG. An alternative strategy to treatment of all sows in a group at weaning is selectively to treat those that have not returned to estrus by 7 days after weaning (Britt 1996a); however, there is little experimental evidence supporting the use of gonadotropins for this purpose (Tubbs et al. 1996).

**Induction of Parturition**

To synchronize farrowing, PGF$_{2\alpha}$ or an analog, is used to induce parturition (Table 6.1). Induction of farrowing creates an opportunity for producers to supervise parturition, reduce stillbirth rates, facilitate cross-fostering of piglets and to decrease variability of piglet weaning ages and lactation lengths. Exogenous PGF$_{2\alpha}$ typically is administered to sows after day 112 of gestation. Prostaglandin-induced farrowing prior to day 110 severely compromises piglet survivability. Some producers prefer to restrict prostaglandin injections to sows that exceed a 114-day or 115-day gestation. Other producers treat all sows with prostaglandin at a specific day (day 112 to 114) of gestation.

The duration of parturition, piglet viability and sow performance during lactation are similar following prostaglandin-induced farrowings and natural delivery (Einarsson et al. 1981; Dial et al. 1987). Prior to implementing an induction program and achieving favorable results, producers need accurate records regarding gestation length and a commitment to supervise farrowings and assist deliveries. The mean interval from PGF$_{2\alpha}$ injection to the onset of parturition was 29.5 hours with a range of 24–32 hours and considerable variation (Pressing 1992), which emphasizes the potential differences in response from farm to farm and from study to study.
study. The interval from injection to parturition tends to be less with cloprostenol, a PGF2α analog (Pressing 1992); however, in some countries, only the natural prostaglandin is approved for use in swine. The side effects of prostaglandin-induced farrowing include hyperpnea, and increased salivation, urination, and defecation within minutes after injection. Nest-building, rooting, pawing, and bar biting are often evident but subside within 2 hours.

Initial investigations used intramuscular injections of either PGF2α (10 mg) or cloprostenol (175 µg). Subsequent studies demonstrated that the dose could be reduced to 5 mg and 87.5 µg, respectively, with vulvomucosal injections (Friendship et al. 1990). The interval from injection to parturition was similar to the intramuscular injection; however, the undesirable side effects were reduced.

Prostaglandin and Oxytocin Combination. It was proposed that an injection of oxytocin at 20–24 hours after the initial prostaglandin injection would improve synchrony of farrowing during working hours. Treatment with 20–30 IU of oxytocin induced parturition in a larger proportion of sows than 5–10 IU of oxytocin (Table 6.1). The high doses were associated with frequent interruptions of piglet deliveries and dystocia (Dial et al. 1987). With 5–10 IU of oxytocin, few complications occurred during delivery; however, less than 90% of treated animals were induced to farrow during the working day. Thus the low doses of oxytocin cause few problems with parturition; yet they fail to improve the synchrony of parturition, which in turn diminishes the opportunity for supervised farrowings. Clinical reports indicate that vulvomucosal injection of 5 IU of oxytocin is sufficient to induce farrowing without complications.

Other Products. Carazolol, epostane, and clenbuterol were shown to be efficacious in the control of parturition. None of these agents are licensed for use in swine in the U.S. Carazolol, a β1,2-adrenergic blocking agent, when used in combination with prostaglandins, improved synchronization of farrowing. Carazolol (3 mg/sow), given 20 hours after prostaglandin administration, induced labor within 3 hours, shortened the duration of parturition and did not create adverse side effects (Holz et al. 1990). This agent also may be used alone (1 mg/100 kg body weight) at the onset of labor to reduce the duration of parturition (Bostedt and Rudloff 1983).

Epostane, a competitive inhibitor of 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase, was shown to decrease peripheral levels of progesterone and induce sows to farrow (Martin et al. 1987). The interval from oral administration of 5 and 10 mg/kg body weight to the birth of the first piglet was 31 and 33 hours, respectively. There were no adverse effects reported with epostane-induced farrowings.

Tocolytic agents are used to inhibit rather than hasten the onset of labor. The tocolytic effects of clenbuterol result from its β2-adrenergic properties. Intravenous or intramuscular administration of clenbuterol (150 µg/sow) during the onset of labor, but before delivery of the first pig, delayed parturition by 15 hours (Zerobin and Kundig 1980). The use of clenbuterol after delivery of one to three piglets interrupted parturition for 3 hours. Detrimental effects were not observed with this dose of clenbuterol; however, repeated, higher doses (300 µg every 6 hours) increased stillbirth rate.

Table 6.1. Interval between oxytocin (OT) injection and onset of farrowing in sows treated with prostaglandin (PGF2α, 10 mg) on different days of gestation (adapted from Dial et al. 1987). The OT was given 20 hours after the PGF2α injection. Numbers of interventions required during farrowing also are shown. Data are expressed as means ± SEM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interval (h) from OT Injection to Farrowing</th>
<th>Gestation Day of PGF2α Treatment</th>
<th>Interventions per Sow Days 112–114</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OT Dose (Units)</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>11.7 ± 2.8</td>
<td>9.2 ± 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>14.0 ± 2.3</td>
<td>7.8 ± 2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>11.4 ± 4.1</td>
<td>8.3 ± 2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>11.4 ± 3.2</td>
<td>7.7 ± 2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>4.8 ± 1.4</td>
<td>4.6 ± 1.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Induction of Abortion

Prostaglandins are effective abortifacients (≥12–14 days after mating) in sows and most sows return to a fertile estrus following the termination of pregnancy (Guthrie and Polge 1978; Pressing et al. 1987). In addition, administration of exogenous PGF2α is luteolytic in pseudopregnant pigs (Smith et al. 1992) and will induce parturition in sows that are carrying mummified fetuses (Hermansson et al. 1981). Both PGF2α (10–15 mg) and cloprostenol (175–500 µg), given once or twice at a 24-hour interval, effectively terminate pregnancy and pseudopregnancy.
PREGNANCY DETECTION

Most pork producers consider pregnancy detection essential to the reproductive efficiency of the sow herd. An ideal pregnancy detection method would have 100% sensitivity and specificity. Testing would take a few seconds per animal and the method would be simple enough that training would be minimal. This “ideal” method would predict pregnancy status prior to the return to estrus at 17–24 days postmating (Almond and Dial 1987). Because an ideal technique is not available, producers rely on one or more techniques for pregnancy diagnosis.

Detection of Estrus

The most common pregnancy detection technique is based on the premise that nonpregnant sows will return to estrus within 17–24 days after breeding. Detection of estrus is improved if the sow’s behavior is observed in the presence of a boar, particularly when there is physical contact between the boar and female. The overall accuracy of this technique ranged from 39% (Bosc et al. 1975) to 98% (Almond and Dial 1986). Field reports indicate that most producers identify approximately 50% of nonconceiving sows using this technique. False-positive diagnoses occur when sows are persistently anestrous due to cyclical ovarian degeneration (COD), acyclical ovaries, or becoming pseudopregnant. Management factors that interfere with the detection of estrus include housing submissive sows in groups with dominant sows, attempting to detect estrous females in large groups, and assessing estrus without using boar exposure.

Hormone Concentrations

Serum concentrations of progesterone and estrone sulfate were used as indicators of pregnancy. Hormone concentrations are dynamic and collection of samples is restricted to discrete periods during pregnancy.

Progesterone. Regression of the CL typically commences prior to day 15 of the estrous cycle. Following maternal recognition of pregnancy, serum progesterone concentrations are usually greater than 5 ng/ml throughout pregnancy. Thus, serum concentrations of progesterone are high in pregnant sows and gilts during the expected time of return to estrus and low (<5 ng/ml) in sows and gilts that failed to conceive (Ellendorf et al. 1976). The interestrus interval of sows of varying parities ranges from 17 to 24 days, with a mean of 20 to 21 days (Andersson and Einarsson 1980). Therefore, the optimal time to obtain blood samples for progesterone determinations is from 17 to 20 days after mating (Almond and Dial 1987). Using serum progesterone concentrations for pregnancy diagnosis, a sensitivity of more than 97% was achieved, but specificity ranged from 60 to 90% (Larsson et al. 1975; Almond and Dial 1986). False-positive tests occur in animals with delayed or irregular returns to estrus, pseudopregnancies, and COD. False-negative tests may result from laboratory error since it is assumed that ≥5 ng progesterone/ml serum are required for pregnancy maintenance in swine (Ellicott and Dziuk 1973).

Commercial enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays are available for on farm applications, which reduce the need of laboratory-based radioimmunoassays (Glossop et al. 1989). The necessity of collecting blood is a significant limitation of this method; however, enzyme immunoreactive assays (Sanders et al. 1994) and radioimmunoassays were developed for assessing fecal progesterone concentrations. Despite potential applications for these fecal tests, their utility has yet to be determined on commercial farms.

Estrone Sulfate. A high proportion of fetal estrogens is secreted from the uterus into the maternal circulation as estrone sulfate (Robertson et al. 1985). Serum estrone sulfate concentrations cannot be reliably determined until peak levels are reached between 25 and 30 days of gestation (Robertson et al. 1978). At 35 to 45 days, the concentrations decrease to a nadir (Guthrie and Deaver 1979), with a second increase commencing at 70 to 80 days.

Serum estrone sulfate concentrations of >0.5 ng/ml are indicative of pregnancy, whereas <0.5 ng/ml are suggestive of nonpregnant status (Cunningham 1982; Almond and Dial 1986). Using estrone sulfate as a pregnancy test, >97% sensitivity and >88% specificity were obtained when samples were collected between 25 and 30 days of pregnancy (Almond and Dial 1986). False-negative results were obtained in sows or gilts with a delayed rise in estrone sulfate concentrations (Cunningham et al. 1983) or when sows and gilts have less than four pigs in a litter (Almond and Dial 1986). Urinary concentrations of estrone conjugates also were used to predict pregnancy and to diagnose fertility problems (Seren et al. 1983); however, this technique was not developed for commercial application. Quantitative commercial assay kits for the determination of estrone sulfate concentrations in serum or feces from swine are not available. The need to collect blood samples limits the practical application of this technique.

Prostaglandin-F2α. The prostaglandin pregnancy test was based on the principles that if serum concentrations of PGF2α are low (<200 pg/ml) or undetectable between days 13 and 15 after mating, the sow can be assumed to be pregnant. The prostaglandin pregnancy test had approximately 90% sensitivity and 70% specificity (Bosc et al. 1975). This method can be conducted during early pregnancy, but it is unreliable for detecting open animals and requires extensive laboratory procedures.

Rectal Palpation

Pregnancy diagnosis by rectal palpation of the sow is practical and highly accurate (Cameron 1977). Sows are
examined while standing in gestation crates or pens or while tethered. This technique is based on examination of the cervix and uterus, together with palpation of the middle uterine artery to assess size, degree of tone, and type of pulse. The pelvic canal and rectum are often too small for the procedure to be used on gilts or low parity sows. Despite the potential application of this technique, it has not gained popularity in North America.

Ultrasound Techniques

Doppler Ultrasound. Doppler instruments detect fetal heartbeats or the pulsation of arteries. Approximately 50–100 pulses/minute are detected in the uterine artery, while 150–250 pulses/minute are evident in the umbilical arteries (Swensson 1978). The abdominal probe is positioned on the flank of the animal, lateral to the nipples, and aimed at the sow’s pelvis area. The ultrasound waves are emitted and received by transducers and are converted to audible signals. The rectal probe functions similarly, with the exception of the positioning of the transducer. Sensitivity (>85%) and specificity (>95%) did not differ between the rectal and abdominal probes (McCaughey and Rea 1979; Almond and Dial 1986). Optimal results were obtained at 29–34 days (Almond et al. 1985). False-positive results may occur when sows are tested during proestrus or estrus or when animals have active endometritis. False-negative diagnoses occur when examinations are conducted in a noisy environment or if feces become packed around the rectal probe.

Amplitude-Depth (A-mode or Pulse Echo) Ultrasound. Amplitude-depth instruments use ultrasound waves to detect the fluid-filled uterus (Lindahl et al. 1975). From approximately 30 days until 75 days after breeding, the overall accuracy in the determination of pregnancy was commonly >95% (Holtz 1982; Almond et al. 1985). False-negative and uncertain determinations increase from 75 days until farrowing, due to changes in the allantoic fluids and fetal growth. The sensitivity and specificity vary between the different models of amplitude depth instruments (Almond and Dial 1986). Detection of a fluid-filled urinary bladder, pyometra or endometrial edema yields a false-positive test. False-negative results were noted when animals were examined before 28 days of gestation or after day 80 (Holtz 1982).

Real-Time Ultrasonography. Results of initial studies clearly indicated that real-time ultrasonography (RTU) possessed potential for early and accurate pregnancy diagnosis in sows and gilts (Inaba et al. 1983; Jackson 1986). The transducer of RTU probe is placed against the flank of the animal, and the positioning is similar to other pregnancy detection devices. The probe is directed toward the back of the animal, allowing the ultrasound waves to pass through the uterus before returning back to the transducer. Pregnancy is based on the detection of distinct, fluid-filled vesicles in the reproductive tract (Figure 6.5).

For various reasons, such as the purchase price of an instrument, producers and veterinarians were reluctant to use RTU in commercial sow farms. However, the trend to larger sow farms and the decrease in purchase price created opportunities for RTU as a routine pregnancy detection method. On day 21 of gestation, the overall accuracy was 90% and 96% for the 3.5 and 5 mHz probes, respectively (Armstrong et al. 1997). The 5 mHz probe had a greater specificity than the 3.5 mHz probe. It also was evident that technician, day of gestation, instrument, and probe (3.5 vs. 5 mHz and linear vs. sector) influenced the accuracy of RTU. These sources of variation have much less impact when RTU is used at day 28, rather than day 21.

Conclusions. Amplitude depth (a-mode) and doppler instruments typically are used after 30 days postmating and require multiple tests to improve accuracy. Both instruments are inexpensive and neither requires extensive training; however, numerous causes of false-
positive and false-negative tests exist with either instrument. Tests for serum progesterone or estrone sulfate require blood samples at specific days of pregnancy. To eliminate blood collection, assay procedures were developed to determine progesterone concentrations in fresh fecal samples. ELISA tests for progesterone concentrations diminished the need for extensive laboratory facilities; however, few producers can justify the time to collect and process samples, and the complexity of these tests preclude their routine use on commercial farms. Rectal palpation is inexpensive, but offers few other advantages over a-mode or Doppler instruments, and has not gained popularity in the U.S.

Presently, detection of nonconceiving sows that return to estrus and ultrasound are the most widely used techniques for pregnancy diagnosis. Despite routine use of these traditional methods, many sows either fail to farrow after being considered pregnant or return to estrus at irregular times during a presumed pregnancy. Success of a pregnancy detection program originates from the personnel implementing the program. The most promising technique is RTU; however, cost of the instrument and other factors might interfere with its widespread acceptance by commercial pig producers.

**PROBLEMS AT FARROWING**

**Dystocia**

Dystocia along with several other problems that can lead to difficult farrowing (e.g., downer sow) are relatively frequent in sows. Knowledge of the normal process of parturition is essential to determine when there is a need to intervene. Swelling of the vulval lips occurs about 4 days prepartum. The mammary glands become more turbid and tense during the last 2 days before farrowing, with the mammary secretion being serous 48 hours prior to parturition and becoming milky within 24 hours of farrowing. Restlessness and nesting behavior usually start in the 24 hours prefarrowing but recede in the last hour before the first piglet. Intermittent abdominal straining occurs before the birth of the first piglet, but straining is usually mild thereafter except at the moment of expulsion. Farrowing is expected within 20 minutes when a viscid, blood-tinged secretion often containing meconium is observed at the vulva. Duration of parturition is usually less than 3 hours but ranges from 30 minutes to more than 10 hours, with an interval between the birth of piglets averaging 15–20 minutes. Fetal membranes are expelled in general 4 hours after the birth of the last piglet, from 20 minutes to 12 1/2 hours.

Signs of dystocia are anorexia, blood-tinged vulvar discharges, meconium without straining, straining without delivery of piglets, cessation of labor after straining, and the delivery of one or more piglets, exhaustion of the sow, and foul-smelling and discolored vulvar discharge. Primary uterine inertia associated with a decreased contractile activity of the myometrium is uncommon in sows, whereas secondary uterine inertia is much more frequent and results from uterine and maternal exhaustion associated with fetal malpresentation or maternal obstruction. The causes of dystocia are classified into two categories, maternal and fetal dystocia, depending on the origin. Arthur et al. (1989) have reported the following causes of dystocia: uterine inertia without significant cause (37%), breech presentation (14.5%), obstruction of the birth canal (13%), simultaneous presentation of two fetuses (10%), downward deviation of the uterus (9%), and oversized fetuses (4%). In modern sow herds, dystocia may also occur as a result of the use of prostaglandin and oxytocin to induce or control farrowing.

To correct dystocia, farm personnel must act in a timely fashion, since delayed or premature pharmacological or manual intervention may result in piglet death, decreased piglet viability, localized or systemic infections in the sow, or death of the sow. A 20% stillbirth rate is often associated with dystocia. To optimize the success of intervention, sows should be observed at 30-minute intervals once parturition has commenced. At each observation the number of piglets born and the time can be recorded to better assess the interval between the birth of piglets.

Correction of dystocia is achieved by manual examination of the vagina and cervix and removal of the obstruction or malpresented fetuses. Strict hygiene is required and the use of obstetrical gloves and lubricant is recommended. Manual extraction is usually the safest technique to extract fetuses. Caution must be exercised when using forceps, blunt hooks, or cable snares, due to the risk of trauma to the sow’s reproductive tract. After removal of the malpresented pigs, the birth canal should be reexamined prior to the administration of oxytocin. High doses (>20 IU) of oxytocin may create a refractory period (3 hours) in which endogenous and exogenous oxytocin fails to stimulate contractions (Einarsson et al. 1975). Injectable antibiotics are warranted if sufficient contamination occurs. Intrauterine infusions of antibiotics or iodine solutions are usually not effective in promoting uterine involution or preventing uterine infections.

**Injuries Incidental to Parturition**

Hemorrhage may occur postpartum as a result of uterine, vaginal, or vulvar lacerations. Lacerations of the vagina and vulva can be sutured externally, whereas severe uterine lacerations or uterine ruptures are difficult to repair without conducting a laparotomy. The economics of this latter procedure must therefore be considered. Oxytocin treatment promotes uterine contractions and may be beneficial with minor uterine lacerations. Hematomas of the vulva are resolved as the blood and the fluid are resorbed; however, sharp projec-
tions in farrowing crates increase the danger of lacerating the hematomas.

**Vaginal and Uterine Prolapse**

Prolapse is often seen shortly before, during or up to several days after farrowing. Factors that have been reported to increase the risk of vaginal or uterine prolapse in sows are genetics, housing, physical trauma to the genital tract following parturition, older parity, and nutrition. The procedures for correction of uterine prolapse are described in Chapter 70.

**REPRODUCTIVE FAILURE**

**Pathological Processes**

Diseases can exert their effect on the reproductive system through the general systemic effect on the dam or by infection of the conceptuses or the genital tract. The pathological reactions to disease agents depend on the type of agent and on the stage of reproductive cycle of the animal. The clinical manifestations will vary accordingly, as exemplified in Figure 6.6.

Death of the embryos before implantation, which occurs between 10 to 16 days postcoitus, results in reabsorption of conceptuses and a regular return to estrus for the sow. Four embryos are required at nidation for pregnancy to be initiated otherwise the sow will resume her cyclicity and a regular return to estrus will be observed (Dziuk 1985). Embryos are also reabsorbed when death occurs between 14 to 35 days of gestation. The sow will have an irregular return to estrus if most of the conceptuses die or will farrow a small litter when only a proportion of embryos dies. The fetal period in swine begins at the onset of skeletal calcification at around 35 days of gestation and continues to parturition. Death of the fetus is followed by mummification or by stillbirth when it occurs in late gestation. Mummies are fetuses that have died in utero and have begun to decompose. Stillbirth results from the expulsion of dead fetus at an age when they could normally survive without undue assistance. Survival before day 109 of gestational age is limited because lung maturation has not been completed by this age. Stillborn pigs die either prepartum or intrapartum and are grossly normal at birth. In a large proportion of the deaths classified as intrapartum, the pigs were actually alive at birth. In true stillborn pigs, lungs will not float when immersed in water.

A combination of mummies and stillborn pigs of variable size is observed when fetuses die at different times of gestation. This is often the consequence of a progressive intrauterine spread of an infectious agent, such as porcine parvovirus. Sows with mummies and stillborn pigs may farrow at the expected time or experience pseudopregnancy when all conceptuses die if they fail to return to normal ovarian cyclicity due to the persistence of the pregnancy CL.

Abortion results from the termination of the pregnancy control mechanisms with subsequent expulsion of all conceptuses. Aborted sows return to estrus within 5–10 days or experience a prolonged anestrus. Abortion

---

**Figure 6.6.** Pathological reactions to disease agents according to the stage of reproductive cycle and the associated clinical manifestations.
may occur from day 14 throughout gestation and is associated with maternal or embryonic/fetal failure. In abortion due to maternal failure fetuses are generally all of the same age. Fetal age beyond 35 days can be estimated using the crown-rump length in the following formula, where $X$ is the crown-rump length in cm (Ullrey et al. 1965):

$$\text{Fetal age in days} = 21.07 + 3.11X$$

Premature farrowing is associated with a high proportion of stillborn and low viability piglets.

Failure to conceive or to initiate and maintain a pregnancy will be expressed as regular or irregular return to estrus, abortion, or pseudopregnancy, all of which may manifest as a lower farrowing rate at the herd level. The specific problems need to be characterized because influencing factors might be different accordingly. Thus it is essential to have an efficient pregnancy detection program to determine as quickly and accurately as possible the reproductive status of the sows.

Several etiologic agents have been associated with abortion, mummification, stillbirth, birth of weak piglets, and decreased farrowing rate.

**Infectious Agents**

Bacterial reproductive pathogens that can exert an effect on the reproductive tract of pigs include *Brucella suis*, *Leptospira* sp., and *Chlamydia* sp. Mummification is generally not a feature of reproductive bacterial diseases. *Brucella suis* is a primary agent causing abortion at any time of gestation and birth of weak piglets. Early abortions are probably a reflection of exposure via the genital tract at breeding. *Brucella suis* causes severe placentitis and genital infection.

Late-term abortions observed with several serovars of *Leptospira interrogans* result from transplacental infection of fetuses following leptospiremia. Abortions are usually all of the same age although horizontal transmission in utero has been suggested (Fennestad and Borg-Petersen 1966). Some fetuses may be born alive but weak; others are stillborn. Gross lesions in aborted fetuses are usually nonspecific. Histological examination may reveal several spirochetes in the placenta and fetal tissues, namely kidneys. The pathogenesis of infection by *Leptospira* serovar *bratislava* seems to be different. This leptospire causes uterine infection and thus is associated with low conception rate and return to estrus. It is hypothesized that abortion caused by this pathogen is a consequence of transplacental infection by leptospires present in the genital tract rather than following leptospiremia (Ellis et al. 1986). Sow infertility is a common feature in infection by *Leptospira* serovar *bratislava* (Van Til and Dohoo 1991).

Although *Chlamydia* sp. have been associated with late-term abortion and birth of dead or weak pigs, clinically inapparent infection is much more common (Eggemann et al. 2000; Vanrompay et al. 2004).

The role of eperythrozoonosis (*Mycoplasma suis* or *haemosuis*) in reproductive disease is controversial. Some authors have reported anestrus, irregular estrous cycles, abortion, small litters, and stillbirth in seropositive herds (Sisk et al. 1980; Brownback 1981), whereas others did not observe any difference in reproductive parameters between infected and noninfected sows (Zinn et al. 1983).

Several other bacterial diseases—erysipelas, listeriosis, infection with *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae*, *Actinobacillus suis*, *Haemophilus parasuis*, and *Lawsonia intracellularis*—induce abortion either through the general effect of fever or by infecting the conceptus. Conceptuses are usually all of the same age and do not show significant lesions. Localized bacterial infection of the genital tract may also interfere with fertilization and viability of gametes, often resulting in regular return to estrus. Several bacterial species have been isolated from infected uteri (see section on vulvar discharge).

Porcine parvovirus is ubiquitous, and infection is enzootic in most swine herds. Outbreaks may occasionally be observed in newly populated herds with several naive animals. Parvovirus has a direct effect on the conceptus by damaging the placenta and a variety of tissues. Transplacental infection occurs with further intrauterine spread of the virus. Porcine parvovirus infection is characterized by mummified fetuses of different ages, increased returns to estrus, and small litter size, but abortion is unlikely (Mengeling et al. 2000).

The porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) virus causes abortion at any time of the gestation period, although transplacental infection was initially reported to occur more frequently in the last trimester, resulting in late-term abortions and premature farplings. Despite lesions observed in the uterus, the precise mechanisms of abortion are still unclear. It may result from the effects of acute illness and fever and from infection of fetuses. It is also suggested that fetuses may die from hypoxia due to arteritis in the umbilical vessels (Lager and Halbur 1996). A combination of mummies, stillborn, and weak piglets is characteristic of PRRS virus infection. They usually occur sequentially within a herd according to the time of infection of the dams.

Exposure to pseudorabies virus during pregnancy may result in reproductive failure. The virus crosses the placenta and infects and kills embryos and fetuses. It also induces infection with lesions in uterus, placenta, and ovaries (Bolin et al. 1985). Lesions in fetuses are characterized by multiple necrotic foci in various tissues, including liver, spleen, lung, and tonsils.

Enteroviruses once were considered to be major causes of reproductive failure. They were attributed to the SMEDI syndrome (stillbirth, mummification, embryonic death, and infertility). Parvovirus had later been identified as the main etiologic agent for this syndrome.

The pathogenesis of reproductive failure following infection by encephalomyocarditis virus is not well un-
nderstood. Transmission is believed to be transplacental, but pathogenic variability in fetuses has been observed with different isolates and could explain the variability of clinical signs (Kim et al. 1989).

More recently, porcine circovirus type 2, the etiologic agent of postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS), has been associated with late-term abortions and increased stillbirth rate (West et al. 1999).

Swine influenza virus causes abortion, stillbirth, and weak pigs at birth due to fever through a systemic effect on the dam (Vannier 1999). However, it has also been isolated from aborted fetuses, suggesting that the virus could cross the placenta and act as a specific agent causing reproductive problems. However, at present, data are inconsistent to conclude on transplacental infection (Yoon and Janke 2002).

Cytomegalovirus infection, responsible for inclusion body rhinitis, may also manifest itself in some herds as reproductive disorders with embryonic death, mummies of variable age, stillbirth, and weak pigs with high neonatal mortality (Orr et al. 1988). Other viral diseases associated with reproductive failure include blue eye disease, bovine viral diarrhea disease, border disease, transmissible gastroenteritis virus, Japanese B encephalitis, and African and classical swine fever. Abortion, although occurring occasionally, does not seem to be a common feature in blue eye disease, bovine viral diarrhea disease, and border disease (Stephan et al. 1988) and has not been observed with Japanese B encephalitis (Joo and Chu 1999). Reovirus has been isolated from mummies, stillbirths, and aborted fetuses but its role in swine reproductive disease is unclear (Paul and Steven-son 1999).

Menangle virus has been associated with return to estrus, pseudopregnancy, mummification, stillbirth, and congenital deformities but not with abortion (Love et al. 2001). This disease has been observed in only a large farrow-to-finish herd in Australia. The probable source of the infection was a colony of fruit bats that was near the farm. The reproductive problems observed were compatible with transplacental infection, with spreading from fetus to fetus as with porcine parvovirus. Nipah virus causes outbreaks of neurological and respiratory signs. This condition was first seen in late 1998 on several swine farms in Malaysia. Abortion was observed in some sows and was probably due to an acute febrile illness (Singh and Jamaluddin 2002).

Toxoplasma gondii may infect fetuses transplacentally and cause stillbirth and weak piglets at birth. Abortion is uncommon with toxoplasmosis. Abortion and mummies associated with fungal infections, namely Aspergillus sp., have been reported but are rare.

Noninfectious Factors

Compared to several other species, the CL in swine are essential for maintenance of pregnancy throughout gestation. Consequently the administration of PGF2α during gestation will cause pregnancy cessation with subsequent expulsion and death of the conceptuses. Abortion has been observed following procaine penicillin G injection in pregnant sows. It was hypothesized that the sudden release of toxic amounts of procaine was responsible for the clinical signs, such as fever, vomiting, and shivering (Embrechts 1982). Sows and gilts given feed containing sulfadimethoxine and ormetoprim late in gestation had increased duration of gestation and numbers of stillbirths and weak newborn pigs (Blackwell et al. 1989).

Consumption of grains containing the estrogenic mycotoxin, zearalenone, may result in irregular return to estrus, small litter size, and increased stillbirth rates. Estrogens are luteotropic in swine; therefore, zearalenone will induce anestrus and pseudopregnancy rather than abortion. In prepubertal gilts it will cause swelling of the vulva and prolapse. Fumonisin, a mycotoxin produced by fungi Fusarium sp., may produce pulmonary edema. Hence, sows consuming high levels of fumonisin will abort shortly after due to fetal anoxia. Sows fed ergot alkaloids during gestation had piglets with low birth weight and low survival rate, but rarely aborted.

The gestation length influences stillbirth; long gestational period (>117 days) and early induction of parturition (<112 days) are both associated with an increased number of stillborn pigs. Intrapartum deaths of piglets also increase with the duration of farrowing, litter size, and advanced parity of the sow.

High ambient temperature before implantation has been completed, i.e., before day 16, has a detrimental effect on conception rate and early embryonic survival. Also, elevated temperature during the peripartum period may lead to an increase in stillbirth and sow mortality. An increased prevalence of abortion is also observed in early fall and has been attributed to insufficient levels of progesterone and thin sows kept in cold environment. High levels of carbon monoxide in under-ventilated farrowing facilities may cause an increased stillbirth rate.

Diets deficient in vitamin A, zinc, copper, and iodine during gestation were all reported to increase the incidence of stillbirth.

VULVAR DISCHARGE

Individual cases of vulvar discharge rarely represent a major concern. In contrast, if 5–10% or more of a breeding group show discharges, the problem needs attention. Some vulvar discharges are indicative of normal physiological events, whereas others are pathological and may interfere with fertility and conception. Abnormal discharges originate from either the urinary or the reproductive tract. The diagnostic challenge is to differentiate normal from abnormal discharge and to determine the origin. In that, characterization of the
type of discharge and its timing in relation to the estrous cycle will help (Dial and MacLachlan 1988a).

**Normal Vulvar Discharges**

It is normal to observe discharges following farrowing. They represent the sow’s attempts to clear placental remnants and debris from the uterus and usually disappear within 2 days of farrowing. A mucopurulent vulvar discharge is also often seen in pregnant sows during the last 2–3 weeks of gestation. This discharge is associated with mucus production and cellular changes in the vulvovaginal membranes.

Periestrous discharges are considered normal. The high estrogen concentrations result in an increased uterine perfusion and tissue permeability and enhanced leukocyte migration into the uterus. The uterine contractions during proestrus and estrus contribute to physical clearance of uterine contents (De Winter et al. 1996). The discharges contain mucus, vaginal epithelial cells, semen, white blood cells, occasional red blood cells, or any combination of these cells. The quantity of these “normal” discharges is variable.

**Abnormal Vulvar Discharges**

The presence of fresh blood is common on the vulva of sows or gilts. Vulvar lacerations result from biting by sows (particularly in pen housing), trauma, or the boar. Careful hand-mating or AI procedures reduce the likelihood of breeding-inflicted vulvar lesions.

The presence of a purulent vulvar discharge at 14–20 days (>10 days) after breeding or estrus typically is indicative of metritis or endometritis. The causative agent or agents likely enter the uterus during estrus, either by passive ascension or by active introduction by the boar during mating. Nonspecific endometritis results from infection by bacteria not considered as specific pathogens of the reproductive tract. Several bacterial species have been isolated from these infected uteri, including *Escherichia coli*, *Streptococcus* sp., *Staphylococcus* sp., *Arcanobacterium pyogenes*, *Proteus*, *Klebsiella*, and a variety of others.

Sows inseminated late during estrus, often the third AI, are more susceptible to discharge problems (De Winter et al. 1992). During early metestrus, the protective mechanisms of high estrogen concentrations have dissipated, thereby rendering the animal susceptible to uterine infections. Furthermore, there is a strong correlation between serum progesterone concentrations and the development of endometritis (De Winter et al. 1996). If animals are inseminated as progesterone concentrations begin to increase after ovulation, there is a greater possibility of inducing endometritis. Therefore, some multiple-AI schemes may contribute to problems with endometritis.

Vulvar discharges are often seen in bred or virgin animals on farms with large numbers of replacement gilts, following a startup or repopulation (MacLachlan and Dial 1987). They may be observed after transport and prior to exposure to a boar. Some animals have normal physiological periestrous discharges; however, it is not uncommon to observe isolated cases of virgin animals with endometritis. The causes of discharges in virgin animals remain unclear. In some cases vaginitis is secondary to vulvar biting in the finishing house. Another theory is that many gilts attain puberty prior to transport, and infection of the uterus occurs while the animals are in gilt finishing facilities. Consequently, a discharge is observed 5–8 days prior to their second estrus.

Endometritis also occurs following parturition as a result of dystocia, traumatic injury, abortion, and unhygienic manipulations. The likelihood of subsequent infertility is greater in sows that have a prolonged vulvar discharge following parturition, e.g., more than 6 days (Waller et al. 2002). Pyometra, an acute or chronic suppurative inflammation of the uterus with accumulation of large quantities of pus, is rare in sows.

A purulent vulvar discharge with or without blood may be observed in cases of cystitis/pyelonephritis and should be differentiated from that originating from the genital tract. The discharge usually contains mucus, is associated with urination, especially at the end of the stream, and is not related to the estrous cycle. To confirm urinary tract infections, urinalyses are performed on samples from affected animals, or collection and examination of urinary bladders and kidneys are performed at slaughter. For further details see Chapter 9.

**Managing the Discharging Sow**

Most discharging sows return to estrus shortly after the initial appearance of the discharge. Attempts to breed these animals at this time are usually futile. One approach is to allow the animals to recycle one more time, if economics and animal flow permit it. Clinical reports have revealed that when sows failed to discharge a second time and were then mated, their conception rates were similar to those of repeat breeders. The other option is to cull any animal with a discharge. Hygiene and management procedures around farrowing, mating, and artificial insemination should be evaluated.

Numerous treatment protocols have been attempted to resolve problems of discharging sows, but their success remains dubious. Medicated feed or injectable antibiotics are common treatments. Precise pathogens involved and their sensitivity to antibiotics are rarely known, so it is often difficult to assess the effectiveness of these treatments (Dial and MacLachlan 1988b).

Some producers infuse the boar’s prepuce with extralabel, antibiotic preparations, and systemic antibiotic treatment has been attempted; however, it is unknown whether effective antibiotic concentrations are achieved in the boar’s reproductive tract. The prepuce of a boar is rapidly reininfected, and thus, infusion of the prepuce offers only short-term therapy.
**OVARIAN CYSTS**

Slaughterhouse surveys have demonstrated that 5–10% of sows culled for reproductive problems are affected with cystic ovaries, varying from 1.7–24% (Ryan and Raeside 1991). On several farms on which ultrasonography was used, the incidence of ovarian cysts varied from 0–8% among nonpregnant animals (Gherpelli and Tarocco 1996; Castagna et al. 2004). Multiple large, multiple small, and single cysts occur in the ovaries of sows. They vary in size, from 1–8 cm, and in the extent of luteinization, and may regress spontaneously (Figure 6.7) (Ebbert and Bostedt 1993; Ebbert et al. 1993; Gherpelli and Tarocco 1996; Martinat-Botté et al. 1998). Luteinized cysts are more frequently observed than follicular cysts (Zannoni et al. 2003). In general, sows with ovarian cysts have a greater return to estrus rate than normal sows, 34% vs. 7.7% (Castagna et al. 2004). However, the behavioral and physiological events differ between animals affected with each type of cyst. Most of the multiple large cysts have some luteinized tissue and produce sufficient progesterone to inhibit estrous cyclicity; consequently, such affected sows may be intermittently or permanently anestrous. In contrast, multiple small cysts often produce estrogen, and sows may have irregular estrous cycles or exhibit nymphomania. Anestrus is more frequently observed in sows with a large number of cysts (>10/animal) compared to those with a smaller number, 75% vs. 53% (Ebbert and Bostedt 1993). Single ovarian cysts rarely affect fertility or the estrous cycle of sows.

An impairment or relative deficiency of the preovulatory LH surge is responsible for the failure of ovulation of one or more follicles at estrus, which leads to cystic ovary. Increased incidences of ovarian cysts have been associated with stress, zearalenone toxicity, or corticosteroid and hormonal treatment administered over an extended period, or at an improper phase of the reproductive cycle (Guthrie and Polge 1976; Meredith 1979; Varley 1991; Gherpelli and Tarocco 1996). Sows with cystic ovaries are more frequently observed when lactation length is shorter than 14 days and weaning-to-estrus interval shorter than 3 days (Castagna et al. 2004).

The diagnosis of cystic ovaries generally relies on ultrasonography (Martinat-Botté et al. 1998; Kauffold et al. 2004). Because serum concentrations of progesterone, estradiol, LH, and cortisol are similar in sows affected with ovarian cysts and in diestrous sows, serum hormone concentrations have limited diagnostic value (Almond and Richards 1991).

**CONGENITAL DEFECTS AND NEOPLASIA**

Defects of the female genital system are common and include cysts of the mesosalpinx; duplication of the vagina; cervix or uterine horns; segmental or complete aplasia of the uterus, cervix, vagina, and vulva; and intersexuality. The aplasias, hypoplasias, and duplications appear to have genetic components that can be expressed in varying degrees in different individuals (Wrathall 1975) and may contribute to infertility and perhaps dystocia. Other defects of the female genital system include persistence of the hymen, ovarian aplasia, other ovarian defects, and hypoplasia or malformation of the nipples (Done 1980; Clayton et al. 1981). The incidence of these conditions is low, and in most instances the cause is unknown or suspected to be heritable.

Intersexuality is occasionally observed in pigs. True intersexes, or hermaphrodites, have both testicular and ovarian tissues, whereas pseudohermaphrodites have gonads of one sex and other genital organs of the opposite sex. Pseudohermaphrodites are further subclassified into male or female on the basis of the gonadal tissue. The external genitalia of intersex pigs are usually female in type. In most instances the vulva appears normal, with a variable enlargement of the clitoris, but in some the clitoris is greatly enlarged and the vulva is underdeveloped or prepuceleike. Some affected individuals show male behavior, while others show estrus and even become pregnant (Hulland 1964; O’Reilly 1979). Estrus, ovulation, and pregnancy are possible in true hermaphrodites. Reports of female pseudohermaphrodites in pigs are rare. Genetic analyses suggest that pig intersexuality is controlled multigenically.

Neoplasms of the genitalia in sows have not been studied extensively. Investigations of genital tracts at slaughter reveal a low prevalence of neoplasia. The most commonly observed neoplasms were leiomyoma, fibroma, cyst-adenoma, fibroleiomyoma, and carcinoma (Anderson and Sandison 1969; Werdin and Wold 1976; Akkermans and van Beusekom 1984).
**INADEQUATE REPRODUCTIVE PERFORMANCE**

Reproduction is an extremely complex process and involves many highly specific biological functions. Many factors—such as diet, housing, social surroundings, temperature, disease, and management—influence reproductive performances (Foxcroft and Aherne 2002). There are five major causes of reproductive failure: hormonal imbalances, mating behavior, diseases, structural defects, and management (Leif and Thomson 2002).

Because many of the elements involved in reproduction are interrelated, one problem may give rise to others. Generally by studying records and carrying out clinical observations and pathological tests it is possible to determine precisely where reproductive failure has occurred (Dial 1990). Such failures can be grouped into six categories related to stages in the reproductive cycle: anestrus, estrus and ova production, fertilization, implantation, and maturation. In general, the primary causes of reproductive failure can be identified and corrected; however, the causes of infertility cannot be determined and corrective action taken without collecting reliable information and using it in a meaningful way (Muirhead and Alexander 1997). This information allows us to understand the interrelationships of reproductive failure as related to nonreproductive factors that evade females to express their biological potential.

**Definition of Most Commonly Used Parameters of Performance**

During the last 15 years, the financial advantage of volume selling and buying has led to an irreversible evolution toward increasingly larger herd sizes. In a climate of increased competition for more discerning markets, the independent producer has been faced with the challenge of either becoming efficient or running the risk of no longer being competitive and no longer having a product desired by the global marketplace. A necessary prelude to being competitive in swine production in general, and in particular in the reproductive area, is a reliable record system that allows producers to monitor both biological and financial performance and to troubleshoot production and financial problems (Dial 1990).

In order to understand and interpret records it is important to have universally accepted definitions for an analyzed parameter so the calculations involved in its computation can be understood. The following is a list of the most common parameters used when troubleshooting reproductive performance:

Adjusted farrowing rate: $100 \times \frac{\text{total number of females farrowed} - \text{total number of females removed due to nonreproductive causes}}{\text{total number of females bred}}$ in a specified period of time.

Average parity: average parity of all the females in the breeding herd, including gilts that are part of the inventory.

Conception rate: $100 \times \frac{\text{total number of females that conceived between 18–24 days after the first mating}}{\text{total number of bred females}}$ in a specified period of time.

Farrowing interval: the period of time between two consecutive farrowings of a specified female. On a herd basis this term is the average of the farrowing intervals of a specified group of females in a specific period of time.

Farrowing rate: $100 \times \frac{\text{total number of females farrowed}}{\text{total number of females bred}}$ in a specified period of time.

Gilt pool: group of females that have not been mated but are considered as replacements for the breeding herd.

Irregular return to estrus: the irregular occurrence of estrus from one period to the next. An interestrus interval of more than 24 days.

Litters/crate/year: total number of litters weaned in a year $\div$ total number of crates in the farrowing area.

Litters/productive sow/year: average number of litters that a productive female farrows in a year.

Litters/sow/year: average number of litters that a female in inventory farrows in a year when nonproductive days are taken into account.

\[
365 \text{ days} - \frac{\text{average nonproductive days/female/year}}{\text{(gestation + lactation length in days)}}
\]

Mummies: fetal tissues after bodily fluids have been removed and only the nonabsorbable remains, including calcified skeleton. Mumification normally occurs after 35 days of gestation.

Nonproductive days: number of days when a female is not gestating or lactating. In economical terms nonproductive days include all the days that a female is generating expenses and not income.

Percent repeats: number of females included in a group that have returned to estrus after having been mated.

Pigs/crate/year: number of pigs weaned in a year $\div$ total number of crates in the farrowing area.

Pigs weaned/sow/year: total number of pigs that a female in inventory weans in a year.

Regular return to estrus: interestrus interval of 18–24 days.

Stillborn pigs: pigs that die shortly before or during farrowing.

Total number of pigs/litter: Total number of pigs born alive $+ \text{total number of stillborn pigs} + \text{total number of mummies in a litter}$.

Wean to estrus interval: interval between a weaning and the following estrus.
Targets
Numerous systems are currently available commercially for assessing the biological performance of the breeding herd. Although varying considerably in data entry, report format, and report content, all of the systems provide summaries of breeding, farrowing, and weaning information (Dial 1990). Most provide either time-related or group reports for information relating to fertility, lactation performance, interval from entry or weaning to mating, and piglet survival until weaning. Targets and level at which a corrective intervention should be performed (interference levels) should be included in these production reports (Table 6.2). The value of these parameters should be changed regularly as the herd performances change.

Interrelationships Between Performance Parameters
There are numerous risk factors or differential diagnoses for the different types of reproductive failure. Many can be incriminated or ruled out through examination of records. In fact, although a diagnostic examination of environment, facilities, management, disease status, and nutrition may suggest one or several of them as a cause of reproductive failure, the diagnosis typically must be corroborated through the record analysis. For example, suboptimal total pigs born/litter may involve parity distribution, lactation length, weaning-to-estrus interval, season and ambient temperature, systemic reproductive disease, genetics, nutrition, and breeding management. Both record analysis and flow diagrams are extremely helpful to identify risk factors and explanation of reduced reproductive performance.

Pigs Weaned/Sow/Year. When the productivity of the breeding herd is suboptimal the most widely used measure of the overall biological performance of the breeding herd is pigs weaned/sow/year (Polson et al. 1990a). The two components of pigs weaned/sow/year are litters farrowed/inventoried sow/year and pigs weaned/litter farrowed (Figure 6.8).

Table 6.2. Targets for the reproductive performance of the breeding herd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Interference Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breeding and Gestation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age at first service (days of age)</td>
<td>220–240</td>
<td>&lt;220 or &gt;260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat matings (%)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>&gt;15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple matings (%)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>&lt;85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaning to service interval (days)</td>
<td>4–7</td>
<td>&gt;7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farrowing rate (%)</td>
<td>≥85</td>
<td>&lt;80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular returns (%)</td>
<td>&lt;6</td>
<td>&gt;8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular returns (%)</td>
<td>&lt;3</td>
<td>&gt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative pregnancy test (%)</td>
<td>&lt;3</td>
<td>&gt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abortions (%)</td>
<td>&lt;2</td>
<td>&gt;4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to farrow (%)</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>&gt;3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusted farrowing rate (%)</td>
<td>≥90</td>
<td>≤88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Farrowing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total pigs born/litter</td>
<td>≥11.5</td>
<td>&lt;11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pigs born alive/litter</td>
<td>≥10.5</td>
<td>&lt;10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% stillbirths</td>
<td>&lt;7</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% mummies</td>
<td>&lt;3</td>
<td>&gt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Litters/productive sow/year</td>
<td>&gt;2.4</td>
<td>&lt;2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Litters/sow/year</td>
<td>&gt;2.2</td>
<td>&lt;2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weaning</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pigs weaned/sow</td>
<td>≥10</td>
<td>≤9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preweaning mortality (%)</td>
<td>&lt;8</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaning weight at 21 days (kg)</td>
<td>5.5–6.5</td>
<td>&lt;5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pigs weaned/productive sow/year</td>
<td>&gt;24</td>
<td>&lt;23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pigs weaned/sow/year</td>
<td>&gt;22</td>
<td>&lt;21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Litters/crate/year (3.5–week cycle)</td>
<td>&gt;14.8</td>
<td>&lt;14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pigs/crate/year</td>
<td>&gt;148</td>
<td>&lt;137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Population (on an annual basis)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average parity</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>&lt;3 and &gt;4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacement rate (%)</td>
<td>≅40</td>
<td>&lt;35 and &gt;45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culling rate (%)</td>
<td>30–35</td>
<td>&lt;28 and &gt;40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortality rate (%)</td>
<td>5–8</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average non productive days (60 day acclimatization period)</td>
<td>≅75</td>
<td>&gt;80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The interrelationship between pigs weaned/sow/year shows that litters/female/year greatly influences this interrelationship; however gestation and lactation length cannot be easily reduced or influenced. Therefore improvements in nonproductive days will by far increase pigs weaned/sow/year (Polson et al. 1990b).

**Nonproductive Days.** Nonproductive days and lactation length are the major factors influencing litters/sow/year. Nonproductive days are influenced largely by time from introduction into the herd or weaning until first mating; time from mating until detection of non-pregnancy status; and time from mating, entry, or weaning until female is culled or dies. Nonproductive days not only must be calculated, but also must be broken down into its different components (Figure 6.9). The risk factors for those elements also must be detailed. Nonproductive days often go unrecognized; however, they are very significant in reducing the productivity of the breeding herd.

Data analysis shows that, in general, the interval from introduction to mating and the interval between the time a female is detected nonpregnant and remating are the most biologically meaningful components of nonproductive days. In order to understand the impact of nonproductive days on the breeding herd performance we can equate 1 nonproductive day to 0.05 pig/sow/year (20 pigs weaned per female per year/365 days). Consequently a decrease of 10 nonproductive days will result in at least 0.5 extra pig/sow/year.

**Entry to First Mating Interval.** Improved gilt pool management is required to ensure that availability of gilts for service does not limit the ability of herds to achieve their breeding targets. Generally the problem is solved by introducing two or three times as many gilts as required. Gilts must be acclimatized before entering into a herd. This acclimatization allows the gilts to adjust to feed, housing, and management system. Most importantly, it helps to prevent new diseases from entering the recipient herd and to establish procedures that result in a common immune status between the incoming pigs and the receiving herd.

Since the emergence of PRRS, the number of gilts introduced and the period of acclimatization, in general, have increased (Batista et al. 2002). This increase, both in days and inventory, has negatively affected nonproductive days, therefore decreasing the output of the breeding herd. Gilt acclimatization is divided into three periods, as shown in Figure 6.10.

The component that influences this interrelationship the least is isolation. In general a period of 21–30 days is advised (Kuster et al. 2000). Today many different methods of gilt acclimatization are recommended—i.e., introduction of gilts at 5, 30, or 60 kg, followed by a period of time that can range between 4–10 weeks following exposure to different pathogens and or vaccination programs (Batista et al. 2002). Therefore, acclimatization is the most significant component of nonproductive days in the entry to service interval. Finally, the entry to service interval is negatively influenced by delayed puberty. Presently, the relationship between growth performance and age at puberty is well understood. In gilts exposed to boar stimulation from 140 days of age, the minimum age at puberty was around 160 days; this could be achieved at body weights of around 90 kg if gilts were fed appropriately (Beltranena et al. 2002).
Therefore management of the gilt pool plays a very important role in the decrease of nonproductive days in this area.

Farrowing Rate. The factors that cause a sow to fail to conceive are often different than those causing a sow to fail to maintain pregnancy. For example, the number of matings per estrous period affects conception but not pregnancy; in comparison, season primarily influences the capacity of the sow to maintain pregnancy. In order to troubleshoot fertility problems we need to determine whether the returns are regular or irregular. The interrelationship between the different factors affecting farrowing rate are shown in Figure 6.11.

Litter Size. In general, many of the factors influencing fertility have similar effects on total pigs born/litter. Therefore, improvements in fertility appear to be related to an increase in fecundity. When litter size is compromised it is important to review several factors. Classical examples of these interrelationships are litter size by parity, the effect of season and temperature at service and prior to implantation, the influence of matings per estrous period and timing of matings relative to onset of estrus, the relationship between lactation feed intake and subsequent litter size, etc. (Dial et al. 1992). The main causes for a reduced litter size are presented in Figure 6.12.

Wean to Estrus Interval. Variability in the wean to estrus interval (WEI) is a major problem in the breeding herd management. Delays of the onset of estrus increase nonproductive days. Variation in WEI makes it difficult to meet breeding targets and to concentrate breeding management. Data show that WEI increased rapidly as lactation length was reduced below 17 days, but WEI was relatively unaffected by lactation lengths of 17 to 30 days (Xue et al. 1993). These data also emphasized that the percentage of sows bred by 6 days after weaning was significantly reduced for lactation lengths of 20 days or less. However, ovulation rate and fertilization rate did not appear to be affected by lactation length (Varley 1982). An inadequate nutrient and energy intake will also result in extended wean to estrus interval, lower
percentage of sows in estrus within 7 days of weaning, reduced pregnancy rate, and reduced embryo survival (Aherne et al. 1999; Quesnel et al. 1998). The factors that affect the extent of WEI are shown in Figure 6.13.

In conclusion, troubleshooting suboptimal reproductive performance requires a structured record analysis in conjunction with the use of flow diagrams that indicate the different factors and their level of importance in contributing to suboptimal reproductive performance. An organized system is less time-consuming, more inclusive, and efficient. This system should also allow validation of progress and assessment of response to management changes in order to obtain maximal reproductive efficiency of the breeding herd.

REPRODUCTIVE DEVELOPMENT, ANATOMY, AND FUNCTION IN THE BOAR

Development of the male reproductive tract commonly is divided into three distinct periods: early fetal, perinatal, and pubertal. The onset of the early fetal period begins around day 20 postcoitum (PC) with formation of the testicles and ends around day 90 of gestation with the descent of the testicles into the scrotum. The perinatal period encompasses the period of time from just prior to birth through the first month of life. This developmental period is characterized by an increase in the testis-to-body-weight ratio due to Leydig cell differentiation and proliferation. It also has been hypothesized that a large portion of the basis for future spermatogenic capacity of boars is established during this time due to the increased mitotic activity of Sertoli cells characteristic of this developmental phase. The pubertal period begins at around 30 days of age and continues until the boar has reached sexual maturity. During this final stage of maturation, endocrine and cellular aspects characteristic of adult spermatogenesis develop. Mechanisms involved in the development of male reproductive anatomy and function involve complex interactions among the endocrine, neural, and paracrine systems (Colenbrander et al. 1982b). A chronological outline of several key developmental events is presented in Table 6.3.
Adult Reproductive Function

Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland. The brain is the component of the male reproductive system that gathers internal signals from within the body and external cues from the environment, integrates them, and regulates physiological and behavioral functions associated with reproduction. The hypothalamus secretes GnRH, which controls the production and secretion of LH and FSH from the pituitary gland. These two hormones are responsible for regulating testicular function (Hafs and McCarthy 1978).

Testes. The primary functions of the testes are to produce spermatozoa and hormones. The majority of the testicular mass is composed of seminiferous tubules, the convoluted network of ducts in which spermatozoa are produced. Sertoli cells, specialized cells involved in the maturation of spermatozoa and hormone production, line the lumen of the seminiferous tubules (Ashdown and Hafez 1993). Leydig cells, blood and lymph vessels, and nerves are located in interstitial spaces between the seminiferous tubules. Important interactions between the Sertoli and Leydig cells regulate virtually every aspect of male reproductive function.

The rete testis comprises a series of tubules that leave the seminiferous tubules and connect to form collecting ducts located in the center of each testis. During spermatogenesis, spermatozoa leave the seminiferous tubules and enter the rete testis during their passage into the epididymis. The rete testis is lined with a non-secretory epithelium (Hargrove et al. 1977).

Because the testes are located externally, special anatomical systems are needed for effective thermoregulation. The most important component for thermoregulation is the pampiniform plexus, a complex vascular arrangement of testicular arteries and veins in the spermatic cord. The testicular artery forms a convoluted structure in the shape of a cone in which arterial coils are enmeshed with testicular veins. From a functional perspective, this countercurrent heat-exchange mechanism enables arterial blood entering the testis to be cooled by venous blood exiting the testis. In most species, the temperature of arterial blood drops between 2°C and 4°C prior to its entry into the testes (Ashdown and Hafez 1993).

Two groups of muscles, the tunica dartos and cremaster, play an important role in thermoregulation. The tunica dartos lines the inside of the scrotum and controls its proximity to the testis. It contracts during cold weather, pulling the scrotal sac closer to the body for added insulation, and relaxes during warm weather, allowing the scrotum to recoil into a distal position. The cremaster muscle is located in the spermatic cord and is attached to the thick membranous sac surrounding the testes. It contracts during cold weather, pulling the scrotal sac and testis closer to the body core, and relaxes during warm conditions, allowing the testis to return to its normal position (Robertshaw and Vercoe 1980). Both muscles have an abundant supply of adrenergic neural fibers that respond to temperature sensors located in the central nervous system. In the boar, due to the anatomical relationship between the testes and the body core,

Table 6.3. Summary of key developmental events during sexual maturation of boars.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Time1</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Early Fetal</td>
<td>21 DPC</td>
<td>Indifferent gonad is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26 DPC</td>
<td>Testicular differentiation; primordial germ cell in cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27 DPC</td>
<td>Germ cells surrounded by Sertoli cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26–35 DPC</td>
<td>Testosterone production begins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26–50 DPC</td>
<td>Wolffian duct and anlage differentiation; development of secondary sex glands and external genitalia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30–38 DPC</td>
<td>Leydig cell differentiation and proliferation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42 DPC</td>
<td>Mitotic activity of Sertoli cells increases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60–85 DPC</td>
<td>Descent of testes into inguinal canal begins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perinatal</td>
<td>90 DPC</td>
<td>Sertoli cell tubular length increases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>90 DPC to birth</td>
<td>LH, FSH, and prolactin concentrations increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>95 DPC to 21 d</td>
<td>Germ cell numbers increase; gonocyte morphology characterized by regular, round shape with centrally located nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth</td>
<td>Testicles completely descended into scrotum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth to 14 d</td>
<td>Testosterone production increases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth to 21 d</td>
<td>Leydig cell differentiation; Leydig cells compose 65% of testicle volume at 3 weeks of age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pubertal</td>
<td>30 d</td>
<td>Sertoli cell proliferation decreases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42 d</td>
<td>Sertoli cell junctions appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70 d</td>
<td>Germ cell differentiation begins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>91 d</td>
<td>Spermatogonia and pachytene spermatocytes are present and sometimes round spermatids can be seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100–120 d</td>
<td>Blood-testis barrier is present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120 d</td>
<td>Leydig cell development is maximal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160–180 d</td>
<td>Puberty in most breeds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1DPC = days postcoitum; d = days after birth.
Endocrine Activity within the Testes. Leydig cells located in the testicular interstitium and Sertoli cells within the seminiferous tubules are the two primary endocrine-producing cells in the testes. LH released from the anterior pituitary gland stimulates production of androgens from the Leydig cells. The primary androgen produced is testosterone. Testosterone has a variety of important functions in spermatogenesis and male sexual behavior. FSH stimulates the Sertoli cells to produce androgen-binding proteins, convert testosterone to dihydrotestosterone and estrogen, and secrete inhibin (Bartke et al. 1978). Androgen-binding protein forms a complex with androgen and is carried along with the spermatozoa to the epididymis. High local levels of androgen are necessary for the normal function of the epididymal epithelium (Hansson et al. 1976).

Inhibin diffuses out of the seminiferous tubules, enters the vascular system, and is transported to the brain, where it has a negative effect on the secretion of FSH. Inhibin production by the testes is an important component of gonadotropin regulation in the male.

In the boar, high quantities of estrogen are found in semen. The source of these estrogens is the Sertoli cells, which convert testosterone to estrogen via the aromatase enzyme. It appears that the primary role of seminal estrogens is to stimulate important reproductive events in the female reproductive tract during breeding (Claus 1990).

Recent investigations have demonstrated that both Sertoli and Leydig cells have receptors for a variety of growth factors, including insulin-like growth factor I (IGF-I), epidermal growth factor (EGF), and transforming growth factor(s) (TGF) (Sharpe 1994). It has been proposed that growth factors may be produced in response to gonadotropin or growth hormone action on testicular tissue and mediate many of the actions of these hormones. In addition, growth factors are believed to be the primary mode in which Sertoli cells and developing spermatozoa regulate each other’s secretion of proteins along the length of the seminiferous tubule.

Epididymis. The rete testis enters the efferent ducts, which eventually form a single coiled duct called the epididymis. The epididymis is similar to the seminiferous tubules in that it coils back upon itself many times and forms three distinct sections: the caput (head), corpus (body), and cauda (tail). The convoluted duct of the epididymis is surrounded by a prominent layer of circular muscle fibers and contains pseudostratified columnar, stereociliated epithelium. Masses of spermatozoa are commonly found along the entire lumen of the epididymis (Hemeida et al. 1978).

The primary function of the epididymis is sperm maturation, transport, and storage. Spermatozoa entering the epididymis are neither motile nor fertile. It takes spermatozoa between 9 and 14 days to migrate from the caput to the cauda epididymis, the primary storage site. It has been estimated that the cauda epididymis contains about 75% of the total epididymal spermatozoa (Swierstra 1968). Spermatozoa become motile and acquire fertilizational competence in the corpus epididymis due to the secretion of factors by the cells located in this region. Movement of spermatozoa through the epididymis is thought to be due to the flow of rete fluid, the action of the stereociliated epithelium, and contractions of the circular muscle layer.

Unejaculated spermatozoa are gradually eliminated by excretion into the urine. Spermatozoa that are not excreted in the urine undergo a gradual aging process. Fertilizational competence is lost first and is followed shortly by a decline in motility. The culmination of dying spermatozoa is disintegration (Garner and Hafez 1993). This is the primary reason that ejaculates collected after prolonged sexual rest usually contain a large number of degenerative spermatozoa.

Vas Deferens, Accessory Sex Glands, and Penile Urethra. The remainder of the boar’s reproductive tract is relatively nonfunctional until ejaculation is initiated. The vas deferens is a thick, heavily muscled tube through which sperm are transported from the cauda epididymis to the pelvic urethra, at which point the paired genital systems of the boar meet and converge with the urinary tract just anterior to the bladder. Adjacent to the pelvic urethra are three secondary sex glands: the vesicular glands, or seminal vesicles; the prostate gland; and the bulbourethral glands.

The vesicular glands lie lateral to the terminal portion of each vas deferens. In the boar, they are large, lobulated, and relatively diffuse. They often appear to have an orange color. They are responsible for the majority of the fluid volume of boar semen. In addition, they secrete high levels of fructose and citric acid as well as inositol, ergothioneine, several amino acids, and glycercylphosphorylcholine. Most of these compounds are used as energy substrates by ejaculated spermatozoa.

The prostate gland is located cranial to the vesicular glands, with the majority of its body being embedded in the muscle layer surrounding the pelvic urethra. Secretions from the prostate gland during ejaculation are primarily alkaline and contain calcium, acid phospha tase, and fibrinolysin. The primary function of the fluid from the prostate gland is to neutralize the acidic vaginal secretions. Secretions from the prostate gland also are believed to give semen its characteristic odor.

The bulbourethral glands are long, cylindrical glands in the boar located on either side of the pelvic urethra near the ischial arch of the pelvis. The bulbourethral glands secrete the gel fraction of the semen characteristic of porcine ejaculates. Many functions for the gel component of semen have been postulated, but few have been proven.
The terminal portion of the boar’s urogenital system is the penile urethra, which is the central tube within the penis. The penile urethra opens into the glans penis. In the boar, the glans penis has a counterclockwise spiral. The glans penis is highly innervated and must be stimulated properly for normal ejaculation to occur. The porcine penis also contains three cavernous bodies, or sinuses, that surround the penile urethra (Ashdown et al. 1981). During erection, blood is pumped into and retained in these areas. In the resting state, the porcine penis is retracted and forms a characteristic “S” fold called the sigmoid flexure.

The free end of the penis in the retracted state resides in the prepuce or sheath. In young prepubertal boars, the glans penis cannot be extended fully because it is fused with the lining of the prepuce. As a boar matures, androgens produced by the testis initiate keratinization of the inner preputial lining, and the penis is eventually freed from its connection with the prepuce. Persistent frenulum is a condition in which strands of tissue do not keratinize fully and are still attached to the penis. When this occurs, the end of the penis curves back toward the prepuce during erection and ejaculation. Removal of these strands of tissue with a pair of sterile scissors corrects this situation.

Near the end of the prepuce is a diverticulum called the preputial sac. Urine, semen, and secreted fluid collect in this sac and are broken down via bacterial action. The contents of the preputial sac are often expelled during detection of estrus or natural matings and are often believed to be the source of the odor associated with mature boars (Ashdown and Hafez 1993).

Erection and Ejaculation

Sexual stimulation results in dilation of the arteries supplying the cavernous penile areas. It has been postulated that parasympathetic fibers originating from the pelvic nerve are responsible for providing the neural signal for dilation and thus the initiation of erection. At the same time vasodilation begins, the ischiocavernous muscle begins to contract repeatedly, which causes blood to be pumped into the cavernous spaces in the body of the penis. In the boar, no veins drain the distal portion of these spaces, which facilitates the increase in pressure within the penile body and erection. As pressure increases from blood trapped in the cavernous tissue, the retractor penis muscle relaxes, allowing the sigmoid flexure to straighten and the penis to protrude from the sheath (Benson 1994). Several detailed studies demonstrate that erection failures in boars are caused primarily by structural defects rather than psychological problems (Glossop and Ashdown 1986).

Ejaculation is primarily under neural control and involves contractions of smooth muscles. The process is initiated by rhythmic contractions of smooth muscles lining the cauda epididymis and ductus deferens. These contractions are controlled by sympathetic nerves that arise from the pelvic plexis, which is derived from the hypogastric nerve. During ejaculation, the bulbospongious muscle compresses the penile bulb and forces blood into the remainder of the cavernous tissue, resulting in a slight enlargement of the glans penis in boars (Setchell et al. 1993).

Spermatogenesis

Spermatogenesis is divided into two basic processes: spermatocytogenesis and spermiogenesis. In a general sense, spermatocytogenesis is the process involved with the mitotic and meiotic divisions of sperm cells, while spermiogenesis refers to the maturational phase of development. Although both hormones are important, it is believed that LH plays a more active role than FSH in spermatocytogenesis, while FSH is the main gonadotropic hormone involved with spermiogenesis (Garner and Hafez 1993).

Spermatocytogenesis. Just prior to puberty in boars, undifferentiated germ cells called gonocytes differentiate to form type A0 spermatogonia. These are the precursor sperm cells from which all other sperm cells originate. There is some evidence that the number of A0 spermatogonia is directly related to the sperm production capacity of males. In adult boars, A0 spermatogonia differentiate into A1 spermatogonia, which divide progressively to form various types of immature sperm cells. The final mitotic division during spermatocytogenesis occurs in primary spermatocytes. Although the average number of mitotic divisions cells undergo between the A1 and primary spermatocyte stages is a subject of some controversy, a figure of 6–8 is commonly used. After the formation of primary spermatocytes, no new DNA synthesis occurs, and the resulting secondary spermatocytes divide to form haploid cells known as spermatids. The entire divisional process of spermatocytogenesis occurs in the testis. It is interesting to note that many of the divisions are actually incomplete in that small cytoplasmic bridges are retained between most cells originating from a common type A1 spermatogonium. Some researchers speculate that these bridges are important in coordinating development of sperm cells as a group (Swierstra 1968).

Spermiogenesis and Spermiation. The round spermatids are transformed into spermatozoa by a series of morphological changes referred to as spermiogenesis. Maturational changes that spermatozoa undergo during spermiogenesis include condensation of nuclear material, formation of the sperm tail, and development of the acrosomal cap and its contents. During most of spermiogenesis, the sperm cells appear to have their heads embedded in Sertoli cells. In reality, the membrane of the Sertoli cell actually is wrapped around the sperm head. Communication and exchange of materials between the Sertoli and developing sperm cells occur via intercellular bridges.
The actual release of spermatozoa into the lumen of the seminiferous tubule is called spermiation. The elongated spermatids are gradually extruded or pushed out of the Sertoli cells into the lumen of the seminiferous tubule until only a small cytoplasmic stalk connects the head of the sperm to the residual body in the Sertoli cell. Breakage of the stalk results in the formation of a cytoplasmic droplet in the neck region of the sperm. These commonly are referred to as proximal cytoplasmic droplets (Garner and Hafez 1993).

**Epididymal Maturation.** Spermatozoa enter the caput epididymis incapable of fertilization; however, fertility is acquired at some point during transit to the cauda epididymis. It is believed that epididymal secretions contain maturation factors that stimulate biochemical changes within the sperm cells necessary for fertilization. These changes include development of the potential for progressive forward motility; alteration of metabolic mechanisms; loss of the cytoplasmic droplet; and changes in the plasma membrane, acrosomal cap, and nuclear material. It is interesting to note that during storage in the caudal portion of the epididymis, the metabolic activity of mature sperm is actually suppressed by secretion of a "quiescence factor." The entire process of spermatogenesis requires 45–55 days in the boar (Swierstra 1968). The majority of this time is spent in the testicle and involves changes associated with both spermatocytogenesis and spermiogenesis. Maturation in the epididymis is thought to require only 10–14 days.

**SEmen COLLECTION, EVALUATION, AND PROCESSING**

**Semen Collection**

**Boar Training.** Two things must be accomplished early in the training period if boars are to be taught to mount successfully and be collected from a dummy sow: boars must be forced to focus their attention on the dummy sow upon entry into the collection pen, and boars must associate the collection area and process with a pleasurable experience.

The primary stimulus for initiation of the mounting reflex in boars is an immobile object that resembles another pig (Chenoweth 1981). Therefore, a collection pen that is clean and free of extraneous items forces boars to focus their attention on the dummy sow and supplies the visual stimulus necessary for a successful mount. Similarly, a collection dummy with a strong swine odor supplies the necessary olfactory cues.

A young boar's attention span is limited. Mounting activity usually occurs within the first 5–7 minutes of a training session. Consequently, if mounting or an interest in the collection dummy has not occurred by this time, the probability that such behavior will occur during the current training session is low.

Boars that associate pain or fear with the collection area or collection process are difficult to train. Unpleasant experiences during collection can reduce the sexual activity of trained AI boars. Avoidance of rough handling and loud noises during the training process is critical.

Young, sexually aggressive boars that have not been used in natural mating are the easiest to train. This does not mean that older, sexually experienced boars cannot be taught to mount and be collected from a dummy sow, but the training interval is usually longer and the success rate lower compared to their younger, more inexperienced counterparts. An inverse relationship exists between the age of the boar at the initiation of the training period and the success rate (Reed 1982). When training was initiated at less than 10 months of age, a success rate of 90% resulted. In contrast, only 70% of the boars that were 10 and 18 months old at the beginning of the training period were successfully trained.

**Semen Collection.** The most common method of semen collection is the gloved hand technique (Almond et al. 1994). Pressure on the glans penis is the primary physiological stimulus for erection and ejaculation. It is often stated that more pressure is required to stimulate an erection than is required for ejaculation. Consequently, it is common for pressure on the end of the penis to be relaxed slightly after an erection has occurred in order to facilitate ejaculation. Routine management practices such as removal of preputial fluid prior to collection and clipping sheath hairs reduce the risk of contamination of semen during collection. Because of anatomical or behavioral abnormalities, some boars release preputial fluid concomitantly with semen during ejaculation, thus contaminating the semen. The preputial sac can be removed surgically to prevent this form of contamination.

**Semen Evaluation**

**Total Number of Spermatozoa.** A complete semen evaluation includes determination of total number of spermatozoa and estimations of sperm cell viability and fertility. The two most common pieces of equipment for determination of total numbers of spermatozoa in a sample of the ejaculate are the hemocytometer and the spectrophotometer. The hemocytometer is a special microscope slide. Multiplication of the number of sperm counted by a correction factor and the volume of semen collected yields the total number of spermatozoa. Determination of the total number of spermatozoa with a spectrophotometer is based on the transmittance (or absorbance) of light by a sample of the collected semen. Sperm and other cells block the movement of light through a solution. Samples with high concentrations of spermatozoa will have low transmittances, while the opposite is true for ejaculates with low concentrations. It is important to note that all spectrophotometers must
be calibrated before they can be used to determine spermatozoa concentrations; otherwise, the sperm counts can be overestimated (Flowers 1994). The most common way to do this is to use a hemocytometer. Consequently, the hemocytometer is the standard by which concentrations of spermatozoa are determined. Details concerning the use of hemocytometers and calibration of spectrophotometers are described elsewhere (Almond et al. 1994).

**Motility and Morphology of Spermatozoa.** The percentage of sperm cells exhibiting progressive forward motility is the most common measurement recorded during semen evaluations. In general, motility is a better estimator of sperm cell viability than of fertility. When motility scores are 60% or greater, there is no clear relationship between in vitro and in vivo estimates of fertility. In contrast, ejaculates with less than 60% motility fertilize fewer eggs in vitro and yield lower farrowing rates in vivo than those above 60%. Consequently, use of ejaculates exhibiting motilities of 60% or higher in AI programs should not compromise reproductive performance (Flowers 1997).

Morphological evaluations are conducted less frequently than motility estimates, yet such evaluations can provide important information about sperm viability and fertility. Abnormalities of the tail and head, the location of the cytoplasmic droplet on the midpiece, and the integrity of the acrosomal membranes can be observed with a light microscope and the proper histo logical stain (Woelders 1991). Current industry standards for the maximum acceptable levels of primary and secondary abnormalities for porcine spermatozoa used in AI programs are 10% and 20%, respectively (Flowers 1996a, b).

**Other Fertility Tests.** In addition to the mechanical requirements associated with egg penetration, spermatozoa must also undergo biochemical, metabolic, and molecular changes to acquire fertilizational competence. Table 6.4 summarizes a variety of tests based on one or more of these events. The most promising of these tests attempt to quantify specific aspects of sperm binding to egg membranes or structural changes within sperm membranes. At the present time, many of these tests are still being developed, and their subsequent use within the swine industry remains to be determined.

**Semen Processing**

**Semen Extenders.** Semen extenders provide nutritional and metabolic support for stored semen. Generic ingredients used in semen extenders include glucose, electrolytes, buffers, and antibiotics. Glucose is the predominant energy source; electrolytes assist in the regulation of osmotic pressure; buffers are involved in neutralization of metabolic wastes and maintenance of pH; and antibiotics inhibit bacterial growth. An inverse relationship exists between fertility and length of storage for all semen extenders; as the length of storage increases, fertility decreases. The rate at which fertility decreases during storage is primarily a function of the buffering system of the semen extender.

Interactions among several different factors determine the longevity of stored semen. These include individual boar characteristics, semen extender, sperm concentration, and storage temperature. In general, there is an inverse relationship between sperm concentration and length of storage. In other words, an insemination dose of 2 billion sperm cells in a total volume of 80 mL would be expected to have a longer shelf life than one containing 4 billion spermatozoa in the same volume.

**Table 6.4.** Summary of various measurements used to estimate the fertilizing ability of boar spermatozoa.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measurement</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Percoll gradients</td>
<td>Velocity of spermatozoa is positively correlated to fertility. Sperm with increased velocities can be separated via Percoll gradients.</td>
<td>Grant et al. 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent stains</td>
<td>Some fluorescent stains (Hoechst 33258) enter sperm cell if membrane is damaged and stain only dead cells. Others (SYBR-14) enter sperm with a membrane potential and stain only live cells.</td>
<td>Johnson et al. 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm chromatic structure</td>
<td>When subjected to acidic conditions and stained with the metachromatic dye acridine orange, double-stranded DNA gives a green fluorescence, while single-stranded DNA (damaged) gives a red fluorescence. Ratio of green to red sperm is related to fertility.</td>
<td>Evenson et al. 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm plasma membrane protein profile</td>
<td>Plasma membrane proteins were separated and quantified. Three proteins were positively correlated with sperm binding to egg membranes ($r = 0.38$-$0.53$). Two proteins were negatively correlated with sperm binding ($r = -0.42$ and $-0.37$).</td>
<td>Ash et al. 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oocyte membrane-binding assay</td>
<td>Fertile spermatozoa bind to egg membranes. Correlation between egg binding and in vivo fertility from heterospermic inseminations was high ($r = 0.80$).</td>
<td>Berger et al. 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemizona-binding assay</td>
<td>Oocytes are bisected and the numbers of sperm from different boars binding to each half of the zona pellucida are counted. Within a hemizona pair, increased binding equates to increase fertility.</td>
<td>Fazeli et al. 1995</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Reprinted, with permission, from Flowers 1997.
An example of the interaction between individual boar characteristics and semen extender type on sperm cell longevity is illustrated in Figure 6.14. In this example, the viability of semen in storage was optimized by use of one semen extender for one boar and a different extender for a second boar. These data indicate that problems with maintenance of semen viability in vitro may be related to an incompatibility between components of the semen extender and seminal fluids of an individual boar. If such incompatibilities exist, then using different semen extenders may solve the problem.

Semen Extension Procedures. Minimization of any potential differences in temperature, osmolarity, and pH between the extender and semen is necessary to maintain high sperm viability during the dilution process. Temperature differences are minimized by monitoring the temperature of both the extender and the semen and adjusting the temperature of the extender to within 1°C of the semen. Previous studies have demonstrated that a reduction in viability of semen is likely to occur when temperature differences between the two liquids exceed 2°C. Measurement of osmolarity and pH prior to extension probably is not feasible practically or economically in most situations. However, procedural precautions can be taken to minimize the effects of any differences that may exist. First, it is important to allow sufficient time for the stabilization of the pH and osmolarity of freshly prepared extender before it is mixed with semen. The pH of most semen extenders equilibrate 45–60 minutes after preparation. Second, a two-stage dilution process helps minimize any detrimental effects due to mixing by allowing the semen to equilibrate slowly to any differences in pH or osmolarity that may exist between it and the extender. In a two-stage dilution process, an equal amount of extender is added slowly to semen over a 2- to 5-minute period. The resulting mixture is allowed to equilibrate for at least 5–10 minutes before the remaining volume of extender is added.

**REPRODUCTIVE DISEASES OF THE BOAR**

Breeding Soundness Examination

Breeding soundness examinations (BSE) are not typically conducted on boars that are used for natural service. Producers and veterinarians often rely on conception or farrowing rates as an indicator of boar fertility; however, the use of heterospermic matings interferes with attempts to identify infertile boars by examining farrowing records. Also, several other factors influence farrowing rates and litter size, and thus, it is difficult to identify problem boars solely by record analysis.

Natural-service boars are selected for BSE when infertility is suspected and following disease or injury, especially if the testes or penis are affected. The clinical history should include the boar’s previous libido and mating ability, previous injuries, illnesses, and treatments and information regarding litter size and farrowing rates in females inseminated by the boar.

Abnormal sperm cells may not appear in the ejaculate for several weeks after heat stress or illness because it takes about 7 weeks to complete the entire sperm production process. This makes it difficult to identify causes of infertility in boars without the clinical history.

The body condition and general health of the animal should be assessed, with attention given to the soundness of feet and legs. Physical examination of the external genitalia includes palpation of the testes, epididymis, and prepuce. The testis should be 10–15 cm in length and 6–7 cm in width. Abnormalities, such as abscesses, bites, or scars on the scrotum, should be recorded and the preputial fluid examined for purulent material or blood.

The gloved-hand technique is the most practical method to collect semen from natural-service boars. Instead of using a dummy sow, the boar is exposed to a sow in standing estrus and allowed to mount. The penis is grasped before vulva penetration. At this point, the
procedures for semen collection are similar to those used for routine collection from AI boars.

**Semen Assessment During the BSE**

A complete semen evaluation includes determining the total number of sperm cells and estimating the viability and fertility of sperm cells. There are few differences between semen assessment as part of the BSE and as part of AI programs. However, some components of the evaluation should be emphasized for boars used for natural service:

1. A clean ejaculate has little odor. In contrast, an ejaculate that has been contaminated with preputial fluid or with purulent material has a very distinctive odor.
2. Usually a boar will ejaculate 150–250 mL of semen, but the volume can range from 50 to 500 mL. One must consider the fact that boars without previous experience with gloved-hand collection may not complete ejaculation.
3. Photometers are useful for sperm counts in AI laboratories. However, a hemocytometer and portable microscope should be sufficient for on-farm semen counts.
4. Assessing sperm morphology is time-consuming and requires an above-average microscope with an oil immersion objective. It may be beneficial to stain a sample of sperm cells with eosin-nigrosin and examine the slides at the clinic rather than on the farm. Consider semen with over 30% abnormalities as suspect and reject samples if the percentage of abnormalities exceeds 50%.
5. Assessment of motility is subjective, and motility of sperm cells is highest when temperatures are between 32°C and 38°C. Microscope slides must be within 1–2°C of the semen sample temperature to avoid shocking the sperm cells and reducing motility. The microscope slides can be stored in a portable incubator, or they can be placed on a warming device before dropping the semen onto them. If motility is poor, prepare a second slide, making sure that the slide, the pipette, and the coverslip are at 35°C.

**Systemic Infections that Cause Fever**

Common causes of poor semen quality include stress and overuse, but overheating of boars is considered the most common cause of abnormal semen. Infections, wounds, bruising, and cuts on the testes or scrotum can raise the boar's body temperature or the temperature of the injured organ. Because the scrotum plays a role in regulating the temperature of the testes, any defect or abnormal condition of the scrotal area may also have an adverse effect on the production of sperm cells. In general, changes in semen quality after infection are similar to those that occur after boars are exposed to high ambient temperatures.

Abnormal sperm cells may be observed for several weeks after a boar recovers from a disease. The percentage of abnormal sperm cells in an ejaculate depends upon the severity and duration of the illness and the pathogen. Other noninfectious factors affecting semen quality have been reviewed in detail (Almond et al. 1994).

**Localized Infections**

If the epididymis is infected, there is often swelling of the testes and scrotum. An epididymal infection lowers fertility and should receive immediate attention. Fever, infection, orchitis, or inflammation of the scrotum can cause testicular degeneration of boars with previously demonstrated normal fertility. This condition involves degeneration of the germinal epithelium of the seminiferous tubes and must be diagnosed with a biopsy. Eventually, the testicular tissue will atrophy, resulting in flabby testicles, which may become firm if fibrous growths or calcium deposits accumulate in the testes. Although the boar's libido is unaffected, the ejaculate will have fewer sperm, sperm motility will be poor, and a high percentage of sperm will be abnormal. If an 8-week rest does not improve the condition, these boars should be culled.

Bacteria that appear to act directly on the function of the testes include *Brucella suis*, *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, *Mycoplasma hyosynoviae*, *Streptococcus suis*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Escherichia coli*. *Brucella suis* can become localized in the testes and cause inflammation that will impair the boar's ability to manufacture sperm. Brucellosis can also cause testicular degeneration. Erysipelas can cause inflammation and degeneration of the testes. Ubiquitous bacteria, such as *Streptococcus suis*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Escherichia coli*, can localize in the testes. It is not known whether the resulting fertility problems are due to a direct effect on sperm manufacture or to infection of the sow's reproductive tract.

Many viruses, including African swine fever, PPV, and PRRSV, have been shown to infect sows inseminated with contaminated semen. PRRSV can have a marked effect on spermatogenesis, resulting in fewer sperm, impaired motility, and higher percentages of abnormalities for up to 13 weeks after infection (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1995; Preito et al. 1995). Not all affected boars will show clinical signs of PRRS. Under certain circumstances, boars may be included in vaccination protocols intended to control PRRSV. The influence of vaccination, natural infection, or vaccination followed by natural infection on semen quality requires clarification. This confusion is due, at least in part, to apparent differences among the various PRRSV strains in causing disease.

**REFERENCES**


Thomford PJ, Sander HK, Kendall JZ, Sherwood OD, Dziuk PJ. 1984. Maintenance of pregnancy and levels of progesterone...
and relaxin in the serum of gilts following a stepwise reduction in the number of corpora lutea. Biol Reprod 31:494–498.


The structure of swine production has changed substantially in most swine-producing areas over several years; large groups of animals are housed under intensive conditions, often in regions with an extremely dense pig population. High stocking density in a closed environment facilitates transmission of airborne pathogens within the herd (Donham 1991; Buddle et al. 1997) and between herds as well (Jorsal and Thomsen 1988; Stark et al. 1992; Christensen et al. 1993). Consequently, respiratory disorders and systemic airborne diseases are today regarded as the most serious disease problems in modern swine production.

STRUCTURE OF THE NORMAL RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

The respiratory tract develops from the anterior part of the embryonic gut as a tree-structured tubular organ. The mature respiratory apparatus comprises the nasal cavity, pharynx, larynx, trachea, and lungs with bronchi, bronchioli, and alveoli. The lungs are embedded in the pleural sac.

There are two separate blood-conducting systems in the lungs. The arteria pulmonalis system vascularizes the capillary plexus surrounding the alveoli with venous blood from the right ventricle. The close structural and functional parallelism between this blood stream and the tubular airway system is important to realize when possible infection routes in the lungs have to be interpreted. The supporting structures around the trachea, bronchi, and bronchioli and even the wall of the arteria pulmonalis are vascularized with blood from the arteria bronchialis tree.

Tubular Tract System

The nasal cavity is divided longitudinally by a wall (septum nasi). Two turbinate bones divide each of the two halves of the cavity into three meatuses: dorsal, middle, and ventral (Figure 7.1). The length of the nasal cavity varies between different breeds. The trachea is relatively short and divides posteriorly into two principal bronchi, one for the left and one for the right lung (Figure 7.2). A special stembronchus branches from the trachea leading to the apical lobe of the right lung. The right principal bronchus sends a stembronchus to the right cardiac lobe and another to the intermediate lobe and then continues until it ramifies into the diaphragmatic lobe. The left principal bronchus gives off a stembronchus that divides into one branch for the apical lobe and one for the cardiac lobe. The principal bronchus then continues posteriorly in the diaphragmatic lobe. The finest branches of the tubular system are the bronchioli, each dividing into alveolar ducts and alveoli.

The vestibular region of the nasal cavity is lined with stratified squamous epithelium. Posteriorly, the epithelium changes from stratified columnar to ciliated pseudostratified epithelium with goblet cells (respiratory epithelium). The respiratory epithelium is covered by mucus produced by the goblet cells and this type of epithelium continues through the respiratory section of the pharynx, larynx, trachea, and bronchi. As the bronchioli approach the alveoli, the epithelium is reduced in height, becoming squamous. Sections of the bronchioli (called respiratory bronchioli) and the walls of the alveoli are covered by very flat, single-layered epithelial cells (type I alveolar cells) and by a small percentage of cuboidal epithelial cells (type II alveolar cells). Type II alveolar cells produce pulmonary surfactant and serve as progenitor cells for replacement and turnover of type I alveolar cells. The alveolic wall is very intimately attached to the capillary plexus of the pulmonary blood circulation.

GROSS APPEARANCE OF THE LUNG

In the pig the lungs are divided by deep fissures into seven lobes: the right lung comprises the apical, cardiac, diaphragmatic, and intermediate lobes; the left lung comprises the apical, cardiac, and diaphragmatic lobes (refer to Figure 7.2). The left apical and cardiac lobes are not separated by a fissure but only by the cardiac notch.
7.1. Transverse section of nasal structures.

The lobes are subdivided by solid interlobular septa into lobuli. Pathological processes, therefore, often will be retained within lobular structures, typically seen in catarhal bronchopneumonia as sharp demarcated limits between normal and affected tissue.

When assessing the extent of lung lesions it is necessary to know the relative size or weight of each lobe. Table 7.1 shows the relative weights of the lung lobes as percentages of the total lung weight, as determined in three different studies. The right lung contributes more than half of the total lung weight, with small differences between the investigations. The variations might be caused partly by different average live weights of the animals examined. The animals in study C had a lower average live weight (90 kg) than those in study A (100 kg) and study B. The difference between the weight of the two lung halves tended to be greater in animals of lower slaughter weight.

### Table 7.1. Relative weights of lung lobes as percentages of total lung weight.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Left Lung Lobes</th>
<th>Right Lung Lobes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Apical</td>
<td>Cardiac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: A = Morrison et al. (1985) (rounding of numbers caused a total percentage of 101%); B = Heilmann et al. (1988); C = G. Christensen, unpublished data. N = number of pigs examined in each study.

7.2. Schematic outline of lung lobulation and branching of the bronchus tree. LA, RA: left and right apical lobes; LC, RC: left and right cardiac lobes; LD, RD: left and right diaphragmatic lobes; I: intermediate lobe. Numbers = relative lobe weights as percentage of total lung weight based on a study by G. Christensen (unpublished data).

### FUNCTION OF THE NORMAL RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

The vital gaseous exchange between inhaled air and venous blood from the pulmonary artery takes place at the alveolar level. Each breath renews only a minor part of the total alveolar air volume. In the resting pig, 10–15% of the alveolar air is exchanged per inspiration. The nor-
mucous and respiratory rate (breaths/minute) varies according to age of the animal (piglets and growing pigs, 25–40; finishing pigs, 25–35; sows in gestation, 15–20).

**Defense Mechanisms of the Respiratory System**

The mucosal surface of the respiratory tract provides a critical interface between the pig and its environment. While the skin is well adapted to prevent invasion of potentially harmful agents and has a limited surface area (about 1.8 m$^2$ in humans), the epithelial surface of the respiratory tract primarily serves as a diffusion membrane. The gaseous exchange requires a very large surface (in humans more than 100 m$^2$). Thus, it is understandable that the respiratory tract must be equipped with a potent and specialized defense apparatus. The most important components of the respiratory defense are listed in Table 7.2.

The nasal cavity is designed to remove large particles trapped by hairs in the nostrils and deposited by gravity in the mucus by the eddy currents around the conchal structures. Another function of the nasal cavity with its immense venous sinoids and wet surfaces is humidification and warming of the air before it reaches the lower airways.

Most inspired particles are trapped in the epithelial mucus of the nasal, pharyngeal, laryngeal, and tracheal cavities. From many experiments it is known that only particles below an aerodynamic diameter of 5 µm (the respirable fraction) are able to reach and settle at the alveolar level. Particles of an aerodynamic diameter greater than 10 µm almost entirely settle before reaching the lower airways.

**Mucociliary Defense.** Particles trapped in the epithelial mucus are handled by the mucociliary clearance mechanism. The ciliary carpet in the bronchi and bronchioles gives rise to a continuous flow of mucus toward the pharynx. The rhythmic beating of cilia results in a mucus flow of about 4–15 mm/minute (Done 1988). Like the mucus from the nasal cavity, it is delivered to the pharyngeal cavity and subsequently swallowed.

**Phagocytes.** Alveolar macrophages neutralize foreign material that escapes the mucociliary defense mechanism. Nonpathogenic particles and microbes are handled by simple phagocytic activity and are removed in the mucus flow or by the lymphatic system. Pathogenic microorganisms are neutralized with aid of secretions such as lysozyme, interferons, opsonins, lactoferrins, complement factors, and specific immunoglobulins in the mucus. If the invading agents are not neutralized by the alveolar macrophages, inflammation will occur. Neutrophils from the blood will then invade the alveolus and assist the macrophages in the phagocytic activity. In healthy pigs the normal ratio between the cellular elements in the bronchoalveolar mucus is 70–80% alveolar macrophages, 11–18% lymphocytes, 8–12% neutrophils, and up to 5% eosinophilic granulocytes (Neumann et al. 1985). The phagocytic cell system also comprises intravascular macrophages, which in the pig are particularly numerous (Bertram 1985; Ohgami et al. 1989) in the lung, and histiocytes with phagocytic properties in the connective tissue.

The activity of the phagocytes is highly accelerated if introduced pathogens are not quickly eliminated or if pathogens are recognized from previous infections. A complex immune response is activated by stimulation of the cell-mediated immune system, followed by local and systemic production of specific antibodies (immunoglobulins—Ig).

**Immunoglobulins.** The production of specific antibodies is of crucial importance in the respiratory immune defense. Their biological function is neutralization of pathogens by generating antigen-antibody complexes.

The predominant antibodies in mucus are of the IgA type and a secretory component takes part in the secretion. IgM antibodies are potent proteins released in the early immune response, particularly in the newborn pig. IgG originating from blood serum form the greater part of the immunoglobulins in mucus of the lower respiratory tract near the alveoli. Immunoglobulins in the mucus carpet act primarily to prevent the initial establishment and penetration of pathogens. IgE are generated in the immune response against parasites, for example, lungworm (*Metastrongylus* sp.) and migrating ascarid larvae.

**Cell-Mediated Immune Response.** Traditionally, immunity is divided into a humoral immune response, in which the immunoglobulins play an essential role, and a cell-mediated immune response based on antibody-independent components. Today it is realized that immunity cannot be distinctly separated into these two parts, because many mechanisms and elements are closely linked.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 7.2. Respiratory system defense components.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physical/Chemical</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hairs in nostrils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of the nasal cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of mucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Properties of mucus (physical and chemical—e.g., adhesiveness, nonspecific lysozymes, interferons, opsonins, lactoferrins, complement factors, specific immunoglobulins)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humoral components (mucus contents and multiple types of immune modulators—e.g., lymphokines)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cellular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phagocytes (alveolar macrophages, vascular macrophages, histiocytes, monocytes, neutrophils, eosinophils)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone marrow-derived B lymphocytes (plasma cells)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thymus-derived T lymphocytes (helper lymphocytes, suppressor lymphocytes, cytotoxic lymphocytes (natural killer cells))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Immunoglobulins.** The production of specific antibodies is of crucial importance in the respiratory immune defense. Their biological function is neutralization of pathogens by generating antigen-antibody complexes.

The predominant antibodies in mucus are of the IgA type and a secretory component takes part in the secretion. IgM antibodies are potent proteins released in the early immune response, particularly in the newborn pig. IgG originating from blood serum form the greater part of the immunoglobulins in mucus of the lower respiratory tract near the alveoli. Immunoglobulins in the mucus carpet act primarily to prevent the initial establishment and penetration of pathogens. IgE are generated in the immune response against parasites, for example, lungworm (*Metastrongylus* sp.) and migrating ascarid larvae.

**Cell-Mediated Immune Response.** Traditionally, immunity is divided into a humoral immune response, in which the immunoglobulins play an essential role, and a cell-mediated immune response based on antibody-independent components. Today it is realized that immunity cannot be distinctly separated into these two parts, because many mechanisms and elements are closely linked.
Generally, cell-mediated immunity is identified with: cytotoxic T cells, natural killer cells, activated macrophages, and cells mediating antibody-dependent cytotoxicity. The cell-mediated immune response is assumed to be of special importance in viral infections such as influenza, PRRS, PCV2 and Aujeszky’s disease, but is also assumed to play an important role in Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae infection.

Surface proteins belonging to the swine leukocyte antigen (SLA) gene complex (major histocompatibility gene complex [MHC]) play a significant role in the cellular, as well as the humoral, immune response. Rothschild et al. (1984) demonstrated that the SLA complex was associated with immune response following vaccination with Bordetella bronchiseptica, and Mallard et al. (1989) showed differences in serum IgG concentrations in different SLA haplotypes, indicating that selection for increased serum IgG would be possible. Genetic variability of the SLA complex has been demonstrated in different breeds of pigs (Vaiman et al. 1979).

Since placenta of pregnant sows are impermeable to immunoglobulin passage, the neonates are born without antibodies. Although immunocompetent, the piglets are unable to rapidly develop an active immune response to protect them against respiratory diseases. Thus, their survival depends upon the passive acquisition of maternal immunity including at least three components:

- A systemic humoral immunity, transmitted through colostrum
- A local humoral immunity transmitted through milk
- A cellular immunity transmitted via maternal immunocompetent cells present in mammary secretions (Salmon 2000)

Like lambs, piglets are capable of intestinal absorption of intact immunocompetent maternal lymphocytes from colostrum, but only from their own mother (Tuboly et al. 1988; Tuboly and Bernath 2002). Williams (1993) showed the distribution of such cells to liver, lung, lymph nodes, spleen, and gastrointestinal tissue of the piglets by 24 hours postfeeding. Blecha et al. (1983) found that the capability of lymphocytes to undergo blastogenesis was decreased in pigs weaned at 2 and 3 weeks of age and suppressed in pigs weaned at 4 weeks of age. Their data suggested that weaning pigs younger than 5 weeks old causes physiological changes detrimental to cellular immune reactivity, which could alter disease susceptibility in piglets. This information may be useful when managing the farrowing units, where random distribution of piglets between sows and early weaning may contribute to decreased resistance against respiratory infections before as well as after weaning.

Transepithelial passage from the lumen of the respiratory tract into the blood of antigenically intact macromolecules can take place during the first days of life and also to a considerable degree in older pigs (Folkesson et al. 1990). This indicates future possibilities for aerosol-based vaccines against respiratory diseases. Vaccination experiments with Aujeszky's disease in young piglets with passively acquired antibodies indicate that the systemic immune mechanism can be bypassed and a local immune response obtained by application of antigen on the respiratory epithelium (Schlesinger et al. 1990). Nielsen et al. (1990) obtained good immunological protection against Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae with local application of antigens in the respiratory tract.

RESPIRATORY DISORDERS

Under commercial conditions few pigs can be expected to reach slaughter weight without contracting some sort of respiratory lesion. Pathologic alterations can be categorized into three main disease entities: rhinitis, pneumonia, and pleuritis. Detailed characterizations of microscopic and gross pathologies of the individual diseases will be given in other chapters. However, some general features of pathology will be presented here.

Rhinitis

Catarrhal inflammation of the nasal mucosa is common in young animals. The cause is often infectious (Aujeszky’s disease virus, cytomegalovirus, B. bronchiseptica, Mycoplasma hyorhinis), but ammonia and dust in the air as well as foreign bodies can also provoke mild mucosal inflammation of short duration. However, if toxigenic strains of Pasteurella multocida are present, even a slightly damaged mucosa might promote adherence and proliferation of the bacteria and subsequently provoke progressive atrophic rhinitis with permanent alteration of the nasal structure and function. The structural changes in atrophic rhinitis are fundamentally induced by an altered bone metabolic process without inflammation of tissue (Foged et al. 1987).

Pneumonia

Bronchopneumonia. Catarrhal bronchopneumonia, located cranioventrally, is a frequent lesion of the lung in growing pigs. Since M. hyopneumoniae generally is involved, such lesions are often given the term mycoplasmal or mycoplasma-like pneumonia. Noncomplicated mycoplasmal pneumonia typically appears as confluent, purple consolidation, more collapsed than normal lung tissue. Early lesions may be somewhat indistinct, but after 2–3 weeks the lesions are clearly demarcated from adjacent normal tissue by a sharp line following the interlobular septa. When incised, the consistency is “meaty” but not excessively firm. Catarrhal exudate may be expressed from the airway openings of affected tissue. Fissures regularly appear in lobes previously affected with catarrhal bronchopneumonia (Bertschinger et al. 1972).

Lesions with secondary bacterial infections may
change to a more grayish color, and the consistency will be firmer due to formation of fibrous tissue. Further, complicated bronchopneumonia due to secondary bacterial infection usually results in purulent bronchitis or abscess formation. Severe cases may also present pleuritis with adhesion to the thoracic wall.

**Fibrinous/Necrotizing Pneumonia.** Another common pathological entity of the lung is fibrinous/necrotizing pneumonia, which affects the dorsocaudal portions of the organ in contrast to the cranioventrally located catarhal or mucopurulent bronchopneumonia. Affected tissue is frequently raised above the adjacent area and crosses interlobular septae, unlike catarhal bronchopneumonia. Fibrinous/necrotizing pneumonia is often called pleuropneumonia since the pleural surface of affected lung tissue is involved in nearly all cases. In the acute state the inflamed pleural surface is covered with fibrinous exudate. In subacute/chronic cases the affected portion of lung tissue is frequently raised above the adjacent area and crosses interlobular septae, unlike catarhal bronchopneumonia. Fibrinous/necrotizing pneumonia is widely distributed throughout the lung. Interstitial pneumonia is most often caused by viral infections.

**Embolic Pneumonia.** Embolic pneumonia is caused by hematogenically disseminated agents, mostly pyogenic bacteria from lesions somewhere else in the body. Typically this type of pneumonia starts as minute necrotic foci surrounded by a hemorrhagic zone. Usually suppuration of the centers follows and circumscribed abscesses are formed. A secondary bronchopneumonia or a pleuropneumonia-like inflammation may develop around the primary process. Verminous migration through lung tissue induces small hemorrhagic foci, small abscesses, or firm granulomas. The verminous processes are mainly located dorsocaudally in the lung.

**Lesion Distribution Patterns.** Cranioventral distribution of mycoplasmal and most other bronchopneumonias might be due to less effective defense mechanisms in this region. This assumption is supported by the fact that *Pasteurella hemolytica* causes pneumonia in this region even if the bacteria reach the lung via the blood (Dungworth 1993). Gravitational influence impeding clearance, leading to pooling or reflux of secretions, is probably a contributing factor.

Experimentally, inhaled aerosolized suspensions of *Bacillus subtilis*, *A. pleuropneumoniae* (Sebunya et al. 1983), and *Staphylococcus aureus* (Kastner and Mehlhorn 1989) are deposited primarily in the caudal lobes. This accords with the fact that *A. pleuropneumoniae*-induced pleuropneumonia is predominantly localized dorsocaudally. In another investigation, inhalation of an aerosolized suspension of radioactively labeled *P. multocida* resulted in a relatively uniform deposition in the lung lobes (Heilmann et al. 1988).

Usually, pneumonic lesions due to hematogenically introduced pyogenic bacteria have a random distribution pattern, which makes them easily distinguishable from lesions due to bronchogenically disseminated bacteria (Buttenschøn 1989). Verminous lung lesions have a caudodorsal location in spite of the assumption that the larvae are introduced via the bloodstream. However, some extravascular migration through the diaphragm might take place (Buttenschøn 1990).

Since chronic pleuritis almost always is associated with a present or, more often, a previous inflammation of lung tissue, the localization of pleuritic lesions is of diagnostic value in determining the type of pneumonia involved.

**Healing of Pneumonia.** The healing of catarhal bronchopneumonia is a rather slow process requiring several weeks or months. However, the healing period depends greatly on the agents involved. In specific pathogen free (SPF) pigs inoculated with *M. hyopneumoniae*, induced pneumonic lesions were healed after 2 months, whereas furrowing of the lung persisted for more than 3 months (Bertschinger et al. 1972; Kobisch et al. 1993; Sørensen et al. 1997). By comparing the time of seroconversion with lung lesions at slaughter, Wallgren et al. (1994) estimated the duration of active mycoplasmal lesions to be approximately 12 weeks, and Pattison (1956) still found pneumonic lesions 25 weeks after inoculation with *M. hyopneumoniae*, presumably due to secondary bacterial infection. Unlike catarhal bronchopneumonia, the interval between appearance and disappearance of *A. pleuropneumoniae*-induced fibrinous/necrotizing pneumonia may be surprisingly short (about 3 weeks) if not complicated with secondary pyogenic infections. This is in accordance with Andreasen et al. (2001) and Wallgren et al. (1994) who found no correlation between seroconversion to *A. pleuropneumoniae* and lesions at slaughter. Seroconversion to *M. hyopneumoniae* close to slaughter revealed the largest extent of mycoplasma-like bronchopneumonia and early seroconversion was related to ventrocranial pleuritic lesions. However, infections gained during the early fattening period will generally escape detection at slaughter.

**Pleuritis**

Fibrotic adherence between the visceral and pleural membranes of the pleural sac (chronic pleuritis, pleural scar) is one of the most frequent pathologic alterations seen in slaughter swine. Fibrous pleuritis affecting larger areas is often associated with similar lesions in the peri-
cardial sac (chronic pericarditis). The repairing of such lesions is a long process, with a duration of at least 1 month, more often 2–3 months (Christensen 1984). The resolving of chronic pleuritis in growing pigs may cause younger fatteners to have a higher frequency of this lesion than older pigs (Mousing 1988). In an investigation of infectious and herd-related factors by logistic regression Enoe et al. (2002) found that seropositivity for *A. pleuropneumoniae* serotype 2 and *M. hyopneumoniae* in conventional herds were associated with 51% and 29% of the occurrence of chronic pleuritis at slaughter, respectively. In SPF herds reinfected with *M. hyopneumoniae*, seropositivity for *M. hyopneumoniae* was associated with 33% of the occurrence of chronic pleuritis detected at slaughter.

### CAUSAL FACTORS IN RESPIRATORY DISEASE

#### General Epidemiologic Considerations

Respiratory disease must be seen as the result of a complexity of events, including infectious, environmental, managemental, and genetic factors. Because the etiology of respiratory disease is multifactorial, one should consider not just specific infectious agent, but other relevant factors as well.

A given pathogen or environmental risk factor will tend to increase the incidence of disease. In quantifying this increase, the ratio between the incidence (or prevalence) among pigs exposed to the factor and the incidence (or prevalence) among pigs that are not exposed can be calculated. This ratio is most often referred to as the relative risk. The higher the relative risk, the stronger the association between the risk factor and disease. When two or more risk factors act simultaneously, the total relative risk will often be greater than the relative risk of the individual factors (Mousing et al. 1990).

Relative risks have to be evaluated with caution, for such associations may be confounded by other factors. Several epidemiologic studies have indicated a positive correlation between herd prevalence of pigs with pneumonia and atrophic rhinitis. This association obviously relies on the fact that the two disease entities are provoked by the same external factors, and not that one disease predisposes to the other. In fact, there was no evidence that animals suffering from one of the diseases were more susceptible to the other when correlation studies included individuals in the same herd (Madec and Kobisch 1984; Straw 1986).

### Infection

Respiratory infections occur with a high prevalence in all swine-producing areas (Table 7.3). The spread of respiratory diseases from herd to herd involves two distinct mechanisms. First, like other infections, disease may be disseminated through infectious contacts (purchase of pigs, incoming and outgoing vehicles, birds, rodents, persons, etc.). Second and very important, several respiratory diseases also propagate from herd to herd by means of airborne transmission. The virus causing PRRS can be introduced into a herd with semen (Swenson et al. 1994; Gradil et al. 1996).

#### Airborne Transmission of Respiratory Diseases Between Herds.

Respiratory infections in swine with the capability of airborne transmission over distances up to several kilometers include *M. hyopneumoniae* (Goodwin 1985; Jorsal and Thomsen 1988; Stark et al. 1992;), and porcine respiratory coronavirus (PRCV) (Henningsson et al. 1988). Systemic viral infections such as foot-and-mouth disease (Gloster et al. 2003), PRRS (Mortensen et al. 2002) and Aujeszky’s disease (Mortensen et al. 1990) follow this pattern. Airborne transmission between small pig units at close range has been induced experimentally with PRRSV, *A. pleuropneumoniae* and *B. bronchiseptica* (Torremorell et al. 1997; Brockmeier and Lager 2002; Kristensen et al. 2004a, b). However, airborne transmission of bacterial infections between herds has still to be documented. The typical pattern of simultaneous influenza outbreaks in many herds is highly suggestive of the airborne transmission of this infection. In Danish epidemics, even though special precautions are taken against introduction of infectious diseases, SPF herds are attacked by influenza just as frequently as conventional neighboring herds. Epidemics in Brittany also seem to follow an airborne transmission (Madec et al. 1982). Table 7.4 lists factors affecting the risk of a herd receiving an airborne infection.

Airborne spread of disease between herds is facilitated by several meteorological factors—most significantly, the direction and velocity of the prevailing winds. Factors such as cloud cover, turbulence, and topography are also important. Overcast skies, night (when the turbulence is often low), and relative humidity of more than 90% (Gloster et al. 1981) facilitate airborne transmission.

#### Respiratory Infection in Individuals and in Herds.

The upper respiratory tract is the natural habitat for myriads of commensal microorganisms, including viruses, mycoplasmas, chlamydias, and other bacteria. The commensal flora may have a favorable competitive effect for their host in outnumbering pathogenic agents. There is no distinct division between commensals and potentially pathogenic microorganisms. Different studies categorize the same microorganism as either commensal or potentially pathogenic. For example, *Mycoplasma flocculare*, *M. hyorhinis*, and *Haemophilus parasuis* belong to a group of microorganisms that can regularly be isolated in the upper respiratory tract and in the bronchial tree of healthy pigs.

Ganter et al. (1990) examined the bacterial flora in live, healthy, 20–30 kg SPF pigs. The bacteria normally found by alveolar lavage belonged to two or three
species, most often streptococci (nonhemolytic, alpha-hemolytic), staphylococci, Escherichia coli, Klebsiella, and Arcanobacterium pyogenes. Haemophilus parasuis and B. bronchiseptica were rarely isolated, and P. multocida was never isolated in the bronchial tree of healthy pigs. Haemophilus parasuis and M. hyorhinis were detected in bronchial lavage from about 40% of conventionally reared healthy pigs (Castryck et al. 1990). Møller and Kilian (1990) found that the porcine upper respiratory tract harbors a much wider spectrum of V factor-dependent pasteurellaceae species than hitherto recognized, probably with no or low pathogenicity.

Haemophilus parasuis and M. hyorhinis behave as commensals only as long as their pathogenicity is neutralized by the respiratory defense. In nonimmune individuals H. parasuis (Nielsen and Danielsen 1975) and to some extent M. hyorhinis may become pathogenic, resulting in severe systemic disease (polyserositis, polyarthritis, meningitis). Maintenance of the fine balance between animal population and pathogens evidently re-

---

**Table 7.3. The prevalence of some respiratory infections of swine.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Etiologic Agent</th>
<th>Prevalence (%)</th>
<th>Identification</th>
<th>Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Positive pigs within affected herds</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serotype 2</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>Denmark^1,^9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serotype 6</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>Denmark^1,^9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serotype 7</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>Denmark^9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serotype 12</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>Denmark^9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine influenza virus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1N1</td>
<td>71–82</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>France^2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1N1</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>Denmark^9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3N2</td>
<td>29–48</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>France^2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxigenic Pasteurella multocida</td>
<td>30–50</td>
<td>cu</td>
<td>United Kingdom^1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae</td>
<td>80–90</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>Sweden^3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37</td>
<td>cu</td>
<td>Austria^6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>89</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>Denmark^9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus parasuis</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>Denmark^1,^9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Positive herds**                      |                |                |               |
| Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae         |                |                |               |
| Serotype 2                              | 24             | se             | Norway^7      |
|                                          | 84             | se             | Finland^8     |
|                                          | 41             | se             | Denmark^1,^9  |
| Serotypes 1–5                           | 29             | se             | Denmark^9     |
| Serotypes 1,3,5,7 or 9                  | 69             | se             | Iowa^10       |
| Serotype 7                              | 86             | se             | Minnesota^1^1 |
| Serotype 12                             | 23             | cl             | Ontario^12    |
| Swine influenza virus H1N1              | 55             | se             | Denmark^9     |
| Toxigenic Pasteurella multocida         | 36             | se             | Denmark^9     |
| Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae                |                |                |               |
|                                          | 85             | cl             | Missouri^1^1  |
|                                          | 82             | se             | Australia^14  |
|                                          | 39             | se             | Denmark^1,^9  |
|                                          | 70             | se             | Denmark^1,^9  |

Note: se = serological method; cu = culturing was employed; cl = clinical signs corresponding to the infection were observed.

^1Mousing et al. (1990).
^3Goodwin et al. (1990).
^5Wallgren et al. (1990).
^7Falk et al. (1990).
^8Levonen et al. (1994).
^9Ene et al. (2002).
^10Schultz et al. (1982).
^11Anderson et al. (1990).
Table 7.4. Important herd-related factors that increase the risk of airborne disease transmission between herds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Increasing herd size</td>
<td>Porcine respiratory corona virus (PRCV)(^1); Aujeszky’s disease(^2,3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short distance between herds</td>
<td>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae(^4,5); PRCV(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large size of neighboring herd</td>
<td>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae(^4,5); PRCV(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High regional pig density</td>
<td>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae(^5); Aujeszky’s disease(^3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herd infected with Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\)Flori et al. (1995).  
\(^2\)Mortensen et al. (1990).  
\(^3\)Anderson et al. (1990).  
\(^4\)Jorsal and Thomsen (1988).  
\(^5\)Stark et al. (1992).

requires that all the pigs are exposed to the pathogens in question in early life. Outbreaks appear under circumstances where the normal infection mechanism does not work properly because of restricted contact between individuals—for example, in small herds, in herds with very early weaning or strict separation between animals of different ages, and in SPF herds established originally from cesarean-derived piglets (Nielsen and Danielsen 1975; Smart et al. 1989).

Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae and M. hyopneumoniae can be regarded as representatives of a different type of respiratory microorganisms: they may be common at herd level but are relatively seldom isolated from healthy individuals (Friis 1974; Castryck et al. 1990). Their presence is usually associated with disease, subclinical more often than clinical.

These two groups of microorganisms behave differently, especially in the immunologically weak state between passive and active immunity, for several reasons. First, A. pleuropneumoniae and M. hyopneumoniae have a higher pathogenicity than H. parasuis and M. hyorhinis.

Second and very important, it is known that H. parasuis and M. hyorhinis invade the nasal and tracheobronchial epithelium very early in the piglet’s life (Ross 1984). This might facilitate a gradual development of active immunity under the cover of humoral colostral antibodies, a situation beneficial to host as well as to pathogen. A third reason is that the sites (pleural, pericardial, peritoneal, meningeal, articular serotic cavities) where the real pathogenic properties of H. parasuis and M. hyorhinis predominate are outside the respiratory tract. Here a clear physical barrier exists between the effector site and the residential site of the microorganism. In contrast, A. pleuropneumoniae and M. hyopneumoniae are easily brought to their point of attack with the inhaled air, directly from the environment or from the nasal and tonsillar epithelium.

Finally, the ability of strains with low pathogenicity to generate protective antibodies against closely related but more pathogenic strains, as demonstrated for A. pleuropneumoniae (Nielsen 1988), must be considered.

In conclusion, the constant presence of pathogens that cannot permanently be excluded from the herd and that behave like H. parasuis and M. hyorhinis is acceptable for the herd. However, the presence of pathogens that behave like A. pleuropneumoniae and M. hyopneumoniae cause potential risk of recurrent disease.

The group of acceptable respiratory microorganisms includes species such as Haemophilus “minor group,” B. bronchiseptica, staphylococci, streptococci, most strains of nontoxigenic P. multocida, and some strains of A. pleuropneumoniae. In contrast, the most pathogenic strains of A. pleuropneumoniae and P. multocida are highly disadvantageous because herd infections may give rise to episodes of respiratory problems.

Pasteurella multocida probably is the most frequent and damaging invader of the lung. However, this bacterium is a typical secondary invader (Amass et al. 1994). Even the most pathogenic strains are apparently not capable of infecting a healthy lung, unlike A. pleuropneumoniae Bordetella bronchiseptica induces only a discrete pneumonia in conventionally reared 7-day-old piglets (Lambotte et al. 1990), but in gnotobiotic piglets the infection causes severe and long-lasting pneumonia (Underdahl et al. 1982). Bordetella bronchiseptica is categorized as an acceptable microorganism, because like P. multocida, it is not easily kept out of herds due to the fact that several other animal species, including cats and dogs, are reservoirs.

Interaction Between Infectious Agents. Clinically significant disease seldom is the result of an infection with only one pathogen. Several pathogens are very often involved in respiratory disease. One pathogen acts as the key agent, the “door opener,” for secondary invaders by lowering the local and sometimes also the systemic defense mechanisms of the host.

Generally, key agents are viruses or mycoplasmas, but secondary invaders are bacteria. For example, susceptibility in swine to A. pleuropneumoniae is increased following an influenza infection (Scatolza and Sidoli 1986), PRRS infection (Pol et al. 1997), or Aujeszky’s disease (Lai et al. 1986). A similar effect was observed in experiments in mice infected first with influenza virus and subsequently with A. pleuropneumoniae (Bröring et al. 1989). Pigs infected with M. hyopneumoniae had a de-
creased resistance against *A. pleuropneumoniae* (Yagihashi et al. 1984), and in another study (Kubo et al. 1995) *M. hyorhinis* increased the severity of pulmonary lesions in piglets infected with PRRS virus. Van Reeth et al. (1994) found higher pathogenicity of a dual infection with influenza virus and PRRS virus than with infection with one of the viruses. Thacker et al. (1999) found that *M. hyopneumoniae* severely potentiated both clinical and pathological manifestations of disease induced by PRRS virus. When disease was induced by swine influenza virus, *M. hyopneumoniae* also potentiated the clinical manifestations, but to a lesser degree the pathological manifestations (Thacker et al. 2001). These findings demonstrate that the relationship between mycoplasmas and viruses varies with the individual agent. In the nasal cavity *B. bronchiseptica* frequently acts as a predisposing key agent facilitating the invasion and replication of toxigenic strains of *P. multocida* (Pedersen and Barfod 1981).

Lesions caused by key agents themselves are often faint and without clinical significance. It is well known from field experiences that influenza and Aujeszky’s disease seldom are followed by severe pneumonic complications in herds where *A. pleuropneumoniae* and *M. hyopneumoniae* are absent (e.g., SPF herds), whereas serious respiratory complications regularly follow these viruses in other herds.

As a rule one pathogen intensifies the proliferation of another, but the reverse effect also can be demonstrated. In a cross-sectional seroepidemiological study, Mousing (1991) examined 4800 slaughter pigs for serological evidence of *A. pleuropneumoniae* serotype 2 and serotype 6, *H. parasuis* and swine influenza virus (type H1N1 with American and European variants). The interrelationship between these five respiratory infections is illustrated in Table 7.5, demonstrating the relative risk of confirming a specific infection when a pig also possesses antibodies against another agent.

Most infections appeared to be positively associated with *A. pleuropneumoniae* serotype 2, except for *A. pleuropneumoniae* serotype 6. The probable explanation is that *A. pleuropneumoniae* serotypes share antigens that provoke generation of cross-protecting antibodies (Nielsen 1988). The reverse effect was demonstrated for the two influenza variants.

The effect of an increasing number of infections on prevalence of chronic pleuritis is graphed in Figure 7.3. The prevalence of chronic pleuritis increases from 12.5% in pigs free from all of the five infections to more than 60% in pigs infected with four or all five of them.

### Table 7.5. Interrelationship between some respiratory infections measured by odds ratio between seroreactions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infection A</th>
<th>AP6</th>
<th>H. par.</th>
<th>H1N1(A)</th>
<th>H1N1(B)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AP2</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AP6</td>
<td>(0.9)</td>
<td>(1.0)</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. par.</em></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1N1(A)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Note: AP2 = *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* serotype 2; AP6 = *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* serotype 6; *H. par.* = *Haemophilus parasuis*; H1N1(A) = Swine influenza virus A/Swine/New Jersey/8/76 (H1N1); H1N1(B) = Swine influenza virus A/Swine/Belgium/2/79 (H1N1). All infections assessed through individual serological examination of slaughter pigs. Numbers in parentheses are not statistically significant.

### Figure 7.3. The prevalence of pleuritis in the presence of an increasing number of infections.
idly changing, preferably toward all-in/all-out and multisite systems, farrow-to-finish operations still exist. With continuous flow of animals through the system a steady transmission of respiratory pathogens occurs from sows to piglets and, maybe more important, from older to younger pigs. Replication of respiratory pathogens may concentrate in the facilities for growing pigs, which act as “pathogen generators” in the herd. From here the breeding animals are periodically infected. This mechanism explains why it is simpler by far to control respiratory disease in breeding herds marketing all growers and feeders than in herds that also finish the pigs.

**Origin of Pigs**

The origin of introduced animals significantly influences the risk of the herd contracting respiratory diseases. It is evident that respiratory problems can be expected if pigs with low health status are introduced into a herd. However, there also is a risk when introducing animals with a high health status into herds with a lower health status without taking any precautions to protect the healthy animals against infection. Such animals, insufficiently protected by specific immunity, easily develop clinical disease. Consequently, a sudden rise in infection pressure occurs, and an established herd balance between infection and immunity is jeopardized.

In Danish SPF herds it is clearly illustrated that the risk of a herd contracting respiratory problems increases with the number of animal groups introduced and the number of different sources (Jorsal and Thomsen 1988). Castryck et al. (1990) made the same observation in Belgian conventional pig production systems. Awareness of the herd’s status regarding respiratory pathogens and solely buying in breeding animals from a single herd with similar status can contribute to prevent outbreaks of respiratory disease. Establishment of quarantine facilities for introducing breeding animals can often be beneficial for maintaining the herd health status. Furthermore, it is important to keep a good biosecurity in order to prevent unwanted respiratory pathogens to enter the facilities by other routes.

**Number of Individuals in Herd or Room**

Most empirical epidemiologic studies have revealed that the risk of contracting respiratory disease increases significantly with increasing herd size, and also with the pig density in the vicinity of the herd (Aalund et al. 1976; Bäckström and Bremer 1976; Flesja and Solberg 1981; Mehlhorn and Hoy 1985; Jorsal and Thomsen 1988; Cubero et al. 1992; Stark et al. 1992; Christensen 1995; Goldberg et al. 2000; Maes et al. 2000; Enoe et al. 2002). The theoretical background of the herd size effect has been explained by Willeberg et al. (1994, 1995). Hartley et al. (1988a) and Tielen (1989) found no relationship between respiratory disease at slaughter and herd size, and Martinsson and Lundeheim (1988) found only weak relations. A very large herd might have a somewhat lower level of respiratory disease than one not quite so large (Willeberg et al. 1984/85; Martinsson and Lundeheim 1988). The probable explanation is that very large herd facilities must be subdivided and pigs moved into groups to control infectious diseases.

The number of animals placed in the same airspace significantly affects the incidence of disease. Experience from several investigations (Lindqvist 1974; Tielen et al. 1978; Pointon et al. 1985) indicates that respiratory problems are difficult to control if more than 200–300 animals are housed in the same barn; in the Netherlands housing only 80 fatteners together is advised (Tielen 1989).

Theoretically, for pigs sharing airspace, the risk of exchanging suspended particles increases substantially with increasing number of pigs \((n^2 - n)\), where \(n\) = number of individuals. The same effect is seen when floor space per pig is decreased (Lindqvist 1974; Bäckström 1978; Mehlhorn and Hoy 1985; Pointon et al. 1985).

**Climate**

Goodall et al. (1993) combined data from abattoirs with meteorological data from Northern Ireland in 1969–1989 and found significant trends in the occurrence of condemnations due to pleurisy and pneumonia and also significant correlations between the percentage of condemnations and air temperature. In Belgium, Maes et al. (2001) found an increased prevalence of pleuritis at slaughter in January and more severe lesions when pigs were slaughtered in March to April. In Denmark, Bille et al. (1975) found a significantly higher incidence of pneumonia in piglets during the winter season than during the summer months. This indicates that climatic factors are included in the etiology of pneumonia.

A high exchange rate of air often causes local drafts and chilling of animals. As with humans, a sudden chilling by drafts predisposes pigs to respiratory infections. In weaned pigs subjected periodically to drafts, Scheepens (1996) reported a higher frequency of sneezing and coughing than in controls. Subjecting controls and pigs with atrophic rhinitis to similar climatic stress caused an 8-day difference in days to slaughter, compared to a 3-day difference in the two groups of pigs when not exposed to adverse climatic conditions. Flesja et al. (1982) found that solid-sided pens were associated with a reduction in incidence of pneumonia, presumably by preventing drafts and Maes et al. 2001 found that pigs raised in pens with slatted floors were at higher risk of contracting severe pneumonic lesions. According to Kelley (1980) cold drafts and wide temperature differentials stress the immune mechanisms, thus increasing susceptibility to disease. This is confirmed in weaner pigs, where exposure to cold drafts significantly reduced immune response (Scheepens et al. 1988). Prolonged cold stress in suckling piglets experimentally infected with *P. multocida* resulted in lowered levels of serum IgG, lowered phagocytic activity of the polymorphonuclear

---

**Table: Number of Individuals in Herd or Room**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Individuals</th>
<th>Effect on Respiratory Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Few</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>High risk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table: Climate**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Climate Factor</th>
<th>Effect on Respiratory Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cold drafts</td>
<td>Increased incidence of pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High temperature</td>
<td>Reduced immune response</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Equation:**

\[ n^2 - n \]

where \(n\) = number of individuals.
granulocytes, and delayed local cellular reaction in the lungs of some of the piglets compared with controls. However, the course of infection, the clinical response, and postmortem findings were not influenced by cold stress (Rafai et al. 1987).

Air Pollution
High concentrations of ammonia in the air may be detrimental to respiratory health. Ammonia in concentrations of 50–100 ppm particularly interferes with normal mucociliary function (Curtis et al. 1975a; Johannsen et al. 1987; Neumann et al. 1987). Under normal conditions the ammonia concentration in pig pens does not exceed 20 ppm. Clark et al. (1993) did not find that ammonia concentrations of 18 ppm influenced development of mycoplasmal pneumonia. Nevertheless, epidemiologic studies have revealed the highest incidence of respiratory disease in herds with the highest ammonia concentrations in the air (Pointon et al. 1985). Also, when pigs were given the choice of moving between fresh air and ammoniated air (100 ppm ammonia) they prefered the fresh air (Smith et al. 1996). Donham (1991) found several air contaminants—such as dust, ammonia, and microbes—to be correlated with pneumonia and pleuritis in swine and has proposed maximal safe concentrations on the basis of dose-response correlation to swine health and human health problems: dust 2.4 mg/m³, ammonia 7 ppm, endotoxin 0.08 mg/m³, total microbes 10⁵ cfu/m³, and carbon dioxide 1,540 ppm.

However, many investigations have failed to demonstrate significant relation between dust and respiratory disease (Martin and Willoughby 1972; Curtis et al. 1975b; Gilmour 1989; Jansen and Feddes 1995).

Enteritis
A high prevalence of respiratory lesions at slaughter was found in pigs previously experiencing enteritis (Aalund et al. 1976). A highly significant correlation was found between pigs that needed treatment for enteritis and pigs that were treated for pneumonia (Jørgensen 1988). Litters that shed rotavirus during the preweaning period had higher incidence rates of respiratory diseases than virus-free litters (Svensmark et al. 1989). Marois et al. (1989) demonstrated aggravation of experimentally induced mycoplasmal pneumonia in piglets also infected with transmissible gastroenteritis (TGE) virus. Digestive disorders seem to reduce resistance to pneumonia, and also some swine diseases, like postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS) (Allan and Ellis 2000), include both dyspnea and diarrhea in the symptoms.

Gender
From surveillance of slaughter swine at Danish abattoirs it has continuously been revealed that the prevalence of pneumonia and pleuritis in castrated males is 10% higher than in females. Furthermore, Andreassen et al. (2001) found that castrated males have larger pleuritic lesions than females at the time of slaughter. In the Netherlands lesions in lungs, pleura, and pericardium were also more prevalent in castrated males than in females (Kruijf and Welling 1988). Castration may have been responsible for the differences through stress and hormonal changes. Another explanation could be that male pigs grow faster and reach slaughter weight at a younger age than females, which may prevent lung lesions to be healed in males at the time of slaughter.

Heredity
Several investigations indicate that respiratory disorders are to some extent influenced by heredity. In genetically selected obese swine, the phagocytic functions of pulmonary alveolar macrophages were found significantly more effective than those from genetically selected lean swine. The difference was most pronounced during winter and spring months (Caruso and Jeska 1990). Clinical observations in a herd having purebred Hampshires and Yorkshires revealed a much lower level of respiratory diseases in Hampshire than Yorkshire pigs (Lundeheim and Tafvelin 1986). The same investigators examined 45,000 slaughter pigs consisting of Hampshire, Landrace, and Yorkshire crosses. The Hampshire crosses had a significantly lower incidence of pneumonia and pleuritis than the other crosses. The susceptibility to atrophic rhinitis is greater in Yorkshire pigs than in Landrace pigs (Lundeheim 1979; Smith 1983; Straw et al. 1983). Ruiz et al. (2002) provided evidence of different patterns of colonization of Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae between pigs sired by three different boars, suggesting a possible genetic effect.

DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF RESPIRATORY DISEASE
Definitive diagnoses of respiratory diseases are based upon a combination of history, clinical observations, laboratory tests, and necropsies, including slaughter checks. A clinical diagnosis can only be tentative, since visible signs from the respiratory system may be the result of dysfunction of other organs. Also, pathological disorders of the respiratory system such as acute/subacute pleuropneumonia, chronic pneumonia, and pleuritis will often be without clinical signs or signs typical for respiratory disorders. Acute pleuropneumonia may be widespread in a herd before the disease is revealed at slaughter. Therefore, depression and decreased appetite in fatteners, often misinterpreted and attributed to bad feed, should remind the observer of the possibility of an outbreak of acute pleuropneumonia. Table 7.6 summarizes some principal respiratory disorders. The basic elements in the table are typical pathological-anatomical disease entities. Useful differential diagnostic facts concerning gross pathology, clinical signs, and agents involved are given for each disease entity leading...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease Based on Pathology</th>
<th>Important Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Causative Agents</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>01 Rhinitis: possibly slight but reversible turbinate atrophy</td>
<td>Sneeze; nasal discharge; conjunctivitis</td>
<td><em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em></td>
<td>Nasal swabs; cultivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02 Progressive atrophic rhinitis: varying turbinate atrophy and nasal wall alteration</td>
<td>Sneeze; nasal discharge; tear tracks below eyes; occasional nasal bleeding; no or varying degree of brachyglossia and snout deviation</td>
<td>Toxigenic <em>Pasteurella multocida</em>; predisposing <em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em>, aerial ammonia, dry air</td>
<td>Necropsy; slaughter checks; nasals; cultivation; ELISA; PCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03 Catarrrhal pneumonia (mycoplasmalike pneumonia): cranioventrally located; lobular; meaty structure</td>
<td>Hard nonproductive cough, particularly when pigs are forced to move; slight fever; slightly decreased appetite</td>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae</em>; <em>Mycoplasma hyorhinis</em>; streptococci, and other bacteria in piglets</td>
<td>Necropsy; slaughter checks; cultivation; immunohistochemistry (IHC); serology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04 Complicated bronchopneumonia (enzootic pneumonia): located as 03; mostly lobular; purulent exudate; eventual formation of abscesses; red to gray; firm fibrous structure; often associated with pleuritis</td>
<td>Productive cough particularly when pigs are forced to move; abdominal “thumping” respiration; periodically high fever; decreased appetite</td>
<td>As 03 + <em>Pasteurella multocida</em>, <em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em>, streptococci, staphylococci, <em>Arcanobacterium pyogenes</em>, and others; <em>Salmonella choleraesuis</em> and viral infections may act as primary agents</td>
<td>As 03; virus detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05 Disseminated/lobular catarrrhal pneumonia: mainly cardiac and apical lobes; red to gray; firm fibrous structure</td>
<td>Coughing, dyspnea</td>
<td><em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em></td>
<td>Cultivation; history: usually in piglets younger than 3 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06 Peracute fibrinous/necrotizing pneumonia (pleuropneumonia): extensive dissemination; associated with bloodtinged fluid in the pleural cavity; extensive fibrinous pleuritis</td>
<td>Depression; prostration; high fever; severe dyspnea, open mouth breathing; occasional blood-tinged foam from nose and mouth; dog-sitting or sternal recumbency</td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td>Necropsy; cultivation; serotyping; PCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07 Acute/subacute fibrinous/ necrotizing pneumonia (pleuropneumonia): predominantly caudodorsal; fibrinous pleuritis</td>
<td>Varying depression; respiration normal to superficial; depressed coughing or no cough; normal to high temperature; decreased appetite</td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td>Necropsy; cultivation; serotyping; PCR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08 Chronic necrotizing pneumonia (pleuropneumonia): located as 07; firm capsulated processes with necrosis and abscesses; local fibrinous pleuritis</td>
<td>Slight depression; cough and decreased appetite if secondary infection occurs</td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td>Necropsy; slaughter checks; cultivation; serotyping; PCR; serology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09 Embolic pneumonia: randomly distributed usually minute abscesses in the lung</td>
<td>Usually no clinical signs from the respiratory system</td>
<td>Pyogenic bacteria; streptococci, staphylococci, <em>Arcanobacterium pyogenes</em> and others</td>
<td>Necropsy; slaughter checks; primary conditions causing septisemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Acute disseminated lobular pneumonia: dark purple; bleeding from cuts; lobular emphysema and edema</td>
<td>Varying degree of depression; from no to hard cough; rapid, superficial respiration; fever; prostration; complete anorexia</td>
<td>Swine influenza virus</td>
<td>Virus isolation; PCR; IHC from nasal swabs or affected lung tissue; serology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Interstitial pneumonia: variable amount of tan and red mottling; increased amount of clear fluid in thoracic cavity</td>
<td>Varying degree of symptoms from subclinical to inappetence; fever and dyspnea; reproductive failure; suboptimal herd performance</td>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRS virus); often complicated by other infections</td>
<td>Virus isolation from lung, lymph nodes or serum; PCR; IHC on lung tissue; serology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Interstitial pneumonia: often accompanied by other types of pneumonia; lymphadenopathy; enteritis; hepatitis; nephritis</td>
<td>Postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS): wasting; enlarged lymph nodes; dyspnea; diarrhea; pallor; jaundice</td>
<td>Porcine circovirus type 2 (PCV2); often complicated by other infections</td>
<td>Histopathology; detection of PCV2 and characteristic microscopic lesions in lymphatic and other tissues</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to the diagnosis. Additionally, in Tables 7.7 and 7.8 differential diagnostic information can be found concerning disease entities usually associated with important respiratory signs such as sneezing and coughing.

**Monitoring Respiratory Disease**

The purpose of monitoring respiratory diseases is to transform observed phenomena in a swine population into numeric values suitable for analysis. Assessment of the level of disease and the effect of therapeutic or preventive measures can be obtained by monitoring disease levels at a point in time (prevalence) or during periods (incidence). Respiratory tract disease data include information collected in the herd, laboratory tests, and slaughter examinations. Large-scale data collection and evaluation on the respiratory health of slaughter swine are routinely carried out in some countries—for example, Finland (Rautiainen et al. 2001), Denmark (Willeberg et al. 1984/85; Mousing 1986), the Netherlands (Van der Valk et al. 1984), and Sweden (Bäckström and Bremer 1976).

**Registrations in the Herd.** Clinical observations, results of routine slaughter checks, and postmortem examinations of dead or euthanized animals are traditionally the basis for diagnosing and estimating the severity of respiratory disease. The clinical examination is of greatest value in acute outbreaks when fever and specific signs from the respiratory tract are observed. Conditions such as pleurapneumonia, chronic enzootic pneumonia, and pleuritis will often be without clinical signs; thus, a diagnosis based upon clinical observations will always be tentative.

The value of in-herd disease surveillance naturally increases with the quality and amount of objective information. In many situations valuable data can be

---

**Table 7.6. (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease Based on Pathology</th>
<th>Important Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Causative Agents</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13 Verminous pneumonia: small focal areas with hemorrhage, later granulomas or capsulated abscesses</td>
<td>Cough with minimal other signs</td>
<td><em>Ascaris suum</em> and other ascarids</td>
<td>Necropsy; slaughter checks; white spots in the liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Verminous bronchitis: bronchitis, bronchiolitis in caudoventral margins of diaphragmatic lobes; atelectic areas</td>
<td>Cough with minimal other signs</td>
<td><em>Metastrongylus</em> sp.</td>
<td>Necropsy; history: access to dirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Hemorrhagic pleuritis: associated with 06</td>
<td>As 06; no or depressed cough</td>
<td>As 06</td>
<td>Necropsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Fibrinous pleuritis: associated with 07 or 04, occasionally with 09 and 10; also associated with Glässer’s disease</td>
<td>As 07; if associated with Glässer’s disease: lameness, central nervous signs</td>
<td>As 07, occasionally other bacteria</td>
<td>Necropsy; cultivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Fibrous pleuritis</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>As 16</td>
<td>Necropsy; slaughter checks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table 7.7. Respiratory disease entities and agents associated with sneezing.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Agent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rhinitis (only piglets)</td>
<td><em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em>; cytomegalovirus; hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhinitis</td>
<td>Dust; ammonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrophic rhinitis</td>
<td><em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em> and toxigenic <em>Pasteurella multocida</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glässer’s disease</td>
<td><em>Aujeszky’s disease virus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 7.8. Respiratory disease entities and agents associated with coughing.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Coughing</th>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Agent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hard, nonproductive</td>
<td>Mycoplasmal-like pneumonia</td>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated pneumonia</td>
<td><em>Influenza virus</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonproductive</td>
<td><em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em></td>
<td><em>Haemophilus parasuis</em>ae<em>ae</em>opilus <em>parasuis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glässer’s disease</td>
<td><em>Aujeszky’s disease virus</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aujeszky’s disease</td>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae and Pasteurella multocida</em> and other species</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive</td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em> with other infections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enzootic pneumonia</td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depressed, productive</td>
<td>Chronic pleuropneumonia</td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac insufficiency</td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
readily obtained by staff recordings, either continuously or during a defined period. Relevant data are number of deaths and treatments associated with respiratory problems, age or weight of affected animals, and performance records—for example, days to market (Pijuan and Leman 1986), daily weight gain or feed efficiency.

Clinical signs are difficult parameters to handle in quantifying a disease problem (Baadsgaard and Jorgensen 2003). Assessment of pneumonia levels through measurement of the amount of coughing has been proposed (Straw et al. 1986). However, in the field such procedures may be too laborious and time consuming.

**Laboratory Tests.** In recent years tremendous progress in biotechnology has accelerated the development of new, highly specific, and sensitive laboratory tests for respiratory diseases. Useful diagnostic data may be obtained from laboratory examinations made on blood samples, meat juice samples, colostrum or milk samples, nasal swabs, tonsil scrapings, and tissue. It is particularly advantageous to combine data from clinical and pathological examinations with laboratory test results in monitoring the health status of swine herds. For health surveillance, serological analyses are often performed on samples taken from the herds monthly or quarterly, but also samples taken at the abattoirs when the pigs are slaughtered may be used for the analyses. Blood samples are preferable, but often not convenient at the slaughterline, and meat juice samples taken when the carcasses are registered may be a good alternative (Wallgren and Persson 2000). For final verification in the herds, methods like cultivation, PCR, immunohistochemistry or antigen-ELISA, which detect the pathogen directly, may be applied. Here, special attention will be given to diagnostic methods suitable for large-scale monitoring purposes.

When laboratory assays are used for monitoring herd health status or to elucidate the infection dynamic, the sensitivity and specificity of the assays need to be known to interpret the results. These test characteristics are defined and listed for a number of diseases in Chapter 2.

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is a relatively new technique for detecting *M. hyopneumoniae* DNA in lungs, tracheobronchial washings, nasal swabs, and air (Mattsson et al. 1995; Blanchard et al. 1996; Sørensen et al. 1997; Stark et al. 1998; Verdin et al. 2000). This technique is not as time-consuming as traditional cultivation and can be applied for large-scale use and thereby for surveillance in health programs. Problems with the sensitivity of the PCR technique when using nasal swabs seem to be solved with the nested PCR (Calsamiglia et al. 1999; Kurth et al. 2002; Sibilia et al. 2004). Toxin-producing *P. multocida* can likewise be diagnosed by PCR on nasal and tonsillar swabs (Kamp et al. 1994). Furthermore, an ELISA based on monoclonal antibodies directed against the toxin of *P. multocida* is used on nasal swabs for health surveillance of progressive atrophic rhinitis in swine herds (Foged et al. 1990).

Much effort has been put into developing PCR tests for direct identification of *A. pleuropneumoniae* in lungs and tonsils (Sirois et al. 1991; Hennessy et al. 1993; Gram et al. 1994, 1996), and in the last years such tests have been implemented for routine identification and serotyping (Fittipaldi et al. 2003; Jessing et al. 2003; Hussy et al. 2004). Three RTX-toxins have been shown to constitute important virulence factors for *A. pleuropneumoniae* infection (Frey 1995). Thus, these toxins might be interesting targets in the development of future diagnostic assays. Already, the hemolytic and cytolytic effects of these toxins form the basis of laboratory assays, and Nielsen et al. (2000) developed ELISAs detecting antibodies against them. However, these assays cannot be expected to be totally specific for *A. pleuropneumoniae* infections, because other bacteria like *Actinobacillus suis* produce similar, but not identical, toxins (Kamp et al. 1994). Schaller et al. (1999) found a fourth toxin, ApxIVA, which is excreted in vivo by all known serotypes of *A. pleuropneumoniae* and this toxin seems to be more species-specific.

A nested PCR for diagnosing PRRS virus in boar semen has proved to have a higher sensitivity than the traditionally used cultivation and is able to distinguish between U.S. and European viruses (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1995).

In the development of new serological assays, biotechnology is introduced in the form of monoclonal antibodies (MABs) against specific epitopes of the agents. MABs are used in blocking ELISAs to detect antibodies against *M. hyopneumoniae* (Feld et al. 1992; Le Potier et al. 1993), toxin-producing *P. multocida* (Foged et al. 1990), and *A. pleuropneumoniae* serotype 2 (Stenbaek and Schirmer 1994) and serotype 5 (Klausen et al. 1996). The *M. hyopneumoniae* ELISA (Feld et al. 1992) has high sensitivity and specificity and can be used on both serum and colostrum (Sørensen et al. 1992, 1993).

The serological *P. multocida* ELISA can also be used on both serum and colostrum. However, serological monitoring of progressive atrophic rhinitis in growing pigs is difficult because only a few of infected pigs seroconvert, and then only in a late stage of infection (Nielsen et al. 1991a). MABs used in serological assays for diagnosing *A. pleuropneumoniae* infections have not been successful so far, probably due to variations in the *A. pleuropneumoniae* strains, giving variable serological response in herds. Serotype-specific blocking ELISAs based on monoclonal antibodies directed against capsular polysaccharides seem more appropriate for *A. pleuropneumoniae* serodagnosis (Nielsen et al. 1991, 1993; Klausen et al. 1996, 2001; Andresen et al. 2002). Also, serotype specific indirect ELISAs for *A. pleuropneumoniae* based on purified antigen have been used (Gottschalk et al. 1994, 1997; Klausen et al. 2002). For serological herd surveillance it often will be necessary to analyze the samples...
for more than one serotype, and ELISAs with mixed antigens (Bosse et al. 1993; Grondahl-Hansen et al. 2003) can facilitate such measurements. Dreyfuss et al. (2004) developed an ELISA based upon recombinant ApxIV toxin for serological screening of all serotypes at one time. Furthermore, this ELISA is expected to give positive results only if the pigs are infected with A. pleuropneumoniae, because they do not respond to ApxIV after vaccination with the vaccines available for the time being.

Indirect ELISA (Albina et al. 1992), blocking ELISA (Houben et al. 1995), and immunoperoxidase monolayer assay (Wensvoort et al. 1991) are used for serological monitoring of PRRS infection at the herd level. Combinations of these methods are used in serological profiling of herds to distinguish between chronically and acutely PRRS-infected herds (Bøtner 1997).

For laboratory diagnosis of swine influenza, isolation of the virus in cell culture or embryonated chicken eggs and immunofluorescence on lung tissue are used. Hemagglutination-inhibition tests, which mainly measure antibodies against H-antigens (e.g., H1 and H3), are used for the serological analysis (Palmer et al. 1975).

In countries, where Aujeszky’s disease has been eradicated and vaccination is not allowed, serological surveillance of the disease can be carried out using a polyclonal blocking ELISA (Sørensen and Lei 1986) that detects antibodies from both infected and vaccinated pigs. In countries where Aujeszky’s disease is common, vaccination programs with vaccines lacking the gene-encoding glycoprotein E (formerly glycoprotein I) can be established, and serological differentiation between infected and vaccinated pigs is possible with an ELISA described by Van Oirschot et al. (1988).

Diagnosis of PMWS is based on a combination of clinical and pathological findings together with evidence of PCV 2 infection. As the etiology of this disease is not yet clearly understood there is no large scale laboratory assays available for the time being.

Examinations on Slaughter Swine. National herd health monitoring programs by means of slaughter inspection are designed for long-term surveillance of herd health. Concurrent and specific examinations on selected groups of swine can be obtained by slaughter checks. Slaughter checks can be a profitable supplementary tool in handling respiratory problems (Pijuan and Leman 1986; Schulz 1986) and are used routinely in the surveillance of the health state of SPF herds (Keller 1988).

Examining the Snout for Atrophic Rhinitis. Slaughter checks for atrophic rhinitis are usually performed by examining a transverse section of the snout. Optimal results are obtained if the cut is placed between premolar 1 and 2 (Martineau-Doizé et al. 1990). Several methods of scoring atrophic rhinitis have been used (Bendixen 1971; Straw et al. 1983; Bäckström et al. 1985). These methods are based on subjective and visual assessment of structures. Results from different slaughter checks should be compared with caution, as demonstrated by D’Allaire et al. (1988). Comparisons should be performed by the same experienced observer using the same scoring system.

A morphometric technique described by Collins et al. (1989) and modified by Gatlin et al. (1996) yielded highly reproducible results. The method is rather time-consuming and therefore of particular interest in experimental work. A rapid method using inspection of longitudinal snout sections may be performed at slaughter (Visser et al. 1988). However, mild cases of atrophic rhinitis can hardly be differentiated from normal cases by this method.

Examining Thoracic Organs (Plucks). Retrospective evaluations of respiratory health by means of slaughter checks are based on the presence of chronic lesions. As demonstrated by Noyes et al. (1988), the progression and regression of pneumonia in growing pigs are highly dependent on the type of pneumonia involved. Generally, infections with M. hyopneumoniae gained during the early fattening period cannot be detected macroscopically at slaughter (Wallgren et al. 1994).

Several investigators have described methods of recording enzootic pneumonia in slaughter checks (Morrison et al. 1985), whereas little interest has been given to recording other types of lesions. However, all significant pathological conditions, including cranioventral fissures, pleuritis, and pericarditis should be recorded and categorized according to type and extent.

A reasonable history of respiratory health can be revealed by means of slaughter check, but only if all significant pathologic conditions are included. Also, in estimating the effect of respiratory disease on weight gain, a detailed recording of lesions is important. In a study based on 1700 swine from five herds (Christensen and Mousing 1994) only a weak association was found between uncomplicated catarhal bronchopneumonia and daily weight gain from weaning to slaughter. However, a significant association was established between daily weight gain and complicated bronchopneumonia, cranioventral fissures, chronic pleuritis, and pericarditis.

Careful slaughter checks of thoracic organs cannot normally be performed at the slaughter line. The material has to be transferred to an appropriate place for a thorough examination. Christensen (unpublished data) devised a method by which 50–100 plucks per hour can be examined per investigator. The extents of all lesions detected are sketched on a special form containing two schematic drawings of the lung (Figure 7.4, left). Lesions affecting lung tissue are marked on the upper drawing, and pleuritis on the lower drawing. The type of lesion is marked by a character indicating lesion category, other than mycoplasmal pneumonia or chronic pleuritis, one
of which occurs in almost 90% of all cases. Following macroscopic examination and sketching, the extent of the lesions is quantified and recorded using the marked lobe measures as guidelines. The recording form illustrated in Figure 7.4, right, is used when experimental studies require detailed data collection.

The result of a slaughter check is presented in Figure 7.5. Specially programmed personal computer software automatically executes the calculations and printing.

The localization of pleuritis is categorized as dorso-caudal or ventrocranial. The border is drawn through the dorsal endpoints of the interlobular fissures. The dorsal areas of the apical and cardiac lobes are regarded as belonging to the dorsocaudal lung surface area. Based on experience with Danish herds we consider dorsocaudally localized pleuritis as nearly pathognomonic for a previous pleuropneumonic lesion.

In most situations slaughter checks should be performed on at least 30 pigs (with similar or known age if possible) to get a sufficient sample and thus a reliable picture of the herd problem (Morrison et al. 1985; Straw et al. 1989).

The use of a simplified slaughter check procedure based on right-lung examination has been reported by Mousing and Christensen (1993). The procedure interferes much less with normal slaughterhouse routines than a traditional slaughter check and demands fewer people.

**CONTROL OF RESPIRATORY DISEASE**

Pathogenic microorganisms are involved in all important respiratory disorders, and in practice it can be very difficult to protect pig herds from pathogenic microorganisms. Therefore, the in-herd incidence and prevalence of respiratory disease fundamentally depends on the balance between infection pressure and the pigs' ability to resist this pressure. This balance is fragile and highly affected by numerous factors.

Control of respiratory diseases at the herd level may be based on one of two principles: either to eliminate
pathogens from the herd or to diminish the infection pressure in the herd and simultaneously sustain the animal's defense mechanisms (nonspecific, immunological, and inherited). Elimination of pathogens is by far the most effective remedy in controlling many respiratory disorders. However, understanding of the etiology of respiratory diseases and the transmission route of the pathogens involved is of crucial importance for implementation of successful reduction/eradication programs. Enzootic pneumonia is a good example of a respiratory disease where intensive research on *M. hyopneumoniae* has made eradication possible (Zimmermann et al. 1989), not only in single herds, but also in geographical areas (Rautiainen et al. 2001). However, in the recent years, the pig industry has struggled with new emerging diseases like PRRS and PMWS, which have increased the significance of respiratory diseases in many pig herds.

Much research has been performed worldwide on PRRS and effective eradication programs have been installed (Dee et al. 1997, 2001). The etiology of PMWS is still not clarified although porcine circovirus type 2 (PCV2) is part of the syndrome, and therefore eradication of this disease is not possible for the time being.

**Elimination of Pathogens from the Herd**

The United States, Denmark, and Switzerland have implemented specific pathogen free (SPF) pig production many years ago and thereby successfully controlled respiratory diseases like enzootic pneumonia, pleuropneumonia, and progressive atrophic rhinitis. SPF pig production is principally based on a cesarean-derived and isolator-raised first generation of rather vulnerable breeding animals, which are gradually adapted to a very clean environment. The next generations of SPF pigs are

---

### Slaughter Check—Plucks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Producer: __________</th>
<th>Slaughter date: 07/03/90</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tattoo number: 11947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clinic:</strong>_________</td>
<td>Number of pigs examined: 39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of lesion</th>
<th>Pigs with lesion number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Average extension/intensity of lesion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Catarhal pneumonia, mycoplasma-like</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>76.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catarhal pneumonia, complicated</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fissures in apical and cardiac lobes</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleuropneumonia, acute/subacute</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleuropneumonia, chronic</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pleuritis, ventrocranial</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pleuritis, dorsocaudal</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embolic pneumonia</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pericarditis</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic perihepatitis</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver spots</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Average extension of pneumonia: % of total lung vol
Average intensity of fissures: slight = 1, marked = 2, deep = 3
Average extension of pleuritis: area % of outer lung surface
Average extension of pericarditis: area % of heart surface
Average intensity of liverspot: 1–4 = 1, 5–15 = 2, >15 = 3

**ABC:** lesions are often caused by *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae*
**DEG:** lesions are often caused by *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae*

---

7.5. Sample report of results of pluck examination at slaughter check (Christensen et al. 1999).
born naturally, but kept and transported with strict biosecurity measures (Barfod 2004). Implementation of such a production system is therefore technically advanced, logistically laborious, and costly, but once established, economical and welfare related benefits from raising healthier pigs may be obtained.

Other methods for eliminating respiratory pathogens from herds include early weaning, strict separation of age groups of pigs, preferably on different geographical sites (multisite systems), removal of certain age groups of pigs, removal of infected individuals, and intensive herd medication. Such elements can be used together in different combinations.

Weaning at 1–3 weeks of age is recommended in segregated early weaning to minimize the risk of infection of piglets from the sow with pathogens like toxigenic P. multocida, M. hyopneumoniae, and A. pleuropneumoniae. Transmission of M. hyopneumoniae from sow to offspring was prevented without use of medication by weaning piglets at 7–10 days of age and segregating them off-site (Dritz et al. 1996). However, weaning at such young ages will not be accepted in several countries (Von Borell 1996). Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae was successfully eradicated from herds by removing pigs younger than 10 months from the herd and simultaneously stopping farrowings for 2 weeks (Zimmermann et al. 1989). Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae was eliminated from piglets by medicated early weaning (Larsen et al. 1990a) and sometimes from infected herds by means of heavy medication and culling of seropositive animals (Larivière et al. 1990). However, in many countries heavy medication of animals is not accepted anymore in order to prevent problems with antimicrobial resistance. Atrophic rhinitis seems to be impossible to eliminate by medication programs alone (Larsen et al. 1990b), but intensive research and development of effective vaccines within the last decades have minimized the welfare—and economical problems caused by this disease.

PRRS can successfully be controlled in well-immunized sow herds by nursery depopulation for 14 days (Dee et al. 1996), and Batista et al. (2002) found results indicating that persistence and shedding of PRRS virus are of short duration in breeding-age gilts, which may facilitate maintenance of immunity against PRRS in the sow units. Eradication programs for Aujeszky’s disease in geographical areas can be carried out by test and slaughter (Andersen 1991) or by intensive vaccination (Stegeman et al. 1994a, b; Van Oirschot et al. 1996) or by combining the two methods (Leontides 1994).

To prevent reinfection of high-health herds with respiratory pathogens, strict control of brought-in pigs, vehicles, persons, etc., must be maintained. Nielsen and Frederiksen (1990) have demonstrated that human isolates of toxigenic P. multocida can induce progressive atrophic rhinitis in pigs, indicating that humans may act as carriers of swine pathogenic Pasteurella strains between herds.

### Infection Pressure and Sustaining Herd Defense Mechanisms

The influence of several herd factors is decisive in sustaining herd resistance against respiratory pathogens and in reducing the level of such pathogens in the herd. Herd factors influencing the host/pathogen balance are numerous. In Table 7.9, examples of such factors are listed and arbitrarily weighted according to their importance. Short-term control measures against respiratory disease predominantly include correcting managerial factors such as vaccination and antibiotic treatment of sick animals, isolation arrangements, etc. Permanent improvement of respiratory health often requires more radical and expensive changes in production systems and housing. Important long-acting herd factors to take into consideration are stock rate, flow of animals to

#### Table 7.9. Herd factors with detrimental effects on respiratory system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors</th>
<th>Degree of Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Production system</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High stocking density</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conventional health system (not SPF or minimal disease production system)</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction of animals from herds with unknown or low health status</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous flow of animals through facilities (no movement of pigs in batches)</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of genetically disposed breeds</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of purebreds instead of crossed</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badly insulated and ventilated facilities (causing improper temperature regulation and air exchange, drafts)</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficiently divided facilities combined with housing of differently aged animals in same airspace</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pens divided without solid separations</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large grower or finishing rooms (containing more than 200–300 pigs)</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slatted floors</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient caloric intake</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improper content of macro- and microelements in feed</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed not supplemented with fat (dust from feed)</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of nonrespiratory pathogens</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colibacillosis</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysentery</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mange</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascarids</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management deficiencies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient control of climate</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor monitoring of signs of disease</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of or incorrect preventive measures</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor caretaking of sick animals (isolation, treatment)</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random distribution of piglets between sows</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple moving and mingling of pigs during growth period</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor hygiene</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor biosecurity</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and from the herd and internal flow of animals through the facilities, insulation and ventilation of buildings, separation of large barns, and separation of different age groups in multisite production systems. Also, avoidance of mixing the piglets between sows in the suckling period and weaning the pigs a little older may improve the immunological capacity against respiratory diseases.

**Management.** Management remains the central factor in controlling respiratory problems. A constant and competent supervising of installations and animal behavior allows immediate and appropriate intervention when problems arise. In this context it has to be recognized that respiratory diseases are not always associated with obvious clinical signs. In fact, most cases of respiratory disease occur subclinically or with only vague symptoms. Even outbreaks of acute pleuropneumonia may occur without clear respiratory symptoms.

**Introduction of Genetic Material.** The risk of introducing disease through purchase of traditionally reared breeding animals can be avoided if a necessary supply of genetic material is ensured by means of artificial insemination, embryonated eggs, or cesarean-derived piglets. However, under commercial conditions a more practicable alternative will be to introduce breeding animals in batches from a breeding herd with the same health status as the buyer’s. Prior to introduction into the herd, the animals could be quarantined for 6 to 12 weeks, blood-tested, and vaccinated if necessary.

**Stocking Density.** In spite of the fact that crowding greatly increases the incidence of respiratory diseases, it may be difficult to motivate managers to decrease stocking rate, since calculations do not always reveal a profit by this remedy. In the case of only moderate respiratory problems, the profit due to better health often will be counterbalanced by the loss due to decreased utilization of herd facilities. Nevertheless, lowering stock density remains one of the most effective remedies against serious respiratory problems.

**Barriers Between Differently Aged Animals.** In herds with an inadequate separation between pigs of different ages microbes are continuously transmitted from older to younger animals, with a subsequently continuous replication of pathogens. Dissimilar climatic needs of different age groups in the same room may be a contributing adverse factor. To limit the multiplication of pathogens, it is of crucial importance in larger herds to build barriers between groups of differently aged animals and to move pigs in batches. The facilities should be adapted to all-in/all-out production, with rooms containing not more than 200–300 individuals. Ideally, the age difference in weaner batches should not exceed 2 weeks.

The potential of age group separation for preventing transmission of infection increases with the distance between groups. Maximal effect is achieved in multisite production systems with segregated herds for the breeding, nursery, and growing pigs.

**Air Pollutants.** To prevent massive air pollution and to maintain an acceptable relative humidity, forced ventilation is necessary in confined facilities. The lower the airspace per pig, the higher the air exchange is necessary. However, it is difficult to compensate completely for overcrowding. For example, if the stocking rate is doubled, the ventilation rate should be increased tenfold to maintain the same clearance of air contaminants (Wathes 1983). If a significant effect on the dust concentration is to be achieved, large air-cleaning equipment is necessary (Gustafsson 1989).

Ventilation systems often recirculate room air with fresh air. This mixing of air contributes to the spread of respiratory pathogens. Accordingly, the level of respirable dust is increased in high-speed recirculation systems (Meyer and Manbeck 1986). Hunneman et al. (1986) indicate that respiratory diseases can be controlled better in buildings with negative pressure ventilation, where the polluted air is removed and exchanged for totally fresh air. Nicks et al. (1989) found that the aerial ammonia concentration was 21 ppm and 12 ppm in two compartments of a farrowing house. In the former compartment a larger proportion of the extracted air was recirculated.

**Climate.** Respiratory problems often arise in cold and humid barns with no artificial heating. Frequently, the choice is between reducing humidity by means of a high air exchange rate, resulting in lower room temperature, or warming up the room by means of a lower air exchange rate. The first alternative is advisable according to experience. Cold, clean, dry air is by far superior to warm, polluted, humid air. Besides, the microclimate in a cold barn can be improved and protected against draft by providing straw bedding or and some sort of covering for resting places (Feenstra 1985) and by establishing solid separations between pens; pen separations should be solid to a height of 60 cm.

**Nutrition.** In practice, malnutrition is rarely of importance in creating respiratory problems. Nevertheless, the relevance of vitamin E and selenium for immunity (Hayek et al. 1989) has to be considered. A major part of the dust particles in the air in swine barns arises from the feed. The addition of fat or wet feeding systems significantly reduces the dust problem.

**Nonrespiratory Pathogens.** There is a well-documented association between enteric disorders and respiratory problems. Therefore, solving respiratory problems is not possible if concurrent enteric problems are neglected. Mange and ascarids also have to be considered. Severe at-
tackles of mange weaken the general resistance, and migrating ascarids cause lung lesions, increasing the susceptibility to respiratory pathogens.

**Medication.** Due to development of antimicrobial resistance in many bacterial species, restrictions have been put on prophylactic use of antibiotics in livestock production in many countries. However, the ability to quickly combat outbreaks of respiratory disease depends on immediate medication of diseased individuals. Pigs with signs of pneumonia should be treated parenterally with the appropriate antibiotics because their consumption of water and feed might be significantly decreased (Goovaerts et al. 1986; Pijpers et al. 1990). Medication for 2–3 days will be sufficient in most cases. Jørgensen (1988) found that pigs receiving immediate and intensive parenteral treatment against clinical pneumonia had a better weight gain than pigs receiving a less intensive treatment. In outbreaks of pneumonia, it can be necessary that pigs in contact with clinically diseased individuals receive medication in feed or water for 4–7 days.

**Vaccination.** Vaccines have been developed against progressive atrophic rhinitis, *A. pleuropneumoniae*, *M. hyopneumoniae*, PRRS, and Aujeszky’s disease. Vaccines against atrophic rhinitis can be based on a recombinant derivative of the *P. multocida* toxin (Nielsen et al. 1991a) and can be used for vaccination of both sows and pigs. However, some vaccines are still based on *P. multocida* and *B. bronchiseptica* bacterins. *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* vaccines comprise subunit vaccines based on Apx toxins and an outer membrane protein (Bosch 1994), which can be used to vaccinate pigs against all serotypes, and bacterin-based vaccines where it is important to use the homologues serotypes in order to get proper protection (Nielsen, 1982). *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* vaccines are based on bacterins and are used for very young pigs (Dayalu et al. 1992; Weiss and Petersen 1992). However, a study by Opriessnig et al. (2003) showed that vaccination with *A. pleuropneumoniae* and *M. hyopneumoniae* bacterins using the approved protocol in the U.S. significantly increased the length of viremia with PCV2. Also, they found a higher copy number of the PCV2 genome in serum, a wider range of tissue distribution of PCV2 antigen, and an increased severity of lymphoid depletion. Thus, veterinarians may need to consider changes in vaccination protocols in herds with recurrent PCV2-associated PMWS. Vaccines against PRRS can be based on live attenuated U.S. or E.U. virus strains or they can be inactivated. The marker vaccines against Aujeszky’s disease are gene-deleted (Mettenleiter et al. 1985; Quint et al. 1987; Moormann et al. 1990), which makes it possible to distinguish serologically between vaccinated and naturally infected pigs (Van Oirschot et al. 1986). Vaccines against swine influenza is based on an inactivated whole influenza virus or split-products vaccines prepared from detergent-treated virus. The virus strains used are of human origin and include H1N1 and H3N2, which are the most common types, both in humans and in pigs.

**Hygiene.** To prevent transmission of respiratory pathogens between herds, particularly in production systems where certain respiratory pathogens are totally prohibited (SPF), it is important to clean, wash, and disinfect possible outside transmitters such as vehicles, delivery rooms, entrance rooms, tools, etc. In all-in/all-out production systems it is also of crucial importance to clean and disinfect the facilities between the batches of animals. However, too much washing in rooms which still are housing pigs can even aggravate a respiratory disease problem by cooling and humidifying the rooms.

**ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE OF RESPIRATORY DISEASES**

Respiratory disorders cause substantial losses to the swine industry. In a survey of swine health expenditures in Missouri, pneumonia and rhinitis were the two disease categories with the greatest impact on total disease expenses (14% and 10%, respectively) (Kliebenstein et al. 1982/83). Data from the National Animal Health Monitoring System in Ohio, 1986–1987, revealed that pneumonia was by far the most costly disease in swine, accounting for $5.42 U.S. per pig per year out of total costs of $21.34 per pig due to diseases (Miller and Dorn 1987). Respiratory disease expenditures for swine production in the former German Democratic Republic were estimated at DME 700 million per year. This reduction in returns was allocated among damaged lungs, 3%; destroyed and disposed diseased animals, 37%; and reduced growth rate, 60% (Hoy et al. 1987).

Losses associated with respiratory disease vary considerably between herds (Lindqvist 1974; Wilson et al. 1986) but also between seasons. Boessen et al. (1988) reported a seasonal variation of more than 30% in the losses due to pneumonia (from $1.31 per hog in the winter of 1986, to $0.89 in the following summer, and back up to $1.26 in the winter of 1987). Similarly, the variation in losses due to rhinitis was more than 60% (from $0.54 per hog in the winter of 1986, to $1.37 in the following summer, to $0.50 in the winter of 1987). At herd level the total cost of respiratory disease is the sum of output losses—namely, increased mortality, decreased weight gain, increased feed consumption, and decreased meat quality or payment—and of control expenditures—for example, treatments, vaccination programs, hygiene procedures, and extra labor (Schepers 1990). On a national scale, this method of calculation of the costs has been used by Mousing et al. (1996) for PRRS and by Bækbo et al. (1996) for *M. hyopneumoniae*.

In practical situations, the estimated economic impact of respiratory disorders in a herd must be based on slaughterhouse information and data on productivity.
and disease recordings in the herd: current weight gain or days to slaughter, feed efficiency, incidence of clinical respiratory disease and other diseases, mortality rate, results of necropsies, severity of lesions observed at slaughter, and finally the costs of current treatment and prophylaxis strategy.

The economic effect of each single respiratory disease is difficult to clarify, as reflected in inconsistent results from different studies. It is understandable that disease effects vary between studies: respiratory diseases are always the result of numerous interacting microbial and physical insults, different in type and grade as well. For example, clinical studies on the effect of *M. hyopneumoniae* will show significantly greater losses in areas with a high burden of different pathogens than in areas with few pathogens in the swine population. Thacker et al. (1999) found for example that *M. hyopneumoniae* potentiates the severity and duration of PRRS virus–induced pneumonia. Each disease situation is unique; and data from an investigation can be assessed only by an observer with a detailed knowledge of the situation in question.

**Output Losses due to Enzootic Pneumonia**

Most investigations on the economic effect of enzootic pneumonia are based on the prevalence of pneumonia at slaughter and the association with daily weight gain. However, in herds where pneumonia predominantly occurs in young pigs, the lesions may be resolved by the time of slaughter (Wallgren et al. 1990). In studies that compare daily weight gain between pigs with pneumonia and control pigs without pneumonia, this could contribute to underestimation of the effect. This may be the main reason for the great variability in reported effects on daily weight gain, varying from positive effect to about 20% decrease (Bäckström et al. 1975; Christensen 1984; Hoy et al. 1985; Love et al. 1985; Wilson et al. 1986; Le Foll et al. 1988; Cowart et al. 1990; Clark et al. 1993). Based on a review and analysis of 27 studies, Straw et al. (1989) concluded that, on the average, mycoplasmal pneumonia caused a 17% decrease in daily weight gain and a 14% decrease in feed efficiency. From different studies on the association between the severity of pneumonia and the decrease in weight gain, Straw et al. (1989) deduced that, on the average, for every 10% of the lung with pneumonic lesions, the mean daily gain is reduced by 37 g.

Lundeheim (1979), Wallgren et al. (1990), and Clark et al. (1993) suggested that pneumonia possesses its greatest influence on total weight gain when it occurs in young pigs. Contrary to this, Dijk et al. (1984), Hartley et al. (1988b), and Jørgensen (1988) proposed that pneumonia in older pigs is more damaging to the average weight gain. The importance of differentiating between uncomplicated and complicated bronchopneumonia in slaughter checks was documented in a study by Christensen and Mousing (1994). The decrease in daily weight gain was 6 g in pigs with uncomplicated bronchopneumonia and 38 g in pigs with complicated bronchopneumonia. Maes et al. (1999) made cost benefit analyses on *M. hyopneumoniae* vaccination in multisite herds and found that vaccination significantly improved daily weight gain, feed conversion ratio, medication costs, prevalence of pneumonia, and severity of pneumonic lesions. Vaccination was found economically attractive because it resulted in an increase of the net return to labor with 1.3 ECU per finishing pig sold.

**Output Losses due to Pleuropneumonia**

As with enzootic pneumonia, results from examinations of the effect of pleuropneumonia on daily weight gain vary over a wide range. Decreases in daily weight gain from none to 20% are reported (Saunders et al. 1981; Christensen 1982; Hunneman 1983; Rosendal and Mitchell 1983; Weibel et al. 1983; Desrosiers 1986; Wilson et al. 1986; Rohrbach et al. 1993). In an *A. pleuropneumoniae*–infected herd, pigs with pleuropneumonic lesions at slaughter had significantly better daily weight gain than pigs without this lesion (Christensen and Mousing 1994). This astonishing observation may indicate that many pigs that did not have lesions at slaughter had nevertheless suffered from pleuropneumonia earlier in the growing period, with high detrimental effect on weight gain. Also, this observation clearly demonstrates the risk of miscalculating the effect of disease from slaughter data for lesions of relatively short duration. Straw et al. (1989) concluded from their review that, on average, pleuropneumonia caused a 34% decrease in daily weight gain and a 26% decrease in feed efficiency.

Occasionally, 10–20% or more of individuals in batches of slaughter swine from newly infected herds are totally condemned at slaughter due to acute pleuropneumonia. The risk of condemnation highly increases if pigs are stored alive at the slaughterhouse for more than 24 hours (Christensen 1986). Slaughter pigs from nonimmune herds, in particular pigs from SPF herds, also are at risk of contracting acute pleuropneumonia if housed for more than 24 hours with infected pigs. The mortality may be as high as 10–20% in acute outbreaks but is usually below 1% in chronically infected herds. Total losses due to pleuropneumonia, including mortality, were assessed at 2% of the value of produced slaughter swine, estimated in three pleuropneumonia-infected herds with high prevalences of pleuritis at slaughter (Christensen 1981).

**Output Losses due to Chronic Pleuritis**

In Danish pig herds a high frequency of chronic pleuritis at slaughter is closely associated with *A. pleuropneumoniae* infection (Christensen 1981; Mousing et al. 1989). Several studies have been conducted describing the economic implications of pleuritis; in many herds, chronic pleuritis resulted in 7–12 extra days to attain slaughter weight (Christensen 1982, 1984). Following a
clinical outbreak of respiratory disease in a large integrated herd, pigs with chronic pleuritis grew slower than pigs without this lesion (requiring 8 extra days to attain market weight), but prior to the outbreak there was no apparent association between chronic pleuritis and days to market (Hartley et al. 1988b). Results from several other studies indicate that pigs with chronic pleuritis have a reduced rate of weight gain (Bäckström et al. 1975; Rasmussen 1984; Hoy et al. 1985; Love et al. 1985). On the other hand, Le Foll et al. (1988) reported no effect of chronic pleuritis on growth rate.

Output Losses due to Atrophic Rhinitis

In experimental studies considerable decrease in daily weight gain has been reported (Nielsen et al. 1991a), but as for pneumonia, the output losses reported for atrophic rhinitis vary from one study to another (Pedersen and Barfod 1977; Love et al. 1985; Straw and Ralston 1986; Le Foll et al. 1988; Lieschke et al. 1989; Cowart et al. 1990; Dumas et al. 1990; Rissing et al. 2002). The effect on daily weight gain in these studies varied from no effect to a 13% decrease. Not only have results differed between surveys, but researchers often have found a varying effect between herds in a given survey. In a study of two herds, a decreased rate of weight gain could be attributed to atrophic rhinitis in only one of them (Wilson et al. 1986), and Scheit et al. (1990) could demonstrate a negative effect of atrophic rhinitis in only one out of three herds.

Output Losses due to PRRS

Acute outbreaks of PRRS can give substantial economical losses due to dramatic increase in the mortality rate. In a large breeding farm, Pejsak et al. (1997) observed a mortality rate of nearly 76% during the 5th week of the outbreak when 1,562 out of 2,067 piglets were either born dead or died prior to weaning. Preweaning mortality rates gradually returned to normal values within 16 weeks. However, the incidence of respiratory disease in the weaned and fattening pigs increased during this time. Although prophylactic treatment against respiratory diseases were administered, the mortality rate doubled for the weaned and fattening pigs. Dee et al. (1997) showed that controlling the disease by nursery depopulation reduced the margin over variable costs in 32 out of 34 pig herds. Test and removal of infected animals have also shown to be a way of eliminating PRRS in 5 chronically infected breeding herds (Dee et al. 2001). Garner et al. (2001) estimated that if the disease became established in Australia opportunity losses in gross national income of 5–11% per year would occur.

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 7 DISEASES OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM


STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

The skin acts as both a barrier and a communication between the external environment and the internal organs. Its functions include maintenance of body fluids, electrolytes, and macromolecules; protection against chemical, physical, and microbiological damage or invasion; and sensory perception of touch, pressure, pain, itch, and temperature change. Skin also regulates body temperature through support of hair coat, regulation of cutaneous blood supply, and sweat gland function (Scott 1988). Skin has an important function of immunoregulation.

The skin of swine is basically similar in histologic structure to that of other domestic animals and, compared with other species, has many more similarities to human skin (Meyer et al. 1978).

The skin is the largest body organ and can in some animals constitute 12–24% of body weight according to age. In the pig the skin represents between 10% and 12% of body weight at birth and around 7% in adult animals, although in some breeds, such as the Meishan, skin can be 10–12% of adult body weight.

The skin of the pig is divided into two layers, the epidermis and dermis. In most areas the epidermis consists of four layers, since the stratum lucidum is absent except in the snout. The epidermis is relatively thick, the major cells being the keratinocytes in the stratum basale, the polygonal cells in the stratum spinosum, flattened cells in the stratum granulosum, and cornified cells in the stratum corneum. The thickness of the epidermis varies considerably in different areas of the body (Meyer et al. 1978). Generally the skin of the dorsum is thicker and hairier than the skin of the ventrum. Maximum thickness is between the toes and on the lips, the snout, and the shield, which is unique to the scapular and costal region in older boars. The thinnest layers are found in the axilla, eyelids, and ventral areas of the thorax and abdomen (Marcarian and Calhoun 1966).

The dermis consists of two ill-defined layers beneath which is a prominent layer of adipose tissue (hypodermis). The two layers of the dermis, the stratum papillaris and stratum reticularis, are composed of connective tissue in which are situated blood vessels, nerves, lymphatics, and associated epidermal appendages. Cells found in the dermis include fibroblasts, melanocytes, and mast cells. Origins of hair follicles and sweat glands are found in the hypodermis.

The holocrine sebaceous glands of the pig are branched alveolar and open into the neck of the main hair follicle. The sweat glands are coiled, tubular, and apocrine, and are found in all areas, although there are relatively few (about 25/cm²) compared with other species, except on the snout.

In swine the short, stout hair follicles possess arrectores pilorum muscles attached to the outer root sheath; the bristles occur either singly or in groups of two or three. The hair coat consists of 60–70% bristles and 30–40% fine downy hair. Specialized forms of hair are also found—in particular, tactile hairs in the region of the snout (Marcarian and Calhoun 1966; Mowafy and Cassens 1975). Specialized seromucoid glands are found in the carpal glands, located behind the carpus, and in the mental (mandibular) organ, located in the intermandibular space.

CLINICAL EXAMINATION AND DIAGNOSIS

Skin diseases may involve the skin only or be cutaneous manifestations of internal disease (Tables 8.1 and 8.2). Diseases restricted to the skin are, for example, ear necrosis, pityriasis rosea, and swine pox. Examples of skin lesions symptomatic of a more general pathophysiological condition are erysipelas, classical swine fever, and dermatitis/nephropathy syndrome. It is essential therefore that an accurate history be taken, followed by a thorough clinical examination, involving the entire animal first and then the skin itself. Examination of the skin should aim to define the nature of lesions (primary or secondary) or abnormality (vesicles or pustules,
### Table 8.1. Causes of diseases of the skin in swine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. Infectious</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bacterial</strong></td>
<td><strong>Viral</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exudative epidermitis</td>
<td>Swine pox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcosis</td>
<td>Swine vesicular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear necrosis</td>
<td>Vesicular stomatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spirochetosis</td>
<td>Vesicular exanthema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial necrosis</td>
<td>Porcine parvovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abscesses</td>
<td>Idiopathic vesicular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erysipelas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonellosis</td>
<td>Classical swine fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pasteurellosis</td>
<td>African swine fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edema disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anthrax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant edema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B. Noninfectious</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental</td>
<td>Nutritional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunburn</td>
<td>Parakeratosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photosensitization</td>
<td>Fatty acid deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin necrosis</td>
<td>Iodine deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursitis</td>
<td>Riboflavin deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callosities</td>
<td>Pantothenic acid deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limb and foot lesions</td>
<td>Biotin deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin A, C, and E deficiencies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 8.2. Differential diagnosis of skin diseases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Lesions and Signs</th>
<th>Diseases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Head and neck</td>
<td>Macules, vesicles, pustules, greasy exudate (seborrhea), crusts in suckling piglets and weaners especially around the eyes</td>
<td>Exudative epidermitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pustules, erosions, crusts, and abscesses</td>
<td>Streptococcosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plaques, pustules, crusts, alopecia with pruritus</td>
<td>Sarcoptic mange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pustules, erosions, necrosis, crusts below the eye, cheek, and lips in suckling piglets</td>
<td>Facial necrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edema around eyes, conjunctiva, and frontal area mainly in weaners and young growers</td>
<td>Edema disease (E. coli)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edema of head and throat</td>
<td>Malignant edema (Clostridium sp.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red to purple discoloration of snout, face, and neck (jowls)</td>
<td>Septicemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discrete ulcer and crust over mandible in sows</td>
<td>Pressure necrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vesicles, pustules, erosions on snout, lips, mouth, and tongue</td>
<td>Foot-and-mouth disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Swine vesicular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vesicular exanthema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vesicular stomatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ears</td>
<td>Porcine parvovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vesicles, erosions, black crusts</td>
<td>Idiopathic vesicular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Black necrosis, ulcers on the tips and posterior edge of the pinna in piglets</td>
<td>Swine pox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deep ulcers at the base of the pinna in growers, often bilateral</td>
<td>Ear necrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Erythema, red to purple blotchy discoloration</td>
<td>Salmonellosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plaques, brown or gray crusts on the inner ear, ear shaking, pruritus, gray thick crusts on adult animals</td>
<td>Erysipelas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Macules, pustules, black crusts</td>
<td>Ulcerative spirochetosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Circular macules, patches, small scales, pink to red discoloration behind ears and neck</td>
<td>Septicemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Classical swine fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>African swine fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sunburn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sarcoptic mange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exudative epidermitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Streptococcosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ringworm (Microsporosis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Lesions and Signs</td>
<td>Diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsum</td>
<td>Hyperkeratosis, dry scales along spine, some alopecia</td>
<td>Essential fatty acid; vitamin A, C, or E; or zinc deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complete absence of epithelium (large red shiny areas) in newborn piglets</td>
<td>Sarcoptic mange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abscesses and pressure necrosis over spine between last ribs and lumbar area in sows</td>
<td>Epitheliogenesis imperfecta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pressure sores, due to confinement in farrowing crates, pressure from crate bars or prongs</td>
<td>Pressure sore due to confinement on solid or mesh floors, low energy intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder</td>
<td>Large deep discrete ulcer, necrosis and crust over spine of scapula in sows</td>
<td>Exudative epidermitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>often in poor body condition</td>
<td>Streptococcosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventral abdomen</td>
<td>Erythema, pustules, dark brown crusts, exudate</td>
<td>Sarcoptic mange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Erythema, round to diamond-shaped red plaques, often with necrotic centers, fever, anorexia, arthritis</td>
<td>Candidiasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Papules seen as ringlike lesions, collettes, flakes and scales (3- to 14-week-old pigs)</td>
<td>Biotin deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Circular pink to red macules, scales, or crusts around periphery</td>
<td>Erysipelas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Papules, thick crusts, fissures, exudate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vesicles, pustules, black scabs, round raised areas with depressed centers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Erythema, red to purple or black discoloration, skin necrosis in lactating sows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Necrosis of teats, especially pectoral teats in piglets, end of teat appears as red or black (scab) spots</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral abdomen and flank</td>
<td>Erythema, round to diamond-shaped red plaques, often with necrotic centers, fever, anorexia, arthritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Papules, vesicles, pustules, scales, crusts, greasy exudate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pustules, scales, thick wrinkled skin, alopecia, crusts, with hyperkeratosis</td>
<td>Erysipelas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Papules, plaques seen as ringlike lesions, collettes, scales (3- to 14-week-old pigs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Circular pink to red macules varying in size, scales or crusts around periphery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hindquarters</td>
<td>Erythema of the scrotum, vulva, and perineum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tail necrosis, ulceration, abscesses (growers)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Large discrete ulcer, necrosis, scab over hip bone (adult)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Erythema, black necrosis, especially scrotum or vulva</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Small round raised wheals, urticarial reaction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legs (limbs)</td>
<td>Erythema, red to purple discoloration especially around hocks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Papules, plaques seen as ringlike lesions, collettes, scales on medial thighs and legs (3- to 14-week-old pigs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Papules, thick crusts, fissures, papillomas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complete absence of epithelium (red shiny area) in newborn piglets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thick fibrotic areas over joints (hocks, elbows, fetlocks, tuber ischii) often ulcerated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Necrosis of carpus, hocks especially, in suckling piglets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distal limb, coronary band, feet</td>
<td>Thick, dry crusts, deep fissures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vesicles, pustules, erosions around coronary band and accessory digits, with lameness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abscesses, discharges, swelling of the coronary band</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thickening, ridges and furrows parallel to coronary band</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
edema or erythema). This should be followed by formulation of a differential diagnosis. Tests should then be carried out to confirm a diagnosis (skin scraping, culture, or biopsy) in order to determine the approach to treatment and subsequent prevention.

**History**
Information obtained should include the following:

**Type of Husbandry and Housing System.** Extensive or free-range systems may predispose to sunburn or photosensitization. Intensive indoor housing often leads to conditions such as pressure sores in sows or teat necrosis in piglets. Infectious conditions such as exudative dermatitis are more frequently seen in continuous flow through systems than in all-in/all-out systems.

**Specific Environmental Conditions.** Poor hygiene and high ambient temperatures, relative humidity, and stocking density may predispose to outbreaks of staphylococcal and streptococcal pyoderma. Pityriasis rosea is also more frequently seen with high stocking densities and high humidity. A seasonal pattern may be evident for some skin diseases.

**Recent Movement.** The mixing of pigs—for example, at weaning—may result in fighting and biting and increase the incidence of exudative epidermitis in the nursery.

**Signs of Trauma.** Self-inflicted trauma may be due to pruritus associated with sarcoptic mange or lice infestation.

**Nutrition.** Deficiencies of the B group vitamins, zinc, or essential fatty acids can result in dry, scaly, dandruff-like dermatitis or parakeratosis.

**Breed.** Breed may indicate a congenital or hereditary condition. Pityriasis rosea has been commonly seen in Landrace pigs and in the progeny of pigs that have had ptyriasis rosea as weaners. Other inherited conditions include dermatosis vegetans and epitheliogenesis imperfecta.

**Age.** A number of diseases are more frequently seen in certain age groups. Exudative epidermitis rarely affects pigs older than 6 weeks of age, and ptyriasis rosea is seen only in pigs between 2 and 6 weeks of age. Teat necrosis usually occurs within 24 hours after birth. Nutritional deficiencies are unlikely to occur before weaning.

**Chronology of Lesions.** Information relating to initial lesions observed and their location may indicate a typical clinical evolution. In swine pox, for example, macules are observed initially, and then vesicles and pustules that rupture to form a dark circumscribed crust before healing. Exudative epidermitis often commences as macules and pustules around the eyes before spreading over the entire body of piglets.

**Other Clinical Signs.** A history of other signs such as anorexia, depression, loss of body condition, reluctance to move, or diarrhea may indicate the skin lesions are the result of an internal disease.

**Incidence.** The number of animals affected, the contagious nature, and the history of mortalities may suggest an infectious disease such as exudative epidermitis or erysipelas, which tends to spread rapidly, whereas congenital and hereditary conditions such as pityriasis rosea are seen at a constant rate within a herd.

**Response to Therapy.** Variation in response to therapy may help to differentiate between viral, bacterial, and fungal infections—for example, swine pox, streptococcal dermatitis, and ringworm. Pityriasis rosea does not respond to any treatment, whereas parakeratosis responds dramatically to the addition of zinc and essential fatty acids to the diet.

**Clinical Examination**
Before carrying out a detailed examination of the skin a general clinical examination is necessary to determine whether the skin disease is symptomatic of an internal disease.

Internal diseases causing skin lesions or skin abnormalities such as abnormal color changes include erysipelas, salmonellosis, pasteurellosis, mastitis, classical swine and African swine fever, and dermatitis/nephropathy syndrome. Almost any septicemia or toxinemia can cause erythema or cyanosis characterized by red to purple discoloration, especially on the extremities and easily seen in the white breeds. Urticaria, seen as multiple pink to purple raised areas of skin, commonly occurs in cases of erysipelas, beta-hemolytic streptococcal infections, food allergy, or insect bites. Blue to black skin discoloration with necrosis can indicate gangrene. Necrosis of the ears and tail of piglets is also black. Pallor is often an indication of blood loss due to conditions such as proliferative enteropathy or gastric ulcerations.

Pruritus causes scratching and should be looked for as a possible sign of sarcoptic mange or lice infestation. Scratching is frequently accompanied by shaking of the head due to the presence of mites in the ears and can result in aural hematomas. Alopecia and excoriation may also be an indicator of intense scratching seen in chronic sarcoptic mange.

Edema of the skin can indicate a systemic disease, for example, hypoproteinemia, vasculitis, increased vascular permeability such as in malignant edema caused by *Clostridium septicum* and in edema disease associated with *Escherichia coli*, the last two conditions producing edema around the head.
Skin lesions are classified as primary, the direct result of the insult or disease, or as secondary, a result of evolutionary changes to the skin dictated by factors such as the cause of the disease, secondary infection, self-trauma, etc.

It is essential for the clinician to differentiate between primary lesions and secondary lesions; however, when the animal is presented, only secondary lesions may be seen. Examination of the entire body of several animals may be necessary to locate primary lesions on recently affected cases.

**Primary Lesions.** Macules, defined as circumscribed flat discolorations less than 1 cm in diameter, and papules, more solid, raised areas of skin of varying color, are seen in the early stages of exudative epidermitis, erysipelas, and swine pox.

Plaques, elevated superficial lesions more than 0.5 cm in diameter, scattered over the whole body surface of young growing pigs have been associated with erysipelas, pityriasis rosea, and Aujeszky’s disease.

Vesicles are well-demarcated, dome-shaped lesions (<1 cm) usually containing serum or inflammatory exudate. They are pale or translucent and are characteristic of a number of the viral skin diseases in swine, such as swine pox, foot-and-mouth disease, swine vesicular disease, and vesicular stomatitis. Similar lesions have been reported in swine with porcine parvovirus infection (Kresse et al. 1985).

Pustules are elevated lesions filled with inflammatory cells (leukocytes) and can be follicular or epidermal. They are white, yellow, or red (hemorrhagic) and, in some cases, are surrounded by erythema. Pustules in swine are commonly associated with streptococcal infections, exudative epidermitis, and swine pox.

Wheals are circumscribed, raised, round or oval areas of skin due to edema. They may be blanched or slightly erythematous. The edema is usually associated with the dermis. Fly and mosquito bites frequently cause wheals.

**Secondary Lesions.** Scales or flakes can indicate abnormal keratinization and shedding caused by ectoparasites, such as *Sarcoptes scabiei*, or by bacterial skin diseases. Scales are seen on the thin skin of piglets with exudative epidermitis, on the inner side of the margin of the ringlike lesions of pityriasis rosea, and on the outer periphery of ringworm lesions. Scales may be mixed with sebum and sweat, giving a greasy or oily appearance—seborrhea.

Crusts are a very common secondary skin lesion of swine and are due to a combination of serum, sebum, blood, and cutaneous debris adhering above the normal skin surface. Crusts are seen following bacterial infections and viral vesicular diseases, especially swine pox, and as a result of pruritus associated with sarcoptic mange or lice infestation.

Hyperkeratosis, an increased thickening of the stratum corneum, develops with nutritionally related metabolic disorders such as vitamin A, zinc, and fatty-acid deficiencies or with local callus formation due to trauma associated with pressure and friction. Erythema and intense pruritus with hyperkeratosis and acanthosis have been associated with in-feed tiamulin therapy (Laperle et al. 1988).

Erosions involving the epidermis only and ulcers involving also the dermis are caused by deep bacterial infections (*Staphylococcus* spp., *Streptococcus* spp., *Fusobacterium necrophorum*, and a spirochete referred to as “*Borrelia suis*”) or may be due to trauma or pressure.

Severe scratching will result in alopecia, commonly seen over the shoulders and hindquarters in pigs with sarcoptic mange or lice and in pigs irritated by insects such as flies and mosquitoes. The characteristic lesions of pityriasis rosea are typical epidermal collarettes, described as ruptured pustules spreading peripherally with a ring of scales on the inner margins of the ring.

**Diagnostic Tests**

Diagnosis of skin diseases can be confirmed by a number of relatively simple tests. In swine the most frequently used tests include skin biopsy for histopathological examination, direct smears for identification of bacteria and fungi, and culture for isolation and identification of bacteria and viruses.

**Skin Biopsy.** Skin biopsy should be used on

- All neoplastic lesions
- Any persistent ulceration
- Skin lesions not responding to treatment

Fully developed primary lesions or early vesicles and pustules are best for biopsy, whereas secondary lesions may be of little value. The technique described by Scott (1988) involves removal of 6–9 mm of skin using a biopsy punch or surgical excision with a scalpel, which may be more suitable for larger lesions, vesicles, and pustules and where the skin is very thick. The skin surface should be cleaned with soap and water but not scrubbed or prepared with antiseptics. Local anesthetic may be indicated. The biopsy should be gently blotted to remove blood and surface material, placed subcutaneous side down on a wooden spatula or cardboard, and gently flattened for 30–60 seconds. The tissue and spatula or cardboard support are immersed within 1–2 minutes in a fixative such as 10% neutral phosphate buffered formalin for at least 24 hours. The volume of fixative should be 10–20 times that of the specimen. Skin biopsies are usually stained with hematoxylin and eosin (H & E).

Skin biopsy, unfixed, can also be used for isolation of bacteria and viruses. For virus isolation, the skin should be cleaned with water or saline only and not with alcohol. Samples should be stored and transported at 4°C in a virus transport medium.
Direct Smear. Direct smear is commonly used for identification of bacteria or fungi. For bacteria, samples of pus or exudate from pustules, macules, or ulcers can be smeared on glass slides, air-dried, and stained with methylene blue, Gram stain, or Diff-Quik for light microscope examination to identify the type of bacteria (cocci or rods, gram-positive or gram-negative) (Scott 1988). Skin scrapings or direct touch impression can be used for suspected fungal diseases. Skin scrapings should be made after defatting the skin with alcohol. Scrapings are warmed in a 20% solution of sodium hydroxide, and spores appear as round highly refractile bodies in chains or mosaics in hair follicles, in epithelial scales, and on the surface of hair fibers.

Culture. Best results are obtained by aspirating samples from intact pustules, vesicles, or abscesses with a needle and syringe. Cultures of open sores (erosions, ulcers, and sinuses) generate confusion (Scott 1988). Bacterial culture is usually done on blood agar or in thioglycolate broth. Virus identification can be done from tissue culture or by electron microscopy. Hair and skin scrapings (surface keratin) can be inoculated onto Sabouraud's dextrose agar or Dermatophyte Test Medium (DTM) for fungal culture (Scott 1988).

BACTERIAL DISEASES

Exudative Epidermitis (Greasy Pig Disease, Impetigo Contagiosa, Seborrhea Contagiosa)

Exudative epidermitis is a generalized dermatitis involving the entire body surface. In the acute form, it usually affects suckling piglets, whereas the chronic form is more commonly seen in older, weaned pigs (Chapter 39).

The disease is caused by *Staphylococcus hyicus*, certain strains of which produce a heat-labile exfoliative toxin (Andresen et al. 1993). Other bacteria frequently isolated from the skin lesions in field cases include *Streptococcus* spp. and *Arcanobacterium pyogenes* (L'Ecuyer and Jericho 1966). Additional factors that may affect the severity and progress of the disease include nutrition, hygiene, immunity, abrasions of the skin, and infection with *Sarcoptes scabiei* var. *suis*. Recent reports have suggested that porcine circovirus type 2 (PCV2) and porcine parvovirus (PPV) could also play an important role in outbreaks of exudative epidermitis (Wattrang et al. 2002; Kim and Chae 2004).

Although pigs develop resistance with age, *S. hyicus* can be recovered from the skin of older pigs, the vagina of sows, and the preputial diverticulum of boars. Piglets can become infected during birth and develop dry scales or flakes over the entire body within 12 hours. These animals are often devoid of hair. Infection usually occurs during the suckling period from sows or in a contaminated farrowing environment. Weaners can be infected after mixing with carrier animals in the nursery.

Suckling piglets, 1–4 weeks old, are the most commonly and often severely affected animals. The morbidity can range from 10% to 90% and mortality from 5% to 90% (average 20%) in suckling piglets. In weaned piglets 3–6 weeks of age, the morbidity can be up to 80% in some groups; however, mortality is usually low. In my experience, lesions may be seen on older animals, especially in immunologically naive gilt herds.

The disease may be acute, subacute, or chronic. In the acute form, the skin lesions are first seen around the eyes, nose, lips, and gums and behind the ears as red-brown spots (macules) that increase in size and develop a vesicular or pustular appearance. The skin soon appears damp and oily as a result of the greasy exudate of sebum, sweat, and serum. Erythema is marked, often over the entire body, and the exudate becomes thick and crusts develop on the skin surface, giving a drier appearance. During this period an obnoxious, rancid odor may be present. When the crusts lift, a raw, highly inflamed skin is left underneath. The feet are frequently affected with erosions on the coronary band and heel. Lesions may develop around the conjunctiva, causing the eyelids to become swollen and matted together. Constipation or, less frequently, diarrhea accompanied by emaciation, dehydration, and often death may be seen 3–5 days after the first signs. The disease has also been associated with lesions of the kidney involving the renal pelvis and tubules (Blood and Jubb 1957). Ulcerative glossitis and stomatitis have been reported by Andrews (1979). Nervous signs were recorded in one outbreak of exudative epidermitis by Blood and Jubb (1957).

The more chronic form (Figure 8.1A) is seen in older pigs 6–10 weeks of age (L’Ecuyer 1966) and up to 5 months of age (Piercy 1966). Occasionally in weaners the disease is seen as only discrete, round, raised lesions (papules), dark red-brown in color, especially on the face and head, with fewer over the body.

The differential diagnosis includes sarcoptic mange, parakeratosis associated with zinc and other nutritional deficiencies, swine pox, pityriasis rosea, and ringworm. Confirmation can be made by biopsy and culture of *S. hyicus*. The biopsy should sample the early typical macules, vesicles, or pustules, before lesions become chronic.

In the early stages of the disease, parenteral antibiotics will greatly reduce the severity and duration as well as mortalities. Antibiotic-resistant *S. hyicus* has frequently been reported but may represent regional differences. The antibiotics of choice include penicillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, cloxacillin, tetracycline, tylosin, trimethoprim-potentiated sulfonamides, and gentamycin. Resistance to lincomycin, erythromycin, and streptomycin has been reported. Local treatment of the affected areas or the entire body using antibacterial shampoos or skin antiseptics is of value. Preparations used include chlorhexidine, iodophores ( providone-iodine), and chloramine.

Success when treating large
8.1. (A) Exudative epidermitis (chronic); (B) ear necrosis (spirochetosis); (C) erysipelas; (D) swine pox; (E) ringworm (Microsporum nanum); (F) sarcoptic mange. (Color printing courtesy of Pfizer Animal Health Group, New York, N.Y., and Merial.)
8.2. (A) Skin necrosis; (B) parakeratosis; (C) pityriasis rosea; (D) epitheliogenesis imperfecta; (E) porcine dermatitis/nephropathy syndrome; (F) porcine dermatitis/nephropathy syndrome. (Color printing courtesy of Pfizer Animal Health Group, New York, N.Y., and MERIAL.)
numbers of affected animals with in-feed or in-water medication using amoxicillin, oxytetracyclines, or trimethoprim-potentiated sulfonamides has been observed.

During an outbreak, attention should be paid to hygiene, especially in the farrowing and weaner accommodation. Increasing the level of zinc and B group vitamins (especially biotin) in the diet may help in treatment and control. Removal of factors predisposing to skin injury, together with strict hygiene, is important in prevention. Spraying weaner pigs with a skin disinfectant such as chloroxylenol daily for 3 days at the time of weaning and mixing can eliminate outbreaks associated with postweaning fighting. Prevention of sarcoptic mange is also indicated.

Herds derived by hysterectomy or medicated early weaning commonly experience outbreaks of exudative epidermitis soon after being established. Amtsberg (1978) found vaccination to be effective in the prevention of experimentally induced exudative epidermitis. An autogenous vaccine used in commercial herds given to sows twice at 3-week intervals and then every 6 months has also been reported to give good results in eliminating clinical exudative epidermitis (Sieverding 1993).

**Pustular Dermatitis (Streptococcosis, Contagious Pyoderma)**

Streptococcal infections (Chapter 47) can cause skin necrosis and pustular dermatitis. These conditions are usually caused by the beta-hemolytic streptococci of the Lancefield groups C and L. *Streptococcus zooepidemicus* and *S. equisimilis* have been isolated from abscesses (Miller and Olson 1978, 1980) and porcine ear necrosis (Maddox et al. 1973). Secondary or concurrent infections of the skin frequently involve *S. hyicus, Arcanobacterium pyogenes,* and *Borrelia suis* (Penny et al. 1971).

Transmission can be directly from sows to newborn piglets and through skin abrasions and tissue damage associated with tail docking, ear notching, needle teeth clipping, and bite wounds. Abrasions of feet caused by new concrete floors may be associated with streptococcal infections. Outbreaks are usually associated with poor hygiene.

Wounds on any region of the body can become infected, resulting in cellulitis, necrosis, abscess formation, and ulceration. Hare et al. (1942) described the lesions of pustular dermatitis first seen as erythema, occasionally with petechiae over the ventral surface of the abdomen and around the eyes. This is followed by flattened pustules in the inguinal region, on the inner surfaces of the thighs, along the dorsum and tail, and around the eyes, lips, and edge of the ears. On rupture, the pustules heal, forming circular scabs composed of several concentric layers, darker at the center, and resembling large fish scales when peeled. This stage is associated with pruritus. Pustules may form abscesses or ulcers on the snout, cheeks, tail, legs, and feet. Similar lesions are seen on the udder and teats of sows. The early stages of pustular dermatitis resemble exudative epidermitis and may involve initial infection with *S. hyicus*.

Differential diagnosis includes ulcerative dermatitis, exudative epidermitis, sarcoptic mange, swine pox, and erysipelas. Isolation and identification of streptococci from biopsy material or swabs will confirm a diagnosis.

Treatment with ampicillin, amoxicillin, tetracyclines, or erythromycin can be effective. Local treatment of lesions with disinfectants such as tincture of iodine or iodophores (providone-iodine) is useful. Strict hygiene is essential, especially when carrying out procedures such as clipping needle teeth, ear notching, and tail docking, as well as prevention of injuries by removal of rough, corroded, or splintered surfaces. Regular disinfection in conjunction with all-in/all-out management, especially in the farrowing and nursery accommodation, will help to reduce the buildup of streptococci.

Vaccination with autogenous bacterins has been used as a control measure in herds with contagious pustular dermatitis (Scott 1988).

**Ear Necrosis (Necrotic Ear Syndrome, Ulcerative Spirochetosis of the Ear)**

Ear necrosis is a syndrome seen in pigs aged from 1 to 10 weeks. It is characterized by bilateral or unilateral necrosis of any part of the ear, but especially in young pigs on the tip and around the posterior edge of the pinna. In growers, necrosis at the base of the ear can occur, with many pigs being affected at any one time. Outbreaks often occur in one pen of pigs, with up to 80% affected.

It is likely that the lesions are the result of a mixed infection following damage to the skin. It has been suggested that infection with *S. hyicus* may take place first, followed by the more invasive streptococci and spirochetes, resulting in necrosis and ulceration (Fraser et al. 1991). Biting following mixing of pigs is a common predisposing factor. In older pigs ear biting can be a vice similar to flank and tail biting, and lead to infection. Self-inflicted trauma resulting from the irritation of *Sarcoptes scabei* infection in the ears can initiate the early lesions.

The lesions can range from mild, superficial dermatitis (plaques) of the tip, edges, and base of the pinna to more severe inflammation with exudation, ulceration (Figure 8.1B), and necrosis (Harcourt 1973). The areas of necrosis may become dry, crusty, and curled over, with eventual loss of some of the ear or the entire ear. Some pigs may show signs of inappetence, unthriftness, and fever; death may occur in a few cases.

Bacterial culture and histopathological examination will help to confirm a diagnosis. Injections of penicillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, or tetracyclines for at least 4–5 days will be of value, especially if combined with local application of a suitable skin disinfectant such as tincture of iodine, iodophore, or chlorhexidine. General hygiene of the environment and elimination of predispos-
Ulcerative Dermatitis (Granulomatous Dermatitis)

Ulcerative dermatitis can occur as ulcerative, necrotic, or tumorlike lesions found on most areas of the body surface and around the buccal cavity of pigs. More specific syndromes such as ear necrosis, facial necrosis, infected bursae, and calluses over joints and bony prominences can be forms of spirochetosis.

The etiology involves initial trauma of the skin, followed by infection, often involving several organisms. Although the typical lesions appear to be caused by a spirochete, which was reported as *Borrelia suis*, early infection with *S. hyicus* and beta-hemolytic *Streptococcus* spp. is most likely. *Arcanobacterium pyogenes* is a common secondary invader (Cameron 1984).

Skin trauma or damage that results in infections can be associated with bite wounds, especially around the face and head and on the flank and tail. Infection following castration, pressure sores, and ulceration of swollen bursae and calluses often leads to spirochetosis. Gum damage following teeth clipping can result in lesions in the buccal cavity.

Lesions are most commonly seen in young pigs or, in the case of pressure sores and bursitis, in older growers and adults. The initial lesions are characterized by erythema and edema followed by necrosis, ulceration, or tumefaction, with fistulae discharging a grayish brown glutinous pus. Lesions may continue to enlarge for several months and involve deeper structures of the body. The central area will often slough.

A differential diagnosis would include foreign-body abscesses, neoplasms, other infectious granulomas, and pressure necrosis. A diagnosis can be made by identification of spirochetes from direct smears, dark-field illumination of wet preparations, or biopsy examination. Culture of secondary invaders will also be of value.

Procaine or benzathine penicillin, ampicillin, or amoxicillin are the drugs of choice. Treatment should continue for at least 5 days. Surgical removal of large granulomas may be indicated. Local treatment may be of value using aerosol preparations of tetracycline or skin disinfectants. Fly repellents are indicated to prevent myiasis. Control of ulcerative dermatitis is by the elimination of factors that result in skin damage and trauma. Improved hygiene at teeth clipping and castration and attention to wounds due to fighting, flank biting, and pressure sores are essential to avoid infection.

Facial Necrosis (Facial Pyemia)

Facial necrosis is a common condition in suckling pigs less than 1 week of age and is characterized by bilateral necrotic ulcers that are often covered by hard brown crusts and that extend from the side of the face to the lower jaw area.

The condition is the result of infection of wounds inflicted by piglets on each other during feeding, often because inexperienced stockpersons have failed to carry out teeth clipping correctly. Lacerations to the side of the face become infected with organisms such as *Fusobacterium necrophorum*, *Streptococcus* spp., and *Borrelia suis*.

Facial necrosis is commonly seen in large litters and especially in the disadvantaged weaker piglets and when milk letdown is slow, that is, when sows suffer from agalactia or hypogalactia.

Facial necrosis occurs during the first few days of life and any number of piglets in a litter can be affected. Initially lesions can be seen as striated lacerations caused by bites from other piglets. The lesions become infected, resulting in shallow ulcerations covered with hard brown crusts. The encrustation may extend over a large area involving the lips and eyelids, making it difficult for the piglet to open its mouth or eyes. These animals have difficulty in feeding and may starve. Facial necrosis can predispose to outbreaks of exudative epidermitis.

The condition is easily diagnosed by the nature and distribution of the lesions on the face of young piglets. Bacteriological examination of the lesions will help identify the organisms involved.

Careful removal of the crusts and application of a mild disinfectant solution of chlorhexidine or iodophores or of an antibiotic cream will help remove the infection as well as soften the lesions. Prevention is by clipping the canine and lateral incisor teeth just above the level of the gum surface during the first 24 hours of life in all piglets in the litter. Instruments used should be thoroughly disinfected. Fostering piglets to eliminate large litters will help reduce competition for teats at feeding. Hygiene in the farrowing accommodation and prevention of milk letdown problems are also important.

Abscesses

Subcutaneous abscesses are common in pigs, usually as a result of fighting, bite wounds, and lacerations from rough floors and housing. Abscesses may also result from injections when using contaminated needles or through dirty skin following castration or tail biting. Tail abscesses can result in infection spreading by lymphatic drainage to the pelvic inlet, sacral region, and vertebral column.

The organisms commonly present in abscesses of the skin in swine include *Arcanobacterium pyogenes*, *Streptococcus* spp., *Bacteroides* spp., and anaerobic gram-positive cocci. *Actinobacillus equuli* and *A. suis* have also been reported as causing subcutaneous abscesses in the neck, withers, and flanks in swine (Mullowney 1984).

The treatment of choice is surgical drainage followed by flushing the open wound with a suitable antiseptic and treatment with antibiotics such as ampicillin, tetracycline, or trimethoprim/sulfonamide.
Erysipelas

Erysipelas is an infectious disease of pigs that manifests in several forms, including septicemia, nonsuppurative arthritis, vegetative endocarditis, and skin lesions (Chapter 37). The disease is seen mainly in pigs between 3 months and 3 years of age. Younger pigs are protected by passive immunity acquired from suckling immune sows. The disease is caused by *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*.

In acute erysipelas, the skin of the extremities—including the snout, ears, lower limbs, tail, and scrotal area, as well as the jowls and ventral surface of the abdomen—is erythematous. The color varies from pink to purple, typical of many systemic infections and not necessarily diagnostic of erysipelas.

The more specific skin lesions associated with erysipelas first appear as small pink or red raised areas (papules) or larger plaques ranging from 3 to 6 cm in diameter. Many of these lesions will develop the characteristic diamond or rhomboidal shape and are raised, firm, and easily palpated (Figure 8.1C). The outer area is pink in color and the center becomes blue to purple (necrosis) as the disease progresses. These discrete lesions are associated with arteries; the small arterioles show acute cellular infiltration and cellular thrombi with the presence of mainly neutrophils (Jubb et al. 1985). In the chronic stage, skin lesions become more necrotic; appear dark, dry, and firm; and easily peel away from the underlying tissues. Occasionally, sloughing of the ears, tail, or a foot can occur (Scott 1988). Alopecia may be seen in more long-standing cases.

The systemic signs generally associated with the disease, together with the typical skin lesions, usually make the diagnosis of erysipelas on clinical grounds relatively easy. Acute septicemia and erythema have to be differentiated from classical swine fever (hog cholera), African swine fever, salmonellosis, and pasteurellosis. The early, smaller plaques can be confused with insect bites, sarcoptic mange, or exudative dermatitis. Culture of the organism (from the live animal) may be possible in the early stages of the disease from blood and skin biopsy of typical lesions. Several animals should be sampled. Culture is usually more successful at necropsy from a variety of organs: heart, lung, liver, spleen, kidneys, and joints (Wood 1992). A number of serological tests have been used for detecting infection; however, they have limited practical value for clinical diagnosis.

Penicillin is the drug of choice and should be given daily for 3–5 days. In the case of very sick pigs, the first two injections may be given 12 hours apart. At-risk, in-contact animals should also be treated with penicillin. Long-acting preparations can be used.

Prevention is by regular vaccination of sows and boars. Sows should be vaccinated twice at selection and 4 weeks before farrowing, and boars twice yearly. If outbreaks occur in grower stock, a weaner vaccination program may be of value. Reducing contact with effluent and maintaining a good standard of hygiene will help prevent outbreaks.

Salmonellosis

Salmonellosis (Chapter 45) in pigs can cause septicemia and thus skin lesions and changes in skin color. This form of the disease is generally caused by *Salmonella choleraesuis*. All age groups of pigs can be affected, although pigs from weaning to 4 months of age are most frequently affected.

In the acute form associated with septicemia, mortalities can be high, and other pigs may be weak and moribund. Cyanosis of the extremities and abdomen may be seen. The discoloration of the skin is due to intense capillary dilation and congestion in the dermal papillae, followed by thrombosis in the capillaries and venules and, to a lesser extent, arterioles, leading to necrosis and sloughing of the skin. Skin necrosis commonly involves the ears, tail, and feet in young pigs.

Discoloration of the skin is similar to that in other septicemic diseases—that is, swine fever, erysipelas, and pasteurellosis—which therefore have to be considered in a differential diagnosis. Ear necrosis also has to be differentiated from necrosis associated with other infectious agents.

Diagnosis will be made on the basis of clinical signs and isolation and serotyping of the organism—in particular, at necropsy from spleen, liver, lungs, mesenteric lymph nodes, and small intestines.

Acute Mastitis

Some of the acute forms of infectious mastitis in sows immediately following farrowing are accompanied by extensive discoloration of the skin. The affected mammary glands are pink to red and later may become dark purple or black (gangrene).

VIRAL DISEASES

Swine Pox (Contagious Impetigo, Louse-Borne Dermatitis)

Swine pox is a typical poxvirus infection mainly affecting young pigs. There is little or no systemic illness, and lesions are usually confined to the ventrolateral abdomen and thorax (see Chapter 29).

The virus is abundant in the lesions and transmission is by direct contact. Injury to the skin will aid in the infection becoming established. Lice and possibly other blood-sucking insects are an important means of disease transmission in swine herds. Congenital swine pox has been reported (Borst et al. 1990; Thibault et al. 1998a).

The lesions follow the typical pox evolution of erythematous macules becoming papules, and then vesicles progressing to pustules, which rupture and form crusts (Figure 8.1D). Lesions are seen mainly on the side of the body, ventral abdominal wall, and inner thighs. Occasionally lesions are seen on the back, face, and
udder. Skin lesions develop within 5 days after experimental intradermal inoculation (Kasza and Griesemer 1962). After first appearance of the lesions, the papules enlarge to 6 mm in diameter. The lesions of the pustular stage become umbilicated, ischemic, and yellow in color. The center of the lesions decreases in height and the peripheral tissue hypertrophies. Within 10 days dark crusts appear, and within 20 days the crusts desquamate, leaving small white discolored spots. The nature and distribution of the lesions may be influenced by secondary bacterial infections. The site of the lesions affects the various stages in the progress of the disease. Vesicles do not form on the thick skin of the back, but proliferative changes with necrosis of the epithelium take place, producing crusts.

Swine pox has to be differentiated from the other vesicular diseases, early cases of sarcoptic mange, and erysipelas. Vesicular diseases such as foot-and-mouth disease and swine vesicular disease are more severe, and lesions are mainly confined to the snout, lips, tongue, palate, coronary band, and feet. Swine pox is relatively mild, and eruptions on mucosal surfaces are rare. Diagnosis can be confirmed by host range studies, serological tests, histological examination, and virus isolation or detection of virulent antigens.

Treatment is directed at control of secondary bacterial infections using antibiotics and improving the general health of the animals. No vaccines are available, and prevention of outbreaks is by avoiding the introduction of carrier animals, good sanitation, and control of the pig louse.

Vesicular Diseases

Foot-and-mouth disease, swine vesicular disease, vesicular stomatitis, and vesicular exanthema can all cause vesicular skin lesions in swine. The diseases all produce very similar lesions with similar distribution.

The characteristic lesions of foot-and-mouth disease are vesicles filled with straw-colored fluid that form in the mucosa of the mouth, including the tongue, lips, gums, pharynx, and palate, and in the coronary band. Lesions are also seen between and above the claws and on the snout. Sows may develop lesions on the udder and teats (Mann and Sellers 1989).

Vesicles rupture rapidly, leaving a raw hemorrhagic eroded area with ragged fragments of necrotic epithelium. The lesions heal quickly, beginning with a serofibrinous exudate and a gradual replacement that may or may not be pigmented depending on the cells involved (Callis et al. 1975). With swine vesicular disease, lameness may be severe, as lesions most commonly involve the coronary band, hoof, heel, and supernumerary digits. Separation of the horn of the hoof often occurs, commencing from the coronary band.

The clinician should collect samples for virus isolation and serology, fixed tissue for histopathology, and epithelial and vesicular fluid for complement-fixation and ELISA testing for viral antigens. Animal inoculation studies may also be used.

Porcine Parvovirus

Kresse et al. (1985) reported erosions and vesicles on the snout, mouth, coronet, and interdigital space of swine in the midwestern United States in several herds. The virus was isolated from the skin as well as from serum and other organs.

Idiopathic Vesicular Disease

Several cases of vesicles of unknown or doubtful etiology have been reported in swine. Gibbs et al. (1983) reported vesicles and erosions on only the feet in swine in Florida. Munday and Ryan (1982) and Montgomery et al. (1987) reported vesicles on the snout and feet of swine fed marine products, parsnips, or celery.

Classical Swine Fever (Hog Cholera)

Classical swine fever is caused by a pestivirus of the family Togaviridae. Diffuse erythema followed by purplish discoloration of the skin over the abdomen, snout, ears, and thighs is common in acute cases. Necrosis of the edges of the ears, tail, and vulva may develop. Purple blotching of the ears is characteristic, with generalized hypotrichosis in the chronic form of the disease. Congenital alopecia has been reported in piglets infected in utero (Carbrey et al. 1966).

African Swine Fever

African swine fever is caused by a DNA virus at present unclassified. Besides general signs of fever, depression, anorexia, and incoordination similar to hog cholera, skin changes include cyanotic blotching and purple discoloration of the limbs, snout, abdomen, and ears. Hemorrhages may also occur on the skin of the ears and flanks.

Porcine Reproductive and Respiratory Syndrome (PRRS)

An unusual case of severe cutaneous hemorrhages with dermal and subcutaneous capillary angioplasia has been reported in aborted, stillborn, and live-born weak piglets during an outbreak of PRRS virus abortions (Scruggs and Sorden 2001). The affected full-term still-born piglets and live-born weak piglets had single or multiple coalescent dark reddish-blue cutaneous hemorrhages on the pinnae, cranium and lateral cervical and shoulder areas. Less severely affected piglets had small (2–10 mm) hemorrhages on the skin of the lateral neck and hind limbs. Because the lesions were seen only during the outbreak of PRRS and disappeared after the abortion storm and localization of PRRS virus antigen within macrophages adjacent to proliferating capillaries was demonstrated, it was suggested the PRRS virus played a role in the development of the lesions.
Fungal Diseases (Ringworm)

Fungal diseases of swine tend to be superficial mycoses involving the keratinized epithelial cells and hair only. Fungi reported in swine include *Microsporum nanum*, *M. canis*, *M. gypseum*, *Trichophyton mentagrophytes*, *T. rubrum*, *T. tonsurans*, *T. verrucosum*, and *Candida albicans*.

Ringworm is found in both extensively and intensively reared swine. All age groups can be affected and the incidence appears to be higher where sanitation is poor and stocking densities are high with moderate temperatures and high humidity. Bedding may be an important source of infection. Fungal spores can remain viable for many years in a dry and cool environment. Mycelial growth is promoted when the environmental conditions are warm and humid with a slightly alkaline skin pH. Ringworm fungi are strictly aerobic.

*Microsporosis*

*Microsporum nanum* is the most common fungal infection in swine; however, *M. canis* produces ringworm in piglets and *M. gypseum* is also found on pigs. Ringworm lesions can be found on almost any part of the body.

Ginther (1965) described the typical lesions as beginning as circumscribed spots, which tend to enlarge in a circle, some to enormous size covering the complete side of the pig (Figure 8.1E). The skin is reddish to light brown in color, roughened but not raised. Dry crusts form around the periphery, the hair is usually not lost, and no pruritus develops. Dirt and dust may obscure the lesions, which often are not noticed until the pigs are washed.

Experimental infection with *M. nanum* (Connole and Baynes 1966) produced lesions that first appeared as pustules or moist brown areas of desquamated tissue 2 cm in diameter. As the lesions extended, fresh pustules were often seen near the periphery. Scales, crusts, and deposits of black material similar to the natural infection appeared. Lesions developed in 2–3 weeks and resolved by 9 weeks. Chronic infections are often seen behind the ears of adult swine and appear as thick, brown crusts that spread over the ear and neck.

*Trichophytosis*

*Trichophyton mentagrophytes* is the most common cause of trichophytosis in swine, but *T. rubrum*, *T. tonsurans*, and *T. verrucosum* can also cause ringworm in swine. Lesions are found on the thorax, flank, and neck, behind the ears, and on the legs. The size and shape of lesions vary; some measure up to 12.5 cm across and are roughly circular. Typical lesions are red or covered by a thin brownish dry crust. The disease tends to be self-limiting and lasts about 10 weeks (McPherson 1956). Similar lesions have been described by Pepin and Austwick (1968) in a herd of Wessex pigs. The same authors reported an outbreak of ringworm in a litter of Large White piglets caused by *T. verrucosum*. Arora et al. (1979) described lesions caused by *T. rubrum* as rough and reddish and appearing on several sites; 10% of piglets and 4% of sows in a herd were affected.

Cutaneous Candidiasis

Candidiasis in swine is caused by the yeast *Candida albicans* and appears to cause disease when the host’s resistance is lowered. The disease has been reported in grower pigs fed garbage and kept in unsanitary conditions. The morbidity was 40%. The lesions on the most severely affected animals consisted of circular areas approximately 2 cm in diameter coated with moist gray exudate. Lesions were found on all limbs and the lateral and ventral surfaces of the abdomen. The skin was thickened, wrinkled, devoid of hair, and hung loose in folds (Reynolds et al. 1968).

Treatment and Control

Treatment, if indicated, consists of removal of the crusts and local application of products such as a weak solution of iodine, Whitfield’s ointment, copper sulfate or copper naphthenate, or thibendazole ointment (2–4%) as a suspension in glycerine. Agriculture Bordeaux mixture (an aqueous solution of copper sulfate and unslaked lime) has been used with good results (Blood and Radostits 1989). Systemic treatment employs oral administration of griseofulvin at a dose rate of 1 g/100 kg body weight daily for up to 40 days.

Control is by maintaining good sanitation. Housing can be disinfected with phenolic disinfectant (2.5–5%), sodium hypochlorite (0.25% solution), or a 2.0% formaldehyde and 1.0% caustic soda solution used as a spray.

Parasitic Diseases

Sarcoptic Mange (Scabies)

Sarcoptic mange is the most commonly encountered parasitic skin disease of swine. It is one of the most important skin diseases and of major economic importance (Chapter 53). The disease is caused by the mite *Sarcoptes scabiei var. suis*.

The disease is more likely to be seen where nutrition, management, and hygiene are of a low standard. The disease affects weight gain (McPherson 1960) and efficiency of feed conversion by as much as 10% in pigs between 18 and 68 kg (Cargill and Dobson 1979b).

The first skin lesions appear about 3 weeks after contact with mites as small encrustations around the ears, eyes, and snout that develop into plaques about 5 mm in diameter. The lesions in the ear may regress and disappear in 12–18 weeks (Cargill and Dobson 1979a). Early pruritus is due to the local irritation from the mites establishing themselves in the skin. As the ear lesions regress, focal erythematous papules associated with hypersensitivity occur on the rump, flank, and abdomen (Cargill and Dobson 1979a). Mites are not usually found in these lesions. The hypersensitivity causes further pru-
ritus, which results in excessive rubbing and the liberation of tissue fluids, giving the animal a greasy or shiny appearance. This is followed by coagulation and drying of the serum, sebum, and sweat to form crusts. In more chronic cases (Figure 8.1F) excessive keratinization and proliferation of the connective tissue occur, with the result that the skin becomes thickened and wrinkled (Dobson and Davies 1992). A common sign seen in grower pigs is shaking of the ears and, in some, the development of large hematomas on the inner surface of the ear.

Chronic cases, usually in adults, develop thick gray-colored, loosely attached scales lining the inner surface of the ears, around the neck, and down the lower limbs, especially over the hock joints. Considerable loss of hair is associated with chronic mange.

Sarcoptic mange needs to be differentiated from exudative epidermitis, parakeratosis associated with zinc and fatty-acid deficiency, B group vitamin deficiency, sunburn, pityriasis rosea, and ringworm. Mange may be present with and predispose to exudative epidermitis. Pruritus may be caused by other parasites such as lice, fleas, and mosquitoes. The clinical signs, together with a range of lesions, will be suggestive of mange. When investigating a herd for evidence of the disease, the ears of adult stock should be examined for chronic lesions.

Demonstration of the mites is best done by examination of the crusts inside the ears. The material can be placed on black paper for a few minutes and then gently tipped or blown off leaving the mites, which will have adhered to the paper. They can be easily examined with a magnifying glass (Brackenridge 1958).

Another method is to place the scales or material from skin scrapings in a 10% solution of sodium or potassium hydroxide for 24 hours, and then concentrate the sediment by centrifugation and examine it for the mites on a glass slide under low power of a microscope. Skin scrapings obtained with a scalpel blade placed on a glass slide and mixed with mineral oil can also be examined in the same way. The movement of live mites allows easy detection.

Sarcoptic mange has been treated with varying success by many remedies and acaricides used in the form of sprays, dusting powders, and pour-ons, in feed medication, and by injection. Insecticides used as sprays or washes (dips) include amitraz, coumaphos, diazinon, lindane, malathion, toxaphene, and trichlorfon. Products that have a systemic action have proved to be more effective, such as the pour-on phosmet and oral or injectable administration of avomectins, such as doramectin, a long-acting endoectocide for use in swine (Cargill et al. 1996). These products are more likely to be successful in eradication of sarcoptic mange, although results have been variable.

For control, monthly treatment of all pigs is effective (Cargill 1981); however, programs are best aimed at sow treatment just before farrowing, followed by weaning into mite-free accommodations (Cargill and Dobson 1979b). Complete elimination of sarcoptic mange in pig populations can be achieved by the use of hysterectomy-derived piglets and maintained by strict biosecurity. Herds have been kept free of sarcoptic mange for over 20 years in my experience.

Demodectic Mange (Follicular Mange)

Demodectic mange is relatively uncommon and of little economic importance in swine. Clinical signs are seen when pigs are in a poor or debilitated condition. The disease is caused by Demodex phylloides, which lives in the hair follicles or sebaceous glands of the skin.

The mites usually invade the soft skin of the snout and around the eyes but can spread over the entire body. Infection is not uncommon on the abdomen between the legs. Lesions start as small red spots which become scaly with a nodular appearance. The nodules contain white caseous material and many mites. Mites can be found on skin scrapings from around the eyes in pigs showing no clinical signs. Treatment is usually not successful and severely affected animals should be culled.

Lice

The pig louse, Haematopinus suis, which affects pigs only, causes severe scratching resulting in continual rubbing against objects.

Lice are easily found around the neck, base of the ears, inner ears, and inside the legs and flank, and the white eggs can also be seen on the bristles, especially in colored pigs. The blood feeding causes considerable irritation; the resultant scratching and rubbing against objects damages the skin, which becomes lacerated and bleeds. Lice tend to congregate around the areas where skin damage has taken place. The continual irritation results in loss of body weight and reduces weight gains. Lice may spread the swine pox virus and erysipelas.

Lice can be controlled by spraying with products such as coumaphos, diazinon, malathion, lindane, or roanel. Ivermectin in feed or injected also controls lice.

Fleas, Mosquitoes, and Flies

Swine may be affected by fleas (Ctenocephalides canis, C. felis, Pulex irritans, and Echinophaga gallinacea), mosquitoes (Aedes spp.), flies (Musca domestica, Stomoxys calcitrans), and screwworm flies (Callitroga spp.).

Clinical signs can include varying degrees of rubbing, scratching resulting in alopecia, excoriations, and bleeding from the skin and circumscribed, raised, rounded (wheal) lesions or edema associated with urticarial reactions.

ENVIRONMENTAL DISEASES

Sunburn

Sunburn is frequently seen in white pigs managed under open-range conditions without adequate protection
from sunlight. It is caused by the direct effect of ultraviolet rays upon the skin.

Young pigs and pigs not previously exposed to sunlight are often seriously affected. Erythema occurs within a few hours of exposure and develops most commonly on the back and behind the ears. Edema can develop and affected areas become warm and painful to the touch. Severely affected pigs walk very carefully and are occasionally seen to experience a sudden bout of muscular twitching and jump into the air. The skin becomes dry, scales develop, and the skin peels. In young pigs the tail and ears become necrotic and slough.

A simple and effective treatment is to cover the skin with a bland oil, for example, vegetable oil or light mineral oil. Animals should be removed from direct sunlight and adequate shade provided for prevention.

**Photosensitization**

Photosensitization is a condition seen in extensive, free-range-managed swine exposed to photodynamic agents and sunlight. Photosensitization (hypersensitivity to light) results from the ingestion of photodynamic agents such as hypericin found in Saint-John’s-wort (*Hypericum perforatum*) and fagopyrin found in buckwheat (*Fagopyrum esculentum* and *Polygonum fagopyrum*). Other plants, including rape (*Brassica sp.*), lucerne (*Medicago sativa*), and *Trifolium sp.*, cause photosensitization of unknown etiology. Other substances causing photosensitization in swine are phenothiazine, tetracyclines, sulfonamides (Amstutz 1975), and possibly aphids (McClaymont and Wynne 1955).

Lesions are seen in white-skinned breeds and on areas most directly exposed to the sunlight. The severity of the condition depends on the concentration of the photodynamic agent and the length of exposure to light (Jubb and Kennedy 1970).

Erythema and edema develop and serum may exude from the skin and become dry and matted in the hair. Pain causes swine to walk carefully, and severely affected animals may suddenly drop into sternal recumbency and immediately rise again or stagger sideways (Hungerford 1990). The ears become thickened; congestion of the conjunctiva may occur with matting together of the eyelids (Amstutz 1975). Skin becomes dry, hard, and fissured and extremely pruritic. Areas of skin may become necrotic and peel off in strips. Ears and tail may slough.

Sunburn, erysipelas, and sarcoptic mange have to be included in a differential diagnosis. The typical lesions confined to unpigmented or white areas of skin exposed to sunlight and a history of ingestion of a photodynamic agent or plants known to cause photosensitization will suggest a diagnosis.

Affected animals should be placed in darkened housing. Parenteral use of corticosteroids or antihistamines may be of value. Local application of antibiotic creams may also be useful. Control is by preventing access to photodynamic agents, grazing only at night, or keeping pigs indoors.

**Skin Necrosis**

In piglets, skin necrosis most frequently affects the knees, fetlocks, hocks, elbows, teats, coronets, and soles of the feet. Necrosis of the hocks, vulva, and tail is common in piglets with splayleg. In sows, skin necrosis is common on the shoulder, over the hip region, and on the side of the jaw.

In piglets, necrosis starts as small abraded areas often developing 12–24 hours after birth and reaching maximum severity in 7 days (Penny et al. 1971). Lesions are due to trauma from hard abrasive floors, especially rough concrete in farrowing crates. The alkaline pH of new concrete floors and slats may also affect older pigs. Necrosis of the soles of the feet can be caused by the abrasive surface of rusting wire mesh or metal floors (Figure 8.2A).

Teat necrosis is best looked for at 3 days of age (Stevens 1984). The lesions develop as blackish brown scales or crusts that easily peel off, leaving a new, fresh wound. Teat necrosis usually affects the pectoral (first four) teats, resulting in blind, nonfunctional teats. The highest incidence was found in pigs on heated concrete floors, with decreasing incidence on expanded-metal floors, rubber mats, and plastic-coated wire mesh. A genetic basis for teat necrosis associated with sire lines was demonstrated, but nongenetic causes were more common than genetic causes (Stevens 1984). Females are most commonly affected.

Necrosis of the knees (carpus) is very common in the weaker smaller piglets in large litters and where sows have problems of milk letdown or mastitis. Necrosis of the tail starts at the base, usually encircling the whole tail, which becomes black and may slough. Ear necrosis may be due to fighting or infections.

Skin necrosis in sows is due to a combination of pressure from lying for long periods on hard floors (both concrete and mesh) and poor body condition associated with rapid weight loss during lactation or old age. The condition can occur in young sows after their first litter.

Local application of antibiotic or antiseptic ointments may be of value. Aerosol sprays for wound treatment give good results. Open wounds may require parenteral antibiotic therapy. Control should be aimed at avoiding rough, wet concrete floors and rusting mesh floors and providing bedding or rubber mats in the creep area of farrowing crates. Spreading mash feed over the floors of new pens will help prevent necrosis in young grower pigs. Reducing the incidence of splayleg by selection should be considered.

Stevens (1984) stated that 80% of teat necrosis can be eliminated by replacing concrete floors with raised plastic-coated decks. Resin-reinforced plastic skin has been used to protect teats immediately after birth.
(Muirhead 1978). Skin necrosis of sows is best prevented by maintaining good body condition through appropriate feeding before and during lactation, using plastic-coated floors in farrowing crates, and encouraging sows to stand and exercise frequently.

Callosities
Hypertrophy with fibrosis of the skin over joints and bony prominences results in callus formation. Calluses are seen mainly over the fetlocks, elbows, hocks, and tuber ischi. They become very large and hard and contain fluid, which may become infected and result in subcutaneous abscesses. Pigs with leg weakness, foot lesions, or muscular weakness or that spend a lot of time lying down due to illness frequently develop callosities or bursitis.

NUTRITIONAL DISEASES

Swine Parakeratosis
Scott (1988) describes parakeratosis as a nutrition-related metabolic disorder of growing pigs characterized by a generalized nonpruritic, crusting dermatosis. The cause of this condition is now considered to be complex, involving deficiencies of zinc and essential fatty acids or high levels of calcium, phytates, and other chelating agents that affect zinc absorption. Gastrointestinal diseases may also predispose to a more severe zinc deficiency and parakeratosis.

Early lesions (macules and papules) develop on the ventral surface of the abdomen, medial thighs, and distal parts of the legs. The lesions rapidly become covered with scales and then hard dry crusts (Figure 8.2B). The typical keratinous lesions are characterized by crusts and deep fissures. The surface of the skin may be dry and rough, but moist brownish sebum, dirt, and debris accumulate in the fissures. In severe cases animals will have reduced growth rates and reduced appetite, diarrhea, and in some cases vomiting. Testicular development may be affected. Mortalities are rare.

The condition has to be differentiated from chronic sarcoptic mange, exudative epidermitis, and deficiencies of the B group vitamins and iodine.

A history of feeding a diet likely to be deficient in zinc or essential fatty acids or including factors that may interfere with zinc absorption, together with the characteristic lesions and their distribution, will suggest parakeratosis.

Skin biopsy for histopathology will be of value. Serum alkaline phosphatase and zinc levels may be decreased. Response to supplementary zinc and essential fatty acids will support a diagnosis.

Treatment and prevention involve feeding a diet that provides zinc in the form of a zinc salt (zinc sulfate or carbonate) at the rate of 0.02%, or 2 kg per tonne of feed. Fats should provide 1% of the total ration. The calcium levels should not exceed 1% of the ration.

Other Nutritional Deficiencies
Skin changes can result from a number of nutritional deficiencies and excesses. Typical changes are poor hair coat, alopecia, parakeratosis, and eczematous dermatitis.

Essential fatty-acid deficiencies produce a dull, dry hair coat and scaly, dandruff-like dermatitis. Brownish exudate appears on the ears and axillary spaces and under the flanks. This can be followed by necrotic lesions and skin eruptions with loss of hair.

Iodine deficiency is seen as a congenital defect in piglets born to sows fed iodine-deficient diets. Piglets are born full-term but hairless. They have thickened edematous skin over the head, neck, and shoulders.

Riboflavin (vitamin B2) deficiency in swine produces a dermatitis seen as scales and ulcers with some loss of hair and heavy sebaceous exudate. Conjunctivitis, swollen eyelids, and cataracts may occur. Infertility, weak pigs, and lactation failure are seen in sows.

Pantothenic acid deficiency results in signs of poor growth rate, coughing, diarrhea, and loss of hair. Dermatitis develops as dark brown exudate around the eyes. Incoordination, seen as “goose-stepping,” is also characteristic.

Biotin deficiency produces skin changes characterized by dermatitis; dry rough skin with scales, crusts, and brown exudate; generalized alopecia; and ulcerations (Cunha 1977). Lesions of the feet include bruising, erosions, and ulceration of the soles and cracking of the outer wall of the claw (Brooks et al. 1977; Penny et al. 1980).

Vitamin A, C, and E deficiencies have been associated with scurfy (scales) skin lesions. Vitamin E and selenium deficiencies have also been associated with ear necrosis.

CONGENITAL AND HEREDITARY DISEASES

Pityriasis Rosea (Pustular Psoriaform Dermatitis)
Pityriasis rosea in swine is the name used to describe a pustular dermatitis that takes on the appearance of epidermal collarettes, or rings, seen only in young swine, mainly on the ventral abdomen and inner thighs. The disease is self-limiting. The condition, however, does not resemble pityriasis rosea in humans clinically or pathologically; therefore, pustular psoriaform dermatitis may be a more suitable name (Scott 1988).

Although the actual cause is unknown, the condition appears to be inherited. Swine that have had the condition are more likely to produce affected progeny. The incidence may be higher in Landrace swine. Attempts to transmit the disease or demonstrate an infectious agent have failed. The condition is seen in piglets derived by hysterectomy and reared in isolation.

The disease is seen in young pigs 3–14 weeks of age. Entire litters or only a few piglets in a litter may be affected. The disease begins as small erythematous
papules on the skin of the abdomen and inner thighs. The papules are raised with a central crater and rapidly expand to produce a ring, or collarette, with a raised bright red periphery behind which are scales (Figure 8.2C). As the ring expands, the central area returns to normal. The rings coalesce as they expand to produce mosaic patterns. The hair is usually not lost and little pruritus is seen. The condition usually lasts about 4 weeks, regressing slowly and leaving normal skin as lesions heal.

The extent and severity of the lesions appear to increase when pigs are reared in weaner cages where stocking densities are high with high temperatures and high humidity. Lesions may become infected with bacteria—for example, *S. hyicus*—and resemble an exudative dermatitis.

The condition has to be differentiated from ringworm, dermatosis vegetans, and swine pox. Failure to isolate fungi or microorganisms will help confirm a diagnosis.

Skin biopsy will show psoriaform epidermal hyperplasia and superficial perivascular dermatitis. There is mild to moderate mucinous degeneration of the superficial dermis, and the predominant inflammatory cells are eosinophils and neutrophils. Parakeratotic hyperkeratosis is usually prominent (Scott 1988).

Treatment does not appear to affect the course of the disease. Good hygiene will reduce the chance of secondary infections, whereas overstocking with high humidity and high temperatures appears to increase the incidence. It may be best to cull breeding stock known to produce progeny that develop the condition from the breeding herd.

**Dermatosis Vegetans**

Dermatosis vegetans is a hereditary and often congenital disease of swine due to a semilethal autosomal recessive factor believed to have originated in the Danish Landrace breed (Done et al. 1967). The condition is seen as an erythematous maculopapular dermatitis with lesions on the coronary band and hoof together with pneumonia.

The main features of the condition are skin lesions, abnormalities of the feet, poor growth, and respiratory dysfunction. The skin lesions may be present at birth or, more commonly, develop within 2–3 weeks of birth. They first develop on the abdomen and inside the thighs as small (0.5–2.0 cm in diameter) raised pink swellings that enlarge rapidly. The lesions spread over the flanks and back of the pigs and become covered with yellowish brown, brittle, papillomatous crusts that are easily removed, leaving a pink granular surface. The lesions become very thick with a hard, horny surface that develops cracks and fissures, giving a characteristic papillomatous appearance. Swine may die after 5–8 weeks, but some will survive and the skin lesions regress.

Lesions of the hoof are usually present at birth and consist of marked swelling and erythema over the coronary band of both the main and the accessory digits and are covered with a yellowish brown greasy exudate. The walls of the hooves are thickened with ridges and furrows parallel to the coronary band. The horn becomes discolored and blackened.

Respiratory dysfunction is due to giant-cell pneumonia. Respiratory signs of interstitial pneumonia or bronchopneumonia precede death, usually following a course of 4–6 weeks. However, some pigs may survive for 2–3 months but become weak and emaciated. On rare occasions affected pigs have reached maturity and bred.

The condition has to be differentiated from pityriasis rosea, chronic exudative epidermitis, and vitamin deficiencies. The clinical appearance of the skin and hoof lesions seen in young pigs 2–3 weeks of age is, however, characteristic. The very thick papillomatous crusts of the skin lesions are also typical and together with respiratory distress will suggest a diagnosis of dermatosis vegetans.

Skin biopsy reveals intraepidermal pustular dermatitis and microabscesses containing eosinophils and neutrophils, with parakeratotic hyperkeratosis. Older lesions show hyperplastic superficial perivascular dermatitis with multinucleated giant cells in the dermis (Percy and Hulland 1967, 1968). Histopathology of the lungs will help a diagnosis. Done et al. (1967) recommend that lungs should be fixed by filling with, as well as immersing in, 10% neutral formalin, and several samples from each lung should be examined.

There is no treatment for the condition, and prevention is aimed at detection and removal of breeding stock known to have produced affected progeny.

**Epitheliogenesis Imperfecta (Aplasia Cutis)**

Epitheliogenesis imperfecta is an inherited congenital condition of both white and colored swine and is caused by a simple autosomal recessive trait thought to result in a primary failure of embryonic ectodermal differentiation.

The lesions appear as clearly demarcated discontinuities of the squamous epithelium of varying sizes and shapes but usually on the back, loins, or limbs (Figure 8.2D). The condition may be seen in individual piglets or with a familial incidence in litters (Figure 8.2D). The condition may be seen in individual piglets or with a familial incidence in litters (Jubb and Kennedy 1970). Lesions develop as large ulcers and frequently become infected; they may fail to heal or cause septicemia, which may lead to death.

**Congenital Swine Pox**

Borst et al. (1990) and Thibault et al. (1998a) reported the birth of pigs with pox lesions over the entire body to unrelated sows on different farms. Only one or two pigs in each litter were affected. At the time of the births, no other pigs on the farms had pox lesions, and histological and electron microscopic examination confirmed
swine pox in the newborn pigs with lesions. The infections were generally fatal.

NEOPLASTIC DISEASES

Tumors are reported relatively rarely in swine, probably because the majority are slaughtered at 6–8 months of age or around 4–5 years of age for breeding stock. However, a variety of neoplastic conditions have been reported, including lymphangioma, rhabdomyoma, papilloma, sweat gland adenoma, fibroma, and hemangioma.

Melanomas, the result of proliferation of melanoblasts, have been reported most commonly in the Duroc breed and are often found at birth. The tumors are frequently seen on the flank region and have been described as being 1–4 cm in diameter, raised with an irregular black shiny surface. Metastases have been seen in lymph nodes, kidney, liver, lung, heart, brain, and skeletal muscle.

Rhabdomyosarcomas have been reported as solitary or multiple tumors on piglets less than 1 week old in at least 25 piglets in a short period of time in one herd in the Netherlands, indicating a common, possibly genetic cause (Voss et al. 1993).

Small fibrous polyps or wartlike lesions have been seen on sows, especially around the neck, along the back, and on the ears. These lesions frequently bleed and can easily be removed under local anesthetic.

MISCELLANEOUS

Porcine Dermatitis and Nephropathy Syndrome (PDNS)

Porcine Dermatitis and Nephropathy Syndrome (PDNS) has relatively recently been reported in pigs (Smith et al. 1993; White and Higgins 1993; Cameron 1995; Hélie et al. 1995) and is characterized by multifocal skin lesions, weight loss, edema of the limbs, vasculitis, and glomerulonephritis.

The cause is unknown, but histopathological and immunological findings suggest the pathogenesis involves an immune-complex disorder (antibody-antigen complex deposition) possibly due to an infectious agent. Thibault et al. (1998b) suggested that porcine re productive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRSV) infection may play a role in the pathogenesis of the disease, because PRRSV antigens were detected by immunohistochemistry in macrophages located around vessels of skin and kidney tissue examined in acute and chronic cases. Wellenberg et al. (2004) considered that porcine circovirus type 2 (PCV2) was likely to be the primary agent in the development of PDNS. They reported excessively high PCV2 antibody levels in a case-control field study of PDNS and hypothesized that PCV2 plays an important clinical and immuno-pathological role in the development of PDNS. They suggested that the excessive high levels of PCV2 antibodies trigger the development of fibrinous deposits (immune complexes) in, for example, kidneys that can initiate an inflammatory process when deposited within the vascular or glomerular capillary wall. They also found an epidemiological association in herds that had experienced postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS) also caused by PCV2. However, their study did not indicate that PRRSV infection was a primary cause of PDNS, nor did they consider Pasteurella multocida a primary agent as has previously been suggested (Sierra et al. 1997; Thompson et al. 2001).

Seen mainly in growing swine, 20–65 kg liveweight, the most obvious clinical signs are skin lesions and a rapid loss in body weight with concurrent depression. The skin lesions range from large areas of erythema, macules, and hemorrhagic papules to dark brown to black thick crusts of necrosis on the ears, face, lower limbs, hindquarters, scrotum in boars, and vulva of sows (Figures 8.2E, 8.2F).

Other clinical signs include subcutaneous edema along the ventral abdominal wall and limbs. The lower parts of the legs are obviously swollen, and swelling of the joints is not uncommon. An outbreak in a large specific pathogen free (SPF) herd soon after it had been established by medicated early weaning was investigated. Typical cases were seen in at least 20 growing pigs over a 3-month period. Most pigs had to be destroyed or died within a few weeks (Cameron, unpublished data).

The condition could be confused with erysipelas, with skin necrosis, or, in its early stages, with sarcoptic mange. Of serious concern is that the clinical signs and lesions closely resemble those of classical swine fever and African swine fever. The autopsy findings will reveal enlarged, pale, spotted (petechiation) kidneys, fluid in the body cavities, subcutaneous fluid, and excessive synovial fluid in the joints. Gastric ulceration and hemorrhage are commonly seen. The histopathology of the kidney lesions is consistent with a diffuse necrotizing and proliferating glomerulonephritis. Glomerular spaces contain precipitated protein, necrotic cells (particularly polymorphs), and red blood cells. Secondary renal changes include formation of hyalin/granular casts and distended tubules. Necrotizing vasculitis of arterioles in the dermis and subcutis is associated with skin lesions. Small-vessel vasculitis can be detected in other organs, including lymph nodes, spleen, stomach, liver, bladder, brain, and joints (Higgins 1993). A significant increase in plasma urea and creatinine with a decrease in sodium and chloride and very high levels of protein and red and white blood cells in urine are characteristic. Because the actual causative agent is unknown, control is difficult.

REFERENCES


ANATOMY

The kidneys of swine are bean-shaped, generally smooth on the surface, and brown. They are elongated, flattened dorsoventrally, and at least twice as long as wide (Figure 9.1). At the middle of the medial border of each of them is an indentation, the hilus of the kidney, where the vessels, nerves, and ureter communicate with the organ. The kidneys are located ventrally to the psoas muscles at the level of the first four lumbar vertebrae. Their relative location is slightly asymmetrical, but contrary to what is observed in many other species, the left kidney of most individuals is often situated cranially to the right one; the extremity of the cranial pole of the former may reach the last intercostal space. In the adult, the ratio of the combined weight of the kidneys to that of the body is about 0.50–0.66% (Sisson 1975).

The kidneys are enveloped by a rather thin fibrous capsule that can be easily peeled off. In a kidney section, the relative surface occupied by the cortex and the medulla is readily apparent (Figure 9.2). Pigs have multi-pyramidal or multilobar kidneys but without the external lobation typically found in the bovine species. The medullary portion of each lobe is called a pyramid; some are simple, whereas others are compound, that is, formed by the fusion of two or more primitively separate pyramids. The pale apical portion of a pyramid, called the papilla, projects into the renal pelvis or its ramifications; these latter are referred to as calyces (refer to Figure 9.2). Papillae of simple pyramids are generally narrow and conical, whereas those of compound pyramids, often located in the area of the renal poles, are broad and flattened. There are 8–12 papillae per kidney. Collecting ducts of the kidneys have their openings at the tips of the papillae.

The ureters, which are continuous with the renal pelvis, leave the kidneys in a sharp caudal curve. They ultimately reach the dorsolateral sides of the bladder neck area, penetrating its muscular coat at almost right angles, and pass obliquely through the submucosa, raising the mucosa slightly before ending at the ureteric orifices. In newborn piglets, the length of the portion of the ureter running beneath the bladder mucosa is about 5 mm, whereas it reaches a mean length of about 35 mm in the adult (Carr et al. 1990). The intravesical portion of the ureters acts as a valve that prevents vesico-ureteral reflux of urine.

The urinary bladder of the pig is large and has a long neck. When full, it lies well down into the abdominal cavity. The bladder is supported by one median (ventrally located) and two lateral ligaments. The urethra of the adult female is about 7–8 cm long and its external ostium is located ventrally, at the junction of the vagina and vestibule; beneath it is a small depression, the suburethral diverticulum. In the male, the urethra opens into a slitlike structure at the tip of the penis.

PHYSIOLOGY

Histophysiology

The kidney is involved in many vital functions: the elimination of waste products from the body, the conservation of water, and the regulation of the acid-base balance and electrolyte composition. In addition, it has an endocrine function: it produces a variety of hormones, including erythropoietin, renin, prostaglandins, and vitamin D₃.

Most of these functions are achieved by a multitude of microscopic anatomical structures called nephrons, which, all together, form the bulk of the renal parenchyma. The kidney of a pig contains well over one million nephrons. Newborn piglets have immature kidneys, and nephrogenesis continues during the first 3 months of life (Friis 1980). The nephron, the functional unit of the kidney, consists of a renal corpuscle, proximal tubule, loop of Henle, and distal tubule. The renal corpuscle comprises the glomerulus, a tuft of arterial capillaries, and Bowman’s capsule. The first mechanism used to accomplish renal function is glomerular filtra-
tion. The volume of plasma filtered depends essentially on the renal perfusion, blood pressure, and integrity of the glomerulus itself. The glomerular filtrate is an ultrafiltrate of blood plasma that contains water, glucose, salts, ions, amino acids, and small amounts of protein of low molecular weight. The glomerular filtrate entering the tubular components of the nephron is profoundly modified by various processes of absorption and secretion that are, at least in part, governed by the needs of the animal. A significant part of these changes takes place in the proximal tubule, a segment of the nephron lined by well-developed and metabolically very active epithelial cells. At that site, for example, 100% of the filtered glucose (in a normoglycemic animal) is reabsorbed by an active transport mechanism, and many other substances, such as water, sodium, amino acids, albumin,
and bicarbonate, are also reabsorbed in significant amounts (Banks 1986). Pigs are distinctive in that they reabsorb very few urates from glomerular filtrate compared to most other species. Tubular secretion of various endogenous and exogenous compounds complements the clearance of substances that are filtered at the glomerulus. The filtrate finally enters the collecting ducts, where it may be further concentrated. Under normal conditions, urine expelled into the pelvis is not further modified as it travels through the rest of the lower urinary tract, the mucosa of which is lined with a transitional epithelium often referred to as urothelium.

**Urine**

The volume of urine produced daily depends on several variables, including diet, fluid intake, ambient temperature and humidity, and the size and weight of the animal. Accurate data on the normal ranges of the amount of urine excreted per day in pigs are limited. Salmon-Legagneur et al. (1973) reported a mean urinary output of 9 L and 5.3 L/day in gestating and lactating sows, respectively. Other factors, such as the water distribution system used, may also affect the production of urine if they influence drinking behavior.

The mean specific gravity of urine in adult swine is about 1.020 (plasma >1.010), one of the lowest found in domestic animals (Ruckebusch et al. 1991). Young animals have even lower values. Specific gravity of urine is usually inversely related to urine volume. Urinary pH is usually between 5.5 and 7.5. It is influenced by the metabolism and the composition of the feed; starvation or a high protein intake lowers urinary pH. Urinary infection with urea-splitting bacteria (e.g., *Actinobaculum suis*, formerly *Actinomyces suis*) may result in a significant alkalinization of urine.

As mentioned (see previous section), the small amount of protein that passes through the glomeruli is, for the most part, reabsorbed by the proximal tubules, so normally no protein is detected in urine by usual methods. The presence of proteinuria may be of diagnostic significance and must be interpreted in conjunction with the specific gravity. Significant proteinuria is associated with various renal diseases such as glomerulonephritis (increased permeability to protein), tubular necrosis (decreased reabsorption of protein), and pyelonephritis (inflammation), and with lower urinary tract inflammation. The presence of protein in the urine is, however, not always pathologic, because transient physiological or functional proteinuria also occurs in some instances. Proteinuria is observed in baby pigs in their first few days of life, their glomeruli being permeable to colostral protein found in high levels in the blood. Transient proteinuria may also occur following excessive physical activity (e.g., transport) or intense stress or when excessive amounts of protein are ingested.

The color of urine is usually yellow to amber depending on the concentration of urochromes. Abnormal coloration of urine is observed with some underlying urinary tract diseases. Urine sediment examination is very informative because it may reveal findings of diagnostic significance (e.g., in the case of cystitis-pyelonephritis).

**Impaired Renal Function**

In some pathological situations, renal function is impaired so much that renal failure ensues. Renal failure may have a prerenal (e.g., any condition that reduces renal blood flow), postrenal (e.g., obstructive uropathy), or primary renal origin (e.g., extensive renal parenchymal disease). Renal failure can cause metabolic acidosis, electrolytic imbalances, and intravascular accumulations of various metabolic waste products, including blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine. Determination of both BUN and serum creatinine concentration may be used to assess the renal function. The serum creatinine concentration is a more accurate index of the glomerular filtration rate than is the BUN because it is less dependent on nonrenal factors. Concentrations of BUN may rise in animals with high dietary protein intake or in any conditions resulting in increased protein catabolism. Friendship et al. (1984) reported normal-range values for BUN and serum creatinine in weaned and feeder pigs, gilts, and sows. In sows, for example, the mean BUN concentration has been reported as 5.3 mmol/L (n = 102) (Friendship et al. 1984) and 5.0 mmol/L (n = 120) (McLaughlin and McLaughlin 1987), whereas the mean serum creatinine concentrations reported in the same two studies are 160 μmol/L and 186 μmol/L, respectively.

**DEVELOPMENTAL ANOMALIES**

Anomalies of development occur in all body systems, and the urinary tract is no exception. These anomalies may involve the kidneys as well as the lower urinary tract. Many of these conditions in swine are relatively rare and of little economic significance. Few of these malformations in pigs are common, and only rarely are they associated with clinical signs. In some instances, developmental anomalies have been shown to be inherited.

**Malformations of the Kidneys**

Most of the well-characterized renal anomalies of development occurring in domestic animals have also been documented in pigs. Depressions of the external surface and partial persistence of fetal lobation of the kidneys have been reported to be relatively common in Norwegian slaughtered pigs (Jansen and Nordstoga 1992). Unilateral renal agenesis (aplasia) occurs sporadically in pigs and is relatively common compared to other domestic animals (Höfliger 1971). Bilateral renal agenesis is obviously incompatible with life and would be encountered in the fetus or stillborn piglet. Cases of bilateral renal agenesis and renal hypoplasia have been described in pigs and linked to a genetic cause (Cordes and Dodd...
Malposition of the kidneys (renal ectopia) is not rare and is often characterized by caudal displacement of one kidney, often the left, to the pelvic area (Sisson 1975). Duplication of one kidney has been observed on a number of occasions in pigs (Nieberle and Cohrs 1967). Horseshoe kidney, rarely observed in swine, is a condition in which the kidneys have fused at either the cranial or the caudal poles, resulting in a horseshoe-shaped organ (Nieberle and Cohrs 1967). Renal dysplasia, a disorganized development of renal parenchyma due to anomalous differentiation, is also relatively rare (Maxie 1993).

Congenital renal cysts are not infrequently seen in the kidneys of various species but are more common in swine. The presence of one or a few cysts in the kidney, often referred to as simple renal cysts, is a common incidental finding at abattoirs, and the affected organs are generally condemned. These cystic cavities, filled with serous fluid, vary from a few millimeters in diameter to larger than the organ itself. They are commonly found in the cortex and often protrude from the surface of the organ, where they may appear translucent or opaque depending on the amount of fibrous connective tissue present in their wall (Figure 9.3). Histologically, these cysts are lined with a layer of tubular epithelial cells surrounded by a fibrous capsule.

Polycystic kidney disease represents another form of congenital cysts, occurring far less frequently. This form is characterized by the presence of numerous and generally smaller cysts that occupy a significant proportion of the renal parenchyma. Cystic structures may be found in the liver (cystic bile ducts) as well. Affected piglets usually die from renal failure during the neonatal period (Webster and Summers 1978).

The distinction between simple renal cysts and polycystic kidney disease is not always well demarcated. Wells et al. (1980) reported a prevalence of renal cysts of nearly 50% from a single herd that experienced an abnormally high rate of kidney condemnations at the abattoir. Affected kidneys had variable numbers and sizes of cysts, ranging from one extreme to the other. Further investigation showed that affected animals were the progeny of a Landrace boar. The disease was found to be inherited as an autosomal dominant trait, the number of cysts being determined by polygenic inheritance (Wijeratne and Wells 1980).

Malformations of the Lower Urinary Tract
Developmental anomalies of the lower urinary tract appear to be rare in swine, and like those found in the kidneys, their true prevalence is unknown. Cases of duplication of the ureter (Benko 1969), persistent urachus (Weaver 1966), and congenital ureteral occlusion (Nieberle and Cohrs 1967) have been reported in pigs.

CIRCULATORY DISTURBANCES
Circulatory disturbances may occur in the urinary tract as well as in any other tissues of the body. Some of these disturbances of the circulation produce lesions that may be of diagnostic significance on postmortem inspection.

Hemorrhage
Hemorrhages, in the form of widespread petechiae or less commonly ecchymoses, may be found in any part of the kidney or lower urinary tract in various septicemic illnesses (Figure 9.4). Bacterial infections commonly associated with these lesions include septiciemia due to salmonellae, streptococci, Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae, and Actinobacillus spp. These lesions are often seen in acute cases of hog cholera and African swine fever and in other viremic diseases such as cytomegalovirus infection (Orr et al. 1988). Petechiation of the renal cortex is also observed occasionally in acute glomerulonephritis, in some acute intoxications, and in electrocuted animals.

Larger intrarenal or subcapsular hemorrhages are usually caused by trauma, necrosis, or clotting defect, including poisoning by anticoagulant rodenticides. They may also occur in some cases of disseminated intravascular coagulation. Widespread hemorrhages in al-

9.3. Congenital renal cysts in slaughtered sows.

9.4. Widespread petechiae in the kidney of a piglet with Staphylococcus hyicus septiciemia.
most all body systems, including the urinary tract, are a striking pathologic feature in suckling piglets with isoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura due to passively transferred antplatelet antibody from the dam’s colostrum (Andersen and Nielsen 1973; Dimmock et al. 1982). In this relatively common disease, affected piglets appear normal at birth but eventually die between 1 and 3 weeks of age from hemorrhagic diathesis.

Infarction
Renal infarcts, infrequently found in the kidneys of swine, are localized areas of ischemic coagulative necrosis produced by the occlusion of the renal artery or one of its tributaries. The localization and size of the infarct reflect the area vascularized normally by the involved blood vessel. The occlusion is usually due to thrombosis or to aseptic emboli (the consequences of septic emboli are discussed under embolic nephritis). In some instances infarction of the renal parenchyma is primarily associated with renal vasculitis (Jansen and Nordstoga 1992), including polyarteritis nodosa (Nieberle and Cohrs 1967).

Bilateral renal cortical necrosis is seen on rare occasions in pigs and is considered to be the result of an infarct of a major part of the cortex of both kidneys (Häni and Indermühle 1980). The reaction is characterized by disseminated intravascular coagulation with a marked tropism for the small arterial blood vessels of the renal cortex. The etiopathogenesis of these lesions remains unclear but the condition has been associated with septicemia, endotoxemia, and hemorrhagic shock due to bleeding gastric ulcers.

GLOMERULAR DISEASES
Renal diseases that involve primarily the glomeruli include amyloidosis and glomerulonephritis. Renal amyloidosis has been rarely reported in pigs (Jakob 1971; Maxie 1993). Glomerulonephritis represents an important category of renal diseases in animals and in recent years this condition has been recognized with increasing frequency in swine.

Glomerulonephritis
Inflammatory changes in renal glomeruli may take place via a number of mechanisms, including immunologic, thrombotic, toxic, and as yet uncharacterized mechanisms. Most cases of glomerulonephritis (GN) in humans and animals are thought to be immune-mediated.

The main types of glomerular immunologic injury recognized are trapping of circulating immune complexes (antigen-antibody complexes), in situ immune complex formation, activation of the alternate pathway of complement, and cell-mediated processes (Spargo and Taylor 1988). Because immunoglobulins and complement components are frequently found in inflamed glomeruli, antibody-mediated injury has received the most attention. In veterinary medicine, the commonly used classification for the various morphologic types of immune-mediated GN are membranous, proliferative, and membranoproliferative.

Although the pathogenesis of GN is now reasonably well understood, knowledge of the etiology or triggering event is still unknown in most cases (idiopathic immune-mediated GN). Theoretically GN may be triggered by a variety of factors including drugs, chemicals, food allergens, endogenous antigens, and infectious agents (Drolet et al. 1999).

GN is not often diagnosed in swine but does occur occasionally as a sporadic event (Nieberle and Cohrs 1967; Slauson and Lewis 1979; Maxie 1993; Bourgault and Drolet 1995). It has also been reported as a sequel to chronic infectious diseases such as hog cholera, African swine fever (Maurer et al. 1958; Cheville et al. 1970; Martin-Fernandez et al. 1991; Hervas et al. 1996; Choi and Chae 2003), systemic cytomegalovirus infection (Yoshikawa et al. 1988), and group A streptococcal abscesses (Morales and Guzman 1976). In these cases, the resulting GN appears to be caused by the presence of glomerular immune complexes in which the antigen is related to the agent responsible for the underlying disease (Slauson and Lewis 1979). Nutritionally induced GN has also been reported on a few occasions in pigs. Ingestion of a protein-rich by-product (Elling 1979) and ingestion of “smut fungus” contained in the feedstuff (Müller 1977) have been incriminated.

An inherited renal disease, classified morphologically as membranoproliferative GN type II, has been described in Yorkshire piglets from Norway (Jansen 1993). This familial disease is not associated with the presence of intraglomerular immune complexes but rather is caused by an autosomal recessive deficiency of the complement inhibitory protein “factor H” (Hogasen et al. 1995; Jansen et al. 1995). Deficiency of factor H ultimately provokes activation of the alternate pathway of complement, with subsequent massive deposits of complement in renal glomeruli. This disease in Norwegian Yorkshire pigs represents a promising animal model for the study of membranoproliferative GN type II in humans (Jansen et al. 1998).

In many species, generalized or focal GN is also observed in some cases of systemic vasculitis (mainly immune-mediated vasculitis). In pigs, the best example of this certainly is porcine dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome (PDNS). The condition, first described in the United Kingdom in 1993 (Smith et al. 1993; White and Higgins 1993), was subsequently observed in other parts of Europe, North and South America, Oceania, and Africa, suggesting a worldwide distribution (Segalés et al. 2003). The disease affects nursery and growing pigs and, less commonly, breeding animals (Drolet et al. 1999). Although notable exceptions have been observed, the prevalence of the syndrome in affected herds is usually less than 1%. Affected animals present a sys-
Renal fibrosis combined with proliferative glomerular lesions was rather common in Norwegian slaughter pigs (Jansen and Nordstoga 1992, 1994). Further studies are needed to confirm the relationship between this interstitial fibrosis and the mesangiproliferative glomerulopathy observed. Other examples of glomerular disease in swine have been reported in the literature in recent years (Shirota et al. 1984, 1995; Tamura et al. 1986; Yoshie 1991; Pace et al. 1998; Carrasco et al. 2003).

Although several of the previously described glomerulonephropathy types are associated with an underlying disease process (chronic infections, genetic defect, systemic vasculitis, etc.) that gives insight into the likely etiology of the condition, many spontaneous cases of GN, however, remain idiopathic (primary idiopathic GN) (Slauson and Lewis 1979; Shirota et al. 1986; Bourgault and Drolet 1995).

The clinical significance of GN is highly variable, with a spectrum ranging from a subclinical condition to a fulminating and rapidly fatal disease. Shirota and coworkers (1986) found deposition of immune complexes containing IgG and third-complement component (C3) in the glomerular mesangium of most of the 100 normal slaughtered swine they examined. The mesangiproliferative GN, disclosed only upon microscopic examination of the kidneys, was seemingly not associated with clinical disease. On the other end of the spectrum, the proliferative and exudative GN observed in most of the cases of spontaneous GN reported by Bourgault and Drolet (1995) was found to be responsible for the death of at least one-third of the pigs affected. The hereditary GN of Norwegian Yorkshire pigs appears to be invariably fatal; affected piglets die of renal failure within 1–2 weeks of birth (Jansen et al. 1995). Mortalities are also commonly recorded in pigs affected with PDNS (Smith et al. 1993; White and Higgins 1993; Kavanagh 1994; Hélie et al. 1995; Segalés et al. 1998; Thomson et al. 2002). In this latter condition, the survival of the affected pigs depends on the extent and severity of the vascular lesions in the internal organs, particularly within the kidneys.

Unlike most other domestic animals affected with GN (with the exception of the familial glomerulopathies), pigs appear to be affected at a relatively young age. The condition has been described most commonly in weaned and feeder pigs (1.5–6 months old), occasionally in breeding animals, and rarely in nursing piglets. Clinical signs, when present, may include anorexia, lethargy, unwillingness to move, subcutaneous edema, rapid loss of condition, and death. GN is rarely recognized clinically because most of the signs are nonspecific, and analysis of urine and blood from an individual is rarely considered of practical value in the herd medicine approach applied in our large units of production. Pigs affected with PDNS are often more easy to detect clinically because of the presence of hemorrhagic and necrotizing skin lesions, mainly located on the hind-
limbs and perineal area (Segalés et al. 2003). Pigs with GN may show concomitant hypoproteinemia, hypoaalbuminemia, and persistent proteinuria which are highly suggestive of a protein-losing glomerulopathy. The urine protein/creatinine ratio may also be increased (Hélie et al. 1995). Proteinuria, hematuria, and pyuria, which are usually compatible with lower urinary tract lesions, may also occur in severe types of GN—namely, in acute proliferative and exudative GN. Blood of affected animals may also reveal elevated urea and creatinine levels suggestive of renal failure (White and Higgins 1993; Hélie et al. 1995; Jansen et al. 1995; Drolet et al. 1999; Thomson et al. 2002).

Gross lesions of GN may be absent, subtle, or very conspicuous. The appearance of the kidneys will depend largely on the severity of the glomerular lesions and the stage (acute vs. chronic) of the disease process. In acute GN, the kidneys may be slightly to markedly enlarged, pale, edematous, often with cortical petechiation (Figure 9.6). The most important differential diagnoses to consider for such acutely affected kidneys are various bacterial septicemia (Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae, Actinobacillus suis, Salmonella choleraesuis), acute viremia (classical swine fever, African swine fever, cytomegalovirus) and intoxications. With time, the surface of the kidneys may become finely granular, and in the chronic phase of the disease, the organs may appear shrunken and contracted due to progressive cortical fibrosis. At this stage, the gross lesions are indistinguishable from chronic interstitial nephritis. They may, however, be differentiated from chronic pyelonephritis, which tends to produce a more irregular pattern of fibrosis, often with intervening areas of normal parenchyma and evidence of lesions upon careful examination of renal calyces and papillae. Perirenal and subcutaneous edema and serous effusions in body cavities may be observed in some cases of GN. On several occasions a high prevalence of gastric ulcers has been associated with GN (Jansen 1993; White and Higgins 1993; Kavanagh 1994; Bourgault and Drolet 1995).

Treatment of GN, which is usually symptomatic, has received little attention in swine since the disease is not often diagnosed in live animals under normal farrowing conditions. Pigs affected with PDNS have been tentatively treated with various antimicrobial agents, anti-inflammatory drugs and multivitamin supplements without significantly conclusive results (Segalés et al. 2003).

TUBULAR DISEASES

Renal diseases characterized primarily by degenerative changes affecting the tubular epithelial cells of the nephrons may occur under certain circumstances. In these cases, the epithelial lining cells of the tubules may undergo degeneration, followed by necrosis and sloughing of the cells.

Acute tubular necrosis, often called nephrosis, represents an important cause of acute renal failure in animals. The epithelial cells of the proximal tubules, because of their high metabolic activity, are especially susceptible to damage caused by prolonged ischemia or nephrotoxins, the two main causes of this type of nephropathy.

Ischemic Tubular Necrosis

Ischemic tubular necrosis is generally the result of a severe and prolonged period of hypotension associated with shock of endotoxic, hypovolemic, cardiogenic, or neurogenic origin (Maxie 1993). These renal lesions are potentially life-threatening, and the clinical signs of the resulting renal failure are often hidden by the marked systemic effects of the primary disease responsible for the state of shock.

Nephrotoxic Tubular Necrosis

Nephrotoxic tubular necrosis has been documented in domestic animals in association with a wide variety of exogenous natural and synthetic compounds. These toxic substances may affect tubular function and ultimately cause cellular damage by several mechanisms, including metabolic alterations affecting cellular respiration, interference with the tubular transport system, and damage to specific organelles (Brown and Engelhardt 1987).

Plants, mycotoxins, antimicrobial drugs, heavy metals, ethylene glycol, and some other industrial compounds are potential nephrotoxins in swine. Some of these toxic products are covered in Chapters 56 and 60.

Many plants are nephrotoxic to animals, especially ruminants. Several species of pigweed, particularly red-root pigweed (Amaranthus retroflexus) (Figure 9.7), may cause acute renal failure in pigs when ingested. The disease occurs in summer and early fall, corresponding to the months in which animals may have access to the
plants. The onset of clinical signs usually occurs about a week after the ingestion. Characteristic signs include weakness, trembling, and incoordination, rapidly progressing to posterior paralysis and sternal recumbency, and finally to death (Osweiler et al. 1969).

Fungi of some species of Aspergillus and Penicillium produce nephrotoxins that can contaminate grains used as feedstuff. Ochratoxin A and citrinin are the most common nephrotoxic mycotoxins. Monogastric animals, particularly pigs, may develop significant disease when moldy feed containing ochratoxin A is ingested. Acute clinical signs are relatively rare; a subacute to chronic wasting disease is more commonly associated with this poisoning (Osweiler 1996).

Antibiotic-associated nephropathies are well documented in domestic animals. Classes of antibiotics considered potentially nephrotoxic include the aminoglycosides, tetracyclines (or their degradation products), and sulfonamides. Predisposing factors associated with the toxicity of these agents include the dosage and the route of administration, the duration of the treatment, the solubility of the products, and the general health status (dehydration, shock, preexisting renal disease) of the animal.

Ethylene glycol is another potential cause of poisoning in pigs. This product, found in high concentration in many antifreeze solutions, is not toxic per se, but once it is ingested and absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, a proportion is enzymatically oxidized in the liver and successively transformed into several nephrotoxic compounds and finally to oxalate. Poisoning occurs in swine with the ingestion of 4–5 ml of ethylene glycol/kg of body weight (Carson 1999). Pigs may be poisoned when they have accidental access to antifreeze solution expelled during engine maintenance or from the plumbing systems in which these products are used to prevent freezing.

Many metallic compounds are nephrotoxic, including inorganic mercury, arsenic, cadmium, lead, thallium, and bismuth. Cases of poisoning with these products are relatively rare in pigs.

Gross renal lesions observed in acute cases of nephrotoxic tubular necrosis are not always conspicuous, but the kidneys may appear slightly swollen, pale, and moist (Figure 9.8). In pigweed (Amaranthus retroflexus) poisoning these renal lesions are often accompanied by a marked perirenal edema that may contain blood and possibly by serous effusions elsewhere in the body (Osweiler et al. 1969). In severe acute tubular necrosis, death from acute renal failure may ensue. Animals that survive the acute phase of the disease either recover or develop progressive fibrosis of the kidneys that may or may not lead to chronic renal failure. This chronic evolution appears relatively common in pigs with ochratoxin A toxicosis (Krogh 1977; Rutqvist et al. 1978; Cook et al. 1986).

Histologically, acute tubular necrosis is generally characterized by swelling and necrosis of the lining epithelial cells of the proximal and distal tubules, the presence of granular casts in the tubular lumen, dilated tubules, and mild interstitial edema. The presence of large numbers of calcium oxalate crystals within tubules is a characteristic finding in ethylene glycol poisoning. Kidneys of animals surviving the acute toxic insult show evidence of epithelial regeneration and eventually, at least in some cases, interstitial fibrosis accompanied by focal loss of nephrons and a mild interstitial inflammatory infiltrate.

Since specific therapies for most of these toxicoses is virtually lacking, treatment of affected animals is essentially supportive and symptomatic. When a specific nephrotoxin is suspected, action should be taken to ensure that the offending toxin is rapidly withdrawn or that the pigs are immediately removed from the source of the intoxication. Practical measures can be taken to
prevent intoxication by some of these nephrotoxins. Proper drying and storage of grain, for example, is one of the best methods of preventing mycotoxicosis, such as from ochratoxin A.

TUBULOINTERSTITIAL DISEASES

Tubulointerstitial diseases include a relatively large group of conditions characterized primarily by interstitial inflammation and tubular damage: namely, interstitial nephritis (such as that occurring from leptospirosis), embolic nephritis, and pyelonephritis (one of the most significant urinary tract diseases in swine). Immunologically mediated tubulointerstitial disease as occurs in humans has only rarely been documented in domestic animals.

Interstitial Nephritis

Leptospirosis is probably one of the best known causes of interstitial nephritis in pigs. Many serovars of *Leptospira* spp.—those of the serogroups Pomona, Tarassovi, and Australis, for which pigs act as maintenance hosts—cause significant disease in swine, most notably linked with reproductive problems, including infertility, abortion, and birth of weak or dead piglets. The pathogenesis of the disease involves the penetration by the leptospires of mucosal surfaces or skin, a bacteremia of a few days that lasts until the beginning of the humoral immune response, and the preferential localization and persistence of the organisms at sites physically protected from antibodies, such as in the ocular vitreous humor, the cerebrospinal fluid, the genital tract, and the lumen of the renal proximal tubes (Prescott 1993). The passage of the leptospires from the bloodstream to the interstitial tissue of the renal parenchyma and finally to the tubular lumen elicits multifocal lesions of interstitial nephritis (Cheville et al. 1980).

The severity of the interstitial nephritis varies and ranges from grossly undetectable to extensive lesions, particularly when serovars of the Pomona serogroup are involved. The lesions are randomly distributed and appear as poorly circumscribed whitish foci of various shapes and sizes, becoming confluent in severe cases (Figure 9.9). Histologically these foci correspond to the infiltration of lymphocytes, plasma cells, and macrophages in the interstitial tissue, along with some degenerative changes of the surrounding nephrons. In chronic cases, interstitial fibrosis occurs.

In most cases these lesions are not extensive enough to cause renal failure, so the generally asymptomatic animal may shed the leptospires in urine for a relatively long period of time and become an important source of contamination of the premises. With time, the leptospirosis becomes less intense and intermittent, but it has been reported to occur for up to 2 years in some cases (Mitchell et al. 1966).

The association between lesions of interstitial nephritis in pigs and the detection of leptospires within these kidneys is highly variable among studies (McErlean 1973; Hunter et al. 1987; Jones et al. 1987; Baker et al. 1989; Boqvist et al. 2003). Factors that may influence these results include the serovar of *Leptospira* spp. involved, the methods of leptospiral detection used, the phase of the infection and also the prevalence of leptospirosis and of other infectious causes of interstitial nephritis in swine in a given geographical area. For instance, the prevalence of leptospirosis in fattening pigs and sows in southern Vietnam was found to be high (Boqvist et al. 2002, 2003), whereas similar studies conducted in slaughtered pigs in southwestern Quebec have shown a very low prevalence of this infection (Ribotta et al. 1999; Drolet et al. 2002).

Postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS), a condition affecting nursery and growing pigs, was first described in Canada in 1996 (Clark 1996; Harding 1996). The disease has been linked to PCV2 and is now occurring in many parts of the world. It is characterized by progressive weight loss, respiratory signs, hypopertrophic lymphadenopathy, and, in some cases, diarrhea, pallor, or icterus (Allan and Ellis 2000; Segalés and Domingo 2002). Lesions involve several organs and include lymphohistiocytic to granulomatous interstitial pneumonia, nephritis, and hepatitis. The interstitial nephritis is in some cases grossly detectable as whitish foci within renal parenchyma (Figure 9.10). In lymphoid tissues there is lymphocyte depletion and infiltration of histiocytes and multinucleated giant cells that may contain grapelike clusters of basophilic cytoplasmic viral inclusion bodies.

Multifocal lesions of interstitial nephritis also occur in swine with other bacterial (see the section on embolic nephritis) and viral hematogenous infections. Although in most of these cases the lesions do not impair renal function, they are of diagnostic significance because they are suggestive of a systemic disease. Lesions of interstitial nephritis caused by systemic viral infections are often disclosed only upon microscopic examination and are characterized by the presence of foci of nonsup-
purative inflammation. Viral infections that may produce these lesions include cytomegalovirus (Kelly 1967), adenovirus (Shadduck et al. 1967; Nietfeld and Leslie-Steen 1993), PRRS virus, and possibly others. Multifocal lesions of nonsuppurative interstitial nephritis have been reproduced experimentally in PRRS virus–infected piglets examined 2–3 weeks postinoculation (Rossow et al. 1995; Cooper et al. 1997). These lesions are found in the renal cortex as well as in the medulla. Similar renal lesions are also frequently found in naturally infected pigs.

Gross lesions of multifocal interstitial nephritis, often called white-spotted or white-dotted kidneys, represent a common cause of kidney condemnation at the slaughterhouse in some areas (Drolet et al. 2002). Lesions generally appear either as few randomly distributed or numerous widely disseminated whitish foci, 1–3 mm in diameter (Figure 9.11). Histologically these foci are composed of mononuclear inflammatory cells that often take up a distinct lymphofollicular pattern (follicular nephritis) (refer to Figure 9.11). This type of interstitial reaction probably represent a nonspecific immunological response to prolonged local antigenic stimulation. In one study it was shown that, although the precise cause of these lesions was uncertain, there was a statistically significant association between the lesions and the presence of porcine parvovirus and PCV2 with a stronger association when both viruses were identified in the same kidney (Drolet et al. 2002).

**Embolic Nephritis**

Embolic nephritis may occur with bacteremia or septic thromboembolism when any of various species of bacteria is seeded within the vasculature of the kidneys. In bacteremia, small aggregates of microorganisms localizing in the renal microcirculation (in particular, in the interstitial and glomerular capillaries) cause the formation of small suppurative foci. Early lesions appear grossly as small hemorrhagic foci bilaterally scattered throughout the renal cortex. They gradually form small (1–3 mm) whitish to yellowish abscesses that may be surrounded by a hyperemic rim (Figure 9.12). These lesions, although more numerous in the cortex, may also be found in the medulla. The finding of such renal lesions, when performing a necropsy, strongly suggests the possibility of a septicemia. In swine, infections with *Streptococcus* spp., *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, *Actinobacillus suis*, *Escherichia coli*, *Staphylococcus* spp., *Arcanobacterium pyogenes*, and others have to be considered.

Septic thromboembolism occurs when fragments of a septic thrombus enter the bloodstream and occlude the arterial vasculature of the kidneys, resulting in necropsuppurative foci of variable size (Figure 9.13). Such renal lesions, if disclosed during a postmortem examination, should prompt a careful examination of the left cardiac valves (mitral and aortic) for the presence of vegetative endocarditis. In these cases, bacteria most often involved include *Streptococcus* spp., *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, and *Escherichia coli*.

**Cystitis-Pyelonephritis Complex**

Urine is formed by the kidneys and stored in the bladder by way of the ureters. The ureteric valves prevent retrograde flow of urine from the bladder to the kidneys. Urine is removed from the bladder via the urethra, which, in females, communicates with the vagina. The distal portion of the urethra and the vaginal tract are not sterile; the composition of the microflora is primarily

---

9.10. *Interstitial nephritis in a pig naturally infected with porcine circovirus type 2.*

9.11. (A) Kidney from a slaughter pig with multifocal interstitial nephritis. Note the relatively well-demarcated white dots randomly distributed throughout the cortex. (B) Well-demarcated focal area of interstitial nephritis showing a distinct lymphofollicular pattern (follicular nephritis).
bacterial. Ascending infection of the sterile portions of the urinary tract may lead to cystitis and pyelonephritis.

The cystitis-pyelonephritis complex has been documented as a leading cause of mortality in sows (D’Allaire and Drolet 1999). Porcine cystitis-pyelonephritis has been reported throughout the world, and the increased incidence appears to be correlated with changes in management, particularly the adoption of confinement housing for gestating sows.

Etiology. A wide variety of bacteria have been isolated from cases of porcine cystitis and pyelonephritis, including *E. coli*, *Arcanobacterium pyogenes*, *Streptococcus* spp., and *Staphylococcus* spp. (Carr and Walton 1993). These endogenous and opportunistic organisms typically inhabit the lower urinary tract and are often referred to as being responsible for “nonspecific” urinary tract infections, which are reviewed in detail in Chapter 38. *Actinobaculum suis*, a specific urinary pathogen, is an important cause of ascending infection in swine. Infection with *A. suis* frequently results in elevated sow mortality, and *A. suis* has been isolated, either alone or in combination with other bacteria, from nearly half of the reported cases of cystitis and pyelonephritis reviewed by Carr and Walton (1993). Due to the importance of *A. suis* in the pathogenesis of urinary tract infection in swine, the remainder of this section will focus on its role in the disease process.

Formerly classified in the genera *Eubacterium* and *Actinomyces*, *Actinobaculum suis* is a gram-positive rod-shaped bacterium that grows well under anaerobic conditions. *Actinobaculum suis* is urease positive and catalase negative, ferments maltose and xylose, and hydrolyzes starch. Methyl red, Voges-Proskauer, indole, and nitrate reduction tests are negative. A slight alkalinity is produced in litmus milk, but liquification of egg or serum media does not occur. It is nonhemolytic on blood agar, producing pinpoint colonies 2–3 mm in diameter after 2–3 days of incubation under anaerobic conditions at 37°C. During days 4 to 5 postinoculation, colonies flatten and develop a dry, opaque appearance, reaching a diameter of 4–5 mm (Taylor 1999).

Epidemiology. *Actinobaculum suis* is a commensal organism of the porcine urogenital tract. It has been isolated from the preputial cavity of boars at slaughter (Pijoan et al. 1983; Pleschakowa et al. 2004), the vaginal tract of neonatal piglets sampled immediately following parturition, and the vaginal tract of females sampled throughout all stages of production (Dee et al. 1993). *Actinobaculum suis* has been isolated from voided urine, contaminated parturition sleeves of farrowing attendants, pen floors of the farrowing and nursery rooms, and the boots of stockpersons working in the breeding area (Carr and Walton 1990; Dee et al. 1993). The sole route of transmission was believed to be copulation, but it is now understood that the organism is ubiquitous, and colonization of the vaginal tract can take place anytime in the life of the pig.

As the popularity of confinement gestation housing has risen, so has the incidence of *A. suis*–related urinary tract disease. Problems frequently encountered in confinement facilities are the reduced availability of water, increased fecal contamination of the perineal area, excessive weight gain, and leg injuries, all of which result in a reduction in the frequency of urination and enhanced bacterial survival in the urogenital tract. Distinguishing features of endemic cystitis and pyelonephritis within a herd include lack of a temporal relationship between the vulvar discharge and the estrous cycle, minimal effect on herd fertility, low morbidity, high mortality, and an increased frequency in advanced-parity (6+) sows (Pointon et al. 1990).

Pathogenesis. *Actinobaculum suis* is fimbriated, and the short, wide urethra of the sow enhances accessibility to the bladder (Larsen et al. 1986). Once within the bladder lumen, the alkalinity of the environment increases due to the cleavage of urea into ammonia through the
use of the urease enzyme. The elevated pH enhances bacterial proliferation and causes an inflammatory reaction of the mucosal surface. The alkaline environment also inhibits the growth of competitive microflora and promotes the precipitation of urinary salts and crystals, particularly struvite. Such precipitates not only further increase inflammatory changes in the bladder mucosa but provide a nidus for bacterial growth and protection from antibiotics and host defense mechanisms. Although the primary means for accessibility to the kidneys is not yet completely understood, it is hypothesized that damage to the ureteric valves secondary to bacterial products (possibly originating from *E. coli*) may predispose the affected animal to pyelonephritis (Carr et al. 1990).

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** Clinical signs associated with infections of the urinary tract caused by *A. suis* vary according to the severity and the phase of the disease. In acute and severe cases, affected animals may be found dead, probably from acute renal failure. Symptomatic animals are usually afebrile and may show anorexia, hematuria, and pyuria. The urine is typically reddish brown in color with a strong odor of ammonia. Urinary pH may increase from normal values of 5.5–7.5 up to 8–9. Animals that survive the initial infection frequently experience weight loss and reduced productivity secondary to end-stage renal disease, resulting in premature removal from the breeding herd.

Inflammatory reaction on the mucosal surface of the bladder may be catarrhal, hemorrhagic, purulent, or necrotic, and the bladder wall may be thickened. Struvites can also be found in the lumen. The ureters, often filled with exudate, may increase to as much as 2.5 cm in diameter. Unilateral or bilateral pyelonephritis or pyelitis is the primary lesion detected in the kidneys. The pelvic region, frequently distended with blood, pus, and foul-smelling urine, often shows irregular ulceration and necrosis of the papillae. These suppurative lesions may eventually extend irregularly through the renal medulla and even into the cortex, causing exophytic and discolored deformations of the renal surface (Figure 9.14). These foci of cortical inflammation, when present, seem to occur more frequently at the renal poles. Compound papillae that are mainly located in these latter areas are considered more susceptible to intrarenal reflux of septic urine because of the inability of their papillary ducts to close under intrapelvic pressure (Ransley and Risdon 1974; Carr et al. 1991). In longstanding cases of pyelonephritis, fibrosis ultimately replaces inflammation (Figure 9.15).

Microscopically, necrotizing ureteritis and pyelitis with accumulation of bacterial colonies can be seen, along with epithelial hyperplasia, desquamation of superficial epithelial cells, and goblet cell metaplasia with intraepithelial cyst formation (Woldemeskel et al. 2002). Renal tubules may contain protein casts, bacte-

---

9.14. Pyelonephritis due to *Actinobaculum suis* in a sow. Note the cortical foci of suppurative inflammation that have extended through the renal capsule (removed on the right).

9.15. Chronic pyelonephritis in a sow.
should be taken with renal tissue. Demonstration of lesions of pyelonephritis can be carried out through the examination of one kidney; however, the other should remain unopened with the ureter sealed as previously described. Upon arrival at the laboratory, a small incision should be made over a portion of the serosal surface of the bladder and kidney, previously seared with a hot iron to reduce surface contamination. A cotton swab should be inserted into the bladder lumen and streaked for isolation on colistin nalidixic acid (CNA) agar and then incubated at 37°C under anaerobic conditions for 5–7 days. If the culture process is to take place at a distant location, swabs can be placed into Kary Blair anaerobic transport media for shipment. Colonial morphology and biochemical characteristics of \( A. \text{suis} \) have been described earlier in the section.

Finally, an indirect fluorescent antibody test for the detection of serum antibodies against \( A. \text{suis} \) has been described (Wendt and Amtsberg 1994). The test appears to be highly specific (100%) but of low sensitivity (79%).

**Treatment and Prevention.** Treatment of urinary tract infections may be successful if the correct antibiotic is administered early in the course of the disease. Studies have demonstrated consistent susceptibility of \( A. \text{suis} \) to penicillin, cephalosporins, chloramphenicol, tetracyclines, and macrolides, with variable susceptibility to fluoroquinolones, and resistance to aminoglycosides (Biksi et al. 2003). Penicillin and ampicillin are frequently the products of choice, due to their ability to function under alkaline conditions and their propensity for excretion through the urinary tract. Dosages of 2.2 mg/kg are typically administered intramuscularly for 3 consecutive days. Oral administration of penicillin and ampicillin is also possible; however, feed-grade products are of little value, due to the high degree of anorexia in acutely infected sows and a reduced bioavailability, secondary to destruction by gastric enzymes, low pH, and colonic bacteria. Water-soluble ampicillin can be administered at 2.3 mg/kg for 5 consecutive days; however, bioavailability is questionable and cost may become an issue.

Acidification of the urine through oral administration of feed-grade citric acid has been described in the literature (Dee et al. 1994). Results from this study showed a reduction in the incidence of clinical urinary tract disease, as well as highly significant \((p <0.0001)\) differences in urinary pH and bacterial concentration/ml of urine in medicated versus nonmedicated groups. A level of 70 mg of citric acid was administered daily for 14 consecutive days in this study, and palatability problems were not detected in treated animals.

Prevention of urinary tract disease is similar to the steps required to control other diseases of the urogenital system (Dee 1992). The maintenance of a high degree of hygiene during breeding and parturition, as well as throughout the gestation period, is critical. Facilities need to be properly designed to reduce the spread of pathogens within the breeding herd and allow efficient removal of feces from the environment (Figure 9.16).

Restricting water availability through the use of intermittent delivery systems or poor husbandry results in an increase in abnormal urine parameters in gestating sows (Almond et al. 1996). Abnormalities included reduced urine output, elevated specific gravity \((\geq1.026)\), and increased creatinine concentration. Therefore, it is recommended that free-choice water be available at all times. Finally, because a higher degree of urinary tract disease can be seen in older sows, proper culling procedures are important to ensure that an optimal parity distribution is maintained within the breeding herd.

**NEOPLASIA**

Neoplasms are infrequent in pigs because of the low average age of the population. However, those most often recorded have been from young animals (Nielsen and Moulton 1990). Tumors of the urinary tract in swine involve mainly the kidneys. Neoplasms of the lower urinary tract, although they have been reported (Nieberle and Cohrs 1967), are generally considered exceedingly rare.

Embryonal nephroma, also named *nephroblastoma*, is one of the most common neoplasms of swine and is certainly the most common primary renal tumor observed in this species, although its relative prevalence varies from one region to another. As its name implies, this neoplasm appears to originate from the embryonic renal blastema. The tumor arises from the kidney or, rarely, from the perirenal tissues (probably from remnants of embryonic renal tissues). Affected animals are typically young, and most of them reach market age without significant clinical signs, the tumor being discovered at postmortem inspection. Embryonal nephroma is most commonly found as a single mass involving one kidney but it may be multiple or bilateral (Nielsen and Moulton 1990).
reach impressive size, often appears firm, pale, and nodular (Figure 9.17). Metastasis infrequently occurs in swine compared to other mammals affected with embryonal nephroma. Histologically, this tumor is very peculiar and resembles disorganized embryonic renal tissue. The primitive tissue from which it arises is pluripotent and accounts for the presence of neoplastic epithelial and mesenchymal elements simultaneously observed within the tumor. Hayashi et al. (1986) classified porcine nephroblastomas into four types according to their contents: nephroblastic, epithelial, mesenchymal, and miscellaneous. Only a few of the nephroblastic tumors described in their case series had metastasized.

Other primary renal tumors are believed to be uncommon in swine. Renal carcinomas have been occasionally reported (Sandison and Anderson 1968; Anderson et al. 1969). Neoplasms originating from the renal pelvis are very rare (Vitovec 1977).

Secondary renal involvement may occur with some multisystemic or generalized cancers such as the malignant lymphoma (lymphosarcoma). In pigs, this relatively common neoplasm occurs predominantly as multicentric and thymic forms. In advanced cases of multicentric and thymic lymphomas, which involve primarily the lymph nodes and the thymus, respectively, infiltration of liver, spleen, kidneys, and other organs may occur. Renal involvement is diffuse or more often nodular so that the organs appear either enlarged and pale or dotted with pale nodules often protruding from the cortical surface (Figure 9.18). In the course of the disease some animals may develop a leukemic phase. Renal lesions in some of these cases appear rather hemorrhagic (Stevenson and DeWitt 1973; Marcato 1987) and may be confused with some systemic infectious diseases (Figure 9.19). The precise pathogenesis of these latter lesions is uncertain but may involve either a coagulation defect or a phenomenon of acute infarction caused by the presence of intravascular neoplastic cells.

**MISCELLANEOUS CONDITIONS**

**Urolithiasis**

Urolithiasis is the presence of calculi, or uroliths, in the urinary passages. Uroliths are macroscopic mineral (polycrystalline) concretions that may contain small quantities of organic material; the term crystalluria is used for abnormal microscopic crystalloid precipitates in urine. The mineral composition of calculi found in pigs and their relative importance have not been extensively studied. Nevertheless, various types of calculi can be found, including calcium carbonate, calcium apatite (calcium phosphate), struvite (magnesium ammonium phosphate hexahydrate), and uric acid and urate. Factors known to predispose to the formation of uroliths include the diet, urinary pH, reduced water intake, urinary stasis, and preexisting urinary tract diseases.

Swine are rarely afflicted with urolithiasis in comparison to other domestic animals. The condition is sporadically found in pigs of all ages and is also occasionally
observed as incidental findings in slaughtered pigs. Outbreaks of obstructive urolithiasis have been reported on several occasions (Inoue et al. 1977; Sim 1978; Smyth et al. 1986). In these outbreaks, which involved weaned and feeder pigs as well as breeding animals, the predisposing cause for the condition was not elucidated. Animals affected with obstructive urolithiasis may demonstrate decreased appetite, oliguria or anuria, abdominal distension and pain, and death from postrenal uremia. Ruptured bladder may also occur in some cases. Treatment of pigs with obstructive urolithiasis is theoretically feasible but is generally not considered cost-effective.

The bladder of sows sometimes contains yellowish sediments that do not seem to be of clinical significance. On postmortem examination, such sediments, admixed with desquamated epithelial cells, may give the false impression of a cystitis because of the turbidity of the urine. Infection-induced calculi are also observed occasionally in sows with cystitis and pyelonephritis (Figure 9.20).

Uric acid and urate uroliths are frequently found in the kidneys of newborn piglets. These often appear as fine orange precipitates in the medulla and pelvis (Figure 9.21). This peculiar form of urolithiasis is observed mainly in piglets that have no access to the sow’s milk (which contains both fluids and nutrients) or are afflicted by a debilitating disease associated with anorexia and diarrhea (e.g., transmissible gastroenteritis), thus contributing to dehydration. Accelerated catabolism of tissue proteins and purines to supply energy needs and decreased kidney function related to dehydration are responsible for the high levels of blood urea and uric acid found in these piglets. The excess solute, poorly reabsorbed from the glomerular filtrate, is ultimately deposited in the inner medulla and pelvis (Maxie 1993).

**Hydronephrosis**

Distension of the renal pelvis and calyces with urine, associated with progressive atrophy of the kidney parenchyma, is the hallmark of hydronephrosis, which is uncommon and sporadic in swine. The pathogenesis of this condition always involves some form of obstructive impediment to the normal passage of urine within the lower urinary tract, anywhere from the pelvis to the distal urethra. The causes of the obstruction include urinary calculi, exudate within urinary passages, ureteral kinking, focal external compression (abscesses, tumors), and posttraumatic or postinflammatory strictures.

Severe unilateral hydronephrosis may develop unnoticed since the remaining kidney, if normal, may compensate adequately. In these cases, the affected kidney shows extensive dilatation of the pelvis and calyces at the expense of the renal parenchyma, which may appear as a thin layer of cortical tissue (Figure 9.22). Depending on the location of the obstruction, hydrourerter may also develop. In long-standing cases, the kidney may be virtually transformed into a large fluid-filled sac delimited by a severely distended renal capsule. These extreme lesions may take months to de-
velop. Since stagnation of urine predisposes to infection, the urine may be transformed into a purulent exude in some instances. In cases of bilateral hydronephrosis, affected animals usually die from uremia before renal lesions get fully developed.

Parasitic Infections
The pig is the final or intermediate host of a number of parasitic helminths (see Chapter 55). Compared to some other body systems, the urinary tract is the niche of very few of these parasites. Renal infections with *Diectocephalophyema renale*, the giant kidney worm, and with larval stages of certain tapeworms may occur on rare occasions. The most significant helminth with tropism for the urinary system of swine is the nematode *Stephanurus dentatus*, the so-called kidney worm of swine.

*Stephanurus dentatus* is a widely distributed strongylid worm and is most prevalent in warm climates, including the southern United States. In enzootic areas, this parasitic infection may have significant economical impact since it is associated with deaths, retarded growth, decreased feed efficiency, and condemnations at the abattoir (Batte et al. 1960). Larvae of this nematode need moisture and shade for optimal survival, so pigs raised on soil in this type of environment are the most prone to the disease. Infective larvae penetrate the skin or are ingested by the pigs. Transplacental fetal infection is also possible (Batte et al. 1966).

After being introduced into the host, the larvae molt and migrate to the liver, where they remain for several months, causing severe hepatic damage and inflammation. The presence of the parasite within the hepatic parenchyma is often responsible for extensive liver condemnation in some herds (Hale and Marti 1983). Eventually some larvae escape from the liver and migrate to the abdominal cavity and potentially to various ectopic sites, eliciting a severe inflammatory reaction. To complete the cycle, some adults establish themselves in the perirenal tissues or, more rarely, within the kidney. At that site, the worms, measuring about 3 cm in length, are found in cystic inflammatory nodules that communicate with either the pelvis or the ureter in order to shed their eggs successfully into urine. The prepatent period in most cases is at least 9 months, and adults may shed ova in urine for over 2 years (Batte et al. 1960, 1966). Preventive and curative measures for the control of parasites are addressed in detail in Chapter 55.

Others
Mineralization of the kidneys occurs in swine with acute vitamin D toxicosis. This poisoning is usually observed when excessive amounts of vitamin D3 are inadvertently added to their feed (Kurtz and Stowe 1979; Long 1984). Affected pigs show lethargy, vomiting, diarrhea, respiratory distress, and death. Salient gross necropsy findings include hemorrhagic gastritis or gastrointestinal enteritis, myocardial necrosis, and pulmonary edema and congestion. Histologically, besides the gross lesions described above, there is widespread mineralization accompanied by degenerative changes of varying severity in the kidneys, myocardium, lungs, gastrointestinal tract, and blood vessels.

Mucinous metaplasia of the epithelial cells lining the renal pelvis, ureter, and urinary bladder is occasionally observed in pigs. This rather nonspecific lesion, of uncertain pathogenesis, has been reported in pigs with various conditions, including exudative epidermitis, *E. coli* enteritis, hog cholera, and suppurrative arthritis (Brobst et al. 1971), as well as in urinary tract infections.

Ossification of the renal pelvis of unknown etiology has been reported in slaughtered pigs (Bundza 1990).

REFERENCES
Biksi I, Major A, Fodor L, Szenci O, Vetesi F. 2003. In vitro sensitiv-
Veterinarians use diagnostic tests to assess the health, productivity, and reproductive status of individual pigs and herds. Although tests can take many forms, including history taking, physical examination, and pregnancy testing, the most frequently used tests are those that involve the submission of samples to a laboratory. Laboratory tests are used to:

- Detect pathogens or toxins that are responsible for disease outbreaks or suboptimal production.
- Evaluate the infection/exposure status of individual pigs.
- Determine whether a herd was infected with or exposed to a pathogen and, if so, which age or production groups (subpopulations) were affected.
- Estimate the percentage of herds or pigs with antibodies to an infectious agent.
- Monitor a herd’s serologic response to vaccination.
- Monitor the progress and success of disease control and eradication programs.

The optimal approach for each of these objectives may differ; a different test, number of samples, and diagnostic strategy may be indicated depending on the information needed. Choice of tests to answer specified objectives is in part determined by the quality and types of sample that are submitted and in part by the availability of tests at the receiving laboratory or at other collaborating laboratories. Additional factors, such as cost, rapidity, ease of performance of the test, and its accuracy (sometimes termed validity) are important considerations. For many tests that are used for swine diseases, estimates of accuracy (commonly measured as sensitivity and specificity) are not published, although it is common for developers to claim that their tests are both highly sensitive and specific. Also, data on the reproducibility (repeatability) of different tests among and within laboratories often are not available.

Although technical modifications to tests (e.g., antigen purification, use of monoclonal vs. polyclonal antibodies, and use of selective culture media) often improve the ability of the test to discriminate infected from noninfected pigs, it is clear that all tests are imperfect.

In this chapter, we describe the principles that are necessary for rational use of tests and interpretation of their results and provide examples of testing strategies and sample sizes that might be appropriate. The increasing availability of rapid serologic, microbiologic, and parasitologic test kits, polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-nucleic acid probes, immunohistochemistry and in situ hybridization, and the continuing expansion of tests offered by laboratories necessitate an understanding of the diagnostic principles of each test and a careful evaluation of its strengths and weaknesses. Most of our examples involve serologic tests for infectious diseases because these tests are commonly used in swine practice. Issues relevant to test interpretation in both a general (Tyler and Cullor 1989) and a food animal setting (Martin 1988) are described elsewhere, but there are few papers that focus specifically on swine disease. Interpretation of surveillance data for swine diseases is described in Chapter 69.

**VARIATION IN TEST RESULTS**

Some tests yield only a positive or a negative result (e.g., bacterial and viral isolation), and others (including many hematologic, clinical chemistry, and serologic tests) yield a quantitative result that varies among pigs. Results from quantitative serologic tests are of two types:

- Those, such as serum neutralization (SN), for which results are typically reported as a finite number of doubling dilutions or titers
- Those, such as enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs), in which an infinite number of optical density (absorbance) values or sample-to-positive (S/P) ratios theoretically can occur
Variability in results of a quantitative serologic test arises from two sources:

- Biologic variation in the response of infected and noninfected pigs
- Variation inherent in the test system or assay

Animal Sources of Variation
For infected pigs, the serologic response depends on the duration of infection, challenge dose of organisms, whether the infection is subclinical or clinical, whether disease is systemic or mild and localized, other concurrent infections, and host factors including age. For acute infectious diseases where the agent is removed by the immune system, pigs that were previously infected might no longer be infected when tested, and therefore, it is often more appropriate to describe infected pigs as “exposed.” For noninfected pigs, exposure to cross-reacting organisms, vaccination against the agent, or vaccination against other agents through nonspecific immune stimulation might cause elevated responses in some pigs and lead to false-positive serologic results.

Laboratory Sources of Variation
Sources of variation attributable to the test include variation in the way that different laboratories or technicians perform (e.g., use reagents) or interpret the test (interlaboratory or interobserver variability) and variation in interpretation by the same person at different times (intraobserver variability). As evidenced by a comparison of test variables for the immunoperoxidase monolayer assay (IPMA) for porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) virus among eight European laboratories, test conditions often are not standardized from laboratory to laboratory (Drew 1995). In addition, laboratory errors (e.g., sample mix-up, error in entry of results, and cross-contamination of samples) might also result in false-positive or false-negative results. Most specialized laboratories, however, have internal and external quality assurance programs that ensure results. Most specialized laboratories, however, have internal and external quality assurance programs that ensure results.

SENSITIVITY AND SPECIFICITY
Gold Standard Test
We assume that the infection or disease status of each pig can be correctly defined by a so-called gold standard (also known as the diagnostic standard, definitive test, or reference test). A gold standard is a method or combination of methods which determine absolutely and without error whether a pig is infected or diseased. For many diseases the true status might be determined only at necropsy, and for some diseases, there is no gold standard. In other cases, this perfect diagnostic method is not practical to use in the field due to cost, labor, or invasiveness, so other, less expensive and more practical methods are often used as a compromise. For some diseases such as postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS), definition of a gold standard is difficult, and a working standard such as “compatible histopathology” is used for laboratory diagnosis. For international trade purposes, tests prescribed in the Office International des Epizooties (OIE) Manual of Standards for Diagnostic Tests and Vaccines (www.oie.int/eng/normes/mmanual/A_summary.htm) are considered gold standards even though most tests are not perfectly sensitive and specific.

Sometimes, the gold standard is a combined standard where a positive result from one or more perfectly specific tests is considered positive. Bager and Petersen (1991) compared three selective media for isolation of Salmonella spp. from pig feces. Because each culture medium detected some Salmonella spp. isolates not detected by the other two media, the gold standard for infection was a positive culture by at least one of the methods. The number of positive cultures by each method was expressed as a percentage of the number of samples that tested positive by one or more methods. One hundred and fifteen isolates were detected. Incubation in Rappaport-Vassiliadis broth for 24 hours in combination with plating on brilliant green agar detected 88% (101/115) of the isolates, compared with 51% (59/115) for the selenite broth.

When culture or antigen detection is used as the gold standard for evaluation of a new test, a negative culture result might be viewed with some suspicion depending on the methods used and whether there is other evidence of absence of infection. Confidence in the use of a negative culture result as a standard can usually be increased by inclusion of larger amounts of tissue or material and by culture of more sites from within the same pig. Sometimes, however, the improvements can be negligible. White et al. (1996) compared the sensitivity of serologic tests for detecting latent pseudorabies virus (PRV) infection 2–27 months after experimental infection. Fifty-one pigs were documented as being infected based on a positive PCR assay result of trigeminal nerve and tonsil. Of the 51 positive pigs, 46 were PCR positive on trigeminal nerve and tonsil, 4 were positive on trigeminal nerve and not tonsil, and 1 pig was positive on tonsil and not trigeminal nerve. Therefore, in field investigations where confirmation of PRV infection is necessary, inclusion of tonsillar samples in addition to trigeminal nerve would offer little practical advantage. Confidence in a negative culture result as a standard also might substantially increase if other criteria are incorporated in the definition of negativity. For definition of absence of Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae infection, a negative culture result on a pig from a herd without clinical
or pathologic evidence of infection would be a more appropriate standard than a negative culture result from a pig from an infected herd or from a herd of unknown status.

For some viral diseases, SN or other serologic tests are used as the standard against which new serological tests are compared. For example, Weigel et al. (1992) compared the performance of two ELISAs with SN for the detection of antibodies to PRV glycoprotein X, and Lanza et al. (1993) compared a monoclonal antibody-capture ELISA with SN for the serodiagnosis of transmissible gastroenteritis (TGE). The problem with use of a serologic test as the standard against which the sensitivity and specificity of a new serologic test are estimated is that if the original serologic test is of poor accuracy and results of the two tests disagree, it may be difficult to determine whether the new test is more accurate. Many authors, including Martin (1988), recommend only measuring the extent of agreement beyond chance between test results using a kappa statistic. If the results of the new test show a sufficiently high level of agreement beyond chance with the standard test, a decision might be made to substitute the new test based on cost and rapidity and ease of use. Questions about the sensitivity and specificity of the new test, however, would remain unanswered.

Statistical approaches that don’t require a gold standard (Hui and Walter 1980; Enøe et al. 2000) offer a promising alternative for obtaining sensitivity and specificity estimates for chronic diseases. These methods have been applied to evaluation of serologic tests for Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae serotype 2 (Enøe et al. 2001), evaluation of the accuracy of detection of slaughter lesions in Danish pigs (Enøe et al. 2003), and the detection of classical swine fever virus in tonsillar tissue (Bouma et al. 2001).

**Definition of Terms**

Results of a quantitative serologic test such as an ELISA used on samples from known infected and noninfected pigs can be displayed graphically as two overlapping frequency distributions (Figure 10.1). Typically, pigs with test results exceeding a predetermined threshold or cutoff value are classed as positive and pigs with values less than the cutoff are considered negative. In contrast, for some tests, such as particle concentration fluorescence immunoassay (PCFIA) and blocking ELISA, a low test value is more indicative of infection.

Because the distributions of test results of infected and noninfected pigs overlap, the designation of a cutoff value results in misclassification of the infection status of some pigs. Four mutually exclusive categories of results are possible: true positives (test-positive and infected), false negatives (test-negative but infected), false positives (test-positive but noninfected), and true negatives (test-negative and noninfected).

**Sensitivity**, when used with its diagnostic or epidemiologic meaning, is the probability that the test correctly identifies infected pigs: true positives / (true positives + false negatives). For example, a test with 80% sensitivity would correctly identify an average of 80% of infected pigs as test-positive and would incorrectly identify 20% as noninfected because they tested negative (false negatives). The diagnostic definition of sensitivity differs from the use of the term in an analytic context (Saah and Hoover 1997). In the latter context, the term sensitivity is often used interchangeably with the minimal or lower detection limit of the test: the smallest number of bacteria or amount of DNA, toxin, antibody, or residue that can be detected. An immunologically more sensitive test (ELISA compared with SN) would be expected to detect antibodies earlier in the course of infection in an individual pig, but for herd diagnosis where prevalence is mod-
erate to high and pigs are at different stages of infection, the need for high sensitivity might not be as great. The contrast in use of the term sensitivity is shown in the following example. The PCR for Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae is reported by Blanchard et al. (1996) to have a sensitivity (lower detection limit) of between 400 and 5000 organisms per assay. When used on tracheobronchial washings, the PCR correctly detected 101/116 experimentally infected pigs (diagnostic specificity = 87.1%).

Specificity is the probability that the test correctly identifies noninfected pigs: true negatives / (false positives + true negatives). A test with 90% specificity would correctly classify 90% of noninfected pigs on average as negative and would falsely classify 10% of pigs as infected (false positives). The analogous term in an analytic context is the cross-reaction profile (Saah and Hoover 1997), which indicates the likelihood of cross-reactivity with related pathogens or diseases that present with similar signs. The cross-reaction profile relies substantially on laboratory and clinical experience of the test developers or researchers. For example, a validation study of 8 PCR tests for detection of Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae in tonsillar tissue of chronically infected pigs considered cross-reactions with A. suis, A. minor, A. equuli, A. lignieresii, “A. porcintusillarum,” and 2 other pathogens often isolated from tonsils, Streptococcus suis and Haemophilus parasuis (Fittipaldi et al. 2003).

In most field situations, high diagnostic sensitivity and specificity are both desirable although it might be difficult to have both attributes with a single test. Lowering the minimal detection limit of the test will often improve diagnostic sensitivity, depending on the numbers of bacteria, concentration of antibody, etc., typically found in infected pigs, but such a change might lower the specificity of the test. Buyers of pigs and regulatory officials in importing states and countries usually want tests of almost 100% sensitivity to minimize the risk of introducing new pathogens. A similar line of reasoning can also be applied to tests for agents of public health concern—for example, Salmonella spp., Trichinella spp., and antibiotic residues. Typically, owners of breeding herds want tests of high specificity to maximize their chance of selling replacement boars and gilts. High specificity is also desirable for commercial producers participating in eradication programs based on test and slaughter, where economic losses from false-positive results can be substantial.

One consequence of using multiple imperfectly specific tests is an increased chance of abnormal results in otherwise healthy and nonexposed pigs. The probability of at least one abnormal test result increases as the number of independent tests is increased. For example, suppose that a sow was screened for 10 unrelated bacterial and viral infections. If the sow was never really exposed to any of the agents (unknown to the veterinarian) and each test had a specificity of 95%, the probability that all 10 tests are negative would be 0.95^10, or 60%. Hence, the probability that at least one test would yield a positive result is 40%.

### Estimation of Sensitivity and Specificity

Diagnostic sensitivity and specificity are determined from experimental and field studies, although it is quite common that an experimental study for an infectious disease will overestimate the sensitivity and specificity of the test when used in the field. One advantage of an experimental study is that it is easier to establish unequivocally a pig’s infection status, and the associated serologic response can be followed temporally. From these data, the time to a specified titer value (or time to seroconversion) and duration of titer above the positive cutoff value can be determined. Sørensen et al. (1997) used aerosol challenge of 200 SPF pigs with Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae to monitor clinical, serologic, and pathologic responses to the organism and to compare the sensitivity and specificity of culture, immunofluorescence, antigen ELISA, and PCR for detection of the organism in lungs. Because of cost limitations, experimental studies are restricted primarily to infections with short incubation periods but can be very useful for obtaining preliminary data on the sensitivity and specificity of tests and the optimal sampling site. The major limitation of an experimental study is that it may bear little or no resemblance to field situations because the selected experimental conditions are necessarily subjective. In experimental studies, challenge doses are often selected that will ensure clinical disease in most, if not all, pigs, and yet many tests are used in the field to detect subclinical disease in pigs whose immune systems might respond differently because of suboptimal environments and concurrent infections. The control group of noninfected pigs in an experimental study is often comprised of healthy SPF pigs; yet when a test is used for clinical diagnosis, the relevant comparison group of pigs is those with clinical signs caused by pathogens other than the one that the test detects. For example, evaluation of the specificity of an immunochromatographic test for detection of group A rotavirus included samples from pigs with neonatal diarrhea caused by other pathogens (e.g., Escherichia coli) as well as samples from healthy rotavirus-free pigs (Klingenber and Esfandiar 1996).

Even when an experimental infection is used to evaluate a test initially, samples from representative infected and noninfected pigs (age, clinical status, stages of infection, etc.) from commercial herds should be assessed to ensure that test performance is adequate for naturally acquired infections. Test results should be compared with the gold standard (reference test) in a blinded fashion to avoid introducing bias. Sensitivity and specificity and their respective confidence intervals are calculated. As sample sizes to derive these values increase, sensitivity and specificity estimates become more precise, as reflected by narrower confidence intervals. Epidemiologic
considerations for test evaluation studies are described in detail elsewhere (Greiner and Gardner 2000a).

**Example.** Dubey et al. (1995) evaluated the sensitivity and specificity of five diagnostic tests for toxoplasmosis in pigs. The gold standard was isolation of viable *Toxoplasma gondii* by cat or mouse bioassay using heart muscle collected from sows at slaughter. Sows whose samples yielded a positive bioassay result on either bioassay (n = 170) were considered infected, and sows whose samples yielded a negative bioassay result (n = 830) were considered noninfected. Although frequencies of titer values for infected and noninfected sows were not reported in the paper, we generated two hypothetical frequency distributions for modified agglutination test (MAT) results consistent with the published data. Table 10.1 and Figure 10.2 show that results for noninfected and infected pigs overlap over an extensive range of titers (<1:20 to 1:800).

In the study, MAT results were considered positive if titers were ≥1:20, and negative if otherwise. Categorized results were cross-tabulated in a 2 × 2 table, and sensitivity, specificity, and exact binomial confidence intervals were calculated; see Table 10.2.

If a cutoff with 100% specificity is preferred for serologic diagnosis, the cutoff for the MAT would need to be increased to 1:1280. At the cutoff of 1280, however, only 29/170 infected sows (sensitivity = 17.1%) would be correctly identified. These changes in estimates demonstrate the compromise between sensitivity and specificity that is inherent in changing the cutoff value of a quantitative test. Shifting the cutoff point to a lower value will usually increase sensitivity at the expense of specificity and vice versa. In this example, a perfectly sensitive cutoff could not be defined because both infected and noninfected pigs gave negative results at the lowest screening dilution for the test (1:20). The authors discussed the limitations of their gold standard and indicated that false-negative bioassays may have occurred because *T. gondii* were located in tissues other than cardiac muscle or because *T. gondii* were not isolated from inoculated animals even though they
were present. Accordingly, if some test-positive pigs that were classed as noninfected by the bioassay were truly infected, the specificity of the MAT might have been underestimated.

**Evaluation of a Test at Various Cutoff Values**

Sensitivity and specificity values are useful for determining a test’s diagnostic limitations and comparing the accuracy of two or more tests. Because many cutoff points are possible for a quantitative test, comparison of tests over a range of cutoff values is often more appropriate than comparison at a single value. The trade-off between sensitivity and specificity as the cutoff value is changed may be represented graphically as a receiver-operating characteristic (ROC) curve (Zweig and Campbell 1993; Greiner et al. 2000). ROC curves, which are graphs of sensitivity (y-axis) versus specificity or 1-specificity (x-axis) for all possible cutoff values of a test, are well accepted in human medicine as a method to quantify test performance. Their acceptance in veterinary medicine and use for swine diseases has been limited. Nodelijk et al. (1996) used an ROC curve to represent the accuracy of a commercial ELISA for PRRS virus, and Elbers et al. (2002; 2003) used ROC analysis to evaluate the use of clinical signs and gross lesions at postmortem to detect outbreaks of classical swine fever in the 1997–1998 epidemic in The Netherlands.

Using the data in Table 10.1 for the *T. gondii* MAT, all sensitivity and specificity pairs at cutoff points from 1:20 to $\geq 1:8000$ were calculated and graphed as an ROC curve (figure 10.3). The area under the curve (AUC), below and to the right, can be interpreted as the probability that a randomly selected infected pig will have a MAT result greater than a randomly selected noninfected pig. For these data, the AUC was estimated to be 0.88. The cutoff value closest to the upper-left corner of the figure ($\geq 1:20$) is the point that minimizes the number of misclassifications (false positives and false negatives), but as indicated in the following section, other factors are important in selection of a cutoff value.

**Selection of Test Cutoff Values**

Several factors are considered in selection of test cutoff values, including the purpose of the testing (e.g., screening vs. confirmation), the relative costs (economic, social, or political) of false-positive and false-negative diagnoses, the availability of confirmatory tests of high specificity, and the prevalence of disease (Greiner et al. 2000). Indeed, various cutoffs might be appropriate given different circumstances for testing and consequences of misclassification (costs of a false-positive result compared with costs of a false-negative result). For simplicity, many diagnostic laboratories report results of ELISAs and other tests as positive or negative at a single cutoff. There are two drawbacks to this approach. First, when the cutoff is chosen by the laboratory or test kit manufacturer, and the result is reported only as positive or negative, information is lost to the practitioner. When an S/P ratio for an ELISA or a titer value is well beyond the cutoff value used for test interpretation, a practitioner usually has a stronger belief that a pig is truly infected than if the test result is close to the cutoff value. In the *T. gondii* example, a MAT titer of 1:800 is more likely to come from an infected sow than a titer value of 1:20 (refer to Table 10.1). Likelihood ratios, which range from 0 to infinity, quan-
tify how many times more frequently a specific titer value is obtained from infected compared with noninfected pigs. Second, the cutoff chosen by the laboratory may be the one that minimizes the total number of errors, both false positives and false negatives, but it may not take into account the different costs of the two types of misdiagnosis. Depending on the situation, a false-positive diagnosis may be much more damaging than a false negative and vice versa. For example, a veterinarian relying on the results of a test to make a decision about culling a sow probably wants to minimize the chance of a false-positive diagnosis by using a highly specific test, particularly if the sow is asymptomatic and pregnant and there are no other reasons for culling. On the other hand, when screening breeding pigs for purchase into a herd, a false-positive result would be much less harmful to a client than a false-negative, which might allow infected pigs to enter a noninfected herd. Ideally, practitioners need the information to choose the cutoff that best meets their decision requirements at a particular time.

One possible solution to the dilemma of where to set the cutoff value for individual-pig diagnosis is to specify two cutoffs—one value that is 100% sensitive (no false negatives) and another that is 100% specific (no false positives). These cutoffs define an intermediate range of values where false-positive and false-negative results occur. Using this approach, results are reported as negative if they are less than the cutoff value that is 100% sensitive, as positive if they are greater than the cutoff value that is 100% specific, and as suspicious or indeterminate if they are between these values. Suspicious or indeterminate values might be clarified by additional tests, if warranted.

**Evaluating Published Sensitivity and Specificity Values**

Although sensitivity and specificity estimates might be available on test kit inserts or in industry publications or might be obtained from laboratory diagnosticians, the veterinary medical literature should be consulted, wherever possible, as the most reliable source. Regardless of the source of estimates, practitioners should ask appropriate questions about how the test was validated and how the test will be used:

1. Was the test evaluated under field conditions similar to those in which it will be used?
2. Were test results evaluated with respect to the gold standard in a blinded fashion?
3. Were the positive and negative gold standards appropriate choices given existing technology?
4. Were adequate numbers of representative infected and noninfected pigs included in the study so that sensitivity and specificity estimates are precise? At least 100 infected and 100 noninfected pigs should be used in validation studies, wherever possible.
5. Why was the chosen cutoff value selected, and are estimates of sensitivity and specificity reported at other cutoff values?
6. Will the test be used for individual or herd diagnosis? A test that has low to moderate sensitivity at an individual level might be perfectly appropriate for herd diagnosis if adequate numbers of tests are done and the test has high specificity.
7. Will the test be used by itself or in combination with other tests? If the test is used in combination with other tests, how will multiple test results be interpreted?

If claims are made in publications that one test is more sensitive or more specific than another test, these claims should be based on tests of duplicate samples and appropriate statistical analyses. Often a closer evaluation of the claims shows that the numeric difference in sensitivity or specificity is small and not statistically significant or practically important. If true, other criteria such as cost, ease of use, and rapidity of use become more important in test selection.

**PREDICTIVE VALUES**

The major advantage of sensitivity and specificity as measures of test accuracy is that they are independent of prevalence and therefore are particularly useful for reporting test performance in the veterinary medical literature. However, these measures have shortcomings in the field, where the diagnostic value of a test varies with the test’s inherent accuracy and also with the situation in which the test is used. Because absolute determination of a pig’s infection status often is not feasible or economically justified, a veterinarian must estimate the likelihood of infection or absence of infection given test results. These likelihoods are the predictive values of positive and negative test results. Positive predictive value (PPV) is the proportion of the test-positive pigs that are truly infected, and negative predictive value (NPV) is the proportion of test-negative pigs that are truly noninfected.

The distinction between predictive values and sensitivity/specificity might at first seem unclear. Sensitivity and specificity provide estimates of test accuracy given that the disease status is known, whereas predictive values estimate test accuracy given that the test results are known.

Predictive values (also known as posttest or posterior probabilities) are dependent on sensitivity, specificity, and prevalence and can be calculated using Bayes’ theorem formulas:

\[
PPV = \frac{(\text{sensitivity} \times \text{prevalence})}{(\text{sensitivity} \times \text{prevalence} + (1 - \text{specificity}) \times (1 - \text{prevalence}))}
\]

\[
NPV = \frac{[\text{specificity} \times (1 - \text{prevalence})]}{[\text{specificity} \times (1 - \text{prevalence}) + (1 - \text{sensitivity}) \times \text{prevalence}]}
\]
Effects of Prevalence on Predictive Values
Clinically, the term prevalence means the best estimate of the probability of disease before performing the test. Prevalence is used synonymously with the term pretest or prior probability. Wherever possible, estimates of prevalence should be based on prior data: for example, frequency of the condition among all cases with similar presenting signs, prior test results for the herd, or test results from herds of similar size in the same geographic area. In the absence of prior data, the following values of prevalence might be reasonable starting values for calculations of predictive values:

1% Pigs with risk factors for a common disease but without clinical signs, or a herd with no previous history of infection
10% If a disease is unlikely but possible clinically and a veterinarian wishes to rule it out
50% If there is substantial uncertainty but the clinical presentation is compatible with the disease
90% When a disease is very likely clinically or if the herd has a prior history of infection but a practitioner wishes to rule it in using a diagnostic test

To “rule out” disease, a negative result on a highly sensitive test is necessary. This might be done in the initial stage of a diagnostic workup to reduce the number of possibilities on the differential list. To “rule in” or confirm a diagnosis, a positive result is necessary with a nearly perfectly specific test. In general, when a veterinarian does not believe that a disease is present (prevalence ≤10%) or strongly believes that it is (prevalence ≥90%), the test result often does not substantially influence the diagnosis (Martin 1988). Laboratory tests tend to be of greatest value in establishing a diagnosis when a practitioner is most uncertain about infection status (i.e., when presence and absence of infection are equally likely, which is equivalent to a prevalence of 50%).

The effect of prevalence on predictive value can be demonstrated by considering the performance of the MAT test for T. gondii (sensitivity = 82.9% and specificity = 90.2%) in two populations, one with a 20% prevalence of infection, which is similar to the prevalence in Dubey et al. (1995), and one where control of T. gondii infection is effective and the overall prevalence is 1% (Table 10.3). At 20% prevalence, the positive predictive value of 67.9% indicates that about two in every three pigs with test-positive results is truly infected. At the same prevalence, the negative predictive value is approximately 95%. Hence, the probability that a test-negative pig is truly infected (1 – negative predictive value) is 5%. For the same test at 1% prevalence, the positive predictive value decreases to less than 15% and the negative predictive value becomes almost 100%.

Predictive Value Curves
Prevalence is often not known exactly and a range of values is possible. Predictive value curves can be generated to show how well the test performs in different circumstances. At moderate prevalences (30–70%), most tests, including the MAT (Figure 10.4), perform well regardless of whether results are positive or negative. As prevalence increases above 70%, positive predictive value increases toward 100% with an associated decrease in negative predictive value. As prevalence decreases toward 0%, positive predictive value decreases while negative predictive value increases.

When testing for rare conditions, test specificity is the most important determinant of positive predictive value. As specificity increases at a fixed prevalence value, positive predictive value increases. Only if the test is close to 100% specific will the problem of low positive predictive value be avoided when infection is rare (Figure 10.5).

Practical Implications
The implications of these relationships can be summarized as follows. Given a certain test sensitivity and specificity, a positive finding in a herd without clinical signs or previous history of infection should be interpreted differently from a positive test result in a herd where the infection is endemic and clinical disease is common. However, it is important to note that the clinical usefulness and value of a positive test result are not measured by the positive predictive value (posttest probability) but by the change in probability or diagnostic certainty brought about by use of the test. For example, if a herd had a clinical disease event consistent with either swine influenza or PRRS and the herd had no prior history of either infection but both infections were being commonly diagnosed in other herds at the time of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10.3. Performance of the MAT test for T. gondii (sensitivity = 82.9% and specificity = 90.2%).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infection Status</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2000</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>prevalence = 1% (assuming a population size of 10,000)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infection Status</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>100</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>prevalence = 100/10,000 = 0.01</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>positive predictive value = 97/651 = 0.149</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>negative predictive value = 9346/9349 = 0.999</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the investigation, a practitioner might believe that the pretest probability of each infection was 50%. Isolation of PRRS virus through laboratory testing, assuming perfect specificity, would result in a posttest probability of 100% for PRRS (a 50% gain in probability). If, however, the herd had the same clinical episode and a recent history of PRRS infection, the pretest probability would be higher, perhaps 80%, and even though the posttest probability of PRRS was still 100%, the gain in certainty (20%) would be much smaller. Therefore, the value of the laboratory test in the second situation would be less than the first, which has more diagnostic uncertainty. Similar reasoning can be used to assess the gain in certainty from negative test results.

**USE AND INTERPRETATION OF MULTIPLE TESTS**

To improve diagnostic accuracy, tests might be repeated or additional tests might be included in the diagnostic

---

**10.4.** Predictive value curves for the modified agglutination test for Toxoplasma gondii with sensitivity equal to 82.9% and specificity equal to 90.2%.

**10.5.** Effect of specificity of a laboratory test with a sensitivity equal to 100% on a predictive value of a positive test for prevalence between 0% and 10%.
workup. Indeed, most diagnoses are based on the use of multiple tests (e.g., history, physical examination, laboratory tests, etc.). Multiple tests can be used either simultaneously or sequentially and results interpreted in series or parallel. The sensitivity and specificity of a combination of tests differ from the individual sensitivity and specificity values. Interpreting combinations of tests in parallel results in higher sensitivity than any of the individual tests, and interpretation in series results in higher specificity than any of the individual tests. Sometimes, the change in sensitivity and specificity of the combination of tests is less than theoretically predicted because the test results are correlated (also termed dependent) for infected or noninfected pigs (Gardner et al. 2000). Correlated results would be expected for serologic tests that measure the same class of antibody but would be far less likely with two tests that measure different biologic responses (e.g., histopathology and serologic testing).

Parallel and Series Interpretation

When two tests are used, one of four results is possible: both tests positive, test 1 positive and test 2 negative, test 1 negative and test 2 positive, and both tests negative. In parallel interpretation, a pig is considered positive if it reacts positively to either test—this increases sensitivity but tends to decrease the specificity of the combined tests. This parallel testing strategy works well when neither test has a particularly high sensitivity but each detects a different type of disease (e.g., early vs. late, rapidly progressing vs. slowly progressing). Culture for a pathogen might be more sensitive than serologic testing early in the course of an infection, but the latter might be more sensitive later in the infection as the pathogen load decreases. Parallel testing with culture and serology should therefore lead to higher sensitivity, although specificity of the combination would be lower than if culture was used alone.

In series interpretation, a pig must be positive on both tests to be considered positive; this increases specificity at the expense of sensitivity. The use of two tests in series might lead to a diagnosis in the following way. The first test might be more sensitive and inexpensive and pigs that test positive are retested with a second test of high specificity to identify false positives. As a cost-saving measure, pigs testing negative on the first test are considered negative and are not tested with the second test. This testing strategy allows veterinarians to rule out disease using fewer tests, although serial testing often takes more time. The probability of disease after both tests are positive is calculated by regarding the predictive value of a positive after the first test as the same as the prevalence of disease before performing the second test. In the example of the MAT for T. gondii, the positive predictive value was 67.9% when the test was used in a population with 20% prevalence. If pigs with a positive MAT result were tested with an additional test—for example, a latex agglutination test (LAT) with sensitivity of 45.9% and specificity of 96.9% (Dubey et al. 1995)—the value of 67.9% would become the new prevalence before running the LAT test. Substitution of these values in the Bayes’ theorem formula would yield a positive predictive value of 96.9% after the second test, assuming that MAT and LAT results were uncorrelated. If the assumption of no correlation was correct, positive results on both the MAT and the LAT would be more indicative of infection than a positive result on the MAT alone.

Choosing Among Testing Strategies

To establish a diagnosis when two tests are available, a veterinarian might decide to use a single test or use both tests. The latter choice incurs additional costs, which need to be passed on to the client. If both tests are used, parallel or series interpretation can be selected depending on the need to emphasize sensitivity or specificity, respectively. As demonstrated in the brucellosis example that follows, the benefits of multiple serologic tests to detect the same pathogen are often less than expected because of correlation between test results. Factors that need to be considered in the final selection of a testing strategy include the sensitivities and specificities of the individual tests, the sensitivities and specificities of the combination of tests when interpreted in series or parallel, costs of false-positive and false-negative diagnoses, prevalence of infection, and the additional costs incurred by adding more tests.

Example. Ferris et al. (1995) estimated the sensitivity and specificity of six serologic tests for brucellosis in 231 swine using bacteriologic culture results from multiple lymph nodes as the gold standard. Sensitivities ranged from 57% (automated complement fixation test) to 85% (particle concentration fluorescence immunoassay [PCFIA] with a cutoff value of 0.81), and specificities ranged from 62% (standard tube test [STT]) to 95% (trivanol test). Sensitivities of the PCFIA and STT were estimated as 85% and 83%, respectively, and specificities were 74% and 62%, respectively. When results of the PCFIA and STT were interpreted in parallel (a positive on any test being considered positive), the sensitivity of the combined tests was 87% and the specificity was 54%. The use of both tests interpreted in parallel yielded a 2% improvement in sensitivity over the higher of the two tests and an 8% loss in specificity compared with the less specific test. Assuming that the two test results were uncorrelated, the sensitivity of the combined tests theoretically should have been 98% and the specificity should have been 46%. The most likely explanation for the difference between the observed and expected values is that the test results were correlated. In this case, use of PCFIA and STT together would increase diagnostic cost for little gain in information. Indeed, even when results of the four additional tests were considered and
interpreted in parallel, the sensitivity of the combination did not further increase (40/46 were positive on one or more tests).

Herd-Level Interpretation of Test Results
Assessment of the health status of a population unit (herd, barn, litter, or other grouping of pigs) often is more important than that of an individual pig in the group. A key point that is not widely understood is that herd-level tests must be interpreted differently from individual tests. Interpretation of herd test results often is more complicated, especially when tests are imperfectly specific.

Herd Infection Status
Correct classification of herd status, with respect to one or more pathogens, is important in specific pathogen-free (SPF) and other health certification schemes, in assessments of disease introduction risk associated with purchase of pigs, and in studies of risk factors for disease. Similar to the situation for test interpretation for individuals, data are needed on the herd-level sensitivity and specificity of the test being used to determine herd status. The likely performance of a herd test is usually extrapolated from published individual sensitivity and specificity values as described in Martin et al. (1992). With the exception of *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* in the Danish SPF scheme (Sørensen et al. 1992; Sørensen et al. 1993), there are few published field studies that have estimated the performance of herd tests used for swine diseases.

Herd Sensitivity and Specificity. Herd-level sensitivity is the probability that an infected herd yields a positive herd-test result, and herd-level specificity is the probability that a noninfected herd yields a negative herd-test result. The respective false-negative and false-positive herd rates can be calculated by subtracting herd sensitivity and herd specificity values from 1. Herd-level sensitivity and specificity depend not only on the respective individual-level sensitivity and specificity values but also on other factors: the number tested, the prevalence of infection within infected herds, and the number of positives (1, 2, 3, etc.) used to classify the herd as positive (Martin et al. 1992; Christensen and Gardner 2000). Usually the individual and herd-level estimates differ. Based on findings from an experimental infection study of 200 SPF pigs (Sørensen et al. 1997), the blocking ELISA for *M. hyopneumoniae* has an individual sensitivity and specificity of 100% and 100%, respectively, at the cutoff of 50% blocking. When samples from 20 pigs are used for herd diagnosis of *M. hyopneumoniae* infection in the SPF scheme, the herd-level sensitivity and specificity were 93% and 96%, respectively, when at least one ELISA positive pig designated a positive herd test (Sørensen et al. 1992). The estimates of herd sensitivity were imprecise because only 15 new infections were detected during the study period. A follow-up study yielded similar estimates (Sørensen et al. 1993).

Some important relationships among factors affecting herd-level sensitivity and specificity warrant comment. First, as the number tested increases, herd-level sensitivity increases. Consequently, the probability of a false-negative herd diagnosis decreases with increasing sample numbers at all values of within-herd prevalence. An increase in sample numbers from 10 to 20 for a perfectly specific test with sensitivity of 50% produces a greater reduction in the probability of a false-negative herd diagnosis if the underlying prevalence is moderate rather than low (30% vs. 1% in Figure 10.6). Second, as the number of pigs used to classify the herd as positive is increased, there is a corresponding increase in herd-level specificity with a decrease in herd-level sensitivity. A change in the number of test-positive pigs in a sample of 20 from at least 1 to at least 2 decreased herd sensitivity for *M. hyopneumoniae* in the Danish SPF system from 100% to 69% but increased herd specificity from 85% to 98% (Sørensen et al. 1993). Third, when testing a fixed number of samples, it is easier to discriminate infected from noninfected herds as within-herd prevalence increases (refer to Figure 10.6). Fourth, as the number of pigs tested with an imperfectly specific test increases, the probability of detecting at least one false-positive pig increases, leading to a lower herd-level specificity (Figure 10.7). This is the same effect that was noted when multiple tests of imperfect specificity were used to evaluate the infection or pathogen exposure status of an individual pig. Testing of pooled rather than individual samples can be used for herd diagnosis (e.g., culture of fecal pools for *Salmonella* spp.; Christensen et al. 2002). Factors affecting the herd sensitivity and specificity of pooled tests are described elsewhere (Christensen and Gardner 2000).

Issues to be considered in the trade-off between herd sensitivity and herd specificity are as described for individual test interpretation. For SPF schemes, herd-level sensitivity is considered more important than herd-level specificity because the costs of failing to detect infection usually outweigh the costs of a false-positive diagnosis in some herds.

Herd-Level Predictive Values. Herd-level predictive values, which are analogous to individual test predictive values, are dependent on herd sensitivity and specificity and the prevalence of infected herds. In this context, prevalence of infected herds means the best guess of the probability that a herd is infected before doing the herd test. Although such estimates might be obtained from state or national surveys, local data based on knowledge of the infection status of herds visited by a veterinarian would be more appropriate. In Denmark, it has been estimated that about 10–15% of SPF herds become reinfected with *M. hyopneumoniae* each year. If 1% is used as the likely prevalence of infected herds as detected by a
10.6. Effect of sample size and within-herd prevalence on the probability of a false-negative herd diagnosis (1—herd sensitivity) for a test with an individual-level sensitivity of 50% and individual-level specificity of 100%.

10.7. Effect of sample size and specificity of a laboratory test on the probability of a false-positive herd diagnosis (1—herd specificity).
single monthly sampling of 20 pigs, and then using Bayes’ theorem and the herd-level sensitivity and specificity estimates of 93% and 96% reported by Sørensen et al. (1992), the positive and negative herd-level predictive values are 19% and 99.9%, respectively. These calculations indicate that only about 1 in 5 test-positive herds is confirmed as infected when followed up by gold standard methods, yet a negative herd test provides strong evidence of freedom from M. hyopneumoniae infection.

Because of the lack of sensitivity and specificity data for many individual tests, herd-level sensitivity and specificity and predictive values usually are unknown. Frequently, veterinarians are required to interpret herd results with incomplete knowledge of individual test performance. The number of positive pigs and the apparent prevalence of infection (0–100% test-positive pigs) are both considered in determining the status of the herd. If the seroprevalence is high, the answer to the question about the exposure status of the herd is clear. But what if a low seroprevalence (e.g., <20%) is detected when the herd is tested? In these situations, knowledge of specificity alone would facilitate judgments about the herd's infection status. This question has important practical implications because it is more difficult to use laboratory tests to discriminate herds with a low, rather than a high, prevalence of infection from noninfected herds.

**Example.** If all sows in a 100-sow nonvaccinated breeding herd were tested by complement fixation test (CFT) for Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae serotype 2 (AP2) and 5 test-positive sows were detected (i.e., seroprevalence is 5%), what can we conclude about the AP2 status of the breeding herd? Without knowing test characteristics, one approach in the absence of a detailed herd history might be to slaughter test-positive sows and culture the upper respiratory tract, including tonsils and nasal cavities, to determine whether AP2 was present. A positive culture would confirm infection, but a negative culture would not rule out infection since culture is imperfectly sensitive. Recently, various PCR assays have been shown to be more sensitive than standard isolation methods on tonsillar tissue (biopsies and whole tonsil collected at slaughter) and would offer an alternative diagnostic strategy for evaluation of the microbiologic status of seropositive sows (Fittipaldi et al. 2003).

If a published estimate of CFT specificity were available, however, a more rational judgment could be made that might avoid unnecessary slaughter and culture of test-positive sows. First, if the CFT had specificity of 95%, the expected number of positives in a noninfected herd of 100 sows would be 5; exactly what was found on the test. Second, if specificity was <95%, the belief that these were false positives would increase since the expected number of false positives even in a noninfected herd would be >5. Third, if the specificity of the test was approximately 99% (as estimated in Enoe et al. 2001), detection of 5 test-positive pigs would be highly suggestive of infection in the herd.

The conclusions that were made in the example would be less well met in the situation where interpretation was based on a small sample of the herd rather than the whole herd. Even when 30 samples are randomly collected in a large herd, the proportion of positive samples may not always reflect the underlying proportion of positive pigs in the herd (Carpenter and Gardner 1996). Guidelines for selection of an appropriate sample size for evaluation of herd status are described in a following section.

**Prevalence Estimation**

An estimate of the proportion of infected pigs often is necessary as part of national and regional health-monitoring schemes and for making decisions about vaccination and other disease control and eradication programs. If a random sample of pigs is tested for exposure to an infectious agent, the proportion of positive test results (number positive/number tested) is an estimate of the apparent (test-based) prevalence of infection. If the test is serologic, the term *seroprevalence* is used interchangeably with *apparent prevalence*. The apparent prevalence may over- or underestimate the true prevalence, depending on the sensitivity and specificity of the test that is used. True prevalence can be estimated from apparent prevalence by correcting for the imperfect sensitivity and specificity of the test (Rogan and Gladen 1978):

\[
\text{true prevalence} = \frac{\text{apparent prevalence} + \text{specificity} - 1}{\text{specificity} + \text{specificity}-1}
\]

Confidence intervals for the estimate of true prevalence should be calculated, and for this the reader is referred elsewhere (Greiner and Gardner 2000b). The precision of the estimate or a practitioner’s confidence in the accuracy of the estimate is primarily dependent on sample size, with larger samples yielding more precise estimates. Occasionally the calculation yields a negative or zero estimate for true prevalence: such a finding might suggest that the herd is not infected. If sensitivity and specificity are unknown, however, this formula cannot be applied and the true prevalence of infection in the population cannot be calculated directly.

**Examples.** Assume that a seroprevalence estimate of 15% was obtained when sows in a herd were screened for *T. gondii* using the MAT of sensitivity = 82.9% and specificity = 90.2%. What is the true prevalence of infection in the herd? By substitution of the values in the equation, true prevalence = \((0.15 + 0.902 - 1)/(0.829 + 0.902 - 1) = 0.071\) (7.1%). This estimated true prevalence is only about one-half of what the test suggests is present, indicating that about 50% of the positive tests are false positives.
Baggesen et al. (1996) found an apparent prevalence of Salmonella spp. infection of 6.2% in Danish slaughter pigs based on culture of 5 g of cecal contents. Although the sensitivity of culture can depend on the volume of contents examined and choice of selective medium, the procedure was estimated to be 50% sensitive and 100% specific. Because only 50% of the infected pigs would have been detected by culture, prevalence would have been underestimated twofold. Hence, true prevalence would be $6.2\% \times 2 = 12.4\%$.

**SAMPLE QUALITY AND OPTIMAL LABORATORY INTERPRETATION**

For optimal interpretation of results of animal and tissue submissions to a diagnostic laboratory, a thorough herd history—which includes morbidity and mortality, age of onset, sequence of clinical signs, time from onset to recovery, response to therapy, and recent management and environmental changes—should be obtained. Evidence of differences in incidence or prevalence among different age groups of pigs or those housed under different management conditions could yield important information about the disease agent(s). Valuable insight into a diagnostic investigation often is gained by asking the producers what they suspect is the cause and why they suspect the health or production problem recently occurred. The response to this inquiry also might yield useful information on other issues, which need to be addressed during the farm visit and help focus the laboratory testing.

**Goals of Submission and Sample Collection**

After completely assessing the problem, the veterinarian and producer should jointly agree on the goals of performing laboratory testing, because this will be critical in selecting appropriate types and numbers of samples from the correct pig groups. The goal of laboratory testing should likewise be communicated to the laboratory performing the testing; laboratory consultation before submission often is valuable to ensure samples are collected, processed, and shipped in a manner which will allow optimal results (i.e., freezing may decrease the recovery of certain bacteria and viruses or may be essential to maintain viability of other agents). Sample collection for detection of toxins may require freezing for labile toxins (i.e., cyanide) or special and individual packaging for toxins which are diffusible or can be contaminated by contact with plastic (i.e., polychlorinated biphenyls) or rubber (i.e., zinc). During consultation with a laboratory diagnostician, the veterinarian should be sure to request information on the various testing methods available and their strengths and weaknesses in detecting the agent(s) of interest, which may vary with the syndrome under investigation and the stage of infection (for PRRS, see Benson et al. 2002, Rossow 1998). The laboratory’s ability to detect the agent in the syndrome suspected, quality control procedures used to ensure the test method is working, and, most importantly, whether the laboratory has ever detected this agent before are important issues to be addressed prior to submission.

**Selection of Pigs**

After the goal is decided and the specimen type and shipping requirements have been determined, it is critical to select pigs for sampling or submission that will provide the information necessary to meet the predetermined goals. For example, if the goal is to determine the initiating cause of a herd outbreak of respiratory disease with high morbidity but low mortality, several agents will be of particular interest to the veterinarian. Diagnosis might require sampling of pigs during the acute phase of illness if the isolation of the agent is desired, whereas sera from acute and convalescent pigs or sera from three groups—nonexposed, acutely infected, and recovered pigs—are more appropriate to confirm the presence of the agent through an immunologic response in infected animals. If, however, the goal is to determine what complicating factors might be leading to the low mortality because most affected pigs recover, pigs late in the disease process will be more appropriate, recognizing that the initiating agent(s) may no longer be present or may be masked by the presence of secondary invaders.

Although gross pathology and histopathology are the diagnostic disciplines that have been the least evaluated in a quantitative manner, this testing is commonly used to diagnose disease problems. Ideally, the veterinarian should be involved in selecting pigs for necropsy to ensure they meet the criteria decided upon. If the veterinarian is unavailable to select the animals, clear communication with the producer on the type of pig required and reasons for the choice will assist the laboratory in providing optimal return for the investment of time and money to perform diagnostic testing. Evaluation of gross lesions and/or histopathology for the early detection of several swine diseases such as classical swine fever and Lawsonia intracellularis has shown these methods to be both insensitive and nonspecific (Elbers et al. 2003; Huerta et al. 2003). Therefore, the veterinarian should be cautious when relying on field necropsies alone to either diagnose or exclude various diseases particularly in their early stages.

**Additional Considerations**

For optimal serologic testing, the quality of serum samples is important. SN tests, for example, are especially susceptible to sample hemolysis and bacterial and chemical contamination of samples. Accordingly, to decrease the risk of samples being toxic to cells in the assay, blood should be collected using sterile equipment, and serum should be separated from the clot and chilled during submission. Toxic samples should not lead to false-positive or false-negative results, but practitioners
and owners might be inconvenienced or incur additional costs if pigs need to be resampled (Hill 1988).

Laboratories commonly use PCR-nucleic acid probe assays on fresh tissues or body fluids and immunohistochemistry (IHC) on formalin preserved samples for the detection of infectious agents. Both procedures offer the advantage of not requiring the presence of viable organisms. Both methods have also provided critical information on determination of optimal sampling sites, frequency of repeat sampling, and numbers of samples from one organ to attain a high sensitivity (for PRRS, Benson et al. 2002, Rossow 1998, Yaeger 2002). For example, Yaeger (2002) determined that the likelihood of detecting PRRSV infection in the lung by IHC increased from 48% to >90% when the number of lung samples tested was increased from one to five. PCR has the added advantage of detecting much lower levels of the agent; thus it has a higher sensitivity, but this does not always correlate with a better positive predictive value for the syndrome under investigation as was found with PMWS (Pogranichniy et al. 2002). In fact, increased use of PCR has provided valuable information on the frequency of asymptomatic, subclinical, and carrier states for a number of agents. PCR, because of its much lower detection limit, is more susceptible to problems arising from cross-contamination between sites within the same animal, such as normal nasal flora contaminating lung sites or between animals when using common instruments or gloves during sample collection and processing or when samples are collected in an environment that contains the agent in the air, such as M. hypopneumoniae (Kurth et al. 2002). Poorly validated PCR tests may also result in false-positive results through detection of near-neighbor agents, such as bovine viral diarrhea virus with a classical swine fever PCR.

After laboratory testing of samples is completed, interpretation of the results on a herd basis should include evaluation of the agreement of the herd history with the laboratory’s gross findings and the individual histories of the pigs submitted. For example, if pigs of appropriate age are submitted to determine the cause of postweaning diarrhea but the gross findings indicate normal feces and significant pneumonia, or if fecal samples are submitted from 10-week-old emaciated pigs, the findings in both cases will be of little or no value in determining the cause of postweaning diarrhea. However, the results in the former case disclose a previously unrecognized respiratory disease. In the latter example, the age and nutritional status indicate pigs are growing poorly, and some agents that initiate postweaning diarrhea (i.e., hemolytic E. coli, TGE, or rotavirus) will no longer be present. Another key element in the necropsy report, which complicates interpretation of the results, is the presence of injection sites or medication in the gastrointestinal tract. The use of parasiticides or antibiotics can suppress or kill potential agents under investigation, resulting in false-negative results.

In order to correlate test results with the presence of pathologic lesions or clinical disease, it is important that the samples are labeled with unique animal identifications. The submission paperwork should also indicate the number of pigs sampled. In the absence of identifying information, tissue, swabs, feces, or serum samples from multiple pigs might be assumed to be from the same animal and pooled or only a portion of the samples might be tested.

**CAUSE AND EFFECT**

Almost all infectious diseases in swine production are multicausal, with environmental and management factors playing a central role in the clinical expression of overt disease and in the determination of a disease’s effect on productivity. PMWS is an excellent example of the influence of multiple factors on the expression of clinical disease (Pogranichniy et al. 2002). Although a diagnostic laboratory can help identify agents potentially involved in a disease outbreak or poor-production problem, the importance of infectious agents relative to other host, management, and environmental factors must be determined by the submitting veterinarian.

**Considerations if an Agent Is Isolated**

Even when an agent is isolated with a 100% specific test and hence there is direct evidence of its presence, questions may arise as to the role of the agent in the disease process. In most investigations that are not done prospectively or that do not include similar testing of healthy cohorts, it is difficult to establish unequivocally that the suspected cause (e.g., agent) preceded the outcome (e.g., morbidity or mortality) or prove that the agent caused disease. Factors that impact a causal interpretation of the agent’s role in the disease process need to be considered. Because a certain number of subclinical or normal carriers of an organism occur, it is important to determine whether the goal is to ascertain the presence or absence of a potential disease-causing agent or to determine the role of the agent in causing clinical disease (Huerta et al. 2003, Pogranichniy et al. 2002). The site from which the organism is identified (e.g., nasal vs. lung), the purity of the culture or types of organisms found in mixed cultures, and the quantity of agent present can be important factors in determining the causal relationship of a potential agent to the disease process.

**Site of Isolation.** The site is important because a number of organisms found in pathologic lesions have also been found in healthy pigs as part of the flora of the skin, respiratory, gastrointestinal, or reproductive tracts (Amass et al. 1996; Dritz et al. 1996; Straw et al. 1996). Therefore, events at the time of death may lead to contamination of deeper organs. For example, the lung may become contaminated with aspirated nasopharyngeal
flora, leading to isolation of potential pathogens such as *Haemophilus parasuis* or *Streptococcus suis*, which are reported in the nasal cavities and tonsils of healthy pigs (Amass et al. 1996; Dritz et al. 1996). Most respiratory pathogens are reported more commonly in pneumatic lungs, but they have also been found in a low percentage (2–16%) of normal lungs (Straw et al. 1996). Postmortem contamination can also occur during the organ removal process, such as when nasal flora are found in mixed cultures from a brain that was removed by sawing through the nasal cavity and calvarium.

**Pure or Mixed Culture Result.** Though uncommon in pigs, finding a single potential pathogen lends greater support to a causal relationship between an agent and a lesion. Co-infections are more common, however; Choi et al. (2003) demonstrated in their findings that 88% of 2872 cases of pneumonia in pigs had two or more pathogens present.

Interpretation of mixed culture results requires knowledge of the flora at the site cultured, as well as the type and relative number of organisms identified. In the absence of inflammation or when potential pathogens are found in mixed culture, determining a causal relationship of any single agent to disease is difficult. Often pigs submitted for evaluation may have been sick and treated with antibiotics for several days, so determining which agents are the primary or secondary pathogens is tricky. The finding of the same pathogens at multiple sites within an affected organ lends support to a causal relationship compared with finding only environmental bacteria, such as coliforms, streptococci and staphylococci. These mixed cultures of environmental bacteria in a parenchymal organ or mixed with rare pathogens suggest aspiration in the lung, postmortem contamination of organs, or poor technique in obtaining cultures. This interpretation is supported by reports that these environmental organisms are found with similar frequency in normal and pneumatic lung cultures (Straw et al. 1996).

**Molecular Characterization.** In some situations, establishing causality when an agent is identified might require further characterization of the strain found if it is generally of low pathogenicity or if live vaccines, that are detectable by the assay (e.g., PCR), have recently been used. Molecular epidemiologic methods might be required in some instances to determine whether an outbreak is attributable to the introduction of a new, more virulent strain of bacteria or virus or to the reemergence of an endemic strain (e.g., PRRS; Larochelle et al. 2003). Sometimes there is a need to differentiate pathogenic field virus from closely related cross-reacting viruses (e.g., porcine respiratory coronavirus from TGE) or vaccine strains (e.g., PRRS; Wesley et al. 1998), because the first may produce clinical disease whereas cross-reacting viruses and vaccine isolates do not (Mengeling et al. 1996).

**Quantity of the Agent.** The quantity of an agent present has significance in interpretation of toxicologic and nutritional results. A low level of a toxin might simply reflect a residue rather than clinical toxicosis. However, since toxins are absorbed and metabolized at various rates, a very low level might be significant if clinical signs exist for toxins that are highly volatile (e.g., zinc phosphide) or rapidly broken down (e.g., anticoagulants, ionophores). Some toxins can also result in changes in tissues with a slow turnover, such as hooves, so that lesions persist after the tissue levels have returned to normal (e.g., selenium). The amount of decline below normal levels for minerals in pig sera and tissues is important in determination of clinical or subclinical nutritional deficiencies. In general, antigen and nucleic acid detection assays—such as PCR, IHC, fluorescent antibody (FA), and virus isolation—provide positive or negative results and are not quantitative. Even semi-quantitative testing—such as real-time PCR, bacterial cultures, and fecal parasite counts—will be strongly influenced by the presubmission use of therapeutics, sample handling, nonuniform distribution of the agent in the sample and the stage of infection (e.g., pre-patent). Therefore, quantity of a pathogenic microorganism, though a consideration, should not be a major factor in determining the significance of the agent.

**Considerations if No Agent Is Isolated**

As described in a previous section, a negative result on laboratory samples should not necessarily rule out an agent as a cause of disease, especially if the negative predictive value of a test is only moderate. False-negative results—such as failure to isolate a viral or bacterial agent or identify a specific pathogen by electron microscopy, FA, histopathology, and other antigen detection or PCR technique—can occur for a variety of reasons. The laboratory performing the test might have little or no experience with isolating some of the fastidious swine pathogens and are not using alternative more sensitive detection methods. For example, a laboratory report stating “*Mycoplasma* cultures were negative” would not exclude the presence of *M. hyopneumoniae*, since most laboratories use a culture technique that is incapable of growing this agent. Nonuniform distribution of the pathogen may be a problem for viral and bacterial respiratory and enteric pathogens when limited sections are taken for laboratory testing (e.g., FA for TGE, IHC for PRRS; see Yaeger 2002) A prolonged time interval since initial onset of disease may lead to a decline in the quantity of the agent to below the detection limit of the assay and would necessitate an alternative assay such as serology or a more sensitive detection method like PCR. The test may detect only specific strains of the pathogen (e.g., commercial ELISA assays detect only group A rotavirus). The combination of transport media, time delay, and shipping and storage temperature may not be
conducive to the survival of some pathogens for agent isolation methods, but PCR or antigen detection may still be effective due to greater leeway in their time and temperature requirements. For example, tissue samples maintained at room temperature for 24 hours had less than 50% recovery of PRRS virus by isolation compared with 100% recovery from sequential samples maintained at 4°C (VanAlstine et al. 1993). However, PCR was able to detect PRRSV in 94% of positive samples maintained at room temperature for up to 4 days (Benson et al. 2002). False-negative results on fecal sample PCR for various enteric pathogens may occur within a shorter time frame postcollection and more readily at room temperature or higher temperatures due to the impact of normal flora. In addition, inhibitory substances in feces can result in false-negative PCR results, but new internal control methods have improved the laboratories’ ability to detect these substances, thereby rendering the negative results invalid (Jacobson et al. 2003). The incorrect sample (e.g., feces) might be submitted for conditions that many laboratories diagnose on histopathology or IHC (e.g., *Lawsonia intracellularis*, attaching and effacing *E. coli*). For some agents like PRRS, prolonged formalin-fixation can also result in false-negative results by IHC (VanAlstine et al. 2002). In general, problems arising from the inability of the laboratory to identify specific pathogens, nonuniform distribution of lesions, shipping and storage conditions, insensitive assays for the stage of disease, and incorrect samples can be prevented if the laboratory is consulted prior to collection and submission of the samples.

Even when sample selection and shipping conditions are optimal and the laboratory is capable of testing for the agent(s) of interest, a negative result will not rule out the presence of fastidious agents or organisms found in very low numbers. However, in pigs undergoing a thorough pathologic evaluation, the absence of lesions or clinical signs considered specific to that agent is usually adequate evidence to rule out the agent as a cause of disease, although the agent may still be present without causing clinical disease (e.g., *Lawsonia intracellularis*, see Huerta et al. 2003). False-negative results will also occur when pigs are treated prior to sampling. Gram-positive organisms are easily suppressed or killed by the use of penicillin and other antibiotics, substantially reducing the likelihood of isolation of *Erysipelothrix* or betahemolytic *Streptococcus* spp. from treated pigs.

**Additional Considerations for Serologic Results**

Because serologic results often are quantitative and values can vary between laboratories performing the same assay, the relationship of a serologic response to disease can be best interpreted by knowledge of the laboratories’ experience with the assay in their submission area. Laboratories should be able to provide information on the common response detected in pigs in their area and in pigs that have been vaccinated. However, for many diseases titers induced by natural infection may not be readily distinguished from vaccinal titers (Hill 1988). An exception is PRV infection for which tests are available for differentiation of field infection from vaccinal responses in pigs vaccinated with gene-deleted PRV vaccines (Weigel et al. 1992). Also of importance is how soon after infection titers become detectable with the assay being used, the time period to reach peak titers, and the duration of detectable antibody after infection or vaccination (Yoon et al. 1995). Lack of a titer on an assay with high sensitivity can be valuable information to rule out the agent in question if the animals sampled have been sick or recovered from the disease within 2–4 weeks prior to sampling.

In young pigs, repeated sampling might help differentiate maternally acquired antibodies from those induced by natural infection. If a veterinarian is interested in using serology to identify TGE as a cause of postweaning diarrhea in a chronically infected herd, a single serum sample taken at weaning might be inadequate because such antibodies could have been passively or actively acquired (Hill 1988). Repeated sampling at 2- to 4-week intervals with evidence of increasing or decreasing titers would provide evidence of active infection or passively acquired antibodies, respectively. However, when interpreting the results of such a sampling strategy, the potential role of porcine respiratory coronavirus maternal antibody or infection, which induces cross-reacting antibody to TGE, would also have to be considered (Sestak et al. 1996; Wesley and Woods 1996).

Although unequivocally establishing a cause-and-effect relationship is difficult, consideration of the above-mentioned factors and testing the diagnosis with an intervention (especially if there is an untreated control group) should provide increased confidence in a causal interpretation of the laboratory findings.

**SELECTING APPROPRIATE SAMPLE SIZES**

As part of disease investigations and health monitoring of herds, several sample size questions need to be addressed before sample collection. Although collection of too few samples is the most common mistake, the additional cost of submission of more samples must be weighed against the economic cost of the disease and the importance of establishing a correct diagnosis.

**Detection of Infection if Present in the Herd**

Veterinarians often need to determine whether an infection is or has ever been present in the herd or a subpopulation of the herd. For tests of 100% specificity, a single positive is usually considered sufficient to class the herd as positive, although for serologic tests of imperfect specificity more than one positive might be necessary. To estimate required numbers to detect infection, two values are necessary: the required level of confi-
dence, usually 95%, and the likely prevalence of infection in the herd or in the specific group of pigs being evaluated. The selected prevalence value should be realistic, but if there is doubt, erring toward a lower prevalence is preferable to ensure that adequate numbers of pigs are sampled. If the calculated sample size is large relative to the total population size, these numbers can be adjusted downward.

If a veterinarian’s only goal is to detect infection, sampling does not need to be random but can be directed to higher-prevalence groups—for example, different age groups when there is an age-related risk of infection or clinically affected versus otherwise healthy pigs. If there is an age-related risk of exposure—e.g., Salmonella spp. in pigs in Denmark (Christensen and Gardner 2000)—this information can be used to target risk groups for sampling. To detect T. gondii in a herd, sows are a better population to sample because prevalence is likely to be higher than in grower-finisher pigs. To detect PRRS virus, samples from older nursery pigs (6–8 weeks old) would be better than samples from sows or finisher pigs. To detect enteric pathogens by fecal culture or antigen detection methods, preference should be given to sampling pigs with diarrhea rather than pigs with normal feces.

A benefit of nonrandom, or targeted, sampling is that a diagnosis can often be established with fewer samples. In an outbreak investigation when samples are selected for culture from typical lesions identified at necropsy (prevalence close to 100%), few samples will be necessary. In other situations, where infection is subclinical and prevalence is lower, more samples should be submitted. For example, a sample size of 30 will give 95% confidence of detecting at least 1 positive in the sample if the prevalence of infection is at least 10% and the test is perfectly sensitive. When sensitivity is less than 100%, numbers should be increased. For example, if culture of feces for Salmonella spp. was only 50% sensitive, a sample size of about 60 (double the number needed for a 100% sensitive test) would be needed to satisfy the specified criterion.

Despite adequate planning of sample sizes, laboratory results are sometimes negative. If zero positive test results occur for a sample of pigs from the herd, this should be interpreted differently from negative results based on testing the entire herd. Appropriate interpretation is shown in the example on prevalence estimation that follows.

**Prevalence Estimation**

Detection of infection and estimation of prevalence can often be done with the same sample of pigs, providing that the sampling is truly random. Usually the random sample for prevalence estimation is collected at a single point in time (cross-sectional sample). Required sample sizes to estimate prevalence with desired accuracy or error limits (usually from 5% to 20%) are presented in Tables 10.2 and 10.3, including corrections for finite population sizes. When prevalence is unknown and a study is planned, we recommend calculating a sample size at 50% prevalence, which represents the maximum number that could be needed. Selection of error limits will be more subjective, although ±10% and ±20% are used more frequently than ±5% because of the substantially increased cost when a more precise estimate is needed.

We emphasize two points with respect to prevalence estimation. First, at moderate prevalences (30–70%), much larger sample sizes are necessary to estimate prevalence accurately than at either low or high prevalences. For a fixed sample size, the precision of the estimate is greater the more the prevalence differs from 50%. Second, small sample sizes can result in sample test results that are very different from the true population values. For example, Gardner et al. (1996) compared samples of 5 and 30 pigs to estimate the prevalence of porcine parvovirus in a large herd and found that sample sizes of 5 frequently failed to reflect herd prevalence, and even a sample size of 30 yielded poor estimates of herd prevalence on some occasions.

Sometimes, even though the sample size is calculated a priori, no positives are found on a random sample of pigs when tested with a perfect test. What conclusions, if any, can be drawn? If there are no positives, the upper 95% confidence limit for prevalence is approximately 3/n where n = number sampled (DiGiacomo and Koepsell 1986). Therefore, if 30 pigs were tested and all were negative, the upper 95% confidence limit would be 3/30, or 10%. Although a veterinarian initially might conclude that a herd was not infected (prevalence = 0%), a more appropriate interpretation would be that the herd has a prevalence of ≤10% with 95% confidence.

This issue of how to interpret negative results correctly extends to health certification schemes. Only if all pigs are tested in a herd with a test of 100% sensitivity and negative results are obtained is there sufficient evidence, based on the test results alone, to certify freedom from a pathogen. In practice, certifications are usually based on a combination of herd history and repeated testing of samples from the herd and are made in the context of knowledge that many herds become infected over time by the spread of pathogens from neighboring herds. Experience from the Danish SPF scheme indicates that the annual reinfection rate of herds with M. hyopneumoniae is about 10–15% (Sørensen et al. 1992; Sørensen et al. 1993).

**Detection of a Difference in Prevalence or Incidence Between Two Groups**

For some investigations a veterinarian might want to determine whether one group of pigs has a higher prevalence or incidence of infection than another group. The grouping factor could be age, reproductive status (preg-
nant vs. nonpregnant or aborting vs. nonaborting), production system or husbandry type, or any other comparison factor. If this diagnostic approach was used and a significant association was detected between an infectious agent and an outcome such as clinical disease, reproductive failure, or the prevalence of emaciated pigs, this would provide additional evidence for a causal role of the agent in the syndrome. This comparative approach is often used in serum-profiling schemes where different age groups in the herd are evaluated for exposure to one or more infectious agents.

If a comparison of prevalences is the primary goal of the submission, the required sample size is determined by the level of confidence and the best a priori estimates of prevalence in the groups. As the percentage point difference between the groups decreases, much larger sample sizes become necessary (Table 10.4). For example, to detect a significant difference at the 5% level between 40% and 10% prevalence with 80% power would require 38/group, whereas 91/group would be needed to detect a difference between 40% and 20% prevalence. These calculations indicate that the small sample sizes (5–10 per age group) that are often recommended for serum profiling of herds are typically too small for unequivocal comparisons. Sample sizes necessary to compare prevalences are listed in book tables (Fleiss 1981) or can be calculated with public domain computer software such as Epi Info (available at www.cdc.gov/epiinfo/).

CONCLUSIONS

Laboratories can assist in establishing a diagnosis, but ultimately, practitioners need to assess the laboratory results in the context of other herd information and existing knowledge about the relative importance of infectious agents and other factors in disease occurrence. To maximize the benefits of laboratory testing, veterinarians should do the following:

1. Clearly define the goal of the submission—e.g., confirm a diagnosis, screen for a pathogen, estimate prevalence of a pathogen.
2. Select a laboratory with good internal and external quality control procedures and with experience working with the agent or test of interest.
3. Give the laboratory the maximum chance to achieve the goals desired by
   A. Selecting appropriate sample types—e.g., tissue versus serum;
   B. Using the correct method of submission—e.g., chilled versus frozen versus room temperature;
   C. Ensuring samples are from pigs that are truly representative of the problem under investigation and are collected from pigs at the appropriate stage of disease;
   D. Submitting adequate numbers of samples to meet the specified submission goal, balancing the additional cost of more samples versus the need to establish a diagnosis correctly;
   E. Considering inclusion of a comparison group of samples (controls) if interpretation without them might be equivocal or previous attempts to establish diagnosis have been unproductive.
4. Be knowledgeable about the strengths and limitations of available tests.
5. Interpret results taking into account the predictive values of positive and negative test results, and for quantitative tests, the magnitude of the test result in relationship to the cutoff value.

REFERENCES


This chapter contains a collection of tables designed to provide assistance in the field diagnosis of swine diseases. These aids do not comprehensively cover all the diseases that could possibly occur in pigs. Diseases that affect only one animal or arise due to unusual circumstances have not been included, since this would greatly lengthen the tables without substantial addition of information useful for diagnosing herd problems that are of real economic importance. In general, diseases have been included that cause herd problems or at least involve a group of animals.

This chapter has been divided into major categories according to the body system affected and subdivided into sections by specific clinical signs. Sometimes pigs will show signs referable to two or more systems. Then the clinician will need to exercise judgment in determining which is the principal one affected or may pursue all signs and look for diseases in common.

Each section begins with a definition of the signs included there and some general remarks about approach to diagnosis. Also included is information about patterns of disease and certain characteristics or signs that are typically associated with specific classes of etiologic agents. When applicable, a table indicates the different ages at which the various diseases are more prominent. Although diseases may be shown to affect pigs in a certain age category, age must not be interpreted to have discrete boundaries. Age categories should be used as a guide to the most common age at which the diseases are seen and should not necessarily be a cause of rejecting a disease as a differential just because the affected pigs are not within the specified category.

The tables list the various possible causes of clinical signs and their differentiating features. Whenever possible, these tables have been designed in a format that leads from clinical signs to the etiologic agents since this most closely parallels the procedure of clinical diagnosis in the field. However, with problems like abortion, there are just not enough differentiating clinical features to proceed from signs to diagnosis and so some charts are in the traditional disease-first format.

**GASTROINTESTINAL SYSTEM**

**Diarrhea**

The consistency of feces may vary according to the diet fed, but diarrhea may be considered to occur when there is a change to a more fluid consistency than normal, especially when associated with signs of either large- or small-intestine disease. Signs frequently associated with disease of the small intestine include vomiting, melena, poorly digested feces, bulky voluminous feces, and borborygmus. Vomiting seldom occurs in cases of disease of the large intestine; however, there may be bloody stools, gross mucus on the feces, small frequent defecations, and tenesmus.

**Unweaned Pigs (Tables 11.1, 11.3).** Many times, a presumptive diagnosis of the cause of baby pig diarrhea can be made on the basis of history, clinical signs, and necropsy findings. Often, however, the clinical picture does not point to a likely etiology because of the variation in clinical signs that can be produced by one disease agent and because of concurrent problems with more than one disease. Therefore, as much information as possible should be collected rather than trying to base a diagnosis on one or two signs.

The most common causes of diarrhea in baby pigs are colibacillosis, hypoglycemia, transmissible gastroenteritis (TGE), clostridial enteritis (CE), coccidiosis, and rotaviral enteritis (RE). These six entities account for the major portion of all preweaning diarrhea. Diseases that occur less frequently or rarely in baby pigs but have diarrhea as their principal sign include *Strongyloides* infestation, swine dysentery (SD), erysipelas, and salmonellosis. Pseudorabies (PR) and toxoplasmosis may cause diarrhea in baby pigs, but generally diarrhea is not their main clinical manifestation.
An explosive onset of diarrhea and rapid spread are usually associated with a viral etiology. An insidious onset, slow spread, and gradual increase in severity over time tend to be seen with bacterial or parasitic disease.

Knowledge of the vaccination status of the herd and previous exposure to infectious disease assists in diagnosis. Diseases such as enzootic TGE, coccidiosis, RE, colibacillosis, and CE are difficult to eliminate once they have become a problem in the herd; and they may still contribute to diarrhea even when control measures are being used. In a herd chronically infected with one of the above diseases, the means of implementing control measures should be reviewed to determine if failure to adequately carry out preventive programs (vaccination or medication) has allowed disease to reoccur.

The age at which pigs are first affected with diarrhea is an indication of the cause (Table 11.1). Diarrhea that occurs on the first or second day after birth is likely to be caused by colibacillosis, hypoglycemia, or CE. Coccidial scours first occur at 5–7 days of age. Diarrhea caused by enzootic TGE, RE, SD, salmonellosis, and erysipelas usually occurs after the first week of life. In addition to appearing during the first few days of life, diarrhea from *Escherichia coli* and agalactia is commonly seen at 3 weeks of age. Sometimes rather than diarrhea that starts at a certain age, there will be a wide range of ages affected simultaneously. An acute onset of severe diarrhea that affects all ages of piglets over 24 hours of age is typical of epizootic TGE and PR. Less severe diarrhea that has no clear time of onset and affects piglets of all ages can be produced by colibacillosis and RE.

Usually when diarrhea occurs in baby pigs, the entire
litter is affected. This occurs because for most infectious diseases either the sow is immune and able to supply sufficient antibodies to the piglets through the milk or the sow is not immune and lacks lactogenic antibodies. CE is an exception since it may affect only a few pigs in the litter and these are usually the biggest and healthiest. Hypoglycemia can also produce disease in only a few pigs in the litter, usually the smallest.

Fecal pH has been used to help differentiate between causes of diarrhea. Fecal materials to be tested should be obtained from several affected piglets by applying pressure to their abdomens, not by collecting fecal material from the floor. Diseases that cause moderate to severe villous atrophy (TGE and RE) produce diarrhea with an acid pH. Other enteric diseases cause diarrhea in which feces are alkaline.

Often, the first sign of diarrhea noticed is dehydration in which the bony prominences are clearly seen and the skin is dry, bluish in color, said to resemble parchment, and remains tented after being pinched between thumb and finger.

Sows tend not to be affected by most disease agents that cause enteritis in their piglets. This general rule is not applicable in cases of piglet hypoglycemia caused by agalactia in the sow and in epizootic TGE and PR, in which sows become sick and may vomit or have diarrhea.

Rare causes of diarrhea in baby pigs include infection with Bacteroides fragilis, Enterococcus durans, and Chlamydia sp.

Noninfectious Contributing Factors (Table 11.2). Two major contributors to baby pig diarrhea are effective environmental temperature (EET) and availability of milk.

The baby pigs’ lower critical temperature (LCT)—the temperature below which they must utilize extra energy to maintain their body temperature—is 90°F (33°C). The LCT for recently weaned pigs is about 75°F (28°C). The EET experienced by a pig is a combination of the heat transfer that occurs by radiation through the air, conduction through the floor, evaporation due to wet surfaces and humidity, and convection to walls and windows. The EET may be estimated by measuring the air temperature and adding or subtracting according to the conditions listed in Table 11.2.

Adequate amounts of milk are necessary to provide piglets with lactogenic antibodies and with energy to maintain body temperature. Any factor that limits availability of milk to piglets such as agalactia or impedances of physical access to mammary glands (bars on the farrowing crate that hinder nursing, slippery floors) contributes to the severity of clinical disease.

Baby pig diarrhea is more likely to develop in some environments than in others. Continuous farrowing operations are predisposed to colibacillosis and enzootic TGE. Colibacillosis is found most often where management and sanitation are poor. Within herds affected by colibacillosis, litters of gilts are more often affected than those of sows. In addition to a continuous farrowing schedule, frequent additions of pigs from outside sources is a common practice on farms with enzootic TGE.

Necropsy (Table 11.4). Three areas deserve close attention in the necropsy of pigs with diarrhea. First, examine the lacteals in the mesentery; the presence or absence of fat there reflects the ability of the disease to cause villous atrophy and diminish absorptive capacity of the small intestine. The absence of fat in the lacteals is a prominent finding with TGE and is a variable finding in RE. Colibacillosis does not interfere with the ability of the intestine to absorb fat. Absence of fat in the lacteals also occurs when the pig is not nursing. Milk or a milk curd in the stomach provides evidence that the pig was nursing and makes hypoglycemia unlikely. The second area to examine is the serosal surface of the intestine for reddening (clostridial infection) or transparency (TGE). The mucosal surface is the third area that should be closely examined for signs of petechial or frank hemorrhage (CE, salmonellosis) and a fibrinonecrotic membrane that may be diphtheritic (coccidiosis, chronic CE) or hemorrhagic (acute CE, SD).

Weaned Pigs to Adults (Tables 11.1, 11.5, 11.6). Diarrhea in older pigs may be the only sign of disease or part of a disease syndrome with other signs. The clinician should determine what signs exist, if disease is systemic or confined to the gastrointestinal system, and whether it is likely to involve the large or small intestine or both. Necropsy is similar to that for small pigs.

Loose stools are sometimes seen in pigs a few days to a week after weaning, when pigs have a hypersensitivity to the soybean meal in the diet. Cryptosporidia rarely produces diarrhea in weaned pigs.

Vomiting

Vomiting is the ejection of stomach contents through the mouth and should be differentiated from regurgitation, in which food is swallowed, does not reach the stomach, and is ejected through the mouth. If there is any question of whether vomiting or regurgitation is occurring, it may be settled by measuring the pH of the ejected material. Vomitus has an acid pH and regurgitated material is alkaline. In pigs, the act of vomiting may have been observed or the vomitus seen on the floor of the pen.

Unweaned Pigs (Table 11.7). Vomiting is a prominent clinical sign of hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis, porcine epidemic diarrhea, and TGE. Vomiting can also be seen with RE, PR, hog cholera (HC), African swine fever (ASF), and rarely in enteric colibacillosis. Diseases that feature vomiting in baby pigs usually have a viral etiology. Determination of the cause of vomiting in baby pigs is best accomplished by identifying the major system involved and then differentiating between diseases that affect that system.
### Table 11.3. Diseases that cause diarrhea in unweaned pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Age When Signs Occur</th>
<th>Morbidity</th>
<th>Mortality</th>
<th>Season</th>
<th>Other Signs in Piglets</th>
<th>Appearance of Diarrhea</th>
<th>Signs in Other Pigs</th>
<th>Onset and Course</th>
<th>Associated Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colibacillosis</td>
<td>Anytime, but see a peak of infection at 1–4 days and 3 weeks of age.</td>
<td>Variable, usually moderate.</td>
<td>Variable, moderate.</td>
<td>Any but winter if chilled piglets, summer if agalactia.</td>
<td>Dehydration. Pasty peritoneum. Tail may necrose.</td>
<td>Yellowish white, watery with gas, fetid odor, pH 7.0–8.0.</td>
<td>Sows not affected. Litters of gilts often worse than litters of sows.</td>
<td>Gradual onset and slow spread through the room. Severity worsens toward the end of the farrowing group.</td>
<td>Often associated with poor management, dirty environment, and suboptimal environmental temperatures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epizootic transmissible gastroenteritis</td>
<td>Any age over 1 day and all ages at once.</td>
<td>Near 100%.</td>
<td>Near 100% in pigs under 1 week old. Near 0% in pigs over 4 weeks old.</td>
<td>Cold months, November to April.</td>
<td>Vomiting, dehydration.</td>
<td>Yellow-white (possibly greenish), watery, characteristic odor, pH 6.0–7.0</td>
<td>Sows anorexic, may vomit, loose feces, agalactia, rapid spread to other swine.</td>
<td>Explosive, all litters affected at once.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enzootic transmissible gastroenteritis</td>
<td>6 days and older.</td>
<td>Moderate, 10–50%.</td>
<td>Low, 0–20%</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Vomiting, dehydration.</td>
<td>Yellow-white (possibly greenish), watery, characteristic odor, pH 6.0–7.0</td>
<td>Sows usually not sick. Nursery pigs may have diarrhea.</td>
<td>Litters affected sporadically. Chronic low level.</td>
<td>Frequent additions of pigs and continuous farrowing. Very large farms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coccidiosis</td>
<td>Not in pigs under 5 days old. Usually 6–15 (especially at 7) days of age.</td>
<td>Variable, up to 75%.</td>
<td>Usually low.</td>
<td>Peaks in August and September.</td>
<td>Gaunt, rough hair coat. Lower weight at weaning.</td>
<td>Pasty to profuse, watery, yellow-gray, fetid, pH 7.0–8.0. Some pigs with diarrhea, others may have “sheep pellet” feces.</td>
<td>Sows normal.</td>
<td>Slow spread and gradual buildup.</td>
<td>Solid floors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotaviral enteritis</td>
<td>1–5 weeks old.</td>
<td>Variable, up to 75%.</td>
<td>Low, 5–20%.</td>
<td>Occasionally will vomit, gaunt, rough hair coat.</td>
<td>Watery, pasty with yellow curdlike material, pH 6.0–7.0.</td>
<td>Sows rarely sick.</td>
<td>Epizootic: abrupt onset and rapid spread. Enzootic: like TGE.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Age When Signs Occur</th>
<th>Morbidity</th>
<th>Mortality</th>
<th>Season</th>
<th>Other Signs in Piglets</th>
<th>Appearance of Diarrhea</th>
<th>Signs in Other Pigs</th>
<th>Onset and Course</th>
<th>Associated Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Clostridium perfringens</em> type C or A: PA: Peracute A: Acute SA: Subacute C: Chronic</td>
<td>Typically 1–7 days old. PA: 1 day A: 3 days SA: 5–7 days C: 10–14 days</td>
<td>1–4 pigs per litter showing signs. Often the biggest, healthiest piglets are affected.</td>
<td>Nearly 100% of acutely affected pigs. Higher survival if chronic.</td>
<td></td>
<td>PA: Paddling, prostration, occasional vomiting. SA, C: emaciation, rough hair coat.</td>
<td>PA: Watery, yellow to bloody; A: red-dish brown liquid feces; SA: nonhemorrhagic, watery, yellow-gray; C: yellow-gray, mucoid.</td>
<td>Sows normal.</td>
<td>Slow spread throughout the farrowing room. All four forms may be seen at same time in different litters.</td>
<td>First outbreak often seen after addition of new pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clostridium difficile</em></td>
<td>Typically 1–7 days old</td>
<td>10–90%. Often 2/3 of litters and 1/3 of pigs.</td>
<td>Up to 50%. Typically 20%.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Sudden death, with no clinical signs, sometimes dyspnea, mild abdominal distension and scrotal edema.</td>
<td>Pasty yellow to watery.</td>
<td>Sows normal.</td>
<td>Treatment at birth with antibiotics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Strongyloides</em></td>
<td>4–10 days old.</td>
<td>Up to 50%.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dyspnea, CNS signs.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sows normal.</td>
<td>Southern states.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine dysentery</td>
<td>7 days and older. Especially at 2 weeks of age.</td>
<td>Sporadic by litters.</td>
<td>Low.</td>
<td>Late summer and fall.</td>
<td>No dehydration.</td>
<td>Watery with blood and mucus, yellow-gray.</td>
<td>Sows normal. Older pigs may have diarrhea.</td>
<td>First outbreak often seen after addition of new pigs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia (agalactia)</td>
<td>Postpartum agalactia, 1–3 days; inadequate underline, 2–3 weeks.</td>
<td>Variable, 5–15% of litters.</td>
<td>High in affected litters.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Weak, inactive, hypothermia, CNS signs.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Slick floor, improper crate design or adjustment, failure to remove eyeteeth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine epidemic diarrhea</td>
<td>Any age.</td>
<td>Variable, but often high.</td>
<td>Moderate to high.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vomiting, dehydration.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Older pigs may have more severe signs.</td>
<td>Explosive onset and rapid course.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Stomach is often full, lacteals contain fat, congestion in intestine present or absent, slight edema of intestinal wall, intestine distended with fluid, mucus, and gas.

No fat in lacteals, yellow fluid and gas in intestine, congested intestinal vessels, thin-walled small intestine, hemorrhage in stomach wall, stomach contents: first 2–3 days, milk; next 4–5 days, green mucin.

Fibrinonecrotic, diphtheritic membrane, especially in jejunum and ileum. No lesions in large intestine.

Milk or curd in stomach, thin-walled intestines filled with fluid, colon and cecum distended, variable fat in the lacteals.


Mesocolonic edema

Petechial hemorrhage in intestinal mucosa. Occasionally hemorrhage in the lungs.

Lesions limited to large-intestinal wall are hyperemic and edematous, mild ascites, mucofibrinous, hemorrhagic mucosa, often with pseudomembrane.

Catarhal to hemorrhagic to necrotic enteritis throughout gastrointestinal tract. Hemorrhage and necrosis in parenchymal organs and lymph nodes. Focal necrotic areas in liver. Diffuse or focal ulcers of gastrointestinal tract.

Empty stomach, no fat in lacteals.

Necrotic tonsillitis, pharyngitis. Necrotic foci in the liver and spleen. Pulmonary congestion.


Table 11.4  Necropsy findings in unweaned pigs with diarrhea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Gross Necropsy Findings</th>
<th>Microscopic</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colibacillosis</td>
<td>Stomach is often full, lacteals contain fat, congestion in intestine present or absent, slight edema of intestinal wall, intestine distended with fluid, mucus, and gas.</td>
<td>No lesions.</td>
<td>Demonstration of <em>E. coli</em> adhering to the intestinal wall. Culture of 10^4 colonies/mL from the small intestine. Demonstration of the toxin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmissible gastroenteritis</td>
<td>No fat in lacteals, yellow fluid and gas in intestine, congested intestinal vessels, thin-walled small intestine, hemorrhage in stomach wall, stomach contents: first 2–3 days, milk; next 4–5 days, green mucin.</td>
<td>Severe villous atrophy in jejunum and ileum. Possible nephrosis.</td>
<td>Fluorescent antibody test on small intestine. Direct electron microscopic examination of intestinal contents. Isolation of virus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coccidiosis</td>
<td>Fibrinonecrotic, diphtheritic membrane, especially in jejunum and ileum. No lesions in large intestine.</td>
<td>Mild to severe villous atrophy, fibrinonecrotic membrane.</td>
<td>Mucosal smear of jejunum or ileum stained with Wright’s, Giemsa, or New Methylene Blue for merozoites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotaviral enteritis</td>
<td>Milk or curd in stomach, thin-walled intestines filled with fluid, colon and cecum distended, variable fat in the lacteals.</td>
<td>Moderate villous atrophy in jejunum and ileum.</td>
<td>Fluorescent antibody test on small intestine. Direct electron microscopic examination of gut contents. Virus isolation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clostridium difficile</em></td>
<td>Mesocolonic edema</td>
<td>Colon lesions: suppurative foci in lamina propria, segmental mucosal erosion, presence of large gram-positive rods.</td>
<td>Isolation of organism. Presence of toxins A and B.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine dysentery</td>
<td>Lesions limited to large-intestinal wall are hyperemic and edematous, mild ascites, mucofibrinous, hemorrhagic mucosa, often with pseudomembrane.</td>
<td>Superficial necrosis and hemorrhage.</td>
<td>Culture. Histopathology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Empty stomach, no fat in lacteals.</td>
<td>No lesions.</td>
<td>Typical signs, absence of disease agents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

246

**Table 11.5. Diseases of recently weaned and older pigs with diarrhea as the main clinical sign**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blood</th>
<th>Site of Lesions</th>
<th>Possible Causes</th>
<th>Further Differentiation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Note: Minimal other signs of gastrointestinal tract disease such as vomiting, anorexia, or colic may be present. No signs referable to other systems.

**Table 11.6. Diseases of recently weaned and older pigs with diarrhea as part of a clinical syndrome that primarily involves signs referable to systems other than the gastrointestinal tract**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blood</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Possible Causes</th>
<th>Further Differentiation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Weaned Pigs and Adults (Tables 11.8–11.9). Vomiting in older pigs is also frequently associated with viral infection. It also may result from toxins or agents that produce local irritation to the gastrointestinal tract. Usually it is accompanied by other signs that are helpful in making a diagnosis.

Rectal Prolapse
See Table 11.10.

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Dyspnea and Cough
Unweaned Pigs (Table 11.11). Labored respiration in baby pigs is generally due to anemia or pneumonia, especially associated with porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS). PR and toxoplasmosis infection can also produce signs of respiratory distress.

In newborns and nursing piglets, PRRS infection produces respiratory distress, thumping, mouth breathing, listlessness, and fading piglet syndrome. Respiratory signs in piglets are more common when the herd is initially infected with PRRS but may also be seen in chronically infected herds experiencing a recurrence of disease.

Anemia causes labored respiration in unweaned pigs. Iron deficiency anemia develops gradually, with signs beginning to be noticeable at about 1.5–2 weeks of age and becoming more severe in older pigs.

Bacterial pneumonias are more rarely seen in baby pigs but when present may cause signs as early as 3 days of age. Coughing is a prominent sign of pneumonia, but it is absent with anemia. Anemic pigs are noticeably pale compared to pneumonic pigs. On necropsy, anemic pigs have an enlarged heart with excess pericardial fluid, an enlarged spleen, and edema in the lung, but no other pulmonary lesions. Bacterial pneumonia in baby pigs may be due to *Actinobacillus*, *Pasteurella*, *Bordetella*, or *Streptococci* organisms and these agents should be differentiated in the same way as for older pigs (see Table 11.12). *Bordetella bronchiseptica* can cause a bronchopneumonia in young pigs that has a patchy distribution predominant in the apical and cardiac lobes but also in the dorsal aspects of the lungs.

The respiratory signs caused by PR, toxoplasmosis, HC, and ASF are usually secondary to other signs of systemic or neurologic disease.

Weaned Pigs and Adults (Table 11.12). Most respiratory problems in weaned and growing pigs are due to parasitic, bacterial, or viral invasion of the lungs. In sows, respiratory problems are more commonly caused by anemia or conditions that result in a great increase in
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Ages Affected</th>
<th>Prominence of Vomition</th>
<th>Primary System Affected</th>
<th>Nursery Pigs</th>
<th>Other Signs Growing Pigs</th>
<th>Adults</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmissible gastroenteritis</td>
<td>All ages. More severe in younger pigs.</td>
<td>Moderate in younger pigs and occasional in older pigs.</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal.</td>
<td>Watery diarrhea, dehydration, anorexia lasting up to 1 week.</td>
<td>Imappetence and diarrhea for 1 or a few days.</td>
<td>Brief anorexia, mild diarrhea. Lactating sows may have agalactia, diarrhea. Anorexia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomitoxin, T-2, diacetoxyscirpenol</td>
<td>All ages.</td>
<td>Moderately frequent.</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal.</td>
<td>Anemia, diarrhea (possibly bloody), ill-thrift, slowed growth rate, occasional feed refusal.</td>
<td>Lethargy, anorexia, ocular discharge, constipation, then diarrhea, weaving, staggering, huddling, posterior paresis, cyanosis, abortion.</td>
<td>Lethargy, hyperemia, dyspnea, mucoid to bloody diarrhea, abortion. Not usually a clinical problem at this age.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog cholera</td>
<td>All ages.</td>
<td>Moderately frequent.</td>
<td>Systemic disease.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African swine fever</td>
<td>All ages.</td>
<td>Occasionally seen.</td>
<td>Systemic disease.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peracute <em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td>All ages, but outbreaks usually in finishing pigs.</td>
<td>Occasionally seen.</td>
<td>Respiratory.</td>
<td>Dyspnea, cough, blood-tinged fluid from the nose and mouth, cyanosis.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiamin deficiency</td>
<td>Usually only experimental.</td>
<td>Moderately frequent.</td>
<td>Systemic disease.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riboflavin deficiency</td>
<td>Usually only experimental.</td>
<td>Moderately frequent.</td>
<td>Systemic disease.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other toxicities (See Table 11.9.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For further differentiation, consult the sections dealing with neurologic, systemic, and gastrointestinal disease.
**Table 11.9.** Toxocities associated with vomiting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Toxin</th>
<th>System Affected</th>
<th>Seen in Pigs with Access to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic arsenicals</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal and central nervous.</td>
<td>Ant bait, herbicides, insecticides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antimony</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal.</td>
<td>Alloys, paint, tartar emetic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal.</td>
<td>Paint, solder, batteries, fungicides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorine</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal and locomotor.</td>
<td>Water or forage contaminated with industrial waste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levamisole</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal and central nervous.</td>
<td>Anthelmintic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperazine</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal.</td>
<td>Anthelmintic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organophosphates, carbamates</td>
<td>Neurologic.</td>
<td>Insecticides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylene glycol</td>
<td>Neurologic.</td>
<td>Antifreeze.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum nigrum</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal and central nervous.</td>
<td>Nightshade in woods or permanent pastures.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 11.10.** Causes of rectal prolapse

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
<td>Abnormally acid stool in the rectum causes irritation, tenesmus, and prolapse. Refer to the section on diarrhea for differentiation between causes of diarrhea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cough</td>
<td>Increased abdominal pressure generated during coughing (especially chronic prolonged bouts) causes displacement of the rectum. Refer to the section on cough for differentiation between causes of cough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piling</td>
<td>Environmental temperatures too low. Abdominal pressure on the pig at the bottom of the pile produces prolapse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zearalenone</td>
<td>Estrogens cause swelling of perineal area, tenesmus, and prolapse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor design</td>
<td>Excessively sloped floors for crated sows causes increased pressure on pelvic structures as pregnancy progresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>Rectal prolapse has been reported in pigs in the first few weeks after lincomycin or tylosin has been added to the feed. Prolapses cease later as pigs apparently become accustomed to the antibiotic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inherited predisposition</td>
<td>Sporadic reports in the literature of herd outbreaks that occurred in the offspring of certain boars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postpartum</td>
<td>Complex etiology surrounding farrowing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepartum</td>
<td>Constipation and pressure of heavily gravid uterus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any condition that is associated with tenesmus</td>
<td>Urethritis, vaginitis, rectal or urethral injury postbreeding, urethral calculi. Excess salt in the diet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 11.11.** Diseases that cause respiratory distress and cough in unweaned pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Ages Affected</th>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Necropsy Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iron deficiency anemia</td>
<td>1.5–2 weeks and older.</td>
<td>Pale pigs with normal temperature. Easily exhausted by exertion. Rapid respiratory rate, rough hair coat.</td>
<td>Dilated heart with excess pericardial fluid, lung edema, enlarged spleen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em> pneumonia</td>
<td>3 days and older.</td>
<td>Coughing, dehydration, rapid respiration, high mortality in affected pigs.</td>
<td>Patchy distribution of pneumatic lesions throughout the lung.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies</td>
<td>Any age.</td>
<td>Respiratory distress, fever, salivation, vomiting, diarrhea, neurologic signs, high mortality.</td>
<td>Pneumonia, intestinal ulceration, hepateomegaly, white necrotic foci in any organ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxoplasmosis</td>
<td>Any age.</td>
<td>Respiratory distress, fever, diarrhea, neurologic signs.</td>
<td>Pneumonia, intestinal ulceration, hepateomegaly, white necrotic foci in any organ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barking-piglet syndrome</td>
<td>Apparent at birth.</td>
<td>Immature domed heads; sparse, erect hair coat; grunting noise produced during attempts to breathe.</td>
<td>Small thyroid, inadequate lung expansion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Streptococcus</em> spp.</td>
<td>1 week and older.</td>
<td>Dyspnea, cough.</td>
<td>Fibrinous pneumonia.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

250
body temperature. If infectious agents are involved, they tend to be viruses, except in cases where new adult animals have been introduced onto a farm that is infected with a bacteria (especially *A. pleuropneumoniae*) to which they lack previous exposure.

**Sneezing**

**Unweaned Pigs** (Table 11.13). Sneezing in piglets can be caused by atrophic rhinitis (AR), porcine cytomegalovirus (PCMV) infection, PRRS, hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis virus infection (encephalitic form), PR infection, or environmental contaminants such as dust, ammonia, or other noxious gases.

AR caused by *Pasteurella multocida*, *B. bronchiseptica*, and possibly other organisms is by far the most common cause of sneezing in unweaned pigs. AR seldom causes sneezing in pigs that are less than a week old but produces increasing frequencies as pigs approach weaning. Except for nasal discharge and tear staining, AR produces few clinical signs. Piglets are generally in good health otherwise and do not experience higher mortality. On necropsy, lesions are confined to the nose and may include a serous to purulent or blood-tinged exudate, along with turbinate atrophy and nasal septum deviation.

PCMV infection is most severe in newborn pigs. Infection in pigs older than 3 weeks is usually without clinical signs. In addition to sneezing, affected piglets may show edema around the jaw or tarsal joints, shivering, anemia, and respiratory distress. Mortality may reach 25%. In sows, there may be an increase in the numbers of stillbirths and mummies. A mild rhinitis is seen at necropsy. More prominent lesions include subcutaneous edema, generalized petechiation, pericardial and pleural effusion, and enlargement of lymph nodes.

Environmental dust and concentration of ammonia greater than 25 ppm irritate the respiratory mucosa and produce excessive lacrimation, serous nasal discharge, and shallow respiration. Ammonia-induced lesions are differentiated from infectious causes by their complete remission when the pig is removed from the contaminated environment.

PRRS causes a mild rhinitis and associated sneezing which is usually most frequently seen in nursery pigs but can also occur in unweaned pigs or in growing pigs.

Sneezing can be an early sign of PR or part of the clinical picture of hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis. However, in unweaned pigs these infections progress so rapidly to central nervous system involvement that by the time the veterinarian is called, the diagnosis is made from differentials of neurologic disease.

**Weaned Pigs to Adults** (Table 11.14). Sneezing in older animals is primarily due to AR, PR, or environmental contaminants. Concurrent infections are not uncommon. Rarely, cytomegalovirus affects nursery or growing pigs, in which it produces an acute, severe rhinitis with stenotic breathing that rapidly resolves without treatment in a few days.

**EXTERNAL BODY SURFACE**

**Skin** (Tables 11.15–11.18)

If the practitioner is not certain of the appearance of normal pig skin, the neonatal pig should be used as a reference. Mange is so widespread in the swine population that even people who have a long history of association with swine may not recognize how smooth, flat, and unblemished the normal skin is. Changes that are within the skin proper rather than within any of the structures beneath it are covered in Tables 11.16 and 11.17. Lumps or swellings that remain stationary when the skin is moved are covered in Table 11.18. Skin lesions should be examined for color changes, proliferation, distribution, and relation of lesions to normal skin. Pigs should be observed for pruritus. Color changes in the skin without associated lesions are covered in Table 11.17.

**NEUROLOGIC SYSTEM**

**General Signs**

Neurologic disorders include diseases that cause behavioral abnormalities, ataxia, abnormal gait, incoordination, paraesthesia, paralysis, muscular tremors, trembling, paddling, dog-sitting, opisthotonos, convulsions, deafness, blindness, nystagmus, coma, or death.

**Unweaned Pigs** (Table 11.19). One of the major aids in diagnosis of neurologic disease in baby pigs is the distribution of affected piglets. By observing whether disease is occurring sporadically in single pigs, only in certain litters, or across all litters, the range of diagnostic possibilities can be greatly narrowed.

Diseases that occur sporadically and at a low level include middle-ear infection, tetanus, rabies, hypoglycemia, and streptococcal infections. Generally these can be differentiated by clinical signs and necropsy, although streptococcal infections require bacterial culture for confirmation of diagnosis.

Hypoglycemia and streptococcal infections, as well as PR, congenital tremors, vitamin A deficiency, blue eye disease, and iron or organophosphate toxicity may occur in a large number of litters within the farrowing group. History and the presence of signs in the sow are primary aids to differentiating between causes.

HC and ASF cause neurologic signs in baby pigs along with other signs of systemic disease. Inherited or congenital abnormalities that produce neurologic disorders include congenital motor defect in Large White and British Saddleback pigs, Landrace trembles, and Pietrain creeper syndrome. Occasionally Japanese encephalitis causes mild neurologic disease in baby pigs.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Associated Agents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rapid clinical course, fever, anorexia, depression, severe dyspnea, open-mouth breathing, cyanosis, foamy blood-tinged discharge from nose and mouth.</td>
<td>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coughing with minimal other signs.</td>
<td>Ascaris suum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No coughing, but dyspnea and cyanosis, depression, fever, anorexia, and reluctance to move, lameness, stiff gait, swollen joints, ataxia, convulsions.</td>
<td>Haemophilus parasuis, Mycoplasma hyorhinis, Streptococcus suis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very acute onset, near 100% morbidity, extreme prostration, complete anorexia, labored jerky respiration, hard paroxysmal cough, fever.</td>
<td>Swine influenza.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signs of systemic disease, sneezing, coughing, dyspnea, fever, anorexia, vomiting, constipation initially, then diarrhea, possibly tremors, ataxia, and convulsions.</td>
<td>Hog cholera, African swine fever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid or abdominal respiration, moist nonproductive cough if present, pale.</td>
<td>See Table 11.29 on causes of anemia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid, panting respiration, no cough, open-mouth breathing, gasping, extremely high temperature.</td>
<td>Porcine stress syndrome, heat prostration, puffer sow syndrome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid or abdominal respiration, moist nonproductive cough, subcutaneous edema, enlarged abdomen.</td>
<td>Cardiac insufficiency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyspnea, abdominal breathing.</td>
<td>Diaphragmatic hernia caused by selenium deficiency, trauma, or genetics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyspnea.</td>
<td>Fumonisins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necropsy</td>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usually anterioventral distribution of lesions. Firm areas of tissue with variable intralobular edema. Fibrinous pleuritis suggests involvement with <em>A. pleuropneumoniae</em>, <em>H. parasuis</em>, <em>P. multocida</em>, <em>M. hyorhinis</em>, or <em>S. choleraesuis</em>.</td>
<td>Culture of organism. Fluorescent antibody test for <em>M. hyopneumoniae</em>. Serology for pseudorabies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Areas of atelectasis, hemorrhage, edema, and emphysema in lungs. Septal and perisepal hemorrhage and necrosis in the liver.</td>
<td>Fecal examination for eggs (may be negative early). Necropsy findings. History of access to soil (absolute requirement for <em>Metastrongylus</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bronchitis, bronchiolitis in posterioroventral margins of the diaphragmatic lobes. Areas of atelectasis.</td>
<td>Isolation of organism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrinous to serofibrinous pleuritis, pericarditis, arthritis, and meningitis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Often there is no opportunity to do a necropsy since death due to uncomplicated swine influenza is rare. Tenacious mucus in pharynx, larynx, trachea, and bronchi. Depressed deep purple areas in lung.</td>
<td>Physical examination. Serology. Virus isolation from pharyngeal swab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Few gross lesions, necrotic tonsillitis and pharyngitis, small white necrotic foci in liver.</td>
<td>Virus isolation or fluorescent antibody test on tonsil. Serology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pale musculature, lung edema, dilated heart, excess pericardial fluid, contracted spleen.</td>
<td>Packed-cell volume: 15–20%. Hemoglobin concentration: 6–7 g/dL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enlarged, dilated heart, valvular endocarditis, pulmonary edema, enlarged liver.</td>
<td>Necropsy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marked pulmonary edema and serous pleural effusions.</td>
<td>Necropsy. Feed analysis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Signs not usually seen in pigs less than 1 week old. Sneezing occurs more often as pigs near weaning. Most severe signs in pigs less than 1 week old. Infection seldom apparent in pigs older than 3 weeks. Occasional outbreak in nursery. Seen most often in nursery pigs but also in piglets and growers. Edema around the jaw and tarsal joints, petechiae, respiratory distress, mortality up to 25%. Sows: mummification and stillbirths. Mild rhinitis, no turbinate atrophy, petechiae, subcutaneous edema, pericardial and pleural effusion, pulmonary edema, enlarged lymph nodes. Varies. Mild rhinitis, no turbinate pneumonia, interstitial atrophy, enlarged tan lymph nodes. Varies. Inclusion bodies and cytomegaly. Viral isolation. Serology. Immunoperoxidase, polymerase reaction chain. Measurement of dust and ammonia levels in the environment.

Pseudorabies, Sneezing is a minor sign. In young pigs, neurologic signs predominate and the section on neurologic disease should be consulted to eliminate a diagnosis of pseudorabies or hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Ages Affected</th>
<th>Associated Signs</th>
<th>Signs in Other Pigs</th>
<th>Necropsy Findings</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atrophic rhinitis</td>
<td>Signs not usually seen in pigs less than 1 week old. Sneezing occurs more often as pigs near weaning.</td>
<td>Tear stains below the eyes, nasal discharge.</td>
<td>Older pigs may sneeze or have tear-stained eyes and distortion of snout.</td>
<td>Turbinate atrophy, nasal septum deviation, serous to purulent nasal exudate.</td>
<td>Typical necropsy findings. Nasal culture and isolation of toxigenic Pasteurella multocida.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine cytomegalovirus infection</td>
<td>Most severe signs in pigs less than 1 week old. Infection seldom apparent in pigs older than 3 weeks. Occasional outbreak in nursery.</td>
<td>Edema around the jaw and tarsal joints, petechiae, respiratory distress, mortality up to 25%.</td>
<td>Sows: mummification and stillbirths</td>
<td>Mild rhinitis, no turbinate atrophy, petechiae, subcutaneous edema, pericardial and pleural effusion, pulmonary edema, enlarged lymph nodes.</td>
<td>Virus isolation from the nose, lung, or kidney. Indirect fluorescent antibody test on sera of finishing pigs. Histology: inclusion bodies and cytomegaly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome</td>
<td>Seen most often in nursery pigs but also in piglets and growers.</td>
<td>Respiratory distress, eyelid edema, poor growth.</td>
<td>Varies.</td>
<td>Mild rhinitis, no turbinate pneumonia, interstitial atrophy, enlarged tan lymph nodes.</td>
<td>Virus isolation. Serology. Immunoperoxidase, polymerase reaction chain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental contaminants: ammonia, dust</td>
<td>Any age.</td>
<td>Excessive tearing, shallow respiration, serous nasal discharge.</td>
<td>Sow may also have mild signs.</td>
<td>Mild inflammation of respiratory epithelium.</td>
<td>Measurement of dust and ammonia levels in the environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.13. Diseases that cause sneezing in unweaned pigs
Chronic. Usually see signs in nursery through finishing pigs. Chronic. Signs in any age pig but more frequent in younger pigs, especially if on a slatted floor with a pit or a solid floor with urine accumulation. Chronic. Other signs of respiratory disease usually more prominent than sneezing. Chronic. May see signs to some extent in all age groups but usually worst in one age group. Fairly acute onset of signs. May start in one group of pigs and then spread to others. Signs more severe in younger pigs.

**Table 11.14.** Diseases that cause sneezing in weaned and older pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Course and Animals Affected</th>
<th>Other Signs</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atrophic rhinitis</td>
<td>Chronic. Usually see signs in nursery through finishing pigs.</td>
<td>Conjunctivitis, tear-stained areas below eyes, distortion of the snout, occasional epistaxis.</td>
<td>Necropsy: turbinate atrophy, nasal septum deviation. Nasal culture and isolation of toxigenic <em>Pasteurella multocida</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental contaminants: ammonia, dust</td>
<td>Chronic. Signs in any age pig but more frequent in younger pigs, especially if on a slatted floor with a pit or a solid floor with urine accumulation.</td>
<td>Excessive tearing, tear-stained areas below eyes, serous nasal discharge, shallow respiration.</td>
<td>Measurement of concentrations of ammonia in the environment greater than 25 ppm. Dust in the environment, especially around feeding time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome</td>
<td>Chronic. Other signs of respiratory disease usually more prominent than sneezing.</td>
<td>Coughing, dyspnea, poor growth, mild rhinitis, no turbinate atrophy.</td>
<td>Virus isolation. Serology. Immunoperoxidase, polymerase chain reaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enzootic pseudorabies</td>
<td>Chronic. May see signs to some extent in all age groups but usually worst in one age group.</td>
<td>Cough.</td>
<td>Positive serology from live animals. Necropsy: rhinitis but no turbinate atrophy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epizootic pseudorabies</td>
<td>Fairly acute onset of signs. May start in one group of pigs and then spread to others. Signs more severe in younger pigs.</td>
<td>Cough, anorexia, constipation, depression, CNS signs and salivation, vomiting, convulsions.</td>
<td>Necropsy: especially in older pigs may not see any lesions, or may see necrotic tonsillitis, rhinitis, 1–2 mm necrotic foci in liver. Virus isolation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue eye paramyxovirus</td>
<td>Transient sneezing and coughing.</td>
<td>Ataxia, swaying, and circling.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 11.15.** Ages at which certain skin diseases are more frequently seen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weeks of Age</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>32</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>100</th>
<th>156</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Infection of injury caused by trauma, ischemia, or surgical procedures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mange and lice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ringworm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insect bites from fleas, flies, and mosquitoes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sunburn or photosensitization</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abscesses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necrobacillosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epitheliogenesis imperfecta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teat and knee erosion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pustular dermatitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombocytopenia purpura</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatosis vegetans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcal acne</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine pox</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute generalized exudative epidermitis, local exudative epidermitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pityriasis rosea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear necrosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parakeratosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callus of the knee, fetlock, elbow, hock, or tuber ischia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erysipelas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatosis erythematosa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder ulcer callus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Weaned Pigs to Adults (Tables 11.20–11.22). As with diagnosis of neurologic disease in baby pigs, a major aid is the distribution of affected animals. Disease occurrence should be identified as to whether it is sporadic or of low, medium, or high prevalence. Since toxicities are seen more frequently in older pigs, recent treatments, changes in the diet, and access to pasture or to chemicals in the pen should be investigated.

EYE AND ADNEXA

Serous Lacrimation
Ammonia in concentrations higher than 25 ppm is the most common cause of lacrimation in swine. Humans can detect ammonia at 10 ppm, so diagnosis can be made by sniffing the environment at pig level and, if ammonia is suspected, removing the pig to an area with clean air, where signs will gradually disappear. Excess tearing is also caused by organophosphate, carbamate, or iodine toxicity. Sources of organophosphates and carbamates include miscalculation of dosage used to treat animals or accidental incorporation of agricultural insecticides into animal feeds. Ethylenediamine dihydroiodide is an expectorant that may cause coughing and increased lacrimation when used in high doses for a prolonged period of time.

Mucopurulent Lacrimation and Conjunctivitis
Conjunctivitis and lacrimation are associated with AR, swine influenza (SI), HC, PR, exudative epidermitis, blue eye disease, and chlamydial and streptococcal infection. The conjunctivitis seen with AR, SI, and PR tends to be

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Normal Tissue</th>
<th>Proliferative or Nonproliferative</th>
<th>Demarcation of Lesions</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Face</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Discrete</td>
<td></td>
<td>Staphylococcal acne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face and feet</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Necrotic stomatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Discrete</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vesicular diseases(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knees, elbows, and hocks</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ulcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Diffuse</td>
<td></td>
<td>Greasy spot behind ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear, eye, and udder</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Photosensitization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsal</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Diffuse</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperkeratinization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventral abdomen</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Discrete</td>
<td></td>
<td>Epitheliogenesis imperfecta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventral cervical area</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Diffuse</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pityriasis rosea, eosinophilic dermatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Diffuse</td>
<td></td>
<td>Urticarial mange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Transit erythema; teat necrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mastitis, benign peripartal cyanosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pharyngeal anthrax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pustular dermatitis, swine pox, infected injuries, neoplasia, abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Proliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dermatitis vegetans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Parakeratosis, demodectic mange, lice, sarcoptic mange, exudative epidermitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ringworm, dermatosis erythematous, thrombocytopenia purpura, erysipelas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>Nonproliferative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Carbon monoxide toxicity, porcine stress syndrome, hypostrichosis, cyanosis or reddening secondary to any bacteremia or viremia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Foot-and-mouth disease, vesicular exanthema, vesicular stomatitis, swine vesicular disease, San Miguel sea lion virus, porcine parvovirus, drug eruption.

\(^b\)Salmonellosis, *H. parasuis*, *A. pleuropneumoniae*, porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome, colibacillosis, organophosphate toxicity, hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis.
Table 11.17.  Cyanosis/hyperemia: discoloration of the skin in the absence of gross skin lesions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary lesion is in the skin</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Pigs Affected and Time of Occurrence</th>
<th>Appearance of Discolored Skin</th>
<th>Associated Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary lesion is in the skin</td>
<td>Dermatosis erythematosus</td>
<td>White pigs</td>
<td>Red discoloration over the ears, sides, and abdomen</td>
<td>Possible association with clover pasture but also seen in confinement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Benign peripartal cyanosis</td>
<td>Sows around the time of farrowing</td>
<td>Generalized cyanosis, especially on the udder and hindquarters</td>
<td>Seen in sows bedded on urine-soaked sawdust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sunburn</td>
<td>White pigs</td>
<td>Red discoloration of the dorsum and sides</td>
<td>Recent exposure to the sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transit erythema</td>
<td>Warm months, white pigs</td>
<td>Erythema, especially of ventral areas</td>
<td>Contact with urine, feces, phenolic disinfectants, or lime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carbon monoxide toxicity</td>
<td>Perinatal pigs, winter</td>
<td>Uniform, bright red color</td>
<td>Incomplete combustion of fuel in the heater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Porcine dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome</td>
<td>Weaned and older pigs. Usually finishers.</td>
<td>Multiple flat circular coalescing dark red to purplish, especially over the ham and thighs.</td>
<td>Possible association with circovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine stress syndrome</td>
<td>Heavily muscled pigs, especially Pietrain and Landrace</td>
<td>Pigs 2–4 months old</td>
<td>Blotchy cyanosis becoming coalesced on the dependent side</td>
<td>Triggered by physical exercise, excitement, heat, or halothane anesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic salmonellosis</td>
<td>Sows postpartum</td>
<td>Nursery and grower pigs</td>
<td>Cyanotic ears, tails, ventrum, and extremities</td>
<td>Continuous flow operation, especially after addition of new pigs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastitis</td>
<td><em>Haemophilus parasuis</em></td>
<td>Growing and finishing pigs</td>
<td>Cyanosis of the nose, ears, and legs progressing to whole body</td>
<td>Associated with systemic disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>A. pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td>Any age pig</td>
<td>Cyanosis of the extremities</td>
<td>Associated with peracute respiratory disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Organophosphate or carbamate toxicity</td>
<td>Any age pig</td>
<td>Cyanosis of the extremities</td>
<td>Hypoxia develops secondary to increased respiratory tract secretion, bronchoconstriction, erratic slow heart beat and CNS signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome</td>
<td>Sows</td>
<td>Cyanosis of the extremities, blotchy dark red to purple areas over the body</td>
<td>Anorexia, abortion, respiratory signs in younger pigs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transitory change prior to onset of typical signs</td>
<td>Has been seen in hog cholera, African swine fever, and <em>Strep. suis</em> infections. Transitory hyperemia, especially over the snout, ears, belly, and hindquarters.</td>
<td>Has been seen in hog cholera, African swine fever, and <em>Strep. suis</em> infections. Transitory hyperemia, especially over the snout, ears, belly, and hindquarters.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal sign in disease</td>
<td>Cyanosis of extremities is seen in terminal stages of <em>E. coli</em> enteritis and hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis in baby pigs.</td>
<td>Cyanosis of extremities is seen in terminal stages of <em>E. coli</em> enteritis and hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis in baby pigs.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine dermatitis nephropathy</td>
<td>Nursery to finish</td>
<td>Multiple flat circular coalescing dark red or purplish, especially over the ham and thighs.</td>
<td>Possible association with circovirus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
fairly mild and to produce a serous to mucopurulent discharge. A more severe conjunctivitis is seen with HC, exudative epidermitis, blue eye disease, and streptococcal and chlamydial infections. In these diseases the discharge is frequently so tenacious as to cause the eyelids to adhere and blind the pig.

### Palpebral Edema

Palpebral edema is frequently seen in edema disease and is not uncommon in PRRS, *Haemophilus parasuis*, and blue eye paramyxovirus infection.

### Cataracts

Cataract formation has been associated with riboflavin or niacin deficiency and hygromycin toxicity.

### Blindness (Table 11.23)

Blindness in pigs is seldom seen in the absence of other signs. The associated signs are usually indicative of the etiology. Two diseases that may cause blindness in the absence of other signs are PR, when blindness occurs in a pig that has recovered from the acute stage of the infection, and arsenilic acid toxicity occurring over a prolonged period of time.

### SIGNS NOT REFERABLE TO ANY ONE SYSTEM

#### Systemic Disease (Tables 11.24, 11.25)

Occasionally pigs become ill or poor-doing without a specific predominant clinical sign. These pigs may be lethargic, depressed, anorexic, febrile, dehydrated, or prostrate with a varying amount of morbidity and mortality. Infectious disease, especially in a subclinical or chronic form, is frequently the cause.

#### Sudden Death (Table 11.26)

While it might be argued that death is always sudden (i.e., that the transition from living to not living always occurs in a fraction of a second), the term “sudden death” as commonly used in the field refers to the death of an otherwise normal appearing animal.

#### Wasting and Ill-Thrift (Table 11.27)

Wasting and ill-thrift are signs of chronic disease. Frequently the cause of ill-thrift in one pig cannot be determined even with the aid of a necropsy. This is often the case with diseases that may damage the brain, such as colibacillosis and PR. Because the lesions are microscopic, they are frequently overlooked. When there is a high percentage of poor-doers in a herd, diagnosis should include necropsies of the affected pigs, and in addition the types and levels of acute diseases in the herd should be determined. The combined findings from pigs acutely and chronically affected are most likely to provide a diagnosis.

#### Anemia

Anemia is the condition of having a blood hemoglobin level that is lower than normal. Minimum normal hemoglobin levels (g/100 mL) for pigs of different ages are as follows: birth, 11; 1 week, 10; 3 weeks, 10; 4 months and older, 12.

#### Unweaned Pigs (Table 11.28)

Anemia in baby pigs is primarily due to iron deficiency. Occasionally erythrozoosnosis, and rarely umbilical hemorrhage, will produce anemic pigs. The primary features that distinguish iron deficiency, erythrozoosnosis, and umbilical hemorrhage are the ages of the affected piglets and the presence of icterus. Icterus is often prominent with erythrozoosnosis and is not seen with iron deficiency or umbilical hemorrhage. Umbilical hemorrhage occurs during the perinatal period, erythrozoosnosis tends to be seen in pigs less than 5 days of age, and iron deficiency is seen in pigs 10 days of age or older. Generally in iron deficiency anemia there is a history of failure to administer an adequate iron preparation. Umbilical hem-
orrage is sometimes associated with the use of sawdust for bedding.

Porcine cytomegalovirus infection in utero may cause pigs to be born stunted, anemic, and with edema around the jaw and tarsal joints.

Anemia in baby pigs has also been reported following infestation with *Strongyloides ransomi* and *Balantium coli*. The primary clinical signs in these pigs are anorexia, diarrhea, and reduced growth rate. Diagnosis is best made at necropsy.

**Weaned Pigs to Adults** (Table 11.29). Gastric ulceration and parasitism are the most common causes of anemia in weaned to adult pigs. Toxicities that cause anemia other than mycotoxins are rarely encountered clinically. However, anemia has been shown to occur after intoxication with cadmium, cobalt, coal tar, iodine, phenothiazine derivatives, and vitamin D. Nutritional deficiencies are rarely encountered in modern feeding systems, but anemia will result from deficiency of copper, folacin, protein, riboflavin, vitamin B₆, or vitamin K.

**MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM**

Lameness is the inability to use one or more limbs in a normal fashion while generally displaying a normal degree of alertness and coordination in the other unaffected limbs. Lameness may present as reduced ability or inability to bear weight, alteration or shortening of stride, or recumbency.

**Unweaned Pigs** (Table 11.30). The major causes of lameness prior to weaning are trauma and infectious polyarthritis. Trauma is more common in pigs that are less than 1 week of age, and infectious polyarthritis is more frequently seen in 1- to 3-week-old pigs. Joint swelling and fever are frequent findings in polyarthritis but are only occasionally seen with trauma.

Splayleg occurs with moderate frequency and is easily recognized by its clinical signs.

Occasionally injections made into the hindleg will produce lameness due to either muscle irritation or nerve damage. In the first case the leg will be swollen and possibly hot, and the pig will tend to carry it. Damage to the sciatic nerve will produce muscle atrophy and the leg will be extended. Injection of iron creates a microenvironment in tissue that favors the growth of *Clostridium perfringens* carried in by a contaminated needle. Diagnosis of improper injection technique is aided by changing the site of the injection to the neck and observing whether lameness continues in the herd.

Arthrogryposis, syndactyly, polydactyly, and thick legs occur rarely and are easily diagnosed by their physical appearance.

**Weaned Pigs to Adults** (Tables 11.31, 11.32). A major portion of the lameness experienced by young pigs in the age range of 2–4 months is due to infectious polyarthritis. In pigs this age, the clinician should look for multiple sites of infection. Lameness in one leg is easily overlooked because of more severe signs in another leg. Older growing pigs and adults mainly experience lameness that results from injury, especially to the foot. The damage may be limited to the foot or may ascend into one or more joints. Floors that have abrasive, slippery, wet, dirty, or uneven surfaces, protruding sharp edges, exposed aggregate, and uneven or inappropriately sized slats for the size of the pigs predispose to lameness. The amount of competition between pigs should be evaluated when investigating lameness in older pigs. Lameness that occurs in gilts and less so in sows is likely to be due to trauma and secondary infection. Lameness in sows just after weaning may be caused by calcium or phosphorus imbalance in the ration. Osteochondrosis is another common cause of lameness in pigs in the finishing stage or in young adults.

**UROGENITAL SYSTEM**

**Abortion, Stillbirth, and Mummies** (Tables 11.33, 11.34)

Diagnosis of the cause of abortion in swine is seldom straightforward and is frequently unsuccessful. Often, the agent that produced death in the fetuses or abortion is no longer present when the problem is recognized clinically. However, there are some characteristic features that are helpful in at least determining the general class of agents likely to be involved. Two major classes exist. First are the agents that cause primary infection of the reproductive tract and that are probably responsible for 30–40% of abortions, mummies, and stillbirths. The second class (including toxins, environmental and nutritional stresses, and systemic disease in the sow) is responsible for the other 60–70%.

A primary aim in diagnosis of abortion is to differentiate between these two major classes by measuring levels of immunoglobulins in aborted fetuses. At 70 days of gestation (17 cm crown-to-rump length) swine fetuses are immunocompetent and will produce antibodies in response to contact with an infectious agent. In the normal pregnancy, the uterine environment is sterile and pigs are born without immunoglobulins. Therefore, the finding of immunoglobulins in fetuses indicates the presence of an infectious agent in the uterus. In abortions that occur in the last third of gestation, fetal serum or thoracic fluid should be collected and submitted for total immunoglobulin determination. If antibodies are present, specific serologic testing against common agents may be done (see Table 11.41).

The age of the fetuses should be determined by crown-to-rump length measurements (Table 11.33) and compared to the stage of gestation. When maternal fail-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Proportion of Litters</th>
<th>Proportion Affected Piglets within a Litter</th>
<th>Mortality</th>
<th>Age at Onset</th>
<th>Signs in Sow</th>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Necropsy Findings</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Sporadic</td>
<td>May be 1 or 2 in a litter if more pigs than teats, or whole litter if sow agalac-tic.</td>
<td>High, 90–100% of affected pigs.</td>
<td>Usually 2–3 days but can be any age.</td>
<td>May be off feed, not milking, in sternal recum-bency.</td>
<td>Ataxia, sternal or lateral recumbency, convul-sions, paddling of the forelegs, gasping and chomping of the jaws, bradycardia, subnormal temperature.</td>
<td>No food in the stom-ach. Absence of body fat, mahogany brown muscles.</td>
<td>Blood glucose less than 50 mg/100 mL, necropsy find-ings, evidence of lack of milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies</td>
<td>High, up to 100%.</td>
<td>High, up to 100% in pigs from nonimmune sows, 20–40% in pigs from immune sows.</td>
<td>High, up to 100%.</td>
<td>Initial outbreak affects all ages of unweaned pigs.</td>
<td>Abortion, vomi-ting, sneezing, coughing, con-stipation, CNS signs.</td>
<td>Dyspnea, fever, hypersali-vation, vomiting, diar-rea, ataxia, nyctag-nus, convulsions, coma. Younger pigs are more severely affected.</td>
<td>Few visible gross les-sions. Congestion of nasal mucosa and pharynx, edema in lung, necrotic tonsillitis, 1–2 mm white foci in liver and spleen.</td>
<td>Virus isolation and fluorescent anti-body on tonsils and brain. Serum antibo-dies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital tremors</td>
<td>High.</td>
<td>80% or more.</td>
<td>Low, 0–25%.</td>
<td>Birth.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Severe tremors at birth that gradually diminish within 3 weeks. Tremors disappear when pigs are asleep. Tremors most severe in pigs infected at the beginning of the outbreak.</td>
<td>No gross lesions.</td>
<td>Histological evidence of myelin defi-ciency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teschen</td>
<td>High, up to 100%.</td>
<td>High, up to 100%.</td>
<td>High in af-fected pigs.</td>
<td>Any.</td>
<td>Similar to piglets.</td>
<td>Fever, anorexia, ataxia, progressing to convulsions, paralysis, opistho-tonos, and coma.</td>
<td>No gross lesion. Histological lesions in CNS.</td>
<td>Virus isolation. Fluorescent anti-body. Serology.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 11.19. Diseases that cause neurologic signs in unweaned pigs (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Proportion of Litters</th>
<th>Proportion of Affected Piglets within a Litter</th>
<th>Mortality</th>
<th>Age at Onset</th>
<th>Signs in Sow</th>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Necropsy Findings</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Organophosphate toxicity</td>
<td>High, depending on how many treated.</td>
<td>High, up to 100%.</td>
<td>High.</td>
<td>Seen at birth.</td>
<td>Usually none.</td>
<td>Salivation, vomiting, stiffness, sawhorse stance, diarrhea, colic, lacrimation, sweating, dyspnea, muscle tremors.</td>
<td>Pulmonary edema.</td>
<td>History of sow being treated prior to farrowing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital malformation</td>
<td>Sporadic.</td>
<td>Low.</td>
<td>High.</td>
<td>At birth.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Variable: hydrocephalus, cyclops, brain hernia, eyeless, catlin mark, hindleg paralysis, string halt. Cerebellar hypoplasia.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Physical exam and necropsy findings. Except for cerebellar hypoplasia, the familial relationships of affected pigs indicate that the trait is heritable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue eye paramyxovirus</td>
<td>High, 20–65%.</td>
<td>High, 20–50%.</td>
<td>High, 80–100%.</td>
<td>Any, especially 2–15 days old.</td>
<td>Mild anorexia, few with corneal opacity.</td>
<td>Depression, ataxia, dilated pupils, nystagmus, ocular discharge, palpebral edema, corneal opacity.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Virus isolation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis virus</td>
<td>Low to 50%.</td>
<td>Up to 100%.</td>
<td>High.</td>
<td>Usually about 4 days.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Lethargy, vomiting, paddling, squealing.</td>
<td>No gross abnormalities.</td>
<td>Histopathology, Serum antibodies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Ages Affected</td>
<td>Distribution of Affected Pigs</td>
<td>Clinical Signs</td>
<td>Mortality</td>
<td>Necropsy</td>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pseudorabies</strong></td>
<td>All ages. In younger pigs, signs more apt to affect central nervous system and be more severe.</td>
<td>Entire herd affected.</td>
<td>Young to mature swine: sneezing, coughing, constipation, salivation, vomiting, muscle spasms, ataxia, convulsions, paddling, coma. Pregnant swine: resorption, mummification, stillborn piglets.</td>
<td>High, especially in younger pigs.</td>
<td>Few visible gross lesions. Congestion of nasal mucosa and pharynx, pulmonary edema, necrotic tonsillitis, 1–2 mm white necrotic foci in liver and spleen.</td>
<td>Virus isolation from tonsils and brain. Fluorescent antibody test on chilled tonsils and brain. Serum antibodies.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edema disease</strong></td>
<td>1–2 weeks after weaning.</td>
<td>Up to 15% of pigs in the nursery.</td>
<td>Sudden death in some pigs. Incoordination and staggering gait, ataxia, tremors, paddling, palpebral edema.</td>
<td>High, 50–90%.</td>
<td>Ventral reddening of skin. Edema in subcutaneous tissue, stomach wall, and mesocolon.</td>
<td>Signs, epidemiology. Pure culture of <em>E. coli</em> from intestine and colon. Isolation of toxin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Salt poisoning (water deprivation)</strong></td>
<td>Any age but more commonly seen in nursery to finishing pigs.</td>
<td>Affected by pens.</td>
<td>Blindness, muscle weakness and fasciculations, dullness, anorexia, vomiting, diarrhea, seizures, head tremor, opisthotonos, backing up, falling over, paddling, and chewing. Hemoconcentration, eosinopenia (Na &gt;160 mEq/L).</td>
<td>High.</td>
<td>Gastritis, gastric ulcers, enteritis, constipation.</td>
<td>Histopathology: pathognomonic eosinophilic cuffing of blood vessels in cerebrum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brain stem malacia</strong></td>
<td>Nursery pig or occasionally finishing pig.</td>
<td>Sporadic.</td>
<td>Dullness, mild incoordination, unthriftiness, disproportionately large head, failure to grow.</td>
<td>Low.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Histologic evidence of brain stem malacia.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meningitis due to <em>Streptococcus suis</em> (or <em>Salmonella</em>)</strong></td>
<td>Usually in nursery pigs. Occasionally in finishing pigs.</td>
<td>A few pigs affected over a few weeks. Occasionally outbreaks.</td>
<td>Elevated temperature, hindquarter weakness, stiff gait, stretching movements, tremors, incoordination, paddling, paralysis, opisthotonos, convulsions, blindness, deafness, lameness.</td>
<td>High.</td>
<td>Congestion of brain and meninges, suppurative meningitis, excess turbid cerebrospinal fluid, suppurative polyarthritis.</td>
<td>Isolation of alpha- and beta-hemolytic streptococci in Lancefield group D, I, and II from lesions or suppurative meningitis (isolation of <em>Salmonella choleraesuis</em>).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Middle-ear infection</strong></td>
<td>Any age.</td>
<td>Sporadic.</td>
<td>Abnormal head carriage, tendency to circle.</td>
<td>Low.</td>
<td>Inflammation and/or suppuration in middle ear.</td>
<td>Clinical signs and necropsy findings.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 11.20. Differential diagnosis of neurologic disease in weaned and older pigs (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Ages Affected</th>
<th>Distribution of Affected Pigs</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Mortality</th>
<th>Necropsy</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Haemophilus parasuis</em> meningoen-cephalitis Teschen disease</td>
<td>Usually nursery pigs 5–8 weeks old. Any age.</td>
<td>50%, especially if recently commingled. Entire herd may be affected.</td>
<td>Fever, muscle tremors, incoordination of hindlegs, recumbency, paddling. Fever, anorexia, ataxia, progressing to convulsions, paralysis, opisthotonos, and coma.</td>
<td>Moderate, 20–50%.</td>
<td>Fibrinous meningitis with pleuritis, pericarditis, peritonitis, and arthritis.</td>
<td>Isolation of <em>Haemophilus parasuis</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic arsenical toxicity</td>
<td>Any age, but especially in pigs treated for swine dysentery or erythrozoonosis.</td>
<td>Several to many pigs affected.</td>
<td>Ataxia, posterior paraparesis, goose-stepping, blindness, paralysis.</td>
<td>Low.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Sciatic nerve demyelination. Kidney and liver arsenic levels &gt;2 ppm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain or spinal cord injury</td>
<td>Any age.</td>
<td>Sporadic.</td>
<td>Tend to show local neurologic deficit.</td>
<td>Low.</td>
<td>Localized damage to brain or spinal cord.</td>
<td>Necropsy reveals trauma, skull or vertebral fracture, abscesses, parasite migration; <em>S. dentatus</em>, fibrocartilaginous emboli.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetanus</td>
<td>Any, but most common in recently castrated pigs.</td>
<td>Sporadic.</td>
<td>Stiff gait, erect ears and tail, protrusion of the nictitating membrane, progresses to lateral recumbency, opisthotonos, rigid muscles, stiff-legged gait, spasms.</td>
<td>High.</td>
<td>No gross lesions.</td>
<td>Gram-positive bacilli with terminal spores seen at site of injection if found.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listeriosis</td>
<td>Any. Signs more severe in younger pigs.</td>
<td>Sporadic.</td>
<td>Fever, trembling, incoordination, dragging hindlegs while showing stiff gait with forelegs, hyperexcitability.</td>
<td>High in young pigs.</td>
<td>Meningitis, focal hepatic necrosis.</td>
<td>Isolation of <em>Listeria monocytogenes</em> from brain, spinal cord, or liver.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Toxicities (See Table 11.21.)**  
**Nutritional deficiencies (See Table 11.22.)**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major Signs</th>
<th>Toxic Agent</th>
<th>Other Signs</th>
<th>Neurologic Signs</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical signs largely gastrointestinal</td>
<td>Inorganic arsenic</td>
<td>Vomiting, diarrhea</td>
<td>Convulsions</td>
<td>Herbicides, cotton defoliants, insecticides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lead (rare)</td>
<td>Vomiting, diarrhea, salivation, anorexia</td>
<td>Muscle tremors, ataxia, clonic seizures, blindness</td>
<td>Motor oil, paint, grease, batteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlorinated hydrocarbons</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperexcitability, hyperesthesia, muscle tremors, toniclonic seizures</td>
<td>Insecticides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Strychnine</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tetanic seizures</td>
<td>Rodenticide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sodium fluoroacetate</td>
<td></td>
<td>Convulsions, running fits</td>
<td>Rodenticide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Water intoxication</td>
<td>Anorexia, diarrhea</td>
<td>Depression, blindness, muscle tremors, hyperesthesia, ataxia, convulsions, coma</td>
<td>Unrestricted access to water after deprivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signs of cholinesterase inhibition</td>
<td>Dichlorvos</td>
<td>Lacrimation, miosis, cyanosis, reddening of skin, salivation, diarrhea, vomiting</td>
<td>Muscle rigidity, tremors, paralysis, depression</td>
<td>Anthelmintic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Organophosphates</td>
<td>Lacrimation, miosis, cyanosis, reddening of skin, salivation, diarrhea, vomiting</td>
<td>Muscle rigidity, tremors, paralysis, depression</td>
<td>Insecticides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carbamate</td>
<td>Lacrimation, miosis, cyanosis, reddening of skin, salivation, diarrhea, vomiting</td>
<td>Muscle rigidity, tremors, paralysis, depression</td>
<td>Insecticides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized central nervous system signs</td>
<td>Nitrofurans</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperirritability, tremors, weakness, convulsions</td>
<td>Antibacterial used to treat swine enteric diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ammonia salts</td>
<td>Vomiting, diarrhea</td>
<td>Depression, toniclonic seizures</td>
<td>Cattle feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, blindness, paralysis, coma</td>
<td>Grain treated with mercury as a fungicide, paint, batteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pentachlorophenol</td>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>Depression, muscle weakness, posterior paralysis</td>
<td>Wood preservative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phenoxy herbicides</td>
<td>Anorexia</td>
<td>Depression, muscle weakness, ataxia</td>
<td>Herbicides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seen in pigs with access to pasture or fencerows</td>
<td>Pigweed</td>
<td></td>
<td>Weakness, tremors, ataxia, posterior paralysis, coma</td>
<td>Pasture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cocklebur</td>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>Depression, ataxia, muscle weakness, muscle tremors</td>
<td>Pasture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nightshade</td>
<td>Anorexia, vomiting, constipation</td>
<td>Depression, ataxia, muscle weakness, muscle tremors, convulsions, coma</td>
<td>Pasture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nitrate, nitrite</td>
<td>Salivation, polyuria, miosis</td>
<td>Muscle weakness, ataxia, convulsions</td>
<td>Lamb's-quarter, Canada thistle, simonweed, sweet clover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deafness</td>
<td>Hygromycin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Deafness, blindness due to cataracts</td>
<td>Anthelmintic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Streptomycin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Deafness</td>
<td>Antibiotic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.22. Nutritional imbalances resulting in neurologic disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient Imbalance</th>
<th>Signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium and phosphorus deficiency</td>
<td>Stiff gait, hyperesthesia, posterior paralysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium excess</td>
<td>Generalized anesthesia, complete muscular relaxation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium deficiency</td>
<td>Lameness, bowed legs, hyperirritability, tetany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium chloride deficiency</td>
<td>Ataxia, decreased feed intake and weight gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron toxicity</td>
<td>See Table 11.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper deficiency</td>
<td>May result in demyelination of nerves, but anemia, cardiac hypertrophy, and crooked hindlegs are more prominent signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A deficiency</td>
<td>Growing pigs: head tilt, incoordination, stiff gait, lordosis, hyperexcitability, muscle spasms, night blindness, paralysis. Pregnant sows: see Table 11.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niacin or riboflavin deficiency</td>
<td>May result in demyelination of nerves, but lameness, skin lesions, cataracts, and poor growth are more prominent signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pantothenic acid deficiency</td>
<td>Goose-stepping, incoordination, diarrhea, coughing, hair loss, and poor growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B₆ deficiency</td>
<td>Poor growth, diarrhea, anemia, hyperexcitability, ataxia, epileptiform convulsions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.23. Diseases that cause blindness in pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Pigs Affected</th>
<th>Other Signs</th>
<th>Associated Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arsenilic acid toxicity</td>
<td>Pigs fed arsenilic acid for swine dysentery or erythrozoonosis.</td>
<td>Acute: posterior paresis or paralysis. Chronic: blindness, quadriplegia.</td>
<td>History of arsenicals added to the feed in improper dosage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salt poisoning (water deprivation)</td>
<td>Usually nursery or finishing pigs but can occur in adults.</td>
<td>CNS signs, ataxia, muscle weakness and fasciculations, convulsions.</td>
<td>Usually a high percentage of affected pigs in one or more pens, associated with disruption in water supply or whey feeding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies</td>
<td>Usually in 2- to 4-month-old pigs.</td>
<td>Ill-thrift, failure to grow.</td>
<td>Sequelae to pseudorabies infection in an apparently recovered pig.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead or mercury toxicity</td>
<td>Nursery to adult.</td>
<td>CNS and gastrointestinal signs.</td>
<td>Access to paint, batteries, motor oil, or seeds treated with organic mercurial fungicides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue eye disease</td>
<td>Nursery to finishing pigs.</td>
<td>CNS signs. Corneal opacity.</td>
<td>Acute onset of disease in herd with high piglet mortality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A deficiency</td>
<td>Nursery to finishing pigs.</td>
<td>Stiff gait, restlessness, paralysis of rear legs.</td>
<td>Rare. Possible after feeding improperly stored grain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hygromycin toxicity</td>
<td>Usually sows.</td>
<td>Cataracts.</td>
<td>Longer feeding period than recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemagglutinating encephalitis or Strep. suis</td>
<td>Unweaned pigs.</td>
<td>CNS signs, convulsions.</td>
<td>Blindness not apparent until neurologic signs are well advanced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.24. Systemic disease in unweaned pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Signs in Sow</th>
<th>Piglet Necropsy</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Mastitis or nonfunctional mammary glands.</td>
<td>No gross lesions, absence of body fat or food in the stomach.</td>
<td>Necropsy findings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron toxicity</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Muscle edema and necrosis around the injection site.</td>
<td>History of recent iron injection and necropsy findings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli septicemia</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Possibly congested organs, enlarged lymph nodes, edema, fibrin tags in abdomen, or minimal changes.</td>
<td>Isolation of Escherichia coli.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome Haemophilus parasuis</td>
<td>None or anorexia, agalactia.</td>
<td>Interstitial pneumonia, enlarged tan lymph nodes.</td>
<td>Virus isolation, fluorescent antibody.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies (chronic)</td>
<td>Usually none, may be salivation, constipation, vomiting, abortion.</td>
<td>Usually no gross lesions. Congestion of nasal mucosa, necrotic tonsillitis, focal necrosis in liver and spleen.</td>
<td>Isolation of Haemophilus parasuis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erysipelas</td>
<td>Usually none but may show lameness, fever, skin lesions.</td>
<td>Diffuse cutaneous hemostasis, petechial hemorrhage in kidneys.</td>
<td>Isolation of Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leptospirosis</td>
<td>Possibly abortion, fever, jaundice, or agalactia.</td>
<td>Grayish-white foci in kidneys.</td>
<td>Culture of organism or presence on dark field exam of kidneys.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ure is the cause of pregnancy termination, the fetuses will all be the same age and this age will match the day of gestation. Often when fetal death occurs, fetuses within the litter will have different ages, with the youngest ones having died at some time earlier than the abortion occurred. Viral infection is the major cause of mummified fetuses, but mummies are also seen with a number of other etiologic agents. When there is only one or a few stillborn pigs in an otherwise normal litter, these tend to be caused by events at farrowing such as large litter size, later birth order, prolonged farrowing, or anoxia. When stillbirths are part of a litter that also contains mummies, then an infectious agent is more likely to be involved.

Antibody titers of blood samples taken from the sow must be interpreted carefully. A positive titer only confirms the presence of the organism on the farm; it does not indicate whether that organism was the cause of the reproductive failure. Paired sera and demonstration of a rising titer are more reliable evidence of a recent infection. Positive titers on sera from aborted fetuses are diagnostic for the disease; since there is no transfer of antibodies across the placenta, antibody in the fetus is evidence of infection.

Positive fluorescent antibody tests done on fetal tissue may be diagnostic; however, negative tests in fetuses over 70 days of gestational age do not rule out a diagnosis, since immunocompetent pigs may have produced enough antibody to complex with the infecting agent and interfere with the test.

**Polyuria/Polydipsia**

Polyuria is not easily recognized in pigs on slatted floors; however, astute stockpersons occasionally observe sows drinking and urinating excessively. In sows, cystitis and nephritis are the most common causes of polyuria. Intoxication with citrinin or ochratoxin may also produce polyuria. Especially during the winter, underfeeding sows causes protein catabolism with increased blood urea nitrogen and subsequent increase in urine volume.

**Hematuria**

The most common cause of hematuria is cystitis, sometimes associated with pyelonephritis due to organisms such as *Actinobaculum suis*, *Streptococcus spp.*, *Klebsiella spp.*, and *E. coli*. Leptospirosis and *Stephanurus dentatus* infections also may produce hematuria.

**Vaginal Prolapse**

There is probably a hereditary predisposition to vaginal and uterine prolapse. Sows housed on a floor with an excessive slope, especially if they are kept in a dirty or wet environment, are more prone to developing prolapse. Other causes include zearalenone toxicity, injury from service, and causes of undetermined etiology that occur around the time of farrowing and in gilts following their first estrus.

**Vulvar Discharge** (Table 11.35)

A purulent or blood-tinged discharge may be due to cystitis, pyelonephritis, vaginitis, or metritis. The first two diseases occur in sows at any stage but are especially noted during gestation, whereas metritis and vaginitis usually occur after farrowing or breeding.

**Vulval Enlargement**

Unilateral enlargement of one lip of the vulva can be caused by traumatic injury at any time or by hematoma.
### Table 11.25. Systemic disease in weaned pigs to adults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Pigs Affected and Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Necropsy Findings</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Septicemic salmonellosis</td>
<td>Weaning to 4 months of age. Fever, a few pigs found dead, huddling, low morbidity (10%), high mortality, possibly diarrhea after 3–4 days, depression, anorexia.</td>
<td>Diffuse cutaneous hemostasis, infarcts in gastric mucosa, enlarged liver and spleen, moist swollen lymph nodes, miliary white necrotic foci in liver, serous to necrotic colitis after 3 days.</td>
<td>Isolation of <em>Salmonella choleraesuis</em> from liver or spleen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus parasuis</td>
<td>Pigs 1–4 months old. Anorexia, fever, depression, cyanosis, stiff gait, reluctance to move, dog-sitting, eyelid edema, and dyspnea.</td>
<td>Fibrinous or serofibrinous meningitis, pericarditis, pleuritis, peritonitis, and arthritis.</td>
<td>Isolation of <em>Haemophilus parasuis</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycoplasma hyorhinis infection</td>
<td>Pigs 3–10 weeks old. Moderate fever, depression, reluctance to move, anorexia, possible dyspnea.</td>
<td>Serofibrinous to fibrinopurulent peri-carditis, peritonitis, pericarditis, and arthritis.</td>
<td>Isolation of <em>Mycoplasma hyorhinis</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edema disease</td>
<td>Pigs 4–12 weeks old. Usually 1–2 weeks after weaning. Morbidity &lt;15%, mortality 50–90%, often a few pigs found dead. Ataxia, tremors, staggering, eyelid edema, temperature usually normal.</td>
<td>Edema in subcutaneous tissues, submucosa of the stomach, and mesocolon, full stomach, empty small intestine, possibly serous fluid with a few strands of fibrin in the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities.</td>
<td>Isolation of edema-associated <em>E. coli</em> serotypes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erysipelas</td>
<td>Pigs 3 months to 3 years old, but also adults. Fever (40–42°C), recumbency, reluctance to rise, anorexia, depression, urticaria skin lesions, cyanosis, often a few pigs found dead.</td>
<td>Diffuse cutaneous hemostasis, congested or edematous lungs, petechial or ecchymotic hemorrhage on epicardium, gastritis, enlarged liver and spleen, excess fluid in joints, and proliferation of synovia.</td>
<td>Isolation of <em>E. rhusiopathiae</em> from heart, lungs, spleen, liver, joints, or kidneys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome</td>
<td>Usually nursery.</td>
<td>Interstitial pneumonia, enlarged lymph nodes and spleen.</td>
<td>Histopathology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine dermatitis nephropathy syndrome</td>
<td>Nursery to (especially) finisher pigs.</td>
<td>Reddened and enlarged abdominal lymph nodes, ascites, swollen mottled kidneys.</td>
<td>Histopathology kidneys and skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog cholera</td>
<td>Any age pigs. Anorexia, fever, depression, conjunctivitis, constipation early, severe watery diarrhea later, huddling, staggering, weav ing, cyanosis, possibly convulsions, a few pigs found dead, abortion in pregnant sows.</td>
<td>Edematous tissues, swollen edematous lymph nodes with mottled hemorrhage, petechial to ecchymotic hemorrhage in kidneys, bladder, larynx, and heart, splenic infarcts, button ulcers in the large intestine, bronchopneumonia or lung congestion.</td>
<td>Fluorescent antibody virus determination on tonsil, pharyngeal lymph nodes, or spleen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African swine fever</td>
<td>Any age pigs. Depression, reluctance to rise, fever, anorexia, hyperemia of skin, dyspnea, possibly diarrhea and vomiting, abortion of pregnant sows.</td>
<td>Edema, ascites, hydrothorax, petechial ecchymotic hemorrhage of epicardium and lungs, swollen edematous lymph nodes, especially gastrohepatic, enlarged spleen with infarcts, edematous noncollapsing lungs, enlarged liver, hemorrhage in kidneys, variable enteritis, ulcers in colon.</td>
<td>Fluorescent antibody test or inoculation of susceptible swine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aflatoxin</td>
<td>Any age pigs. Depression, anemia, icterus, temperature normal.</td>
<td>Ascites, enlarged fatty liver to liver necrosis or cirrhosis.</td>
<td>Find 200 ppb aflatoxin in the feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrinin or ochratoxin</td>
<td>Any age pigs. Diarrhea, normal temperature, polyuria, polydipsia, dehydration.</td>
<td>Possibly fibrotic kidney, possibly fatty change and necrosis of liver.</td>
<td>Find 200 ppb mycotoxin in the feed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.26. Causes of death without prior clinical signs in weaned pigs to adults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Pigs Most Commonly Affected and Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edema disease</td>
<td>Nursery pigs 1–2 weeks after weaning, especially in the most rapidly growing animals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salt poisoning (water deprivation)</td>
<td>Usually nursery or growing and finishing pigs but can be any age.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E/selenium deficiency (Mulberry heart disease)</td>
<td>Usually nursery or growing and finishing pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute pneumonias due to <em>A. pleuropneumoniae</em>, <em>Actinobacillus sp.</em>, <em>Pasteurella multocida</em></td>
<td>Growing and finishing pigs, rarely in adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Haemophilus parasuis</em> infection or <em>Actinobacillus suis</em> infection</td>
<td>Nursery and growing pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine stress syndrome</td>
<td>Finishing to adult pigs. Heavily muscled animals, especially Pietrain and Landrace breeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric ulceration</td>
<td>Finishing pigs to adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhagic bowel syndrome associated with <em>Lawsonia intracellularis</em></td>
<td>Usually older finishing pigs or young adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhagic bowel syndrome associated with whey feeding</td>
<td>Usually older finishing pigs or young adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric volvulus</td>
<td>Adults, especially sows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesenteric volvulus</td>
<td>Growing and finishing pigs to adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaustion</td>
<td>Finishing pigs and adults, especially adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic salmonellosis</td>
<td>Growing and finishing pigs and adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrocution</td>
<td>Any age.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encephalomyocarditis virus</td>
<td>1–20 weeks of age.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coal tar toxicity</td>
<td>Usually growing and finishing pigs but also adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clostridium novyi</em> infection</td>
<td>Any age.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac insufficiency</td>
<td>Any age but more common in heavy finishers or sows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphyxiation from H₂S, CO, CO₂</td>
<td>Any age but more common in finishing pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necropsy Findings</td>
<td>Associated Factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edema in subcutaneous tissue, eyelids, gastric mucosa, and mesocolon, full stomach, empty intestine.</td>
<td>May be associated with ad libitum feeding of highly nutritious and palatable feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usually no gross lesions, may see gastritis or enteritis.</td>
<td>History of recent interruption of the water supply, feeding of whey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute hemorrhagic hepatic necrosis, hemorrhage in the cardiac muscle, excessive pericardial fluid. White, edematous skeletal and cardiac muscle.</td>
<td>Most common in selenium-deficient areas east of the Mississippi River.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyanosis, acute necrotizing hemorrhagic pneumonia with fibrin in the pleural cavity, trachea and bronchi filled with foamy blood-tinged mucus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyanosis, fibrinous peritonitis, pericarditis, pleuritis, arthritis, and meningitis, especially in recently purchased high-health pigs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blotchy cyanosis coalescing on the ventral abdomen, rapid onset of postmortem rigor, areas of pale muscle.</td>
<td>Occurs in pigs that have been moved or were fighting, mating, or farrowing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erosion of the pars oesophagea, large amount of blood in the stomach, marked pallor.</td>
<td>Feeding of finely ground feed or whey; interruption of feed availability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marked pallor, terminal small intestine and upper spiral colon filled with blood.</td>
<td>Associated with <em>Lawsonia intracellularis</em> infections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enlarged, gas-filled stomach, splenic engorgement.</td>
<td>Improper crate size that allows the sow to turn around.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperemic segment of the intestine with distinct demarcation between normal and affected areas.</td>
<td>Excessive competition for feed, feeding whey or other large-volume feeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin abrasions and bruising, pulmonary edema, and froth in the trachea and bronchi.</td>
<td>Fighting, especially in hot, humid environment or after mixing or moving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyanotic extremities, enlarged spleen and liver, enlarged mesenteric lymph nodes, small white, necrotic foci in liver.</td>
<td>Finishing facilities that practice continuous addition of new stock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usually no gross lesions, may be petechial hemorrhage in the lungs, singed hair above the coronary band, red streaks on the medial surface of the legs.</td>
<td>Electrical short in the building, lightning during a recent rainstorm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyanotic ventricle, dilated right heart, with areas of pale muscle, fibrin in peritoneal, pericardial, and pleural cavities.</td>
<td>May be more common in rodent-infested buildings, since disease is carried by rodents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greatly enlarged and friable liver.</td>
<td>Access to a source such as tar paper, shingles, or clay pigeons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid postmortem tympany, bloody fluid in pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities, splenomegaly, hepatic necrosis and emphysema, neck swelling.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetative valvular endocarditis.</td>
<td><em>Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae</em>, <em>Strep. suis</em>, <em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agitation and pumping of pit, fan failure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.27. Ages at which wasting and ill-thrift are seen in baby pigs to adults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Baby Pigs</th>
<th>Nursery Pigs</th>
<th>Growing-Finishing Pigs</th>
<th>Adult Pigs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nutritional deficiency, water deprivation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stray voltage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting and wasting disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclinical swine influenza in pigs whose dams were infected during pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal parasites</td>
<td>Anemia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mange</td>
<td>Postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malabsorption secondary to scours, transmissible gastroenteritis, rotavirus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain stem malacia secondary to prior colibacillosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pigs recovered from acute pseudorabies infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia, severe atrophic rhinitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proliferative enteritis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonellosis</td>
<td>Gastric ulceration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystitis/ pyelonephritis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.28. Diseases that cause anemia in unweaned pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Pigs Affected</th>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Hematologic Findings</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iron deficiency anemia</td>
<td>Normal at birth; anemia becomes more severe as age increases.</td>
<td>Rough hair coat, pale, rapid respiration, uneven growth.</td>
<td>Microcytic, hypochromic red blood cells.</td>
<td>History that pigs did not receive an appropriate iron injection. Heart dilated, pericardial fluid, pulmonary edema, splenomegaly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eperythrozoonosis</td>
<td>Especially pigs under 5 days old but any time from birth to weaning.</td>
<td>Icterus, rough hair coat, uneven growth, listless, swollen yellow-brown liver, splenomegaly.</td>
<td>Organisms seen in red blood cells.</td>
<td>Wright-Giemsa stain of blood from a febrile pig or positive serology from the sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umbilical hemorrhage</td>
<td>Die within a few hours of birth. May be associated with use of wood shavings or vitamin C or zinc deficiency.</td>
<td>Cord remains large and fleshy, fails to shrivel, blood-stained skin.</td>
<td>Normal.</td>
<td>Clinical signs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Older growing pigs and adults.

Nursery pigs. Anemia is more severe in younger pigs.

Nursery pigs to adults. Usually in 2- to 6-month-old pigs.

Nursery pigs to adults. Usually young breeding-age gilts.

Nursery to adult pigs, especially 2–5 months old. Signs more severe in younger pigs.

All ages. Signs more severe in younger pigs.

Any age. Signs more severe in younger pigs.

Inappetence, weight loss, occasional grinding of teeth. Normal feces or firm, dark, and tarry.

Reduced growth rate, rough hair coat.

Scratching and rubbing against walls, rough hair coat, keratinization of skin.

Anorexia, diarrhea with mucus, weight loss. Dark feces, diarrhea with mucus, melena.

Anorexia, diarrhea with mucus, weight loss. Normal feces or firm, dark, and tarry.

Reduced growth rate, rough hair coat.

Scratching and rubbing against walls, rough hair coat, keratinization of skin.

Anorexia, diarrhea with mucus, weight loss. Dark feces, diarrhea with mucus, melena.

Bleeding from the anus, usually with normal body condition.

Various degrees of weight loss, anorexia. Black, tarry feces to frank blood.

Lethargy, reduced growth, occasional icterus, acute episode in sows: mammary and vulvar edema.

Depression, anorexia, ascites, elevated liver enzymes, occasional icterus.

Gastroenteritis.

Swollen vulvas and mammary glands in prepubertal gilts.

Lameness, stiff gait, lethargy. Dark, tarry feces.

Table 11.29. Diseases that cause anemia in weaned pigs to adults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Ages Affected</th>
<th>Other Signs</th>
<th>Associated Factors</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gastric ulcer</td>
<td>Older growing pigs and adults.</td>
<td>Inappetence, weight loss, occasional grinding of teeth. Normal feces or firm, dark, and tarry.</td>
<td>Finely ground feed, vitamin E deficiency.</td>
<td>Ulcer observed in the pars oesophagea at necropsy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron deficiency</td>
<td>Nursery pigs.</td>
<td>Reduced growth rate, rough hair coat.</td>
<td>Failure to give sufficient iron before weaning.</td>
<td>Hematology, history, and absence of other lesions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcoptes scabiei</td>
<td>Nursery pigs to adults. Anemia is more severe in younger pigs.</td>
<td>Scratching and rubbing against walls, rough hair coat, keratinization of skin.</td>
<td>Poor mange control program.</td>
<td>Deep skin scraping from the ear canal to demonstrate mites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichuris suis</td>
<td>Usually in 2- to 6-month-old pigs.</td>
<td>Anorexia, diarrhea with mucus, weight loss. Dark feces, diarrhea with mucus, melena.</td>
<td>Lack of good parasite control program.</td>
<td>Lesions in the large intestine, favorable response to treatment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhagic ileitis</td>
<td>Usually young breeding-age gilts.</td>
<td>Bleeding from the anus, usually with normal body condition.</td>
<td>Seen more often in herds with other <em>Lawsonia</em>-associated enteropathies.</td>
<td>Clinical signs and lack of lesions on gross necropsy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proliferative enteritis</td>
<td>Nursery to adult pigs, especially 2-5 months old.</td>
<td>Various degrees of weight loss, anorexia. Black, tarry feces to frank blood.</td>
<td>Seen more often in herds with other <em>Lawsonia</em>-associated enteropathies.</td>
<td>Necropsy lesions primarily in small intestine. Histopathology: mucosal hyperplasia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eperythrozoonosis</td>
<td>Nursery pigs to adults.</td>
<td>Lethargy, reduced growth, occasional icterus, acute episode in sows: mammary and vulvar edema.</td>
<td>Poor mange and lice control program.</td>
<td>Stained blood smear to demonstrate organisms. Indirect hemagglutination titer of 1:80 or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aflatoxin</td>
<td>All ages. Signs more severe in younger pigs.</td>
<td>Depression, anorexia, ascites, elevated liver enzymes, occasional icterus.</td>
<td>Moldy feed; grains raised, harvested, or stored during wet weather; especially damaged kernels.</td>
<td>Liver lesions of fatty change to necrosis and cirrhosis. Feed analysis for toxin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichothecenes</td>
<td>All ages. Signs more severe in younger pigs.</td>
<td>Gastroenteritis.</td>
<td>Moldy feed; grains raised, harvested, or stored during wet weather; especially damaged kernels.</td>
<td>Feed analysis for toxin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zealaleneone</td>
<td>All ages. Signs more severe in younger pigs.</td>
<td>Swollen vulvas and mammary glands in prepubertal gilts.</td>
<td>Moldy feed; grains raised, harvested, or stored during wet weather; especially damaged kernels.</td>
<td>Feed analysis for toxin.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.30. Diseases that cause lameness in unweaned pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Ages Affected</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Associated Factors</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Streptococcus, Staphylococcus, E. coli</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Poor crate design, no heat source to draw pigs away from the sow, sows with agalactia.</td>
<td>Presumptive based on lack of heat and poor farrowing crate design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>Any, but especially in the first 36–40 hours after birth.</td>
<td>Variable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splayleg</td>
<td>Birth or within a few hours. 1–4 pigs/litter, occasionally whole litter.</td>
<td>Hindlegs (sometimes forelegs) abducted to the side, pig unable to stand or moves with difficulty.</td>
<td>Birth weight of affected pigs is below average, slippery floors.</td>
<td>Clinical signs. Histology: myofibrillar hypoplasia in semitendinosus or triceps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injections</td>
<td>Any time after injection.</td>
<td>Tendency to carry or drag one hindleg.</td>
<td></td>
<td>History of injection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arthrogryposis</td>
<td>At birth. 40–50% of a litter affected.</td>
<td>Fixation of the joints in the limbs or vertebral column in various degrees of extension or flexion.</td>
<td>Maternal toxicity (wild black cherry, tobacco stalks, jimsonweed, poison hemlock), deficiency of vitamin A or manganese, or heredity.</td>
<td>Clinical signs in piglets, history of sow access to pasture. Feed analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syndactyly, polydactyly, thick legs</td>
<td>At birth.</td>
<td>Abnormal number of toes, front legs more likely to be affected.</td>
<td>Genetic.</td>
<td>Clinical signs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clostridium perfringens</em></td>
<td>1–5 days old.</td>
<td>Marked swelling of hindleg, dark reddish-brown discoloration of skin over swelling.</td>
<td>Iron injected within the last 24 hours with contaminated needle.</td>
<td>Necropsy and isolation of the organism.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
at farrowing or mating. Bilateral enlargement is seen with zearalenone toxicity and edema secondary to eperythrozoonosis.

**Agalactia** (Table 11.36)
Agalactia, the failure to produce milk, becomes apparent because of the behavior of the suckling pigs. They are often noisy and restless and make frequent nursing attempts. With time they become gaunt and emaciated. Agalactic sows should be examined if they show clinical signs, such as pyrexia, depression, or anorexia, which tend to be associated with infectious causes of agalactia; normally bright, alert sows tend to be agalactic due to hormonal or nutritional causes.

### POOR REPRODUCTIVE PERFORMANCE
(Tables 11.37–11.41)
Although diseases that deform fetuses or cause abortion attract a great deal of attention when they occur, greater concern should be directed to the “normal” level of reproductive performance, since when it is suboptimal, a much greater loss of potential profit occurs. Currently, with the advent of computerized record-keeping systems and the use of consultants, requests for assistance in improving poor reproductive performance are common.

Efficiency of reproductive performance is measured by the number of pigs weaned/sow/year (PW/S/Y). Typical North American farms only produce about 14–16 PW/S/Y, although the best farms have demonstrated that 25 PW/S/Y is possible. Three components directly influence PW/S/Y: litters/sow/year (L/S/Y), average live-born litter size, and preweaning mortality. Each of these three major components is in turn influenced by a number of environmental, managerial, genetic, and nutritional factors.

The first step is to determine L/S/Y, average number of live-born per litter, and preweaning mortality. Performance may be suboptimal in one or more areas.

---

**Table 11.31.** Ages at which diseases causing lameness in weaned pigs to adults are more common

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age in Months</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1.5</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>42</th>
<th>54</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trauma:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscle bruising, sprains, strains, dislocations, fractures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clostridium tetani or septicum infection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vesicular diseases:</strong> foot-and-mouth, vesicular exanthema, swine vesicular disease, vesicular stomatitis, San Miguel sea lion virus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus suis infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. equisimilis infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute Mycoplasma hyorhinis infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus parasuis infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rickets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute erysipelas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic erysipelas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asymmetrical hindquarter syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot rot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back-muscle necrosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteochondrosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteoarthritis, degenerative joint disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epiphysiolysis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brucellosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laminitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apophysiolysis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteomalacia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarsitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arthrosis deformans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg weakness syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.32. Diseases that cause lameness in weaned pigs to adults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Causes</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gross swelling of muscles or soft tissue</td>
<td>Trauma.</td>
<td>Physical examination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Clostridium septicum</em> infection.</td>
<td>Necropsy, identification of organisms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Asymmetric hindquarter syndrome.</td>
<td>Necropsy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized stiffness, reluctance to move, altered gait, fever, usually also other signs of septicemia</td>
<td>Acute <em>Mycoplasma hyorhinis</em> infection, acute <em>Haemophilus parasuis</em> infection, acute erysipelas, <em>Streptococcus suis</em> infection.</td>
<td>Culture of organisms from heart, liver, spleen, or lesion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tetanus.</td>
<td>Identification of organisms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swollen joints</td>
<td>Chronic <em>Mycoplasma hyorhinis</em>, <em>Haemophilus parasuis</em>, or erysipelas infection. Infection with <em>Strep. equisimilis</em> or <em>Mycoplasma hyosynoviae</em>. Suppurative arthritis due to <em>Staphylococcus</em>, <em>Arcanobacterium pyogenes</em>, or <em>Streptococcus</em>.</td>
<td>Isolation of organisms from the joints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rickets.</td>
<td>Necropsy, bone ash determination, ration analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior paresis or paralysis</td>
<td>Brucellosis.</td>
<td>Necropsy, serology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rickets. osteomalacia.</td>
<td>Necropsy, bone ash determination, ration analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Apophysiolysis of ischiatic tuberosity; proximal femoral epiphysiolysis; trauma; vertebral, lumbo-sacral, or pelvic fracture; spondylosis.</td>
<td>Necropsy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail bitten</td>
<td>Abscess in vertebral column.</td>
<td>Necropsy culture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No external abnormalities</td>
<td><em>M. hyosynoviae</em> infection.</td>
<td>Culture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Osteochondrosis, proximal femoral epiphysiolysis, degenerative joint disease, osteoarthritis, trauma, apophysiolysis of ischiatic tuberosity.</td>
<td>Necropsy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leg weakness syndrome.</td>
<td>Physical examination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Selenium toxicity.</td>
<td>Necropsy, selenium levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter crack in the hoof wall, pain, heat, swelling</td>
<td>Foot rot (<em>Arcanobacterium pyogenes</em> and other opportunist invaders).</td>
<td>Physical examination, culture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No external deformity, pain, heat, and swelling</td>
<td>Laminitis.</td>
<td>Physical examination, history of postparturient fever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoof abnormalities</td>
<td>Overgrown hooves, bush foot, sand crack, heel separation, trauma.</td>
<td>Physical examination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cracks in hoof wall, erosion and bruising of the heel</td>
<td>Rough hooves, wet environment, biotin deficiency.</td>
<td>Physical examination. Ration analysis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.33. Crown-to-rump length and fetal age

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crown-to-Rump Length (mm)</th>
<th>Approximate Fetal Age (days)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.34. Diseases causing abortion, stillbirth, and mummification in swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Signs in Sow</th>
<th>Age of Fetuses</th>
<th>Signs in Fetus and Placenta</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutritional Causes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overfeeding</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Embryonic loss.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Suggestive from history, feed levels after mating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underfeeding</td>
<td>Extremely thin sow, possible polyuria, polydipsia.</td>
<td>All the same age, any age.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>History, sow condition, competition for feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc deficiency</td>
<td>Delayed or prolonged parturition.</td>
<td>At birth.</td>
<td>Low viability, umbilical hemorrhage.</td>
<td>Feed analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine parvovirus</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese B encephalitis</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies</td>
<td>Can be mild to severe, sneezing, cough, anorexia, constipation, salivation, vomiting, neurologic signs.</td>
<td>Often fetuses are dead at different stages of development.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine influenza</td>
<td>Extreme prostration, lethargy, labored respiration, cough.</td>
<td>Often fetuses are dead at different stages of development.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterovirus, adenovirus, reovirus, cytomegalovirus</td>
<td>Usually none.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog cholera</td>
<td>Lethargy, anorexia, fever, conjunctivitis, vomiting, dyspnea, erythema, cyanosis, diarrhea, ataxia, convulsions.</td>
<td>Often fetuses are dead at different stages of development.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bovine viral diarrhea virus</td>
<td>None, but sows may be kept in contact with cattle.</td>
<td>Often fetuses are dead at different stages of development.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encephalomyocarditis</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African swine fever</td>
<td>Lethargy, anorexia, fever, hyperemia, dyspnea, vomiting, diarrhea.</td>
<td>Any age, but usually all the same age.</td>
<td>Edema.</td>
<td>Virus isolation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine vesicular diseases²</td>
<td>Vesicles on snout, mouth, and coronary band.</td>
<td>Any age, but usually all the same age.</td>
<td>Petechial and ecchymotic hemorrhages.</td>
<td>Fluorescent antibody test on fetal tissues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome</td>
<td>Fever, anorexia, lethargy, blotchy reddening of skin and cyanosis.</td>
<td>Any age, but usually all the same age.</td>
<td>Necrotizing arteritis in the umbilical cord. Edema.</td>
<td>Virus isolation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue eye disease</td>
<td>May be anorexia, fever, depression, rare corneal opacity.</td>
<td>Any age, but usually all the same age.</td>
<td>Stillbirths, mummies, abortions, resorption.</td>
<td>Virus isolation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leptospirosis</td>
<td>Few animals showing signs, mild anorexia, fever, diarrhea, abortion.</td>
<td>Usually all near the same age, often mid- to late-term.</td>
<td>Stillbirths or weak neonatal pigs, occasional abortions, diffuse placentitis.</td>
<td>Demonstration of organisms by dark-field examination. Culture or laboratory animal inoculation. Paired sera from sow or single titer &gt;1:800. (continued)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Signs in Sow</th>
<th>Age of Fetuses</th>
<th>Signs in Fetus and Placenta</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uterine infection with <em>E. coli</em>, <em>A. pyogenes</em>, <em>S. aureus</em>, <em>Pasteurella</em>, <em>E. rhusiopathiae</em>, <em>Pseudomonas</em>, <em>Listeria monocytogenes</em>, <em>Strep. equisimilis</em>, <em>Bacillus</em>, <em>Salmonella</em>, etc.</td>
<td>Generally no clinical signs.</td>
<td>May be any age but usually all are the same age.</td>
<td>May be almost normal or somewhat autolytic with edema, suppurative placentitis.</td>
<td>Culture of organism from fetus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brucellosis</td>
<td>Signs seldom recognized, abortion at any time during gestation.</td>
<td>May be any age but usually all are the same age.</td>
<td>May have undergone autolysis or subcutaneous edema. Peritoneal fluid or hemorrhage may be present. Suppurative placentitis.</td>
<td>Culture of organisms from fetus. Positive serology from the herd, paired sera from the sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any systemic infection: erysipelas, transmissible gastroenteritis, eperythrozoonosis, <em>A. pleuropneumoniae</em>, etc.</td>
<td>Fever. Other signs of disease will vary with the specific agent.</td>
<td>All the same age, any age.</td>
<td>Usually none.</td>
<td>History and clinical signs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide</td>
<td>No signs in sows but tends to occur during the coldest weather.</td>
<td>Usually at term, still-born pigs.</td>
<td>Bright red tissues large amount of serosanguinous pleural effusion.</td>
<td>Suggestive from clinical signs and history. Improvement when fossil fuel replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon dioxide</td>
<td>No signs in sows but tends to occur during the coldest weather.</td>
<td>Usually at term, still-born pigs.</td>
<td>Muconium on skin and in respiratory tract.</td>
<td>Suggestive from clinical signs and history. Improvement when fossil fuel replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High environmental temperature</td>
<td>High temperature at time of breeding. High temperature at time of farrowing, sows panting and hyperemia.</td>
<td>Abortion or resorption. Stillborn pigs at term.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Clinical signs and history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical trauma</td>
<td>Sows of different body size and condition penned together, skin abrasions. Thin sows and possibly polyuria and polydipsia.</td>
<td>All the same age, any age.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Clinical signs and history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low environmental temperature</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Clinical signs and history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seasonal abortion</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>All the same age, any age.</td>
<td>All the same age, any age.</td>
<td>September–November.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Claviceps purpurea</em></td>
<td>Possibly dry gangrene of extremities and tail.</td>
<td>All the same age.</td>
<td>Abortion, stillbirth, weak neonates. No gross lesions.</td>
<td>Feed analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 toxin</td>
<td>Rare but may cause anorexia or lethargy.</td>
<td>Late term.</td>
<td>Abortion, stillbirth, weak neonates. No gross lesions.</td>
<td>Feed analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zearalenone</td>
<td>Tunescence, edema of the vulva, occasional mammary development in gilts.</td>
<td>Failure of embryo to implant.</td>
<td>Abortion, stillbirth, weak neonates. No gross lesions.</td>
<td>Feed analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organophosphate toxicity</td>
<td>Salivation, defecation, emesis, muscle tremors, paralysis.</td>
<td>All the same age, any age.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Signs, history, whole-blood cholinesterase activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Then a systematic investigation can be carried out using the flowchart in Table 11.37.

Maximization of L/S/Y occurs when the proportion of nonpregnant females in the herd is minimized. Unproductive days in the breeding herd are caused by sows that were not bred after weaning, sows that abort or resorb litters, and gilts that remain too long in the gilt pool. About 10% of weaned sows are culled because they fail to show estrus. On the average, unbred weaned sows stay in the herd for 75 days prior to culling, which adds greatly to the number of unproductive herd days. Gilts may spend from 2–20 weeks in the gilt pool and up to one-third of them may never join the breeding herd, again making a major contribution to the total unproductive herd days. When L/S/Y is low (less than 2) then the problem should be characterized as to whether females are anestrus or whether females are returning to heat after breeding. Returns to heat can be further characterized by whether they occur at intervals of 18–21 days postbreeding (failure of conception) or at other intervals (early embryonic loss). Additional observation of management, environment, genetics, and nutrition is used to identify specific contributing factors (Tables 11.39–11.40).

Problems of small litter size are generally due to noninfectious, rather than infectious, causes. Investigation of the cause(s) can be a major undertaking since numerous factors influence litter size, and although each factor may cause only a small reduction by itself, litter size may be considerably reduced when all factors are considered. To investigate small litter size it is necessary to examine information on all farrowings that occur over a 6-month period. Each litter farrowed should be characterized by parity of the sow, number of live-born, number of stillborn, and number of mummies. Data should be recorded and summarized and then analyzed for mean values and trends. When small litter size is due to large numbers of stillborns or mummies, the information in Table 11.34 should be used to assist diagnosis. Other causes of small litter size are given in Table 11.40.

Factors influencing preweaning survival are covered in Chapter 62.

Table 11.34. Diseases causing abortion, stillbirth, and mummification in swine (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Signs in Sow</th>
<th>Age of Fetuses</th>
<th>Signs in Fetus and Placenta</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated hydrocarbon (CH) toxicity</td>
<td>Hyperexcitability, muscle spasms, seizures.</td>
<td>All the same age, any age.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Signs, history, CH level in liver, kidney, brain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A deficiency</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>May vary in age or be all the same age.</td>
<td>Stillborn or weak, anophthalmia, cleft palate, microphthalmia, blind, general edema.</td>
<td>History, eye abnormalities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methallibure, metrifon, tri chlorfon, iodine deficiency, tobacco stalks</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>May vary in age or be all the same age.</td>
<td>Mummies, stillbirths, low birth weight, deformed pigs.</td>
<td>History and signs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatigue: old or fat sow, disturbed or prolonged birth</td>
<td>Prolonged labor, more than 5 hours, especially with large litters or hot weather. Pallor, rapid respiration.</td>
<td>Stillbirths at term.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>History, physical exam of sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low maternal hemoglobin level</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stillbirths at term.</td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>Packed-cell volume or blood hemoglobin too low.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Foot-and-mouth disease, vesicular stomatitis, vesicular exanthema.*
### Table 1.35. Causes of vulvar discharges in gilts and sows

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site of Infection</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Appearance</th>
<th>Frequency and time of occurrence</th>
<th>Parity and stage of reproduction affected</th>
<th>Other clinical manifestations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vagina</td>
<td>10–50 mL</td>
<td>Purulent, occasionally bloody.</td>
<td>Sporadic with multiple discharges per day. Not related to estrus cycle. Persists days to weeks.</td>
<td>More common in gilts. May be occasional female 10–20% of or herd. Pregnant and open females affected but especially shortly after mating.</td>
<td>Usually no other clinical signs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervix</td>
<td>Less than 20 mL</td>
<td>Purulent.</td>
<td>Not related to estrus. Sporadic over days to weeks.</td>
<td>Usually in cycling females of all parities. Results in delayed return to heat. Also rarely in pregnant females.</td>
<td>Usually no other clinical signs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50–100 mL or more</td>
<td>Purulent, occasionally bloody.</td>
<td>Proestrus/estrus: discharge sporadic for 1–2 days near estrus.</td>
<td>Usually in sows after weaning or sows with cystic ovaries. Rarely in pregnant females. More common in higher-parity sows.</td>
<td>Mild fever and inappetence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50–100 mL or more</td>
<td>Purulent, occasionally bloody, fetid odor. Decomposing fetal remnants.</td>
<td>Postparturition: somewhat constant discharge for days after farrowing.</td>
<td>More common in older sows after prolonged or assisted farrowing and especially if retained fetuses.</td>
<td>Depression, fever, anorexia, sternal or lateral recumbency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary bladder</td>
<td>Less than 20 mL</td>
<td>Purulent, mucoid, mucopurulent or mucohemorrhagic.</td>
<td>Seen at urination, especially at end of stream.</td>
<td>Frequent urination of small quantities. Dysuria and straining.</td>
<td>Chronic weight loss and if infection ascends to kidneys may cause uremia and death.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 1.36. Causes of agalactia in sows

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition of Sow</th>
<th>Clinical Findings</th>
<th>Causes</th>
<th>Further Differentiation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal mammary gland conformation with excessive firmness of underlying glandular tissue (hard udders).</td>
<td>Excess salt in diet, overfeeding prior to and in first days after farrowing, anything limiting piglets’ ability to nurse (playleg, failure to remove needle teeth, small weak pigs), stray voltage in farrowing pen.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ration analysis. Observation of feeding. Physical examination. Voltage readings between metal of pens and ground.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11.37. Flowchart for investigation of low numbers of pigs weaned/sow/year (PW/S/Y)

PW/S/Y is less than desired

- Determine L/S/Y
  - If ≥2.2
    - Stop
  - If <2.2
    - Determine preweaning mortality
      - If greater than 10%, see Chapter 62
- Determine litter size (live-born, stillborn, mummies)
  - If stillbirth rate ≥38%, refer to Table 11.34
  - If live-born/litter <10
  - If live-born/litter ≥10
    - Stop

Determine proportion of anestrous females
- If high proportion of females are anestrous, use Table 11.38
- Determine percentage of returns to heat after breeding
- Record litter characteristics of live-born, stillborn, and mummies for each parity
- Use parity distribution and aids in Table 11.40

Table 11.38. Causes of anestrus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor Contributing to Anestrus</th>
<th>Gilt</th>
<th>Sow Postweaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>The first estrus usually occurs in gilts between 5 and 8 months of age. Gilts raised in outside pens reach puberty earlier than gilts raised in enclosed buildings.</td>
<td>Early weaning (i.e., 10 days). There is a large variation between breeds and lines of sows in percentage of sows returning to heat after weaning at 10 days or less.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breed</td>
<td>There is a large breed variation in age at puberty. Crossbreds reach puberty earlier than purebreds. The percentage of gilts that show estrus by 8.5 months of age in common breeds is Large White, 86%; Landrace, 78%; Duroc, 71%; Hampshire, 71%; and Yorkshire, 56%.</td>
<td>Sows weaned into an area where they have contact with boars will show earlier and stronger signs of estrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anatomical anomaly</td>
<td>Hermaphrodites, pseudohermaphrodites, intersexuality.</td>
<td>At least 14 hours of light per day in the farrowing area is associated with a greater percentage of weaned sows returning to estrus within 5 days of weaning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure to a boar</td>
<td>Gilts raised in contact with a boar reach puberty 20–40 days earlier than gilts raised in isolation.</td>
<td>Between July and September (in the Northern Hemisphere) a decrease occurs in the number of sows returning to estrus within 7 days after weaning. Primiparous sows are particularly affected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>Gilts exposed to at least 14 hours of light per day reach puberty earlier than gilts in darker environments.</td>
<td>Sows weaned earlier than 18 days of lactation show a lower percentage of animals coming into estrus within 7 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Season</td>
<td>More fall-born gilts will reach puberty by 8 months of age than spring-born gilts.</td>
<td>Animals that were thin prior to entering the farrowing area or lost more than 20 kg because of heavy milk production during lactation are less likely to show estrus within 7 days postweaning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of lactation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrition</td>
<td>Undernourished animals are less likely to show estrus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management</td>
<td>Many complaints of anestrus or “silent heats” are due to inadequate heat checking by breeding-herd personnel. The boar and sow should be put together in a pen for heat detection. Although the presence of a boar assists the herdsman to identify females in estrus, the boar should not be relied on to locate estrous sows. Heat checking should be done when there are no distracting influences such as feeding.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
<td>Usually associated with poor record-keeping and inability to identify animals.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudopregnancy</td>
<td>May be associated with early pregnancy loss. Corpus luteum maintains pregnant state, even in the absence of fetuses in the uterus. Zearalenone may cause pseudopregnancy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic ovaries</td>
<td>Both follicular and luteal cysts develop in swine. Cystic ovarian structures are more common in sows than in gilts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Failures of Ovulation

Examine prepuberal gilts for vulval redness and enlargement. Test feed samples for presence of zearalenone.

Between July and September (in the Northern Hemisphere). Problem is more pronounced in gilts and primiparous sows.

Evaluation of reproductive tracts at slaughter.

### Failures of Conception

Physical examination and evaluation of reproductive tract at slaughter.

Poor semen handling or insemination technique when using artificial insemination.

Boar Failure

Examine records of boar usage. Boars should not be used more frequently than four times per week.

Physical examination of boar for anatomical defects of reproductive tract and ability to stand and mount. Observation of mating performance for libido and experience. History of recent illness with pyrexia or treatment with corticosteroids.

Review of mating procedures in the herd. Verification that each female is bred at least twice during estrus. Infections: Early Abortion-Resorption

Serologic demonstration of the presence of the organism in the herd and evidence that there is a susceptible population of animals in the herd.

### Table 1.39. Causes of return to estrus in sows after breeding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular intervals (18–24 days after breeding)</th>
<th>Irregular intervals (more than 25 days after breeding)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Possible Causes</strong></td>
<td><strong>Possible Causes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zearalenone</td>
<td>Various diseases: porcine parvovirus, pseudorabies, leptospirosis, brucellosis, eperythrozoonosis, Japanese B encephalitis, cytomegalovirus, and other bacteria, fungi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seasonal infertility</td>
<td>Any illness associated with pyrexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic ovaries</td>
<td>High environmental temperatures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female anatomical anomaly</td>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic with artificial insemination</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overuse of boar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to breed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improper timing of mating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Diagnosis**

- Failures of Ovulation
  - Examine prepuberal gilts for vulval redness and enlargement. Test feed samples for presence of zearalenone.
  - Between July and September (in the Northern Hemisphere). Problem is more pronounced in gilts and primiparous sows.
  - Evaluation of reproductive tracts at slaughter.
- Failures of Conception
  - Physical examination and evaluation of reproductive tract at slaughter.
  - Poor semen handling or insemination technique when using artificial insemination.
  - Boar Failure
    - Examine records of boar usage. Boars should not be used more frequently than four times per week.
    - Physical examination of boar for anatomical defects of reproductive tract and ability to stand and mount. Observation of mating performance for libido and experience. History of recent illness with pyrexia or treatment with corticosteroids.
    - Review of mating procedures in the herd. Verification that each female is bred at least twice during estrus.
    - Infections: Early Abortion-Resorption
      - Serologic demonstration of the presence of the organism in the herd and evidence that there is a susceptible population of animals in the herd.

- History of illness in the herd. Noninfectious: Early Abortion-Resorption
  - History of high environmental temperatures at time sows were mated.
  - History of excessive fighting among sows. Sows typically kept in large groups of different-sized animals.
  - July through September (in the Northern Hemisphere). Most noticeable in gilts and primiparous sows.
  - Consumption of large amounts of feed in the period after mating has been associated with embryonic death.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possible Causes of Small Litters</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Parities Affected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poor timing and frequency of mating</td>
<td>Observation of estrus detection and mating procedures. Verification that all females are mated twice during estrus.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of different boars</td>
<td>Double mating with two different boars results in litters 0.4 pigs larger than if the same boar was used twice.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of previous lactation</td>
<td>Investigation of time of weaning, average, and range. Between 16 and 35 days, for each delay of 5 days, litter size increases by 0.2-0.4 pigs.</td>
<td>2+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age and weight at first mating (gilts)</td>
<td>History of breeding practices. Waiting to breed a gilt on her second vs. first estrus results in 0.5 more pigs per litter.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split weaning of litters</td>
<td>Split-weaned sows have larger subsequent litters.</td>
<td>2+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parity</td>
<td>Determination of the parity distribution in the herd. Litter size is smallest in gilts and increases with increasing parities, with the best production in parities 3, 4, 5, and 6.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breed</td>
<td>Analysis of breed composition of herd. White breeds are more prolific than colored breeds.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterosis</td>
<td>Analysis of breeding program. Determination of heterosis is being appropriately maximized with maternal breeds.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Season</td>
<td>Litter size is 0.4 pigs larger in sows bred in January through April than in other months.</td>
<td>All, especially 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low lactation feed intake</td>
<td>Examination of sows' condition at the end of gestation and lactation. Evaluation of feeding program for amount and nutrient density. Sows that lose more than 20 kg in weight during a farrowing and lactation have smaller subsequent litters. Too many overweight sows just prior to farrowing.</td>
<td>2+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low lactation protein</td>
<td>Feed analysis to verify that sows of highly prolific breeds are receiving a ration that contains 1.1% lysine during the lactation period.</td>
<td>2+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gilt feeding practices</td>
<td>Examine gilt feeding practices. Gilts that are “flushed” (i.e., fed additional amounts 3 weeks prior to mating) produce one more pig per litter.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount of stress</td>
<td>Examine sow housing for the amount of competition between animals. Large groups of sows, especially when different-sized animals are housed together, or excessive movement or sorting of sows within the first 30 days after mating may result in resorption of embryos.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental temperature</td>
<td>History of high environmental temperature just after breeding. Hot environments are associated with resorption.</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine parvovirus and other viruses</td>
<td>Pattern of titers in breeding herd. Gilts in gilt pool and breeding area negative, bred gilts and older sows positive.</td>
<td>Usually 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.41. Interpretation of serology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Results and Interpretation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brucellosis</td>
<td>Standard tube test</td>
<td>If all of the following apply: If one or more of the following apply:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a. No animals on test with titers greater than 1:1000 a. One or more animals on test with titer greater than 1:1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b. Not a retest of an infected herd b. Retest of an infected herd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c. Complete herd test or incomplete test of a validated herd. c. Incomplete test of a herd of unknown status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Then use the following: Then use the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:25 1:50 1:100 Negative 1:25 1:50 1:100 Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+ ‑ ‑ ‑ Negative + ‑ ‑ Reactor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>‑ ‑ ‑ Negative ‑ ‑ ‑ Reactor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>‑ ‑ ‑ Negative ‑ ‑ ‑ Reactor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>‑ ‑ ‑ Negative ‑ ‑ ‑ Reactor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eperythrozoonosis IHA Results are useful as a herd test; individual titers have not been correlated with clinical signs of disease or production. In herd studies, no consistent correlation was found between disease problems in the herd and the prevalence and magnitude of the titers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Less than 1:40 Negative 1:40 to 1:80 Suspect 1:80 and greater Positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome</td>
<td>IFA</td>
<td>IFA (IgG) is first detected at 9–11 days post infection; the peak titer occurs at 4–5 weeks and gradually declines to undetectable levels at 5–6 months. IFA (IgM) is first detected at 5 days post infection and declines to undetectable levels at 28 days. IgM-positive pigs are likely to be carrier pigs with recent infection. IFA tests do not detect all strains of the virus. A titer of 1:16 is considered low, while 1:256 is high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELISA</td>
<td>Detects both American and European strains of the virus. Antibody is first detected at 9–13 days postinfection; the peak titer occurs at 4–6 weeks and gradually declines to undetectable levels at 4–5 months. An S/P ratio of 0.4 is considered positive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VACCINATED PIGS</td>
<td>NONVACCINATED PIGS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leptospirosis</td>
<td>MA</td>
<td>2–3 weeks after vaccination, titers may be as high as 1:6400, especially in animals previously vaccinated. 1:100 Of doubtful significance; possibly an old residual titer; however, confirmed cases of leptospiral abortion have resulted in titers no greater than 1:100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2–3 weeks after vaccination, titers may be as high as 1:6400, especially in animals previously vaccinated. 1:200 or 1:400 Interpretation difficult; should be checked against another sample 10–20 days later.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2–3 weeks after vaccination, titers may be as high as 1:6400, especially in animals previously vaccinated. 31:800 Possibly indicates recent infection; sows aborting due to leptospirosis may have titers of 1:12,800.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</td>
<td>CF</td>
<td>Vaccination may produce titers as high as 1:128, but more typically in the range of 1:8 to 1:32. Titers fall to undetectable levels by 2–3 months postvaccination. Young pigs' (&lt;3 months old) passive immunity: Passively acquired immunity results in titers as high as 1:128. Passive titers usually decline to undetectable levels by 3 months old. Older pigs (34 months): &gt;1:4 = suspect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ESAP-ELISA</td>
<td>2 weeks after a second vaccination, titers are as high as 6.5 on the ESAP scale (0–13). Because of cross-reaction with Actinobacillus suis and other organisms, results should be interpreted with caution, and along with clinical and pathological observation. Early field exposure (10–14 days) gives titers ranging from 2 to 10 on the ESAP scale. The highest titers are seen at 3 weeks postexposure. In late-phase exposure (108–120 days), 87% of the pigs are still seropositive with ESAP titers as high as 13.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.41. Interpretation of serology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Results and Interpretation</th>
<th>Nonvaccinated Pigs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Porcine parvovirus</td>
<td>HI</td>
<td>At 2 weeks postvaccination, titers generally range from 1:40 to 1:320. Vaccination titers frequently decay to non-detectable levels within 3–4 months.</td>
<td>Young pigs (&lt;6 months old): Passive titers derived from colostral immunity may be up to 1:5120; these titers decline to subdetectable levels by 3–8 months of age. Breeding animals: Within 1 week after exposure to the virus, titers may be as high as 1:10,000. After 2 weeks, the range of values for previously exposed sows in an endemically infected herd is 1:320 to &gt;1:2560.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies</td>
<td>SN</td>
<td>Vaccination may produce titers of 1:32, but more typically at 1:4 to 1:8. Vaccine titers may persist up to 6 months but generally are not detectable after 3 months.</td>
<td>A titer of 1:2 in only one animal of a group generally indicates the need to retest. A 1:4 or greater titer is positive. By 2 weeks after exposure to the virus, titers may reach 1:512.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine influenza</td>
<td>HI</td>
<td>At 2 weeks postvaccination, 55% of pigs have titers &gt;1:20. The highest titers are seen 4 weeks postvaccination. Titers are 31:320. Passive immunity of 1:20 interferes with vaccination.</td>
<td>Titters positive 1 week after infection, may be as high as 1:320 by 2 weeks post infection and will persist for 4 weeks before declining. Passive immunity usually declines by 12 wks of age.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmissible gastroenteritis</td>
<td>SN</td>
<td>Vaccine titers may reach levels as high as 1:400 but usually are between 1:40 and 1:200. Titters can rise dramatically at farrowing. Cross-reactions occur with porcine corona respiratory virus.</td>
<td>Any titer is considered positive. Titters may range from 1:40 to 1:800. Paired serum samples are the most diagnostic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae</em></td>
<td>CF</td>
<td>Vaccination usually produces titers in the range of 1:4 to 1:32.</td>
<td>1:8 = positive 1:4 = suspect Titters usually range from 1:4 to 1:128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELISA</td>
<td>2 weeks after a second vaccination, titers are usually 0.4 to 1.6.</td>
<td>Seroconversion starts around 2–3 weeks post exposure. &lt;0.3 is negative, 0.3–0.4 is suspect, and &gt;0.4 is positive. Test may cross-react with <em>M. hyorhinis</em> and <em>M. flocculare</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: CF = complement fixation; ELISA = enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; IFA = indirect fluorescent antibody; IHA = indirect hemagglutination; HI = hemagglutination inhibition; MA = microtiter agglutination; VN = virus neutralization; SN = serum neutralization; / = suspect/borderline.
12 Porcine Adenovirus
13 African Swine Fever
14 Porcine Circovirus Diseases
15 Classical Swine Fever and Other Pestiviruses
16 Porcine Cytomegalovirus
17 Encephalomyocarditis Virus
18 Porcine Enteric Picornaviruses
19 Porcine Enteric Caliciviruses and Astroviruses
20 Hemagglutinating Encephalomyelitis Virus
21 Japanese Encephalitis and West Nile Viruses
22 Porcine Epidemic Diarrhea
23 Porcine Parvovirus
24 Porcine Reproductive and Respiratory Syndrome Virus (Porcine Arterivirus)
25 Aujeszky’s Disease (Pseudorabies)
26 Rotavirus and Reovirus
27 Paramyxoviruses: Rubulavirus, Menangle, and Nipah Virus Infections
28 Swine Influenza
29 Swine Pox
30 Transmissible Gastroenteritis and Porcine Respiratory Coronavirus
31 Vesicular Diseases
32 Miscellaneous Viral Infections
An adenovirus was first isolated from a rectal swab of a piglet with diarrhea four decades ago (Haig et al. 1964). A second isolation, made from the brain of a pig with encephalitis, was reported a short time later (Kasza 1966). Since then, porcine adenoviruses have been isolated from a wide variety of samples and associated with pneumonia, diarrhea, and kidney lesions, as well as encephalitis. In swine, however, the virus has been isolated from the feces of normal pigs and the majority of porcine adenovirus infections appear to be asymptomatic. In recent years, porcine adenoviruses have been developed for use as expression vectors and vaccine vectors (Reddy et al. 1999), similar to those based on human adenoviruses.

**ETIOLOGY**

The three species of porcine adenoviruses (A, B, and C) are classified in family *Adenoviridae*, genus *Mastadenovirus*. Up to six serotypes have been identified by virus-neutralization tests (Clarke et al. 1967; Haig et al. 1964; Hirahara et al. 1990a; Kadoi et al. 1995; Kasza 1966). Serotypes 1, 2, and 3 belong in species porcine adenovirus A, serotype 4 in porcine adenovirus B, and serotype 5 in porcine adenovirus C (Büchen-Osmond 2003).

The structural, chemical, and physical characteristics of porcine adenoviruses are indistinguishable from other members of the *Adenoviridae*. Adenovirus virions are nonenveloped with icosahedral capsid symmetry and are 80–90 nm in diameter. Virions are composed of 240 hexon molecules that form 20 equilateral triangular facets of the icosahedron. A total of 12 pentons per virion are located at the vertices. Fiber proteins, 20–50 nm long with a terminal knob, project from each penton. Adenovirus particles have a precise hexagonal outline when viewed by negative stain electron microscopy (Figure 12.1), and the fiber and terminal knob can occasionally be observed.

Characteristic of family *Adenoviridae*, the porcine adenovirus genome is a single, linear molecule of double-stranded DNA. The genome is approximately 32–34 kilobases in length (Kleiboeker et al. 1993; Reddy et al. 1998; Nagy et al. 2001), based on full-length genome sequencing and restriction fragment length mapping of several porcine adenovirus serotypes. Approximately 40 proteins are encoded by the viral genome and transcribed following complex RNA splicing. About one-third of the genes encode structural proteins. The genome organization is typical of other adenoviruses with early and late gene expression profiles. The ends of the genome form inverted terminal repeats.

Porcine adenoviruses can be isolated and grown in vitro in primary porcine kidney cells using standard virological methods. In addition, continuous porcine kidney cell lines, such as PK-15 cells, and primary porcine cells cultures, such as thyroid cells (Dea and Elazhary 1984a) and testicular cells (Hirahara et al. 1990b), will support productive replication of porcine adenovirus isolates. Viral replication in vitro produces a cytopathic effect characterized by enlargement, clumping, and rounding of cells, followed by detachment. Visible cytopathic effect is typically observed 2–4 days postinoculation and progresses to complete destruction of the cell monolayer. Intranuclear inclusion bodies can be observed in stained cell monolayers. When viewed by thin section electron microscopy, it can be seen that inclusion bodies are formed by crystalline arrays of virus aggregates in the nucleus of the cell.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Serological studies suggest that porcine adenoviruses are distributed worldwide. Strains of porcine adenovirus B appear to be the most widely distributed, both in North America and Europe.

Swine are the only species known to be susceptible to porcine adenoviruses, although extensive studies on the host range of these viruses have not been performed. Swine appear to be susceptible to infection with human adenoviruses, but in general, the host range of adenoviruses is quite narrow and zoonotic transmission of
porcine adenoviruses from swine to humans has not been reported.

Transmission of porcine adenoviruses is primarily through the fecal-oral route, although aerosol transmission by inhalation of infectious particles may be possible. Fecal shedding of virus occurs, most commonly after weaning (Derbyshire et al. 1966). The duration of shedding following infection of swine with porcine adenoviruses is unknown, although pathogenesis studies have shown viral antigen in enterocytes up to 45 days postinfection, suggesting that long-term shedding is possible. Adult swine rarely shed virus and frequently have high serum antibody titers, which may prevent productive viral replication in these animals.

Adenoviruses are relatively resistant to heat and are stable at room temperature for up to 10 days, but are readily inactivated by common disinfectants, such as bleach, formaldehyde, alcohol, and phenolic compounds (Derbyshire and Arkell 1971).

PATHOGENESIS

The initial isolation of porcine adenovirus was from the brain of a pig with neurological disease, but porcine adenoviruses are most commonly associated with gastrointestinal disease in swine, although respiratory disease may also be possible. Infection of swine occurs following inhalation or ingestion and the primary sites of replication include the tonsils and distal small intestine (Ducatelle et al. 1982; Shadduck et al. 1967; Sharpe and Jessett 1967). Infection of pregnant swine can result in abortion, and virus will replicate in a number of internal organs of the fetus (Dee 1995). In some disease processes, porcine adenovirus may play a role as a secondary or co-pathogen. For example, research showed that serotype 4 and Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae produced a more severe pneumonia when inoculated together (Kasza et al. 1969).

CLINICAL SIGNS

The only consistent clinical sign observed following experimental inoculation of piglets with porcine adenovirus was diarrhea (Coussement et al. 1981; Derbyshire et al. 1969; Derbyshire et al. 1975; Sanford and Hoover 1983). Experimental oronasal inoculation of cesarian-derived, colostrum-deprived piglets resulted in diarrhea after an incubation period of 3–4 days. Thus, clinical signs, if present, most often involve generalized gastrointestinal disease with watery to pasty diarrhea. Experimental inoculation of pigs with porcine adenovirus did not result in mortality and is considered unlikely to do so in cases of natural infection. Based on pathogenesis studies and clinical reports, clinical signs compatible with respiratory disease are possible, but less likely than gastroenteric disease. Dea and El Azhary (1984b) reported that 15% of adult swine with respiratory disease were seropositive to serotype 4, but did not establish a causal relationship between the two. Porcine adenoviruses have been isolated from aborted fetuses (Dee 1995), although there is little evidence to support a significant etiologic role in swine reproductive failure.

LESIONS

Gross lesions are not likely to be observed in swine with adenovirus infections. Moderate enlargement of lymph nodes has been noted following experimental inoculation. Histological lesions characterized by the presence of intranuclear, basophilic inclusion bodies are suggestive of porcine adenoviral infection. These inclusions can most readily be observed in enterocytes of the distal jejunum and ileum, which is presumably where primary viral replication occurs (Ducatelle et al. 1982). Experimental inoculation has also demonstrated destruction of epithelial cells and blunting of the intestinal villi in the lower jejunum and ileum (Ducatelle et al. 1982). Other lesions attributed to both natural and experimental infection of swine with porcine adenovirus include meningoencephalitis with perivascular infiltration and microglial nodule formation (Edington et al. 1972; Kasza 1966) and kidney lesions involving dystrophy of tubules and capillary dilatation plus severe peritubular infiltration. Pneumonia associated with porcine adenovirus infection is characterized by interstitial pneumonia with alveolar thickening due to proliferation of septal cells and infiltration of inflammatory cells.

DIAGNOSIS

The differential diagnosis for infection of swine with adenoviruses includes other causes of gastroenteric dis-
ease, and possibility respiratory disease. Techniques used for diagnosis of porcine adenovirus infection include negative stain electron microscopy (EM) and virus isolation. Electron microscopy is commonly used to detect enteric viral pathogens from diarrheic feces. The relatively large size and characteristic morphology make adenovirus particles straightforward to detect, if present in reasonably high concentrations. In cell culture, the cytopathic effect of porcine adenoviruses is somewhat distinctive, characterized by rounding and the formation of grape-like clusters as cells detach. However, a secondary technique such as EM of cell culture supernatant, neutralization with specific antiserum, or fluorescent antibody (FA) staining with specific antiserum is necessary to confirm the isolation of an adenovirus. For FA staining, an anti-porcine adenovirus fluorescent antibody conjugate is available from the National Veterinary Services Laboratory (United States Department of Agriculture, Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Ames, Iowa U.S.A.), although the ability of this conjugate to detect all known species of porcine adenovirus has not been demonstrated. Serologic typing of new isolates by virus neutralizing may be attempted, although reference antiserum may be difficult to obtain.

Serological diagnosis of adenoviral infection may also be attempted using virus neutralization, plaque reduction neutralization assays, or indirect immunofluorescence assays using cells infected with viral stocks in vitro. Demonstration of a rising titer in conjunction with compatible clinical disease is suggestive of a role for porcine adenovirus infection. No commercially available serodiagnostic tests specifically for the detection of porcine adenoviruses are available, nor have any been reported in the scientific literature for use in research studies.

In postmortem samples, amphophilic to basophilic adenoviral inclusions that fill the entire nucleus are observed in the early stages of infection. In experimental infections, viral antigen may be detected in enterocytes as early as 24 hours postinoculation. In later stages of infection, inclusions become smaller and are surrounded by a halo. The inclusions are mainly located in enterocytes on the tips and sides of the villi, which may be short and blunt. Viral antigen may persist and can be detected by techniques such as immunoperoxidase staining for up to 45 days following infection (Ducatelle et al. 1982). Specific anti-porcine adenovirus antiserum is available from the same source as the FA conjugate. The presence of intranuclear inclusion bodies is suggestive, but not diagnostic, of porcine adenovirus infection, unless confirmed by positive viral antigen staining by immunofluorescence or immunohistochemistry.

To date, only one report has described a polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assay for detection of porcine adenoviruses (Maluquer de Motes et al. 2004). The assay was validated using fecal samples and a single strain of porcine adenovirus serotype 3. The performance of the assay for other serotypes of porcine adenovirus and other sample matrices is not known.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

No specific antiviral treatment is available for porcine adenovirus infection of swine. Vaccines have proven useful in control of adenoviruses in other species, but the level of disease caused by porcine adenovirus has not justified the development of vaccines or other control and prevention measures.

**REFERENCES**


African Swine Fever (ASF) is caused by a DNA virus in family Asfarviridae, genus Asfivirus. ASF is considered a List A disease by the Office International des Epizooties (OIE) because of its potential for rapid dissemination and significant socioeconomical consequences. ASF is currently endemic in many sub-Saharan countries of Africa and Sardinia (Italy). Under natural conditions, ASF virus (ASFV) infects only porcine species, both wild and domesticated. Inapparent infection with ASFV is common in wart hogs (Phacochoerus aethiopicus) and bush pigs (Potamochoerus porcus) and both species act as reservoir hosts in Africa (De Tray 1957; Heuschele and Coggins 1965). Soft ticks have been shown to be both reservoirs and vectors of ASFV, especially Ornithodoros moubata and O. erraticus. ASFV has been introduced into free areas by feeding contaminated pork products collected from international airports and seaports. Once established in domestic herds, infected and carrier pigs become the most important source of virus dissemination. Clinical signs and lesions range from acute to inapparent and can resemble several other hemorrhagic diseases of pigs, especially classical swine fever (hog cholera) and erysipelas. Laboratory tests are required to establish a definitive diagnosis. There is no treatment or effective vaccine available for ASFV. Therefore, control of ASF is based on rapid laboratory diagnosis and the enforcement of strict sanitary measures.

ETIOLOGY

ASFV is the only member of the family Asfarviridae genus Asfivirus (Murphy et al. 1995). ASFV is a complex, icosahedral, deoxivirus with features common to both the iridovirus and poxvirus families. The virion is composed of several concentric structures and an external hexagonal membrane (Figure 13.1.) acquired by budding through the cell membrane (Carrascosa et al. 1984). By electronic microscopy, the average diameter of ASFV particles is 200 nm (Breese and DeBoer 1966).

ASFV has a double-stranded linear DNA genome 170–190 kilobases in size, depending on the virus strain (Blasco et al. 1989; Tabares et al. 1980), with terminal inverted repeats (Sogo et al. 1984), a conserved central region of about 125 kilobases, and variable ends. The complete DNA sequence of the BA71v strain of ASFV was composed of 170,101 nucleotides, with 151 open reading frames encoding five multigene families (Yañez et al. 1995).

ASFV has been adapted to grow in a large number of stable cell lines, including VERO, MS, and CV, (Hess et al. 1965). In infected pigs, ASFV replicates primarily in monocytes and macrophage cells (Malmquist and Hay 1960; Minguez et al. 1988), but also in endothelial cells (Wilkinson and Wardley 1978), hepatocytes (Sierra et al. 1987), renal tubular epithelial cells (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1995), and neutrophils (Carrasco et al. 1996). No infection has been observed in T or B lymphocytes (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1995; Minguez et al. 1988). In nature, ASFV replicates in some soft ticks, principally Ornithodoros moubata (Plowright et al. 1970) and O. erraticus (Sanchez Botija 1963).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Montgomery first described ASF in Kenya in 1921. The virus spread from infected warthogs (Phacochoerus aethiopicus) to domestic pigs (Sus scrofa), causing a disease with a 100% mortality. Since then, ASF has been rec-
ognized as endemic in many African countries: Angola, Mozambique, Republic of South Africa, São Tomé and Príncipe, Senegal, Sudan, Uganda, and Zimbabwe.

In 1957, ASFV was detected for the first time outside the African continent. It appeared in Lisbon (Portugal) in a peracute form with a mortality of almost 100% (Manso Ribeiro et al. 1963). In 1960, it reappeared near Lisbon, apparently as a new outbreak, spread through the rest of Portugal, and reached Spain the same year (Polo Jover and Sanchez Botija 1961). ASF remained endemic in Portugal and Spain until 1995 when, as a result of an intensive eradication program, both countries were declared ASF-free.

In 1978, ASFV again appeared outside of Africa, this time in Malta, Sardinia (Italy), Brazil, and the Dominican Republic. In 1979, it appeared in Haiti and, in 1980, in Cuba. Today, ASF is present only in Africa, mainly in sub-Saharan countries, and in Sardinia. Elsewhere it has been successfully eradicated.

Pigs are the only domesticated animals naturally infected by ASFV. European wild boars are also susceptible to ASFV infection, with clinical signs and mortality rates similar to those observed in naturally infected domesticated pigs in Spain, Portugal, and Sardinia (Italy) (Contini et al. 1983; Sanchez Botija 1982). In contrast, ASFV usually induces an inapparent infection in three African wild suid species: warthogs (*Phacochoerus aethiopicus*), giant forest hog (*Hylochoerus meinerti geni*) and bushpigs (*Potamochoerus porcus*). Several species of soft ticks have been shown to be ASFV reservoirs and biological vectors, including *Ornithodoros moubata* in Africa (Plowright et al. 1969) and *O. erraticus* in the Iberian Peninsula (Sanchez Botija 1963).

ASFV is maintained in Africa by a cycle of infection between African wild suid species and soft ticks. In some of these wild suids infection is characterized by low levels of virus in tissues and low or undetectable levels of viremia (Plowright 1981). These levels of virus are sufficient for transmission to domestic pigs through tick vectors, but usually not by direct contact between animals. This transmission cycle makes it very difficult to eradicate ASF in Africa.

In contrast to African wild suids, European wild boars are susceptible to ASFV infection and show clinical signs and mortality rates similar to those observed in domestic pigs. In Europe, direct transmission by contact between sick and healthy animals is the most common route of transmission. Indirect transmission by biological vectors, like *O. erraticus*, has also been described in the Iberian Peninsula, especially in outdoor pig productions.

An important difference in the epidemiology of ASFV in Africa vs. Europe is related to ASF virus replication in soft ticks. Transovarial and transtadial transmission of ASFV has been described for *O. moubata* (Plowright et al. 1970), but in Europe only transtadial transmission has been observed in *O. erraticus*. *Ornithodoros savignyi*, also present in Africa, can experimentally transmit ASF virus to domestic pigs (Mellor and Wilkinson 1985). A number of other tick species widely distributed in North and South America are considered capable of harboring and transmitting ASFV (Groocock et al. 1980).

Once ASFV is established in domesticated pigs, carrier pigs become an important source of virus, and their role in the epidemiology of the disease is a major consideration in designing a strategy for ASF eradication. The serological recognition of carrier pigs was an importance facet in the successful eradication of ASF in Spain (Arias and Sánchez-Vizcaíno 2002).

The ASFV is very resistant to inactivation in the environment, particularly by temperature and acid pH. ASFV can be isolated from sera or blood stored at room temperature for 18 months. However, it is inactivated by heat treatment at 60°C for 30 minutes (Plowright and Parker 1967) and by many lipid solvents and commercial disinfectants. In meat products, ASFV may persist for weeks or months in frozen or uncooked meat. In cured or processed products, such as Parma ham, infectious virus was not demonstrated after 300 days of processing.
and curing (McKercher et al. 1987). Spanish cured pig meat products, such as Serrano hams and Iberian hams and shoulders, were free of viable ASFV by day 140 and Iberian loins by day 112 (Mebus et al. 1993). No infectious ASFV has been found in cooked or canned hams heated to 70°C.

**PATHOGENESIS**

ASFV is generally spread among domestic pigs via oral or nasal routes of dissemination and exposure (Colgrove et al. 1969; Plowright et al. 1968). Pigs can also be infected by a number of other routes, including tick bite (Plowright et al. 1969), cutaneous scarification, and intramuscular, subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, or intravenous injection (McVicar 1984). The incubation period varies widely (4–19 days), depending on the ASFV isolate and the route of exposure.

The sites of primary replication are the monocytes and macrophages of the lymph nodes nearest to the point of virus entrance. When the exposure is oral, the monocytes and macrophages of the tonsils and mandibular lymph nodes are the first involved. From these sites, the virus spreads through the blood and/or lymphatic system to the main sites of secondary replication—i.e., lymph nodes, bone marrow, spleen, lung, liver, and kidney. Viremia usually begins 4–8 days post infection and, due to the absence of neutralizing antibodies, persists for weeks or months.

ASFV is associated with red blood cell membranes (Quintero et al. 1986) and platelets (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1996) and causes hemadsorption in affected pigs (Sierra et al. 1991). Recently, the protein involved in hemadsorption was identified (Galindo et al. 2000).

The pathogenesis of the hemorrhage observed in the acute form is believed to be phagocytic activation of endothelial cells aggravated by virus replication in the same cells in the final stages of the disease. In the subacute form, hemorrhages are due mainly to an increase in vascular permeability (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1995). The pathogenesis of the lymphopenia in the acute form has been related to apoptosis of lymphocytes, mainly on the T area of lymphoid organs (Carrasco et al. 1996). However, there is no evidence of virus replication in T- or B-cells (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1995; Minguez et al. 1988).

The subacute form is characterized by a transitory thrombocytopenia (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1996). The alveolar edema observed in the last stages of the acute and subacute form of ASF (and main cause of death) is a consequence of the activation of pulmonary intravascular macrophages (Carrasco et al. 1996; Sierra et al. 1990).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Clinically, ASF can resemble several other diseases of pigs, especially classical swine fever (hog cholera) and erysipelas. Therefore, laboratory tests are required to establish a definitive diagnosis (Sánchez-Vizcaíno 1986). Moreover, ASF can present a range of clinical signs, depending primarily on virus virulence, exposure dose, and exposure route. The clinical forms of ASF range from peracute (i.e., sudden death with few, if any, previous clinical signs) to subclinical or inapparent. In Africa, ASF appears mostly as an acute disease characterized by loss of appetite, high temperature (40–41°C), leukopenia, hemorrhages in internal organs, hemorrhages in the skin (especially the skin of the ears and flanks), and high mortality (Mebus et al. 1983; Moulton and Coggins 1968).

Outside of Africa, it is possible to see acute outbreaks of ASF, but subacute or chronic forms are more common. The subacute form is characterized by transitory thrombocytopenia, leukopenia, and numerous hemorrhagic lesions (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1997). The chronic form is characterized by respiratory alteration, abortion, and low mortality (Arias et al. 1986).

**LESIONS**

A wide variety of lesions have been observed in ASF, depending on the virulence of the viral strain. The acute and subacute forms are characterized by extensive hemorrhages and lymphoid tissue destruction. Conversely, lesions may be minimal or absent in the subclinical and chronic forms (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1995; Mebus et al. 1983).

The principal gross lesions are observed in the spleen, lymph nodes, kidneys, and heart (Sanchez Botija 1982). The spleen may be darkened, enlarged, infarcted, and friable (Figure 13.2). Sometimes lesions are large infarcts with subcapsular haemorrhages. Lymph nodes are hemorrhagic, edematous, and friable (Figure 13.3). They often look like dark-red hematomas. Because of congestion and subcapsular haemorrhage, cut sections of affected lymph nodes sometime have a marbled appearance. Kidneys usually have petechial hemorrhages on the cortical (Figure 13.4) and cut surfaces, as well as in the renal pelvis. An intense hydropericardium with serohemorrhagic fluid is present in some cases. Petechial and ecchymotic haemorrhages can be observed in epicardium and endocardium. Other lesions can also be observed in acute ASF, such as serohemorrhagic fluid in the abdominal cavity, with edema and hemorrhages throughout the alimentary tract. Congestion of the liver and the gall bladder can be observed, as well as petechial hemorrhages in the mucosa of the urinary bladder. Hydrothorax and petechial hemorrhages of the pleura are frequently found in the thoracic cavity, and lungs are usually edematous. Intense congestion is observed in the meninges, choroid plexus, and encephalon (Arias et al. 1986).

The most predominant form of ASF outside Africa has been the subacute form, which is similar to the
13.2. Enlarged and darkened spleen from acute ASF.

13.3. Lymph nodes from a normal pig (left), a pig with subacute ASF (center), and a pig with acute ASF (right).

13.4. Kidney from a pig with acute ASF showing numerous petechiae on the cortical surface.
acute form except for milder lesions. The subacute form is characterized by large hemorrhages in lymph nodes and kidney. The spleen is enlarged and hemorrhagic. Congestion and edema can be observed in lungs and, in some cases, an interstitial pneumonia has been found (Arias et al. 1986).

In the acute form of ASF, histopathological lesions are present in blood vessels and in lymphoid organs. These lesions are characterized by hemorrhages, microthrombosis, and damage of the endothelial cells with accumulations of dead cells in the subendothelium (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1995). Hemorrhagic splenomegaly, characteristic of the acute and subacute forms, is a consequence of the loss of splenic architecture caused by viral replication and resulting necrosis of the splenic fixed macrophages (Carrasco et al. 1997). The lymphoid tissue destruction in the acute form is mainly observed on the T area of the lymphoid organs, but no evidence of virus replication in lymphocytes has been observed (Carrasco et al. 1996; Minguez et al. 1988).

The chronic form of ASF is characterized by alterations in the respiratory tract, but lesions in the chronic form may be minimal or absent (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1995; Mebus et al. 1983). Lesions include fibrinous pleuritis, pleural adhesions, caseous pneumonia, and hyperplasia of the lymphoreticular tissues. Fibrinous pericarditis and necrotic skin lesions are also common (Arias et al. 1986; Moulton and Coggins 1968).

IMMUNITY

The immune mechanisms involved in protection against ASF are poorly understood, and all attempts to develop an effective vaccine have been unsuccessful. The difficulty in inducing effective immunity may be related to the great variability observed among ASFV isolates. It may also be related to the fact that ASFV replicates in some cells typically involved in the immune response. Although there is no evidence for replication of ASFV in either T- and B-cells (Gomez-Villamandos et al. 1995; Minguez et al. 1988), it does replicate in monocytes and macrophages. If immune suppression has a role, however, it is not obvious (Sánchez-Vizcaíno et al. 1981).

ASFV is highly antigenic, and high levels of specific antibodies are produced during ASFV infection. IgM can be detected by 4 days post infection and IgG by 6–8 days post infection (Sánchez-Vizcaíno et al. 1979). Antibodies are detectable for a long time after the initial exposure. Antibodies against ASFV have been shown to delay the onset of the ASF clinical signs, to reduce the levels of viremia, and to protect pigs against the potential fatal consequences of infection (Onisk et al. 1994; Schlafer et al. 1984).

Early experiments demonstrated the absence of neutralizing antibodies against ASFV in sera from naturally or experimental infected pigs. However, recovered pigs produced normal levels of neutralizing antibodies in response to foot and mouth virus vaccine, suggesting that humoral responses are not adversely affected by ASFV (De Boer 1967). Other authors (Ruiz Gonzalvo et al. 1986) have demonstrated that different ASFV isolates are largely neutralized by convalescent porcine sera, but a persistent 10% fraction of nonneutralized virus remained. On the other hand, Gomez-Puertas et al. (1996) reported that ASFV-induced antibodies in serum collected from convalescent pigs effectively neutralized ASFV before and after it was bound to susceptible cells. However, ASFV-specific antibodies have never been demonstrated to entirely fulfill the classic definition of virus neutralization. On the other hand, cytotoxic T lymphocytes from recovered pigs can destroy infected macrophages (Martins and Leitao 1994), suggesting that cell-mediated immunity may be an important component of the protective response. Overall, the relative roles of antibodies and cell-mediated immunity in protecting against ASF are still not well understood.

DIAGNOSIS

Laboratory studies are essential to establish a definitive diagnosis of ASF because of the similarity of ASF clinical signs and lesions to other hemorrhagic pig diseases—e.g., classical swine fever (hog cholera), erysipelas, and septicemic salmonellosis. As in other viral diseases, the laboratory diagnosis of ASF is based on the demonstration of infectious virus, viral antigens, viral DNA, or specific antibodies. A wide variety of laboratory tests are available for detecting either ASFV or homologous antibodies (Arias and Sánchez-Vizcaíno 2002; Sánchez-Vizcaíno 1986).

Several techniques have been adapted for the identification of ASFV. However, at present, the most convenient, safe, and frequently used techniques are direct immunofluorescence (DIF) (Bool et al. 1969), the hemadsorption test (HA) (Malmquist and Hay 1960), and polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (Wilkinson 2000; Aguero et al. 2003).

Direct immunofluorescence (DIF) is based on the demonstration of viral antigen in impression smears or frozen tissues sections from spleen, lung, lymph nodes or kidney reacted with a conjugated immunoglobulin against ASFV. It is a fast, economical test with high diagnostic sensitivity for the acute form of ASF. However, for subacute or chronic forms, DIF has a diagnostic sensitivity of only 40%. This decrease in sensitivity seems to be related to the formation of antigen-antibody complexes in the tissues of infected pigs, which block the reaction between the ASFV antigen and ASF conjugate when such tissues are tested in the laboratory (Sánchez-Vizcaíno 1986).

HA, because of its diagnostic sensitivity and specificity, is useful under the widest range of circumstances.
It should be performed to confirm any new outbreak, especially when other tests are negative. The HA test is based on the attachment of erythrocytes to the external (cytoplasmic) membrane of ASFV-infected porcine macrophages cultured in vitro. Typically, the erythrocytes form a rosette around the infected macrophages before the appearance of the ASFV-induced cytopathic effects (Figure 13.5) (Malmquist and Hay 1960). However, although HA is the most sensitive test for ASFV detection, it is important to recognize that a few field strains of ASFV have been isolated that induce cytopathic effect in macrophages but do not induce HA (Sanchez Botija 1982). These strains were identified using DIF sediments of these cell cultures.

The detection of a wide range of ASFV isolates by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) was made possible by using primers from a highly conserved region of the viral genome. PCR has been used to identify ASFV isolates from all the known virus genotypes, including both nonhemadsorbing and low virulence viruses (Wilkinson 2000; Aguero et al. 2003). PCR has been particularly useful for identifying viral DNA in tissues unsuitable for other diagnostic tests. It is an excellent and rapid technique that can be used as a routine diagnostic method for ASFV in surveillance, control, and eradication programs (Aguero et al. 2003). A confirmatory method based on restriction endonuclease analysis has been developed recently (Aguero et al. 2003).

The study of antibodies to ASFV is important for two reasons. First, the presence of ASFV antibodies is indicative of infection, since no vaccines are yet available. Second, specific ASFV IgG is detectable in blood from the 6th to 8th day after inoculation and for a long time, even years, thereafter. The early appearance and subsequent persistence of antibodies is the reason they are so useful in studying subacute and chronic forms of the disease. For the same reason, they play an important role in testing strategies implemented as part of eradication programs (Arias and Sánchez-Vizcaíno 2002).

Several techniques have been adapted to ASF antibody detection, but at present indirect immunofluorescence (IIF), indirect enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) (Sánchez-Vizcaíno et al. 1979, 1983) and the immunoblotting assay (IB) (Pastor et al. 1987), are the most frequently used.

The IIF test is a fast technique with high sensitivity and specificity for the detection of ASF antibodies from either sera or tissue exudates (Sanchez Botija et al. 1970). IIF is based on the detection of ASF antibodies that bind to a monolayer of cell lines infected with a cell culture-adapted ASFV. The antibody-antigen reaction is detected by fluorescein-labelled A-protein. Using both tests IIF and DIF, it is possible to detect from 85–95% of ASF cases (acute, subacute, and chronic) in less than 3 hours. (Sánchez-Vizcaíno 1986).

At present, ELISA is the most useful method for large-scale ASF serological studies. It is based on the detection of ASF antibodies bound to the viral proteins by addition of protein A conjugated with an enzyme that produces a visible color reaction when it reacts with the appropriate substrate.

The IB test is a highly specific, sensitive, and easy-to-interpret technique that has been successfully used as an alternative method to IIF for confirmation of questionable ELISA results (Arias and Sánchez-Vizcaíno 1992).

Samples that should be collected for ASF laboratory diagnosis are lymph nodes, kidneys, spleen, lung, blood, and serum. Tissues are used for virus isolation (HA test), viral antigen and DNA detection (DIF, PCR), blood is used for virus isolation (HA, PCR), and tissues exudates and serum for antibodies detection (IIF, ELISA, IB).

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

No treatment or effective vaccine against ASF virus is available. Many attempts have been made to develop a satisfactory vaccine, beginning in 1963, when the first live-attenuated vaccine was used in Portugal (Manso et al. 1963).


In the late 1990s, an apparently novel porcine circovirus (PCV)-like virus was detected worldwide in diseased and nondiseased pigs (Allan and Ellis 2000). This virus was distinct from the known PCV contaminant of PK-15 cell cultures (Tischer et al. 1974, 1982). It was proposed that the original PCV should be designated porcine circovirus type 1 (PCV1), and the new virus associated with clinical disease be designated porcine circovirus type 2 (PCV2) (Allan et al. 1999).

PCV2 infection has been associated with postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS) (Clark 1996; Harding 1996), porcine dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome (PDNS) (Rosell et al. 2000), porcine respiratory disease complex (Allan and Ellis 2000), and reproductive disorders (West et al. 1999). Recently, the terminology “porcine circovirus diseases” (PCVD) has been proposed to group diseases or conditions linked to PCV2 (Allan et al. 2002a). Among PCVD, only PMWS is considered to have a severe impact on swine production, with an estimated cost of approximately 600 million Euros per year to the pig industry in Europe.

ETIOLOGY

PCV2 belongs to the genus Circovirus in the family Circoviridae (Figure 14.1) (McNulty et al. 2000). The circular, single-stranded DNA genome of PCV2 contains 1767–1768 nucleotides (Hamel et al. 1998; Meehan et al. 1998) and analysis of PCV2 viruses from around the world has shown that they all belong to a phylogenetic cluster with a nucleotide sequence identity greater than 93% (Larochelle et al. 2002).

Little information is available on the biological and physicochemical characteristics of PCV2. However, it is known that PCV1 has a buoyant density of 1.37 g/ml in CsCl, is not able to hemagglutinate erythrocytes from a wide range of species, is resistant to inactivation at pH 3 and by chloroform, and is stable at 70°C for 15 minutes (Allan et al. 1994). It is probable that these properties are also common to PCV2. Exposure of PCV2 for 10 minutes at room temperature to a number of commercial disinfectants based on chlorhexidine, formaldehyde, iodine, and alcohols lead to a reduction in virus titer (Royer et al. 2001).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

PCV2 is considered ubiquitous (Allan and Ellis 2000) and domestic and feral swine appear to be the natural host (Segalés and Domingo 2002; Vicente et al. 2004). Non-suidae species are apparently not susceptible to PCV2 infection (Segalés and Domingo 2002).

Oronasal exposure is considered the most likely and frequent natural route of PCV2 transmission. Attempts to infect fetuses by intranasal inoculation of pregnant sows or artificial insemination have yielded differing, inconclusive results (Cariolet et al. 2001; Nielsen et al. 2004).

PCV2 nucleic acid can be detected by PCR in all excretions and secretions (Bolin et al. 2001; Calsamiglia et al. 2004a; Krakowka et al. 2000; Larochelle et al. 2000) of both PMWS and non-PMWS affected pigs and has also been demonstrated in serum from pigs up to 28 weeks of age under field conditions (Rodríguez-Arrioja et al. 2002).

PMWS is a multifactorial disease of pigs where PCV2 infection is needed for the full expression of the clinical condition. Barrow pigs are considered more prone to develop PMWS than females (Corrégé et al. 2001). Other risk factors for PMWS include litter of origin (Madec et al. 2000), low birth weight, low weaning weight, and low weight at the beginning of the fattening period (Corrégé et al. 2001). PMWS-affected farms commonly have other infections or diseases (Ellis et al. 2004). Field observations from farmers and veterinarians have suggested that certain genetic lines of pigs, specifically in relation to boar lines, are more or less susceptible to PMWS. This observation has been supported by recent experimental studies where Landrace pigs were experimentally shown to be more likely to develop PMWS le-
sions than Duroc and Large White pigs (Opriessnig et al. 2004a). Studies reported contradictory results with the use of the Pietrain boar line. The use of this genetic line did not have an effect on the offspring in one study (Rose et al. 2003a), but another study showed lower general postweaning and PMWS associated mortalities (López-Soria et al. 2004).

PATHOGENESIS

The cells that support PCV2 replication in vivo have not been identified. The large amount of PCV2 virus antigen found in macrophages and dendritic cells of diseased pigs appears to be the result of the accumulation of viral particles (Gilpin et al. 2003, Vincent et al. 2003) and not the result of virus replication in these cells. PCV2 replicates in fetal myocardiocytes in experimentally infected porcine fetuses (Sánchez et al. 2003). PCV2 is also able to replicate in vivo produced zona pellucida-free morulae and blastocysts (Mateusen et al. 2004), although the importance of this finding in naturally occurring reproductive disease is unknown. To date, studies on tissue sections from pigs with PDNS have failed to consistently demonstrate PCV2 antigen or nucleic acid associated with PDNS lesions.

The effect of PCV2 on the immune system in PMWS-affected and PCV2-subclinically infected pigs may be important in the pathogenesis of the disease. The most repeatable PMWS disease models have been obtained using PCV2 inoculation in combination with infectious and noninfectious cofactors (Allan et al. 2004a). It has been shown experimentally that stimulation and/or activation of the immune system of PCV2-infected pigs by some viruses or noninfectious factors up-regulates PCV2 replication and increases viral loads in tissues and serum (Allan et al. 1999, 2000; Harms et al. 2002; Krakowka et al. 2000, 2001; Rovira et al. 2002), indicating that PCV2 infection and immunostimulation can be pivotal events in the development of PMWS (Krakowka et al. 2001). The mechanism by which co-infection or immunostimulation may trigger the development of PMWS in PCV2 infected pigs is still unknown (Darwich et al. 2004). Conversely, typical microscopic lymphoid lesions in tissues from PMWS affected pigs (Clark 1997; Rosell et al. 1999), the association of the disease with opportunistic pathogens (Clark 1997; Carrasco et al. 2000; Nuñez et al. 2003; Segalés et al. 2003), and other changes in immune cell subsets in lymphoid tissues and peripheral blood mononuclear cells (Chianini et al. 2003; Darwich et al. 2002, 2003b; Nielsen et al. 2003; Segalés et al. 2001) are regular features of PMWS in severely affected pigs, suggesting an immunosuppressive status in diseased pigs (Segalés et al. 2004a).

Recent studies on field cases of PMWS have shown that pigs with clinical disease have an evident and significant alteration of the cytokine mRNA expression patterns of several proinflammatory and regulatory cytokines in different lymphoid tissues (Darwich et al. 2003b). However, it was not clear from these studies whether the altered profiles were related to the development of PMWS or a consequence of the severely altered cell population dynamics in lymphoid tissues of diseased animals. In these studies, a significant overexpression of IL-10 mRNA in the thymus of PMWS-affected pigs, compared to nonaffected pigs, was reported. This was associated with thymic depletion and atrophy (Darwich et al. 2003b). In contrast, Sipos et al. (2004) reported no significant differences in the expression of cytokines in blood and tissue samples from field cases of PMWS-affected pigs when compared to nonaffected pigs and concluded that their results did not support either a Th1 profile response to viral infection or a profile indicative of T cell immunosupression. However, the same authors suggested that animals under investigation were probably at the remitting stage of the disease, potentially ameliorating differences between both groups (Sipos et al. 2004).

Studies on sequential blood samples from pigs experimentally infected with PCV2 have also indicated an increase in IL-10 production in PMWS-affected inoculates, compared to inoculates that remained subclinically infected. This increase was detected only late in the infection and was interpreted by the authors to reflect the effects of clinical PMWS development, rather than contributing to the initiation of the disease (Stevenson et al. 2004). However, in the same study a consistent down-regulation of interferon was noted early in infected pigs that developed PMWS, when compared to infected pigs that remained subclinically infected. It was concluded that the inability of some PCV2-infected pigs to produce interferon early in the infection process may be a key factor in an inappropriate immune response to PCV2 infection that leads to disease (Stevenson et al., 2004). Reduction in interferon production and increase
of IL-10 production in PCV2 experimentally infected pigs that develop PMWS have now been confirmed by other workers using a different experimental model (Hasslung et al. 2004). Additionally, it has recently been shown in in vitro studies that PCV2 interaction with porcine natural interferon producing cells (NIPC) results in a down-regulation in the ability of these cells to produce interferon (Vincent et al. 2004).

In vitro studies on peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) from healthy and PMWS-diseased pigs have revealed substantial and specific effects on functional capabilities of PBMC of PMWS pigs in terms of cytokine release (Darwich et al. 2003a). On the other hand, no specific differences were seen in expression of cell surface markers of PBMC or alveolar macrophages exposed in vitro to PCV2 when compared to mock-infected controls (Gilpin et al. 2001, Vincent et al. 2003).

To date, the results on the interactions of PCV2 with the porcine immune system are controversial and further studies are required. These studies should focus on the interactions following infection and prior to the development of clinical disease in an attempt to elucidate the pathways that determine clinical and/or subclinical infections.

In regard to PDNS, it has been postulated that excessive PCV2 antibody titers may trigger the disease (Wellenberg et al. 2004), but this hypothesis awaits experimental confirmation.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND LESIONS**

**Postweaning Multisystemic Wasting Syndrome (PMWS)**

PMWS most commonly affects pigs at 2–4 months of age. Morbidity in affected farms is commonly 4–30% (occasionally 50–60%), and mortality ranges from 4–20% (Segalés and Domingo 2002). PMWS is characterized clinically by wasting, pallor of the skin, respiratory distress, and occasionally, diarrhea and icterus (Figure 14.2) (Harding and Clark 1997). Enlarged subcutaneous lymph nodes are a common finding in the early clinical phases of PMWS.

PMWS lesions are primarily found in lymphoid tissues and enlargement of lymph nodes is the most prominent feature of the early clinical phases of PMWS (Clark 1997; Rosell et al. 1999). Normal sized, or even atrophied, lymph nodes are usually seen in more advanced phases of PMWS (Segalés et al. 2004b) and the thymus is frequently atrophied in diseased pigs (Darwich et al. 2003b).

The histopathological lymphoid lesions observed in PMWS-affected pigs are characterized by lymphocyte depletion together with infiltration by large histiocytic cells and giant multinucleate cells (Figure 14.3) (Clark 1997; Rosell et al. 1999). In thymus, cortical atrophy is a prominent finding (Darwich et al. 2003b). Cytoplasmic viral inclusions may be found in histiocytes or dendritic cells (Figure 14.4).

Lungs may be enlarged, noncollapsed, and rubbery in consistency, in a diffuse or patchy distribution. These findings correspond microscopically to interstitial pneumonia. Peribronchial fibrosis and fibrous bronchiolitis occurs in advanced cases (Clark 1997; Segalés et al. 2004b).

In a few cases of PMWS, the liver is enlarged or atrophied, pale, and firm, with a fine granular surface that corresponds microscopically to widespread cytopathic changes and inflammation (Clark 1997; Segalés et al. 2004b). Pigs may show generalized icterus at this latter stage.

Some pigs show white spots in the kidney cortex
(nonpurulent interstitial nephritis). Foci of lymphohistiocytic inflammatory infiltrates may be seen in many tissues of pigs affected by PMWS (Segalés et al. 2004b).

**Porcine Dermatitis and Nephropathy Syndrome**

PDNS affects nursery, growing, and adult pigs (Drolet et al. 1999). The prevalence of the syndrome is usually below 1% (Segalés et al. 1998), although higher frequency has been described (Gresham et al. 2000). Mortality approaches 100% in pigs older than 3 months of age versus approximately 50% of affected younger pigs. Severe, acutely affected pigs die within a few days after the onset of clinical signs. Surviving pigs tend to recover and gain weight 7–10 days after the beginning of the syndrome (Segalés et al. 1998).

PDNS-affected pigs are anorexic and depressed, with little or no pyrexia (Drolet et al. 1999). They may be prostrate, reluctant to move, and/or stiff-gaited. The most obvious sign of PDNS is the presence of irregular, red-to-purple macules and papules in the skin, primarily on the hind limbs and perineal area (Figure 14.5), but sometimes more generally distributed. With time, the lesions become covered by dark crusts. The lesions gradually fade, sometimes leaving scars (Drolet et al. 1999). Macules and papules are seen microscopically as necrotic and hemorrhagic tissue associated with necrotizing vasculitis (Segalés et al. 2004b). Necrotizing vasculitis is a systemic feature.

Pigs that die acutely with PDNS have bilaterally enlarged kidneys with fine granular cortical surface, small reddish pinpoint cortical lesions, and edema of the renal pelvis (Segalés et al., 2004b). These lesions correspond to a fibrino-necrotizing glomerulitis with nonpurulent interstitial nephritis. Pigs with prolonged disease may show chronic glomerulonephritis (Segalés et al. 1998). Normally, both skin and renal lesions are present in PDNS, but in few occasions, skin or renal lesions may occur alone.

Lymph nodes may be enlarged and red in color. Splenic infarcts may be also present (Segalés et al. 1998). Microscopically, lymphoid lesions similar to PMWS are frequently observed in PDNS affected pigs (Rosell et al. 2000).

**Reproductive Disease**

PCV2 has been linked to late term abortions and stillbirths (West et al. 1999). However, PCV2-associated reproductive disease under field conditions is rare (Pensaert et al. 2004). This is probably due to the fact that the seroprevalence of PCV2 in adult pigs is high and, therefore, most breeding herds are not susceptible to the clinical disease. In PCV2-associated reproductive disease, stillborn and nonviable neonatal piglets show chronic, passive, hepatic congestion and cardiac hypertrophy with multifocal areas of myocardial discoloration (West et al. 1999). The main microscopic lesion corresponds to a fibrotic and/or necrotic myocarditis (West et al. 1999).

**IMMUNITY**

In experimentally infected pigs, seroconversion to PCV2 has been demonstrated to occur between 14 and 28 days post infection (PI) (Allan et al. 1999; Balasch et al. 1999; Krakowka et al. 2001; Pogranichniy et al. 2000). Seroconversion has been demonstrated in experimentally infected pigs with and without clinical disease, but some studies have shown that clinically diseased pigs seroconvert at a later stage post infection with PCV2 (Bolin et al. 2001).

Under field conditions, colostral antibodies typically
decline during the lactating and nursery periods, followed by an active seroconversion (Blanchard et al. 2003; Larochelle et al. 2003; Rodríguez-Arrioja et al. 2002; Rose et al. 2002). Seroconversion usually occurs around 7–12 weeks of age, and antibodies may last at least until 28 weeks of age (Rodríguez-Arrioja et al. 2002). PMWS is not usually observed in pigs younger than 4 weeks of age (Segalés and Domingo 2002), which may be associated with maternal immunity against the development of PMWS (Allan et al 2002b; Calsamiglia et al. 2004b). However, other studies have shown no significant protective effect in relation to high levels of colostral-derived serum antibodies to PCV2 in piglets and development of PMWS (Allan et al. 2004b; Hassing et al. 2004). Although a humoral immune response to PCV2 in the field takes place at 2–3 months of age, a variable percentage of growing or finishing pigs may be viremic, suggesting that PCV2 antibodies are not fully protective against the infection (Larochelle et al. 2003; Rodríguez-Arrioja et al. 2002; Sibila et al. 2004). This situation also seems to occur in adult pigs under field conditions, since they can be infected but do not show apparent or detectable clinical signs (Calsamiglia et al. 2002). Whether this is due to humoral immunity to PCV2 or natural age resistance is not known at present.

Only one report has dealt with neutralizing antibodies to PCV2 (Pogranichniy et al. 2000). Virus-neutralizing antibodies were not detected until day 28 post infection. As neutralizing antibodies developed, cross-reactivity with PCV1 also developed using this serological test.

**DIAGNOSIS**

The respiratory form of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) and all diseases and conditions that cause wasting must be differentiated from PMWS (Harding and Clark 1997). For PDNS, differential diagnoses include any condition that causes red to dark discoloration of the skin, as well as conditions that cause petechial hemorrhages in the kidneys (Segalés 2002). Special note should be made of the similarity of gross lesions between PDNS, classical swine fever, and African swine fever. The reproductive form of PCV2 is clinically indistinguishable from other swine diseases that cause late-term abortions and stillbirths.

A herd diagnosis of PMWS is based on the occurrence of a clinical process characterized mainly by wasting and mortality in excess of the expected and/or historical level for the farm and the individual diagnosis of PMWS, as described above, in a number of pigs (Segalès et al. 2003).

**Porcine Dermatitis and Nephropathy Syndrome**

The diagnosis of PDNS is based on two main criteria (Segalés 2002):

1. The presence of hemorrhagic and necrotizing skin lesions, primarily located on the hind limbs and perineal area, and/or swollen and pale kidneys with generalized cortical petechia
2. Presence of systemic necrotizing vasculitis, and necrotizing and fibrinous glomerulonephritis

**Reproductive Disease**

The diagnosis of PCV2-associated reproductive disease should include three criteria:

1. Late-term abortions and stillbirths, sometimes with evident hypertrophy of the fetal heart
2. The presence of heart lesions characterized by extensive fibrosing and/or necrotizing myocarditis
3. The presence of high amounts of PCV2 in myocardial lesions and other fetal tissues

**Laboratory Confirmation**

Several methods have been developed to detect PCV2 in tissues. In situ hybridization (ISH) and immunohistochemistry (IHC) are the most widely used tests (McNeilly et al. 1999; Rosell et al. 1999) for the diagnosis of PCVD. PCV2 nucleic acid or antigen in PMWS and PDNS affected pigs is usually found in the cytoplasm of histiocytes, multinucleate giant cells and other monocyte/macrophage lineage cells (Allan and Ellis 2000), as well as in other cell types (Segalès et al. 2004b). In aborted fetuses, PCV2 is found in the myocardocyte (Sánchez et al. 2001).

A strong correlation has been observed between the quantity of PCV2 seen in tissues and the severity of microscopic lymphoid lesions in PMWS (Figure 14.6) (Rosell et al. 1999). Since the amount of PCV2 in damaged tissues is the major difference between PMWS affected pigs and PCV2 subclinically infected pigs, techniques that allow PCV2 quantification in tissues and/or
serum could potentially be used to diagnose PMWS (McNeilly et al. 2002, Olvera et al. 2004). Nonquantitative polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques should not be used to diagnose PCVD because the virus is ubiquitous and positive results in the absence of clinical disease are common.

Several serological techniques to detect antibodies to PCV2 have been developed (Segalés and Domingo 2002). However, diagnosis of PCVD using serological techniques is problematic because PCV2 is ubiquitous and seroconversion patterns are relatively similar in PMWS affected and nonaffected farms.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

PMWS is considered a multifactorial disease. In addition to PCV2 infection, environmental conditions are postulated to cause the expression of disease (Madec et al. 2000). Viral and bacterial coinfections with PCV2 are also conjectured to serve as triggers for PMWS (Rose et al. 2003b, Ellis et al. 2004). Consequently, control measures have focused on the control or elimination of postulated cofactors and triggers. The implementation of “Madec’s 20-point plan,” a list of management practices intended to lower the impact of the disease, significantly decreased the mortality in severely affected farms (Guilmoto and Wessel-Robert 2000). Likewise, the control of concurrent viral and bacterial infections in the postweaning area may decrease the incidence of PMWS.

Some experimental and field studies suggest that immune activation may be an important triggering factor of PMWS in some farms. From a practical point of view, to exclude the use of vaccines from sanitary programs may be inappropriate, since the risk of eliminating effective vaccines may be greater than the risk of inducing PMWS in a low percentage of pigs in a given pig population. Therefore, producers with PMWS affected herds should consider determining the approximate timing of PCV2 infection, with the final objective of rescheduling the timing of vaccination as a potential plan to minimize the disease (Opriessnig et al. 2004b).

It has been reported that PCV2 infection or low serological titers to PCV2 in sows at farrowing increased the overall mortality of their offspring to PMWS (Allan et al. 2002b, Calsamiglia et al. 2004b). Although these observations were not corroborated in later studies (Hassing et al. 2004, Allan et al. 2004b), measures that increase maternal immunity and decrease sow viremia at farrowing may diminish piglet PMWS mortality in problem herds.

Changes in the diet of affected pigs reportedly led to partial control of PMWS on some farms (Donadeu et al. 2003). Although these results have not been confirmed by other workers, a recent study found that conjugated linoleic acid (CLA) ameliorated PCV2 experimental infection (Bassaganya-Riera et al. 2003). It has been suggested that the addition of vitamin E and/or selenium in the feed may be of benefit in those farms with PMWS (Baebko et al. 2004).

An inactivated, adjuvanted PCV2 vaccine for use in sows and gilts is now commercially available and in use under special license in some countries. In previous studies this vaccine reduced the incidence of PMWS on affected farms (Reynaud et al. 2004). Its efficacy under a wide range of farm conditions still has to be evaluated. Experimental PCV2 vaccines, including inactivated, recombinant, and DNA vaccines, as well as chimeric infectious DNA clones, have shown significant protection when evaluated on the basis of growth rate and rectal temperatures after PCV2 challenge (Blanchard et al. 2003; Fenaux et al. 2004; Pogranichniy et al. 2004).

Subcutaneous injection of suckling or nursery pigs with serum collected from commercial market age pigs (serum therapy) was reportedly successful in reducing mortality in several PMWS affected farms (Ferreira et al. 2001). However, the results of this procedure have been variable and even deleterious in some cases. It is important to note that the use of “serum therapy” presents significant health and biosecurity risks.

**REFERENCES**


CD/CD pigs concurrently infected with type 2 porcine circovirus and PRRSV. Vet Pathol 38:528–539.


porcine dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome. Vet Rec 146:40–43.


Classical swine fever (CSF), formerly known as “hog cholera,” is a highly contagious viral disease of worldwide importance and one of the Office International des Epizooties (OIE) List A diseases. Wild and domestic pigs are the only natural reservoirs of classical swine fever virus (CSFV). Clinical outbreaks suggestive of CSF were reported in the early 19th century (Fuchs 1968; Kernkamp 1961; USDA 1889), and CSF was recognized as viral in nature by 1903 (Wise 1981). Historically, peracute, acute, chronic, or prenatal forms of CSF were attributed to distinct levels of virus virulence. However, characterization of strain virulence is difficult since the same isolate can induce different signs depending on pig age, breeding, health status, and immune status.

Pigs are also susceptible to other pestiviruses, including bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV) and border disease virus (BDV) (Carbrey et al. 1976; Terpstra and Wensvoort 1988). Bovine viral diarrhea was first described in 1946 as an infectious and contagious disease of cattle; mucosal disease was reported in 1953. Border disease in sheep, characterized by congenital disorders in lambs, was first described in 1959 along the border between England and Wales, but the immunological relationship of BDV with BVDV was only recognized later (Hamilton and Timoney 1973). Cross-species transmission among artiodactyls has been reported for both BVDV and BDV and the terms “bovine viral diarrhea virus” and “border disease virus” are used to indicate that the virus was isolated from either cattle or sheep. In fact, these two viruses cannot be differentiated morphologically or structurally (Laude 1979).

Natural infection of swine with BVDV was first reported in Australia in 1964, but BVDV was not isolated from a naturally infected pig until 1973 (Fernelius et al. 1973). The teratogenic properties of pestiviruses are well established (Terpstra and Wensvoort 1988; Vannier et al. 1988; Wensvoort and Terpstra 1988), and infection of pregnant sows with BVDV or BDV may induce a pathology resembling congenital CSF. Pestivirus isolates from pigs are usually CSFV, but cross-neutralization tests and tests using monoclonal antibodies (Leforban et al. 1990a; Wensvoort 1989) suggest that BVDV may have been isolated from pigs in the past and misidentified as CSFV by tests based on polyclonal antibodies. Likewise, serum antibodies against BVDV or BDV have the potential to cross-react in assays for the detection of CSFV antibodies. Because of cross-reactions among pestiviruses, it is essential to identify the specific etiologic agent when pestivirus antibodies are detected in CSF eradication programs.

CSFV is endemic in parts of Eastern Europe, Southeast Asia, Central America, and South America. Although eradicated from domestic pigs in Western Europe, CSFV remains endemic in some populations of wild boar, and farms in these areas are at risk of reinfection. At present, the risk of reintroducing CSF into free areas is high. Producers and veterinarians are in the best position to detect CSF outbreaks in free areas, but early detection will require both vigilance and training in the recognition of clinical signs. A “no vaccination” policy is logical in CSFV-free areas, but emergency vaccination must be included in contingency plans in order to avoid destroying millions of pigs. For this reason, research on efficacious marker vaccines and reliable differential tests should continue. Likewise, the development of simulation models should be encouraged in order to be able to respond to changing epidemiological situations with the most effective control measures.

ETIOLOGY

CSFV, BVDV, and BDV are small, enveloped, positive, single-strand RNA viruses in the genus Pestivirus of the family Flaviviridae (Becher et al. 1999). Currently the genus Pestivirus includes four approved species: CSFV, BVDV-1, BVDV-2, and BDV. A single strain (H138) isolated from a giraffe in Kenya more than 30 years ago represents a tentative fifth species (Becher et al. 1999). Recent phylogenetic and antigenic analysis have led the same authors to propose splitting the BDV group into 3...
subgroups: BDV-1 for classical sheep isolates; BDV-2 for isolates, primarily from sheep, related to the previous strain V60 isolated from reindeer; and BDV-3 for the ovine Gifhorn isolate that differs significantly from all previously described pestiviruses, including BDV (Becher et al. 2003).

The majority of pestiviruses are noncytopathogenic in cell culture, but some BVDV isolates from cases of mucosal disease and some CSFV strains are cytopathogenic in vitro. Cytopathogenicity of BVDV is correlated with the expression of the nonstructural protein NS3, which is generated by processing a fusion protein termed NS2-3 (Kummer and Meyers 2000; Zhang et al. 2003).

The pestivirus genome is 12.5–16.5 kilobases in size and encodes for a single polyprotein (Meyers et al. 1989):

\[
\text{NH}_2-(\text{N}^\text{PRO}.C.E^\text{NS}.E1.E2.p7-\text{NS}2.3-\text{NS}4\text{A}-\text{NS}4\text{B}-\text{NS}5\text{A}-\text{NS}5\text{B})-\text{COOH}
\]

The single polyprotein is co- and posttranslationally converted to mature proteins by a combination of virus and host cell proteases (Rumenapf et al. 1993). The structure and function of some envelope proteins has been studied in some detail, but the nonstructural proteins are not well characterized. Little is known about mechanisms of viral RNA replication, packaging, or how viral particles are assembled. Virions are released from the host cell by exocytosis, usually without morphological cell damage.

CSFV is relatively stable for an RNA virus (Vanderhallen et al. 1999), but is antigenically and genetically diverse, nonetheless. Antigenic variability among CSFV isolates can be characterized using monoclonal antibodies (Edwards et al. 1991) and genetic variability evaluated using genomic sequencing. For example, two panels of monoclonal antibodies, directed against E2 and Erns glycoproteins defined 21 antigenic virus types (Kosmidou et al. 1995). Genetic characterization of new CSFV isolates has become standardized in terms of the genomic fragment sequenced, the algorithms used in constructing phylogenetic trees, and the classification of the genetic groups. Three regions of the viral genome are usually evaluated: the 3’ end of the polymerase gene (NS5B), 150 nucleotides of the 5’NTR, and 190 nucleotides of the gene encoding E2. The E2 glycoprotein is most commonly used for genetic typing because abundant sequence data are available.

CSFV is divided into three major genetic groups (Lowings et al. 1996), each with three or four subgroups: 1.1, 1.2, 1.3; 2.1, 2.2, 2.3; 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4. (Paton et al. 2000c). The phylogenetic analyses of the last decade have demonstrated a link between genotype and geographic origin (Bartak and Greiser-Wilke 2000; Stadejek et al. 1997; Vilcek 1997; Vilcek et al. 1996). Most viruses isolated from outbreaks in Western Europe in the 1990s belonged to Group 2. The situation is more complex in Central and Eastern Europe where isolates usually belong to groups 2.2 or 2.3. Group 1 isolates are present in South America (Frias-Leporeau and Greiser-Wilke 2002) and Russia (Vlasova et al. 2003); and Group 3 viruses are apparently confined to Asia (Parchariyanon et al. 2000). The Community Reference Laboratory for CSF in Hanover Germany has developed a web-accessible database of sequences from isolates throughout the world (Greiser-Wilke et al. 2000b). This database is a useful tool for identifying possible viral sources for outbreaks occurring in previously uninfected areas (Greiser-Wilke et al. 2000a; Sandvik et al. 2000).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

**Classical Swine Fever**

Domestic pig populations in Australia, New Zealand, North America, and Western Europe are free of CSF (Paton and Greiser-Wilke 2003). In South America, Chile and Uruguay have been declared CSF-free. Argentina, free of outbreaks since 1999, stopped vaccination in April 2004. CSF remains endemic in Asia (Paton et al. 2000c) and, although the situation in Africa is not well characterized, the disease has been identified in Madagascar. Extensive areas of Central and South America continue using vaccination to control the disease (Morilla and Carvajal 2002; Morilla and Rosales 2002).

The reemergence of CSF is always a risk and several areas previously free of CSF have had incursions in recent years. For example, CSF reemerged in Cuba in 1993 after an absence of more than 20 years. The outbreaks in western Cuba were apparently caused by strain Margarita (group 1.2) used in vaccine potency trials, but outbreaks in eastern Cuba were of uncertain origin, with no demonstrated relationship to Caribbean strains. The outbreaks were exacerbated by the presence of a highly susceptible (unvaccinated) swine population; the result of worsening economics on the island (Frias-Leporeau 2002). In spite of a campaign of total depopulation carried out in the Caribbean, new infections have occurred, leading the authorities to turn to vaccination as the method of control.

Under natural circumstances, the primary routes of transmission are oronasal by direct or indirect contact with infected wild or domestic pigs, or oral by ingestion of contaminated foodstuffs (Edwards et al. 2000; Fritzeimer et al. 2000; Horst et al. 1997). People should be regarded as the single most important factor in transmission of the virus between herds. In finishing units and in areas with small pig farms, transport and introduction of infected pigs accounts for the majority of outbreaks and for the spread of the disease (Terpstra 1987).

Airborne spread of CSFV has been demonstrated under experimental conditions (Dewulf et al. 2000), although its importance under field conditions is uncertain. However, in a fully susceptible population and in a
diesel fuel on the preheating of the incinerator. The incineral or incineration equipment used to depopulate herds (Elbers et al. 2001).

The possibility of CSFV transmission by semen was raised during the epidemic in the Netherlands. Following infection of two artificial insemination centers, 1680 pig herds were declared CSF-suspect (Elbers et al. 1999; Hennecken et al. 2000). Experimental studies have shown that infected boars could shed CSFV in semen, and it is assumed that the disease might be transmitted by artificial insemination (de Smit et al. 1999; Floegel et al. 2000).

Rodents and pets have been postulated to act as mechanical vectors, but recent work proved that transmission of CSFV by rats, dogs, and cats is unlikely (Dewulf et al. 2001a). Thus, euthanasia of pets during an outbreak cannot be justified, as long as they do not leave the infected farm.

Indirect transmission via people can occur when biosecurity is deficient and, for example, visitors enter the premises without changing into clothing and boots supplied by the farm (Elbers et al. 2001). Vehicles (trucks, trailers, cars) can carry virus-contaminated feces and urine over long distances, but an experiment mimicking the conditions of transport showed that transmission via excretions without direct contact between pigs was unlikely (Dewulf et al. 2002).

A quantitative approach to understanding CSFV spread among animals and herds is an area of active interest, but relatively few studies have been conducted to date. One objective of this approach is to identify the biological and population factors that affect the rate of transmission (Klinkenberg et al. 2002; Laeves et al. 1998). Another objective is to construct mathematical models that predict the course of an epidemic. Ideally, such models could provide insight into the decisions to make to control an outbreak. Such models have been created and tested with data from the epidemic in the Netherlands (Horst et al. 1997; Horst et al. 1999) and in Belgium (Mintiens et al. 2001; Mintiens et al. 2003).

Typical of enveloped viruses, CSFV is inactivated by organic solvents (ether or chloroform) and by detergents. Sodium hydroxide (2%) is still considered the most suitable for disinfection of contaminated premises.

Despite being an enveloped virus, CSFV survives for prolonged periods in favorable environments—i.e., cool, moist, protein-rich conditions, such as those found in meat, but in liquid manure CSFV can survive for 2 weeks at 20°C and more than 6 weeks at 4°C (Haas et al. 1995). CSFV is relatively stable in a range of pH 5–10. The rate of inactivation under pH 5 is dependent on the temperature (Depner et al. 1992).

Thermal and pH stability may vary by strain, but inactivation of the virus is primarily dependent on the medium. For example, CSFV in cell culture loses its infectivity after 10 minutes at 60°C, but survives for up to 30 minutes at 68°C in defibrinated blood. For these reasons, it is difficult to give guidelines for the survival of CSFV in the environment. The survival and inactivation of CSFV was recently reviewed (Edwards 2000).

**Bovine Viral Diarrhea Virus and Border Disease Virus**

The prevalence of BVDV antibodies in the pig populations of CSFV-free countries (Australia, Ireland, Great Britain, Denmark) have been estimated at 1.6–43.5%, depending on the age of the animals and possibly on the degree of contact with cattle (Jensen 1985). In countries where CSFV is present, the situation with regard to BVDV antibodies seems to be about the same.

Cattle are the most common source of BVDV infection in pigs. In units with dairy farming, one potential source of infection is BVDV-contaminated whey or milk fed to sows (Terpstra and Wensvoort 1988). In some cases, pigs have had contact with cattle recently vaccinated with BVDV 2 (Stewart et al. 1971). In other reports, pigs and cattle were kept in separate lots and buildings, but personnel and equipment moved freely between the different farm units (Carbrey et al. 1976).

The prolonged presence of a persistently infected litter of pigs is the most likely source of BVDV or BDV to susceptible, pregnant sows (Terpstra and Wensvoort 1988; Vannier et al. 1988). Persistent BDV infection of piglets occurs when sows are infected during early pregnancy—i.e., fetuses are transplacentally infected and piglets become immunotolerant and persistently infected (Vannier et al. 1988). The course of the infection is quite similar to that described for BVDV infection in pregnant cows (Baker 1987). When a pregnant sow is infected under experimental conditions, the litter may consist of a mixture of virus-positive and antibody-positive piglets. This suggests variability in the time at which individual fetuses became infected (Edwards et al. 1995). Congenitally BDV-infected piglets appear to excrete large amounts of virus, since susceptible young animals kept in contact rapidly seroconvert and produce high antibody titers. Conversely, when piglets are infected after birth, spread of infection to in-contact animals does not occur; suggesting low or perhaps no excretion of virus (Vannier et al. 1988).

Pigs may also become infected through the use of modified live virus vaccines (CSF or Aujeszky’s disease) or other biologicals contaminated with virus (Vannier et al. 1988; Wensvoort and Terpstra 1988). In such cases, either ovine or bovine contaminants may be involved.
CLINICAL SIGNS

Classical Swine Fever

In the acute form of the CSF, the initial clinical signs include anorexia, lethargy, conjunctivitis, respiratory signs, and constipation followed by diarrhea. In the chronic form, the same clinical signs are observed, but the pigs survive for a time (2–3 months) before dying. Non-specific signs—e.g., intermittent hyperthermia, chronic enteritis, and wasting—may also be seen.

Historically, peracute, acute, chronic, or prenatal forms of CSF have been attributed to distinct levels of virus virulence. However, virus strain virulence is difficult to define because clinical signs also depend on pig age, breed, health status, and immune status (Depner et al. 1997; Floegel-Niesmann et al. 2003; Moennig et al. 2003).

Since the early 1980s, the diagnosis of CSF on the basis of clinical signs has been problematic and resulted in the belated recognition of CSF outbreaks, thereby giving time for the virus to spread. CSF is one of several diseases characterized by cutaneous hyperemia or cyanosis and non-specific clinical signs. Particularly when CSFV strains of low virulence are involved, it may be difficult to differentiate CSF from African swine fever (ASF), porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS), postweaning dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome (PDNS), salmonella, or cumarin poisoning. The one constant sign in CSF is hyperthermia (Davila et al. 2003; Floegel-Niesmann et al. 2003), usually greater than 40°C, and piglets are often seen piled in a corner. Clinical signs are more marked in piglets than adults and hyperthermia may be lower (39.5°C) in adults.

CSFV is able to cross the placenta of pregnant sows and infect fetuses at any stage of pregnancy. Depending on the strain and the time of gestation, infection can cause abortion and stillbirths. However, infection at 50–70 days of gestation can lead to the birth of persistently viremic piglets. Such piglets initially appear clinically normal, but subsequently begin to waste or develop congenital tremors (Vannier et al. 1981). This course of infection has been described as "late onset CSF" (van Oirschot and Terpstra 1977). Similar to BVDV in ruminants, these animals shed high levels of virus for several months and are important reservoirs of CSFV.

Bovine Viral Diarrhea Virus and Border Disease Virus

In the field, infection of pigs with BVDV usually occurs without clinical signs. In some cases, however, natural infection of pig herds with pestiviruses other than CSFV has been associated with breeding problems—e.g., poor conception rates, small litters, and a few abortions. Hyperthermia and colic spasms have also been described (Carbrey et al. 1976). In the Netherlands and France, signs compatible with congenital CSF infection were described in piglets born to sows vaccinated 4 months earlier with CSF or Aujeszky’s disease vaccines contaminated with a ruminant pestivirus (Vannier et al. 1988; Wensvoort and Terpstra 1988). Clinical signs in piglets included anemia, rough hair coats, growth retardation, wasting, congenital tremors, conjunctivitis, diarrrhea, polyarthritis, petechiae in the skin, and blue ear tips (Terpstra and Wensvoort 1988).

Natural infection of sows with BDV has been reported to result in reproductive signs—e.g., repeat breeding, and mummified and stillborn pigs at farrowing (Vannier et al. 1988). A high proportion of piglets from infected sows showed eyelid edema, locomotor disorders, and occasionally, diarrhea and arthritis. The mortality rate in affected litters at 2 days of age ranged from 30–70%.

There are a number of reports of experimental inoculation of pigs, primarily pregnant sows, with BVDV and BDV via oral, intranasal, intramuscular, or intruterine routes (Leforban et al. 1990b; Stewart et al. 1980; Wrathall et al. 1978). The results are inconsistent, but depend primarily on the strain used and the stage of pregnancy.

Inoculation of pregnant sows with the NADL strain of BVDV between 28 and 54 days of gestation did not produce transplacental infection of the fetuses (Stewart et al. 1980), but eyelid edema was seen in a few piglets (Leforban et al. 1990b). Inoculation of 9–18 kg piglets with the Singer strain of BVDV (Coria and McClurkin 1978) did not produce clinical disease, but the virus could be recovered from blood and tissues of inoculated pigs, and antibodies were detected in their sera after 3 weeks. When later challenged with a virulent CSFV strain, these piglets developed severe disease, but 6 of 7 survived (Stewart et al. 1971). The same strain of BVDV, when administered to fetuses at 41–65 days of gestation by transuterine injection caused death or small-sized fetuses (Mengeling 1988). Dahle et al. (1993) intranasally inoculated weaned pigs with BVDV strain OSLOSS + 2482, and then challenged with decreasing doses of CSFV 4 weeks later. After CSFV challenge, the only clinical sign observed was fever in one animal, although most animals became viremic.

Experimental inoculation of pregnant sows with BDV field strains at 30–32 days of gestation produced transplacental infection of fetuses and newborn piglets with low body weights and short body lengths (Wrathall et al. 1978). Leforban et al. (1990b) reported an increase in perinatal mortality and eyelid edema, hyperthermia, and anemia in survivors during the second week of life. Slow growth rates, respiratory signs, and diarrhea developed in pigs, some of which died by 2 months of age. Pigs without respiratory and enteritic signs survived and had normal growth despite marked snout deformations, including prognathism in one individual. BDV was isolated from blood and organs of all dead piglets, but not from survivors. When 40-day-old specific pathogen free (SPF) pigs were placed in contact
with BDV transplacentally infected piglets, they did not show clinical signs, but they developed high levels of antibody to BDV, which was able to protect them completely against challenge with a virulent strain of CSFV.

**PATHOGENESIS**

**Classical Swine Fever**

Transmission of CSFV is most commonly oronasal, with primary virus replication in the tonsils. From the tonsils, it spreads to the regional lymph nodes, then via the peripheral blood to bone marrow, visceral lymph nodes, and lymphoid structures associated with the small intestine and spleen. The spread of the virus within the pig is usually complete in less than 6 days.

Within the pig, CSFV replicates in monocyte–macrophage cells and vascular endothelial cells. CSFV is immunosuppressive, and neutralizing antibodies may not appear until 2–3 weeks after infection. Leukopenia, in particular lymphopenia, is a classic early event (Susa et al. 1992). CSF leukopenia impacts leukocyte subpopulations unequally, with B lymphocytes, helper T cells, and cytotoxic T cells the most affected. Depletion of lymphocyte subpopulations occurs 1–4 days before virus can be detected in serum by reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR).

The severity of the changes in bone marrow and circulating leukocytes suggest that cytopathic effects in uninfected cells are induced indirectly—e.g., by a soluble factor or by cell-to-cell contact, and are not a direct effect of the virus or viral protein(s). Research has shown that, at high concentration, the glycoprotein Erns induces apoptosis in lymphocytes in vitro (Bruschke et al. 1997). However, exposure to supernatant from infected cells did not induce apoptosis in target cells. Although still undescribed, such a mechanism could also account for the delay in cellular and humoral immune responses (Summerfield et al. 2001).

In cell culture, most CSFV strains grow without producing cytopathic effect and without inducing interferon alpha secretion by infected cells. Indeed, CSFV infection causes cells to acquire a greater capacity to resist apoptosis (Ruggli et al. 2003). These observations provide evidence that CSFV interferes with cellular antiviral activity and suggest the possibility that the lesions seen in pigs have an immunopathological basis.

Interactions between CSFV and the monocyte-macrophage system result in the release of mediator molecules that promote the progression of the disease. Changes in hemostatic balance are thought to be caused by proinflammatory and antiviral factors that mediate the thrombocytopenia and hemorrhage characteristic of CSFV infection (Knoetig et al. 1999). The production of inflammatory cytokines by infected endothelial cells could play a role in immunosuppresion and facilitate virus dissemination by attracting monocyctic cells (Bensaude et al. 2004). It has recently been recognized that CSFV can replicate in dendritic cells. It is possible that these highly mobile cells disseminate CSFV to various sites in the body, especially lymphoid tissues. Of themselves, interactions between CSFV-infected dendritic cells and lymphocytes are not sufficient to induce lymphocyte depletion without other interactions within the environment of the lymphoid follicles (Carrasco et al. 2004).

Understanding the CSFV–host interactions that lead to the evasion of the host’s innate immune responses, delay the onset of acquired immunity, and produce the resultant pathogenic effects is currently an active focus of research.

**Bovine Viral Diarrhea Virus and Border Disease Virus**

BVDV and BDV are pathogenic for fetal pigs, but relatively apathogenic for pigs after birth. The ability of BVDV and BDV to establish intrauterine infections in swine is well established (Stewart et al. 1980; Vannier et al. 1988; Wrathall et al. 1978). The degree of clinical disease depends on the stage of gestation at which the infection occurred. Clinical signs are more serious if sows are infected during the first trimester of pregnancy. The most severe clinical signs and lesions in fetuses or piglets are observed when sows are infected 25–41 days post-breeding (Leforban et al. 1990b; Mengeling 1988). Under experimental conditions, piglets infected in utero with BVDV or BDV became persistently infected and immunotolerant (Leforban et al. 1990b; Vannier et al. 1988). After the disappearance of maternal antibodies, no active humoral response was detected in the majority of piglets. Furthermore, the virus was isolated from piglets and was shed by some, as evidenced by infection in young animals placed in contact.

In some experimental infections of pregnant sows with BDV, the onset of the clinical signs in the piglets was delayed until 13–14 days after birth. The reason for the delayed response is unknown, but colostral antibodies ingested by piglets would presumably block the replication of the virus and/or delay disease in transplacentally infected piglets (Leforban et al. 1990b; Mengeling 1988; Vannier et al. 1988).

The pathogenicity of BVDV or BDV seems to depend on the strain used in the experiment. BDV seems to be more consistently pathogenic for fetuses, whereas variable results are obtained with BVDV viral strains. The Singer strain, adapted to replicate in porcine cells, and BVDV strain 87/6 can infect and cause mortality in porcine fetuses, whereas the NADL strain does not induce clinical disease in piglets (Edwards et al. 1995; Leforban et al. 1990b; Mengeling 1988).

**LESIONS**

**Classical Swine Fever**

CSF lesions vary in severity and distribution, depending on the course of the disease. In acute forms, the patho-
logical picture is often hemorrhagic. Leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, petechiae and ecchymoses in the skin, lymph nodes, larynx, bladder, kidney (Figure 15.1), and ileocecal junction are often described. Multifocal infarction of the margin of the spleen is characteristic, but not always present (Figure 15.2). Swollen or hemorrhagic lymph nodes or tonsils are common (Figure 15.3). In chronic forms, button ulcers in the cecum or large intestine may be present (Figure 15.4), as well as a generalized depletion of lymphoid tissues. Hemorrhagic and inflammatory lesions are less common, or even absent, despite the degeneration of endothelial cells. Congenital CSF can result in abortion, fetal mummification, stillbirths, and congenital malformations, such as central dysmyelinogenesis, cerebellar hypoplasia, microencephaly, pulmonary hypoplasia (van der Molen and van Oirschot 1981).

Floegel-Niesmann et al. (2003) compared the clinical signs and lesions produced by four field strains isolated during the 1990s from domestic pigs or wild boars in Europe with the reference Alfort 187 strain. Comparing lesions in skin, subcutis and serosae, tonsil, spleen, kidney, lymph nodes, ileum and rectum, brain, and respiratory system, they found that lymph nodes were the tissues most severely affected by all isolates, followed by necrotic lesions in the ileum and hyperemia of the brain blood vessels (Table 15.1). Thus, these tissues were the most reliable for pathological diagnosis of CSF. Infarction of the spleen and necrotic lesions of the tonsil, although commonly described in the earlier

15.1. Kidney showing numerous petechial hemorrhages (Courtesy W. C. Stewart).

15.2. Infarction of the spleen (Courtesy L. D. Miller).
literature, were infrequent. Likewise, respiratory signs were absent or mild.

Bovine Viral Diarrhea Virus and Border Disease Virus
When infected postnatally with BVDV or BDV, no or very mild lesions are observed in pigs.

Hyperemia of the small intestine was seen in one pig 11 days after being placed in contact with calves infected with NADL strain BVDV (Stewart et al. 1971). A transient leukopenia was detected during the first week following experimental infection of pigs with a pig isolate of BVDV (Carbrey et al. 1976). In utero infection of fetuses by transplacental transmission is followed by consistent pathological disorders in fetuses or piglets. In 13 naturally occurring BVDV outbreaks in Holland, chronic gastroenteritis and septicemia with hemorrhages in lymph nodes, epicardium, and kidneys were the most consistent lesions reported. Inflammation of the digestive tract was frequently characterized by catarrh, hypertrophy, or ulceration of the mucosa. Necrotic tonsillitis, icterus, polyserositis, polyarthritis, and atrophy of the
thymus were also noted (Terpstra and Wensvoort 1988). A porcine BVDV isolate administered to gilts at 42–46 days of gestation produced significant microscopic lesions in the leptomeninges and the choroid plexus of the fetus, characterized by collections of lymphocytes, histiocytes, and cellular accumulation in the vascular adventitia and perivascular spaces (Stewart et al. 1980).

In the case of BDV, experimental inoculation of sows on day 34 of gestation produced cerebellar hypoplasia in 9 of 19 liveborn piglets, with a small meningocele in one of the nine (Wrathall et al. 1978). The French BDV isolate Aveyron (Chappuis et al. 1984) inoculated into sows at day 30 of gestation produced lesions in lymphoid tissues in some piglets. Marked hemorrhages in lymph nodes and other lymphoid tissues were found in stillborn fetuses or in piglets that died shortly after birth. Histological examination of lymph nodes, spleen, and tonsils revealed marked subacute inflammatory lesions, characterized by accumulations of lymphocytes, plasmacytes, and eosinophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes, numerous secondary follicles, increased populations of reticulum cells, and lymphoid hypoplasia with pyknosis and karyorrhexis. Thymus, liver and nervous tissues were normal (Leforban 1990).

DIAGNOSIS

Classical Swine Fever

Recent CSF epidemics in Europe have shown that early recognition of CSF and prompt elimination of CSF-infected animals is the key to control. The longer CSF remains undetected, the greater the opportunity for the virus to spread (Elbers et al. 1999).

It should be recognized that farmers and veterinarians detected 75% of the recent CSF epidemics on the basis of clinical observations. The need to establish a standardized protocol for evaluating herds for CSF has been recognized (Davila et al. 2003; Elbers et al. 2002; Mittelholzer et al. 2000). However, the list of clinical criteria cannot be overly complex if it is to be used in the field. Average daily gain and feed consumption are two quantifiable measures that may be of use. Body temperature may also be useful, since hyperthermia is consistently associated with CSF and appears before, or concurrently, with the first clinical signs.

Because there are no pathognomonic clinical signs in CSF, laboratory diagnosis is always required for confirmation. Although it is not a specific diagnostic, leukopenia is an indicator of CSFV infection and a leukocyte count can be used as a screening assay (Dewulf et al. 2004). A variety of specific methods are available for diagnosis of CSFV infection. Since CSFV, BVDV, and BDV share common antigens, it is of the utmost importance to discriminate between these. Clearly, the consequence of a diagnosis of CSF is very distinct from the diagnosis of another pestivirus. Monoclonal antibodies are used in a variety of techniques to specifically identify the virus — e.g., virus isolation (VI), fluorescent antibody test (FAT), or ELISA tests.

Detection of CSFV. Virus isolation (VI) is still the most sensitive and specific method of virus detection. Virus may be isolated from tissue homogenates, serum, plasma, buffy coat, and whole blood collected in heparin or EDTA (Terpstra 2000). The tissues most likely to contain virus are tonsils, spleen, kidney, ileocecal lymph node, and retropharyngeal lymph node (Narita et al. 2000). CSFV can be isolated on porcine kidney cell lines (PK-15 or SK6). It is critical that all cells, media, and reagents have been previously determined to be free of pestiviruses or antibodies against pestiviruses. Although virus isolation is the reference method in most CSFV eradication programs, it is labor intensive, time consuming, and incompatible with the rapid response required to prevent further spread of virus.

The direct fluorescent antibody test (FAT) on frozen sections was the method of choice for detecting viral antigen during the last epidemic in the Netherlands (de Smit et al. 2000). It is rapid and reliable, but requires well-trained technicians. To discriminate between CSFV and other pestiviruses, it is necessary to use monoclonal antibodies. Tonsil tissue, the first site of virus replica-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Points</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>1—Slight Alteration</th>
<th>2—Distinct Lesion</th>
<th>3—Severe CSF Lesion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>Nonspecific erythema</td>
<td>Single CSF-specific hemorrhage</td>
<td>Multiple CSF-specific hemorrhages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcutis and serosac</td>
<td>Individual petechiae</td>
<td>Petechiae in several places</td>
<td>Generalized petechiae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tonsil</td>
<td>Swelling</td>
<td>Erythema</td>
<td>Necrosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spleen</td>
<td>Tiny infarction</td>
<td>Obvious infarction</td>
<td>&lt;50% infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney</td>
<td>Individual petechiae</td>
<td>Petechiae on surface and interstitium</td>
<td>Multiple petechiae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph nodes</td>
<td>Swelling</td>
<td>Swelling and irregular hemorrhages</td>
<td>Swelling and generalized hemorrhages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ileum and restum</td>
<td>Erythema</td>
<td>Erythema and small necrosis</td>
<td>Multiple necrosis or “button ulcer”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>Slight hyperemia</td>
<td>Hyperemia</td>
<td>Hyperemia, vessels swollen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory system</td>
<td>Bronchitis</td>
<td>Bronchopneumonia or pleuritis</td>
<td>Bronchopneumonia and pleuritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tion, is the most suitable sample. In chronic and subacute cases, ileum is often the only tissue to display fluorescence. FAT is not as sensitive as virus isolation and a negative FAT result is not sufficient to rule out a CSF suspect case.

Antigen-capture enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) may be used for early diagnosis of CSFV in live pigs. Double-antibody sandwich ELISAs are based on monoclonal and/or polyclonal antibodies directed against a variety of viral proteins. Serum,uffy coat fraction, whole blood in heparin or EDTA, or tissue homogenates can be tested in these assays. The technique is relatively simple to perform, does not require tissue culture facilities, is suitable for automation, and provides results within 36 hours.

It is important to recognize the diagnostic limitations of antigen-capture ELISAs. All currently available commercial ELISAs are less sensitive than virus isolation on cell culture (Dewulf et al. 2004). In addition, their diagnostic sensitivity is significantly better on blood samples from piglets as compared to samples from adult pigs or samples from mild/subclinical cases (Anonymous 2002). To compensate for lack of diagnostic sensitivity, all pigs showing pyrexia in suspect herds should be tested. These tests also have lower diagnostic specificity (Anonymous 2002), and false-positive reactions may occur. For these reasons, the use of antigen-capture ELISAs is recommended only on samples from animals with clinical signs or pathological lesions compatible with CSF and for screening herds suspected to have been recently infected.

A variety of polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-based assays have been described for the detection of CSFV (Hofmann et al. 1994; McGoldrick et al. 1998, 1999; Vilcek et al. 1994), usually targeting the 5' noncoding region. Viral RNA can be detected in blood samples collected from live animals, as well as in tissue samples. Although PCR-based methods have been evaluated in two European ring-tests (Paton et al. 2000a, 2000b), no official PCR protocol has been established. Additional improvement in test performance is required to obtain a rapid, reliable, and automated test for use in routine diagnostics. Theoretically, the use of pooled samples could reduce costs, but the sensitivity of the technique must be validated before implementation on a routine basis.

Detection of Antibodies Against CSFV. ELISAs for the detection of anti-CSFV antibodies are useful for conducting epidemiological surveys and for monitoring CSFV-free areas. Competitive ELISAs are based on competition between anti-CSFV serum antibodies and a CSFV-specific monoclonal antibody directed against the viral glycoprotein gS (E2). Cross-reactions with antibodies against other pestiviruses are reduced in the competitive ELISA format. A baculovirus recombinant E2 protein is often used as the antigen in the system. ELISA-detectable antibodies appear 10–15 days post infection, similar to the time frame described for the appearance of neutralizing antibodies.

CSFV neutralizing antibody levels are determined by end-point titration of the serum. Briefly, the assay is performed as follows. Serial twofold dilutions of serum are mixed with an equal volume of CSFV (Alfort 187 is usually used as reference strain) prepared to contain around 100 TCID50 per ml. After incubation for 1 hour, this is added to plates containing PK-15 cell monolayers. Two to four days later, the cells are stained with CSFV-specific antibodies. The titer of neutralizing antibody is expressed as the reciprocal of the highest serum dilution that prevented virus growth in 50% of two replicate wells.

Because of antibody cross-reactions among pestiviruses, the serum-virus neutralization assay is performed as a double neutralization test. That is, CSFV neutralizing antibody levels are compared to neutralizing antibody titers against BVDV or BDV reference strains. A difference of fourfold or more between the end points of the two titrations is considered conclusive for infection by the virus species yielding the highest neutralizing antibody titer (Terpstra 2000). This method is frequently used to screen neighboring herds around an outbreak prior to lifting control measures.

It is not feasible to perform all available diagnostic assays during an outbreak. Therefore, it is of utmost importance to perform the assay(s) most appropriate to the situation and intended purpose. Since the key to controlling an outbreak is prevention of virus spread among farms, the assay of choice in terms of diagnostic sensitivity, diagnostic specificity, and speed is reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR).

However, since the period of viremia is short, antibody detection assays are also useful, especially in herds where clinical signs have been present for more than 2 weeks (Dewulf et al. 2004).

Bovine Viral Diarrhea Virus and Border Disease Virus

BVDV or BDV may be isolated using the same methods previously described for CSFV and from the same tissues submitted for CSFV diagnosis—i.e., tonsils, spleen, kidney, and whole blood collected in heparin or EDTA. In CSF-free countries, BVDV and BDV must be considered in the differential diagnosis of CSFV and all suspect cases of CSF should be tested for BVDV and BDV. If BVDV or BDV is isolated from pigs, it is reported to grow better and to a higher titer in cells of ruminant origin, rather than in porcine cells (Wensvoort et al. 1989).

Pestiviruses share common antigenic structures (or patterns) and serological tests for the detection of antibodies against CSFV may cross-react with antibodies to ruminant pestiviruses. The practical importance of this is that the presence of ruminant pestivirus antibodies in pig sera often cause false positive reactions in serological surveys for CSFV. This presents problems in CSFV eradi-
cation campaigns and in epidemiological surveys for CSFV (Jensen 1985).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL
Classical Swine Fever in Domestic Pigs
Classical swine fever remains endemic in many parts of the world and continues to be a disease of worldwide importance. Although some regions are free of the disease, CSFV is still present at the borders between free and endemic areas and in some wild boar populations (Laddomada 2000).

For purposes of international trade, free areas maintain a “no vaccination” policy against CSF, although safe and efficacious live vaccines are available. Thus, control is based on stamping out infected or suspected herds, with the implementation of concomitant quarantine measures. In the last decade, however, the eradication of CSF outbreaks in Europe has raised concerns regarding the “no vaccine” policy. This is especially true in areas of high pig density, where a variety of factors increase the risk of disease spread (Elbers et al. 1999; Koenen et al. 1996; Mintiens et al. 2003). For instance, during the 1997 epidemic in the Netherlands, 9 million pigs were euthanized for reasons linked to movement restriction measures. However, even if emergency vaccination were not prohibited (EU council directive 80/217/EEC), the use of vaccine would have imposed severe economic consequences because vaccinated areas are banned from international trade for at least 1 year. Nevertheless, a more recent council directive (2001/89/EC) (Anonymous 2001) takes recent experiences into account and authorizes emergency vaccination around an outbreak.

Various CSFV vaccines are available, including the well-known live “Chinese” C strain, the Thiverval strain, and the newer marker vaccines that allow differentiation of field virus-infected versus vaccinated animals (for an in-depth review, see van Oirschot 2003). The traditional live vaccines induce a high level of protection against clinical disease, and neutralizing antibodies are detectable at 2 weeks post-challenge (Dahle and Liess 1995; Vandeputte et al. 2001). Duration of immunity is 6–10 months, regardless of the route of administration (intramuscular or oronasal) (Kaden and Lange 2001; Terpstra et al. 1990).

The primary drawback of live vaccines is that it is impossible to differentiate vaccine antibodies from field virus induced antibodies. Researchers have evaluated a variety of marker vaccines to solve this problem, including nonreplicative Aujeszky’s disease (pseudorabies) virus expressing the E2 of CSFV (Peeters et al. 1997), a porcine adenovirus vectored vaccine (Hammond et al. 1999), and a chimeric pestivirus (Reimann et al. 2004; van Gennip 2001). DNA vaccines have also been developed, but need a prime-boost strategy (DNA-adenovirus) to induce real protection (Hammond et al. 2001).

At present, two differentiable, baculovirus-expressed E2 recombinant protein subunit vaccines are commercially available. The efficacy of the two E2 marker vaccines has been extensively evaluated in vaccination challenge and transmission trials, but with variable results. A single dose of 32 µg E2 in a water-oil-water adjuvant prevented clinical signs and mortality due to a CSFV challenge 3 weeks after vaccination (Bouma et al. 1999). At least 14 days were needed to obtain clinical protection in growing pigs vaccinated with a single dose (Bouma et al. 2000; Uttenthal et al. 2001). If challenged earlier, no protection against clinical disease and no reduction of virus shedding were observed (Uttenthal et al. 2001).

The ability of the two marker vaccines to prevent transplacental transmission of CSFV has also been evaluated. However, transplacental transmission occurred even when two doses of vaccine (days 25 and 46 of pregnancy) were administered and challenge occurred 14 days after the second dose (Depner et al. 2001). Thus, transplacental infection could not be prevented in most vaccinated animals under the conditions of emergency vaccination. Vaccination could not prevent the “carrier sow syndrome” and, subsequently, the late onset form of CSF (Depner et al. 2001). It was concluded that the two-dose vaccination protocol protected pregnant gilts from clinical disease, but did not prevent horizontal or vertical spread of the CSFV (Dewulf et al. 2001b). Although these results indicated that the efficacy of these vaccines was not ideal, the possible use of these vaccines in an emergency has not been disallowed by the EC.

Differential ELISAs for the E2 marker vaccines are based on the detection of antibodies to the Erns protein (Floegel-Niesmann 2001). Improvement and assessment of these assays has been ongoing. In 2003, the EC conducted a large-scale inter-laboratory assessment of the diagnostic performance of a new version of a companion Erns ELISA test. Although the diagnostic specificity and the sensitivity of the test was improved relative to the kits tested in 1999 (Floegel-Niesmann 2001), it was concluded the need remained for a test that could determine with greater reliability whether a vaccinated pig had been infected and become a CSFV carrier.

Classical Swine Fever in Wild Boars
In Western Europe, vaccination in domestic pigs has been prohibited in EU member states since 1990, but the virus has been periodically reintroduced into domestic pigs via contact with wild boars. In some areas of Germany, an increase in the number of wild boars has promoted the persistence of virus within these populations and created an endemic situation (Fritzemeier et al. 2000; Moennig 2000). CSFV infection is seemingly harmless for wild boars as little mortality has been reported in recent outbreaks. In the presence of natural or manmade barriers, CSFV can be confined to a defined
area until it is eliminated (Schnyder et al. 2002), as was done in Moselle (France) (Le Potier et al. 2003) or in Tessin (Switzerland). Classic measures for CSF control in wild boars involve reducing hunting activities to allow the virus to spread within the susceptible population and induce mortality or immunity, followed by targeted hunting of the most susceptible animals—i.e., juveniles and the young sows.

In some areas where it has been difficult to eradicate CSFV using standard methods, oral vaccination using live C strain distributed in bait has been attempted (Kaden et al. 2000). The safety of this vaccine has been demonstrated for other wild animal species (Chenut et al. 1999). In pigs, this oral vaccine can induce strong protective immunity in 10 days (Kaden and Lange 2001). However, recent analysis of the data from oral vaccination field campaigns has shown that three doses were required to induce immunity in the field. Due to poor access to baits, young boars did not acquire sufficient protective immunity in most field studies (Kaden et al. 2002). When vaccine is used, monitoring of the disease becomes very difficult as the only tool to differentiate between infected and vaccinated boars is the detection of the virus. Therefore, there is a real need for the development of an effective marker vaccine delivered by the oral route that would allow for serological monitoring of the spread of the virus among a vaccinated population.

**Prevention of BVDV or BDV Infections**

To prevent BVDV or BDV infection in pigs, it is necessary to avoid direct or indirect contact with cattle or sheep. Natural infection with BVDV often occurs when pigs are fed with cow’s milk or bovine offal and this practice should be avoided.

Inadvertent transmission of these viruses is a risk when live-virus vaccines are used because of contamination of media and/or cells used in production of the vaccine. Cells used for multiplication of master seed virus used to prepare vaccine can be contaminated by BVDV or BDV. Indeed, some batches of CSF and Aujeszky’s disease (pseudorabies) vaccines were contaminated by a pestivirus (probably BDV) because secondary lamb kidney cells were used to propagate the vaccine strain virus (Vannier et al. 1988; Wensvoort and Terpstra 1988). Both bovine and non-bovine cell lines can be contaminated with pestiviruses, and all cell cultures need to be monitored carefully for their presence (Potts et al. 1989). The primary source of contamination of cells is bovine serum added to the nutrient medium. BVDV is extremely common and collection from BVDV-infected calves or fetuses results in contaminated bovine serum. Rossi et al. (1980) reported that up to 62% of the lots of nonirradiated bovine fetal sera examined were found positive for BVDV. Therefore, the systematic testing and treatment of bovine serum and of biological products used for the preparation of vaccines is strongly recommended (Makoschey et al. 2003).

**REFERENCES**


Porcine cytomegalovirus (PCMV) infection was originally termed “inclusion body rhinitis” because basophilic intranuclear inclusions were seen in cytomegalic cells in the turbinate mucosa of pigs with rhinitis (Done 1955). Electron microscopy demonstrated herpes virions in turbinate mucous glands, lachrymal glands, salivary glands, and renal tubular epithelium (Duncan et al. 1964). The virus grew slowly in cell culture and produced cytomegaly with intranuclear inclusions (Booth et al. 1967; L’Ecuyer and Corner 1966), placing it in the cytomegalovirus group (Plummer 1973).

PCMV infection is usually subclinical in adults, but often produces a fatal, generalized infection in young swine, particularly piglets infected congenitally or perinatally (Edington et al. 1976a). In susceptible herds, the virus causes fetal and piglet deaths, runting, rhinitis, and pneumonia (Cameron-Stephen 1961; Corner et al. 1964; Duncan et al. 1964; Edington et al. 1977; L’Ecuyer et al. 1972; Orr et al. 1988; Rac 1961; Smith 1997; Yoon et al. 1996). The virus may also cause neurologic disease (Stephano-Hornedo and Edington 1987).

The potential for using live porcine cells, tissues, and organs in humans (xenotransplantation) has heightened interest in PCMV. PCMV is ubiquitous in swine, induces latent infections, and is similar to human and primate CMVs (Garkavenko et al. 2004; Tucker et al. 1999). Cross-species transmission of PCMV was reported in pig-to-primate xenotransplantation (Mueller et al. 2002), but the actual risk of PCMV infection in a human recipient remains unknown.

ETIOLOGY

PCMV (suid herpesvirus 2) is classified in the genus Cytomegalovirus in the subfamily Betaherpesvirinae of family Herpesviridae (Roizman 1982). The PCMV genome is linear, double-stranded, DNA of 130–150 × 10⁶ kilodaltons. Full-length sequences and details of the organization of the viral genome are still lacking. Recent molecular studies of the polymerase, putative glycoprotein B (gB), and major nucleocapsid protein genes indicate that PCMV is genetically closer to human herpesvirus type 6 and 7 (genus Roseolovirus) than cytomegaloviruses (Rupasinghe et al. 1999, 2001; Widen et al. 1999, 2001).

The morphology of PCMV is typical of a herpes virion (Duncan et al. 1965; Shirai et al. 1985; Valiˇcek and Smid 1979). The virion is approximately 150–200 nm across. It contains an electron-dense core (30–70 nm) of variable shape surrounded by capsid proteins forming the icosahedral nucleocapsid (80–120 nm). Viral nucleocapsids are present in the nucleus of host cells and acquire an electron-dense coat separated by a translucent halo from the envelope. The envelope is obtained by budding through the membrane of the host cell nucleus or Golgi apparatus. The envelope of extracellular and cytoplasmic virions has 10 nm external projections. The density of the PCMV virion is 1.275 g/ml by CsCl equilibrium-density centrifugation (Shirai et al. 1985).

No distinct PCMV serotypes or genotypes have been identified, although some degree of genetic variation was noted in polymerase and gB genes among PCMV isolates of different geographic origins (Goltz et al. 2000; Widen et al. 2001). Possible antigenic variability has also been reported (Tajima and Kawamura 1998).

The virus is sensitive to chloroform and ether (Booth et al. 1967). Virus infectivity is preserved at subzero temperatures (Booth et al. 1967).

L’Ecuyer and Corner (1966) propagated PCMV in primary pig lung (PL) cells for several passages, and Watt et al. (1973) found that only pig lung macrophages (PLM) were highly sensitive for primary isolation and/or serial propagation. Other culture systems used include primary swine testicle (ST) (Shirai et al. 1985; Kanitz and Woodruff 1976), a porcine fallopian tube (PFT) cell line (Bouillant et al. 1975; Kawamura et al. 1992), PK-15 cell line (Kanitz and Thacker 1974), and porcine turbinate (PT) (Yoon et al. 1996).

Cytomegaly and basophilic intranuclear and, occasionally, small acidophilic intracytoplasmic inclusions
(Figure 16.1) are generally seen in infected cells at 3–14 days postinoculation (Watt et al. 1973). Infected cells are about six times larger than normal cells, with swelling of the mitochondria, endoplasmic reticulum, and Golgi apparatus (Duncan et al. 1965).

Progeny virus reaches a maximum titer of up to $10^{5.6}$ TICD$_{50}$ per ml at 10–14 days. Progeny virus yield in cell lines is lower than in primary systems. The absence of lytic cytopathic effect in cell culture requires immunohistochemical staining for confirmation of virus growth (Figure 16.2).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

PCMV is found throughout the world (Corner et al. 1964) and infection is ubiquitous, with herd prevalence greater than 90% in Europe, North America, and Japan. Within infected herds, more than 98% of pigs may be seropositive (Goltz et al. 2000; Hamel et al. 1999; Kanitz and Woodruff 1976; Rondhuis et al. 1980; Tajima et al. 1993).

PCMV is transmitted horizontally via the oronasal route, but congenital transmission is well documented (Edington et al. 1977, 1988b; L’Ecuyer et al. 1972). Infection most commonly occurs perinatally or early postnatally in commercial farms (Plowright et al. 1976; Watt 1978).

PCMV can be recovered from nasal and ocular discharge, urine, and cervical fluid (Booth et al. 1967; Edington et al. 1976a–c, 1977). Nasal excretion was demonstrated in gnotobiotic pigs for up to 1 month when exposed at 1 day of age, but for shorter periods (up to 9 days) in older pigs under the same conditions. In the field, the majority of pigs shed PCMV in nasally secretion between 3 and 8 weeks of age (Plowright et al. 1976).

Boars can be infected without apparent clinical signs and Shirai et al. (1985) were able to isolate PCMV from the testis and epididymis. Semen shedding of virus has not been determined.

Typical of herpesviruses, PCMV is able to establish latent infections that can be reactivated and result in...
virus shedding (Edington et al. 1976c; Narita et al. 1985).

Non-porcine reservoirs and arthropod vectors have not been reported and PCMV infection is considered limited to pigs. The virus does not replicate in mice, rabbits, dogs, cattle, and chicken embryos. However, Mueller et al. (2002) detected virus replication in tissues of baboons that received xenografts of pig origin.

The stability and persistence of PCMV in the environment is unknown. The efficacy of specific disinfectants against PCMV has not been described.

**PATHOGENESIS**

The primary replication site of PCMV is the nasal mucosa and/or the lachrymal or hardierian glands. Cell-associated viremia follows primary replication 14–21 days post infection in animals greater than 3 weeks of age and 5–19 days post infection in neonatal gnotobiotic pigs (Edington et al. 1976c; Edington et al. 1977). Following viremia, virus is shed in nasal, pharyngeal and/or conjunctival secretions, and urine (Booth et al. 1967; Edington et al. 1976c, 1977). Nasal excretion of virus lasts from 10 to over 30 days. Congenitally infected pigs excrete virus until death (Edington et al. 1977).

In sows experimentally infected with PCMV at midto late-gestation, the virus was also isolated from cervical fluids, but later than nasal excretion (30–35 days post infection). Neither virus nor inclusions were detected in the cervix or endometrium at this stage, which suggested that cervical shedding was of fetal origin. Excretion in cervical fluids coincided with fetal deaths, implying that the virus required an additional 14–20 days to replicate in the fetus.

The site of secondary viral replication varies with age. In nursery or growing pigs (Edington et al. 1976a, 1977; Kelly 1967; Plowright et al. 1976; Shirai et al. 1985), the virus disseminates predominantly to epithelial sites, particularly the nasal mucosal glands, hardierian and lachrymal glands, kidney tubules, and more rarely, the epididymis and mucous glands of the esophagus. Hepatocytes and duodenal epithelium are even more rarely infected.

In the fetus or neonate, there is a predilection for infection of reticuloendothelial cells, particularly capillary endothelium and the sinusoids of lymphoid tissues, thus resulting in generalized lesions (Edington et al. 1977, 1988a). When fetuses were exposed at early gestation, PCMV preferentially replicated in the meninges, Kupffer cells, peritoneal macrophages, and periosteal cells (Edington et al. 1988b). Embryos can be infected shortly after implantation, resulting in embryonic deaths.

Infectious virus persists in lung macrophages, blood monocytes, and CD8+ T cells (Edington et al. 1977; Guedes et al. 2004). Latent infection can be reactivated in vivo by administration of corticosteroids (Edington et al. 1976c; Narita et al. 1985) or in vitro by allogeneic cocultivation (Guedes et al. 2004).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Uncomplicated infection is usually subclinical in pigs older than 3 weeks, but can be fatal for the fetus or newborn pig. Affected pigs show respiratory signs, e.g., sneezing, nasal discharge, and coughing, and develop rhinitis or neurological disease (Cameron-Stephen 1961; Corner et al. 1964; Done 1955; Duncan et al. 1964; Orr et al. 1988; Rac 1961). PCMV infection does not induce atrophic rhinitis (Rondhuis et al. 1980).

Reproductive problems are another feature of PCMV infection in susceptible herds (Edington et al. 1977, 1988b; L’Ecuyer et al. 1972; Smith 1997; Yoon et al. 1996).

The incubation period of the infection may be 10–20 days (Edington et al. 1977; Goodwin and Whittlestone 1967). During the short viremic phase, animals become lethargic and anorectic, but not febrile. Some congenitally or neonatally infected piglets die without any overt clinical signs. Others often exhibit shivering, sneezing, and respiratory distress, poor weight gain, and rhinitis. The disease is generally self-limiting if uncomplicated. Morbidity is 100%; the average mortality in a naive herd is about 10%, but can rise to 50%.

At farrowing, increased numbers of mummified fetuses and stillbirths are observed, although infected sows may not show any clinical abnormality throughout gestation except lethargy and anorexia. Preweaning mortality also increases. Up to 25% of the litter may be lost and the remainder may show runting. Piglets may be grossly pale and show a variable edema, often around the jaw and tarsal joints.

Although early field observations suggested that the concurrent infection of PCMV and Bordetella bronchiseptica might exacerbate the severity of atrophic rhinitis (Cameron-Stephen 1961; Corner et al. 1964), a synergistic effect was not reproducible under experimental conditions (Edington et al. 1976b). Concurrent infection and possible synergism with other agents has not been investigated. However, a field-based, case-control study suggested that PCMV-infected pigs were at a higher risk for respiratory disease than PCMV-uninfected pigs (Yoon et al. 1998).

**LESIONS**

It is useful to distinguish between disseminated infection of epithelial tissues in the older pigs and generalized infection of reticuloendothelial tissues in the fetus or neonate (Edington et al. 1976a).

**Epithelial Lesions**

No macroscopic changes are seen in epithelial tissues. Microscopically, basophilic intranuclear inclusion bodies and cytomegaly are seen in the nasal mucous glands (Figure 16.3), acinar and duct epithelium of hardierian and lachrymal glands, and renal tubular epithelium. In these tissues, the proportion of affected cells may be
high. Isolated inclusions are occasionally seen in the mucous glands of the esophagus, the epithelial lining of the ductus epididymis and the seminiferous epithelium, as well as the epithelial lining of the duodenum and jejunum. The major sites of replication develop focal lymphoid hyperplasia (Figure 16.4). The reparative lesions in the kidney are those of an interstitial nephritis (Kelly 1967). Sparsely distributed focal gliosis is seen in the central nervous system, with inclusions occasionally seen in the glial cells.

**Generalized Lesions**

In young pigs, petechiae and edema are widespread. Subcutaneous edema is most marked around the throat and tarsal joints. Edema most commonly involves the thoracic cavity and subcutaneous tissues. In the thorax, pericardial and pleural effusions are present. Lungs are edematous, with the interlobular septa becoming distended and the ventral tips of the lobes appearing purple and consolidated (Figure 16.5). The lymph nodes are all enlarged and edematous, and petechial hemorrhages are observed. Petechiae are most extensive in the kidneys, particularly subcapsular, the appearance varying from speckling to completely purple or black coloration.

In some fetal infections, only reproductive failure, i.e., stillbirths, mummified fetuses, embryonic death, and infertility, is seen. The mummified fetuses are randomly distributed and sometimes of variable age. In the acute fatal syndrome, most inclusions are seen in the capillary endothelial and sinusoidal cells, and thus occur in all lymphoid and parenchymatous tissues. The damaged endothelium is associated with local edema and/or hemorrhage and with macrophages and erythrocytes in the distended extracellular space. Mononuclear cells with inclusions are found in blood vessels and also in the spleen. Infected macrophages are prevalent in alveolar tissues. Replication in hepatocytes results in focal necrosis. In the kidney, inclusions are most common in areas of differentiating renal tissue and in glomerular capillary endothelium (Figure 16.6). Hemor-
rhage and gliosis occur throughout the central nervous system, with a predilection for the choroid plexus, cerebellum, and olfactory lobes (Stephano-Horendo and Edington 1987).

**IMMUNITY**

Experimentally, antibody is detected by the indirect immunofluorescent antibody (IFA) test 2–3 weeks after inoculation, peaks at around 6 weeks postinoculation, and remains at high levels for at least 10–11 weeks postinoculation (Edington et al. 1976c, 1977). Development of serum antibody levels detectable by IFA coincides with the disappearance of viremia, but nasal excretion of virus continues for another 2–3 weeks. Longer periods of excretion have been associated with lower levels of antibody (Edington et al. 1988b). A similar pattern of antibody response was seen in commercial farms (Plowright et al. 1976), with antibody persisting until animals were marketed at 23 weeks of age. Neutralizing antibody develops, but very slowly and to very low levels.

Edington et al. (1988a) demonstrated that transplacental infection could be established by superinfection of sows only with low levels of IFA antibody, which suggests that high levels of IFA antibody are indicative of protective immunity.

Piglets with congenital and neonatal infection do not seroconvert, but excrete virus and develop fatal, systemic infections (Edington et al. 1977). Piglets acquire maternal antibodies and these provide some protection, but virus is shed even in the presence of circulating maternal antibody in PCMV-endemic farms (Plowright et al. 1976). Maternal antibody lasts approximately 2 months after birth (Tajima et al. 1994).

No information is available on important aspects of immunity, e.g., cross-protection among isolates or cell-mediated immune responses.

**DIAGNOSIS**

PCMV-associated respiratory or reproductive diseases must be differentiated from infection with classical swine fever virus, enterovirus, parvovirus, porcine re-

16.5. *This pig was inoculated with PCMV when 1 day old. It died at 16 days of age with widespread petechiae and subcutaneous edema. The interlobular septae of the lungs are distended with transudate, and the tips of the apical, cardiac, and diaphragmatic lobes are also consolidated.*

16.6. *Section of kidney from a piglet with viral inclusions (arrows) in capillary endothelium in both the glomerulus and interstitial tissue. Infected cells show enlargement but only reach the size of normal tubular epithelium (H&E; ×240).*
productive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) virus, and Aujeszky’s disease (pseudorabies) virus. Inclusion body rhinitis (IBR) is typically limited to piglets. The initial signs of IBR are sneezing, with nasal discharge in a small number of pigs, which progresses to infrequent coughing. Sometimes a ring of black discoloration can be observed around the eyes due to excessive conjunctival discharge. Clinically affected sows produce smaller litters that may include mumified fetuses and stillborns. Congenitally or perinatally infected piglets present macroscopic lesions of widespread petechiae and edema. No macroscopic changes are seen in older pigs.

Virus isolation or detection must be done to include PCMV as a component of rhinitis. Qualitative or quantitative PCR-based assays for detection of viral DNA can be substituted for virus isolation in clinical cases (Fryer et al. 2001; Hamel et al. 1999; Widen et al. 1999). Antemortem samples of choice are nasal secretion or scrapings and whole blood (Edington et al. 1976a; Watt et al. 1973). Preferred postmortem samples are turbinate mucosa, lung, lung lavage, and kidney (Edington et al. 1976c; Watt 1978). In cases of early reproductive failure, PCMV can occasionally be demonstrated in the brain, liver, and bone marrow of fetuses (Edington et al. 1977, 1988a, 1988b).

Virus isolation can be done on primary or line cells, as previously described. The isolation rate can be increased by incorporating a centrifugal technique into the sample inoculation procedure (Yoon et al. 1998). Kawamura and Matsuzaki (1996) reported that 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 12-acetate accelerated viral replication in a porcine fallopian tube cell line.

If the carcass is kept chilled, viral antigen can be detected by immunostaining on frozen tissue sections at least 24 hours after virus infectivity has disappeared. Alternatively, pathognomonic inclusions and cytomegaly may be detected in histologic sections.

The presence of PCMV in a herd is most easily confirmed by serology using serum samples from randomly selected grower-finishers. An IFA test on infected PLM, ST, PK-15, or PT cells fixed in acetone has been described (Plowright et al. 1976; Kanitz and Thacker 1974; Kanitz and Woodruff 1976). IFA titers of 1:64 to 1:128 are frequently observed in commercial pigs and occasionally in selected grower-finishers. An IFA test on infected PLM, ST, PK-15, or PT cells fixed in acetone has been described (Plowright et al. 1976; Kanitz and Thacker 1974; Kanitz and Woodruff 1976). IFA titers of 1:64 to 1:128 are frequently observed in commercial pigs and occasionally reach titers of 1:1024. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA) have been described (Assaf et al. 1982; Tajima et al. 1993) and adapted to distinguish IgG and IgM responses (Tajima et al. 1994). It should be noted that no PCMV antibodies are induced by in utero infection. Therefore, antibody is not expected incolostrum-deprived neonatal sera.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

No PCMV vaccine or specific treatment for PCMV is available. Some antiviral nucleoside analogues, such as ganciclovir, have been shown to inhibit PCMV replication in vitro in a dose-dependent fashion (Fryer et al. 2004; Mueller et al. 2003), but the therapeutic efficacy of these drugs remains to be assessed. No therapeutic efficacy for PCMV was achieved using 6-azauridine and 5-iododeoxuridine (Steffenhagen et al. 1976). Medication to minimize secondary problems due to concurrent or secondary bacterial infections may be beneficial (Cameron-Stephen 1961; Corner et al. 1964).

Introduction of new stock into herds is a risk since it may stimulate latent infection or give rise to the problems of primary infection in susceptible herds. A virus-free herd may be established by hysterotomy (Clark et al. 2003). The potential for PCMV transplacental infection should be taken into consideration and monitored.

**REFERENCES**


EMCV is noteworthy for its widespread geographic distribution and the large number of species susceptible to EMCV infection. Encephalomyocarditis virus (EMCV) was first isolated from rodents in 1940 (Jungeblut and Sanders 1940). EMCV was later isolated from a chimpanzee in Florida with myocarditis (Helwig and Schmidt 1945). Thereafter, antibodies or virus were detected in a variety of animal species (Tesh and Wallace 1977). Murnane et al. (1960) isolated EMCV from the lung and spleen of a pig that had abruptly collapsed and died during an outbreak of acute disease in Panama in 1958. This was the first recognition of EMCV as a swine pathogen. In pigs, disease due to the EMCV may take one of two main forms: acute myocarditis, usually causing sudden death in young pigs, and/or reproductive failure in sows.

Even without surveillance mechanisms to track EMCV infections actively, outbreaks in pigs have been reported throughout the world. Several major outbreaks with high mortality have been reported in Australia since 1970 (Acland and Littlejohns 1975; Seaman et al. 1986). Outbreaks have also been reported in South Africa (Williams 1981), New Zealand (Sutherland et al. 1977), Cuba (Ramos et al. 1983), and Canada (Dea et al. 1991). In Europe, clinical disease caused by EMCV was first observed in domestic pigs in 1986 and with greater frequency thereafter. Outbreaks of acute myocarditis have been reported in Italy (Sidoli et al. 1988), Greece (Paschaleri-Papadopoulou et al. 1990), Switzerland (Hani et al. 1992), Belgium (Koenen et al. 1999), and Cyprus (Loukaidis et al. 1996). In Belgium, EMCV has also been frequently isolated from cases of reproductive failure (Koenen et al. 1999).

Infection with EMCV is not uncommon, but clinical disease is infrequent. EMCV outbreaks are often clustered in so-called “endemic areas” (Maurice et al. 2004a). In Italy, 50% of farms without clinical signs in an endemic area had seroprevalence levels similar to farms with clinical EMCV, providing evidence of considerable subclinical infections (Maurice et al. 2004a). Likewise, in the United Kingdom, antibodies against EMCV were detected, but without isolation of virus (Sangar et al. 1977).

**ETIOLOGY**

EMCV is an RNA virus in the genus *Cardiovirus* of the family *Picornaviridae*. Several antigenically similar viruses, including Columbia-SK and Mengo viruses, were isolated during the 1940s and are considered to be in the same group as EMCV. Tinsley et al. (1984) reported EMCV to be antigenically related to the cricket paralysis virus.

EMCV virions contain single-stranded RNA of 2.6 × 10^6 daltons. The viral genome encodes a leader protein that lacks proteolytic activity. The leader protein is cleaved from P1 by the virus-encoded protease 3Cpro. The 1D/2A junction is also cleaved by 3Cpro rather than by 2A. The 2A protein causes cleavage, or polypeptide chain interruption, between P1-2A and downstream sequences at an essential sequence, -NPGP-. EMCV has a poly (C) tract of variable length (usually 80–250 nucleotides) (van Regenmortel et al. 2000).

Although antigenically stable (Meroni et al. 2000), the D region of EMCV (coding for the capsid protein VP1) displays considerable genetic variability. A single nucleotide mutation can be involved in attenuation or conferring diabetogenicity to a particular EMCV strain (Nelsen-Salz et al. 1996). In particular, isolates from Greece differed from other isolates (Knowles et al. 2000). Limited variability between pig- and rodent-derived EMCV isolates was observed.

EMCV shares many properties with other picornaviruses. It is ether-resistant and stable over a wide pH range. It is inactivated after 30 minutes at 60°C, but some strains have shown a marked thermal stability (Joo 1999).

EMCV replicates well in cell cultures originating from several animal species, including rodents, swine, and primates. Baby hamster kidney (BHK-21) and Vero
cells are most commonly used for virus propagation. The virus also replicates in mice and chicken embryos and is pathogenic to many laboratory animals.

The virus hemagglutinates guinea pig, rat, horse, and sheep erythrocytes. Most EMCV strains require KCl-borate (0.12M KCl; 0.05 H3BO3) buffered solution for optimal hemagglutination. Some differences in hemagglutinating activity between EMCV strains have been reported (Kim et al. 1991). Serial passage of EMCV in cell culture can alter in vitro growth characteristics, reduce virulence, and affect hemagglutinating activity (Zimmerman 1994).

**Epidemiology**

EMCV is generally regarded as a virus of rodents, although EMCV has been isolated from over 30 species, including mammals, birds, and insects. In mammals, the host range includes rodents, monkeys (even chimpanzees), elephants, lions, squirrels, mongooses, raccoons, and swine. In some species, EMCV infection may have serious consequences, e.g., lion deaths at a zoo resulted from their feeding on the carcasses of African elephants that had died of EMCV infection (Simpson et al. 1977).

Transmission of EMCV in swine has been poorly described, but rodents are generally believed to serve as a reservoir and as the means of introduction and subsequent spread of the EMCV in pig facilities. The virus usually persists in rodents without causing disease (Acland 1989; Zimmerman 1994) and infected rodents have high levels of EMCV in their tissues and excrete virus in feces and urine. Thus, exposure of swine to EMCV-contaminated feed or water or infected rodent carcasses is considered important in transmission (Acland 1989; Seaman et al. 1986; Spyrou et al. 2004; Tesh and Wallace 1977).

These assumptions were supported by the results of a matched case-control study of an area of Belgium where clinical EMCV outbreaks were regularly reported (Maurice et al. 2005b). At the univariate level, the analyses indicated that rodents, the general farm setup, and general level of hygiene were associated with clinical EMCV. Multivariate relationships between clinical EMCV and potential risk factors were analyzed using conditional logistic regression, and the presence of mice was the most significant risk factor for clinical EMCV infections.

Infected pigs can excrete the virus, at least for a short period of time, and pig-to-pig contacts or contact with infected dead pigs are potential mechanisms of virus spread (Billinis et al. 1999; Foni et al. 1993; Maurice et al. 2002). Transplacental infection has also been described as a potential route of virus spread (Christianson et al. 1992; Koenen and Vanderhallen 1997; Links et al. 1986). Other factors, such as infectious dose, route of infection, and age of the pigs, have been found to be important in the spread of the virus under experimental conditions (Billinis et al. 2004; Littlejohns and Acland 1975). In certain countries, a seasonal pattern in the outbreaks has been observed, with peaks during the autumn (Maurice et al. 2005a).

**Clinical Signs**

Pig age at the time of infection is an important determinant of clinical disease, with particularly severe disease if infected in the first weeks of life. Extremely high mortality, approaching 100%, is limited to pigs of preweaning age (Joo 1999). Infections in pigs from postweaning age to adulthood are usually subclinical, although some mortality may be observed even in adult pigs. Under experimental conditions, Billinis et al. (2004) found no difference in mortality between 20- and 40-day-old pigs, but none of the 105-day-old pigs died.

In young pigs, EMCV infection is most commonly characterized by acute disease with sudden death due to myocardial failure. Other clinical signs may be observed, including anorexia, listlessness, trembling, staggering, paralysis, or dyspnea. Experimentally infected swine (Craighead et al. 1963; Littlejohns and Acland 1975) had body temperatures of up to 41°C and died 2–11 days postinoculation (DPI) (usually 3–5 days) or, occasionally, recovered with chronic myocarditis.

In breeding females, clinical signs may vary from no obvious illness to various forms of reproductive failure, including abortion and increased numbers of mummified and stillborn fetuses (Dea et al. 1991; Koenen and Vanderhallen 1997).

**Non-Porcine Species**

Among laboratory animals, clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of EMCV are variable. Acute fatal disease is most often produced in mice and hamsters after inoculation by various routes. Neurologic disease due to encephalitis has been reported, but myocarditis is more frequently seen at necropsy. In mice, certain virus strains cause predominantly fatal encephalitis, or widespread myocardial damage, or specific destruction of pancreatic beta cells (Cerutis et al. 1989).

The course of the infection varies in rats, guinea pigs, rabbits, and monkeys, depending on the age of the animals and the virus strain used. In rats experimentally infected with a myocardial EMCV strain, no clinical signs or gross lesions were observed. Regardless, virus was isolated from several tissues from 3 DPI until the end of the observation at 62 DPI. EMCV was most frequently isolated from Peyer’s patches and thymus, even in rats killed 60 DPI. The results suggested that these tissues represented a site of persistence after oral infection (Spyrou et al. 2004). Owls, monkeys, and marmosets were reportedly highly susceptible to infection. The virus has seldom been pathogenic for rabbits and rhesus monkeys, causing no apparent infections despite high levels of viremia.
PATHOGENESIS

Divergent reports regarding the clinical picture, in combination with evidence of subclinical infection, suggest that EMCV strains vary in pathogenicity. It is now recognized that some strains cause only reproductive failure or myocarditis, and others can cause both (Koenen and Vanderhallen 1997). Australian strains were shown to be more virulent than New Zealand strains (Littlejohns and Acland 1975; Horner and Hunter 1979), and certain isolates in Florida were found to cause only myocarditis without death (Gainer 1967; Gainer et al. 1968). Thus, the course of EMCV infection in pigs may be influenced by virus strain, virus dose, passage history, level of virus passage, and individual animal factors, e.g., age and pregnancy status.

Natural infection of swine is most likely to occur by the oral route. Following experimental oral inoculation of young pigs, virus was detected as early as 6 hours postinoculation in the intestinal tract. In heart and tonsils, focal positive reactions were found in the cytoplasm of single macrophages and myocardial cells during the first 30 hours postinoculation (acute phase). Thereafter, some animals died with typical postmortem lesions, and clear immunohistochemistry-positive reactions were observed in the tonsils and in the heart. Three days postinoculation, virus was isolated from liver, kidneys, spleen, and lungs. The persistence of virus beyond the viremic period suggests viral replication in the intestine. The highest virus titers were in heart muscle, both in experimental and natural infections. Myocardial lesions were predominant at necropsy. Animals that survived the infection produced EMCV antibodies. Virus detection decreased with the appearance of antibodies (Gelmetti et al. 2006).

The pathogenesis of transplacental EMCV infection in pregnant sows is not well understood. Following intramuscular exposure of pregnant sows with EMCV, transplacental infection and fetal death was observed as early as 2 weeks postinoculation. Early farrowing, abortion, and fetal mummification were observed in sows infected in mid- or late-gestation, and fetal infection in sows during early pregnancy was not conclusive (Koenen and Vanderhallen 1997; Love and Grewal 1986). Antibodies and virus were recovered from the fetuses, but the lesions varied from none to large diffuse patches, depending on the experiment (Kim et al. 1989b; Koenen and Vanderhallen 1997). Little pathogenicity was observed following infection of swine fetuses in utero with laboratory-passaged strains.

LESIONS

Pigs dying during the acute phase of cardiac failure may show only epicardial hemorrhage and no gross lesions. Hydropericardium, hydrothorax, and pulmonary edema are frequently observed at necropsy. The heart is usually enlarged, soft, and pale. The most striking lesions are found in the myocardium (Figures 17.1, 17.2). Multiple foci of various sizes are found, especially in the right ventricle, which may extend to varying depths within the myocardium. These foci are often ill-defined, circular or linear, and an uneven grayish-white in color. These lesions are observed more frequently in fattening pigs than in suckling piglets (Castryck et al. 1996; Littlejohns and Acland 1975).

Infected fetuses are most often apparently normal, but may be hemorrhagic and edematous. With some strains, fetuses may become mummified at various states of development, depending on the stage of infection. Visible myocardial lesions are exceptional.

Histopathologically, the most significant findings in young pigs are seen in the heart. Immunohistochem-
In others, dyspnea can be observed. Some pigs, squealing can be heard just prior to death. In the late afternoon, when the pigs are most active. In limited to a single building, and deaths often occur pigs weighing 60–70 kg are involved. The disease is often characterized by sudden death between 3 days to 5 weeks of age. In most cases, piglets are found dead without any prior clinical signs. In other cases, vomiting and dyspnea, i.e., rapid abdominal breathing due to heart failure, may be observed. Frequently, an entire litter dies in 1 to a few hours, with mortality confined to single, affected litters. Spread of the disease by cross-fostering of infrequent situations that stress or excite the pigs at risk.

Histopathology may be important in achieving a diagnosis. As described previously, a variable degree of nonsuppurative interstitial myocarditis or encephalitis (infiltration of lymphocytes, histiocytes, and plasma cells) is indicative of EMCV infection. A conclusive diagnosis of EMCV should be demonstrated by virus isolation in mice or cell culture. BHK-21 cell culture is the most sensitive, but HeLa or Vero cell lines are also commonly used. Infected cell monolayers show a rapid and complete cytopathic effect. Identification of the virus can be achieved by cross virus neutralization (VN) using a reference antiserum or by staining with EMCV fluorescent antibody conjugate. Nucleic acid probes and reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) for the detection of EMCV have been reported (Bakkali et al. 2002; Meng et al. 1993; Vanderhallen and Koenen 1997). If available, molecular biotechnological methods may provide sensitive and specific methods of diagnosis, especially when followed by sequencing.

Serologic tests for the detection of serum antibodies against EMCV include the hemagglutination-inhibition (HI) test, ELISA (Brocchi et al. 2000), latex agglutination, immunofluorescent antibody assay (IFA), agar gel immunodiffusion (AGID), and virus neutralization (VN). The VN and ELISA are the most commonly used methods and are considered specific for EMCV. No cross-neutralization was found between EMCV and 62 human enterovirus serotypes or 11 porcine enterovirus serotypes (Zimmerman 1994). For VN, antibody titers of \( \geq 1:16 \) appear to be significant (Joo 1999). VN antibody reaction starts as soon as 7 DPI and may persist for an extended period (6 months to 1 year).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

There is no treatment for EMCV infection, but during the acute phase, mortality may be minimized by avoiding situations that stress or excite the pigs at risk.

Rodents are thought to play a role in the introduction and subsequent spread of the EMC virus within pig facilities. Therefore, to prevent clinical outbreaks of EMCV, producers are advised to maintain good hygiene and keep facilities and feed sources as rodent-free as possible, especially in EMCV-endemic areas. The virus can be inactivated by water containing 0.5 ppm residual chlorine. For disinfectants, iodine based preparations or mercuric chloride can also be used.
The direct exposure of pigs to manure has been found to be significantly protective (Maurice et al. 2004b). In pig houses with slatted floors or where manure was moved between “open” manure pits, animals acquired immunity without displaying clinical signs, probably due to infection by exposure to low titers of virus.

An inactivated EMCV-vaccine is commercially available in the United States. The vaccine appears to be effective, since high humoral immunity is detected in vaccinated pigs and vaccines were protected from clinical disease when challenged with virulent EMCV that killed 60% of unvaccinated controls. Likewise, protection against transplacental infection was demonstrated under experimental conditions.

**Public Health**

At present, the impact of EMCV on public health is believed to be minimal. Despite the frequency of infection in swine, no association between infection and disease in humans has been recorded (Zimmerman 1994), even in persons at the greatest risk of acquiring the infection (veterinarians, animal caretakers, laboratory staff). In light of the ubiquitous presence of EMCV around the world, secondary EMCV infection in immunocompromised persons can be expected to occur. The outcome of EMCV co-infection under such conditions is not known and there have been no reports of such cases to date. The likelihood of this event is heightened by the current interest in using porcine cells, tissues, and organs in humans (xenotransplantation). Experimental infection of a mouse through the transplantation of pig organs infected with EMCV (Brewer et al. 2003) confirmed this concern.

**REFERENCES**


In previous editions of *Diseases of Swine* this chapter was entitled “Enterovirus.” However, complete genome sequences of representatives of all the porcine enterovirus (PEV) serotypes have resulted in the reclassification of the group I serotypes into a new genus, *Teschovirus*, within the family *Picornaviridae* (King et al. 2000). Thus, this chapter will cover the true porcine enteroviruses and the porcine teschoviruses (PTV). Other picornaviruses infecting swine (foot-and-mouth disease virus, swine vesicular disease virus, and encephalomyocarditis virus) are covered in separate chapters.

The first report of porcine teschovirus infection was the occurrence of Teschen disease, a polioencephalomyelitis with high mortality, in Czechoslovakia over 75 years ago. This severe disease has continued to occur sporadically, mainly in Central Europe, but also in Africa. Milder forms of polioencephalomyelitis (Talfan disease, benign enzootic paresis), caused by serologically related but less virulent strains of PTV, have been reported in the last 50 years in Western Europe, North America, and Australia. In France, the encephalomyelitis is intermediate in severity between Teschen and Talfan diseases (Métianu 1986). Porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses are ubiquitous and no conventional herd of pigs has been shown to be free of infection. Although the majority of infections are asymptomatic, porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses have been associated with a variety of clinical conditions, including polioencephalomyelitis, female reproductive disorders, enteric disease, and pneumonia. Strains that have not been shown to be pathogenic have been referred to as enteric cytopathogenic swine orphan (ECSO) or enteric cytopathogenic porcine orphan (ECPO) viruses; however, these terms are no longer in general use.

There are no known public health problems associated with any of these viruses.

**ETIOLOGY**  
**Taxonomy and Classification**

The serotypic classification of porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses is based upon the virus neutralization (VN) test (Dunne et al. 1971; Knowles et al. 1979). In the 1960s and 1970s there were numerous attempts to achieve a uniform classification. These studies culminated in a classification of eight serotypes proposed by Dunne et al. (1971). This was later extended to 13 serotypes (Auerbach et al. 1994; Knowles et al. 1979) (Table 18.1). A complement-fixation test, suitable for the rapid screening and typing of porcine enteroviruses, has also been described (Knowles and Buckley 1980). Subsequent findings (Knowles 1983) suggested that additional serotypes may exist. Honda et al. (1990a) compared the prototype strains found in Japan with 11 internationally recognized PTV and PEV serotypes by virus neutralization and suggested a further four candidate serotypes. Some limited cross-reactivity among the existing serotypes is evident, and Hazlett and Derbyshire (1978) showed that gastrointestinal antibodies were more broadly specific than serum antibodies.

More recently, the genome sequences of the prototype strains of all the PEV serotypes have been determined, as well as partial genomic data on a number of additional isolates (Doherty et al. 1999; Kaku et al. 1999, 2001; Krumbholz et al. 2002; Peng, Lin, Kitching and Knowles 1998, GenBank accession no. AJ001391; Peng, McCauley, Kitching and Knowles 1997, GenBank accession no. Y14459; Zell et al. 2001). Comparative analyses of these data indicated that PEV types 1 to 7 and 11 to 13 formed a genetic cluster distinct from PEV-8 to 10 and human and bovine enteroviruses. They also possessed a leader polypeptide and a 2A/2B cleavage mechanism similar to the aphthoviruses, cardioviruses, and erboviruses. Thus, these 10 serotypes were renamed porcine teschovirus 1 to 10 and reclassified as a single species, *Porcine teschovirus*, in a new genus, *Teschovirus*. An additional serotype, PTV-11, was also designated, based on
The remaining porcine enterovirus serotypes are currently classified in two species, *Porcine enterovirus A* (PEV-8) and *Porcine enterovirus B* (PEV-9 and PEV-10), in the genus *Enterovirus*. PEV-9 and PEV-10 are typical enteroviruses most closely related to bovine enteroviruses. However, the taxonomic position of PEV-8 is presently under discussion. Although it clusters genetically with the enteroviruses and rhinoviruses (two genera which may, in the future, be combined), PEV-8 has some distinct genome features that may be the basis for reclassification in a new genus (Krumbholz et al. 2002):

1. The 5' untranslated region (UTR) has an internal ribosome entry site (IRES) that more closely resembles that of hepatitis C virus (a flavivirus) (Kaku et al. 2002; Pisarev et al. 2004).
2. It has a leader polypeptide, absent in all other enteroviruses and rhinoviruses.
3. The sequences of the 2A, 2B, and 3A polypeptides are unlike those of the enteroviruses and rhinoviruses.

Genetically PEV-8 is most closely related to some simian picornaviruses (Krumbholz et al. 2002; Oberste et al. 2003) and a duck picornavirus (Tseng and Tsai 2004, GenBank accession no. AY563023) that are also in taxonomic limbo (Figure 18-1).

### Morphology (Size and Structure)

As with all picornaviruses, the virions of PTVs and PEVs are spherical and nonenveloped with a diameter of 25–30 nm. A single-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA) genome is surrounded by an icosahedral capsid consisting of 60 copies of four polypeptides. A small basic virus-encoded protein (VPg) is linked to the 5' end of the genome. No three-dimensional structure data is yet available.

### Genomic Organization and Gene Expression

The polyproteins of all the porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses conform to the general picornavirus L-4-3-4 layout (Rueckert and Wimmer 1984) and all processed polypeptides occur in equimolar amounts. A leader polypeptide (absent in PEV-9 and PEV-10) is followed by four structural polypeptides (VP4, VP2, VP3 and VP1, also known as 1A to 1D, respectively) and seven nonstructural polypeptides (2A, 2B, 2C, 3A, 3BPg, 3Cpro and 3Dpol). The latter three are a small genome-linked protein, a cysteine protease, and an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, respectively. In the true enteroviruses and rhinoviruses, 2A is also a cysteine protease. In the PEVs, primary polyprotein cleavages occur between the precursor polypeptides P1, P2, and P3. However, in the PTVs a self-cleaving mechanism operates between the P1-2A and 2BC polypeptides. Most subsequent processing of PEV and PTV polypeptide precursors is carried out by the 3C protease.

### Physicochemical and Biological Properties

The complete PTV virions have a buoyant density of 1.34 g/ml in cesium chloride, which is similar to that of enteroviruses; the PEVs have not been characterized. Lipoprotein is lacking and the viruses are stable when treated with lipid solvents. Porcine teschoviruses are relatively stable to heat, whereas the enteroviruses are more heat labile, unless treated with 1M MgCl₂. Heating porcine teschoviruses in the presence of halide ions tends to destabilize the virus. All these viruses are stable at pH values between 2 and 9. Hemagglutination has not been demonstrated for porcine enteroviruses or teschoviruses. Prior to reclassification porcine enteroviruses were divided into three subgroups based on physicochemical properties, type of cytopathic effect (CPE) produced in pig kidney cells, and different cell culture host ranges (Knowles et al. 1979; Zoletto 1965; Zoletto et al. 1974).
Laboratory Cultivation

Porcine tescoviruses and enteroviruses are readily cultivated in the laboratory in cell cultures of porcine origin. They are normally grown in primary or secondary pig kidney (PK) cell cultures or in established cell lines, such as IB-RS-2. They may also be cultivated in other cells of porcine origin such as the SST cell line or in primary swine testes cells. PEV-8 may additionally be cultivated in monkey kidney (e.g., Vero) and BHK-21 cells (Knowles et al. 1979). Isolates of PEV-9 and PEV-10 are also able to grow in a wide range of established cell lines, including BHK-21, Vero, and HeLa (Knowles et al. 1979).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The virulent PTV-1 strains associated with classical Teschen disease appear to be restricted to those areas in which the disease occurs and they have not been isolated in North America. Less virulent PTV-1 strains and representatives of the other PTV serotypes appear to be ubiquitous, as is PEV-8 (Odend’hal 1983). However, PEV-9 and PEV-10 have only been identified in Italy, the United Kingdom, and Japan (Caracappa et al. 1985; Honda et al. 1990a; Knowles et al. 1979; Zoletto 1965).

The only known natural host for porcine enteroviruses and tescoviruses is the pig. Experimentally,
pregnant guinea pigs infected with PEV-8 developed placental lesions (Lieu 1976).

Transmission of PEV and PTV infection is most frequently by the fecal-oral route. Indirect transmission by fomites is extremely likely to occur since the viruses are relatively resistant.

Endemic infection with several PTV serotypes and PEV-8 can usually be demonstrated in conventional herds and is probably maintained in groups of weaned piglets. Singh and Bohl (1972) demonstrated waves of infection with six different serotypes over a period of 26 months in a long-term study of infection in a single herd. Infection is normally acquired by piglets shortly after weaning, when maternally derived antibodies are withdrawn and pigs from several litters are mixed together, and it persists for at least several weeks. Adults rarely excrete virus, but have high antibody levels. Pigs of any age are, however, fully susceptible to infection with a virus belonging to a serotype to which they have not previously been exposed.

Porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses are highly resistant to the environment, with Teschen disease virus surviving for more than 168 days at 15°C (Ottis 1976). These viruses survive for long periods in liquid manure, but they are inactivated more rapidly if the manure is aerated (Lund and Nissen 1983). Likewise, they are inactivated in liquid manure by ionizing radiation (Simon et al. 1983) and by anaerobic digestion (Derbyshire et al. 1986).

Porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses are relatively resistant to many disinfectants. Of 10 commonly used disinfectants tested by Derbyshire and Arkell (1971) against Talfan virus, only sodium hypochlorite or 70% ethanol completely inactivated it.

**PATHOGENESIS**

Natural infection occurs by ingestion of the virus. It is well established (Long 1985) that initial replication occurs in the tonsil and intestinal tract. The large intestine and ileum are infected more frequently than the upper small intestine, and the former tissues contain higher titers of virus. It has not been clearly established which cells in the intestine support viral replication, but by analogy with experiments on poliovirus (Kanamitsu et al. 1967) it is probable that the reticuloendothelial tissue of the lamina propria is involved. Epithelial cell destruction is not a feature of these infections. Viremia follows regularly in infections with the virulent PTV-1 strains, but occurs less regularly with the less virulent strains, leading to infection of the central nervous system (CNS) (Holman et al. 1966). It may be assumed that the pregnant uterus is also infected by viremic spread of the virus, since embryonic or fetal infections were demonstrated in gilts following nasal or oral inoculation of PEV-8 or PTV (Huang et al. 1980).

Intranasal inoculation of the virus may lead experimentally to lung infection (Meyer et al. 1966), but the significance of the natural inhalation of viral aerosols is not known. It has also been clearly demonstrated that when piglets are inoculated parenterally with porcine teschoviruses, the virus rapidly infects the intestine. Extraintestinal infections are relatively transient, whereas the virus persists in the large intestine for several weeks.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Although porcine teschovirus and enterovirus infections are most frequently subclinical, various clinical syndromes have been associated with certain serotypes, as indicated in Table 18.2 and outlined below.

**Polioencephalomyelitis**

The most severe form of polioencephalomyelitis is that produced by the highly virulent PTV-1 strains that cause Teschen disease. This is a disease of high morbidity and high mortality, affecting all ages of swine and associated with major economic losses. The early signs of Teschen disease include fever, anorexia, and listlessness, rapidly followed by locomotor ataxia. In severe cases there may be nystagmus, convulsions, opisthotonus, and coma. Paralysis ensues, and the animal may assume a dogsitting posture or remain in lateral recumbency. Stimulation by sound or touch may elicit uncoordinated limb movements or opisthotonus. Death is common within 3 or 4 days of the onset of clinical signs. Since the appetite returns after the acute phase, some animals may be kept alive by careful nursing, but these cases show muscle wasting and residual paralysis.

The less virulent PTV-1 strains (Talfan disease, benign enzootic paresis) and strains belonging to other serotypes associated with polioencephalomyelitis pro-

---

**Table 18.2.** Natural or experimental clinical syndromes associated with porcine enteric picornavirus infection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>PTV Serotypes</th>
<th>PEV Serotypes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polioencephalomyelitis</td>
<td>PTV-1, PTV-2, PTV-3, PTV-5</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reproductive disorders</td>
<td>PTV-1, PTV-3, PTV-6</td>
<td>PEV-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
<td>PTV-1, PTV-2, PTV-3, PTV-5</td>
<td>PEV-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>PTV-1, PTV-2, PTV-3</td>
<td>PEV-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericarditis and myocarditis</td>
<td>PTV-2, PTV-3</td>
<td>PEV-9, PEV-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutaneous lesions</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
duce a milder disease with relatively low morbidity and mortality. Mainly young pigs are affected, and the disease rarely progresses to complete paralysis.

Recently, encephalomyelitis due to teschovirus infection has been reported in pigs in both the U.S. (Pogranichny et al. 2003) and Japan (Yamada et al. 2004). No neurological disease has been observed during infection with porcine enteroviruses.

**Reproductive Disease**

The term SMEDI was initially introduced (Dunne et al. 1965) to designate a group of viruses, subsequently shown to be porcine enteroviruses or teschoviruses, that had been isolated in association with stillbirth (S), mummified fetuses (M), embryonic death (ED), and infertility (I). Subsequent studies by the same group of workers and by others (De Meurichy et al. 1976) indicated that the syndrome could be reproduced experimentally.

However, parvovirus infection may also lead to embryonic death and fetal mummification and this virus may be more frequently associated with these disorders of early and midgestation. Other findings (Cropper et al. 1976) substantiated a role for teschoviruses, as well as parvoviruses, in these disorders, and experimental (Bielanski and Raeside 1977) and field data (Kirkbride and McAdaragh 1978) confirmed an association between teschovirus infection and abortion in swine. These reproductive disorders are not usually accompanied by clinical signs in the sow or gilt. Infection with encephalomyocarditis virus (family Picornaviridae, genus Cardiovirus) may also result in female reproductive failure.

Porcine teschoviruses have also been isolated from the male genital tract (Philips et al. 1972), although the insemination of gilts with contaminated semen did not influence their fertility (De Meurichy and Pensaert 1977).

**Diarrhea**

The role of porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses as enteric pathogens is uncertain. They have frequently been isolated from the feces of piglets with diarrhea, but since they can be readily isolated from normal piglets, particularly postweaning, and since diarrhea can be caused by a variety of other viral and bacterial agents, their presence may be coincidental. However, diarrhea has been produced experimentally by porcine teschoviruses in piglets believed to be free of other pathogens. The diarrhea is mild and relatively transient, and it seems clear that porcine teschoviruses are considerably less important enteric pathogens than rotaviruses or coronaviruses. When piglets were infected with porcine teschoviruses together with rotaviruses, the disease was less severe than in piglets infected only with the rotavirus (Janke et al. 1988). An association between PEV-8 and diarrhea has been suggested based on the relative frequency of isolation of this virus from pigs showing symptoms (Honda et al. 1990b). Conversely, the relative infrequency of isolation of PEV-9/PEV-10 from pig feces would argue against any involvement of these viruses in gastrointestinal disease (Knowles 1988).

**Pneumonia, Pericarditis, and Myocarditis**

The role of enteroviruses and teschoviruses as respiratory pathogens is also uncertain. It is probable that alone they rarely cause clinical signs of respiratory disease, although Pospisil et al. (1971) noted increased respiration, coughing, snorting, reduced appetite, and depression in piglets exposed to an aerosol of porcine teschovirus. Although pathogenic studies indicate some degree of tropism of these viruses for the lung, the pneumonia produced is usually subclinical. Two serotypes of porcine teschovirus have been shown experimentally to be capable of producing pericarditis, and in one experiment, myocardial involvement occurred (Long et al. 1969). These findings might lead to a suspicion of teschovirus infection in the case of sudden death in piglets, although encephalomyocarditis virus might be more likely candidate.

**Possible Association with Cutaneous Lesions**

During the course of investigations of swine vesicular disease outbreaks in the United Kingdom, many adventitious agents were isolated from samples of epithelium and feces. Most of these isolates were identified as teschoviruses or enteroviruses (Knowles 1983). Porcine teschoviruses and PEV-8 were evenly distributed in fecal samples (41% and 44%, respectively) and in epithelial samples (21% in each case). However, PEV-9/PEV-10 were rarely found in feces (15%), but were more commonly found in epithelial samples (58%) (Knowles 1988). Examination of another virus collection again revealed an approximately even distribution of PTV and PEV-8 (57% and 43%, respectively), but PEV-9 and PEV-10 were not identified (Knowles 1988). It was assumed that most of the PTV and PEV-8 isolates identified in epithelial samples were incidental contaminants; however, the low level incidence of PEV-9 and PEV-10 in feces could not explain the much higher isolation rate from epithelial tissue collected from atypical skin lesions. This association has yet to be explained.

**LESIONS**

No specific changes have been associated with intestinal enterovirus or teschovirus infections. They do not appear to cause villous atrophy, which is characteristic of primary intestinal pathogens such as coronaviruses and rotaviruses. Other than muscle atrophy in chronic cases, no gross lesions are found in polioencephalomyelitis. The histological lesions associated with the latter are widely distributed in the CNS but are especially numerous in the ventral columns of the spinal cord, the cerebellar cortex, and the brain stem. The changes are more marked and extensive in Teschen disease than in milder encephalomyelitides, such as Talfan disease. The
neurons show progressive diffuse chromatolysis (Koestner et al. 1966) and focal areas of gliosis and perivascular lymphocytes, particularly over the cerebellum, may also occur.

The SMEDI syndrome is remarkable for the lack of specific lesions in stillborn or neonatal piglets, although mild focal gliosis and perivascular cuffing in the brain stem have been found occasionally. Placental changes are restricted to nonspecific degeneration.

Pneumonic lesions have been produced by several investigators. Smith et al. (1973) describes areas of grayish-red consolidation in the ventral anterior lobes of lungs infected with a PTV-2 strain. There were exudates in the alveoli and bronchi, slight perivascular and peribronchiolar cuffing, and some hyperplasia of the bronchiolar epithelium.

A PTV-3 strain consistently produced serofibrinous pericarditis experimentally, and the more severely affected piglets showed focal myocardial necrosis (Long et al. 1969).

**IMMUNITY**

Infected pigs mount a classical humoral protective immune response (IgM and IgG). Mucosal immunity (IgA) may be produced and have a protective effect in the gastrointestinal tract. In an experimental study of porcine teschovirus infection in piglets, it was shown that cell-mediated responses were weak and localized and not associated with significant antiviral activity (Brundage et al. 1980).

Humoral antibody is thought to be important for protection. In one experiment, immunosuppression (using cyclophosphamide) of pigs infected with a porcine teschovirus led to the lack of a serological response and a persistent infection of the intestinal tract (Derbyshire 1983). This resulted in severe diarrhea and, in one case, signs of encephalomyelitis. Presence of high levels of virus neutralizing IgA antibody in the gastrointestinal tract may protect against oral challenge (Hazlett and Derbyshire 1977).

Since humoral antibody is probably the most important factor in protection, at least in teschoviruses, the relatively large number of serotypes would suggest that cross-protection may not be effective.

It has been reported for both PTV-1 and PEV-8 that maternal antibody has no effect on embryonic or fetal infections after the virus has reached the uterus (Huang et al. 1980). However, possession of preinfection antibody in sows would probably limit infection and prevent the virus from reaching the uterus. Colostral antibody would be expected to protect piglets from infection.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Teschen disease (Enterovirus Encephalomyelitis) is designated as a List A disease by the World Organisation for Animal Health (OIE) and details of internationally accepted methods for its diagnosis can be found on the World Wide Web as an on-line document (Office International des Epizooties 2004).

The occurrence of clinical signs associated with polioencephalomyelitis is suggestive of viral infection, but the differentiation of teschoviral infection from other neurotropic viruses requires isolation of the virus from the CNS, the demonstration of viral antigen by specific immunofluorescence or presence of viral RNA by RT-PCR. Similarly, with reproductive disorders, diarrhea, pneumonia, pericarditis, and myocarditis, there are no diagnostic clinical signs that would suggest enterovirus or teschovirus involvement and laboratory diagnosis is required.

Virus isolation from the CNS requires the collection of tissues from a piglet showing early nervous signs since animals that have been paralyzed for several days may no longer contain infectious virus in the CNS (Lynch et al. 1984). The virus may be isolated in PK cell cultures from suspensions of the spinal cord, brain stem, or cerebellum. It may subsequently be identified on the basis of its physicochemical characteristics, by immunofluorescence (Watanabe 1971) or immunoperoxidase staining (Sulochana and Derbyshire 1978). Serologic identification of the isolate is desirable. The isolation of a teschovirus or enterovirus from the gastrointestinal tract of a piglet with nervous signs does not establish the etiology of the disease, since the enteric infection may be coincidental. In the SMEDI syndrome, mummified fetuses carried to term rarely contain live virus but may contain viral antigen detectable by immunofluorescence.

Virus isolation in PK cell culture may be attempted from tissues of aborted or stillborn fetuses. Lung tissue appears to be the most reliable source for the isolation of porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses from fetuses (Huang et al. 1980). VN tests on the body fluids of such fetuses can be carried out against the SMEDI-associated PTV and PEV serotypes. In the investigation of pneumonia or diarrhea, virus isolation from the respiratory or intestinal tract may be attempted, but the virological findings should be interpreted cautiously, especially in relation to diarrhea, since enteric infections with teschoviruses and enteroviruses are common in healthy piglets. In one study porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses were isolated from 57% of porcine fecal samples submitted for swine vesicular disease diagnosis over a 7-year period (Knowles 1983).

Isolated viruses may be identified by virus neutralization (Knowles et al. 1979), complement fixation (Knowles and Buckley 1980), or immunofluorescence (Auerbach et al. 1994; Dauber 1999) if suitable reference reagents are available. Monoclonal antibodies that are capable of detecting porcine teschoviruses have been described (Dauber 1999).

Now that genomic sequence data is available for all the porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses, it is possi-
The best current approach to the prevention of reproductive disorders associated with porcine enteroviruses and teschoviruses would appear to be the application of management practices that ensure that gilts are exposed to the infection with endemic viruses at least 1 month before breeding. This can be achieved naturally if the animals remain in a single building from birth to breeding, with thorough mixing of piglets from different litters at weaning. If breeding stock is segregated at an early age, they should be contaminated with fecal material from recently weaned piglets. This can be readily accomplished by adding fresh feces to the feed of gilts or by dosing gilts with capsules of feces, which should be a pooled sample collected from weaned piglets in several pens to ensure exposure to as wide a range as possible of the virus present in the herd.

The operation of a closed-herd system reduces the risk of introducing extraneous viruses, but it is not possible to eliminate this risk, since the relatively resistant enteric picornaviruses can be transmitted by a variety of fomites. If the introduction of fresh stock is essential for breeding purposes, before the gilts or sows are bred they should be exposed (by fecal contamination as described above) to any virus that may be present or introduced. Exclusion of porcine enteroviruses or teschoviruses by repopulation of herds with specific pathogen free (SPF) stock seems to be difficult or impossible to achieve over a prolonged period. These viruses have been isolated from commercial SPF herds (Derbyshire et al. 1966) and the accidental introduction of Talfan virus into SPF gilts maintained under strict isolation has been described (Parker et al. 1981). Since transplacental infection of fetuses may occur, even gnotobiotic pigs may be infected.

REFERENCES


Porcine enteric caliciviruses were first recognized when diarrheic feces from postweaning and nursing pigs in the United Kingdom and the United States were examined by electron microscopy (Bridger 1980; Saif et al. 1980). Porcine enteric caliciviruses have not been widely studied and much is unknown concerning their role in naturally occurring swine disease. This is in contrast to the recognized role of caliciviruses in human gastroenteritis (Green et al. 2001). Likewise, research is establishing a role for caliciviruses of the *Norovirus* genus in enteric disease of cattle (Deng et al. 2003; Oliver et al. 2003; Smiley et al. 2003; Wise et al. 2004). Thus, based on their role as disease agents in other species, it may be postulated that caliciviruses play a significant role in porcine enteric disease. Based on the limited data available, there is no evidence that porcine enteric caliciviruses pose a threat to human health.

**ETIOLOGY**

Human enteric caliciviruses belong to two genera, *Norovirus* (formerly Norwalk-like) and *Sapovirus* (formerly Sapporo-like), in the family *Caliciviridae* (Mayo 2002). Both are common causes of human gastroenteritis. Caliciviruses belonging to both the *Norovirus* and *Sapovirus* genera have also been identified in pigs.

Porcine sapoviruses have been studied the most, but only one isolate (PEC/Cowden) has been studied in any detail (Flynn and Saif 1988; Flynn et al. 1988; Guo et al. 1999; Guo et al. 2001a; Parwani et al. 1990; Saif et al. 1980). PEC/Cowden shows typical calicivirus morphology with clear cup-shaped depressions (Figure 19.1). The virus is approximately 35 nm in diameter and has an RNA genome of 7,320 base pairs organized into two open reading frames, similar to the human sapoviruses and lagoviruses. The highest amino acid identities were with the sapoviruses, with which it grouped phylogenetically, but PEC/Cowden was assigned to genogroup III, a new genogroup distinct from the human sapoviruses (Schuffenecker et al. 2001; Figure 19.2).

Consistent with all other caliciviruses, PEC/Cowden has one major structural capsid protein with a molecular weight of 58 kilodaltons. Antigenic relationships to nonenteric caliciviruses have not been well studied, but PEC/Cowden and a likely porcine sapovirus identified in the United Kingdom were antigenically unrelated to vesicular exanthema of swine virus and feline caliciviruses (Bridger 1980; Saif et al. 1980). Nothing is known about genetic or antigenic variation among porcine sapoviruses because only one isolate has been studied in detail.

The PEC/Cowden sapovirus may be cultured on primary porcine kidney cells and a continuous porcine kidney cell line (LLC-PK), but only by inclusion of intestinal contents in the culture medium (Flynn and Saif 1988; Parwani et al. 1991). It is the only enteric calicivirus to be cultured to date. Bile acids were identified as the active factor that allowed cultivation by affecting the protein kinase A cell signaling pathway (Chang et al. 2002; Chang et al. 2004).

Less is known about porcine noroviruses. A virus with an indistinct morphology was reported in the United Kingdom (Bridger 1980), and six partial gene sequences with close similarity to each other and to human noroviruses have been demonstrated in pigs in the Netherlands and Japan (Sugieda et al. 1998; Sugieda and Nakajima 2002; van Der Poel et al. 2000; Figure 19.2). Phylogenetic analysis grouped the porcine sequences with the genogroup II human noroviruses, but they formed a separate genetic cluster distinct from human noroviruses. Additional data will be required to determine whether human and porcine noroviruses are genetically distinct and whether humans and pigs might share noroviruses. Porcine noroviruses have not been cultured and nothing is known about their physicochemical and other biological properties.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Porcine enteric caliciviruses have been identified in the United States (Guo et al. 1999; Saif et al. 1980), United
Kingdom (Bridger 1980), the Netherlands (van Der Poel et al. 2000), Hungary (Nagy et al. 1996), and Japan (Shirai et al. 1985; Sugieda et al. 1998; Sugieda and Nakajima 2002). The virus identified in the United States was typed as a sapovirus; in the Netherlands and Japan as a norovirus; and in the United Kingdom and Hungary, it was not genetically typed.

The one prevalence study conducted to examine porcine sapoviruses related to PEC/Cowden showed that at least 83% of 30 sow serum samples from Ohio pig herds with PEC-associated postweaning diarrhea had antibodies reactive to PEC/Cowden (Guo et al. 2001b).

Two porcine norovirus prevalence studies have been reported. In Japan, 4 samples were reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) positive among 1,117 cecal content samples collected from healthy pigs on 26 farms in 1997 (Sugieda and Nakajima 2002). In the Netherlands (1998–1999), 2 samples were RT-PCR positive among 100 pooled fecal samples collected from 3–9-month-old pigs on 100 farms (van Der Poel et al. 2000). These studies are likely to have underestimated the prevalence of porcine norovirus infections because PCR primers designed for human noroviruses were used and because investigators did not select for pre- and postweaning diarrheic piglets.

Little is known regarding porcine enteric caliciviruses and natural disease. A study in Hungary found no association with diarrhea when diarrheic and nondiarrheic weaned and unweaned pigs were examined for evidence of porcine calicivirus infection by electron microscopy (Nagy et al. 1996).

It is assumed that natural enteric calicivirus transmission is fecal-oral. Whether porcine enteric caliciviruses are species-specific has not been established. It has been postulated that the close genetic similarity of porcine noroviruses and human noroviruses indicates zoonotic potential (Sugieda and Nakajima 2002; van Der Poel et al. 2000).

**PATHOGENESIS**

Experimental infections with the porcine sapovirus PEC/Cowden produced enteric lesions and disease (Flynn et al. 1988; Guo et al. 2001a). Unusual for a viral enteric pathogen, disease and small intestinal lesions in the duodenum and jejunum resulted from intravenous inoculation of PEC/Cowden, as well as by oral exposure. Viral replication in enterocytes was demonstrated by immunofluorescence with anti-PEC/Cowden antiserum. Calicivirus particles were demonstrated in intestinal contents and in the blood stream, the first time viremia has been associated with an enteric calicivirus. The mechanism by which the virus reached the small intestine and villous enterocytes from the blood stream was not determined. When infected by the oral route, fecal shedding of the sapovirus PEC/Cowden occurred for up to 9 days. When infected by the intravenous route, fecal shedding was observed for at least 8 days.

Experimental infections with porcine noroviruses have not been reported.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

With PEC/Cowden, the one strain of porcine sapovirus that has been studied, the incubation period ranged from 2–4 days after oral infection and clinical signs of diarrhea persisted for 3–7 days (Flynn et al. 1988; Guo et al. 2001a). All inoculated pigs became infected and developed clinical signs ranging from mild to severe diarrhea. Control pigs and pigs infected with tissue culture-adapted PEC failed to develop clinical signs, although intestinal lesions were observed in the exposed pigs.

There are no reports of experimental studies with porcine noroviruses.

**LESIONS**

Infection with PEC/Cowden produced lesions indistinguishable from those produced by other enteric viral pathogens, such as rotaviruses (Flynn et al. 1988; Guo et al. 2001a). Lesions included shortening, blunting, fusion or absence of duodenal and jejunal villi and, by scanning electron microscopy, an irregular microvillous coat on enterocytes. Crypt cell hyperplasia and a reduc-
tion of villus/crypt ratios occurred with cytoplasmic vacuolation and infiltration of polymorphonuclear and mononuclear cells into the lamina propria.

**IMMUNITY**

Immune responses against porcine sapoviruses and noroviruses, protective immunity, and/or the role of maternal antibodies have not been assessed. It may be assumed that protective immune mechanisms are similar to those for other enteric virus pathogens, although the recognition of an extraintestinal phase to the pathogenesis of a porcine sapovirus suggests that other immune strategies might be used in their control. Porcine sapovirus and norovirus infections in pigs may potentially provide useful insights into protective immunity of the equivalent viruses of humans.

**DIAGNOSIS**

No diagnostic tests for porcine sapoviruses or noroviruses have been developed for use outside the research laboratory. An antigen and antibody ELISA was developed and used to study PEC/Cowden (Guo et al. 2001b). Porcine noroviruses have been detected using RT-PCR (Sugieda et al. 1998; Sugieda and Nakajima 2002; van Der Poel et al. 2000).

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

Assuming that porcine sapovirus and norovirus epidemiology and immunology are similar to porcine rotaviruses, it is likely that these viruses persist in the environment and that sows pass maternal antibodies in colostrum and milk that limit enteric infection and disease in neonates. Likewise, if these viruses are similar to porcine rotaviruses, it is probably impossible to eliminate infection from pig herds and/or prevent natural infection of piglets. In the case of severely affected pigs, oral rehydration with fluids is likely to be successful.
Porcine Astroviruses

INTRODUCTION

Porcine astroviruses were first recognized when diarrheic feces were examined by electron microscopy (Bridger 1980; Geyer et al. 1994; Shimizu et al. 1990). Their causal role in porcine enteric disease remains undetermined. In some species—for example, humans and sheep—astroviruses have been linked to enteric disease (Matsui and Greenberg 2001), but bovine astroviruses failed to cause clinical disease when inoculated into calves (Woode and Bridger 1978; Woode et al. 1984).

ETIOLOGY

Porcine astroviruses are members of the family Astroviridae which is divided into two genera, Mamastrovirus (astroviruses of mammals) and Avastrovirus (astroviruses of birds). Approximately 30 nm diameter and nonenveloped, astrovirus particles are distinctive in appearance, with some particles showing a 5- or 6-pointed star surface pattern when viewed by negative stain electron microscopy (Figure 19.1; Bridger 1980; Shimizu et al. 1990). Not all particles show this distinctive appearance, and care is needed so as not to confuse them with the indistinct appearance of noroviruses, particularly in the presence of antibody.

The genome is composed of positive sense, single-stranded RNA 6.8 to 7.9 kilobases in length composed of three open reading frames (Matsui and Greenberg 2001). Two porcine astroviruses from Japan have been partially sequenced (Jonassen et al. 2001; Lukashov and Goudsmit 2002; Wang et al. 2001). Phylogenetic analyses grouped human and porcine astroviruses closely together, whereas astroviruses from sheep and avian species were less related to human astroviruses (Figure 19.3). There is evidence that astroviruses from different animal species are antigenically distinct (Matsui and Greenberg 2001). For example, antibodies against porcine astroviruses do not react with bovine astroviruses.

Porcine astroviruses have not been widely studied. In Japan, a cytopathic astrovirus from diarrheic pigs was successfully isolated on a porcine kidney cell line by incorporating trypsin into the medium (Shimizu et al. 1990). Immunofluorescent cells and astrovirus particles were detected. A virus with a buoyant density of 1.35 g/ml was cloned and a serum-virus neutralization test developed. The isolate was stable to treatment with lipid solvents and resisted heating at 56°C for 30 minutes, but showed some lability to acid treatment at pH 3.0. Five structural proteins with molecular masses 13–39 kilodaltons were identified. At present, the number of astrovirus structural proteins is uncertain and has varied in

19.3. Unrooted neighbor-joining tree showing the relationships between the capsid proteins of swine astroviruses and other members of the family. Swine astroviruses are boxed. Members of the two accepted genera (Mamastrovirus and Avastrovirus) are within the shaded areas.
studies with astroviruses from different animal species (Matsui and Greenberg 2001).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Porcine astroviruses have been identified in feces of pigs in the United Kingdom (Bridger 1980), Japan (Shimizu et al. 1990), and South Africa (Geyer et al. 1994). In a serological survey in Japan, 39% of 128 pigs in 8 herds had serum neutralizing antibodies to porcine astroviruses (Shimizu et al. 1990). All but one herd had antibody and the in-herd prevalence ranged from 7–83%. Transmission is presumed to be fecal-oral.

A study of evolutionary genomic relationships showed that human and animal astroviruses belonged to distinct genomic clusters (Jonassen et al. 2001; Lukashov and Goudsmit 2002; Figure 19.3). However, the genetic data supported the hypothesis that two cross-species transmission events involving pigs, cats, and humans, possibly through intermediate hosts, may have occurred in the past.

Cross-species infectivity of porcine astroviruses has not been demonstrated, and astroviruses are believed to be species-specific.

PATHOGENESIS, CLINICAL SIGNS, LESIONS, IMMUNITY

Porcine astroviruses have been associated with severe diarrhea in natural infections, but only in the presence of other known enteric pathogens (Bridger 1980; Shimizu et al. 1990). Mild diarrhea developed in 4-day-old pigs after oral inoculation with porcine astroviruses grown in cell culture (Shimizu et al. 1990). Diarrhea commenced 1 day after inoculation and continued for 5–6 days. Cytopathic astrovirus was recovered from feces and pigs seroconverted. Intestinal pathology was not studied, but it is reasonable to hypothesize that astroviruses might contribute to the intestinal pathology and clinical signs commonly observed in pre- and post-weaning diarrhea. Nothing is known about antigenic differences between porcine astroviruses or the immunity induced by infection with astrovirus.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnostic assays have not been developed for routine diagnosis, but methods such as isolation on cell culture and identification with immunofluorescence and RTPCR can be used to diagnose natural porcine astrovirus infection. The serum-virus neutralization and immunofluorescent antibody assays can be used to demonstrate seroconversion (Shimizu et al. 1990).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

Porcine astroviruses may be just one of several viruses that contribute to pre- and post-weaning diarrhea. Elimination of astroviruses from infected farms would be difficult to achieve because of their resistance in the environment. In addition, such an effort would be difficult to justify on the basis of their clinical effects. Assuming that astrovirus pathology is confined to the intestinal tract, oral rehydration would be expected to be effective in affected pigs. There are no commercially available vaccines.

REFERENCES


In 1962, a previously unrecognized viral pathogen was isolated in Canada from the brains of suckling pigs with encephalomyelitis (Greig et al. 1962). The virus responsible for this disease was named hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis virus (HEV) and was later classified as a coronavirus (Greig et al. 1971). In 1969, an antigenically identical virus was isolated in England from suckling pigs showing anorexia, depression, and vomiting, but without clear signs of encephalomyelitis (Cartwright et al. 1969). Animals that did not die remained stunted in growth; the condition was therefore called “vomiting and wasting disease” (VWD). Mengeling and Cutlip (1976) were later able to experimentally reproduce both forms of the disease using the same field isolates.

Although epidemiologic studies have revealed that infection of swine with HEV is prevalent, naturally occurring disease is uncommon. Neonatal pigs are usually protected by passively acquired colostral antibody, and they subsequently develop an age-related resistance to the potential clinical effects of the virus. Therefore, studies on virus-animal interactions have been scarce in recent years.

ETIOLOGY

HEV belongs to group 2 of the family Coronaviridae, a group characterized by the presence of a gene encoding for the hemagglutinin-esterase (HE) protein (Gonzalez et al. 2003). Other members of group 2 include bovine coronavirus (BCV), human respiratory coronavirus OC43 (HCV-OC43), and mouse hepatitis virus (MHV).

Nucleotide sequence analysis of the region covering the S2 probe revealed 92.6% nucleotide sequence homology to BCV and 91.9% to HCV-OC43 (Vieler et al. 1995). An antigenic relationship between HEV and BCV was shown by virus neutralization (VN), hemagglutination-inhibition (HI), immunofluorescence, and immunoelectron microscopy. Moderate cross-reactivity was observed between HEV and turkey enteric coronavirus (Dea and Tijssen 1989). Although HEV is known to be the cause of two distinct clinical syndromes in pigs, only one serotype of the virus is known to exist.

Under electron microscopy, HEV’s appearance is similar to other coronaviruses. Negatively stained particles are spherical in shape, with an overall diameter of 120 nm (Greig et al. 1971). Club-shaped surface projections arranged as a solar “corona” protrude from the envelope. Lamontagne et al. (1981) showed that the viral particle contains two concentric membranes—an external envelope and an inner membranous bag—encircling a central core. Virus particles can be seen by electron microscopy in cytoplasmic vesicles of infected cells. Assembly occurs by budding through membranes of the endoplasmic reticulum (Ducatelle et al. 1981).

Studies on the chemical composition of HEV revealed that the virus contains RNA and five polypeptides, four of which are glycosylated, with molecular weights from 31,000–180,000 daltons (Callebaut and Pensaert 1980; Greig and Girard 1969; Pocock and Garwes 1977). The buoyant density was 1.21 g/ml in cesium chloride (Mengeling and Coria 1972) and 1.18 g/ml in potassium tartrate (Greig and Bouillant 1972).

HEV is stable between pH 4 and 10. All viral infectivity is lost after 30 minutes at 56°C, but the titer of infectious virus is reduced by only 0.8 log10 after 7 days at 4°C. HEV was shown by Greig and Girard (1969) to be sensitive to lipid solvents, including sodium deoxycholate.

HEV was first isolated in primary cultures of pig kidney (PK) cells by Greig et al. (1962), who described a cytopathic effect (CPE) characterized by the appearance of syncytia. An immunofluorescence test showed that HEV was also able to propagate in several other porcine cell cultures, including adult thyroid gland, embryonic lung, testicle cell line, PK-15 cell line (Pirtle 1974), IBRS2 cell line (Chappuis et al. 1975), SK cell line (Lucas and Naphine 1971), SK-K cell line (Hirano et al. 1990), and swine embryo kidney cell line KSEK6 (Kadoi et al. 1994). Non-porcine cell cultures have little susceptibility for growth of HEV.
HEV possesses two virion-associated hemagglutinins: the hemagglutinin-esterase (HE) and the S protein (Sasseville et al. 2002; Schultze and Herrler 1993). The virus spontaneously agglutinates erythrocytes of mice, rats, chickens, and several other species of animals (Girard et al. 1964). Elution of HEV from red blood cells has not been observed. These erythrocytes can be used in a hemadsorption test to demonstrate viral growth in inoculated cell cultures.

The natural host of HEV is the pig, but the virus has been adapted experimentally to replicate in mice (Kay et al. 1977; Yagami et al. 1986) and Wistar rats (Hirano et al. 1993). The virus is neurotropic in mice, but susceptibility was found to be influenced by age and route of inoculation (Yagami et al. 1993). In contrast, 4-week-old Wistar rats died of encephalitis after inoculation of HEV via different routes (Hirano et al. 1993).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Pigs are the only species known to be naturally susceptible to HEV infection. Most of the infections in this species are subclinical and the economic impact of the disease is low.

The distribution of HEV in the pig population has been studied in several countries. The HI and VN tests proved to be almost equally sensitive for detection of HEV antibodies in swine sera (Mengeling 1975), but the VN test is more specific (Sasaki et al. 2003). Serologic surveys revealed that infection of swine with HEV is very common and probably worldwide. In fattening pigs, 31% of the sera were positive in Canada (Girard et al. 1964), 46% in Northern Ireland (McFerran et al. 1971), 49% in England (Cartwright and Lucas 1970), 52–82% in Japan (Hirai et al. 1974; Hirano and Ono 1998), 75% in Germany (Hess and Bachmann 1978), and 0–89% in the United States, depending on the region surveyed (Mengeling 1975). The percentage of sows with antibodies at slaughter varied from 43% in Northern Ireland to 98% in the United States. A high number of seropositive animals were also found in Denmark (Sorensen 1975), France (Vannier et al. 1981), Australia (Forman et al. 1979), Belgium (Pensaert et al. 1980), and Austria (Mostl 1990). Conversely, Neuvonen et al. (1982) found that 40 Finnish elite breeding pig herds were free of seropositive animals.

HEV was isolated from the respiratory tract of pigs with respiratory illness in Japan in 1984 (Hirahara et al. 1987). The first isolation of HEV in Taiwan was from 30–50-day-old pigs with signs of central nervous disease (Chang et al. 1993).

Under experimental conditions, disease has been reproduced in most instances in which nonimmune pigs were exposed oronasally to HEV during the first few weeks of life (Alexander 1962; Appel et al. 1965). Clinical signs may vary, however. In a study in which the virulence of several HEV field isolates was compared, the severity of signs was related to a difference in host susceptibility (even among littermates), as well as to the apparent virulence of each isolate (Mengeling and Cutlip 1976). In contrast, older pigs and neonatal pigs that had received antibody in colostrum were usually clinically unaffected when exposed to HEV under otherwise similar conditions (Appel et al. 1965).

These observations are believed to explain why naturally occurring disease is relatively uncommon, even though HEV is ubiquitous among swine. That is, in herds where HEV infection is endemic, most pigs receive protective antibody in colostrum, and circulating maternal antibodies persist for 4–18 (mean 10.5) weeks (Paul and Mengeling 1984). By the time maternal antibody wanes, the pigs have already developed an age-related resistance to the disease. Additional support for this concept is provided by a serologic study on two Belgian breeding farms, which showed that passively acquired colostral immunity was replaced by active immunity as a consequence of subclinical infection of pigs between 8 and 16 weeks of age (Pensaert et al. 1980).

Outbreaks of HEV-associated disease are now rarely described in the literature. In a relatively recent outbreak, HEV was isolated from newborn and early-weaned pigs with vomiting and posterior paralysis on a Canadian farm (Sasseville et al. 2001). Remarkably, this recent isolate showed a high degree of genetic and antigenic homology with the 1962 reference strain HEV-67N (Sasseville et al. 2002).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Infection with HEV can produce two clinical syndromes: an acute, clinically apparent encephalomyelitis and vomiting and wasting disease (VWD). Both syndromes are primarily confined to pigs less than 3 weeks of age, although older swine may occasionally vomit and exhibit a brief period of inappetence, listlessness, and nervous signs. Encephalomyelitis caused by HEV was diagnosed in 30–50-day-old pigs in Taiwan (Chang et al. 1993). Prior to the Taiwanese report, the typical encephalomyelitic form had only been described in Canada (Alexander et al. 1959) and the United States (Werdin et al. 1976). Both the nervous and VWD syndromes have many clinical signs in common and varying degrees of severity may be seen, from acute encephalomyelitis to chronic VWD.

Sneezing or coughing may occur at the start of a VWD outbreak. After an incubation period of 4–7 days, the primary sign is repeated retching and vomiting. Pigs under 4 weeks of age start suckling, but soon stop, withdraw from the sow, and vomit the milk they have taken in. Pigs huddle together, appear pale and listless, and often have an arched back. Body temperature may be elevated at the beginning of the outbreak, but returns to
normal in 1–2 days. Affected pigs often grind their teeth. They dip their mouths into water bowls, but drink little or nothing, indicating a possible pharyngeal paresis. Persistent vomiting and decreased food intake result in constipation and a rapid decline in condition.

The youngest pigs become severely dehydrated after a few days, become dyspneic and cyanotic, fall into a coma, and die. Older pigs lose their appetite and rapidly become emaciated. They continue to vomit, although less frequently than in the early stage of the disease. Some animals develop a large distension of the cranial abdomen. This “wasting” state may persist for several weeks until the pigs die of starvation. Mortality approaches 100% within litters and survivors remain permanently stunted.

An outbreak of the encephalomyelitic form may start as a VWD outbreak. Some pigs begin to vomit 4–7 days after birth. The vomiting continues intermittently for 1–2 days, but is rarely severe and does not result in dehydration. In other outbreaks, the first sign is acute depression and a tendency to huddle. Pigs may become sick as soon as 2 days after birth. Occasionally, sneezing, coughing, or upper respiratory compromise is observed. The pigs lose weight rapidly and their hair loses its luster and becomes rough. After 1–3 days, signs of severe encephalomyelitis arise. Younger pigs are most severely affected and exhibit various combinations of nervous signs. Generalized muscle tremors and hyperesthesia are common findings. Pigs that are able to stand usually have a jerky gait and tend to walk backwards, often ending in a dog-sitting position. They soon become very weak, are unable to rise, and paddle their limbs. Their noses and feet become cyanotic. Blindness, opisthotonus, and nystagmus can also occur. Finally, affected animals become prostrate, dyspneic, and lay on their sides. In most cases, coma precedes death.

Mortality in younger pigs is usually 100%. Older pigs usually suffer a mild transient illness in which posterior paralysis may be the most common sign. The paresis in a few cases is accompanied by blindness. The outbreak described in Taiwan (Chang et al. 1993) in 30–50-day-old pigs was characterized by fever, constipation, hyperesthesia, muscular tremor, progressive anterior paresis causing pigs to assume a “rabbit-like” posture, posterior paresis, prostration, recumbency, and paddling movements. Morbidity was 4%, but mortality was 100%, with pigs dying 4–5 days after the onset of clinical signs.

The time interval from onset of the disease in the first litter to cessation of the disease or its failure to appear in new litters is usually 2–3 weeks (Werdin et al. 1976). The disappearance of clinical signs coincides with the time it takes sows to develop immunity and to pass this protection on to their offspring. It has been shown that pigs exposed to HEV develop neutralizing and hemagglutination-inhibiting serum antibodies (Pensaert and Callebaut 1974).

**PATHOGENESIS**

HEV is able to replicate in the upper respiratory tract with or without producing clinical signs. HEV can be isolated from the nasal cavity, trachea, and lungs of diseased or healthy pigs (Hirahara et al. 1989; Mengeling et al. 1972; Pensaert et al. 1980). The virus is excreted for 8–10 days in oronasal secretions (Hirahara et al. 1989; Pensaert and Callebaut 1974), with transmission occurring through exposure to nasal secretions.

Most infections under field circumstances have a subclinical course, but the typical clinical disease can be reproduced by oronasal inoculation of colostrum-deprived piglets. In a series of studies on the pathogenesis of the disease, Andries and Pensaert (1980c) inoculated newborn colostrum-deprived pigs oronasally with an HEV strain from pigs showing the VWD syndrome. Anorexia and vomiting were seen after an incubation period of 4 days. Earlier studies had shown that viremia was probably of little or no importance in the pathogenesis (Andries and Pensaert 1980b). Immunofluorescence studies at different times after inoculation revealed that the epithelial cells of nasal mucosa, tonsils, lungs, and small intestine served as sites of primary viral replication.

After local replication near the sites of entry, the virus spread via the peripheral nervous system to the central nervous system (CNS). At least three pathways appeared to be involved. One pathway led from the nasal mucosa and tonsils to the trigeminal ganglion and the trigeminal sensory nucleus in the brainstem. A second pathway followed along the vagal nerves via the vagal sensory ganglion to the vagal sensory nucleus in the brainstem. A third pathway led from the intestinal plexuses to the spinal cord, also after replication in local sensory ganglia.

In the CNS, the infection started in well-defined nuclei of the medulla oblongata, but later progressed into the entire brainstem, the spinal cord, and sometimes also the cerebrum and cerebellum. Fluorescence in the brain was always restricted to the perikaryon and processes of neurons (Figure 20.1). Vomiting was induced by viral replication in the vagal sensory ganglion (ganglion distale vagi) or by impulses to the vomiting center produced by infected neurons at different sites (Andries 1982).

Experimental inoculation of rats and mice also leads to infection of the central nervous system. In these animals, HEV spreads transsynaptically along the neuronal pathways from the peripheral nerves to the central nervous system (Hirahara et al. 1972; Pensaert et al. 1980). The stomach of control pigs was always empty within 10 hours, whereas barium was retained in
the stomachs of pigs with HEV for 2–7 days. In pigs with a bilateral abdominal vagotomy, the stomach emptying was less disturbed. This indicated that the delayed gastric emptying in pigs with HEV was not solely due to earlier viral replication in the vagal ganglion and vagal nuclei in the brain. The virus-induced lesions in the intramural plexi of the stomach were probably also responsible for gastric stasis. The disturbance in normal gastric emptying was considered to play an important role in the pathogenesis of wasting.

**LESIONS**

The only significant gross lesions reported in natural HEV infections are cachexia and a distension of the abdomen that develops in some chronically affected pigs (Hoorens et al. 1977; Schlenstedt et al. 1969). In these pigs, the stomach is dilated and filled with gas.

Microscopic lesions are found in the tonsils, the nervous system, respiratory system, and stomach of acutely diseased pigs. The lesions tend to disappear in animals surviving acute stages of the disease.

A nonsuppurative encephalomyelitis was reported in 70–100% of pigs with nervous signs and in 20–60% of pigs with the VWD syndrome. The lesions are characterized by perivascular cuffing, gliosis, and neuronal degeneration (Alexander 1962; Chang et al. 1993; Hoorens et al. 1977; Narita et al. 1989b; Richards and Savan 1960). Lesions are most pronounced in the gray matter of the pons Varoli, the medulla oblongata, and the dorsal horns of the upper spinal cord. It has been hypothesized that encephalitic lesions are a specific immune response to HEV following its replication in the CNS (Narita et al. 1989b). Neuritis of peripheral sensory ganglia, particularly the trigeminal ganglia, also occurs.

Changes in the tonsil are characterized by epithelial degeneration and lymphatic cell infiltration into the crypts (Narita et al. 1989a). Degeneration of the epithelial cells of the turbinates, bronchi, and alveoli, as well as interstitial peribronchiolar pneumonia with infiltration of neutrophils and macrophages, were observed in 20% of naturally infected animals (Hoorens et al. 1977) and a much higher proportion of experimentally infected pigs (Cutlip and Mengeling 1972; Hirahara et al. 1989).

Microscopic changes in the stomach wall and the lungs were found only in pigs showing the VWD syndrome. Degeneration of the ganglia of the stomach wall and perivascular cuffing were present in 15–85% of diseased animals. The lesions were most pronounced in the pyloric gland area (Hoorens et al. 1977; Schlenstedt et al. 1969; Steinicke and Nielsen 1959).

**DIAGNOSIS**

To isolate HEV, the tonsils, brain, and lungs are collected aseptically from young, diseased piglets euthanized shortly after the first signs of infection. It is very difficult to isolate the virus from pigs that have been sick for more than 2 days. Tissue homogenates are inoculated onto primary PK cells, secondary pig thyroid cells, or permissive porcine cell lines. The presence of HEV is shown by the development of syncytia, hemadsorption, and hemagglutination (Andries and Pensaert 1980a). A single blind passage with cells and culture fluid is recommended because clinical specimens from pigs infected with HEV often contain very small amounts of infectious virus.

Antibodies to the virus can be detected by the VN, plaque reduction, or HI tests (Mengeling 1975; Sato et al. 1983). However, since subclinical HEV infections are common, serum antibody titers must be evaluated very carefully. Interpretation of paired serum samples may be difficult. A significant rise in antibody titer will only be observed if acute sera are taken very soon after the appearance of clinical signs. Pigs with clinical signs after an incubation period of 6–7 days may already have produced high serum antibody titers.
The differential diagnoses for HEV include Teschen-Talfan disease and Aujeszky’s disease (pseudorabies). In the latter two, clinical signs of encephalomyelitis, including locomotor disorders, are more severe than those associated with HEV infection and may appear in older pigs, as well as in piglets. Aujeszky’s disease in unvaccinated animals may also induce respiratory signs in older pigs and abortions in sows. These viruses can be grown in PK and pig thyroid cells; in PK cells they are distinguishable on the basis of cytopathic effect. They can be further differentiated using specific virus identification tests and the production of hemagglutinin by HEV.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

In most breeding herds, HEV infection is maintained in an endemic cycle through subclinical infection of the respiratory tract. Sows usually come into contact with the virus before their first farrowing and, therefore, provide protective colostral antibodies to their offspring. Infection in such pigs is subclinical. However, if sows are not immune at the time of farrowing, as may occur in newly populated farms or on farms too small to maintain an endemic cycle, infection of pigs within the first weeks after birth will result in clinical signs. Thus, maintaining the virus on farms to obtain immune sows at the time of their first farrowing creates a situation favorable to avoiding disease in piglets.

Once clinical signs are evident, the disease will run its course; spontaneous recoveries are rare. Litters born 2–3 weeks after the onset of disease are usually protected by maternal immunity. Before that time, piglets born to nonimmune sows can be protected by specific hyperimmune serum injected at birth. However, the lapse of time between diagnosis and cessation of the disease is usually too short to gain much benefit from this procedure.

**REFERENCES**


Japanese encephalitis virus (JEV) and West Nile virus (WNV) are significant mosquito-borne human and animal pathogens. JEV is considered to be the most important vector-borne virus that causes encephalitis in humans. The rate of apparent to inapparent JEV infection in humans ranges from 1 in 200–300 and the case fatality rate of humans infected with JEV can exceed 40% (Burke and Monath 2001). The virus is also an economically important reproductive pathogen of swine and will cause encephalitis and death in horses. It is widely distributed in Asia, from Southeastern Russia through Japan, Eastern China, Southeastern Asia, to Northern Australia in the south and India in the West.

JEV was first isolated from humans by Fujita (1933) and later by Taniguchi et al. (1936) who concluded that it was the cause of “summer encephalitis” in Japan. A temporal relationship was also recognized between “summer encephalitis” of humans and cases of encephalitis in horses, and abortion and stillbirths in swine (Hosoya et al. 1950). Subsequently Shimizu et al. (1954) demonstrated that JEV was responsible for reproductive failure in swine.

West Nile virus was first isolated in 1937 from a febrile woman in Uganda (Murgue 2002). Prior to 1999 the virus was distributed throughout Africa, the Middle East, and parts of Europe and Asia. WNV first emerged in the U.S. during an outbreak in New York City in 1999. The mechanism of its introduction has not been established. The virus subsequently spread rapidly throughout North America and south through Mexico to Central America and the Caribbean (Gould and Fikrig 2004; Roehrig et al. 2002). The case fatality rate of WNV in humans increases with age and can vary from 2–15% (O’Leary et al. 2004; Tsai et al. 1998). West Nile virus, like JEV, causes fatal disease in horses. Unlike JEV, its role as a swine pathogen has not been thoroughly explored and there are no reports of death or reproductive failure in swine.

**ETIOLOGY**

JEV and WNV are members of the *Flavivirus* genus of the family *Flaviviridae*. The family contains two other genera, the genus *Pestivirus* represented by viruses causing classical swine fever (hog cholera), bovine viral diarrhea virus, and border disease virus, and genus *Hepacivirus* represented by hepatitis C virus of humans (Lindenbach and Rice 2001). Genus *Flavivirus* is organized into 8 separate antigenic complexes based on serum cross-neutralization assays: Japanese encephalitis (JE), Ntaya, Dengue (DEN), tick-borne encephalitis (TBE), Uganda, Tyuleniy, Rio Bravo, and Modoc serocomplexes. Yellow fever virus, the prototype virus for genus *Flavivirus*, does not fall into any specific serocomplex (Burke and Monath 2001). Notable members of the JE serocomplex include JEV, the prototype of the group, St. Louis encephalitis virus, Murray Valley encephalitis virus, WNV, and Kunjin virus. The latter, which is found in Australia, is currently considered to be a subtype of WNV (Lanciotti et al. 2002).

JEV is classified into 4, and possibly 5, distinct genotypes based on the nucleotide sequences encoding the capsid, prM, and E proteins. Genotype I is the most broadly distributed genotype throughout Asia. Genotypes I and III are most commonly associated with epidemic disease. Genotypes II and IV are found in Southeast Asia and are commonly associated with endemic disease (Solomon et al. 2003). Two major immunotypes of JEV are currently recognized by kinetic neutralization, monoclonal antibody reactivity, and other serological methods. These immunotypes are represented by the Nakayama strain that was isolated from a human brain in 1935 and the JaGar 01 strain that was isolated from a mosquito in 1959. Antigenic and genetic variation exists among isolates of the same genotype (Burke and Monath 2001). Variations between strains within genotypes and immunotypes can be demonstrated by nucleotide analysis (Holbrook and Barrett 2002).
WNV is represented by 2 genetic lineages based on genomic differences. Lineage 1 viruses are further subdivided into 3 clades: 1a, 1b, and 1c. Lineage 1 viruses are found in Africa, the Middle East, Asia, Europe, and North America. Lineage 2 viruses are found primarily in Africa (Lanciotti et al. 2002). In general, lineage 1 viruses are more virulent than lineage 2 viruses. Serological and molecular techniques can be used to differentiate WNV strains.

**Morphology**

The JEV and WNV are enveloped, single-stranded, positive polarity RNA viruses approximately 50 nm in diameter. Their genomes are approximately 11 kb in length and surrounded by a polyhedral capsid consisting of a single protein (C) of about 11 kd. The envelope consists of two proteins, E and M, of approximately 50 and 8 kDa, respectively. The E and M protein together form small spikes of approximately 6 nm on the surface of the envelope. The M protein exists as the prM protein before the release of mature virions from infected cells. Nonstructural proteins include NS1, 2A, 2B, 3, 4A, 4B and S. The E and NS1 proteins are associated with the induction of immunity (Kurane 2002). It is of interest to note that the prM protein of another flavivirus, Dengue, has been reported to induce immunity (Lindenbach and Rice 2001). Neuro-virulence of JEV and WNV strains is associated with common determinants on the E protein (Ni and Barrett 1998; Lee et al. 2004).

The structural proteins of flaviviruses are encoded at the 5' end of the genome and nonstructural proteins are encoded at the 3' end. The flavivirus genome is expressed as a single polyprotein that is cleaved during and after the translation process by both cellular and virus encoded proteases.

**Biophysical and Biochemical Properties**

Flaviviruses have a buoyant density of 1.22–1.24 g/cm³ in CsCl. Their sedimentation rates range from 140–200 S20w. In general, flaviviruses are inactivated in whole blood after 30 minutes exposure to 56°C and by low pH, bile, and proteolytic enzymes (Burke and Monath 2001). A study by Remington et al. (2004) demonstrated a loss of WNV infectivity of over 6 orders of magnitude in 5% and 25% albumin solutions after 30 minutes exposure to 60°C. Mayo and Beckwith (2002) demonstrated that WNV maintained in cell culture medium with 10% fetal bovine serum at 28°C lost infectivity at the rate of 1 order of magnitude per 24 hours. In contrast, no infectivity was lost when virus was maintained at 4°C over a 4-day period. This point should be considered when submitting clinical specimens for diagnostic evaluation. No information is available on the stability of JEV under dry conditions. However, Johansen et al. (2002) reported that virus activity was lost within 24 hrs when dead JEV-infected mosquitoes were held at 28–32°C in a humidified atmosphere. This suggests that both WNV and JEV virus rapidly lose infectivity outside of their living host.

**Epidemiology**

A wide range of domestic and wild avian and mammalian species including humans, horses, and swine are susceptible to JEV and WNV infection. These viruses are transmitted almost exclusively by the bite of infected mosquitoes, although experimental tick transmission of WNV has been reported (Lawrie et al. 2004). Rosen (1986) cited two studies, one in which JEV was isolated from midges (Lasiohlea taiwana) feeding on humans and the other from the tick Haemaphysalis japonica. There are no reports of contact transmission of either virus between swine. However, contact transmission of WNV between avian species, from which virus can be isolated from throat and cloacal swabs, has been reported (Komar et al. 2003). Contact transmission of WNV between alligators has also been described (Klenk et al. 2004), as has oral infection of cats (Austgen et al. 2004).

Both JEV and WNV are naturally maintained in a mosquito-bird-mosquito cycle. JEV epidemics in human populations typically occur in late summer and early fall in northern temperate climates after JEV amplifies in the fledgling and young bird populations during the nesting season, and subsequently in susceptible pigs and other mammalian species. In endemic tropical areas, JEV infection can occur in swine populations almost immediately after the mosquito season begins. Pigs serve as a significant JEV reservoir for both opportunistic and zoophilic mosquito species that spread the virus to humans which are dead end hosts.

The primary mosquito species involved in transmission of JEV in Asia is Culex tritaeniorhynchus, and its role in this capacity has been well documented in reviews by Rosen (1986) and Endy and Nisalak (2002). Culex tritaeniorhynchus is opportunistic and feeds on both avian and mammalian species. The titers of blood meals capable of infecting 50% of feeding Cx. tritaeniorhynchus vary from 10^2.9–10^4.8 mouse lethal dose 50 (LD50) per ml of serum depending on the strains of mosquitoes and viruses (Takahashi 1976). These levels of viremia are exceeded in young avian species (Boyle et al. 1983; Buescher et al. 1959) and in young pigs. Maximum serum titers exceeding 10^6.0 LD50 per ml were reported by Kodama et al. (1968) in 2-day-old pigs challenged with 10^1 or 10^2 LD50. Gresser et al. (1958) observed maximum virus titers in serum of 10^6.7 and 10^3.9 LD50 per ml in a 3- and a 5-month-old pig challenged with 10^5.3 LD50 and Konishi et al. (1992) reported virus titers in serum that exceeded 10^3 PFU/ml in six of ten 25 kg pigs that were challenged with 10^5.2 PFU of JEV. Virus titers exceeded 10^3 PFU per ml of serum in 2 of these pigs. The virus challenge used in these studies was within or near the amounts of JEV that can be delivered.
Several other mosquito species are competent JEV vectors. Examples include; *Cx. pipiens quinquefasciatus*, *Cx. tarsalis* (Endy and Nisalak 2002), *Aedes albopictus* (Weng et al. 1997), and *Ochlerotatus japonicus* (Takashima and Rosen 1989). Each of these species is present in the Western hemisphere. Consequently, if JEV is introduced into this region it will most likely become established.

The mechanisms of interepidemic survival of JEV and WNV have not been fully elucidated. In temperate regions of Asia, outbreaks of JEV are seasonal and occur in late summer after virus has been amplified in fledging bird populations (Buescher and Scherer 1959). Ardeids, such as herons and egrets, are frequently cited as playing a principle role in the epidemiology of JEV. Whether ardeids play a more important role in the epidemiology of JEV than other avian species remains to be determined. Rosen (1986) commented that ardeids have received more attention than other avian species because they are large enough to be bled repeatedly and are found in environments in which the principle *Culex* vectors are present. Virus could be reintroduced into the same general regions by infected mosquitoes that are carried on the wind from warmer endemic regions. However, Takashima et al. (1988) presented a compelling argument that supports the contention that JEV is maintained endemically. Possible mechanisms for interepidemic maintenance include persistence of virus in diapausing adult *Culex* spp., (Nasci et al. 2001), vertical transmission in *Aedes* and *Ochlerotatus* spp., (Rosen et al. 1978; Rosen et al. 1989) and persistent infection in hibernating bats and cold blooded animals (Rosen 1986).

The epidemiology of WNV is similar to that of JEV. In the US, 60 species of mosquitoes from 11 genera are susceptible to WNV (CDC 2005), but the ability to transmit WNV by all of these species has not been established. *Culex* species that feed primarily on birds, such as *Cx. pipiens*, and *Cx. tarsalis*, are considered to be the primary mosquito vectors of WNV. Several other mosquito species that feed primarily on mammals, including humans, can serve as bridge vectors between birds and mammals such as pigs. These species include *Culex quinquefasciatus*, *Aedes albopictus* (a.k.a. Asian tiger mosquito), *Aedes vexans*, *Ochlerotatus trivittatus*, *Ochlerotatus triseriatus*, and others (Turell et al. 2005; Tiawsirisup et al. 2004). The general consensus is that the primary reservoir of WNV are birds, especially crows, jays, house sparrows, and grackles (Komar et al. 2003). The role of mammals, including swine, in the epidemiology of WNV has not been fully evaluated.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

The primary disease manifestation of JEV infection in sows and gilts is reproductive failure manifested by abortion and abnormal farrowings (Figure 21.1). Litters contain stillborn and mummified fetuses, and weak neonates that may present with hydrocephalus and subcutaneous edema. Live normal piglets can also be present in these litters (Burns 1950). Sexually mature swine do not show any significant clinical signs of infection, but transient anorexia and a mild febrile response have been observed. Reproductive failure occurs in nonimmune sows that become infected before 60–70 days of gestation. Infection after this time does not appear to affect piglets significantly (Sugimori et al. 1974). There have not been any reports of reproductive failure in sows due to WNV infection.

Japanese encephalitis virus has also been associated with infertility in boars. Hashimura et al. (1976) isolated JEV from the testicles of a boar with orchitis. Ogasa et al. (1977) showed that infection of susceptible...
boars resulted in edematous, congested testicles that produced semen with numerous abnormal spermatozoa and significantly depressed total and motile sperm counts. Virus was also excreted in the semen. These changes were usually temporary and most boars recovered completely.

Natural infection of young piglets with JEV resulting in clinical disease has not been recognized as a common occurrence, possibly due to the prevalence of JEV-specific maternal antibody in endemic areas. However, Yamada et al. (2004) reported that JEV was isolated from tonsils of 2 of 4 40-day-old pigs that presented with a wasting syndrome. These pigs did not exhibit neurological signs, but histological examination revealed a nonsuppurative meningoencephalitis. These investigators were able to reproduce nonsuppurative meningoencephalitis in 3-week-old piglets with the isolated viruses. The affected pigs also showed varying degrees of depression and hind limb tremors. Whether or not an association with a wasting syndrome exists was not established, but it is noteworthy that JEV infection in humans can present with wasting of limbs as a result of flaccid paralysis (Solomon and Vaugh 2002).

Kodama et al. (1968) also reported that experimental infection of 2-day-old piglets produced tremors and paralysis of the hindlimbs. However, other researchers who infected pigs ranging in age from 10 days to 2–3 months with JEV did not note any significant clinical signs (Gresser et al. 1958; Hale et al. 1957; Ilkal et al. 1994). These differences could have been due to differences in virus strain, virus dose, and the genetic background and age of the piglets.

No clinical signs of infection have been observed in pigs infected with WNV. Ilkal et al. (1994) reported that 4 pigs injected with an Asian isolate of WNV developed viremias that persisted for 1–4 days and reached a maximum titer of 10^{2.2} LD_{50} per ml. No mention of adverse clinical effects in the piglets was made. A more recent study by Platt (2004) described experimental infection, by needle and by mosquito bite, of 26 weanling pigs with a New York 1999 WNV isolate. The mean duration of viremia was 4.2 days. The mean daily WNV titer of all pigs was 10^{3.3} ± 0.5 TCID_{50} per ml. Some individual pigs had titers in excess of 10^{6.0} TCID_{50} per ml. No marked clinical signs of infection were observed. Platt (2004) also reported that nonsuppurative encephalitis and spinal cord lesions were observed in some of these pigs, suggesting that clinical signs, e.g., incoordination, tremors, and paralysis, could occur. A similar study with a NY 1999 WNV strain was reported by Bowen (2003) in which 3 of 6 infected weanling pigs developed maximum WNV titers ranging from 10^{1.9}–10^{5.1} PFU per ml of serum during an average viremic period of 2.5 days. Only 1 of 6 infected young adult pigs developed a detectable titer that reached 10^{4} PFU per ml and persisted for less than a day. None of the pigs developed clinical signs of infection.

**PATHOGENESIS**

There are no complete studies on the pathogenesis of flaviviruses in swine. However, several studies have been done using the mouse and baby hamster as models (see Burke and Monath 2001). From these studies it can be deduced that virus initially replicates in the skin and regional lymph nodes following injection of virus by mosquito bite. A primary viremia ensues, which is the source of infection for several cell types, including connective tissue, skeletal, cardiac and smooth muscle cells, lymphoreticular cells, and cells of the endocrine and exocrine system. Virus from these tissues constitutes a secondary viremia, which generally occurs within 1–2 days after infection. It is during this period that transplacental infection can occur in pregnant gilts and sows, and virus can reach the fetus by 7 days after infection. The variable mixture of normal piglets, weak neonates, stillborns, and mumified fetuses of different sizes in affected litters indicates that sequential infection of fetuses occurs in utero. These observations suggest that the pathogenesis of JEV in swine is similar to that of porcine parvovirus (Joo et al. 1976).

Whether a causal relationship exists between the level of viremia and transplacental infection remains to be determined. A study by Shimizu et al. (1954) did not find any such relationship among 9 sows that were inoculated with 10^{6.0}–10^{9.5} LD_{50} with the Fuji or Kanagawa strains of JEV. Viremia persisted for 1–4 days and maximum titers in individual sows ranged from 10^{1.5}–10^{5.7} LD_{50} per ml of serum. Fetal infection occurred in 4 of the 9 pregnant sows that were infected between 40 and 97 days (mean = 62 days) of gestation. The maximum virus titers in these sows ranged from 10^{1.7} to greater than 10^{5.7} LD_{50} per ml of serum. Sows in which fetuses were not infected were inoculated with virus between 36 and 92 days (mean = 85 days) of gestation and had maximum virus titers that ranged from 10^{2.1} to >10^{5.7} LD_{50} per ml. Fujisaki et al. (1982) concluded from a study using the mouse model that transplacental infection was dependent on the degree of development between placenta and fetal tissue and not on the level of viremia, since the highest rate of transplacental infection by JEV in mice occurred between days 7 and 10 of gestation.

Japanese encephalitis virus can reach the central nervous system as early as 3 days after infection by crossing the blood-brain barrier (Yamada et al. 2004), an event that is more common in neonates and the very young than in older animals. The precise mechanism by which JEV breaches the blood brain barrier has not been definitively established. Liou and Hsu (1998) demonstrated by electron microscopy that JEV could be translocated across endothelial cells in endocytotic vesicles in infected mice. Penetration of the blood brain barrier appears to be enhanced by a JEV-induced cytokine (Mathur et al. 1992).
LESIONS

Significant gross or microscopic lesions caused by JEV in sows have not been reported. The testes of naturally infected boars frequently have a large amount of mucous fluid in the cavity tunica vaginalis. Fibrous thickening along the edge of the epididymis and the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis is also observed. Microscopically, there are edema and inflammatory changes in the interstitial tissue of the epididymis, tunica vaginalis, and testes. Degenerative changes are often seen in the seminiferous epithelium (Hashimura et al. 1976; Ogasa et al. 1977).

Gross lesions may or may not be seen in stillborn and weak neonatal pigs. When present, they may include hydrocephalus, subcutaneous edema, hydrothorax, ascites, petechial hemorrhages on serosal surfaces, congestion of lymph nodes, necrotic foci in liver and spleen, and congested meninges or spinal cord (Burns 1950). Cerebellar hypoplasia and spinal hypomielinogenes have also been described (Morimoto 1969). Microscopic lesions appear to be restricted to the brain and spinal cord. Diffuse nonsuppurative encephalitis and spondylitis may be observed. Yamada et al. (2004) described similar lesions in 3-week-old pigs that were experimentally infected with JEV. These lesions were distributed throughout the cerebrum, midbrain, and cerebellum. Perivascular cuffing, neuronal necrosis, neurophagia, and glial nodules were present. No other macroscopic or microscopic lesions were noted in other organ systems. Similar lesions of the central nervous system were observed in weanling pigs experimentally infected with a New York strain of WNV (Platt 2004).

DIAGNOSIS

Definitive diagnosis of reproductive disease in swine caused by JEV is based on isolating and identifying virus from fetuses, stillborns, neonates, and young piglets. Differential diagnosis must consider porcine parvovirus, porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus, pseudorabies virus, classical swine fever virus, cytomegalovirus, enterovirus, Getah virus (Shibata et al. 1977), toxoplasmosis, and leptospirosis. Seasonal incidence and lack of clinical signs in infected sows and piglets are useful criteria in excluding many diseases.

Tissues from which JEV has been isolated from fetuses and neonates include brain, liver, spleen, lung, and placenta (Shimizu et al. 1954). However, it appears that successful isolation of JEV from pigs of abnormal litters is dependent on the time that pigs were exposed to the virus in utero. Shimizu et al. (1954) isolated JEV from fetuses of 3 litters that were collected 7–22 days after experimental infection of sows with the Kanagawa strain, but not from affected pigs of 2 litters that were collected 62 and 84 days after infection of sows. Susceptible cells for virus isolation include Vero cells, baby hamster kidney cells, pig kidney cells, and the C6/36 cell line derived from Aedes albopictus. Virus can also be isolated from infected tissue, such as brain and placenta, by intracerebral inoculation of suckling mice. Neurological signs and death usually occur in mice between 4 and 14 days after inoculation. Final confirmation of the identity of isolated virus can be made serologically using flavivirus-specific monoclonal antibodies (Broom et al. 1998) and/or by the reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) (Huang et al. 2004).

Infection by JEV can also be confirmed by detecting viral antigen in fetal tissue and the placenta by immunohistochemistry (Iwasaki et al. 1986; Kurata et al. 1983; Yamada et al. 2004). The use of flavivirus-specific monoclonal antibodies in these procedures enhances the specificity of the test. Detection of JEV-specific antibody in body fluids of aborted fetuses, weak neonates, and piglets by hemagglutination inhibition, serum virus neutralization, and ELISA is also of diagnostic importance. In older pigs, interpretation of serological results must take vaccination history and maternal antibody into account. Maternal antibody specific for JEV can be detected in some pigs until 8 months of age (Hale et al. 1957). The use of paired sera and tests to detect JEV reactive IgM can facilitate interpretation of serological tests. Burke et al. (1985) demonstrated that porcine IgM antibodies to JEV could be detected within 2–3 days after infection and persist for 2 weeks. Interpretation of serological tests must also take into account whether affected swine could have been exposed to other flaviviruses such as WNV, because there is a high degree of serological cross reactivity between members of the Japanese encephalitis serocomplex (Williams et al. 2001). RT-PCR has also been developed to detect and differentiate JEV and WNV genomic material in clinical specimens (Kleiboeker et al. 2004; Shirato et al. 2003; Yang et al. 2004).

PREVENTION

Japanese encephalitis virus can be controlled by preventing exposure of swine to JEV-infected mosquitoes. However, this method of control is not practical unless pigs are maintained in appropriate confinement facilities. Consequently, vaccination is the method of choice. Monath (2002) reviewed the history of JE vaccine development. The first effective vaccines were formalin inactivated JEV-infected mouse brains. These vaccines were initially developed in Japan during the 1930s. Highly purified inactivated mouse brain vaccines are currently in use throughout the world in humans. Inactivated vaccines derived from infected cell cultures are in various stages of development. A live JE attenuated vaccine based on strain SA-14-2 was licensed in 1988 for human use in the Peoples Republic of China. Live vectored vaccines based on the attenuated vaccinia and canarypox viruses containing the JEV genes for prM, E, and NS1 induce both neutralizing antibodies and cytotoxic T cells.
An effective canarypox recombinant vaccine for WNV has been developed for horses (Siger et al. 2004) and is currently being marketed. A chimeric yellow fever–Japanese encephalitis virus vaccine containing the prM and E genes from the attenuated SA-14-2 strain of JEV induces protective immunity in monkeys and mice (Lai and Monath 2003). Experimental DNA vaccines containing prM and E genes of JEV and WNV have also been developed and induce protective immunity to JEV in swine (Konishi et al. 2000) and to WNV in horses (Davis et al. 2001). Live attenuated and inactivated JEV vaccines are commercially available for swine in Asia. The vaccines are available with porcine parvovirus and Getah virus. It is recommended that boars, gilts, and sows at risk be vaccinated for JEV before the mosquito season.

REFERENCES


In 1971, previously unrecognized acute outbreaks of diarrhea were observed in feeder pigs and fattening swine in England (Oldham 1972). The clinical appearance was similar to transmissible gastroenteritis virus (TGEV) infection, except for the important difference that suckling pigs did not become sick. TGEV and other known enteropathogenic infectious agents were ruled out. The disease spread to other European countries and the name “epidemic viral diarrhea” (EVD) was adopted.

In 1976, TGE-like outbreaks of acute diarrhea were observed in swine of all ages, including suckling pigs (Wood 1977), but again TGEV and other known enteropathogenic agents were ruled out as the cause. The name “EVD type 2” was used to differentiate these outbreaks from the “type 1” outbreaks observed in 1971, the difference being that baby piglets were involved in type 2 outbreaks.

In 1978, a coronavirus-like agent was associated with the type 2 outbreaks (Chasey and Cartwright 1978; Pensaert and DeBouck 1978). Experimental inoculations with an isolate designated CV777 revealed its enteropathogenic character both for piglets and fattening swine (DeBouck and Pensaert 1980). It appeared that this coronavirus was involved in outbreaks of type 1 as well as of type 2, and the name “porcine epidemic diarrhea” (PED) was proposed (Pensaert et al. 1982) and is still used. The basis for the clinical difference between type 1 and type 2 outbreaks is unknown.

ETIOLOGY

On the basis of genetic and antigenic criteria, PED virus (PEDV) has been categorized in group 1 of the genus Coronavirus of the family Coronaviridae, together with TGEV, feline coronavirus, canine coronavirus, and human coronavirus 229E (Gónzales et al. 2003; Utiger et al. 1995a). Immunoblotting and immunoprecipitation assays showed that PEDV shares common antigenic determinants with feline coronavirus and that these are located in the N protein (Yaling et al. 1988). The entire genome of CV777 has been sequenced and determined to contain 28,033 nucleotides. Based on the amino acid sequence of the replicate gene, PEDV is considered most closely related to human coronavirus 229E and TGEV (Kocherhans et al. 2001). Sequence determination of the N protein gene confirmed that PEDV holds an intermediate position between 229E and TGEV (Bridgen et al. 1993).

The pattern of the structural proteins of PEDV is similar to that of other coronaviruses. The virus possesses a glycosylated peplomer (spike, S) protein with a molecular weight of 180,000–200,000 daltons, a glycosylated membrane (M) protein of 27,000–32,000 daltons, and an unglycosylated RNA-binding nucleocapsid (N) protein of 57,000 to 58,000 daltons (Duarte and Laude 1994; Egberink et al. 1988; Knuchel et al. 1992; Utiger et al. 1995, 1995b).

PEDV particles show characteristics of the family Coronaviridae (Chasey and Cartwright 1978; Pensaert and DeBouck 1978). The morphogenesis of PEDV in intestinal epithelial cells is identical to that of other coronaviruses. Assembly of the virus occurs by budding through intracytoplasmic membranes (Ducatelle et al. 1981b; Sueyoshi et al. 1995). The particles detected in fecal material are pleomorphic, with a tendency to a spherical shape. Their mean diameter, projections included, is 130 nm, with a range of 95–190 nm. Many particles have an electron-opaque central area. The club-shaped projections measure 18–23 nm and are radially spaced from the core.

Physicochemical characterization has shown that the virus is ether- and chloroform-sensitive. Its density in sucrose is 1.18 g/ml. Cell culture-adapted PEDV loses its infectivity when heated to 60°C for 30 minutes, but it is moderately stable at 50°C. The virus is stable between pH 4.0 and 9.0 at 4°C and between pH 6.5 and 7.5 at 37°C (Callebaut and DeBouck 1981; Lee and Yeo 2003a). The virus shows no hemagglutinating activity (Callebaut and DeBouck 1981).

There is no evidence of the existence of more than
one PEDV serotype. Polypeptide bands of a Korean isolate showed molecular weights similar to those of the prototype CV777 strain (Kweon et al. 1993). Genetic comparisons showed 96.5% homology of the N open reading frame (ORF) and 96.8% amino acid identity of the N protein between the Korean (Chinju99) and Belgian (CV777) isolates (Lee and Yeo 2003b). The entire S gene of the Korean strain showed 94.5% homology at the nucleotide level and 92.8% at the amino acid level (Yeo et al. 2003). Likewise, nucleotide sequences of the N gene of a Korean and two Japanese isolates were found to be almost identical (Kubota et al. 1999).

Propagation of PEDV was originally accomplished by orally inoculating piglets (DeBouck and Pensaert 1980). The adaptation of PEDV to laboratory conditions has been difficult. Numerous cell types were tested, but without success. Vero (African green monkey kidney) cells were later found to support the serial propagation of PEDV. Viral growth depends on the presence of trypsin in the cell culture medium. Cytopathic effects consist of vacuolation and formation of syncytia with up to 100 nuclei. Growth kinetics show virus titers peak at about $10^{5.5}$ plaque-forming units per ml 15 hours after inoculation (Hofmann and Wyler 1988, 1989; Lee and Yeo 2003a). PEDV was successfully grown in porcine bladder and kidney cells in Japan (Shibata et al. 2000). A Japanese isolate (P-5V) used as a vaccine strain was cultivated in swine cell lines KSEK6 and IB-RS2 (Kadoi et al. 2002).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

From 1982 to 1990, antibodies to PEDV were detected in swine populations in Belgium, England, Germany, France, the Netherlands, Switzerland, Bulgaria, and Taiwan (DeBouck et al. 1982; Hofmann and Wyler 1987; Möstl et al. 1990). In the northeastern part of India, 21.2% of 528 serum samples from pigs 2–6 months of age were positive for PEDV antibodies (Barman et al. 2003). The virus has been isolated in most swine-raising countries in Europe, as well as China (Qinghua et al. 1992), Korea (Kweon et al. 1993), and Japan (Takahashi et al. 1983). There are no reports of PEDV in North or South America.

In Europe, outbreaks of PED have become rare and there are few recent reports of serologic surveys or diagnostic studies.

In Belgium, a study was performed in 10 groups of multisource feeder pigs entering a fattening unit in September 1991, and none seroconverted. In contrast, the pigs in another 7 groups entering in February 1992 developed diarrhea and seroconverted to PEDV 4 weeks after arrival (Van Reeth and Pensaert 1994). Also in Belgium, a serological study on fattening farms showed 50% positive in 1990 and none in 1997, indicating that virus prevalence has markedly decreased in recent years (Pensaert and Van Reeth 1998).

In Spain, PED was identified as the cause of an epidemic of watery diarrhea in 7 of 15 farms, with the diarrhea becoming persistent in a small number of sows on one farm (Carvajal et al. 1995a). In a Spanish serosurvey conducted in 1992–1993, PEDV-specific antibodies were detected in 1,513 of 5,052 sows and positive animals were found in 55.0% of 803 breeding farms. (Carvajal et al. 1995c).

In the Netherlands, a clinical and virological study of an acute outbreak of PED in a herd with both breeding and finishing pigs was described (Pijpers et al. 1993). Diarrhea was most severe in fattening pigs and pregnant sows, and was mild or absent in suckling pigs and young weaners. The virus became endemic and persisted in 6–10-week-old pigs and in gilts newly introduced to the farm for at least 1.5 years after the original outbreak.

In Britain, a clinical PED outbreak was described in 1998 in 3 consecutive batches of 8–15-week-old pigs in a finishing herd over a 2-month period (Pritchard et al. 1999). In Hungary, 92 diarrhea samples from weaned pigs on 19 farms were examined in 1995 and 5.5% were positive for PEDV, with PED considered the most important cause of postweaning diarrhea (Nagy et al. 1996). In the Czech Republic, 27 of 219 fecal samples from diarrheic pigs less than 21 days old were positive for PEDV, often in combination with other enteric viruses (Rodák et al. 2004).

Distinct from the current situation in Europe, severe outbreaks of diarrhea with high mortality have been reported in Asia. These outbreaks are acute and so severe that they cannot be differentiated clinically from typical acute TGEV outbreaks.

In Japan, outbreaks between September 1993 and June 1994 resulted in 14,000 deaths, with mortality ranging from 30–100% in suckling pigs. During these epidemics, adult pigs showed only a transient inappetence with decreased milk production in sows (Sueyoshi et al. 1995). In the winter of 1996, a PED epidemic occurred in Japan on 108 farms, most of which were farrow-to-finish. Diarrhea was encountered in baby piglets and 39,509 of 56,256 died.

In Korea, PED has caused several outbreaks of diarrhea in swine of all ages. Of 71 viral enteric cases requested for diagnosis at the Veterinary Research Institute between January 1992 and December 1993, 56.3% were identified as PED. Piglets less than 10 days old were involved in 90% of the outbreaks (Hwang et al. 1994). Between August 1997 and July 1999, 50.4% of 1,258 enteric cases in 5 provinces were diagnosed as PED (Chae et al. 2000). A 1994 abattoir serosurvey in Korea of 469 sera from pigs in 7 provinces found seroprevalences of 17.6–79% (mean of 45%), suggesting that the virus had become endemic in some areas (Kweon et al. 1994).

There are suggestions that the PED situation in Asia has recently evolved to reflect a more endemic pattern of disease in a partially immune sow population.

Fecal-oral transmission is probably the primary, if not the only means of transmitting PEDV. Acute out-
breaks of PED on susceptible farms often occur 4–5 days after sale or purchase of pigs. The virus probably enters via infected pigs or on virus-contaminated fomites (trucks, boots, etc.). PEDV does not differ markedly from TGEV with regard to modes of transmission, but it appears to persist more easily on a farm once the acute infection has passed. After an outbreak has occurred on a breeding farm, the virus may either be eliminated from the herd or become endemic. An endemic cycle can be established if enough litters of pigs are produced and weaned so as to maintain virus circulation through infection of consecutive litters that have lost their lactogenic immunity at weaning. PEDV may be a cause of persistent postweaning diarrhea on such farms.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

The main, and often the only, obvious clinical sign of PED is watery diarrhea. Outbreaks in susceptible breeding herds may show marked variation in morbidity and mortality. On some farms, pigs of all ages become sick, with morbidity approaching 100%. The disease is then very similar to TGE, except for a slower spread and a somewhat lower mortality in baby piglets. Piglets up to 1 week of age may die from dehydration after the diarrhea has lasted 3–4 days. Piglet mortality averages 50%, but may be as high as 100%. Older pigs recover after about 1 week. After the acute outbreak, diarrhea may be seen in pigs 2–3 weeks after weaning, and newly introduced pigs may routinely become sick. In recent years, typical acute outbreaks with high mortality in neonatal pigs are rare in Europe, but have been described in Japan and Korea (Chae et al. 2000; Sueyoshi et al. 1995).

When an acute PED outbreak occurs in multisource feeder pigs or during the fattening period, all the pigs in the unit will show diarrhea within a week. Animals are somewhat anorectic, depressed, and their feces are watery. Clinical PEDV infection towards the end of the fattening period may be more severe than TGEV. The animals appear to have more abdominal pain. As a rule, animals recover in 7–10 days. Mortality of 1–3% may be seen in such fattening pigs and they die acutely, usually in the early stages of diarrhea or even prior to the appearance of diarrhea. A common necropsy finding in these animals is acute necrosis of the back muscle. The highest mortality is found on farms with stress-sensitive pig breeds.

Compared to TGEV, PEDV spreads more slowly between the different units on closed breeding and finishing farms. It may take 4–6 weeks for the virus to infect different groups, and some units may even remain free of infection.

**PATHOGENESIS**

The pathogenesis of PED has been studied in hysterectomy-derived, colostrum-deprived piglets. Piglets were orally inoculated with the CV777 isolate at the age of 3 days (DeBouck et al. 1981b) and became sick 22–36 hours after inoculation. Viral replication, as demonstrated by immunofluorescence (IF) and transmission electron microscopy (EM), occurred in the cytoplasm of villous epithelial cells throughout the small intestine and also in the colon. Infected epithelial cells were observed as early as 12–18 hours postinoculation, with maximum involvement reached at 24–36 hours. Viral replication in the small intestine resulted in cell degeneration leading to villous shortening. A reduction in the villous height: crypt depth ratio from the normal 7:1 value to 3:1 was observed. No cell degeneration was seen in the infected colonic epithelial cells.

The pathogenic features of PEDV in the small intestine of piglets are very similar to those of TGEV. Since viral replication and progress of the infection in the small intestine with PEDV occurs at a somewhat slower rate, a longer incubation period is observed.

PEDV replication in piglets has not been detected in cells outside the intestinal tract. Shibata et al. (2000) showed that SPF pigs, inoculated with field PEDV between the age of 2 days to 12 weeks, developed age-dependent resistance and deaths occurred only in 2- and 7-day-old pigs.

The pathogenesis of PEDV in older swine has not been studied in detail, but fluorescence was found in the epithelial cells of the small intestinal and colonic villi of conventional fattening swine both after experimental and natural infection (DeBouck and Pensaert 1980). It is not clear how much the colonic infection adds to the severity of clinical signs. Also, no pathogenic explanation can be given for the sudden death with acute back muscle necrosis sometimes observed in finishing pigs and adult pigs.

Pathogenic features described in Korea and Japan are identical to those observed in Europe, except there is no evidence of viral replication in the colon by the Asian strains (Hwang et al. 1994; Kim and Chae 2003; Sueyoshi et al. 1995), and sudden deaths in fatteners have not been reported.

**LESIONS**

Lesions have been described both in experimentally infected and naturally infected piglets (Ducatelle et al. 1982a,b; Hwang et al. 1994; Pospischil et al. 1981; Sueyoshi et al. 1995).

Lesions are confined to the small intestine, which is distended with yellow fluid. Microscopically, vacuolation and exfoliation of enterocytes occur on the small-intestinal villi starting at 24 hours postinoculation and coinciding with the onset of diarrhea. From that time on, the villi rapidly shorten and enzymatic activity becomes markedly reduced. These findings were confirmed by scanning EM (Ducatelle et al. 1981a). This pathology is very similar to that described for TGEV.
Ultrastructural changes were first observed in the cytoplasm of enterocytes in which cell organelles had decreased, leaving electron translucent areas. Later, the microvilli and terminal web disappeared and parts of the cytoplasm protruded into the intestinal lumen. The cells became flattened, the tight junction was lost, and cell release occurred into the gut lumen. Intracellular virus formation was seen by budding through membranes of the endoplasmic reticulum (Ducatelle et al. 1981b; Horvath and Moscari 1981; Pospischil et al. 1981). In the colon, some cellular changes were observed in enterocytes containing virus particles, but no exfoliation was seen.

**DIAGNOSIS**

A diagnosis of PED cannot be made solely on the basis of clinical signs. Acute PED outbreaks involving pigs of all ages cannot be clinically differentiated from TGE. In Europe, outbreaks may appear as rapidly spreading, watery diarrhea in weaned pigs and older animals on the breeding farm, but without clinical signs in baby piglets.

An etiologic diagnosis can be made by direct demonstration of PEDV and/or its antigens or by detection of antibodies. A direct IF test and an immunohistochemical technique applied on sections of the small intestine of baby pigs are the most sensitive, rapid, and reliable methods. However, they can only be used on the intestines of pigs sacrificed during the acute phase of diarrhea, preferably within 2 days of onset. These techniques are often not reliable on pigs that die naturally, because of loss of enterocytes (Bernasconi et al. 1995; DeBouck et al. 1981a; Guscetti et al. 1998; Sueyoshi et al. 1995).

PEDV particles can be demonstrated in the feces of pigs by direct EM, although the virus particles are not easy to detect if the spikes on the virion are lost or not clearly visible. The highest percentage of positive fecal samples obtained from experimentally inoculated piglets was 73% in feces collected on the first day after the onset of diarrhea. Furthermore, immunoelectron microscopy has to be applied to differentiate PEDV from TGEV, since both viruses have the same morphology.

Isolation of field strains of PEDV in cell cultures from feces may need subpassages before cytopathology appears in Vero cells or in other cell types, but early detection can be done by IF (Hofmann and Wyler 1988; Shibata et al. 2000).

A number of ELISA techniques have been developed for detection of PEDV antigens in feces as well as for demonstration of specific antibodies in serum. They are sensitive and reliable for diagnosis, particularly on a group basis. For the antigen ELISAs, polyclonal and monoclonal antibodies were used with pig-cultivated virus (Callebaut et al. 1982; Carvajal et al. 1995a; Kweon et al. 1994), or S and N viral proteins extracted from infected Vero cells (Knuchel et al. 1992). The antibody test has also been used for detection of immunoglobulins in sow's milk (de Arriba et al. 1995).

PEDV antigens can be demonstrated in rectal swabs from 3–11 days after experimental inoculation, with peak excretion being at 4–5 days (Carvajal et al. 1995a). Fecal material should be collected from several pigs, preferably during the acute phase of diarrhea. If proper and sufficient fecal samples are collected, the ELISA antigen test is of reliable sensitivity to detect the virus in pigs with endemic weaning diarrhea on breeding farms.

Other diagnostic tests for detection of PEDV in fecal material include reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) (Ishikawa et al. 1997; Kubota et al. 1999) and in situ hybridization (Kim and Chae 2000). An RT-PCR was established for differential detection of TGEV and PEDV in intestines and stool samples of sick pigs (Kim et al. 2001).

Specific antibodies can be detected in sera from swine after natural or experimental infection with PEDV using ELISA, blocking ELISA, indirect IF, blocking IF, and seroneutralization in Vero cell cultures (Callebaut et al. 1982; Hofmann and Wyler 1989, 1990; Prager and Witte 1981; Shibata et al. 2000; Witte and Prager 1987). Demonstration of PEDV antibodies can be performed using the indirect IF test and the blocking IF test on PEDV-positive cryostat sections of pig intestine or on cell culture. Antibodies detected by blocking ELISA appear at 7 days postinoculation (Carvajal et al. 1995b). With all these tests, paired serum samples should be examined. The convalescent serum sample should be collected no sooner than 2 weeks after the onset of diarrhea.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

Suckling pigs suffering from PED should have free access to water to diminish dehydration. In fattening swine, it is advisable to withhold feed. Since PEDV does not spread very quickly, preventive measures to temporarily prevent virus entrance into farrowing units with newly born piglets may be of help. Postponing the infection in these piglets until a later age may result in fewer deaths. Concurrently, exposure of pregnant sows to virus-contaminated feces or intestines will stimulate lactogenic immunity and shorten the outbreak on the farm. This approach is similar to that used with TGEV.

If the virus cycles in consecutive litters of weaned piglets, virus elimination can be attempted by removing pigs immediately after weaning to another site for at least 4 weeks. Simultaneously, introduction of new pigs should be stopped temporarily.

Oral administration of chicken egg yolk or cow colostrum containing PEDV immunoglobulins to neo-
natal pigs showed immunoprophylactic effect by preventing disease or reducing mortality (Kweon et al. 2000; Shibata et al. 2001).

In Europe, the disease is of insufficient economic importance to develop a vaccine. However, outbreaks in Asia have been so severe that attenuated virus vaccines are being developed.

Bernasconi et al. (1995) reported that cell culture adaptation of the CV777 virus made it strikingly different with regard to genomic sequences. Furthermore, the virulence of this cell culture-adapted virus was much lower for newborn cesarean-derived piglets and histopathological changes were decreased in severity. The Korean KPEDV-9 strain, when passaged 93 times in Vero cells, showed a reduction in pathogenicity for neonatal pigs and was found to be safe for pregnant sows. For that reason, the use of a cell culture-adapted virus as a vaccine has been proposed (Kweon et al. 1999), although its efficacy in the field needs to be determined. In Japan, a commercial, attenuated, live virus vaccine of cell-adapted PEDV (P-5V) has been used for prophylaxis in sows since 1997. The vaccine is considered efficacious, but not all sows develop solid lactogenic immunity (Usami et al. 1998).

REFERENCES


Porcine parvovirus (PPV) causes reproductive failure of swine characterized by embryonic and fetal infection and death, usually in the absence of outward maternal clinical signs. The disease develops mainly when seronegative dams are exposed oronasally to the virus any time during about the first half of gestation, and conceptuses are subsequently infected transplacentally before they become immunocompetent. Porcine parvovirus is ubiquitous among swine throughout the world and is endemic in most herds that have been tested. Diagnostic surveys have indicated that PPV is the major infectious cause of embryonic and fetal death (Cartwright and Huck 1967; Mengeling 1978b; Mengeling et al. 1991; Thacker and Leman 1978; Vannier and Tillon 1979). In addition to its direct causal role in reproductive failure, PPV can potentiate the effects of porcine circovirus type II (PCV2) infection in the clinical course of postweaning multisystemic wasting syndrome (PMWS) (Krakowka et al. 2000; Opriessnig et al. 2004).

**ETIOLOGY**

PPV is classified in the genus *Parvovirus* (Latin *parvus* = small) of the family *Parvoviridae* (Bachmann et al. 1979; Siegl 1976). All isolates of PPV that have been compared are antigenically similar, if not identical (Cartwright et al. 1969; Johnson and Collings 1969; Johnson et al. 1976; Morimoto et al. 1972a; Ruckerbauer et al. 1978). PPV is also antigenically related to several other members of the genus (Cotmore et al. 1983; Mengeling et al. 1986, 1988). However, its identity can be established by relatively stringent serologic tests such as virus neutralization (VN) and hemagglutination inhibition (HI).

The biophysical and biochemical properties of PPV have been extensively studied (Berns 1984; Molitor et al. 1983; Siegl 1976) and are summarized as follows. A mature virion has cubic symmetry, two or three capsid proteins, a diameter of approximately 20 nm, 32 capsomeres, no envelope or essential lipids, and a weight of $5.3 \times 10^6$ daltons. The viral genome is single-stranded deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) with a molecular weight of $1.4 \times 10^6$ (i.e., about 26.5% of the weight of the complete virion). Buoyant densities (g/ml in cesium chloride) of complete infectious virions, incomplete “empty” virions, and extracted virion DNA are 1.38–1.395, 1.30–1.315, and 1.724, respectively. Viral infectivity, hemagglutinating activity, and antigenicity are remarkably resistant to heat, a wide range of hydrogen ion concentrations, and enzymes.

**Replication**

Replication of PPV in vitro is cytocidal and characterized by “rounding up,” pyknosis, and lysis of cells (Figure 23.1A). Many of the cell fragments often remain attached, eventually giving the affected culture a ragged appearance. Intranuclear inclusions develop (Cartwright et al. 1969) but they are often sparsely distributed (Rondhuis and Straver 1972). Infected cultures may hemadsorb slightly (Cartwright et al. 1969) (Figure 23.1B). Cytopathic changes are extensive when cell culture-adapted virus is propagated under appropriate conditions. However, on initial isolation, several serial passages of the virus (Cartwright et al. 1969) or, better, the infected culture may be necessary before the effects are recognized. The use of immunofluorescence (IF) microscopy greatly increases the likelihood of detecting minimally infected cultures (Lucas and Naphthine 1971; Mengeling 1975).

Primary and secondary cultures of fetal or neonatal porcine kidney cells are most often used for propagation and titration of PPV, although other kinds of cultures are also susceptible (Pirtle 1974). Replication is enhanced by infection of mitotically active cultures (Bachmann 1972; Cartwright et al. 1969; Hallauer et al. 1972; Mayr et al. 1968). Many cells in such cultures are in the S phase (i.e., the DNA synthesis phase) of their cell cycle, wherein the DNA polymerases of cell origin needed for viral replication are available (Siegl and Gauschki 1973a, b; Tennant 1971).

If either fetal or adult bovine serum is incorporated
in the nutrient medium of cell cultures used to propagate PPV, it should be pretested for viral inhibitors (Coackley and Smith 1972; Johnson 1973; Pini 1975). The same may apply to sera of several other species (Joo et al. 1976d). Because replication of PPV is affected by mitotic activity, the effect of the serum on the cells is also especially important. In addition, cultures should be pretested for PPV contamination (Lucas and Naphthine 1971; Mengeling 1975). Cultures are sometimes unknowingly prepared from infected tissues of fetal (Mengeling 1975) and postnatal (Bachmann 1969; Cartwright et al. 1969; Hafez and Liess 1979; Huygelen and Peetermans 1967) pigs. Moreover, PPV can be accidentally introduced into cultures in several ways (Hallauer et al. 1971), including the use of contaminated trypsin (Croghan and Matchett 1973; Croghan et al. 1973). If contamination is detected before all cells are infected, the virus can be eliminated by repeatedly subculturing the cells in the presence of nutrient medium containing PPV antiserum (Mengeling 1978a).

Several investigators have used immunofluorescence microscopy to follow the development of PPV in cell culture (Bachmann and Danner 1976; Cartwright et al. 1969; Lucas and Naphthine 1971; Mengeling 1972; Siegl et al. 1972). In general, the sequence of events is as follows. Viral antigen is detected in the cytoplasm of cells soon after infection if the inoculum contains a high titer of virus and viral antigen. Most, if not all, of this early cytoplasmic fluorescence is the result of antigen phagocytized from the inoculum (Mengeling 1972; Mengeling and Cutilip 1975). By sequential examinations, such antigen can be demonstrated first on the external surface of the cytoplasmic membrane and later within the cytoplasm, often relatively concentrated in a juxtanuclear location. The first unequivocal evidence of viral replication is the appearance of nascent viral antigen in the nucleus (Figure 23.2A). In at least some infected cells, nascent antigen next appears in the cytoplasm in sufficient quantity that both cytoplasm and nucleus are brightly fluorescent. The infected cells commonly seen in the lungs of fetuses that develop a high titer of antibody for PPV probably represent this stage of replication (see Figure 23.8C). Affected cells subsequently round up, become pyknotic, and disintegrate with release of virus and viral antigen (Figure 23.2B). Other cells in the culture that are not at the appropriate stage to support viral replication continue to phagocytize and accumulate viral antigen in their cytoplasm (Figure 23.2C). A second wave of viral replication can be induced if these cells are stimulated to enter the S phase of the cell cycle as, for example, by the addition of fresh culture medium.

Hemagglutination

PPV agglutinates human, monkey, guinea pig, cat, chicken, rat, and mouse erythrocytes. Erythrocytes from other animal species that have been tested are relatively or completely insensitive, or the results have been equivocal (Cartwright et al. 1969; Darbyshire and Roberts 1968; Hallauer et al. 1972; Mayr et al. 1968; Mengeling 1972; Morimoto et al. 1972a). Several parameters of the hemagglutination (HA) test—such as the temperature of incubation (Mayr et al. 1968; Mengeling 1972), the species of erythrocyte used, and in the case of chicken erythrocytes the genetic composition (Cartwright et al. 1969; Pini 1975; Ruckerbauer et al. 1978) and age (Morimoto et al. 1972a) of the donor—may quantitatively affect results. The HA test is most commonly conducted at room temperature, at approximately neutral pH, and with guinea pig erythrocytes.
Higher HA titers have been recorded when the diluent used in the test was veronal buffer rather than phosphate-buffered saline (Ruckerbauer et al. 1978). Elution of virus (the hemagglutinin is part of the virion) can be induced by suspending erythrocytes in alkaline buffer, pH 9 (Hallauer et al. 1972).

**Infectivity Titrations**

Infectivity titrations are conducted in a standard manner except that, because cytopathic changes at terminal dilutions are often vague, endpoints of infectivity are often determined either by examining cell cultures for intranuclear inclusions after appropriate staining or by examining cell culture medium for viral hemagglutinin (Cartwright et al. 1969). A titration procedure wherein infected cells are made evident by IF microscopy (Mengeling 1972) and a plaque assay (Kawamura et al. 1988) also have been described.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Porcine parvovirus is ubiquitous among swine throughout the world. The most common routes of infection for postnatal and prenatal pigs are oronasal and transplacental, respectively.

In major swine-producing areas, infection is endemic in most herds and, with few exceptions, sows are immune. A large proportion of gilts are naturally infected with PPV before they conceive and develop an active immunity that probably persists throughout life. Collectively, the seroepidemiologic data indicate that exposure to PPV is common and that gilts that have not developed immunity before conception are at a high risk of infection and reproductive disease.

Pigs nursing immune dams absorb a high titer of antibody for PPV from colostrum. Passively acquired serum antibody titers decrease progressively with time; both by dilution as pigs grow, as well as by biological degradation. Serum antibody titers usually decline to undetectable levels in 3–6 months, if sera are examined by the HI test (Etoh et al. 1979; Paul et al. 1982), but may persist for a longer interval. Levels of antibody too low to be detected by the HI test may be detected by the VN test (Johnson et al. 1976).

The primary significance of passively acquired antibody is that it interferes with the development of active immunity. High antibody levels can prevent infection and lower levels can minimize dissemination from infected pigs (Paul et al. 1980; Suzuki and Fujisaki 1976). Consequently, some groups of gilts are not fully susceptible to infection and dissemination of virus until either shortly before conception or during early gestation.

Contaminated premises are probably major reservoirs of PPV. The virus is thermostable, resistant to many common disinfectants (Brown 1981), and may remain infectious for months in secretions and excretions from acutely infected pigs. Experimentally, it was shown that pigs transmitted PPV for only about 2 weeks after exposure, but the pens in which they were initially kept remained infectious for at least 4 months (Mengeling and Paul 1986).

The ubiquity of PPV also raises the possibility that some pigs are persistently infected and, at least periodically, shed virus. Shedding beyond the interval of acute infection has not been demonstrated (Johnson et al. 1976), but the possibility of immunotolerant carriers of PPV as a result of early in utero infection has been suggested (Johnson 1973). When gilts were infected with PPV before day 55 of gestation, their pigs were born infected, but without antibody. Virus was isolated from
kidneys, testicles, and seminal fluid of such pigs killed at various times after birth up to 8 months of age, at which time the experiment was terminated (Johnson and Collings 1971). Likewise, a study in which dams were infected early in gestation and their pigs were born infected, but without antibody, also suggested immunotolerance (Cartwright et al. 1971). A possible example of an infected, immunotolerant, sexually active boar was reported (Johnson et al. 1976).

Boars may play a significant role in dissemination of PPV at a critical time. During acute infection, the virus is shed by various routes, including semen. The isolation of PPV from semen of naturally infected boars has been reported (Cartwright and Huck 1967; Cartwright et al. 1969; McAdaragh and Anderson 1975). Semen may also become contaminated externally, as for example with feces containing virus, or within the male reproductive tract. For example, PPV was isolated from the testicle of a boar 5 days after it was injected into the boar’s prepuce (Lucas et al. 1974) and from testicles of boars killed 5 and 8 days after they were infected oronasally (Mengeling, unpublished data, 1976). Virus was also isolated from scrotal lymph nodes of boars killed 5, 8, 15, 21, and 35 days after oronasal exposure. After day 8, isolation was accomplished by cocultivating lymph node fragments with fetal porcine kidney cells (Mengeling, unpublished data, 1976). Virus was also subclinical (Cutlip and Mengeling 1975a; Fujisaki et al. 1975; Johnson and Collings 1969; Johnson et al. 1976; Joo et al. 1976a; Mengeling and Cutlip 1976). However, in young pigs, and probably in older breeding stock as well, the virus replicates extensively and is found in many tissues and organs with a high mitotic index. Viral antigen is especially concentrated in lymphoid tissues (Cutlip and Mengeling 1975a; Fujisaki et al. 1975) (Figure 23.3A, B).

Many pigs, irrespective of age or sex, have a transient, usually mild, leukopenia sometime within 10 days after initial exposure to the virus (Johnson and Collings 1969, 1971; Joo et al. 1976a; Mengeling and Cutlip 1976). PPV and other structurally similar viruses have been identified in the feces of pigs with diarrhea (Dea et al. 1985; Yasuhara et al. 1989). However, there is no experimental evidence to suggest that PPV either replicates extensively in the intestinal crypt epithelium or causes enteric disease, as do paroviruses of several other species (Brown et al. 1980; Cutlip and Mengeling 1975a). PPV also has been isolated from pigs with lesions described as “vesicle-like.” The etiologic role of PPV in such lesions has not been clearly defined (Kresse et al. 1985).

The major and usually only clinical response to infection with PPV is maternal reproductive failure. Pathologic sequelae depend mainly on when exposure occurs during gestation. Dams may return to estrus, fail to farrow despite being anestrus, farrow few pigs per litter, or farrow a large proportion of mummified fetuses. All can reflect embryonic or fetal death or both. The only outward sign in the dam may be a decrease in maternal abdominal girth when fetuses die at midgestation or later and their associated fluids are resorbed. Other manifestations of maternal reproductive failure—e.g., infertility, abortion, stillbirth, neonatal death, and re-

![Image](image.jpg)

**23.3.** Cryostat-microtome sections of tissues from PPV-infected 8-week-old pigs, examined by IF microscopy (×312.5). (A) Viral antigen in germinal center, tonsil. (B) Viral antigen in osteogenic layer of periosteum, rib: a = connective tissue, b = cortical bone, c = marrow cavity.
duced neonatal vitality, have also been ascribed to infection with PPV (Cartwright and Huck 1967; Forman et al. 1977; Johnson 1969; Morimoto et al. 1972b; Narita et al. 1975). These are normally only a minor component of the disease. The presence of mummified fetuses in a litter can prolong both gestation (Narita et al. 1975) and the farrowing interval (Mengeling et al. 1975). Either may result in stillbirth of apparently normal littermates, whether or not they are infected.

There is no evidence that either fertility or libido of boars is altered by infection with PPV (Biront and Bonte 1983; Thacker et al. 1987).

**PATHOGENESIS**

Dams are susceptible to PPV-induced reproductive failure if infected anytime during about the first half of gestation. This interval of maternal susceptibility is indicated by the collective results of several experimental studies (Joo et al. 1976a; Mengeling 1979; Mengeling and Cutlip 1976; Mengeling et al. 1980a), by in-depth epidemiological investigations (Donaldson-Wood et al. 1977; Gillick 1977), and by estimates of the time of death of fetuses collected during epidemiological surveys (Mengeling 1978b; Mengeling et al. 1991). Consequences of maternal infection during this interval are embryonic and fetal death followed by resorption and mummification, respectively. Transplacental infection also follows maternal exposure after midgestation, but fetuses usually survive without obvious clinical effects in utero. The likely reason is that transplacental infection often requires 10–14 days (Mengeling et al. 1978, 1991) or longer (Joo et al. 1976a), and by 70 days of gestation most fetuses are able to develop a protective immune response, changes in almost any vital organ are probably sufficient to eventually cause death. One of the most striking features of viral distribution is the extensive in-

The same would apply if initial infection were through contaminated semen. As a result, any combination or all of the sequelae indicated in Table 23.1 can develop in the same litter. Intrauterine dissemination is probably less common when early embryos are infected because they are quickly resorbed after death, effectively removing the intrauterine reservoir of virus (Mengeling et al. 1980a). In such cases there is no evidence at farrowing for the cause of fewer pigs per litter.

The effect, if any, of PPV on the ovum before ovulation is unknown. The virus adheres tenaciously to the external surface of the zona pellucida of the fertilized porcine ovum (Wrathall and Mengeling 1979a,b), and although it apparently cannot penetrate this layer, speculation is that it could pose a threat to the embryo after hatching (Wrathall and Mengeling 1979a). Despite strong circumstantial evidence (Cartwright et al. 1971), a direct causal role of PPV-contaminated semen in reproductive failure has not been unequivocally established (Lucas et al. 1974). The zona pellucida could protect the early embryo while local immunity is developing. Conversely, the virus may cause uterine changes incompatible with gestation (Wrathall and Mengeling 1979c). In any event, a female infected through semen provides a focus of infection for others.

With the possible exception of the uterine changes alluded to in the preceding paragraph, PPV-induced reproductive failure is caused by the direct effect of the virus on the conceptus. In the absence of an immune response, the virus replicates extensively throughout these tissues. By the time the conceptus dies, most of its cells contain large quantities of intracytoplasmic viral antigen that can be demonstrated by IF microscopy. The relative lack of nuclear fluorescence at the time of death, compared to earlier stages of the disease, indicates that when the conceptus is severely affected, mitotic activity and the associated conditions necessary for viral replication are suppressed more than phagocytic activity.

Death of the conceptus probably results from the collective damage by the virus to a variety of tissues and organs, including the placenta (Cutlip and Mengeling 1975b). However, in the absence of an immune response, changes in almost any vital organ are probably sufficient to eventually cause death. One of the most striking features of viral distribution is the extensive in-

**Table 23.1.** Consequences of infection with PPV at different intervals of gestation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interval of Gestation (days)a</th>
<th>Infection of Dam</th>
<th>Infection of Conceptusb</th>
<th>Description of Conceptus</th>
<th>Consequences of Infection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≤56</td>
<td>10–30</td>
<td>Embryo</td>
<td>Death and resorption</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30–70</td>
<td>Fetus</td>
<td>Death and mummification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;56</td>
<td>70–term</td>
<td>Fetus</td>
<td>Immune response and usually survival in utero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aIntervals are approximations.
bAssuming transplacental infection 10–14 days after maternal exposure.
volvement of endothelium. This seems to preclude further development of the vascular network of the conceptus. Preparation for cellular mitosis (i.e., the S phase) results in concomitant viral replication and cell death. Damage to the fetal circulatory system is indicated by edema, hemorrhage, and the accumulation of large amounts of serosanguineous fluids in body cavities. Necrosis of the endothelium is microscopically evident (Lenghaus et al. 1978).

The mechanism of transplacental infection has been investigated by IF microscopy to identify infected cells in maternal and fetal tissues at progressively longer intervals after maternal oronasal exposure (Mengeling et al. 1978). Examination of tissues contiguous with the maternal-fetal junction revealed viral antigen in endothelial and mesenchymal cells of the chorion, with increasing involvement of these tissues at progressively later stages of gestation. Viral antigen was never detected unequivocally in either uterine epithelium or trophectoderm. Consequently, there was no evidence for maternal-fetal transfer of the virus by replicating through these tissues. However, this route cannot be excluded, since only a small part of the total area of contact was examined. Transfer of the virus within macrophages has also been considered (Paul et al. 1979). Whatever the route, maternal viremia seems a likely prerequisite for transplacental infection (Joo et al. 1976a; Mengeling and Cutlip 1976).

**LESIONS**

Neither macroscopic nor microscopic lesions have been reported for nonpregnant pigs (Brown et al. 1980; Cutlip and Mengeling 1975a). It is possible that cellular infiltrations subsequently described for fetuses could be induced by infection during the perinatal interval.

Macroscopic lesions have not been reported in pregnant dams; however, microscopic lesions have been seen in tissues of gilts killed after their fetuses were infected by transuterine inoculation of virus. Gilts that were seronegative when their fetuses were infected at 70 days of gestation had focal accumulations of mononuclear cells adjacent to the endometrium and in deeper layers of the lamina propria when they were killed 12 and 21 days later. In addition, there were perivascular cuffs of plasma cells and lymphocytes in the brain, spinal cord, and choroid of the eye (Hogg et al. 1977). When fetuses were infected earlier in gestation (35, 50, and 60 days) and their dams were killed 7 and 11 days later, the lesions were similar. However, uterine lesions were more severe and also included extensive cuffing of myometrial and endometrial vessels with mononuclear cells (Lenghaus et al. 1978). Only focal accumulations of lymphocytes were seen in uteruses of gilts that were seropositive when their fetuses were infected (Cutlip and Mengeling 1975b).

Macroscopic changes of embryos are death followed by resorption of fluids (Figure 23.4) and then soft tissues (Figure 23.5). Virus and viral antigen are widely distributed in tissues of infected embryos and their placentas (Mengeling et al. 1980a), and it is probable that microscopic lesions of necrosis and vascular damage, subsequently described for fetuses, also develop in advanced embryos.

There are numerous macroscopic changes in fetuses infected before they become immunocompetent (Figure 23.6). These include a variable degree of stunting and sometimes an obvious loss of condition before other external changes are apparent; occasionally, an increased prominence of blood vessels over the surface of the fetus due to congestion and leakage of blood into contiguous tissues; congestion, edema, and hemorrhage with accumulation of serosanguineous fluids in body cavities; hemorrhagic discoloration becoming progressively darker after death; and dehydration (mummification). Many of these changes also apply to the placenta. Microscopic lesions consist primarily of extensive cellular necrosis in a wide variety of tissues and organs (Joo et al. 1977; Lenghaus et al. 1978) (Figure 23.7A). Inflammation (Joo

23.4. Embryos from a gilt experimentally infected oronasally immediately after breeding and killed 22 days later. Bar = 1 cm. (Top) Noninfected, clinically normal embryo (arrow) and associated extraembryonic membranes; (bottom) PPV-infected, dead littermate embryo (arrow) and associated extraembryonic membranes, recent death, no obvious resorption of soft tissues. (Mengeling et al. 1980a.)
et al. 1977) and intranuclear inclusions (Lenghaus et al. 1978) also have been described.

In contrast, macroscopic changes have not been reported for fetuses infected after they become immuno-
competent for PPV. Microscopic lesions are primarily endotheiial hypertrophy (Hogg et al. 1977) and mono-
nuclear cell infiltrations consistent with an immune re-
sponse (Hogg et al. 1977; Joo et al. 1977). Meningo-
encephalitis characterized by perivascular cuffing with pro-
liferating adventitial cells, histiocytes, and a few plasma cells was seen in the gray and white matter of the cerebrum and in the leptomeninges of PPV-infected stillborn pigs. These lesions were believed to be pathog-
nomonic for PPV infection (Narita et al. 1975). Similar lesions have been observed in PPV-infected, live fetuses col-
clected late in gestation (Hogg et al. 1977; Joo et al. 1977) (Figure 23.7B).

Both general types of microscopic lesions (i.e., necro-
sis and mononuclear cell infiltration) may develop in fe-
tuses infected near midgestation (Lenghaus et al. 1978) when the immune response is insufficient to provide protection.

23.5. Segment of uterus opened to show necrotic remnants of a par-
tially resorbed PPV-infected embryo (arrows) and associated extraem-
bryonic membranes of a gilt experimentally infected oronasally imme-
diately after breeding and killed 22 days later; remnants are laden with virus and viral antigen. Bar = 1 cm. (Mengeling et al. 1980a.)

23.6. PPV-infected fetuses. Bars = –5 cm. (A) Litter of a gilt experimentally infected oronasally on day 47 of gestation and killed 34 days later; fetuses from left (L) and right (R) horn of uterus, numbered 1–4 from cervix toward ovary; fetuses L1 and L4 stunted but alive at necropsy, fetus L3 recently dead, others later stages. (B) Fetuses from litter of a naturally infected gilt, collected at about 114 days of gestation, advanced stage of dehy-
dration (mummification). (Mengeling et al. 1975.)
DIAGNOSIS

PPV should be considered in a differential diagnosis of reproductive failure of swine whenever there is evidence of embryonic or fetal death or both. A tentative diagnosis of PPV-induced reproductive failure can be made if gilts, but not sows, are affected, maternal illness was not seen during gestation, there are few or no abortions or fetal developmental anomalies, and the evidence suggests an infectious disease. The relative lack of maternal illness, abortions, and fetal developmental anomalies differentiates PPV from most other infectious causes of reproductive failure. However, a definitive diagnosis requires laboratory support.

Several mummified fetuses (<16 cm in length) or lungs from such fetuses, if sufficiently developed, should be submitted to the diagnostic laboratory. Larger mummified fetuses (i.e., more than about 70 days of gestational age) (Marrable and Ashdown 1967), stillborn pigs, and neonatal pigs are not recommended for submission unless they are the only samples available. If infected, their tissues will usually contain antibody that interferes with laboratory tests for either virus or viral antigen.

If females fail to farrow despite being anestrous and are sent to an abattoir, their uteruses should be collected and examined for affected fetuses. Sometimes only remnants of fetal tissues remain when fetuses die early in the middle third of gestation. Nevertheless, these are adequate samples if tested for viral antigen by IF microscopy (Mengeling 1978b; Mengeling and Cutlip 1975). However, the absence of affected fetuses or fetal remnants does not exclude PPV-induced reproductive failure. When all embryos of a litter die and are completely resorbed after the first few weeks of gestation, the dam may remain endocrinologically pregnant and not return to estrus until after the expected time of farrowing (Rodeffer et al. 1975).

Identification of viral antigen by IF microscopy is a reliable and sensitive diagnostic procedure. Sections of fetal tissues are prepared with a cryostat microtome and then reacted with standardized reagents (Mengeling et al. 1975; Mengeling 1978b). The test can be completed...
within a few hours. In the absence of a fetal antibody response, antigen is seen throughout fetal tissues (Figure 23.8A, B). Even when antibody is present, infected cells usually can be detected in fetal lung (Figure 23.8C).

Detection of viral hemagglutinin also has been recommended as a diagnostic technique (Joo et al. 1976b; Joo and Johnson 1977a). Tissues are triturated in diluent and then sedimented by centrifugation. The supernatant fluid is tested for agglutinating activity for guinea pig erythrocytes. This test requires a minimum of laboratory equipment and is effective in the absence of antibody.

Virus isolation is less suitable as a routine diagnostic procedure than either of the aforementioned tests. Infectivity is slowly but progressively lost after fetal death (Mengeling and Cutlip 1975). As a result, isolation of virus from mummified fetuses that have died as a result of infection is sometimes unsuccessful (Mengeling 1978b). Moreover, the procedure is time-consuming, and contamination is a constant threat because of the stability of PPV in the laboratory (Cartwright et al. 1969) and because cell cultures are sometimes unknowingly prepared from infected tissues (Bachmann 1969; Cartwright et al. 1969; Hafez and Liess 1979; Huygelen and Peetemans 1967; Mengeling 1975). IF microscopy is often used to determine whether PPV has been isolated in cell culture (Cartwright 1970; Johnson 1973; Mengeling 1978b).

In addition to tests that depend on the detection of PPV antigen or antibody, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays for PPV have been developed (Molitor et al. 1991; Prikhod’ko et al. 2003; Soares et al. 1999). In addition, tissues can be directly examined for a portion of the PPV genome by in situ hybridization (Waldvogel et al. 1995).

Serologic Assays
The HI test is frequently used for detection and quantitation of humoral antibody for PPV. Antibody sometimes can be detected as early as 5 days after swine are exposed to live virus, and it may persist for years (Johnson et al. 1976). Sera examined by the HI test are usually pretreated by heat inactivation (56°C, 30 minutes) and by adsorption with erythrocytes (to remove naturally occurring hemagglutinins) and kaolin (to remove or reduce nonantibody inhibitors of HA) (Mengeling 1972; Morimoto et al. 1972a). Trypsin also has been used to remove nonantibody inhibitors of HA (Cartwright et al. 1969). Parameters of the HI test have been studied in detail (Joo et al. 1976c; Kim 1974).

The VN test is occasionally used for detection and quantitation of humoral antibody for PPV. Neutralization of infectivity is usually confirmed by the absence or reduction either of intranuclear inclusions or fluorescent cells in cultures or of viral hemagglutinin in the culture medium (Johnson 1973; Joo et al. 1975; Mengeling 1972). The VN test has been reported to be more sensitive than the HI test (Johnson and Collings 1971; Joo et al. 1975). A microtechnique for application of the VN test has been described (Joo et al. 1975).

Immunodiffusion (Joo et al. 1978), a modified direct complement-fixation test (Ruckerbauer et al. 1978), and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) (Hohdatsu et al. 1988; Westenbrink et al. 1989) also have been used successfully to detect antibody for PPV.

In general, serologic procedures are recommended for diagnosis only when tissues from mummified fetuses are not available for testing. Results with maternal sera are of value if antibody is not detected, thus excluding PPV as a cause, and if samples collected at intervals reveal seroconversion for PPV coincident with reproduc-
tive failure (Mengeling et al. 1975; Morimoto et al. 1972b; Rodeffer et al. 1975). Because PPV is ubiquitous, the presence of antibody in a single sample is otherwise meaningless. However, a determination of relative amounts of antibody present as immunoglobulin M and G can suggest the time frame of infection (Joo et al. 1978; Kim 1974). Detection of antibody in sera of fetuses and stillborn pigs and in sera collected from neonatal pigs before they nurse is evidence of in utero infection, since maternal antibody does not cross the maternal-fetal junction (Cartwright et al. 1971; Chaniago et al. 1978; Johnson and Collins 1969, 1971; Mengeling 1972). When serum is not available, body fluids collected from fetuses or their viscera that have been kept in a plastic bag overnight at 4°C have been used successfully to demonstrate antibody (Cropper et al. 1976; Joo et al. 1976b).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

There is no treatment for PPV-induced reproductive failure. Gilts should either be naturally infected with PPV or vaccinated for PPV before they are bred. To promote natural infection, a common practice is to arrange contact between seronegative gilts and seropositive sows, with the expectation that one or more of the sows will be shedding virus. Moving gilts to a potentially contaminated area, either currently or recently inhabited by seropositive swine, also can be recommended. Once infection is started, the virus spreads rapidly among fully susceptible swine. Just how effective these procedures are in increasing the incidence of natural infection is unknown. Infection is common, and probably well over one-half of all gilts in areas where PPV is endemic are infected before they are bred for the first time (Mengeling 1972).

The use of vaccine is the only way to ensure that gilts develop active immunity before conception. Both inactivated (Fujisaki 1978; Fujisaki et al. 1978b; Ide et al. 1977; Joo and Johnson 1977b; Mengeling 1977; Mengeling et al. 1979, 1980b; Suzuki and Fujisaki 1976) and modified live-virus (MLV) vaccines (Fujisaki and Murikami 1982; Paul and Mengeling 1980) have been developed. An inactivated vaccine has been tested under field conditions (Fujisaki 1978; Fujisaki et al. 1978a), and both types of vaccines were effective when tested under controlled laboratory conditions (Mengeling et al. 1979, 1980b; Paul and Mengeling 1980).

Vaccines should be administered several weeks before conception with the objective of providing immunity through the susceptible period of gestation. However, vaccines must be administered after the disappearance of passively acquired colostral antibody, which could interfere with the development of active immunity (Paul and Mengeling 1986). These limits may define a very brief interval for effective vaccination of gilts that are bred before 7 months of age. Although inactivated vaccine provides maximum safety, there is experimental evidence that PPV can be sufficiently attenuated so that it is unlikely to cause reproductive failure, even if inadvertently administered during gestation (Paul and Mengeling 1980). The apparent safety of MLV vaccine may be due to its reduced ability to replicate in tissues of the intact host and cause the level of viremia needed for transplacental infection (Paul and Mengeling 1984). Moreover, it has been shown by transuterine inoculation of both virulent and attenuated virus that a much larger dose of attenuated virus is required to establish infection of fetuses (Mengeling et al. 1984).

Duration of immunity following vaccination is unknown; however, in one study antibody titers were maintained for at least 4 months after administration of an inactivated vaccine (Joo and Johnson 1977b). Low levels of antibody found to be protective allow speculation that, once the immune system has been primed with PPV, subsequent exposure to virulent virus during gestation is unlikely to result in transplacental infection, even if antibody from vaccination is no longer detectable (Mengeling et al. 1979).

Vaccination is also recommended for seronegative sows and boars. Seronegative sows are usually found only in PPV-free herds. In such cases, inactivated vaccine is indicated. Experience has shown that few herds can be expected to remain free of PPV, even if access is carefully controlled. Introduction of PPV into a totally susceptible herd can be disastrous (Donaldson-Wood et al. 1977). Vaccination of boars should reduce their involvement in dissemination of the virus.

Vaccines are used extensively in the United States and in several other countries where PPV has been recognized as an economically important cause of reproductive failure. All federally licensed vaccines marketed in the United States are inactivated.

REFERENCES

Brown TT Jr. 1981. Laboratory evaluation of selected disinfectants as virucidal agents against porcine parovirus, pseudorabies.

CHAPTER 23 PORCINE PARVOVIRUS 383


In the late 1980s, catastrophic outbreaks of a previously unrecognized disease were reported in U.S. swine herds (Keffaber 1989; Loula 1991). The clinical picture included severe reproductive losses, extensive postweaning pneumonia, reduction of growth performance, and increased mortality (Hill 1990). Initial efforts to identify the etiology of the outbreaks were unsuccessful and the name “Mystery Swine Disease” (MSD) came into common usage (Hill 1990; Reotutar 1989).

In Europe, outbreaks clinically similar to MSD occurred in Germany in November 1990 (OIE 1992). No common link was found between the outbreaks in Germany and MSD in the U.S. (Anon. 1991). Spreading rapidly, over 3,000 outbreaks were documented in Germany in May 1991 and across Europe in the following 4 years (Baron et al. 1992; Bøtner et al. 1994; Edwards et al. 1992; OIE 1992; Pejsak and Markowska-Daniel 1996; Plana Duran et al. 1992a; Valiˇcek et al. 1997). In Asia, outbreaks occurred in Japan in 1988 (Hirose et al. 1995) and in Taiwan in 1991 (Chang et al. 1993).

The etiology of the disease was resolved in 1991 when Koch’s postulates were fulfilled by researchers at the Central Veterinary Institute (Lelystad, the Netherlands) with a previously unrecognized RNA virus (Terpstra et al. 1991a; Wensvoort et al. 1991). Shortly thereafter, the virus was isolated in the U.S. (Collins 1991; Collins et al. 1992) and Canada (Dea et al. 1992a,b). The first virus isolates in the Netherlands and U.S. were designated Lelystad virus and Swine Infertility and Respiratory Syndrome (SIRS) virus (BIAH-001), respectively. European workers introduced the term “porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome” (PRRS) into the literature (Terpstra et al. 1991b). The term “swine arterivirus” is also found in the literature (Albina et al. 1998; Legeay et al. 1997) and is more in keeping with the spirit of the rules of virus nomenclature devised by the International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses.

**ETIOLOGY**

PRRS virus (PRRSV) is a small, positive-strand RNA virus. Together with equine arteritis virus, lactate dehydrogenase-elevating virus, and simian hemorrhagic fever virus, PRRSV belongs to family Arteriviridae, which together with family Coronaviridae form the order Nidovirales (Cavanagh 1997). PRRSV is an enveloped virus with a diameter of 50–65 nm, a relatively smooth surface, and a cuboidal, nucleocapsid core with a diameter of 25–35 nm (Benfield et al. 1992) (Figure 24.1).

PRRSV is highly host restricted, growing primarily in porcine alveolar macrophages and in macrophages of other tissues (Pol et al. 1991). PRRSV can also replicate in testicular germ cells (spermatids, spermatocytes, multinucleated giant cells) in infected boars (Sur et al. 1997). In vitro, PRRSV grows in primary cultures of porcine alveolar macrophages, as well as MA-104 African green monkey kidney cells or its derivatives (Benfield et al. 1992, Kim et al. 1993). A cell line derived from cotton rat lung cells has also been reported to be highly susceptible to PRRSV (rat cell line, ATCC PTA-3930).

PRRSV enters the host cell by endocytosis. PRRSV particles have been visualized by electron microscopy at the cell surface or within small vesicles delineated by clathrin-like zones (Kreutz and Ackermann 1996). Meulenberg (2000) concisely described the complete process of morphogenesis: PRRSV is assembled through a process of nucleocapsid budding into the lumen of the smooth endoplasmic reticulum, the Golgi, or both. After budding, virions accumulate in vesicles and then move to the plasma membrane where release takes place through fusion. Under single-step growth conditions, the maximum output of PRRSV particles takes place between 10–20 hours, reaching titers of $10^{6.5}$ to $10^{7.5}$ TCID$_{50}$/ml (Meulenberg 2000).

**Genomic Organization**

The genomic organization of PRRSV is similar to that of other arteriviruses. The genome is approximately 15 kb.
in length with eight open reading frames (ORFs). The complete genome sequence of Lelystad virus and several North American isolates has been published (Allende et al. 1999; Meulenberg et al. 1993; Nelsen et al. 1999; Wootton et al. 2000). A comparison of the amino acid sequences encoded by each PRRSV ORF indicates that PRRSV is more similar to lactate dehydrogenase-elevating virus than to equine arteritis virus.

ORFs 1a and 1b comprise 80% of the genome and encode the RNA replicase required for virus replication. ORFs 1a and 1b are translated as a single poly-protein, which is then processed into smaller nonstructural proteins (nsp). Nsp1-alpha, nsp1-beta, nsp2, and nsp4 are proteases that cleave the entire ORF1 polyprotein into 12 nsps (Snijder and Meulenberg 2001). The nsp10 region of ORF1b encodes a functional helicase (Bautista et al. 2002).

In addition to their functional role in PRRSV replication, the nsps have a potential role in diagnostics and in the host immune response. A significant number of epitopes exist on nsp2 and these are recognized by the immune system of the infected host (Oleksiewicz et al. 2001).

The six ORFs (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7) located at the 3’ end of the genome encode the viral structural proteins. Of these, GP2, GP3, GP4, and GP5, are all N-glycosylated, whereas the nucleocapsid protein N (ORF 7 product) and the integral membrane (or matrix) M protein (ORF 6 product) are not (Dea et al. 2000). Recent evidence also suggests the existence of an additional nonglycosylated, small protein (73 amino acid, 10-kDa) encoded by a small ORF within ORF2 designated ORF2b (Wu et al. 2001).

**Structural Proteins**

PRRSV possesses a set of six or seven structural proteins. The three major structural proteins are GP5, M, and N.

The N protein is small (15 kDa), highly basic, and interacts with the viral RNA in the assembly of infectious particles. The N protein is expressed at high levels in infected cells and represents 20–40% of the total protein content of the virion. It is active in nuclear shuttling and localization to the nucleolus and may influence nuclear processes during replication (Rowland and Yoo 2003), possibly through rRNA precursor processing and ribosome biogenesis (Yoo et al. 2003). The N protein is not important from an immunogenic or immunoprotective standpoint, but its abundant expression and antigenicity make it an ideal target for diagnostic assays.

The nonglycosylated M (transmembrane) envelope protein is the most genetically conserved of all the structural proteins of PRRSV. As a matrix protein, M is important in virus assembly and budding. It accumulates in the endoplasmic reticulum, forming disulfide-linked heterodimers with the 25 kDa GP5 (Mardassi et al. 1996). These heterodimers are incorporated into the virus particles and are essential for interaction with cellular receptors and are vital for virus infectivity. Evidence for this is supported by the fact that M protein induces PRRSV-neutralizing antibodies (Bastos et al. 2002). The M protein and the M-GP5 complex contribute to PRRSV attachment to a heparin-like receptor on porcine alveolar macrophages (Delputte et al. 2002).

The envelope GP5 contains, after processing, an ectodomain 30 amino acids in length that carries 2 or 3 N-glycans. As the primary envelope protein, GP5 is involved in receptor recognition (Vanderheijden et al. 2003). GP5’s role in receptor recognition is supported by the presence of a major neutralization epitope in the N-terminal ectodomain; thus, implying a role for the GP5 ectodomain in the infection process (Ostrowski et al. 2002; Plagemann 2004; Plagemann et al. 2002; Wissink et al. 2003).

The 29–30 kDa GP2 and the 31–35 kDa GP4 envelope proteins are minor constituents of the viral envelope and are typical class I membrane proteins (Meulenberg...
2000). It is uncertain whether the 45–50 kDa GP3 protein is present on the structure of the virion, as described for European PRRSV isolates (van Nieuwstadt et al. 1996), or if it is secreted into the medium of infected cells, as reported in studies with a North American isolate (Gonin et al. 1998).

**Genomic Diversity**

PRRSV strains or isolates are exceptionally variable based on

1. Variation in the clinical presentation of the disease
2. Experimental evidence of differences in pneumovirus and/or reproductive virulence
3. Antigenic differences as determined by reactivity with polyclonal and monoclonal antibodies
4. Differences in RNA sequences

Concomitant with improvements in the diagnostic assays has been an increased awareness of the genetic/antigenic diversity of PRRSV strains in the field (Meng 2000). In many laboratories, genetic sequencing has become routine in the diagnostic assessment of PRRSV infections.

With the increased use of genetic sequencing has come the realization that genetically diverse PRRSV strains may coexist on the same farm (Dee et al. 2001; Goldberg et al. 2003). Likewise, sequencing has led to the recognition of European genotype (Type 1) strains in areas previously considered to be exclusively populated by U.S. genotype strains (Type 2) (Ropp et al. 2004) and vice versa. Thus, in North America, Europe, and probably elsewhere, two distinct genotypes of PRRSV sharing only partial cross-protection may be found. This has great significance for vaccine strain selection and for the performance of diagnostic assays. Since recombination is likely an important genetic mechanism contributing to PRRSV evolution (Yuan et al. 1999), an additional concern is the possibility that recombination may occur between North American and European viruses coexisting in the same region. However, in vitro (cell culture) conditions indicate that RNA recombination is more likely to occur between two North American (Type 2) strains or two European (Type 1) PRRSV strains than between a Type 1 and Type 2 strain (van Vught et al. 2001).

Systematic application of sequencing has also contributed to concerns about the stability of attenuated vaccine viruses and their possible reversion to virulence. Evidence has suggested the reversion to virulence by attenuated vaccines (Key et al. 2003; Mengeling et al. 1999a; Nielsen et al. 2001; Opriessnig et al. 2002). On the other hand, a significant potential outcome of the study of the genomic structure of attenuated PRRSV strains is a better understanding of the molecular basis for virulence and attenuation in PRRSV. Several genomic pair studies of attenuated strains and their parental wild-type strains have provided an a priori indication of likely candidate virulence genes (Allende et al. 2000a; Grebennikova et al. 2004; Yuan et al. 2001). These studies are a precursor to studies of gene functions and the molecular basis of PRRSV virulence based on reverse genetics, e.g., infectious cDNA clones (Groot Bramel-Verheijen et al. 2000; Meulenberg et al. 1998; Nielsen et al. 2003; Truong et al. 2004; Verheijen et al. 2002a; Verheijen et al. 2002b; Verheijen et al. 2003).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

**Geographic Distribution**

As diagnostic assays became available during the 1990s, PRRSV was found to have spread nearly everywhere domestic pigs are raised. Retrospective serologic studies found that PRRSV was present in Canada by 1979 (Carman et al. 1995), the U.S. by 1985 (Zimmerman et al. 1997), and the former German Democratic Republic by 1987 (Ohlinger et al. 2000). In Asia, anti-PRRSV antibodies were retrospectively documented in serum from pigs imported into the Republic of Korea (South Korea) in 1985 (Shin et al. 1993), in serum samples collected in 1987 in Taiwan (Chiou 2003), and in samples collected in 1988 in Japan (Hirose et al. 1995). In all cases, the serologic evidence found that PRRSV was in the swine population well before the recognition of clinical PRRS.

Some regions are still free of PRRSV. In Europe, this includes Sweden (Elvander et al. 1997), Norway (OIE 1997), Finland (Botner 2003), and Switzerland. Likewise, in Oceania, New Caledonia (OIE 1996), New Zealand (Motha et al. 1997), and Australia (Garner et al. 1996, 1997) are PRRSV-free. In South America, Argentina (Perfumo and Sanguinetti 2003), Brazil (Ciacci-Zanella et al. 1997) are PRRSV-free. In South America, Argentina (Perfumo and Sanguinetti 2003), Brazil (Ciacci-Zanella et al. 1997) are PRRSV-free. In South America, Argentina (Perfumo and Sanguinetti 2003), Brazil (Ciacci-Zanella et al. 1997) are PRRSV-free. In South America, Argentina (Perfumo and Sanguinetti 2003), Brazil (Ciacci-Zanella et al. 1997) are PRRSV-free.

Accurate estimates of the prevalence of infection with wild-type virus in specific countries or regions are not readily available, but within infected regions, 60–80% of herds are typically infected (Geue 1995; Hirose et al. 1995; Lu et al. 1999; Maes 1997; Mateusen et al. 2002; USDA 1997). The use of modified live virus (MLV) vaccines has made it difficult to estimate prevalence. Antibodies against vaccine virus are not easily differentiated from antibodies against PRRSV field strains. Furthermore, vaccine strain viruses are shed and transmitted in the field, further complicating the problem of identifying infection with wild-type virus (Astrup and Riising 2002; Botner et al. 1997; Christopher-Hennings et al. 1996, 1997; Mengeling et al. 1998; Sipos et al. 2002).

**Susceptible Species**

Presumably, PRRSV entered domestic swine from an as-yet-unidentified wildlife species. A number of species have been determined not to be susceptible to PRRSV, including mice, rats (Hooper et al. 1994), and guinea pigs (J. Zimmerman, unpublished data). Wills et al.
(2000) found no evidence of PRRSV replication in cats, dogs, mice, opossums, raccoons, rats, skunks, house sparrows, or starlings. Zimmerman et al. (1997) reported that mallard ducks (*Anas platyrhynchos*) were susceptible to PRRSV, but subsequent workers have not replicated these results (Trincado et al. 2004b).

Feral swine are susceptible to PRRSV infection, but according to serosurveys, infection in free-ranging feral swine animals is relatively rare (Albina et al. 2000; Lutz and Wurm 1996; Oslage et al. 1994; Saliki et al. 1998).

Even so, in areas where feral swine interact with domestic swine, they could conceivably serve as a source of PRRSV. Within superfamily *Suoidae* (*Sus* spp., peccaries, warthogs, and babirusa), the susceptibility of species, other than *Sus scrofa*, for PRRSV is unknown.

**Routes of Shedding**

Infected animals shed virus in saliva (Wills et al. 1997a), nasal secretions (Benfield et al. 1994; Christianson et al. 1993; Rossow et al. 1994a), urine (Wills et al. 1997a), semen (Swenson and Zimmerman 1993; Swenson et al. 1994a), and feces (Christianson et al. 1993). Pregnant susceptible females inoculated in late gestation shed virus in mammary secretions (Wagstrom et al. 2001).

Shedding of virus in semen is of particular concern because of the widespread use of artificial insemination. The duration of semen shedding varies widely among boars (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1996). Swenson et al. (1994a) found infectious virus in the semen of experimentally infected boars for up to 43 days following exposure. By PCR, Christopher-Hennings et al. (1995a) detected viral RNA in the semen of experimentally infected boars for up to 92 days postinoculation (DPI) and isolated PRRSV from the bulbourethral gland of a boar euthanized 101 DPI. Semen shedding of MLV vaccine virus occurred for up to 39 days in one study, but prior vaccination eliminated or reduced shedding upon challenge (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1997).

**Transmission**

Swine are susceptible to PRRSV by several routes of exposure, including intranasal, intramuscular, oral (Magar et al. 1995; Magar and Larochelle 2004; van der Linden et al. 2003b), intraterine (Christianson et al. 1993), and vaginal (Benfield et al. 2000a; Gradil et al. 1996; Yaeger et al. 1993). Pigs are not equally susceptible to PRRSV by all routes of exposure. That is, the probability that a given dose will result in infection differs by route of exposure. Hermann et al. (2005) estimated the infectious dose50 (ID50)—i.e., the dose required to infect one-half of the exposed animals—for oral and intranasal routes of exposure to be 10^5.3 TCID50 and 10^4.0 TCID50, respectively. Based on data from Benfield et al. (2000a), the ID50 for exposure via artificial insemination is approximately 10^4.5 TCID50. Yoon et al. (1999) reported that exposure to 20 or fewer PRRSV particles by intramuscular exposure resulted in infection.

Overall, the infectivity data indicate that pigs are extremely susceptible to infection via parenteral exposure (breaks in the skin barrier) and much less susceptible by all other routes investigated to date. In the field, potential parenteral exposures include standard husbandry practices, i.e., ear notching, tail docking, teeth clipping, tattooing, and inoculations with medications and biologics. Likewise, because PRRSV is present in saliva for weeks following infection, normal pig behavior commonly results in parenteral exposures, i.e., bites, cuts, scrapes, and/or abrasions that occur during aggressive interactions among pigs. Bierk et al. (2001) associated transmission with aggressive behavior between carrier sows and susceptible contacts. Other behaviors that result in exchange of blood and saliva, i.e., tail-biting and ear-biting, may also function in transmission. The significantly higher ID50 estimates for oral and intranasal exposures imply that transmission by these routes is less common and more easily prevented.

Indirect transmission involves transmission by inanimate objects (e.g., equipment, instruments, clothing) or substances (e.g., water, food), living carriers (vectors), or aerosols. Otake et al. (2002b) confirmed needle-borne transmission of PRRSV under experimental conditions. Likewise, Otake et al. (2002a) showed that PRRSV was present on workers’ coveralls, boots, and hands following 60 minutes of contact with acutely infected pigs. Importantly, elementary sanitation procedures, e.g., changing coveralls, changing boots, and washing hands, were sufficient to stop transmission (Dee et al. 2004a). Under experimental conditions, Dee et al. (2002, 2003) showed that PRRSV could be moved extensively on fomites in the field under winter conditions, i.e., below 0°C, but to a much lesser degree during warm weather, i.e., 10–16°C, again illustrating the importance of temperature in virus survival.

Preliminary reports suggest a possible role for arthropods in PRRSV transmission. PRRSV has been detected in, or on, wild-caught flies and mosquitoes (Otake et al. 2002c; Pringproa et al. 2004; Schurrer et al. 2004). Under experimental conditions, Otake et al. (2002c) demonstrated mechanical transmission of PRRSV by mosquitoes and house flies (*Musca domestica*) (Otake et al. 2003a). Overall, the current research data suggest that flies and mosquitoes might serve as mechanical vectors of PRRSV. However, the available data have not proven that PRRSV is an arthropod-borne infection. Typically, the ecologic relationships among host, infectious agent, arthropod, and environment in arthropod-borne infections are complex. Additional data are required to connect the current observations into a cohesive understanding of the role of arthropods in the transmission of PRRSV in the field.

Airborne virus was once considered the primary route of PRRS virus transmission. Airborne transmission, along with arthropod-borne transmission, could explain the apparent long-distance transmission (area
spread) of PRRSV in the absence of other sources of virus (pigs, inanimate objects, people). However, airborne transmission of PRRSV has been difficult to document. Under experimental conditions, transmission from infected to susceptible pigs over a space of 1.0–2.5 meters has been successful in approximately 50% of the attempts (Lager and Mengeling 2000; Otake et al. 2002d; Torremorell et al. 1997; Wills et al. 1997b). The one exception to this pattern of poor airborne transmissibility is a report by Kristensen et al. (2004). In three trials, approximately 50 acutely infected pigs transmitted PRRSV over a distance of one meter to approximately 50 susceptible pigs when 1%, 10%, or 70% of air was exchanged. In a field setting, airborne transmission did not occur over distances of 15 meters (Trincado et al. 2004a) and 30 meters (Otake et al. 2002d). The role of airborne transmission of PRRSV will not be understood until additional information is available; in particular, the quantity of virus excreted by pigs, the source of the virus, the rate of inactivation of aerosolized virus, and the infectious dose for pigs by aerosol exposure.

**Vertical Transmission**

PRRSV is transmitted from viremic dams transplacentally to fetuses, resulting in fetal death or birth of infected pigs that are weak or appear normal (Bøtner et al. 1994; Christianson et al. 1992; Terpstra et al. 1991a). Some pigs in affected litters may escape infection with PRRSV. PRRSV can replicate in fetuses 14 days of gestational age or older, but infection of fetuses during the first two-thirds of gestation is uncommon because most strains of PRRSV cross the placenta efficiently only in the last trimester of pregnancy (Christianson et al. 1993; Lager and Mengeling 1995; Mengeling et al. 1994; Prieto et al. 1996a,b). The reason for the difference in efficiency of maternal-placental viral transit at different stages of gestation and the mechanism(s) of viral transit are unknown. Transit is independent of the reproductive virulence of the virus strain. Park et al. (1996) showed that PRRSV strains of low and high virulence for fetuses cross the placenta with equal efficiency when sows are inoculated at 90 days of gestation.

**Persistent Infection**

PRRSV produces a chronic, persistent infection in pigs. Virus replicates in susceptible cells of clinically inapparent carrier animals for several months. This is the single most significant epidemiological feature of PRRSV infection. Persistent PRRSV infection has been documented through transmission experiments and by detection of virus in animals. Zimmerman et al. (1992) reported transmission of PRRSV from a sow infected 99 days earlier to susceptible sentinels. Following in utero exposure at day 90 of gestation, Benfield et al. (2000b) isolated virus from tonsil and lymph nodes from pigs for up to 132 days after farrowing. Wills et al. (1997c) isolated virus from one of 4 pigs at 157 DPI. Horter et al. (2002) detected infectious PRRSV by virus isolation or swine bioassay in 51 of 59 (84%) animals necropsied between 63 and 105 DPI, including 10 of 11 (91%) of animals euthanized at 105 DPI. Allende et al. (2000b) detected infectious virus by bioassay in 2 of 5 pigs at 150 DPI.

Persistent infection is not a function of pig age at the time of infection. Persistence occurs regardless of whether the pig is exposed in utero (Benfield et al. 1997, 2000b; Rowland et al. 1999), as a young animal, or as an adult (Bierk et al. 2001; Christopher-Hennings et al. 1995a; Fairbanks et al. 2002; Zimmerman et al. 1992). The mechanism(s) by which the virus is able to persevere in the face of an active immune response has not been identified, but probably does not involve evasion of immunity through continual in vivo viral mutation. Chang et al. (2002) found relatively low rates of mutation in persistently infected animals.

**Stability in the Environment**

Shedding of virus in saliva, urine, and feces results in environmental contamination and creates the potential for transmission via fomites. PRRSV is fragile and quickly inactivated by heat and drying. At 25–27°C, infectious virus was not detected on plastic, stainless steel, rubber, alfalfa, wood shavings, straw, corn, swine starter feed, or denim cloth, beyond day zero (Pirtle and Beran 1996).

PRRSV can remain infectious for an extended time under specific conditions of temperature, moisture, and pH. PRRSV is stable for months to years at temperatures of −70°C and −20°C. Approximately 90% of PRRSV infectivity is lost within 1 week at 4°C, but low titers of infectious virus can still be detected for at least 30 days. In solution, PRRSV infectivity persists for 1–6 days at 20–21°C, 3–24 hours at 37°C, and 6–20 minutes at 56°C. The thermal stability of PRRSV in serum and tissues is similar to that described for virus stored in media. PRRSV was isolated from 47%, 14%, and 7% of porcine serum samples stored at 25°C for 24, 48, and 72 hours, respectively. When serum was stored at 4°C or −20°C, PRRSV was isolated from 85% of the samples after 72 hours (Van Alstine et al. 1993). PRRSV is stable at pH 6.5–7.5, but infectivity is rapidly lost at pH below 6 and above 7.5 (Benfield et al. 1992; Bloemraad et al. 1994).

**Disinfection**

PRRSV is inactivated by lipid solvents, e.g., chloroform and ether (Benfield et al. 1992). PRRSV is highly unstable in solutions containing low concentrations of detergents, which disrupt the envelope with concomitant release of the noninfectious core particles and loss of infectivity (Snijder and Meulenberg 2001).

Disinfection first requires removal of all organic material. Thereafter, infectious agents are inactivated in a temperature- and contact time–dependent fashion specific to the agent and the disinfectant. PRRSV is relatively labile in the environment and particularly suscep-
Transmission within Herds

PRRSV tends to circulate within a herd indefinitely. Endemicity appears to be driven by persistent PRRSV infection in carrier animals and the continual availability of susceptible animals either through birth, purchase, or loss of protective immunity. The virus is perpetuated by a cycle of transmission from dams to pigs either in utero or postpartum, or by commingling susceptible animals with infected animals in later stages of production. Under conditions in which susceptible and infectious pigs are mixed, e.g., at weaning, a large proportion of the population may quickly become infected. Dee and Joo (1994a) reported 80–100% of pigs in 3 swine herds were infected by 8–9 weeks of age and Maes (1997) found 96% of market hogs sampled from 50 herds to be positive. However, marked differences in infection rates between groups, pens, or rooms of animals may be observed in endemically infected herds. Houben et al. (1995) even found transmission to vary within litters. Some littermates seroconverted as early as 6–8 weeks of age, but other individuals reached 12 weeks of age, the end of the monitoring period, still free of PRRSV infection. Likewise, Melnichouk et al. (2005) found differences in the pattern of transmission in farms. In 5 farms, approximately 50% of the pigs were infected at 5–7.5 weeks of age and at least 90% were infected by 8.5 weeks of age, but on 2 farms, only 20% to 40% of pigs were infected at 10–12 weeks of age.

Transmission between Herds

The role of infected pigs and virus-contaminated semen in herd-to-herd transmission is firmly established (Dee 1992; Mousing et al. 1997; Weigel et al. 2000). In a regional PRRSV control program in France, Le Potier et al. (1997) estimated that 56% (66 of 118) of herds acquired the infection through the introduction of infected pigs, 20% (23 of 118) through infected semen, 21% (25 of 118) through fomites/slurry, and 3% (4 of 118) through unidentified sources. Mortensen et al. (2002) found that PRRSV entered negative herds through the introduction of animals and semen and through area spread from neighboring farms, which they attributed to aerosol transmission. Dee et al. (2002, 2003) have demonstrated the ease with which PRRSV can be moved between farms on commonplace equipment and objects common to swine farms, e.g., insulated semen coolers, metal toolboxes, plastic lunch pails, and cardboard boxes, especially when wet and cold. Torremorell et al. (2004) attributed over 80% of new infections in commercial systems to area spread from neighboring units, the movement of pigs in PRRSV infected transports, the lack of compliance of the biosecurity protocols, or possibly, introduction via insects.

Proximity to infected herds is a well-recognized risk factor. The risk of a herd becoming PRRSV-positive increases with the density of PRRSV-positive neighboring herds, but decreased with distances (Zhuang et al. 2002). Le Potier et al. (1997) found that 45% of herds suspected to have become infected through area spread were located within 500 meters (0.3 miles) of the postulated source herd and only 2% were one kilometer from the initial outbreak.

Area spread is a major issue in the control and/or elimination of PRRS. If area spread is to be prevented, it is essential that the mechanisms by which it occurs be firmly established. Area spread is often attributed to aerosols or insects. However, Goldberg et al. (2000) evaluated the ORF 5 gene sequences from 55 field isolates collected in Illinois (U.S.) and eastern Iowa (U.S.) and found that the genetic similarity of isolates did not correlate with their geographical distance. On that basis, they concluded that PRRSV was most commonly introduced into herds through animals or semen, as opposed to mechanisms associated with spread from neighboring herds.

PATHOGENESIS

The chronology of PRRS viral infection has been described in several key inoculation studies in germ-free, cesarean-derived/colostrum-deprived, or conventional pigs (Duan et al. 1997b; Halbur et al. 1995b, 1996a; Rossow et al. 1994a, 1995, 1996a). Following exposure, viral replication initially occurs primarily in local susceptible macrophages and then rapidly spreads to lymphoid organs, lungs, and, less consistently, to other tissues. Virulent strains of PRRSV cause viremia as early as 12 hours in some pigs, and in all pigs by 24 hours postinoculation along with viral infection of lymphoid tissues and lung. Viral titers increase rapidly and peak in serum, lymph nodes, and lung by day 7–14 with $10^2$–$10^5$ TCID50 of virus detected per ml of serum or gram of tissue. The highest viral titers are consistently reported in lung.

PRRSV replicates primarily in well-differentiated subsets of monocyte-derived cells that display a 220 kDa glycoprotein receptor to which PRRSV binds and enters via receptor-mediated endocytosis (Duan et al. 1998; Kreutz and Ackermann 1996; Nauwynck et al. 1999; Wissink 2003a). Differentiated cells known to support replication include pulmonary alveolar macrophages (PAM) and intravascular macrophages (PIM) in the lung (Thanawongnuwech et al. 1997a; Wensvoort et al. 1991) and macrophages in lymphoid tissues (Duan et al. 2000).
PRRSV replication in macrophages in lung and lymphoid tissues, and to a lesser extent other tissues, is significant. Thus, the highest titers are found in these tissues during acute PRRS.

Maturity and/or activation of PAM, and presumably other macrophages, is required for PRRSV replication (Duan et al. 1997a; Molitor et al. 1996, 1997; Thacker et al. 1998). PRRSV replicates in the subset of differentiated PAM with maximal ability to phagocytose bacteria and produce superoxide anion for bacterial killing in phagolysosomes (Molitor et al. 1996). Both PAM and PIM harvested from younger pigs replicate PRRSV to higher titers compared to older pigs (Mengeling et al. 1995; Thanawongnuwech et al. 1999b).

PRRSV will also replicate in microglia (Molitor et al. 1997), but will not replicate in all monocyte-derived cells, including peripheral blood monocytes, peritoneal macrophages, or bone marrow progenitor cells (Duan et al. 1997a,b).

The largest amount of PRRS viral antigen and/or nucleic acid is observed in lungs and lymph nodes, but is also consistently observed in perivascular and intravascular macrophages in heart, brain, kidney and elsewhere and is inconsistently observed in alveolar, bronchial, and nasal epithelium, endothelium, fibroblasts, spermatids, and spermatocytes (Halbur et al. 1995a,b, 1996a; Magar et al. 1993; Pol et al. 1991; Rossow et al. 1996a; Sirinarumitr et al. 1998; Sur et al. 1997; Thanawongnuwech et al. 1997a).

Generally, clinical disease and consistent lesions correspond to the time and place of highest viral titers, i.e. day 7–14 postinoculation in lung and lymph nodes. In contrast, in stillborn and congenitally infected live born pigs, viral antigen and nucleic acid is in largest amounts in lymphoid organs, but not lung (Cheon and Chae 2001).

After peaking, virus titers in serum decrease rapidly. Most pigs are no longer viremic by 28 DPI, although viral RNA has been detected in serum by rtPCR up to 251 DPI (Duan et al. 1997b; Wills et al. 2003). The duration of viremia may be slightly longer in congenitally infected pigs, being consistently demonstrated by virus isolation for up to 48 days after birth and infrequently by rtPCR for up to 228 days (Rowland et al. 2003).

Following viremia, congenitally- and postnatally infected pigs are persistently infected with virus in tonsil (Wills et al. 1997c) and/or lymph nodes, especially inguinal and sternal (Bierk et al. 2001; Xiao et al. 2004), for extended periods of time. Virus has been detected by virus isolation for as long as 132–157 DPI (Rowland et al. 2003; Wills et al. 1997c). Persistent virus is produced in lymphoid tissues by a low level of continuous replication (Allende et al. 2000b).

Mechanisms of Cell Injury

Replication of PRRS virus in macrophages in lung and lymphoid tissues, and to a lesser extent other tissues, induces lesions and clinical disease by a variety of mechanisms. These include apoptosis of infected cells, apoptotic death of proximate noninfected cells (indirect or bystander apoptosis), induction of inflammatory cytokines, induction of polyclonal B cell activation, and reduction in bacterial phagocytosis and killing by macrophages that results in increased susceptibility to septicemia (also likely due to other forms of immunomodulation by PRRSV).

Direct and indirect (bystander) apoptosis is a major cause of cell death in PRRS. During acute infection when virus titers are high, only a small portion of macrophages in scattered foci are infected with PRRSV (Duan et al. 1997b; Mengeling et al. 1995), but there are large numbers of apoptotic mononuclear cells distributed diffusely (Sirinarumitr et al. 1998; Sur et al. 1998). Apoptotic cells rarely contain PRRSV and are in greatest numbers 10–14 days after PRRSV inoculation. This suggests that PRRSV induces apoptosis in noninfected cells in proximity to infected cells. Most apoptotic cells are morphologically typical of macrophages; fewer are typical of lymphocytes.

The gene product of PRRSV ORF5 (GP5) induces apoptosis when expressed in the simian COS-1 cell line in vitro and may be the cause of apoptosis in PRRSV-infected macrophages in vivo (Suárez et al. 1996). The cause of PRRSV-induced indirect apoptosis is unknown, but is likely due to substances released from, or secreted by, infected macrophages, e.g., p25, apoptogenic cytokines, reactive oxygen species, or nitric oxide (Choi and Chae 2002; Labarque et al. 2003; Suárez 2000).

Secretion of proinflammatory cytokines from PRRSV-infected macrophages likely results in effects that are both positive (recruitment of leukocytes, initiation of immune response, and reduction in viral replication) and negative (increased vascular permeability resulting in pulmonary edema and bronchial constriction). Studies demonstrated variable elevations in cytokine levels in broncho-alveolar lavage from PRRSV-infected vs. uninfected control pigs, including IFN-gamma, TNF-alpha, IL-1, IL-6, IL-10, and IL-12 (Choi et al. 2001; Suradhat and Thanawongnuwech 2003; Thanawongnuwech et al. 2003; van Gucht et al. 2003). Studies using in situ hybridization have also shown that production of these cytokines is predominantly by macrophages located in alveolar septa in foci of inflammation and also by lymphocytes positive for IFN-gamma (Choi et al. 2001; Chung and Chae 2003; Thanawongnuwech et al. 2003). Of these cytokines, TNF-alpha, IL-1, and IL-6 are proinflammatory and known to promote influx and activation of leukocytes, increased microvascular permeability (pulmonary edema), and induction of systemic effects such as pyrexia, anorexia, and lethargy. TNF-alpha and IL-1 can also cause bronchial hyper-reactivity and constriction with asthma-like symptoms.

PRRSV replication in lymphoid organs is also associ-
ated with polyclonal B cell activation. Grossly, this appears as nodular lymphoid hyperplasia and microscopically as follicular lymphoid hyperplasia (Lamontagne et al. 2001). Inoculation of neonatal gnotobiotic pigs with PRRSV results in lymphoid hyperplasia, extremely elevated levels of all classes of serum immunoglobulins (of which only 1% are specific for PRRSV), circulating immune complexes, immune complex deposition on glomerular basement membranes with associated cellular inflammation, and induction of auto-antibodies to Golgi antigens and dsDNA (Lemke et al. 2004).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**


Clinical presentation of PRRS varies greatly between herds, ranging from asymptomatic to devastating. Clinical signs also vary greatly and may be masked or augmented by concurrent infection(s). The only completely consistent clinical feature of PRRS is that there is no consistent feature. For nearly every described clinical sign, there are exceptions. Clinical signs of PRRSV are influenced by virus strain, host immune status, host susceptibility, exposure to lipopolysaccharides (LPS), concurrent infections, and other management factors (Blaha 1992; White 1992a).

Clinical disease in a herd is primarily the consequence of acute viremia in individuals (Collins et al. 1992; Pol et al. 1991; Terpstra et al. 1991a) and transplacental transmission resulting in reproductive failure (Terpstra et al. 1991a). Because PRRSV isolates vary remarkably in virulence, low-virulence isolates can cause completely subclinical epidemic or endemic infections in herds (Morrison et al. 1992), whereas highly virulent isolates can cause severe clinical infections that appear differently, depending on the herd's immune status.

Clinical epidemics occur when PRRSV enters an immunologically naive herd or production site and all ages are affected. Endemic PRRS occurs in herds that have homologous immunity to the infecting strain of PRRSV. In endemic PRRS, clinical disease is observed in susceptible subpopulations, usually in nursery-grower pigs when maternal immunity decays, and/or in replacement gilts or sows that have previously escaped infection, as well as their congenitally infected progeny.

Antigenic variation is great enough among strains of PRRSV that entry of a new, relatively unrelated strain can cause an epidemic in an endemically PRRSV-infected herd.

**Epidemic Infection**

In PRRS epidemics, the first phase lasts 2 or more weeks and is characterized by anorexia and lethargy in 5–75% of animals of all ages as a result of acute viremia. It begins in one or more stages of production and quickly spreads in 3–7 or more days to all stages of production. Individuals are anorexic for 1–5 days. The spread of the disease through a segregated group of pigs usually requires 7–10 or more days, giving rise to the descriptive term “rolling inappetence.” Clinically affected animals may also be lymphopenic, pyretic with rectal temperatures from 39–41°C (102–106°F), hyperpneic and dyspneic, or have transient “blotchy” cutaneous hyperemia or cyanosis on extremities.

The second phase may begin before the first phase of acute illness is completed and continues for 1–4 months, characterized by reproductive failure, primarily in sows that were viremic in their third trimester, and by high preweaning mortality in their live-born progeny. When reproductive performance and preweaning mortality return to near preoutbreak levels, endemic infection of most herds continues.

**Sows.** During the phase of acute illness, 1–3% of litters may be lost in sows that are from 21–109 days of gestation. This is recognized as overt abortions or, later, as irregular returns to estrus or nonpregnant sows (Hopper et al. 1992; Keffaber 1989; Loula 1991; White 1992a). Also observed inconsistently in acutely ill sows is agalactia (Hopper et al. 1992), incoordination (de Jong et al. 1991), and/or a dramatic exacerbation of endemic diseases, such as sarcoptic mange, atrophic rhinitis, or cystitis/pyelonephritis (White 1992a).

Mortality in sows is typically 1–4% during acute illness and is sometimes associated with pulmonary edema and/or cystitis/ nephritis (Hopper et al. 1992; Loula 1991). A few cases of severe acute PRRS in sows have been described with 10–50% abortions, up to 10% mortality, and nervous signs such as ataxia, circling, and paresis (Epperson and Holler 1997; Halbur and Bush 1997).

Late-term reproductive failure begins at approximately 1 week and continues for up to 4 months. Not all affected sows are clinically ill during acute PRRS. Typically, 5–80% of sows farrow on day 100–118 of gestation and have litters composed of any combination of normal pigs, weak variably sized pigs, and dead pigs that are fresh stillborn (intrapartum death), autolytic (brown) partially mummified or completely mummified fetuses. Typically, pigs born dead comprise 0–100% of each affected litter and 7–35% of the total pigs born in a farrowing group. In time, there is a shift from predominantly stillborn pigs and large partially mummified pigs, to smaller more completely mummified pigs, to small weak-born pigs, to pigs of normal size and vigor (Keffaber 1989; Loula 1991; White 1992a). In some herds, the majority of abnormal pigs are born alive, pre-
mature, weak, and small, but few are born dead (Gordon 1992). Periparturient mortality in sows may be 1–2% (de Jong et al. 1991; Keffaber 1989). Surviving sows on the subsequent breeding often have delayed return to estrus and low conception rates.

Boars. During acute illness, in addition to anorexia, lethargy, and respiratory clinical signs, boars may lack libido and have variable reduction in semen quality (de Jong et al. 1991; Feitsma et al. 1992; Prieto et al. 1994). Changes in sperm occur 2–10 weeks after infection with virus and include reduced motility and acrosomal defects, but it is unclear whether conception rates are affected (Lager et al. 1996; Prieto et al. 1996a,b; Swenson et al. 1994b; Yaeger et al. 1993). However, of much greater significance is semen shedding of PRRSV that can result in venereal transmission to sows (Swenson et al. 1994b; Yaeger et al. 1993).

Suckling Pigs. During the 1- to 4-month phase of late-term reproductive failure, there is high preweaning mortality (up to 60%) in pigs born prematurely and at term associated most consistently with listlessness, emaciation/starvation, splay-legged posture, hypopnea, dyspnea (“thumping”), and chemosis. Seen less commonly are tremors or paddling (Keffaber 1989; Loula 1991), slight doming of foreheads (Gordon 1992), anemia and thrombocytopenia with consequent hemorrhage from navel and elsewhere, and an increase in bacterial polyarthritis and meningitis (Hopper et al. 1992; White 1992a). Watery diarrhea was commonly reported in the United Kingdom (Gordon 1992; Hopper et al. 1992; White 1992a) and less commonly elsewhere (Keffaber 1989; Leyk 1991).

Weanling and Grower Pigs. Acute PRRS virus infection in nursery or grower-finisher pigs is characterized most consistently by anorexia, lethargy, cutaneous hyperemia, hypopnea and/or dyspnea without coughing, rough hair coats, and variable reduction in average daily gain creating uneven groups (Moore 1990; White 1992b). Frequently reported is a higher than usual incidence of endemic diseases and elevated mortality of 12–20% (Blaha 1992; Keffaber et al. 1992; Loula 1991; Moore 1990; Stevenson et al. 1993; White 1992a). Diseases most commonly reported include streptococcal meningitis, septicemic salmonellosis, Glasser’s disease, exudative dermatitis, sarcoptic mange, and bacterial bronchopneumonia.

Endemic Infection of Herds
Once introduced into a herd, PRRS becomes endemic in nearly all cases. In endemically infected herds, PRRS is most often seen as regular or occasional outbreaks of typical acute PRRS in susceptible nursery or grower-finisher pigs (Keffaber et al. 1992; Stevenson et al. 1993). Clinical signs are also observed in groups of susceptible gilts or replacement boars exposed to PRRSV after introduction into the herd (Dee et al. 1996; Dee and Joo 1994b; Grosse-Beilage and Grosse-Beilage 1992) but may also be seen in susceptible sows. Acute clinical disease in gilts or boars is as described for epidemics. The reproductive consequences depend on the number of gilts/sows infected and the stage of their reproductive cycle when infected, both of which may vary widely (Torrison et al. 1994). If few gilts are infected on an ongoing basis, there may be scattered abortions, irregular returns to estrus, nonpregnant gilts, and late-term reproductive failure with abnormal litters typical of PRRS. These may be recognized only if records are evaluated on a parity-specific basis (White 1992b). Alternatively, gilts may escape exposure to PRRSV until there is a significant subpopulation of susceptible gilts in various stages of gestation. In this situation, endemic PRRS in the breeding herd manifests as periodic mini-outbreaks of PRRS in gilts and, less commonly, sows, that are identical to those in an epidemic (Dee and Joo 1994b).

Factors Affecting the Severity of Disease
Differences in the expression of clinical disease are incompletely understood and affected by many factors, including virus strain, immune status (discussed elsewhere), host susceptibility, exposure to lipopolysaccharides (LPS), and concurrent infections. Management factors (pig flow, building design, temperature regulation, etc.) likely have impact, but are poorly defined.

PRRS virus strains differ genetically (Murtaugh et al. 1995), antigenically (Nelson et al. 1993; Wensvoort et al. 1992), in severity of induced respiratory disease and lesions (Halbur et al. 1995b, 1996a,b; van der Linden et al. 2003a) and in severity of induced reproductive disease (Mengeling et al. 1996a, 1998; Park et al. 1996). The specific virulence attributes that differ between strains are not known. High virulence strains, as compared to low virulence strains, are known to result in significantly more viral antigen in lung and lymphoid tissues (Halbur et al. 1996a), viremia of higher peak titer and of longer duration (Grebennikova et al. 2004; van der Linden et al. 2003a) and more pulmonary IFN-gamma producing cells (Thanawongnuwech et al. 2003).

A few PRRSV inoculation studies in purebred animals have demonstrated differences in disease between breeds. Halbur et al. (1998) reported significant differences in pulmonary lesions, number of pulmonary PRRSV antigen-positive cells, incidence of myocarditis, and incidence of encephalitis. Christopher-Hennings and others (2001) reported differences in duration of PRRS shedding in semen of infected boars.

Bacterial LPS, also known as endotoxin, is a major component of bacterial cell walls and is known to be in high levels in dust in poorly ventilated swine buildings (Zeijda et al. 1994). Intratracheal administration of LPS in PRRSV-inoculated pigs as compared to pigs given only PRRSV or LPS resulted in consistently more severe
clinical respiratory disease that was temporally associated with 10–100-fold elevations of IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-alpha, but not differences in gross and microscopic lung lesions or number of inflammatory -cells in bronchoalveolar lavage fluids (Labarque et al. 2002; van Gucht et al. 2003).

Infection with PRRSV renders pigs more susceptible to some bacterial and viral diseases and has an additive or synergistic effect with some other bacteria or viruses to create more severe disease than either agent alone. Postnatal and congenital infection with PRRSV renders pigs more susceptible to development of septicemia with Streptococcus suis (Feng et al. 2001; Galina et al. 1994). Elegant studies have demonstrated that a likely mechanism is replication in and killing of pulmonary intravascular macrophages (PIMs) and alveolar macrophages (PAMS) as well as reduction in ability of virus-infected PIMs and PAMS to phagocytose and kill bacteria (Thanawongnuwech et al. 1997b; 1998a,b; 2000a,b). This mechanism may be operative in rendering pigs with acute PRRS more susceptible to septicemia by other bacteria, but experimental proof is lacking. Infection of weanling pigs with PRRSV also renders them more susceptible to development of bronchopneumonia due to Bordetella bronchiseptica (Brockmeier et al. 2000). This might be due to PRRSV infection of PAMS and resulting reduction in ability to kill bacteria (Thanawongnuwech et al. 1997b). Acute PRRS increases incidence and severity of clinical disease following inoculation with Salmonella choleraesuis (Wills et al. 2000). Infection with PRRSV also significantly enhances replication of porcine circovirus type 2 (PCV2), resulting in more severe PRRS viral pneumonia as well as lesions of PCV2-associated porcine multisystemic wasting syndrome (Allan et al. 2000; Harms et al. 2001). Attempts to experimentally confirm field observations of increased susceptibility in PRRSV-infected pigs to diseases caused by A. pleuropneumoniae, Pasteurella multocida, or Haemophilus parasuis have been unsuccessful (Cooper et al. 1995; Pol et al. 1997; Segalés et al. 1999). Other studies have demonstrated an additive or potentiating effect between PRRSV and some bacterial and viral agents. That is, dual infection causes more severe disease than either single infection. These include Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae, porcine respiratory corona virus, swine influenza virus, and Aujeszky’s disease virus (Shibata et al. 2003; Thacker et al. 1999; van Reeth et al. 1996, 2001). No potentiation was observed between PRRSV and classical swine fever virus (Depner et al. 1999).

LESIONS

Postnatal Lesions

Postnatal virulent PRRSV produces consistent gross lesions of interstitial pneumonia and enlarged lymph nodes in all ages of swine. These lesions are suggestive of PRRSV, but are not diagnostic since a variety of other viral and bacterial diseases can cause similar lesions. Typical microscopic lesions of PRRSV sometimes allow a strong presumptive diagnosis. However, a definitive diagnosis always requires demonstration of PRRSV.

Similar lesions are described in all ages of pigs with PRRSV infection. The severity and distribution of lesions varies with the virulence of virus strain (Done and Paton 1995; Halbur et al. 1996b). Most inoculation studies in which lesions have been described were in suckling or weaned pigs 1–70 days of age (Collins et al. 1992; Dea et al. 1992c; Halbur et al. 1995b, 1996a,b; Pol et al. 1991; Rossow et al. 1994a, 1995). Gross and microscopic lesions are consistently observed from 4 to ≥28 DPI in lung and lymph nodes, where most viral replication takes place. Later, only microscopic lesions are inconsistently observed, beginning at approximately 7 to 14 DPI, in kidney, brain, heart, and elsewhere where there is much less virus; mostly in perivascular and intravascular macrophages and endothelial cells. Microscopic lesions are also in the uterus of dams following reproductive failure and in the testicles of boars. Lesions unique to pigs inoculated at ≤13 days of age include periocular edema on days 6–23 postinoculation, scrotal edema on days 11–14 postinoculation, and subcutaneous edema on days 2–7 postinoculation (Rossow et al. 1994a, 1995).

Lungs have interstitial pneumonia from 3 to ≥28 DPI that is most severe 10–14 DPI. Mild lesions are in cranial lungs or diffuse. Affected parenchyma is resilient, slightly firm, noncollapsing, mottled gray-tan, and moist. Severe lesions are diffusely distributed, and parenchyma is mottled or noncollapsing, red-tan, firm and rubbery, and very moist. Microscopically, alveolar septa are expanded by macrophages, lymphocytes, and plasma cells and may be lined by hyperplastic type II pneumocytes. Alveoli may contain necrotic macrophages, cell debris, and serous fluid. Lymphocytes and plasma cells form cuffs around Airways and blood vessels. Rarely, PRRSV antigen is described in few bronchial epithelial cells with cell swelling and loss of cilia (Done and Paton 1995; Pol et al. 1991). In field cases of PRRS, especially in nursery and grower/finisher pigs, PRRS pulmonary lesions are often complicated or obscured by lesions of concurrent bacterial and/or viral diseases.

Lymph nodes have lesions from 4–28 or more DPI (Dea et al. 1992c; Halbur et al. 1995b; Rossow et al. 1994a,b, 1995). Many lymph nodes in most pigs are enlarged from 2–10 times normal. Early postinoculation, enlarged nodes are edematous, tan, and moderately firm. Later, nodes are firm and white or light tan in a nodular or diffuse pattern. Uncommonly, there are multiple fluid-filled 2–5 mm diameter cortical cysts. Microscopic lesions are predominantly in germinal centers. Early in the course of infection, germinal centers are necrotic and depleted. Later, germinal centers are very large and composed of blast-type lymphocytes. The
cortices may contain small cystic spaces that are vari-ably lined by endothelium and contain proteinaceous fluid, lymphocytes, and multinucleate prokaryocytes (Rossow et al. 1994b, 1995). Microscopically, there may be mild lymphoid necrosis, depletion, and/or hyperplasia in the thymus, in periarteriolar lymphoid sheaths of the spleen, and in lymphoid follicles in tonsil and Peyer’s patches (Halbur et al. 1995b; Pol et al. 1991).

Mild to moderate multifocal lymphohistiocytic vasculitis and perivascular myocarditis may develop in the heart ≥9 DPI (Halbur et al. 1995a, 1996b; Rossow et al. 1994a, 1995). Less commonly, mild myocardial fibrillary necrosis and lymphohistiocytic cuffing of Purkinje fibers is described (Rossow et al. 1995).

Mild lymphohistiocytic leukencephalitis or encephalitis involving cerebellum, cerebrum, and/or brainstem may develop ≥7 days PI (Collins et al. 1992; Halbur et al. 1996b; Rossow et al. 1995; Thanawongnuwech et al. 1997a). There is segmental cuffing of blood vessels by lymphocytes and macrophages and multifocal gliosis. Necrotizing vasculitis was also described in one field case of PRRS with neurologic clinical disease (Thanawongnuwech et al. 1997a).

Kidneys occasionally have mild periglomerular and peritubular lymphohistiocytic aggregates from 14–42 DPI (Cooper et al. 1997; Rossow et al. 1995). Cooper and others (1997) described mild to severe segmental vasculitis that was most severe in the pelvis and medulla. Affected vessels had swollen endothelium, pooled subendothelial proteinaceous fluid, fibrinoid medial necrosis, and intramural and perivascular aggregates of lymphocytes and macrophages.

By 12 hours postinoculation, the nasal mucosal epithelium may have clumped or absent cilia and epithelial cell swelling, loss or squamous metaplasia (Collins et al. 1992; Halbur et al. 1996b; Pol et al. 1991; Rossow et al. 1995). By 7 DPI, lymphocytes and macrophages are in the epithelium and propria-submucosa.

Microscopic lesions are frequently in the uterus of pregnant sows with natural or experimental PRRS (Christianson et al. 1992; Lager and Halbur 1996; Stockhofe-Zurwieden et al. 1993). The myometrium and/or endometrium is edematous with lymphohistiocytic perivascular cuffs. Less commonly, there is segmental lymphohistiocytic vasculitis in small vessels and microseparations between endometrial epithelium and placental trophoblasts that contain eosinophilic proteinaceous fluid and cell debris.

Atrophy of seminiferous tubules is seen in 5- to 6-month-old boars 7–25 days PI (Sur et al. 1997). Atrophic tubules have PRRSV antigen and nucleic acid in germinal epithelial cells, giant cells with 2–15 nuclei, and apoptosis and depletion of germ cells.

**Fetal Lesions**

PRRS reproductive failure should be suspected when litters are delivered at ≥100 days of gestation but before term and are composed of variable proportions of clinically normal pigs, small or normal-sized weak pigs, dead variably autolysed pigs, and mummies. Lesions in fetuses and stillborn pigs are uncommon and rarely contribute to a definitive diagnosis of PRRS. An absence of lesions in fetuses does not rule out PRRS.

PRRSV-infected litters contain variable numbers of normal pigs, small weak pigs, and dead pigs that are either fresh stillborn (intrapartum deaths), autolytic stillborn (prepartum deaths), or partially mummified/completely mummified fetuses. Dead pigs are commonly coated with a thick brown mixture of meconium and amnionic fluid; a nonspecific finding that suggests fetal stress and/or hypoxia (Lager and Halbur 1996; Stockhofe-Zurwieden et al. 1993). Most lesions in fetuses are non-specific and due to sterile in utero autolysis.

PRRSV-specific gross and microscopic lesions are few and inconsistent. These are best observed in fetuses with little or no in utero autolysis (Bøtner et al. 1994; Collins et al. 1992; Done and Paton 1995). Lesions are more commonly seen in live-born PRRSV-infected littersmates that die or are sacrificed within a few days after birth. Gross fetal lesions include perirenal edema, edema of the splenic ligament, mesenteric edema, ascites, hydrothorax, and hydroperitoneum (Dea et al. 1992c; Lager and Halbur 1996; Plana Duran et al. 1992b). Microscopic lesions are mild and nonsuppurative and include segmental arteritis and periarteritis in lung, heart, and kidney (Lager and Halbur 1996; Rossow et al. 1996b), multifocal interstitial pneumonia with occasional hyperplasia of type II pneumocytes (Plana Duran et al. 1992b; Sur et al. 1996), mild periportal hepatitis (Lager and Halbur 1996), myocarditis with loss of myocardial fibers (Lager and Halbur 1996; Rossow et al. 1996b), and multifocal leukoencephalitis (Rossow et al. 1996b).

An uncommon, but diagnostically discriminating lesion is segmental hemorrhagic enlargement of the umbilical cord up to three times normal diameter that is caused by segmental necro suppurative and lymphohistiocytic vasculitis (Lager and Halbur 1996).

**IMMUNITY**

The difficulty of achieving consistent and reliable control and prevention of PRRS with live, attenuated vaccines emphasizes our incomplete understanding of PRRS immunology. Serious deficits exist in our knowledge of the events initiating immunity at the time of infection, of key immunologic targets for both antibody and cytotoxic T cell-directed protection, of the molecular and cellular mechanisms regulating induction and maturation of the immune response, of the consequences of genetic diversity in PRRSV on immune pro-
tection, and of host genetic variation in pig populations on immune resistance to PRRSV.

The immune response to PRRSV begins with an attenuated innate antiviral response in the cytoplasm of an infected macrophage. Interferon (IFN) and inflammatory cytokine responses are weak (Albina et al. 1998; Buudaert et al. 1998; van Reeth et al. 1999). The down-regulation of IFN-alpha production facilitates PRRSV replication since IFN-alpha mediates inhibition of PRRSV replication. PRRSV also blocks IFN-alpha production after super-infection with TGEV, a strong inducer of IFN-alpha. This weak innate response may compromise the subsequent initiation and elaboration of antigen-specific adaptive immunity. In addition, suppression of innate antiviral immune mechanisms may increase the risk of secondary infections.

Humoral Immune Response

In serum, PRRS-specific IgM appears 5–7 days after infection and wanes to undetectable levels after 2–3 weeks. Anti-PRRSV IgG antibodies are detected 7–10 days after infection, peak at about 4 weeks, remain constant for a period of months, and then decline to low levels by 300 days.

The kinetics of anti-PRRSV antibody isotypes in bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) fluid are similar to those in serum, indicating that these antibodies extravasate from the vasculature. The antibodies in BAL may contribute to the clearance of PRRSV from the lung but are unable to eliminate the virus completely.

Antibodies directed against the nucleocapsid (N) protein are most abundant and are used diagnostically to detect infected animals, but are not neutralizing.

Virus neutralizing (VN) antibodies appear in serum about 3 weeks after infection and are maintained for long periods, but at low levels. There is substantial variation in the VN antibody responses of individual pigs, including lack of response, the kinetics of their appearance, and in the level of titers (Loemba et al. 1996; Nelson et al. 1994; Yoon et al. 1995b). Neutralizing antibodies are produced against glycoproteins GP4 and GP5 and against the matrix (M) protein. A linear epitope on the ectodomain region of GP5 has been identified as the target of neutralizing antibodies, but the characteristics of the specific amino acid sequence involved in neutralization are not fully resolved (Ostrowski et al. 2002; Pirzadeh and Dea 1997; Plagemann et al. 2002; Wissink et al. 2003b).

Antibody responses also are elicited to nonstructural proteins (nsP) of the replicase complex, particularly the nsP2 polyepitope (Olekiewicz et al. 2001). These antibody bodies may have diagnostic value and the proteins may be important targets for T cell responses.

The humoral immune response is presumed to play an important role in resistance to reinfection and in prevention or reduction of viral spread from animal to animal since neutralizing antibodies have the potential to clear virus from the circulation. However, the concurrent detection of neutralizing antibodies and infectious PRRSV in blood suggests that the role of neutralizing antibodies in protection against infection may be complex (Loemba et al. 1996; Molitor et al. 1997). Since viremia may occur in the presence of VN antibodies, the level of neutralizing antibodies normally generated against PRRSV may not be sufficient to control the replication of the virus and may even constitute a deleterious, non-protective response (Yoon et al. 1996).

The kinetics of neutralizing antibody appearance in lung and serum are delayed relative to the changes in viral load in lung and serum. Viral loads peak in the lung at 7–9 days after infection and in serum at 4 days after infection (Labarque et al. 2000; Greiner et al. 2000; Samsom et al. 2000); that is, 2 weeks before VN antibodies first appear. Thus, it appears that neutralizing antibody plays a secondary role in adaptive immune responses to PRRSV.

Cell-Mediated Immune Response

PRRSV titers in the lung peak 7–9 DPI and decline to near zero by day 20, although virus still may be isolated from lung fluids for an extended period. During and subsequent to the decrease in PRRSV, total CD8+ T lymphocyte numbers in the lung may either remain low and constant or increase substantially (Labarque et al. 2000; Samsom et al. 2000). PRRSV-specific T cell responses are transiently induced 2–8 weeks after infection (Bautista and Molitor 1997; Lopez Fuertes et al. 1999; Xiao et al. 2004). T cell responses have been detected against all viral proteins that have been tested, including the products of ORFs 2, 4, 5, 6, and 7 (Bautista et al. 1999). The circulating T cell phenotype is reported as PRRSV-specific CD4+CD8+ memory or CD8+ gamma-delta+, and constitutive CD4+ natural killer (Lopez Fuertes et al. 1999).

The T cell response to PRRSV is highly variable and transient, ranging from insignificant to a high response that occurs after the peak or in the absence of viremia (Xiao et al. 2002). Alain et al. (2004) found that the abundance of virus-specific T cells in both acutely and persistently infected pigs was highly variable and showed no correlation with the amount of virus. No significant difference in antigen-specific T cell abundance was observed in secondary lymphoid tissues in either acute or persistent infection, except for tonsil, in which the number of responding cells was extremely low. CD4+ and CD8+ T cell frequencies did not change after PRRSV infection, although a decrease in gamma-delta T cells was observed. Macrophages, the permissive cell type for PRRSV, were present in all tissue preparations at various levels that were not in proportion to local virus load. The weak T cell response probably contributes to prolonged PRRSV infection and suggests that PRRSV suppresses T cell recognition of infected macrophages. Meier et al. (2003) also observed that the initial T cell re-
response to PRRSV was weak and transient, but increased steadily for 1–2 years after infection.

Protective Immunity
PRRSV persists for weeks or months in lymphoid tissue (Chang et al. 2002; Horter et al. 2002; Wills et al. 1997c). Persistence in lung and lymph nodes despite the presence of neutralizing antibodies and cell-mediated immunity argues that other factors, such as alteration in macrophage permissiveness to infection and innate immunity, may be important in control of PRRSV infection. The broad genetic and antigenic variation in PRRSV and the presence of multiple viral genotypes circulating on farms or within production systems simultaneously also has an unknown effect on the efficacy of humoral and cell-mediated immune responses.

Nevertheless, pigs infected or vaccinated with live PRRSV are resistant to the reproductive effects of PRRSV upon reexposure to homologous PRRSV (Lager et al. 1997b). Exposure to PRRSV therefore establishes some form of immunological memory that restricts or limits the second infection. The level of protection may be profound; Foss et al. (2002) observed the complete absence of PRRSV following challenge of vaccinated pigs, even though there was no change in specific antibody by two separate measures. Partial-to-high levels of protection may also be achieved by reinfection of immune pigs with heterologous PRRSV strains (Lager et al. 2003; Mengeling et al. 1999b, 2003a,b).

Whether neutralizing antibodies or cytotoxic T cells are essential for protection or even play a key role under natural conditions of reinfection is not known. It is possible that protection against PRRSV is afforded primarily by something other than adaptive immunity, such as a change in the permissiveness of macrophages to infection. Lactate dehydrogenase elevating virus, the arterivirus of mice, elicits ineffective neutralizing antibody and cytotoxic T cell responses, but is controlled primarily by a reduction in macrophages permissive for infection (Plagemann and Moennig 1992). In pigs, the infection in the lung begins to subside before there is evidence of an effective adaptive immune response and more than 98% of macrophages do not become infected (Duan et al. 1997b). Primary prevention and control of PRRSV infection by deletion of permissive macrophages would mean that neutralizing antibody and T cell responses are secondary and are more likely to play a role in the final elimination of virus.

CROSS-PROTECTION
PRRSV is continuously evolving and, therefore, vaccine strains will always be different from current field isolates. Therefore, cross-protection against heterologous field isolates is a key issue in disease prevention strategies that include vaccination.

Experimental studies consistently demonstrate a high level of protection for sows against reproductive losses upon rechallenge with strains homologous to an immunizing virus (Lager et al. 1997a, 1999; Mengeling et al. 1999b). Attenuated live vaccines also have been effective in reducing disease severity, duration of viremia, virus shedding and the frequency of heterologous PRRSV infection (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1997; Dee and Molitor 1998; Lager et al. 1999, 2003; Mavromatis et al. 1999; Mengeling et al. 1999b, 2003a,b; Nielsen and Bøtner 1997; van Woensel et al. 1998). Still, epidemic field observations of chronic and endemic PRRS and of “vaccine failure” suggest that protective immunity may be a variable feature of the immune response to heterologous PRRSV isolates.

MATERNAL IMMUNITY
No specific study has evaluated the effect of maternal immunity on piglet susceptibility to PRRSV infection, but indirect inferences suggest that immune sows provide maternal protection to piglets. Anti-PRRSV antibodies are present in colostrum at the same concentration as in blood (Eichhorn and Frost 1997) and PRRSV infections increase in pigs as maternal antibodies decline (Albina et al. 1994; Chung et al. 1997; Houben et al. 1995; Melnichouk et al. 2005). Maternal immunity appears to be of relatively short duration. In a study of seven commercial herds in Canada, Melnichouk et al. (2005) estimated that 12–44% of pigs had maternal antibodies at 3 weeks of age, but only 2–16% by 5 weeks of age. In the dam, prior immunity does not prevent transplacental infection (Lager et al. 2003) and neutralizing antibodies, particularly at low concentrations, may exacerbate PRRSV infection by antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) (Yoon et al. 1996). At present, the role of maternal immunity in protection of piglets against PRRS is not known.

DIAGNOSIS
A diagnosis of PRRSV is based on subjective (history, clinical signs, gross and microscopic lesions) and objective (herd production records, detection of virus, and serology) information (Benfield et al. 1999). Table 24.1 summarizes the various diagnostic assays and their recommended use.

A presumptive diagnosis of PRRS is suggested in any herd with reproductive problems in breeding swine and respiratory disease in pigs of any age. Production records in clinically active PRRS herds usually reveal evidence of increased abortions, early farrowings, stillbirths, preweaning mortality, and nonproductive sow days. However, the lack of these signs does not indicate that a herd is free of PRRSV infection. Differential diagnoses include parvovirus, pseudorabies virus, hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis virus, porcine circovirus type 2, enterovirus, swine influenza virus, classical swine fever
**Table 24.1.** Summary of the use of diagnostic assays for the diagnosis of PRRSV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assay</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>In Utero Infection</th>
<th>1–28 DPI</th>
<th>30–90 DPI</th>
<th>90–300 DPI</th>
<th>Optimum Window of Detection (DPI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>medium</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>Collect samples from live pigs. Stillborn pigs or mummies are of limited diagnostic value. Refer to list of tissues for acute infection (1–28 DPI). Umbilical cords and umbilical cord blood also appropriate samples.</td>
<td>Serum, lung, tonsil, lymph nodes, lung lavage, heart, kidney, spleen, thymus</td>
<td>Tonsil, oropharyngeal scrapings, serum, lung lavage</td>
<td>Tonsil, oropharyngeal scrapings. Success rate rare to very low.</td>
<td>Serum and most tissues positive through 28–35 DPI. Lymphoid tissues through 157 DPI in limited number of pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA</td>
<td>medium</td>
<td>Depends on strain of PRRSV used in the test</td>
<td>Lung from live pigs</td>
<td>Lung or macrophages in lung lavage</td>
<td>Lung lavage and direct culture of macrophages from lavage sample.</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
<td>4–14 DPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHC</td>
<td>medium</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>Most tissues from live pigs</td>
<td>See list for VI</td>
<td>Limited success with lymphoid tissues from 30–70 DPI</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
<td>4–14 DPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>Limited success with thoracic fluid and tissues from stillborn fetuses. Most tissues from live pigs.</td>
<td>See list for VI</td>
<td>Good success with tonsil, oropharyngeal scrapings, and lung lavage serum</td>
<td>Tonsil, oropharyngeal scrapings, and lymph nodes. Success rate low.</td>
<td>Reports of detection by PCR up to 257 DPI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELISA</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>Can detect antibodies in umbilical cord blood.</td>
<td>serum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFA</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>Depends on strain of PRRSV used in the test</td>
<td>Can detect antibodies in umbilical cord blood.</td>
<td>serum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VN</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>Depends on strain of PRRSV used in the test</td>
<td>Not detected in stillborn fetuses or live pigs</td>
<td>serum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:** VI=virus isolation; FA=fluorescent antibody on frozen samples; IHC = immunohistochemistry using formalin fixed tissues; PCR=reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction; ELISA=HerdChek 2XR PRRS ELISA, IDEXX Laboratories Inc., Westbrook, Maine; IFA=indirect fluorescent antibody; VN=serum-virus neutralization. Contents of table based on references used in the “Diagnosis” section.
Pathological Evaluation
There are no pathognomonic gross or microscopic lesions for PRRSV and aborted fetuses and stillborn pigs rarely have lesions of diagnostic value. Gross lesions of interstitial pneumonia and enlarged lymph nodes can be observed in infected pigs of all ages (Lager and Halbur 1996; Stevenson et al. 1993). Microscopically, interstitial pneumonia is the primary lesion. The virus replicates in alveolar macrophages and in macrophages and dendritic cells in germinal centers of lymphoid tissues, vascular endothelial cells, and the intra- and perivascular macrophages of blood vessels in the heart, brain, kidney and other tissues (Halbur et al. 1995; Rosso et al. 1996; Thanawongnuwech et al. 1997b). Lung, lymph nodes, heart, brain, thymus, spleen, and kidney may be fixed in 10% neutral buffered formalin and submitted to the diagnostic laboratory for microscopic evaluation and immunohistochemistry (IHC). The combination of IHC and histopathology allows visualization of cells containing PRRSV antigens in the cytoplasm within or contiguous to microscopic lesions (Halbur et al. 1994; Magar et al. 1993). Tissues should be processed for IHC within 48 hours of fixation to avoid degradation of PRRSV antigens and loss of IHC-positive cells (Van Alstine et al. 2002). Lesions and viral antigens are best observed during acute infection (4–14 DPI), when viral titers in tissues are high and sufficient quantities of viral antigen are present in the cytoplasm of infected cells.

Laboratory Confirmation
Detection of either PRRSV or antibodies is dependent upon proper sample selection and handling. Specimens for virus isolation and detection of viral RNA must be refrigerated (4°C) immediately after collection (freezing may degrade viral RNA for PCR) and shipped to the diagnostic laboratory within 2 days (Yoon et al. 2003). The virus is degraded by heat and has a narrow pH stability. Thus, maintain sterility to avoid pH alterations caused by bacterial contamination and always submit fresh tissues (Benfield et al. 1992, 1999; Bloemraad et al. 1994; Van Alstine et al. 1993). Generally, PRRSV is detected in higher amounts and for longer periods of time in younger, compared to older, pigs. Virus persists longer in tonsil and lymph nodes relative to serum, lung, and other tissues. Virus replicates in most tissues during the acute phase of the disease, reaching peak levels at 4–7 DPI before declining to undetectable levels by 28–35 DPI. Viremia can persist for 28–42 DPI in suckling, weaned, and grower pigs (Mengeling et al. 1996c) and for 7–14 DPI in sows and boars (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1995; Mengeling et al. 1996c). Infectious virus and viral RNA can be demonstrated in pulmonary lung lavages, tonsil, and lymph nodes for several weeks after cessation of viremia (Benfield et al. 1999; Horter et al. 2002; Mengeling et al. 1995; Rowland et al. 2003; Wills et al. 2003).

Virus Isolation (VI)
Virus isolation is done using either porcine alveolar macrophages (PAMs) or sublines (CL-2621, MARC-145) of the African monkey kidney cell line MA-104 (Benfield et al. 1992; Kim et al. 1993). Isolation of PRRSV on these cell lines followed by fluorescent antibody (FA) or IHC staining of cells to detect viral antigens is the gold standard for detection of infectious virus. Results can be obtained within 1 day after inoculation of cultures, but may take several weeks, depending on the amount of virus in the clinical specimen. PAMs are reported to be more sensitive than MARC-145 cells for VI and the presence of Fc receptors on PAMs enhances the success of isolating PRRSV in the presence of antibodies (Yoon et al. 2003). Use of MARC-145 cells may also bias VI for recovery of modified live vaccine viruses because they are adapted to this cell culture (Benfield et al. 1999; Yoon et al. 2003). Not all PRRSV strains replicate in all cell types (Bautista et al. 1993), suggesting that at least two cell types should be used for VI whenever possible (Yoon et al. 2003). Use of PAMs is required for successful isolation of most European-like strains of PRRSV (Christopher-Hennings et al. 2002; Wensvoort et al. 1991).

Virus can also be detected by VI, FA, and PCR in direct cultures of PAMs from pulmonary lavage collected either from live infected pigs or at necropsy (Mengeling et al. 1995).

The most sensitive assay for detection of PRRSV is the swine bioassay. In this assay, a homogenate of sample suspected to contain PRRSV is injected into a young pig. Presence of PRRSV in the sample is confirmed by seroconversion or detection of replicating virus in the bioassay pig (Horter et al. 2002; Swenson et al. 1994ab).

Virus isolation is most successful using serum, lung, lymph nodes, and tonsil collected between 4–28 DPI. In late-term abortion and early farrowings, similar tissue samples from liveborn pigs are preferred, because mummies or stillborn fetuses rarely yield positive VI results due to tissue autolysis. For persistent infections, tonsil, oropharyngeal scrapings, and lymph nodes are better samples than serum and lung. Under experimental conditions, virus has been isolated from the tonsil and oropharyngeal scrapings at 130 and 157 DPI, respectively (Rowland et al. 2003; Wills et al. 2003).

Detection of Viral Antigens
Viral antigens are detected by immunohistochemistry (IHC) using formalin fixed tissues (Halbur et al. 1994; Magar et al. 1993; Van Alstine et al. 2002) and fluorescent antibody (FA) using frozen tissue sections (Benfield et al. 1992). Lung, heart, kidney, lymph nodes, spleen,
thymus, and tonsil are typically used for IHC, whereas lung is the primary sample for FA (Halbur et al. 1996a; Rosow et al. 1999). Both assays use the SDOW17 or SR30 monoclonal antibodies, either singly or in combination (Nelson et al. 1993; Yoon et al. 1995a), to detect viral nucleocapsid antigen in the cytoplasm of infected cells. The IHC is more sensitive than the FA test and can be done using formalin fixed tissue. The FA test is more rapid and more economical, but requires fresh tissue. Results from both tests are influenced by technician skill, so diagnostic laboratories usually confirm positive IHC and FA tests by VI or PCR. Viral antigens are best detected during peak viral replication (4–7 DPI).

Detection of Viral Nucleic Acid

PCR-based assays detect viral nucleic acid in tissue homogenates, serum, semen, oropharyngeal scrapings, and pulmonary lavage fluids. These assays are highly sensitive and specific (Benson et al. 2002; Horter et al. 2002). While VI amplifies infectious virions, PCR converts viral RNA to DNA using a reverse transcriptase and then exponentially amplifies the DNA to a detectable level. PCR offers several advantages over VI, IHC and FA: (1) Higher sensitivity and specificity; (2) Detection of viral RNA in both acute and persistently infected pigs; (3) Detection of viral RNA in autolyzed fetuses and in samples, such as semen and feces, that are toxic to cell cultures; (4) Rapid turnaround time, with results available in 1–3 days compared to days-to-weeks with other diagnostic assays; and (5) PCR products can be utilized for sequencing, thus expanding the diagnostic utility of this assay. The main disadvantage of PCR is that it does not differentiate between infectious and noninfectious virus. However, under experimental conditions, 94% and 81% correlation was reported between positive PCR results and detection by swine bioassay of infectious virus in semen and oropharyngeal scrapings, respectively (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1995b; Horter et al. 2002).

PCR assays are validated within, and occasionally between, diagnostic laboratories. Results may vary among diagnostic laboratories depending on the PCR assay and the method used to amplify and detect the viral genome (Christopher-Hennings et al. 2002; Kleiboeker et al. 2002). Nested PCR tests are as sensitive as conventional VI techniques, but require stringent controls to avoid false positive results. PCR-based assays are in a period of change and improvement. Several automated PCR methods have recently been developed that are less prone to false positive results, better adapted to screening multiple samples and more economical than nested PCR. These tests target ORF6 and ORF7, i.e., the ORFs with the most consistent nucleotide sequences between different strains of PRRSV. If sequencing is used to monitor viral evolutionary changes within herds, the ORF5 gene is targeted. Recently, a real time PCR assay that uses a primer to the 3′UTR sequence of the PRRSV genome to detect PRRSV nucleic acid in semen and sera was commercially released. Once licensed for diagnostic use, the industry will have a standardized PRRSV PCR assay (Wasilk et al. 2004).

In acute infections, serum and the tissues recommended for VI are also the preferred diagnostic samples for PCR. During persistence, oropharyngeal scrapings and PCR are the most sensitive combination of sample and assay for detection of PRRSV (Horter et al. 2002). PRRSV nucleic acid has been detected up to 86 DPI in lymph nodes (Bierk et al. 2001), 92 DPI in semen (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1995), 105 DPI in oropharyngeal scrapings (Horter et al. 2002), and 251 DPI in serum and tonsil homogenates (Wills et al. 2003).

Sequencing

Sequencing is commonly done on ORF5 and ORF6 with direct PCR products from diagnostic samples to avoid the potential bias of selection, mutation, or nucleotide changes by passage in cell culture. ORF5 sequences are highly variable and there is an extensive databank of sequences available for comparison. ORF6 is highly conserved and serves as a sequencing control. Sequencing is best used to show the relatedness of strains over time and within a herd. Computer programs compare all possible pairs of sequences and a phylogenetic tree or dendrogram is constructed. A phylogenetic tree depicts similarity among genomic sequences like a family lineage. This type of analysis may be used to

1. Determine whether the reappearance of PRRS on a farm is due to the reemergence of a previously existing or a new virus strain.
2. Determine whether PRRS outbreaks on farms are due to a single clone or multiple clones of virus.
3. Track introduction of virus into a swine operation.
4. Monitor spread of PRRSV strains within and between herds.

Restriction Fragment Length Polymorphism

Prior to the advent of sequencing, restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) of ORF5 was developed to differentiate a PRRSV modified live vaccine strain from other North American field strains. The ORF5 PCR product is digested using three restriction endonucleases. These enzymes always cleave a nucleic acid chain at a predetermined sequence of nucleotides; thus viruses with the same RFLP pattern contain the same restriction cleavage sites and have similar sequences. Each digest was assigned a three-digit code based on the pattern of digestion (Umthun and Mengeling 1999; Wesley et al. 1998). RFLP patterns are now based on computer-generated digestion patterns from an ORF5 sequence. Experience has shown that RFLP characterizations do not accurately reflect similarity or differences among isolates.
Indeed, many genetically dissimilar PRRSV isolates share the same RFLP pattern. RFLP data were previously used to determine the introduction of a new PRRSV isolate into a herd, monitor spread of an isolate, and differentiate vaccine from field viruses (Christopher-Hennings et al. 2002). Most of the applications of RFLP have been replaced by sequencing and phylogenetic analysis (Roberts 2003a).

Serology
Serological diagnosis is still favored by many practitioners because serum is easily collected in quantities for multiple tests and easily stored for future reference. The demonstration of seroconversion (negative to positive) using acute and convalescent serum samples is the most definitive method to diagnose PRRSV infection serologically. Increasing titers of PRRSV specific antibodies demonstrated by FA or rising ELISA S/P ratios in a group of infected animals can also indicate PRRSV infection.

Serology is not a valid approach for diagnosis of PRRSV in previously infected or vaccinated herds, because serologic assays do not differentiate among antibodies resulting from the initial infection, reinfection, or vaccination. Single serum samples are of limited use because of the high prevalence of PRRSV in herds. For that reason, a single positive serologic result does not prove a causal role for PRRSV in a clinical diagnosis. Detection of antibodies in nursing and nursery pigs may be due to the presence of maternal antibodies, which usually persist until pigs reach 3–5 weeks of age (Melnichouk et al. 2005).

Five serological tests to detect antibodies to PRRSV have been described: indirect fluorescent antibody (IFA), ELISA, blocking ELISA, serum-virus neutralization (VN), and immunoperoxidase monolayer assay (IPMA). The proper use of these assays, interpretation, and limitations has been reviewed elsewhere (Christopher-Hennings et al. 2002; Yoon et al. 2003).

The IFA detects IgM and IgG antibodies as early as 5 and 9–14 DPI, respectively (Joo et al. 1997; Zhou et al. 2002). The IgM antibodies persist for 21–28 DPI, whereas IgG antibodies peak at 30–50 DPI and are undetectable 3–5 months after infection. Test sensitivity is impacted by the technical skill of laboratory personnel and antigenic differences between the PRRSV isolate used in the IFA and the field strain that induced antibodies in the pig. Little or no cross reaction between North American and European-like isolates of PRRSV is demonstrated by IFA (Christopher-Hennings et al. 2002). This assay is generally used to confirm a suspicious positive ELISA result.

The commercial ELISA (HerdChek® 2XR PRRS ELISA, IDEXX Laboratories Inc., Westbrook, Maine) is the “gold standard” for detection of antibodies to PRRSV. The assay is sensitive, specific, standardized, and rapid. The test putatively targets antibodies to the nucleocap-sid antigens for both North American and European-like strains of PRRSV. Antibodies can be detected as early as 9 DPI, peak at 30–50 DPI and then decline to negative levels 4–12 months after infection. ELISA results are interpreted as positive (S/P ≥0.4) or negative (S/P <0.4). Practitioners have attempted to use ELISA S/P ratios to differentiate animals on the basis of their susceptible, infectious, and resistant immune status. However, this is an overinterpretation of the assay because the response of individual pigs on the ELISA is highly variable (Roberts 2003a).

Interpretation of ELISA negative and positive samples collected at a single point in time can be difficult. Negative ELISA samples have several possible interpretations:

1. Pigs were not infected.
2. Pigs were recently infected and have not yet seroconverted.
3. Pigs are persistently infected, but have become seronegative.
4. Pigs have cleared the infection and reverted to seronegative.
5. Pigs are negative due to low test sensitivity (Roberts 2003a; Yoon et al. 2003).

Pigs negative for antibodies on ELISA can be persistently infected, as demonstrated by recovery of virus or detection of virus or viral RNA in tonsil tissues or oropharyngeal scrapings (Dee et al. 2004a; Horter et al. 2002; Kleiboecker et al. 2002).

False positive (ELISA-positive reactors in expected negative herds) reactions occur at a rate of 0.5–2.0% (Ferrin et al. 2004; Key et al. 2002; O’Connor et al. 2002; Torremorell et al. 2002a). Both IFA and blocking ELISA are used as confirmatory tests in cases of suspected false positive ELISA results. The blocking ELISA is as sensitive and specific as the commercial ELISA and IFA (Ferrin et al. 2004).

The serum-virus neutralization (VN) assay detects antibodies capable of neutralizing a constant amount of PRRSV in cell culture. The test is highly specific, but antibodies do not develop until 1–2 months after infection; thus the assay is less sensitive than the IFA and ELISA (Benfield et al. 1992). These antibodies typically peak 60–90 DPI and persist up to 1 year after infection. Like IFA, the magnitude of the VN response is highest when homologous virus is used in the assay. Laboratories have not developed standardized VN tests and it is typically used as a research rather than a diagnostic test.

Application of Diagnostic Assays to Herd Monitoring
Herd monitoring is typically done using ELISA and PCR as screening assays and PCR, IFA, and blocking ELISA to confirm suspicious positive results in herds expected to be negative for PRRSV (Dufresne et al. 2003). Issues in herd monitoring are complex and are extensively re-
viewed elsewhere (Dee 2004; Dufresne et al. 2003; Roberts 2003a,b).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

Prevention

The objective of PRRSV prevention programs is either to stop the introduction of PRRSV into negative herds or the introduction of new strains into PRRSV-infected herds (Dee et al. 2001). Animals and semen have been considered the primary sources of PRRSV (Le Potier et al. 1997), but the importance of other sources of infection has become evident (Desrosiers 2004). Torremorell et al. (2004) found that over 80% of new infections occurring in commercial systems in the U.S. were not due to pigs or semen, but to area spread from neighboring units, the movement of pigs in PRRSV infected transports, the lack of compliance of the biosecurity protocols, or the possible introduction via insects.

Under ideal conditions, biosecurity starts with the establishment of the production units in isolated areas, but regardless of the herd location, biosecurity efforts should place particular emphasis on all procedures involving the movement of inputs and outputs from the farms, e.g., pigs, supplies and materials, feed, water, personnel, removal of manure, and reclaims. Because PRRSV persists in cold and wet conditions (Dee et al. 2002), all equipment and material used at the farm or for transport of pigs must be cleaned and dried (Dee et al. 2004b,c). All units should also exclude the entry of pests such as rodents, insects, and birds from all buildings.

All replacement breeding stock entering a negative herd should originate from sources known to be PRRSV-negative by a regular schedule of herd testing. In addition, all breeding stock should be properly isolated in isolation/quarantine facilities for a minimum of 30 days and then tested prior to introduction into the herd.

Semen for artificial insemination should come from PRRSV-negative boar studs. Boar studs should be routinely monitored for PRRSV infection. In order to detect early infections, it is recommended that serum or semen from stud boars be tested with a PCR-based assay prior to use in order to detect early infection. Although PCR testing allows for early detection of infections (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1995b; Wasilk et al. 2004), it may not fully prevent infection downstream should an infection in the stud occur (Torremorell and Conroy 2003).

Control

Specific treatments for PRRS are not available. Therefore, the objective of PRRS control is to limit the effects of the virus in the various stages of production. Even so, consistent PRRS control is problematic.

PRRSV cycles in endemically infected herds because, at any given time, animals are in various stages of infection and immunity (Dee et al. 1996). Circulation of the virus in the breeding herd results in PRRSV-infected piglets (Albina et al. 1995). Therefore, the first step in breaking virus circulation in the breeding herd is to use replacement animals that have been exposed to PRRSV and developed immunity prior to their introduction into the herd (Dee 2003). Consistent acclimatization of incoming breeding stock to PRRSV results in the stabilization of clinical signs, improvements in production parameters, and the production of PRRSV negative piglets at weaning.

Gilt introduction is the key to PRRSV control (FitzSimmons and Daniels 2003). This is primarily achieved through management steps involving the gilt pool. Serologically negative replacements are exposed to PRRSV in the acclimatization or isolation unit and are allowed to recover from infection. These animals are then introduced into the breeding herd after they become immune, i.e., they are no longer viremic and do not constitute a source of infection to herdmates. Different methods for gilt acclimatization have been described (Dee et al. 1994; FitzSimmons and Daniels 2003). It is generally accepted that early exposure (2–4 months of age) will result in protection of the exposed animals and introduction of the replacement animals at a time when shedding has stopped. The exposure methods described in this section utilize PRRSV-negative gilts as the starting point. Regardless of the method of exposure, a major challenge is achieving consistent PRRSV infection.

Continuous-flow gilt development units that rely on contact exposure from previously infected PRRSV positive replacements to newly incoming PRRSV negative animals do not always yield consistent results. In some systems, weaned pigs and culled sows are also used as donor sources for infectious material. However, over time and as the breeding herd becomes immune, virus transmission within the breeding herd stops and the production of PRRSV negative animals at weaning increases. Therefore, incoming gilts may not become exposed to PRRSV when they are commingled with weaned pigs.

Additional exposure methods in replacement gilts may include methods such as feeding with tissues from weak-born piglets and stillbirths in the face of outbreaks, the use of modified live and killed vaccine products, and inoculation of negative replacement animals with serum collected from viremic pigs from the same farm (Batista et al. 2002; Dee 2003; FitzSimmons and Daniels 2003; Thacker et al. 2003).

Modified live virus (MLV) vaccines are used to develop protective immunity and bring consistency to the procedures. The main limitation attributed to PRRSV vaccines is the limited cross-protection that may exist among PRRSV strains. When using MLV vaccine products, the entire population housed in the same air space should be vaccinated at one time. Killed vaccine products may be used in gilt acclimatization protocols as a complement to MLV vaccine products or following exposure with field virus.
The use of planned exposure using serum containing viable field virus has recently increased due to the increased genetic heterogeneity among PRRSV strains and the perception that commercial vaccines do not induce enough protective cross-protection among newly identified PRRSV strains. This method has inherent risks and requires thoughtful application and high quality control standards.

**Breeding-Herd Control.** The consistent application of acclimatization protocols for incoming replacement animals results in the stabilization of the breeding herd and the production of PRRSV negative animals; therefore, additional procedures directed at breeding/gestating animals may not be required. However, MLV vaccines have also been used in the breeding herd in order to reduce the presence of susceptible animals (Dee 1996; Gillespie 2003), expedite the production of PRRSV-negative pigs (Gillespie 2003; Rajic et al. 2001), and, in the face of outbreaks, to limit field virus replication (although success of the latter measure is still under discussion). Currently, some products are approved for use in nonpregnant females; others are not. Producers and veterinarians should read the product label and understand its application. Vaccination of negative pregnant sows during the first trimester of gestation is a strategy that has been used in the face of acute outbreaks. This procedure should be considered experimental at this time and veterinarians should be cautious in its use. Although it has inherent risks and very little documented information, planned exposure is thought to shorten the duration of the clinical outbreak and speed the recovery of the PRRSV negative weaned pig production. Overall losses expected to be incurred through planned exposure are believed to be similar to a naturally occurring outbreak.

An additional measure to minimize the effects of PRRSV infection in the face of a recent infection or in an effort to accelerate production of PRRSV-negative weaned pigs is the temporal interruption in the introduction of replacement animals (temporal herd closure) (Dee et al. 1993; Dee et al. 1997). Limitations to this strategy include the logistics involved in depopulating large nurseries and the fact that it may need to be repeated periodically to maintain improvements in performance.

Partial depopulation, described above, has also been strategic adjustment in the pig flow to prevent the lateral spread of PRRSV within chronically infected populations. Results of partial depopulation have shown highly significant improvements in average daily gain, mortality, and the overall economic performance of the nursery (Dee et al. 1993; Dee et al. 1997). Limitations to this strategy include the logistics involved in depopulating large nurseries and the fact that it may need to be repeated periodically to maintain improvements in performance.

**Weaned-Pig Management.** Control of chronic PRRS in the weaned-pig population is one of the most frustrating challenges that veterinarians face. The cycle of transmission within the nursery or finishing stage is maintained through transmission of the virus to recently weaned piglets from older, infected pigs. Partial depopulation is a control strategy that consists of a

Eradication. Spontaneous elimination of PRRSV from a herd has been described (Freese and Joo 1994), but this is considered a rarity for current production systems. Over the last few years major advances have been made to define protocols that can successfully eliminate PRRSV from infected farms (Dee 2004; Torremorell et al. 2003). These include total depopulation/repopulation, partial depopulation, segregated early weaning, test-and-removal, and herd closure.

Successful PRRSV elimination in the breeding herd relies on the introduction of negative nonexposed replacement animals at a time when virus is no longer circulating. Successful control strategies, as described earlier, will prepare the population for eradication since eventually an immune, virus-free, population is developed. A successful elimination plan also requires the implementation of strict biosecurity measures in order to prevent the herds from becoming reinfected (Torremorell et al. 2004).

Total herd depopulation and repopulation is a very successful technique, but it is costly and may be justifiable only if the elimination of other concurrent diseases is desired. This strategy may be the only feasible alternative for farrow-to-finish herds where ongoing replication of PRRSV in the growing population does not allow for the elimination of the virus through other measures.

Partial depopulation, described above, has also been
used for the elimination of PRRSV (Dee et al. 1993; Dee et al. 1997). This measure is indicated for the elimination of the virus from growing pigs when shedding from the breeding population has completely stopped. This technique may be sufficient to eliminate the virus from small-sized farms. However, when used in large units (>500 sows), it requires the application of additional strategies, e.g., herd closure or test-and-removal, to eliminate the virus from the breeding herd prior to attempting elimination in the pig flow.

Segregated early weaning has also been used to produce PRRSV-negative pigs from infected sows. Depending on the level of PRRSV activity in the sow herd, production of PRRSV-negative batches may not be consistent (Donadeu et al. 1999; Gramer et al. 1999). All-in/all-out segregated production of batches of weaned pigs is needed to maximize the success of this technique. In addition, the establishment of PRRSV negative herds from positive sources is possible when negative piglets are produced by the combination of several of these techniques (Torremorell et al. 2002b).

PRRSV elimination through herd closure is based on the fact that PRRSV cannot persist in an immune population (Torremorell et al. 2003). This strategy mimics the principles followed for TGE eradication, whereby all animals are exposed to the virus and no replacement animals are introduced while there is a possibility that they could be exposed to the virus (Harris et al. 1987). In the case of PRRSV, longer periods of herd closure with no introduction of new replacement animals are required. Exposed animals will eventually eliminate the virus from their tissues, although because of the ability of PRRSV to establish persistent infection, this will require a long time. As a rule of thumb, a period of 6 months is recommended, but variations may be needed depending on the status of the farm and pig flow. Introduction of negative replacement animals should be followed by attrition or scheduled culling of the previously infected animals. This strategy will develop a negative population of breeding animals over time. The success rate using this strategy is above 90% for farms with segregated production. Production management practices, such as off-site breeding projects and others, can minimize the economic effects of herd closure.

PRRSV elimination through the test-and-removal technique has also showed promising results (Dee 2004). Elimination of PRRSV by test-and-removal consists of blood-testing the entire breeding herd, identifying PRRSV-infected animals using tests both for antibodies and virus, and removing positive animals from the farm. Candidate herds for test-and-removal include herds with segregated production and more than 12 months since the last clinical episode of PRRSV, as well as herds with an estimated prevalence below 25%. Test-and-removal is recommended for herds where there is no indication of virus recirculation in the breeding herd and where the presence of persistently infected animals is considered a potential risk for failure of the program.

**Vaccines.** Several studies have established that vaccination against PRRSV can result in protective immunity (Gorczyca et al. 1995; Hesse et al. 1996; Mengeling 1996b; Plana Duran et al. 1995). A variety of MLV and inactivated products are available, depending upon the geographic region. In general, it is accepted that MLV vaccines induce a more efficacious immune response, although there are concerns regarding the safety of some of the products. Inactivated vaccines are also available, but in general they are considered less efficacious when used in naïve animals. However, when used in combination with attenuated products or in previously infected animals, they may induce a higher production of neutralizing antibodies than when used alone.

When used in the field, vaccines have met with variable degrees of success. These differences may be due to differences in the commercial products available and in how the products are utilized. Likewise, the results may reflect differences in the virus strains circulating in different regions and/or they may relate to the question of cross-protection. In addition, field reports raise the possibility of reversion virulence by attenuated vaccine viruses (Nielsen et al. 2001). Vaccine virus behaves very similarly to field PRRSV strains in terms of transmission, persistence, transplacental transmission and congenital infection, shedding in semen, and the length of time required to induce protective immunity. Research to provide safer and more efficacious products is needed in order for practitioners and producers to have a reliable tool to control the devastating effects of PRRSV.

**REFERENCES**


CHAPTER 24  PORCINE REPRODUCTIVE AND RESPIRATORY SYNDROME VIRUS (PORCINE ARTERIVIRUS) 407


Dee SA, Deen J, Pijoan C. 2004a. Evaluation of four intervention strategies to prevent the mechanical transmission of porcine re-
CHAPTER 24 PORCINE REPRODUCTIVE AND RESPIRATORY SYNDROME VIRUS (PORCINE ARTERIVIRUS) 409


Otake S, Dea SA, Jacobson L, Torremorell M, Pijooan C. 2002d. Evaluation of aerosol transmission of porcine reproductive and
respiratory syndrome virus under controlled field conditions. Vet Rec 150:804–808.


Pseudorabies (PR) was first described in 1813 in cattle suffering with extreme pruritus. Based on the clinical signs, the disease was called “mad itch” (Baskerville et al. 1973). The term “pseudorabies” was first used in Switzerland in 1849 because the clinical signs in cattle were considered similar to those of rabies. Aladar Aujeszky, the Hungarian for whom the disease is named, determined that the etiologic agent was filterable, i.e., not bacterial, and also conducted research on the disease in the dog and cat. The agent was first recovered from swine in 1909 by Weiss and from sheep in 1910 by Schmiedhoffer (Wittmann and Rziha 1989). Schmiedhoffer also confirmed Aujeszky’s findings that the agent was filterable, i.e., that it was viral. In 1934, Sabin and Wright identified the virus as a herpesvirus, later called swine herpes virus 1 (SHV-1) or pseudorabies virus (PRV).

The primary host of PRV is the pig. The pig is the only species able to survive a productive infection and, therefore, serves as the reservoir host (Kretzschmar 1970). Prior to the 1960s, PR was of some importance in pig production, but only in Europe (Wittmann and Jakubik 1979). Beginning in the 1970s, PR achieved global importance (Kluge et al. 1999). The transformation of PR from a sporadic, fatal disease of cattle to a swine disease of major economic significance on a worldwide basis was driven by changes in swine production. Specifically, over a period of 50 years, swine production became concentrated into large farms located relatively close to each other. In addition, intensified international trade led to greater movement of animals, particularly swine and their by-products (Müller et al. 2003; Pensaert and Kluge 1989; Wittmann 1985). At present, PR causes serious losses to swine producers in many parts of the world, both as a result of the disease and because of movement restrictions related to controlling PRV and its impact on trade (Andersson et al. 1997; Bech-Nielsen et al. 1995; Müller et al. 2003; Vannier 1988; Watson 1986).

Significant progress in molecular biology and genetic engineering, most notably by Van Oirschot et al. (1990) and Mettenleiter (1994a, 2000), led to major improvements in diagnostic methods and vaccines and resulted in vast improvements in the prevention and control of the disease in the last 15 years.

**ETIOLOGY**

PRV belongs to subfamily *Alphaherpesvirinae* of the family *Herpesviridae* (Mettenleiter 2000). Comparison of deduced amino acid sequences of homologous proteins showed PRV to be closely related to bovine herpesvirus 1 (BHV-1), equine herpesvirus 1 (EHV-1), and varicella-zoster virus (McGeoch and Cook 1994). On this basis, it was assigned to the genus *Varicellovirus* of subfamily *Alphaherpesvirinae*.

Alphaherpesviruses are characterized by rapid lytic growth in cell culture, neurotropism, latency in neurons, and a broad host range. All of these features are particularly pronounced in PRV. Numerous strains of PRV have been described, and differences in the severity of clinical signs have shown that strains differ in their infectivity and virulence. Strains also differ in the quantity and duration of virus shedding during infection (Maes et al. 1983). Genomic differences believed to influence virulence have been identified (Gielkens et al. 1985; Lomniczi et al. 1984; Lomniczi and Kaplan 1987).

PRV particles have the typical architecture of a herpes virion. They are quasispherical in shape, with an overall diameter of 150–180 nm (Nauwynck 1997). Mettenleiter (2000) demonstrated that PRV, like all herpesviruses, is composed of a nucleoprotein core that contains the genome, an icosahedral capsid of 162 capsomers, a proteinaceous tegument layer, and a lipid bilayer envelope derived from cellular membranes that contain virus-encoded (glyco) proteins. Figure 25.1 shows an electron micrograph of a PRV virion attached to a bovine kidney cell (Granzow et al. 1997).

Studies on capsid architecture have primarily been done on herpes simplex virus (HSV-1). However, the
morphological similarity of herpesvirus capsids and the homology of capsid components indicate that they share common features.

Little is known about the composition and possible structure of the tegument. In electron micrographs it appears as an electron-dense amorphous structure that lies between capsid and envelope. Several proteins of HSV-1 have been identified as tegument components, and homologues have been found in PRV.

The PRV envelope is derived from intracellular membranes of vesicles in the trans-Golgi area (Granzow et al. 1997). It contains eleven glycoproteins (Table 25.1). All glycoproteins are constituents of the viral envelope, except gG, which is abundantly produced during PRV infection in cell culture and released into the medium. Other putative nonglycosylated membrane proteins are the products of the UL3, UL11, UL20, UL34, and UL43 genes (Mettenleiter 2000).

### Genomic Organization and Gene Expression

The PRV genome consists of double-stranded, linear, DNA composed of approximately 150 kilobase pairs (Figure 25.2). Around 90% of the genome has been sequenced. Based on available information from the fully sequenced herpesvirus genomes and partial sequence information from PRV, the only major sequence gap that remains probably contains the homologues of HSV-1 genes UL31 to UL37.

The genome consists of a unique long (UL) region and a unique short (US) region, the latter being bracketed by inverted repeats. So far, three origins of replication which conform to the alphaherpesvirus consensus sequence have been mapped in the repeats (2x) and middle of the unique long region (Klupp and Mettenleiter 1991). Another replication origin with apparently unique features resides at the left end of the genome (Kupershmidt et al. 1991).

Virulence-determining proteins can be divided into viral membrane glycoproteins, virus-encoded enzymes, and nonessential capsid proteins (Mettenleiter 2000). Virus-encoded enzymes involved in nucleic acid metabolism are major determinants of herpesvirus virulence. Their inactivation leads to attenuation of the virus. Deletion of the nonessential envelope glycoprotein gE also leads to a significant decrease in the virulence of some PRV strains. Glycoprotein gE seems to play a prominent role in the spread of PRV within the nervous system, both in the trigeminal and olfactory pathways.

### Table 25.1. Properties of PRV glycoproteins (from Mettenleiter 2000; reprinted with permission)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Designation (a)</th>
<th>Gene (b)</th>
<th>Essential</th>
<th>Virion Component</th>
<th>Attachment</th>
<th>Penetration</th>
<th>Cell-to-Cell Spread</th>
<th>Neuronal Spread</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gB (gL)</td>
<td>UL27</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td>+ (c)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gC (gIII)</td>
<td>UL44</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>[+] (d)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gD (gp50)</td>
<td>US6</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>[+ ]</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gE (gI)</td>
<td>US8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>[+]</td>
<td>[+]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gG (gX)</td>
<td>US4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gH</td>
<td>UL22</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gI (gp63)</td>
<td>US7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>[+]</td>
<td>[+]</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gK</td>
<td>UL53</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>? (e)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gL</td>
<td>UL1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gM</td>
<td>UL10</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>[+ ]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gN</td>
<td>UL49.5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>[+]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) The old nomenclature of PRV glycoproteins has been added in parentheses.
(b) Gene designation according to the HSV-1 homologue.
(c) + indicates an essential function.
(d) [+ ] indicates a nonessential or modulating function.
(e) ? indicates no information available.
Absence of gE leads to a restricted neural infection (Cheung 1995; Rauh and Mettenleiter 1991; Schang et al. 1994; Van Oirschot et al. 1990).

**Replication**

The PRV replication cycle is diagrammed in Figure 25.3. Infection of cells is initiated by attachment of free virions to target cells, followed by fusion of the virion envelope and the cellular cytoplasmic membrane (Mettenleiter 1994b). The interaction between viral envelope glycoproteins and cellular surface components that act as virus receptors is critical in both attachment and fusion.

The first contact between PRV and the target cell involves the interaction of glycoprotein gC with heparan sulfate proteoglycans at the cell surface. In addition, gD and two cellular groups of receptors, heparan sulfate proteoglycans and poliovirus-receptor related proteins, are involved in PRV attachment. Entry requires fusion between the cellular cytoplasmic membrane and the viral envelope. The fusion process involves at least four viral glycoproteins: gB, gH/gL, and gD. Absence of any of these glycoproteins in engineered virus mutants renders the virus incapable of fusion. After translocation of the nucleocapsid into the cytoplasm of the cell, it is transported to the nuclear membrane and locates adjacent to nuclear pores. This transport most likely occurs along microtubules. The capsid is invariably oriented toward the nuclear pore so that one vertex is juxtaposed to the pore complex (refer to Figure 25.3). The DNA presumably leaves the virion and enters the nucleus through this vertex. Subsequent intranuclear events and the egress of the virion are described by Mettenleiter (2000).

**Laboratory Cultivation**

Numerous cell lines or primary cell cultures are permissive to PRV, but porcine cell lines PK-15 or SK-6 are generally used in cultivation (Toma et al. 2004). PRV induces a cytopathic effect (CPE) that usually appears in 24–72 hours, but cell cultures may be incubated for 5–6 days (Figure 25.4). The monolayer develops accumulations of birefringent cells, followed by complete detachment of the cell sheet. Syncytia also develop, the appearance of which is variable. In the absence of obvious CPE, it is advisable to make two blind passages (Granzow et al. 1997).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

PRV is found throughout the world, particularly in regions with dense pig populations, including South America, Europe, and Asia. In Europe, PR has never been reported in Norway, Finland, or Malta. PRV has been eradicated from Germany, Austria, Sweden, Denmark, and the United Kingdom. Canada, New Zealand, and the United States (since 2004) are also free of PR. In these countries, vaccination against PR is prohibited. However, PRV still circulates in wild boar or feral swine populations in the United States, Germany, Poland, France, Italy, and elsewhere (Lipowski and Pejsak 2002). Pigs are the primary host of the virus, but although a large number of other species can be infected naturally or experimentally. PRV is infectious for cattle, sheep, goats, dogs, cats, foxes in fur farms, rats, and wild mice. PRV in species other than swine causes neurologic disease and death. In cattle, sheep, and goats, clinical pru-
ritus and encephalitis characterize the uniformly fatal infections. Experimentally infected sheep have transmitted PRV to susceptible swine and to other sheep. Live PRV vaccines are lethal to sheep (Beran 1991). It is very difficult to infect horses and birds; large virus doses are necessary and they must be injected either intracerebrally, subcutaneously, or intramuscularly. Higher primates, including humans, are not susceptible to PRV infection (Wittmann 1985). In non-porcine species, the course of infection is lethal at all ages and recovery is an exception (Wittmann 1985).

The pig is the only species able to survive PRV infection and, therefore, serves as a virus reservoir (Babic et al. 1994; Cheung 1995; Granzow et al. 1997; Enquist et al. 1998). This means that eliminating the virus from the porcine population will ultimately lead to eradication of the disease (Mettenleiter 2000; Wittman 1986). Feral swine are as susceptible to PRV infection as domes-
tic pigs (Lipowski 2003). PRV cycles in the feral swine population independently of the cycle in domestic pigs (Lipowski and Pejsak 2002). Therefore, feral swine should be considered a potential PRV reservoir and source of infection for domestic pigs, especially in those countries where PR eradication programs have been implemented (Lipowski and Pejsak 2002). Naturally occurring PRV also has been identified in peccaries in the southwestern U.S. (Corn et al. 1987).

In pigs, PRV morbidity and mortality are dependent upon the age of the animal. Piglets and young pigs are at the greatest risk. Most risk factors for PR, e.g., swine population density, number of breeders, number of fattening pigs, replacement gilt purchasing, are directly or indirectly linked with the number of susceptible pigs in the population.

Virus is transmitted primarily between swine through nose-to-nose contact. Transmission may occur during breeding either from exposure to contaminated vaginal mucosa or semen, transplacentally during gestation (Beran 1991), or by contact with carcasses of rats, raccoons, swine, and other infected animals (Donaldson 1983). Under favorable circumstances virus may be spread by aerosols (Vannier 1988; Christensen et al. 1990).

Susceptibility to infection is dependent on several factors, including the virulence of the virus strain, the exposure dose, the route of exposure, the age of the pigs (piglets are more susceptible than adult pigs), stress, and the condition of the animal. Larger quantities of virus are necessary for oral infection than for nasal infection (Baskerville 1972a; Jakubik 1977).

PRV is not very contagious. This is supported by the fact that, usually, not all the pigs within a building become infected. The percentage of animals infected varies between 10% and 90%. The spread of infection within a herd is dependent on the opportunity of direct contact between animals. Spread of infection is highest within a pen but lower from pen to pen.

The virus can be isolated from nasal swabs of infected pigs for 8–17 days with maximum virus titers of between $10^{5.8}$ and $10^{8.3}$ TCID$_{50}$ per swab. From oropharyngeal swabs, virus can be isolated for 18–25 days with virus titers of up to $10^6$ TCID$_{50}$. At the peak of virus excretion one pig may excrete $10^{5.3}$ TCID$_{50}$ into the air during a 24-hr period. Virus is found in vaginal secretions and foreskin secretions (ejaculate) for up to 12 days and for 2–3 days in milk. The virus is occasionally present in urine, but it has not been isolated from the feces, though it has been detected in rectal swabs for up to 10 days. It is important to note that virus excretion starts before the onset of clinical symptoms (Wittmann 1985).

**Persistence in the Environment**

PRV is stable under various pH and temperature conditions and is considered resistant in the environment. However, it must be realized that the “environment” is complex and includes both factors favorable and factors unfavorable to virus persistence. Therefore, the data given should be considered only a guide (Wittmann 1985).

The virus survives on hay for 30 days in summer and 46 days in winter. It is stable between pH 4 to 12. Stored in 50% glycerol, it survives for 154 days with little loss of virus titer at refrigerator temperatures. At low temperatures, virus in tissue remains viable for many years. Lyophilized virus survives at least 2 years. Ultraviolet light and drying on glass inactivates the virus (Davies and Beran 1981; Wittmann 1985).

The virus is not inactivated in the course of the maturation of pig meat at 4°C (Weyhe and Benndorf 1970). In urine, the virus retains infectivity for 3 weeks in summer and 8–15 weeks in winter (Atanasowa 1972). In slurry, the virus is thought to remain infectious for about 2 months in winter and about 1 month in summer, in biothermically treated slurry, the virus is inactivated in summer within 5 days and in winter within 12 days. In aerated slurry (pH 9.6, temperature up to 44°C), the virus is inactivated within 50 hrs (Bohm et al. 1980). In packed-down manure the virus is inactivated in 8–15 days. In soil, infectious virus was recovered for 5–6 weeks. Virus dried on sacks and wood persisted for about 10 days in summer and 15 days in winter (Kretzschmar 1977). Virus dried on sows and wood persisted for at least 48 hrs at 10°C and at least 96 hrs at 5°C (Wooley et al. 1981).

PRV is relatively resistant to heat. It is inactivated at 60°C in 30–60 min, at 70°C in 10–15 min, at 80°C in 3 minutes and at 100°C within 1 minutes (Kunev 1978). The virus is very stable at normal temperatures and in the cold. It stays alive at 25°C about 6 weeks, at 15°C about 9 weeks, at 4°C about 20 weeks and at −40°C for years. However, the virus is relatively unstable at −18°C to −25°C, where inactivation occurs within 12 weeks (Davies and Beran 1981).

Between pH values of 4.0 and 12 the virus is stable and even at pH values of 2.0 and 13.5 it takes 2–4 hours before the virus is completely inactivated (Benndorf and Hantschel 1963). By combining low or high pH levels with elevated temperatures, the inactivation time is significantly reduced (Davies and Beran 1981).

**Susceptibility to Disinfectants**

Effective disinfectants include orthophenolenphate compounds, 5% phenol, 2% Na hydroxide, trisodium phosphate iodine disinfectants, and chlorhexidine solutions (Beran 1991). Quaternary ammonium compounds, hypochlorites, and in fact, all disinfectants are less effective in the presence of organic matter (Brown 1981). When disinfecting on a large scale, cheaper disinfectants are adopted: calcium chloride milk, calcium chloride preparations that dissolve in water, crude chlo-
ramines, and agents containing at least 1% active formaldehyde. For disinfecting slurry, lime (20 kg Ca(OH)2 per cubic meter is recommended (Koch and Euler 1983).

**PATHOGENESIS**

Following oronasal exposure, primary replication occurs in the epithelia of the upper respiratory tract. Thereafter, infection of tonsils and lungs ensues and the virus is disseminated in the body either in free form or via infected leukocytes. In addition, the virus enters the trigeminal and olfactory nerve endings and invades the central nervous system (Babic et al. 1993; Kritas et al. 1994; Pensaert and Kluge 1989). Replication of PRV in the CNS is characterized by nonsuppurative meningoencephalitis causing severe central nervous disorders (Enquist 1994; Pensaert and Kluge 1989).

The virulence of the infecting strain is, at least in part, determined by viral glycoproteins. According to their relevance for viral replication in cell culture, these have been designated nonessential (gC, gE, gG, gI, gN) and essential (gB, gD, gH, gK, gL). Glycoproteins that mediate attachment of PRV to target cells are of special interest because they may directly determine viral tropism. Primary attachment of PRV to target cells is mediated by binding of the nonessential gC to heparan sulfate proteoglycans (Karger and Mettenleiter 1993; Mettenleiter and Rauh 1990). However, this interaction is not sufficient to trigger fusion between the viral envelope and the cell membrane. The essential glycoprotein gD mediates secondary attachment of PRV (Karger and Mettenleiter 1993) to cellular gD receptors. This gD-gD receptor interaction is thought to be necessary to initiate penetration. Besides gD, gB and the gH-gL complex are required for penetration of free virions into target cells (Mettenleiter 2000). However, in contrast to the situation in herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV-1) and bovine herpesvirus type 1 (BHV-1), PRV-gD is dispensable for direct viral cell-to-cell spread in vitro (Rauh and Mettenleiter 1991). Thus phenotypically complemented gD-negative PRV (PRV-gD-) is able to infect primary target cells and subsequently spreads via direct cell-to-cell transmission.

Recently, the proteins required for neuroinvasion of PRV were analyzed in detail. Several studies in mice, rats, and pigs have indicated that one of the key proteins in neuroinvasion is glycoprotein E. Deletion of this protein strongly attenuates PRV, but absence of glycoprotein E does not impair primary viral replication in the nasal epithelium after intranasal infection of mice or pigs. It is also not required for the virus to enter primary neurons (Babic et al. 1994, 1996; Enquist 1995). Transsynaptic transfer to second order neurons is, however, severely inhibited, resulting in a dramatic restriction in neuroinvasion. Glycoprotein E, and to a lesser extent glycoprotein I, are the predominant nonessential glycoproteins exhibiting this dramatic phenotype (Enquist et al. 1998).

**Latency**

Latency is defined as a condition in which viral DNA is present, but infectious virus is not produced. During latency, viral gene expression is restricted to transcription of a distinct part of the viral genome into the so-called latency associated transcripts or LATs (Priola and Stevens 1991).

Latency, with the potential for subsequent reactivation and shedding, is one of the most formidable challenges to the successful control and eradication of PR. A number of studies have suggested that most, if not all, pigs initially exposed to a large quantity of PRV can become latently infected carriers. As a consequence any pig believed to have been previously infected with a field strain of PRV (typically identified by the presence of serum antibody) is assumed to be a latently infected carrier. Despite intensive efforts (Mettenleiter 2000), the molecular basis for alphaherpesvirus latency is still largely unknown. In PRV, latently infected pigs are a constant risk because of the possibility of reactivation, virus shedding (recrudescence), and spread to susceptible individuals.

Major sites of PRV latency are the trigeminal ganglion (TG), the olfactory bulb, and the tonsil. In these organs, viral DNA can be detected in the absence of infectious virus production. LAT transcription can also be demonstrated by highly sensitive methods, such as RT-PCR (Cheung 1995). The most common in vitro method for detecting latency is the examination of the tissue in question via a PCR reaction specific for a portion of the viral genome (Mengeling et al. 1992). The only relatively reliable method for detecting latency in a live pig is to administer large doses of a corticosteroid, with the intent of inducing reactivation followed by virus shedding (Mengeling et al. 1992).

Presumably, after oronasal infection, PRV first replicates in the epithelial tissues and may also directly enter nerve endings of sensory neurons in the nasopharynx. After a first round of replication in the epithelia, progeny virus is abundantly produced, leading to an increased infection of primary neurons. There appears to be a correlation between precolonization of trigeminal ganglia with PRV and failure of a superinfecting strain to become latent itself. This suggests that the number of neurons in which latency can be established is limited and that, probably, a neuron that is already “occupied” resists superinfection. Whether this interference requires a viral function or is dependent on cellular factors is unknown. However, it suggests that attenuated live vaccine strains with a high potential for establishing latency may prevent superinfecting, wild type strains from becoming latent (Schang et al. 1994).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

The incubation period for PR ranges from 1–11 days, most frequently 2–6 days. The incubation period in suck-
In weaned pigs (3–6 weeks), clinical signs are similar to those in neonatal piglets, but less severe, and CNS signs leading to coma and death do not occur as often. Mortality may approach 50%, but it is usually lower. Clinical signs in weaned pigs include listlessness, anorexia, and fever (41–42°C). Respiratory signs are often seen, e.g., sneezing, nasal discharge, dyspnea, and severe cough. Most pigs recover within 5–10 days, with the exception that those demonstrating CNS signs often die. The infection of the respiratory tract with PRV is often complicated by the presence of bacterial infections, e.g., Pasteurella multocida, Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae, Streptococcus suis, Haemophilus spp. or other facultative pathogenic bacteria (Kluge et al. 1999).

In pigs 5–9 weeks of age and in the case of proper veterinary intervention, mortality in pigs 5–9 weeks of age usually does not exceed 10% and is often lower. However, PRV infection in these animals results in a 1-to 8-week delay in reaching market weight compared to uninfected animals.

In grower-finisher pigs, respiratory signs are the most common observation. Morbidity in an infected group often reaches 100%, but in cases uncomplicated by secondary infections, mortality ranges from 1–2%. Complications caused by bacteria, particularly A. pleuropneumoniae, increase the losses dramatically. CNS symptoms occur only sporadically. Typically, clinical signs appear in 3–6 days and are characterized by fever (41–42°C), depression, anorexia, and mild-to-severe respiratory signs. Rhinitis with sneezing and nasal discharge may progress to pneumonia. The pigs become gaunt and lose considerable body weight. After 6–10 days, appetite and body temperature return to normal. PRV infection in grower-finisher pigs results in the loss of at least 1 week in the production cycle.

Sows and boars primarily develop respiratory signs. PRV can cross the placenta and infect and kill fetuses in utero. In pregnant females, abortion often occurs and may be the first sign of PR. Sows infected in the first trimester may resorb fetuses and return to estrus. If infection takes place in the second or third trimester of pregnancy, it is usually manifested by abortion or stillborn and/or weak pigs, particularly if the infection occurs close to term. Mortality in adult swine infected with PRV rarely exceeds 2%.

An essential factor affecting the manifestation of clinical signs in a herd is the level of immunization of pregnant sows, weaned pigs, and grower-finisher swine. Likewise, secondary bacterial infections, the age of the animals, and environmental conditions will affect the expression of the disease.

**LESIONS**

Gross lesions are often absent or minimal, but keratoconjunctivitis, serous-to-fibrinonecrotic rhinitis, laryngitis, tracheitis, and necrotic tonsillitis may be seen.
Vaccination will reduce both the severity of clinical signs and microscopic lesions (Alva-Valdes et al. 1983). Lesions in the lower respiratory tract range from pulmonary edema to scattered small foci of necrosis, hemorrhage, and/or pneumonia (Becker 1964). Small necrotic white foci (2–3 mm) may be seen on the liver and spleen (Figure 25.5), especially in young pigs that lack passive immunity. In aborted sows, endometritis and a thickened, edematous wall of the uterus are observed (Kluge and Maré 1978). Necrotic placentitis accompanies abortion or parturition. Aborted fetuses may be macerated or, occasionally, mummified. In fetuses or neonatal pigs, necrotic foci in liver and spleen are seen. In addition, hemorrhagic, necrotic foci in lungs and tonsils may be present (Kluge and Maré 1976).

Microscopic lesions most frequently occur in the CNS. These include nonsuppurative meningoencephalitis and ganglionitis in the grey and white matter (Baskerville 1972b). Perivascular cuffing (Figure 25.6) consists predominantly of mononuclear cells, with the presence of few granulocytes. Pyknosis and karyorrhexis of the mononuclear cells are often prominent. Neuronal necrosis may be focal, and the neurons surrounded by mononuclear cells or affected neurons may be diffusely scattered. Similar lesions exist in the spinal cord, especially in the cervical and thoracic regions. Meninges over affected areas of brain and cord may be thickened because of infiltrates of mononuclear cells.

Intranuclear inclusion bodies are observed in neurons, astrocytes, and oligodendroglia. According to Kluge et al. (1999) these are much more common in lesions outside the nervous system. They are common in crypt epithelial cells adjacent to necrotic foci. Mucosal epithelial necrosis and submucosal infiltrations of mononuclear cells occur in the upper respiratory tract (Baskerville 1971, 1973). In the lungs, necrotic bronchitis, bronchiolitis, and alveolitis is found. Also, peribronchial mucous gland epithelium may be necrotic. There is often hemorrhage and fibrin exudation because of the involvement of connective tissue and endothelium. Lesions often are patchy in major airways, and healing by fibrosis is often observed in areas adjacent to acute lesions. Intranuclear inclusion bodies are frequently present in the epithelial lining of the airways, connective tissue cells, and cells sloughed into alveolar spaces.

According to Corner (1965) two types of intranuclear inclusion bodies are observed: a homogenous basophilic body that fills the entire nucleus and an eosinophilic body that has a definite zone between it and the margimated chromatin. In either case, the specificity of the inclusion must be determined by demonstrating PR viral particles or antigen by electron microscopy or immunohistochemistry.

Focal necrotic lesions are similar regardless of the tissue involved. They are most frequently found in spleen, liver, lymph nodes, and adrenal glands. In the uterus, multifocal to diffuse lymphohistiocytic endometritis and vaginitis and necrotic placentitis with coagulative necrosis of chorionic fossae can be found (Bolin et al. 1985; Kluge et al. 1999). Intranuclear inclusion bodies are present in degenerate trophoblasts associated with necrotic lesions (Kluge and Maré 1978; Kluge et al. 1999). In the male reproductive tract there may be degeneration of seminiferous tubules and necrotic foci in the tunica albuginea of the testicles (Hall et al. 1984). Boars with exudative periorchites have necrotic and inflammatory lesions in the serosa covering the genital organs. Spermatozoa abnormalities are found. Focal necrosis of the mucosal epithelium involving the muscularis mucosa and tunica muscularis develops in the intestines (Narita et al. 1984b). Intranuclear inclusion bodies may be present in degenerative crypt epithelial cells. Necrotizing vasculitis of arterioles, venules, and lymphatic vessels around tonsils and submaxillary lymph nodes is observed (Narita et al. 1984a). Endo-
thelial nuclei are pyknotic and karyorrhectic, and the vessel walls are infiltrated by neutrophils. Intranuclear inclusion bodies often are present in affected endothelial cells (Kluge et al. 1999).

**IMMUNITY**

PRV infection evokes antibody production and cell-mediated immunity in pigs. However, immunity is not total and upon reinfection the virus can multiply to a limited degree (Wittmann 1985).

According to Eloit et al. (1988) glycoprotein gp50 is a major target of neutralizing antibodies. However, only a few of the numerous potential PRV antigens has been analyzed, and the relative importance of a single protein to the immune response of the host is difficult, if not impossible to assess (Mettenleiter 1996). An improved understanding of the immune response against PRV is necessary in order to develop vaccines capable of boosting specific effector mechanisms.

Antibodies against PRV and specifically against a number of glycosylated and nonglycosylated viral structural and nonstructural proteins have been detected in infected animals. Monoclonal antibodies have been identified that exhibit virus-neutralizing ability in vitro and in vivo. The role of PRV proteins in immunity is summarized in Table 25.2.

The most potent complement-independent virus-neutralizing antibodies are directed against gC and gD (Mettenleiter 1996). These antibodies work by inhibiting virus attachment (anti-gC) or penetration (anti-gD) and thereby block infection at the first stages. Subunit vaccines consisting of gC or gD, as well as anti-idiotypic anti-gD antibodies have been shown to elicit protective immunity, further emphasizing the important role of these proteins in the humoral immune response (Tsuda et al. 1992). In fact, a large part of the neutralizing activity in convalescent sera of swine appears to be directed against gC (Ben-Porat et al. 1986). The role of the other glycoproteins is less clear. However, vaccination with subunit gB vaccines also induces protective immunity in pigs (Nakamura et al. 1993 in Mettenleiter 1996). Glycoproteins are considered the prime targets for the porcine anti-PRV cell mediated immunity (Table 25.3).

A sow immune to PRV transfers specific antibodies to her offspring via the colostrum. Maternal immunity is able to protect neonatal pigs infected with virulent PRV against clinical disease by limiting virus replication in the CNS (Wittmann and Jakubik 1979). Kritas et al. (1997) showed that high SN titers (272–354) were able to protect neonatal pigs almost completely against neural invasion and spread upon challenge with a virulent strain of PRV. Low SN titers (2–3) did not protect pigs against neural invasion and virus spread, particularly via the olfactory pathway, which is readily accessible to the virus due to the pigs’ anatomy. Either low or high SN titers protected pigs against clinical disease. However, the protective role of maternally derived antibodies and maternal immunity against spread of PRV in the nasal mucosa depends on the infecting virus strain.

Maternally derived PRV antibody interferes with immunization of the piglets until it declines to a level that often leaves piglets unprotected. However, Brockmeier et al. (1997) found that certain vaccines—for example, recombinant vaccinia vaccines—were able to circumvent maternally derived antibody and stimulate active immunity.

---

**Table 25.2.** Role of PRV proteins in immunity (modified, from Mettenleiter 1996)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Mice</th>
<th>Pigs</th>
<th>NT–C (b)</th>
<th>NT+C (c)</th>
<th>Prolif. (d)</th>
<th>CTL (e)</th>
<th>CTL (f)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gB</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gC</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gD</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gE</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gG</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Protection by administration of purified or genetically engineered antigen, or by administration of antigen-specific monoclonal antibodies.
(b) Neutralization by antigen-specific monoclonal antibodies without complement.
(c) Neutralization by antigen-specific monoclonal antibodies with complement.
(d) Stimulation of proliferation of PBMC derived from immune pigs.
(e) MHC-class I restricted cytotoxic activity.
(f) Non-MHC restricted cytotoxic activity.

**Table 25.3.** Cell-mediated immunity against PRV (from Mettenleiter 1996)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cell Type</th>
<th>Antigen Recognized</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD4+ CD8− (T-helper)</td>
<td>gB, gC</td>
<td>gE, gC, gl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD4− CD8+ (CTL)</td>
<td>gC</td>
<td>gE, gG, gl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD4− CD8+/−CD4−CD8low (LAK)</td>
<td>gB, gC</td>
<td>gD, IE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD4+ CD8+ (T-helper)</td>
<td>gB, gC</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**DIAGNOSIS**

Clinical diagnosis of PR disease in individual pigs may be difficult or even impossible. Therefore, a diagnosis of PR should be made on a herd basis. Clinical signs suggestive of PR include numerous deaths of suckling pigs showing nervous signs during the first 3 weeks of life. Nasal discharge, coughing, dullness, somnolence, and nervous disorders may be seen in these and older pigs. In pregnant sows, a high frequency of abortions and stillbirths is suggestive of PR (Wittmann 1986). Likewise, the discovery of dead animals of these species is suggestive of PR. PR should be made on a herd basis. Clinical signs suggestive of PR may be seen in dogs and cats on the farm. Likewise, the discovery of dead animals of these species is suggestive of PR (Wittmann 1986).

When diarrhea is present in newborn pigs, PR may resemble transmissible gastroenteritis or *E. coli* infection. Similar respiratory signs can be caused by bacteria, e.g., *Pasteurella multocida*, *Actinobacillus pneumoniae*, and *Spleenitus suis*, as well as swine influenza virus. In the latter case, all pigs in all age groups become severely ill without dying. Nervous signs can occasionally occur in classical swine fever (CSF) and, in the absence of gross pathological changes due to CSF, it is difficult to differentiate CSF from PR. Nervous conditions caused by porcine teschovirus infection (previously called Teschen/Talfan disease) are not accompanied by infection of the respiratory tract. NaCl poisoning causes excitement and arsanic acid and mercurial poisoning causes lethargy of the animals, but these events occur suddenly without fever. Stillbirths and abortion can be induced by parovirus, *Leptospira*, *Brucella*, and PRRSV infection (Pejsak and Markowska-Daniel 1996; Wittmann 1986; Zimmerman and Yoon 2003).

Classical clinical signs of PR will often lead to a presumptive diagnosis, which is supported if gross lesions—e.g., focal hepatic and splenic necrosis and necrotic tonsillitis—are observed in neonatal pigs. PR is more difficult to diagnose if only grower-finisher pigs or adult swine are involved. A PR outbreak in this age group can easily be misdiagnosed as swine influenza if the disease is manifested only by respiratory signs and lesions. If, however, a few individuals develop CNS signs, it is easier to make a presumptive diagnosis of PR.

In most cases laboratory diagnosis is necessary to confirm the presumptive diagnosis of PR (Toma et al. 2004). The diagnosis of PR can be confirmed by isolation of PRV from the oropharyngeal fluid, nasal fluid (swabs), or tonsil biopsies of living pigs, or from samples from dead pigs. For postmortem isolation of PRV, samples of brain and tonsil are the preferred specimens. In latently infected pigs, the trigeminal ganglion is the most consistent site for virus isolation, although latent virus is usually difficult to culture. Numerous types of cell line or primary cell cultures are sensitive to PRV, but a porcine kidney cell line (PK-1S or SK-6) is generally used. PRV induces a cytopathic effect (CPE, Figure 25.4) that usually appears within 24–72 hours, but cell cultures may be incubated for 5–6 days. The isolation of PRV is confirmation PR, but failure to isolate virus does not guarantee freedom from infection.

In the absence of any obvious CPE, it is advisable to make two blind passages into further cultures. Additional evidence may be obtained by staining infected cover-slip cultures with haematoxylin and eosin to demonstrate the characteristic herpesviral acidophilic intranuclear inclusions with margination of the chromatin. The virus identity should be confirmed by immunofluorescence, immunoperoxidase, or neutralization tests using specific antiserum.

The polymerase chain reaction (PCR) can be used to identify PRV genomes in secretions or organ samples. The primary advantage of PCR over conventional virus isolation techniques is its speed. Preliminary identification can be completed within 1 day, with confirmation of the PCR product on the second day. With the most modern equipment the whole process can be completed in 1 day. Because of the nature of the test, many precautions need to be taken to avoid contamination of samples with extraneous DNA from previous tests or from general environmental contamination in the laboratory. This may limit the value of the test for many laboratories, and therefore this technique cannot be fully recommended for routine diagnosis.

Immunofluorescence (IF) is still of some importance for detection of PRV or its antigen in tissue sections (Wittmann 1986) or in impression smears (Wittmann 1986). IF usually appears in the cytoplasm and only exceptionally in the nucleus.

Virus neutralization (VN) has been recognized as the reference method for serology, but for general diagnostic purposes it has been widely replaced by the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) because of its suitability for large-scale testing. ELISA can be performed on serum as well as on meat juice (Toma et al. 2004).

The sensitivity of ELISA is generally superior to that of the VN test using 1-hour neutralization without complement. Some weak-positive sera are more readily detected by VN tests using 24-hour neutralization, but others are more readily detectable by ELISA. Commercially available ELISA kits use indirect or competitive techniques for detecting humoral antibody. They differ in their mode of preparation of antigen, conjugate, or substrate, in the period of incubation and in the interpretation of the results. Their general advantage is their capacity for rapid processing of large numbers of samples. Testing can also be automated and the results analyzed by computer. Some of these kits make it possible to differentiate between vaccination and infection with wild-type virus. When using these test systems, it is more appropriate to consider them herd tests rather than individual animal tests.

Interpretation of serological results can be difficult,
especially in young pigs. Maternal antibodies can be present up to 4 months of age. In pigs, the half-life of maternal antibodies is approximately 18 days; for example, it takes 18 days for the antibody titer to decline from 1:16 to 1:8. If pigs from an immune sow are tested too early, they may be identified as infected when the antibody is actually of maternal origin.

Traditional detection methods are complicated by the ability of the PRV to become latent (Gustafson 1986). Several field studies provide circumstantial evidence that pigs can be seronegative to PRV but latently infected (Thawley and Morrison 1988).

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

An essential precondition for effective prevention and control of PR is the obligation for notification. Once a system of notification is in place, the response to the detection of PRV infection in a herd will be largely dictated by local or regional considerations. The primary consideration is whether or not PRV has been, or is in the process of being, eradicated in the area or region and whether vaccination is a control option. Thus, depending on the PRV status of the region, the response may be largely dictated by regional animal health regulations. If permitted, vaccination of the infected herd and neighboring herds should be carried out (Kluge et al. 1999; Wittmann 1985).

Depending on local animal health regulations, control measures imposed on an infected farm could include any of the following: depopulation of the herd; restrictions allowing for movement of pigs to slaughter only; containment and treatment of dead animals, tissues, and offal; decontamination of manure, bedding, waste material, hog lots, and areas of traffic; disinfection of implements, equipment, vehicles, trailers, and buildings; implementation of rat control. Infected herds should refrain from the use of semen for artificial insemination. Unauthorized persons, cats, and dogs should be kept out of the facilities. Persons with access to pigs and facilities should follow strict biosecurity procedures to avoid transporting PRV on their clothing, footwear, or body. Regulations for infected farms may also be adapted to pig markets, pig exhibitions, and to the transport of pigs when a PR outbreak occurs or when animals other than pigs contract PR on a farm.

The most important breakthrough in PR control and eradication has been the development of genetically engineered PR vaccines (Quint et al. 1987) and their accompanying differential ELISA tests (Müller et al. 2003). The use of marker vaccines, i.e., deletion mutants of PRV that do not express glycoprotein gE, has made it possible to identify infected pigs in vaccinated populations. That is, pigs with serum antibodies against gE must necessarily have been infected with wild type virus. Vaccination with marker vaccines increases the virus dose required for infection and reduces, but does not prevent, the shedding of virulent virus and the establishment of latency in pigs infected with virulent PRV. Besides deletion mutant vaccines, there are several conventionally attenuated vaccines containing naturally gE-negative strains (e.g., with Bartha strain).

In general, vaccination prevents or reduces clinical disease and economic losses, but it does not prevent the spread of PRV. Because of the importance of cellular immunity in protection against PRV, live, attenuated vaccines are preferable. In PRV-endemic areas, it is strongly recommended that all animals introduced into the herd be vaccinated. Breeding stock must be vaccinated regularly on breeding or on piglet-producing farms. To reduce circulation of the virus in the herd and to prevent the appearance of subpopulations of susceptible pigs, continuous vaccination of all piglets is recommended. Piglets born to vaccinated sows should be immunized at 10–12 and 14–16 weeks of age. Piglets born to unvaccinated sows should be vaccinated at 6 and 10 weeks of age. Two applications of the vaccine ensure better protection. Unvaccinated animals that stay on the farm should be examined serologically to monitor virus spread. In any case, all such farms remain latently chronically infected and can be sources of virus spread (Kluge et al. 1999; Wittmann 1985). If prophylactic vaccination is practiced, all the fattening herds and all the breeding stock should be vaccinated in the infected geographical area.

As discussed by Mengeling et al. (1992), the most effective method of vaccination is intranasal administration of live, attenuated vaccine. At least part of the advantage of intranasal vaccination can be explained by local replication of virus and by the development of mucosal immunity. Intranasal vaccination is more effective in the presence of passively acquired colostral immunity than intramuscular vaccination (Van Oirschot 1987) and also is most effective at reducing PRV replication and shedding during acute infection. Practical considerations, such as the fact that intranasal vaccination is more labor intensive than intramuscular administration, argues against its wide use. Nevertheless, intranasal vaccination may be recommended for piglets in herds newly infected with PRV.

**Eradication**

The ultimate objective of PR control is its eradication. Marker vaccines are routinely used for a combined vaccination-eradication program for PR eradication. Such a program generally consists of four elements: a systemic and intensive vaccination campaign; serological screening of pigs for gE-specific antibodies; culling of infected breeding pigs; and in the last stage, abolishment of vaccination (Szwedza et al. 2000a, b).

Eradication of PR can be most successfully achieved by the slaughter of all the seropositive animals and by strict control of pig movement. However, such an eradication program is very expensive and time-consuming.
More practical strategies to eliminate PRV include the following:

1. Test-and-removal without vaccination
2. Vaccination followed by test-and-removal
3. Stamping out of infected herds based on serological evidence of PRV in the herd

Test-and-removal is recommended when less than 10% of the breeding herd is PRV-positive and there is no serological evidence of infection in the growing or finishing pens. The entire breeding herd must be tested every 30 days and seropositive swine removed and slaughtered. Following one or two (preferable) negative herd tests, the herd may be considered free of PRV.

Vaccination followed by test-and-removal should be used when a high percentage of the breeding herd is seropositive and/or there is evidence of infection in growing or finishing pigs. The entire herd should be vaccinated with a differential vaccine. Either live or inactivated vaccines can be used in breeding animals, and live vaccines are generally used in weaned pigs. Breeding animals should be vaccinated three times a year (every 4 months). Weaners or fattening pigs should be vaccinated twice. Stegeman (1995) showed that the number of finishing pigs showing evidence of infection with wild-type virus (anti-glycoprotein E antibody) at the time of slaughter is higher after a single vaccination than after double vaccination. The first vaccination should be performed at 10–12 weeks of age, followed by revaccination 4 weeks later by either intramuscular, intradermal, or intranasal routes of administration (Visser 1997). If it is only possible to perform a single vaccination, i.e., for economical reasons, immunization should be performed at 14 weeks of age (De Smet et al. 1994). According to Bouma et al. (1997), maternal immunity capable of interfering with vaccine-induced immunity may still be present at 10 weeks of age. On the other hand, a single dose of vaccine at 14 weeks of age may result in transmission of PRV among pigs prior to vaccination.

The vaccination protocol should be followed for at least 3 years. During this period, all sows present on the farm at the start of the program should be rotated out of the herd. Thereafter, a serological survey should be done to determine the level of PRV infection remaining in the herd. If prevalence is sufficiently low, the test-and-removal protocol may be implemented.

Eradication of PR by stamping out should be applied only if the prevalence of PRV-positive farms in a region is very low. Stamping out may be necessary in the last stages of PRV eradication, that is, when only a few PRV-positive farms stand in the way of achieving freedom from PRV.

Inherent to the eradication effort is the control of animal movement and a certification of the health status of herds. All farrowing and farrow-to-finish herds that provide piglets must be free of PR. Likewise, all replacement gilts should be tested for the absence of gE antibodies. Monitoring should be done by the purchaser while the pigs are still at the premises of the supplier. Since transportation is a major stress factor and may lead to reactivation and excretion of latent virus, it is strongly recommended that incoming pigs be kept in quarantine for 2–4 weeks, after which they should again be tested for gE antibodies before joining the breeding herd. It is important to recognize that the use of in-herd replacement breeders is responsible in many cases for maintenance of seropositivity in the holdings (Arias and Sanchez-Vizcaino 2002). A regular systematic census of pig herds in the region and at least a yearly serological screening of each pig herd must be performed.

Serological monitoring of expected-negative herds and populations for PRV creates the problem of singleton reactors. In PR surveillance programs in countries free from PRV—e.g., Sweden and Denmark—and in countries infected with PRV, herds are occasionally observed wherein there is a single seropositive pig (Anelli et al. 1991). Singleton reactors create a major problem because the PR status of such farms is uncertain. According to Bascanuñana et al. (1997) and Annelli et al. (1991), singleton reactors may represent one of several possibilities. First, the herd may have been infected at some time in the past and the single reactor is the last seropositive pig in the herd. Second, PRV may have been recently introduced into the herd and the single reactor is the first to seroconvert. Third, the singleton reactor may be a false positive and the pig may never have been exposed to the virus. Fourth, for whatever reason, the single reactor may be the only pig in the herd to be infected. And fifth, virulent PRV is circulating in the herd at a low level.

There is currently no uniform regulatory policy for herds with singleton reactors. In the U.S., such herds are quarantined while the reactor is isolated and retested together with a representative sample of other breeding swine. If only the original positive pig retests positive, the herd owner has the option of remaining under quarantine or submitting the reactor for immunosuppressive treatment and diagnostic testing. If the result is positive, the pig should be culled. If PRV is not detected the quarantine is removed (Annelli et al. 1991).

Several PRV prevention, control, and eradication programs, differing to a larger or smaller degree from those previously described, have been implemented in Europe and the U.S. (Andersson et al. 1997; Bech-Nielsen et al. 1995; Müller et al. 2003; Vannier et al. 1997). The approach differs depending on the epidemiological situation and particular opinions of the representatives of the state veterinary services of the country. It should be noted that PR eradication programs are costly (Bech-Nielsen et al. 1995) and efforts to achieve freedom from PRV by the least expensive means possible should be encouraged. In the U.S., the federal government spent $72 million during the first 10 years of the
program. In addition, costs were incurred by the various state governments and private swine producers (Taft 2000). In many areas, the presence of PRV in wild boar and feral pigs poses a challenge to the successful eradication of PRV from domestic swine.

REFERENCES


SECTION II VIRAL DISEASES


Rotaviruses (RV) are important causes of diarrheal disease in neonates and the young of many species and a common cause of gastroenteritis in sucking and post-weaning pigs. Rotaviruses were first discovered in calves (Mebus et al. 1969) and were later detected in humans (Bishop et al. 1973), pigs (Rodger et al. 1975), and other animals (Estes et al. 1983). Porcine RV have been detected in most swine-producing countries and are associated with economic losses caused by diarrheal disease in pigs (Paul and Stevenson 1999).

Porcine rotaviruses are antigenically diverse with four serogroups (A–C, E) and, within serogroup A, 10 G types (VP7 type for glycoprotein) and 7 P types (VP4 type for protease-sensitive protein). Although information pertaining to all porcine RV groups is included, group A RV are most commonly associated with diarrhea in humans and pigs and, therefore, the most extensively studied. In this chapter, if the RV group is not specified, the information pertains to group A RV.

ETIOLOGY

Virus Morphology
Rotaviruses are 65–75 nm, nonenveloped, icosahedral particles. By electron microscopy (EM), the morphology of complete RV particles resembles a wheel (Rhota in Latin) with short spikes and a smooth outer rim (~75 nm in diameter). The particles are composed of a three-layered viral protein (VP) capsid: the outer layer (VP7 and VP4), the intermediate layer (VP6), and the inner layer (VP2). The viral genome, composed of 11 segments of double-stranded (ds) RNA, is enclosed in VP2 along with the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (VP1). Only the complete triple-layered particles are infectious (Estes 2001). Double-layered particles lacking the outer layer are smaller (~65 nm) with rough edges (Figure 26.1).

Classification
Rotaviruses are classified in the genus Rotavirus in the family Reoviridae. Based on VP6 antigens, RV are divided serologically into seven distinct groups (A through G) (Estes 2001; Saif and Jiang 1994). Within a group, RVs share cross-reactive antigens on VP6 detectable by serological tests. Groups A–C infect humans and other animals; group E has only been detected in pigs in the UK (Chasey et al. 1986). Groups D, F and G have been detected only in avian species. When subjected to electrophoresis in polyacrylamide gels (PAGE), the RV genome has a characteristic electrophoretic migration pattern referred to as the electropherotype. Each RV serogroup has a unique electropherotype (Pedley et al. 1986; Saif and Jiang 1994). The RNA segments cluster into regions I, II, III, and IV (Figure 26.2). The cluster patterns include 4:2:3:2 (group A), 4:2:2:3 (group B), 4:3:2:2 (group C), and 5:2:2:2 (group D). The group E pattern is similar to group B, except segments 7–11 migrate equidistant from each other. Genome profile analysis using PAGE is a relatively simple technique to identify RV, differentiate them from reoviruses (10 dsRNA segments), and identify RV groups (Janke et al. 1990). However, serologic and nucleic acid-based assays are needed to confirm RV groups and serotypes.

Rotaviruses within serogroup A are further divided into subgroups. In earlier studies, five subgroups (SG) I, II, I+II, and non-I, non-II were defined according to the presence or absence of two distinct epitopes on VP6 reactive with one, both, or neither of the monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) specific for each of the epitopes (Greenberg et al. 1983). Porcine RV strain OSU belongs to SG I and Gottfried strain belongs to SG II. Recent molecular characterization of the subgroup-defining region of VP6 gene suggested two genogroups: genogroup...
Within serogroup A, RV are further classified into different G and P serotypes or genotypes (Table 26.1). Serotypes are defined by reactivity of virus in plaque reduction (or fluorescent foci reduction) neutralization assays using polyclonal or MAbs (Estes and Cohen 1989; Hoshino et al. 1984). Genotypes are defined by comparative sequence analysis and/or nucleic acid hybridization data. Strains sharing >89% amino acid sequence identities are considered to belong to the same genotype (Estes 2001; Gorziglia et al. 1990). Serotype is denoted by a number following the letter P or G and genotype is signified by the number in square brackets. For example, porcine RV strain Gottfried is classified as P2B[6]G4 and strain OSU as P9[7]G5. The VP7 serotypes and genotypes are highly consistent; however, a general correlation between P genotypes and P serotypes has not been clearly established due to difficulties in generating type-specific antibodies to VP4 (Estes 2001). Currently, 15 RV G serotypes/genotypes have been identified, whereas, out of 22 different P genotypes reported, only 13 P serotypes have been identified (Hoshino and Kapikian 1996; Hoshino et al. 2002; Liprandi et al. 2003; Martella et al. 2003; Okada et al. 2000). In pigs, at least 10 G types of group A RV (G1–6, 8–10, and 11) and 7 P types (P[5]–[8], [13], [19], and [23]) are associated with diarrhea (Martella et al. 2001). Within serogroup C porcine RV, at least 2 G serotypes have been suggested based on cross-neutralization tests (Tsunemitsu et al. 1992b).
Other assays used to differentiate RV of different serotypes and/or genotypes include ELISA using serotype-specific MAbs, endonuclease digestion of PCR-amplified VP4 and VP7 gene products (RFLP) (Chang et al. 1996), and reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) (Barreiros et al. 2003).

Physicochemical and Biological Properties

The RV genome consists of 11 segments of dsRNA that range in size from 0.6–3.3 kilobase pairs (Estes and Cohen 1989). The 11 segments encode six viral structural proteins and six nonstructural proteins (NSP) with segment 12 encoding both NSP5 and 6 (Estes 2001). The six structural proteins are: the core proteins VP1 to 3, the nonglycosylated outer capsid protein VP4 (encoded by gene 4), the major structural component of virions VP6 (encoded by gene 6), and the outer capsid glycoprotein VP7 (encoded by gene 9). Proteolytic cleavage of VP4 into VP5 and VP8 is important for viral infectivity. The VP7 is the second most abundant viral structural protein after VP6. Proteins analogous to VP6 and VP7 have also been described for group C RV (Jiang et al. 1990).

Triple- and double-layered RV particles can be separated by centrifugation in gradients of sucrose or cesium chloride (CsCl). Triple-layered particles have a density of 1.36 g/ml in CsCl and sediment coefficients of $20S$ to $30S$ in sucrose, whereas double-layered particles have a density of 1.38 g/cm$^3$ and sediment at 380S to 400S (Tam et al. 1976). Single-layered core particles have a density of 1.44 g/ml in CsCl and a sedimentation coefficient of 280S (Bican et al. 1982). Treatment of RV particles with calcium-chelating agents (e.g., EDTA) removes the outer capsid and results in loss of infectivity, indicating that calcium plays a critical role in particle stability by stabilizing the outer capsid VP7 (Ahmadian and Shahrabadi 1999; Bridger and Woode 1976; Estes et al. 1979). The concentration of calcium needed to stabilize the outer capsid varies, depending on the virus strain (Ruiz et al. 1996).

Rotavirus is a nonenveloped virus. Therefore, its infectivity and particle integrity are generally resistant to fluorocarbon extraction and exposure to ether, chloroform, or detergents (deoxycholate) (Estes 2001). Chloroform reduces RV infectivity slightly and destroys hemagglutinating activity. Rotavirus infectivity is relatively stable within the pH range of 3.0–9.0. The hemagglutinating VP4 spikes are removed by treatment at high pH. Repeated freezing and thawing will result in loss of infectivity and hemagglutination activity.

Many RV strains, including some strains of porcine RV, agglutinate human type O, guinea pig, and rat erythrocytes (Eiguchi et al. 1987). Hemagglutination is mediated by the interaction of VP4 with sialic acid on the surface of erythrocytes (Fuentes-Panana et al. 1995). The cell surface molecules employed by RV to initiate infection vary, depending on different strains, and have not been fully identified. The initial contact of RV with the cell surface is mediated by either a neuraminidase-sensitive (requiring sialic acid) or a neuraminidase-resistant cell molecule (Ciarlet et al. 2002). The majority of porcine RV strains are sialic acid-dependent with a few exceptions (OSU, A46 and 4F), whereas most human and animal RV strains are sialic acid-independent. Several cell surface proteins have been implicated as attachment or post-attachment receptors for RV, including gangliosides, integrins and the heat shock protein.

Table 26.1. Serogroup, serotype, and genotype designations of selected porcine rotaviruses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serogroup</th>
<th>VP7 Serotype/Genotype</th>
<th>Strain</th>
<th>VP4 (P) Serotype (G) [Genotype]</th>
<th>Strain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C60, C86, C95, S8</td>
<td>1A[8]</td>
<td>S8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Gottfried, SB-1A</td>
<td>9[7]</td>
<td>OSU, EE, TFR-41, C134 CRW-8, BEN-307, SB-1A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>84/52F, 84/106F, 84/158F</td>
<td>12[19]</td>
<td>4F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>field sample</td>
<td>14[23]</td>
<td>A4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ISU-64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>P343</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>YM, A253</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>YM, A253</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Ohio NIAD-1 IA1146</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Cowden, HF IA850</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E</td>
<td>DC-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table is adopted and modified from Kapikian et al. 2001; Paul et al. 1999.

Dual G serotypes were reported.
Gangliosides play a major role in recognition of host cells by porcine OSU RV strain (Rolsma et al. 1998).

Laboratory Cultivation
Porcine RV were first adapted to grow in primary porcine kidney cell cultures by pretreatment of viral inoculum with trypsin or pancreatin (Theil et al. 1977). Viruses were later successfully propagated in the African green monkey kidney cell line MA-104 (Bohl et al. 1984) by using roller cultures and addition of trypsin or pancreatin. Roller cultures and proteolytic enzymes are essential for isolation of RV. The enzyme concentrations used for virus activation are 10 µg/ml for trypsin or 2.5 µg/ml for pancreatin before infection. Alternatively, trypsin or pancreatin (0.5–1.0 µg/ml) is added to serum-free culture medium after virus adsorption. Cell culture–adapted RV strains produce a cytopathic effect characterized by rounding of cells followed by cell detachment from the monolayer. Viral antigen can be demonstrated in the cytoplasm of virus-infected cells by IF (Figure 26.3) or immunochemical methods. Rotaviruses form plaques under agarose in the presence of proteolytic enzymes (Ramia and Sattar 1980).

Group C and B porcine RV have been propagated in primary porcine kidney cell cultures using roller cultures and high concentrations of pancreatin (Sanekata et al. 1996; Terrett et al. 1987). The porcine group C RV (Cowden) was subsequently adapted to grow in MA-104 cells (Saif et al. 1988) and a porcine intestinal cell line (Proescholdt 1991). Group E RV, most group B RV, and some group A RV still cannot be serially propagated in cell cultures.

EPIDEMIOLOGY
Rotaviruses are ubiquitous in the environment and in swine herds. It is difficult to raise pigs free of porcine RV under normal husbandry conditions (Bridger and Brown 1985). Multiple RV serogroups (A, B, C, and E) and multiple serotypes within serogroups A and C have been detected in pigs (Atii et al. 1990; Barreiros et al. 2003; Bohl et al. 1984; Geyer et al. 1996; Janke et al. 1990; Kim et al. 1999; Markowska-Daniel et al. 1996; Pongsuwanna et al. 1996; Saif et al. 1988; Saif and Jiang 1994; Terrett et al. 1985; Theil et al. 1985; Wieler et al. 2001; Will et al. 1994; Winiarczyk et al. 2002). The RV serogroup distributions detected in feces of diarrheic pigs are summarized in Table 26.2.

Group A RV is detected most frequently in pigs under 60 days of age from as early as 1 week to the highest prevalence at 3–5 weeks of age (Bohl 1979). The prevalence of infection increases with age during the suckling period due to the decline in maternal antibody titers. When maternally acquired immunity decreases to unprotective levels, pigs become susceptible to RV diarrhea. Infected pigs shed virus for 1–14 days in feces with an average duration of 7.4 days (Fu and Hampson 1987).

In group B RV infections, lower amounts of RV are shed and for a shorter duration (Bridger 1980; Theil et al. 1985). Group C RV caused diarrhea in 8- to 9-week-old weaned pigs with morbidity ranging from 60 to 80%, but with no mortality in Michigan swine farms (Kim et al. 1999). Group E RV has been reported only in one outbreak of pig diarrhea in the UK (Chasey and Davies 1984), but experimental infection of gnotobiotic pigs with group E RV caused mild diarrhea. A serological survey in the UK indicated a widespread distribution of antibodies to this virus in pigs older than 10 weeks (Chasey et al. 1986).

The serologic prevalance of antibodies to RV varies for each serogroup in different regions of the world and is age-related (Table 26.3) (Bridger and Brown 1985; Brown et al. 1987; Chasey et al. 1986; Hung et al. 1987; Nagesha et al. 1988; Terrett et al. 1987; Theil and Saif 1985; Tsunemitsu et al. 1992a).

Molecular genomic methods, e.g., northern-blot and dot-blot hybridization and reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), have led to a better definition of the distribution of group A RV G and P types in pigs. To date, predominant G types identified in pigs are G3 (CRW-like), G4 (Gottfried-like), G5 (OSU-like), and G11 (YM-like); although human types G1, G2, and G9, and bovine types G6, G8, and G10, have also been detected in pigs. The most common P types in pigs are P2B[6] and P9[7], which are Gottfried-like and OSU-like types, respectively. Other porcine P genotypes P[8]
Table 26.2. Rotavirus prevalence and serogroup distribution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Total No. Samples Tested from Diarrheic Pigs</th>
<th>No. of Rotavirus Positives</th>
<th>% Rotavirus Positive</th>
<th>% in Each Serogroup Among the Positive Samples</th>
<th>Assay Used in the Study</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Atii et al. (1990)</td>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>44.8</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4–6 weeks</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>34.2</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1–3 weeks</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>55.8</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;6 weeks</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>mixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>Janke et al. (1990)</td>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Suckling pigs</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>76.4</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Weaned pigs</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>40.9</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>Will et al. (1994)</td>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>1048</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Pongsuwanna et al. (1996)</td>
<td>Piglets (&lt;6 weeks)</td>
<td>557</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>84.6</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Piglets</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>84.6</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Piglets</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>84.6</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>Geyer et al. (1996)</td>
<td>Piglets (&lt;6 weeks)</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>37.8</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Markowska-Daniel et al. (1996)</td>
<td>Piglets</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>Wieler et al. (2001)</td>
<td>1–7 days (suckling)</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8–14 days (suckling)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15–21 days (suckling)</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22–28 days (weaned)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>mixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>36–42 days</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>mixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Barreiros et al. (2003)</td>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>53.5</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>≤7 days (suckling)</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8–21 days (suckling)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;21 days (weaned)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>mixed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*NR = not reported.

Table 26.3. Prevalence of antibody to serogroup A, B, and C porcine rotaviruses in sera from pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Year of Sera Collection</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Total No. Sera Tested</th>
<th>Rotavirus Serogroup (% Positive)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>Theil and Saif (1985)</td>
<td>1984–1987</td>
<td>adult</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>Theil and Saif (1985)</td>
<td>1984–1987</td>
<td>young pigs(3–8 wks)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>Terrett et al. (1987)</td>
<td>1984–1987</td>
<td>adult</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>Tsunemitsu et al. (1992)</td>
<td>1988–1992</td>
<td>adult</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>mixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>Bridger and Brown (1985)</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>adult</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>Bridger and Brown (1985)</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>young pigs (3–8 wks)</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Naghda et al. (1988)</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>adult</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>mixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>Brown et al. (1987)</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td>adult</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Hung et al. (1987)</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>adult</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table is adopted and modified from Saif and Jiang 1994.


Rotavirus is shed in feces and the major route of transmission is thought to be fecal-oral. However, a recent study of gnotobiotic pigs showed that pigs orally or nasally inoculated with a virulent group A human RV (Wa strain) shed similar titers nasally and in feces for 3–4 days (Saif et al. 2003). Whether porcine RV spreads among pigs via the respiratory route needs to be investigated.
Rotavirus can be detected in dust and dried feces in facilities that have been occupied by young pigs (Fu et al. 1989). Rotavirus maintained infectivity in feces for 7–9 months at room temperature (presumably 18–20°C) (Woode 1978) and was still infectious in feces stored at 10°C for 32 months (Ramos et al. 2000). Persistence of RV in the environment provides a mechanism for constant exposure of pigs.

Rotaviruses are resistant to inactivation by many chemical disinfectants and antiseptics (Abad et al. 1997), but can be inactivated by disinfectants such as phenols, formalin, chlorine, and beta-propiolactone. Ethanol (95%), perhaps the most effective disinfectant, exerts its effect by removing the outer capsid (Estes 2001). Disinfectant spray containing ethanol (0.1% o-phenylphenol and 79% ethanol), bleach (6% sodium hypochlorite diluted to give 800 ppm free chlorine), and phenol-based products (14.7% phenol diluted 1:256 in tap water) effectively reduced the RV titer by 95% to 99% after a 10-minute treatment (Sattar et al. 1994).

Many studies have provided evidence for interspecies RV transmission (pigs and cattle, pigs and horses, pigs and humans) and for reassortment of RV. Martella et al. (2001) reported that RV isolated from diarrheic pigs in Italy displayed typical bovine RV G- and P-type specificities, indicating a pathogenic role for bovine RV in piglets. An experimental study of bovine RV strain PP-1 infection in gnotobiotic pigs illustrated that RV circulating in one animal species can pose a risk to another by the emergence of a pathogenic reassortant RV under appropriate conditions (El-Attar et al. 2001). Antigenic and molecular analyses of a horse RV strain H-1 revealed that this virus is closely related to porcine, but not equine RV, suggesting interspecies transmission from pigs to horses (Ciarlet et al. 2001). Molecular characterization of a human RV strain RMC321 from an outbreak of RV diarrhea in India revealed porcine characteristics in most of the genes including VP4, VP6, and NSP1-5 (95–99% amino acid identity) (Varghese et al. 2004). This study provided strong evidence that porcine RV can cross the species barrier and cause severe gastroenteritis in humans. Many studies have also indicated that reassortment occurs between pig and human RV strains (Alfieri et al. 1996; Das et al. 1993; Dunn et al. 1993; Laird et al. 2003; Nakagomi and Nakagomi 2002) and some of the reassortant viruses caused diarrhea in humans (Esona et al. 2004; Gerna et al. 1992; Santos et al. 1999; Timenetsky Mdo et al. 1997). The zoonotic potential of porcine RV requires further investigation and continued surveillance.

PATHOGENESIS

Rotavirus pathogenesis is complex and diarrhea induction involves several mechanisms (Estes et al. 2001). Maladsorption caused by loss of intestinal absorptive cells resulting from villous atrophy is the widely accepted mechanism of RV-induced diarrhea in pigs and humans (Kapikian et al. 2001). Recent studies have suggested that intestinal inflammatory responses (Zijlstra et al. 1999), activation of the enteric nervous system (Lundgren and Svensson 2001), and the enterotoxin function of RV NSP4 (Ball et al. 1996; Estes et al. 2001) also contribute to a secretory-type diarrhea in RV infection.

Rotavirus replicates predominantly in the cytoplasm of differentiated small intestinal villous epithelial cells (Buller and Moxley 1988) and in cecal or colonic epithelia cells (Collins et al. 1989; Theil et al. 1978; Ward et al. 1996b). Virus replicates most extensively longitudinally in the jejunum and ileum of the small intestine. Vertically, RV antigens were observed in nearly all villous epithelial cells in jejunum and ileum and in a few epithelial cells on villous tips in the duodenum at 12 to 48 hours post inoculation (Figure 26.4) (Collins et al. 2001).
Rotavirus replication in the villus enterocytes results in cell lysis and attendant villous blunting and atrophy. The degree of villous atrophy and the distribution of atrophic villi in the small intestine vary relative to the RV strain (Collins et al. 1989), serogroup (Saif 1999) and the age of pigs (Shaw et al. 1989). In general, villous atrophy is more severe and extensive in younger pigs. Porcine group A and C RV tend to induce more severe villous atrophy and diarrhea than group B and E in pigs (Saif 1999). Group B RV produces scattered foci of infection in the villous tips of the distal small intestines and mild diarrhea (Saif and Jiang 1994).

Piglets that developed RV diarrhea following administration of porcine or human RV demonstrated functional alterations in small intestinal villous epithelial cells, including impaired glucose-coupled sodium transport (Davidson et al. 1977; Rhoads et al. 1991), decreased disaccharidase activity (Graham and Estes 1991; Zijlstra et al. 1997), and increased thymidine kinase activity (Davidson et al. 1977). These pathophysiologic changes all contribute to the malabsorptive diarrhea (Saif 1999). Of importance for swine management, malnutrition increases the severity and duration of RV diarrhea by delaying the restoration of enzymatic and absorptive capacity and hampering the regeneration of damaged intestinal villi (Zijlstra et al. 1997).

In experimentally infected pigs, RV diarrhea precedes the detection of intestinal histopathologic damage, suggesting that other mechanisms, besides villous atrophy, contribute to the RV-induced disease expression (McAdaragh et al. 1980; Theil et al. 1978; Ward et al. 1996b). Intestinal inflammation activates neural reflex pathways in the enteric nervous system. The latter is a critical component in regulating fluid secretion in the normal gut and a key element in the pathophysiology of several important veterinary pathogens such as *Salmonella* sp., *Cryptosporidium parvum*, and RV (Jones and Blikslager 2002; Lundgren et al. 2000). In mice, at least two-thirds of the fluid and electrolyte secretion caused by RV was ascribed to activation of the enteric nervous system (Lundgren and Svensson 2001). Inflammation can also disrupt mucosal integrity and create leaky membranes, further allowing translocation of bacteria and toxins across the intestinal epithelial barrier and initiation of systemic infection (Blikslager and Roberts 1997). Transient increases in macromolecular permeability were observed in piglets infected with RV (Moon 1997), and in vitro studies showed that RV infection led to enhanced toxin uptake into cells (Liprandi et al. 1997). Such findings suggest that RV infections could predispose pigs to more severe bacterial infections via enhanced uptake of toxins or the bacteria, the latter instance leading to septicemia. Mixed infection by RV and enterotoxigenic *E. coli* resulted in more severe diarrhea than did inoculation of pigs with each agent separately (Benfield et al. 1988).

The RV NSP4 was initially suggested to play a role, along with VP3, VP4, and VP7, in RV pathogenesis in a study using gnotobiotic pigs and reassortant RV (Hoshino et al. 1995). Subsequently, NSP4 was recognized as a viral enterotoxin, contributing to the pathogenesis of RV diarrhea in mice (Ball et al. 1996; Estes et al. 2001). Recombinant baculovirus-expressed NSP4 from simian RV SA11 strain was reported to induce dose- and age-dependent diarrhea in a neonatal mouse model (Ball et al. 1996). It is hypothesized that NSP4 may indirectly participate in the stimulation of the enteric nervous system by causing the release of amines/peptides from villous endocrine cells via its effect on intracellular calcium, which may in turn activate the enteric nervous system in a way similar to that demonstrated for cholera toxin (Lundgren and Svensson 2001). The role of NSP4 in RV diarrhea in pigs and other farm animals has not been confirmed. There are also many other biologically active molecules produced by epithelial cells or immunological cells in RV infection that may participate in activating secretory reflexes in the enteric nervous system and may play a role in RV-induced diarrhea and pathogenesis (Rollo et al. 1999).

Several interrelated factors may be involved in the death of RV-inoculated pigs that could be prevented by effective management strategies. Low environmental temperature (Steel and Torres-Medina 1984), malnutrition (Zijlstra et al. 1997, 1999), and high virus exposure dose (Shaw et al. 1989) are important factors that contribute to more severe diarrhea and higher mortality in RV-infected pigs. Diarrhea causes dehydration and electrolyte imbalances and may lead to exhaustion of extracellular fluid reserves, requiring treatment with oral electrolytes. Malabsorption results in malnutrition and may lead to energy deficiency and hypothermia; which may be countered by providing external heat sources to scouring pigs and rehydration fluids as needed. Observed higher mortality in neonatal pigs is likely related to more severe and extensive villous atrophy, coupled with decreased extracellular fluid and energy reserves, compared to slightly older pigs.

Rotavirus infection was thought to be mostly localized to the intestine. Occasionally, extraintestinal RV infections were reported in humans and animals. Rotavirus was detected in the lung of one of 13 experimentally infected 3-week-old conventional pigs at postinoculation day (PID) two (Shaw et al. 1989). However, recent studies have shown that systemic RV infection (viremia or antigenemia) is not uncommon in animals (calves, mice, rats, and rabbits) and humans (Blutt et al. 2003). A virulent human RV strain (Wa) caused transient viremia in gnotobiotic pigs after oral or intranasal inoculation (Saif et al. 2003). The role of RV viremia in RV pathogenesis and protective immunity to RV is unknown.
CLINICAL SIGNS

Inoculation of naive 1- to 5-day-old gnotobiotic or colostrum-deprived conventional pigs with RV consistently produces severe diarrheal disease (McAdaragh et al. 1980; Pearson and McNulty 1977; Tzipori and Williams 1978; Ward et al. 1996b; Woode et al. 1976). Pigs become listless, anorexic, and occasionally vomit by 12–24 hours after inoculation and then develop profuse watery, yellow-to-white flocculent diarrhea 1–4 hours later. Diarrhea continues for 3–7 days and progressively resolves in 7–14 days. Mortality can reach 50 to 100%. When 7- to 21-day-old pigs are inoculated, diarrhea, and dehydration are less severe and mortality is lower (Crouch and Woode 1978; Shaw et al. 1989; Theil et al. 1978). Conventional pigs inoculated when 28 days old develop mild diarrhea lasting only 1–1.5 days (Lecce et al. 1982; Tzipori et al. 1980c).

Diet influences disease. No clinical disease was observed after RV was inoculated into 21- to 28-day-old pigs that consumed a dry diet for more than 3 days previously (Tzipori et al. 1980c; Paul and Stevenson 1999). In contrast, gnotobiotic pigs fed a liquid diet developed diarrhea when challenged with RV at 7–8 weeks of age (Yuan et al. 1996).

Naturally occurring RV diarrhea is usually less severe than experimental disease due to the impact of maternal lactogenic immunity. Rotavirus infection is endemic in nearly all conventional swine herds. Consequently, a proportion of gilts and sows have immunity to RV, which is passed to their piglets via colostrum and milk (Askaa et al. 1983; Ward et al. 1996a). Levels of RV antibodies in colostrum and milk decline rapidly in the first few days of lactation. Diarrhea occurs in pigs when the oral challenge level of RV exceeds a protective level of lactogenic passive immunity (Saif 1985). Management practices that impact the proportion of dams that are immune (type of housing, sanitation), the level of passive immunity transferred to pigs (factors affecting lactation and suckling), and the level of RV challenge to pigs (crate design, sanitation) differ among swine herds and affect the age of onset and severity of rotaviral diarrhea.

Naturally occurring RV-associated diarrheal disease is reported in 1- to 41-day-old suckling pigs (Askaa et al. 1983; Bohl et al. 1978; Debouck and Pensaert 1983; Roberts et al. 1980; Svensmark et al. 1989; Yaeger et al. 2002) or within 7 days following weaning (Bohl et al. 1978; Lecce and King 1978; Tzipori et al. 1980b; Woode et al. 1976). The age of onset is often consistent in a given herd. Uncomplicated RV diarrhea in suckling pigs usually resolves in 2–3 days. Feces are yellow or white, watery-to-creamy, and variably flocculant. Morbidity is usually less than 20% and mortality due to dehydration is typically less than 15% of diarrheic pigs. Mortality is highest in young pigs. Rotaviral diarrhea in suckling pigs is frequently complicated by infection with Isospora suis (Roberts et al. 1980) or enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli (ETEC) (Bohl et al. 1978), which results in more severe disease, higher morbidity, and higher mortality (Lecce et al. 1982; Tzipori et al. 1980a).

The importance of RV in diarrhea in weaned pigs is less clear. Severe diarrhea in weaned pigs has been associated with RV, but usually in combination with TGE virus (Bohl et al. 1978) or β-hemolytic ETEC (Lecce et al. 1982; Tzipori et al. 1980a). Inoculation studies with RV and β-hemolytic ETEC suggest an important role for RV in postweaning diarrhea (Melin et al. 2004). Inoculation of weaned pigs with RV or β-hemolytic ETEC alone resulted in mild transient or no diarrhea, whereas inoculation with RV followed by hemolytic E. coli resulted in enhanced colonization by β-hemolytic ETEC and severe protracted diarrhea.

LESIONS

Lesions caused by RV are only in the small intestines and are due to RV replication within, and destruction of, villous epithelial cells, as well as subsequent adaptive and regenerative responses. Gross lesions appear slightly before, or with, the onset of diarrhea and are most severe in 1- to 14-day-old pigs (Collins et al. 1989; Janke et al. 1988; Pearson and McNulty 1977; Stevenson 1990; Theil et al. 1978). The stomachs usually contain food, and the distal one-half to two-thirds of the small intestine is thinned-walled, flaccid, and dilated with watery, flocculent, yellow or gray fluid. The lacteals in the distal two-thirds of the intestine contain no chyle and the associated mesenteric lymph nodes are small and tan. The cecum and colon are dilated with similar contents. Gross lesions are less severe or are absent in pigs that are 21 days of age or older (Shaw et al. 1989; Stevenson 1990).

Light microscopic lesions (Paul and Stevenson 1999) and scanning electron microscopic lesions (Collins et al. 1989; McAdaragh et al. 1980; Stevenson 1990; Torres-Medina and Underdahl 1980) have been described in numerous RV inoculation studies in suckling pigs. Degeneration begins in epithelial cells on the apical portion of villi by 16–18 hours postinoculation and is evidenced by swollen ruffled cytoplasm, nuclear swelling, irregular brush borders, and frequent partial detachment from adjacent cells or the basement membrane. By 16–24 hours postinoculation, sloughing of cells results in significant villous atrophy that is most severe by 24–72 hours postinoculation (Figure 26.5). The tips of atrophic villi are eroded or are covered by swollen or attenuated, nearly squamous epithelial cells (Figure 26.6) and there is cellular debris in the lamina propria. Lateral fusion of villi is seen 24–168 hours postinoculation. Hyperplasia of crypt epithelial cells results in significantly deeper crypts beginning 48–72 hours postinoculation. The time required for complete regeneration of normal villi depends on the age of the pig.

Ultrastructural lesions in RV-infected pigs are typical
of those described for RV in many other mammalian and avian species (Narita et al. 1982; Pearson and McNulty 1979; Saif et al. 1978). The cytoplasm of infected villous epithelial cells contains variably sized, electron-dense granular viroplasms that often have dense subviral cores or double-layered particles on the periphery. Double-layered viral particles obtain the outer capsid by budding through the membranes of the rough endoplasmic reticulum (Figure 26.7). Mature, 75–78 nm triple-layered virus particles accumulate in the cisternae of the endoplasmic reticulum and are released by cell lysis. Other degenerative changes in virus-infected cells include cell swelling, mitochondrial swelling, nuclear swelling, dilatation of the cytocavity network, and fragmentation of microvilli. Macrophages in the lamina propria contain cellular membrane profiles, virus particles, viroplasm, and other cellular debris in phagosomes.

**IMMUNITY**

Pigs infected with RV develop intestinal and systemic immune responses. Neonatal gnotobiotic pigs have been used to study immune responses to porcine and human RV infection, correlates of protective immunity, and approaches to improve the immunogenicity and protective efficacy of RV vaccines (Saif et al. 1996, 1997; Yuan and Saif 2002).
Pigs recovered from virulent RV infection are fully protected from reinfection by homotypic (common P or G type), but not heterotypic, RV (Bohl et al. 1982; Hoshino et al. 1988; Saif et al. 1997).

Rotavirus-specific IgM antibody-secreting cells (ASC) in gnotobiotic pigs orally inoculated with porcine RV (SB1A and Gottfried) occurred by PID 3, and numbers peaked in spleen and mesenteric lymphoid tissues by PID 7 and in intestinal lamina propria by PID 7 to 14 (Chen et al. 1995). Numbers of RV-specific IgA and IgG ASC in these tissues peaked at PID 14 to 21. Rotavirus-specific IgA ASC responses were dominant in the intestine. The B and T cell immune responses to virulent and attenuated human RV Wa strain (P1A[8]G1) were compared in the intestinal lamina propria and systemic lymphoid tissues of neonatal gnotobiotic pigs (Ward et al. 1996c; Yuan et al. 1996, 2001a). Pigs inoculated with one oral dose of virulent human RV developed significantly higher numbers of virus-specific IgA and IgG ASC and memory B cells and higher lymphocyte proliferation responses in the intestinal lamina propria compared to pigs given three oral doses of attenuated human RV. The magnitude of the intestinal IgA ASC and lymphocyte proliferation responses, which reflected the degree of viral replication and lesions within the intestine, was positively correlated with the level of protection induced (Ward et al. 1996c; Yuan and Saif 2002).

After RV infection or oral vaccination, proteinspecific antibody responses were predominately against RV inner capsid protein VP6, a nonneutralizing antigen, followed by VP4, NSP2, NSP4, and VP7 (Chang et al. 2001; Yuan et al. 2004). Although VP6 is the most immunogenic protein, VP6 antigen administered in the form of VP2/6 virus-like particles (VLPs) did not protect neonatal pigs (Azevedo et al. 2004; Gonzalez et al. 2004; Iosef et al. 2002; Nguyen et al. 2003; Yuan et al. 2000, 2001b), or neonatal mice born to 2/6VLP-vaccinated dams (Coste et al. 2000). These results indicate that antibodies to VP6 are not sufficient to protect against RV disease (Yuan and Saif 2003). Rotavirus VP4 and VP7 outer capsid proteins both induce virus neutralizing antibodies and independently confer protection in pigs (Hoshino et al. 1988).

**Protective Immunity**

Protective immunity against RV disease in pigs and humans is most closely related to the presence of neutralizing IgA antibodies in the intestine and serum (Azevedo et al. 2004; Coulsen et al. 1992; Coulsen et al. 1998). The roles of T and B cells in protective immunity to RV infection have been extensively studied, but only in adult mice (reviewed by Franco and Greenberg 2000). Limited studies of presumed CD4+ Th cell responses to RV have been performed in pigs (Ward et al. 1996c), lambs (Bruce et al. 1995), calves (Oldham et al. 1993), and humans (Offit et al. 1993) using lymphocyte proliferation assays. Excluding mice, the role of CD8+ T cells in protective immunity to RV was examined only in calves by injection of MAbs to deplete CD4 or CD8 T cells (Oldham et al. 1993). These investigators suggested that although CD8+ T cells contribute to protection against RV, the major role of CD8+ T cells was in restricting and clearing RV primary infection, whereas CD4+ T cells were important in generation of mucosal antibody responses (Oldham et al. 1993).

Although VP4 and VP7 elicit serotype-specific virus neutralizing antibodies independently from each other (homotypic immunity), they also evoke reduced levels and shorter duration of broad, serotype cross-reactive virus neutralizing antibodies (heterotypic immunity).
(reviewed by Hoshino and Kapikian 2000). Among the distinct RV serogroups and serotypes, cross-protection after primary infection or vaccination is minimal or nonexistent, but repeated infection or vaccination (even with the same RV strain) broadens the range of protection against heterotypic RV (Chiba et al. 1993; Gorrell and Bishop 1999). The antigenic divergence among different serotypes/genotypes of RV presents a challenge for design of vaccines capable of inducing heterotypic protection. Reassortant RV containing the VP4 and VP7 genes from different serotypes may be used in multivalent vaccines to induce immunity to each serotype (Hoshino and Kapikian 2000; Hoshino et al. 1988).

**Passive Immunity**

Pigs are most susceptible to infection with group A RV during the first weeks of life and soon after weaning (Bohl 1979). Outbreaks of diarrhea in animals less than 2 weeks of age are less frequent, presumably because piglets have acquired passive immunity in colostrum/milk from immune dams. Pigs are born agammaglobulinemic and acquire circulating maternal antibodies by consuming colostrum. Piglets are able to uptake antibodies for only a limited time after birth (24–36 hours after birth) before gut closure occurs (Wagstrom et al. 2000). Afterward, maternal antibodies are no longer absorbed from the intestines and only act locally to protect the gut. Piglets born to gilts are more susceptible to RV diarrhea than those born to sows because maternal antibody titers are often lower in gilts (Askaa et al. 1983; Gelberg et al. 1991).

Thus, rotavirus-specific antibodies in the colostrum (mainly IgG) and milk (predominately secretory [S] IgA) provide passive protection against RV to neonatal pigs (Saif 1999). Secretory IgA antibodies are more efficient in mediating protection in the gut of pigs because of their resistance to cleavage by digestive enzymes and higher levels in milk (Saif and Fernandez 1996). High persisting levels of passive IgG RV antibodies transudated from serum back to gut were also protective transiently (Hodgins et al. 1999; Parreno et al. 1999; Parreno et al. 2004; Ward et al. 1996a). Ideally, suckling animals become subclinically infected with RV after receiving adequate passive antibodies to prevent disease and develop active immunity (or are primed) to prevent subsequent diarrhea.

**Vaccine Strategies**

Current commercially available RV vaccines are used for immunization of sows, as well as nursing pigs. Attenuated RV vaccines are administered orally, orally and intramuscularly (IM), or IM. Inactivated RV vaccines are administered IM in sows and intraperitoneally (IP) in nursing pigs. The efficacy of these vaccines is often uncertain or poor (Saif and Fernandez 1996).

Induction of active immunity in sucking pigs to prevent postweaning diarrhea is problematic because of the presence of maternal antibodies. Improved vaccines and vaccination approaches are needed. Although oral immunization with replicating vaccines is the simplest and most efficient route for priming SIgA responses in the intestines, maternal antibodies have been shown to interfere with the development of active immunity in neonatal pigs (Hodgins et al. 1999; Parreno et al. 1999). Inactivated vaccines given parenterally may be less affected by maternal antibodies. However, IM immunization of RV seronegative piglets with inactivated RV did not induce SIgA antibody responses in the intestine or confer protection (Yuan et al. 1998).

Besides the traditional vaccines, the immunogenicity and protective efficacy of various alternative RV vaccine formulations (recombinant baculovirus-expressed VLP and DNA vaccines), routes of administration, and adjuvants have been evaluated in RV seronegative gnotobiotic pigs (reviewed by Yuan and Saif 2002). The attenuated human RV as an oral priming dose followed by 2/6-VLPs as intranasal (IN) or oral booster doses (Iosef et al. 2002; Yuan and Saif 2002) or VP6 DNA plasmid as IM booster doses (Yuan et al. 2003) were shown to be highly effective in inducing intestinal IgA antibody responses and protection. However, priming with 2 doses of 2/6-VLPs or VP6 DNA followed by attenuated human RV oral boosting was ineffective.

These results suggest new vaccine approaches that could be developed to prevent enteric viral infections in pigs. The combination of multiple vaccine types, vaccination routes, mucosal adjuvants, and new mucosal delivery systems may lead to optimal stimulation of protective immune responses in the presence or absence of maternal antibodies and improved efficacy of RV vaccines.

**DIAGNOSIS**

The clinical signs of RV infection in pigs are not unique. Diagnosis requires detection of virus, viral antigen, or viral nucleic acid (RNA). Rotavirus should be considered as a cause of diarrhea in neonatal pigs at 1–8 weeks of age. Fecal samples, intestinal contents, or sections should be collected in the acute phase of disease and submitted for diagnosis. RV is shed at highest concentrations in the first 24 hours after the onset of diarrhea. Sampling during this time frame is especially critical for the detection of certain group RV because the onset, amount, and duration of virus shed is less in pigs infected with group B RV (Bridge 1980; Thell et al. 1985).

A number of methods may be used for the detection of RV, including electron microscopy (EM), immune EM (IEM), immunohistochemistry (IHC), immunofluorescence (IF) on frozen sections or impression smears of small intestines, enzyme-linked immunoassay (ELISA), virus isolation (VI), latex agglutination, dot blot hybridization, RNA electropherotyping, and reverse tran-
Electron microscopy has been extensively used for detection of RV and used frequently to resolve discrepancies in results from other techniques. It is highly specific because RV have a distinctive morphologic appearance. When only a few samples are to be examined for RV, EM is the most rapid diagnostic method because fecal samples can be stained with phosphotungstic acid and examined directly within a few minutes of collection (Brandt et al. 1981). Use of IEM allows differentiation of RV into serogroups (Saif and Jiang 1994).

ELISA is frequently used for the detection of rotavirus antigens in fecal samples or intestinal contents. Commercial diagnostic kits are available for the detection of porcine group A RV (Benfield et al. 1984; Goyal et al. 1987) and MAbs capture ELISAs have also been developed for detection of groups B and C RV (Yolken et al. 1988; Ojeh et al. 1992).

Electropherotyping of viral RNA is used for the detection and differentiation of RV groups. Rotaviruses of different serogroups have distinct electropherotypes (Figure 26.2), which provide a tentative serogroup diagnosis. Electropherotyping results should be confirmed by serologic or nucleic acid-based methods. For electropherotyping, viral RNA is isolated from feces and subjected to polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and silver staining to visualize the RNA bands (Herring et al. 1982).

Serologic tests are of little value in the diagnosis of RV infection because antibodies are common in most swine herds. However, antibody titers and isotypes are indicators of the immune status of animals. High IgM and IgA antibody titers indicate active or recent infection. There are a variety of techniques for measuring a serologic response to RV infection, including IEM, complement fixation (CF), indirect IF, immune adherence hemagglutination assay, ELISA, VN, hemagglutination inhibition (Eiguchi et al. 1987), inhibition of reverse passive hemagglutination, and immunocytochemical staining (Kapikian et al. 2001).

ELISA using isotype-specific MAbs has been used to detect IgM, IgA, and IgG antibody responses to RV (Azevedo et al. 2004; Parreno et al. 1999; Paul et al. 1989; Coulsen et al. 1998). Antibodies to group C RV have also been detected by blocking ELISA using MAbs (Tsunemitsu et al. 1992a). Plaque reduction and fluorescent focus reduction neutralization assays have been used to detect neutralizing antibodies (Hoshino et al. 1984; Coulsen et al. 1998). Neutralization assays yield the most meaningful information about the identity of the infecting RV and the development of a serotype-specific antibody response. An immunocytochemistry assay using recombinant baculoviruses expressing RV proteins has been developed to measure antibody responses to individual RV proteins (Ishida et al. 1997; Yuan et al. 2004). It is highly sensitive to detect antibodies to both conformation-dependent and independent epitopes on VP4 and VP7.

Nucleic acid probe hybridization assays are highly specific and sensitive for detection of RV RNA and for genotyping (Johnson et al. 1990; Koromyslov et al. 1990; Ojeh et al. 1993; Rosen et al. 1990, 1994; Zaberezhny et al. 1994). The limit of detection for purified viral RNA by the dot hybridization procedure was 8 pg in a homologous reaction. It was ten- to hundredfold more sensitive than ELISA for the detection of RV in various dilutions of fecal samples (Flores et al. 1983).

Currently the most widely used methods for RV detection, genogrouping (A–C, E) and genotyping (group A) is RT-PCR (Barreiros et al. 2003; Elschner et al. 2002; Gouvea et al. 1994a,b; Martella et al. 2001; Pongsuwan et al. 1996; Winiarczyk and Gradzki 1999; Winiarczyk et al. 2002). Multiplex RT-PCR offers the most sensitive and reliable method for G and P genotyping of group A RV. The RT-PCR method is 100,000 times more sensitive than standard electropherotyping and 5,000 times more sensitive than hybridization assays (Wilde et al. 1991; Xu et al. 1990). The RT-PCR has also been applied for detection of group B and C RV (Eiden et al. 1991; Gouvea et al. 1991).

Newly developed oligonucleotide microarray hybridization technology offers another method for the identification of RV genotypes (Chizhikov et al. 2002). This approach combines the high sensitivity of RT-PCR with the selectivity of DNA-DNA hybridization and was capable of unambiguous identification of the G genotypes of all RV strains.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

Treatments for diarrhea in animals include antibiotics, antisecretory drugs, adsorbents, and fluid electrolyte therapy (Bywater 1983). However, no known therapeutic agents are available for the specific treatment of porcine RV infections. General supportive therapy, management procedures, and antibiotics are recommended to minimize mortality due to RV and secondary bacterial infections (Paul and Stevenson 1999). Electrolyte solutions containing glucose-glycine minimize dehydration and weight loss induced by RV infection (Bywater and Woode 1980). L-glutamine in oral rehydration solutions promotes jejunal sodium and chloride absorption in RV-infected pigs (Rhoads et al. 1991). Oral feeding of transforming growth factor-alpha enhanced jejunal mucosal recovery and electrical resistance in piglets with RV enteritis (Rhoads et al. 1995). Chicken egg powder enriched with Ig specific for RV antigen used as additive to sow’s milk reduced the prevalence of diarrhea in 2- to 3-day-old pigs; however, the effect of sow’s milk was more pronounced than the effect of the egg powder (Hennig-Pauka et al. 2003).

Optimal ambient temperature (35°C) significantly reduces the nursing piglet mortality caused by RV diar-
rhea (Steel and Torres-Medina 1984); low temperatures and temperature fluctuations should be avoided. In herds with a persistent problem of postweaning diarrhea with high mortality, a change in weaner diet and weaning procedures should be considered (Paul and Stevenson 1999). Scheduled feeding of a high-energy weaner diet has been successfully used to reduce RV morbidity and mortality (Tzipori et al. 1980b).

The ubiquity of RV in swine herds and its persistence in the environment make it difficult to eradicate RV from swine herds. Rotaviruses persist as subclinical infections and are shed by adult swine (Benfield et al. 1982). Management of farrowing on swine farms is important in controlling diarrhea caused by RV. Management practices should be designed to reduce the level of RV to which susceptible pigs are exposed and to boost levels of passive immunity (Barreiros et al. 2003; Paul and Stevenson 1999; Saif 1985). Exposure levels may be reduced by sanitation. The floors in farrowing and nursing houses should be constructed for easy cleaning and minimal fecal buildup. Rooms should be cleaned and disinfected between groups. The farrowing interval should be minimized to prevent RV buildup and infection of the litters farrowed latest. A recent study showed that herds using continuous flow in the nurseries had significantly lower rates of RV infection than the herds using all-in/all-out production, suggesting that nursing pigs exposed to RV in the environment may be able to develop an active immune response under the partial protection of maternal antibodies (Dewey et al. 2003). To enhance passive immunity, replacement gilts should be exposed to the feces of older sows to boost RV antibody titers through repeated exposure to RV. Attention to lactation diet, feed intake, sow comfort, and farrowing crate design are important to ensure adequate milk supply and effective suckling necessary to transfer maternal immunity successfully (Paul and Stevenson 1999).

Porcine Reovirus

Although discovered in 1951 (Tyler 2001), the role of reoviruses in the disease process is unclear (Kasza 1970; Kirkbride and McAdaragh 1978; McFerran and Connor 1970). Natural reovirus infection or antibodies to reovirus have been detected in all animal species (Tyler 2001; Yang et al. 1976). Illnesses associated with reovirus infections in animals have involved primarily the respiratory, gastrointestinal, and nervous system (Hirahara et al. 1988; Fukutomi et al. 1996; Tyler 1998). Reoviruses may be detected in pigs with respiratory, enteric, and reproductive diseases, as well as in healthy pigs.

ETIOLOGY

Reovirus was the first genus named in the family Reoviridae. The other two genera of importance to animals are genus Rotavirus and genus Orbivirus. “Reo” is an acronym for “respiratory and enteric orphan.” The name was intended to emphasize the fact that these viruses were not associated with any known disease (hence, orphan) (Tyler 2001). Reovirus virions are nonenveloped, icosahedral particles with a rough outer rim. The particles are 75 nm in diameter with the inner capsid measuring 45–50 nm (Figure 26.8).

Reoviruses have a segmented (10 segments) dsRNA genome. The density of a complete (mature) virion in cesium chloride is 1.36 g/ml. Porcine reoviruses are stable at acidic pH and resistant to ether, chloroform, and trypsin, but susceptible to heat at 50°C for 1 hour. They are sensitive to 0.1% sodium deoxycholate (Hirahara et al. 1988). Porcine reoviruses possess a hemagglutinin that agglutinates human group O and porcine erythrocytes at 4°C, 22°C, and 37°C. Mammalian reoviruses share a group antigen that can be detected by complement fixation, IF, and immunodiffusion (Sabin 1959). All mammalian reovirus isolates can be divided serologically into three types: 1, 2, and 3. Reoviruses of different types can be distinguished by serum neutralization and hemagglutination inhibition tests.

Reoviruses can be cultivated in a wide variety of cell cultures from many species (Hirahara et al. 1988; Kasza 1970). The most commonly used cell line is mouse L929 fibroblasts for viral growth, purification, and plaque assay (Tyler 2001). Reovirus replicates slowly and the
majority (80%) of the nascent virus population remains cell associated. The cytopathic effect of reoviruses varies, depending upon the cell line used. In general, cells round up, become granular, and detach from monolayers. Eosinophilic, intracytoplasmic, inclusion bodies can be seen in cultures stained with May-Greenwald-Giemsa stain (Paul and Stevenson 1999).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Reoviruses are ubiquitous and porcine reovirus infections are widespread in swine herds. Antibodies to all three types have been detected in pigs (Fukumi et al. 1969; Harkness et al. 1971; Yang et al. 1976). Reoviruses are spread via fecal-oral and respiratory routes. Passively acquired antibodies to reoviruses persist in neonatal pigs for about 11 weeks, at which time pigs become susceptible to infection (Watt 1978).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Reoviruses have been isolated from pigs with respiratory or enteric disease, as well as from clinically healthy pigs (Elazhary et al. 1978; Kasza 1970; McFerran et al. 1971; Robl et al. 1971) and from aborted fetuses (Kirkbride and McAdaragh 1978). Experimental inoculations have not consistently reproduced disease. In most of the studies, intranasal (IN), intraperitoneal, or intracerebral inoculation of conventional and gnotobiotic pigs at 1–6 weeks of age with porcine or human reovirus type 1 did not result in clinical disease, except for a transient febrile reaction (Baskerville et al. 1971; Kasza 1970; McFerran and Connor 1970; McFerran et al. 1971; Watt 1978).

Reovirus is excreted in nasal secretions and feces as early as 24 hours postinoculation and may continue for 6–14 days. Mild respiratory disease characterized by pyrexia, sneezing, inappetence, and listlessness was reproduced in colostrum-deprived pigs and conventional pigs inoculated IN or exposed via aerosol to reovirus type 1 (Hiirahara et al. 1988). Intravenous or IM inoculation of seronegative sows between 40 and 85 days of gestation with type 3 reovirus resulted in term litters containing a mixture of mummified, stillborn, weak, and normal pigs. The virus can also be isolated from fecal tissues and the placenta of these sows (Paul and Stevenson 1999).

**PATHOGENESIS**

Reoviruses replicate mainly in the respiratory and intestinal tracts after natural infection. The pathogenesis and pathology of reoviruses have been studied extensively in mice and the findings have greatly improved our understanding of viruses and virus-host interactions (Tyler 2001). In mice, reoviruses are able to spread from the gastrointestinal tract to extraintestinal organs and the central nervous system after oral inoculation. Reovirus-induced myocarditis is associated with virus-induced destruction of cardiac myocytes in the absence of a significant inflammatory response (Tyler 2001). The pathogenesis of reoviruses in pigs is unknown.

**LESIONS**

Reovirus inoculation studies of pigs revealed few gross lesions and only mild microscopic lesions. Oral inoculation of 1-week-old colostrum-deprived pigs with enteric-origin reovirus resulted in focal villous atrophy in the jejunum and ileum (Elazhary et al. 1978). Aerosol exposure of 4-week-old specific pathogen free (SPF) pigs to porcine type 1 reovirus resulted in no gross lesions, but consistent microscopic lesions in the lungs consisting of multifocal aggregates of lymphocytes and macrophages in alveoli and alveolar septae and mild peribronchiolar nodular lymphocytic hyperplasia (Baskerville et al. 1971). Inoculation of 70 kg SPF pigs IN with a respiratory isolate of porcine type 3 reovirus resulted in lobular atelectasis, vesicular emphysema, and peribronchiolar nodular lymphocytic hyperplasia, which varied in intensity between lobules (Paul and Stevenson 1999). Additional studies are needed to characterize the clinical disease and lesions in swine caused by porcine reoviruses.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Methods similar to those described for RV may be employed for the detection of reoviruses. Virus isolation has commonly been used for diagnosis. Typing of reovirus is achieved by virus neutralization and hemagglutination inhibition tests with reference antisera to the three reovirus types (Paul and Stevenson 1999).

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

No specific methods are available for treatment or prevention of porcine reovirus infections, and possibly none are warranted until the clinical significance of reovirus infections in swine is documented.

**REFERENCES**


Chang KO, Parwani AV, Saif LJ. 1996. The characterization of VP7 (G type) and VP4 (P type) genes of bovine group A rotaviruses from field samples using RT-PCR and RFLP analysis. Arch Virol 141:1727–1739.


---

SECTION II VIRAL DISEASES


The family Paramyxoviridae contains viral pathogens of international significance in most animal species and humans. Until recently, there were no major paramyxovirus pathogens of pigs, the single possible exception being the rubulavirus that causes blue eye (BE) disease (blue eye paramyxovirus, BEP). However, BEP is confined to Mexico, where its economic impact is considered low at present. Then, during a 3-year period commencing in 1997, several new paramyxoviruses were identified, and two (Menangle and Nipah viruses) were found to be serious pathogens of both pigs and humans.

The family Paramyxoviridae encompasses a group of large (150–400 nm in diameter) pleomorphic viruses. The genome consists of a long single strand of RNA within a herringbone-like nucleocapsid. The nucleocapsid is surrounded by a lipid envelope that usually contains an outer fringe of surface projections or “spikes.”

The paramyxoviruses are currently organized in 2 subfamilies and 7 genera. There are 5 genera in the subfamily Paramyxovirinae: Avulavirus, Henipavirus, Morbillivirus, Respirovirus, and Rubulavirus. There are major pathogens of animals and humans in each of these genera—e.g., Newcastle disease virus of poultry in the genus Avulavirus; canine distemper and human measles viruses in the genus Morbillivirus; several parainfluenza viruses of animals and humans in the genus Respirovirus; and in the genus Rubulavirus, human mumps virus, BEP, and Menangle virus. Both of the latter two viruses are infectious for pigs. The genus Henipavirus was created for two of the most recently recognized and closely related paramyxoviruses, Hendra and Nipah, reflecting their morphological and genetic differences from other paramyxoviruses.

As a result of their tissue tropisms, there are broad similarities in the diseases caused by paramyxoviruses. Typically, pathogenic paramyxoviruses are associated with diseases of the central nervous system (CNS) (canine distemper and Newcastle disease) and respiratory systems (parainfluenza infections, Hendra, Nipah, and Newcastle disease). Some, especially Menangle virus and BEP, are also important reproductive pathogens.

The only paramyxoviruses that cause significant disease in pigs are BEP, Menangle virus, and Nipah virus. There have been occasional reports of other paramyxoviruses associated with respiratory and CNS disease in pigs in Japan (Sasahara et al. 1954), Canada (Greig et al. 1971), Israel (Lipkind et al. 1986), and the United States (Paul et al. 1994), but none has proven to be of significance. This chapter provides an overview of BEP, Menangle and Nipah viruses, and the diseases they cause.

### Rubulavirus (Blue Eye Disease)

As mentioned before, blue eye (BE) is a disease of swine caused by infection with blue eye paramyxovirus (BEP) (Stephano et al. 1988b) or porcine rubulavirus, also known as La Piedad-Michoacan virus (LPMV). The disease was first reported in 1980 in central Mexico, with numerous outbreaks of encephalitis and corneal opacity in piglets (Stephano et al. 1982). A hemagglutinating virus was isolated, characterized, and identified as a serologically distinct member of the family Paramyxoviridae (Stephano and Gay 1983, 1984, 1985a; Stephano et al. 1986b).

The first reported outbreak of BE was observed on a commercial farm with 2500 sows located in La Piedad, Michoacán, Mexico (Stephano et al. 1982). Thereafter, BE was recognized as an important pathogen in central Mexico, with serological evidence of BEP in at least 16 states in Mexico (Stephano et al. 1988b). The disease is still recognized in central Mexico, but its economic im-
pact has lessened. BE has not been reported outside of Mexico.

ETIOLOGY

Extensive molecular characterization of BEP (Berg et al. 1991, 1992; Sundqvist et al. 1990, 1992), combined with its morphology and biological properties, supports its placement in the rubulavirus genus.

BEP particles are similar to other paramyxoviruses, measuring 135–148 nm by 257–360 nm (Figure 27.1). The virion is pleomorphic, but usually more or less spherical; no filamentous forms have been observed. Nucleocapsids from disrupted virus particles have a diameter of 20 nm and a length of 1000–1630 nm (Figure 27.2) or more (Stephano and Gay 1985a).

In the laboratory, BEP replicates and produces cytopathology in a wide range of cell cultures from many different animal species, including both continuous cell lines and primary cell cultures. Changes consist of individual rounded cells, cytoplasmic vacuoles, and syncytium formation. Some cells also contain viral inclusion bodies (Moreno-Lopez et al. 1986; Stephano and Gay 1985a; Stephano et al. 1986a). The chick embryo also supports BEP replication.

BEP agglutinates erythrocytes from a wide range of animal species, as well as humans. Spontaneous elution occurs at 37°C after 30–60 minutes. Hemadsorption of chicken erythrocytes has also been described (Stephano and Gay 1985a; Stephano et al. 1986b).

BEP is not known to share any antigens with other paramyxoviruses (Stephano et al. 1986b) and no antigenic differences have been observed between different strains of BEP (Gay and Stephano 1987).

CLINICAL SIGNS

An outbreak of BE may start in any area of a pig farm, but is usually first observed in the farrowing house, with CNS signs and high piglet mortality. At about the same time, corneal opacity may be observed in some weaned or fattening pigs (Stephano and Gay 1985a, 1986a; Stephano et al. 1988a). The mortality rate increases rapidly and then declines within a short time. Once the initial outbreak is over, no new clinical cases appear, unless susceptible pigs are introduced.
Clinical signs are variable and depend primarily on the age of the pig. However, corneal opacity, the sign that gives the disease its name, frequently occurs in pigs of all ages without other signs and resolves spontaneously.

Piglets 2–15 days old are the most susceptible, and the onset of clinical signs is sudden. Healthy piglets may suddenly become prostrate, generally in lateral recumbency, or show nervous signs. However, the disease usually runs a course that starts with fever, a rough hair coat, and an arched back, sometimes accompanied by constipation or diarrhea. These signs are followed by progressive nervous signs, including ataxia, weakness, rigidity (mainly of the hind legs), muscle tremor, and abnormal posture, such as a sitting position. Anorexia does not occur as long as piglets can still walk. Some piglets are hyperexcitable and may squeal and show paddling movements when handled. Other signs include lethargy with some involuntary movements, dilated pupils, apparent blindness, and, occasionally, nystagmus. Some piglets suffer from conjunctivitis, with swollen eyelids and lacrimation. Often the eyelids are closed and adherent with exudate. In up to 10% of affected piglets, either unilateral or bilateral corneal opacity is present.

Of the litters farrowed during an outbreak, about 20% are affected. In these litters, the piglet morbidity is 20–50%, and mortality in affected piglets is about 90%. In the first cases observed, piglets usually died within 48 hours of the appearance of clinical signs, but in later cases, death occurred after 4–6 days. During an initial outbreak, deaths occur for 2–9 weeks, depending on the management system.

Pigs older than 30 days show moderate and transient clinical signs such as anorexia, fever, sneezing, and coughing. Nervous signs are less common and less obvious but, when present, consist of listlessness, ataxia, circling, and, rarely, swaying of the head. Uni- or bilateral corneal opacity and conjunctivitis continue to appear on the farm for another month without other signs. Fewer than 2% of pigs older than 30 days are affected and the mortality is generally low. Outbreaks with 20% mortality and severe CNS manifestations have been observed in 15–45 kg pigs. Corneal opacity was present in up to 30% of these pigs (Stephano and Gay 1985b).

Most of the sows suckling affected litters are clinically normal. Some show moderate anorexia 1 or 2 days before the appearance of clinical signs in piglets. Corneal opacity has also been observed in the farrowing house during outbreaks.

In pregnant sows, reproductive failure lasting 2–11 months (usually 4 months) is observed. Reproductive signs during outbreaks include an increase in the number of animals returning to estrus, a reduction in farrowing rate, and an increase in the weaning-to-service interval and nonproductive sow days. The rate of stillbirths and mummified fetuses also increases and, consequently, there is a reduction in the number of pigs born alive. Later, there is also a reduction in the total number of pigs born. Abortion is not a cardinal feature, but has sometimes been observed during an acute outbreak. Gilts and other adult pigs occasionally develop corneal opacity.

Boars, like other adult animals, generally do not show clinical signs, but mild anorexia and corneal opacity have been recorded. Semen evaluation demonstrated that, in herds infected by BEP, about 30% of boars show temporary or permanent infertility, with a decrease in concentration, an increase in abnormalities, and a decrease in motility and viability of spermatozoa. In some boars there is azoosperma, the ejaculate becomes clear and resembles coconut water. Some boars develop swollen testicles. The testis and epididymis become turgid with marked edema. Later, some develop a granular texture and most atrophy (generally unilateral) or become soft and flabby with or without granular epididymitis. Boars with severe lesions lose libido (Campos and Carbajal 1989; Stephano et al. 1990).

Differences in clinical signs became evident a few years after the virus was discovered. In 1980, primarily piglets were affected. Mortality and CNS disorders in pigs older than 30 days were uncommon. In 1983, severe outbreaks of encephalitis with high mortality in pigs weighing 15–45 kg were observed on badly managed farms, always with concomitant viral and bacterial diseases (Stephano and Gay 1985b, 1986a). Also in 1983, reproductive failure in sows and transient infertility in boars were identified (Stephano and Gay 1984, 1985a). In 1988, severe problems of orchitis, epididymitis, and testicular atrophy in boars became evident (Campos and Carbajal 1989; Stephano et al. 1990).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Pigs are the only species known to be affected clinically by BEP following natural exposure. Experimentally, BEP affects mice, rats, and chick embryos. Rabbits, dogs, cats, and peccaries do not show clinical signs, but rabbits, cats, and peccaries produce antibodies (Stephano and Gay 1985a; Stephano et al. 1988a).

Subclinically infected pigs from affected farms are the primary source of BEP. The virus is apparently disseminated by nose-to-nose contact between infected and susceptible pigs. Transmission through semen has not been proven experimentally, but virus can be recovered from semen, testis, epididymis, prostate, seminal vesicles, and bulbo-urethral glands (M. H. Hernandez, personal communication). The virus may be disseminated by people and vehicles, and possibly by birds and wind. Other sources of infection have not been demonstrated.

The disease is self-limiting in closed herds. Sentinel pigs introduced to a farm 6–12 months after an outbreak remain asymptomatic and do not seroconvert. Al-
though there is evidence of persistence of BEP RNA in the brain and lung of experimentally infected pigs, neither infectious virus nor viral antigen was detected after immunosuppression (Wiman et al. 1998). Further, positive animals moved to seronegative herds did not spread the virus (Stephano and Gay 1986b; Stephano et al. 1986a). However, the disease can recur if a susceptible group of pigs is introduced to a farm. Large farms with a continuous system of production may have cases periodically.

**PATHOGENESIS**

It has been presumed that BEP infection is acquired by inhalation. Experimentally, intratracheal or intranasal exposures are effective routes of infection. The initial site of BEP replication is thought to be the nasal mucosa and tonsils. The virus has also been observed in the axon of neurons. From the initial site of replication, BEP spreads quickly to the brain and lung. CNS manifestations occur early in the disease. Nervous signs have been induced in 1-day-old piglets 20–66 hours after inoculation, some weaned pigs (21–50 days old) developed a nervous syndrome at 11 days postinoculation, and pregnant sows developed reproductive failure when inoculated during pregnancy. Corneal opacity was occasionally observed in these cases. The disease was also reproduced in susceptible pigs placed in contact with experimentally infected pigs as long as 19 days after experimental infection (Stephano and Gay 1983; Stephano et al. 1988b).

The interstitial pneumonia that is observed suggests dissemination by viremia. In experimentally infected piglets, virus could be isolated from the brain, lung, tonsil, liver, turbinate, spleen, kidney, mesenteric lymph node, heart, and blood.

The cause of the corneal opacity is unknown, but anterior uveitis is commonly observed microscopically in the cornea (Stephano and Gay 1986b). The opacity usually occurs late in the course of the disease and is thought to be due to an immunological reaction similar to that observed in dogs after adenovirus-induced hepatitis.

Infection of pregnant sows in the first one-third of gestation results in reproductive failure due to embryonic mortality. Affected sows usually return to estrus. When infection occurs later in gestation, the result is stillbirths and fetal mummification (Stephano and Gay 1984).

Intranasal infection of young boars results in inflammation and edema of the testis and epididymis by 15 days after inoculation. By 30 days, there is necrosis of the seminiferous tubules and rupture of the epithelial wall of the epididymis with leakage of spermatozoa from the lumen, leading to abscess formation. Boars sacrificed 80 days after infection showed fibrosis and granuloma formation in the epididymis as well as testicular atrophy (Ramirez et al. 1995). BEP was recovered from testis, epididymis, prostate, seminal vesicles and bulbo-urethral glands 10–45 days after inoculation.

**PATHOLOGY**

There are no specific gross changes in cases of BE. In piglets, a mild pneumonia is frequently observed at the ventral tips of the cranial lung lobes. There is mild distension of the stomach with milk, distension of the urinary bladder, and a slight accumulation of peritoneal fluid with fibrin. The brain is often congested and there is an increase in the quantity of cerebrospinal fluid. Conjunctivitis, chemosis, and varying degrees of corneal opacity (Figure 27.3), usually unilateral, are observed. Vesicle formation, ulcers, and keratoconus have been observed in the cornea as well as exudate in the anterior chamber. Pericardial and renal hemorrhages are occasionally observed (Stephano and Gay 1985a, 1986b).

Boars develop swollen testicles and epididymes. These changes are frequently unilateral. There is orchitis, epididymitis, and, later, atrophy of the testicle, with or without granulomatous formation in the epididymis. Hemorrhages are occasionally observed in the tunica albuginea, epididymis, or testis (Campos and Carbajal 1989; Ramirez et al. 1995; Stephano et al. 1990).

The main histological changes are seen in the brain and spinal cord. These reflect a nonsuppurative encephalomyelitis affecting mainly the gray matter of the thalamus, midbrain, and cerebral cortex and include a multifocal and diffuse gliosis, perivascular cuffing with lymphocytes, plasma cells and reticular cells, neuronal necrosis, neuronophagia, meningitis, and choroiditis (Ramirez and Stephano 1982). Intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies are found in neurons (Stephano and Gay 1986b; Stephano et al. 1988a).

The lungs have localized areas of interstitial pneu-
monia characterized by thickened septa with mononuclear cell infiltration.

Changes in the eye are mainly corneal opacity, characterized by corneal edema and anterior uveitis. Neutrophils, macrophages, or mononuclear cells infiltrate the iridocorneal endothelium, corneo-scleral angle, and cornea (Stephano and Gay 1986b; Stephano et al. 1988a).

In boars, the affected testes show degeneration and necrosis of the germinal epithelium. The interstitial tissue shows Leydig cell hyperplasia, mononuclear cell infiltration, hyalinization of the vascular wall, and fibrosis. The epididymis shows vesicle formation, loss of epithelial cilia, rupture of the epithelial wall, presence of spermatozoa in the intertubular space, and severe infiltration of inflammatory mononuclear cells with macrophage phagocytosis of fragmented sperm. Fibrosis and spermatic granuloma are organized.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Clinical signs such as encephalitis, corneal opacity, and reproductive failure in the sow and orchitis and epididymitis in the boar are consistent with a diagnosis of BE. Additional diagnostic evidence is provided by histological lesions, such as nonsuppurative encephalitis, anterior uveitis, keratitis, orchitis, and epididymitis. The presence of intracytoplasmic inclusions in neurons and corneal epithelium in conjunction with these clinical signs and histological findings provides strong support for a diagnosis of BE.

Other causes of encephalitis and reproductive disease, especially Aujeszky’s disease (pseudorabies) virus and porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus, must be considered. Only BEP produces corneal opacity along with orchitis and epididymitis in boars (Campos and Carbajal 1989; Stephano and Gay 1985b; Stephano et al. 1988a, 1990).

Paired serum samples, 15 days apart, are recommended for serological confirmation. Hemagglutination inhibition (HI), virus neutralization (VN), and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA) have been used for serology. HI is the most frequently used test, but false-positive titers up to 1:16 have been detected when chicken erythrocytes are used or when the antigen is grown in chicken embryos (Ramirez et al. 1996). Therefore, bovine erythrocytes are recommended. Naturally infected pigs develop antibodies that usually persist for life.

Direct immunofluorescence has been performed to detect antigens in tissue sections and monolayers (Stephano and Gay 1985a; Stephano et al. 1988a).

The brain is the best tissue for virus isolation and antigen detection, but lung and tonsil are also suitable (Stephano et al. 1988a). PK-15 cells or primary pig kidney cells are preferred for virus isolation. Virus replication induces syncytium formation, and the virus is identified by neutralization and immunofluorescence.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

As with most viral diseases of swine, there is no specific treatment. Pigs with corneal opacity frequently recover spontaneously, whereas pigs with central nervous disease generally die. Antimicrobial therapy is commonly used to treat and prevent secondary infections.

Herd health programs are the most reliable method of preventing the introduction of BEP to a farm. New pigs must be derived from a healthy herd and quarantined prior to introduction. Standard biosecurity measures provide insurance against infection, e.g., perimeter fencing; separate load-out areas; changing rooms and showers; control of birds, rats, and mice; prompt waste removal and disposal of dead pigs; and control of the movement of personnel, visitors, and vehicles. Serological screening of replacement animals is recommended.

Elimination of BEP from infected herds has been accomplished by management practices, e.g., herd closure, cleaning and disinfecting, all-in/all-out production, elimination of clinically affected animals, and disposal of dead pigs. The effectiveness of these procedures should be monitored by serological testing and the introduction of sentinel animals (BEP seronegative pigs) to confirm the elimination of BEP (Stephano et al. 1986b).

At present there are two commercial inactivated virus vaccines approved for use in pregnant sows, gilts, boars, and piglets. Development of a recombinant vaccine is in progress.

---

**Menangle Virus**

Menangle virus was first identified during a disease outbreak in New South Wales, Australia, in 1997. This virus causes reproductive disease and congenital defects in pigs, occasionally causes moderately severe disease in humans, and has fruit bats (*Pteropus* sp., flying foxes) as a reservoir host.

**ETIOLOGY**

Like Blue Eye Paramyxovirus, Menangle virus has been placed in the genus Rubulavirus within the family **Paramyxoviridae**, (Bowden et al. 2001). Other well-known viruses in this genus are human parainfluenza viruses types 2 and 4 and human mumps virus.
Menangle virus has typical paramyxoviruses morphology. Virions are pleomorphic with both spherical and elongated forms that range in size from 100–350 nm. Virions possess a single layer of surface spikes approximately 17 nm in length. Ruptured particles reveal long herringbone shaped nucleocapsids with a diameter of approximately 19 nm (Philbey et al. 1998).

Menangle virus induces pronounced cytopathology in cell culture, including prominent vacuolation of cells and the development of large syncytia. The virus replicates and produces cytopathology in a wide range of cell types from many animal species, including birds and fish. There is no evidence of hemadsorption or hemagglutinating activity (Philbey et al. 1998). Menangle virus is not known to be related antigenically to any other paramyxovirus.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

To date, there has been only one known disease outbreak due to Menangle virus in pigs (Love et al. 2001; Philbey et al. 1998). In 1997, over a 5-month period (mid-April to early September), sows in a 3000-sow, intensive farrow-to-finish pig farm near Sydney, New South Wales, Australia experienced severe reproductive failure (Love et al. 2001). There was a marked increase in the incidence of mummified fetuses and stillborn piglets. After a period, some of the stillborn piglets were born with severe malformations. Sows in all four breeding units on the farm were affected. There were some weeks when the farrowing rate decreased from an expected 82% to as low as 38%. Many sows showed delayed returns to estrus at around 28 days after mating, and others remained in a state of pseudopregnancy until more than 60 days post-mating. The disease occurred sequentially in all four breeding units at the pig farm, affecting the progeny of sows of all parities. In the weeks of low farrowing rates, up to 45% of sows farrowed litters with reduced numbers of live piglets and an increase in the proportion of mummified and stillborn piglets, some of which had congenital deformities.

Individual litters contained mummified fetuses of varying size, ranging upward in gestational age from 30 days, together with stillborn piglets (some with malformations) and a few normal piglets (Figure 27.4). Teratogenic defects, including arthrogryposis, brachygynathia, and kyphosis, were frequently seen in stillborn piglets, and there were occasional cases of artiodactyla (Love et al. 2001). The cranium of some piglets was slightly domed.

Although the virus was also detected on two associated growing farms, there were no breeding animals held on these farms and no clinical disease was recognized. Virus had apparently spread to these farms (separated from the main farm and each other by several hundred kilometers) when young growing pigs were moved. There were no clinical signs evident in growing pigs of any age, and the only clinical signs in sows on the main farm were those associated with reproductive failure. It is not known whether Menangle virus can be spread in the semen of acutely infected boars.

Following the isolation of Menangle virus, two seropositive workers were identified (Chant et al. 1998). During subsequent medical investigations, it was found that both had experienced a severe febrile illness with headaches. Extensive testing failed to identify any other possible cause of the illness, and it was concluded that the disease was due to Menangle virus infection (Chant et al. 1998). Both workers recovered fully after a prolonged period of convalescence.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Studies of archival and newly collected sera suggested that Menangle virus was not highly contagious among the pigs on the affected farm (Kirkland et al. 2001). This was deduced by the relatively slow spread of infection in a building that contained pens of sows, i.e., it took several weeks for all of the sows to become infected. Nevertheless, the virus was widely dispersed through the pig population on the affected farm. About 6 months after the estimated time of entry of the virus to the farm, a high proportion (>90%) of sera collected from pigs of all ages contained high levels of virus-neutralizing (VN) antibody. Positive VN antibody titers ranged from 1:16 to 1:4096 and remained high for at least 2 years after infection. In contrast, all samples collected prior to the estimated time of entry of the virus
into the pig population were negative. All serum samples collected at the two grower-fattening farms were positive (Kirkland et al. 2001). Testing of 1114 swine sera from other pig farms throughout Australia indicated that infection was confined to the affected pig farm and the two associated grow-out facilities.

Following the initial spread of the infection through the herd, the virus was maintained by infection of young pigs at about 10–12 weeks of age as they lost the protection provided by maternally derived antibodies. In a large pig population, the constant availability of susceptible animals was sufficient to ensure persistence of the virus. In smaller pig herds, such persistence would be much less likely. Almost all selected replacement breeding pigs on the farm had been exposed to the virus and were seropositive before mating at around 28–30 weeks of age, preventing further reproductive failure.

It appeared that close contact between pigs was required for spread of infection and that the virus did not survive in the environment for long. Susceptible sentinel pigs moved into an uncleaned area occupied 3 days previously by infected pigs did not become infected.

It is believed that Menangle virus has a reservoir in flying foxes (Kirkland et al. 2001; Philbey et al. 1998). During the summer-autumn period, when the virus was thought to have entered the pig farm, there was a large breeding colony of gray-headed fruit bats (Pteropus poliocephalus), as well as little red fruit bats (P. scapulatus), roosting within 200 meters of the affected pig farm. Sera collected from gray-headed fruit bats in this colony had VN antibodies to Menangle virus. A more extensive study of sera collected from several species of fruit bats in various locations in Australia found that approximately one-third were seropositive, with VN titers ranging from 1:16–1:256. Positive samples were found in various locations in Australia found that approximately one-third were seropositive, with VN titers ranging from 1:16–1:256. Positive samples were found in various locations in Australia.

The principal cause of reproductive loss associated with Menangle virus appears to be in utero infection, often resulting in fetal death. In many sows, there was early death of the whole litter, resulting in a delayed return to estrus or sometimes a state of pseudopregnancy. At parturition, affected litters sometimes contained piglets of varying size and with a range of abnormalities. Some piglets were mummified and were of different gestational ages, some piglets were stillborn and had congenital malformations, and there were a few normal piglets (refer to Figure 27.4). These findings indicated that, as with parvovirus, transplacental infection of a few fetuses can occur early in gestation followed by progressive spread of the virus from fetus to fetus within the uterus. The teratogenic defects observed are the direct result of virus replication and cell destruction in rapidly developing fetal tissues.

**PATHOLOGY**

Affected litters usually consist of a mixture of mummified fetuses, autolyzed and fresh stillborn piglets, and a few normal live piglets (Love et al. 2001; Philbey et al. 1998). Congenital defects, including arthrogryposis, brachygnathia, kyphosis, and occasionally, artiodactyla are only seen in dead piglets. Affected stillborn piglets frequently have slight-to-severe degeneration of the brain and spinal cord (Figure 27.5). Gross defects ranging from porencephaly to hydranencephaly are most common in the cerebrum. Occasionally, there may be fibrous body cavity effusions and pulmonary hypoplasia.

Histological changes are most marked in the central nervous system (Love et al. 2001; Philbey et al. 1998). There is extensive degeneration and necrosis of grey and white matter of the brain and spinal cord associated with infiltrations of macrophages and other inflammatory cells. Intraneural and intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies may be observed in neurones of the cerebrum and spinal cord. These bodies are eosinophilic to amphophilic and consist of aggregates of nucleocapsids. Nonsuppurative inclusions are usually aggregates of nucleocapsids. The term *nonsuppurative* is not used here because the nucleocapsid is not intranuclear but is found in cytoplasmic vacuoles.

Histological changes are most marked in the central nervous system. Intranuclear and intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies are observed in neurones of the cerebrum and spinal cord. These bodies are eosinophilic to amphophilic and consist of aggregates of nucleocapsids. Nonsuppurative inclusions are usually aggregates of nucleocapsids. The term *nonsuppurative* is not used here because the nucleocapsid is not intranuclear but is found in cytoplasmic vacuoles.
multifocal meningitis, myocarditis, and occasionally, hepatitis may also be present in some cases.

DIAGNOSIS

Because Menangle virus is a recently recognized agent that is pathogenic for pigs and only one outbreak has been recorded, most pig populations should be fully susceptible. The birth of litters with a marked reduction of normal live piglets and a number of stillborn piglets with teratogenic defects is suggestive of Menangle virus infection. The most rapid method of excluding Menangle virus infection is to test affected sows for the presence of specific antibody to the virus.

The birth of litters containing mummified fetuses of varying size together with stillborn piglets is indicative of in utero viral infection. By far the most common cause of similar losses is porcine parvovirus, but a variety of other viral infections, e.g., encephalomyocarditis, classical swine fever (hog cholera), Aujeszky’s disease (pseudorabies), porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS), and porcine rubulavirus (blue eye paramyxovirus, BEP) may cause significant fetal death. A feature that distinguishes Menangle virus infection from all but Japanese encephalitis infection is the presence of congenital malformations in piglets. However, it should be noted that these are evident in only approximately one-third of affected litters. In addition, many of these other viral infections cause disease in both piglets and adults. BEP is the only other paramyxovirus to cause significant fetal loss as a presenting sign, but it differs from Menangle virus in that neurological and other signs are usually observed in young piglets and the virus can be readily distinguished as it agglutinates erythrocytes from mammals and birds (Moreno-Lopez et al. 1986). Reproductive disease is not a major feature of infection with Nipah virus.

For laboratory diagnosis, fetal specimens should be collected for virus isolation, serology, and pathology. Virus can be isolated from a number of organs from stillborn piglets, especially brain, lung, and myocardium. A wide range of cell cultures support replication of Menangle virus, but baby hamster kidney cells (BHK-21) have been used for the isolation of the virus from field specimens. Three to five passages may be necessary before suggestive cytopathology is observed. Because the virus does not hemagglutinate, identification will depend on electron microscopy and neutralization of an isolate with specific antiserum. Specific antibodies may be detected in body cavity fluids of some stillborn piglets.

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

There is no specific treatment for Menangle virus. By the time clinical signs are observed, the virus is likely to be widely disseminated in the affected population, negating measures to limit spread.

Fruit bats (Megachiroptera) are considered the primary source of infection for the pig population. Megachiroptera are not found in North America, but are present in Africa, the Middle East, Southern Asia, Australia, and many Pacific Islands. It is not known whether small bats (Microchiroptera) are susceptible to Menangle virus, but it is important to restrict direct and indirect contact between pigs and bats to prevent introduction of this virus to the pig population. Fruit bats do not normally enter pig farm buildings, but they defecate and urinate during flight over and around buildings, and occasionally inadvertently drop their young in flight. All outside areas, e.g., outside walkways, should be covered to prevent contamination and possible infection. Flowering trees and fruiting trees should not be grown in the immediate vicinity of pig farm buildings because these may attract fruit bat activity.

In an outbreak of reproductive disease, the infection will probably have already spread through the entire population of a pig farm by the time the first affected litters are farrowed. In small piggeries, there would be insufficient numbers of susceptible animals available to maintain a cycle of infection because there is no carrier state and, unlike parvovirus, environmental survival of this virus is poor. In large piggeries, infection may become endemic, with the infection being maintained in groups of pigs as they lose their maternally derived protection. In such a situation, it is important to maximize the opportunity for infection of all selected replacement breeding stock prior to mating.

The eradication of Menangle virus from an endemically infected pig population can be achieved by moving all the age groups in which infection is active, e.g., pigs between 10 and 16 weeks of age, to another site (Love et al. 2001). If affected facilities are cleaned, vacated for a few weeks, and then restocked with unexposed pigs or pigs known to be immune to the virus, the cycle of endemic infection in the herd should be broken and the virus eliminated naturally.

PUBLIC HEALTH

In contrast to Nipah virus, Menangle virus does not appear to be highly infectious for humans. However, care should be taken when working with potentially infected pigs or suspect reproductive specimens. Although only 2 out of more than 30 humans directly exposed to infected pigs became infected with the virus, both experienced a severe febrile illness associated with a macular rash followed by prolonged debility (Chant et al. 1998). There was no evidence of infection in a large number of other people, including veterinarians, abattoir workers, and laboratory workers, who had less direct and less protracted contact with potentially infective material. Transmission to humans may require the contamination of cuts and abrasions with infectious body fluids or tissues or possibly splashing of material onto the conjunctivae (Chant et al. 1998).
Nipah Virus

INTRODUCTION

Nipah virus is an important, recently recognized, zoonotic virus that caused a major epidemic in 1998–1999. Although confined to a relatively small geographic area in Southeast Asia, it was associated with significant human mortality. It is believed that this virus jumped from a wildlife reservoir to domestic pigs. From pigs, the virus spread to humans and to other domestic animals, such as cats, dogs, and horses. The virus was not contagious in cats or dogs, but it was associated with a high case fatality rate. In humans, an epidemic occurred in pig farm workers and in others involved in the handling of pigs.

ETIOLOGY

Nipah virus is a novel negative-stranded RNA virus in the family **Paramyxoviridae**. This virus and the related Hendra virus are the sole members of the new genus *Henipavirus* (Chua et al. 2000).

Nipah is a large pleomorphic virus similar to most paramyxoviruses. Virus particles vary in size, but have an average diameter of 500 nm. Surface spikes on the envelope are approximately 10 nm in length. The typical long “herringbone”-shaped nucleocapsids have a diameter of approximately 21 nm and an average length of 1.67 µm. Nipah virus replicates readily in several continuous cell lines, especially Vero and BHK-21, and produces suggestive cytopathic effects in 3–4 days. In Vero cells, virus replication induces large syncytia in which the cell nuclei are arranged around the periphery of the multinucleated cell. (Daniels et al. 2002). Antigenically, Nipah virus is closely related to Hendra virus and diagnostic reagents for Hendra virus have been utilized to assist Nipah virus investigations.

CLINICAL SIGNS

Nipah virus differs from most paramyxoviruses in that it causes a severe, often fatal disease in a number of species. The clinical signs observed as a consequence of Nipah virus infection in pigs vary in different age groups (Bunning et al. 2000; Nor et al. 2000).

In weaners and grower pigs, an acute febrile illness has been described with temperatures of 40°C and higher. Respiratory signs ranging from increased or forced respiration to a harsh, paroxysmal nonproductive cough (a loud barking cough) or open mouth breathing are prominent, especially if animals are forced to move. There may also be one or more neurological signs, such as muscle fasciculation, rear leg weakness, and varying degrees of spastic paresis and uncoordinated gait when driven and hurried. Illness may progress to lateral recumbency accompanied by thrashing of the limbs or tetanic spasms. Mortality in this age group is low, probably less than 5%. Animals that die may show blood-tinged discharge from the nose. Infection is frequently asymptomatic.

Sows and boars sometimes died suddenly with no overt illness or after a brief period of illness of less than 24 hours’ duration. A bloody nasal discharge was frequently apparent after death. Neurological signs were frequently observed and included head pressing, agitation (displayed as biting at the bars of the pen), tetanic spasms or seizures, an apparent pharyngeal muscle paralysis with an apparent inability to swallow, frothy salivation, and drooping of the tongue. Abortions were also reported.

Suckling pigs showed open mouth breathing, leg weakness with muscle tremors, and neurological twitches. Mortality was high in these young animals, but whether from primary disease or as a result of disease in the sow has not been clearly established.

None of the clinical signs described above is pathognomonic, although the barking cough is considered characteristic and the sudden deaths in sows and boars is unusual.

Nipah virus is a dangerous zoonotic agent. Disease and death in people may be the first indication of an outbreak. A full clinical description of Nipah virus-induced disease in humans has been provided by Chua et al. (1999) and Goh et al. (2000). Human Nipah virus infection presents as an encephalitis. Patients may show fever, headache, dizziness, and vomiting. The condition progresses in over 50% of cases to impaired consciousness accompanied by brain stem dysfunction (Goh et al. 2000).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The disease outbreak observed in Malaysia is presumed to be a result of virus ‘jumping’ species into farmed domestic pigs (Chua et al. 2000; Daniels 2000; Field et al. 2001; Yob et al. 2001). There is strong evidence for pteropid bats being a reservoir of this virus. A high prevalence of neutralizing antibodies has been detected in both of the species of wild bat (*P. vampirus* and *P. hyomelanus*) present in Malaysia (Yob et al. 2001). Nipah virus has also been isolated from wild *P. hyomelanus* in Malaysia (Chua et al. 2001).

The movement of infected pigs was the main means of spread of Nipah virus in Malaysia, resulting in the spread of the virus between farms, from state to state, and internationally to Singapore where abattoir workers processing Malaysian pigs became infected (Nnor 2001; Nor and Ong 2000; Nor et al. 2000; Paton et al. 1999). The outbreak probably originated from a point source...
(Lye et al. 2001), implying that the virus moved from its wildlife reservoir on only one occasion.

Human infection was associated with close human-to-pig contact with infected pigs (Parashar et al. 2000). Feeding or handling pigs and assisting with farrowing, treatment, and/or removal of sick or dead pigs were most likely to result in Nipah virus disease in people on infected farms. Living on an infected pig farm was not a significant risk factor.

The major route of excretion of Nipah virus from pigs is via the airways, although the pattern of human infection suggests spread via sputum or large droplets, rather than by fine aerosol. The coughing reported as a frequent clinical sign in infected pigs would facilitate such a mode of transmission.

Domestic animals other than pigs are susceptible to Nipah virus disease and appear to have become infected when there was potential for close contact with infected pigs. Large numbers of dogs died on infected farms, and clinically affected dogs were identified during investigations of the outbreak (Chua et al. 2000; Daniels et al. 2000). There was, however, no evidence of lateral transmission between dogs (Asiah et al. 2001). Cats were reported by farmers to have been affected. Experimentally, they were shown to be susceptible to infection and to excrete Nipah virus in urine (Muniandy 2001). Because virus was also isolated from the kidney of a clinically affected dog in Malaysia (Chua et al. 2000), urinary excretion by domestic carnivores may also be a possible method of spread. There was no evidence of transmission of Nipah virus among horses and serological studies of rodents on infected farms, and various other wildlife species showed no evidence of Nipah virus infection.

**PATHOGENESIS**

There have been no structured pathogenesis studies with Nipah virus in susceptible species. Therefore, information is limited mainly to observations of naturally occurring clinical cases.

Nipah virus infection in pigs causes an acute febrile infection that may be self-limiting or fatal. Seroconversion occurs at 10–14 days. There is no evidence that persistent infections occur, although the possibility cannot be excluded. Nipah virus primarily infects vascular endothelium. Respiratory epithelium is susceptible to infection in pigs, but infection has not been observed in the nervous system other than the meninges. Immunohistochemical studies of naturally infected pigs have shown large amounts of Nipah viral antigen in the respiratory epithelium at all levels of the lungs, including the minor and major airways and the trachea (Hooper et al. 2001).

**PATHOLOGY**

The most common syndrome in pigs is respiratory disease characterized by severe coughing. However, there is no pathognomonic gross pathology and concurrent pulmonary disease from other causes may be present. There is mild-to-severe pulmonary consolidation. On the cut surface, the interlobular septae may be distended, The bronchi and trachea are frequently filled with exudate or frothy fluid that is sometimes tinged with blood (Daniels et al. 2000; Hooper et al. 2001; Shahirudin 2001).

Histologically there is pneumonia at all levels, from the alveoli through to the epithelium of the trachea. Syncytial cells are present throughout the respiratory epithelium and in vascular endothelium. Alveolar macrophages are prominent and there appears to be an infiltration of neutrophils into diseased tissue in the absence of intercurrent infections. Viral antigen is readily detectable by immunohistochemistry in syncytia and in respiratory epithelium at all levels of the respiratory tract. In cases where there is neurological disease, there is a nonsuppurative meningoitis rather than encephalitis (Hooper et al. 2001; Middleton et al. 2002).

**DIAGNOSIS**

Nipah virus may be suspected if a clinical syndrome consistent with Nipah virus disease occurs on a pig farm in an area where there is opportunity for contact with pteropid bats. Nipah virus is classified as a Biosafety Level 4 (BSL4) agent and extreme care must be taken in the diagnosis of cases suspected to involve Nipah virus. Some aspects of laboratory diagnosis should be conducted only in a BSL4 laboratory. Ante- and postmortem sampling should be conducted in a manner that will exclude contact of unprotected personnel with body fluids from affected animals. Respiratory protection is advisable (Daniels et al. 2000).

Clinical diagnosis of Nipah virus is difficult because the infection does not produce pathognomonic clinical signs. Furthermore, clinical signs vary by the age and reproductive status of the animals affected. Thus, the differential diagnosis may vary with the age and class of pigs affected. The list of differential diagnoses should include those that cause sudden death in boars and/or sows; reproductive failure characterized by abortion; respiratory disease in any age group characterized by severe coughing; and neurological disease characterized by tremors, muscle fasciculation, and agonal thrashing of the limbs or tetanic spasms in lateral recumbency.

Nipah virus antigens have been demonstrated in formalin-fixed tissues, especially the lung and upper airways, meninges, spleen, and kidney (Daniels 2001). Demonstration of viral antigen in formalin-fixed postmortem samples is a rapid and safe option for confirmation of a diagnosis.

When isolates of virus are required, either for confirmation of a diagnosis or for additional research, it is preferable that virus isolation be conducted in a laboratory with a high level of biosecurity. Nipah virus has
been isolated from lung, spleen, kidney, tonsil, meninges, and lymph node collected at postmortem and from throat swabs, cerebrospinal fluid, or urine collected from live animals (Daniels 2001). Vero cells are preferred for virus isolation. Cytopathology may be observed within 2–3 days, but several passages of at least 5 days are usually conducted before declaring an isolation attempt unsuccessful. Cytopathology is characterized by the formation of large syncytia. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) has been developed as a diagnostic tool and it is likely that a retrospective confirmation could be achieved even with formalin-fixed tissues (Chua et al. 1999; Hooper and Williamson 2000).

For antibody detection, ELISA is the preferred method for routine screening because of the availability of inactivated reagents and the ability to test large numbers of samples quickly (Daniels 2001). However, the possibility that serum samples may contain infectious virus should not be overlooked. Testing of suitable numbers of pig sera by ELISA provides a rapid method for the exclusion of Nipah virus from disease episodes where Nipah virus infection may be considered and is also a valuable approach for confirming that populations are free of infection. Any ELISA reactors should be confirmed by the virus neutralization test (Daniels 2001), but because it employs the use of live virus in cell culture, secure laboratory facilities should be used.

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

As Nipah virus is a dangerous zoonotic agent, treatment of affected animals should not be considered.

In countries where Pteropid bats may be a reservoir of Nipah virus, pig farms should be managed to ensure that infection cannot be introduced (Choo 2001; Daniels 2001). That is, farms should be devoid of fruit trees and other vegetation that may attract the bats to the proximity of the animal housing. Strict biosecurity should be in place to preclude the importation of infected animals. If introductions are necessary for breeding or other purposes, a period of quarantine and isolation separate from the main herd should be enforced.

Control measures in cases of confirmed Nipah virus infection will reflect its extreme hazard as a zoonotic agent. It is essential to prevent spread of infection among domestic animals and to preclude the possibility of infection of humans. Rapid eradication is the recommended response. This was achieved in Malaysia by quarantine of infected premises and the culling of all susceptible animals on those premises. It is essential that quarantine and associated movement controls be enforced during this period of culling (Mangat 2001).

PUBLIC HEALTH

Nipah virus presents a serious threat to public health. In the outbreak in Malaysia, there were numerous human infections and deaths of pig farmers and other people who had close contact with pigs, including abattoir workers in a neighboring country. If there is a risk of an outbreak, it is essential to prevent the movement of all animals and minimize human contact with potentially infected animals.

In the last decade, new viral diseases affecting domestic animals and humans have emerged, with various species of fruit bats as the putative source. Such events would suggest a drastic change in the relationship between fruit bats and domestic animals. This may simply be a further reflection of the worldwide destruction of forest habitat, forcing the wild and domestic species into much closer associations. In Australia, the fruit bat population will remain a potential source of Menangle virus infection for pigs and possibly other species, just as Nipah virus poses a continuing threat in Malaysia. The risk that these viruses pose to pigs in other countries and to other animal species has not been determined, but should not be ignored, especially in countries where Pteropid bats are present.

REFERENCES


Muniandy N. 2001. Serological screening using ELISA for IgG and IgM. In Report of the regional seminar on Nipah virus infection. Tokyo, Office International des Epizooties Representation for Asia and the Pacific, pp. 73–76.


Influenza virus infections are a common and important cause of bronchointerstitial pneumonia and respiratory disease in pigs throughout large parts of the world. In any one animal, the disease is typically characterized by an abrupt onset and short course of fever, inappetence, lethargy, coughing, dyspnea, and nasal discharge. However, clinical illness may persist in a herd for several weeks as the virus spreads from pig to pig within the population. Influenza viruses also act synergistically with other viral or bacterial pathogens to cause porcine respiratory disease complex (PRDC). The overall course and severity of an influenza virus infection in a pig may be impacted by these co-infecting agents, the pig's age, overall health and immune status, and, potentially, the strain of influenza virus involved.

Beyond their significance to swine health, influenza virus infections in pigs also pose important human public health concerns, and the histories of influenza in pigs and people are closely linked. In the summer of 1918, an epizootic disease with many clinical and pathologic similarities to influenza in humans appeared among pigs in the north-central U.S., coincident with the 1918 influenza pandemic that killed 20–50 million people around the world. Koen (1919) unapologetically called the disease “flu” because of its similarities to the prevalent clinical disease of flu in human beings. Dorset et al. (1922) also reported on “hog flu” at the annual meeting of the American Veterinary Medical Association in 1922, providing descriptions of the disease that were similar to those given by Koen, and a discussant of the Dorset presentation commented that he believed he had seen a case of “hog flu” in Iowa (U.S.) 5–6 years prior to 1918. Furthermore, McBryde (1927) indicated that it was not uncommon to meet farmers and veterinarians who believed that they had contracted the disease from affected pigs, and he himself suffered an acute febrile disease similar to the hog flu he had been investigating in southeastern Iowa. Finally, Murray (1921) also reported on the nature of influenza in pigs in the U.S. and Beveridge (1977) noted that “... in the autumn of 1918 [Aladar Altmann], a Hungarian veterinarian described a disease of pigs which he believed was influenza.”

The etiology of swine influenza (SI) was confirmed in 1931 when Shope presented the first reliable experimental evidence that the disease in pigs was caused by a virus (Shope 1931), and 2 years later, Smith et al. (1933) demonstrated that influenza in human beings was also caused by a virus. “When the human pandemic of 1957 . . . first began to spread in Asian countries during the spring of that year, the World Health Organization (WHO) considered it opportune to attempt an animal serum survey in order to throw light on the animal component in the epidemiology of influenza” (Kaplan 1969). That study concluded that the Asian H2N2 strain could infect pigs, and by 1970, there was considerable serologic evidence that people whose occupations brought them into contact with pigs became infected with swine influenza viruses (SIVs). Furthermore, in 1974 and 1975 (Easterday 1986), infections in children were temporally linked to contact with infected pigs, and in 1976, cases of SIV infections occurred among Army recruits at Fort Dix, N.J. (Top and Russell 1977). In the fall of 1976, all speculation about the transmission of SIV from pigs to people came to an end when virus was isolated from pigs and their caretaker on a Wisconsin farm (Easterday et al. unpublished data; Hinshaw et al. 1978).

In more recent times, genetic analyses have confirmed that the early swine viruses and the human viruses of 1918 were closely related to one another, although it remains unclear as to whether a progenitor virus was transmitted from pigs to people or from people to pigs (reviewed in Taubenberger et al. 2001). Currently, more than 85 years since its appearance, SI continues to be an important economic factor in swine production and a public health concern.

**ETIOLOGY**

Influenza viruses are members of the virus family Orthomyxoviridae. They are pleomorphic, enveloped
viruses approximately 80–120 nm in diameter. The lipid envelope makes the viruses highly susceptible to detergents and most commonly used antiviral disinfectants. Influenza viruses encode up to 11 viral proteins on 7 to 8 separate segments of negative-sense RNA. The segmented nature of their genomes is a critical structural feature that allows influenza viruses to undergo genetic reassortment.

Influenza viruses are classified by type, subtype, and more recently, genotype. Of the A, B, and C types of influenza viruses (defined by differences in their matrix [M] and nucleoproteins [NP]), only influenza A viruses are of routine clinical significance as swine pathogens. Influenza A viruses are named using the following convention: A/species of origin/location of isolation/isolate number/year of isolation—e.g., A/Swine/Wisconsin/125/98. (If no species is designated, it is, by default, a human isolate.)

Influenza A virus subtypes are defined by the nature of the hemagglutinin (HA or H) and neuraminidase (NA or N) spike-like glycoproteins that project from the surface of the viral envelope. There are 16 different forms of HA and 9 different forms of NA that can be distinguished antigenically and genetically. The combination of HA and NA forms in a virus defines its subtype, e.g., H1N1, H3N2. Functionally, the HA (organized as trimers) binds to sialic acid (SA)-containing receptors and mediates virus infection of host cells. Sialic acid binding is also responsible for the erythrocyte agglutination that underlies virus detection by hemagglutination and hemagglutination-inhibition (HI) serologic assays. The HA protein also contains the major antigenic sites to which neutralizing antibodies (Abs) are directed. The NA protein (organized as tetramers) catalyzes cleavage of sialic acid from adjacent sugar residues, and, thereby, may function to prevent viroin aggregation and to enhance the release of budded virus particles. (See Lamb and Krug 2001 and Wright and Webster 2001 for detailed reviews of influenza virus structure and genetics.)

To understand the epidemiology and evolution of influenza A viruses, it is becoming increasingly important to both subtype and genotype viruses. Genotyping is conducted by determining the genetic sequence of each viral RNA segment and then subjecting the sequences to phylogenetic analyses. These analyses define the evolutionary lineages (based on host species and geographic region of the world) from which each gene originated. Genotyping has been extremely important in recent years for understanding the origins of reassortant SIVs isolated in Europe, Asia, and North America.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Historically, outbreaks of SI in northern climates of the U.S. and western Europe occurred most frequently during the late fall through early winter months, often in association with the onset of colder temperatures and cold autumn rains (Easterday 1980; Easterday and Van Reeth 1999). However, studies have clearly demonstrated that SIVs circulate year-round (Hinshaw et al. 1978; Olsen et al. 2000), and as swine production has increasingly been conducted in total confinement, the seasonal pattern of clinical disease has become less prominent.

Influenza viruses are most commonly introduced into herds with the movement of animals. The primary route of virus transmission is through pig-to-pig contact via the nasopharyngeal route, with virus being shed in nasal secretions at titers of $\approx 10^7$ infectious particles per ml at the peak of shedding (typically 2–5 days after exposure) (Landolt et al. 2003; Van Reeth et al. 2003a). Once the virus has been introduced into a herd, it may continue to circulate as long as susceptible pigs are available. In all-in/all-out systems, the virus should disappear because of the cycle of depopulation and disinfection of facilities. Nonetheless, virus may be reintroduced with new pigs, thus accounting for what appears to be virus persistence on a farm.

The existence of an SI carrier state has been postulated to account for interepidemic persistence of SIVs and, historically, maintenance of influenza viruses on premises was hypothesized to occur via lungworms and earthworms (Shope 1941). However, there is no clear proof of these mechanisms and it appears more likely that virus is maintained through continual availability of susceptible pigs.

**Pandemiology and Evolution**

Understanding the pandemiology (global epidemiology) and evolution of influenza viruses in pigs requires an understanding of the ecology and epidemiology of influenza viruses in other species.

In horses, marine mammals, poultry, and human beings—as in pigs—influenza viruses may cause clinically and/or economically important disease. In contrast, influenza viruses in waterfowl and shorebirds are generally highly host-adapted, rarely cause disease, and exhibit low evolutionary rates (“evolutionary stasis”) (reviewed in Gorman et al. 1990, Webster and Kawoaka 1994, Webster et al. 1992, and Wright and Webster 2001). All 16 HA and 9 NA subtypes of influenza A viruses have been recovered from aquatic birds. In these species, influenza A viruses replicate primarily in enteroocytes and, thus, are shed in feces and can contaminate lake water (Hinshaw et al. 1980; Webster et al. 1978). Consequently, aquatic birds provide an omnipresent, global reservoir of influenza viruses. Phylogenetic data indicate that aquatic birds were also the evolutionary progenitors of the lineages of influenza A viruses in mammals (reviewed in Webster et al. 1992 and Wright and Webster 2001). However, only H1, H3, N1, and N2 subtype viruses have established stable lineages and circulated widely among pigs.
**Classical H1N1 Swine Influenza Viruses.** Viruses of the classical H1N1 lineage were the dominant cause of influenza among pigs in North America from their first isolation by Shope in 1930 through the 1990s (Arora et al. 1983; Chambers et al. 1991; Hinshaw et al. 1978; Morin et al. 1981; Olsen et al. 2000). Classical H1N1 viruses have also been isolated from pigs in South America, Europe, and Asia (reviewed in Brown 2000 and Olsen et al. 2004). Beyond domestic pigs, there is also evidence for infection of wild pigs with classical H1N1 viruses (Ludwig et al. 1994; Wood et al. 1997). SIVs (Saliki et al. 1998), as well as transmission to domestic turkeys (Hinshaw et al. 1983; Wright et al. 1992).

The classical H1N1 SIVs in the U.S. remained antigenically and genetically highly conserved from 1965 through the 1980s (Luoh et al. 1992; Noble et al. 1993; Sheerar et al. 1989), but antigenic and genetic variants of classical H1N1 viruses were isolated during the 1990s (Dea et al. 1992; Olsen et al. 1993, 2000; Rekik et al. 1994).

**Transmission of Human Influenza Viruses to Pigs.** There is only limited evidence for maintenance of human H1N1 influenza viruses after natural introduction into swine populations (reviewed in Brown 2000), but human H3N2 viruses have been recovered frequently from pigs in Asia and Europe (reviewed in Brown 2000 and Olsen et al. 2004). There is also evidence for genetic/antigenic drift among the H3N2 viruses that have persistently circulated among pigs in Europe (de Jong et al. 1999), but the drift is relatively minor when compared to that in the human population. In North America, human H3N2 viruses have been recovered from pigs much less frequently (Bikour et al. 1995; Hinshaw et al. 1978; Karasin et al. 2000c), but introduction of a human H3N2 influenza virus into the pig population was likely a critical factor in the emergence of the reassortant viruses that now dominate the swine population in the U.S.

**Transmission of Avian Influenza Viruses to Pigs.** Experimental infection studies have shown that pigs can be infected with a wide range of avian influenza viruses (AIVs) (Kida et al. 1994) and naturally acquired infections of pigs with AIVs have also been documented from multiple areas of the world. There have been at least three independent introductions of distinct, wholly avian, H1N1 viruses to pigs (Brown 2000; Guan et al. 1996; Karasin et al. 2004; Pensaert et al. 1981). In particular, an avian H1N1 virus introduced into pigs in Europe in the late 1970s spread throughout much of the European continent and United Kingdom and ultimately became a dominant cause of SI in these areas (Brown et al. 1997b; Donatelli et al. 1991; Scholtesse et al. 1983). These avian-like H1N1 viruses have also undergone genetic/antigenic drift (Brown et al. 1997b; de Jong et al. 2001) and have spread from pigs to domestic turkeys (Ludwig et al. 1994; Wood et al. 1997).

Elsewhere in the world, serum antibodies against avian H4, H5, and H9 viruses have been detected in pigs in China (Ninomiya et al. 2002); avian H1N1, H3N2, and H9N2 viruses have been isolated from Asian pigs (Guan et al. 1996; Kida et al. 1988; Peiris et al. 2001a,b); and avian H4N6, H3N3, and H1N1 viruses have been recovered from pigs in Canada (Karasin et al. 2000b, 2004).

**Reassortant Influenza Virus Infections in Pigs.** The segmented nature of the influenza genome allows two viruses that co-infect a single host to exchange RNA segments during viral replication. Pigs are susceptible to infection with both human and avian influenza A viruses because the cells of their respiratory tract express both the SAα2,6Gal receptors that are preferentially used by human influenza viruses and the SAα2,3Gal receptors preferred by avian influenza viruses (Ito 2000; Ito et al. 1999a, 2000; Suzuki et al. 1997). Several different forms of reassortant viruses have been isolated from pigs in the U.S. and around the world (Olsen 2002a,b).

**Reassortant H3N2 Viruses.** Reassortant viruses with mixtures of human and classical swine virus genes have been isolated from pigs in Asia and the U.S. (Nerome et al. 1995; Shu et al. 1994; Zhou et al. 1999). In addition, H3N2 viruses with human HA and NA genes and avian internal protein genes have been isolated from pigs in Asia (Peiris et al. 2001a) and are currently the dominant H3N2 virus among pigs in Europe (Campitelli et al. 1997; Castrucci et al. 1993; Lin et al. 2004). Finally, unique “triple reassortant” H3N2 viruses have been isolated frequently from pigs throughout the U.S. since 1998. These viruses contain HA, NA, and PB1 polymerase genes of human influenza virus origin; NP, M, and NS genes of classical swine H1N1 virus origin; and PB2 and PA polymerase genes of North American avian virus origin (Karasin et al. 2000c; Webby et al. 2000; Zhou et al. 1999). Infection with some of the triple reassortant viruses has been associated not only with respiratory disease, but also spontaneous abortion in sows and death of adult pigs (Karasin et al. 2000c; Zhou et al. 1999). These fatal outcomes are uncommon with classical H1N1 swine viruses, and it remains to be determined whether the reassortant virus-associated abortions are due to direct viral effects or simply to high fevers in the affected animals.

**Reassortant H1N2 Viruses.** Soon after the initial isolations of the triple reassortant H3N2 viruses, influenza-like illness and abortions were associated with infection of pigs in the U.S. with an H1N2 virus. Phylogenetic analyses demonstrated that this virus retained the overall genotype of the triple reassortant H3N2 viruses but had acquired an H1 HA gene through reassortment with a classical H1N1 swine virus (Karasin et al. 2000a). Similar H1N2 viruses subsequently spread throughout
the swine population of the U.S. (Choi et al. 2002a,b; Karasin et al. 2002), as well as into domestic turkeys in Missouri (Suarez et al. 2002) and into wild waterfowl in North Carolina (Olsen et al. 2003).

Until 1999, H1N2 viruses had not previously been reported among pigs in North America. However, H1N2 viruses had been recovered from pigs in Japan (Ito et al. 1998b; Nerome et al. 1985; Ouchi et al. 1996; Shimada et al. 2003; Sugimura et al. 1980), France (Gourreau et al. 1994), and Taiwan (Tsai and Pan 2003). These H1N2 viruses were reassortants between human (or human-like swine lineage) H3N2, and classical swine H1N1 viruses. Human-avian reassortant H1N2 viruses were first isolated from pigs in the U.K. in 1994 (Brown et al. 1995, 1998) and subsequently spread to the rest of Europe (Marozin et al. 2002; Schrader and Suss 2003; Van Reeth et al. 2000, 2003a,b). These viruses typically contained human-lineage HA and NA genes and internal protein genes derived from the avian-like European H1N1 swine viruses, although some H1N2 viruses from Italian pigs have contained an avian-like swine H1 HA gene (Marozin et al. 2002).

Reassortant H1N1 Viruses. Since 1998, reassortant H1N1 viruses with classical swine H1N1 HA and NA genes and remaining genes from reassortant H3N2 or H1N2 swine viruses have been isolated in the U.S. This virus genotype was first isolated from a human being with influenza-like illness in Wisconsin who had had direct contact with a pig (Cooper et al. 1999). However, viruses of this genotype have been isolated frequently from pigs in the U.S. since 2001 (Olsen et al. unpublished data; Webby et al. 2002), and current surveillance activities suggest that this has become the predominant genotype of H1N1 virus within the North American swine population (Olsen and Webby, unpublished data).

Reassortant H1N7 and H3N1 Swine Influenza Viruses. These subtypes have been identified among pigs on only a very limited basis. Influenza virus of H1N7 subtype was isolated in 1992 from pigs on a single farm in the U.K.. This virus contained A/Equine/Prague/1/56-like NA and M genes, with the remaining genes being of human influenza virus origin, and was of low pathogenicity in pigs infected experimentally (Brown et al. 1994, 1997a). Reassortant H3N1 viruses (human H3N2 X classical swine H1N1 viruses) have been recovered from pigs in the United Kingdom and Taiwan (Brown unpublished data; Tsai and Pan 2003).

Public Health Aspects

The occurrence of influenza virus infections in pigs poses two important public health issues: zoonotic infections of people with swine influenza viruses and the potential for pigs to serve as hosts for the creation of novel viruses of pandemic potential for the human population.

Zoonotic infections (including fatal infections) with SIVs have been reported in the U.S., Asia, and Europe. Most of these were classical H1N1 SIV infections. However, the wholly avian H1N1 viruses from European pigs, reassortant H3N2 viruses with avian internal protein genes from pigs in Europe and Hong Kong, and a reassortant H1N1 virus from pigs in the U.S. have also been recovered from human beings (reviewed in Alexander and Brown 2000, Olsen 2002a, and Olsen et al. 2002, 2004). The majority of zoonotic SIV infections have involved individuals in direct contact with pigs, and serologic studies in both Europe and the U.S. have documented increased rates of SIV exposure among persons in contact with pigs (Kluska et al. 1961; Nowotny et al. 1997; Schnurrenberger et al. 1970; Woods et al. 1968, 1981). In addition, a study of swine farm personnel and family members in the U.S. (compared to regional urban control subjects) recently found that SIV seropositivity was statistically associated with being a farm owner or farm family member, living on a farm, or entering a swine barn 4 or more days per week (Olsen et al. 2002). Nonetheless, there are examples of zoonotic SIV infections without apparent animal contact. Although such cases suggest the possibility of human-to-human spread of a virus after initial pig-to-person transmission, with the exception of the Fort Dix incident (Top and Russell 1977), there is little evidence for spread of swine viruses from person to person.

It has also been demonstrated that older lineages of human H3N2 viruses may be maintained by circulation in pigs beyond the time of their active circulation among human beings (reviewed in Brown 2000 and Olsen et al. 2004). Subsequent reintroduction of these viruses into the human population would be a particular concern for young children, because they would be immunologically naive to viruses that circulated prior to their birth.

Finally, because of their susceptibility to infection with influenza viruses of both avian and human origins (reviewed in Ito 2000; Ito et al. 1998a), pigs have also been suggested to be “mixing vessel” hosts in which pandemic human influenza viruses emerge through genetic reassortment (Scholtissee and Naylor 1988; Scholtissee et al. 1985; and reviewed in Brown 2000, Webster et al. 1992, Scholtissee et al. 1998, and Wright and Webster 2001).

PATHOGENESIS

Infection with SIV is generally limited to the respiratory tract, with virus replication demonstrated in epithelial cells of the nasal mucosa, tonsils, trachea, lungs, and tracheobronchial lymph nodes (Brown et al. 1993; Heinen et al. 2000; Lanza et al. 1992). Viremia of low titer and short duration has only rarely been detected (Brown et al. 1993). Similarly, attempts to demonstrate
virus replication in extrarespiratory sites have been largely unsuccessful (Choi et al. 2004).

SI is an acute infection and virus clearance is extremely rapid. In most experimental studies, nasal virus shedding begins on day 1 postinoculation (PI) and ceases within 7 days. Likewise, SIV could not be isolated from lungs or other respiratory tract tissues after day 7 (Brown et al. 1993; Choi et al. 2004).

The lungs are clearly the major target organ. Virus titers in the lungs may be \(10^8\) egg infectious dose 50 (EID_{50}) per gram of tissue (Haesebrouck and Pensaert 1986; Van Reeth et al. 1998), and immunofluorescence (IF) and immunohistochemical (IHC) studies demonstrate the virus' highly specific tropism for bronchiolar epithelium (Born et al. 1998; Brown et al. 1993; Haesebrouck and Pensaert 1986; Van Reeth et al. 1998). Up to 100% of the epithelial lining of bronchi/bronchioles and large numbers of alveolar epithelial cells may be positive by IF staining. Typically, bronchi and bronchioles contain exudate with degenerated and detached mucosal cells and neutrophils. However, by 2–3 days after inoculation, lung virus titers and numbers of virus-positive cells begin to decline.

Infection with SIV can be easily reproduced experimentally using intranasal (IN), aerosol, or intratracheal (IT) inoculation routes. However, reproduction of typical SI clinical signs and pathology is most reproducibly accomplished by IT inoculation of high doses of virus \((\geq 10^{7.5} \text{EID}_{50})\) (Maes et al. 1984). Less invasive methods, such as IN inoculation, may result in mild or entirely subclinical infections (Larsen et al. 2000; Van Reeth and Pensaert 1994).

Direct cell damage by influenza viruses has been attributed to apoptosis caused by NA and/or PB1F2 proteins (Gibbs et al. 2003; Morris et al. 1999; Schultz-Cherry and Hinshaw 1996). However, proinflammatory cytokines produced by the host during the very acute stage of an infection probably play a critical role in SI disease development. Support for this comes from studies of the lungs of SIV-infected pigs for interferon-\(\alpha\) (IFNa), tumor necrosis factor-\(\alpha\) (TNFa), interleukin-1 (IL1) and interleukin-6 (IL6) (Van Reeth et al. 1998, 2002). These cytokines are known to induce lung dysfunction and inflammation, fever, malaise, and loss of appetite, and they can enhance each other's effects. In IT infection experiments, excessive levels of all 4 cytokines were found in lung lavage fluids within 18–24 hours PI, when lung virus titers, neutrophil infiltration in the lungs, and clinical signs peaked. In contrast, IN inoculations of SIV produced lower lung virus titers and failed to induce high cytokine levels, and these infections remained clinically mild or subclinical.

Thus, the amount of virus that reaches the deeper airways and the resulting production of infectious virus likely determine the extent of cytokine production in the lungs, which in turn determines the severity of illness. Many cytokines, however, also have antiviral and immunostimulating effects and thus may contribute to clearance of influenza viruses. Therefore, the specific role of individual cytokines during SIV infection merits further study.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Infection with influenza A viruses is typically a herd disease due to rapid spread of virus. Infections with H1N1, H1N2, and H3N2 subtype viruses are clinically similar, and viruses of all subtypes have been associated with acute respiratory episodes in most European countries (reviewed in Brown 2000) and in the U.S. (Karasin et al. 2000a, c, 2002; Zhou et al. 1999). Disease onset is sudden, after an incubation period of 1–3 days. Disease signs typically appear in a large percentage of animals of all ages within a herd or epidemiological unit.

The signs of SI are essentially as they were described in the 1920s (Dorset et al. 1922; McBryde 1927; Shope 1931). Initial signs include pyrexia, anorexia, inactivity, prostration, huddling, and reluctance to rise. Conjunctivitis, rhinitis, nasal discharge, sneezing, coughing, and weight loss may also be observed. The disease may progress to open-mouthed breathing and dyspnea, especially when animals are forced to move. Morbidity is high (near 100%), but mortality typically is low (usually less than 1%) unless there are concurrent infections and/or the pigs are very young. Generally, recovery begins 5–7 days after onset and is as sudden and remarkable as the onset.

Acute outbreaks of clinically typical SI, as described above, are generally limited to fully susceptible, seronegative pigs, including unprotected nursery pigs or older pigs. For instance, in Europe, the sudden reintroduction of influenza viruses into temporarily seronegative breeding-fattening farms has been associated frequently with acute disease in pigs of 50 kg and greater (Loeffen, personal communication). In contrast, breeding animals that have acquired active immunity as a result of previous infections and their maternally immune offspring mostly remain unaffected. Subclinical infections are evidenced by the high seroprevalence of virus subtypes in finishing pigs in the absence of significant respiratory disease during the fattening period and isolation of virus from pigs with no signs of illness (Hinshaw et al. 1978).

However, multiple factors beyond immune status, e.g., age, infection pressure, concurrent infections, climatic conditions, housing, may interact to affect the clinical outcome of SIV infection. For example, it is widely recognized that secondary infections with any of a number of bacterial pathogens, e.g., *Actinobacillus pleuropneumonia*, *Pasteurella multocida*, Mycoplamsa hyopneumoniae, *Haemophilus parasuis*, and *Streptococcus suis* type 2, impact the severity and course of infections with SIVs. More recent observations under natural conditions suggest that respiratory viruses can also act as complicating
factors. The prevalence of dual or triple infections with influenza virus(es) and either porcine respiratory coronavirus (PRCV) or porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRSV) is extremely high in intensive fattening units in Europe (Houben et al. 1995; Madec et al. 1987; Van Reeth and Pensaert 1994). The hypothesis that influenza viruses may precipitate disease in combination with other respiratory viruses has been supported by experimental dual infection studies (Van Reeth and Pensaert 1994; Van Reeth et al. 1996, 2001c). In these studies, fever, respiratory disease, and growth retardation were significantly more severe and lasting in dual infections as compared to single virus infected pigs. Nevertheless, unknown factors may impact the development of disease following dual virus infections, because in other studies, clinical signs were not enhanced following simultaneous inoculation of pigs with PRCV and either H1N1 or H3N2 viruses (Lanza et al. 1992; Van Reeth et al. 2001c).

Subsequent to an influenza outbreak in a herd, producers and veterinarians occasionally report reduced reproductive performance through increased infertility, abortion, small weak litters, and stillbirths. However, there is insufficient data to conclude that SI viruses have a specific and direct relationship to the occurrence of reproductive problems and, with rare exceptions (Madec et al. 1989; Woods and Mansfield 1974; Young and Underdahl 1949), influenza viruses are not thought to infect the reproductive tract of pigs.

LESIONS

The gross lesions found in uncomplicated SI are mainly those of a viral pneumonia. Abnormalities are most often limited to the apical and cardiac lobes of the lung. The percent of lung tissue with grossly visible consolidation varies greatly within and between experimental infection studies, but more than 50% of the lung may be affected by 4–5 days PI (Born et al. 1998; Richt et al. 2003). Generally, there is a sharp line of demarcation between the affected and normal lung tissue, and the involved areas will be purple and firm. Some interlobular edema may be evident, airways may be filled with blood-tinged fibrinous exudates, and the associated bronchial and mediastinal lymph nodes are usually enlarged. In naturally occurring SI, however, these lesions may be complicated or masked by concurrent infections, especially bacterial.

Microscopically, the hallmark of an SI infection is necrosis of lung epithelia and desquamation of the bronchial epithelial cell layer (Haesebrouck et al. 1985; Haesebrouck and Pensaert 1986). Within 24 hours after experimental IT inoculation, the airways are plugged with inflammatory and necrotic epithelial cells, mainly neutrophils. In lung lavage fluids collected at this stage of infection, neutrophils may account for up to 50% of the cell population, and macrophages are the dominant cells in uninfected, healthy pigs (Van Reeth et al. 1998). The neutrophils not only cause obstruction of the airways, but they probably also contribute to lung damage by release of their enzymes. After a few days, there is peribronchial and perivascular infiltration of lymphocytes (Richt et al. 2003). Similar pathologic lesions have been observed in clinically typical SIV outbreaks in the field (Done et al. 1996). Like clinical signs, however, lung lesions can also be mild or unremarkable.

Lastly, a proliferative and necrotizing pneumonia (PNP) characterized by a marked proliferation of type II pneumocytes and coagulates of necrotic cells in the alveoli has been associated with strains of H1N1 and H3N2 SIV (Dea et al. 1992; Girard et al. 1992; Morin et al. 1990). However, recent studies have indicated that PRRSV is the key etiologic agent of this condition (Drolet et al. 2003).

IMMUNITY

The adaptive immune response to SIV infection includes both production of antibodies and cell-mediated immunity (CMI). Antibody responses may develop to the HA, NA, M, and NP proteins. However, only antibodies to the globular head region of the HA can block attachment of the virus to host cell receptors and, thus, neutralize viral infectivity. These antibodies can be measured in virus neutralization (VN) or HI assays. Antibodies to the NA, M, and NP proteins cannot prevent the initiation of infection, but they can mediate killing of infected cells by other antibody-dependent mechanisms. Cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) are mainly directed to the internal NP and M proteins in mouse models of influenza, and to a lesser degree to the HA and NA. Although CTLs are not capable of preventing infection, they may play a key role in clearing virus from the lungs.

The immune response to SIV infection is remarkably rapid and efficient and results in complete elimination of the virus from the respiratory tract within 1 week PI. T cell responses have been detected from 7 days PI onward (Heinen et al. 2001a, b; Larsen et al. 2000). HI antibodies in serum can be detected by 7–10 days PI and peak at titers of 1:160 to 1:320 by 2–3 weeks PI (Heinen et al. 2000; Larsen et al. 2000). Antibody titers will remain high for several weeks before beginning to decline by 8–10 weeks PI (Van Reeth et al. 2004, and unpublished data). Using highly sensitive ELISA techniques, HA-specific antibodies have been detected in serum as early as day 3 and in nasal secretions on day 4 after inoculation (Lee et al. 1995). Post infection pig sera also contain antibodies to the NA and NP (Heinen et al. 2000, 2001a; Van Reeth et al. 2003a), and anti-NP Abs have also been found in nasal and lung lavage fluids (Heinen et al. 2000). As would be expected, IgM and later IgG, were the dominant isotypes in serum, whereas IgA was the main isotype in nasal washes (Heinen et al. 2000;
Larsen et al. (2000). Larsen et al. (2000) demonstrated antibody-secreting cells in nasal mucosal tissue, which proved that antibodies were locally produced in the respiratory tract of pigs. Antibodies at the lung level are, at least in part, transudated from serum, as suggested by the dominance of virus-specific IgG in bronchoalveolar lavage samples of pigs (Heinen et al. 2000) and other species (White and Fenner 1994). However, substantial IgA levels were also found in lung lavage fluids of SIV-infected pigs (Larsen et al. 2000), and local antibody production in the lung parenchyma cannot be excluded.

After primary infection with SIV, there is solid protection against reinfection with the same or a similar virus strain. Pigs that had been experimentally infected with H1N1 or H3N2 SIV were completely protected against virus replication in the lungs and nose when rechallenged with homologous virus at 6 and 9 weeks after the initial infection, respectively (Heinen et al. 2001b; Larsen et al. 2000). However, the exact duration of protection is not known. HA-specific VN antibodies are likely the main mediators of this “homologous” immunity. Protection studies to prove the role of other immune mechanisms in the pigs are still lacking.

Because of the concurrent circulation of different subtypes of influenza viruses in Europe and in the U.S., pigs may be exposed to multiple, antigenically different, SIVs during their lifetime. Limited cross-protection (reduced virus shedding and clinical illness severity) between the current European H1N1, H3N2, and H1N2 SIVs was demonstrated in experimental infection studies (Heinen et al. 2001a; Van Reeth et al. 2003a), possibly because these viruses have almost identical NP and M proteins despite very different HA and NA proteins (Van Reeth et al. 2004). The true significance of these data for the field situation is still unknown, as are the immune mechanisms that mediate this “broad” protection. Additionally, protection after vaccination is more subtype-specific (Van Reeth et al. 2003b).

The presence of high titers of VN serum antibodies, reaching the lungs by diffusion, is sufficient to reduce SIV replication in the lungs of vaccinated pigs and protect against disease (Haesebrouck and Pensaert 1986). Protection from nasal virus shedding, on the other hand, appears to be minimal in vaccinated pigs (Macklin et al. 1998; Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 2000). This may be due to a lack of virus-specific IgA antibodies in the nasal mucosa.

Maternally derived antibodies can protect young pigs against SIV, but they will also interfere with the development of an active antibody response to vaccination. Maternal SIV antibody levels in newborn pigs are dependent on antibody levels in the dam, they decline over time, and their precise duration can vary from about 4–14 weeks. In experimental studies, none of the pigs with maternal antibodies were completely protected from nasal virus shedding upon challenge, but some pigs showed complete protection of the lungs (Labarque et al. 2004; Loeffen et al. 2003; Renshaw 1975). Pigs with high passive antibody levels did not develop an immune response to the infection and they remained fully susceptible to reinfection with the same virus; a weak and delayed active immune response was seen in pigs with lower levels of maternal antibodies (Loeffen et al. 2003; Renshaw 1975). Recent studies have also confirmed that maternal immunity does not cross-protect between subtypes (Choi et al. 2004; Labarque et al. 2004).

**DIAGNOSIS**

A clinical diagnosis of SI is presumptive only because there are no pathognomonic signs and SI must be differentiated from a variety of respiratory diseases of swine. A definite diagnosis is possible only in the laboratory, either through isolation of virus, detection of viral proteins or nucleic acid, or demonstration of virus-specific antibodies.

Isolation of SIV from live animals is typically undertaken on samples of mucus obtained by swabbing the nasal passages or, in the case of very small pigs where it is difficult to swab the nasal passages, the pharynx. Virus is most likely to be found in nasal and pharyngeal secretions during the febrile period of illness. Samples should be collected on polyester (e.g., Dacron), not cotton, swabs. Swabs should be suspended in a suitable transport medium (such as glycerol saline) and kept cold (refrigerator temperature, 4°C) during transport to the laboratory. If the samples for virus isolation can be tested within 48 hours after collection, they should be maintained at 4°C. If the samples must be held longer, storage at −70°C is recommended. SIVs are not stable at −20°C. Filtration of the samples should be avoided to conserve small amounts of virus that might be in the transport medium. Adventitious bacterial and fungal agents may be controlled with the addition of appropriate antimicrobial agents to the transport medium.

Virus may also be isolated from trachea or lung tissues of pigs that die or are euthanized during the acute stage of the disease. The tissue material should be held under the same conditions as swab material until ready for culturing. Before testing, the tissue is homogenized in a sterile saline preparation.

Methods for the isolation of virus have been described in detail (Swenson and Foley 2004). Briefly, the virus can be cultivated in embryonated fowl’s eggs, generally by allantoic cavity inoculation of 10- to 11-day-old eggs and subsequent incubation at 35°C for 72 hours. SIVs do not typically kill the embryo, but virus can be detected in allantoic fluid using the hemagglutination assay (generally using chicken or turkey erythrocytes), which provides presumptive evidence for the presence of an influenza virus. Up to two blind passages may be required to confirm the absence of virus. Repeated pas-
Serological tests are used to demonstrate the presence of influenza specific antibodies. Diagnosis of acute SIV infection by serology requires the use of paired acute and convalescent (3–4 weeks later) serum samples and appropriate antigens.

Although ELISA assays have become commercially available for SIV, HI remains the most common test for anti-SIV antibody detection. The diagnostician must be aware of the possible presence of nonspecific inhibitors and nonspecific agglutinins in swine serum that may interfere with the HI test. Sera should be treated to reduce or destroy such activity, although some treatments may lower specific antibody levels. The most widely used method is treatment with receptor-destroying enzyme and absorption with chicken erythrocytes (Swenson and Foley 2004). There is considerable antigenic heterogeneity in viruses of the same subtype circulating in pigs because of antigenic drift and lineage variations in different geographical areas of the world. Therefore, the choice of potential viruses for use as antigens in serologic assays should ensure that the strains are well-matched to the current epidemic viruses in a region, country, or continent (Brown et al. 1997b; de Jong et al. 1999; Karasin et al. 2002; Olsen et al. 2000; Richt et al. 2003).

Other assays, such as the VN test (Brown, Olsen, unpublished data) or single radial hemolysis test (Ogawa et al. 1978) have been applied to testing pigs for influenza antibodies. Although these assays do not require pre-treatment of sera, they are more appropriate for use in specialized laboratories.

Positive diagnosis of SIV by serological and virological methods among suckling or weanling pigs from dams with antibodies to the virus may be complicated. It has been shown that weanling pigs with maternal antibodies may be infected and may shed virus. The rate of virus recovery and severity of signs of disease are inversely related to levels of maternal antibody (Easterday 1971; Renshaw 1975). In addition, the level of antibody in the convalescent-phase serum will be lower than in the acute-phase serum because of the inhibition of active antibody production by maternal antibody (Easterday 1971; Mensik 1960, 1963, 1966; Renshaw 1975). After maternal antibody is depleted, pigs may be infected again, shed virus, present with signs of disease, and produce a typical primary antibody response.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

Vaccination and biosecurity remain the primary means of preventing SI in pigs. Commercial inactivated and adjuvanted SIV vaccines for intramuscular administration are available both in Europe and the U.S. Primary vaccination should consist of two injections 2–4 weeks apart. Biannual booster vaccinations are recommended for sows.

SIV vaccine strain composition differs between continents because of the antigenic and genetic differences between SIVs circulating in Europe and the U.S. Vaccines for use in Europe were first licensed during the mid-1980s and contain both subtypes that were prevalent at that time, H1N1 and H3N2. Most of the current vaccines still contain the older human New Jersey/76 (H1N1) and Port Chalmers/73 (H3N2) strains. Whole virus vaccines, as well as “split” vaccines (produced from disrupted highly purified influenza virus) are available. In the U.S., a monovalent H1N1 SIV vaccine was first introduced in 1993. After the emergence of
H3N2 influenza viruses in the U.S. swine population in 1998, monovalent and bivalent (H1N1/H3N2) SIV vaccines became available. The current U.S. vaccines primarily contain a classical H1N1 virus and a triple reassortant H3N2 virus, although a trivalent vaccine also containing reassortant H1N1 virus has recently become available. Autogenous vaccines containing herd-specific strains are also used in the U.S.

Most SIV vaccine efficacy data are from experimental vaccination-challenge studies in which SIV-seronegative pigs are vaccinated twice with commercial vaccine and challenged with virulent SIV 2–6 weeks after the second vaccination. Several studies with European vaccines used a severe IT challenge that results in typical SIV symptoms and high lung virus titers within 24 hours post challenge in unvaccinated controls, but vaccination with New Jersey/76 (H1N1)- and/or Port Chalmers/73 (H3N2)-based commercial vaccines could completely prevent virus replication in the lungs and disease (Haesebrouck and Pensaert 1986; Vandeputte et al. 1986). Based on reports of minor antigenic drift in European H1N1 and H3N2 SIVs during the late 1990s (de Jong et al. 1999, 2001), replacement of the vaccine strains by more recent strains has been considered. In studies in pigs, however, the commercial vaccine still induced high antibody titers to recent H1N1 and H3N2 strains and excellent clinical and virological protection (Heinen et al. 2001b; Van Reeth et al. 2001a,b). Thus, there are no scientific arguments to update H1N1 or H3N2 strains. However, addition of an H1N2 component to these vaccines deserves serious consideration because there is no antigenic cross-reactivity between the European H1N2 virus and the H1N1 and H3N2 strains in the vaccine and because current vaccines failed to protect against H1N2 challenge in experimental infection studies (Van Reeth et al. 2003b).

In studies with U.S. vaccines, challenge has more commonly been by the IN route, and nasal virus shedding was usually the main parameter used to evaluate protection. Complete protection from infection could not be demonstrated, but vaccination could reduce H1N1 challenge virus titers in nasal swabs by 1–2 log_{10} infectious units. Virus titers in the lungs of vaccinated pigs and macroscopic lung lesion scores were also reduced (Brown and McMillen 1994; Macklin et al. 1998; Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 2000). A bivalent U.S. SIV vaccine was shown to cross-protect against challenge with a 2002 H3N2 isolate that showed genetic drift from the vaccine H3N2 strain (Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 2003).

Though there has to be antigenic overlap between vaccine and challenge strains, antigenic and genetic analyses are not the most accurate predictors of vaccine strain performance. Challenge tests in pigs clearly remain the best measure of vaccine efficacy. Factors other than the nature of the vaccine strains—i.e., the antigenic dose and adjuvant, the health of the pigs at the time of vaccination, proper vaccine administration and timing—all affect vaccine efficacy. Vaccines with higher antigenic doses will generally be more effective, and highly immunostimulatory oil-based adjuvants are used with most commercial vaccines, although the exact adjuvant formulation may differ among vaccines. New generation adjuvants like Quil A and a combination of Quil A, and alhydrogel also induced high antibody titers when administered with an experimental SIV vaccine (Bikour et al. 1994).

HI antibody titers after administration of two doses of vaccine to seronegative pigs generally range from 1:20 to 1:640, but there may be considerable variation between vaccines and different experiments. Vaccine-induced HI antibodies can be short-lived and significant decreases in serum antibody titer have been reported within 10 weeks after vaccination (Erickson et al. 2002). An inverse correlation between prechallenge serum HI antibody titers and lung virus titers after challenge has been reported by several investigators (Bikour et al. 1996; Haesebrouck and Pensaert 1986; Haesebrouck et al. 1987; Van Reeth et al. 2001 a, b). In the studies by Van Reeth et al. (2001 a, b), all vaccinates with HI titers >160 were completely protected against virus replication in the lungs and disease. However, the antibody titer required for complete protection from infection will also depend on the challenge dose, such that antibody titers ≥160 may be effective against challenge with a lower virus dose or under field conditions (Bikour et al. 1996).

Data regarding SIV vaccine efficacy in the field and cost benefit are quite limited. Most SIV vaccine is used for sow vaccination. In sows routinely receiving pre-farrow booster vaccinations, HI serum antibody titers are frequently 1:160 to 1:640 or greater, and this results in higher and longer lasting maternal SIV antibody levels in their piglets. In a study by Thacker (2000), SIV passive antibody levels dropped below 1:40 by 6 weeks of age in nearly all pigs from unvaccinated sows with low residual HI titers. In contrast, in pigs nursing vaccinated sows, antibody titers did not drop below 1:40 until 16 weeks of age. Sow vaccination, therefore, is important in controlling disease in suckling pigs and often protects pigs through the nursery phase.

Vaccination of feeder pigs is less commonly performed, but this strategy may be beneficial in herds where influenza is a problem in growers/finishers. However, vaccination of feeder pigs may be difficult to combine with vaccination of sows because prolonged passive immunity may interfere with effective vaccination of piglets.

So-called new generation vaccines for SIV have also been tested experimentally, but the results have been rather disappointing. DNA vaccines based on the influenza HA or NP reduced the amount and duration of influenza viral shedding (Macklin et al. 1998), but Olsen and coworkers (2000) found no significant protection from challenge infection following HA DNA vaccination. Still, the DNA vaccination primed pigs for a
stronger antibody response to infection with virulent virus or to vaccination with a conventional killed SIV vaccine (Larsen et al. 2001; Olsen et al. 2000). Heinen et al. (2002) tested a recombinant vaccine expressing the M2 protein and a DNA vaccine containing NP and M genes. Though both vaccines induced the desired immune responses, there was no protection against infection or disease.

REFERENCES


Murray C. 1921. What is “hog flu?” Wallaces’ Farmer 46:371


Van Reeth K, Labarque G, De Clercq S, Pensaert M. 2001b. Efficacy of vaccination of pigs with different H1N1 swine influenza
viruses using a recent challenge strain and different parameters of protection. Vaccine 19:4479–4486.
Swinepox (SWP) is a mild, acute disease of swine characterized by typical poxviral lesions of the skin. SWP is distributed worldwide and is usually associated with poor sanitation. Morbidity may be high in individual herds where young pigs are most severely affected, but mortality is usually negligible. Clinical signs and epidemiology are usually sufficient for SWP diagnosis.

ETIOLOGY

SWP virus (SWPV) is the sole member of the genus Suipoxivirus in the family Poxviridae (Moyer 2000). The SWPV virion is morphologically similar to vaccinia virus, exhibiting a brick-like structure approximately 320 x 240 nm in horizontal section (Figure 29.1) (Blakemore and Abdussalam 1956; Cheville 1966a; Teppema and de Boer 1975). The virion is composed of a central biconcave core or nucleoid bordered by two ellipsoid lateral bodies and at least two lipid membranes (Blakemore and Abdussalam 1956; Cheville 1966a; Conroy et al. 1971; Kim and Luong 1975; Smid et al. 1973; Teppema and de Boer 1975). SWPV is ether-sensitive.

The SWPV genome is a double-stranded DNA molecule of 146 kilobase pairs predicted to contain 150 genes. It shares features common with other members of the Poxviridae, including a conserved central genomic region containing genes necessary for intracytoplasmic replication and virion structure (Afonso et al. 2002). Although genetically related to viruses of other poxviral genera (capripoxvirus, leporipoxvirus, yatapoxvirus), SWPV represents a distinct poxvirus genus and contains in terminal genomic regions a unique complement of genes predicted to affect virus/host interaction and aspects of SWPV virulence and host range (Afonso et al. 2002; Massung et al. 1993).

Despite reports of limited antigenic cross-reactivity, SWPV is antigenically distinct, as evidenced by the failure of SWPV antibodies to cross-protect, cross-neutralize, or efficiently immunoprecipitate viral proteins of other poxviruses (de Boer 1975; Massung and Moyer 1991; Meyer and Conroy 1972; Ouchi et al. 1992; Shope 1940).

Although some isolates have been reported to induce first-passage CPE on swine cells (Afonso et al. 2002; Paton et al. 1990), SWPV generally replicates poorly on initial isolation in swine cell cultures. It requires multiple passages before inducing cytopathic effect (CPE), but maintains pathogenicity for swine (Garg and Meyer 1972; Kasza and Griesemer 1962; Kasza et al. 1960; Meyer and Conroy 1972). CPE, characterized by cytoplasmic vacuoles and inclusion bodies, nuclear “vacuoles,” and cell rounding and clumping (Borst et al. 1990; de Boer 1975; Kasza et al. 1960; Meyer and Conroy 1972), is seen 3–5 days postinoculation (PI), and isolated plaques remain relatively small in size (≤1.5 mm) (Kasza et al. 1960; Massung and Moyer 1991; Meyer and Conroy 1972). Infection of cell cultures results in expression of early and late SWPV mRNA by 4 and 8 hours PI, respectively, and viral protein synthesis by 4 hours PI (Massung and Moyer 1991).

Most attempts to grow or adapt SWPV for growth in non-swine cell cultures or on chicken chorioallantoic membranes have failed (Garg and Meyer 1972; Kasza et al. 1960; Meyer and Conroy 1972), indicating a host range restriction for replication at the cellular level. Recently, culture-adapted SWPV has been shown to replicate, albeit to lower titers, in non-swine cell lines (Barcena and Blasco 1998; Hahn et al. 2001).

Due to its restricted host range, SWPV has been proposed as a vaccine expression vector (Foley et al. 1991; Tripathy 1999). Genetically engineered SWPV vectors expressing pseudorabies virus (PRV) and classical swine fever virus antigens have been constructed and, in the case of PRV, shown to induce immune responses in pigs (Hahn et al. 2001; van der Leek et al. 1994). In addition, SWPV is able to express antigens in non-swine cells and may represent a safe, host range-restricted, vaccine vector for non-swine species (Barcena and Blasco 1998; Winslow et al. 2003). Availability of the complete
genome sequence and identification of SWPV virulence and host range genes should enable engineering of live-attenuated, host-range-restricted, SWPV vaccine vectors with enhanced efficacy and greater versatility (Afonso et al. 2002).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

The pig is the only known host of SWPV. Unlike vaccinia virus, SWPV failed to experimentally infect or adapt to several mammalian and avian species (Schwarte and Biester 1941; Shope 1940), with only a single report of nonproductive SWPV infection following intradermal inoculation of rabbits (Datt 1964). This restricted host range suggests that swine represent the reservoir of SWPV in nature.

SWP is present worldwide. Limited serological survey data from Europe indicated that 8–19% of swine serum samples contained anti-SWPV antibodies (de Boer 1975; Paton et al. 1990). Young swine are most often affected, with adults usually developing a mild, self-limiting form of the disease. Multiple cutaneous lesions are commonly found on the flanks, belly, inner side of the legs, ears, and less frequently, on the face of affected animals (de Boer 1975; Jubb et al. 1992; Kim and Luong 1975; McNutt et al. 1929; Olufemi et al. 1981; Schwarte and Biester 1941). Lesions can also be found in the teats of sows and on the face, lips, and tongue of suckling pigs (Olufemi et al. 1981). In congenital infections, lesions are observed over the entire body and in the oral cavity (Borst et al. 1990; Paton et al. 1990). When virus transmission is associated with mechanical vectors, the distribution of lesions tends to reflect the vector’s preferred feeding areas.

The incubation period is thought to be 4–14 days under field conditions (de Boer 1975; McNutt et al. 1929) and 3–5 days after intradermal or intravenous virus inoculation (Kasza and Griesemer 1962; Schwarte and Biester 1941), although longer periods have been described (Shope 1940).

Initial lesions are flat, pale, rounded areas 3–5 mm in diameter (maculae). Over the course of 2 days, these progress to papulae 1–2 mm in height, 1–2 cm in diameter, and occasionally confluent (Figure 29.2). The appearance of papulae may be accompanied by a slight and transient increase in body temperature and loss of appetite (Kasza and Griesemer 1962; Kasza et al. 1960). A true vesicle stage is absent or transient (Borst et al. 1990; Datt 1964; Kasza and Griesemer 1962; Meyer and

![29.1. Negative stain of swine pox virus particles with characteristic brick-shape and complex woven pattern of external filaments. (Courtesy of D. A. Gregg).](image1)

![29.2. Swine pox lesions on the skin of a naturally infected pig (Courtesy of B. Brodersen).](image2)
Conroy 1972). The lesions usually become umbilicated and shrink about a week after appearing. They are replaced by crusts, which are eventually shed, leaving discolored spots (Kasza and Griesemer 1962). Complete recovery is observed 15–30 days post exposure, but it may be delayed if secondary bacterial infection occurs (de Boer 1975; McNutt et al. 1929; Miller and Olson 1980; Schwarte and Biester 1941).

PATHOGENESIS

SWPV may enter the host through preexisting skin abrasions and preferentially replicates in epidermal keratinocytes of the stratum spinosum (Meyer and Conroy 1972). Although mature viral particles have been observed in epidermal basal cells (Teppema and de Boer 1975) and viral antigen has been detected in dermal macrophages (Cheville 1966b), there is no indication that these cell types support virus replication. With the exception of moderate changes in superficial lymph nodes, tissues other than the skin are rarely affected. Infectious virus can be readily isolated from the skin of infected animals as early as 3 days postintradermal inoculation (Kasza and Griesemer 1962), and from regional lymph nodes only if skin lesions are severe (Kasza and Griesemer 1962). A viremic stage has been suggested to account for virus spread from the primary to secondary sites of replication in the skin and for congenital infection; however, virus has not been isolated from blood of infected animals (Borst et al. 1990; Kasza and Griesemer 1962; Paton et al. 1990; Shope 1940). A viremic stage has been suggested to account for virus spread from the primary to secondary sites of replication in the skin and for congenital infection; however, virus has not been isolated from blood of infected animals (Borst et al. 1990; Kasza and Griesemer 1962; Paton et al. 1990; Shope 1940).

Functional studies on SWPV pathogenesis are lacking. The complement of virus genes with putative roles in virulence and host range suggests that modulation of host immune responses and inhibition of apoptosis may play a role in the course of the disease (Afonso et al. 2002; Kawagishi-Kobayashi et al. 2000; Massung et al. 1993). SWPV contains genes with sequence similarity to cellular and viral genes encoding CD47 and proteins that bind interferon (IFN) alpha/beta, IFN-gamma, tumor necrosis factor alpha, interleukin-18 (IL-18), and CC chemokines. Products of these genes potentially modulate host immune responses, including NK and T cell responses, and may facilitate SWPV replication and dissemination. SWPV encodes proteins similar to inhibitors of host MHC-I, serine proteases, IL-1/Toll-like receptors, and protein kinase PKR, some of which in other poxviruses are known to interfere with or delay inflammatory responses at the site of virus replication.

Convalascent swine are resistant to SWPV challenge, indicating that infection induces protective immunity (de Boer 1975; Garg and Meyer 1972; Kasza et al. 1960; Schwarte and Biester 1941; Shope 1940). However, the immune mechanisms associated with protection are not known. SWPV neutralizing activity is present in swine sera as early as 7 days PI; however, low neutralizing titers, delayed kinetics of antibody response, and lack of neutralizing antibodies at 50 days PI have been reported (Kasza et al. 1960; Meyer and Conroy 1972; Shope 1940; Williams et al. 1989). Suckling pigs may also be protected by maternal antibody (Manninger et al. 1940), although high neonatal mortality rates have been observed (Olufemi et al. 1981). Decreased mitogen and SWPV-induced proliferative responses have been observed in peripheral blood mononuclear cells from experimentally infected swine (Williams et al. 1989).

LESIONS

The most conspicuous histologic change caused by SWPV infection is hydropic degeneration of stratum spinosum keratinocytes (Figure 29.3A, B) (Borst et al. 1990; Cheville 1966a; Kasza and Griesemer 1962; McNutt et al. 1929; Meyer and Conroy 1972; Olufemi et al. 1981; Paton et al. 1990; Schwarte and Biester 1941; Teppema and de Boer 1975). Hypermplasia of epidermal cells is not as marked as in poxviral infections of other mammals, an observation that might be related to the lack of a SWPV-encoded homologue of the poxviral epidermal growth factor-like gene (Afonso et al. 2002; McNutt et al. 1929; Schwarte and Biester 1941). The cytoplasm of affected cells is brightened and enlarged.

29.3. Histopathological changes caused by SWPV. A. Skin section showing hydropic degeneration in the stratum spinosum of the epidermis and inflammatory cells in the dermis. B. Magnification of the boxed area in A showing ballooned keratinocytes containing cytoplasmic inclusion bodies (I) and central nuclear clearing (N). Hematoxylin and eosin. (Courtesy of D. A. Gregg).
contains eosinophilic inclusion bodies resembling poxviral type B inclusion bodies (Teppema and de Boer 1975) (Figure 29.3B), and reacts strongly with antibodies against viral antigens (Cheville 1966b). Hydroptic degeneration and inclusion bodies are also observed in the outer root sheaths of the hair follicles (Kasza and Griesemer 1962; Meyer and Conroy 1972). The nucleus of affected cells exhibits margination of chromatin and a large, central “vacuole” resembling the nuclear clearing observed in sheeppox virus-infected keratinocytes (Figure 29.3B) (Cheville 1966a; Kasza and Griesemer 1962; McNutt et al. 1929; Meyer and Conroy 1972; Plowright and Ferris 1958; Teppema and de Boer 1975). No significant fluid accumulation is observed between keratinocytes. Apical keratinocytes undergo necrosis at later stages of infection. Leukocyte infiltration is observed in the underlying dermis and, to a lesser degree, the affected epidermis (Figure 29.3A), with few viral antigen-containing dermal macrophages (Cheville 1966a). When involved, the inguinal lymph nodes present edema, hyperemia, hyperplasia, and few virus antigen-containing cells (Cheville 1966a; Kasza and Griesemer 1962).

Ultrastructurally, infected cells exhibit a marked decrease in keratin precursors (tonofilaments) and loss of intercellular interdigitations characteristic of the stratum spinosum (Cheville 1966a; Teppema and de Boer 1975). Individual inclusion bodies consist of electron-dense central cores surrounded by lamellar bodies and maturing viral particles (viroplasm) (Cheville 1966a; Conroy and Meyer 1971; Kim and Luong 1975; Smid et al. 1973; Teppema and de Boer 1975). The large, well-defined nuclear “vacuole” can be more accurately described as a region of low electron density that lacks a surrounding membrane and contains cross-striated fibrils similar to those observed in the cytoplasm.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Presumptive SWP diagnosis is based on the observation of pox lesions on the skin of affected animals. Differential diagnosis includes vesicular diseases, allergic skin reactions, sunburn, bacterial dermatitis, ringworm, and skin parasitosis (*Tyroglyphus* spp, sarcoptic mange) (Blood and Radostits 1989; Yager and Scott 1985). SWPV involvement can be confirmed by electron microscopy and histopathology and includes pathomnemonic epidermal changes: ballooned stratum spinosum keratinocytes containing cytoplasmic eosinophilic inclusion bodies and a “vacuolated” nucleus. SWPV involvement may be definitively confirmed using SWPV-specific antibodies to neutralize virus isolated on swine cell cultures (primary swine kidney cells, PK-15 cell line) (Borst et al. 1990; Meyer and Conroy 1972; Paton et al. 1990) or by performing immunocytochemistry on tissue samples or infected cell cultures (Garg and Meyer 1973; Mohanty et al. 1989; Paton et al. 1990). Papular/pustular exudate or crusted material are clinical samples of choice for virus isolation. At least seven blind passages should be attempted before considering the sample negative (de Boer 1975).

Serum neutralization and precipitating antibody tests to detect SWPV-specific antibodies in convalescent serum have been described (de Boer 1975; Shope 1940). Since swine do not reliably develop high levels of neutralizing antibodies (Kasza et al. 1960; Shope 1940), negative test results should be interpreted with caution.

The recent availability of the SWPV genome sequence and the identification of unique SWPV gene sequences will permit the development of rapid, sensitive, and specific polymerase chain reaction–based detection and diagnostic assays (Afonso et al. 2002).

Although differential diagnosis of SWP from a vaccinia virus infection in pigs was important when human smallpox vaccination was practiced, this no longer represents a diagnostic concern (Shope 1940).

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

No specific treatment for SWPV exists. Antibiotic regimens are recommended for treatment of secondary bacterial infection. Given that SWP is of relatively low economic impact, no vaccine has been developed. Good animal husbandry, including ectoparasite control, should be practiced.

**REFERENCES**


Transmissible Gastroenteritis

Transmissible gastroenteritis (TGE) is a highly contagious, enteric viral disease of swine characterized by vomiting, severe diarrhea, and a high mortality (often 100%) in TGEV seronegative piglets under 2 weeks of age. Since the 1980s, the appearance and widespread prevalence of a naturally occurring respiratory deletion mutant of TGE virus (TGEV), the porcine respiratory coronavirus (PRCV), has altered the clinical impact of TGE. Although swine of all ages are susceptible to TGEV or PRCV infection, the mortality in TGEV and/or PRCV seropositive herds and in swine over 5 weeks of age generally is low.

TGE was first reported by Doyle and Hutchings (1946) as occurring in the U.S. in 1945, although it undoubtedly had existed earlier. Since then, it has been reported in most countries worldwide, albeit with its clinical impact altered by the prevalence of PRCV. The disease is most easily diagnosed and causes the highest losses when it occurs in TGEV or PRCV seronegative herds at farrowing. In contrast, it often goes undiagnosed when it occurs in growing, finishing, or adult swine because of the mild clinical signs, which usually consist only of inappetence and mild diarrhea.

Because of these undiagnosed infections, serologic surveys were once a more accurate indication of the prevalence of TGEV. However, since the 1980s the prevalence of cross-reactive PRCV antibodies has confounded the serodiagnosis of TGEV based on conventional assays (Laude et al. 1993; Pensaert and Cox 1989). Surveys through the early 1990s indicated that 19–54% of sampled swine herds in North America were seropositive for TGEV antibodies (Egan 1982; USDA APHIS VS 1992). In 1995, 16 of 22 swine herds examined in Iowa were seropositive for TGEV (Wesley et al. 1997). Recent data indicates a decline in the number of TGEV outbreaks diagnosed in the U.S. compared to historical data, presumably due to the spread of PRCV (Yaeger et al. 2002). Currently in many European countries, nearly 100% of swine herds are seropositive for TGEV antibodies. This situation is due to PRCV that appeared in 1984 and rapidly spread in Europe (Brown and Cartwright 1986; Laude et al. 1993; Pensaert 1989; Pensaert and Cox 1989; Pensaert et al. 1986, 1993). Economic losses from TGE can be severe (Mousing et al. 1988; Fritchard 1987); however, with the establishment of endemic PRCV, the economic impact of TGE has decreased (Laude et al. 1993; Pensaert and Cox 1989).

In TGEV/PRCV seronegative herds in North America, TGE remains a cause of sickness and death in piglets. Diagnosis of TGE in PRCV-endemic herds has become problematic because the milder disease in all age groups masks the presence of TGEV infections (Kim et al. 2000b). This poses concerns for maintenance or export of TGEV negative breeding stock.

ETIOLOGY

TGEV is a species in the genus Coronavirus of the family Coronaviridae (Lai and Cavanagh 1997). TGEV is enveloped and pleomorphic, with an overall diameter of 60–160 nm, as viewed by negative-staining electron microscopy (EM) (Figure 30.1) (Granzow et al. 1981; Okaniwa et al. 1968; Phillip et al. 1971). It has a single layer of club-shaped surface projections or spikes 12–25 nm in length.

TGEV antigen can be demonstrated in the cytoplasm by immunofluorescence (IF) as early as 4–5 hours post infection (Pensaert et al. 1970a). Maturation of virus occurs in the cytoplasm by budding through endoplasmic reticulum, and viral particles (65–90 nm in diameter) are often observed within cytoplasmic vacuoles (Figure 30.2A) (Pensaert et al. 1970a; Thake 1968; Wagner et al. 1980)
1973). The virus is frequently seen lining the host cell membranes after exit from infected cells (Figure 30.2B). TGEV glycoproteins have been identified on the surface of infected swine testicular (ST) cells (Laviada et al. 1990).

**Biological Properties**

TGEV is very stable when stored frozen, but somewhat labile at room temperature or above. No detectable drop in titer occurred when virus of pig intestine origin was stored at −20°C for 6–18 months (Haelterman and Hutchings 1956; Young et al. 1955). In contrast, intestinal virus, when allowed to dry and putrefy at 21°C, was rather labile; after 3 days only two of four inoculated pigs became sick; and after 10 days no viable virus was detected by pig inoculation (Bay et al. 1952). When held at 37°C, there was a log 10 reduction in infectivity titer every 24 hours (Young et al. 1955). Storage of cell culture virus at −20°C, −40°C, or −80°C for 365 days did not result in any significant drop in titer, whereas storage at 37°C for 4 days resulted in total loss of infectivity (Harada et al. 1968). Infectious virus persisted in a liquid manure slurry for more than 8 weeks at 5°C, 2 weeks at 20°C, and 24 hours at 35°C (Haas et al. 1995).

The virus is highly photosensitive. Haelterman (1963) reported that fecal material containing 10⁵ pig-infectious doses (PID) was inactivated within 6 hours when exposed to sunlight. Cartwright et al. (1965) reported the photosensitivity of a cytopathic strain when it was exposed to ultraviolet light on a laboratory bench.

In terms of chemical stability, TGEV is inactivated by exposure to 0.03% formalin, 1% Lysovet (phenol and aldehyde), 0.01% beta propiolactone, 1 mM binary ethylenamine, sodium hypochlorite, NaOH, iodines, quaternary ammonium compounds, ether, and chloroform (Brown 1981; Harada et al. 1968; Nakao et al. 1978; VanCott et al. 1993).

As reported for other enteric viruses, TGEV field strains are trypsin resistant, relatively stable in pig bile, and stable at pH 3 (Laude et al. 1981). These properties allow the virus to survive in the stomach and small in-

---

**30.1.** Electron micrograph of a TGEV particle showing typical coronavirus morphology. Arrow points to the virus peplomers, or spikes. Bar = 100 nm.

**30.2.** (A) TGEV in vesicles of the endoplasmic reticulum of a pig kidney cell (36 hours post infection). Bar = 100 nm. (B) TGEV lining the cell membrane of a pig kidney cell (36 hours post infection). N = nucleus; bar = 200 nm.
strain of TGEV is 28,579 nucleotides long (Eleouet et al. 1980), and the complete sequence of the Purdue-1 1993). The genomic RNA of TGEV is infectious (Brian et al. 1981).

### Molecular Properties

TGEV and the deletion mutant, PRCV, are enveloped viruses containing one large, polyadenylated, single-stranded, genomic RNA of positive-sense polarity. The genome organization, replication strategy, and expression of viral proteins are similar to those of other coronaviruses (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995; Laude et al. 1993). The genomic RNA of TGEV is infectious (Brian et al. 1980), and the complete sequence of the Purdue-115 strain of TGEV is 28,579 nucleotides long (Eleouet et al. 1995; Kapke and Brian 1986).

TGEV has a buoyant density in sucrose of 1.18–1.20 g/mL (Brian et al. 1980; Jimenez et al. 1986). The phospholipids and glycolipids incorporated into the virus envelope are derived from the host cell, and thus, the envelope composition is host cell dependent (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995; Pike and Garwes 1977).

Intact TGEV contains four structural proteins: a large surface glycoprotein (spike or S); a small membrane protein (E or sM); an integral membrane glycoprotein (M); and a nucleocapsid protein (N) (Garwes and Pocock 1975; Godet et al. 1992).

The N protein (47 kDa) interacts with viral RNA to form a helical ribonucleoprotein complex. This structure, in association with M protein, forms an internal icosahedral core (Risco et al. 1996). The 29–36 kDa M glycoprotein, embedded in the viral envelope by three or four membrane-spanning regions, is present in two topological forms (Risco et al. 1995). In one conformation, the N terminus of the M protein is external to the virus envelope and the C terminus is internal, whereas, in the second conformation, both ends of the molecule are on the outside of the virion. In both conformations, the hydrophilic N terminus with a single accessible glycosylation site is responsible for interferon induction (Charley and Laude 1988). Epitopes on protruding N-terminal and C-terminal ends of M protein molecules bind complement-dependent neutralizing monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) (Laude et al. 1992; Risco et al. 1995; Woods 1988). S glycoproteins, probably as trimers, are visible in electron micrographs as the virus “corona” (Figure 30.1). Functions attributed to the S glycoprotein (170–220 kDa) include virus neutralization (complement-independent), virus-cell attachment, membrane fusion, as well as hemagglutination. Purified S glycoprotein elicited the production of TGEV-neutralizing antibodies, which neutralize at multiple steps in the virus replication cycle (Nguyen et al. 1986; Sune et al. 1990).

Aminopeptidase N and a second 200 kDa surface protein on ST cells and on porcine intestinal enterocytes have been identified as virus receptors (Delmas et al. 1992; Weingartl and Derbyshire 1994). The receptor binding site for aminopeptidase N and the major neutralizing site (site A) on the S protein are located within the same domain (Godet et al. 1994). Moreover, TGEV binds to sialic acid residues on glycoproteins of target cells. This binding was proposed to initiate infection of intestinal enterocytes (Schwegmann-Wessels et al. 2002). Treatment of TGEV with sialidase enhanced hemagglutinating activity (Noda et al. 1987; Schultz et al. 1996). This hemagglutinating activity is located at the N-terminal region of the TGEV S protein, a region that is missing from the PRCV S protein; thus, determining the presence or absence of hemagglutinating activity (Schultz et al. 1996) could be a method to differentiate PRCV and TGEV strains.

Monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) have been produced against attenuated (Correa et al. 1990; Delmas and Laude 1990; Jimenez et al. 1986) and virulent (Simkins et al. 1992, 1993; Welch and Saif 1988; Zhu et al. 1990) strains of TGEV and used to characterize TGEV proteins and map epitopes that elicit antibodies. The major neutralizing determinants on the S protein were highly conserved for TGEV and PRCV strains (Garwes et al. 1987; Jimenez et al. 1986; Sanchez et al. 1990; Simkins et al. 1993; Welch et al. 1988). Use of neutralizing MAbs to map epitopes on the S glycoprotein revealed four distinct antigenic sites (A, B, C, D), with site A-B as the highly conserved immunodominant epitope recognized by strongly neutralizing MAbs (Correa et al. 1990; Delmas and Laude 1990; Garwes et al. 1987; Gebauer et al. 1991; Simkins et al. 1992, 1993), although other sites (D, C) also can induce neutralizing antibodies (Laude et al. 1986; Posthumus et al. 1990). The locations of each of the four major antigenic sites were mapped on the primary structure of the S glycoprotein. Starting from the amino terminal end, these sites were designated C, B, D, and A by the Madrid group (Correa et al. 1990) and D, C, and A-B by the Paris group (Delmas and Laude 1990). Paris sites D, C, and A-B (the designation used in this chapter unless specified otherwise) overlap Madrid sites B, D, and A, respectively. Three subsites (Aa, Ab, Ac) for site A were recognized using TGEV-MAb-resistant mutants (Correa et al. 1990).

### Antigenic and Genomic Relationships

Only one serotype of TGEV is known (Kemeny 1976). PRCV strains are not distinguished from enteropathogenic strains of TGEV by the virus neutralization (VN) test (Pensaert 1989; Pensaert and Cox 1989), but can be distinguished by a blocking enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) test (see section on diagnosis) or by a large deletion in the S gene of PRCV resulting in a smaller S protein (170–190 kDa) than the S protein of TGEV (220 kDa).

Seven coronaviruses are related antigenically or by...
their genomic sequence (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995). These are TGEV, PRCV, canine coronavirus (CCV), feline infectious peritonitis virus (FIPV), canine enteric coronavirus (FECV), porcine epidemic diarrhea virus (PEDV), and human coronavirus (HCV 229E). Within these group I coronavirus, only TGEV, PRCV, CCV, FIPV, and FECV form an antigenically related subset, based on cross-reactivity in VN and IF tests and with MAbs to the S, N, or M protein (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995; Woods 1982). Moreover, all members of this antigenic subset share the antigenic subtype Ac on the S protein (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995). Additional cross-reactivity between the S, M, and N proteins of TGEV, CCV, and FIPV was shown by radioimmunoprecipitation, immunoblotting, and ELISA, and it was suggested that these viruses may actually represent host range mutants of an ancestral virus strain (Horzinek et al. 1982). Similar cross-reactivity among the S, M, and N structural proteins of TGEV and PRCV was observed using polyclonal antisera in immunoblotting assays (Callebaut et al. 1988).

PEDV is another coronavirus of pigs that causes a disease similar to TGEV; this disease has been documented only in swine in Europe and Asia (DeBouck 1982). Antibodies to PEDV have not been detected in a limited survey of adult swine sera from the U.S. (L. J. Saif and M. B. Pensaert, unpublished data, 1990). Some one-way, immunoblotting cross-reactivity with the N protein has been reported for PEDV, FIPV, CCV, TGEV, and a putative mink coronavirus (Have et al. 1992; Zhou et al. 1988). However, no antigenic cross-reactivity between PEDV and TGEV-related coronaviruses has been detected using polyclonal antisera or MAbs in other serologic assays (Callebaut et al. 1988; Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995; Pensaert and Debouck 1978). Another coronavirus of pigs, hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis virus, is antigenically and genetically unrelated to the coronaviruses in group I and is a member of coronavirus group II (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995).

Although TGEV, CCV, and FIPV are antigenically closely related, Reynolds et al. (1980) suggested that TGEV and CCV could be distinguished serologically (with sera from naturally infected animals) by employing two-way cross-neutralization tests. Additional in vitro biological differences also have been detected. Whereas both TGEV and CCV will grow in either canine kidney cells (Welter 1965) or an established feline cell line (Woods 1982), neither CCV nor FIPV will grow in ST or porcine thyroid cells, both of which support the growth of TGEV isolates (Reynolds et al. 1980).

In vivo biological differences also exist among TGEV, CCV, and FIPV in their pathogenicity for neonatal pigs (Woods and Pedersen 1979). Whereas virulent FIPV caused diarrhea and intestinal lesions similar to those of virulent TGEV, CCV caused no clinical signs and only slight villous atrophy. IF, using a porcine anti-TGEV serum conjugate, occurred in villous enterocytes of TGEV- and FIPV-infected pigs but predominated in crypt enterocytes of CCV-infected pigs. CCV shed by acutely infected dogs was shown to infect baby pigs and induced serum neutralizing antibodies for both CCV and TGEV (Woods and Wesley 1992). However, baby pigs and pregnant gilts experimentally infected with FIPV did not produce TGEV-neutralizing antibodies, but did develop some immunity to a TGEV challenge (Woods and Pedersen 1979).

Molecular probes and MAbs are also used to detect and differentiate among these antigenically related coronaviruses. In terms of the S glycoprotein gene that confers host range specificity, the 300 amino acid residues at the N terminus are the most variable. In this domain CCV and FIPV are more similar to each other than to TGEV (Jacobs 1987; Wesseling et al. 1994). Thus, cDNA probes developed from this domain of the TGEV S gene reacted with TGEV RNA but failed to recognize CCV or FIPV RNA under conditions of high stringency. Either cDNA probes or RT-PCR (reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction) techniques are used to differentiate U.S. strains of PRCV from prototype strains of TGEV (Bae et al. 1991; Jackwood et al. 1995; Kim et al. 2000a; Vaughn et al. 1994). Similar differentiation of the TGEV-related coronaviruses was possible using certain specific MAbs to the S glycoprotein of TGEV that recognized TGEV strains but failed to react with PRCV, FIPV, or CCV (Callebaut et al. 1988; Laude et al. 1988; Sanchez et al. 1990; Simkins et al. 1992, 1993).

PRCV strains, isolated during the mid-1980s through 2000s, have been characterized and partially sequenced (Britton et al. 1991; Costantini et al. 2004; Kim et al. 2000b; Rasschaert et al. 1990; Vaughn et al. 1995; Wesley et al. 1991b). An overall nucleotide and amino acid sequence homology of 96% between TGEV and PRCV suggests that PRCV evolved from TGEV and that this occurred on a number of independent occasions. Two striking features characterize the PRCV genome: (1) a large deletion (621–681 nucleotides) at a consistent site near the N terminus of the S gene that gives rise to a smaller S protein; and (2) a variable region with deletions may account for the altered tissue tropism of PRCV (Ballesteros et al. 1997; Sanchez et al. 1999).

From sequence data, significant homologies occur in the three genes encoding the three main structural proteins within TGEV-related viruses (TGEV, PRCV, CCV, FECV, FIPV) and between TGEV-related viruses and HCV 229E and PEDV (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995). Thus, sequencing data show a genomic relationship between these latter two viruses and TGEV-related viruses that is not demonstrated by serologic analysis (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995).

An altered phenotype was reported for a small plaque (SP) variant of TGEV (Woods 1978; Woods et al. 1981). Although the S gene of the SP variant and the S gene of
wild-type TGEV are similar, a large deletion (462 nucleotides) is present in the SP viral genome just downstream from the S gene (Wesley et al. 1990a). This deletion eliminated the ORF of one potential viral encoded protein and eliminated the N-terminal portion of a second potential viral protein. These two ORFs are also missing from the high cell culture-passaged Nouzilly strain, a second attenuated TGEV with an SP phenotype (Britton et al. 1994). Presumably, the altered pathogenicity of SP virus, the Nouzilly virus, and the PRCVs results from these genetic deletions.

The recently emerged severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) is a human pneumoenteric disease caused by a novel coronavirus tentatively assigned to coronavirus group IV. Although SARS is believed to be zoonotic, its genetic relationship to TGEV is relatively distant and its exact animal reservoir remains unknown (Drosten et al. 2003; Ksiazek et al. 2003; Marra et al. 2003; Peiris et al. 2003; Rota et al. 2003). However several investigations have reported that SARS coronavirus cross-reacts with antibodies to group I coronaviruses including TGEV and PRCV, mainly through the N-protein (Nagesha et al. 2004; Ksiazek et al. 2003; Sun and Meng 2004). Attempts to transmit SARS coronavirus to 6-week-old pigs (PRCV seropositive) failed, although pigs seroconverted to SARS and shed virus detected by RT-PCR (Weingartl et al. 2004). It is unknown whether the preexisting PRCV antibodies affected susceptibility of the pigs to SARS.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

On a herd basis, two epidemiologic forms of TGE are recognized: epidemic and endemic. In addition, infections with the TGEV deletion mutant PRCV present a different pattern and greatly complicate seroprevalence studies of the epidemiology of TGEV (Pensaert 1989; Pensaert and Cox 1989).

Epidemic TGE

Epidemic TGE refers to the occurrence of TGE in a herd where most, if not all, of the animals are TGEV/PRCV seronegative and susceptible. When TGEV is introduced into such a herd, the disease usually spreads rapidly to swine of all ages, especially during the winter. Some degree of inappetence, vomition, or diarrhea will occur in most animals. Suckling pigs show marked clinical signs and rapidly dehydrate. Mortality is very high in pigs under 2–3 weeks of age, but gradually decreases in older pigs. Lactating sows often show signs, developing anorexia and agalactia, which further contribute to piglet mortality.

The history and severe clinical signs aid in diagnosis of epidemic TGE in the U.S., since diseases with similar signs have not been reported. However, in Europe, PED had similar clinical signs before it became endemic (Pensaert and DeBouck 1978). Likewise, the presence of PRCV appears to have greatly reduced the incidence and severity of epidemic TGE (Brown and Patton 1991; Laude et al. 1993; Pensaert et al. 1993; Pensaert and Cox 1989).

Endemic TGE

Endemic TGE refers to the persistence of the virus and disease in a herd. This occurs as a result of the continual or frequent influx of susceptible swine which, when infected, tend to perpetuate the disease. Endemic TGE is limited to seropositive herds that have frequent farrowings (Stepanek 1979) or have frequent additions or mingling of susceptible swine.

Endemic TGE represents a common sequel to a primary outbreak in large breeding herds. In endemic TGE, TGEV spreads slowly among adult swine, particularly herd replacements (Pritchard 1987). Females saved for breeding are frequently immune and will transfer via their colostrum and milk a variable degree of passive immunity to their suckling pigs. Sows usually do not show clinical signs. In these herds, mild TGEV diarrhea occurs in pigs from about 6 days of age until about 2 weeks after weaning. The pig is clinically affected when viral exposure exceeds the pig’s passive immunity. The age at which this occurs is related to the management system used in the herd and the degree of immunity of the sow. Mortality is usually less than 10–20%, being determined by the age when infected and by the variable degree of immunity obtained from immune sows. Endemic TGE in suckling or recently weaned pigs can be difficult to diagnose and must be differentiated from other types of endemic diarrheal problems commonly occurring in young pigs, such as rotaviral diarrhea and colibacillosis. Endemic TGE will persist in the herd as long as susceptible or partially immune swine are exposed to TGEV.

The recrudescence or reintroduction of TGEV may occur in herds that contain immune sows, resulting in discrete episodes of disease (Pritchard 1987). This situation commonly occurs in herds in the concentrated swine-rearing areas of the U.S. or other countries. Herds often become reinfected in the winter, and growing and finishing swine are especially affected. Such animals are susceptible because the herd infection from the previous winter has usually terminated during the intervening summer. If the disease enters the farrowing house, the disease in suckling or weaned pigs will resemble that described above since the sows will usually be immune. It is unclear whether the source of virus in these circumstances comes from reactivation of virus shedding in carrier swine or reintroduction of virus into the herd from an external source.

Porcine Respiratory Coronavirus

Evidence that led to the discovery of PRCV was obtained from serologic surveys of slaughterhouse sows or swine tested for international trade in Europe. In 1984, this led
to the first isolation of PRCV, a nonenteropathogenic coronavirus, in Belgium (Pensaert et al. 1986). In 1989, two herds in the U.S. unexpectedly were seropositive for TGEV antibodies, although these herds had not been vaccinated for TGE nor had they experienced clinical disease (Hill et al. 1990; Wesley et al. 1990b).

PRCV is a TGEV variant that infects epithelial cells of the respiratory tract and alveolar macrophages (Paul et al. 1994; Pensaert 1989; Pensaert and Cox 1989). After experimental challenge, PRCV infects only a few unidentified cells in the small intestine, and thus, virus shedding in feces is limited or not detected (Brim et al. 1994, 1995; Costantini et al. 2004; Cox et al. 1990a, b; O’Toole et al. 1989; VanCott et al. 1993, 1994). Recently, fecal and nasal isolates of PRCV from the same pigs were compared genetically, and small, but consistent, genetic differences (point mutations) were noted in the S protein (Costantini et al. 2004). However, PRCV-infected pigs produce antibodies that neutralize TGEV.

Swine population density, distances between farms, and season influence the epidemiology of PRCV. PRCV infects pigs of all ages by airborne transmission or by contact. In areas with high swine farm density, the virus can spread to pigs on neighboring farms that are several kilometers away (Pensaert and Cox 1989). In addition, the risk of a farm becoming infected increases as the size of a neighboring herd increases (Henningsen et al. 1989).

PRCV infections are often subclinical and the virus has spread rapidly and extensively in pigs in Europe (Brown and Cartwright 1986; Henningsen et al. 1989; Laude et al. 1993; Martin et al. 1994; Pensaert 1989; van Nieuwstadt et al. 1989) and even into countries that were previously free of TGEV (Pensaert 1989). A limited serologic survey in 1995 in the U.S. suggested that many asymptomatic swine herds in Iowa were seropositive for PRCV (Wesley et al. 1997).

PRCV has become endemic in many European swine herds (Lanza et al. 1993; Laude et al. 1993; Pensaert et al. 1993; Pensaert 1989). The virus circulates in the herd, infecting pigs before the age of 20–26 weeks, after passively acquired maternal antibodies have declined (Pensaert et al. 1993). Introduction of pigs into fattening units and commingling of PRCV-negative and PRCV positive pigs from diverse sources resulted in seroconversion to PRCV in pigs shortly after introduction into most units (Van Reeth and Pensaert 1994a).

Susceptible pigs experimentally infected with PRCV shed virus from nasal secretions for a period of less than 2 weeks (Bourgueil et al. 1992; Brim et al. 1994; Onno et al. 1989; VanCott et al. 1993; Wesley et al. 1990b). There is no evidence for the fecal-oral transmission of PRCV. Pensaert et al. (1993) have shown that pigs on closed breeding farms become infected shortly after weaning—even in the presence of maternal antibodies. Thus, PRCV persists in the herd by regularly infecting newly weaned pigs. PRCV can persist in the herd throughout the entire year or it can disappear temporarily from a herd (mainly in the summer) and reappear in the nursery and fattening units during the colder months of the year (Pensaert et al. 1993). Thus, waves of infection, without clinical disease, coincide with the rainy season in Europe (Laude et al. 1993).

Following the widespread dissemination of PRCV, the seroprevalence of TGEV infections in European swine was examined by blocking ELISA (Brown and Patton 1991; Lanza et al. 1993; Pensaert et al. 1993). The investigators reported low (0.0–7.6%) TGEV seropositives from sows in Spain (Lanza et al. 1993; Pensaert et al. 1993) and from pigs in the U.K. (Brown and Patton 1991). Thus, the seroprevalence of TGEV infections in Europe has decreased coincident with the spread of PRCV.

Transmission and Reservoirs

One of the significant epidemiological features of TGE is its seasonal appearance during the winter months. Haelterman (1962) suggested that this is because the virus is very stable when frozen and more labile when exposed to heat or to sunlight. This would allow virus transmission between herds in winter on fomites or animals. Reduced or fluctuating ambient temperatures also markedly predispose feeder pigs to clinical manifestations of TGE (Shimizu and Shimizu 1979a; Shimizu et al. 1978), thus contributing to transmission in winter.

What is the reservoir of TGEV between seasonal epidemics? Haelterman (1962) proposed at least three possible reservoirs: (1) associated pig farms in which the virus spreads subclinically; (2) hosts other than swine; and (3) carrier pigs.

The most probable explanation for maintenance of the disease is that it exists in an endemic form in feeder-pig operations (Morin et al. 1978) or in herds that are on a continuous farrowing program. These situations could constitute foci for maintenance of the disease during the warmer months and for dissemination during the winter months. This hypothesis is supported by the finding that TGEV infection can spread rather slowly through a group of growing swine under certain conditions, such as during the summer months (Maes and Haelterman 1979).

There is also evidence for the existence of TGEV in non-porcine hosts. Cats, dogs, and foxes have been suggested as possible carriers of TGEV from one herd to another since they can shed virus in their feces for variable periods (Haelterman 1962; McClurkin et al. 1970). Cats and dogs fed TGEV showed no clinical signs, except after repeated passage in dogs and seroconverted to TGEV, but virus excreted by dogs was shown to be infectious for pigs (Haelterman 1962; Reynolds and Garwes 1979).

Massive concentrations of starlings (Sturnus vulgaris) in winter in feeding areas of swine may provide a method by which TGEV can be mechanically carried from one farm to another. Pilchard (1965) reported that
CHAPTER 30 TRANSMISSIBLE GASTROENTERITIS AND PORCINE RESPIRATORY CORONAVIRUS 495

TGEV was detected in the droppings of starlings for as long as 32 hours after they were fed TGEV. Houseflies (Musca domestica) have also been proposed as possible mechanical vectors for TGEV. TGEV antigen was detected in flies within a swine herd in which TGE was endemic, and experimentally inoculated flies excreted TGEV for 3 days (Gough and Jorgenson 1983).

A third possibility relating to the transmission of TGE is the length of time infected swine shed viable TGEV and the role of the carrier pig. A few reports (Lee et al. 1954; Pensaert 1976; Woods and Wesley 1998) have indicated chronic and/or persistent fecal shedding for periods up to 18 months, rather than the commonly reported 2-week period (Pensaert et al. 1970a). Respiratory shedding of TGEV has been detected in nasal swabs for postexposure periods up to 11 days (Kemeny et al. 1975). However, the virus was detected in lung homogenates for postexposure periods up to 104 days (Underdahl et al. 1975).

TGEV has also been recovered from milk of infected sows during the acute phase of the disease (Kemeny et al. 1975; Kemeny and Woods 1977) and following intramammary infusion or injection of lactating sows with live TGEV (Saif and Bohl 1983). In the latter study, demonstration of TGEV antigen in mammary gland tissue indicated that the virus might replicate in the mammary glands of lactating sows, an event which might contribute to agalactia in sows. Transmission of the virus via milk to suckling piglets, as suggested in the same study, may account, in part, for the rapid spread of the infection among a litter.

Although TGEV has been detected in the intestinal and respiratory tracts for periods of up to 104 days post infection, it is unknown whether such virus is viable and is shed or transmitted in a viable state. Addition of sentinel pigs to a herd at 3, 4, and 5 months after a previous TGE outbreak resulted in no infections in the introduced pigs, as determined by serologic tests (Derbyshire et al. 1969). Nasal shedding of PRCV in experimentally infected pigs occurs through postexposure day 10 (Onno et al. 1989; Wesley et al. 1990b). However, how long pigs recovered from PRCV infection in the field remain infectious is unknown. Thus, a possible role for the long-term carrier hog in transmitting TGEV has been suggested (Woods and Wesley 1998).

CLINICAL SIGNS

Epidemic TGE

The typical clinical signs of TGE in seronegative piglets are transient vomiting and watery, yellowish diarrhea, with rapid loss of weight, dehydration, and high morbidity and mortality in pigs under 2 weeks of age. Diarrhea in young pigs is usually profuse and feces will often contain undigested milk.

The severity of the clinical signs, duration of the disease, and mortality are inversely related to the age of the pig. Most pigs under 7 days of age will die in 2–7 days after first showing clinical signs. Most suckling pigs over 3 weeks of age will survive but are likely to remain stunted. Clinical signs of TGE in growing and finishing swine and in sows are usually limited to inappetence and diarrhea for a few days, with vomiting occasionally observed. The few deaths observed are probably due to complicating factors, such as stress or concurrent infections, which frequently occur after weaning. Some lactating sows become very sick, with an elevated temperature, agalactia, vomiting, inappetence, and diarrhea. These severe signs may be due to a high degree of exposure to the virus from close contact with their affected piglets or to hormonal factors that may influence susceptibility. In contrast, sows in the field having no contact with young infected pigs usually have mild clinical signs or none.

The incubation period is short, usually 18 hours to 3 days. Infection generally spreads rapidly through the entire group of swine so that in 2–3 days most animals are affected, but this is more likely to occur in winter than summer (Maes and Haelterman 1979).

Endemic TGE

Endemic TGE occurs in large herds that have frequent farrowings and in TGEV or PRCV seropositive herds. The clinical signs will usually be less severe than those seen in seronegative pigs of the same age. Death losses are low, especially if pigs are kept warm. The clinical signs in suckling pigs can resemble those caused by rotavirus (Bohl et al. 1978). In some herds, depending on management, endemic TGE is manifested mainly in weaned pigs and may be confused with Escherichia coli, coccidia, or rotavirus infections (Pritchard 1987).

Porcine Respiratory Coronavirus

The severity of clinical signs and the degree of pathogenicity appear to be PRCV strain–dependent, and it is speculated that these differences might correlate with slightly different genetic deletions. In addition, infection of swine with PRCV and other respiratory viruses, especially in association with porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRSV), can alter the severity of disease and clinical signs.

Ultimately, the manifestation of respiratory disease is dependent on a number of variables, including environmental and seasonal factors, management practices, virus load or dose, and presence of other bacterial or viral pathogens in the herd (Van Reeth and Pensaert 1994a, b).

Experimentally infected feeder pigs had only a transient weight loss, whereas 4- and 6-day-old pigs infected with PRCV showed only a reduced rate of weight gain in comparison with control pigs (Lanza et al. 1992; Van Reeth et al. 1996; Vannier 1990; Wesley and Woods 1996). Many European and American PRCV strains cause subclinical infections, but by histological examination,
interstitial pneumonia affecting 5–60% of the lung may be present (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995; Hayes et al. 2000; Laude et al. 1993; Van Reeth and Pensaert 1992). In one study, when American PRCV strains were compared in pigs under the same conditions, differences were observed in pathogenicity among strains (Halbur et al. 1994). Two PRCV isolates, AR310 and LEPP with the same S gene deletion, induced signs of moderate respiratory disease in pigs, while a third strain (1894) produced only mild respiratory disease. However, at a lower dose, even the AR310 strain was asymptomatic in gnotobiotic pigs (Halbur et al. 1993). Likewise, a Canadian PRCV strain (1Q90) isolated in Quebec caused severe pneumonia and 60% mortality in 1-week-old pigs given $10^{8.5}$ TCID$_{50}$ (median tissue culture infectious doses) of virus, but littermates exposed to PRCV by contact, presumably at a lower dose, exhibited mild signs (Jabrane et al. 1994). Inoculation of pigs with a higher dose of PRCV also resulted in longer shedding of PRCV (VanCott et al. 1993).

Thus, clinical signs seen after experimental PRCV exposure may be highly dose related and influenced by the age of the pigs and inoculation techniques. The results of experimental studies were also influenced by the health status of the pigs and their subsequent treatment (Vannier 1990).

Besides a single-virus infection with PRCV, pigs can be exposed concurrently to other respiratory viruses and agents. Often this occurs when pigs from multiple sources are grouped together in nurseries or grower-finisher units (Van Reeth and Pensaert 1994a). The effects of dual-virus inoculations have been investigated and generally found to be more severe than for a single-virus infection. In particular, respiratory signs were enhanced in PRCV-infected pigs when the pigs were inoculated 2 days later with either swine influenza virus or pseudorabies virus (Van Reeth and Pensaert 1994b; Van Reeth et al. 1996). Combined infections with PRRSV followed by PRCV also resulted in a prolonged fever with respiratory disease, a reduced rate of weight gain or longer shedding of PRCV (Hayes et al. 2000; Van Reeth et al. 1996).

Because many respiratory viruses and bacteria are common in swine populations, these combined infections with PRCV may increase the occurrence and severity of respiratory disease (Hayes et al. 2000; Van Reeth et al. 2000). This subject requires additional research including elucidating the mechanism of disease enhancement and shedding in dual infections.

**PATHOGENESIS**

The pathogenesis of TGE has been reviewed (Hooper and Haelterman 1966; Moon 1978). The early events have been described as follows: TGEV is ingested, infects the mucosa of the small intestine, and causes villous atrophy because of a rapid and extensive loss of functional epithelial cells.

**Intestinal Replication**

Whether by the oral or the nasal route, the virus is swallowed and, being resistant to low pH and proteolytic enzymes, remains viable until it comes in contact with the highly susceptible villous epithelial cells of the small intestine. Infection and rapid destruction or alteration in function of these cells result in marked reduction in enzymatic activity in the small intestine, which disrupts digestion and cellular transport of nutrients and electrolytes, causing an acute malabsorption syndrome (Moon 1978). Hooper and Haelterman (1966) suggested that the inability of infected pigs to hydrolyze lactose and other nutrients results in the marked deprivation of nutrients critical to the young pig. Furthermore, they suggested that the presence of undigested lactose exerts an osmotic force that causes a retention of fluid in the lumen of the intestine and, thus, contributes to diarrhea and dehydration. Additional mechanisms contributing to diarrhea in TGEV-infected pigs include altered intestinal sodium transport, with accumulation of electrolytes and water in the intestinal lumen (Butler et al. 1974) and loss of extravascular protein (Prochazka et al. 1975). The ultimate cause of death is probably dehydration and metabolic acidosis coupled with abnormal cardiac function resulting from hyperkalemia.

A marked shortening or atrophy of the villi occurs in the jejunum (Figure 30.3) and to a lesser extent in the ileum, but it is often absent in the proximal portion of the duodenum (Hooper and Haelterman 1966). Both virus production and villous atrophy were greater in newborn pigs than in 3-week-old pigs (Moon et al. 1973; Norman et al. 1973), suggesting higher susceptibility of neonates to TGEV infection. Several mechanisms have been proposed to account for this age-dependent resistance to clinical disease. First, the rapidity with which infected villous epithelial cells can be replaced by migration of epithelial cells from crypts of Lieberkühn in older pigs compared to younger may partially account for the higher fatality rate in newborn pigs (Moon 1978). These newly replaced villous enterocytes are reportedly resistant to TGEV infection (Pensaert et al. 1970b), possibly due to onset of innate immunity and presence of intestinal interferon (La Bonnardiere and Laude 1981) or the inability of these regenerating cells to support virus growth. Second, TGEV accumulates and replicates in the apical tubulovascular system of villous absorptive cells in newborn pigs; this system is lacking in pigs older than 3 weeks (Wagner et al. 1973). Third, virus dose may play a major role in infections. Witte and Walther (1976) demonstrated that the infectious dose of TGEV needed to infect a market hog (about 6 months old) was $10^4$ times greater than that needed to infect a 2-day-old piglet. However, the severity of clinical signs due to TGE is also increased when pigs are (1) fed a zinc-deficient ration (Whitenack et al. 1978); (2) anemic (Ackerman et al. 1972); (3) exposed to a low temperature or fluctuation in temperature (Shimizu et al. 1978); or (4) injected with a
synthetic corticosteroid, dexamethazone (Shimizu and Shimizu 1979a). In regard to the last two factors, the mechanism is thought to be due to an interference with the early initiation of a local cell-mediated immune response (Shimizu and Shimizu 1979a).

The failure of cell culture-attenuated strains of TGEV to infect large numbers of epithelial cells or those located in the cranial portion of the small intestines of pigs probably explains why such strains cause milder diarrhea than that observed with virulent strains (Frederick et al. 1976; Furuuchi et al. 1979; Hess et al. 1977; Pensaert 1979). Furthermore, there was an inverse correlation between the level of cell culture attenuation of TGEV and the extent of intestinal infection (Hess et al. 1977). Cell-cultured strains of TGEV of reduced virulence in combination with a mildly virulent *E. coli* have been shown to cause a more severe disease in germ-free pigs than when either organism was given alone (Underdahl et al. 1972). Concurrent infections with TGEV and *E. coli* or porcine rotavirus have been reported (Hornich et al. 1977; Theil et al. 1979).

**Extraintestinal Replication Sites**

**TGEV.** Although ingestion is undoubtedly the most common portal of entry for the virus, the nasal route, or airborne infection, may be important, but the efficiency of this route of transmission for the spread of TGEV appears much less significant than for PRCV. Only in one study were macroscopic lung lesions observed in gnotobiotic pigs inoculated oronasally with TGEV, but no clinical pneumonia occurred (Underdahl et al. 1975). Concurrent infections with TGEV and *E. coli* or porcine rotavirus have been reported (Hornich et al. 1977; Theil et al. 1979). Highly attenuated strains of TGEV have also been reported that replicate in the upper respiratory tract and lung but not in the intestine of newborn pigs, thus, resembling PRCV infections (Furuuchi et al. 1979). Interestingly, 2 amino acid changes (nucleotides 219 and 655) occurred in the S gene between virulent (enteric) and attenuated (respiratory/enteric) TGEV strains that may account for this altered respiratory tropism (Ballesteros et al. 1997; Sanchez et al. 1999). Moreover, nasal shedding of TGEV was detected in infected piglets (VanCott et al. 1993) and in lactating sows exposed to infected piglets (Kemeny et al. 1975). In addition, studies have shown that TGEV is capable of replicating in mammary tissue of lactating sows (Saif and Bohl 1983) and that infected sows shed virus in milk (Kemeny and Woods 1977). The significance of possible mammary gland infection with TGEV under field conditions is unclear, as is whether it plays a role in agalactia, often seen in TGEV-infected sows or rapid spread of infection among piglets. Although natural infection of the porcine fetus with TGEV has not been reported, intrafetal inoculation results in the production of villous atrophy and seroconversion to TGEV (Redman et al. 1978).

**Porcine Respiratory Coronavirus.** PRCV has a tropism for cells of the respiratory tract. It replicates to high titer in porcine lungs ($10^7–10^8$ TCID$_{50}$) and also infects epithelial cells of the nares, trachea, bronchi, bronchioles, and alveoli and alveolar macrophages (Hayes et al. 2000; O’Toole et al. 1989; Pensaert et al. 1986). Viremia occurs following primary infection, and virus spreads to parenchymal organs and lymph nodes. Only a few scattered cells containing PRCV antigen are found in the small intestine, even when the virus is directly inoculated into the intestinal lumen. These infected cells are located in, or underneath, the epithelial layer of the intestinal villi and crypts, and the virus does not spread to adjacent cells (Cox et al. 1990a, b). This limited intestinal replication of PRCV explains why no or low titers of virus are detected in feces and most fecal PRCV may reflect swallowed virus (Costantini et al. 2004; VanCott et al. 1993, 1994).
Researchers have used MAb neutralization-resistant mutants and recombinant TGEV strains from infectious TGEV clones to explore the molecular basis for the difference in pathogenicity and tissue tropism between TGEV and PRCV strains (Ballesteros et al. 1997; Bernard and Laude 1995; Sanchez et al. 1999).

Bernard and Laude (1995) reported that most TGEV (Purdue-115 strain) MAb-resistant mutants selected with MAbs to S protein site D (absent on PRCV) exhibited a reduced enteropathogenicity in pigs that correlated with a point mutation or small deletion in the S protein gene encoding the N-terminal subregion of the S protein (similar region deleted in PRCV strains). Using recombinants generated between enteric/respiratory (PUR46) and respiratory (PTV) strains of TGEV, Ballesteros et al. (1997) concluded that a substitution in amino acid 219 of the S protein of the PUR46 recombinants was responsible for the loss of enteric tropism observed after inoculation of pigs with the PUR46 recombinants. The authors speculated that two different domains of the S protein (around amino acid 219) are required to infect intestinal epithelial cells: One domain binds to the cellular receptor, aminopeptidase N, and the other domain may be a binding site for an undefined intestinal coreceptor.

**LESIONS**

**Gross Lesions**

Gross lesions with TGE are usually confined to the gastrointestinal tract, with the exception of dehydration. The stomach is often distended with curdled milk and may have small areas of hemorrhage on the diaphragmatic side of the stomach (Hooper and Haelterman 1969). The small intestine is distended with yellow, foamy fluid and usually contains flecks of curdled undigested milk. The wall is thin and transparent, probably due to atrophy of the villi. Although lung lesions have been observed in experimentally infected gnotobiotic pigs (Underdahl et al. 1975), they have not been reported in pigs naturally infected with TGEV.

**Subgross Lesions**

A highly significant lesion of TGE is the markedly shortened villi of the jejunum and ileum, which Hooper and Haelterman (1969) referred to as villous atrophy (Figure 30.3). This is also seen in rotavirus diarrhea, but is not usually as severe or extensive as in TGE (Bohl et al. 1978). Infections with some strains of *E. coli* and coccidia have also been reported to produce this lesion (Hornich et al. 1969). The pathologic findings and extent of villous atrophy were highly variable in pigs from epidemiically infected herds (Pritchard 1987).

**Microscopic Lesions**

The degree of villous atrophy can be judged in histologic sections by comparing the length of the jejunal villi with the depth of the crypts of Lieberkühn. In normal piglets the villi-crypt ratio is about 7:1; in infected piglets the corresponding ratio is about 1:1 (Hooper and Haelterman 1969). Other lesions reported in experimentally challenged 8-week-old pigs include microulceration of the dome epithelium over Peyer’s patches (Chu et al. 1982a). By scanning EM, the intestinal lesions of TGE correlate well with those observed by light microscopy (Moxley and Olson 1989b; Waxler 1972). Using scanning EM, Moxley and Olson (1989b) showed that the level of passive immunity in TGEV-infected pigs influenced not only the degree of villous atrophy but also its segmental distribution. Villous atrophy was minimal in pigs nursing sows previously infected with virulent TGEV, compared to pigs nursing seronegative sows or sows given live attenuated vaccines. In partially protected pigs, villous atrophy was seen primarily in the ileum instead of the jejunum. Similar observations were noted in pigs from herds with endemic TGE. Transmission EM of TGEV-infected epithelial cells of the small intestine has revealed alterations in the microvilli, mitochondria, endoplasmic reticulum, and other cytoplasmic components. Virus particles, primarily in cytoplasmic vacuoles, were observed in villous enterocytes and in M cells, lymphocytes, and macrophages in the dome regions of Peyer’s patches (Chu et al. 1982a; Thake 1968; Wagner et al. 1973).

**PRCV Lesions**

In the case of PRCV, villous atrophy is not observed. However, microscopic examination of lungs from asymptomatic pigs reveals that PRCV causes a diffuse interstitial pneumonia in a high percentage of inoculated animals (Cox et al. 1990a; Hayes et al. 2000; O’Toole et al. 1989; van Nieuwstadt and Pol 1989). Others reported more severe respiratory lesions, dependent upon the strain and dose of PRCV used to experimentally infect pigs (Halbur et al. 1993, 1994; Jabran et al. 1994; Paul et al. 1994).

**IMMUNITY**

**Active Immunity**

The duration of active immunity in swine after oral infection with virulent TGEV has not been well characterized. Intestinal infection of breeding-age swine results in detectable serum antibodies that persist for at least 6 months to possibly several years (Stepanek 1979). However, the serum antibody titer, although providing serologic evidence of TGE, provides little indication of the degree of active immunity. Swine that have recovered from TGE are immune to subsequent short-term challenge, presumably due to local immunity within the intestinal mucosa (Brim et al. 1995; Saif et al. 1994; VanCott et al. 1993, 1994). The age and immune status of the animal at initial infection and the severity of the challenge may greatly influence the completeness and duration of this active immunity.
The mechanism of active immunity in the gut probably relates to stimulation of the secretory IgA (sIgA) immune system with production of intestinal sIgA antibodies by lymphoid cells within the lamina propria (Saif et al. 1994; VanCott et al. 1993, 1994). IgA TGEV antibodies and antibody-secreting cells (ASCs) have been detected in the intestine and serum of pigs after oral, but not parenteral, inoculation with TGEV (Kodama et al. 1980; Saif et al. 1994; VanCott et al. 1993, 1994). Kodama et al. (1980) proposed that detection of IgA antibody in the serum, presumably intestinally derived, might serve as an indicator of active immunity to TGE. In another study, oral inoculation of gnotobiotic pigs with TGEV resulted in development of both serum and intestinal TGEV-neutralizing antibodies detectable from 5 to at least 35 days postexposure (DPE) (Saif 1976). IgM (5–15 DPE) and IgA immunocytes (which remained predominant from 7 to 35 DPE) were detected in the intestinal lamina propria of the TGEV-infected gnotobiotic pigs.

More recently, an enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) technique was used to investigate the kinetics of IgA and IgG TGEV antibody production by the pig's systemic and local gut-associated lymphoid tissues (GALT). High numbers of IgA ASCs were induced in GALT only by virulent TGEV. In contrast, live attenuated (vaccine) TGEV or PRCV strains induced significantly fewer IgA ASCs (Berthon et al. 1990; Saif et al. 1994; VanCott et al. 1993, 1994).

These and other studies (Stone et al. 1982) indicate that the pig is immunocompetent at birth in regard to humoral and mucosal antibody production, but in the intestine, additional maturational time may be required for antibody responses to reach adult levels.

Besides local antibody-mediated immunity, cell-mediated immune responses may also be important in active immunity against TGEV infections. A number of tests have been used to demonstrate cell-mediated immunity (CMI) to TGEV, including macrophage migration inhibition (Frederick et al. 1976), leukocyte migration inhibition (Woods 1977) direct lymphocyte cytotoxicity (Shimizu and Shimizu 1979b), lymphocyte proliferation (Anton et al. 1995, 1996; Brim et al. 1994, 1995; Shimizu and Shimizu 1979c; Welch and Saif 1988), spontaneous cell-mediated cytotoxicity (SCMC), and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCMC) (Cepica and Derbyshire 1983).

Only indirect evidence exists concerning the role of CMI in resistance to TGEV infection. CMI was demonstrated with lymphocytes obtained from GALT of swine orally infected with virulent TGEV (Brim et al. 1994, 1995; Frederick et al. 1976; Shimizu and Shimizu 1979c; Welch et al. 1988); swine parenterally or oronasally inoculated with attenuated TGEV or PRCV-developed CMI mainly in systemic sites (spleen or peripheral blood lymphocytes). Lymphoproliferative responses to TGEV persisted within GALT, but not systemic lymphocytes, for at least 110 days after oral infection of 6-month-old swine (Shimizu and Shimizu 1979c) but for only about 14–21 days after infection of younger (7-to-11-day-old) pigs (Brim et al. 1994; Welch et al. 1988). It was confirmed that CD4 T-helper cells are involved in lymphoproliferative responses to TGEV (Anton et al. 1996).

A correlation between lymphoproliferative responses and lactogenic immunity to TGEV was described in sows vaccinated with attenuated or recombinant TGEV vaccines (Park et al. 1998). Although T-cell epitopes were identified by lymphoproliferation studies for each of the three major proteins of TGEV, a dominant functional T-helper epitope was defined on the N protein (N321) (Anton et al. 1995). The N321 peptide-induced T cells collaborated in the in vitro synthesis of TGEV-neutralizing antibodies specific for the S protein. These investigators further reported that production of high levels of TGEV-specific antibodies in vitro (from in vivo TGEV-primed mesenteric lymph node cells) required stimulation by at least two TGEV structural proteins, with maximal responses induced by native S protein rosettes in combination with recombinant N protein. Such findings have important implications for the optimal design of TGEV subunit or other recombinant TGEV vaccines.

Because lymphocyte cytotoxicity was absent in newborn piglets and decreased in parturient sows, it was proposed that a lack of K and NK cell activity against TGEV-infected cells may correlate with the increased susceptibility of newborn piglets and parturient sows to TGEV infection (Cepica and Derbyshire 1984). Thus, CMI may play a role in either recovery from TGEV infection or resistance to reinfection via the rapid elimination of TGEV-infected epithelial cells by any one or all of a combination of SCMC, ADCMC, or sensitized T lymphocyte-mediated cytotoxicity.

**PRCV**

The observation that epidemic outbreaks of TGE in Europe declined dramatically following the widespread dissemination of PRCV among European swine prompted researchers to examine whether a respiratory PRCV infection could induce active intestinal immunity and protection against TGEV. The consensus from several studies was that prior infection of nursing or weaned pigs with PRCV provided partial immunity against TGEV challenge, evident by a reduced duration and level of virus shedding and diarrhea in most (Brim et al. 1995; Cox et al. 1993; VanCott et al. 1994; Wesley and Woods 1996), but not all (van Nieuwstadt et al. 1989), pigs studied.

The mechanism of this partial immunity presumably is related to the rapid increase in TGEV-neutralizing antibody titers (Cox et al. 1993; Wesley and Woods 1996) and numbers of IgG and IgA ASCs observed in the intestines of PRCV-exposed pigs after TGEV challenge (Saif et al. 1994; VanCott et al. 1994). The latter researchers speculated that the migration of PRCV-specific IgG and IgA ASCs from the bronchus-associated...
lymphoid tissues (BALT) to the gut of the PRCV-exposed pigs after TGEV challenge might explain the rapid anamnestic response and the partial protection induced. However, after PRCV exposure of neonatal pigs, at least 6–8 days were required to develop partial immunity to TGEV challenge (Wesley and Woods 1996), suggesting that induction of active immunity might be too late to protect seronegative newborn piglets from epidemic TGE.

**Passive Immunity**

Passive immunity is of primary importance in providing newborn piglets with immediate protection against TGEV infection. Swine are born devoid of immunoglobulins (Igs), which they acquire after birth via colostrum. Colostral Igs, consisting primarily of IgG, represent a serum transudate that is transferred from the dam across the piglet’s intestinal epithelium to its circulation, thus providing the neonate with the same complement of serum antibodies as in the dam (Bourne 1973; Porter and Allen 1972). These passively acquired humoral antibodies function mainly in protection against systemic infection, but do not protect against intestinal infection (Hooper and Haelterman 1966). The concentration of IgG decreases during the first week of lactation, and IgA becomes the predominant Ig in milk (Porter and Allen 1972). Cells seeded from the intestine produce IgA locally in the mammary tissue (Roux et al. 1977). The piglets do not absorb slgA milk antibodies, but they play an important role in passive intestinal immunity.

Mechanisms of passive immunity to TGEV infections have been reviewed (Pensaert 1979; Saif and Bohl 1979a, 1981a; Saif and Smith 1985; Saif and Jackwood 1990). Swine that have recovered from TGE can transmit passive immunity to their suckling pigs (Bay et al. 1953). Suckling pigs are protected as a result of the frequent ingestion of colostrum or milk that contains TGEV-neutralizing antibodies. Such antibodies in the lumen of the intestine neutralize any ingested TGEV and thus protect the susceptible epithelial cells of the small intestine. Haelterman (1963) referred to this immunogenic mechanism as *lactogenic immunity*. This is accomplished naturally when piglets suckle immune sows about every 2 hours. Passive protection can also be accomplished artificially by continuous feeding of antiserum to piglets (Haelterman 1963; Noble 1964).

TGEV antibodies in colostrum and milk of sows are primarily associated with IgA or IgG (Abou-Youssef and Ristic 1972; Bohl et al. 1972; Saif et al. 1972). TGEV milk antibodies of the IgA class provide the most effective protection, but IgG antibodies were also protective if high titers could be maintained in milk (Bohl and Saif 1975) or by artificial feeding of colostral IgG (Stone et al. 1977). The greater efficacy of IgA TGEV antibodies is probably because (1) they occur in higher levels in milk (Porter and Allen 1972), (2) they are more resistant to proteolytic enzymes (Underdown and Dorrington 1974), and (3) they selectively bind to gut enterocytes (Nagura et al. 1978). TGEV antibodies in milk of the IgG class are produced as a result of parenteral or systemic immunization. IgA TGEV antibodies occur in the milk following intestinal infection. To explain their occurrence it was proposed that after antigenic sensitization in the gut, IgA immunocytes migrate to the mammary gland, where they localize and secrete IgA antibodies into the colostrum and milk (Saif and Bohl 1979a; Saif and Smith 1985; Saif et al. 1994; Saif and Bohl 1981a; Saif and Jackwood 1990). This “gut-mammary” immunologic axis, first proposed in relation to TGEV infections in swine (Bohl et al. 1972; Saif et al. 1972), is an important concept that provided the initial description of a common mucosal immune system, and was used for designing optimal vaccination procedures to provide effective lactogenic immunity.

**DIAGNOSIS**

This subject has been reviewed by Bohl (1981). Collection and preservation of appropriate clinical specimens are necessary for reliable diagnosis. Although villous atrophy is a consistent lesion in severely affected seronegative pigs, it frequently occurs in other enteric infections as well (rotavirus, PED, coccidia, and sometimes *E. coli*). Laboratory diagnosis of TGE may be accomplished by one or more of the following procedures: detection of viral antigen, detection of viral nucleic acids, microscopic detection of virus, isolation and identification of virus, or detection of a significant antibody response.

The serologic assays are complicated by the failure of conventional assays to differentiate between PRCV and TGEV antibodies (discussed under differential blocking ELISA). However, evaluation of clinical signs, histologic lesions, and tissue distribution of viral antigen may provide a presumptive diagnosis because PRCV does not cause diarrhea or villous atrophy and replicates almost exclusively in respiratory tissues (Pensaert 1989; Pensaert and Cox 1989). Thus, PRCV is suspected if there is antigen in lung tissues, seroconversion to TGEV/PRCV by VN test, and no signs of enteric disease.

**Detection of Viral Antigen**

The detection of TGE viral antigen in epithelial cells of the small intestine is probably the most common method for diagnosing TGE in young pigs. Either IF (Pensaert et al. 1970a) or immunocytochemical (Becker et al. 1974; Chu et al. 1982b; Shoup et al. 1996) techniques may be used, but they require pigs in the early stages of diarrhea. Either mucosal scrapings (these yield a greater sample of the intestinal surface area) (Black 1971) or frozen sections from the jejunum and ileum are prepared and stained by either the direct (Figure 30.4) or indirect IF method.
Problems that may be encountered in IF tests include (1) lack of sensitivity or specificity of reagents (primary or secondary reagents used must be free of antibodies to other enteric organisms, particularly rotavirus); (2) failure to obtain specimens early after onset of diarrhea before the loss of infected cells (piglets must be euthanized to obtain specimens); and (3) cross-reactions with FIPV, CCV, and PRCV. However, replication of PRCV in villous enterocytes is uncommon, and IF or immunocytochemical staining of villous enterocytes in conjunction with diarrhea almost certainly indicates TGEV.

An immunoperoxidase technique using MAb to the highly conserved N protein of TGEV has been applied to the detection of TGEV (intestinal tissues) or PRCV (lungs) using formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tissues (Shoup et al. 1996). This permits the diagnosis of TGEV/PRCV on the same tissues as used for histopathology and allows retrospective screening of fixed tissues for TGEV/PRCV. Although polyclonal antibodies will not differentiate between TGEV and PRCV, certain MAbs have been produced that react with TGEV, but not PRCV. These differentiating MAbs have been used in IF and immunocytochemical tests (Garwes et al. 1988; van Nieuwstadt and Pol 1989).

PRCV has been detected in respiratory tissues and nasal epithelial cells by IF and immunocytochemical tests, but use of differentiating MAbs is necessary for confirmation since enteric strains of TGEV may also replicate in these tissues.

A double antibody sandwich ELISA using monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies to TGEV as capture or secondary antibodies is used to detect TGEV antigens in cell culture, feces, and intestinal contents (Bernard et al. 1986; Cornaglia et al. 1994; Lanza et al. 1995; Lu et al. 1991; Sestak et al. 1996, 1999a; van Nieuwstadt et al. 1988) or PRCV antigen in nasal secretions or lung homogenates (Cornaglia et al. 1994; Lanza et al. 1995).

Detection of Viral Nucleic Acids

Nucleic acid hybridization probes have been developed to detect TGEV genome sequences in fecal samples, infected tissues, or infected cell cultures (Benfield et al. 1991; Shockley et al. 1987). Moreover, nucleic acid probes derived from the S' end of the TGEV spike gene can distinguish between PRCV and TGEV. In a hybridization assay, these probes selectively differentiated enteric TGEV isolates from the U.S., Japan, and England, including live attenuated TGEV vaccine strains from the U.S. and isolates of PRCV, FIPV, and CCV (Bae et al. 1991; Wesley et al. 1990a, 1991a).

RT-PCR and nonradioactive cDNA probes have also been used to detect and differentiate TGEV and PRCV isolates (Costantini et al. 2004; Kim et al. 2000a; Vaughn et al. 1994, 1996). This is accomplished by using PCR primers targeting the region of the S gene spanning the deletion region in PRCV strains.

Electron Microscopy

TGEV has been demonstrated in the intestinal contents and feces of infected pigs by negative-contrast transmission EM (Figure 30.5) (Saif and Bohl 1977). Immune EM (IEM) has advantages over conventional EM in being more sensitive for detecting TGEV and providing serologic identification of the virus from clinical specimens or cell culture harvests. In addition, use of IEM enables one to more readily differentiate TGEV from common enveloped membranous debris and to concurrently detect the presence of other enteric viruses (Saif and Bohl 1977). IEM is at least as sensitive as IF for detection of TGEV. IEM is also ap-

**Figure 30.4.** Immunofluorescing cells from a TGEV-infected pig. A compression smear was made from a mucosal scraping of the jejunum and stained by the direct fluorescent antibody test (×350).

**Figure 30.5.** Typical virus-antibody aggregates observed by IEM of TGEV and gnotobiotic pig anti-TGEV serum. Bar = 100 nm.
plicable for detection of PRCV shedding in nasal secretions (L. J. Saif, unpublished). However, this method cannot distinguish between TGEV and PRCV unless MAbs are used, although shedding of large numbers of PRCV in feces would not be expected (VanCott et al. 1993, 1994).

**Virus Isolation and Identification**

Oral exposure of young, seronegative pigs is probably the most sensitive method for isolating or detecting TGEV (Dulac et al. 1977). However, this procedure is very expensive. Consequently, cell cultures are more frequently used. Primary and secondary pig kidney cells (Bohl and Kumgai 1965) or pig kidney cell lines (Laude et al. 1981), primary porcine salivary gland cells (Stepanek et al. 1971), porcine thyroid cells (Witte 1971), and the McClurkin swine testicle (ST) cell line (McClurkin and Norman 1966) have been successfully used for isolating TGEV from feces or gut contents of infected pigs. However, parvovirus contamination of some cells prepared from porcine thyroid glands may be a disadvantage to the use of these cells (Dulac et al. 1977).

Distinct cytopathogenic effect (CPE) may be negligible upon primary isolation of field strains, and additional passages may be required before CPE is evident. The CPE usually seen in ST and porcine thyroid cells consists of enlarged, rounded, or elongated cells with a balloonlike appearance (Kemény 1978). The ST cell line has been used for detecting field strains of TGEV by CPE, plaques, or IF (Bohl 1979; Kemény 1978). For detecting viral CPE or plaques, the sensitivity of ST cells can be further enhanced by adding pancreatin or trypsin to cell culture media (Bohl 1979; Stark et al. 1975; Woods 1982) and using older cells (Stark et al. 1975).

For isolation of PRCV, pig kidney and particularly ST cells have been the cells of choice, but PRCV also grows in a continuous cat fetus cell line (Laude et al. 1993). Nasal swab fluids or lung tissue homogenates from affected swine are used for isolation of PRCV. The CPE resembles that produced by TGEV strains, with syncytia formation frequently observed for PRCV (Pensaert 1989; Kemény and Norman 1966) similar to that reported for SARS coronavirus grown in Vero cells (Ksiazek et al. 2003; Peiris et al. 2003).

Identification of cell culture virus can be done by VN, IF, or IEM using specific TGEV antiserum. However, MAbs specific for TGEV are required to confirm TGEV and exclude PRCV (Garwes et al. 1988; Laude et al. 1988). Alternatively, isolates can be differentiated using RT-PCR or specific cDNA probes (Enjuanes and Van der Zeist 1995; Kim et al. 2000a; Laude et al. 1993). Confusion with cross-reacting CCV and FIPV should not occur since these viruses do not replicate in ST or pig thyroid cells (Reynolds et al. 1980).

**Serology**

The detection of TGEV antibodies can assist in diagnosis and control in several different ways. However, the serologic diagnosis of TGEV is complicated by the fact that both TGEV and PRCV induce neutralizing antibodies that are qualitatively and quantitatively similar (Pensaert 1989; Pensaert and Cox 1989). A blocking ELISA test (described later) can differentiate between these antibodies. Serologic tests can also be used to monitor the TGEV or PRCV infection status of a herd. The entrance of only serologically negative swine will help maintain a herd free of TGEV and PRCV.

A rise in antibody titer between acute and convalescent serum samples provides retrospective evidence for epidemic TGE or infection with PRCV. However, the history of the herd with respect to disease and serologic status is needed to help interpret serologic findings. To determine whether endemic TGE or PRCV is a problem in a herd, serum samples from 2- to 6-month-old swine can be tested for antibodies. At this age, passively acquired antibodies should be absent (Derbyshire et al. 1969); thus, positive results suggest endemic TGEV or PRCV.

TGEV antibodies have been detected by several serologic tests. The VN test has been the most widely used, using cell culture–adapted viruses in cell culture systems by a variety of procedures: inhibition of CPE in microtiter plates (Toma and Benet 1976) and plaque reduction assays (Bohl and Kumgai 1965; Thomas and Dulac 1976) are the most common. Neutralizing antibodies to TGEV can be detected in serum as early as 7–8 days after infection and may persist for at least 18 months. Little is known about the persistence of neutralizing antibodies to PRCV within a herd (Cartwright 1968; Vannier et al. 1982).

Sensitive ELISA tests (Bernard et al. 1989; Berthon et al. 1990; Callebaut et al. 1989; Garwes et al. 1988; Hohdatsu et al. 1987; Nelson and Kelling 1984; Paul et al. 1986; Sestak et al. 1999a, b; van Nieuwstadt et al. 1989) have been described, but require concentrated purified virus or S protein for coating ELISA plates.

Complement-fixing antibodies have not been demonstrated in convalescent swine (Dulac et al. 1977).

**Blocking ELISA for Serologic Differentiation of PRCV and TGEV**

Studies using MAbs to TGEV have shown that certain antigenic sites on TGEV are not present on the S protein of PRCV because of the deletion from the S protein (Callebaut et al. 1989; Laude et al. 1988; Sanchez et al. 1990; Sestak et al. 1999b; Simkins et al. 1992, 1993). This difference between TGEV and PRCV serves as the basis of serologic tests to determine whether a swine herd is infected with TGEV or PRCV (Bernard et al. 1989; Callebaut et al. 1989; Garwes et al. 1988; Simkins et al. 1993; van Nieuwstadt and Boonstra 1992).

In the blocking ELISA, TGEV antigen or recombinant S protein (Sestak et al. 1999b) coated onto ELISA plates is reacted with either TGEV or PRCV antiserum followed by the distinguishing MAb. TGEV antiserum contains competing antibody that blocks the binding of the
MAb, whereas the PRCV antiserum does not block and allows the MAb to bind. Thus, a negative (no blocking) reaction in ELISA and a positive result in the VN test are evidence of a PRCV infection. The test should be evaluated only on a herd basis because some pigs with low TGEV or PRCV antibody titers, as occurs early in the infection process (7–14 days) or after infection with some TGEV strains, may go undiagnosed (Callebaut et al. 1989; Sestak et al. 1999b; Simkins et al. 1993; van Nieuwstadt and Boonstra 1992). Presently, to export TGE-free swine from countries where PRCV infections occur, only this test provides the differential information required to confirm TGEV seropositive animals. The accuracy of commercial ELISAs for differentiating U.S. strains of PRCV and TGEV is low and therefore appears to be applicable on a herd, but not individual pig, basis (Sestak et al. 1999b).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

Treatment

Antiviral agents have not yet been developed for the specific treatment of TGE. Some inhibition of TGEV replication in cell culture has been reported for the antiviral compounds amantadine (Dimitrov 1982) and isathiazolone (Potopal’skii et al. 1983). Although high levels of type 1 interferon were detected in the intestine of pigs in the early phase of TGEV infection, the role of this interferon in the recovery or pathogenesis of TGE was undetermined (La Bonnardiere and Laude 1981). Studies suggest that interferon may activate natural killer cells in newborn pigs, thereby contributing a degree of resistance to challenge with TGEV (Lesnick and Derbyshire 1988; Loewen and Derbyshire 1988). In addition, during a field outbreak of TGE, 1- to 12-day-old piglets treated orally for 4 days with 1–20 IU of human interferon-alpha had significantly greater survival rates than placebo-treated piglets (Cummins et al. 1995). However, no increased survival was seen in piglets given human interferon-alpha shortly after birth. Whether such therapy could be cost-effective for treatment of TGEV-infected piglets was not assessed.

The only treatment for TGE presently available is to alleviate starvation, dehydration, and acidosis. Parenteral treatment with fluids, electrolytes, and nutrients would be effective in treating young pigs, but not practical under farm conditions. Oral therapy with balanced electrolyte and glucose solutions is contraindicated in young pigs (Moon 1978). The following measures are suggested: provide a warm (preferably above 32°C), draft-free, dry environment and make water or nutrient solution freely accessible to the thirsty TGEV-infected pigs. Such measures will tend to reduce mortality in pigs that are infected at more than 3–4 days of age. Antibacterial therapy might be beneficial in 2- to 5-week-old pigs, especially if there is concurrent infection with pathogenic strains of E. coli. Cross-fostering or putting infected or susceptible litters onto TGE-immune sows was found useful in various field outbreaks (Pritchard 1982; Stepanek 1979).

Management

Preventing Entrance of TGEV into a Herd. Swine in the incubative stage of the disease or those in the viral shedding or carrier state can carry TGEV into a herd. Some precautions to help prevent this possibility are to introduce swine that originate from herds known to be free of TGE, are serologically negative, and/or have been placed in isolation on the farm for 2–4 weeks before being added to the herd proper. A frequent question is, “How soon after a TGE outbreak can pigs be moved to another herd without spreading the disease?” A practical answer to this question is that a period of 4 weeks should elapse from the last sign of disease before introducing such animals into a “clean” herd.

Animal vectors, such as starlings, have been incriminated as a means of spread between herds in winter months because of their tendency to gather in large flocks and feed around swine. Cats, dogs, or foxes might play a role in spreading TGE between herds under certain situations (see section on epidemiology). Feces from TGEV-infected swine can be carried on boots, shoes, clothing, truck beds, feeds, etc., and can be a source of infection to other herds. Especially in winter, this is probably an important means by which TGEV is transmitted during the transport of livestock and feed. Consequently, precautions should be taken to minimize such occurrences.

After Onset of TGE. When TGE has occurred on a farm and pregnant animals have not yet been exposed, two procedures may minimize losses of newborn pigs.

1. If the animals are due to farrow in more than 2 weeks, purposely expose them to virulent virus, such as the minced intestines of infected pigs, so that they will be immune at farrowing.
2. If the animals will farrow in less than 2 weeks, attempt to provide facilities and management procedures that will avoid exposure to TGEV until at least 3 weeks postfarrowing.

To minimize deaths, provide young pigs with a warm, dry, draft-free environment and access to water, nutrient solution, or milk replacer (see section on treatment).

Some success has been achieved in elimination of TGEV from epidemiologically infected closed breeder herds without depopulation by the following procedures (Harris et al. 1987):

1. Bring in all breeding stock replacements for the next 4–6 months.
2. In the face of an outbreak, feed TGEV-infected minced intestines simultaneously to all pigs in the
herd (including replacement stock) to eliminate susceptible hosts, thereby shortening the time the disease progresses through the herd and ensuring more uniform exposure levels in all pigs.

3. Maintain strict all-in/all-out production in farrowing and nursery units.

4. Add sentinel seronegative pigs about 2 months after clinical signs of TGE disappear and monitor these pigs for seroconversion to TGEV.

Potential hazards associated with feedback control of TGE include possible spread of other pathogens to pregnant sows and throughout the herd.

Endemic TGE. Two approaches can be considered in attempting to control or terminate an endemic TGE herd problem.

First, pregnant seropositive sows can be vaccinated intramuscularly (IM) late in gestation or shortly after farrowing with live attenuated TGEV to boost immunity. Although only limited information is available, this procedure should boost milk antibody levels (Saif and Bohl 1983) and provide longer passive immunity to suckling pigs (Leopoldt and Meyer 1978; Stepanek 1979). Although this procedure may only delay the onset of TGE in exposed pigs, it can be beneficial in reducing mortality.

Second, alterations in management can be made to break the cycle of infection by eliminating reservoirs of susceptible pigs in a unit; prevent the continual influx of susceptible animals into the herd (e.g., by temporarily altering the farrowing schedule), temporarily utilize other facilities, and create smaller farrowing and nursery units to more nearly achieve an all-in/all-out management system.

Immunoprophylaxis

TGE Vaccination of Neonatal or Weaned Pigs. Neonatal pigs have been orally vaccinated with attenuated TGEV in an attempt to induce rapid protection via either interference or local immunity. No early interference has been demonstrated and generally more than 5 days were required before protection due to active immunity could be induced (Pensaert 1979). One study reported a slightly earlier onset of protection, by 3–4 DPI, after maintaining vaccinated pigs at a lowered temperature (18–20°C) to enhance replication of the attenuated virus (Furuuchi et al. 1976). Failure to induce an early interference phenomenon and the delay required for development of active immunity make neonatal vaccination an unlikely method of providing immediate protection against TGEV within the critical first few days of life.

Active immunization of suckling or feeder pigs could be important for control of endemic infections, especially in newly weaned pigs, in which TGEV infections may result in increased mortality. Live attenuated and inactivated TGEV vaccines have been federally licensed for oral or intraperitoneal administration, respectively, shortly after birth. One limited preliminary study reported greater protection in vaccinated, seropositive suckling pigs compared to controls, even though serum antibody levels were not enhanced but were comparable in the two groups (Graham 1980). However, challenge in older piglets usually is much more difficult to standardize, due to age resistance to infection.

Further studies reported that the presence of maternal antibodies in vaccinated pigs decreased (Hess et al. 1982; Lanza et al. 1995; Sestak et al. 1996) or completely suppressed (Furuuchi et al. 1978) active antibody production following oral administration of live TGEV. In the latter study, conducted in suckling piglets nursing naturally infected sows (Furuuchi et al. 1978), high levels of both passive circulating and intestinal antibodies in the suckling piglets probably accounted for the complete interference with active immunization by an attenuated strain of TGEV.

Other approaches have been used in attempts to actively immunize young pigs against TGEV. Woods and Pedersen (1979) noted 33% mortality in challenged pigs vaccinated orally/intraperitoneally with two doses of the antigenically related live virulent FIPV. In comparison, 100% of the challenged pigs that were orally vaccinated once with an attenuated SP variant of TGEV. Gough and Jorgenson (1983) reported that young weaned pigs inoculated IM with two or three doses of an adjuvanted, soluble, undefined TGEV subunit (23 kDa) vaccine were protected against virus challenge. However, parenteral administration of three doses of a baculovirus-expressed recombinant S protein (containing the four major antigenic sites, A–D) in adjuvant to suckling piglets elicited neutralizing antibodies to TGEV in serum but failed to protect pigs against TGEV challenge (Shoup et al. 1997). When the three major TGEV baculovirus-expressed structural proteins were coadministered intraperitoneally with E. coli thermodabile adjuvant to 3-week-old piglets, immune responses associated with virus-specific IgA resulted in markedly reduced rectal virus shedding upon challenge with TGEV (Sestak et al. 1999a). The later study suggests that TGEV-derived baculovirus constructs can be exploited for stimulation of protective mucosal and systemic immune responses.

TGEV Vaccination of the Seronegative Pregnant Dam. A variety of viral vaccines (virulent, attenuated, inactivated, and subunit) and routes of administration (oral, intranasal, intramuscular, subcutaneous, and intramammary) (Bohl and Saif 1975; Kaji and Shimizu 1978; Moxley and Olson 1989a; Pensaert 1979; Saif and Bohl 1979a; Saif et al. 1994; Saif and Jackwood 1990; Voets et al. 1980) have been tested for induction of lactogenic immunity. Oral administration of live virulent virus to pregnant sows generally gave the highest level of immu-
nity, resulting in protective immunity for the sow and consistently producing high titers of persisting IgA TGEV antibodies in milk associated with protective lactogenic immunity for suckling pigs.

**Vaccines and Vaccination.** There are presently several federally licensed TGEV vaccines. All contain inactivated or live attenuated TGEV and are approved for use in pregnant or neonatal swine. These vaccines and their efficacy will be considered in the following sections according to their respective routes of administration. Many variables complicate the evaluation of both experimental and commercial TGEV vaccines, often resulting in conflicting data. These include the challenge dose and strain of TGEV; the age of the pig at challenge; environmental conditions, especially temperature; the milking efficiency of the vaccinated sow; and the immune status of the dam at vaccination.

**Oral and/or Intranasal Vaccination.** Based on the observation that sows infected with TGEV during gestation could transmit immunity to their piglets, “planned” infection of pregnant swine with virulent TGEV has been used to mimic this natural immunity. This procedure is accomplished by feeding virulent autogenous virus to pregnant swine at least 2 weeks before farrowing. The virus may consist of minced guts from young pigs acutely infected with TGEV and is administered to sows with food. Oral vaccination of pregnant swine with attenuated TGEV is a logical route of vaccination for stimulating milk IgA TGEV antibodies aimed at duplicating the natural route of infection and induction of immunity. The intranasal (IN) route alone or with the oral route is used because attenuated strains of TGEV replicate in the respiratory tract (Furuuchi et al. 1979) and upon being swallowed might seed additional virus to the gut. However, results using attenuated strains orally and/or IN have generally been disappointing (Henning and Thomas 1981; Moxley and Olson 1989a; Saif and Bohl 1979a, 1981a; Voets et al. 1980). In previous studies using the high-passaged Purdue strain of TGEV orally, or orally and IM, few IgA TGEV antibodies were evident, and mortality among challenged pigs from vaccinated dams ranged from 25% to 100% (Moxley and Olson 1989a; Saif and Bohl 1979a, b; Saif and Jackwood 1990; Voets et al. 1980).

Concerns that attenuated strains of TGEV might not survive passage through the acidic environment of the stomach prompted studies using lyophilized attenuated virus in enteric-coated gelatin capsules (Hess et al. 1978; Voets et al. 1980). Hess et al. (1978), using the high titered B1 strain of TGEV (300 cell culture passages), reported high levels of IgA TGEV antibodies in milk and only 10% piglet mortality. Voets et al. (1980) used the high-passaged Purdue strain and found that most sows failed to seroconvert after oral vaccination, and even the sows that seroconverted had a 44% piglet mortality rate. Fichtner et al. (1982) reported 30% mortality in challenged piglets after feeding attenuated Riems TGEV to the dams for 10 days during gestation.

In further efforts to ensure that vaccine virus reached the small intestine, two studies used direct inoculation of attenuated viruses into the intestinal lumen. Again, protection was poor (62% mortality) (Voets et al. 1980) in challenged piglets from dams given a single intraluminal inoculation of attenuated Purdue TGEV during gestation, but greater protection (10% mortality) was achieved when dams received repeated intraluminal inoculations (Fichtner et al. 1982).

Other researchers selected variants of high- and low-passaged TGEV strains resistant to low pH and proteolytic enzymes in vitro and used these strains as vaccines for passive protection studies (Aynaud et al. 1985; Bernard et al. 1989; Chen 1985; Shirai et al. 1988). They reported inconsistent results, with mortality varying from 0–73% among litters challenged with virulent TGEV. In the latter two studies, data interpretation was confounded somewhat by variations in the ages of the pigs at challenge, a factor shown in other studies to dramatically influence piglet survivability (Moxley and Olson 1989a).

A live attenuated SP variant TGEV grown in a persistently infected porcine leukocyte cell line has been used to vaccinate pregnant swine by the oral/IN and/or intramammary routes (Woods 1978, 1984). Challenge of the suckling pigs resulted in mortality of 14–34%. In the latter study the author reported generally high TGEV IgA and IgG antibody titers in 3–4 days postfarrowing (DPF) milk. However, three of eight sows vaccinated with SP TGEV became mildly sick after challenge exposure of their nursing pigs. Although diarrhea was observed in pigs nursing SP-TGEV vaccinates (48% morbidity), it was reportedly mild and delayed in onset (3 DPF). The SP TGEV has been reported to be avirulent for newborn pigs, replicating within the intestinal lamina propria but not epithelial cells (Woods et al. 1981).

Molecular analysis of several attenuated TGEV strains revealed changes in mRNA 2 and 3 affecting the S protein and nonstructural protein 3 (Register and Wesley 1994). Inconsistent results were noted in vaccination studies using a commercial vaccine administered twice orally (in feed) and once IM. Whereas Welter (1980) reported 8% mortality among challenged pigs, others reported higher mortality, similar to that in piglets suckling unvaccinated sows (Bohl et al. 1982; Moxley and Olson 1989a; Saif and Bohl 1981b). The generally poor results obtained with oral or IN vaccination of sows using attenuated TGEV strains may be attributed to the superficial or limited replication of most attenuated strains in the sow’s intestine (Frederick et al. 1976; Hess et al. 1977). Consequently, this results in little antigenic stimulation of underlying intestinal IgA plasma cells and correspondingly little IgA antibody secretion in milk.
Attempts to use a low cell culture-passaged TGEV to induce passive immunity led to erratic results in terms of both seroconversion in orally/IN exposed sows and protection in piglets (Saif and Bohl 1979b). The dilemma remains of how to commercially develop a vaccine to prevent epidemic TGEV capable of stimulating IgA in the gut of sows but being sufficiently attenuated or noninfectious so as not to produce disease in newborn pigs.

Parenteral Vaccination. Various experimental and two commercial vaccines composed of live attenuated virus were administered IM about 6 and 2 weeks prefarrowing. Experimental evaluations of this vaccination regime have generally indicated reduced piglet mortality (38–56% in vaccines compared with 71–92% in controls), but not morbidity (Bohl and Saif 1975; Moxley and Olson 1989a; Voets et al. 1980). However, vaccination results were poor when compared with almost complete protection (0–9% mortality) in litters of naturally infected sows.

Henning and Thomas (1981) and Matishack et al. (1982) reported more favorable vaccination results, i.e., mortality of 10% and 18%, using two commercial vaccines. The IM vaccination procedure has two major disadvantages. (1) Vaccinated swine develop little or no gut immunity; they usually get sick when exposed to TGEV. If this occurs during lactation, their suckling pigs will be deprived of adequate milk. (2) The TGEV antibodies found in the milk of these vaccinated sows are of the IgG class and of low titer and fail to provide optimal passive protection to suckling pigs.

Intramammary injection of seronegative pregnant swine with TGEV resulted in high titers of primarily IgG TGEV antibodies in milk, whereas similar injections in lactating sows resulted in IgA and IgM TGEV antibodies. Specific antibody activity was found not only in milk from injected glands but also in milk from noninjected glands (Bohl and Saif 1975; Saif and Bohl 1983). Protection was good (14–26% mortality) in litters of intramammary vaccinated pregnant swine, presumably because exceptionally high levels of IgG antibodies persisted in the milk at the time of challenge, 3 days postfarrowing (Bohl and Saif 1975; Shibley et al. 1973).

A similar, greatly enhanced, predominantly IgG milk antibody titer was noted in two sows vaccinated IM/IN with the high-titered (10^8–10^9.3 TCID50) attenuated TO163 strain of TGEV. No mortality occurred in either of these litters, confirming the protective ability of IgG TGEV antibodies when present in high titers in milk (Kaji and Shimizu 1978).

Heterologous Vaccines. The antigenic relationship between TGEV and FIPV was the basis for studies of the possible efficacy of FIPV as a heterologous coronavirus vaccine in swine. Preliminary studies indicated that some immunity (25% mortality) against TGE was conferred in pigs nursing two sows vaccinated during gestation orally/IN and intramammarily with live virulent FIPV. However, this FIPV was pathogenic in newborn pigs (Woods and Pedersen 1979). Subsequent studies using cell culture–adapted attenuated FIPV in sows by the same routes of inoculation resulted in higher litter mortality (52%) and low TGEV antibody titers of the IgG class in milk (Woods 1984).

Vaccination of TGEV-Infected Swine. Vaccines have been used on two populations of pregnant swine: those that have, and those that have not, previously been naturally infected with TGEV or PRCV. There are significant differences in the immune responses and, consequently, piglet protection in these two groups of animals following vaccination. These differences may account for some of the discrepant results seen in vaccine challenge studies, if previously infected swine were unknowingly used. This possibility can be eliminated only by using a very sensitive test (such as plaque reduction VN) to measure TGEV/PRCV antibodies and by knowing the herd history of test animals in terms of previous TGE outbreaks. Occurrence of PRCV in herds further complicate TGEV vaccine studies.

Limited laboratory research has indicated that parenteral inoculation of previously infected swine during gestation using attenuated TGEV resulted in a boost in TGEV milk antibodies in both the IgA and IgG classes (Saif and Bohl 1981a, b, 1983; Saif and Smith 1985). Others have also reported increased milk TGEV antibody titers (4–7-fold) after intramammary inoculation of previously infected swine with inactivated TGEV (Thorsen and Djurickovic 1971). Currently available parenterally administered TGEV vaccines may be more effective in boosting immunity in previously TGEV or PRCV infected pregnant swine than in initiating immunity in previously uninfected seronegative pregnant swine. These vaccines may be especially useful in herds in which endemic TGE is a problem (Leopoldt and Meyer 1978; Stepanek 1979).

PRCV Maternal Vaccines to Prevent TGE. Since PRCV became widespread in the European swine herds, the incidence and severity of TGE in countries with PRCV have declined (Laude et al. 1993; Pensaert and Cox 1989). This suggests that previous exposure of swine to PRCV imparts partial immunity to TGEV (Pensaert 1989; Pensaert and Cox 1989).

A number of researchers have examined the relationship between PRCV infection of sows and passive immunity to TGEV in piglets. Prior natural exposure of sows to PRCV induced a variable degree (44–53% mortality) of passive protection against experimental TGEV challenge of suckling pigs (Bernard et al. 1989; Paton and Brown 1990). Variable protection in the field during TGE outbreaks was also noted among litters of PRCV-exposed sows (Callebaut et al. 1990; Pensaert and Cox 1989).
sows, antigenic subite A (Aa, Ab, Ac), followed by antigenic subite D (Madrid), was the best inducer of IgA antibodies, whereas after PRCV infection, antigenic site D and subite Ab were immunodominant. These authors concluded that only IgA recognizing at least antigenic sites A and D conferred good protection in vivo, whereas any Ig class recognizing only one antigenic site neutralized virus in cell culture.

Clearly, additional studies are necessary to clarify the levels and mechanisms of active and passive immunity to TGEV established in swine by previous exposure to PRCV. In particular, it is important to elucidate the mechanism by which IgA antibodies are induced after infection with PRCV, whether a BALT-mammary gland immunologic link exists but is less efficient than the gut-mammary link for induction of IgA in milk, why IgA antibodies occur only in some PRCV-exposed sows, and the effectiveness of these IgA antibodies in protecting suckling pigs against intestinal TGEV infections.

New Vaccine Approaches. With existing vaccines being either too attenuated or applied at a dose that is too low, protection is inconsistent (Saif 1996; Saif and Jackwood 1990; Shoup et al. 1997; VanCott et al. 1993) and the search for more reliable vaccines continues. For protection of suckling piglets, research continues to focus on the principle of colostral and lacteal intake of IgA antibodies after immunization of sows with live attenuated vaccines (Park et al. 1998; Saif 1996; Sestak et al. 1999a).

During the last decade, emphasis has been on the construction of TGEV protein subunit vaccines. Among the three major structural proteins of TGEV, the S protein contains immunodominant epitopes that are recognized by virus-neutralizing antibodies (Delmas et al. 1986; Jimenez et al. 1986). Some of these epitopes were shown to be continuous domains (Delmas and Laude 1990; Gebauer et al. 1991; Posthumus et al. 1990), prompting the design of antigenic synthetic peptides derived from the S protein (Posthumus et al. 1991). It was found that the N protein contains the major T helper cell epitopes (Anton et al. 1995). A synthetic 15-mer peptide epitope derived from the N protein was shown to cooperate with the S protein for in vitro induction of TGEV-specific antibody (Anton et al. 1996).

To express the TGEV S, M, or N proteins, several prokaryotic and eukaryotic systems such as E. coli, salmonella, adenovirus, vaccinia virus, baculovirus, and plants were used (Britton et al. 1987; Enjuanes et al. 1992; Godet et al. 1991; Gomez et al. 2000; Park et al. 1998; Pulford and Britton 1991; Shoup et al. 1997; Smerdou et al. 1996a; Smerdou et al. 1996b; Torres et al. 1996; Tuboly et al. 1994, 2000). In some studies, protective antibodies were induced in inoculated animals, correlating with partial protection (Torres et al. 1995). In other studies, no induction of protective antibodies was reported (Gomez et al. 1998, 2000; Smerdou et al.
piglets passively fed the immune serum were orally challenged with the immune serum-TGEV mixture, only pigs fed immune serum from swine vaccinated with the S constructs with sites A–D were passively protected against TGE mortality and partially protected against infection.

Other researchers developed a recombinant human adenovirus vector expressing the full length S protein of PRCV (Callebaut et al. 1996). Pigs inoculated oronasally with the recombinant adenovirus S vaccine were not protected against PR CV nasal shedding after PR CV challenge, but they had shorter shedding and a rapid anamnestic neutralizing antibody response to PR CV. In other studies, a porcine adenovirus S expressing the TGEV S glycoprotein was used for oral immunization of pigs (Tuboly and Nagy 2001). Although IgA antibodies to TGEV were induced in the intestines of the inoculated pigs, the pigs shed TGEV in feces after challenge (Callebaut et al. 1996).

Recent studies with TGEV infectious cDNA mini-genomes indicate that this approach can also be exploited for targeted delivery of immunogens derived from other pathogens to the intestine or respiratory tract (Alonso et al. 2002; Gonzalez et al. 2002; Sola et al. 2003). When nonessential TGEV open reading frames 3a or 3b were replaced by a heterologous green fluorescence gene it was shown that the virus retained immunogenic and also enteropathogenic properties (Sola et al. 2003).

Since the pathology of TGEV remains localized in the intestine, an effective vaccine should primarily elicit an intestinal immune response that can be targeted by oronasal immunizations with adequate doses and forms of attenuated vaccines (Saif and Jackwood 1990; VanCott et al. 1993). Further improvements of TGEV vaccines might be achieved by the use of supplementary mucosal delivery systems such as immunostimulating complexes (ISCOMs), biodegradable microparticles, or infectious recombinant TGEV clones engineered to enhance TGEV immunogenicity and reduce pathogenicity.

REFERENCES


—. 1984. Antibody-dependent and spontaneous cell-mediated cytotoxicity against transmissible gastroenteritis virus infected


CHAPTER 30 TRANSMISSIBLE GASTROENTERITIS AND PORCINE RESPIRATORY CORONAVIRUS 511


Kim L, Chang KO, Sestak K, Parwani A, Saif LJ. 2000a. Development of a reverse transcription-nested polymerase chain reac-


CHAPTER 30  TRANSMISSIBLE GASTROENTERITIS AND PORCINE RESPIRATORY CORONAVIRUS 515


The principal vesicular diseases that affect swine are foot-and-mouth disease (FMD), vesicular stomatitis (VS), and swine vesicular disease (SVD). There are other infectious diseases and conditions that can produce signs and pathologies in pigs similar to those seen in these three viral diseases, but they cannot be covered adequately in the scope of this chapter. Salient among the diseases not covered are two caliciviruses (vesicular exanthema of swine virus and San Miguel sea lion virus) and conditions such as caustic agents. It is imperative that practitioners attending a case of a vesicular disease immediately notify and collaborate with the veterinary authorities. The figures included in this chapter are purposely not identified as to which vesicular disease is the causative agent with the objective of emphasizing their identical clinical appearance.

**GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR THE OUTBREAK OF A VESICULAR DISEASE (DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS)**

A farm with signs of a vesicular disease should be considered infected with FMD until proven otherwise. This is because of the highly infectious nature of the foot-and-mouth disease virus (FMDV), the fact that lesions caused by agents causing vesicular lesions cannot be differentiated on the basis of gross lesions, and because of the severe consequences for international trade.

When the investigation ensues, it is essential that samples are collected properly and submitted to a laboratory qualified to conduct the appropriate testing. FMDV can be grown on several tissue cell types, but samples for virus isolation recovered from a ruminant species should be assayed on permissive ruminant cells—i.e., bovine thyroid, lamb kidney—and those from swine on permissive swine cells—i.e., swine kidney/IBRS-2. Virus isolation for SVD on IBRS-2 cells is considered one of the most sensitive methods for laboratory diagnosis. In addition to IBRS-2 cells, SK6, PK-15, and primary or secondary porcine kidney cells are also susceptible to SVDV. Among the cells most commonly used to grow VSV in the laboratory are monkey kidney cells (Vero), hamster cells (BHK, CHO), chick embryo cells, and mouse cells.

As with FMD and VS, RT-PCR techniques have also been developed to detect SVD viral genome (Callahan et al. 2002; Callens and De Clercq 1999; Lin et al. 1997; Niedbalski et al. 2000; Reid et al. 2000). Virus isolation and RT-PCR are the tests of first choice for detection of SVDV in feces or from the principal tissues described earlier. In fresh vesicular material, the amount of virus (FMD, VSV, or SVD) is very high and an ELISA can be used for antigen detection and identification (Hamblin and Crowther 1995).

Other causes of vesicular or erosive lesions, including infectious (swine pox, parvovirus, or mycotic dermatitis), toxic (parsnip or celery contact dermatitis), and chemical burns (Kresse et al. 1985; Montgomery et al. 1987), should also be considered in the diagnostic workup.

**THE VETERINARY PRACTITIONER’S RESPONSE**

The veterinary practitioner who suspects a vesicular disease, having notified the relevant veterinary authorities, should immediately disinfect their equipment, boots, and vehicle, and should not visit any other premises on which other susceptible animals are kept. Rapid detection and immediate notification of outbreaks are imperative for control of the disease (Geering and Lubroth 2002). The practitioner could provide assistance to the veterinary authorities by beginning a line of epidemiological questioning regarding movements on and off the farm, identification of contacts, e.g., livestock market deliveries, purchases of feed, bedding, or exchanges with other farms. The practitioner’s knowledge of the area with regard to producers, auctions and markets, feed distributors, and the activities of other clinicians, can be a valuable asset to the authorities in their attempts to contain and ascertain disease transmission paths.
Foot-and-Mouth Disease

Foot-and-mouth disease virus (FMDV) was recognized over 100 years ago, making it the first animal virus to be discovered. In 1897, Loeffler and Frosch presented their seminal experiments showing that a filterable agent (virus), not a toxin, was responsible for the disease. The disease itself was described in several ancient literary and historical accounts, the first attributed to Aristotle in the third century before the Common Era. Later, a more accurate description appeared in the writings of the Italian poet and physician Girolamo Fracastoro in De Contagione et Contagiosis Morbis et Curatione in 1546 (reprinted in part in Casas Olascoaga et al. 1999).

Of all the diseases known to human and animal medicine, foot-and-mouth disease (FMD) is probably the most contagious. Infected animals can shed high titers of virus in excretions, secretions, and from superficial lesions. The virus is found in semen, feces, oropharyngeal fluids, and contaminated food products and waste, and can be carried by aerosols across considerable distances. Importantly, the plethora of virus types makes it difficult to make generalizations based on the characteristics of one virus subtype that apply to all virus types and subtypes. Furthermore, since FMD viruses affect numerous hosts, including both domestic and wild animals, observations based on a certain virus in a specific host may not necessarily be true for another virus in the same or different host species.

All continents have historically been affected by FMD, with the exception of Antarctica. Trade barriers imposed on countries with FMD infection limit their access to international markets. Thus, several regions have either eradicated FMD (i.e., North America and Western Europe) or have undertaken extraordinary regional efforts to control its incidence and eliminate its occurrence altogether (i.e., South America and Oceania). Continued surveillance for vesicular diseases is of the utmost importance to FMDV-free countries and to those that have established control campaigns. Early detection of FMD and early response to its presence are critical to the mission of veterinary services around the world.

Because of its highly infectious nature, FMD has been the leading force behind much of the national and international veterinary service legislation and regulations regarding markets, exports and imports, quarantines, inspection, diagnostic competencies, and the need to establish contingency and emergency response plans.

ETIOLOGY

The viruses of FMD belong to the Genus Aphthovirus (aphtho—vesicle, blister) in the family Picornaviridae. Included in the family are poliovirus, hepatitis A virus, the rhinoviruses, and enteroviruses (such as SVD virus, which is discussed later in this chapter).

Aphthoviruses are small (~25 nm) and composed of ~8.5 kilobases of single-stranded, positive-sense RNA wrapped in a nonenveloped capsid structure comprised of 60 copies each of four viral proteins. The viral RNA encodes for a single polyprotein of some 3000 amino acids. During translation the nascent polyprotein is cleaved into 13 proteins. Proteins, 1A, 1B, 1C, and 1D (historical nomenclature defines these as VP2, VP4, VP3, and VP1, respectively, as reviewed in Grubman and Baxt 2004) form the viral capsid with 3B viral protein linked to the RNA. The nonstructural proteins (2A, 2B, 2C, 3A, 3B [of which there are three copies], 3C, and 3D), are involved in virus replication and host-cell shut off.

Within the FMD viruses, seven distinct serotypes are recognized: serotype A (French for Germany—Allemagne); serotype O (for the Oise Region in France, but once referred to as type B); serotype C (the third virus to be recognized as antigenically distinct); serotype Southern African Territories (SAT) 1, SAT 2, and SAT 3; and serotype Asia 1 (Bachrach 1968). Multiple variants or subtypes exist within each serotype (Bachrach 1968; Carrillo et al. 1990; Domingo et al. 1995).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Geographic Distribution

In Asia, FMDV is endemic in all countries in the region except Brunei, East Timor, Indonesia, Japan, Singapore, and South Korea. The eastern states of Malaysia are also free and the Philippines is well on the way to eradication, with the exception of peri-urban occurrence of FMD around Manila. The most prevalent serotypes are O, A, and Asia 1. The disease causes considerable loss of buffalo draft power for rice cropping and production losses in pigs and cattle, and is a major constraint to trade in cattle, pigs, or their products within the region. The spread of FMD in Asia is closely related to the unofficial movement patterns of cattle and pigs (or their products) for trade purposes. Wildlife reservoirs for FMD in the region are not known, although the possibility exists in wild bovine and porcine species in several countries.

In recent years, the highly contagious Pan-Asian Type O virus has spread through several countries in Asia, including Bangladesh (1996) and Bhutan (1998), Taiwan (1997, 1999), Japan (2000, which had been FMD-free since 1908), the Republic of Korea (2000, which had been FMD-free since 1929), Mongolia (2000, which had been FMD-free for 27 years prior), and the far east of Russia (2000, which had been FMD-free for 36 years prior).
In East Asia, an O virus with a unique tropism for swine emerged in several countries, including Viet Nam, Hong Kong, the Philippines, and Taiwan, producing high mortality in pig populations (Dunn and Donaldson 1997; Knowles et al. 2001). This FMDV has often been erroneously referred to as a “pig-adapted” FMDV. Adaptation, in the ecological sense, connotes cohabitation and symbiosis, which is far from the case for this virulent, porcinephillic virus (Beard and Mason 2000; Mason et al. 2003).

FMDV was introduced to South America in 1870 through the importation of cattle to southern regions (Argentina) from Europe, but only reached northern countries (Colombia and Venezuela, for instance) in the 1950s. Through the Comisión Sur Americana para la Lucha Contra la Fiebre Aftosa, the incidence of FMD has declined from several thousand cases in 1980 to a few by early in the 21st century by maintaining effective surveillance, animal control, and vaccination programs in most countries. Critical areas of virus persistence remain in parts of Bolivia, Ecuador, and Venezuela. The only serotypes recorded in South America are A, O, and C. Type C has not been isolated from the field in nearly 10 years and may have disappeared, but its eradication requires confirmation. (Addendum: at the time of publication, Type C has been reported in northern Brazil.)

The situation in Africa is poorly described. This reflects the difficulties for veterinary services of mounting effective disease control initiatives, implementing timely reporting, and garnering sufficient resources to engage villages or incipient private ventures in sustainable healthy livestock development. Six of the seven serotypes of FMDV occur in different African ecosystems. Only Asia 1 has never been reported. South Africa, Namibia, Botswana, and Zimbabwe have been able to control FMD through the production of suitable vaccines, well-designed vaccination campaigns, and the formation of wildlife sanctuaries that separate persistently infected buffalo from domestic operations. Regrettably, land resettlement and civil unrest in Zimbabwe eroded veterinary systems in the early 2000s. Widespread FMD outbreaks have led to the closure of lucrative markets outside Africa and pose a threat to neighboring countries. Although the predominant serotype in the region is SAT-2, others still present a risk. As in South America, type C appears to have disappeared from Africa, but adequate active surveillance is required for confirmation. In southern Africa, the Cape buffalo herds harbor SAT viruses and represent potential sources of infection to domestic livestock.

In the Middle East and Arabian Peninsula, virus types A, O, Asia 1, and occasionally SAT-2 have been identified. Swine are not an important species in these regions and control efforts are focused almost entirely in dairy cattle and small ruminants. However, the needs of the region, in terms of animal protein, necessitate extensive importation from the Horn of Africa or elsewhere. This situation increases the risk for the entry of FMDV or other transboundary animal diseases. Exclusion of FMDV is, therefore, dependent upon careful preembarkation, regulated quarantine, and official laboratory testing undertaken for this purpose. In northern Africa, FMD usually moves in a westerly direction, or as seen in the outbreak in Algeria in the mid-1990s, from western Africa to the north, paralleling the movement of livestock; but again, swine are not part of the disease dynamics in this region either.

**Susceptible Species**

Natural hosts of FMDV include all artiodactyls (ungulates with a cloven hoof). As such, domestic cattle, buffalo, sheep, goats, camels, South American camelids, deer, antelope, wildebeest, as well as those of the suborder Suiformes (domestic swine, feral swine, and wild boar) are susceptible to FMDV infection. FMDV infection has also been reported in other species, including elephants, hedgehogs, and capybara (reviewed in Casas Olascoaga et al. 1999). Of notable epidemiological importance in Africa is the Cape buffalo (*Syncerus caffer*), which serves as a FMDV reservoir host in the region and a potential source of viruses to adjacent livestock production areas (Condy et al. 1985; Dawe et al. 1994). Laboratory models for FMDV include guinea pigs and suckling mice, which historically have been used for virus isolation and studies of vaccine protection determinants (Casas Olascoaga et al. 1999).

Nonhuman primates have also been studied as to their susceptibility to FMD (Schudel et al. 1981). Although there are confirmed cases of FMDV infections in humans, these have been incidental and FMD viruses should not be considered zoonotic (Casas Olascoaga et al. 1999). FMDV is widespread around the world, and the exposure of farmers, veterinarians, and other animal health workers, abattoir personnel, butchers, or researchers is commonplace. However, humans exposed to FMD-infected animals or carcasses have rarely, if ever, developed disease or seroconverted to the virus.

Although equine rhinitis A virus belongs to the aphthovirus genus (King et al. 1999), the FMD viruses do not affect solipeds.

**Transmission**

FMD viruses can be isolated from exhalations, secretions, urine, feces, milk, and semen during prodromal phases of the infection and during early clinical disease (Casas Olascoaga et al. 1999; Lubroth 2002). Once lesions develop, the virus is easily found in and around the exudations of ruptured vesicles of lesions.

The most common form of transmission is through contact between an infected animal and susceptible cohorts. At the height of clinical manifestation, swine generate more viruses in their exhalations than other species, and thus are often referred to as amplifiers of the virus (Alexandersen and Donaldson 2002). It is esti-
estimated that an infected pig can exhale up to 3000 times that of an affected cow. The 1981 FMD outbreak on the Isle of Wight was reported to have come from an infected piggery on France's northern coast, and carried by the prevailing winds and proper humidity from France to England (Donaldson 1986; Gloster and Alexander 2004). However, certain FMD viruses isolated from swine actually show the opposite characteristic and are poorly aerosolized, even when pigs are housed in the same room and separated by a double fence meters apart.

As omnivores, pigs ingesting poorly cooked, virus-infected swill or other foodstuffs can acquire FMD. Retrospective epidemiological investigations have shown that ingestion of infected products by swine has been responsible for some important outbreaks of the disease in recent times, such as that in the United Kingdom in 2001 (Gibbens et al. 2001).

Embryo transfer studies in FMD-infected cattle have shown that even at the time of greatest risk—that of peak viremia—proper washing of the collected embryos following protocols established by the International Embryo Transfer Society, will reduce the risk of transmitting the virus to zero, provided that the *zona pellucida* remains intact (Mebus and Singh 1991). FMDV can be recovered from semen from FMD-infected boars, but artificial insemination with contaminated semen failed to transmit the diseases to serviced sows (McVicar et al. 1978).

The persistently infected animal is defined as an animal that harbors the virus in the esophageal-pharyngeal region beyond 28 days post infection (Hedger 1971; Salt 1993). The persistent carrier state has been well described in cattle and buffalo, but less so in sheep and goats, with swine expected not to sustain the virus long term (Salt 1993; Lubroth and Brown 1995). It is likely that persistence is related not only to host factors, but also to those of the specific virus under study.

Salted and processed pork meats can contain viable FMDV under different conditions (Cottral 1969). Studies conducted using Italian and Spanish traditional processes found that by 200 days after post product preparation, no FMDV could be isolated from processed meats (Mebus et al. 1993). During carcass maturation, the lactic acid build up in the skeletal musculature is sufficient to inactivate FMDV, with infectious virus remaining principally in lymph nodes, glands, and bone marrow. It is for this specific reason that export of fresh beef exported from once-endemic areas (South America and southern Africa, primarily) require that it be deboned and deglazed.

FMD viruses are generally subject to rapid inactivation under many physical and chemical environments, but it can survive pasteurization at 72°C for 15 seconds; in cattle stalls after 14 days from urine after 39 days, 28, and 3 days in autumn and summer, respectively; and from contaminated hay after 5 months at 22°C (Cottral 1969; Pirtle and Beran 1991). Thus, under temperate climates characterized by overcast skies and cool temperatures, the virus may survive for a considerable period of time with direct sunlight, dry ambient temperatures destroying the virus. FMD viruses are highly labile to low pH (below 6.7) and high pH (above 10.5). As picornaviruses are nonenveloped, detergents, lipid solvents, and ether-based compounds do not have a primary inactivation effect.

**PATHOGENESIS**

Great variation exists in susceptibility and clinical presentation of FMD among species and between indigenous and exotic breeds. In addition, variation exists in the virulence of one virus versus another in the same host (Lubroth 2002).

The FMD viruses usually gain entry via the respiratory route, with as few as 10 infectious particles causing infection in cattle (Donaldson et al. 1987). Even if virus-contaminated swill is the source of infection, inhalation of aerosolized virus or entry through breaks in the buccal mucosa leads to viral replication, drainage to local lymph nodes, and subsequent viremia. The lungs, perhaps surprisingly, do not contain as high titers of virus as the upper respiratory tract, particularly the pharyngeal area (Alexandersen et al. 2001). The dissemination of the virus throughout virtually all tissues of the body occurs with remarkable speed, but the classical lesions develop only in the nasal, mucosal, and podal epithelia.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

FMD in swine is a crippling disease in adult pigs and often fatal in piglets. The incubation period for FMD may range from 2–10 days following exposure to the virus. In a vaccinated animal, where immunity may vary, the incubation period is often prolonged as the homologous virus replicates (or a closely related one) and eventually overcomes waning immunity.

Infected pigs develop a fever within 24–48 hours and by the third day the fever may surpass 41°C (106°F). Affected pigs are likely prostrate and shivering (Figure 31.1). Blanched areas may be seen at the level of the coronary bands, fringed by congested areas. The feet are warm to the touch. By the fourth to sixth day vesicular lesions, which quickly rupture leaving a raw denuded area and epithelial tags, will have developed along the coronary band; interdigital spaces and bulbs of the heel; and rostral areas of the snout, nares, and chin—all common signs exhibited by affected animals throughout the piggery. Heavy adults often remain prostrate for long periods leading to pressure sores that develop overnight with the epithelia eroding off from carpi and tarsi and much squealing when coaxed to move. Unlike cattle affected by FMD, vesicles rarely develop on the dorsal surface of the tongue in affected pigs. If not humanely
culled, some pigs will slough off their hooves exposing the raw, underlying, sensitive laminae.

In uncomplicated cases, recovery can be quick and is often complete within 2 weeks, when all mucosal lesions have healed. However, deformation of the claws may be a sequel to the foot lesions. Animals that have lost their claws should be euthanized on humanitarian grounds.

In disease-free areas, the infection can spread quickly and the clinical presentation may become widespread, with a morbidity approaching 100%. In regions where the disease is endemic, or where some degree of vaccination is undertaken, extensive clinical signs may be less pronounced.

The high fevers in sows can lead to abortion storms in the farrowing pens. Piglet mortality can exceed 50% due to virus-induced myocarditis, even before vesicles have developed in these or the adult animals.

By the time the veterinary practitioners or inspectors arrive at the farm, the disease in pigs is characterized by erosions and thick epithelial flaps from ruptured vesicles on the snout, around the nares, under the chin, coronary bands, pads of the heels, bulbs, and interdigital spaces (Figures 31.2–31.5). Some pigs may have sloughed their hooves. Animals in the earliest stages of disease are likely to show turgid or flocculent vesicles on the snout ranging from 4 mm to 2.5 cm and occurring circumferentially around the coronary band. The severity of clinical signs is greatest in heavier pigs. Teat vesicles ranging from a few millimeters to one centimeter may also be apparent (Figure 31.6). The heart muscle from piglets that died due to FMDV should be examined for blanched striations along the epicardium, endocardium, and septum, indicative of myocardial infraction and necrosis.
LESIONS

Histopathologically, early changes can be seen as Balkooning degeneration of cells in the midsection of the stratum spinosum within the stratified epithelium, with the stratum germinativum remaining intact and without neutrophilic infiltrates, unless there are opportunistic pathogens that contaminate the wound. As the cellular pathology progresses, pyknotic nuclei become more salient, and some of the degenerating cells begin to coalesce forming fluid-filled pockets containing large amounts of virus. Subsequently, the multiloculated epithelial changes lead to the formation of a larger blister. This pattern of lesion development is similar in various parts of the body, varying only in the extent of keratinization of the epithelium examined. Histopathological examination of affected myocardial tissues shows wide clusters of cells with eosinophilic shrunken cytoplasm and pyknotic nuclei and wide extracellular spaces.

IMMUNITY

Rapid humoral immunity is elicited by the virus, with neutralizing antibodies directed at the three surface capsid proteins: VP1, VP2, and VP3 (Salt 1993). VP1, the immunodominant protein, is also responsible for the serotype classification of the different viruses as well as differentiation between subtypes. As such, vaccine design and certain diagnostic tests, utilize information on the amino acid composition and genomic sequence of VP1 to assess vaccine-virus suitability, molecular epidemiological analysis, and immune response (Doel 1999; Domingo et al. 1995; Knowles and Samuel 1999). However, immune responses to the other viral structural proteins (VP2, VP3, and VP4) and the nonstructural proteins (2C, 3AB, 3ABC, 3D) can also be detected. Reactivity to the nonstructural FMDV proteins is an indication that viral replication has occurred in the host and is the basis for the development of assays that can differentiate between vaccinated, but not infected, animals and those that were infected regardless of their FMD vaccination history (Lubroth 1998; Meyer et al. 1997; Mezencio et al. 1998; Sorensen et al. 1998).

Studies on the duration of protective immunity after recovery from natural infection has been inadequately studied, but in endemic situations where there are at least two viruses in circulation and an ever-changing (replacement) dynamic population, as occurs in flocks of small ruminants, it would appear that protective immunity at the herd level is approximately 2 years in duration (Lubroth, unpublished observations).

No cross-protection is seen across serotypes of FMD viruses (type A to Asia 1, for instance), and only a limited level of protection across virus subtypes (i.e., A5 and A24). There is no cross-protective immunity conferred by infection with other picornaviruses, such as the enteroviruses of domestic animals.
**DIAGNOSIS**

The veterinary practitioner should take epidemiological considerations into account when trying to determine the causative agent, but must rely on laboratory specialists to confirm the diagnosis using discriminating tests that can quickly differentiate one infectious agent from another (see the section on differential diagnosis).

Laboratory confirmation of FMD depends heavily on the quality of the samples submitted to the diagnostic laboratory. Vesicular fluid or epithelium from oral, nasal, or foot lesions should be fresh, representative of the herd, and collected from several animals. Under field settings, once the veterinary practitioner is called to the farm, intact vesicles may no longer be evident, and the tissues collected for laboratory diagnosis should be from the area of the lesion most apt to contain viral antigens—i.e., at the junction between affected and healthy tissue. If vesicles are seen, fine needle aspirates are an ideal sample for submission, but collection is not easy. Lesions that are 2–3 days old will often have cream-colored coagulated exudate covering the lesion, but these, though easy to sample, are not appropriate diagnostic specimens.

It must be stressed that, when a vesicular disease in swine (or other species) is suspected, the practitioner should immediately contact the official veterinary authorities to conduct a thorough epidemiological evaluation of the incident and collect the appropriate samples for proper laboratory submission.

Antigen-capture enzyme-linked immunoassays (ELISA) using vesicular fluid or well-preserved epithelial tissue samples are used in most countries with endemic FMD or those that have surveillance systems in place as part of their contingency and emergency preparation plans. ELISA has largely replaced the complement fixation test for antigen detection due to its ease in standardization, speed, and high throughput capabilities (Casas Olascoaga et al. 1999).

Penside tests are currently becoming available, but these are limited to subjective interpretation and should be seen as screening tools with a competent laboratory performing the more objective and analytical confirmatory assays.

The inclusion of molecular techniques, such as PCR, into laboratory confirmation can allow rapid identification of group-specific (aphthovirus) or virus-specific (type A24, A96, A22, for instance) gene sequences (Alexandersen et al. 2001; House and Meyer 1993; Reid et al. 2000). Results from ELISA or PCR can be obtained within 3–5 hours after receipt of the samples. Applied research into real-time PCR, in which gene sequences are amplified and visualized on portable computer screens within the hour, has been established for FMD as an ancillary method for diagnosis and is being applied in the field in some countries (Callahan et al. 2002). If the results are negative using these methods, however, samples should still be processed for virus isolation using sensitive cell culture systems. Most capable laboratories actually begin attempts at virus isolation at the same time as the quicker assays, since virus isolation may take several days to complete and the initial preparation of the specimen is often the same. One of the drawbacks to virus isolation is that it can only be conducted in specially equipped laboratories with trained staff. Once there is evidence that a viral agent has been isolated, the cell culture is tested by ELISA or PCR much the same way as a tissue or vesicular sample.

The more common antibody detection methods for the diagnosis of FMD viruses are ELISA and virus neutralization (VN) assays, both of which have been internationally standardized and included in the *Manual of Standards for Diagnostic Tests and Vaccines*, published by the Office International des Epizooties. ELISA tests can be conducted within a few hours. VN requires 3 days and the use of live virus and cell culture systems, which limit its use to specialized laboratories. VN also requires that the laboratory have antisera and epidemiological knowledge of the circulating viruses to use in the assay system.

The detection of FMDV nonstructural proteins can be accomplished using specific ELISA formats and some rapid penside tests to demonstrate virus persistence or circulation within a herd (Meyer et al. 1997; Shin et al. 2002; Sorensen et al. 1998). The specific detection of the 3D nonstructural FMDV protein (once termed “virus-infection associated antigen” or VIAA) was extensively used as an agar-gel immunodiffusion test. Although still in use today in some laboratories, it has been largely replaced by ELISA methods. ELISA testing has also been developed to detect antibody responses to several other nonstructural proteins and can be used to identify animals in which virus replication has occurred, thereby serving as an indirect method to identify potentially persistently infected animals. Antibodies to VIAA were long used to detect for evidence of virus infection in a population, particularly cattle, but studies have shown that animals receiving multiple doses of vaccine will also develop antibodies to 3D or VIAA, thus limiting its value as an indication of previous infection (Casas Olascoaga et al. 1999; Salt 1993). Countries that do not vaccinate, however, could use a 3D-based assay (or other nonstructural protein), because this protein is highly immunogenic and highly conserved among all FMD viruses, making one test applicable for all serotypes and subtypes. In countries where vaccination is practiced, the use of nonstructural proteins other than 3D could be of great value for determining whether virus circulation and transmission is ongoing in a herd without clinical disease.

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

The only treatment available for pigs infected with FMDV is palliative. The use of antibiotics to prevent sec-
Vaccination
FMD vaccines should contain inactivated antigens representative of the circulating viruses within the region (Doel 2003). Since mutations, antigenic drift, or newly occurring viruses may limit vaccine efficacy, it is critical that laboratory and epidemiological studies be carried out regularly to ensure that vaccine antigens used for the protection of livestock are protective against prevailing viruses.

Two types of vaccines are currently available: aqueous formulations and those emulsified as single or double oil formulations (Black et al. 1984; Casas Olascoaga et al. 1999; Doel 2003). Although ruminants can be vaccinated with either formulation, swine respond to only those prepared with oil adjuvants (Black et al. 1984). Colostral immunity interferes with the induction of protection (Francis and Black 1986a, b).

To obtain herd level protection, all susceptible animals on the premises should be vaccinated in order to ensure that over 80% of the population be adequately immunized. The most successful use of vaccination in FMD-endemic situations has been when quality controlled vaccines are administered twice a year under the supervision of government authorities, with follow-up serological surveys.

The concentration of antigen (referred to as the payload of a vaccine), is one indicator of quality, and those vaccines that have a high payload have been shown to induce some degree of protection 4–5 days after administration (Doel et al. 1994; Doel 2003). Such vaccines can also be used under emergency management of an outbreak if the decision to use vaccine is taken by government authorities.

Some countries, or even continents such as South America, have relied on vaccine coverage in cattle in lieu of swine, sheep and goats, or even wildlife, with much success. In parts of Asia, endemicity differs from the Latin American context in that pig production and marketing are likely to contribute more to the circulation of FMDV. However, vaccination of pigs is haphazard, and progressive control has rarely been achieved.

International and commercial pressure has been placed on vaccine companies to ensure that vaccines are highly purified and do not induce antibodies to FMDV nonstructural proteins. This permits vaccinating countries to demonstrate by serological testing of vaccinates that virus circulation has been halted, thus ensuring access to international markets for their animals and livestock products.

Research into improving vaccines has been undertaken by several government agencies. These include attempts to induce more rapid immunity, vectored vaccines (where FMDV components are incorporated into carrier viruses), and/or the inclusion of antiviral agents or inducers of antiviral properties within vaccine formulations (Moraes et al. 2003). These vaccines have not yet been tested in an endemic or outbreak setting (Grubman and Baxt 2004). In addition, vaccines capable of providing longer duration of protection, able to protect against a wider range of virus subtypes, and without the need for specialized preservation (i.e., refrigeration) are needed.

From the standpoint of an exotic animal disease, the quick and humane elimination of all clinically ill animals and their cohorts to halt further environmental contamination and spread can be warranted (Geering and Lubroth 2002). Burial of the culled animals should be on the affected premises themselves, if an environmentally sound area is available (i.e., away from the water table). When performed correctly, burial is preferable than incineration. Although incineration is suitable for destroying the virus, it falters in that the smoke, smell, and imagery often leads to a strong public outcry regarding animal welfare and it raises environmental considerations.

From the standpoint of an exotic animal disease, the quick and humane elimination of all clinically ill animals and their cohorts to halt further environmental contamination and spread can be warranted (Geering and Lubroth 2002). Burial of the culled animals should be on the affected premises themselves, if an environmentally sound area is available (i.e., away from the water table). When performed correctly, burial is preferable than incineration. Although incineration is suitable for destroying the virus, it falters in that the smoke, smell, and imagery often leads to a strong public outcry regarding animal welfare and it raises environmental considerations.
Vesicular stomatitis (VS) is a viral disease affecting swine, cattle, and horses caused by vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV). In cattle and swine, its clinical appearance resembles that of foot-and-mouth disease (FMD) (see the section on differential diagnosis). Economic losses are incurred due to quarantine and trade restrictions and also to decreased production and weight loss. Mortality is rare (Rodriguez and Nichol 1999).

Historical reports dating as far back as 1862 describe vesicular disease in cattle, horses, and swine. The causal agent was first isolated in the United States in 1925 in New Jersey and a year later in Indiana (Cotton 1927). These isolates were determined to be serologically distinguishable and were later classified as serotypes New Jersey (VSNJV) and Indiana (VSIV) (Cartwright and Brown 1972).

VSV is the most common cause of vesicular disease in the Americas, causing thousands of outbreaks every year from southern Mexico to northern South America. VS is considered an exotic animal disease in Europe, Asia, and Australia and is listed by the OIE as a reportable disease. Its report is obligatory within 24 hours of a confirmed diagnosis. In addition to farm animals, VSV can infect humans, resulting in flu-like symptoms and, occasionally, nonfatal encephalitis (Fields and Hawkins 1967; Quiroz et al. 1988). Unlike the other viral agents causing vesicular disease in swine covered in this chapter, which are transmissible by direct contact and fomites, VSV is also transmitted by insects (Stallknecht et al. 1999).

**ETIOLOGY**

VSV belongs to the Order *Mononegavirales* (nonsegmented, negative-sense RNA viruses), family *Rhabdoviridae*, and genus *Vesiculovirus*. VSV have been classified into two serotypes: New Jersey (VSNJV) and Indiana (VSIV). Two subtypes of VSIV have been found causing livestock disease in South America: Cocal virus or VSIV-2 and Alagoas virus (VSIV-3). A number of vesiculoviruses have been found in nature infecting insects and wild animals. However, only vesicular stomatitis viruses cause outbreaks of vesicular disease in domestic animals (Rodriguez 2002).

VSV has the typical rhabdovirus morphology, with enveloped bullet-shaped virions approximately 70 × 180 nm in length (Bradish and Kirkham 1966). The core of the virion consists of a helical ribonucleoprotein containing the nucleocapsid (N), polymerase (L), and phosphoprotein (P). The outer shell is made of the matrix protein (M) covered with a lipid membrane containing the glycoprotein (G). Viral entry and exit to and from the infected cell are mediated by the glycoprotein, which also contains the main neutralizing antigenic sites.

The genome consists of a single strand of RNA of negative polarity approximately 1100–1300 nucleotides in length, depending on the virus (Rodriguez et al. 2002). Gene expression is regulated by a simple, yet elegant, mechanism in which level of expression is determined by the distance of each gene from a single promoter near the 3' end of the genome. Gene order is N, P, M, G, L. Therefore, the most frequently expressed gene is N and the least expressed gene is L (Ball et al. 1999). All genes code for a single protein except P, which contains a second open reading frame coding for two additional small basic proteins (C and C') of undefined function (Kretzschmar et al. 1996; Spiropoulou and Nichol 1993).

In addition to protein and RNA, VS virions contain lipid and carbohydrates associated with the envelope. VSV can persist in the environment for short periods of time. The infectivity of VSV is unstable at pH 3, but stable between pH 5–10. It is rapidly inactivated at 56°C and by UV and x-ray irradiation. Virus infectivity is also sensitive to lipid solvents, detergents, formalin, and various common disinfectants such as sodium hypochlorite (bleach) (Rodriguez and Nichol 1999).

VS viruses are capable of infecting a wide variety of mammalian cell types, as well as insect, amphibian, and fish cells (Seganti et al. 1986). Some studies have implicated phosphatidyl serine, a component of the cell membrane of a wide variety of cells, as a receptor for VSV (Coll 1997; Schlegel et al. 1983). This might explain the wide range of cells that VSV can infect.
Peripheral blood mononuclear cells seem to be resistant to viral infection.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Outbreaks of vesicular stomatitis are reported every year from southern Mexico to northern South America (Colombia, Venezuela, Ecuador, and Peru). In the United States, VS outbreaks occur in sporadic cycles at approximately 10-year intervals (Rodriguez 2002). The great majority of outbreaks are caused by VSNJV (>80%) and to a lesser extent VSIV-1. In Brazil, two subtypes of VSIV, Cocal (VSIV-2) and Alagoas (VSIV-3), commonly cause outbreaks, and sporadic outbreaks of VSIV-2 have been reported in Argentina (Rodriguez et al. 2000).

VS is not reported to occur outside the Americas, although there was one report of VS in France and other parts of Europe during World War I that was associated with the importation of horses from the United States (Letchworth et al. 1999). There are also reports of “erosive stomatitis” and “acute stomatitis” in cattle in South Africa; however, the causative agent was not identified (Hanson 1950).

Vesicular stomatitis commonly affects cattle, horses, and to a lesser extent swine. However, swine are very susceptible, particularly to VSNJV, and a large number of animals can be affected during outbreaks in swine farms. Sheep and goats seem to be relatively resistant to VSV infection, with clinical cases rarely reported (Hanson 1981). Despite the fact that antibodies to VSIV are found in a large number of wild animals, such as peccaries, whitetail deer, several species of rodents, monkeys, and even birds, naturally occurring disease has not been reported in these species.

VSIV infects humans causing flu-like symptoms, such as fever, myalgia, and severe headaches. Infections in veterinary and farm personnel during outbreaks of disease in livestock are usually associated with unprotected direct contact with sick animals, particularly when vesicular fluid or contaminated saliva are unintentionally sprayed onto the face. Gloves, goggles, and face masks are recommended to prevent exposure during examination of sick animals (Hanson et al. 1950). Laboratory infections are usually associated with procedures that generate infectious aerosols, such as centrifugation. All laboratory procedures with field viruses should be performed under biological safety level 3. At least one case of encephalitis in a child caused by VSIV-1 has been documented (Quiroz et al. 1988). Symptoms usually resolve within a week and fatalities have never been reported.

Transmission of VSV can occur by direct contact or by insect bites. Strains of VSNJV seem to be more readily transmissible by direct contact than those of VSIV-1 (Stallknecht et al. 1999; Martinez et al. 2003). Swine infected with VSNJV either clinically or subclinically can readily transmit to other swine by direct contact (Stallknecht 1999). Transmission by fomites is not well documented, but there are anecdotal accounts of transmission by contaminated milking equipment, feed, and rough forage (Hanson 1950; Hansen et al. 1985). Aerosol transmission from animal to animal has never been documented.

At least two groups of biting insects, sand flies (Lutzomyia spp.) and black flies (Simulium spp.), have been demonstrated to transmit VSV to susceptible hosts (Cupp et al. 1992; Tesh et al. 1972). In addition, virus has been isolated from several groups of wild-caught insects, including gnats and mosquitoes, during VS outbreaks or in the absence of outbreaks in endemic areas (Francy et al. 1988; Sudia et al. 1967). Insect transmission resulting in clinical disease in pigs has been recently demonstrated (Mead et al. 2004).

In infected animals, vesicular stomatitis virus is primarily localized to epithelial surfaces on the snout, mouth, tongue, coronary bands, teats, and lymph nodes draining the affected areas. Virus is not found in blood or urine and only rarely in feces, but saliva, vesicular fluid, and sloughing epithelium can contain large amounts of virus. Virus has been found in epithelial samples and oropharyngeal fluids for up to 10 days after initiation of clinical signs (Martinez et al. 2003).

**PATHOGENESIS**

Most information on the pathogenesis of VSV is from laboratory inoculation of swine or cattle. VSV pathogenesis is dependent on viral strain, host characteristics, route of inoculation, and virus dose. In swine, clinical disease consistently results when virus is inoculated intradermally by epidermal scarification of the snout or the coronary band with at least 10⁶ virus infectious doses. Intradermal inoculation at other sites or intranasal instillation does not result in clinical disease, but virus can be isolated from tonsil swabs, indicating subclinical infection (Howerth et al. 1997).

VS is a localized infection, with no viremia detected in cattle, horses, or swine. Primary replication seems to occur locally in keratinocytes (Rodriguez, unpublished results). Virus is readily found at the site of lesions or in the tonsil from which virus is shed in saliva or from local draining lymph nodes. Virus is not found in other tissues, including muscle, brain, liver, spleen, mesenteric lymph nodes, kidneys, and spinal cord (Rodriguez, unpublished results). Subclinically infected pigs can shed virus for several days via the saliva and transmit infection to other swine by direct contact (Stallknecht et al. 1999).

Vesicular stomatitis serotype New Jersey seems to cause more severe disease in swine than serotype Indiana. Pigs inoculated with VSNJV by scarification of the snout develop large vesicles at the inoculation site in 2–3 days, followed by coronary band lesions by 5–7 days postinoculation. In contrast, VSINV inoculated swine...
develop only small lesions at the inoculated site and rarely generalize to the feet or transmit the infection to contact pigs. This difference in virulence between serotypes in swine is likely associated with the glycoprotein gene (Martinez et al. 2003). Host factors also seem to affect outcome of infection; lactating adult animals seem more susceptible to clinical disease than younger animals (Vanleeuwen et al. 1995).

CLINICAL SIGNS

Field studies following animal populations over time in endemic areas or during active outbreaks in areas of sporadic occurrence have demonstrated that the great majority of infections are subclinical (Mumford et al. 1998; Rodriguez et al. 1990; Stallknecht et al. 1985; Webb et al. 1987). The incubation period varies from 2–5 days, depending on the virus, route, and dose of inoculation. Initial signs in swine may include fever of 40–41°C, lethargy, loss of appetite, and increased salivation. Lesions appear 3–4 days after infection. Pigs tend to remain prostrate, because foot lesions can be severe and painful. Snout lesions can be severe and lead to loss of epithelium, leaving a raw reddish surface (refer to Figure 31.3). After vesicles rupture, there is usually crusting of the lesions before healing is complete 2–3 weeks later (Martinez et al. 2003). Morbidity can be high, and in some cases approach 90–100% of individuals in swine herds. But individual cases are also reported, particularly in endemic areas. Mortality is rare.

Factors affecting clinical signs are not clearly defined. Laboratory inoculation models can only partially duplicate the severity of disease. It is hypothesized that environmental factors, such as insect bites, influence the development and severity of disease by modulating the immune response or other host-protective mechanisms (Tabachnick 2000). There is evidence that insect saliva can potentiate virus infection in vitro by decreasing cellular interferon response (Limesand et al. 2000).

LESIONS

Typically, vesicles appear on the snout, tongue, lips, mouth, coronary bands, interdigital space, or foot pads. Multiple lesions at different sites can occur in the same animal. Lesions begin as blanched areas with raised borders that evolve into vesicles or directly into crusted lesions. There may be loss of epithelium, leaving a reddish area covered by clear exudates or dry vesicular fluid. Profuse bleeding is not common. However, in severe cases bleeding may be associated with the loss of claws or epithelium. There are no characteristics unique to VSV gross lesions that differentiate them from other causes of vesicular disease in swine (SVD, FMD, and VES) (Jubb et al. 1985).

Histopathologically, VSV vesicular lesions start at the stratum spinosum with intercellular edema and microvesicles, followed by acantholysis. In early vesicles, epithelial cells remain attached by intercellular desmosomes, giving the tissue a reticular pattern sometimes compared to a stretched Japanese lantern (D. Gregg, personal communication). Later, there are infected and dead keratinocytes and a severe infiltrate of inflammatory cells, mostly neutrophils. Lesions rarely invade the stratum basale. Upper layers above the stratum basale separate, microvesicles coalesce, and vesicular fluid accumulates filling the vesicles (Seibold and Sharp 1960).

IMMUNITY

Immune responses to VSV in livestock species are poorly understood. Neutralizing antibodies are readily detectable as early as 4 days after clinical infection, with antibody titers increasing over time. Interestingly, subclinical infections also result in increasing titers of neutralizing antibodies, but higher titers (2–4 log10) are observed in clinical than in subclinical infections (1–1.5 log10). In endemic regions, neutralizing antibody titers fluctuate among animals without clinical disease, but fourfold increases or greater are usually associated with clinical infections (Rodriguez et al. 1990).

Isotype analyses show a typical IgM response at 4 days post infection, followed by IgG1 and IgG2 responses after 14–21 days, indicating both T-helper-1 and T-helper-2 responses in both clinical and subclinical cases (Rodriguez, unpublished results).

Antibody titers after subclinical infection in livestock do not correlate well with protection. Field evidence suggests that neutralizing antibodies are not protective, even against the homologous serotype, and animals can become clinically ill despite the presence of significant titers of neutralizing antibodies (Rodriguez et al. 1990). Furthermore, viral strains causing disease are fully neutralized by sera obtained from the same animals prior to clinical disease, and there is no evidence of neutralizing escape mutants (Vernon et al. 1990). There is no cross protection between serotypes.

Young animals are less susceptible to clinical disease than adults, but the basis of this resistance is unknown. Maternal neutralizing antibodies are detectable in calves born to seropositive dams, with titers decreasing over time. In most cases, maternal antibodies become undetectable by 6 months of age, but can persist for up to 10 months (Remmers et al. 2000).

DIAGNOSIS

VS lesions are localized in the mouth, tongue, coronary bands, and interdigital space, with occasional lesions in teats of lactating sows. Internal organs are not affected, but virus can also be found in local lymph nodes draining lesion sites (Mebus 1977).

Complement fixation is the traditional laboratory test for detection of viral antigens (Stone and DeLay
than those that officially report absence of the disease. Therefore, it is likely that the virus is present in more countries.

In the absence of serological screening, the disease would probably be under-reported in Italy. There-
nucleotides and encodes for a single polyprotein of 2815 amino acids (Inoue et al. 1989). This polyprotein is post-translationally cleaved into 11 proteins. Four of these proteins, 1A, 1B, 1C, and 1D, form the virus capsid (Fry et al. 2003; Jimenez Clavero et al. 2003) and one of these proteins, 3B, is linked to the viral RNA. The nonstructural proteins are involved in virus replication and host-cell shut-off.

SVDV is extremely resistant to adverse environmental conditions and many commonly used disinfectants (Terpstra 1992). The virus remains infectious for months in carcasses and processed meat, e.g., salami or pepperoni sausages (Hedger and Mann 1989; Mebus et al. 1997).

The virus can be grown on primary or secondary porcine kidney cells and a wide range of pig kidney-derived cell lines and secondary lamb kidney cells (Dekker, unpublished data). SVDV can be differentiated from FMDV on the basis of its inability to grow on primary bovine thyroid cells.

SVDV infections in humans have been documented (Brown et al. 1976), and the virus is lethal to newborn mice (Nardelli et al. 1968). It shares with Coxsackie viruses its ability to infect mice, unlike other enteroviruses (Graves 1973). Because of these characteristics (host tropism and antigenic similarity) SVDV is thought to be closely related to Coxsackie B5 virus and likely represents a porcophilic Coxsackie B5 isolate (Graves 1973). Nucleic acid sequence data show that SVDV has 75–85% homology with Coxsackie B5 virus (Knowles and McCauley 1997), and phylogenetic analysis indicate that SVDV and recent Coxsackie B5 isolates probably shared a common ancestor in the period between 1945 and 1965 (Zhang et al. 1999).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Outbreaks of SVD have been limited to a small number of countries (Table 31.1). However, since subclinical infections are common, the disease might have been present or is likely present in other countries and documentation is poor.

Clinical disease is restricted to pigs; not only Euro-Asian pigs, but also American one-toed pigs are susceptible (Wilder et al. 1974). Relatively high titers of SVDV have been detected in the pharynx of sheep kept in close contact with SVD-infected pigs (Burrows et al. 1974). Even neutralizing antibodies were detected in some of these contact sheep, which might indicate that the virus had replicated in this species.

An epidemiological field study in Great Britain revealed that the main source of infection was movement of pigs (48%), either because infected pigs were transported (16%), contaminated transport vehicles were used (21%), or because of contacts at markets (11%). A second source of infection (15%) was feeding of contaminated waste food (Hedger and Mann 1989). The exceptionally high stability of the virus outside the host is the reason why indirect contacts like transporting vehicles or waste food play an essential role in the epidemiology of SVD. Dekker et al. (1995a) showed that contact with a contaminated environment can lead to viremia in 1 day and clinical signs within 2 days. Studies on SVDV transmission within an outbreak farm showed that spread between pens most likely occurs when there is a shared open drainage system or frequent movement of pigs between pens. SVD, therefore, is considered a “pen disease” rather than a farm disease (Hedger and Mann 1989; Dekker et al. 2002).

Because infected herds are culled immediately in countries that maintain heightened surveillance and operational contingency plans, it is not easy to study the transmission of SVD in the field. IgM and IgG ELISAs have been developed to study the time the virus was introduced (Brocchi et al. 1995; Dekker et al. 2002). With these ELISAs, however, the exact time of introduction cannot be fully assessed, and after approximately 50 days the antibody isotype profiles of most infected animals are similar. Therefore, an estimation of the time of

**Table 31.1.** Year of last appearance of swine vesicular disease outbreaks in the world. Based on the FAO-OIE-WHO Animal Health Yearbook (1971–1995) and information obtained from the European reference laboratory for vesicular diseases in Pirbright (U.K.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Year of Last Appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romania</td>
<td>1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Britain</td>
<td>1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>1978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukraine</td>
<td>1977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>1975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>1975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
<td>1971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North and South America</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolivia</td>
<td>1991 (See text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td>1986 (See text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon</td>
<td>1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laos</td>
<td>1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macau</td>
<td>1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>1975</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
introduction beyond 50 days is not possible (Dekker et al. 2002). In contrast to FMDV infections in ruminants, persistence of SVD in infected pigs is not common. There is one report where SVD virus was recovered up to 126 days after infection (Lin et al. 1998), but it has been difficult to reproduce these findings (Lin et al. 2001).

PATHOGENESIS

It has been suggested that SVDV enters the pig through the skin or the mucous membrane of the digestive tract (Chu et al. 1979; Lai et al. 1979; Mann and Hutchings 1980). Experimental SVDV infection can lead to clinical signs within 2 days and SVDV has been isolated from a wide range of tissues (Burrows et al. 1974; Chu et al. 1979; Dekker et al. 1995a; Lai et al. 1979). When pigs are exposed to an SVDV-contaminated environment, viremia can develop within 1 day. This is identical to the time frame when pigs are directly inoculated (Dekker et al. 1995a), which further suggests a mucous or abrasion point of entry.

SVDV has a strong tropism for epithelial tissues, but virus titers in myocardial and brain samples significantly exceed those found in plasma. As such, epithelial tissues, myocardium, and brain are probably the sites of virus replication (Chu et al. 1979; Lai et al. 1979) and excellent samples for analysis. Nevertheless, lymph nodes have also been shown to contain high titers of SVDV after experimental infection, either because of lymphatic drainage or true virus replication (Dekker et al. 1995a).

In vitro studies showed that immunological staining of cells is more efficient than in situ hybridization, with infected cells showing a positive reaction by immunohistochemistry after only 3.5 hours post infection of porcine kidney tissue culture. In situ hybridization, however, seems to be superior when used for staining of SVDV-infected tissue samples (Mulder et al. 1997).

Additional research is required to identify the cells that support SVDV replication, which may help identify the mechanism behind the host tropism of the virus.

CLINICAL SIGNS

Clinical disease is restricted to pigs. In pigs infected with SVDV, vesicles appear principally around the coronary bands (refer to Figures 31.4, 31.5); on the skin of the metacarpus and metatarsus; and to a lesser extent on the snout, tongue, and lips. Lesions are indistinguishable from those induced by an FMD infection. The clinical signs caused by SVD are, however, much milder than those caused by FMD. In the experimental studies performed by the author, fever was always absent and lameness was almost never observed. Sudden death, due to myocardial infarction and necrosis, often observed in young piglets affected with FMD, is not seen in SVD.

Strains of SVDV vary in virulence, and the disease may run a subclinical, mild, or severe course. The latter is usually only seen when pigs are housed on concrete floor structures in humid conditions (Hedger and Mann 1989; Kanno et al. 1996; Kodama et al. 1980).

LESIONS

In typical cases of SVD, lesions are first noticed at the junction of the heel and the coronary band (as can be seen in Figures 31.4 and 31.5). The entire coronary band may eventually be affected with lesions spreading to the metatarsal and metacarpal regions. The horn and sole may be damaged so extensively that the claw(s) slough off. In lactating sows, lesions on the udder and teats can be seen (refer to Figure 31.6). Occasionally, the skin of the thorax and abdomen is also involved, which is not a finding with FMD or VSV infections. Lesions in the mouth, lips, and snout are not too common, but can be seen in approximately 10% of cases. Vesicular snout lesions are usually on the dorsal face of the rostrum and may be hemorrhagic in appearance. Tongue lesions are transient and heal rapidly (Hedger and Mann 1989). In experimentally infected animals, nonsuppurative meningoencephalitis may occur, but this does not result in signs of impaired central nervous system function (Chu et al. 1979).

DIAGNOSIS

The antibody response to SVDV infection is rapid. An IgM-based ELISA can detect a nascent immune response by day 4 post infection in 50% of experimental cases, by day 5 using the VN test, and by day 12 with an IgG-based ELISA (Dekker et al. 2002).

In the aftermath of an outbreak, absence of specific antibodies is essential to prove that no infected farms have been missed, since high titers of neutralizing antibodies are found (Nardelli et al. 1968) and subclinical infection may occur. VN tests, however, are laborious and ELISAs have been developed (Armstrong and Barnett 1989; Brocchi et al. 1995; Chenard et al. 1998; Dekker et al. 1995b; Hamblin and Crowther 1995). Although the ELISA is easier to perform than VN, it produces more false positive results. The specificity of the ELISA can be increased by using specific monoclonal antibodies (Brocchi et al. 1995; Chenard et al. 1998). This protocol has been adopted as the standard assay by the OIE and has been shown to be highly efficient in large-scale serosurveillance (Dekker 2000).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

When SVD was first recognized, it was not easy to differentiate from FMD, VS, or vesicular exanthema. Therefore, it was generally accepted that SVD would not be tolerated in countries free from the other vesicular diseases. For this reason, SVD was placed on the list A diseases of the OIE and is, therefore, a notifiable disease in
most countries. In the case of an outbreak, SVD is strictly controlled by “stamping out” and the imposition of stringent restrictions on livestock movement. Stamping out involves the slaughter and destruction of the infected herds followed by thorough epidemiological tracing and surveillance of pigs on other premises that may have been exposed to infection. After the slaughter and disposal of pigs, the premises are cleaned and disinfected. Adequate disinfection is often difficult, especially in farms with damaged floors and walls. Several cases of recurring infection have been reported after stamping out measures, with infection recurring in the pens where the infected pigs had been previously housed (Hedger and Mann 1989). The costs of control measures and trade restrictions can be very high.

Because clinical signs are not always observed, serosurveillance is required, especially in the aftermath of an outbreak. Serological screening can detect subclinical or previously undetected clinical infections (Hendrie et al. 1978; Larenaudie et al. 1982; Pappous et al. 1980; Tokui et al. 1975). The Netherlands, Italy, and Spain are the only countries in the European Union to have large-scale serosurveillance programs. All other countries in the region rely on detection of SVD on the basis of clinical signs. Because of the large number of sera examined (approximately 500,000 a year in each country), considerable numbers of false-positive reactions are detected, each of which requires an exhaustive and extensive epidemiological study to determine the true status of the result. False-positive reactions, referred to as “singleton reactors,” often show cross-reactive antibodies of the IgM isotype (De Clercq 1998). Studies to determine the cause of singleton reactors have identified a sole factor. Moonen et al. (2000) studied the possible role of human Coxsackie B5 as a confounding factor, but all singleton reactor sera reacted more strongly with SVDV than Coxsackie B5 virus. Kadoi et al. (2001), however, reported natural infection of pigs with Coxsackie B5 virus.

Experimental vaccines have been developed to control SVD infection (Delagneau et al. 1974; Gourreau et al. 1975; McKercher and Graves 1976; Mowat et al. 1974). In addition to SVD monovalent vaccines, combinations with FMD (McKercher and Graves 1976; Mitrev et al. 1978) and, recently, an SVD subunit vaccine have been described. The latter vaccine was shown not to be efficacious (Jimenez Clavero et al. 1998). Although inactivated virus preparations are efficacious in protecting against clinical signs, these have not been evaluated relative to their ability to reduce wild-type virus transmission. Currently, no SVD vaccine is commercially available and vaccination has not been undertaken in the field.

REFERENCES


Vernon SD, Rodriguez LL, Letchworth GJ. 1990. Vesicular stomatitis New Jersey virus glycoprotein gene sequence and neutraliz-


This chapter focuses on viruses that are currently important to veterinary and human public health from a zoonotic and xenozoonotic perspective. The clinical significance and economic impact of these viruses on pig health are still uncertain. Swine hepatitis E virus (swine HEV), porcine endogenous retroviruses (PERV), and porcine lymphotropic herpesviruses (PLHV) are all of concern in human xenotransplantation with pig organs, tissues, and cells. Eastern equine encephalomyelitis virus (EEEV), Rabies virus, and swine HEV all pose zoonotic risks.

Swine Hepatitis E Virus
X.J. Meng and P.G. Halbur

Hepatitis E virus (HEV), the causative agent of human hepatitis E, is an important public health problem in many developing countries in Asia and Africa (Emerson and Purcell 2003; Purcell and Emerson 2001). The mortality rate associated with HEV infection is generally low (<1%) but can reach up to 25% during pregnancy (Kumar et al. 2004; Purcell and Emerson 2001). Although only sporadic cases of acute hepatitis E have been diagnosed in patients from industrialized countries, including the United States, a surprisingly high HEV antibody (anti-HEV) prevalence rate has been reported (Drobeniuc et al. 2001; Meng et al. 1999, 2002). The existence of a population of individuals in industrialized countries who are positive for anti-HEV has led to a hypothesis that an animal reservoir for HEV exists and that hepatitis E is a zoonosis (Meng 2003, 2004).

The first experimental evidence of HEV infection of pigs was reported by Balayan et al. (1990) who experimentally infected domestic pigs with a Central Asian strain of human HEV. Clayson et al. (1995) subsequently reported the detection of anti-HEV IgG in 18 of 55 pigs and of HEV RNA from sera and feces in 3 of 47 swine in Nepal. Unfortunately, the identity of the virus infecting swine in those studies was not determined. Meng et al. (1997) isolated and characterized the first animal strain of HEV, swine hepatitis E virus (swine HEV), from pigs in the United States. To isolate swine HEV, a prospective study was conducted in a commercial swine farm in Illinois. Twenty piglets, born to both anti-HEV negative and positive sows, were closely monitored for more than 5 months for evidence of HEV infection. A virus antigenically and genetically related to human HEV, designated swine HEV, was identified from the acute phase sera of the naturally infected piglets. Koch’s postulates were subsequently fulfilled, as swine HEV infection was experimentally reproduced in specific-pathogen-free (SPF) pigs, and swine HEV was recovered from experimentally infected SPF pigs (Halbur et al. 2001; Meng et al. 1998a, 1998b).

The discovery of swine HEV and the demonstrated ability of swine HEV to infect across species raised potential concerns relative to food safety, public health, and xenotransplantation with pig organs and cells. However, the clinical implication of this virus in swine health is uncertain.

ETIOLOGY

HEV was initially classified in the family Caliciviridae based on the superficial similarity of its genomic organization to the caliciviruses. However, further comparative sequence analyses revealed that the codon usage and genomic organization of HEV are more related to that of rubella virus (a togavirus) than to that of the cali-
civiruses (Koonin et al. 1992). Additionally, HEV possesses a cap structure at its 5’ end of the genome that is absent in calicivirus and does not share significant sequence homology with caliciviruses. Therefore, HEV has recently been reclassified in the new family Hepeviridae (Emerson and Purcell 2003). All strains of HEV identified thus far, including swine HEV, belong to the prototype genus hepevirus within the family.

HEV is a spherical, nonenveloped, symmetrical virus particle approximately 32–34 nm in diameter, with cup-shaped depressions on the surface similar to caliciviruses (Purcell and Emerson 2001). The morphology of swine HEV is not known, but is expected to be similar to that of human HEV. Like human HEV, swine HEV cannot be efficiently cultivated in cell culture.

The complete genome of swine HEV has been sequenced and shown to be a polyadenylated, single-stranded positive sense RNA molecule of approximately 7.2 kb in size (Meng et al. 1998a). Sequence analyses revealed that the genome of swine HEV contains three open reading frames (ORFs), a short 5’ noncoding region (NCR), and a short 3’ NCR (Figure 32.1).

ORF1, located at the 5’ end of the genome, is predicted to encode the nonstructural proteins. Several putative functional domains and motifs have been identified in the swine HEV ORF1, including the methyltransferase domain, a papain-like cysteine protease (PLP), a proline-rich domain that may provide flexibility, a hypervariable region (HVR), a helicase, and an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (RdRp) (refer to Figure 32.1).

ORF2 encodes the immunogenic capsid protein. ORF3, encoding a small protein with unknown function, partially overlaps both ORF1 and ORF2. The ORF3 of human HEV is a cytoskeleton-associated phosphoprotein that may be involved in virus replication (Zafrullah et al. 1997).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Seroepidemiological studies have shown that swine HEV infection is ubiquitous in pigs worldwide, both developing and industrialized countries, regardless of whether HEV is endemic in the respective human population (refer to Table 32.1). Seroprevalence rates vary from herd to herd and from region to region (Table 32.1).

Infected pigs generally have a transit viremia lasting for 1–2 weeks and shed viruses in feces for 3–7 weeks (Huang et al. 2002; Meng et al. 1998b; Takahashi et al. 2003). HEV infection generally occurs at 2–3 months of age (Figure 32.2), shortly after maternal antibodies have waned. This coincides with the time frame when pigs are moved to pens, an environment with increased opportunity for fecal cross-contamination (Huang et al. 2002; Meng et al. 1997). Adult pigs, sows, and boars, although commonly positive for anti-HEV IgG, are generally free of virus shedding.

Sequence analyses of swine HEV isolates identified thus far revealed the existence of at least two genotypes of swine HEV worldwide, i.e., genotypes 3 and 4 (Figure 32.3). In humans, both genotypes 3 and 4 HEV strains are known to cause sporadic cases of hepatitis E, whereas HEV strains of genotypes 1 and 2 are often associated with hepatitis E epidemics in Asia and Mexico (Meng 2004).

Besides domestic pigs, swine HEV also infects wild boars (Chandler et al. 1999). Under experimental conditions, rhesus monkeys and chimpanzees were susceptible to infection by swine HEV (Meng et al. 1998a). Rhesus monkeys experimentally inoculated with swine HEV seroconverted to anti-HEV IgG 4 weeks postinoculation. Viremia and fecal excretion of swine HEV were detected in inoculated rhesus monkeys. Serum liver enzymes, alanine aminotransferase (ALT), and isocitrate dehydrogenase (ICD) were both slightly elevated in the inoculated primates (Figure 32.4). Mild acute viral hepatitis characterized by focal necroinflammatory changes was observed in liver biopsies near the time of serum liver enzyme elevations. A chimpanzee inoculated with swine HEV also became infected, as the chimpanzee seroconverted to anti-HEV and swine HEV RNA was detected in feces.

Infection of nonhuman primates with swine HEV demonstrated the ability of swine HEV to infect across species barriers. Importantly, a genotype 3 human strain of HEV (strain US-2) has been shown to infect SPF pigs (Halbur et al. 2001; Meng et al. 1998a). The inoculated pigs rapidly became viremic and seroconverted to
HEV, suggesting that the US-2 strain of human HEV is already competent to replicate in pigs and may be of swine origin.

Cross-species infection of HEV has also been reported in other animal species. Lambs were reportedly infected with human HEV isolates (Usmanov et al. 1994). Similarly, Wistar rats were reportedly infected with a human stool suspension containing infectious HEV (Maneerat et al. 1996). However, attempts to infect laboratory rats and mice experimentally with swine HEV were unsuccessful (Sun and Meng, unpublished data).

Increasing evidence indicates that swine HEV also infects humans. Hsieh et al. (1999) found that about 27% of the Taiwanese pig handlers were positive for anti-HEV compared to only about 8% of control subjects. Recently, Meng et al. (2002) tested a total of 465 swine veterinarians for anti-HEV IgG using recombinant capsid antigens from swine HEV and a Pakistani Sar-55 strain of human HEV. Among the 295 swine veterinarians from 8 U.S. States from which 400 normal U.S. blood donors were available, about 23% (swine HEV antigen) or 27% (Sar-55 antigen) of swine veterinarians were positive for anti-HEV compared to 17% (swine HEV antigen) or 18% (Sar-55 antigen) in normal blood donors. Swine veterinarians in the U.S. were 1.51 times (swine HEV antigen, p = 0.03) and 1.46 times (Sar-55 antigen, p = 0.06) more likely to be anti-HEV positive than normal U.S. blood donors. Veterinarians who reported having needle sticks while performing procedures on pigs were about 1.9 times more likely to be seropositive than those who did not. Also, subjects from traditional major swine states appeared to be more likely seropositive than those from traditionally non-swine States. For example, subjects from Minnesota, a major swine state, were about 5–6 times more likely to be

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Herd</th>
<th>Pig Age</th>
<th>No. Positive/ No. Tested (%)</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>U.S.</td>
<td>1 herd</td>
<td>6–12 wk</td>
<td>0/16 (0)</td>
<td>Meng et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 herd</td>
<td>5 mo–adult</td>
<td>27/41 (66)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 herd</td>
<td>3–8 wk</td>
<td>0/24 (0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 herd</td>
<td>3 mo–adult</td>
<td>34/37 (92)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>11 herds</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>110/115 (96)</td>
<td>Takahashi et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25 herds</td>
<td>2 mo</td>
<td>375/500 (7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 mo</td>
<td>301/750 (40)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 mo</td>
<td>433/500 (87)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5–6 mo</td>
<td>677/750 (90)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>6 herds</td>
<td>3 wk–2 mo</td>
<td>2/10 (20)</td>
<td>Pina et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5 mo–adult</td>
<td>13/50 (26)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>2 herds</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>12/40 (30)</td>
<td>Chandler et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 herds</td>
<td>16 wk</td>
<td>45 (92-95)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>10 herds</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>102/275 (37)</td>
<td>Hsieh et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada (Quebec)</td>
<td>37 herds</td>
<td>Nursery</td>
<td>82/310 (26)</td>
<td>Meng et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada (Ontario)</td>
<td>10 herds</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>34/90 (38)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>4 herds</td>
<td>Nursery</td>
<td>1/230 (&lt;1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>80 herds</td>
<td>6 mo</td>
<td>994/998 (60)</td>
<td>Yoo et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>1–2 mo</td>
<td>6/40 (15)</td>
<td>Meng et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3–6 mo</td>
<td>39/80 (49)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adults</td>
<td>12/20 (60)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13 herds</td>
<td>1–2 mo</td>
<td>3/90 (3)</td>
<td>Choi et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 mo</td>
<td>5/50 (10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4–7 mo</td>
<td>28/90 (31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sows</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/34 (9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>1 herd</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>54/72 (75)</td>
<td>Garkavenko et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>18/55 (33)</td>
<td>Clayson et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>22/72 (31)</td>
<td>Meng et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>&lt;3 mo</td>
<td>1/10 (10)</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adults</td>
<td>329/409 (80)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>1 herd</td>
<td>1–2 mo</td>
<td>0/20 (0)</td>
<td>Meng et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3–4 mo</td>
<td></td>
<td>13/20 (65)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>3 herds</td>
<td>Adults</td>
<td>10/35 (29)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7 herds</td>
<td>2–24 wk</td>
<td>122/284 (43)</td>
<td>Arankalle et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>3.2–6.4 mo</td>
<td>54/57 (95)</td>
<td>Arankalle et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
seropositive than those from Alabama, which is traditionally not a major swine state.

Drobeniuc et al. (2001) also assessed the anti-HEV prevalence and risk factors to HEV infection in 264 swine farmers and 255 control subjects in Moldova. About 51% of swine farmers were anti-HEV positive whereas only 25% of control subjects with no occupational exposure to swine were seropositive. Withers et al. (2002) reported that swine workers (n = 165) in North Carolina had a 4.5-fold higher anti-HEV prevalence (10.9%) than the control subjects (2.4%, n = 127).

These data provide compelling evidence that hepatitis E is a zoonotic disease and that pigs are reservoirs (Meng 2003, 2004). The transmission route for swine HEV is presumably fecal-oral. Feces from infected pigs are likely the main source of virus for transmission. It has been shown that an uninoculated sentinel SPF pig housed in the same room with a swine HEV-inoculated pig became infected about 2 weeks after the experimentally inoculated pig had become infected (Meng et al. 1998a).

It is believed that pigs acquire infection through direct contact with infected pigs or through ingestion of feces-contaminated feed or water. However, experimental reproduction of swine HEV infection in pigs via the oral route of inoculation proved to be difficult (Kasorndorkbua et al. 2002), even though pigs can be readily infected with swine HEV via the intravenous route of inoculation (Halbur et al. 2001; Meng et al. 1998a, b). Other route(s) of transmission cannot be ruled out.

As a fecal-oraly transmitted disease, waterborne epidemics are characteristic of hepatitis E outbreaks in humans (Purcell and Emerson 2001). Feces from infected pigs contain large amounts of virus, and thus swine manure and feces could contaminate irrigation water or coastal waters, thereby leading to possible contamination of produce or shellfish (Meng 2004). HEV strains of swine origins have been detected in sewage water (Clemente-Casares et al. 2003; Pina et al. 2000).

Yazaki et al. (2003) recently reported that sporadic cases of acute hepatitis E in Hokkaido, Japan were epidemiologically linked to consumption of grilled or undercooked pig livers about 2–8 weeks prior to the onset of disease. The partial sequences of seven swine HEV isolates recovered from packaged pig livers in local grocery stores are very closely related, or identical in a few cases, to the viruses recovered from human hepatitis E patients, and thus provide more direct evidence of zoonotic transmission between pigs and humans.

## PATHOGENESIS

The pathogenesis of swine HEV is largely unknown. It is believed that swine HEV enters the host through the fecal-oral route (Purcell and Emerson 2001; Williams et al. 2001). The primary site of swine HEV replication in pigs is not known. In primates and pigs experimentally infected with swine HEV, virus replication in the liver has been demonstrated (Meng et al. 1998a, b).

It is believed that, after replication in liver, swine HEV is released to the gallbladder from hepatocytes and is then excreted in feces. Williams et al. (2001) showed the existence of extrahepatic sites of HEV replication in pigs experimentally infected with swine HEV and the US-2 strain of human HEV. By using a negative strand-specific RT-PCR, replicative negative-strand HEV RNA, indicative of virus replication, was detected in the liver, as well as in several extrahepatic tissues and organs, including small intestines, colon, and hepatic and mesenteric lymph nodes of infected pigs. Using in situ hybridization, Choi and Chae (2003) also detected swine HEV RNA in hepatocytes and bile duct epithelium as well as in small and large intestines, lymph nodes, tonsil, spleen, and kidney. Although the clinical and pathological significance of these extrahepatic sites of virus
replication is not known, it is believed that swine HEV may first replicate in the gastrointestinal tract and subsequently spread to its target organ, the liver, via primary viremia.

In humans, it has been reported that pregnancy increased the severity and mortality of the disease. The overall mortality rate caused by HEV in infected pregnant women can reach 25% (Kumar et al. 2004; Purcell and Emerson 2001). However, under experimental conditions, fulminant hepatitis E could not be reproduced in infected pregnant rhesus monkeys, nor was there increased severity of hepatitis in pregnant monkeys when compared to nonpregnant monkeys (Tsarev et al. 1995). Similarly, pregnant gilts experimentally infected with swine HEV did not exhibit any more severe disease than the nonpregnant controls (Kasorndorkbua et al. 2003). Reproductive failure or clinical hepatitis was not observed in HEV-infected gilts. Therefore, the mechanism of fulminant hepatitis E in infected pregnant women is still not known.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Pigs naturally and experimentally infected with swine HEV are asymptomatic. The incubation period, from the time of infection to virus shedding in feces, ranged from 1–4 weeks (Halbur et al. 2001; Meng et al. 1998a, b). The percentage of HEV-infected pigs within a herd is very high (refer to Table 32.1); however, the morbidity and mortality attributable to swine HEV infection is not known.

**LESIONS**

Four piglets naturally infected with swine HEV in a prospective study were necropsied during the acute stage of infection (Meng et al. 1997). Gross lesions were not detected in the liver or 18 other tissues and organs examined during necropsy. However, all four piglets had microscopic evidence of hepatitis, characterized by mild-to-moderate multifocal and periportal lympho-
plasmacytic hepatitis with mild focal hepatocellular necrosis. All four piglets also had mild lymphoplasmacytic enteritis and three piglets had mild multifocal lymphoplasmacytic interstitial nephritis.

Under experimental conditions, SPF pigs inoculated with swine HEV and the US2 human HEV remained clinically normal. However, the infected pigs did have mildly to moderately enlarged hepatic and mesenteric lymph nodes from 7-55 days postinoculation (DPI). Microscopic lesions characterized by mild-to-moderate multifocal lymphoplasmacytic hepatitis and focal hepatocellular necrosis were observed in experimentally infected pigs (Figure 32.5). Hepatic inflammation and hepatocellular necrosis peaked in severity at 20 DPI. HEV RNA was detected in feces, liver tissue, and bile of infected pigs from 3-27 DPI (Halbur et al. 2001).

All 12 pregnant gilts experimentally inoculated intravenously with swine HEV at various stages of gestation became infected and shed the virus in feces (Kasomborkua et al. 2003). These gilts had no clinical signs of hepatitis or elevation of liver enzymes throughout the 55 days of the study. There was no significant effect of swine HEV on fetal size, fetal viability, or offspring birth weight or weight gain. There were no remarkable gross lesions in the gilts, fetuses, or piglets from gilts that were allowed to farrow. Mild multifocal lymphohistiocytic hepatitis and individual hepatocellular necrosis was observed in 4 of the gilts. There were no remarkable lesions in the fetuses from HEV-infected dams. Evidence that HEV is a reproductive pathogen in pigs is currently lacking.

**IMMUNITY**

The immune response in pigs to swine HEV infection, characterized by a transient appearance of anti-HEV
IgM followed by long-lasting anti-HEV IgG, appears late during the period of viremia and fecal virus shedding (Meng et al. 1999a, b). Like human HEV, the capsid protein of swine HEV is immunogenic and induces protective immunity. It has been demonstrated that the ORF2 capsid protein of swine HEV shares common antigenic epitopes with that of human HEV and the newly identified avian hepatitis E virus (Haqshenas et al. 2002). All HEV strains identified thus far, including the genotypes 3 and 4 swine HEV, appear to belong to a single serotype. Cross-challenge experiments in primates have demonstrated cross-protection following infection with different genotypes of human HEV strains (Purcell et al. 2003).

Sows with high anti-HEV titers can passively transfer anti-HEV to their offspring, and thus some piglets are seropositive shortly after birth. Piglets born to seropositive sows had maternal antibodies lasting about 7–9 weeks (Meng et al. 1997). It is believed that maternal antibodies confer protective immunity to the piglets against swine HEV infection.

DIAGNOSIS

Swine HEV is a difficult virus to work with because it does not grow in cell culture or cause any clinical disease in pigs. Currently, the diagnosis of swine HEV infection is primarily based on PCR and ELISA (Engle et al. 2002; Huang et al. 2002). However, the sensitivity and specificity of these assays are largely not known. The recombinant human HEV capsid antigen cross-reacted well with antibodies to swine HEV in an ELISA assay and has been used to detect anti-HEV antibody in swine (Engle et al. 2002; Meng et al. 1999, 2002). The capsid protein of a genotype 3 swine HEV has also been expressed and used in an ELISA to detect anti-HEV (Meng et al. 2002). ELISA results based on the recombinant swine HEV antigen correlated well with those obtained with a recombinant antigen from the Sar-55 strain of human HEV. Therefore, both swine HEV and human HEV capsid antigens are suitable for diagnosis of swine HEV infection by ELISA. There is no specific test for differentiating between infections with swine HEV and human HEV.

Serological assays alone are inadequate in screening for acute swine HEV infection since anti-HEV IgG generally occurs in pigs at least 2 weeks after infection. Viremia and fecal virus shedding occur in infected pigs much earlier than the appearance of anti-HEV, and thus seronegative pigs could still be infected with swine HEV (Meng et al. 1998a, b). A sensitive and specific RT-PCR assay has been successfully developed for the detection of swine HEV from infected pigs (Huang et al. 2002). However, the specificity of the current RT-PCR assays in detecting swine HEV in pigs from different geographic regions is not known. Swine HEV strains identified from pigs in different geographic regions vary considerably in their genomic sequences and belong to at least two different genotypes (Meng 2004). Therefore, genetic identification and characterization of additional field strains of swine HEV from different geographic regions will be critical for developing a universal RT-PCR assay that can detect all strains of swine HEV in pigs. Since genotypes 3 and 4 swine and human HEVs are genetically indistinguishable, a differential diagnostic assay for swine HEV is not possible or necessary.

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

Swine HEV is ubiquitous in pigs worldwide and has the ability to infect humans. Therefore, the major concerns for swine HEV are (1) infection in high risk groups, such as swine veterinarians, swine producers, and other pig handlers, and (2) transmission of swine HEV from pig xenografts to human transplant recipients in xenotransplantation and the potential subsequent transmission of the virus to others.

Although swine HEV caused only subclinical infection in pigs, the outcome of exposure of immunosuppressed xenograft recipients is uncertain (Meng 2003). Unlike some other porcine viruses, such as the porcine endogenous retrovirus, xenograft donor pigs free of swine HEV can be derived from infected breeding herds. A recent study showed that piglets negative for swine HEV can be successfully generated through segregated early weaning from pregnant sows experimentally infected with swine HEV (Kasormdorkhua et al. 2003; Brad Thacker, personal communication). Therefore, the potential xenozoonotic risk of infection by swine HEV in xenotransplantation is preventable through adequate screening and strict rearing procedures for donor pigs.

As a zoonotic virus, swine HEV poses a potential public health concern. A vaccine against HEV is not yet available, but experimental recombinant HEV vaccines appear to be effective (Purcell et al. 2003), although their efficacy must be thoroughly evaluated for protection against emerging strains of HEV including genotypes 3 and 4 swine HEV. Vaccination of pig handlers in industrialized countries against HEV, when a vaccine becomes available, appears unnecessary since a high proportion of swine handlers were seropositive for HEV but had no clinical symptoms. However, the occurrence of acute hepatitis E in industrialized countries may be underestimated because sporadic cases of acute hepatitis E may go undiagnosed. Adequate personal and public hygiene can minimize the transmission of the virus. A simple preventive measure for pig handlers is to wash hands thoroughly with soap and water after handling pigs.

Although swine HEV is nonpathogenic in pigs, it is not known whether concurrent infections of swine HEV with other swine pathogens could have any synergistic effects. Therefore, it will be advantageous for the swine industry to produce HEV-free pigs for purposes such as seed stock production, biomedical research, and xeno-
transplantation. If sporadic cases of hepatitis E continue to occur in people as a result of consumption of undercooked pork, it may also become important to eliminate swine HEV from commercial production.

REFERENCES


Usmanov RK, Balaian MS, Dvoinikova OV, Alymabaeva DB, Zamiatina NA, Kazachkov IU, Belov VI. 1994. An experimental
Porcine Retroviruses

C. A. Wilson

Retroviruses are defined by the requirement for reverse transcription of their RNA genome into a double-stranded DNA intermediate as a key element to their replication strategy. While there are no known exogenous retrovirus infections of pigs, pigs do carry porcine endogenous retroviruses (PERVs). PERVs comprise a group of heritable viruses that, unlike exogenous viruses, are endogenous retroviruses (PERVs). PERVs are defined by the requirement for reverse transcription of their RNA genome into a double-stranded DNA intermediate as a key element to their replication strategy. While there are no known exogenous retrovirus infections of pigs, pigs do carry porcine endogenous retroviruses (PERVs). PERVs comprise a group of heritable viruses that, unlike exogenous viruses, cannot be excluded from pig herds because they are present as genetic elements in the genomes of all pigs.

Although no swine disease has been definitively attributed to PERV, type C retrovirus particles have been detected in porcine cell lines derived from leukemias or lymphomas (Frazier et al. 1969; Moennig et al. 1974) fueling speculation that the endogenous retrovirus of pigs may be tumorigenic. In addition, PERV is related morphologically and genetically to murine retroviruses shown to be the cause of leukemias in mice (Czauderna et al. 2000). However, the association of PERV with leukemic cell lines was not sufficient to assign PERV as the causative agent, since it was impossible to distinguish cause from effect in these studies. As a result, the investigations into whether PERVs may be tumorigenic were ultimately abandoned.

Scientific interest in PERVs was renewed when it was found that co-culture of primary pig cells (Martin et al. 1998; Wilson et al. 1998) or established pig cell lines (Patience et al. 1997) with human cell lines resulted in a productive infection of the human cells. These findings took on particular importance as they coincided with increased interest in developing clinical xenotransplantation, i.e., the transplantation of nonhuman cells or organs into humans. The development of transgenic pigs carrying two human genes that were thought to prevent hyperacute rejection was hoped to spearhead the clinical application of xenotransplantation (Byrne et al. 1997). However, the finding that pig cells harbored endogenous retroviruses capable of infecting human cells underscored the potential public health concerns of xenotransplantation. Many scientists predicted that it would be unlikely that PERV could be removed from the pig genome, given an estimated presence of 50–200 copies of PERV sequences per cell (Akiyoshi et al. 1998; Patience et al. 1997).

While some scientists argued that the pathogenic potential of PERV in humans is low, based on past human exposure to pigs as domesticated animals, others argued that xenotransplantation procedures differed significantly:

1. Xenotransplantation by its nature breaks down the usual boundaries of cross-species transmission of infectious agents, such as skin and mucosal membranes, resulting in essentially a chronic coculture of animal and human cells in vivo.
2. The likelihood that xenotransplant recipients will be immune-suppressed circumvents another natural barrier to transmission of infectious agents.
3. The possibility that transgenic modifications of human complement regulatory proteins could reduce the ability of natural antibodies to protect against PERV transmission.

These considerations were supported by historical examples of naturally occurring cross-species transmission of viruses where the recipient species developed a disease not seen in the host species. For example, HIV is thought to be an outcome of transmission of a nonpathogenic animal virus into humans, resulting in a fatal disease (Hahn et al. 2000). Therefore, efforts to prevent PERV transmission or eliminate PERVs from pig herds are under study because success would enhance the safety profile of xenotransplantation procedures in humans and reduce the potential impact on the public health.
ETIOLOGY

PERVs belong to the family *Retroviridae*, genus *Gamma-retrovirus*. Retrovirus particles are characteristic 100 nm in diameter and carry a plasma membrane-derived lipid bilayer envelope and a single-stranded RNA genome in diploid form. The characteristic enzymatic activity of retroviruses is the ability to catalyze the conversion of the retroviral single-stranded RNA genome into a double-stranded DNA intermediate using the virally derived enzyme RNA-dependent DNA polymerase (or reverse transcriptase). A second virally encoded enzyme, integrase, mediates integration into the host genome of the double-stranded viral DNA.

The genomic organization of PERVs is analogous to other gammaretroviruses and has been shown to consist of three open reading frames, gag, pol, and env (Akiyoshi et al. 1998; Czauderna et al. 2000) (Figure 32.6). The genomic RNA also includes elements found at the 5’ and 3’ ends that are required for poly-adenylation (U5), packaging (Ψ), reverse transcription (primer binding site, PBS), and RNA transcription (U3/R). As an outcome of reverse transcription, the U3/R/U5 elements are repeated at each end of the double-stranded DNA intermediate, and these are termed the Long Terminal Repeats (LTRs). After integration, the promoter and enhancer elements present in the U3 of the 5’ LTR mediate RNA transcription of two mRNAs: 1) a full-length genomic RNA that is used for encapsidation into the viral particle as well as for translation of the gag-pol polyprotein, and 2) a spliced mRNA that encodes the envelope precursor. Cellular proteases cleave the envelope precursor into the mature surface envelope glycoproteins (SU) and transmembrane protein (TM). The gag-pol polyprotein is auto-proteolytically cleaved by the virally encoded enzyme, protease, during budding of the viral particle (refer to Figure 32.6). In fact, it is this proteolytic cleavage that results in the change in morphology from an immature particle with an electron dense C-shape into a mature particle bearing the characteristic electron-dense spherical core (Figure 32.7).
PERV is somewhat more labile than other gammaretroviruses. It has been shown that PERV infectivity is reduced over hundredfold by storage at −70°C (Wilson, unpublished data), a condition that would typically reduce virus infectivity by only five- to tenfold. Likewise, pelleting virions by ultracentrifugation, a method used to concentrate other gammaretroviruses with moderate impacts on infectivity, will completely abolish PERV infectivity (Wilson, unpublished data).

PERVs have been classified into three receptor classes on the basis of superinfection interference and in vitro cell tropism studies (Takeuchi et al. 1998). PERV-A and PERV-B use distinct receptors, but are both able to infect human cells, while PERV-C essentially only infects porcine cells in vitro. All three receptor classes can be cultured on established cell lines using classic retroviral techniques. PERV-A and PERV-B replicate most efficiently in the human embryonic kidney cell line, HEK293 cells, while viruses representing any of the three receptor classes will also replicate efficiently in the swine testis cell line, ST-IOWA (Takeuchi et al. 1998; Wilson et al. 2000).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Pigs of all breeds carry in their genome endogenous retrovirus elements. Not all genomic elements will necessarily encode replication competent retrovirus, nor will all replicating retroviruses derived from the pig genome be able to infect human cells (Oldmixon et al. 2002). In fact, molecular analyses of DNA from representative species of the family Suidae and Tayassuidae have revealed the presence of PERV-like elements in the genomes of these wild relatives to the domesticated pig (Patience et al. 2001; Tonjes and Niebert 2003), indicating that the retroviral sequences were introduced into the germline of the pig long before domestication. Consistent with that observation are reports that PERV sequences can be identified in all breeds of domesticated pigs examined to date (Edamura et al. 2004; Jin et al. 2000).

Some of the most detailed genetic and phenotypic studies of PERV have been performed in an inbred herd of miniature swine. The results of these studies indicate that genetic heterogeneity of the endogenous retroviral elements in the pig genome give rise to variable results within a herd with respect to whether infectious virus is present and whether that virus may be infectious for human cells in vitro (Oldmixon et al. 2002). In other words, one cannot predict whether a particular herd would express a form of PERV that replicates in human cells, since each individual animal may vary with respect to this characteristic. This finding is promising since it suggests a means to identify and selectively breed those animals that do not express human-tropic PERV.

Although comprehensive examination of PERV expression in different pig tissues and cells has not been reported, there are some data available for certain pig breeds and tissues. While most endogenous retroviruses (for example, those of mice) are maintained in a transcriptionally silent state, where activation of expression may only occur under rare conditions, such as immune activation, PERV may be different. For example, infectious PERV has been directly cultured from pig plasma, indicating that at least some tissue compartments of the pig may constitutively express infectious PERV (Takefman et al. 2001). Likewise, primary cultures of unstimulated pig endothelial cells as well as unstimulated or stimulated porcine bone marrow mononuclear cultures have also been shown to express infectious PERV (Martin et al. 1998; McIntyre et al. 2003). PERV has also been readily isolated from primary cultures of mitogenically activated peripheral blood mononuclear cells (Wilson et al. 1998), as well as cultured porcine islets (van der Laan et al. 2000). Expression of PERV RNA has been shown in a wide variety of other pig tissues (Clemenceau et al. 1999), indicating that perhaps under the right conditions, virus could be isolated from almost any type of pig cell. In general, reports have indicated that tissue-specific expression does not necessarily correspond across different breeds, nor would one animal within a breed necessarily represent all members of the breed with respect to PERV expression (Wilson 2001).

DIAGNOSIS

PERV is not known to cause disease in pigs. Likewise, no disease has been observed in any animals (mice, guinea pigs, nonhuman primates) exposed to PERV to date, although it should be noted that limited or no viral replication has been observed in these studies (Argaw et al. 2004; Martin et al. 1999; van der Laan et al. 2000).

Since PERV is an endogenous retrovirus, all pigs will be positive in laboratory assays used to detect PERV DNA.
by PCR or Southern blot analysis (Table 32.2). Likewise, detection of PERV RNA expression by RT-PCR, Northern blot analysis, or detection of reverse transcriptase (RT) activity would indicate only that a PERV genetic locus, or loci, is transcriptionally active. However, RNA expression or RT activity may not always correlate with presence of infectious virus because many of the loci encoding PERV are defective due to deletions or point mutations. Therefore, the method recommended by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to qualify a particular porcine tissue or cell type for use in xenotransplantation clinical protocols is to use a culture assay (See FDA Guidance for Industry: Source Animal, Product, Preclinical, and Clinical Issues Concerning the Use of Xenotransplantation Products in Humans—4/3/2003).

Co-culture of the cells of interest with target cells is used most reliably to detect infectious PERV. FDA has recommended that culture assays include the target cell lines ST-IOWA (to detect PERV-C) and HEK 293 (to detect PERV-A and B). In most cases reported to date, primary pig cells tend to express low levels of PERV, so a culture period of at least 30 days is recommended. At the end of the culture period (or at set time points during the culture), the cells can be examined for evidence of infection by either of these methods: a) detection of the retroviral enzyme, reverse transcriptase by conventional or PCR-enhanced assays (Phan-Thanh et al. 1990; Takefman et al. 2001); or b) detection of PERV DNA or RNA by conventional or quantitative PCR or RT-PCR (Argaw et al. 2002). FDA has recommended that a positive signal be confirmed by serial passage of the virus onto naïve indicator cells to show that the signal is indeed due to presence of infectious virus that can replicate in the test system.

In addition to culture methods (refer to Table 32.2), several laboratories have also developed serologic methods for detection of PERV-specific antibody (Galbraith et al. 2000; Matthews et al. 1999; Tacke et al. 2001). These methods would not be of use for screening pigs, since pigs would likely be tolerant to PERV. However, serologic methods have been used to analyze the anti-PERV response in animal models (Argaw et al. 2004; Specke et al. 2002) or in human subjects of xenotransplantation clinical trials (Heneine et al. 1998; Paradis et al. 1999; Patience et al. 1998; Xu et al. 2003).

### PREVENTION AND CONTROL

PERV infection cannot be prevented within a pig, since it is embedded in the genome. However, recent reports indicate that the human-tropic form of PERV may, in some pig breeds, be an exogenous infection (Wood et al. 2004) and that the pig germline may not contain a replication-competent human-tropic PERV (Scobie et al. 2004). These findings suggest that a selective breeding program of individual pigs within a herd that do not contain human-tropic PERV sequences in the germline may allow one to develop a herd of animals that are less likely to express the human-tropic PERV. Use of transgenic knockout technology to eliminate genetic loci that encode infectious PERV has been suggested, but not attempted. Recent reports that the gene encoding the alpha-1,3-galactosyl transferase gene in pigs has been eliminated using this technology (Phelps et al. 2003) demonstrates that a genetic knockout approach is feasible. In addition, newer technologies are being explored. For example, intracellular expression of a heavy-chain variable fragment specific to the PERV matrix protein (part of gag) prevents production of infectious PERV from porcine cells (Dekker et al. 2003). This result could be further developed in the form of transgenic pigs engineered to express this antibody fragment, with the intention that the resulting pigs would not express PERV. Alternatively, transgenic pigs containing PERV-specific siRNAs may prevent expression of infectious PERV, based on studies of siRNA inhibition of replication for a number of other viruses (Joost Haasnoot et al. 2003).

In addition to trying to modulate expression of PERV in the pig, a number of strategies are being explored to determine whether existing antiviral drugs would be useful to treat PERV infection (Qari et al. 2001; Wilhelm et al. 2002). For example, some, but not all inhibitors of RT have been shown to reduce PERV infectivity in vitro, although typically at higher IC50 concentrations than

---

**Table 32.2.** Diagnostic methods for PERV detection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Specimen</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DNA PCR or Southern blot</td>
<td>Detection of PERV DNA</td>
<td>Pig cells</td>
<td>Will be positive for all tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RT-PCR or Northern blot</td>
<td>Detection of PERV RNA</td>
<td>Pig cells</td>
<td>Will likely be positive; may not correlate with presence of infectious virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse transcriptase assay</td>
<td>Detection of viral enzymatic activity (RT)</td>
<td>Pig cells</td>
<td>Will likely be positive; may not correlate with presence of infectious virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culture assay</td>
<td>Detection of infectious virus</td>
<td>Pig cells or fluids cultured with ST-IOWA or HEK-293</td>
<td>Best method to identify infectious virus; detection should include RT assay or RT-PCR or DNA-PCR assays to increase sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELISA or Western blot</td>
<td>Detection of immune response to PERV</td>
<td>Human serum</td>
<td>Indicates immune response to PERV in human recipients of xenotransplantation products; possibly indicating transmission of virus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
required for HIV inhibition. In contrast, HIV protease inhibitors have no effect on PERV infectivity.

Naturally preexisting xenoreactive antibody present in human serum against the carbohydrate alpha-1,3-galactosyl epitope present on the PERV envelope (when derived from porcine cells) has been shown to prevent PERV infection of cells both in vitro and in vivo (Fujita et al. 2003; McKane et al. 2003). While these data suggest that humans may be naturally protected against PERV infection, recent genetic modifications of pigs (i.e., the functional deletion of alpha-1,3-galactosyl transferase) may circumvent this mechanism of immune protection to PERV infection in humans (Chapman and Wilson 2003).

REFERENCES


Porcine Lymphotropic Herpesviruses

X.J. Meng, P.G. Halbur

Until recently, only two species of herpesviruses have been recognized in swine: pseudorabies virus (PRV) and porcine cytomegalovirus (PCMV) (Chmielewicz et al. 2003a; Murphy et al. 1999). PRV is an alpha-herpesvirus that causes respiratory, reprodutive, and central nervous system diseases in pigs. PCMV is a beta-herpesvirus that causes inclusion body rhinitis in swine. Prior to 1999, gamma-herpesvirus was not known to infect pigs. By using a pan-herpesvirus consensus PCR assay, Ehlers et al. (1999a) discovered two closely related gammaherpesviruses in pigs, designated porcine lymphotropic herpesviruses 1 and 2 (PLHV-1 and PLHV-2). More recently, a third porcine gamma-herpesvirus with considerable sequence differences with PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 was identified and designated PLHV-3 (Chmielewicz et al. 2003b). All three viruses were frequently detected in the blood and lymphoid organs of domestic pigs in different geographic regions. The discoveries of these novel porcine gamma-herpesviruses have raised concerns for the inadvertent transmission of animal pathogens to humans during xenotransplantation with pig cells, tissues, and organs (Chmielewicz et al. 2003b; Tucker et al. 2002, 2003). However, the clinical significance on pig health and the pathogenic potential of these novel viruses alone or in combination with other pathogens in pigs are unknown.

ETIOLOGY

The PLHV group belongs to the subfamily Gammaherpesvirinae of the family Herpesviridae (Ehlers et al. 1999a). Amino acid sequence analyses based on the partial DNA polymerase gene revealed that PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 displayed the highest (68%) sequence identity to the ruminant gamma-herpesviruses, alcelaphine herpesvirus type 1 (AlHV-1) and ovine herpesvirus type 2 (OvHV-2), about 67% sequence identity to bovine lymphotropic herpesvirus (BLHV), but shared only about 41% sequence identity to porcine alpha herpesvirus PRV and less than 45% identity to porcine beta herpesvirus PCMV (Ehlers et al. 1999a).

The complete DNA polymerase genes of PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 differed by about 7% from each other at the nucleotide sequence level, and 5% from each other at the amino acid sequence level. Since there are 50 amino acid differences between PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 in the DNA polymerase genes, the two viruses belong to two different species rather than strains of the same species (Ulrich et al. 1999).

PLHV-3 was initially detected from the blood sample of a German domestic pig, and was found to share only about 66% amino acid sequence identity in the DNA polymerase gene region with PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 (Chmielewicz et al. 2003b). Phylogenetic analyses showed that all three PLHV viruses clustered together with ruminant gammaherpesviruses BLHV, AlHV-1, OvHV-2, and caprine herpesvirus (CprHV-2) (Figure 32.8); however, PLHV-3 is more distantly related to PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 than the two viruses to each other (Chmielewicz et al. 2003b).

For gammaherpesviruses, the conserved genes are
organized in a common block. Approximately 73 kb genomic sequence of PLHV-1 has been determined and found to encode ORFs 3 to 52 spanning the entire first and second conserved gene blocks and the beginning of the third block (Goltz et al. 2002). In addition, two ORFs not conserved among gammaherpesviruses—E4/BALF1h and A5/BILF1h—three nonconserved ORFs between the second and third conserved gene blocks, and eight unique ORFs outside the conserved gene blocks were also identified in PLHV-1 genome (Goltz et al. 2002). The available 60 kb genomic sequence of PLHV-3 included the first and the majority of the second conserved gene blocks consisting of ORFs 3–46 as well as a putative chemokine receptor and a v-bcl-2 gene (Chmielewicz et al. 2003b). The gene organization of PLHV-3 is identical to that of PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 in the region where sequences are available for all three viruses, including the conserved herpesvirus ORFs; the gammaherpesvirus-specific ORFs 3, 10, 11, 23, and 27; and the nonconserved ORFs E4/BALF1h and A5/BILF1h (Chmielewicz et al. 2003b; Goltz et al. 2002).

Currently, there are no reports of the propagation and isolation of PLHV in cell cultures, and consequently the physicochemical and biological properties of PLHV are not yet known. However, PLHV-3 has been detected in a persistently infected porcine B cell line L23, which harbors approximately 400 genome copies of PLHV per cell (Chmielewicz et al. 2003b).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Little is known regarding the epidemiology of PLHV.

Ehlers et al. (1999a) tested peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) from 42 pigs and spleen samples from 19 pigs in Germany for evidence of PLHV infection, and found that 88% of PBMC and 95% of the spleen samples were positive for PLHV DNA. Three of 8 Spanish pigs tested were also positive. Chmielewicz et al. (2003b) reported that 47 of 92 (51%) peripheral blood leukocyte samples of pigs from 16 different herds in Germany were positive for PLHV DNA. Three of 8 Spanish pigs tested were also positive. Chmielewicz et al. (2003b) reported that 47 of 92 (51%) peripheral blood leukocyte samples of pigs from 16 different herds in Germany were positive for PLHV DNA. Approximately 88% (14/16) of the swine herds were also positive. Using real-time PCR, PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 DNA were detected in 54% and 16%, respectively, in the same set of samples (Table 32.3). PLHV-1, -2, and -3 DNA were detected in 78%, 41%, and 59% of lung tissue samples and in 59%, 26%, and 62% of the spleen samples, respectively. Of the 20 Italian pigs tested, PLHV-1, -2, and -3 DNA were
found in 80%, 20%, and 65% of the samples, respectively (Table 32.3). All three PLHV species were also detected from pigs in France, Spain, and the United States (Chmielewicz et al., 2003b).

Analyses of PLHV sequences from pigs in different countries revealed very little variation, indicating that the PLHVs are genetically stable, regardless of their geographic origin. Approximately 21% (9/44) of the miniature swine PBMC were also positive (Tucker et al. 2003). Feral pigs are also found to have a high prevalence of both PLHV-1 and PLHV-2 (Ulrich et al. 1999). Using a pan-herpes consensus PCR assay, Chmielewicz et al. (2003a) analyzed 495 blood and tissue samples collected from 294 pigs, and PLHV sequence was detected in 128 (26%). These molecular epidemiological data suggested that PLHV infection is ubiquitous in commercial swine herds.

The transmission route of PLHV is unknown. Tucker et al. (2003) found that about 80% of the conventional swine spleen samples (15/15) but only 13% (6/47) of cesarean-derived qualified pathogen free (QPF) swine spleen samples were positive for PLHV DNA. The reduced incidence of PLHV infection in cesarean-derived QPF pigs raised in strict biosecurity environment suggested that PLHV transmission may be a combination of both prepartum vertical (transplacental) transfer and postpartum horizontal (piglet-to-piglet, sow-to-piglet). However, the results from a small, transplacental infection study showed that 4 of the 5 sows were positive for PLHV sequences, whereas only one of 33 cesarean-derived offspring were positive, suggesting that transplacental transfer of PLHV is rare (Tucker et al. 2003).

**PATHOGENESIS, CLINICAL SIGNS, AND LESIONS**

PLHV infection is not associated with any known disease in pigs under natural conditions. However, due to the close genetic relationship with several pathogenic gammaherpesviruses such as AIHV-1, the cause of malignant catarrhal fever in cattle, it is possible that PLHV might also be pathogenic in pigs. The short lifespan of commercial pigs, generally about 6 months, could make such a disease unrecognizable, especially if it causes a chronic disease. Nevertheless, it has been recently reported that PLHV-1 is associated with posttransplant lymphoproliferative disease (PTLD) in miniature pigs following allologenic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (Goltz et al. 2002; Huang et al. 2001). PLHV-1 DNA was abundantly detected in PBMC and lymph node tissues of PTLD pigs (Huang et al. 2001). Most importantly, many PLHV-1 genes such as the immediate-early and late genes, the G-protein coupled receptor (GCR) gene, and the viral homolog of bcl-2 oncogene (v-bcl-2), are actively transcribed in PTLD pigs, but not in healthy pigs (Goltz et al. 2002), supporting the hypothesis that PLHV-1 may be involved in the etiology of porcine PTLD. Since PLHV-2 and PLHV-3 are genetically closely related to PLHV-1, it is reasonable to assume that PLHV-2 and PLHV-3 might also be associated with lym-
phoproliferative disease in pigs. The clinical symptoms of experimental porcine PTLD, such as fever, lethargy, anorexia, high WBC count, and palpable lymph nodes, are similar to those of human PTLD, which was linked to a human gammaherpesvirus, Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) (Loren et al. 2003; Paya et al. 1999). Characteristic gross pathological lesions in PTLD pigs include enlargement of tonsils and lymph nodes throughout the body with involvement of the gastrointestinal tract and spleen. The enlarged pulmonary lymph nodes and tonsils caused airway obstruction and respiratory failure in these pigs (Huang et al. 2001; Talpe et al. 2001). Microscopically, typical polymorphous PTLD cells with a mixture of immunoblasts, plasmacytoid cells, and plasma cells were seen in the lymph nodes (Figure 32.9).

Several animal gammaherpesviruses, including AlHV-1 and OvHV-2, are genetically closely related to PLHV; however, these viruses are nonpathogenic in their natural hosts, wildebeest and sheep, but cause serious lymphoproliferative and inflammatory diseases in other species such as cattle and deer (Goltz et al. 2002). Therefore, even if PLHV is not associated with any disease in pigs, it could become pathogenic in other animal species, especially in the case of pig-to-human xenotransplantation. During xenotransplantation, PLHV could bypass the natural defense barriers such as the mucosal surfaces and be directly introduced into the body of the human recipient via infected organs or cells, thus favoring cross-species infection between pigs and humans. Under immunosuppressive conditions, PLHV could become pathogenic in xenotransplant recipients and cause similar lymphoproliferative diseases in humans (Chmielewicz et al. 2003a; Goltz et al. 2002; Paul et al. 2003; Tucker et al. 2003). The possibility also exists that PLHV from infected xenografts might recombine with known human gammaherpesviruses, which are usually reactivated in the posttransplantation stage. Therefore, donor pigs intended for xenotransplantation should be adequately screened for the presence of PLHV infection.

**IMMUNITY**

Little is known regarding the immunity of PLHVs or the type of immune response they induce. Several lines of evidence indicated that PLHVs have B cell tropism. PLHV-3 was identified in a continuous porcine B-cell line L23 (Chmielewicz et al. 2003b). In immunosuppressed pigs with PTLD, oligoclonal proliferation of B lineage cells increased by a factor of approximately 10^2, and the amount of PLHV-1 genome copies increased concomitantly by a factor of 10^5 (Huang et al. 2001). In the tissues of PTLD pigs, the transcriptional activity of two ORFs (A7/BZLF2h and A8/BLLF1h) encoding proteins responsible for B cell entry was detected (Goltz et al. 2002). Under field conditions, PLHVs were predominately detected in PBMC in the blood and spleen tissues (Chmielewicz et al. 2003a, b; Ehlers et al. 1999a; Ulrich et al. 1999). Taken together, these data strongly suggested that PLHV infects B-cells. However, it is unclear whether the function of B cells becomes compromised in PLHV-infected pigs.

**DIAGNOSIS**

PCR is the only diagnostic assay currently available for PLHVs. A pan-herpes consensus PCR assay targeting the conserved regions of herpesvirus DNA polymerase genes has been developed and can detect more than 20 different herpesviruses (Chmielewicz et al. 2003a, b; Ehlers et al. 1999a; Ulrich et al. 1999). This pan-herpes consensus PCR assay, when performed in a nested format with degenerate and deoxyinosine-containing primers, can easily detect all three species of PLHV in porcine blood PBMC and spleen tissues. A quantitative real-time PCR assay has also been developed to quantify PLHV-1, -2, and -3 genomic DNA copy numbers in swine samples (Goltz et al. 2003). Ehlers et al. (1999a) developed a differential PCR assay that can differentiate between infections caused by PLHV-1 and PLHV-2. As a group of lymphotropic viruses, PLHV sequences are frequently detected...
in blood PBMC, spleen, tonsils, and lymph nodes. However, for diagnosis purpose, only blood PBMC is readily available from live pigs. An efficient cell culture for PLHV has not been established, and serological assays are not available.

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

A major concern regarding PLHV is the potential risk of human infection associated with xenotransplantation of pig cells, tissues, and organs (Chmielewicz et al. 2003a; Tucker et al. 2002). PLHV-1 has been shown to be associated with porcine PTLD; thus PLHV−1 is not only potentially pathogenic for pigs, but for human xenograft recipients, as well. Therefore, recipients of xenotransplants from pigs should be carefully monitored for potential PLHV transmission. Adequate screening of donor pigs by PCR assay for PLHV is important to prevent potential infection in xenograft recipients.

Appropriate breeding procedures could eliminate or minimize the risk of PLHV infection. A recent study showed that piglets free of PLHV could be generated through cesarian-derived and barrier-reared breeding procedure (Tucker et al. 2003). Therefore, xenograft donor pigs free of PLHV infection can be produced through a strict breeding and production process.

REFERENCES


Eastern Equine Encephalomyelitis Virus

F. Elvinger, C.A. Baldwin

Eastern equine encephalomyelitis (EEE) is endemic in the eastern United States (Atlantic and Gulf coasts), several Central and South American countries, and Caribbean islands. Naturally occurring EEE in swine was first reported in 1972 (Pursell et al.) when 160 of 200 pigs in one herd died in an outbreak in Georgia, USA. Exposure of domestic and feral swine to the agent had been described earlier in serologic surveys in the states of Georgia, Massachusetts, and Wisconsin (Feemster et al. 1958; Karstad and Hanson 1958, 1959). The disease is diagnosed sporadically in porcine case material at veterinary diagnostic laboratories, but it is likely unrecognized in the field.

The causative agent of EEE, eastern equine encephalomyelitis virus (EEEV), is classified in the United States as a Category B bioterrorism agent because of its moderate ease to disseminate, moderate morbidity, and high case-fatality rates in humans, and its potential impact on the Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)’s diagnostic, surveillance and response capabilities.
ETIOLOGY

EEEV is a single-strand RNA virus in the genus Alphavirus, family Togaviridae. There are 26 confirmed members in the genus Alphavirus, including western equine encephalomyelitis virus (WEEV) and Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis virus (Hahn et al. 1988). EEEV was described and serologically differentiated from WEEV in 1933 (TenBroeck and Merrill).

Nucleic acid analysis has demonstrated that EEEV has evolved independently into North and South American antigenic varieties (Casals 1964; Weaver et al. 1990). Isolates appear to be genetically stable over a discrete time period within a geographic region of transmission (Braulet et al. 1999; Roehrig et al. 1990).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

EEEV circulates endemically among many bird species considered to be reservoirs and amplifiers of the virus. EEEV is transmitted from bird-to-bird, mainly by the ornithophilic mosquito vector Culiseta melanuris. Other mosquito species from genera such as Aedes and Anopheles also transmit EEEV. Mosquito species with opportunistic feeding habits on both birds and mammals are responsible for the epidemic virus transmission to mammals. The appearance of EEE in mammals is associated with climatic conditions that influence vector population dynamics and enhance their density (Francy and Wagner 1992; Letson et al. 1993).

Clinical outbreaks have been reported from Georgia and Florida (Elvinger et al. 1994, 1996b; Pursell et al. 1972). Swine on 9 of 45 (20%) farms tested in recent serologic surveys in Georgia had antibodies to EEEV, and 16% of 376 feral swine on a Georgia barrier island had serum virus neutralization antibody titers that ranged from 4 to 128 (Elvinger et al. 1996b).

In general, mammals are considered dead-end hosts due to low virus titers that are insufficient to infect vectors. However, nursing pigs that were experimentally infected developed high titer viremia that lasted up to 168 hours. Virus could be recovered from oropharyngeal and rectal swabs up to 96 hours after virus administration, and virus could be isolated from tonsils of pigs up to 20 days after experimental infection. Contact control pigs, in addition, have seroconverted in experimental infection studies (Baldwin et al. 1993; Karstad and Hanson 1958). Thus, it is conceivable that infected nursing pigs are a source of virus for both vectors and, by direct transmission, for mammals in their close proximity.

CLINICAL SIGNS

EEEV predominantly affects nursing pigs. Clinical signs include depression, anorexia, ataxia, prostration, lateral recumbence, convulsions, and ultimately death. However, clinical disease is not commonly observed following experimental or natural exposure to EEEV. Most nursing pigs exhibit only a transient temperature increase, even when high doses of EEEV are experimentally given by oral, intradermal, or intravenous routes (Baldwin et al. 1993; Elvinger et al. 1996a). Predisposing factors, including adverse environmental conditions or concurrent disease, may contribute to the high mortality observed in natural outbreaks of EEE in swine (Elvinger et al. 1994; Pursell et al. 1972). Experimental infection of older animals did not lead to clinical disease (Karstad and Hanson 1959) and EEE has not been described in adult swine. The oldest pig recorded with clinical EEE was a 2-month-old female (Pursell et al. 1983), however, seroconversion was detected in adult animals following disease outbreaks in piglets (Elvinger et al. 1994).

PATHOGENESIS

Natural infection of pigs likely occurs through transmission of virus by hematophagous vectors, while experimental infection has been achieved by intracranial, intradermal, intravenous, and oral routes of virus administration (Baldwin et al. 1993; Karstad and Hanson 1959; Pursell et al. 1972). Rectal temperature increases within 24 hours of virus administration and is elevated for less than 12 hours in all experimentally infected pigs; however, clinical signs of central nervous system disease are observed in only a few pigs between 18 and 72 hours after virus administration (Baldwin et al. 1993). Circulating virus was isolated 6 hours after experimental infection, regardless of route of infection, and was present in blood for up to 168 hours. Neutralizing antibodies are detectable approximately 120 hours after experimental infection. After the acute viremic phase, EEEV was isolated only from tonsils and central nervous tissues. Virus was isolated or demonstrated by oligonucleotide probe in tonsils up to 20 days after experimental infection. Consequently, tonsil tissues of infected pigs could be a significant source of virus dispersion, especially since contact pigs become infected (Baldwin et al. 1993; Karstad and Hanson 1958). Oligonucleotide probing revealed EEEV in transient liver lesions that appeared early during the viremic phase of the infection, prior to the appearance of lesions in myocardium and central nervous system (Baldwin et al. 1993, 1994a, b). Presence of virus in liver lesions may indicate virus tropism for hepatic tissue and viral replication in the liver.

LESIONS

No gross lesions indicative of EEE have been observed in naturally or experimentally infected pigs (Baldwin et al. 1993; Elvinger et al. 1994, 1996a; Karstad and Hanson 1959; Pursell et al. 1972). Microscopically, necrotizing
hepatitis appeared within 12 hours of experimental infection, increasing in size over the next 24 hours, resolving partially by 48 hours, and resolving completely by 72 hours after infection (Baldwin et al. 1993). Central nervous system lesions may not be present in pigs that die in the acute phase of disease. The earliest lesions appeared in brain approximately 48 hours after infection. The appearance of these lesions was concurrent with the appearance of mild lesions in heart and resolution of lesions in liver. Encephalitis was characterized by infiltration of inflammatory cells, disseminated perivascular cuffing, neuronal necrosis and neuronophagia, nodules of glial proliferation, and malacia (Baldwin et al. 1993; Elvinger et al. 1994, 1996a; Pursell et al. 1972). Viral inclusion bodies were not observed. Initially, neutrophils predominated in infiltrates and perivascular cuffs, while lymphocytes were more common at later stages. In addition, histiocytes, adventitial cells, eosinophils, and cellular debris were observed. Hyaline or granular thrombi were found in blood vessels. Lesions occurred primarily in gray matter of brain and spinal cord, but white matter was also affected. Patches of inflammatory cells were noted in the meninges. Multifocal myocardial necrosis had been reported in naturally infected pigs and reproduced in experimental infection (Baldwin et al. 1993; Elvinger et al. 1994, 1996a). Pigs that survived experimental infection with no apparent clinical signs occasionally had lesions of mild encephalitis with lymphocytic perivascular cuffs, focal areas of gliosis and foci of myocardial necrosis that were partially mineralized and surrounded by macrophages (Baldwin et al. 1993).

DIAGNOSIS

Death losses in nursing pigs following clinical signs of central nervous system disease in EEE endemic areas are indicative of virus activity, particularly when climatic conditions are conducive to the development of vector populations. Histopathologic lesions may first appear in liver and myocardium. Lesions in brain consistent with EEE may not have had time to develop in pigs that die during the early viremic phase.

A definitive diagnosis can be supported by virus isolation or detection of virus RNA or antigen. Serologic evidence of exposure in surviving pigs is a good indicator of EEE virus activity, although antibody titers may be due to earlier exposure of sows and transmission of antibodies through colostrum.

A wide spectrum of tests to isolate virus, demonstrate and identify EEEV RNA or antigen, or detect antibodies to EEEV are used to diagnose natural and experimental infections with EEEV (Tsai and Chandler 2003). Fresh and formalin-fixed specimens of brain, spinal cord, liver, heart, and tonsil should be submitted for histopathological examination and virus isolation when EEE is suspected in a swine herd. Virus isolation can be attempted on oropharyngeal swabs from herdmates, since EEEV can persist in tonsil tissue. Precautions should be taken to avoid accidental human infection when collecting the specimens. Serum from affected and nonaffected pigs should be submitted for serologic examination, although disease and death likely will precede the onset of a detectable immune response.

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

Treatment of swine clinically affected with EEE has not been attempted. No treatment of affected horses has been described, and therapeutic efforts in human cases are directed toward management of symptoms (Craven 1991).

Two routes for prevention of EEE can be taken: 1) vaccination of animals at risk, and 2) vector control. Vaccination of sows is an option for protecting swine producers from catastrophic losses due to EEEV infection in pigs. Sows vaccinated experimentally with commercial equine vaccines transferred antibodies to piglets via colostrum that were protective for experimentally infected, early-weaned pigs (Elvinger et al. 1996a). Maternally derived antibodies were measured in pigs for up to 11 weeks after colostrum intake and should be protective until natural susceptibility to clinical disease is outgrown in piglets from vaccinated and naturally infected sows.

The second approach to prevention of EEE is control of exposure to EEEV vectors. Incident cases of EEE in any mammalian or avian species can serve as sentinel cases signaling the need to initiate application of insecticides by local and state governments. Aerial application of insecticides for public health protection benefits swine producers in endemic areas directly by preventing outbreaks and economic losses and, indirectly, by preventing amplification of EEEV in pigs that would put the producers and farm laborers at risk of contracting infection.

REFERENCES

Rabies
F. Elvinger

Rabies is an acute, nearly always lethal, viral, zoonotic disease of the central nervous system (CNS). All mammalian species are believed to be susceptible to rabies virus, although some appear to require higher infectious doses to develop clinical disease, and only a few carnivores/omnivores and bats are important as disease reservoirs.

The geographic distribution of rabies is almost global, with the exception of island nations in the South Pacific (New Zealand and others), where rabies has never been recorded. In Japan, the United Kingdom, Norway, and a few other countries, rabies has been eradicated. The World Health Organization classifies a country as rabies-free if no indigenous cases of rabies have been confirmed in any animal species and humans during the previous 2 years. In some countries, like Australia, rabies-related bat-associated lyssaviruses recently have been described that can cause rabies-like disease and death in humans and terrestrial mammals.

Incidence of rabies is not uniform across regions. The public health and economic impact of the disease varies greatly from highly to less developed regions of the world, from urban to rural environments, and across social strata within countries. Meltzer and Rupprecht (1998a, b) produced a two-part economic assessment in which they estimated costs of a case of human or animal rabies and contrasted those costs to various modalities of control of rabies in dogs and wildlife, and of treatment of exposed human and animal subjects. Costs of rabies are not limited to the economic loss of affected livestock, but also include the costs of regulatory intervention, medical treatment of exposed persons, and the nonfinancial costs of anguish of people who themselves or whose animals have been exposed to the disease.

ETIOLOGY

The bullet-shaped rabies virus of about 180 nm in length and 75 nm in width is a single-stranded, nonsegmented, negative-sense RNA-virus in the Lyssavirus genus, family Rhabdoviridae, in the order Mononegavirales. Another genus in family Rhabdoviridae is the genus Vesiculovirus, which includes the vesicular stomatitis virus. Molecular biological analysis and cross-protection assays distinguished 7 genetic lineages in the Lyssavirus genus: rabies virus (classic rabies virus, serotype/ genotype 1) and rabies-related viruses including the African viruses Lagos, Mokola, and Duvenhage (serotype/genotypes 2, 3, and 4, respectively); the European bat viruses I and II (genotypes 5 and 6, respectively); and the...
Australian bat virus (genotype 7), which, with the exception of Lagos, have all caused disease and death in humans. Additional lyssaviruses that belong to the rabies serogroup, including the Kotonkan and Obodhiang strains from African flies and mosquitoes and the Rochenbue strain from French Guyana mosquitoes currently have been isolated only in invertebrate hosts.

The rabies virion consists of 5 viral proteins of which two are of special interest. The phosphorylated nucleoprotein (N) includes the antibody-binding epitopes that contribute to the differentiation of the various virus groups. Glycoprotein (G) covers the virion, except at the planar end. It is the only one of the 5 proteins that binds virus-neutralizing antibodies, and variation in its amino acid sequence appears to contribute to the variation in pathogenicity of the different strains. Antigenic variation within the sero-type 1 rabies viruses does not appear to affect the efficacy of commonly used vaccines.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Rabies virus propagates in two epidemiologic cycles. In the urban cycle, the street virus circulates in feral and domestic dogs and still puts humans at great risk of exposure and infection in many developing countries. In the developed world there has been a shift from the urban to the sylvatic cycle, in which distinctive rabies virus variants circulate in specific wildlife reservoirs within discrete geographic clusters. Reservoirs include different fox species, jackals and coyotes, raccoons, skunks and mongooses, and bats. Wolves and cats can efficiently transmit rabies, but do not serve as reservoirs. Other susceptible animal species in general do not transmit the disease further and are epidemiologically dead-ends. Rabies in humans, companion animals, and livestock in Europe and North America results from spillover from the sylvatic cycle.

The incidence of rabies in swine in North America is low. Two of 2601 rabies cases reported from 1998 through 2003 in Canada (Canadian Food Inspection Agency 2004) and 14 out of 89,011 cases reported from 1991 through 2000 in the United States were in swine (Krebs et al. 2001). Porcine cases, however, are reported to the Office International des Epizooties every year and from all continents (OIE 2003).

**PATHOGENESIS**

The bite by a rabid animal effectively constitutes a subcutaneous and intramuscular inoculation of large amounts of virus in saliva. Following an eclipse phase, in which virus replication occurs, possibly in myocytes at the bite site, the virus migrates through the axoplasm of the peripheral or cranial nerves to reach the CNS. The lag time between inoculation and neural invasion may be the grace time during which post-exposure prophy-

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Clinical signs in most species may progress through three phases: the prodromal phase, in which nonspecific respiratory, gastrointestinal or CNS disease signs, including initial behavioral changes may appear; the furious, excitatory phase, in which the animal is agitated and aggressive, and which progresses through seizures to coma and death; and the dumb phase, characterized by paralysis, coma, and death.

In swine, as in other species, clinical presentation may be very diverse. Lack of overt clinical signs has been recorded in feeder pigs (Hazlett and Koller 1986). Reported clinical signs include uneasiness, dullness and incoordination, excitement with a tendency to root or attack, drooling/salivation, marked thirst, anorexia, hoarse grunts and vocalizations or lack of squealing, front leg paralysis, twitching of nose and rapid chewing movements with excessive salivation in affected sows, clonic convulsions, fever, and general paralysis proceeding into coma and death (Dhillon and Dhingra 1973; Hazlett and Koller 1986; Merriman 1966; Morehouse et al. 1968; Yates et al. 1983). Duration of the clinical phase in pigs has been reported to be short, lasting from 12 hours to 5 days. Frequently litter- and penmates are affected as well, due to common exposure when attacked by rabid animals. Baer and Olson (1972) described clinical signs of CNS disorder in 4 of 6 pigs bitten by a rabid skunk, including progressive paralysis starting at the forelimbs, and sexual excitement. These signs subsided within 1–2 weeks, and all pigs survived with elevated serum-neutralizing antibody titers to rabies until slaughter 2 months later. Recovery from clinical rabies and survival, including a virus carrier state, have been described in various animal species (Doege and Northrop 1974; Fekadu 1991), and may have occurred in these pigs as well.
LESIONS

Gross lesions due to rabies are not likely to be detected in swine. Swine with rabies may be in good condition, with stomachs full of fresh, normal feed, given the usually short duration of clinical signs (Merriman 1966). Negri bodies, which are eosinophilic inclusions in the cytoplasm of nerve cells and dendrites of infected animals, are frequently absent in rabid swine (Merriman 1966; Morehouse et al. 1968; Reichel and Möckelmann 1963). The most detailed presentation of histopathological changes is given by Morehouse et al. (1968) who examined 5 pigs of 16 that died over a period of 2 months in an outbreak at a Missouri swine farm. Microscopic changes in the CNS varied widely, ranging from mild vasculitis and focal gliosis in the brain to extensive meningoencephalitis and marked neuronal degeneration in brain and spinal cord.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The direct fluorescent antibody test (FAT) for rabies virus has been, and still is, the most commonly used diagnostic test for rabies in all species. This test, introduced in 1958, is recommended by both the Office International des Epizooties and by the World Health Organization (Aubert et al. 2000). Antigen may be detected in all parts of the CNS of infected animals, in corneal impressions, and in skin biopsies (Fekadu and Smith 1984; Smith 2003). However, the test is the most sensitive (approaches 100%) when examining impression smears from fresh tissues from the medulla oblongata, cerebellum, and hippocampus (Ammon’s horn), in which the greatest antigen quantities can be expected. Virus isolation techniques may be slightly more sensitive than the FAT in some tissues; however, the FAT is more likely to detect antigen in specimens in which replication of rabies virus is impaired because of tissue decay or presence of antibodies. The FAT is most sensitive on fresh brain tissue and loses some of its sensitivity when using formalin-fixed specimens following enzymatic treatment of the fixed sample (90–100% relative sensitivity compared to fresh tissue). False-negative FAT have been reported in swine in which rabies was confirmed by mouse inoculation tests (Dhillon and Dhingra 1973; Morehouse et al. 1968; Yates et al. 1983). Mouse inoculation or cell culture tests should be used when the FAT gives an uncertain result or when the FAT is negative, and when there has been human exposure to an animal in which clinical signs strongly suggest rabies. Negri bodies, i.e., intracytoplasmatic acidophilic antigen aggregates, are detected in only 75–80% of specimens found positive by more sensitive diagnostic methods (Fekadu and Smith 1984), and sensitivity of rabies diagnosis by detection of Negri bodies may be even lower in rabid pigs (Merriman 1966; Morehouse et al. 1968; Reichel and Möckelmann 1963).

PREVENTION AND CONTROL

Protection of humans and animals from rabies relies on prevention. Control of stray dogs and, later, vaccination of owned dogs had the greatest impact in the reduction of rabies incidence in humans, companion animals, and livestock.

In general, vaccination of swine is not recommended, given the very low number of porcine cases annually in the United States, western Europe, and other countries, which may be due to lower susceptibility of swine to rabies. In the United States there is currently no rabies vaccine licensed for use in swine. Prophylactic vaccination requires the extralabel use of a vaccine product approved for other species.

In case of exposure, unvaccinated livestock should be slaughtered immediately: “If the animal is slaughtered within 7 days of being bitten, its tissues may be eaten without risk of infection, provided that liberal portions of exposed area are discarded” (National Association of State Public Health Veterinarians 2004). Such an animal can be slaughtered for personal consumption in the United States; however, “federal guidelines for meat inspectors require that any animal known to have been exposed to rabies within 8 months be rejected for slaughter.”

Prophylactic post-exposure treatment may be indicated to save valuable animals or in countries where culling may impose excessive hardship on the owners of exposed animals. Mitmoonpitak et al. (2002) reported that, following severe rabies exposure involving deep bite wounds on nose, shoulder, vulva, and tail from a rabid dog, 11 pigs received either vaccine alone (inactivated, Rabisin manufactured by Rhone Merieux, France) or vaccine with equine rabies immunoglobulin (ERIG, 40 IU/kg bodyweight; Pasteur Merieux Connaught, France). All treated pigs had detectable antibodies to rabies by 14 days post treatment, and all pigs survived for 1 year following the exposure. Thus, post-exposure rabies treatment of valuable farm animals may be a safe and effective alternative to immediate slaughter. It needs to be pointed out, however, that the lack of licensed rabies vaccine for swine and the potential for the existence of rabies carrier states dictates caution in rabies endemic areas and requires that access of the public to swine in petting zoos or other facilities be restricted (Massachusetts Department of Public Health 2004).

REFERENCES


Bacterial Diseases

33 Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae
34 Progressive and Nonprogressive Atrophic Rhinitis
35 Brucellosis
36 Clostridial Infections
37 Erysipelas
38 Escherichia coli Infections
39 Exudative Epidermitis
40 Haemophilus parasuis
41 Leptospirosis
42 Mycoplasmal Diseases
43 Pneumonic Pasteurellosis
44 Proliferative Enteropathies
45 Salmonella
46 Porcine Colonic Spirochetosis/Intestinal Spirochetosis
47 Streptococcal Diseases
48 Swine Dysentery
49 Tuberculosis
50 Miscellaneous Bacterial Infections
Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae is the etiologic agent of pleuropneumonia in pigs. The first observations of this disease were made by Pattison et al. (1957), Matthews and Pattison (1961), and Olander (1963). Shope (1964) later described an acute outbreak of a similar infection on a farm in Argentina. The name Haemophilus pleuropneumoniae was given to the causal organism by Shope et al. (1964) and White et al. (1964). The name was confirmed by Kilian et al. (1978). The designation Haemophilus parahaemolyticus given to the California strains (Olander 1963) and the Swiss isolates (Nicolet 1968) is considered a synonym.

H. pleuropneumoniae was later transferred to the genus Actinobacillus and designated Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae after DNA homology studies had demonstrated the close relationship of H. pleuropneumoniae to A. lignieresii (Pohl et al. 1983). The Pasteurella haemolytica-like organism described by Bertschinger and Seifert (1978) as a causative agent of necrotizing pleuropneumonia is considered to be a nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD)-independent biotype of A. pleuropneumoniae (Pohl et al. 1983) and is known as A. pleuropneumoniae biotype II.

Pleuronemia is one of the important bacterial diseases of the respiratory tract of the pig and occurs in most pig-keeping countries. The clinical disease is relatively well controlled in the United States and Canada, but it is still a major problem in Latin American and European countries (Gottschalk et al. 2003). Its importance derives from the fact that it can cause pneumonia that results in death, clinical disease that may become chronic, or subclinical disease in successive batches of pigs and causes losses from death, reduced production, and increased costs of medication or vaccination. One of the problems of this disease for the clinician is that animals may be treated with antimicrobials effective against the organism, but they may not respond because of the severity of the initial lesions and their nature. Some herds may be subclinically infected without previous evident episodes of the disease and with the absence of suggestive lesions at the abattoir. This happens often in conventional herds which may be simultaneously infected not only with several serotypes of low pathogenicity (see below) but also with serotypes highly likely to cause disease. In these cases, outbreaks may suddenly appear in the presence of concomitant diseases or as a consequence of changes in management. Hence, early identification of subclinically infected herds is important for the control of the disease because carrier animals are the main source of transmission between herds.

Both the organism and the disease have been studied extensively and in considerable detail, and the knowledge has been used to design new vaccines and diagnostic methods and to propose relatively highly effective eradication programs. However, the best and most economical methods for control of the disease are still a matter for discussion.

ETIOLOGY

The etiologic agent A. pleuropneumoniae (formerly Haemophilus pleuropneumoniae, H. parahaemolyticus) is a small, gram-negative, encapsulated rod with typical coccobacillary morphology. The organism does not grow on blood agar unless it is supplemented with NAD and shows satellitism around colonies of staphylococci (biotype I strains). Staphyloccocal streaks are normally required for primary isolation on this medium. The biotype I organism forms colonies 0.5–1 mm after 24h of incubation on blood agar in the presence of staphylococcal colonies and is beta-hemolytic, particularly when sheep red blood cells are used. Biotype I is NAD-dependent, and A. pleuropneumoniae produces an increased zone of hemolysis within the zone of partial lysis surrounding a beta-toxinogenic Staphylococcus aureus (the CAMP phenomenon) (Nicolet 1970; Kilian 1976), and this CAMP phenomenon has been shown to be related to the possession of the three cytolysins ApxI, ApxII, and ApxIII (Frey et al. 1994; Jansen et al. 1994).
A. pleuropneumoniae biotype I has been divided into 13 serotypes and biotype II into 2 serotypes, for a total of 15 serotypes. Serotypes 1–5 were recognized by Kilian et al. (1978), with serotype 5 subdivided into subtypes 5a and 5b (Nielsen 1986a); however, this subdivision has neither epidemiological nor pathological significance, and most laboratories do not perform the subtyping. Subsequently, serotypes 6, 7 (Rosendal and Boyd 1982), 8 (Nielsen and O’Connor 1984), 9 (Nielsen 1985b), 10 (Nielsen 1985c), 11 (Kamp et al. 1987), and 12 (Nielsen 1986b) have been proposed. Serotype 10 was erroneously proposed by Kamp et al. (1987) and was later referred to as serotype 12 (Nielsen 1986b). Nielsen et al. (1997) proposed an integration of the serotyping schemes for biotypes 1 and 2, with two new serotypes, serotypes 13 and 14, belonging to biotype II being added. More recently, Blackall et al. (2002) reported that a new NAD-dependent biotype I serotype (serotype 15) is the predominant serotype in Australia. The association of serotypes and biotypes are not necessarily exclusive, since biotype II strains belonging to serotypes 2, 4, 7, and 9 (normally found among biotype I strains) have been reported (Beck et al. 1994). Two biotype I strains belonging to serotype 13 (a “biotype II serotype”) have recently been isolated in Canada and the United States (M. Gottschalk, unpublished observations).

The serologic specificity is given by the capsular polysaccharides (CPS) and the cell wall lipopolysaccharides (LPS). However, some serotypes show structural similarities or have identical LPS O chains, thus explaining the cross-reactions observed between serotypes 1, 9, and 11; serotypes 3, 6, and 8; and serotypes 4 and 7 (Perry et al. 1990; Dubreuil et al. 2000).

Combinations of a given serotype at the capsule and a different serotype at the LPS level have been reported. For example, strains of CPS/LPS of serotype 1/7 and 2/7 have been reported in North America and Europe, respectively (Gottschalk et al. 2000; Nielsen et al. 1996). These strains could complicate the diagnosis, due to the presence of atypical cross-reactions. It has been suggested that serotypes of A. pleuropneumoniae would be more rigorously defined by specifying both capsular (K) and LPS (O) antigens (Perry et al. 1990), but this nomenclature has not been widely adopted (Dubreuil et al. 2000).

**Epidemiology**

Pleuropneumonia of the pig is widely distributed. It has become more important as pig production has become more intensive. Outbreaks have been reported from practically all European countries and from different parts of the United States and Canada, Mexico, South America, Japan, Korea, Taiwan, and Australia. Although some serotypes are prevalent in certain countries (e.g., serotype 2 in Switzerland, Denmark, France and Sweden and serotypes 1 and 5 in the United States, Canada and Mexico), several serotypes often occur in the same country (Dubreuil et al. 2000). Some serotypes (e.g., serotype 3), considered to be of low virulence and of no epidemiologic importance in certain countries, may be epidemic in others (Desrosiers et al. 1984; Brandreth and Smith 1985; Gottschalk et al. 2003). A series of papers provided information on the distribution of serotypes within countries (e.g., Austria, where serotype 4, 6, and 10 are most common; see Hofer et al. 1996) or within regions of countries (e.g., Catalonia, Spain, where 11 serotypes, principally 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, and 11, have been identified; see Clota et al. 1996; and Quebec, Canada, where serotypes 1, 5, and 7 are predominant; see Mittal et al. 1992). McDowell and Ball (1994) showed that serotypes 1 and 4 were absent from the British Isles, which may reflect the restrictions on imports of live pigs to the U.K. from neighboring countries of the European Union where these serotypes exist. Serotype 4, considered absent from North America in the past, has been isolated from carrier animals in Canada (Lebrun et al. 1999). Different serotypes may also occur within farms. In fact, most conventional herds are infected with more than one serotype of A. pleuropneumoniae (Gottschalk et al. 2003). The international relationship of the different serotypes is of special interest, because it points to a transmission through international exchange of animals. For example, serotype 2 is a highly virulent serotype in European countries, but it is infrequently isolated from clinical cases in North America. Recent data showed that European strains produce two toxins, whereas North American strains produce only one (see pathogenesis), which may explain the differences in virulence (M. Kobisch, M. Jacques, and M. Gottschalk, unpublished observations). Biotype II strains are more commonly isolated in Europe than in the United States, where only one report is available (Frank et al. 1992). More recently, an untypable strain of a biotype II A. pleuropneumoniae has been reported in the U.S. as an important cause of disease in a commercial herd (Gottschalk et al. 2003). Biotype II strains, considered as low virulence for a long time, seem to be able to cause cases of fatal pleuropneumonia (Gambade and Morvan 2001; Maldonado et al. 2004). Strains belonging to the same serotype have been genotypically compared. Moeller et al. (1992) analyzed
the multilocus enzyme electrophoresis (MEE) types of organisms in one restricted area and found that the electrophoretic type (ET) was unrelated to the severity of the disease. In addition, they concluded that serotype 5 strains possessed a clonal structure. This was confirmed by Chatellier et al. (1999), who used random amplified polymorphic DNA analysis or RAPD to compare Canadian field strains isolated from lungs of diseased animals and from nasal cavities or tonsils of clinically healthy pigs, indicating that these strains have the same potential for virulence. Fussing (1998) reported that serotype 2 field strains were clonally related, using ribotyping, sequence analysis of ribosomal intergenic regions, and pulsed-field gel electrophoresis. On the other hand, Chatellier et al. (1999) showed a relatively high heterogeneity among strains of *A. pleuropneumoniae* serotype 1, especially those recovered from healthy animals, using the RAPD technique.

The economic importance of the disease is principally due to the mortality, production and medical costs in acute outbreaks. In chronically infected herds, results from studies investigating the effect of pneumonia on the average daily gain have been controversial. Hunneaman (1986) found that the rate of daily weight gain was not affected, although a study by Hartley et al. (1988) showed that pluriusy at slaughter was associated with an increase of 1 day to slaughter, and clinical disease with an increase of 8 days to slaughter. More recently, Andreasen et al. (2001) explained the lack of significant reduction in the average daily weight gain in *A. pleuropneumoniae* and *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* chronically infected herds by either the fact that most pigs included in the study were subclinically infected or because a temporary negative influence of the infection is hidden due to an increased growth in the period following infection.

*A. pleuropneumoniae* is a parasite of the respiratory tract with high host specificity for pigs. In peracute and acute infections, it can be found not only in pneumatic lesions but also in large numbers in nasal discharges. The incubation period can be quite variable. Experimental infections show that an exposure to large numbers of organisms leads to death within a few hours to a few days. Either exposure to low levels of infection or survival following acute infections may result in subclinical disease, and these animals become carriers. In these cases, the infectious agent is located mainly in necrotic lung lesions and/or in the tonsils, less frequently in the nasal cavity (Kume et al. 1984). Animals that have recovered from acute episodes may remain carriers for several months (Desrosiers 2004).

The main route of spread is by direct contact from pig to pig or by droplets within short distances. In acute outbreaks the infection may not occur in every pen, suggesting the possible role of aerosols and air movement in the transmission of the disease over longer distances within buildings or the indirect transmission of contaminated exudates from acutely infected pigs by farm personnel. Transmission between herds occurs through the introduction of carrier animals to naive populations. Different studies showed that *A. pleuropneumoniae* may be transmitted by aerosol over short distances (see Desrosiers 2004), and Kristensen et al. (2004) reported that airborne transmission between closely located pig units is possible but rare. Moving and mixing pigs increases the risk of pleuropneumonia. Introduction of the disease by artificial insemination or embryo transfer is improbable, since the genital tract is not a common site of infection, and antimicrobials in the diluent would prevent survival of the contaminating organism. Transmission by small rodents or birds is doubtful and it is not considered as significant. Survival of the organism in the environment is considered to be of short duration. However, when protected with mucus or other organic matter, it can survive for several days (even weeks) and it can survive in clean water for periods of up to 30 days at 4°C. Infected sows will transmit the infection to the offspring. It has been suggested that only few piglets get infected by *A. pleuropneumoniae* from their respective sow during the nursing period (when the level of maternal antibodies is usually high), and that these infected pigs spread the bacteria to other pigs after weaning, the age period that corresponds to the age at which the proportion of pigs with detectable levels of colostral antibodies against *A. pleuropneumoniae* is declining (Vigne et al. 2002). These two events (colonization and level of colostral antibodies) are most probably associated. The persistence of colostral antibody in piglets may range from 2 weeks to 2 months postpartum, mainly depending on the initial level of acquired colostral antibodies, and to the serological technique used to measure them (Vigne et al. 2003; M. Gottschalk, unpublished observations).

In the acute phase of the disease, morbidity is generally high. Mortality depends on the virulence of the strain and on the particular environment. Factors such as crowding and adverse climatic conditions, such as rapid changes in temperature and high relative humidity, coupled with insufficient ventilation encourage the development and spread of the disease and, consequently, also affect morbidity and mortality. It is, therefore, not surprising that the highest incidence of outbreaks is observed in growing and finishing pigs, mainly in seasons with adverse weather conditions. As a rule, large herds that mix pigs frequently are more at risk than small herds or herds with separate units. Data from the field seem to indicate that both morbidity and mortality may be exacerbated by the presence of diseases such as Aujeszky’s disease and porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS), although experimental studies showed that combined infection with *A. pleuropneumoniae* and PRRS virus may not necessarily result in more severe disease (Pol et al. 1997).
**VIRULENCE FACTORS AND PATHOGENESIS OF THE INFECTION**

The pathogenesis of swine pleuropneumonia has been studied extensively, both in terms of the development of the lesions and in terms of the relationship of the organism to the tissues at a more molecular level. For a recent complete review, please refer to Bosse et al. (2002). Infection is usually by aerosol or by contact, and experimental studies have shown that the organism can colonize the tonsil and adhere to the alveolar epithelium. In fact, colonization is usually the first step of the infectious process. Chiers et al. (1999) demonstrated that after experimental infection with *A. pleuropneumoniae*, bacteria were mainly associated with the stratified squamous epithelium and detached epithelial cells. Vacuolization and desquamation of the epithelium was observed and many transmigrating neutrophils were present. At later times after inoculation, bacteria were found closely associated with the crypt-walls and with detached cells present in the crypts. A strong neutrophil migration was observed mainly in the deeper parts of the crypts. It was concluded that attachment of *A. pleuropneumoniae* to tonsillar epithelial cells probably constitutes a first step in establishing bacteria at this body site. It seems that this pathogen does not bind well to the cilia or epithelium of the trachea or bronchi (Bosse et al. 2002). However, it seems to significantly adhere to cells of the lower respiratory tract (Bosse et al. 2002; van Overbeke et al. 2002). The presence of fimbriae and fimbrial subunits has been well confirmed (Zhang et al. 2000). It seems that their expression is regulated by growth conditions, which may explain their presence after growth in some media but not in others (Bosse et al. 2002). However, their role in the colonization or any other aspect of the pathogenesis of the infection remains to be elucidated.

Cell adhesion seems to be mediated either by proteins or polysaccharides (van Overbeke et al. 2002). It has been clearly demonstrated that the LPS play an important role in adherence of *A. pleuropneumoniae* to swine cells (Paradis et al. 1999). Recently, glycosphin-golipids (gangliotriaosylceramide or GgO3 and gangliotetraosylceramide or GgO4) present in respiratory epithelial cells have been identified as possible receptors for *A. pleuropneumoniae* (Abul-Milh et al. 1999). Originally, high-molecular-mass polysaccharide from the LPS was thought to be involved as adhesin. However, GgO3 and GgO4 were shown to interact with the core oligosaccharide rather than the long chain O polysaccharide (Abul-Milh et al. 1999). Evidence from other pathogen-host cell interactions suggests that adherence to host cells is a complex and multifactorial process (Bosse and Matyunas 1999).

Once in the respiratory tract environment, certain bacterial nutrients are scarce. One of the most important is iron. Mechanisms for overcoming iron-restriction are complex. *A. pleuropneumoniae* expresses a number of factors that are involved in the acquisition and uptake of iron (for a recent review, see Jacques 2004). Among other mechanisms, *A. pleuropneumoniae* is capable of utilizing porcine transferrin and haem compounds including free haem, haemin, haematin, and haemoglobin (Bosse and Matyunas 1999). It also possesses a siderophore (Jacques 2004).

After being able to adhere, resist the clearing function of the normal mucociliary system, and survive in the lower respiratory tract, *A. pleuropneumoniae* may be eliminated by phagocytic cells. Both macrophages and neutrophils phagocytose *A. pleuropneumoniae* in the presence of convalescent pig serum (Cruijssen et al. 1992; Bosse and Matyunas 1999). Production of immunoglobulin proteases, which might interfere with opsonophagocytosis is controversial (Bosse and Matyunas 1999; Negrete-Abascal et al. 1994). Following phagocytosis, *A. pleuropneumoniae* can survive for a certain period of time inside macrophages, but not neutrophils. Different factors produced by this microorganism may contribute to its ability to survive within some phagocytic cells (Bosse and Matyunas 1999). In addition, it appears to be resistant to the action of complement, mainly due to the capsular polysaccharide (CPS) (in the case of serotype 5) and the LPS (in the case of serotype 1) (Ward and Inzana 1994; Rioux et al. 1999, 2000). The presence of the capsule as a protective factor for *A. pleuropneumoniae* serotypes 1 and 5 has been demonstrated by the characterization of nonvirulent isogenic mutants lacking this factor (Bosse and Matyunas 1999; Rioux et al. 2000).

The most important factors involved in impairment of phagocytic function of both macrophages and neutrophils are the RTX-toxins, ApxI, ApxII, and ApxIII, produced by different serotypes of *A. pleuropneumoniae* (Haesebrouck et al. 1997; Frey 2003). In general, strains of serotypes 1, 5, 9, and 11 produce ApxI and ApxII; strains of serotypes 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, and 15 produce ApxII and ApxIII; strains of serotypes 7, 12, and 13 produce only ApxII, and strains of serotypes 10 and 14 produce only ApxI (Gottschalk et al. 2003). It seems that strains of serotype 3 secrete low levels of ApxII. The possible role of the more recently described toxin (ApxIV, produced only in vivo) on macrophages and neutrophils remains to be elucidated (Frey 2003). ApxI and ApxIII are highly toxic for leukocytes, whereas ApxII is moderately toxic for these cells. In fact, most of the pathological consequences of porcine pleuropneumonia can be attributed to these toxins which exert cytotoxic effects on different type of cells (Haesebrouck et al. 1997; Frey et al. 1993; Frey 2003). The production of two toxins by virulent serotypes seems to be important. For example, it has recently been demonstrated that both ApxI and ApxII toxins are necessary for full virulence in serotype 1 strains (Boekema et al. 2004). In addition, highly virulent serotype 2 strains from Europe produce two toxins.
as expected, but low virulent North American strains produce only ApxII (M. Gottschalk, M. Jacques, and M. Kobisch, unpublished observations). LPS is also considered a cause of toxic effects, due probably to an exacerbation of the inflammatory response (Fenwick 1990).

Although several reports indicate an important release of pro-inflammatory mediators (Baarsch et al. 1995), a recent study indicates that pneumonia caused by A. pleuropneumoniae infection is not due to the release of systemic inflammatory cytokines (Myers et al. 2004). Other factors include secreted proteases and flagella, but their role in the pathogenesis of the infection remains to be elucidated (Negrete-Abascal et al. 1994, 2000; Negrete-Abascal 2003).

Differences in the virulence between the serotypes or even within the same serotype have often been observed. It is suggested that such differences are due to capsular structure (Jacques et al. 1988), LPS composition (Jensen and Bertram 1986), or type of hemolysin (Frey 2003). In general, strains of serotypes 2, 9, and 11 (in Europe) and 1 and 5 (North America) are found to be more virulent than those of other serotypes. Although it has been previously reported that serotype 10 may be highly virulent (Komal and Mittal 1990), very few clinical cases are reported worldwide. Pigs experimentally infected with this serotype generally present a low level of clinical signs and mortality, but relatively high level of chronic pleuropneumonia and chronic pleuritis (Sorensen 1997; M. Gottschalk, unpublished observations). Interestingly, animals may be carriers of fully virulent strains of serotype 1 or 5 in a herd without the presence of clinical signs. Finally, strains of serotype 1, with no atypical CPS, LPS, or toxin profile have also been shown to be of low virulence after experimental infections (Gottschalk et al. 2003). It is important to note that results obtained after experimental infection may depend on the route of inoculation (intranasal, intratracheal, aerosol, etc.), the dose used, and the immune status of the animals. Conventional animals that might have been in contact with low virulent serotypes of A. pleuropneumoniae or with A. suis may be more resistant to the infection with a specific strain than specific pathogen-free animals that are negative to all serotypes of A. pleuropneumoniae (M. Gottschalk, unpublished observations). Serotypes considered as low pathogenic (such as serotype 3 and 12) can sometimes induce clinical problems, especially in the presence of other pathogens. Concomitant infections with other pathogens of the respiratory tract that aid the development of pleuropneumonia have been described by Caruso and Ross (1990).

Lung lesions resulting from the toxic changes may be seen as early as 3 hours after experimental infection and become progressively more obvious. The alveolar wall becomes edematous and capillary congestion develops. The lymphatics become dilated with edema fluid, fibrin, and inflammatory cells. Platelet aggregation and neutrophil accumulation may also be seen in the damaged alveolar wall, and both arteriolar thrombosis and wall necrosis may develop to produce infarction. Microcolonies of the organism may be seen in infected alveoli, and bacteremia may occur. The edges of the lesions become filled with dead and damaged macrophages or debris and can easily be demarcated from the surrounding lung by 4 days post infection. Purulent exudate containing organisms is present in the bronchi. As the lesions age, their centers become necrotic and healing occurs by fibrosis.

Experimental or natural infections stimulate an immune response, and circulating antibodies can be detected approximately 10–14 days post infection. These antibodies reach a maximum level within 4–6 weeks post infection and may persist for many months (Desrosiers 2004). However, more studies are needed to confirm this fact. Immune sows confer passive immunity on their offspring. Such colostral antibodies may persist for about 5–12 weeks (Vigre et al. 2003), but this may depend on the sensitivity of the test used to detect the antibodies and on the initial level of acquired colostral antibodies. Protection may last for only as little as 3 weeks in some cases (Nielsen 1975), but these data may be due to the use of a very insensitive test such as the complement fixation test. The antibodies are directed against a wide range of bacterial structures and products, including capsule, LPS antigens, toxins (which can be neutralized), outer-membrane proteins, superoxide dismutase, and iron-binding proteins. Both local IgA antibodies and serum IgG antibodies are produced.

CLINICAL SIGNS

Clinical signs vary with the age of the animals, their state of immunity, the environmental conditions, and the degree of exposure to the infectious agent. The clinical course can be peracute, acute, or chronic (Nicolet et al. 1969; Shope 1964; Shope et al. 1964).

In the peracute form, one or more weaned pigs in the same or different pens suddenly becomes very ill with fever to 106.7°F (41.5°C), apathy, and anorexia. There is a short period of slight diarrhea and vomiting. The affected animals lie on the floor without distinct respiratory signs, the pulse rate increases very early, and cardiac and circulatory failure develop. The skin on the nose, ears, legs, and later the whole body becomes cyanotic. In the terminal phase, there is a severe dyspnea with mouth breathing, animals remain in a sitting posture, and rectal temperatures decrease markedly. Shortly before death, there is usually a copious, foamy, bloodtinged discharge through the mouth and nostrils. Death occurs within 24–36 hours of the development of clinical signs. Occasionally an animal may die suddenly without premonitory clinical signs or be found dead in a pen; experimental studies have shown that the course of the disease may be as little as 3 hours from infection
to death. In neonatal pigs the disease occurs as a septicemia with fatal results.

In the acute form, many pigs in the same or different pens are affected. Body temperature rises to 105–106°F (40.5–41°C), the skin may be reddened, and the animals are depressed, are reluctant to rise, refuse food, and are reluctant to drink (Pijpers et al. 1990). Severe respiratory symptoms with dyspnea, cough, and sometimes mouth breathing are evident. Cardiac and circulatory failure are usually present, with congestion of the extremities. There is a marked loss of condition, which is apparent within 24 hours of the onset of the disease. The course of the disease differs from animal to animal, depending on the extent of the lung lesions and the time of initiation of therapy. All stages of disease, from intermediate to fatal, subacute, or chronic, may develop within an affected group.

The chronic form develops after the disappearance of acute signs. There is little or no fever, and a spontaneous or intermittent cough of varying intensity develops. Appetite may be reduced, and this may contribute to the decreased rate of gain in body weight. Affected animals can be identified by their intolerance of exercise. When moved, they lag behind the group and struggle only feebly when restrained. In chronically infected herds there are often many subclinically diseased animals. The clinical signs may be exacerbated by other respiratory infections (mycoplasmal, bacterial, or viral). Although a certain synergy between PRRSV and *A. pleuropneumoniae* is often suspected in the field, experimental studies have not shown that previous PRRSV infection of SPF pigs enhanced the severity of a *A. pleuropneumoniae* infection (Pol et al. 1997). In primary outbreaks abortions may be observed (Wilson and Kierstead 1976), especially in SPF herds. Middle-ear disease has also been associated with *A. pleuropneumoniae* infection (Duff et al. 1996).

It is important to add that some herds are in fact infected by *A. pleuropneumoniae* without the presence of visible clinical signs and with absence of significant lesions at slaughter. These are considered as subclinically infected herds.

### LESIONS

The gross pathological lesions are located mainly in the respiratory tract (Nicolet and König 1966). The pneumonia is mostly bilateral, with involvement of the cardiac and apical lobes, as well as at least part of the diaphragmatic lobes, where pneumatic lesions are often focal and well demarcated (Figure 33.1). In rapidly fatal cases the trachea and bronchi are filled with a foamy, blood-tinged, mucous exudate and few gross changes may be obvious. In slightly later peracute cases, the pneumatic areas appear dark and solid with little or no fibrinous pleurisy; and the cut surface is friable. Fibrinous pleurisy is very obvious in animals that die in the acute stage of the disease, at least 24 hours after infection, and the thoracic cavity contains a blood-tinged fluid. As the lesions age, the fibrinous pleurisy over the affected areas of lung becomes fibrous and may adhere so strongly to the parietal pleura that lung parenchyma may remain attached to the parietal pleura when the lungs are removed at postmortem examination. The uniform dark red or black of the early lung lesion becomes lighter in color and remains firm only in the worst-affected areas. The lesions shrink in size as resolution progresses, until in more chronic cases nodules of different sizes remain, mostly in the diaphragmatic lobes. These abscess-like nodules are delimited by a thick capsule of connective tissue (Figure 33.2) and may be associated with areas of adhesive fibrous pleurisy. In many cases the lung lesion resolves, and only a residual focus of adhesive fibrous pleurisy remains. A high prevalence of chronic pleuritis at slaughter is very suggestive of pleuropneumonia.

In the early stages of the disease, the histopathologic changes are characterized by necrosis, hemorrhage, neutrophil infiltration, macrophage and platelet activation, vascular thrombosis, widespread edema, and fibrinous exudate (Bertram 1985, 1986, 1990; Liggett and Harrison 1987). Following the acute response, macrophage infiltration, marked fibrosis around areas of
necrosis, and fibrous pleuritis are characteristic (Häni et al. 1973).

**DIAGNOSIS**

Pleuropneumonia may be suspected clinically in acute outbreaks. In such cases the presence of characteristic lung lesions with pleurisy at postmortem examination enhances suspicion, which is enforced by the histological appearance of the lesions. The presence of an acute exudative pneumonia with areas of necrosis surrounded by palisades and whorls of neutrophil debris provides further evidence for pleuropneumonia. In chronic infections the necropsy findings of firm, well-demarcated abscesses associated with pleurisy and pericarditis are very suggestive. In view of the importance of this disease to herd health control programs and the potential for economic loss, bacteriologic confirmation of the diagnosis should be carried out. Hog cholera, erysipelas, and streptococcal infections must be considered in the possible differential diagnosis of peracute and acute cases. Lung lesions caused by other porcine actinobacilli may be indistinguishable from those of pleuropneumonia, and acute pasteurellosis may sometimes resemble pleuropneumonia.

It is relatively easy to demonstrate the etiologic agent in pneumonic lesions from freshly dead animals. Gram-stained smears of lung lesions contain numerous gram-negative cocccobacilli. Primary isolation of *A. pleuropneumoniae* from tissues and secretions may be carried out on 5% sheep blood agar with a cross-streak of *Staphylococcus epidermidis* or *S. aureus*. After aerobic incubation overnight, small colonies appear in the neighborhood of the streak (NAD requirement) surrounded by a clear zone of complete hemolysis. This allows a rapid presumptive bacteriologic diagnosis. For some serotypes (such as serotypes 7 and 12), the zone of hemolysis is usually less intense. Altered blood agars (“chocolate agar”) allow the growth of the organism, but it is less distinctive on these media. Presumptive biochemical identification can be carried out by demonstrating the CAMP phenomenon and urease activity. Usually, serotyping will confirm the identity of *A. pleuropneumoniae*. When biochemically atypical isolates are recovered (for example, urease negative isolates) or when the isolates are untypable, it is recommended to carry out a PCR test (see below). Biotype II isolates (NAD-independent) have been recovered more frequently in the last years (Gambade and Morvan 2001; Gottschalk et al. 2003; Maldonado et al. 2004). These isolates might be misidentified as *A. suis*; in these cases, a complete biochemical identification must be done before sending the isolate for serotyping. In fact, *A. suis* isolates present strong cross-reactions with sera against serotypes 3, 6, and 8 of *A. pleuropneumoniae* (unpublished observations). It is strongly recommended to perform a PCR test to confirm the identity of biotype II isolates of *A. pleuropneumoniae*.

The serotyping of isolates is recommended for rapid confirmation of the bacteriologic diagnosis of typical *A. pleuropneumoniae* isolates and is essential when vaccination policy is being considered. It demonstrates the local distribution of serotypes and allows the epidemiologic situation to be evaluated and the performance of specific serologic tests to be monitored. Serotyping can be routinely achieved by slide agglutination from a subculture on a medium enriched with serum (Mittal et al. 1987), unless nonspecific cross-reactions are usually observed (unpublished observations). The coagglutination test (Mittal et al. 1987) is routinely used, but many isolates react with different sera (due to common epitopes) and a confirmatory test, such as agar gel diffusion and indirect hemagglutination (Mittal et al. 1987) is needed. A critical evaluation of the earlier serotyping methods is given by Lida et al. (1990). The use of monoclonal antibodies for serotyping has also been reported (Rodriguez-Barbosa et al. 1995; Lacouture et al. 1997; Lebrun et al. 1998; Maldonado et al. 1999; Gambade et al. 2000). A critical evaluation of the earlier serotyping methods is given by Lida et al. (1990). The use of monoclonal antibodies for serotyping has also been reported (Rodriguez-Barbosa et al. 1995; Lacouture et al. 1997; Lebrun et al. 1998; Maldonado et al. 1999; Gambade et al. 2000).
from swine tonsils. At first they were compared regard-
PCR tests for their abilities to detect
ready-to-use PCR kit has even been commercialized.
 genome have been described as valuable tools for the
amplify well-defined sequences of the
within the last years, several PCR techniques that am-
Nucleic acid from bacteria may be detected by a number
of methods, including labeled DNA probes in tissue and
dimerase chain reaction (PCR). Direct confirmation
by PCR of the presence of A. pleuropneumoniae in lung
tissue is not yet routine.
The detection of A. pleuropneumoniae from clinically
healthy carrier animals (in subclinically infected herds)
is even more complex. Bacteria are usually localized in
tonsils and, less frequently, in the nasal cavities.
Selective media have been described (Sidibe et al. 1993;
Jacobsen and Nielsen 1995), although their sensitivity is
very low. In fact, the swine nasal cavities and tonsils are
heavily colonized with several NAD-dependent bacterial
species, many of them being members of the com-
mensal flora, such as Actinobacillus minor, Actinobacillus
porcinus, and Actinobacillus indolicus (Moeller et al. 1996;
Kiellin et al. 2001). Their identity as well as their role
as pathogens is controversial (Kiellin et al. 2001;
Gottschalk et al. 2003). Although most of these bacterial
species probably do not play any significant role as
swine pathogens, they may interfere with the culture
and identification of A. pleuropneumoniae. A bacterial
species which is biochemically and antigenically very
similar to A. pleuropneumoniae has recently been de-
scribed (Gottschalk et al. 2003). To overcome the pre-
ence of a highly contaminating flora, an immunomag-
netic separation technique for the selective isolation of
a given serotype of A. pleuropneumoniae from tonsils has
been developed (Gagné et al. 1998). The sensitivity of
this technique is a thousandfold higher than direct cul-
ture. Molecular techniques can also be used for the de-
tection of A. pleuropneumoniae from tonsils. In fact,
within the last years, several PCR techniques that am-
plify well-defined sequences of the A. pleuropneumoniae
genoome have been described as valuable tools for the
rapid and affordable detection of the pathogen, and a
ready-to-use PCR kit has even been commercialized.
Recently, Fittipaldi et al. (2003) have evaluated eight
PCR tests for their abilities to detect A. pleuropneumoniae
from swine tonsils. At first they were compared regard-
"ing their specificities by using A. pleuropneumoniae and
related bacterial species and their analytical sensitivities
by using tonsils experimentally infected in vitro. PCRs
were carried out both directly with tonsil homogenates
(direct PCR) and after culture of the sample (post-
culture PCR). Most tests demonstrated good specifici-
ties; however, some tests gave false-positive results with
some non-A. pleuropneumoniae species. High degrees of
variation in the analytical sensitivities among the tests
were observed for the direct PCRs (10^9 to 10^2 CFU/g of
tonsil), whereas those of most of the post-culture PCRs
were similar (10^2 CFU/g of tonsil) (Fittipaldi et al. 2003).
When some of these techniques were validated in the
field, it was shown that the PCR was more sensitive than
the standard isolation method with whole tonsils from
three infected herds. Post-culture PCR offered the high-
est degree of sensitivity and the detection rate was
higher with whole tonsils than with tonsil biopsy speci-
mens. Most of these tests are specific for the species A.
pleuropneumoniae and they cannot differentiate among
serotypes; since most conventional herds are infected
with several low pathogenic serotypes, a positive result
is difficult to interpret. To overcome this problem,
serotype-specific PCR tests have more recently been de-
scribed (Jessing et al. 2003; Angen and Jessing 2004;
Hussy et al. 2004).

Serological testing has been used widely for the con-
rol of swine pleuropneumonia, to replace the fastidious
task of detecting individual carrier animals. In fact,
serology is the most powerful tool to diagnose subclini-
cal infections due to A. pleuropneumoniae. Some coun-
tries, such as Canada and Denmark, use serology for the
epidemiological surveillance of different herds on a rou-
tine basis. Different assays directed to the detection of
antibodies against either the toxins or somatic and/or
capsular antigens have been developed (for more details,
see Dubreuil et al. 2000). Most tests detecting antibodies
against ApxI, ApxII, and ApxIII toxins have low speci-
ficity, since other microorganisms such as A. suis can
also produce similar toxins (Dubreuil et al. 2000;
Nielsen et al. 2000). An ELISA test detecting antibodies
against the ApxIV toxin has recently been reported
(Dreyfus et al. 2004). This test would be highly specific
for A. pleuropneumoniae, but it cannot differentiate
among serotypes. Indeed, most conventional herds
would probably present high levels of antibodies and its
use as a diagnostic tool would be questionable.
Although some ELISA tests based on CPS have been re-
ported, some cross-reactions (probably due to antigen
contamination during the purification process) were
observed (Dubreuil et al. 2000). The tests most com-
monly used are ELISA tests using O-chain LPS as anti-
gens (Gottschalk et al. 1994; Dubreuil et al. 2000;
Klausen et al. 2002; Grondahl-Hansen et al. 2003).
These ELISA tests can identify groups of serotypes as fol-
ows: 1, 9, and 11; 2, 3, 6, and 8; 4 and 7; 10; and 12. LPS
antigens are also used in blocking ELISA tests using
clonal antibodies (Andresen et al. 2002). Serological
tests such as the complement fixation test and the 2-
mercaptoethanol test are no longer used due to prob-
lems of sensitivity and specificity, respectively (Dubreuil et al. 2000).

**TREATMENT**

In general, *A. pleuropneumoniae* is susceptible in vitro to penicillin, ampicillin, cephalexin, chloramphenicol, colistin, sulfonamide, cotrimoxazole (trimethoprim + sulfamethoxazole), and gentamicin, to which it has low minimum inhibitory concentrations (MIC). High MIC values are found for streptomycin, kanamycin, spectinomycin, spiramycin, and lincomycin (Gilbride and Williams 1990) and a combination of lincomycin and spiroplasmas are considered to be most active. Quinolone derivatives (enrofloxacin) (Kobisch et al. 1990) or the semisynthetic cephalexin cefotaur sodium (Stephano et al. 1990) have been shown to be particularly effective after experimental challenge. Satisfactory results in the field have been reported with tiampulin (Anderson and Williams 1990) and a combination of lincomycin and spectinomycin (Hsu 1990). Tilmicosin has also been reported as effective (Paradis et al. 2004). The determination of an antibiogram is recommended where problems are being experienced with treatment.

Antibiotic therapy is effective in clinically affected animals only in the initial phase of the disease, when it can reduce mortality. The nature of the lesions means that delay in treatment can result in a degree of infarction and chronic damage which will leave the animal as a respiratory cripple even if it recovers. Antibiotics should be given parenterally (subcutaneously or intra-muscularly) and in high dosage, because affected animals may not eat or drink (Pijpers et al. 1990). To ensure effective and durable blood concentrations, repeated injections may be required, depending on the pharmacokinetic properties of the antibiotic used. The success of therapy depends mainly on early detection of clinical signs and on rapid therapeutic intervention. Water treatment may be used to treat members of the affected group that are still able to drink. Feed medicated with any of the above antimicrobials may be used successfully if all pigs have a normal food and water intake. Feed and water medication can be used for the strategic treatment of infected groups on entry to an airspace. A combination of parenteral and peroral medication in a recent outbreak often yields the best results. In spite of apparent clinical success, it must be remembered that antibiotic therapy does not eliminate infection in a herd. Chronic infections in lung abscesses or on the tonsils of carriers persist to form an important source of infection for other animals. Severely affected animals may not recover even after treatment and nursing and should be killed.

**PREVENTION**

Prevention and control of pleuropneumonia may be accomplished in a number of different ways. Farms free from the disease and infection should maintain a policy of isolation coupled with the use of semen or embryos to introduce new genes. As mentioned, there are good serological tools to monitor herds from where replacement animals are introduced. There are many SPF herds that are free of all serotypes of *A. pleuropneumoniae*. It may be appropriate to hold replacements in quarantine prior to introduction to the herd.

After the infection has been established on a farm, it is difficult to eliminate the infectious agent, although the herd may become clinically normal. Control programs must take account of the epidemiologic features of pleuropneumonia. The first priority must be to control economic loss (mortality, clinical and subclinical disease) and then to consider the control or elimination of infection. Mortality can be controlled by the treatment of cases and of infected groups using the methods and antimicrobials outlined above. Disease may be treated at an early stage by treating groups of animals into clean airspaces and then maintaining them as a group in isolation until slaughter. Where this may not be possible, control of environmental factors such as temperature and ventilation and use of solid partitions between pens may minimize the development and severity of disease. Continuous medication or pulse dosing may be practiced, but neither should be used for long, and the antimicrobial sensitivity of the organism should be monitored continuously. Strategic medication should be targeted at periods of risk, which can be identified by routine postmortem examinations, clinical examinations, and herd antibody profiles. The generalized methods used to control respiratory disease, such as the all-in/all-out system in fattening units, segregated early weaning, and large airspaces with separation, will all considerably reduce the risk of infection. Animals should be brought in only from herds free from infection to avoid introducing new serotypes or new antimicrobial resistances. In chronically infected herds, purchased seronegative animals should be vaccinated before introduction to the herd.

A wide range of vaccines has been developed for this disease. They fall into two main groups: the killed organisms and the subunit vaccines. Vaccination with killed organisms is serotype specific (Nielsen 1984), with
possible cross-immunity with cross-reacting serotypes (Nielsen 1984, 1985a). The protection afforded has been extended by including all the serotypes present in an area (e.g., 3, 6, and 8 in the United Kingdom). The type of adjuvant used may affect efficacy, and care may also be necessary before using certain adjuvants in pigs intended for human consumption, because some vaccines can produce undesirable granulomatous lesions at the site of injection (Straw et al. 1985). Recently, a new generation subunit vaccine, composed of the three major RTX exotoxins (ApxI, ApxII, and ApxIII) and a 42 kDa outer membrane protein of A. pleuropneumoniae, has been developed and shown to give high protection against all 12 major serotypes (serotypes 1–12) under experimental conditions as well as in field trials (van den Bosch and Frey 2003). Keeping in mind the very complex pathogenesis of porcine pleuropneumonia, inclusion of other bacterial virulence factors in vaccines might also be of value (Haesebrouck et al. 2004). A vaccine containing both Apx toxins and transferrin binding proteins induced better protection against severe challenge than a vaccine solely based on Apx toxins (van Overbeke et al. 2001). A wide range of antigens administered either by parenteral, aerosol, or oral routes have been found to be experimentally protective, but none of them have been used in the field. A live vaccine, based on the use of a nonencapsulated mutant (Inzana et al. 1993), has been commercialized in the United States in the last years.

Vaccines may provide high levels of protection against morbidity in experiments, reduce mortality, reduce the number of treatments required, increase daily liveweight gain, and improve feed conversion efficiency. The quality of the carcass is also improved, with fewer condemnations for pneumonia and lower slaughtering costs through reductions in pleurisy and pericarditis. The decision to vaccinate should be carefully evaluated; the costs of mortality alone should not be the sole consideration, because the other effects on productivity listed above contribute to the benefits of vaccination.

Control of pleuropneumonia on a farm can be accomplished by combining treatment, vaccination, and husbandry practices such as those outlined above. Disinfection should be included in any control program; the organism is sensitive to a wide range of commonly used disinfectants (Gutierrez et al. 1995).

Control of pleuropneumonia in a region or breeding pyramid involves health schemes aimed at pleuropneumonia-free breeding and multiplying herds, serologic monitoring, monitoring at slaughter and postmortem examination of casualties, control of management, and controlled pig traffic (serologic testing, quarantine). For herds infected with A. pleuropneumoniae intending to join such a scheme, an eradication program is the method of choice but requires careful evaluation of the economic consequences. Depopulation and restocking with pigs originating from certified pleuropneumonia-free herds can be used; however, this method is expensive and may lead to the loss of important bloodlines. Other methods that have succeeded in the past include an eradication program in the existing herd area but weaning at another farm, at the same time supported by a program of vaccination, medication, and culling and repopulation with disease-free gilts (Larsen et al. 1990). Age of weaning and level of maternal antibodies may have an important influence on the colonization of piglets by A. pleuropneumoniae (Vigre et al. 2002). There are several herds that successfully eradicated A. pleuropneumoniae using a good medicated early weaning program (M. Gottschalk, unpublished observations). Breeding herds with a relatively low percentage of seropositive animals (up to 30%) have used the “test-and-removal” of seropositive animals under medication (Nielsen et al. 1976). There are different methodologies, but basically the principle is based on the serologic testing of sows shortly before farrowing and by weaning the piglets at 2 weeks of age under strict separation from the potentially infected stock. These piglets, which are seronegative up to the age of 12 weeks, serve to restock the herd. Seropositive sows are systematically eliminated until the entire breeding stock is seronegative. This program can take 6–12 months. During the elimination procedure, the whole herd is protected from re-infection by medicated feed—for example, cotrimoxazole (trimethoprim + sulfamethoxazole 1:20, 250 mg/kg feed). Certain reports suggest that only partial success (Lariviere et al. 1990) or even failure (Hunnemann 1986) has resulted from the application of such eradication programs. In addition, the successful outcome of this method is principally based on the serologic test used: a test with low sensitivity will not eliminate all carrier sows, and a test with low specificity will eliminate healthy noncarrier animals, which considerably increases the cost of the program. A successful elimination of certain serotypes A. pleuropneumoniae with partial depopulation and tilmicosin has been suggested (Andersen and Gram 2004). However, it has also been demonstrated that tilmicosin treatment cannot completely eliminate the pathogen from carrier animals (Klopfenstein et al. 2004).

REFERENCES


Molecular and experimental studies of model to studies in vivo the antibacterial activity of *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* and *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* in combination with *Pasteurella multocida*. Proc Int Congr Pig Vet Soc 11:16.

Molecular and experimental studies of model to studies in vivo the antibacterial activity of *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* and *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* in combination with *Pasteurella multocida*. Proc Int Congr Pig Vet Soc 11:16.


A disease condition in pigs referred to as “atrophic rhinitis” (or “infectious atrophic rhinitis”) and “chronic atrophic rhinitis” has been recognized for nearly two centuries. A disease of the pig characterized by stunted development or total disappearance of the nasal turbinates (called “turbinate atrophy”) has been recognized for over 160 years and was first described as “Schnüffelkrankheit” in Germany (Franque 1830), where it became prevalent in several areas.

These conditions are now classified as either nonprogressive atrophic rhinitis (NPAR), caused by toxigenic *Bordetella bronchiseptica*, or progressive atrophic rhinitis (PAR), caused by toxigenic *Pasteurella multocida*, alone or in combination with other agents (e.g., *B. bronchiseptica*). The characteristic lesion caused by both agents is a hypoplasia of the nasal turbinate bones (conchal atrophy); in moderate to severe outbreaks this is accompanied by degrees of facial distortion (including brachyg-nathia superior, lateral deviation of the snout, and septum deviation) and nasal hemorrhage as a result of frequent sneezing. Nasal hemorrhage is rare in NPAR but characteristic in PAR.

In contrast to NPAR, PAR is of global economic significance to swine production, since in PAR, these signs are accompanied by poor growth of fattening pigs (Pedersen and Barfod 1981). Toxigenic *P. multocida* is still spreading in the pig population, especially where disease control measurements are carried out ineffectively (Glattleider et al. 1996; Frymus et al. 1996). The PAR toxigenic *P. multocida* is also able to cause disease in other species, such as rabbits, goats, sheep, cattle, poultry, and turkeys. Even humans can become infected, and lesions somewhat comparable to those in swine can result. Poultry, sheep, and cattle, along with rats, cats, and dogs, are described as carriers (Avril et al. 1990; Donnio et al. 1991; Nielsen and Frederiksen 1990). Toxigenic *P. multocida* should therefore be considered a zoonosis and should be of concern to governmental and human and veterinary health organizations.

Toxigenic *B. bronchiseptica* is widespread in swine production and considered to cause a minor or insignificant growth depression in diseased pigs and is therefore called nonprogressive atrophic rhinitis.

The individual and combined importance of both agents will be discussed in this chapter.

The precise etiology of the “condition” atrophic rhinitis (AR) has been actively debated, with intermittent attempts at definition, for well over a century. Since the 1930s, observations by Ratke (1938), Thunberg and Carlstrom (1940), and Philips (1946) have implied that the disease was contagious. Shortly thereafter it was demonstrated experimentally that turbinate atrophy was transmissible between pigs; when young pigs were inoculated intranasally with crude material from atrophic turbinates, they frequently developed turbinate atrophy (Jones 1947; MacNabb 1948; Philips et al. 1948; Gwatkin et al. 1949, 1951; Terpstra and Akkermans 1960). Much research has since been directed toward defining the precise microbiological agent(s) responsible. While several management and husbandry factors can influence the severity and clinical expression of PAR, this disease is now established primarily as an infectious disease despite attempts at one time to redefine it as a disorder fundamentally of nutritional origin (Brown et al. 1966).

In 1956 Switzer suggested that turbinate atrophy may be caused by several agents, including trichomonads (Switzer 1951), filter-passing agents (Switzer 1953), viruses (Switzer and L’Ecuyer 1960; Edington et al. 1976), and mycoplasmas (Switzer 1955; Edington et al. 1976; Gois et al. 1977). Only special AR-toxigenic strains of *B. bronchiseptica* and AR-toxigenic strains of *P. multocida* have consistently produced “turbinate atrophy” when sufficient quantities of pure (broth) cultures have been inoculated intranasally into young susceptible (e.g., colostrum-deprived specific pathogen free [SPF]) pigs. Despite these observations, however, clinical (and pathological) disease cannot be attributed solely to infection with either one or both agents, since these infections can occur in the field in the (temporary) absence of clinical disease (the so-called subclinical stage of PAR). Interruptions between
periods of clinical disease that can vary in duration from approximately 2 months to about 2 years can occur in infected herds. Herd monitoring based on clinical (and/or pathological) features, therefore, cannot guarantee the absence of infectious PAR in a pig herd. Complementary monitoring of a herd or connected (breeding) herds for over 1 year, based on bacteriologic and/or serologic detection of the PAR-toxigenic P. multocida, may be necessary to obtain sufficient information concerning the PAR-infected or PAR-free status of the herd.

**DEFINITION**

At this point it is important to define carefully the conditions described in this chapter. All diseases that cause turbinate atrophy in swine are called infectious atrophic rhinitis by farmers. The term “infectious progressive atrophic rhinitis” should be reserved for the disease produced by one etiologic agent, P. multocida. Pedersen and Nielsen (1983) first recommended the use of this term as a result of the deliberations of a European Economic Community commission of specialists on PAR. To obtain a consensus in a worldwide forum, the proposal was repeated by Pedersen and coworkers in 1988. The first agreement among specialists in swine diseases from Europe, North and South America, and Asia was achieved in 1988 (de Jong and Nielsen 1990). It was agreed to define PAR as a disease caused by infection with toxigenic P. multocida. In herds where suspicious manifestations such as sneezing, nose bleeding, snout deformation, growth retardation, turbinate atrophy, and septum deviation are observed and where toxigenic P. multocida is detected (bacteriologically or serologically), the diagnosis of PAR can be confirmed. However, the disease may also develop in or be transmitted by pigs from herds harboring toxigenic P. multocida even though only slight or subclinical disease is present. The advantage of an etiologic definition of PAR rests on the possibility of identifying, independently of actual clinical status, those herds that are able to transmit or develop the severe clinical disease (Bluhwain 1988).

Estimates of the economic impact of PAR in swine have varied, but in moderate to severe outbreaks it can be of considerable economic importance (Pedersen and Nielsen 1983; Glattleider et al. 1996). From the clinical and pathological points of view, it is probably no longer useful to employ the term “atrophic rhinitis” as denoting a single disease complex. Rather, bordetellosis and toxigenic pasteurellosis should be distinguished as NPAR and PAR. The infectious agents have completely different economic impacts in swine production and require different methods and strategies for prevention and treatment.

**ETIOLOGY**

Research suggests that toxigenic strains of both B. bronchiseptica and P. multocida are the primary infectious etiologic factors in NPAR and PAR, respectively. The severity of the disease that develops in a pig is related to the amount of one or of both toxins absorbed by the animal (Van Diemen et al. 1994a). The susceptibility of pigs to a certain amount of toxin that causes turbinate bone reduction has been shown to be age related. Toxigenic strains of P. multocida have been shown to produce severe PAR, including extreme growth retardation, even in pigs older than 3 months of age; toxigenic strains of B. bronchiseptica produce turbinate hypoplasia only in pigs until about the age of 6 weeks.

The conditions for the growth and/or colonization of P. multocida or B. bronchiseptica necessary to produce sufficient amounts of toxin are influenced by bacteriologic and/or virologic damage to the mucosa and by certain environmental, management, and husbandry factors that create the (multifactorial) disease complex. When these factors are all present, very severe clinical PAR can result. Since growth retardation and clinical PAR also occur after parenteral dosing with the toxin of P. multocida, colonization of toxigenic P. multocida in the nose may not be necessary for the development of the disease. Tonsils and lungs also have to be considered as locations for toxin production (Ackermann et al. 1994).

**Infectious Agents**

*Bordetella Bronchiseptica*. B. bronchiseptica is a small, motile, gram-negative rod or cocccobacillus measuring approximately 1.0 × 0.3 µm in size. The bacterium is aerobic, does not ferment carbohydrates, utilizes citrate, and splits urea.

*B. bronchiseptica* has been isolated widely from young pigs with rhinitis and from pigs with pneumonia and also from animals in herds showing no clinical signs of respiratory disease. It is also a pathogen or potential pathogen of many other mammals, including dogs, cats, and rats.

In the United States during the 1960s, *B. bronchiseptica* was said to be the principal cause of atrophic rhinitis (Switzer and Farrington 1975). After intranasal instillation of pure cultures of *B. bronchiseptica* in colostrum-deprived pigs a few days old, Cross and Claflin (1962) were able to produce typical experimental turbinate atrophy. This work was repeated by Ross et al. (1967), who were able to reproduce turbinate atrophy with pure cultures of AR-toxigenic *B. bronchiseptica* in 95% of pigs inoculated at 1–3 days of age but in only 66% of 4-week-old pigs. Brassinne et al. (1976) reported that only high numbers of AR-toxigenic *B. bronchiseptica* caused turbinate lesions. A toxigenic strain that caused 100% turbinate atrophy in 3-week-old colostrum-deprived SPF pigs did not cause typical atrophy when intranasally instilled during 4 successive days in 6-week-old pigs (de Jong and Akkermans 1986). This indicated that between 3 and 6 weeks of age, the sensitivity to a heavy infection with an AR-toxigenic *B. bronchiseptica* strain dropped...
drastically. Duncan et al. (1966a) had already stated that experimental infections with *B. bronchiseptica* did not cause severe progressive lesions. Pearce and Roe (1966) were unsuccessful in producing turbinate atrophy with cultures of *B. bronchiseptica* in naturally farrowed pigs but were able to produce the lesions when the culture was inoculated into colostrum-deprived pigs. This indicated protection against AR lesions by colostral immunity.

Bacteriologic data from nasal swabs taken from pigs at different ages suggested that *B. bronchiseptica* infection starts to build up in conventional herds with and without clinical signs of PAR in the third week of age, when the nasal sensitivity for toxigenic *B. bronchiseptica* has already started to decrease (Pedersen and Nielsen 1983; de Jong 1985). This meant that, under natural (conventional) conditions, the influence of *B. bronchiseptica* as a primary cause of PAR has been overestimated. Turbinate atrophy can occur in 2- to 3-month-old piglets in exceptional circumstances, such as after a primary *B. bronchiseptica* infection in SPF herds (Schöss 1982) and after experimental infections in piglets free from antibodies. Partial or total regeneration of such atrophy has been described and such infections seem to result in only a limited and low percentage of transient clinical snout deviations; animals with lesions caused by *B. bronchiseptica* did not develop significant growth depression (Pedersen and Barfod 1982).

Nearly all *B. bronchiseptica* strains from pigs produced the thermolabile AR toxin. *B. bronchiseptica* can also affect the lower respiratory system, and toxin production from such regions may have some influence on clinical symptoms of NPAR.

Variations in virulence among porcine *B. bronchiseptica* strains are known to exist. Collings and Rutter (1985) determined that only those strains in phase 1 and isolated from pigs caused turbinate atrophy, and they established that the ability to both colonize the nasal cavity in large numbers and produce a cytotoxin were important virulence determinants. The role of the cytotoxin was clearly established by Magyar et al. (1988), who also examined the role of several other putative virulence determinants, including a hemolysin, adenylate cyclase, and an adhesin. By comparing the pathogenic effects of a porcine cytotoxic phase 1 strain with a non-cytotoxic phase 1 strain also of porcine origin, they established that it is the cytotoxin (which is probably the same as the mouse lethal factor and dermonecrotic toxin) that is the key virulence determinant in the production of turbinate hypoplasia.

In a comparison of three biological assays for the detection of toxigenic properties of *B. bronchiseptica*, discrepancies were found between the guinea pig skin test, the mouse spleen atrophy assay, and the suckling mice mortality assay (Mendoza 1993), suggesting that differences exist between these toxigenic properties.

Discrepancies in the results of studies obtained in different countries could arise from variation in virulence or the amount of toxin produced by the organism concerned. This has been reported for isolates of *B. bronchiseptica* in the United States (Ross et al. 1967; Skelly et al. 1980), Canada (Mininats and Johnson 1980), the United Kingdom (Collings 1983), and Hungary (Elias et al. 1982). However, even the most virulent of 10 U.K. isolates did not cause progressive turbinate atrophy or significant snout deformation in experimental infections (Rutter and Rojas 1982). More important, strains isolated from herds with or without progressive disease in the United Kingdom all caused nonprogressive lesions of similar severity (Rutter and Rojas 1982; Giles and Smith 1983). From observations in this laboratory, it appeared that strains isolated in PAR-diseased herds and in herds not suspected of PAR produced roughly the same amount of toxin. Only a few strains differed from this pattern (de Jong and Akkermans 1986). Thus, there is strong evidence, contrary to the opinions of Kielstein (1983) and Nakai et al. (1986), that although there are differences in the virulence of isolates of *B. bronchiseptica*, the severe lesions of clinical PAR cannot be attributed only to this organism. Pigs infected with *B. bronchiseptica* in the deeper respiratory system may be more sensitive to other pulmonary infections. This means that *B. bronchiseptica* infections should not be neglected as a respiratory pathogen.

**Pasteurella Multocida.** *P. multocida* is a nonmotile, gram-negative rod or coccobacillus approximately 0.3 x 0.6 µm in size. The bacterium is aerobic, ferments glucose without gas, and produces indole. In fresh smears the organism shows distinct bipolar staining. The colonies of *P. multocida* type A are larger and more mucoid than those of type D. On blood agar plates a characteristic odor is generally produced.

*P. multocida* and its subspecies have been isolated widely from pigs with and without clinical symptoms of rhinitis or pneumonia. Early studies (reviewed by Gwatkin 1959) established that *P. multocida* could experimentally produce turbinate atrophy in pigs and rabbits and that it was frequently but not always isolated from field outbreaks.

Several workers subsequently examined the ability of this organism to produce turbinate atrophy under controlled experimental conditions. Some strains studied produced a mild rhinitis but were unable to induce marked turbinate hypoplasia (Harris and Switzer 1968; Smith 1971; Koshimizu et al. 1973; Nakagawa et al. 1974; Edington et al. 1976), whereas in other studies, particularly from Europe, cultures of *P. multocida* produced nasal deformity and turbinate atrophy (Dirks et al. 1973) and even severe PAR (Nielsen et al. 1976). In Germany and in the Netherlands particularly, *P. multocida* was considered to be an important primary pathogen in PAR (Dirks et al. 1973). Medication and vaccination with bordetella vaccines in PAR herds reduced *B. bronchiseptica*
successfully but failed to affect PAR. In these herds P. multocida was found to be the major pathogen. Reducing P. multocida in these herds decreased PAR (de Jong 1976–1979, 1980).

A major step in resolving these conflicting opinions began in the Netherlands when de Jong (1976–1979) and de Jong et al. (1980) began to test different P. multocida strains isolated from herds with and without PAR in colostrum-deprived SPF piglets, as described earlier by Ross et al. (1967) for B. bronchiseptica.

P. multocida grows in a semifluid mucus on the mucosal membrane of the nose rather than on the nasal epithelium itself, so studies were redirected from cultures washed off solid medium and resuspended to broth cultures. These broth cultures contained substances excreted by the bacteria. After this change it was easy to reproduce AR lesions with the same strain in 3-week-old pigs (or older) instead of in 3-day-old pigs.

Martineau et al. (1982) showed the importance of using broth cultures instead of cultures washed from solid media, and explained that this could be a possible reason for the different findings of investigators (Nakai et al. 1986). Pure cultures of both dermonecrotic and nondermonecrotic type D and type A isolates of P. multocida establish themselves poorly in the nasal cavity of healthy conventional (Voets 1990), SPF (de Jong 1985), and gnotobiotic piglets (Rutter and Rojas 1982; Rutter 1983). Nasal instillations of pure broth cultures of toxigenic P. multocida needed to be repeated for approximately 4 days to produce a severe P. multocida nasal infection that resulted in PAR. Uninoculated pigs kept in contact with inoculated pigs became infected, but only mild lesions were noticed 4 weeks later. Sneezing was sporadic in these experiments with gnotobiotic and SPF pigs. In contrast, experimental infection with toxigenic P. multocida in conventional pigs pretreated with chemical irritants or with B. bronchiseptica resulted in sneezing, and PAR lesions also occurred in pigs in contact. The strains that caused PAR lesions were called AR pathogenic. This characteristic correlated with the ability to produce a thermolabile toxin. PAR could be reproduced completely with bacteria-free filtrates of these unheated toxins.

Nasal infection by aerosol with 0.5 mL 5 and 13 µg toxin/mL per nostril in 4-week-old piglets induced subclinical ventral turbinate hypoplasia (atrophy). Amounts of 40 µg/mL induced severe lesions. During the 5-week period after challenge, depression of weight gain started in week 3 after challenge. In the 5, 13, 20, and 40 µg/mL groups, the growth depressions during this period were 32, 54, 52, and 96 grams/day/pig, respectively (Van Diemen et al. 1994a). The severity of atrophy depended on the amount of toxin administered into the nose of the pig.

The first publication explaining the role of toxigenic P. multocida in AR was by Ilina and Zasukhin (1975) in Russia and it encouraged the development of tests for selecting toxigenic P. multocida isolates. Instead of using a rabbit test, the guinea pig skin test was chosen because it also selected AR-pathogenic B. bronchiseptica strains (de Jong 1980; Blobel and Schliesser 1981; de Jong and Akkermans 1986). Differences between infections with toxigenic B. bronchiseptica and toxigenic P. multocida strains were revealed when pure broth cultures were instilled intranasally in groups of colostrum-deprived SPF pigs aged 3, 6, 9, 12, and 16 weeks. In pigs infected with B. bronchiseptica, macroscopic turbinate lesions were noticed only in 3- and 6-week-old pigs, not in pigs of 9 weeks and older. Toxigenic P. multocida still induced typical snout and turbinate alterations, including septal deviation, in pigs infected at 12 and at 16 weeks of age. The severity of nose lesions decreased with increasing age with the same dose of toxigenic P. multocida.

Other Factors

Despite the major role of infectious agents, other factors contribute to the cause or at least the clinical expression of AR, but they have proved difficult to evaluate and have been inadequately defined quantitatively. Most experienced clinicians have concluded that the severity of the disease is markedly influenced by extrinsic factors (Penny 1977; Goodwin 1980). Smith (1983) provided a useful review of these noninfectious determinants.

Nutrition. Although the role of the dietary calcium: phosphorus imbalance is now discounted as a primary cause (Brown et al. 1966), nutritional deficiency of any kind may enhance the severity of infectious disease. Feed consumption may be influenced by AR, since piglets with an acute rhinitis may accept feed less readily and become stunted and weak. Growing pigs with conchal damage may also have reduced feed intake, thus contributing to the reduced daily gain associated with the condition.

Genetic Influences. In the past it has been suggested that heredity played a major role, but heritability estimates have varied greatly, and attempts to control the disease solely by genetic selection have failed. There is probably a measure of genetically linked predisposition to AR, since breeds and strains that vary in susceptibility to the disease and are susceptible to genetic pressure do occur. In the United Kingdom, for example, Large White pigs are now generally considered more vulnerable than Landrace pigs, although 30 years ago the reverse could have been the case. The subject has been reviewed by Smith (1983), Voets et al. (1986a), and Martineau et al. (1988).

Management, Housing, and Environment. Severe growth-retarding AR is closely associated with intensive methods of production; it is undoubtedly most severe when successive batches of pigs are housed in densely stocked, continuously occupied, poorly ventilated
buildings (Smith and Giles 1980). Penny (1977) has identified several management factors that tend to predispose to an increased severity of AR (Table 34.1).

Instances have been observed where the disease was controlled, or at least reduced to economically acceptable levels, solely by the manipulation of housing and environment and improved management. It is also a common belief that the disease may be more severe in a dusty atmosphere, particularly where dry and dusty feed is delivered by automatic equipment. The influences of housing and feed, including the feed delivery system, on respiratory diseases of the pig have been reviewed by Owen (1982) and Strang (1982), respectively.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

*Bordetella bronchiseptica*

*B. bronchiseptica* is widely prevalent in the pig population in countries with major swine-producing industries. The prevalence of *B. bronchiseptica* infection greatly exceeds that of clinical AR or marked turbinate atrophy at slaughter (Cameron et al. 1980), and although *B. bronchiseptica* is frequently isolated from young pigs in outbreaks of AR, the infection also occurs widely in herds without the condition (Tornoe et al. 1976; Giles et al. 1980; Rutter 1981; Whittlestone 1982).

The dam has been considered a possible source of the important nasal infections for her suckling piglets, and she has been reliably incriminated as a source of *B. bronchiseptica* and *P. multocida*. Transmission also occurs between sows and boars. Although traditionally viewed as important, some observers have concluded that the sow’s role might be minor, since clinically NPAR-free progeny resulted when sows from an affected herd were reared under improved conditions (Bercovich 1978).

The degree of resistance to natural *B. bronchiseptica* infection among sows does not appear to be marked, but younger sows are more likely to be active shedders of the organism. Although infection from the dam is probably the chief method of initiating the infection among populations of suckling piglets, infection in weaner houses may often be endemic because of infection passing laterally between different batches, particularly in systems where an all-in/all-out approach is not practiced.

*B. bronchiseptica* is primarily introduced by the introduction of carrier pigs (in SPF herds); recently purchased breeding stock are often held responsible.

Whether or not the sow is important in transmission, the recognized infectious agents pass readily between populations of young weaned pigs. Infection of pigs at an early age may be vital, even when the clinical signs appear late in the fattening period.

The chief mode of transmission of *B. bronchiseptica* from pig to pig is by aerosol droplet infection. The high prevalence of infection among growing pigs suggests that transmission may occur at any age, but it is probably more common and more readily accomplished in susceptible young pigs, in which an active rhinitis with sneezing develops. The infection can certainly spread rapidly among populations of susceptible (nonimmune) piglets (Smith et al. 1982).

*B. bronchiseptica* colonizes the ciliated mucosa of the porcine respiratory tract very effectively; it is frequently isolated from the tonsils, and large numbers have been found in the intestinal contents of infected gnotobiotic pigs (Rutter 1985). Thus, direct-contact droplet infection, and perhaps ingestion of fecal material, are likely to be the main routes of transmission. The cycle of infection appears to be maintained by a small proportion of breeding females. Litters within the farrowing house become infected at an early age, but in the United Kingdom as well as in the Netherlands, the major spread seems to occur after 2–3 weeks of age or after weaning, especially in large groups on flat decks, when 70–80% of

---

**Table 34.1. Management factors influencing the severity of atrophic rhinitis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Increase/Decrease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Large herds, open herds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanding herds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High proportion of gilts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large farrowing unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple suckling—piglets fostered between litters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large weaner pools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large number in one airspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequent moving and mixing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensive systems indoors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High stocking density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor ventilation and no temperature control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor hygiene, little disinfection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continual pig throughput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry-feeding, dusty atmosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical food handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source: After Penny 1977.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 34.1. Management factors influencing the severity of atrophic rhinitis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Increase</th>
<th>Decrease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Large herds, open herds</td>
<td>Small herds, closed herds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanding herds</td>
<td>Static herd size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High proportion of gilts</td>
<td>Mainly old sows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large farrowing unit</td>
<td>Small or single farrowing unit (all-in/all-out)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple suckling—piglets fostered between litters</td>
<td>Single suckling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large weaner pools</td>
<td>More isolation, modular systems (all-in/all-out)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large number in one airspace</td>
<td>Small number in one airspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequent moving and mixing</td>
<td>Little movement and mixing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensive systems indoors</td>
<td>Outdoor rearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High stocking density</td>
<td>Low stocking density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor ventilation and no temperature control</td>
<td>Good ventilation and temperature control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor hygiene, little disinfection</td>
<td>Good hygiene and disinfection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continual pig throughput</td>
<td>Buildings rested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry-feeding, dusty atmosphere</td>
<td>Wet-feeding, clean atmosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical food handling</td>
<td>Hand delivery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: After Penny 1977.
a group can become infected. The infection persists for several months, with a gradual reduction in the intensity and rate of infection. The age at which animals first become infected with *B. bronchiseptica* has an important effect on the development of lesions. The most severe lesions occur in nonimmune animals infected during the first week of life (Duncan et al. 1966a). Animals infected at 4 weeks show less-severe lesions, while those infected at 9 weeks show virtually no lesions (de Jong and Akkermans 1986).

The amount and type of immunity also influence the epidemiology of bordetella infection. The presence of passive antibody in the sera of piglets born to naturally infected dams (with toxigenic bordetellae) appeared to provide protection against the development of turbinate lesions (Rutter 1981) but not against infection (Kobisch and Pennings 1989; Voets 1990). However, vaccination of sows appeared to delay infection in their piglets until 12–16 weeks of age compared to nonvaccinated herds, in which litters became infected by 2 weeks of age (Rutter et al. 1984).

*B. bronchiseptica* shedding from vaccinated sows seems to be reduced in herds in which the sow population has been vaccinated for some years.

*B. bronchiseptica* has been isolated from most domestic and wild animal species (Goodnow 1980), and because it is a ubiquitous pathogen, there is always the risk that infection could be introduced by nonporcine vectors. Most isolates from other species appear to be of low virulence in pigs, but it is possible that rodents might become infected with pig strains and transmit them. Virtually every pig herd is infected with *B. bronchiseptica*, and variable amounts of brachygnathia superior (BS), moderately severe turbinate atrophy, and moderate signs of septum deviation can be expected in all herds. For this to occur, pigs from nonimmune dams must become infected within the first 4 weeks of life and develop lesions that persist to slaughter, but in most, regeneration of turbinates begins approximately 4 weeks after the start of infection, when the scrolls are not totally damaged. Lesions such as septal deviation, turbinate bone hyperplasia, and BS may be apparent at slaughter. The percentage of pigs with a twisted snout generally does not reach 1%.

In the field, however, the picture is likely to be more complicated. For example, there are reports that *Haemophilus parasuis* in combined infections with type A strains of *P. multocida* can produce mild turbinate lesions (Gois et al. 1983a). Others could not repeat these results.

*B. bronchiseptica* is killed in 30 minutes at 56°C. It survives outside the body in dried droplets for up to 5 days on glass, 3 days on cloth, and a few hours on paper. The survival time of *B. bronchiseptica* in soil is about 6 weeks. Low humidity and raised temperatures rapidly reduce numbers of live bacteria. In liquid media *B. bronchiseptica* survived for more than 8 weeks at 21°C. In lake water and in phosphate buffered saline solution (PBS), *B. bronchiseptica* remained viable for at least 3 weeks (Porter et al. 1991). In a rotating aerosol chamber, the mean half-life at 21°C and 76% relative humidity was 118.8 minutes (Stehmann et al. 1992), and at 23°C and 75% relative humidity, it was 56.7 minutes (Müller et al. 1992). The organism is sensitive to common disinfectants (Stehmann et al. 1990).

**Pasteurella multocida**

The introduction of a disease and its subsequent spread within a population depend on numerous factors, including the nature of the etiologic agent, the host, and the structure of the population. In intensive pig rearing, many animals are in close contact and there is often widespread movement of breeding and replacement stock between herds. The main risks of introducing infection are associated with purchased pigs, and disease may then spread rapidly within a seronegative herd. Early reports that did not distinguish between PAR and NPAR clearly recognized that (P)AR was introduced by carrier pigs. The disease appeared in many Norwegian herds that had imported pigs, several of which eventually developed severe clinical signs. This led Braend and Flatla (1954) to conclude that “atrophic rhinitis was practically unknown in Norway prior to [World War II] after which it has been rather common, most certainly because of importation of pigs from Sweden where the disease is common.” It was, therefore, assumed that a new infectious organism had been imported. The disease was declared notifiable, and a slaughter policy was carried out. This strategy was also followed in other European countries, such as in the United Kingdom until 1959 and in the Netherlands until 1980. Similarly, the introduction of AR into the United Kingdom was attributed to the importation of Swedish stock (Anon. 1954). There are at least two possible explanations for these observations: either *B. bronchiseptica* was introduced in uninfected animals and exacerbated existing infections with toxigenic *P. multocida* or, more likely, toxigenic *P. multocida* was introduced with the imported stock.

Estimates of the prevalence of PAR, whether from an individual farm or larger population, are usually conducted by an examination of the heads of pigs after slaughter. Such surveys have indicated that macroscopic nasal turbinate atrophy is widespread in pig populations. It occurred in about 40% of Danish and British herds (Nielsen 1983) in the late 1970s, although a later estimate from England showed a decline to 25% (Cameron et al. 1980). Such a high level of turbinate atrophy, however, does not reflect an equivalent level of clinical disease, since mild lesions are common in commercial fattening pigs, and mild or even moderate atrophy in individuals may occur in herds without obvious clinical disease or adverse economic effects. Today it is believed that these lesions are caused by *B. bronchiseptica*. 
CHAPTER 34 PROGRESSIVE AND NONPROGRESSIVE ATROPHIC RHINITIS

P. multocida: farmers and their families, farmhands, drivers, merchants, vets, consultants, butchers, and employees of slaughterhouses. Wearing face masks will reduce the risk of becoming infected and spreading the infection.

The infectious agents are usually introduced into a previously unaffected herd by carrier pigs. Recently purchased breeding stock, gilts or boars, are commonly held responsible, although the evidence for their involvement is often circumstantial. The introduction of toxigenic strains of P. multocida is the principal event

(NPAR); growth retardation associated with more severe outbreaks has proved difficult to quantify, and some observers (Straw et al. 1983) have found no correlation between the degree of turbinate atrophy and production parameters and, in these herds, now consider atrophy to be attributable to the presence of B. bronchiseptica (NPAR). Nevertheless, where clinically apparent disease occurs, there is frequently a reduction in average daily gain; this has been conservatively estimated as 5–8% for pigs with severe atrophy (Nielsen 1983). In combination with pleurisy and pneumonia this reduction can double.

The epidemiology of P. multocida infection in pigs is less well understood than that of B. bronchiseptica. The organism colonizes the tonsils, but some factor or factors, the mechanisms of which are not understood, are needed to assist colonization of the nasal mucosa. Nontoxigenic and toxigenic type A strains can be isolated from the lungs of pigs with pneumonia (Baekbo 1988), but P. multocida is much less effective than B. bronchiseptica in colonizing the trachea. In contrast to type A strains, toxigenic and nontoxigenic type D strains are isolated less frequently in the lungs but more frequently in the nose. P. multocida has also been isolated from most animal species and is well recognized as an important pathogen in cattle, rabbits, poultry, and turkeys (Carter 1967). In some studies, its distribution in pig herds was limited; only 9% were infected in one report (Harris and Switzer 1969), but such results may be attributable to the presence of the commensal flora in the nasal cavity (Chanter and Rutter 1989). Today in most laboratories, selective media and the technique of mouse passage can be used for primary isolation of the organism. Material from herds examined in this way (Rutter 1985) has yielded toxigenic and nontoxigenic isolates of type A or D, and mixed infections with these two types in the same pig can occur.

In contrast, the distribution of toxigenic isolates of P. multocida appears to be limited to those herds with PAR or a history of the disease (Rutter 1985). In Germany, the Netherlands, and Denmark (Pedersen 1983), the picture is similar, indicating that the majority of herds infected with toxigenic P. multocida exhibit clinical signs of progressive disease. In the Netherlands, however, toxigenic P. multocida has been isolated from 15% of breeding herds with no history or clinical signs of progressive disease at the moment of the first detection of the toxigenic P. multocida. Most of these breeding herds were monitored and became clinically diseased within 2 years after this detection. Only 5% of pigs 4–12 weeks of age were infected in these herds. A few herds remain clinically unaffected for some years (de Jong 1983a; Goodwin et al. 1990), which indicates that toxigenic strains may be present in some clinically unaffected herds, and these could transmit progressive disease if infected stock were purchased from them.

The main source of P. multocida infection for young pigs appears to be pharyngeal transport of the organism among breeding stock; 10–15% of sows in farrowing houses were infected with toxigenic isolates (de Jong 1983b), and some piglets were already infected with these strains within a week after birth. Toxigenic P. multocida was also isolated from the vaginas of a few sows. The age at which piglets first become infected with P. multocida affects the severity of the lesions produced, but unlike B. bronchiseptica infection, older pigs may still develop lesions. Significant turbinate atrophy occurred in pigs infected with toxigenic P. multocida up to 16 weeks of age; Rutter et al. (1984) found that pigs that became naturally infected between 12 and 16 weeks of age had turbinate lesions. It has been shown that apparently healthy 3-month-old pigs can develop PAR when introduced into a commercial production unit where severe disease is occurring (Nielsen et al. 1976). Injection of P. multocida toxin (125 µg/kg) produced significant atrophy in conventional pigs of 10 weeks of age (Rutter 1985). With 13 µg/mL instilled nasally, a subclinical P. multocida could be achieved in 4-week-old piglets necropsied 5 weeks later. With 40 µg/mL, severe lesions were obtained in the trials (Van Diemen et al. 1994a).

The prevalence of toxigenic P. multocida may be related to the extent of clinical disease. The organism was isolated from 50% to 60% of young pigs sampled in a herd in which almost 30% of fattening pigs had twisted snouts. In less severely affected herds, larger numbers of young pigs had to be sampled before toxigenic strains were isolated (Rutter 1985; de Jong et al. 1988).

The distribution of toxigenic P. multocida in other species has still to be determined. Pedersen (1983), de Jong (1985), Rutter (1985), Baalsrud (1987), Ohkubo et al. (1987), Kamp et al. (1990), and Frymus et al. (1996) reported that dermonecrotic strains occurred in cattle, rabbits, dogs, cats, rats, poultry, goats, and sheep. A toxigenic strain from pasteurellosis in turkeys produced severe turbinate atrophy in gnotobiotic pigs, but a toxigenic strain thought to have been isolated from ovine pneumonia colonized the nasal cavity of pigs poorly and did not produce significant lesions in combined infection with B. bronchiseptica (Rutter 1983, 1985). Toxigenic strains were isolated from humans suffering from tonsillitis, rhinitis, sinusitis, pleuritis, appendicitis, and septicemia and were pathogenic for pigs (Nielsen and Frederiksen 1990; Donnio et al. 1991). This implies special risks for all persons who have contact with herds or animals infected with toxigenic P. multocida: farmers and their families, farmhands, drivers, merchants, vets, consultants, butchers, and employees of slaughterhouses.
preceding an outbreak. Poorly colonizing strains with a low toxin production may represent an exception (Kavanagh 1994). Infection from other sources is rare but seems to become more important if the spread of toxigenic *P. multocida* in pigs is not stopped. 

*P. multocida* is easily destroyed by 60°C in 10 minutes, by 0.5% phenol in 15 minutes, and by a 3.5% solution of cresol in a few minutes. In manure *P. multocida* remains infective for a month and in decomposing or frozen carcasses for 3 months. In a rotating aerosol chamber, the mean half-life was 20.85 minutes at 23°C and 75% relative humidity.

The organism is susceptible to commonly used disinfectants, including those of the following general categories: quaternary ammonium compounds, phenolics, sodium hypochlorite, iodophores, glutaraldehyde, and chlorhexidine.

Formalin at a concentration of 0.2% or greater and phenol at 0.5% will kill in less than 18 hours at 3°C. On stock culture agar *P. multocida* often survives for months or even years if kept at room temperature, but if stored in the refrigerator, the bacteria may die in several days. Their viability can be maintained for many years in blood or tissues in the frozen state at −20°C or lower (Blobel and Schliesser 1981).

**PATHOGENESIS**

**Bordetella bronchiseptica**

It is believed that *B. bronchiseptica* colonizes the nasal cavity by adhering to the nasal mucosa, where it probably preferentially attaches to the ciliated epithelial cells (Yokomizo and Shimizu 1979). This is followed by multiplication at the mucosal surface and toxin production, leading to inflammatory, proliferative, and degenerative changes in the nasal epithelium, including the loss of cilia (Duncan et al. 1966a; Edington et al. 1976). The organism is not believed to invade the deeper tissues.

It is assumed that the organism at the mucosal surface elaborates a toxin that diffuses into the osseous core of the nasal turbinate and is responsible for the osteopathy. The nature of this toxic factor has received much attention. Cell-free sonicated extracts from phase 1 *B. bronchiseptica* were originally shown to contain a heat-labile and dermonecrotic toxin, and it was assumed that this was probably an important factor in the pathogenesis. Since then, such bacteria-free extracts containing high levels of this toxin have been repeatedly inoculated intranasally into piglets, where they produce nasal lesions similar to those seen in naturally occurring AR (Hanada et al. 1979; Nakase et al. 1980; Magyar et al. 1988).

The degree of severity of the hypoplastic lesions seen in young pigs varies, and only rarely does severe hypoplasia result (Figs. 34.1–34.3). The ventral scroll of the ventral turbinate is the area most commonly and consistently affected; grossly it varies in appearance from a slightly shrunken and distorted scroll to virtually complete absence. In the more severe cases the dorsal scrolls of the ventral turbinate and the dorsal turbinate are also usually affected. The important factors that affect the severity of the hypoplasia are the degree of resistance of the pig to the infection (Smith et al. 1982) and the age when it was first acquired, since susceptibility to the damage the infection can produce declines as the pig gets older.

The histologic changes in bordetella-induced hypoplastic rhinitis have been reported by Duncan et al. (1966a) and are detailed in Switzer and Farrington (1975). Briefly, there is a hyperplasia of the epithelium and, in places, a metaplasia, the epithelium becoming more stratified in structure with polyhedral cells devoid of cilia. There is a degree of cellular infiltration (principally with neutrophils and mononuclear cells), a fibroblastic proliferation in the lamina propria, and a reduction in size and replacement fibrosis of the osseous core. In more chronic stages there are increased numbers of osteoblasts around the trabeculae, but osteoclasts are rarely found.

![34.1. Cross section of the snouts of three uninfected 6-week-old pigs showing normal anatomy of the turbinate scrolls (conchae Kontr. 1-2-3). (Courtesy P. Schöss.)](image-url)
There is some variation in the toxigenicity of different strains of *B. bronchiseptica*; porcine phase 1 strains are more toxigenic than phase 3 or nonporcine isolates (Collings and Rutter 1985).

**Turbinate Regeneration.** There is considerable field and experimental evidence that the hypoplasia of the turbinates produced by the uncomplicated infection of young pigs (up to about 8 weeks old) is capable of regeneration, which may sometimes be almost complete (Duncan et al. 1966a; Tornoe and Nielsen 1976; Rutter 1981; Smith et al. 1982).

A degree of turbinate hypoplasia in young pigs (Fig. 34.2), with a variable amount of subsequent regeneration as the pig grows to slaughter weight (Fig. 34.3), may thus occur in most herds infected with *B. bronchiseptica*. This probably accounts for the high prevalence of mild lesions of turbinate atrophy seen at slaughter in the many bordetella-infected herds free from obvious clinical AR, especially in cases where the nasal cavity remains infected with other species, particularly with nontoxigenic *P. multocida* or *Haemophilus spp.*

A reaction in the regeneration of the scrolls is the irregular increased (“hyperplastic”) bone structures in the turbinate bones and other nose bones as well. Once induced, the BS does not seem to regenerate and is difficult to separate from breed-associated BS. Only after elimination of *B. bronchiseptica* in such pig populations can the breed-associated BS be studied properly.

**Pasteurella multocida**

The mechanisms of colonization by *P. multocida* and the subsequent processes affecting the turbinate bone cells and leading to progressive atrophy and clinical PAR have been partially clarified. Furthermore, the mechanisms by which these chronic nasal changes and their associated malfunctions cause growth retardation have been clarified to a large extent (Becker et al. 1986; Williams et al. 1986; Doster et al. 1990; Dugal and Jacques 1990).

*P. multocida* apparently colonizes the nasal cavity...
poorly unless there is preexisting mucosal damage (Elling and Pedersen 1983). Chemical irritants (e.g., acetic acid and B. bronchiseptica) induce different modifications of the nasal epithelium, but both actions cause the production of nasal mucus, which results in a nasal environment favorable to colonization by P. multocida (Gagne and Martineau-Doize 1993). The different types of mucins produced by the piglets’ nasal mucosa at different ages may contribute to an understanding of P. multocida and B. bronchiseptica colonization (Martineau-Doize et al. 1991a, b).

Given this preconditioning, the organism will set up a nasal infection and, if toxigenic, the toxin will be elaborated. The nasal cavity, however, is not necessarily the only possible site of toxin production. The toxin appears to be of crucial significance in the pathogenesis of PAR, since only toxigenic strains of P. multocida produce PAR lesions; furthermore, the toxin will produce progressive snout shortening and turbinate atrophy when given to pigs intranasally (Ilina and Zasukhin 1975) and by a variety of parenteral routes (Rutter and Mackenzie 1984).

The precise mechanism of action of the P. multocida toxin has not been clearly defined; but it will produce a variety of changes in the ventral turbinates, consisting of epithelial hyperplasia, atrophy of mucosal glands, increasing volume of blood vessels, osteolysis, and a proliferation of mesenchymal cells. These eventually will replace the bone trabeculae and osteogenic and osteoelastic tissues (Rutter and Mackenzie 1984). PAR therefore seems to result from a combination of early osteoblastic damage followed by a series of toxin-induced chronic changes that result in osteolysis and subsequent replacement fibrosis. The toxins of B. bronchiseptica and P. multocida are different. Also, the ways in which the turbinates are destroyed differ. The combination of both toxins has detrimental effects on the turbinates and skull bones (Martineau-Doize et al. 1990).

CLINICAL SIGNS

Bordetella bronchiseptica

Rhinitis. The principal signs seen in bordetellosis are sneezing and snuffling in young pigs. This can occur in piglets as young as 1 week but is frequently seen at 3–4 weeks of age or about the time of weaning, which may be related to both maternal colostral protection and the mixing of pigs at this stage.

Affected piglets sneeze, snuffle, and snort with a variable degree of catarrhal rhinitis producing a variable amount of serous or frequently mucopurulent nasal discharge, which may be observed by swabbing the nasal cavity. Generally, the younger the piglet when initially affected, the more severe the clinical signs. The appetite is usually only moderately to slightly impaired. The clinical signs increase in severity for a time, then tend to abate after a few weeks, except in herds with clinical PAR, where continued progressive turbinate damage causes frequent sneezing to continue. Uncomplicated B. bronchiseptica infections in older pigs produce only mild signs or remain clinically inapparent.

Not all sneezing in young pigs is attributable solely to B. bronchiseptica, since infection with porcine cytomegalovirus or other agents may also produce or exacerbate these signs.

Bronchopneumonia. A more severe manifestation of infection is bronchopneumonia, which is usually seen as a primary condition in very young piglets (3–4 days). Although this type of disease is relatively uncommon compared with the wide prevalence of nasal infection, B. bronchiseptica is an important pathogen in those cases of pneumonia with bronchitis that occur in young pigs. The condition only affects young pigs and is most common in winter (Whittlestone 1982). The major clinical sign is coughing, perhaps with whooping and dyspnea. Pyrexia is not usually marked (Switzer and Farrington 1975). Morbidity is high within litters, and mortality may be so in untreated cases.

B. bronchiseptica is not infrequently isolated from pneumonic lesions in older fattening pigs, but it is considered to be a secondary opportunistic pathogen, and the clinical significance of its presence remains largely unknown.

Pasteurella multocida

Clinical signs of PAR are not usually seen in pigs until about 4–12 weeks of age or later, depending on the severity of the outbreak, but sneezing and snuffling in baby pigs are commonly recorded as the first signs. They are not, however, specific to or diagnostic of the condition, since they frequently occur in the absence of subsequent clinical PAR. Sneezing and snuffling in baby pigs is merely a reflection of an acute catarrhal rhinitis, which may be due to bordetellosis and/or infection with porcine cytomegalovirus; other agents may possibly be involved, for example, Mycoplasma sp., Actinobacillus sp., and Aujeszky’s disease, influenza, and porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) viruses. In herds where subsequent infectious and other factors combine to cause progression to clinical AR, affected pigs will continue to sneeze, snuffle, and snort throughout the growing period; this is accompanied by a variable amount of serous to mucopurulent nasal discharge. In severely affected animals, sneezing may be pronounced and occasionally nasal bleeding may occur. Hemorrhage is usually unilateral and varies in severity. Blood may be seen on the walls of the pen or on the backs of the pigs; mucopurulent material and even pieces of turbinate debris may be expelled from the nose following episodes of forceful, violent sneezing. In gilts and sows the hemorrhage in late gestation and farrowing can be life threatening to the dam and her piglets.

The most characteristic clinical signs of PAR are due to disturbances of normal bone development of the
nose; conspicuous deformities of the face may occur. The most common is BS, in which the upper jaw is shortened in relation to the lower, as a result of growth depression of the ossa nasales and maxillares, giving the face a “pushed-up” appearance. The skin and subcutis over the dorsum of the shortened snout are thrown into folds; when the disturbance of bone growth affects one side of the face more than the other, lateral deviation of the snout occurs (Figs. 34.4 and 34.5). This may vary in severity from a barely perceptible misalignment to severe twisting (possibly by as much as 50°). These facial deformities reflect an underlying turbinate atrophy; in the case of lateral deviation the atrophy is more pronounced on the side of the deviation. The prevalence of facial distortion varies among outbreaks, and not all pigs with significant turbinate atrophy develop marked facial distortion.

Dirty streaks on the face radiating from the medial canthus of the eye, caused by tear staining and the entrapment of dust following occlusion of the nasolachrymal duct, are common in PAR outbreaks (Fig. 34.4). However, they are not diagnostic and may occur in the absence of PAR.

In moderate to severe herd outbreaks of PAR, the clinical signs are frequently accompanied by growth retardation and reduction in the efficiency of feed utilization. Feed utilization is particularly reduced in severely diseased pigs. The amount of P. multocida toxin may influence growth performance (Doster et al. 1990; Van Diemen et al. 1994a).

Some clinical parameters have been used in an attempt to monitor and quantify disease levels. The prevalence of gross distortion among growing pigs is a crude measure of disease level but is not a sensitive index of turbinate atrophy. The prevalence and degree of BS in weaned pigs can provide useful information (Bercovich and de Jong 1976) but is not always diagnostic (Schöss 1983), and confusion can arise with breeds that are naturally brachygnathic (e.g., Large White) (Van Groenland 1984). Sneeze counts have been used successfully in an attempt to assess the effects of treatment (Douglas and Ripley 1984; Kobisch and Pennings 1989).

LESIONS OF NPAR AND PAR

Gross Lesions
The gross lesions of PAR are restricted to the nasal cavity and adjacent structures of the skull, although in severe cases the pig may also be stunted. At necropsy both BS and facial distortion are observed in the intact head. The dominant lesion is an atrophy of the ventral and dorsal turbinate, and this can vary greatly in severity. The atrophy is assessed by a cross section of the snout at the level of the first/second upper premolar, at which point the conchae, dorsal and ventral, are symmetrically and maximally developed in the normal pig (Fig. 34.6). In mild to moderate cases the ventral scrolls of the turbinate are by far the most consistently and severely affected area; they vary from slightly shrunken to complete atrophy (Figs. 34.7 and 34.8).

In more severe cases, atrophy of the dorsal scrolls of the ventral turbinate and the dorsal and ethmoidal turbinate may occur (Figs. 34.9 and 34.10); in the most severe form there is a complete absence of all turbinate structures (Fig. 34.11). In between these mild and severe...
forms, a whole spectrum of atrophic changes may be observed; occasionally the turbinates are bizarrely shaped (Fig. 34.10), which may represent some degree of regrowth of the conchae (Done 1985). Another gross change that may be observed is bowing or buckling of the nasal septum (Fig. 34.11); this is not uncommon and is often associated with BS, facial distortion, and/or asymmetrical atrophy. Irregular formation of the ossa nasales and maxillares also occurs in PAR (de Jong 1985) and should not be neglected (Figs. 34.10 and 34.11).

Exudate may be found in the nasal cavity but is not a constant finding. The amount and character depend on the age of the lesion and the type of infection. The exudate consists of variable amounts of mucopurulent to purulent material, possibly flecked with blood. The mucosa lining the frontal sinus is sometimes inflamed, and the sinus itself may contain mucopurulent material. The bones surrounding the nasal cavity may have undergone thinning or may be irregularly shaped to some

---

34.6. Cross section of the snout of an 18-week-old pig showing normal anatomy of the turbinates.

34.7. Cross section of the snout of an 18-week-old pig. Slight distortion of the ventral scrolls of the turbinates is present, a common finding.

34.8. Cross section of the snout of an 18-week-old pig showing modest but definite turbinate atrophy.

34.9. Cross section of the snout of an 18-week-old pig showing severe bilateral turbinate atrophy.

34.10. Cross section of the snout of an 18-week-old pig; the atrophic turbinates have developed into bizarre shapes.
Assessment of Turbinate Atrophy. The varying severity of the atrophic changes has led to the development of methods of quantitative assessment, but unfortunately, no one system has gained universal acceptance. Subjective scoring of snouts (e.g., on a 0–5 scale as in the British system; Anon. 1978) has proved very useful in evaluating treatment and monitoring schemes. As well as wide variation between systems, there is also considerable interobserver variation within a system (D’Allaire et al. 1988). At least one reason for this is probably the clinicians’ unwillingness to score a herd as having PAR, despite a degree of mild atrophy, when there has never been any clinical evidence of disease. Today, bacteriologic or serologic tests are necessary to confirm downgrading of the health status of a herd (e.g., when toxigenic \textit{P. multocida} is present). Parenteral injections with \textit{P. multocida} toxin induced liver cirrhosis, renal failure, marked decrease of peripheral blood lymphocytes without lysis, and growth retardation (Becker et al. 1986; Williams et al. 1986; Cheville et al. 1988).

Histologic Changes

Depending on the type of process active at the time of necropsy, acute, subacute, or chronic histologic changes may be observed.

The pathognomonic lesion of PAR by toxigenic \textit{P. multocida} is a fibrous replacement of the bony plates of the ventral conchae (Done 1983a; Elling and Pedersen 1983; Martineau-Doize et al. 1990). Additionally, there may be a variable metaplasia of the respiratory epithelium and inflammation of the mucosal lamina propria; subacute cases of rhinitis in conventional pigs will show various mixtures of degenerative, inflammatory, dystrophic, and reparative processes. In SPF pigs infection with toxigenic \textit{P. multocida} does not induce a typical inflammatory reaction but does induce toxic alterations. The histologic changes in pigs with PAR that show retarded growth have been described by Yoshikawa and Hanada (1981).

Lesions in parenchymatous organs may also be present in cases of severe infection with toxigenic \textit{P. multocida} (de Jong 1983a; Rutter 1983). Parenteral injections with \textit{P. multocida} toxin induced liver cirrhosis, renal failure, marked decrease of peripheral blood lymphocytes without lysis, and growth retardation (Becker et al. 1986; Williams et al. 1986; Cheville et al. 1988).

Bronchopneumonia. Pneumonic lesions occur principally in young pigs and have a characteristic scattered monolobular or bilobular distribution, mainly in the apical and cardiac lobes. Affected areas are initially dark red, become brown, then yellowish brown after a time and develop a contracted appearance. The lesions are associated with the \textit{B. bronchiseptica} element of the complex.

Histologically, the pneumonic lesions in bordetellosis are characteristic. Detailed descriptions of the histopathology of experimental \textit{B. bronchiseptica} bronchopneumonia are given by Duncan et al. (1966b) and Meyer and Beamer (1973) in conventional and germfree swine, respectively. The lesions from these experimental cases are similar to those of field cases. Briefly, the most severe cases affect the pneumonic vasculature, and there are areas of extensive alveolar hemorrhage with necrosis and interlobular edema. In areas where hemorrhagic changes are less extensive, there is an acute inflammatory reaction with cellular infiltration, principally with neutrophils. There is an accompanying bronchiolitis with neutrophilic exudate. As the lesions age, vascular changes become less prominent and epithelialization of the alveoli, fibroblastic activity, and deposition of collagen occur. Large alveolar macrophages are present in some alveoli.


diagnosis

	extit{Bordetella bronchiseptica}

Although the clinical signs are suggestive of infection, a definitive diagnosis of bordetellosis in pigs is only possible by the bacteriologic examination of lung washings, lungs at postmortem, or nasal secretions. Nasal secretions are best collected on cotton-tipped swabs with ei-
ther metal or elastic plastic stems. Wooden-stemmed swabs and swabs with quick-breaking plastic stems should be avoided, since sudden movement of the pig may break the shaft. The live pig should be adequately restrained and the external nares cleaned. Swabs are carefully inserted in a naris with a gentle rotating motion and pushed carefully along the ventral meatus so as to avoid trauma to the delicate turbinates. The swabs are then submitted for laboratory examination, preferably in a bacteriologic transport medium or a phosphate buffered saline solution (PBS) under cool conditions (±4°C).

The organism grows well on blood agar or MacConkey agar plus 1% glucose, but its isolation from field specimens is often complicated by the overgrowth of other organisms (Smith and Baskerville 1979); hence, culture on more selective media is recommended. Procedures for isolating and identifying the organism from field specimens from pigs are given by Farrington and Switzer (1977), Smith and Baskerville (1979), and Rutter (1981). Selective media to isolate both *B. bronchiseptica* and *P. multocida* on the same plate are discussed below under the detection of *P. multocida*.

The serologic diagnosis of bordetella infection by the detection of agglutinating antibodies in the serum has been described. The various methods of antigen preparation, details of some of the tests employed, and their interpretation have been reviewed by Giles and Smith (1983). Agglutinating antibodies to *B. bronchiseptica* are widespread in the pig population, but although their detection by serologic tests can be useful in making a herd diagnosis of bordetellosis, these are not commonly employed for routine diagnostic purposes, since, practically, serologic tests offer few advantages over the culture of nasal swabs.

**Pasteurella multocida**

**Clinical Diagnosis.** When the full range of clinical signs is present, a preliminary diagnosis of PAR on clinical signs alone is possible, but none of the snout deformations by themselves are pathognomonic for PAR. Animals showing lateral deviation of the snout and/or marked BS, especially at an age of 10–12 weeks, almost always have pronounced turbinate atrophy (Bercovich and de Jong 1976; de Jong 1985; Kobisch and Pennings 1989). However, when these signs are not apparent or are of decreasing prevalence (e.g., following treatment), it is not possible for even experienced observers to assess the extent of turbinate atrophy in the live animal. The presence of a few twisted snouts or sneezing alone is not sufficient evidence to justify a diagnosis of PAR (see Definition).

**Radiographic Diagnosis.** Radiographic examination of the snout has been developed to facilitate improved diagnosis of turbinate atrophy in the live animal; a suitable procedure is described by Done (1976). In some countries this method has enjoyed widespread popularity, but it is beset with technical difficulties and problems in interpretation of the radiographs. The method may not detect mild lesions reliably, and its value has been questioned (Eikelenboom et al. 1978; Webbon et al. 1978); furthermore, pigs must be sedated, anesthetized, or physically immobilized, and the procedure is costly and time-consuming. With experience, however, some observers consider radiographic examination a useful aid (Schöss 1983). The same disadvantages apply to rhinoscopy (Plonait et al. 1980). Modern methods such as computerized tomography, used as a diagnostic tool for PAR, facilitate the macroscopic grading of the nasal structures in live pigs of any age (Jolie et al. 1990).

**Postmortem Diagnosis.** The prevalence and severity of turbinate atrophy are best estimated by examination of snouts after slaughter. Snouts should be transversely sectioned at the level of the first/second upper premolar; sectioning cranial to this should be avoided, since this will reveal a different pattern of turbinate development. Pigs of 4 weeks old or older that died during weaning or prefattening can present turbinate atrophy at an early stage, and cross-sectioning can be carried out with a simple iron saw by qualified local veterinarians during regular herd inspections. Material from tonsils, lungs, and the nose can be sent to laboratories to ensure a proper diagnosis. To make a preliminary herd diagnosis, pigs have to be examined at slaughter at regular intervals. As many pigs as practical should be examined; between 20 and 30 per time is suggested by Goodwin (1988). Atrophy is scored on subjective grading systems (Bendixen 1971; Anon. 1978; Done 1983a, b; de Jong 1985). With low levels it is not possible to define a single cutoff point as representing freedom from PAR. An acceptable level for an individual (toxigenic *P. multocida*-infected) herd is a matter of reasoned clinical judgment but must be one in which the economic effects of the disease are minimal (Goodwin 1988). A monitoring scheme that could serve as a useful model with a diagrammatic representation of snout grading is described by Goodwin (1980). Computerized versions have been developed by Collins et al. (1988), Barfod et al. (1990), and Jolie and Thacker (1990).

**Cultural and Serologic Diagnosis.** Today, a definite diagnosis of PAR cannot be based solely on clinical and pathomorphologic observations but requires laboratory tests (Pedersen 1983). Detection of the two most significant bacterial pathogens is possible by the culture of nasal and tonsillar swabs or tonsillar biopsies. The live pig should be adequately restrained and the external nares cleaned; slender cotton-tipped swabs with plastic or metal shafts should be inserted with slight rotation deep into both sides of the nasal cavity. Swabbing the tonsillar surface or tonsillar biopsies can aid the isola-
tion and differentiation of *P. multocida* and toxigenic *P. multocida* (Van Leengoed et al. 1986; de Jong et al. 1988; Ackermann et al. 1994). Swabs should be transported to the laboratory within 24 hours, preferably in a transport medium under cooled conditions (4–8°C). Nutrient transport media that support the growth of fast-growing contaminants are best avoided, but sterile phosphate-buffered saline is suitable (Pedersen 1983).

Detection of *P. multocida* (and *B. bronchiseptica*). Special selective media are described on which both *B. bronchiseptica* and *P. multocida* can grow (de Jong and Borst 1985; de Jong 1994; Moore 1994).

The cultural isolation of *P. multocida* from nasal swabs and the testing of their toxigenicity are detailed by Pedersen (1983). When the nasal cavity is heavily infected with *P. multocida*, the organism can be recovered on simple blood agars (Smith and Baskerville 1983). However, field specimens frequently contain low numbers of organisms, and the other nasal flora may mask the presence of *P. multocida* on nonselective media. Mouse inoculation greatly improves the recovery rate from field specimens, but a good in vitro method would be preferable. Some selective media are described by Smith and Baskerville (1983), Rutter and Luther (1984), de Jong and Borst (1985), Leblanc et al. (1986a, b), Chanter and Rutter (1989), Avril et al. (1990), and de Jong (1994). Evidence suggests that the tonsil is the preferred habitat for *P. multocida* in the pig, and improved detection rates may be achieved by the collection of tonsillar swabs or biopsies in combination with nasal swabs (de Jong et al. 1988). Tonsils and lungs can also be collected in the slaughterhouse and examined in the laboratory. Swabs from noses of pigs sampled after immersion in the hot-water tank are unsatisfactory for the detection of toxigenic *P. multocida* (Chanter and Rutter 1989).

When clinical severe PAR is first detected in pigs, infection by toxigenic *P. multocida* actually occurred weeks or months earlier. The detection of the toxigenic *P. multocida* from these pigs can be difficult. Therefore, it is recommended to also examine clinically less severely affected pigs in such groups or pens.

Detection of *P. multocida* Toxin. The central etiologic importance of toxigenic strains of *P. multocida* is that classification of field isolates into PAR toxin-positive or toxin-negative strains is necessary in understanding the epidemiology of the disease. The toxin is thermolabile, dermonecrotic in the guinea pig and lethal for the mouse when administered intraperitoneally. All three tests give broadly comparable results; the methods are described by de Jong (1980, 1985), Pedersen (1983), and Rutter (1983), respectively. An in vitro system of detection by assessing the cytopathogenic effect in monolayers of Vero cells or embryonic bovine lung cells has been developed (Pennings and Storm 1984; Rutter and Luther 1984). Today, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) are replacing the earlier tests (Foged et al. 1988). DNA probes have been developed to detect the gene responsible for toxin production in toxigenic *P. multocida* (Andersen et al. 1990; Kamps et al. 1990; Lux and Chanter 1990). The use of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) tests is becoming of interest in diagnosis and in proposals for eradication of toxigenic *P. multocida* in PAR-diseased herds (Nagai et al. 1994; de Jong 1994; de Jong et al. 1996).

*P. multocida* Serotypes. Determination of the capsular serotype of *P. multocida* is also often useful for epidemiological purposes; most toxin-positive strains are type D, although toxin-positive type A strains also occur. In some regions the toxigenic type D is prevalent, in others it seems to be type A (Coward and Backstrom 1984; Iwamatsu and Sawada 1988; Pijoan et al. 1988). The usual method of capsular serotyping is the indirect hemagglutination test with rabbit antisera (Carter 1955). The hyaluronidase test (Carter and Rundell 1975) and acriflavine test (Carter and Subronto 1973) are simpler methods for the detection of type A and D strains, respectively, but not all porcine isolates are typeable by these methods (Pedersen 1983). Piliation, hemagglutination, and capsular serotypes did not show a correlation with toxin production (Trigo and Pijoan 1988). An atypical *P. multocida* strain producing a toxin similar to the dermonecrotic toxin of *P. multocida* subspecies *multocida* has been described in cattle (Kamp et al. 1990). Not only the capsule and somatic structure are of epidemiological interest; the phage types and plasmid types are also interesting tools with which to follow the distribution pattern of the different toxigenic strains (Lugtenberg et al. 1984; Nielsen and Rosdahl 1988, 1990; Hoje et al. 1990; Rubies et al. 1996).

Serologic Tests. Although agglutinating antibodies to *B. bronchiseptica* can be detected in pig serum (Giles and Smith 1983), this is of little diagnostic value. Serologic tests to detect antibodies against toxigenic *P. multocida* resulting from vaccination or infection have been described (de Jong and Akkermans 1986; Bechmann and Schüss 1990; Foged et al. 1990; Schimmelpennig 1990). The toxin in natural infection is a weak immunogen, and antibodies to it take 3 months or longer to detect and only then in some pigs (Bording et al. 1990; Van Diemen et al. 1994b). This means that serology may only be of importance in detecting antibodies in the sow population. A skin test has been described to detect antibodies in sow herds that have been infected (Schimmelpennig and Jahn 1988; Breuer and Schimmelpennig 1990).

In the skin test the purified concentrated toxin is applied intradermally in one or different concentrations. Neutralization of the toxin indicates the presence of antibodies as a response to the infection or vaccination.
with toxigenic *P. multocida*. Difficulties in application and in the identification of the correct amount of toxin per dose have limited the use of the skin test in practice.

**Differential Diagnosis.** Sneezing in young pigs occurs in herds with active PAR, but it is not diagnostic itself, since it regularly occurs due to uncomplicated bordetellosis or porcine cytomegalovirus infection (Rondhuis et al. 1980). Both agents are widely spread in the pig industry and can cause severe mucous membrane damage, which is necessary for colonization by toxigenic *P. multocida*. The frequency of severe sneezing can be used in clinical monitoring of PAR (Kobisch and Pennings 1989). Influenza, PRRS, and pseudorabies are other viruses causing damage to the nasal mucosa.

A variety of other conditions (reviewed by Done 1977) may cause facial deformity in pigs; these are likely to cause confusion in clinical and postmortem diagnosis, since malformations of the turbinates can be observed. A localized bacterial infection entering via wounds may produce a paranasal abscess (bull nose) in young pigs.

**Problems with Diagnosis.** Should pigs from a herd with no clinically apparent disease that have no obvious growth retardation but show mild turbinate atrophy at slaughter be considered to be suffering from PAR or NPAR? It is suggested that when BS, lateral deviation, and poor growth are obvious within the herd and atrophy at slaughter is marked, the herd should be suspected of having clinical PAR. Conversely, where no turbinate atrophy is seen in slaughtered pigs, the herd must be regarded as clinically free from PAR. However, defining the status of herds where mild atrophy occurs in the absence of clinical disease presents problems, since there is no satisfactory single cutoff point between affected and unaffected herds (Goodwin 1988). These low levels of atrophy have been regarded as representing degrees of subclinical PAR but are probably better viewed as indicating risk of developing clinical PAR. The level of atrophy deemed satisfactory or acceptable for a given enterprise is often a matter of reasoned clinical judgment. With the help of bacteriologic and serologic investigations this problem can be avoided (see Definition).

BS can occur as a breed-associated characteristic in certain lines of the Large White/Yorkshire breed. Breed-associated BS increases with age and cannot be influenced by a medication program intended to combat the influence of a bordetella and/or a pasteurella infection in these pigs. The breed-associated level of BS can easily be assessed by such a medication method. All BS grading higher than this lower genetic level may be a result of PAR or NPAR. A warning limit can be chosen (e.g., at an age of 8–12 weeks) to allow early selection of clinically diseased animals and to limit further damage in grower or fattening pigs as well as in the younger pigs that will follow such groups.

Breed-associated BS is easily distinguished from PAR by the absence of turbinate atrophy, except where regeneration of the turbinates has occurred.

Sows and gilts kept in stalls often bite, chew, or play with bars or drinkers, and this can give rise to asymmetric bone development causing protrusion of the lower jaw or mandibular misalignment. These conditions can be confused with the facial deformity of AR, especially in the older pig, but careful inspection should reveal that the lower jaw is abnormally placed rather than that the snout is shortened or laterally deviated. A useful technique is to draw an imaginary line between the center of the ears and eyes and project it forward onto the snout. Some sows keep their snouts more to one side. This can cause misinterpretation. By pressing the molar teeth on top of each other and comparing the diastema between the incisor teeth in the upper and lower jaw, distortion can be noticed clinically at an early stage. This method can be carried out in combination with the BS-grading method. With thin nasal swabs an increase in internasal space can be observed clinically, but some experience is necessary for the interpretation.

**TREATMENT**

The effective treatment of an outbreak of NPAR or PAR requires a selected combination of management, environmental, chemotherapeutic, and vaccination procedures. No one combination is equally applicable to all affected herds. The overall aims of treatment are (1) to reduce the prevalence and load of the important specific bacterial infections (bordetellosis and pasteurellosis) in young pigs by sow vaccination, medication of feed, and antibiotic treatment of piglets; (2) to treat growing pigs with an acute rhinitis to reduce the weight of bacterial infection and severity of the hypoplastic changes and maintain efficient growth and feed utilization; and (3) to manipulate housing, ventilation, and management to improve the overall environment for the pigs (de Jong and Bartelse 1980; Smith 1983).

Management and therapeutic measures to control bordetellosis in commercial pig herds are required or usually deemed necessary by experienced clinicians only in herds where this infection is associated with clinically significant disease, whether rhinitis, bronchopneumonia, or infectious PAR. The mere presence of the infection within an ordinary commercial herd is not, on its own, sufficient ground for initiating therapeutic measures against it.

The sulfonamides were the first drugs to be used successfully in this respect (Switzer 1963) and are still widely employed, either alone or in combination with antibiotics, or potentiated with trimethoprim. Bronchopneumonia in piglets should be treated with parenteral injections of sulfadoxine or sulfadiazine at 12.5 mg/kg with trimethoprim at 2.5 mg/kg daily for 3–5 days.
Alternatives to the sulfonamide drugs have been examined. Most porcine isolates of *B. bronchiseptica* appear to be sensitive to the tetracyclines (Sisak et al. 1978; Smith et al. 1980; Pijpers et al. 1989), and these drugs, particularly a long-acting formulation of oxytetracycline given by parenteral injection to young pigs, appear to be suitable for the control of bordetellosis.

The new fluoroquinolones are also active against porcine *B. bronchiseptica* (Hannan et al. 1989).

### Antibiotic Resistance

The in vitro activity of 12 sulfonamide drugs against *B. bronchiseptica* was compared by Mengelers et al. (1989), who showed that the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC)$_{50}$ ranged from 0.5 to 8 µg/mL. Against a selection of the pathogenic respiratory bacteria of swine, sulfamethoxazole had the highest antimicrobial activity, and sulfamezathine had an overall low activity. Isolates of *B. bronchiseptica* from pigs have been shown to have transmissible R factors that carry antibiotic resistance (Terakado et al. 1974).

### Medication

#### Sows and Piglets.
To reduce the prevalence and severity of nasal infection acquired from dams, the feed of the sow can be medicated during the final month of gestation. Sulfadimidine (sulfamethazine) (400–2000 g/ton) and oxytetracycline (400–1000 g/ton) are the products most widely used.

Suckling piglets are best medicated by strategic injections of antibacterial agents in therapeutic dosages four to eight times during the first 3–4 weeks of life. The most useful are potentiated sulfonamides, oxytetracycline, and penicillin/streptomycin.

If bordetellosis is the major infection in suckling piglets, potentiated sulfonamides are the drugs of choice (12.5 mg/kg sulfadiazone or sulfadoxine + 2.5 mg/kg trimethoprim). Injections of oxytetracycline (20–80 mg/kg) once or twice a week are also clinically effective for PAR (de Jong and Oosterwoud 1977; Mefford et al. 1983). The long-acting formulation (20–80 mg/kg) may be the preferred product and is best given once or twice a week during each of the first 3 or 4 weeks of life. If the organism is not resistant, the drug is effective against pasteurellosis, since, experimentally, long-acting oxytetracycline has reduced the prevalence of nasal infection and the severity of turbinate atrophy induced by *P. multocida* (Gois et al. 1983b); although other researchers prefer doxycycline (Pijpers et al. 1988). In the Netherlands, intranasal spraying of oxytetracycline in a 5% solution is used in piglets twice a week, starting the treatment. If effective after 2–3 months, a reduction from twice to once a week can be recommended (de Jong 1983b). This withdrawal of medication also depends on the average antibody titer against the toxin of *P. multocida* in the dams resulting from the vaccination program.

Other antibiotics to which *P. multocida* may be sensitive and that are frequently used in therapeutic concentrations against pneumonia caused by pasteurellosis include penicillin/streptomycin (20,000 IU/10–25 mg/kg), tylosin (10–25 mg/kg), lincomycin/spectinomycin (50/100 mg/kg), ampicillin (10–20 mg/kg), amoxicillin (10–20 mg/kg), spiramycin (25 mg/kg), quinolone derivatives (0.5–5 mg/kg), cephalosporins (1–5 mg/kg), and tiamulin (10–20 mg/kg) (Plonait and Bickhardt 1988). The benefits of the treatments have not been critically evaluated as far as nasal and pulmonary protection and/or elimination of the toxigenic *P. multocida* are concerned.

#### Weaners and Growers.
The PAR in weaned pigs that leads eventually to marked turbinate atrophy at slaughter can be controlled to some extent by medication of weaner and/or grower rations or by the addition of antibiotics to the drinking water. Such medication also assists in the maintenance of growth and efficiency of feed utilization in the face of active PAR, but as might be expected, medication is always much more effective when the pigs’ environment is improved. Various antibacterial agents alone or in combination are effective. The sulfonamides are frequently included in rations because of their known efficacy against bordetellosis. Their use and the problems of the development of drug resistance are of great concern.

Well-established drugs or combinations suitable for the control of PAR are (1) sulfadimidine (sulfamethazine) (400–2000 g/ton) in feed or sulfathiazole (0.08–0.13 g/L) in the drinking water; (2) chlortetracycline (165 g/ton), sulfadimidine (sulfamethazine) (165 g/ton), and penicillin G (83 g/ton) in feed; (3) tylosin (100 g/ton) and sulfadimidine (sulfamethazine) (100 g/ton) in feed; (4) carbadox (50 g/ton) and sulfadimidine (sulfamethazine) (100 g/ton) in feed; (5) oxytetracycline in feed (400 g/ton) or in drinking water (0.18 g/L) (Giles 1986). Various other antibacterial agents, alone or in combination, also have broadly similar beneficial effects on PAR lesions and help to maintain growth. For example, the following have been demonstrated as clinically effective in feed: lincomycin (220 g/ton); lincomycin (220 g/ton) and sulfamethazine (550 g/ton); lincomycin, spectinomycin, and amoxicillin trihydrate (10–20 g/ton).

When a number of drugs are used in feed, a decrease of bioavailability can occur, which may result from the amount of calcium, the feed processing, and the water ration given to the treated pigs (Counotte et al. 1984; Froe 1990; Sutter and Wanner 1990). The availability of some of these drugs and the regulations regarding their use in food-producing animals vary between countries.

Selection of an appropriate antibiotic or combination depends partly on cost, legislation, and clinical experience but should also be related to the antibiotic sensitivity patterns of *B. bronchiseptica* and *P. multocida*.
isolates and the established MICs (Pijpers et al. 1988; Fales et al. 1990; Awad-Masalmeh et al. 1994). Differences in MIC between \textit{P. multocida} type D and type A strains may occur in the same herd (Schimmelpfennig 1990). In a severe outbreak, treatment should be directed at pigs of all age groups other than those immediately destined for slaughter; as the severity declines, reducing antibiotic use for the older fatteners should be the first priority. The appropriate withdrawal times before slaughter must always be adhered to. It is usually necessary for pigs at risk to receive medicated feed for a minimum of 4–5 weeks and frequently for longer periods, depending on the results of the vaccination program and the improvement in housing, ventilation, and management.

**Vaccination**

**Sows.** Vaccination of the sow induces a significant degree of passive colostral protection against \textit{B. bronchiseptica} in the serum of her suckling piglets (Koshimizu et al. 1973; Smith et al. 1982); in the field, this protection will often persist until about the time of weaning. The colostral protection afforded by sow vaccination is thus an effective aid in controlling \textit{B. bronchiseptica} infections among populations of young suckling pigs; in herds where early piglet infection occurs and rhinitis and/or bronchopneumonia develop in young pigs, sow vaccination should be recommended. Initially two doses should be given 6 and 2 weeks before farrowing, followed by revaccination at 2 weeks before each subsequent farrowing. Bordetella vaccines which induce toxin-neutralizing antibodies and pilus antibodies are of interest.

In a prolonged vaccination scheme for gilts and the sow and boar population, the number of \textit{B. bronchiseptica} carriers is reduced. This in combination with the increased colostrum protection and all-in/all-out procedures in the farrowing and weaner sections may be helpful in producing \textit{B. bronchiseptica}-free offspring or in reducing the \textit{B. bronchiseptica} colonization in such populations. These procedures also reduced bordetella pneumonia. In NPAR herds the use of combined bordetella and pasteurella vaccines is not recommended, because the antibodies against the pasteurella toxin lead to suspicion of PAR in such herds. Downgrading the health status could be the result.

Vaccination of the sow with a potent \textit{B. bronchiseptica} vaccine is an effective way to reduce the prevalence and severity of nasal bordetellosis in suckling and weaned piglets (de Jong 1985) but exerts only a limited effect on clinical PAR (Giles and Smith 1983). Pathogenic determinants important in vaccines include the toxigenic characters, the pilus-producing factor, and outer membrane proteins. Lack of antibody to some of these properties seems to influence the reduction of \textit{B. bronchiseptica} in sows and piglets.

\textit{B. bronchiseptica/P. multocida} vaccines have been evaluated experimentally and in the field. In some countries combined vaccines are available commercially. Such vaccines have reduced the prevalence of clinical PAR (Schuller et al. 1980; Baars et al. 1982; de Jong et al. 1984) but do not eliminate the condition. As might be expected, the thermolabile toxin for \textit{P. multocida} appears to be an important determinant in eliciting protection, because experimental vaccination of sows with crude toxin significantly protected their offspring against PAR (Baars et al. 1982, 1986; Pedersen and Barfod 1982). The specific importance of the toxoid fraction has been elucidated (Nagy et al. 1986; Foged et al. 1989; Frymus et al. 1989; Chanter and Rutter 1990).

The antigens and mechanisms of protection against toxigenic \textit{P. multocida} infection and associated disease have yet to be fully defined; reports show that toxoid preparations of \textit{P. multocida} produce an antitoxin response, with an effect on colonization (Chanter and Rutter 1990). Claims made for \textit{B. bronchiseptica} vaccines in the control of AR were not fully substantiated in field use (Giles and Smith 1983); thus, a rush to develop further combined vaccines without full appraisal of the required antigens is undesirable.

Some of the currently available combined \textit{B. bronchiseptica/P. multocida} vaccines may be of benefit in controlling bordetellosis and toxigenic pasteurellosis and in reducing the prevalence and severity of PAR when combined with housing and management changes (de Jong et al. 1984). The marked reduction in toxigenic \textit{P. multocida} in the nose following vaccination with a potent toxoid vaccine requires further evaluation to determine whether the expression of high antibody levels can eradicate toxigenic \textit{P. multocida}. Vaccination of sows with combined vaccines can be as effective as piglet medication. However, neither procedure constitutes a means of protection against the condition nor necessarily obviates the need for medication. Such a vaccination program, once started in an infected herd, has to be maintained, at least for many years.

**Piglets.** Vaccination of older pigs undoubtedly produces an active humoral response but its value is debatable, since the main effects of the infection occur in younger animals. Specific measures against \textit{B. bronchiseptica} infection should be directed toward preventing the infection from arising in suckling pigs (by management, sow vaccination, or chemotherapy) or mitigating its effects in young pigs (by management and/or chemotherapy).

\textit{B. bronchiseptica} vaccine has been widely employed. Although some observers have concluded that it has little benefit against clinical PAR and is generally less effective than sow vaccination (Giles and Smith 1982, 1983), in some countries (notably the United States) the procedure nevertheless still enjoys fairly widespread use. \textit{B. bronchiseptica/P. multocida} bacterin vaccines are also widely employed, but the composition of many of them
means that they may be of little benefit in the field. In a study in which both sows and piglets were inoculated with a combined vaccine, Mefford et al. (1983) demonstrated that vaccination alone did not influence turbinate atrophy and only marginally improved profitability.

Only vaccination of the piglets born of inadequately vaccinated or unvaccinated dams is of value in the case of *P. multocida* toxoid vaccines. When sows are properly vaccinated and produce good levels of antitoxic antibodies, piglets may not respond to vaccination. If the dams show good titers, the colostral protection in pigs can last for 3–4 months. Vaccinations of the young breeding stock can be started after this age. A high antitoxin titer seems to reduce colonization by toxigenic *P. multocida*.

The additional use of therapeutics (e.g., long-acting oxytetracycline) in piglets significantly reduced turbinate atrophy at slaughter and markedly improved profitability (Pejsak et al. 1990). Furthermore, some commercially available vaccines contain neither toxigenic strains nor *P. multocida* toxoid, the manufacturers only claiming efficacy against pneumonic pasteurellosis.

**Housing and Husbandry**

Medication and vaccination procedures should never be introduced without concurrent attempts to improve swine management and husbandry. Although the noninfectious factors that contribute to the severity of PAR are inadequately defined quantitatively, steps should always be taken to reduce their influence. All-in/all-out systems are favored for farrowing, weaner, and preferably fattener management; the age of the sow herd can be allowed to rise and the introduction of large numbers of infected new gilts can be avoided; stock density can be reduced; strict hygiene measures should be implemented; and correct ventilation rates should be maintained to reduce the airborne concentration of bacterial pathogens, noxious gases, and dust. Steps should also be taken to reduce factors that stress young pigs, including large temperature variations, chilling, and drafts. Replacement breeding stock should not only be free from clinical signs of disease but also be raised in herds free from infection and the clinical condition AR by immunologic methods. Eradication of rats, mice, and birds must be carried out properly and continually. Replacement pigs should be bought from sources known to be free from PAR and toxigenic *P. multocida* infection, based on clinical, abattoir, bacteriologic, and/or serologic monitoring.

**PREVENTION**

Since *B. bronchiseptica* is widely prevalent in the pig population, its total exclusion from a herd is only possible by the development of an SPF system or by medicated and segregated early-weaning methods and the strict maintenance of an effective barrier. *B. bronchiseptica* is often one of the first agents to infect an SPF herd.

**Vaccination**

*B. bronchiseptica* vaccines have been developed and used in several countries in an attempt to control both the infection and the clinical condition AR by immunologic methods. Killed whole-culture vaccines with aluminum salt adjuvants were the first to be available commercially and have been licensed for use in several countries since the 1970s. Other types of vaccine have also been investigated, including live avirulent strains (Krüger and Horsch 1992) and subunit vaccines, but generally have not been used widely in practice. Killed whole-culture adjuvanted vaccines were at one time widely employed in pig herds because several reports, mainly from the United States and Japan (e.g., Nakase et al. 1976; Goodnow 1977; Goodnow et al. 1979), indicated that such products were highly effective in the control of field outbreaks of clinical PAR. In Europe, however, these benefits were much less obvious (Bercovich and Oosterwoud 1977; Pedersen and Barfod 1977; Giles and Smith 1982). Later, further studies from the United States also concluded that such bordetella vaccines are of limited efficacy in the overall control of PAR. A critical review of bordetella vaccines (Giles and Smith 1983) concluded that,
as single antigens, their beneficial effects in the control of PAR are indeed limited and the previous claims for their usefulness overstated. In the light of new knowledge, combined vaccines have been developed consisting of B. bronchiseptica/P. multocida bacterins or B. bronchiseptica bacterin combined with P. multocida toxoid. Such vaccines are of use in the field, provided their limitations are fully realized by the clinician.

Single bordetella vaccines should be used to limit the influence of bordetellosis or NPAR but not in PAR-diseased herds.

PAR can be prevented effectively only by rearing swine free from the specific infections required for disease to develop. The adoption of an SPF system of production and the maintenance of an effective microbiologic barrier are the only sure ways of achieving this. Medicated early weaning (Alexander et al. 1980) may well be a viable alternative to the established methods of producing SPF stock free from toxigenic P. multocida (James 1989; Blaha et al. 1990; Larsen et al. 1990). Traditional vaccination or medication regimes applied to infected herds are not likely to create herds free from the infections; thus, the infected herds pose a serious threat to free herds in their neighborhood and also pose risks to other branches of animal production, such as poultry, rabbits, goats, sheep, and cattle (Nielsen et al. 1986; Frymus et al. 1996). In a preventive disease control program, eradication schemes have to be carried out in all types of herds and in all kinds of animals infected with toxigenic P. multocida. B. bronchiseptica appears to be very widespread in the pig population, but the prevalence of infection with toxigenic strains of P. multocida is less well defined. A positive correlation exists between the prevalence of toxigenic strains of P. multocida in a herd and the known occurrence of PAR (de Jong 1983b; Nielsen 1983; Pedersen 1983; Cowart and Backstrom 1984; Leblanc et al. 1986b; Bechmann and Schöss 1988; Cowart et al. 1989), although the mere presence of this infection does not always mean clinical disease. The potential risk of clinical PAR developing in a herd could be eliminated simply by ensuring that pigs are free from toxigenic P. multocida infection. Therefore, it is desirable to monitor breeding herds for this pathogen and to take steps to reduce its dissemination and introduction into unaffected herds. It is definitely beneficial to maintain herds with no history of PAR and low scores of atrophy at slaughter behind effective barriers or to bring in pigs only from sources known to be free from the condition. Breeding companies that sell and export pigs from infected herds, inadequately monitored for infectious diseases like PAR, are involved more and more in financial claims by new clients who will not accept the cost of medication and vaccination and the degradation of the health status of their own breeding herds. Because aero-
genic spread has been described (Baekbo and Nielsen 1988; Stehmann et al. 1989) and spread of infection may be possible from surrounding herds, special attention to air filtration and decontamination systems (Rutter et al. 1986; Voets et al. 1986b) could be necessary if distances become too small (probably within 200–2000 m, depending on the size of the surrounding herds). PAR has also been found in outdoor systems. Prevention of toxigenic P. multocida infection in outdoor systems can be difficult. Prevention by artificial insemination seems possible, but some risks exist when the antibiotics used in the semen diluter do not eliminate the toxigenic pasteurella. (Overby 1990).

Monitoring

Commercial producers should be aware of the current disease status of their herds. This applies to herds that have past or present evidence for the clinical condition, as well as to producers who need to monitor the effects of control measures or whose herds have remained free from the condition and who appreciate early warning of any change in herd status. Hence, ideally, herds need monitoring systems that can quantify not only the presence but also the effects of PAR (Done 1983b), especially in the case of an infected herd. Since this disease is not a simple all-or-nothing condition, merely relying on the presence of clinical disease disguises moderate to low levels of infection and recognizes it too late for the introduction of prophylactic measures.

Parameters that can be usefully measured are indirect production or economic data, such as liveweight gain or efficiency of feed utilization, and clinical/pathological data related to PAR, including the amount of sneezing, the incidence of facial distortion, and the two most useful criteria, the prevalence and extent of BS in weaned pigs and the prevalence and severity of turbinate atrophy at slaughter. The latter is the most popular in some countries. In large, modern slaughterhouses the gathering of snouts and cross sections is difficult; in such situations a scoring system on longitudinally opened snouts can be useful (Visser et al. 1988). Sophisticated methods of monitoring have been developed, one of which is the plotting of cumulative-sum charts with decision boundaries, since it gives early signals of deterioration or improvement. Done (1983b) has reviewed the methods of monitoring PAR. Use of computer technology in slaughterhouses and on pig farms means that important disease-monitoring systems may be effectively employed without laborious clerical work (Collins et al. 1988). Because the antibody titer against the toxin of P. multocida correlates with increased protection against turbinate atrophy (Sorensen et al. 1990), serologic monitoring becomes of interest in determining a possible increase in PAR risk when a decrease in the titers occurs in herds with a sow vaccination program. A program in which only sows are vaccinated can also protect the pigs during the fattening period. Recent investigations have shown a relationship between antitoxin titers and some protection against colonization by toxigenic pasteurella (Chanter and Rutter 1990). Modern methods for the
detection of toxigenic *P. multocida* by DNA probes from samples of noses, tonsils, or lungs may soon become useful in monitoring systems (Kamps et al. 1990). Positive results have already been achieved by bacteriologic (Schöss 1982; Schöss and Thiel 1984; de Jong et al. 1988) or serologic monitoring (de Jong et al. 1988; Bechmann and Schöss 1990; Foged et al. 1990; Schimmelpfennig 1990).

Toxigenic *P. multocida* can be eliminated from infected breeding farms after intensive vaccination for a period of more than 5 years. These regularly vaccinated sows produce high anti-*P. multocida* toxin titers. During this period the replacement gilts and boars must be bought from herds free from toxigenic *P. multocida*. The replacements should be introduced into the infected sow population only after being vaccinated several times with an atrophic rhinitis toxoid (ART) vaccine. The herd vaccination program needs to be continued until the last sow from the infected population has left the farm, which generally takes about 5 years. Methods to shorten such periods by selecting and slaughtering the toxigenic *P. multocida* carriers are being developed with the help of the new PCR techniques. First attempts have been partially successful (de Jong 1994; de Jong et al. 1996).

Selecting carrier sows in nonvaccinating herds by bacteriological procedures and by the (DAKO) ELISA test or the PCR test and removing them have been described as successful in creating infection-free sow herds (Alt et al. 1996).

**REFERENCES**


CHAPTER 34 PROGRESSIVE AND NONPROGRESSIVE ATROPHIC RHINITIS


Franqué. 1830. Was ist die Schnüffelkrankheit der Schweine? Dtsch Z Gesammte Tierheilkd 1:75.


CHAPTER 34  PROGRESSIVE AND NONPROGRESSIVE ATROPHIC RHINITIS


Brucellosis of pigs is an infectious disease that has been recognized as a specific entity since 1914, when Traum (1914) isolated the organism from aborted porcine fetuses in Indiana, but for many years it was thought to be caused by an exceptionally pathogenic form of *Brucella abortus* until Huddleston (1929) named the infectious agent, *B. suis*, as a separate species. Brucellosis occurs in most countries throughout the world where pigs exist in the wild or domesticated state.

In the United States porcine brucellosis was recognized as a major disease, causing considerable economic loss during the 1920s–1950s. Since that time, changes in management combined with regulatory programs to eradicate the disease have gradually eliminated brucellosis as a major disease problem from large areas of the country. As of late 2004 all states except Texas were in Stage III (Free) status of the Swine Brucellosis Control/Eradication Program. All outbreaks of infection in domestic herds have been attributed to feral swine exposure for several years, including those in Texas. In fiscal year 2004, there were only 2 small-herd isolated outbreaks reported in the U.S. swine population, both feral-related (Holland and Barton 2004). The disease is essentially eradicated in the commercial production swine herd in the United States.

Swine brucellosis appears to be widespread in South America, where it is predominantly caused by biovar 1. In Europe (apart from Britain and Scandinavia, which are brucellosis free), there is a general low prevalence of porcine brucellosis. In Africa, the disease is reported by some countries, but the number of pigs on the continent is not large, and the true position is not entirely clear. Asia, particularly Southeast Asia, seems to have a generally high prevalence of the disease, predominantly caused by biovar 3 in south China and Singapore and by biovar 1 elsewhere. In Australia the disease is confined to feral pigs in Queensland (Alton 1990).

Porcine brucellosis also has noteworthy public health implications. Until recently the source of the majority of human brucellosis has been *Brucella suis*-infected pigs (Fox and Kaufmann 1977). The public health hazard caused by porcine brucellosis is of proportionately greater significance than the risk from bovine brucellosis primarily because *B. suis* (biovars 1 and 3) appears to have a much higher degree of pathogenicity for humans than *B. abortus*. There also tend to be higher numbers of *B. suis* organisms in the tissues, providing a greater exposure to persons who come in contact with infected pigs. As pigs do not produce dairy products, the incidence of *B. suis* in humans is almost entirely occupational: in farmers, veterinarians, abattoir workers, and individuals, such as hunters, having direct contact with feral swine. Interestingly, although the infection of cattle with *B. suis* is rare, Cook and Noble (1984), working in Australia, reported several cases, probably contracted following contact with feral pigs. Persistent excretion in the milk may give rise to human epidemics (Borts et al. 1943). *B. suis* infection of a ram has been reported by Paolicchi et al. (1993), who suggest that this may represent a public health hazard.

**ETIOLOGY**

The genus *Brucella* comprises six nomen species: *B. abortus*, *B. melitensis*, *B. suis*, *B. neotomae*, *B. ovis*, and *B. canis* (Brinley-Morgan and McCullough 1974; Alton et al. 1975). In addition to the traditional six species, recent identifications of *Brucella* organisms in marine mammal species have led to the provisional speciation of *B. cetaceae* and *B. pinnipediae* (Cloeckaert et al. 2001). The genus appears to be genetically very homogeneous (Verger et al. 1985) but does not appear to be closely related to any other animal pathogens (de Ley et al. 1987). The first three nomen species are further divided into 8, 3, and 5 biovars, respectively. The principal hosts for *B. melitensis* are goats and sheep; for *B. abortus*, cattle, bison, and elk; for *B. neotomae*, desert wood rats; for *B. ovis*, sheep; for *B. canis*, dogs; for provisionally named *B. cetaceae*, dolphins, porpoises, and minke whale; and for provisionally named *B. pinnipediae*, seals. The most
common host for *B. suis* biovars 1 and 3 is the pig, and these biovars are worldwide in distribution. *B. suis* biovar 2 occurs in Europe, where the hosts are pigs and the European hare (*Lepus capensis*), which can form a reservoir for occasional outbreaks in both wild and domestic pigs. The disease in pigs caused by biovar 2 differs slightly from that caused by biovars 1 and 3 in that miliary brucellosis of the uterus is a feature, and unlike them, it does not appear to be pathogenic for humans. *B. suis* biovar 4 is enzootic in reindeer and caribou (*Rangifer spp.*) in Siberia, Alaska, and Canada and is apparently not pathogenic for pigs although it causes many cases of human brucellosis. *B. suis* biovar 5 causes murine brucellosis.

*B. suis* is the only recognized *Brucella* species that causes systemic or generalized infection leading to reproductive failure in pigs. Pigs can be infected naturally or experimentally with other *Brucella* species, but a characteristic of the infection is almost invariably a symptomless, self-limiting localized infection of lymph nodes regional to the point of entry. It should be noted, however, that the differentiation of biovars of *Brucella* must be accomplished using methods only available in large reference centers, and this probably accounts for the frequent reports before the early 1960s of the isolation of *B. melitensis* from pigs (Alton 1990).

Bacteriological examination is often of great assistance in aiding a diagnosis, but it must be remembered that handling *B. suis* in the laboratory is extremely hazardous unless appropriate precautions are taken. The genus *Brucella* belongs to Hazard Group III and should be handled in a Class I/III safety cabinet within Containment Level III accommodation by staff with adequate training and experience.

Primary isolations of *B. suis*, like the other species in the genus, appear as small, convex, translucent, honey-colored colonies on the surface of clear agar media after incubation at 37°C for 2–7 days. Colonies grown on more opaque agar media types may appear pearl-colored. All *Brucella* species and biovars, except *B. ovis* and *B. canis*, occur naturally with smooth colonial morphology. *B. ovis* and *B. canis* always occur as rough forms, even on primary isolation. All smooth forms of *brucellae* may dissociate into intermediate, rough, or mucoid forms under certain artificially induced environmental conditions. This dissociation frequently occurs if cultures are left for a long period without being subcultured, and it renders them incapable of being assigned to species or biovar. Microscopically, *Brucella* organisms are small, gram-negative bacilli or coccobacilli and are nonmotile and arranged singly. *B. suis* organisms from different sources may vary considerably in size but are generally 0.4–0.8 by 0.6–3.0 µm.

Several commercially available agar media are suitable for isolation and propagation of *B. suis*; those most commonly used include tryptose, trypticase-soy, Albimi, serum dextrose, Farrell’s, and potato infusion. The addition of serum to the media to a final concentration of 5% frequently enhances the growth of *brucellae*, particularly on primary isolation. Increased carbon dioxide tension is not required for growth of *B. suis*. A more complete discussion of biotyping procedures, biovars, and formulation of growth media, as well as descriptive characteristics of the entire genus, can be obtained from Alton et al. 1988.

In general, all biovars of *B. suis* have a noticeably greater urease and catalase activity than other species of *Brucella*. Classification of *B. suis* into biovars is based on the combined findings of a variety of conventional and specialized tests. Briefly, *B. suis* biovar 1 produces large amounts of hydrogen sulfide, whereas biovars 2, 3, 4, and 5 produce little or none; growth of biovars 1, 2, and 5 is inhibited to a greater degree by basic fuchsin than growth of biovars 3 and 4; *B. suis* is not lysed by routine test dilutions (RTD) of Tbilisi *Brucella* phage but may be partially lysed by 10,000 × RTD; using monospecific antisera for the dominant A and M antigens, *B. suis* biovars 1, 2, and 3 are A dominant, while biovar 4 is AM (the only distinguishing feature separating biovars 3 and 4), and biovar 5 is M dominant (Table 35.1).

As the oxidative metabolic characteristics of all *B. suis* biovars are very similar, there are insufficient differences for differentiation.

Among the *B. suis*, only biovars 1 and 3 are known to occur in pig-raising areas of the United States. Until 1946 the only recognized cause of pig brucellosis in the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biovar</th>
<th>H₂S Production</th>
<th>Growth on Thionin</th>
<th>Growth on Fuchsin</th>
<th>Dominant Antigen⁵</th>
<th>Lysis by Tb Phage at RTD</th>
<th>Lysis by Tb Phage at 10⁴ RTD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biovar 1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>NL¹</td>
<td>L²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biovar 2</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biovar 3</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biovar 4</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>AM</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biovar 5</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Agglutination with A and M monospecific serum.
²No lysis.
³Lysis.
⁴Some strains may grow.
United States was the organism now known as *B. suis* biovar 1. At that time, *B. suis* biovar 3 (originally classified as American *B. melitensis*) was first isolated from tissues of infected pigs by S. H. MacNutt (Borts et al. 1946). For a period of time, reported isolations of *B. suis* biovar 1 had become comparatively less frequent, while isolations of *B. suis* biovar 3 had become more frequent. However, recent isolations of *B. suis* from feral swine have been identified as biovar 1, and both *B. suis* biovars 1 and 3 are most likely still present within the United States.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Most evidence indicates that most *B. suis* infection is transmitted to susceptible animals through direct association with infected pigs. In this species, the most important routes of infection are through the alimentary and genital tracts. The habits of pigs and usual character of the disease strongly suggest that the alimentary tract is the most common portal of entry. Pigs of all ages may eat food or drink fluid contaminated with discharges from infected pigs. Piglets are frequently infected by nursing infected dams, and when breeding pigs are confined together, aborted fetuses and fetal membranes are readily consumed. Brucellosis is a venereal disease in pigs, and sows are readily infected when mated with infected boars or when artificially inseminated with semen containing *B. suis*. Experimentally, pigs are readily infected by conjunctival or intranasal exposure with suspensions of *B. suis*. It is possible that organisms could also enter through scarified or, possibly, intact skin.

The survival of brucellae under environmental conditions is a relatively important factor in transmission of the disease. The survival rate of brucellae is similar to that of other nonsporing gram-negative bacteria and as such is extremely variable depending on prevailing conditions. Experimental evidence indicates that *B. suis* is readily killed by pasteurization, 2–4 hours of direct sunlight, and the most commonly used disinfectants. *Brucellae* can survive in organic matter at freezing or near-freezing temperatures in excess of 2 years. Consequently, efforts to eliminate brucellosus from pig-raising premises must include an effective sanitation program (Luchsinger et al. 1965). The most suitable methods for preserving *Brucella* organisms for long periods are lyophilization and/or storage at subfreezing temperatures.

There are few known reservoirs of *B. suis* infection other than infected domestic pigs. Only the European hare and feral pigs have been established as significant potential reservoirs. The European hare was incriminated as a natural host for *B. suis* biovar 2 as early as 1954 (Bendtsen et al. 1954) and is apparently responsible for periodic outbreaks of brucellosis of pigs in Europe. Feral pigs in the southeastern United States, and to a much lesser extent elsewhere (Drew et al. 1992), have been discovered to have a high rate of serologic reactors, with isolation of *B. suis* biovar 1 from some animals (Wood et al. 1976; Becker et al. 1978). Extensive studies conducted in Florida showed that although only some populations are infected, the incidence within these groups is usually high (Leek et al. 1993). The epidemiological importance of feral pigs in the maintenance of porcine brucellosis depends largely on the degree of contact between wild and domestic pigs (Nettles 1991). If pig management systems in regions where feral pigs exist prevent contact, *B. suis* infection in feral pigs may be of greater public health importance than a threat to the pig industry. There have been numerous instances of *B. suis* infection or seropositivity in rodents or carnivorous species trapped near areas where brucellosis in domesticated pigs has occurred. However, general indications are that these species acquired infection from the pigs and are terminal hosts of the infection. With few or no exceptions, epidemiological investigation of newly infected pig herds has revealed the source as another herd of domesticated pigs.

Experimental studies have shown that pigs can be infected with *B. suis* biovar 4, *B. abortus*, *B. melitensis*, *B. canis*, and *B. neotomae*. However, there has been no evidence that these organisms invade the genital tract, are transmissible between pigs, or localize in any tissues other than lymph nodes draining the site of infection. All available evidence indicates that these biovars or species are not highly pathogenic for pigs, pigs are not likely to show clinical evidence of disease, and the infection is self-limiting and usually persists less than 60 days. Nevertheless, these infections do have importance for public health. In particular, pigs are associated with *B. abortus* infection in packinghouse workers.

Pigs infected with *B. suis* biovars 1, 2, or 3 can serve as a source of infection for other domesticated animal species. *B. suis* infection can occur naturally in horses, cattle, and dogs. Although the most common brucella infection in horses is *B. abortus*, fistulous withers and other syndromes have been recorded as caused by *B. suis* when horses were associated with infected pigs. Cattle are rarely infected with *B. suis*; when infection does occur, the characteristic infection is mastitis, with *B. suis* organisms excreted in the milk representing a public health risk. It can cause an acute infection in dogs, with pregnant bitches frequently aborting. There is some evidence that *B. canis*, a significant pathogen in dogs, evolved from *B. suis* biovar 3.

**PATHOGENESIS**

Available literature and comparative studies indicate that the pathogenesis of *B. suis* biovars 1, 2, and 3 is very similar (Thomsen 1934; Hutchings 1950; Hoerlein et al. 1954; Deyoe 1967). Differences are generally related to factors such as method of exposure, infecting dose, age and breed of pigs, and possibly minor differences between
strains of the same biovar. However, the characteristics of the disease produced are usually indistinguishable.

Regardless of the route of infection, the organism must be able to attach to and penetrate the mucosal epithelium, although the mechanisms for this have not yet been fully elucidated. Following the initial penetration, submucosal aggregations of lymphocytes and plasma cells form in response. Invading organisms are carried to local lymph nodes, although it is not known whether they travel as free organisms or within phagocytes, and infected nodes become enlarged due to lymphoid and reticuloendothelial hyperplasia and infiltration. Brucella organisms surviving regional node colonization enter a phase of bacteremia, now protected from humoral immune mechanisms by their intracellular location within neutrophils and macrophages.

In B. suis infection of pigs, bacteremia is an invaluable finding in acute stages of the disease if frequent blood samples are collected and examined bacteriologically. In general, the onset of bacteremia ranges from 1–7 weeks after exposure, with a mean of about 2 weeks post exposure. Bacteremia persists an average of about 5 weeks and is generally continuous during that time. Intermittent bacteremia in individual pigs has been observed to be as brief as 1 week to as long as 34 months. It is this bacteremia that is probably responsible for the wide range of tissues secondarily infected during the course of the disease.

Within a short time after the bacteremia stage, B. suis can be isolated from a large number of sites in the body (Deyoe and Manthei 1967). The entire lymphatic system is often affected for a period of time. With increasing time after exposure, the sites of localization of the organism tend to be reduced in number. Among lymph nodes, the most frequent sources of B. suis are mandibular, gastrohepatic, internal iliac, and supravpharyngeal, in that order, depending essentially on the route of infection. Organs of the genital system containing high levels of erythritol, a sugar promoting the growth of brucellae, become involved in many pigs and may remain persistently infected. The placenta is a privileged site, and brucellae localize in the rough endoplasmic reticulum of the chorionic trophoblasts. Despite severe placental infection, only mild inflammation of the endometrium is observed. The spleen, liver, kidney, bladder, mammary gland, and brain may be involved (Jubb et al. 1985), although not as regularly as lymph nodes. Other significant sources of B. suis, particularly in chronically infected pigs, are joint fluids and bone marrow.

The response to invasion of B. suis becomes evident with the appearance of humoral antibody, activation of the cell-mediated immune system, and development of microscopic lesions. These manifestations may occur simultaneously but usually are subsequent to the appearance of detectable bacteremia; bacteremia may precede detectable antibody levels possibly by as much as 6–8 weeks. As pigs recover from B. suis infection (i.e., when viable organisms are no longer present in their tissues), other manifestations, such as antibody levels, cellular hypersensitivity, and microscopic lesions, recede and disappear also. Unfortunately, many pigs remain permanently infected.

In a series of experiments, infection was established in 248 sexually mature pigs (Deyoe 1972a). They were killed at various intervals after exposure to B. suis and their tissues subjected to thorough bacteriological examination. Three-fourths of the pigs in each group of females had recovered from infection by 4–6 months or longer after exposure, whereas the recovery rate in males never exceeded 50%. In contrast, Goode et al. (1952) and Manthei et al. (1952) isolated B. suis from only 12 of 474 adult pigs exposed as suckling pigs. This information demonstrates beyond doubt that the majority of pigs infected with B. suis will eventually recover spontaneously. Nevertheless, sufficient numbers of permanently infected animals will remain to serve as a continual source of infection.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Clinical evidence of B. suis infection varies considerably in different herds. The majority of affected herds may have no signs of brucellosis recognizable by the herd owner. The classic manifestations of pig brucellosis are abortion, infertility, orchitis, posterior paralysis, and lameness. Infected pigs fail to show any persisting or undulating pyrexia. Clinical signs may be transient and death is a rare occurrence.

Abortions may occur at any time during gestation and are influenced more by the time of exposure than by the time of gestation. The rate of abortion is highest in sows or gilts exposed via the genital tract at the time of breeding (Deyoe and Manthei 1969). Abortions have been observed as early as 17 days following natural insemination by boars disseminating B. suis in the semen. Early abortions are usually overlooked under field conditions, and the first indication is a large percentage of sows or gilts showing signs of estrus 30–45 days after the service that resulted in conception. Little or no vaginal discharge is observed with early abortions. Abortions that occur during the middle or late stages of gestation are usually associated with females that acquire infection after pregnancy has advanced past 35 or 40 days. The persistence of genital infection in females varies considerably.

A small percentage of sows have been shown to shed B. suis in vaginal discharges for as long as 30 months. However, the majority ceased shedding organisms within 30 days. A clinically apparent abnormal vaginal exudate is seldom observed in sows that have uterine infection except just prior to and for a short time after abortion. The majority of female pigs eventually recover from genital infection.

When genital infection in sows persists only a short
time after abortion, parturition, or breeding to an infected boar and the sows are permitted two or three estrous cycles of sexual rest, subsequent conception rates and reproductive capacity are usually very good.

Genital infection tends to be more persistent in boars than in sows. Some infected boars do not develop a localized genital infection. However, boars that do develop genital infection seldom recover from it. Pathologic changes in the male accessory glands or testes are generally more extensive and irreversible than in the uterus. Infertility and lack of sexual drive may occur in infected boars and are frequently associated with testicular involvement. More commonly, however, boars have infection in accessory genital glands and as a result disseminate large numbers of \( B. \textit{suis} \) in their semen. These boars do not necessarily have reduced fertility (Vandeplasche et al. 1967). In most circumstances, clinically apparent lesions of \( B. \textit{suis} \) biovar 1, 2, or 3 infection in boars are seldom encountered.

Clinical brucellosis in suckling and weaning pigs may appear as diskospondylitis associated with posterior paralysis or arthritis. These clinical signs are occasionally observed in any age of pigs.

**LESIONS**

Macroscopic pathologic changes produced by \( B. \textit{suis} \) in pigs are quite variable. Enough abscess formation may occur in affected organs to result in necrosis and desquamation of a significant proportion of the mucous membrane. Generally, the histopathological changes consist of uterine glands filled with leukocytes, cellular infiltration of the endometrial stroma, and hyperplasia of periglandular connective tissue. Diffuse suppurative inflammation is usually present in affected placentas, resulting in purulent, necrotizing placentitis with fibrinous polyserositis. There also may be considerable necrosis of epithelium and diffuse hyperplasia of fibrous connective tissue.

Focal microscopic granulomatous lesions frequently can be observed in livers of pigs with brucellosis, particularly during bacteremic phases of the disease. These foci frequently are necrotic areas infiltrated with lymphocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, and giant cells, with sheets of histocytic and epithelioid cells with a central zone of caseous or coagulative necrosis. The lesions are usually partially or completely enclosed by a fibrous capsule. The necrotic portions of the granulomas are heavily infiltrated with neutrophils, and liquefaction and mineralization may occur (Enright 1990). Aborted fetuses may exhibit purulent hepatitis as well.

These lesions are not specific for brucellosis, since similar hepatic lesions are associated with other bacterial infections.

Microscopic lesions of bones are sometimes caused by \( B. \textit{suis} \) infection. These occur both in vertebrae and in long bones. The lesions are most frequently located adjacent to the epiphyseal cartilage and usually consist of caseous centers surrounded by a zone of macrophages and leukocytes and often by an outer zone of fibrous connective tissue.

Focal areas of chronic lymphocytic and macrocytic inflammation or focal abscesses are found infrequently in kidneys, spleen, brain, ovaries, adrenal glands, lungs, and other tissues of infected pigs (Deyoe 1968).

**DIAGNOSIS**

The most accurate and possibly the most sensitive method of diagnosis of porcine brucellosis is isolation of \( \textit{Brucella} \) organisms by direct culture methods. It has been shown that routine culture of a small sample of lymph nodes from carcasses will reveal as many positives as serologic diagnosis (Alton 1990; Rogers et al. 1989). This is a very practical survey strategy, as virtually all the produce of the industry passes through abattoirs and the material can be removed without damage to the carcass. Culture of other material that becomes available is often fruitful, such as vaginal swabs or products of abortion, semen samples or castrated testicles, the contents of swollen joints, and blood samples. However, culture is often not feasible because of inadequate or unavailable laboratory facilities and trained personnel (Deyoe 1969). \( B. \textit{suis} \) can readily be grown on all the normal \( \textit{Brucella} \) media in the absence of added CO\(_2\), the techniques being fully described by Alton et al. (1988).

Detection of \( B. \textit{suis} \) antigen in tissues of infected pigs has been investigated, primarily using fluorescent antibody (FA) techniques. The general conclusion has been that brucellae are seldom detectable in lymph node impression smears with FA procedures because of the relatively low numbers of organisms typically present (Deyoe 1972b). Nevertheless, FA tests could probably be useful for examining aborted materials, since large numbers of \( B. \textit{suis} \) are typical in such specimens. More recently, potentially sensitive methods for the detection of the presence of brucellae, such as the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), are gradually being introduced into routine use and may, in the future, prove a valuable method of diagnosis in certain situations (Lealkevezas et al. 1995).

Serologic procedures to detect antibodies against brucellae in infected pigs are generally the most practical and most common means of diagnosis, but the results obtained are far from perfect. Market pig surveys have shown that as many as 18% of normal pigs may react at the 1:25 level when plate agglutination tests are used (Deyoe 1969). On the other hand, some pigs produce little or no antibody against brucellae. Because of variation in the stage of disease, an infected herd of pigs will nearly always contain some infected animals that have no detectable brucella antibody. Some strains of \( B. \textit{suis} \) apparently do not stimulate antibody production as well as others (Deyoe 1967). Pigs exposed to a minimal...
infective dose of *B. abortus* generally have a prolonged incubation period before significant quantities of antibody are produced.

Because of the foregoing factors, current serologic tests are much less effective for the diagnosis of individual pigs than they are in cattle. However, most serologic tests are entirely adequate as herd tests. Characteristically, infected herds include a majority or large numbers of infected individuals. Because of close contact between animals and the tendency of brucellosis to spread rapidly through a herd, 50–80% is a common morbidity range (Spencer and Mattison 1975). When large herds have only a single serologic reactor disclosed during a herd test, it can generally be concluded that *B. suis* infection is not present.

Numerous serologic tests are available or have been investigated for use in diagnosis of porcine brucellosis (Alton et al. 1988). Many of these were developed for diagnosis of bovine brucellosis and have been adapted for testing pig sera. Most tests utilize *B. abortus* whole-cell antigens. Since the commonly used antigen strains *B. abortus* 1119-3 and S99 have the same or very similar surface lipopolysaccharide complexes as smooth *B. suis*, the standardized antigens produced and distributed by the Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) of the USDA and by the Central Veterinary Laboratory, Weybridge, United Kingdom, are equally useful for diagnosis of both bovine and porcine brucellosis. This has been confirmed by extensive laboratory testing of pig sera with both *B. abortus* and *B. suis* antigens.

The original test methods for the diagnosis of porcine brucellosis were tube and plate agglutination procedures. Interpretation of results was based on the finding that most infected pig herds contained one or more animals with more than 100 international units (IU) of agglutination. It is now known that serum agglutination tests (SAT), although sensitive, are not sufficiently specific to be reliable diagnostic tools when used alone. Some of the inaccuracies can be overcome in situations where frequent and repeated testing is practicable and the trend of antibody titers can be determined.

Reducing the pH of antigen-serum mixtures to 3–4 was also found to reduce nonspecific agglutination while not affecting agglutination caused by serum from infected animals. This led to the development of methods classified as buffered brucella antigen tests, in which stained brucella antigen is buffered at pH 3.65. The buffered brucella antigen became the basis of the brucellosis card test and similar procedures such as buffered plate antigen and Rose-Bengal tests (RBT). These tests are the most practical method of diagnosis for porcine brucellosis at present, are possibly still the preferred method for large-scale surveillance testing, and are “prescribed tests for international trade” (Office International des Epizooties 1997). They have a distinct advantage over standard agglutination tests because they are relatively unaffected by nonspecific agglutinins and are generally as sensitive as any other serologic test for diagnosis of porcine brucellosis.

Other tests, such as the Rivanol precipitation–serum agglutination, 2-mercaptoethanol, and complement fixation tests (CFT), are frequently used for the diagnosis of brucellosis in pigs and are very useful in confirming results of card tests. The above tests very seldom or never detect IgM brucella antibodies in pig serum; therefore, they are highly specific. However, the relative sensitivity of these methods is usually low in early stages of brucellosis. By the time the antibody response peaks and thereafter in chronic stages, the Rivanol, mercaptoethanol, and CFT methods are generally as sensitive as the card test. An evaluation of a range of serologic tests on culture-positive pigs was reported by Rogers et al. (1989). The sensitivity of the RBT was 79%; of the CFT, 49%; and of the SAT, 51%. The specificity of the RBT was reported to be 98% based on the results of testing over 30,000 serum samples. Other studies generally confirm the low levels of diagnostic sensitivity achievable (Ferris et al. 1995; Payeur et al. 1990).

The Particle Concentration Fluorescence Immunoassay (PCFIA) is a competitive immunoassay for IgG1, IgG2, and IgM antibodies which has been reported to have a sensitivity of 80% and specificity of 89% (Ferris et al. 1995). The PCFIA interpretation ranges for swine have been established as a ratio of Sample to Negative Control signal (S/N) of 0.0 to 0.5 for reactors, 0.51 to 0.70 for suspects, and greater than 0.70 for negatives.

Recently, the Fluorescence Polarization Assay (FPA) has also been evaluated for the detection of Brucellosis in swine (Nielsen and Gall 2001). The FPA test is based on the size and rotation rate of molecules in solution and the depolarization of light by these molecules (see Nielsen and Gall 2001 for a complete description.) One study in swine has shown the FPA to have a sensitivity of 94% and a specificity of 97% (Nielsen et al. 1999). The FPA test is currently being incorporated as an official test into the USDA Swine Brucellosis Control/Eradication program.

Limited investigation of the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) has been conducted, and it appears that this method may be equal or slightly superior to other serologic procedures for diagnosis of porcine brucellosis in the future (Office International des Epizooties 1997). Further investigation of this test for use in eradication campaigns is warranted.

Regardless of the serologic test used for diagnosis, detection of 80–90% of infected pigs must be regarded as the best that can be achieved at present.

Experimental studies reviewed by Corbel (1985) have shown that infection with organisms of several other genera can produce antibodies reactive in brucellosis diagnostic tests. These organisms include *Escherichia coli* serogroup O:157, *Salmonella* serovars of Kaufman-White group N, and most importantly *Yersinia enterocolitica* serogroup O:9. Infection of pigs
with this latter organism has often been confirmed, and the cross-reaction that results (the dominant O polysaccharide antigen is chemically identical to the A antigen present on the surface of all smooth brucellae) is highly significant. In some situations, yersiniosis poses a greater threat to the agricultural industry than does brucellosis itself, due to the confusion with brucellosis in diagnosis and the consequent effect on the export trade. Great Britain has always been free from B. suis infection and enjoys a thriving export trade as a result of the generally high health status of its stock. During the 7 years prior to 1988, the number of pigs tested for export certification giving a CFT reaction of greater than 20 international complement-fixation test units (icftu) never exceeded 0.004%, whereas the figures for 1988, 1989, and 1990 were 0.42%, 0.70%, and 1.5%, respectively. Since 1988, at least 4% of exporting herds have had more than 5% CFT positive reactions, with some herds reaching levels of more than 50% of animals tested failing at this level. Y. enterocolitica O:9 has been isolated from many herds involved, and despite extensive investigation, B. suis has not been recovered (Wrathall et al. 1991).

Lymphocyte transformation tests have been used to measure cell-mediated immune responses in infected pigs on a limited scale (Kaneene et al. 1978). There was high correlation between recovery of B. suis from tissues and detectable lymphocyte stimulation responses. However, the complexity of the method probably eliminates it from consideration as a diagnostic tool except in special cases.

Tests for delayed hypersensitivity, using intradermal injection of brucella allergens, have been studied, but results have not stimulated much enthusiasm in the United States. However, they are of similar accuracy to serologic tests and would be more appropriate for farm testing in some circumstances, although they are more difficult to apply and read and would not be applicable in testing programs for market pigs. In the face of cross-reactions caused by Y. enterocolitica O:9, the use of such tests is perhaps the most specific method of diagnosis. Skin tests are used frequently for diagnosis of porcine brucellosis in many countries, particularly in Eastern Europe.

One of the most important aids to diagnosis is an adequate herd history. Good records of clinical manifestations, movement of animals, additions to the herd, breeding records, and illnesses in persons working with the pigs provide invaluable information necessary to arrive at a diagnosis of brucellosis. Accurate epidemiological information is an essential supplement to laboratory tests.

**TREATMENT**

No treatments, such as antibiotic therapy, dietary supplements, or other chemotherapy, have been proven effective and economically feasible in curing pigs of brucellosis. Large doses of tetracyclines, streptomycin, or sulfonamides given over relatively long periods have been investigated. In some trials these antibiotics alone or in combination appeared promising. In general, however, antibiotic therapy was effective in limiting the bacteremic stage of the disease, but after therapy was discontinued, viable B. suis was still present in tissues. Although treatments have not been effective in eliminating all organisms from the host, chemotherapy in carefully selected circumstances could probably suppress multiplication of B. suis in vivo sufficiently to alleviate clinical manifestations and shedding of organisms. Even though such an approach may have limited practicability, it could have beneficial effects in an infected herd and should not be dismissed as useless.

**PREVENTION**

**Immunity**

Safe and reliable vaccines that produce serviceable immunity against brucellosis in pigs have not been developed. Significant resistance can be stimulated, but persistence of immunity has been a limiting factor (Deyoe 1972a). Interest in vaccination of pigs in the United States has declined along with the decline in incidence of the disease. With the present incidence of porcine brucellosis in the United States, the cost of developing and applying vaccination cannot be justified.

There have been no basic studies specifically directed toward the mechanism of immunity against B. suis infection in pigs. Nevertheless, one must assume from the overwhelming evidence accumulated in research on brucellosis in other species that the fundamental mechanism is a cell-mediated immunity, with humoral immunity having only a minor or nonexistent role.

Investigations into antibrucella immunity in pigs can be summarized as follows:

1. Some pigs are naturally resistant to brucella infection, and this resistance could be enhanced markedly by selective breeding programs (Cameron et al. 1941) if all other genetic factors could be ignored.
2. Some pigs infected with virulent B. suis will recover from the disease, but subsequent resistance induced by the virulent infection may be transient, as most will be susceptible to reexposure probably within 6–12 months after the initial infection. Commonly, many pigs, especially boars, become persistently infected with B. suis.
3. Trials with attenuated B. suis or B. abortus strain 19 have been unsuccessful in producing a persistent immunity with products considered to be safe for use.
4. Bacterins or extracts of killed B. suis have generally been ineffective in stimulating immunity or else there has been no conclusive evidence that the persistence of immunity is adequate.
Control Measures

Experiences in control of porcine brucellosis indicate that eradication of the disease from pigs in the United States is desirable and feasible. Marked reduction in the incidence of the disease has occurred since 1950. One significant factor in this reduction has been the tendency for pig production to become more specialized and less a part of diversified farming operations. Consequently, the occurrence of reproductive disease in pigs has become proportionately more important, confinement systems and closed herds have eliminated many opportunities for interfarm spread of disease, and larger units have eliminated the “community boar” in most instances. Another important instrument in control of porcine brucellosis has been the establishment and maintenance of validated brucellosis-free herds, particularly purebred herds or those selling breeding stock. Implementation of effective surveillance programs such as identification and testing of market pigs (sows and boars) has been instrumental in locating and eliminating large numbers of infected herds. Finally, it has been found that whenever recommended procedures to eradicate brucellosis from an individual herd or an enzootic area are conscientiously followed, there is very seldom any recurrence of the disease in that locality (e.g., Spencer and Mattison 1975).

The current brucellosis eradication program in the United States is a joint state-federal and livestock industry program. The program is administered, supervised, and funded by cooperative efforts between state and federal animal health regulatory agencies. This program is now nearing successful completion, with all states and U.S. territories, except Texas, in Stage III (Free) status. Texas will likely gain equal status once Uniform Methods and Rules are revised to reflect federal-state-industry consensus to remove loosely managed feral-exposed domestic herds from commercial herd classification.

The swine brucellosis eradication program has evolved to recognize that the organism will continue to exist indefinitely in the feral swine reservoir and associated transitional swine population. Transitional swine are defined as those feral swine that are captive or swine that have reasonable opportunities to be exposed to feral swine (USDA 2003). Efforts are now concentrated on effective separation of commercial production swine from transitional and feral swine, with adequate surveillance and testing of at-risk populations to assure compliance. The Pseudorabies Eradication Program now requires each state to file a Feral-Transitional Swine Management Plan, outlining its plans for dealing with feral swine pseudorabies virus threats. This plan will address swine brucellosis infection threats from feral swine populations as well. Swine brucellosis will be considered but one of many swine pathogens to be controlled by effective management and biosecurity measures against potential feral-transitional swine infections.

REFERENCES


Clostridia are large, gram-positive, spore-forming rods, and are strict–to–oxygen-tolerant anaerobes. *Clostridium perfringens* types A and C, *C. difficile*, *C. tetani*, *C. novyi*, *C. botulinum*, and occasionally *C. chauvoei* and *C. septicum*, are primary pathogens of swine, but may also invade existing wounds or lesions (Table 36.1). Many maintain a residence in the intestinal tract, and post-mortem invasion of other tissues can confuse diagnosis.

### ENTERIC INFECTIONS

**Clostridium perfringens**

Production of the so-called major toxins [alpha (CPA), beta (CPB), epsilon (ETX), and iota (ITX)] divides *C. perfringens* into five toxinotypes (Table 36.2). Strains of type A are widespread in the intestines of warm-blooded animals and in the environment, and others tend to be present in lower numbers in normal animals.

**Type C Enteritis.** *Clostridium perfringens* type C infection occurs in all swine-producing areas of the world (Field and Gibson 1955; Szent-Ivanyi and Szabo 1955; Barnes and Moon 1964; Hogh 1965; Matthias et al. 1968; Plaisier 1971; Morin et al. 1983; Azuma et al. 1983). Type C causes frequently hemorrhagic, often-fatal, necrotic enteritis in young piglets. Hallmark lesions are profound mucosal necrosis and emphysema in small intestine, sometimes extending into cecum and proximal colon.

**Etiology and Epidemiology.** Type C is a primary pathogen but can apparently colonize lesions of other diseases, such as transmissible gastroenteritis (TGE). Types B (Bahktin 1956) and D (Harbola and Khera 1990) have apparently been isolated from type C-like syndromes, but given the vagaries of the in vivo typing system, it may be prudent to confirm these reports before accepting types B and D as even rare causes of severe enteritis in neonatal pigs.

Infection can be transmitted piglet-to-piglet, but the ultimate source is likely the intestine of the sow. Preventing introduction of disease by screening of replacement stock is likely not a viable option. Type C in normal sow feces accounts for only a tiny percentage of the total population of *C. perfringens*; it nearly always goes undetected by any but highly specialized methods, which are impractical for screening large numbers of animals. Piglets may act as enrichment vessels, in which small numbers of type C outcompete other bacteria and multiply to large numbers, with resulting disease production.

The organism persists in the environment as vegetative cells or spores, and the latter are resistant to heat, disinfectants, and ultraviolet light. Environmental organisms cycle through nonvaccinated piglets over long periods.

Disease is most common in 3-day-old piglets, but may appear as early as 12 hours after birth and is rarely seen in pigs older than one week (Bergeland et al. 1966; Meszaros and Pesti 1965; Matthias et al. 1968). Type C enteritis occurs epizootically in nonvaccinated populations (Bergeland et al. 1966) and prevalence of affected litters can reach 100%. The case fatality rate varies with the form of the disease, but 100% mortality in litters of nonimmune sows is not unusual, and total herd mortality may be as high as 50–60% (Bergeland et al. 1966; Hogh 1967b). When herd immunity rises, due to exposure of sows to infected piglets, disease may become enzootic. Milder cases occur over a period of months in individual herds, but continued appearance of acute disease usually indicates a deficiency in herd immunity (e.g., repeated introduction of naive gilts or sows) or failure of piglets to receive adequate levels of specific antibody in colostrum.

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** Clinical signs vary according to immune status and age of affected piglets. Most *peracute* *piglets* develop hemorrhagic diarrhea, accompanied by staining of the perineum. Piglets become weak, move with reluctance, and rapidly become moribund, risking crushing by the sow. Rectal temperature falls to 35°C and abdominal skin may blanclen be-
fore death. Many are found dead within 12–36 hours of birth. Death occurs in some animals without diarrhea being seen. The abdominal wall is often edematous when cut, but the most immediate and striking findings are intensely hemorrhagic small intestines (Figure 36.1) and bloodstained fluid in the abdominal cavity. Lesions are typically in jejunum and ileum; they may extend anterior to within a few centimeters of the pylorus and posterior to the proximal colon, or may affect only a few centimeters of jejunum. Gross mucosal lesions are reddish or black in color, with intense hemorrhage and gas bubbles in the intestinal wall. Mesenteric lymph nodes may be reddened. Contents of the affected area contain blood and may be found as far distal as the rectum. Microscopic examination reveals necrotic jejunal villi and a surface covered by a carpet of large gram-positive bacilli. Crypt epithelium may be necrotic, and there is profuse hemorrhage throughout the mucosa and submucosa (Figures 36.2 and 36.3).

Acutely affected piglets may survive for 1–2 days after onset of clinical signs, but usually die shortly thereafter. They have reddish-brown diarrhea containing gray shreds of tissue debris, may be dehydrated, with loss of body condition, and there may be scalding of the perineum and adherent reddish feces. Nursing is minimal, and these piglets rapidly lose condition and become gaunt and weak. Gross lesions (refer to Figure 36.1) are usually localized, and emphysema may be observed in a sharply demarcated portion of jejunum. This portion of intestine may be loosely adherent to adjacent segments by acute fibrinous peritonitis (Figure 36.4), and intestinal wall is usually thickened and yellow or grayish; contents may be bloodstained and contain necrotic debris. Deposition of urate crystals in kidney is common. Microscopic examination reveals loss of most villi, and those surviving are necrotic and covered with bacteria. The exposed submucosa is also carpeted by bacteria,
shed epithelial cells, fibrin, and degenerating inflammatory cells. Submucosal vessels are necrotic and many contain thrombi and emphysema may be evident in submucosa, tunica muscularis, and under the serosa (Figure 36.5). Large gram-positive bacteria may be present in deeper layers of intestinal wall.

Diarrhea in pigs with subacute disease is nonhemorrhagic. These animals remain active, alert, and appetant, but become progressively emaciated; they may be thin and dehydrated at the time of death, usually at about 5–7 days of age. Stools are often yellow initially, but then become clear, with flecks of necrotic debris. There may be adhesions between affected areas of small intestine, and intestinal wall is thickened and friable. The mucosal surface is covered by a tightly adherent necrotic membrane which may be seen from the serosal surface as longitudinal grayish-yellow bands (Figure 36.6).

Chronic cases usually have intermittent diarrhea for more than a week. Feces are yellow-gray and mucoid, and tail and perineum may be fecal-stained, and although these piglets remain alert and vigorous, they may die after several weeks or be euthanized because of unthriftiness. Lesions may resemble those in subacute disease, but may not be obvious from the serosa. There may be local thickening of intestinal wall and well-defined areas (in many cases only 1–2 cm in length) to which necrotic membrane is adherent. Deeper layers of the intestinal wall show evidence of chronic inflammation (Figure 36.7).

Pathogenesis. Clostridium perfringens has a very short generation time, and type C organisms can multiply to numbers approaching $10^8$–$10^9$ per gram of contents in only a few hours (Ohnuna et al. 1992). Attachment to jejunal epithelial cells at villous apices (Arbuckle 1972; Walker et al. 1980) is followed by desquamation of these
cells and proliferation of the organism along the basement membrane. Necrosis of the villous lamina propria is extensive, and hemorrhage accompanies necrosis. The necrotic zone advances to involve crypts, muscularis mucosa and submucosa, and occasionally the muscular layers. Perforation of intestinal wall leads to emphysema (sometimes with thrombosis) in muscle layers, beneath the peritoneum, and in mesenteric lymph nodes. Bacteria remain adhered to necrotic villi or are shed into intestinal lumen with cell debris and blood, and sporulation may be observed (Kubo and Watase 1985).

The lethal and necrotizing beta toxin (CPB) is the key factor in pathogenesis of type C infections (Warrack 1963; Hogh 1967a). Toxoid vaccines protect against infection, but it is worth noting that these are crude, containing many clostridial antigens other than beta toxoid. Experimental evidence for the primacy of CPB in pathogenesis is equivocal. Disease was reproduced by oral administration of toxin, but in pigs subsequently found to be infected with the organism (Field and Goodwin 1959). Typical lesions appeared in gut loops inoculated with broth cultures of type C (Bergeland 1972), but necrosis was not produced by inoculation with CPB alone. There are numerous potentially confounding factors in much of the published literature, including use of older pigs as experimental animals; trypsin secretion deficiencies and colostral protease inhibitors probably account for susceptibility of piglets less than 4 days old.

Death is primarily due to effects of intestinal damage and toxemia. CPB has been detected in both intestinal contents and peritoneal fluid of affected pigs. Toxin-containing preparations administered IV in high doses cause sudden death, and lower doses cause polioencephalomalacia, adrenal cortical necrosis, nephrosis, and pulmonary edema. Hypoglycemia and secondary bacteremia due to C. perfringens or E. coli may raise the mortality rate (Field and Goodwin 1959; Hogh 1967b).

Beta2 toxin (CPB2), produced by most or all porcine type C isolates, may also play a role in pathogenesis (see below, under “Type A Enteritis”).

Diagnosis. Compatible clinical signs, pattern of mortality, and nature of gross and microscopic lesions are sufficient basis for a presumptive diagnosis of type C enteritis. Diagnosis of chronic disease may depend upon a more-detailed history of infection in the herd, elimination of other causes of nectrotic enteritis, and detection of type C organisms in lesions. Coccidiosis (Isospora suis) and other causes of villous atrophy, such as rotavirus infection, TGE, and porcine epidemic diarrhea, may cause lesions which become colonized by C. perfringens type C. It is especially important in subacute and chronic cases to distinguish type C infections from those caused by C. perfringens type A, and this can be done only by bacteriologic culture and toxin detection or genotyping.

Laboratory aspects of diagnosis include bacteriologic culture and examination of smears of intestinal contents and mucosal lesions and histological sections of intestine for large, gram-positive rods. Clostridium perfringens is not an efficient sporulator, but ovoid-to-eccentric spores are sometimes observed. Colonies after 24 hours’ incubation on horse or bovine blood agar are usually 3–5 mm in diameter, grayish, and circular; on primary isolation, these may be mixed with smaller colonies, which are smoother and have a gumdrop-like morphology. The organism usually produces an inner, complete zone of hemolysis, caused by theta toxin (perfringolysin O, PFO), and a less-complete outer zone caused by CPA. Identification to species is based in addition upon biochemical characteristics and production of toxins.

Microscopic lesions are almost pathognomonic. Diagnosis can be confirmed by demonstration of CPB in eluates of hemorrhagic intestinal contents or in peritoneal fluid. Mouse protection tests are seldom used today, having been replaced by enzyme immunoassays (Havard et al. 1992). PCR methods to detect genes for the major toxins are an acceptable substitute for toxin detection in typing of isolates, and can provide useful supportive findings in diagnosis (Buogo et al. 1995; Songer and Meer 1996; Meer and Songer 1997).

In the absence of methodology to detect toxins in pathologic specimens, bacterial isolation and genotyping are useful aids in establishing a diagnosis. In most cases, type C is isolated in large numbers and in pure culture from scrapings of the intestinal mucosa. Results may be misleading in rare situations, in that type C can be found as a secondary agent, colonizing lesions of TGE and other viral diseases. Cultures may be negative in chronic cases, and when positive usually yield a mixture of type C and type A organisms. Thus, it is important to determine genotype or phenotype of multiple primary isolates. Diagnosis must, in some cases, be based upon
findings in the herd as a whole, rather than from examination of individual diseased animals.

**Treatment and Prevention.** Treatment is of little use in animals with clinical signs (Szabo and Szent-Ivanyi 1957; Hogh 1967b), and prophylaxis is the preferred approach. Passive immunization with equine antitoxin can be useful for protection of litters of nonimmune sows in an outbreak, and protection may last as long as 3 weeks (Ripley and Gush 1983). Antitoxin should be injected parenterally as soon after birth as possible. Oral antimicrobials, such as ampicillin or amoxicillin, may also be given prophylactically, beginning immediately after birth and continuing daily for 3 days. There are reports of antimicrobial resistance in *C. perfringens*, and tetracycline resistance plasmids have been identified (Rood et al. 1985). However, the organism remains uniformly susceptible to penicillins. Ceftriaxone may be an alternative for treatment of piglets, and bacitracin methylene disalicylate can be administered to sows before and after farrowing to prevent infection of piglets.

Prevention is best achieved by vaccination of sows with type C toxoid, at breeding or midgestation and 2–3 weeks before farrowing (Kennedy et al. 1977). Commercial toxoid vaccines are quite effective, and instituting a vaccination program usually eliminates the disease within one farrowing cycle. Tenfold reductions in mortality are common (Ripley and Gush 1983), assuming normal responses of the sow to vaccination (Matishek and McGrinley 1986) and ingestion of adequate colostrum. Booster injections should be given about 3 weeks before subsequent farrowings. Toxoid may also be of value in protecting weaned pigs (Meszaros and Pesti 1965).

**Type A Enteritis.** *Clostridium perfringens* type A is part of the normal flora of the swine intestine (Mansson and Smith 1962), but is also a cause of enteric disease, both in neonatal piglets and, occasionally, in weaned pigs (Jestin et al. 1985). Disease has been reported worldwide (Amtsberg et al. 1976; Ramisse et al. 1979; Nabuurs et al. 1983), although it may be that, under the right conditions, any strain of type A can cause disease. Type A is ubiquitous in gut contents and in soil, although most of these strains are *cpb2* negative. Thus, discussion of the epidemiology of type A enteric infections amounts to little (or nothing) more than speculation.

As noted previously, *C. perfringens* is an inefficient sporulator, but spores are nonetheless likely to be important in maintaining the organism in the environment. The organism can also be isolated from pig feed.

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** Piglets develop creamy or pasty diarrhea within 48 hours of birth, displaying rough hair coat and fecal staining of the perineum (Johannsen et al. 1993a). Diarrhea lasts for up to 5 days, and feces become mucoid and sometimes pink. Most piglets recover, but are stunted, sometimes through the entire growing and finishing period. Disease has been reproduced in gnotobiotic colostrum-deprived and conventional pigs (Johannsen et al. 1993).

On postmortem, small intestine is flaccid, thin-walled, and gas-filled, with watery contents and no blood. Mucosal inflammation is mild, occasionally with adherent necrotic material. Large intestine may be distended, with whitish, pasty contents, but without lesions. Microscopic lesions in piglets may include superficial villous tip necrosis and accumulation of fibrin, but villi may also be completely normal in appearance (Figure 36.8). Jejunal and ileal lesions may be heavily colonized with *C. perfringens* (Nabuurs et al. 1983), although it is common to find masses of organisms in the lumen (Johannsen et al. 1993c). Capillaries may be dilated, but there is no hemorrhage.

Mucosal necrosis and villous atrophy are superficial in infections by enterotoxigenic *C. perfringens* (Nabuurs et al. 1983; Estrada-Correa and Taylor 1989; Collins et al. 1989). Signs in experimental infections range from creamy diarrhea and emaciation with low mortality to profuse, bloodstained diarrhea, enteritis, and death (Olubunmi and Taylor 1985). Morphology of small intestinal villi and enterocytes are normal, and there are no colonic or cecal lesions, but numerous spore-
bearing, gram-positive rods are found in the lumen or apposed to epithelial cells at tips of villi.

Enterotoxigenic strains have been linked to diarrheal disease in growing pigs, and in these cases onset and the severity of diarrhea correlate with presence of CPE in feces. Affected pigs develop serum antibodies to CPE (Jestin et al. 1985).

Pathogenesis. Type A can be isolated from any normal piglet’s first feces, and although pathogenesis of infections is poorly understood, it is likely multifactorial. Numbers in ileum and jejunum reach $10^8$–$10^9$ per gram of contents, producing CPA, CPB2, and possibly other toxins. Attachment and invasion do not occur in experimental infections (Johannsen et al. 1993c). Intestinal epithelial necrosis occurs in experimental infections, but may not be apparent in natural cases; absence of gross and microscopic lesions suggests that type A enteritis is mainly a secretory diarrhea.

There is no direct information on the role of specific toxins in pathogenesis. There are no consistent changes in gut loops inoculated with purified CPA, but slight edema of villi occurs when 6-hour-old piglets are given $80–800$ mouse lethal doses (Johannsen et al. 1993c). The specific role of CPB2 in pathogenesis is unknown, but its strong association with enteric disease in pigs suggests that it is at least a marker of virulence (Gilbert et al. 1997; Herholz et al. 1999; Bueschel et al. 2003). Few isolates from normal pigs contain cpb2, but >90% from porcine neonatal enteritis strains are positive, and the gene is rarely silent (Bueschel et al. 2003). CPE causes villous necrosis and fluid secretion into intestinal lumen. Anti-CPE antibody is present in colostrum, and disease associated with CPE commonly occurs in weaned pigs after maternal antibody disappears (Estrada Correa and Taylor 1989).

Diagnosis. Diagnosis of type A enteritis is seldom unequivocal. The most useful findings are compatible clinical signs and isolation of large numbers of C. perfringens from affected jejunum or ileum. Genotyping almost invariably reveals type A organisms with cpb2. Microscopic examination may reveal organisms intimately associated with the mucosa, or they may be massed in the lumen. Detection of CPA in gut contents is also supportive, but tests are not widely available. Commercial assays for CPE are prone to false positives, but diarrhea has been associated with fecal CPE titers >1:32 (Popoff and Jestin 1985). Failure to demonstrate other agents is also supportive.

Treatment and Prevention. Treatment with antimicrobials is more likely to be successful than in cases of type C infection. Vaccination against type A is possible via custom biologics, and products available in some countries for immunization of other species are used off-label in pigs. Commercial vaccines do not include CPE toxoid. Growth promoters, such as avoparcin (Taylor and Estrada Correa 1988) and salinomycin (Kyrilakis et al. 1997), have been used in feed, and bacitracin methylene disalicylate can be used prophylactically in sows or for treatment of piglets (Madsen 1995).

Clostridium difficile-Associated Disease (CDAD)

Etiology and Epidemiology. Human C. difficile-associated disease (CDAD) accounts for one-fourth of all cases of antibiotic-associated diarrhea (Bartlett 1992; Bartlett et al. 1978; Borriello and Wilcox 1998; Johnson et al. 1999). Spores germinate in ileum, cecum, and colon (Kelly et al. 1984), and vegetative cells fill empty niches and produce toxins. Disease presents as diarrhea, colitis, pseudomembranous colitis, or fulminant colitis (Kelly et al. 1984).

CDAD also occurs in antibiotic-treated hamsters (Libby et al. 1982) and guinea pigs and neonatal foals (Jones et al. 1988), and is emerging as a cause of enteritis in neonatal pigs. More than one-third of piglets submitted for diagnosis of enteritis in major swine-producing areas of the U.S. have uncomplicated CDAD and mixed infections occur in a further 20–25% (Songer et al. 2000). Prevalence in a production system was 47.6% on a per litter basis, and 90% of herds were infected (J.G. Songer and K.W. Post, unpublished observations).

Clinical Signs, Lesions, and Pathogenesis. Typical CDAD affects piglets 1–7 days of age born to gilts or multiparous sows. They present with a history of early-onset scours, occasionally with respiratory distress and sudden death (with hydrothorax and/or ascites). Gross lesions usually include mesocolonic edema (Figure 36.9), and large intestines may be filled with pasty-to-watery yellowish feces. Extensive sampling in CDAD-affected herds has revealed that two-thirds of litters and more
than one-third of individual pigs are toxin positive in an infected barn. Piglets without enteric signs may be toxin positive (Yaeger et al. 2002; Waters et al. 1998). Focal suppuration in colonic lamina propria is the hallmark lesion, and colonic serosal and mesenteric edema and infiltration of mononuclear inflammatory cells and neutrophils into the edematous areas is common. Segmental erosion of colonic mucosal epithelium and volcano lesions (exudation of neutrophils and fibrin into lumen) may occur (Figure 36.10) (Songer et al. 2000). Pathogenesis of CDAD in domestic animals is likely mediated by the monomeric toxins A (TcdA, 308 kDa, an enterotoxin) and B (TcdB, 270 kDa, a cytotoxin).

Diagnosis. The gold standard for diagnosis of porcine CDAD is detection of TcdA and TcdB in feces or colonic contents. The reference method is measurement of neutralizable cytotoxicity in monolayers of Chinese hamster ovary cells, but most laboratories now use commercially available enzyme immunoassays. Culture for C. difficile can be somewhat challenging, in that this organism is more strictly anaerobic than some clostridia (Songer et al. 2000; Post et al. 2002). Most isolates are fully toxigenic, but some produce only TcdB or no toxins at all. Gross lesions are minimal, but careful microscopic examination of colon and cecum reveals suppurative foci, as described above. Colitis due to other causes is relatively rare.

Treatment and Prevention. Immunoprophylaxis of CDAD in domestic animals has not been studied, but precedent in other species suggests that immunity will be antitoxic. Antibodies against TcdA prevent toxin binding in mouse and hamster models, eliminating secretion, inflammation, and clinical disease (Allo et al. 1979). AntiTcdB antibodies also participate (Kink and Williams 1998; Viscidi et al. 1983). No commercial product is available, but some have attempted to prevent CDAD by use of custom biologics. Results of in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility testing suggest that virginiamycin administered to sows before and after farrowing might be useful for prophylaxis, and tylosin may be effective in treatment of piglets.

### CELLULITIS AND GAS GANGRENE

Clostridial wound infections are characterized by acute inflammation, edema, and extensive tissue emphysema and local tissue necrosis. Inflammation spreads rapidly from the primary site, often with terminal generalized sepsis. *Clostridium septicum, C. perfringens* type A, *C. novyi*, and *C. chauvoei* are most likely to cause porcine clostridial cellulitis and gas gangrene.

#### Clostridium septicum Infection (Malignant Edema)

**Etiology and Epidemiology.** *Clostridium septicum* appears to be the most common etiologic agent of clostridial cellulitis and gas gangrene of swine. It is an anaerobic gram-positive rod, which forms oval subterminal spores, is found in soil and feces (Finegold et al. 1983; Kahn 1924; Princewill 1985; Princewill and Oakley 1976), and is a frequent postmortem invader (MacLennan 1962). Incidence of malignant edema is particularly high on certain premises that have had large populations of livestock for many years, suggesting that there is a build up of spore numbers in the environment of these farms.

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** *Clostridium septicum* causes malignant edema, which has an acute course and is often fatal in less than 24 hours. Hemorrhage, edema, and necrosis develop as the infection spreads along mus-
cular fascial planes. Common sites include the inguinal and ventral abdominal region, the head and ventral cervical area, and the shoulder. There is reluctance to bear weight on affected limbs, and skin overlying the swollen area has a blotchy reddish-purple discoloration. Tissues that are initially painful and warm, with pitting edema, become rapidly crepitant and cold. In the terminal stage, affected swine lie in lateral recumbency and commonly make a groaning noise during forced expiration.

Swelling at the primary infection site (Figure 36.11) overlies subcutaneous edema that is colorless with focal hemorrhages or uniformly sanguinous. Adjacent skeletal muscle may be edematous, with essentially normal color, or may be black, dry, and crepitant (Figure 36.12). Affected muscle may have a butyric odor comparable to that in ruminant blackleg (C. chauvoei infection). Regional lymph nodes are enlarged and hemorrhagic, and may be emphysematous. Acute fibrohemorrhagic peritonitis is common, the spleen is slightly enlarged, and there is moderate pulmonary edema and congestion. Varying amounts of blood-tinged fluid and fibrin may be found in the pleural cavity and pericardial sac.

Postmortem accumulation of subcutaneous gas progresses until the subcutis of the entire carcass is emphysematous. Focal postmortem lysis of the liver, evidenced by grayish-tan foci, are evident within several hours after death. These foci become confluent, giving the liver a uniform tan color with numerous gas bubbles. Microscopically, edematous subcutis contains large numbers of degenerating acute inflammatory cells and bacteria. Septic thrombi in subcutaneous veins and lymphatics are commonly found (Figure 36.13). Affected skeletal muscle fibers undergo coagulation necrosis with fragmentation and lysis, and bacteria are readily found between degenerating muscle fibers (Figure 36.14).

Pathogenesis. Most cases result from wounds, and tissue damage at the site of inoculation favors initial establishment of the infection. Lesions are largely the result of the necrotizing effect of alpha toxin. Hyaluronidase 620 SECTION III BACTERIAL DISEASES

36.11. C. septicum infection. The grossly swollen area involves the entire left rear leg and extends cranially to the umbilicus. The overlying skin has a blotchy reddish-purple discoloration.

36.12. Rear leg of a pig with C. septicum infection. There is prominent subcutaneous edema. The infection extends into the ham, which has foci of black, dry necrotic muscle.

36.13. Acute septic thrombophlebitis involving the subcutaneous vein of a pig with C. septicum infection. The thrombus contains many long slender rods and degenerating leukocytes (H&E).

36.14. C. septicum infection of the rear leg of a pig. Skeletal muscle fibers are undergoing fragmentation and lysis. The adjacent connective tissues are edematous and emphysematous and contain bacteria and degenerating inflammatory cells (H&E).
may cause disappearance of the endomysium (Aikat and Dible 1960), which may aid spread of the infection through muscle. Toxemia is probably the ultimate cause of death. Alpha toxin is a pore-former (Ballard et al. 1993) and intravenous infusion specifically affects coronary and pulmonary circulation and causes pulmonary edema (Kellaway et al. 1941).

**Diagnosis.** Presumptive diagnosis is based upon gross lesions. Laboratory confirmation is based on pathologic findings, exclusion of other diseases, and identification of the organism. Bacteria are seen in direct smears of affected subcutis or muscle, and fluorescent-labeled antibody staining is a rapid and accurate method to positively identify C. septicum (Batty and Walker 1963). Bacteriologic culture is an alternative method, but is time-consuming and often less reliable than immunofluorescence (Martig 1966). Swarming of C. septicum may cause small numbers of the organism to appear predominant, resulting in a false-positive diagnosis.

**Treatment and Prevention.** Prevention is preferred to treatment, given the fulminant clinical course. It is important to practice good sanitation and prevent injuries. Infection may be iatrogenic, and adequate sanitary procedures should be followed when making injections or performing surgery. On premises where the disease recurs, immunization could be considered, although this is uncommon in swine. Antibodies to somatic and toxin antigens provide lifelong immunity, although there are differences in immunogenicity by vaccine and host species (Green et al. 1987). Treatment with antibiotics may be successful if given early (Zeller 1956). Experimental prophylactic use of tetracyclines, penicillin, or chloramphenicol prevents disease in mice, and fluorescent-labeled antibody staining is a rapid and accurate method to positively identify C. septicum (Batty and Walker 1963). Bacteriologic culture is an alternative method, but is time-consuming and often less reliable than immunofluorescence (Martig 1966). Swarming of C. septicum may cause small numbers of the organism to appear predominant, resulting in a false-positive diagnosis.

**Clostridium perfringens Type A Infection (Gas Gangrene)**

**Etiology and Epidemiology.** Most cases of C. perfringens-associated myonecrosis are apparently caused by type A strains. The source is usually endogenous, and few cases are nontraumatic. High intraherd incidence in young piglets is often a complication of injection of iron-containing preparations for prevention of nutritional anemia. Anecdotal evidence supports a view that such injections create a tissue microenvironment that favors growth of C. perfringens (Jaartsveld et al. 1962; Taylor and Bergeland 1992) in pure or mixed culture. The case fatality rate approaches 50%.

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** Affected animals have marked swelling of the entire affected limb, and in the case of piglets with iatrogenic infections, the swelling extends cranially to the umbilical area. The skin overly-

Pathogenesis. Spores germinate and vegetative cells multiply in ischemic tissue and infection spreads to healthy muscle. CPA and PFO toxins play local and systemic synergistic roles in myonecrosis (Awad et al. 2000), although the entirety of our knowledge in this area comes from studies in mice. The protective effect of CPA-containing toxoids against gas gangrene has been long known, and antibodies against native CPA and its C-terminus protect mice against challenge with toxin or multiple LD50 of spores (Titball et al. 1993; Williamson and Titball 1993).

**Diagnosis.** Diagnosis is based on clinical and pathologic findings, together with isolation and identification of C. perfringens. Gram-stained smears of the lesion are helpful in estimating the relative numbers of bacteria. Isolation of the organism is easily accomplished by anaerobic incubation for 18–24 hours on blood agar or egg yolk agar.

**Prevention and Treatment.** Prevention of gas gangrene requires prevention of deep, contaminated wounds and prompt treatment of any such wounds with systemic penicillins. Treatment may be successful if instituted early in the course of the disease. Infection of mice was prevented by administration of penicillin coincident with C. perfringens, but if the antimicrobial was delayed by as little as 3 hours, the survival rate was appreciably lowered (Hac and Habert 1943). Clinically ill pigs may recover following penicillin injection (Jaartsveld et al. 1962).

Specific immunization of domestic animals against infection by type A in North America is focused at present upon anti-CPA immunity, and both toxoids and bacterin:toxoids are widely available elsewhere in the world.
**Clostridium chauvoei Infection (Blackleg)**

**Etiology and Epidemiology.** *Clostridium chauvoei* is a pleomorphic, anaerobic, gram-positive rod that readily forms central to subterminal spores. It causes blackleg (Burke and Opeskin 1999; Kuhnert et al. 1996), an emphysematous, necrotizing myositis of ruminants and other domestic species (refer to Table 36.1), which resembles malignant edema.

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** Pigs are generally quite resistant to *C. chauvoei* infection, and there have been very few substantiated reports of disease in swine. Blackleg has occurred in swine kept under poor hygienic conditions on premises with previous losses of cattle from blackleg (Sterne and Edwards 1955; Gualandi 1955), although *C. septicum* may also be involved in these cases. Disease may follow consumption by swine of meat from blackleg-affected calves (Eggleston 1950), and in these cases, swelling of the face and throat were prominent. Lesions are perhaps more common in limbs (Mavenyenga and Matope 1995). Signs include high fever, anorexia, depression, and lameness, with crepitant lesions and sudden death. Lesions are often dry and emphysematous at the center, but edematous, hemorrhages and sudden death. Lesions are often referred to as “aerochocolate liver.” Its bronze color and the presence of large numbers of small gas bubbles are common (Duran and Walton 1997). The organism can be demonstrated in various tissues, including liver, heart, and blood.

**Pathogenesis.** Pathogenesis of *C. chauvoei* infection in pigs is poorly understood. Infection may be by the oral route, rather than beginning as a wound infection. The organisms may lie dormant in various tissues until a microenvironment favorable for their growth is generated, such as by tissue damage from bruising. The roles of alpha toxin, which is necrotizing, hemolytic, and lethal, and beta toxin, a DNase (Ramachandran 1969), remain undefined. Flagellar expression is associated with virulence, and phase variation occurs in motility and flagellation (Tamura et al. 1995); flagella are apparently protective antigens (Kojima et al. 2000; Verpoort et al. 1966).

**Diagnosis.** A diagnosis of blackleg can be made only by bacterial identification, due to similarities in the clinical presentation and pathology of *C. septicum* and *C. chauvoei* infections. The fluorescent antibody test, applied to direct impression smears of infected tissue, is a rapid and practical method of identification (Batty and Walker 1963). Bacterial isolation may be difficult in decomposing specimens, since *C. chauvoei* is easily overgrown by other bacteria, including *C. septicum.*

**Treatment and Prevention.** Prevention of *C. chauvoei* infection involves minimizing exposure to the organism. *Clostridium chauvoei* is not a common soil organism, but anecdotal evidence suggests that keeping swine on known contaminated premises or allowing them to eat carcasses of ruminants dead of blackleg are risk factors.

---

**Clostridium novyi Infection (Sudden Death)**

**Etiology and Epidemiology.** *Clostridium novyi* is an anaerobic, spore-forming, gram-positive rod that is generally the largest of the clostridia encountered in swine. Types A and B are involved in swine infections (Itoh et al. 1987; Duran and Walton 1997).

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** *Clostridium novyi* has been associated with sudden death in swine (Batty et al. 1964), with unusually rapid postmortem decomposition. Necropsy findings include rapid postmortem tympany, submandibular swellings, bloodstained fluid in pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities, serosal hemorrhages, and splenic enlargement. The hallmark is perhaps marked hepatic degeneration and emphysema, often referred to as “aerochocolate liver.” Its bronze color and the presence of large numbers of small gas bubbles are common (Duran and Walton 1997). The organism can be demonstrated in various tissues, including liver, heart, and blood.

The disease affects large finishing pigs and breeding stock, principally sows, and was recorded more frequently in spring, in older, periparturient sows of parity greater than 4 in moderate to good condition (Duran and Walton 1997).

**Pathogenesis.** Livers of normal sows often yield *C. novyi* when subjected to bacteriologic culture, although the route by which the organism reaches the liver has not been documented. The conditions under which dormant spores germinate are also unknown. Pathogenesis is likely mediated by the lethal, necrotizing alpha toxin. A so-called large clostridial cytotoxin (Busch et al. 2001; Selzer et al. 1996), it is produced by strains of types A and B. Beta toxin, a phospholipase related to CPA of *C. perfringens*, is produced in small quantities by type B strains. Systemic effects, with acute or peracute death, follow dissemination of alpha toxin (Elder and Miles 1957). Cardio-, neuro-, histo-, and hepatotoxic effects result in edema, serosal effusion, and hepatic necrosis (Elder and Miles 1957; Cotran 1977; Cotran 1977; Rutter and Collee 1967).

**Treatment and Prevention.** The disease can be controlled by reducing the incidence of pneumonias, metritis, and enteritis in affected groups of pigs, coupled with vaccination of finishing pigs and sows against the disease using alum-adjuvanted vaccines such as those readily available for sheep. Zinc bacitracin (200 ppm in feed twice daily) may reduce mortality in sows (Marco 1995). Prompt carcass disposal by incineration or deep burial may reduce spore contamination of the environment.

**Diagnosis.** Diagnosis of *C. novyi* infection in swine is difficult, since suspect cases are usually found dead, and the interval between death and necropsy introduces the possibility of postmortem invasion. Other possible causes of death should be excluded, but disease should
be suspected when there is a history of sudden death and typical necropsy findings. Subcutaneous edema is particularly notable in cervical and inguinal regions. Pulmonary edema and tracheal froth, serofibrinous or serosanguinous exudates in pericardial and pleural cavities, and unusually rapid decomposition with accumulation of gas in the liver are all common. Gas bubbles in the liver in an otherwise fresh carcass are particularly significant (Duran and Walton 1997).

The organism is rapidly identified by fluorescent antibody staining of direct smears of infected tissue. It is the most fastidious of the clostridia commonly encountered in swine, but it can be isolated (Itoh et al. 1987; Duran and Walton 1997; J.G. Songer and K.W. Post, unpublished observations).

Treatment and Prevention. Given that definition of the syndrome is sudden death, treatment is not a factor in management of the disease. It may be possible to prevent disease by feeding bacitracin methylene disalicylate in the periparturient period. Prevention may also be achievable by use of bacterin:toxoids or toxoids, and second-generation vaccines may be based upon native or recombinant alpha (Amimoto et al. 1998) or beta toxoids.

**NEUROTOXIGENIC CLOSTRIDIA**

**Tetanus**

Tetanus is caused by *C. tetani* and is characterized by toxin-mediated, uncontrollable spasms of voluntary muscles. Swine of all ages may be affected, but most cases involve young pigs and originate with castration wounds or umbilical infection.

**Etiology and Epidemiology.** *Clostridium tetani* is a slender, anaerobic, gram-positive rod. It forms terminal spores, which are ubiquitous in the environment. Spores often enter via traumatic wounds, including those from tail-docking. Castration is a risk factor for infection, and sows may be infected by contamination of uterine prolapses.

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** Tetanus is characterized by generalized skeletal muscle spasms. The incubation period ranges from several days to several weeks. In general, cases with a short incubation period run a more acute and fulminating course with a higher fatality rate than cases with a long incubation period.

The earliest sign is a stiffened gait, but the disease progresses rapidly over 1–2 days. Ears become erect, the tail extends straight out posteriorly, the head is slightly elevated, and there may be protrusion of the nictitating membrane. The pig becomes incapable of walking, and the skeletal muscles are very firm on palpation. Ultimately, the pig lies in lateral recumbency in opisthotonus, with both thoracic and pelvic limbs extended and directed posteriorly (Figure 36.15). Tetanic spasms proceed from periodic to continuous and are noticeably heightened by sudden sensory stimuli, such as noise, touch, or movement. Tachycardia and increased respiration rate are common terminal signs, and white froth may be present around the mouth and external nares.

Many factors may contribute to the eventual death of the affected pig. In acute cases, respiratory failure resulting from severe skeletal muscle spasms is likely to be the single most important factor. Prolonged recumbency and nutrient deprivation may be factors in animals with a relatively long survival time. No lesions specific for tetanus are found at necropsy. Conspicuous abrasions of the skin over pressure points may be seen, and there may be pulmonary congestion and edema.

**Pathogenesis.** Development of tetanus depends upon the presence of *C. tetani* in a tissue environment that will support spore germination, vegetative cell growth, and toxin production. Spores usually gain entrance via a deep penetrating wound. Spore germination is facilitated by the presence of foreign bodies or facultative anaerobes which reduce Redox potential (Eh) in tissue. Bacterial multiplication and tetanospasmin (TeNT) production is enhanced by tetanolysin, a cholesterol-binding toxin, which inhibits neutrophil and macrophage chemotaxis and causes local tissue necrosis. Spores may remain latent in healed wounds for 10 years or more. *Clostridium tetani* is not invasive and remains localized at the primary site of infection. The most commonly reported location of tetanus infection in swine is castration wounds (Kaplan 1943).

Toxin-containing vesicles pass by retrograde axonal transport along the motor nerve fibers from neuromuscular junctions at the site of the infection, acting eventually on the inhibitory neurons in the ventral horn of the spinal cord. The toxin consists of a light chain that is enzymatic (a zinc-dependent endopeptidase) and a heavy chain that binds to receptors. The L chain cleaves synaptobrevin, a protein involved in the exocytosis of neurotransmitters by neurons, resulting in tetany.

36.15. Generalized tetanus in a 10-day-old pig that apparently resulted from umbilical infection. The ears are erect and the limbs are rigidly extended.
Diagnosis. Diagnosis is based upon typical clinical signs. An obvious area of infection (e.g., a castration wound or umbilical abscess) may be apparent. The organism may be isolated by bacteriologic culture or identified by immunofluorescence (Batty and Walker 1963), but this is usually not necessary if there is adequate ante-mortem clinical observation of the affected animals.

Treatment and Prevention. There is no practical way to eliminate spores from soil, so control is directed toward prevention of wound contamination by soil or feces. Good sanitation in the farrowing house, treatment of the umbilical cord with antiseptics soon after birth, and prompt clipping of the canine incisors are recommended preventive measures against neonatal tetanus. Sharp objects that may cause skin wounds should be removed from the environment. Because most tetanus in swine follows castration, particular emphasis should be placed on proper surgical technique, with the provision of clean quarters for the pigs after castration to prevent undue contamination of the castration wound by soil or feces.

Passive immunization with tetanus antitoxin, prophylactic use of antibiotics, and/or active immunization with tetanus toxoid may be indicated. Prophylactic use of large doses of long-acting penicillin or tetracycline may be superior to antitoxin in preventing experimental tetanus in mice, if treatment is instituted within a few hours after infection (Veronesi 1966). Active immunity may be obtained from a single injection of alum-precipitated tetanus toxoid, and excellent protection for a year or more can be expected if three doses are given several weeks apart.

Prognosis is poor, and there is little evidence that treatment by currently practical methods is of real benefit (Mihaljevic 1966; Kaplan 1943). Various suggested treatments include reopening castration wounds and flushing them with hydrogen peroxide, administration of antitoxin in an attempt to neutralize toxin not already fixed by nervous tissue, administration of antibiotics, and the use of tranquilizers or barbiturates as muscle relaxants.

**Botulism**

*Clostridium botulinum* produces eight types of botulinum neurotoxin (BoNT) (Smith 1979; Linial 1995; Smith 1977) which have unique geographic distribution and species susceptibility patterns (Smith 1977; Shapiro et al. 1998; Smith and Milligan 1979; CDC 1998; Hatheway 1990, 1995). Thus, botulism is a toxicosis characterized by rapidly progressive flaccid paralysis. Swine are highly resistant to botulism, and there are few authentic reports of naturally occurring botulism in this species.

Etiology and Epidemiology. Botulism spores are ubiquitous in soil throughout the U.S. (Smith 1979; Whitlock and Williams 1999; Kelch et al. 2000). Disease in other species is associated with forage (Kinde et al. 1991; Whitlock 1997; Wichtel and Whitlock 1991; Ricketts et al. 1984; Franzen et al. 1992; Kelly et al. 1994), contamination of grain by decomposing animal carcasses (Whitlock and Williams 1999; Divers et al. 1986; Enfors et al. 1975; Galey et al. 2000), or transport of BoNT by ravens or crows feeding on a decomposing carcass (Schoenbaum et al. 2000). Type D botulism has been linked to pica, in which phosphorous-deficient animals consume bones of confederates dead of botulism (Dobereiner et al. 1992). Prevalence may be associated with the quantity of organic matter in the soil, and factors such as fertilization with manure may increase bacterial numbers. Botulism in swine is rare, so there are few recorded toxin sources, but type C disease due to consumption of dead fish (Beiers and Simmons 1967) and swill and decomposing brewers waste (Doiurtre 1967) have been reported.

The organism is a strictly anaerobic, gram-positive bacillus (Smith and Holdeman 1968), which forms oval, usually subterminal, spores. Growth is perhaps optimal at about 30°C.

Eating habits of nonconfined pigs should make them likely candidates for botulism, but there appears to be innate resistance when toxin is administered by the oral route. The swine intestine may have a low permeability for botulinum toxin (Dack and Gibbard 1926b; Scheibner 1955; Smith et al. 1971).

Clinical Signs and Lesions. The latent period between consumption of toxic material and onset of signs ranges from 8 hours to 3 days or more, largely determined by the amount of toxin consumed (Beiers and Simmons 1967; Smintzis and Dunn 1950). Initial signs are weakness, incoordination, and staggering, with weakness appearing first in the forelegs, followed by involvement of the hindlegs and general motor paralysis and dilation of the pupils of the eyes (Smith et al. 1971). The clinical effect is progressive flaccid paralysis of voluntary muscles, which manifests in the end as lateral recumbency with complete flaccidity. Other clinical signs include anorexia, reduced vision or complete blindness, aphony, excessive salivation, involuntary urination, and deep labored breathing (Smintzis and Dunn 1950; Beiers and Simmons 1967).

No specific lesions are found at necropsy. Significant findings might include presence in the stomach of the material suspected as the toxin source and the occurrence of aspiration pneumonia as a result of paralysis of the muscles of deglutition (Beiers and Simmons 1967).

Pathogenesis. Botulinum toxin relative potency varies among toxin types, and amounts of toxin produced varies with strain. Botulism occurs after ingestion of preformed BoNT or by dissemination of toxin from a wound or focus of clostridial multiplication in the gastrointestinal tract (Hatheway 1995; Swerczek 1980;
Botulinum toxin is composed of an enzymatic light chain (a zinc-dependent endopeptidase) and a heavy chain that binds to receptors and facilitates internalization. The light chain cleaves proteins involved in exocytosis of neurotransmitters by neurons. Toxin types B, D, and F cleave synaptobrevin, types A and E act on SNAP-25, and type C toxin acts on syntaxin, at the myoneural junction, preventing muscular contraction. Death is generally ascribed to asphyxia resulting from paralysis of the muscles of respiration.

**Diagnosis.** Toxin is detected inconsistently in serum or plasma of acutely affected animals, and this may be a manifestation of relative sensitivity of various species. Gross or histological lesions are usually absent, although inhalation pneumonia may occur due to an abnormal deglutition reflex. Affected animals are dysphagic and will usually have relatively empty gastrointestinal tracts. A diagnosis of botulism should be considered inafebrile, alert animals with progressive weakness and recumbency. Because the pig apparently is quite highly resistant to botulism, a diagnosis should be made only after thorough investigation and exclusion of other possible diagnoses (Beiers and Simmons 1967).

Isolation and identification of *C. botulinum* may also be of some value in establishing the diagnosis (Narayan 1967; Muller 1967; Yamakawa et al. 1992).

**Treatment and Prevention.** If botulism is suspected, an effort should be made to find the toxin source and prevent further consumption of any remaining suspect material by the herd.

**Antitoxin** is the only specific treatment for botulism, and it has been effective in reducing mortality in humans when given after consumption of food suspected to contain toxin (Lamanna and Carr 1967; Burgen et al. 1949). Therapy in animals demands use of polyvalent antitoxins that incorporate the types most commonly present in a geographic area. Therapy aimed at reducing continued absorption of toxin from the intestine (administration of magnesium sulfate) may be helpful.

Prevention requires eliminating opportunities to consume potentially toxic material, such as spoiled garbage and decomposing animal tissue. Prophylactic immunization with toxoids is not practical in swine because of the infrequent occurrence of the disease.

**REFERENCES**

Aikat BK, Dible JH. 1960. The local and general effects of cultures and culture filtrates of *Clostridium oedematis*, *Cl. septicum*, *Cl. sporogenes*, and *Cl. histolyticum*. J Pathol 79:277.


Arbuckle JBR. 1972. The attachment of *Clostridium welchii* (*Cl. perfringens*) type C to intestinal villi of pigs. Pathol 106:65.


Batty I, Walker PD. 1963. Differentiation of *Clostridium septicum* and *Clostridium chauvoei* by the use of fluorescent-labelled antibod-


Busch C, Schomig K, Hofmann F, Aikat BK, Dible JH. 1960. The local and general effects of cultures and culture filtrates of *Clostridium oedematis*, *Cl. septicum*, *Cl. sporogenes*, and *Cl. histolyticum*. J Pathol 79:277.


Songer JG, Meer RR. 1996. Genotyping of Clostridium perfringens by polymerase chain reaction is a useful adjunct to diagnosis of clostridial enteric disease in animals. Anaerobe 2:197–203.


The bacterium *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, a small gram-positive rod, is a primary pathogen of swine and turkeys as well as a sporadic cause of disease in humans and other species. It is the causative agent of swine erysipelas (SE) (Sneath et al. 1986), which is manifested most commonly by acute or subacute septicemia and chronic proliferative lesions. The disease is worldwide in distribution and of economic importance throughout Europe, Asia, and the Australian and American continents.

The identification of SE as a disease entity began in 1878 when Koch isolated from an experimental mouse an organism that he called “the bacillus of mouse septicemia.” In 1882–1883 Pasteur and Thuillier briefly described the organism isolated from pigs with *rouget*. In 1886 Löffler published the first accurate description of the causative agent of *Schweinerotlauf* and described the infection in swine. In the United States the recorded history of SE began when Smith (1885) isolated the causative organism from a pig. Serious outbreaks were reported in South Dakota in 1928; by 1959 acute SE had been reported in 44 states. Since that time the prevalence of SE apparently had decreased overall (Wood 1984); but in 2001, SE reemerged in the midwestern U.S. (Opriessnig et al. 2004).

*E. rhusiopathiae* also causes polyarthritis of sheep and lambs and serious death losses in turkeys and marine mammals, including dolphins. It has been isolated from body organs of many species of wild and domestic mammals and birds as well as reptiles, amphibians, and the surface slime of fish. In humans *E. rhusiopathiae* causes erysipeloid, a local skin lesion that occurs chiefly as an occupational disease of persons engaged in handling and processing meat, poultry, fish, and lobsters as well as of rendering-plant workers, veterinarians, game handlers, leather workers, and laboratory workers. The organism occasionally is isolated from cases of endocarditis in humans and rarely causes acute septicemic disease.

### ETIOLOGY

*E. rhusiopathiae* is a gram-positive bacillus with a tendency to form elongated filaments. Plasmid DNA has been detected in some strains of *E. rhusiopathiae*, but the functions of the plasmid are unknown (Noguchi et al. 1993). The morphology of *E. rhusiopathiae* is variable. In smears made directly from tissues in cases of acute infection, the organism appears as slender, straight or slightly curved rods, 0.2–0.4 by 0.8–2.5 µm, occurring singly or in short chains (Figure 37.1). An occasional coccoid or clubbed form may be seen. Palisades and angular formations (“snapping division”) are common. The organism is nonmotile, non–spore-forming, non-acid-fast, and produces no flagella. It stains readily with ordinary dyes and is gram-positive but is easily decolorized. After several subcultures on an artificial medium, filamentous forms of the organism begin to appear and may predominate in old cultures or in chronic lesions. Filamentous forms are somewhat thickened, are greatly elongated (4–60 µm), and may form a mass resembling mycelia, especially in a liquid medium (refer to Figure 37.1). The filamentous forms sometimes have a beaded appearance when Gram’s stain is used. Growth of *E. rhusiopathiae* at 37°C in a nutrient broth appears at 24 hours as a faint turbidity with no pellicle. Growth is much heavier in broth enriched with serum. In gelatin stabs incubated at 22°C for 4–8 days, growth produces a test-tube brush appearance.

Colonies of *E. rhusiopathiae* on agar media at 48 hours are tiny (less than 1 mm), transparent, and vary from smooth to rough, (refer to Figure 37.1). Colonies of most strains have entire edges, but some strains form colonies that are slightly larger and have somewhat undulate edges. Granulelike structures usually appear under a colony just below the surface of the agar. Dissociation from smooth to rough form may occur during the development of a colony, producing a sector (refer to Figure 37.1); the morphology of cells from these
intermediate forms will include a variety of shapes from short, curved rods to short filaments. Most strains of *E. rhusiopathiae* produce a narrow zone of partial hemolysis on blood agar, usually with a greenish color. Rough colonies do not induce hemolysis. *E. rhusiopathiae* produces acid but no gas from certain fermentable carbon compounds and produces hydrogen sulfide along the stab in triple-sugar iron agar (Vickers and Bierer 1958; White and Shuman 1961). Most, if not all, strains have one or more common heat-labile antigens, which are proteins or protein-saccharide-lipid complexes. Heat-stable antigens consisting of peptidoglycan fragments from the cell wall form the basis for identification of various serovars within the species. The serovars are identified by precipitin reactions with specific hyperimmune rabbit sera, usually in a gel double-diffusion system. Most isolates of the organism (75–80%) from swine fall into two major serovars designated 1 and 2 (Wood and Harrington 1978; Takahashi et al. 1996). About 20% of isolates make up a group of less-common serovars. Under a numerical system introduced by Kucsera (1973), a total of 26 serovars have been described so far (Kucsera 1973; Wood et al. 1978; Nørrung 1979; Xu et al. 1984, 1986; Nørrung et al. 1987; Nørrung and Molin 1991). Strains that do not possess the specific antigen are referred to as serovar N. Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) has been used to characterize field isolates and vaccine strains, with 23 PFGE patterns identified from 20 characterized strains (Opriessnig et al. 2004). Using PGFE to genotype is easy to perform and allows characterization without the need to rely on difficult-to-obtain antisera.

*E. rhusiopathiae* is a facultative anaerobe; some strains grow better in an atmosphere of reduced oxygen containing 5–10% carbon dioxide. It will grow at temperatures of 5–42°C. Optimum growth occurs at 30–37°C and at a pH range of 7.4–7.8. Growth is enhanced by serum, glucose, protein hydrolysates, or surfactants such as Tween-80. The organism is fastidious, requiring a complex medium, but no specific nutrient requirements are known. It is relatively resistant to adverse conditions and somewhat resistant to drying and can remain viable for several months in animal tissues under a variety of conditions. It can persist in frozen or chilled meat, decaying carcasses, dried blood, or fish meal. It is remarkably resistant to salting, pickling, and smoking and can survive several months in cured and smoked hams. The organism can survive in swine feces or fish slime for 1–6 months if temperatures remain below 12°C. It is sensitive to penicillin and usually to the tetracyclines; it is quite resistant to polymyxin B, neomycin, and kanamycin and is relatively resistant to streptomycin and the sulfonamides (see the section on treatment). It is killed readily by common disinfectants, heat (15 minutes at 60°C), and gamma irradiation.

Another species, *E. tonsillarum*, has been identified...
(Takahashi et al. 1987a). This species is distinguished from *E. rhusiopathiae* by DNA homology. Protein profiles using sodium dodecyl sulphate-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) demonstrated differences between the strains but were unable to establish sufficient differences to support identification to a species (Bernath et al. 2001). Phenotypic characteristics of the two species are indistinguishable by the usual diagnostic bacteriologic methods. *E. tonsillarum* has been isolated from a variety of sources, including the tonsils of healthy swine. Reported isolates have little or no virulence for swine and are not considered significant in the etiology of SE.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

The most important reservoir of *E. rhusiopathiae* is the domestic pig. Carriers can discharge the organism in their feces or oronasal secretions, and swine affected with acute erysipelas shed profusely in feces, urine, saliva, and nasal secretions. The large variety of wild mammals and birds known to harbor *E. rhusiopathiae* provides an extensive reservoir (Wood and Shuman 1981; Shuman 1971). Various species of domestic animals from which the organism has been isolated provide an additional potential reservoir. The agent can be found in the soil; however, Wood (1973) and others have found no evidence of maintenance of the organism in test soils, and current evidence indicates that soil provides only a temporary medium for transmission of *E. rhusiopathiae*. Swine between 3 months and 3 years of age are generally most predisposed to SE, most likely due to naturally acquired passive immunity in the young and active immunity following subclinical infection or vaccination in older animals. Suckling pigs of immune sows are immune to infection up to several weeks of age. There is no experimental evidence that susceptibility to SE is related to genetics of the animal; however, naturally acquired active immunity induced by previous infection, often with organisms of low virulence, is not uncommon. The role of parasites in transmission of disease has not been well defined, but the poultry red mite has been shown to carry the agent (Chirico et al. 2003).

SE can occur with other swine diseases, but the significance of preexisting infectious disease as a predisposing factor is uncertain. Parasitic infestations have been reported to increase the severity of clinical SE. In addition, Cysewski et al. (1978) showed that the susceptibility of swine to acute SE can be enhanced by subclinical toxicity from aflatoxin in the feed. This treatment also interfered with vaccination efficacy. Environmental and stress factors such as nutrition, ambient temperature, and fatigue, particularly sudden changes in these conditions, have long been linked to the appearance of SE. A number of molecular techniques may provide useful tools for epidemiological investigations. SDS-PAGE can be utilized for such purposes (Bernath et al. 1998).

**PATHOGENESIS**

Investigations using germfree pigs have demonstrated that *E. rhusiopathiae* is the sole causative agent of SE and does not require the presence of any other infectious agent for its disease-producing ability. The organism can gain entry to the body by a variety of routes. Infection through ingestion of contaminated feed and water is considered a common mode. The organism can readily gain access to the body through the palatine tonsils or other lymphoid tissue but entrance is probably not limited to these areas. Natural infection can result from infected skin wounds, and experimental infection can be easily accomplished by inoculation of scarified skin (Shuman 1951).

Acute systemic SE begins with bacteremia, which quickly results in clinical signs of generalized infection (septicemia). A nonsystemic infection consisting only of a local skin lesion may occur upon cutaneous exposure to a strain of low virulence or with partial immunity. In such cases the organism is eliminated without inducing septicemia and the lesion disappears. In the more typical systemic infection caused by virulent organisms, bacteremia usually develops within 24 hours after exposure. The organism usually can no longer be cultured from blood or most body organs after a few days but may persist in the joints and in lymphoid tissue such as tonsils, Peyer’s patches, and spleen.

According to Schulz et al. (1975b, 1977), pathogenesis of the early septicemic phase consists of changes involving capillaries and venules of most body organs, including synovial tissues. As early as 36 hours after subcutaneous exposure, swelling of endothelium, with adherence of monocytes to vascular walls and evidence of widespread hyaline thrombosis was observed. This process was referred to as a shocklike generalized coagulopathy leading, within 4 days, to fibrinous thrombosis, diapedesis, invasion of vascular endothelium, and deposition of fibrin in perivascular tissues leading to connective-tissue activation in joints, heart valves, and blood vessels.

In severe acute SE, hemolysis is commonly observed. Ischemic necrosis of perivascular tissues may occur, caused by interference with microcirculation. Drommer et al. (1970) observed a high incidence of encephalomalacia in acute experimental SE and theorized that certain strains of the organism are endotheliotropic and damage the endothelial cell barrier in the central nervous system (CNS). Mild, delayed hypersensitivity responses to *E. rhusiopathiae* can be elicited and transferred by lymphoid cells. It is doubtful, however, that delayed hypersensitivity has a significant part in the pathogenesis of acute SE.

Information on the pathogenesis of chronic SE is derived primarily from studies on development of the arthritic lesion, which has stimulated interest because of its apparent similarity to the lesion of rheumatoid
arthritides of humans. According to observations by Schulz et al. (1975a, 1977), the joint lesion in chronic SE begins with acute synovitis that may occur as early as 4–10 days after exposure. Within 3 months, fibrinous exudation, proliferation, and pannus formation occur, developing further into severe fibrosis and destruction of articular cartilage in 5–8 months. During this time, the organism can be found sequestered within chondrocytes in addition to its presence in synovial tissue and fluid (Franz et al. 1995). The earliest changes in the synovial tissue are described as consisting of coagulopathy and fibrinous exudate into perivascular tissues. Fibrin deposited during the vascular phase, not bacterial colonization, is believed to act as mediator of the subsequent connective-tissue proliferation. Affected joints are culture-negative after 3–6 months; yet the arthritic lesions usually undergo a progressive development that can continue at least 2 years. Hypersensitivity may be a significant factor in the chronic proliferative and destructive changes but probably not in initiation of the lesion. The porcine homologues of intracellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) and MHC class II, which are not constitutively expressed on porcine chondrocytes, appear to be induced as a result of arthritis and support the use of the model for immunopathological studies (Davies et al. 1994).

There is evidence that the bacteria do not entirely disappear from chronically affected joints, and the long-term progressive lesion may occur in response to the continued presence of either whole bacterial cells or their antigens. Schulz et al. (1977) reported that living *E. rhusiopathiae* was occasionally isolated from such joints for up to 2 years. Furthermore, they stated that *E. rhusiopathiae* antigen could be detected by immunofluorescence, and whole or fragmented bacteria could be seen with the electron microscope in culturally negative joints. Denecke and Trautwein (1986) reported detection of *E. rhusiopathiae* in arthritic joints microbiologically and immunohistologically for up to 3 years. Specific antibodies to the organism have been detected in synovial fluid of chronically arthritic joints and apparently are produced locally by plasma cells in the synovial tissue, which can assume a lymphoid function. It is not known whether the chronicity of the joint lesion is maintained entirely by specific immune reactions against *E. rhusiopathiae* antigen or whether superimposed autoimmune reactions are involved.

A preponderance of evidence exists to indicate that erysipelas arthritis is initiated by active infection of the joint. Mild synovitis and arthritis have been induced in rabbits and rats by massive intravenous or intra-articular injections with nonliving whole cells or fractions of the organism (White et al. 1975; Hermanns et al. 1982), but the lesions were not as severe as those typically caused by infection. White et al. (1975) suggested that the mild response induced by such antigens may predispose the joint to infection during a subsequent transient septicemia. Studies on the pathogenesis of endocarditis indicate that the valvular lesions begin with vascular inflammation and myocardial infarcts, possibly resulting from bacterial emboli. These processes, together with exudation of fibrin, lead to destruction of valvular endocardium.

The mechanism by which *E. rhusiopathiae* incites disease processes is not clearly understood, but considerable evidence indicates that neuraminidase, an enzyme that specifically cleaves alpha-glycosidic linkages in neuraminic acid (sialic acid), a reactive mucopolysaccharide on surfaces of body cells, is a factor. The amount of enzyme produced by the strain seems to increase as virulence increases (Müller 1981). Specific antibody activity against *E. rhusiopathiae* neuraminidase has been demonstrated in sera of swine with chronic SE and commercial equine antiryssipelas antibody. Neuraminidase activity could be a major factor mediating the widespread vascular damage, thrombosis, and hemolysis described (see the section on pathogenesis of acute SE). The ability to adhere to cell surfaces may also play a role in the pathogenicity of *E. rhusiopathiae*, and there is evidence that the process involves neuraminidase. Takahashi et al. (1987b) reported that virulent strains of the organism adhered better to porcine kidney cells in vitro than did avirulent strains. Nakato et al. (1987) reported that neuraminidase was essential for adherence of *E. rhusiopathiae* bacteria to vascular endothelial cells.

Although neuraminidase activity may be largely responsible for the pathogenicity of *E. rhusiopathiae* and may be a virulence factor, other virulence factors play an important role in disease processes. The virulence of *E. rhusiopathiae* is related to the organism’s ability to resist the action of phagocytes, and resistance to phagocytosis is correlated with the presence of a protective capsule-like structure on the surface of virulent strains but not on avirulent mutants (Shimoji et al. 1994).

In the U.S., reports of field cases frequently have described serovar 1 (usually subserovar 1a) as the predominant isolate from acute septicemic disease and serovar 2 as the most common isolate from subacute and chronic cases of SE. However, experimentally, all clinical forms of SE can be induced readily in susceptible swine by strains of serovar 1 or 2. The less-common serovars (3 through 26; N) tend to have low virulence for swine.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

The clinical signs of SE can be divided into three general classifications: acute, subacute, and chronic. In addition, subclinical infection can occur in which no visible signs of acute disease are evident but which can lead to chronic SE.

Acute SE is characterized by sudden onset, sometimes with sudden death. Other animals in the herd may have temperatures of 104–108°F (40–42°C) and over, and those with the higher temperatures may show
signs of chilling. Some pigs may appear normal and yet have temperatures of 106°F (41°C). In surviving pigs, temperatures usually return to normal within 5–7 days. Affected animals withdraw from the feed and will be found lying down. When approached, they resent being disturbed but usually will get up and move away. This usually is accompanied by squealing; when walking, they show a stiff, stilted gait. Upon stopping, they may be seen to shift their weight in an apparent effort to ease the pain in their legs. If left alone, they will soon lie down carefully. Pigs showing severe depression are nevertheless usually aware of activities around them. They may show some resentment at being disturbed but will make little or no effort to rise. Upon being forced to get up, they may stand for only a few moments before lying down again. While standing, the feet are carried well under them and the head is hung dejectedly, giving the back line a marked arched appearance. Others will not be able to stand even when assisted. Most affected animals will show partial or complete inappetence. Bowel movements are usually retarded and the feces firm and dry in pigs of market age and older, although as the disease progresses, a diarrhea may appear in younger animals. Abortion may occur in sows that contract acute or subacute SE during pregnancy.

Characteristic cutaneous lesions (urticarial, or “diamond-skin” lesions) appear as early as the second, and usually by the third, day after exposure to E. rhusiopathiae (Figure 37.2). On the light-skinned pig they can be seen as small, light pink to dark purple areas that usually become raised, are firm to the touch, and in most instances are easily palpated. In animals with dark-pigmented skin, one must rely mainly on palpation, although the weltlike lesions may be detected by observing raised areas in the hair coat. The lesions may be few in number and easily overlooked or so numerous it would be difficult to count them all. An animal also may die before recognizable urticarial lesions are evident. Individual lesions, by extension of the borders, assume a characteristic square or rhomboid shape. In acute nonfatal erysipelas, these lesions may spread considerably but will gradually disappear within 4–7 days after their first appearance, with no subsequent effect other than a superficial desquamation to mark the site. The intensity of skin lesions has a direct relationship to the outcome of the disease. Light pink to light purplish-red lesions are characteristic of acute nonfatal SE, whereas angry dark purplish-red lesions usually precede death of the animal. In acute fatal disease, extensive dark purplish discoloration often occurs over the belly, ears, tail, posterior aspect of the thighs, and jowls. Infrequently, severely affected pigs do not die, and skin necrosis may follow the severe cutaneous lesions. The areas of necrotic skin are dark, dry, and firm and eventually become separated from the healing underlying tissue. Affected areas, particularly the ears and tail, will eventually slough, and secondary infection may occur.

![Typical rhomboid urticarial lesions (“diamond-skin” lesions) of SE. (Courtesy National Animal Disease Center, Ames, Iowa.)](image)

Subacute SE includes signs that are less severe in their manifestations than the acute form. The animals do not appear as sick; temperatures may not be as high and may not persist as long; appetite may be unaffected; a few skin lesions may appear that may be easily overlooked; and, if visibly sick, the animals will not remain so for as long as those acutely ill. Some cases of subacute SE are so mild as to remain unnoticed.

Chronic SE may follow acute or subacute disease or subclinical infection and is characterized most commonly by signs of arthritis, or, occasionally, signs of cardiac insufficiency that are most noticeable following exertion, sometimes causing sudden death. Chronic arthritis results in joints that show various degrees of stiffness and enlargement, sometimes as early as 3 weeks after infection. Interference with locomotion ranges from a slight limp to complete refusal to put weight on the limb, depending upon the extent of damage. Arthritis is the most important clinical manifestation of SE from an economic standpoint. The condition not only affects growth rate but is responsible for significant losses of prime cuts at slaughter.

**LESIONS**

Rhomboïd urticarial lesions (“diamond-skin” lesions) are characteristic of acute SE, and when generalized (refer to Figure 37.2), they are a reliable indicator of septicemia. This observation is important in meat inspection as well as in field diagnosis. Most lesions of acute SE are similar to those of septicemia caused by a variety of organisms.

In acute SE, macroscopic lesions include evidence of diffuse cutaneous hemostasis, which is often prominent, particularly in the skin of the snout, ears, jowls, throat, abdomen, and thighs. The lungs may be congested and edematous. Petechial and ecchymotic hemorrhages may be seen on the epicardium and in the musculature of the atria, particularly the left atrium. Catarrhal to hemorrhagic gastritis is common, and
hemorrhage of the serosa of the stomach may be present. The liver usually is congested. The appearance of the spleen is of particular note, for it may be congested and markedly enlarged, particularly in animals affected for several days. Petechial hemorrhages may be present in the cortex of the kidneys. The appearance of the lymph nodes will depend upon the degree of involvement in the area they drain. There is some degree of enlargement with moderate to marked congestion; subcapsular hemorrhage of peripheral nodes may be seen after several days of illness. The mucosa of the urinary bladder usually appears normal but may present areas of congestion. A histologic examination of skin lesions reveals damage to the capillaries and venules, with perivascular infiltration by lymphoid cells and fibroblasts. The pathologic changes occur in the papillae and upper layers of the derma. Blood vessels of the papillae are congested and may contain microthrombi and bacteria. The papillae may also present focal necrotic areas as a result of circulatory stasis. Vascular lesions can be seen in the heart, kidney, lung, liver, nervous system, skeletal muscle, and synovial membranes. Cellular response consists predominantly of mononuclear leukocytes and macrophages. Neutrophils may appear but do not predominate. Purulent lesions are not characteristic.

Affected lymph nodes usually show acute hyperplastic lymphadenitis, with hyperemia and hemorrhage. In some nodes there may be evidence of thrombosis and necrosis of small blood vessels and capillaries. Hemorrhagic nephritis with inflammatory changes in glomeruli may be seen occasionally. In addition, necrosis of renal tubules with hyaline and granular casts has been reported. Focal accumulations of mononuclear cells may be seen in subcapsular sinuses of the adrenal cortex. Lesions of skeletal muscle may occur, associated with vascular lesions. These consist of a segmental hyaline and granular necrosis of muscle fibers, which may be followed by fibrosis, calcification, and regeneration. Lesions of the CNS have been described, consisting of angiopathies with disturbances in permeability, degeneration of neurons, swelling of endothelial cells, and malacic foci in the cerebrum, brain stem, and spinal cord.

Leukocytosis may occur in field cases of SE that last for several days or possibly from mixed bacterial infection, but in uncomplicated acute SE a leukopenia accompanied by a relative lymphocytosis is characteristic during the first 3–5 days. There may be a relative increase in the number of eosinophils. Hemoglobin and hematocrit values decrease during acute disease, followed later by the appearance of nucleated erythrocytes. The sedimentation rate increases. Changes during acute SE include a decrease in glucose and increases in glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase activity, blood creatinine, and blood urea nitrogen.

The predominant lesion of chronic SE is a proliferative, nonsuppurative arthritis, occurring most commonly in hock, stifle, elbow, and carpal joints with occasional spondylitis. Vegetative proliferation on heart valves is less common. Animals affected with chronic arthritis have an enlargement of one or more joints, most readily visible in hock and carpal joints. The joint capsule is thickened with fibrous connective tissue. The joint cavity contains an excessive amount of serosanguinous synovial fluid, which may be slightly cloudy, indicating a small amount of purulent material. The presence of frank pus, however, is not characteristic of the lesion. The synovial membrane presents varying degrees of hyperemia and proliferation (Figure 37.3), which gives the tissue a swollen, somewhat granular appearance, and often takes irregular forms, producing fringes (“tags”) that project into the joint cavity. These fringes may be caught between the articulating surfaces and produce severe pain. The proliferating tissue also may extend across the surface of articular cartilage, forming a pannus that leads to destruction of the articular surface and eventually to fibrosis and ankylosis of the joint. Lymph nodes associated with arthritic joints are usually enlarged and edematous. Vegetative endocarditis consists of proliferative granular growths on the
heart valves and may be accompanied by lesions resulting from cardiac insufficiency. Other internal organs may show chronic inflammatory changes such as infarcts of kidneys and spleen. Enlargement of the adrenal gland has been reported.

Lesions of the synovial tissue may vary in severity, from slight perivascular accumulation of mononuclear cells to an extensive proliferative process. The typical synovial lesion in chronic SE is characterized by pronounced hyperplasia of the synovial intima and subintimal connective tissue, with vascularization and accumulation of lymphoid cells and macrophages, forming a villous pad of inflammatory tissue. Deposition and organization of fibrin may be seen. As the lesion progresses, proliferation of fibrous connective tissue becomes more prominent, and long fronds of hyperplastic synovium may be seen. The surface lining may become necrotic, with deposition of a fibrinous to fibrinopurulent exudate. Some tendency to follicle formation may be evident in the heavy accumulations of lymphoid cells. There may be erosion of the articular cartilages along with periostitis and osteitis. In old lesions ankylosis of the involved joint by fibrous adhesion may be accompanied by calcification. Vegetative growths on the heart valves are composed of granulation tissue and superimposed masses of fibrin. Connective tissue proliferation occurs with additional fibrin formation, which can be the source of emboli.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Clinical and bacteriologic examinations are useful to diagnose acute SE, which often cannot readily be differentiated clinically from other septicemic diseases (Miniats et al. 1989). Nevertheless, certain clinical features of an outbreak in a herd are more characteristic of SE than of other diseases if viewed in combination. For example, the following are presumptive of SE: a history of a few sudden deaths with no prior evidence of illness; several others sick with high temperatures and apparent stiffness in legs; reluctance of sick pigs to move but unexpected vitality when aroused; and clear, alert eyes. Other characteristic signs include a fair appetite in some visibly sick animals; normal to dry feces; death or recovery of sick animals within a few days; and, when present, the characteristic rhomboid skin lesions. Marked improvement within 24 hours after treatment with penicillin supports the diagnosis. At necropsy the presence of an enlarged spleen is suggestive. Isolation of *E. rhusiopathiae* from the acutely affected animal provides a definitive laboratory diagnosis of SE. Hemoculture is a useful diagnostic aid in living animals, but specimens should be taken from several affected animals in the herd, because the presence of the organism in the blood may vary. At necropsy of a pig that has died in the acute phase, the organism is easily cultured from a variety of body organs (heart, lungs, liver, spleen, kidneys, joints). If the illness has persisted for several days, however, the organism often can no longer be cultured from internal organs but may still be found in the joints. Under these conditions it is important to take several specimens of fluid and synovial tissue from as many synovial sacs of a joint as possible, because the organisms may be present in small numbers and limited to certain areas.

Culture of *E. rhusiopathiae* from tissue specimens is relatively simple. In addition to use of blood agar, selective culture methods for isolation of the organism from contaminated specimens are described elsewhere (Cottral 1978). The use of immunofluorescence for rapid identification of *E. rhusiopathiae* has been reported; however, the method is not in widespread use for routine diagnostic purposes (Harrington et al. 1974).

A variety of serologic tests have been used in attempts to diagnose SE. These include plate, tube, and microtitration agglutination; passive hemagglutination; hemagglutination inhibition; complement fixation; enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA); and indirect immunofluorescence. An agglutination test involving the use of growing culture as antigen was developed by Wellmann (1955). Most recently, a serological assay using nitrocellulose impregnated with a 65 kDa antigen has been developed (Chin et al. 1992). No serologic test has proved useful for routine diagnosis of acute infection or to determine immune status but may have some value in detection of chronic infection, primarily on a herd basis. Microtitation agglutination, growth agglutination, and ELISA are probably the most reliable for this purpose. It can be concluded that serologic testing has limited practical application in clinical diagnosis of SE in the field. The chief value of serologic procedures resides in research. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) methods have improved the detection of *E. rhusiopathiae* in clinical and environmental samples. The use of these techniques for routine diagnosis is growing.

**TREATMENT**

The treatment of SE with hyperimmune serum, usually obtained from horses, was introduced in 1899, several years after it had been developed for use in conjunction with live-culture vaccination. Until the introduction of antibiotics nearly 50 years later, the administration of antiserum was the only effective treatment available. Polyclonal and monoclonal antiserum directed against protective antigens have been shown to protect animals from challenge with virulent strains of *E. rhusiopathiae* if administered early.

It is generally accepted that the treatment of choice for acute erysipelas is administration of penicillin; treatment early in an acute outbreak usually results in dramatic response within 24–36 hours. Specific treatment regimens generally involve giving penicillin alone or in combination with other antibiotics or anti-
serum (occasionally both) to provide a longer action. For example, long-acting penicillin (available under various proprietary names), consisting of a combination of 150,000 units procaine penicillin G and 150,000 units benzathine penicillin G/cm², may be given intramuscularly at a single dose of 5000–10,000 units/ pound (454 g) to visibly sick pigs. The entire herd may be treated with tetracycline in the drinking water: 500 mg/gallon, 132 mg/l until 5 days after no sick pigs are observed or given antiserum if the outbreak is very severe. As an alternative, long-acting penicillin may be given in severe outbreaks, and procaine penicillin G in less severe cases. The use of antiserum for treatment of suckling pigs is a fairly common practice. Although penicillin has been consistently found to be the most effective antibiotic for treatment of acute SE, satisfactory results have been reported also with tetracyclines (including chlorotetracycline and oxytetracycline), lincomycin, and tylosin. The organism is sensitive in vitro to erythromycin, but this antibiotic has been reported to be relatively ineffective in vivo. Streptomycin, dihydrostreptomycin, chloramphenicol, bacitracin, polymyxin B, neomycin, and sulfonamides are not effective against SE. Some isolates of the organism from swine have been found to be resistant to tetracyclines. There is no practical treatment for chronic SE. Experimentally, the administration of antiinflammatory agents has provided some alleviation of the effects of chronic arthritis, and they may be used in treatment of especially valuable individual animals. Initiation of a vaccination program in herds where outbreaks occur is strongly recommended.

**PREVENTION**

Prevention of SE is best accomplished by sound practices of herd health management, including a program of immunization. Swine should be raised according to sound husbandry practice relative to nutrition, housing, and condition of lots and pastures, and they should be observed regularly for deviations from their usual attitude. Replacements should be obtained from clean sources. The recent introduction of a new boar is a relatively common historical finding preceding acute outbreaks of SE in a herd. Newly purchased animals should be isolated for at least 30 days. It is advisable to eliminate chronically affected swine from the herd, as they can remain carriers of the organism indefinitely. Good sanitation is important in general herd management and is essential following the cessation of an outbreak. Walls and floors should be cleaned and disinfected. Phenolic, alkali, hypochlorite, or quaternary ammonium disinfectants are effective against the organism but must be applied to clean surfaces.

A variety of veterinary biologics developed for the purpose of inducing immunity to SE are licensed for use in the U.S. Active immunization can be induced using either live attenuated vaccines or killed bacterins. Bacterins are inactivated whole-cell or subunit preparations and have been used in the U.S. since 1953. Many licensed bacterins are made from selected strains of serovar 2 that produce a soluble immunogenic product when grown in a complex liquid medium containing serum. This substance, most of which is released into the medium, has been described as a glyco-lipoprotein (White and Verwey 1970). The most active component of the immunogenic substance has been identified as a protein fraction with a molecular weight of 64–66 kDa (Timoney and Groschup 1993; Sato et al. 1995; Goodman 1996; Zarkasie et al. 1996). The properties of the 64–66 kDa immunogenic substance have been the subject of a number of studies. A monoclonal antibody recognizing the 64–66 kDa (and a 43 kDa degradation product) immunogen was developed in 1992 and shown to provide passive protection to mice and swine challenged with virulent *E. rhusiopathiae* (Henderson et al. 1993b). An affinity purified protein, shown to be 99% pure by HPLC, that was derived using the monoclonal antibody was also shown to protect pigs from challenge. The 64 kDa immunogen has since been identified as SpaA1, a cell surface protein, and the protective immunogenic region has been shown to reside within the N-terminal two-thirds of the SpaA1. region (Shimoji et al. 1999).

Conventionally attenuated live vaccines, developed by passage through rabbits or chicken embryos, by air-drying, or by growth in media containing acridine dyes resulting in low virulence for swine, were first licensed in the U.S. in 1955. They stimulate immunity in swine by limited multiplication in the body, with very few or no clinical disease. Passive protection or antiserum given concomitantly may interfere with development of immunity following vaccination. Manufacturers generally do not recommend use of serum with their attenuated products except when immediate protection is necessary, as in the case of suckling pigs being given both vaccine and serum during a herd outbreak. In this case, repeated vaccination at weaning is recommended. Treatment with antibiotics that affect replication of *E. rhusiopathiae* should be discontinued at least 8–10 days before vaccination with attenuated vaccines. Attenuated vaccines are usually given by injection or administered orally in drinking water. In some parts of Europe and the former Soviet Union, vaccination by aerosol has been practiced. Acapsular mutants of *E. rhusiopathiae* may be useful for the development of live vaccines (Shimoji et al. 1998).

Lysate bacterin, first reported in 1953, has been used in the U.S. since 1955. It is similar to whole-culture bacterin except that the bacterial cells have been lysed. Bacterins are given by subcutaneous or intramuscular injection; a second (booster) injection in 3–5 weeks is generally recommended. Some studies have demonstrated that the immunity induced by bacterins may not...
protect animals for sufficient periods of time to reach market weight from challenge (Henderson et al. 1992). Subsequently, some manufacturers have demonstrated longer duration of immunity for their bacterins; this information is available on the label of the product. An enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) has been developed for use in potency testing of bacterins. The assay uses a monoclonal antibody to the protective 64–66 kDa protein and reduces the use of animals in testing bacterin potency (Henderson et al. 1993b). An alternative ELISA has been developed for detection of a protective antibody response in mice to replace the mouse challenge model for potency testing of erysipelas bacterins (Imada 2003).

Temporary passive immunity can be induced by administration of commercially available polyclonal antiserum as well as monoclonal antibody to the 64–66 kDa protein fraction. Pigs given antiserum by subcutaneous or intravenous administration receive immediate passive protection, which persists for about 2 weeks. Antiserum may be useful during a herd outbreak for temporary protection of suckling pigs until they are old enough to be vaccinated.

The mechanism of immunity to *E. rhusiopathiae* infection is not clearly defined, but serologic responses play a key role in immunity. Studies have shown that virulent *E. rhusiopathiae* bacteria opsonized with immune serum were readily eliminated by polymorphonuclear leukocytes (Shawada et al. 1988) and by macrophages (Shimoji et al. 1996). Nonopsonized virulent organisms were resistant to phagocytosis. Immunity induced by vaccination may not always prevent chronic SE. Many investigators agree that vaccination has little effect on the incidence of arthritis caused by *E. rhusiopathiae*, although this observation is difficult to evaluate in the field, since SE vaccination is not universally practiced in the U.S. Some believe vaccination actually causes an increase in arthritic lesions by initiating a state of hypersensitivity to subsequent contact with the organism. An alternative explanation for the failure of vaccination to prevent arthritis may exist, however. The organism may be carried to synovial tissues by loaded macrophages soon after exposure, thereby escaping the opsonic effects of humoral immunity (Drommer et al. 1970). Sequestration of the bacteria in chondrocytes (Franz et al. 1995) might provide similar protection from immune mechanisms. It is possible that certain uncommon serovars of *E. rhusiopathiae* may be refractory to the immunity induced in swine by standard SE vaccines. However, such serovars are usually isolated from healthy carrier pigs or nonporcine sources, and none have been directly associated with cases of acute SE in the field.

Vaccination provides a worthwhile means of control when used with other good management practices. A regular vaccination program for both breeding and market animals is recommended. Because of the ubiquity of *E. rhusiopathiae*, together with its poorly understood ability to exist in nature, the possibility of eradication of the organism seems remote.

**REFERENCES**


Introduction

J. M. Fairbrother

The genus *Escherichia* is named after the German pediatrician Theodor Escherich (1857–1911). It is classified with the family *Enterobacteriaceae*, which belongs to the gram-negative facultatively anaerobic rods. The species *Escherichia coli* includes normal inhabitants of the gastrointestinal tract and strains causing a broad variety of intestinal and extraintestinal diseases in swine.

**BACTERIOLOGY**

*E. coli* are gram-negative, peritrichous flagellated rods of variable length and with a diameter of about 1 µm. Colonies on solid media reach their full size within 1 day of incubation. Their appearance may vary from smooth to rough or mucoid. A wide range of selective media is available for growth of *E. coli*. Some strains produce hemolysins. Species identification relies mainly on biochemical characters, bearing in mind that there are exceptions with every single biochemical character. Commercially available identification kits therefore make use of up to 50 characters to achieve a high level of accuracy. The interpretation may be facilitated by computer-assisted processing of the data. The determination of DNA relatedness, the scientific base of discrimination between species, is restricted to research laboratories.

**SEROTYPING**

There are several ways to subdivide the species into types. So far, serotypes have shown the best association with certain virulence traits. Complete serotyping includes determination of O (somatic), K (capsular or microcapsular), H (flagellar), and F (fimbrial) antigens. Unlike salmonellae, only a small percentage of *E. coli* isolates are typeable with available antisera, since serotyping has been limited to isolates of proven or suspected pathogenicity. Presently, at least 175 O, 80 K, 56 H, and over 20 F antigens are officially recognized.

In diagnostic laboratories serotyping is often reduced to one or two classes of antigens and to a limited spectrum of antisera. This may be quite suitable, since in a given region, animal species, and organ, pathogenic serotypes maintain their characteristic antigenic makeup. Thus one may deduce the complete serotype from a simple slide agglutination with a living culture. Serotyping is diagnostically helpful in communicable types of disease caused by a limited number of serotypes, such as postweaning *E. coli* diarrhea and edema disease.

**VIRULENCE FACTORS**

Bacterial traits involved in pathogenesis are called virulence factors. The nomenclature for pathogenic *E. coli* has evolved over the last few years. The term “pathotype” is now used to identify types of *E. coli* on the basis of their virulence mechanism, as indicated by the presence of virulence factors that characterize the method by which disease is caused. This system identifies broad classes of pathogenic *E. coli*, such as enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), edema disease *E. coli* (EDEC), and attaching and effacing *E. coli* (AEEC) and these classes are referred to as pathotypes (Gyles and Fairbrother 2004). Potent exotoxins trigger the secretion of fluid into the gut lumen in ETEC infections and are responsible for systemic pathology caused by EDEC strains. Endotoxin is present in the outer membrane of most *E. coli* strains. Its significance is well documented only in extraintestinal infections, such as septicemia, mastitis, and urinary tract infections.

Many *E. coli* infections require the colonization of
mucous membranes. With ETEC and EDEC, adhesion to the small intestine is mediated by extracellular proteinaceous appendages, which are called fimbriae, fimbrial adhesins (F antigens), or pili and are highly host-specific. In some strains capsular polysaccharides has been shown to enhance the ability to colonize. AEEC colonizing the lower gastrointestinal tract adhere by an attaching and effacing mechanism. In the pig, colonization of the urinary tract has received little attention to date.

In extraintestinal sites, *E. coli* have to resist the natural bactericidal activity of serum, a characteristic called serum resistance. Some *E. coli* utilize high-affinity iron-uptake systems to compete with the host for available iron. A given pathogenic strain may exhibit a whole set of virulence factors, that is, more than one toxin and even more than three adhesins. Detection of more virulence factors can be expected.

**GENETICS OF VIRULENCE**

Very specific sets of virulence factors are needed to cause a particular disease. Thus, strains causing enteric diseases are usually not associated with extraintestinal infections and vice versa. Detection of virulence factors is important for the identification of pathogenic *E. coli* and the term virotype is now used to refer to the combination of these factors for a particular isolate. Many virulence factors examined so far are plasmid determined. This applies in particular to hemolysins, toxins, and adhesins of ETEC. In strains from most extraintestinal infections, however, the genes encoding for fimbriae, cytotoxins, and hemolysin are chromosomally located. In the laboratory, plasmids can easily be transmitted from donor to recipient strains. However, such exchanges of genetic material do not appear to play a major role in the field. The genetic makeup of pathogenic *E. coli* strains is remarkably stable. This may be because a whole set of virulence factors is involved in the virulence of a particular strain, and certain recipient strains may not express transmitted plasmid-determined functions. The clinically important development of antimicrobial resistance is an exception to this observation.

The time-consuming and sometimes cumbersome assays for detection of virulence factors are increasingly being replaced by hybridization and polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques for the detection of the genes encoding these factors.

**ECOLOGY**

The particular ecology of pathogenic *E. coli* strains has been somewhat neglected. Intestinal infections caused by ETEC and EDEC are often contagious. The same strain is usually found in many sick pigs and often in consecutive batches of pigs. When edema disease spread through Denmark, 63% of the outbreaks were connected by trade of pigs to one single infected breeding herd (Jorsal et al. 1996). On the other hand, clinical edema disease occurred in no more than 5% of the herds with trading contacts. These strains may sometimes appear in healthy pigs without overt disease. They are usually shed in high numbers for only a few days. The ensuing dramatic decrease seems to be due to the development of local immunity.

Extraintestinal infections, however, do not behave like communicable diseases. Individual pigs in a given herd are affected most often by different strains. Mixed infections by more than one strain are frequent. In humans, the fecal flora is obviously the reservoir of such pathogenic strains. Most extraintestinal infections in the pig are also endogenous. For example, in 18 out of 67 sows with mastitis, *E. coli* of the same O types present in samples of mammary secretion were isolated from the feces (Awad-Masalmeh et al. 1990).

The primary habitat of *E. coli* in the pig is the gastrointestinal tract. The *E. coli* flora of individual pigs is extremely complex. When strains were distinguished by the combined application of O serogrouping, biotyping, and resistance pattern, up to 25 strains were identified in the gastrointestinal tract of one individual (Hinton et al. 1985). Numerically dominant strains change at intervals from 1 day to several weeks, leading to successive waves of dominant strains (Katouli et al. 1995). Proliferation of *E. coli* takes place mainly during the passage through the small intestine. Subsequent increases in bacterial numbers from the ileum to the rectum is minimal or absent (McAllister et al. 1979). Numbers in the large intestine fluctuate around 107 colony-forming units/g. However, *E. coli* contribute less than 1% to the total bacterial count. When found elsewhere (feed, water, soil, etc.), *E. coli* are derived from this habitat, usually by fecal contamination. Long survival times in the environment are promoted by low temperature and sufficient available water, among other factors. In an experiment with five slurry samples, a porcine *E. coli* O139:K82(B) strain remained viable for between 5 and more than 11 weeks (Burrows and Rankin 1970).

**REFERENCES**


Neonatal *Escherichia coli* Diarrhea

J. M. Fairbrother

Diarrhea has become an economically important disease in pigs as a result of increasing intensification of farrowing management. It may be classified into three main entities: neonatal diarrhea (within the first few days of birth), young piglet diarrhea (from the first week of birth to weaning), and postweaning diarrhea. *Escherichia coli* is the most important etiologic agent of neonatal and postweaning diarrhea. Etiologic agents of diarrhea in young piglets are more numerous and include transmissible gastroenteritis virus, rotavirus, coccidia, and *E. coli* (Biehl and Hoefling 1986). A less frequently encountered manifestation of enteric *E. coli* infection is an acute shock syndrome which provokes gross lesions of hemorrhagic gastroenteritis. Neonatal diarrhea in pigs has been reviewed by Alexander (1994).

**ETIOLOGY**

Neonatal diarrhea associated with *E. coli* is observed most commonly in pigs aged from 0–4 days. Causative strains produce one or more enterotoxins and are referred to as ETEC. ETEC adhere to the small intestinal mucosa in neonatal pigs by means of one or more of the fimbrial adhesins F4 (K88), F5 (K99), F6 (987P), or F41 (Table 38.1). They may also produce an adhesin involved in diffuse adherence (AIDA). They colonize the small intestine and produce one or more of the enterotoxins STa (STI), STb (STII), EAST1, or LT. Until recently, the most commonly observed ETEC in cases of neonatal diarrhea belonged to the classic serogroups O149, O157, and O8, which are F4-positive, produce STb and LT, but only occasionally produce Shiga toxin (Stx2e) (Faubert and Drolet 1992), or (2) produce Stx2e and are associated with edema disease. The latter will be discussed in a later section.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

The occurrence of *E. coli* diarrhea depends on an interaction between the causative bacteria, environmental conditions, and certain host factors. Only *E. coli* that carry virulence factors as described in the previous section and that are ingested in large numbers are able to cause diarrhea. The newborn pig, on leaving the uterus and before reaching the teats of the sow, encounters the heavily contaminated environment of the farrowing crate and the skin of the dam, resulting in ingestion of microbes from the intestinal flora of the sow. Thus, in conditions of poor hygiene or in a continuous-farrowing system, a buildup of pathogenic *E. coli* in the environment could lead to an outbreak of neonatal *E. coli* diarrhea. The colostrum contains nonspecific bactericidal factors and specific antibody (IgG and IgA) that inhibit the adherence of pathogenic *E. coli* in the intestine. If the dam has not been exposed to the pathogenic *E. coli* present in the environment of the piglets, specific antibodies are not present in the colostrum, and the
piglets are susceptible to infection. Similarly, when individual piglets do not have access to colostrum, due to injury or inability to compete or due to agalactia or insufficient teats of the sow, they are more susceptible to infection. Ambient temperature in the farrowing house is also very important. In pigs kept at temperatures of less than 25°C, intestinal peristaltic activity is greatly reduced, and passage of bacteria and protective antibodies through the intestine is delayed (Sarmiento 1983). Increased numbers of pathogenic E. coli in the intestinal tract of these pigs result in a more severe diarrhea than in pigs kept at 30°C.

PATHOGENESIS

In the presence of the appropriate predisposing environmental conditions and host factors, pathogenic E. coli proliferate in the intestine and cause diarrhea by means of specific virulence factors. Pathogenesis will be discussed with respect to the E. coli pathotypes defined by the production of these factors.

Enterotoxigenic E. coli

Most pathogenic E. coli produce one or more fimbrial adhesins that mediate their attachment to specific receptors on mucosal epithelial cells and in the adjacent mucous layer. These fimbriae (or pili) are hairlike appendages extending from the bacterial cell and consist of structural protein subunits that, in many cases, act as a support for a separate adhesive protein found at the tips of the fimbriae. Fimbriae are classified by serologic reactivity or by receptor specificity, the latter being manifested by agglutination of red blood cells from different animal species. The nomenclature for fimbriae has been very diverse. For example, the first fimbrial adhesins demonstrated on porcine ETEC were thought to be capsular antigens and were named K88 and K99. A more standardized nomenclature based on serologic activity in crossed immunoelectrophoresis and using an F designation has been proposed (Orskov and Orskov 1983) and is now widely accepted. Hence, K88 and K99 are now called F4ab and F5, respectively. The latter nomenclature will be used in this chapter.

Although an increasing number of fimbrial adhesins have been described (more than 30), most fimbrial adhesins, with the exception of F1 (type 1) common fimbriae, are associated with E. coli of particular serogroups isolated from specific animal species. F1 fimbriae are found on most E. coli isolates and cause an agglutination of guinea pig red cells which is inhibited by D-mannose. Their role in attachment of porcine ETEC to the intestinal mucosa is still unclear (Jayappa et al. 1985; To et al. 1984).

F1 has been found in the absence of any other known fimbrial adhesins on certain diarrheagenic ETEC strains (Broes et al. 1988). The four important fimbrial adhesins of neonatal porcine ETEC are F4 (K88), F5 (K99), F6 (987P), and F41. F4 (K88) fimbriae have been divided into three variants, F4ab, F4ac, and F4ad, based on serologic cross-reactions (Guineé and Jansen 1979). Many ETEC isolates produce more than one fimbrial adhesin, and common combinations are F5 and F6, F5 and F41, and F4 and F6. Production of fimbriae is controlled by genes on the bacterial chromosome (F1, F41) or on plasmids (F4, F5, F6). Many fimbriae, such as F1 and F6, undergo phase variation and may be very poorly expressed after several passages in culture conditions. Other fimbriae (F5 and F41) undergo quantitative variation and are only well expressed in culture media low in glucose or alanine, such as Minca medium (Guineé et al. 1977).

The adhesin involved in diffuse adherence (AIDA), an autotransported 100-kDa mature protein, was originally detected in E. coli isolates from humans with diarrhea, and has been detected recently in E. coli strains from pigs with diarrhea (Mainil et al. 2002; Niewerth et al. 2001). ETEC isolates of the STb or STb:EAST-1 virotypes from neonatal or weaned pigs may be AIDA-positive and induce diarrhea in neonatal pigs (Ngeleka et al. 2003).

Fimbriae adhere to specific receptors on the cell membrane of intestinal epithelial cells and to specific receptors or nonspecifically in the mucus coating the epithelium. ETEC producing fimbriae F5, F6, and F41 mostly colonize the posterior jejunum and ileum, whereas F4-positive ETEC tend to colonize the length of the jejunum and the ileum. Certain pigs do not have receptors for the F4 adhesin on intestinal epithelial cells and are thus resistant to infection by F4-positive ETEC (Sellwood et al. 1975). This genetic resistance to infection is inherited in a simple Mendelian way, and the allele for the receptor is dominant. Subsequent studies have demonstrated at least five pig phenotypes, based on susceptibility of brush borders of different pigs to adherence of isolates producing the different variants F4ab, F4ac, and F4ad (Bijlsma et al. 1982; Hu et al. 1993). The loci encoding porcine intestinal receptors for F4ab and F4ac are closely linked on chromosome 13 (Edlors-Lilja et al. 1995). A similar genetic resistance has not been observed for the other fimbriae of neonatal porcine ETEC. On the other hand, there appears to be an age resistance to infection by F5-and F6-positive isolates, which is not observed for F4-positive isolates. Piglets are most susceptible to infection with F5- and F6-positive ETEC during the first several days of life and subsequently become more resistant. This susceptibility could be related to a reduction of the number of receptors present on intestinal epithelial cells with age in the case of F5 (Runnels et al. 1980). F6-mediated intestinal colonization in older pigs is thought to be inhibited by preferential binding of bacteria to F6 receptors present in the mucus rather than to those on the intestinal epithelium (Dean-Nystrom and Samuel 1994).

ETEC adhering to the intestinal mucosa produce enterotoxins that change the water and electrolyte flux of
the small intestine and may lead to diarrhea if the excess fluid from the small intestine is not absorbed in the large intestine. Two major classes of enterotoxin are produced by porcine ETEC: heat-stable toxin (ST), which is resistant to heat treatment at 100°C for 15 minutes, and heat-labile toxin (LT), which is inactivated at 60°C for 15 minutes (Guerrant et al. 1985). ST has been further divided into STA and STB based on solubility in methanol and biological activity (Burgess et al. 1978). The gene for EAST1, which is related to STA, has been recently reported in ETEC isolates from pigs. The E. coli enterotoxins have been reviewed in detail elsewhere (Gyles and Fairbrother 2004).

LT is a high–molecular-weight toxin complex that consists of five B subunits able to bind to ganglioside receptors on the intestinal epithelial cell surface and a biologically active A subunit (Gill et al. 1981). After binding, the latter activates adenylate cyclase, which stimulates the production of cyclic AMP. High levels of cyclic AMP in the cell result in increased secretion of Cl, Na, HCO₃, and water into the intestinal lumen. Excessive secretion will lead to dehydration, metabolic acidosis, and eventually death. Two subgroups of LT, LTI and LTIIC, have been described (Holmes et al. 1986). Only LTI is neutralized by anticholera toxin. LT produced by porcine isolates belongs to the LTI subgroup. The LT produced by human and porcine ETEC has been designated LTa and LTb, respectively, based on slight differences in the genes coding for the toxin.

STA (STI, ST1, and ST mouse) is a small, nonimmunogenic protein with a molecular weight (MW) of 2000 (Lallier et al. 1982). STA binds to a guanylyl cyclase intestinal epithelial receptor (De-Sauvage et al. 1991) and activates guanylate cyclase, which stimulates production of cyclic GMP. High levels of cyclic GMP in the cell inhibit the Na/Cl cotransport system and reduce the absorption of electrolytes and water from the intestine (Dreyfus et al. 1984). STA is active in infant mice and young piglets of less than 2 weeks of age but is less active in older pigs. This could be due to differences in the concentration of intestinal receptors with age (Cohen et al. 1988). As with LT, STA produced by human and porcine ETEC has been designated STAa and STAb, respectively, based on differences in the genes coding for the toxin.

STB (STII, ST2, ST pig) is a small, 5000 MW protein that is antigenically and genetically unrelated to STA and is poorly immunogenic (Dubreuil 1997). STB stimulates cyclic-nucleotide-independent fluid secretion in the gut (Kennedy et al. 1984), which is independent of the cyclic nucleotides but appears to be mediated by prostaglandin E₂ and possibly other secretagogues (Harville and Dreyfus 1995; Peterson and Whipp 1995). STB is inactivated by trypsin and, in the presence of trypsin-inactivator, is active in intestines of mice, rats, and calves (Whipp 1990). STB is found in 74% of all porcine ETEC isolates (Moon et al. 1986). The role of STB in the development of diarrhea has been questioned (Casey et al. 1998), although ETEC producing only STB can induce diarrhea in experimentally infected newborn pigs (Fairbrother et al. 1989), and STB induces some villous atrophy in pig intestinal gut loops (Rose et al. 1987).

EAST1 was first identified in enteropathogenic E. coli isolated from humans and was subsequently reported in ETEC from pigs with diarrhea (Yamamoto and Nakazawa 1997). It is commonly found in F4-positive ETEC strains from pigs with diarrhea and in F18:Stx2e strains from pigs with edema disease (Choi et al. 2001). EAST1 is a 38 amino acid peptide of 4100 Da that is different from STA and STB, although it shares 50% homology with the enterotoxic domain of STA (Savarino et al. 1993) and appears to interact with the STA receptor guanylyl cyclase C to elicit an increase in cGMP. Hence, the mechanism of action of EAST1 is proposed to be identical to that of STA. However, the role of EAST1 in the development of diarrhea has not yet been defined.

Attaching and Effacing E. coli
Porcine AEEC attach to the intestinal mucosa and cause lesions similar to those observed for enteropathogenic E. coli (EPEC) isolated from human infantile diarrhea (Hélie et al. 1990). They attach intimately to the intestinal epithelial cell membrane by means of a bacterial outer-membrane protein termed “intimin” or “EPEC attaching and effacing factor” (Eae), efface the microvilli, and invade the epithelial cells (Zhu et al. 1994).

CLINICAL SIGNS
Enteric E. coli infection is usually manifested by diarrhea, the severity of which depends on the virulence factors of the E. coli and the age and immune status of the piglets. In severe cases, clinical signs of dehydration, metabolic acidosis, and death are observed. In certain cases, particularly in young animals, the infection may be so rapid that death occurs before the development of diarrhea.

Neonatal diarrhea may first be observed 2–3 hours after birth and may affect single pigs or whole litters. Gilt litters are more often affected than sow litters. A large number of piglets in a farrowing house may be affected and mortality may be very high in the first few days of life. Diarrhea may be very mild with no evidence of dehydration or may be clear and watery. The feces vary in color from clear to whitish or various shades of brown. The fecal material may just dribble from the anus down the perineum and be detected only by close examination of the perineal area. In very severe outbreaks, a small proportion of affected animals may vomit. In severe cases, 30–40% of total body weight may be lost as fluid into the intestinal lumen and result in signs of dehydration. The abdominal musculature is flaccid and atonic, the pigs are depressed and sluggish, the eyes may be sunken, and the skin may be bluish-gray.
in color and resemble parchment in texture. The loss of fluid and weight results in the exaggerated appearance of the bony prominences. These animals usually die. In more chronic or less severely affected cases, the anus and perineum may be inflamed from contact with the alkaline fecal material. Pigs with less severe dehydration may continue to drink and, if treated appropriately, may recover with only minimal long-term effects.

Diarrhea in pigs from the neonatal to the postweaning period is similar to that observed in neonatal piglets but tends to be less severe. Morbidity may be the same as in the neonatal period but mortality is invariably lower. The feces vary from grayish to whitish in unweaned piglets to brownish in recently weaned piglets. Enteric colibacillosis complicated by shock, when associated with ETEC strains, occurs both in unweaned piglets from a few days of age and in recently weaned pigs (Faubert and Drolet 1992). Apparently healthy pigs die suddenly or decline rapidly with cyanosis of the extremities. A yellowish to brownish diarrhea is sometimes observed.

**LESIONS**

Few specific pathological changes may be attributed to enteric *E. coli* infection. Gross lesions that may be observed include dehydration, dilation of the stomach (which may contain undigested milk curd or feed in the case of postweaning diarrhea), venous infarcts on the greater curvature of the stomach, and dilation of the small intestine with some congestion of the small-intestinal wall. In cases of ETEC infection complicated by shock, characteristic lesions include marked congestion of the small-intestinal and stomach walls and blood-tinged intestinal contents.

Histologic lesions depend on the category of *E. coli* involved. In ETEC infections, layers of *E. coli* are observed adhering to the mucosal epithelial cells of most of the jejunum and ileum in the case of F4-positive ETEC isolates, and of the posterior jejunum and/or the ileum in the case of other ETEC isolates. Adhering bacteria may be found only in the crypts of Lieberkühn, or more often covering the crypts and the tips of the villi. On transmission electronmicroscopy, bacteria are usually located approximately half a bacterial width away from the microvilli, and fimbriae may sometimes be visualized between the bacteria and the microvilli (Figure 38.1). Histological lesions, if observed, may include vascular congestion in the lamina propria with some hemorrhages into the intestinal lumen, increased numbers of neutrophils and macrophages in the lamina propria and migrating into the lumen, and some villous atrophy. In cases of ETEC enteric infection complicated by shock, *E. coli* are found adhering to the mucosal epithelial cells of the small intestine. Congestion, some hemorrhages, and in severe cases villous necrosis and microvascular fibrinous thrombi are observed in the lamina propria of the stomach, small intestine, and colon.

Diagnosis

Enteric *E. coli* infection in young, unweaned pigs must be differentiated from other common infectious causes of diarrhea in pigs of this age group. These include *Clostridium perfringens*, transmissible gastroenteritis virus, rotavirus, and coccidia. More than one etiologic agent may be associated with a particular animal or outbreak. A presumptive diagnosis may be made by determination...
of the fecal pH. Secretory diarrheic fluid as a result of enteric ETEC infection has an alkaline pH, whereas that from diarrhea associated with malabsorption as a result of transmissible gastroenteritis virus or rotavirus infection is acid.

Diagnosis of enteric E. coli infection is based on clinical signs, histopathological lesions, and the presence of gram-negative organisms usually closely adhering to the small-intestinal mucosa (Wilson and Francis 1986). This diagnosis is strengthened by the isolation of E. coli of the appropriate serogroup or, more important, possessing one or more of the above-mentioned virulence factors. Production of enterotoxins and cytotoxins may be ascertained by detection of toxin biological activity. STa activity is determined in the infant mouse test, STb activity in pig and rat ligated gut loops, and LT and Stx in cell culture assays. Fimbrial adhesins may be detected by serologic assays such as slide agglutination, immunofluorescence, and ELISA, using rabbit polyclonal antisera. However, F5 and F41 are only produced when E. coli are grown on special minimal media, and F6 is often poorly produced in in vitro conditions. Alternatively, E. coli adhering to the intestinal mucosa may be demonstrated directly in infected pigs by examination of frozen sections using indirect immunofluorescence or by examination of formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissues using the immunoperoxidase technique.

Recent technological advances have greatly improved the detection of E. coli virulence factors (Wray and Woodward 1994). Use of monoclonal antibodies has led to more specific, sensitive, and reproducible assays for the detection of STa, F4, F5, F6, and F41. Such antibodies may be used in diagnostic kits for the rapid detection and identification of pathogenic E. coli directly in the feces or intestinal contents of affected piglets. Currently, genotypic analysis is more commonly used to define the virotypes involved in an infection. Colony hybridization probes and the multiplex polymerase chain reaction (PCR) have been developed for the detection of the genes coding for the fimbrial adhesins and enterotoxins of swine ETEC isolates (Francis 2002; Frydendahl 2002; Osek 2001; Wray and Woodward 1994). There is a high correlation between the results of the standard serologic and biological assays and those of gene probes for the detection of fimbrial adhesins and enterotoxins of swine ETEC isolates (Harel et al. 1991). Gene probe techniques often involve the use of radioactivity and thus must be performed in controlled laboratory conditions. Multiplex PCR amplification may be used to rapidly detect the genes encoding for the virulence factors of pathogenic E. coli associated with diarrhea in pigs, either following enrichment culture or directly in the feces or intestinal contents (Tsens et al. 1998). The latter approach is more rapid and indicates the presence of pathogenic E. coli, but it does not permit the identification of specific virotypes, as is possible when isolates are tested. However, the traditional approach for identification of pathogenic E. coli by serotyping will still be necessary, at least in reference laboratories, in order to monitor changing trends and to identify new, emerging E. coli virulence determinants that could gain importance due to the pressure of vaccination of sows against the currently predominant determinants.

**TREATMENT**

Treatment of enteric E. coli infection should be aimed at removal of the pathogenic E. coli, correction of their harmful effects, and provision of optimal environmental conditions. Therapy should be rapidly instituted to be as effective as possible. It is important to confirm the diagnosis of E. coli infection by culture and to perform antibiotic sensitivity tests, because antibiotic sensitivity varies greatly among E. coli isolates (Table 38.2). A broad-spectrum antibiotic treatment could be used initially until the results of antibiotic sensitivity are known. In vitro resistance of E. coli isolates to a wide range of antimicrobial agents has dramatically increased over the last several years. In newborn piglets, treatment with antibiotics may be on an individual or litter basis, by mouth or parenteral injection. Commonly used antibiotics are ampicillin, apramycin, cefti-fur, gentamycin, neomycin, spectinomycin, furizoli-
that recently weaned pigs are held in a draft-free envi-
maintained at a constant temperature of 30–34°C and
suggested (Solis et al. 1993).

in combination with antibacterial agents, has also been
secretory drugs as bencetimide and loperamide, alone or
drugs have undesirable side effects. The use of such anti-
treatment of diarrhea, although many of these
chlorpromazine and berberine sulfate, may be useful for
inhibit the secretory effects of enterotoxin, such as
drugs which
solutions containing glucose given orally, is useful for
applied in the field.

use of bacteriophages, an approach that has been suc-
approach to the treatment of enteric 
E. coli
infection is the
prevention of enteric 
E. coli
infection.

Fluid therapy, consisting of electrolyte replacement
solutions containing glucose given orally, is useful for
the treatment of dehydration and acidosis. Drugs which
inhibit the secretory effects of enterotoxin, such as
chlorpromazine and berberine sulfate, may be useful for
the treatment of diarrhea, although many of these
drugs have undesirable side effects. The use of such anti-
secretory drugs as bencetimide and loperamide, alone or
in combination with antibacterial agents, has also been
suggested (Solis et al. 1993).

It is important to ensure that younger piglets are
maintained at a constant temperature of 30–34°C and
that recently weaned pigs are held in a draft-free envi-
rironment at a constant temperature of about 29.5°C.

PREVENTION

A program for prevention of enteric 
E. coli
infection should be aimed at reduction of numbers of pathogenic 
E. coli
in the environment by good hygiene, maintenance of suitable environmental conditions, and provision of a high level of immunity. Because most pathogenic 
E. coli
belong to a limited number of serogroups, enteric 
E. coli
infection could be eliminated from some herds.

Husbandry

One of the most important factors in prevention of enteric 
E. coli
infection is the maintenance of piglets at an ade-
quate environmental temperature (30–34°C for unweaned pigs), free of drafts, and on a low-heat-conducting floor. This is particularly true for piglets of below-average weight, who lose heat more rapidly because they have a greater skin surface area per unit body weight.

Good hygiene in the farrowing area leads to a reduc-
tion in the numbers of 
E. coli
being presented to the
piglet to a level that it is able to control through its own defense mechanisms.

Farrowing-crate design is important because it affects
the position at which feces are deposited by the sow. In

Table 38.2. Sensitivity to antimicrobial agents of 
E. coli
isolates from pigs aged from 0 to 7 days with diarrhea in Quebec

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antimicrobial Agent</th>
<th>% Sensitive Isolates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amikacin</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ampicillin</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apramycin</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefotiam</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cephalothin</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrofloxacan</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentamycin</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neomycin</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectinomycin</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiamulin</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: The Escherichia coli Laboratory, Université de Montréal 1994–1996.

done, and potentiated sulfa drugs. An alternative ap-
approach to the treatment of enteric 
E. coli
infection is the
use of bacteriophages, an approach that has been suc-
cessful experimentally but has not been extensively ap-
plied in the field.

Quarantine should be used to control the introduc-
tion of different 
E. coli
virotypes or other infectious
agents into the herd. Animals in the herd will have little
immunity to 
E. coli
fimbrial antigens with which they
have not had contact. Farrowing crates should be thor-
oughly cleaned and disinfected between litters. An all-
in/all-out farrowing system with thorough disinfection
of the farrowing room between batches will reduce the

A dry, warm environment reduces the moisture
available to enhance the survival of 
E. coli
. This is largely
affected by ventilation rates, although if room tempera-
ture is too high, sows tend to try and spread water over
their lying area to cool themselves, thereby defeating
other hygienic procedures. The sow should be at a tem-
perature of approximately 22°C, necessitating a warmer
creep area for the piglets.

Immunity

Immunity to enteric 
E. coli
infections is humoral and is
initially provided through the maternal colostrum, lact-
ogenic antibodies in the milk of the sow, and subse-
sequently by a local intestinal immune response. Specific
antibodies inhibit bacterial adherence to receptors on
the intestinal epithelial cells and neutralize the activity
of the enterotoxins or cytotoxins produced by 
E. coli
.

Colostrum from the sow contains high levels of im-
munoglobulin G (IgG), which rapidly decrease during
lactation and IgA becomes the main immunoglobulin
class (Bourne 1976). The latter protects the gut against

E. coli
infection. It appears that most IgA, IgM, and IgG in
the milk of the sow is produced within the mammary
gland. During pregnancy, a proportion of the lympho-
cytes stimulated by antigens in the intestine migrate to
the mammary gland and produce specific antibody
against enteric pathogens. These antibodies are actively
transported to the colostrum and then the milk during
lactation.
The newborn piglet begins to synthesize specific immunoglobulin and develop intestinal immunity during the first week of life (Butler 1973). At first, IgM predominates, but after 12 weeks, it is replaced by IgA as the most important immunoglobulin class in the intestine (Bianchi et al. 1999). Thus, during the first weeks of life, colostrum is the main source of immunologic protection for the piglet.

Breakdown in the protection provided by colostrum may occur for several reasons. If the dam has not been exposed to ETEC present in the environment of the piglets, her colostrum will not contain the specific antibodies necessary for protection against adherence and proliferation of ETEC. Also, any disease process causing agalactia in the sow will diminish transfer of colostrum. Generalized systemic infection may cause a total reduction in colostrum production, whereas mastitis or injured teats may affect production in one or several glands. Piglets failing to receive colostrum due to deformities, infection, small size, or damage at birth will also be more susceptible to ETEC infection.

Maternal vaccination has been one of the most effective ways of controlling neonatal ETEC diarrhea in piglets. Identification of virulence factors important in the pathogenesis of ETEC diarrhea and application of recombinant DNA technology have resulted in the production of more efficient vaccines over the last several years. One of the earliest vaccination techniques consisted of taking the small-intestinal contents from a piglet with diarrhea, culturing it in milk, and feeding the culture to pregnant sows, usually about a month before parturition (Kohler 1974). This technique is effective, conferring an immunity lasting throughout the suckling period, and is still used, particularly in the United States.

Commonly used commercially available vaccines are given parenterally and may be killed whole-cell bacterins or purified fimbrial vaccines. Both of the latter types of vaccines appear to work equally well (Fahy 1987). Bacterins usually contain strains representing the most important serogroups and producing the fimbrial antigens F4, F5, F6, and F41 (Nagy 1986). They are usually given parenterally at about 6 weeks and 2 weeks prior to parturition. Addition of the common fimbrial antigen F1 to a fimbrial bacterin appeared to have been protective in one study (Jayappa et al. 1985) but was not protective in another study (To et al. 1984). Recombinant DNA technology has enabled the production of large quantities of purified fimbrial antigens for use in parenteral vaccines for immunization of the dam (Clarke et al. 1985).

In cases where vaccination is ineffective, it is important to identify the serotypes involved for possible inclusion into an autogenous bacterin. Further characterization of these isolates may identify new or variant fimbrial adhesins important in the pathogenesis of ETEC diarrhea. An alternative approach to the problem of emerging ETEC negative for the known fimbriae has been the use of vaccines containing the nontoxic form of the enterotoxin LT-B conjugated to the nonimmunogenic STa (Klipstein 1986). Following conjugation, STa becomes immunogenic, and this vaccine has given protection in experimental animals. Addition of these components to fimbrial vaccines will provide protection against emerging ETEC with new fimbrial antigens in neonates and against ETEC negative for the known fimbrial antigens and commonly found in older pigs. Isaacson (1994) has recently reviewed the use of vaccines for the prevention of E. coli diseases.

Finally, a novel approach to the prevention of ETEC diarrhea in piglets could be the oral administration of exogenous proteases such as bromelain (Mynott et al. 1996). Such proteases can inhibit attachment of F4-positive ETEC to the intestinal mucosa due to modification of the receptor attachment sites.

REFERENCES


Postweaning Escherichia coli Diarrhea and Edema Disease

J. M. Fairbrother and C. L. Gyles

Postweaning Escherichia coli diarrhea and edema disease are treated in one section because they often both occur in the same age group of pigs, the causative bacteria share certain virulence factors, and some strains of E. coli can cause both diseases. There are also important differences in the two diseases.

E. coli postweaning diarrhea (PWD) is a communicable diarrhea mediated by enterotoxins and observed mainly after weaning. It is also called “postweaning enteric colibacillosis.”

Edema disease (ED) is a communicable enterotoxemia caused by certain E. coli that colonize the small intestine and produce a protein toxin that enters the bloodstream and damages vessel walls in certain tissues. The names “edema disease,” “bowel edema,” and “gut edema” were coined because edema of the submucosa of the stomach and the mesocolon is often a prominent feature of the disease.

E. coli PWD and ED may occur independently, but they may also occur in a single outbreak or in the same pig. The early history of the two diseases has been extensively reviewed by Sojka (1965).

E. coli is an important cause of death in weaned pigs. Losses due to PWD are reported worldwide, whereas mortality due to ED does not appear to be as great in North America as is observed in Europe.

ED bears some similarity to the human diseases caused by enterohemorrhagic strains of E. coli (EHEC), which produce closely related, but not identical, Shiga toxins. However, the human EHEC strains colonize the intestine by a mechanism distinct from edema disease E. coli (EDEC) (Tzipori et al. 1986). Serotypes associated with ED are different from those of EHEC that cause disease in humans.

ETIOLOGY

PWD and ED are caused by strains of E. coli that possess certain adhesion factors enabling the bacteria to colonize the small intestine and that produce one or several exotoxins. Nearly all of these E. coli are alpha-hemolytic. Most of them belong to a very limited number of serotypes. In a given area, the serotypes are closely associated with a rather constant set of fimbrial adhesins and toxins. Thus, the serogroup O139 has been found worldwide to produce the fimbrial variant F18ab. Strains of this serogroup from Australia always cause PWD, whereas those from Europe typically induce ED. The serogroup O149 has been found worldwide to produce the fimbrial variant F4ac and to induce PWD.

At present, by far the most predominant serogroup of E. coli associated with PWD in pigs is O149. The most important virotypes and O serogroups of E. coli associated with PWD throughout the world are found in Table 38.3. These virotypes usually have either F4 or F18 as fimbrial adhesin. Some F4- and F18-negative virotypes have been identified by the Escherichia coli Laboratory in Quebec and by others (Frydendahl 2002) in E. coli from pigs with PWD. The role of these virotypes in the development of diarrhea has not yet been established. Some differences in the predominant virotypes have been observed from country to country. For example, the fimbrial adhesins F4 and F18 were detected in 45% and 39%, respectively, of isolates from pigs with PWD or...
ED in Denmark during 1999–2000 (Frydendahl 2002). Of the F4-positive isolates, all were O149; two-thirds were of virotypes LT:STb:EAST1:F4 and one-third were of virotypes LT:STa:STb:EAST1:F4. The F18 isolates were much more heterogeneous, the most common serotype/virotype profiles being O149:LT:STb:EAST1:F18, O138:STa:STb:F18, O138:LT:STb:EAST1:Stx2e:F18, and O139:Stx2e:F18. More than half of the ETEC isolated from pigs with diarrhea in South Dakota, U.S., in 2001–2002 were of virotypes LT:STb:F4, STa:STb:F18, or STa:STb:Stx2e:F18, F4 isolates being slightly more prevalent than F18 isolates (Francis 2002). On the other hand, the predominant fimbrial adhesin found in ETEC isolated from pigs with diarrhea in Quebec, Canada, both in diagnostic cases from 1994 to 1998 (Fairbrother et al. 2000) and in a study of 17 farms with at least 15% diarrhea in pigs in the first 3 weeks postweaning (personal observations 2002), was F4. In both studies, about half of ETEC isolates produced F4. All F4-positive isolates were O149, half being of virotypes LT:STb:EAST1:F4, half being of virotypes LT:STa:STb:EAST1:F4. Only 2% of isolates were F18-positive and were mostly of virotype STa:STb. All other ETEC produced neither F4 nor F18, the most common virotypes being STa:STb and STb:EAST1:AIDA. AIDA has been detected recently in E. coli strains from pigs with edema disease or postweaning diarrhea, particularly in strains of the virotypes Stx:F18 and F18 alone (Mainil et al. 2002). AIDA is encoded by genes present on a plasmid, possibly the same as that containing the fed genes that encode F18 fimbriae. ETEC isolates of the STb or STb:EAST-1 virotypes from weaned pigs may also be AIDA-positive (Ngeleka et al. 2003).

The antigenic variants of F18 fimbriae were serologically determined using 380 isolates from fatal cases of PWD and ED in Germany (Wittig et al. 1995). Variants F18ab and F18ac were found in 40% and 35%, and F4 in 14%, of the isolates. The remaining isolates were negative for F18 and F4.

An interesting evolution in the virotype of O149 isolates has been observed. In retrospective studies in Canada, it has been observed that O149 strains isolated before 1990 were predominantly of virotype LT:STb:EAST1:F4 (Fontaine et al. 2002; Noamani et al. 2003). Since 1990, a new virotype, LT:STa:STb:EAST1:F4, has appeared and is now either as prevalent as (Fontaine et al. 2002; Frydendahl 2002) or has almost replaced (Noamani et al. 2003) the old virotype. This trend may not be universal, because most O149 strains isolated from 4- to 6-week-old weaned pigs with diarrhea in Poland (Osek 2003) were of the LT:STb:EAST1 virotype, and the new virotype did not appear to be prevalent in the 2001–2002 South Dakota study (Francis 2002).

PWD and ED are mediated by toxins—enterotoxins in the case of E. coli PWD, and Shiga toxin in the case of ED. It is noteworthy that ETEC and EDEC strains may occur in pigs in the absence of PWD or ED. In these cases, the pathogenic E. coli constitute a low percentage of the fecal E. coli. In contrast, in disease, they constitute most or all of the E. coli in the feces.

A more detailed description of the enterotoxins is given in the preceding subchapter. The term “Shiga toxin” (Stx2e) is a synonym of Shiga-like toxin, verotoxin, edema disease principle, neurotoxin, and vaso-toxin. MacLeod and Gyles (1990) developed a purification scheme resulting in a homogeneous preparation of Stx2e free of endotoxin. As little as 3 ng of pure Stx2e per kilogram of body weight administered intravenously to young pigs induces disease. Clinical signs and gross and microscopic lesions are characteristic of ED, thus confirming that Stx2e and EDP (edema disease principle) are identical. Incubation time and severity of disease are directly related to the toxin dose.

**Enteropathogenic E. coli**

An enteric syndrome distinct from classic PWD was described by several investigators. It is characterized by attaching and effacing lesions caused by E. coli (AEEC). The clinical outcome of the infection is difficult to evaluate, because mixed infection, such as with F4-positive ETEC, often occurs. The AEEC do not possess any virulence factors of classic PWD or ED strains (Zhu et al. 1994). Their virulence attributes are dealt with in the
subchapter on neonatal *E. coli* diarrhea. Experimental infection of gnotobiotic pigs allows reproduction of the lesions (Figure 38.2). Several predisposing factors, such as a weaner diet containing soya and field peas or Porcine Reproductive and Respiratory Syndrome (PRRS) virus infection, may enhance bacterial colonization and development of attaching and effacing lesions (Neef et al. 1994, personal observations). AECC will not be further dealt with in this chapter.

Comprehensive overviews of *E. coli* and its role in animal disease may be found elsewhere (Gyles 1994; Gyles and Fairbrother 2004).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

The epidemiologies of PWD and ED have many features in common. The age group primarily affected by PWD and/or ED depends on the weaning age. There are some differences between *E. coli* with F4 and those with F18. The former can cause neonatal, preweaning, and postweaning diarrhea, most often in the very first days after weaning. In farms where husbandry measures at weaning, such as addition of higher levels of protein of animal source, plasma, acidifying agents, and zinc oxide are being used, peaks of diarrhea and enteric colibacillosis complicated by shock may be observed often at 3 weeks after weaning, or even at 6–8 weeks after weaning, at the time when the pigs enter the growing barns (Fairbrother, unpublished observations). The latter, however, more often cause disease between 5 and 14 days after weaning (Svendsen et al. 1974) or after introduction to fattening herds. Unweaned piglets can also be affected by *E. coli* diarrhea and ED. In suckling pigs, the severity of the disease depends on antibody titers in the milk of the sow (Sarmiento et al. 1988b).

The morbidity in an affected herd is extremely variable. Within a particular litter it may be up to 80% or more, but the average is 30–40%. With ED, the case fatality rate ranges from 50% to over 90%. The course of the disease in the herd varies from 4–14 days, the average being slightly under a week. The disease disappears as abruptly as it appears. Recurrence on premises is common (Kurtz et al. 1969). With PWD the case fatality rate and the mortality tend to be lower. In untreated herds, the latter may attain 26% (Svendsen et al. 1974).

The environment of the weaner unit appears to be the most likely source of pathogenic *E. coli* strains. Unweaned pigs may acquire infection in the farrowing house, presumably from the same source, and carry it into the weaning unit. Routine cleaning and disinfection are usually insufficient to break the cycle of infection (Hampson et al. 1987). Under experimental conditions, however, transmission can be prevented by strict hygienic measures (Smith and Halls 1968; Kausche et al. 1992). The minimal infectious dose is not known. In transmission experiments with a F4-positive ETEC strain, airborne transmission between pigs in wire cages 1.5 m apart was repeatedly observed (Wathes et al. 1989). Outbreaks tend to involve only one strain of F4-positive *E. coli* at any one time. Occasionally, two potential pathogens are isolated, but one usually predominates. Multiple infections of herds involving more than one serogroup were detected in 47% of 84 herds (Awad-Masalme et al. 1988).

The spread of pathogenic *E. coli* is presumed to occur via aerosols, feed, other vehicles, pigs, and possibly other animals. Introduction of new pathogenic strains of *E. coli* into closed primary specific pathogen free (SPF) herds with a high isolation standard was observed at intervals of 1–2 years. Once a site is contaminated with a particular strain, it can remain so for an extended period. The serotypes associated with postweaning diseases tend to be similar in broad geographic areas. When ED entered Denmark in 1994, it spread from one SPF breeding herd by trade of pigs to at least 37 other herds. The close clonal relationship of the causal strains was confirmed (Aarestrup et al. 1997; Jorsal et al. 1996). Another 22 herds became infected without known trading contact.

**PATHOGENESIS**

For the sake of clarity, intestinal colonization and toxemia will be presented separately. However, there may be mutual interactions.

**Colonization of the Small Intestine**

*E. coli* causing PWD and/or ED enter the animal by ingestion and, when present in sufficient numbers, colonize the small intestine following bacterial attachment to receptors on the small intestinal epithelium or in the mucus coating the epithelium, by means of specific fimbrial adhesins. These bacteria then proliferate rapidly to attain massive numbers to the order of 10⁹ in the midjejunum to the ileum. The degree of colonization determines whether disease results from infection. Adhering microcolonies or layers of bacteria were observed on the small-intestinal mucosa of pigs experimentally infected with two strains of O group 139 (Figure 38.3) (Bertschinger and Pohlenz 1983; Methiyapun et al. 1984; Bertschinger et al. 1990). EDEC adhere to the brush border similarly to ETEC. Some of the known factors influencing colonization by pathogenic *E. coli* are discussed here.

Brush border receptors for pathogenic *E. coli* are not present in every pig. Genetic resistance resulting from lack of receptors for F4 was first described by Sellwood et al. (1975) (see section on neonatal colibacillosis). The receptor for F18 fimbriae is also controlled in a single locus, and the presence of a receptor is dominant over absence (Bertschinger et al. 1993). The receptor for F18 is distinct from the receptor for F4. The genes for the F4 receptor were determined on chromosome 13 (Guérin et al. 1993), whereas the genes for the F18 receptor were lo-
cated on chromosome 6 close to the locus for stress susceptibility. In a high proportion of the Swiss pig population, resistance against stress is linked to susceptibility to adhesion of *E. coli* with F18 fimbriae (Vögeli et al. 1996). In view of the low prevalence of stress-susceptible pigs, the frequency of pigs with the F18 receptor would be predicted to be high. This has been confirmed in a number of studies.

Fimbrial receptors are thought to be glycoconjugates that are subject to modulation by feed lectins such as constituents of leguminous plants (Kelly et al. 1994). It may be speculated that feed-induced changes of the receptor are involved in the reduced susceptibility to colonization by F18-positive *E. coli* in the first days after weaning (Bertschinger et al. 1993). Endogenous as well as orally administered proteases may reduce the receptor activity for F4 fimbriae (Mynott et al. 1996). Receptors for F4 are fully expressed from birth to adult age, whereas the F18 receptor is not yet fully expressed by piglets under about 20 days of age (Nagy et al. 1992). Hence, *E. coli* with F18 fimbriae do not cause disease in neonatal pigs. Constant expression of receptors may underlie the earlier appearance after weaning of *E. coli* strains with F4 in herds where F4- and F18-positive strains are endemic.

Loss of milk antibodies appears to contribute significantly to susceptibility of pigs to *E. coli* enteric infections in the postweaning period (Deprez et al. 1986, Sarmiento et al. 1988b).

A variety of viruses infect the porcine intestine and may thereby change the bacterial environment. Dual infection of pigs with rotavirus and with an ETEC strain without F4 results in a more severe diarrhea than inoculation with either agent alone (Lecce et al. 1982). The investigators concluded that viral damage of the epithelium favors colonization by *E. coli*. Infection by the PRRS virus results in a decreased efficacy of the immune system, permitting ETEC to cause a septicemia leading to death (Nakamine et al. 1998).

An acid environment has an inhibitory effect on *E. coli*. The pH of the stomach contents falls after weaning (Risley et al. 1992). Several investigators found that the pH of the jejunum cannot be reduced by acidification of the feed. The pH close to the jejunal brush border is slightly acid and highly regulated. It is not influenced by the pH of the chyme (McEwan et al. 1990).

Veterinary practitioners and farmers were convinced many years ago that nutritious feed would play an important role in development of disease. Thus ED was named “protein intoxication.” Smith and Halls (1968) inoculated pigs on various feed regimens with an O141:K85ac EDEC strain. They found that severe feed restriction resulted in much lower fecal numbers of the bacteria and absence of disease. A similar effect was achieved by feeding pigs ad libitum on a diet extremely rich in fiber and low in nutrients. The authors concluded that the physiological state of the intestinal epithelium might influence bacterial adhesion. These experiments were extended by Bertschinger et al. (1978) using an O139:K12 EDEC strain. The findings of Smith and Halls (1968) were confirmed. However, the poor diets inhibited growth of the pigs. When these diets were replaced by a conventional type of feed, colonization and clinical disease developed. The inhibitory effect of the poor diet was abolished by supplementation with fish meal but not with starch or fat. The precise mechanism behind these phenomena remains to be elucidated.

Low room temperature in the weaner rooms was proposed as being responsible for a more severe course of PWD (Wathes et al. 1989). Under experimental conditions, ED was not aggravated by cold stress (Kausche et al. 1992).
Diarrhea
The mechanisms by which enterotoxins induce diarrhea are described in the preceding section (neonatal E. coli diarrhea). Almost all E. coli involved in fatal cases of PWD produce LT (Imberechts et al. 1994). Pigs colonized about 12 days after weaning with ETEC producing one or both heat-stable enterotoxins develop diarrhea only exceptionally (Sarrazin and Bertschinger 1997). This difference between neonates and weaned pigs may be explained at least in part by the marked increase of antisecretory factor beginning a few days after weaning (Lange et al. 1993).

Enterotoxemia
Highly purified Stx2e induces a disease indistinguishable from ED when administered intravenously to pigs (MacLeod and Gyles 1990). Stx2e produced by EDEC in the intestine is absorbed into the circulation and can bind to globotetraosyl ceramide on red blood cells. Thus, vessels are subjected to prolonged toxin exposure (Boyd et al. 1993). By immunological methods the toxin can be detected in endothelial cells of small blood vessels of the intestine and in microvillous membranes of enterocytes at the base of the villi (Waddell et al. 1996).

The most consistent injury observed in natural cases, after injection of partially purified toxin (Clugston et al. 1974b; Gannon et al. 1989) and in pigs inoculated orally with live cultures (Methiyapun et al. 1984; Kausche et al. 1992) is a degenerative angiopathy of small arteries and arterioles. The edema fluid found in various tissues is low in protein and could be the result of a mild increase in vascular permeability. Information on pathophysiology of ED is scarce. Clugston et al. (1974a) observed an increase of blood pressure after intravenous administration of EDP. Hypertension developed later than clinical edema and was therefore thought to be the result of vascular injury rather than its cause. Hypertension might exacerbate the lesions in the already damaged vessels. The development of injuries in the nervous system may be due to hypoxia resulting from impaired blood flow (Clugston et al. 1974b).

A distinct type of ED is characterized by terminal bloody diarrhea and hemorrhagic lesions in the cardiac region of the stomach, the ileum, and the large intestine (Figure 38.4) (Bertschinger and Pohlenz 1983). According to Gannon et al. (1989) and MacLeod and Gyles (1990), acute hemorrhagic gastroenteritis occurs in some of the pigs to which a high dose of Stx2e is administered. Epithelial necrosis secondary to necrosis of small arteries and arterioles may be responsible for luminal hemorrhage.

CLINICAL SIGNS
Postweaning Diarrhea
In the spontaneous outbreaks caused by an E. coli strain of O149 without F4 investigated by Svendsen et al. (1974), the first manifestation of PWD was sudden death of one or several pigs as early as 2 days after weaning. At the same time, feed consumption of the affected batch of pigs dropped markedly, and a watery diarrhea developed. At the onset, some pigs exhibited a characteristic quivering of the tail. The rectal temperature was normal. Affected pigs became dehydrated and depressed. They ate irregularly, but even in the terminal stage of the disease, they tried to drink. Many pigs showed cyanotic discoloration of the tip of the nose, the ears, and the abdomen. Even severely affected pigs tried to move around with staggering, uncoordinated movements. The peak of mortality occurred 6–10 days after weaning. Surviving pigs recovered well. Some pigs were completely spared from the disease.

In pigs experimentally infected with a strain with virulence factors F4, LT, and STb, diarrhea started 1–2 days after inoculation and was fulminating and fatal in some of the pigs, whereas others survived after diarrhea of 3–4 days’ duration (Sarmiento et al. 1988a). The pigs lost some weight in the first 2 days after inoculation. From the fifth day on, the growth curve of susceptible pigs resumed a course parallel to that of genetically resistant pigs. The latter were not colonized and remained free from any symptoms.

Postweaning Diarrhea Combined with Edema Disease
Smith and Halls (1968) described the disease experimentally induced with a strain of serogroup O141:K85a,c, obviously a producer of Stx2e and of enterotoxin(s). The
first sign was anorexia, which started at the onset of shedding bacterial numbers above \( 10^9 \) colony-forming units (CFU)/g of feces 3 (2–5) days postinoculation (PI) and was observed in most pigs. Anorexia lasted for several days in the pigs that recovered and until euthanasia in the pigs killed when death was imminent. Diarrhea appeared on day 4 (1–8) PI. Usually it was severe but of short duration. It was rarely fatal. In most pigs diarrhea was no longer present when signs of nervous involvement became apparent, that is, on day 6 (5–13) PI. Swollen eyelids were seen at about the same time. Ataxia was accompanied with varying degrees of mental confusion and was usually progressive. Affected pigs soon became completely recumbent. Severe dyspnea was usually present at this final stage. Most of the pigs with ataxia had to be killed on the day the signs of impairment of the nervous system appeared. Pigs were moribund 7 (5–13) days PI. The rectal temperature always remained within the normal range.

**Edema Disease**

A similar disease was seen in pigs inoculated with a nonenterotoxigenic ED strain of serotype O139:K12:H1 (Bertschinger et al. 1978). However, diarrhea was not associated with colonization and a more pronounced edema developed in some cases. In such cases ears, subcutaneous tissue over the frontal bones, nose, and lips were swollen (Figure 38.5). In mild cases, subcutaneous edema was accompanied by pruritus, which disappeared after recovery. In some pigs with or without dyspnea, respiration was accompanied by a snoring sound.

Watery diarrhea with clots of fresh blood became apparent in a few pigs at the terminal stage (Bertschinger and Pohlenz 1983). Hemorrhagic colitis developed also in pigs to which high doses of toxin Stx2e were administered (MacLeod et al. 1991).

Chronic ED occurred in a variable, but mostly low, proportion of pigs recovering from acute attacks of ED or *E. coli* PWD (Bertschinger and Pohlenz 1974; Nakamura et al. 1982). The condition was called cerebrospinal angiopathy before its association with ED became apparent. For periods varying from days to several weeks after intestinal infection, growth stops, and sick pigs often show unilateral nervous disturbances such as circling movements, twisting of the head, or atrophy of limb muscles with progressive weakness. Subcutaneous edema is rare. Affected pigs should be destroyed. Subclinical ED was observed in most pigs surviving for 2 weeks after inoculation with a strain of *E. coli* O139 positive for Stx2e and STb. The pigs were clinically normal but developed vascular lesions. No pigs were allowed to survive beyond the 2 weeks (Kausche et al. 1992).

**LESIONS**

**Postweaning Diarrhea**

**Gross Lesions.** Pigs dead from *E. coli* PWD are generally in good condition but severely dehydrated with sunken eyes and some cyanosis. Lungs look pale and dry, as observed in well-bled pigs (Svendsen et al. 1974). The stomach is often distended with dry feed. Variable hyperemia of the gastric mucosa is often noted in the fundic region. The small intestine is dilated, slightly edematous, and hyperemic. The contents vary from watery to mucoid, with a characteristic smell. The mesentery is heavily congested. Contents of the large intestine most often look light greenish or yellowish and are mucoid to watery. Pigs dying late in an outbreak look emaciated and exhibit a strong smell of ammonia. There are irregularly shaped superficial ulcerations in the fundic region of the stomach and similar lesions of smaller size in the large intestine. The feces look yellow and pasty. The fluid from the anterior chamber of the eye may give a positive reaction for urea.

Some authors use the terms “hemorrhagic gastroenteritis” or “enteric colibacillosis complicated by shock” to describe a form of *E. coli* diarrhea characterized by severe congestion of the gastric fundus and the small intestine with or without blood-tinged contents of the small intestine and sometimes the upper large intestine, but only exceptionally with bloody feces (Faubert and Drolet 1992). This type of lesion was always caused by *E. coli* with F4 fimbriae. The syndrome of enteric colibacillosis complicated by septicemia was recently reproduced in gnotobiotic pigs and deletion of the gene for LT resulted in reduction of F4-mediated colonization, reduced dehydration, and less frequent septicemia (Berberov et al. 2004).

**Microscopic Lesions.** Bacteria adhering to the ileal and less consistently to the jejunal surface are always

---

38.5. Edematous swelling of eyelids, forehead, and lips, breathing through open mouth, and inability to rise in a weaner 4 days after oral inoculation with a culture of *E. coli* O139:K12:H1.
seen. The bacterial layers are restricted to villi and look patchy (Sarmiento et al. 1988a; Casey et al. 1992; Faubert and Drolet 1992). The mucosa and the epithelium appear intact. Some investigators have reported increased numbers of neutrophils in the superficial lamina propria. In pigs with enteric colibacillosis complicated by shock, severe congestion of the gastric and small-intestinal mucosae is commonly associated with microvascular fibrinous thrombi. Necrosis of villi with marked infiltration of neutrophils occurs in severe cases. There is only occasional hemorrhage in the lamina propria of the jejunum and the ileum (Svendsen et al. 1974; Faubert and Drolet 1992).

**Edema Disease**

**Gross Lesions.** Pigs dead of ED are mostly in good condition, somewhat pale, and the bodies retain a fresh appearance. Edema at specific sites is variable and may be absent in some animals. Subcutaneous edema may occur. Edema in the submucosa of the stomach is characteristic when present and is located in the region of the glandular cardia (Figure 38.6). It may vary from being barely detectable to 2 cm or more in thickness. The edema fluid is usually serogelatinous and occasionally may be bloodstained adjacent to the mucosa. If severe, the edema may extend into the fundic submucosa. Inflammatory edema associated with acute ulceration of the esophageal cardia must not be confused with that of ED.

Edema of the gallbladder is sometimes seen. The mesocolon is a common site for edema. Careful inspection of the pericardial, pleural, and peritoneal cavities may reveal occasional whitish fibrin strands and a slight increase in serous fluid. The mesenteric and colic nodes vary in appearance from normal to being swollen, edematous, and congested. Typically, the stomach is full of dry, fresh-looking feed, and the small intestine is relatively empty. Colonic contents may be diminished in amount. It may be inferred that this is a manifestation of delayed gastric emptying, since some animals have a period of anorexia before death. Also, it has been shown experimentally that pigs with ED may eat very little for 48 hours before death and at necropsy have full stomachs (Smith and Halls 1968). The suggestion that some pigs with ED are affected by constipation also agrees with these observations.

The lungs may display varying degrees of edema and a characteristic, patchy, sublobular congestion. In some cases this may be the only observable lesion. Cases with laryngeal edema have also been observed. A few epicardial and endocardial petechiae may occur. This lesion must not be confused with mulberry heart disease.

In some pigs with spontaneous or experimental ED, a form of hemorrhagic gastroenteritis occurs, which is quite different from that described with *E. coli* PWD. In addition to marked edema, the edematous submucosa of the cardiac region of the stomach and the mucosa of the lower small and upper large intestine show extensive hemorrhage. Watery diarrhea with clots of coagulated blood occurs shortly before death in some of these pigs (Bertschinger and Pohlenz 1983). Endothelial swelling, vacuolation and proliferation, microthrombus formation, subendothelial fibrin, medial necrosis, and perivascular edema were detected in such cases (Methiyapun et al. 1984). The similarity to human hemorrhagic colitis is striking.

If the causative strain of *E. coli* is also capable of producing enterotoxin, lesions of postweaning diarrhea may be added, and edema may be mild or absent.

**Microscopic Lesions.** Patchy layers of adhering bacteria are present throughout the small intestine early in the course of ED (Bertschinger and Pohlenz 1983; Methiyapun et al. 1984; Bertschinger et al. 1990). Contrasting with *E. coli* PWD, the colonization has often disappeared when pigs with ED become moribund (Smith and Halls 1968).

The most important microscopic lesions are those of a degenerative angiopathy affecting small arteries and arterioles (Clugston et al. 1974b; Kausche et al. 1992). The lesions may occur in many organs and tissues. The dense arterial network in the mesocolon adjacent to the colic lymph nodes is frequently affected. The early acute lesion is one of necrosis of smooth muscle cells in the tunic media characterized by pyknosis and karyorrhexis of nuclei and hyaline change in cytoplasmic elements. In the walls of some affected vessels, fibrinoid material is deposited (Figure 38.7). Swelling of endothelial cells has also been observed. In acute experimental cases, edema of the leptomeninges and perivascular spaces has been demonstrated. In older lesions, there may be proliferation of adventitial and medial cells (Figure 38.8).
Vascular lesions may be difficult to detect in acute cases, but in surviving pigs or those affected subclinically, they are more readily apparent (Kausche et al. 1992). Thrombosis is not usually a feature of uncomplicated naturally occurring ED.

In pigs that have recovered from natural outbreaks or survived for several days following acute signs, there are lesions of focal encephalomalacia in the brain stem together with lesions in the small arteries and arterioles (Kurtz et al. 1969; Kausche et al. 1992). These are thought to be the result of vascular injury leading to edema and ischemia. A cerebrospinal angiopathy of pigs has been recognized as a clinicopathologic entity for some years. Its microscopic features are those described above as well as the occurrence of eosinophilic, Periodic Acid Schiff (PAS)—positive droplets around affected vessels. This angiopathy is most likely a manifestation of edema disease (Bertschinger and Pohlenz 1974).

### DIAGNOSIS

#### Postweaning Diarrhea

Postweaning diarrhea is a very complex disease with multiple etiologies (see Chapter 3). Occurrence of diarrhea early after weaning, marked dehydration, and at least some mortality are characteristics in the field allowing a preliminary diagnosis of ETEC. The gross lesions, including the characteristic smell, are also helpful. The final diagnosis requires detection of ETEC (see neonatal E. coli diarrhea), which are shed in high numbers. Hemolysis is not a valid criterion for identification of ETEC. Laboratories not equipped for the determination of virulence factors should at least use serotyping of living cultures with OK-antisera against serotypes most prevalent in a given region.

#### Edema Disease

The diagnosis of acute ED is based on sudden appearance and on clinical signs of neurologic disease in thriving pigs 1–2 weeks after weaning. In the live pig the most important and constant diagnostic sign is partial ataxia or a staggering gait. Subcutaneous edema in the palpebrae and over the frontal bones is also a cardinal sign when present. At necropsy the characteristic lesions of edema, when present, are helpful in confirming the diagnosis but may be absent in a significant number of cases, especially when severe diarrhea has preceded ED. Diagnosis of ED in adult pigs (Imberechts et al. 1996) may require additional efforts, such as histopathology and postmortem examination of more than one pig.

Bacteriologic examination of the small intestine and colon usually yields pure or nearly pure cultures of hemolytic E. coli. However, bacterial numbers may have declined in more protracted cases (Bertschinger and Pohlenz 1983). In contrast to ETEC infections, a negative bacteriologic result therefore does not exclude the
diagnosis of ED. Serologic identification of the common serotypes associated with ED is additional evidence. Serotyping is essential, because hemolytic *E. coli* not associated with other virulence factors are frequently encountered in the intestinal flora and may be present in high numbers. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification of the genes for Stx2e and F18 fimbriae may be used to obtain a rapid and definitive identification of EDEC.

Subacute or chronic ED is diagnosed by the demonstration of arteriopathy and eventually lesions of focal encephalomalacia.

In cases of sudden death, differential diagnosis includes microangiopathia dietetica and circulatory failure, as seen after severe fighting. When pigs show signs of neurological disease, viral encephalitis (enteroviral polioencephalomyelitis, pseudorabies) and bacterial meningoencephalitis (*Streptococcus suis*, *Haemophilus parasuis*) as well as water deprivation should be considered.

**TREATMENT**

Much less is known about the treatment of these diseases than about pathogenesis and about treatment of neonatal colibacillosis.

**Antimicrobial Therapy**

Chemotherapeutic control of bacterial proliferation is therapeutically much more effective in *E. coli* PWD than in ED, because in the latter, toxin has already been absorbed into the circulation and become bound to its receptor when clinical signs become visible. The development of bacterial resistance against a wide range of antimicrobial drugs (Table 38.4) renders this approach uncertain. It is not possible to give universal data on resistance, because the situation varies in different pig populations depending on the antimicrobials preferentially used.

Sick pigs must be treated parenterally. They eat and drink very little, even if they stand close to the creep and to the drinking nipple. Substances must be selected that reach the intestinal lumen, such as amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, fluoroquinolones, cephalosporins, apramycin, ceftiofur, neomycin, or trimethoprim. Testing bacterial resistance is indispensable if there is a herd problem.

**Supportive Therapy for PWD**

The supportive therapy has to counteract dehydration and acidosis. Attractive rehydration fluid should be offered for spontaneous intake or injected intraperitoneally if the pig is anorectic. Such fluids may contain glucose, glycine, citric acid, and potassium dihydrogen phosphate in an isotonic solution (Bywater and Woode 1980). Uptake should be equal to the loss (i.e., up to 25% of the body weight).

---

**Table 38.4.** Sensitivity to antimicrobial agents of *E. coli* O149 isolates from pigs with PWD or ED in Switzerland and PWD in Quebec

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antimicrobial Agent</th>
<th>% Sensitive O149 Isolates</th>
<th>Switzerland</th>
<th>Quebec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ampicillin</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefoxitin</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptomycin</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectinomycin</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neomycin</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>73</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apramycin</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentamicin</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>81</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloramphenicol</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrofloxacin</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colistin</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftiofur</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfonamide</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furazolidone</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Bertschinger et al. 1996.  
2The *Escherichia coli* Laboratory, Université de Montréal 1996–2000.  
3Not tested.  
4Modified agar dilution technique (Bertschinger et al. 1996).

**Edema Disease**

There is little likelihood of saving the lives of pigs with advanced signs such as severe subcutaneous edema, respiratory distress, or inability to rise. Evaluation of therapy is difficult because the severity of the illness cannot be quantified. Numerous remedies have been recommended in the past and have then been abandoned.

**PREVENTION**

**Breeding of Resistant Pigs**

This is the approach to prevention that may be most effective and economical in the long term. Work in this direction is in progress. It will be important to avoid co-selection of unwanted traits closely linked with loci coding for the F4 and the F18 receptors. It cannot be predicted whether additional types of adhesive fimbriae or new variants of known types will emerge that could bind to yet unidentified receptors.

**Eradication of EDEC**

The transmissible character of *E. coli* PWD and ED is evident. In Denmark most of the recent spread of ED followed the routes of the pig trade (Jorsal et al. 1996). It was logical to start an eradication program involving depopulation of affected farms and disinfection of the buildings (Johansen et al. 1996b). With one exception, the 15 farms participating in this program remained free of clinical disease for a minimum of 4–7 months. They are
under continuing surveillance. Some problems render this approach risky. The tools to prove the absence of pathogenic *E. coli* from a given herd are not yet adequate. Also, *E. coli* has a high tenacity in the environment.

**Immunophrophylaxis**

Acquired immunity may result in protection against intestinal colonization and/or against effects of the toxins. Weaned pigs can be protected passively or actively.

**Passive Immunity.** A daily dose of 525 mL, but not of 270 mL, milk obtained from sows in late lactation fed to weaned pigs completely inhibited colonization, whereas pigs fed the same amount of cow’s milk shed high numbers of the EDEC bacteria (Deprez et al. 1986). Spray-dried porcine blood plasma fed at a dose of 90 g per pig/day had a similar inhibitory effect that lasted only as long as the plasma was fed, and the inhibitory effect could be improved by vaccination of the donor pigs (Deprez et al. 1990, 1996). Immune protection against colonization with F4- and F18-positive *E. coli* may be attained by feeding eggs produced by vaccinated hens (Imberechts et al. 1997; Marquardt et al. 1999). It remains to be shown whether the antibody-containing egg powder can be produced at an acceptable price.

**Active Immunity.** Few commercial vaccines are available for the prevention of postweaning *E. coli* PWD and ED. Injectable vaccines, such as those administered to sows for the prevention of neonatal diarrhea, stimulate mostly the systemic rather than mucosal immunity, giving rise to circulating antibodies which do not reach intestinal bacteria in high enough levels to be very effective (Van den Broeck et al. 1999). Such vaccines may even suppress the mucosal immune response upon subsequent oral infection with a pathogenic *E. coli* (Bianchi et al. 1996). Several approaches for the control of postweaning *E. coli*-associated diarrhea are currently being investigated. Most of these control strategies are specific for the adhesin or O serogroup of the causative *E. coli*. Hence, an accurate diagnosis and identification of the adhesin type is essential to assure a more effective control of the diarrhea. New vaccination strategies include the oral immunization of piglets with live attenuated avirulent *E. coli* strains carrying the fimbrial adhesins. Such vaccine strains may be administered to weaned piglets in the drinking water or to unweaned piglets by oral dosing at least 1 week prior to the expected onset of diarrhea, to allow the intestinal colonization by these bacteria and induction of local intestinal antibodies which will block the adherence of the pathogenic *E. coli* and hence prevent the development of diarrhea. This approach appears to be effective for the control of both F4 and F18 *E. coli*-associated diarrhea, using a vaccine strain carrying the appropriate adhesin. A large scale on-farm study in the United States has demonstrated a decreased mortality and reduced use of antimicrobials following oral administration of a live nonenterotoxigenic F4 *E. coli* strain to pigs immediately following weaning (Fuentes et al. 2004). Pigs that have been colonized by an F18 ETEC producing STI and STb are protected against recolonization by a heterologous ETEC sharing no other antigens with the immunizing strain except F18 fimbriae. However, the cross-protection between strains with fimbrial variants F18ab and F18ac may not be very high (Bertschinger et al. 2000). Current research is aimed at the oral administration of purified F4 fimbriae, instead of the whole bacteria, as a vaccine for the control of outbreaks of *E. coli*-associated diarrhea in weaned pigs (Van den Broeck et al. 1999). Use of such a subunit vaccine results in a specific mucosal immune response in the intestines and a significant reduction in fecal excretion of the pathogenic F4.

In the pig, the small intestine is the major site of IgA and IgM production. IgM is more a mucosal isotype than in other animal species and probably has an important role in mucosal immunity (Bianchi et al. 1999). In the porcine lamina propria, the frequency of IgM-secreting cells is similar to that of IgA secreting cells at 4 weeks of age and increases thereafter. The shift from IgM to IgA as predominant mucosal isotype is at about 12 weeks of age. Vaccines for preventing PWD should activate the mucosal immune system and evoke antigen-specific IgA or IgM responses in order to induce a protective mucosal immunity (Van den Broeck et al. 1999).

Gannon et al. (1988) did not detect neutralizing antibody against Stx2e in the sera of neonatal pigs and weaned pigs from herds with and without ED. However, pigs do mount an antibody response; Wieler et al. (1995) showed that pigs that had survived an outbreak of ED had antibodies reacting in an ELISA to the B subunit of Stx2e.

Active immunity against intravenous challenge with Stx2e was induced in young pigs by a toxoid vaccine prepared from an ultrasonic lysate of an EDEC by treatment with glutaraldehyde (Dobrescu 1982). A similar toxoid was used for vaccination of pigs 1 week before weaning (Awad-Masalmeh et al. 1989). The vaccine conferred highly significant protection against ED after the pigs were orally challenged with EDEC serogroup O139:K12. Vaccinated principals shed lower numbers of the inoculated bacteria and had better weight gains than placebo-vaccinated littermates.

A toxoid prepared by treatment of Stx2e with formaldehyde was not completely free of toxic activity. Therefore, the toxin was modified by site-directed mutagenesis of the stx2e gene. The genetically modified toxin was found to have no deleterious effect on the growth of vaccinated pigs, and it prevented overt and subclinical ED when vaccinated pigs were challenged with an *E. coli* O139:F18 positive for Stx2e and STb (Bosworth et al. 1996). A different approach was chosen by MacLeod and Gyles (1991), who detoxified purified Stx2e with glutaraldehyde. An adjuvanted experimental vaccine was evaluated in two herds infected by a strain of *E. coli*
O139:F18, Stx2e. Mortality due to ED was significantly reduced, and daily gain in the nursery was significantly improved. Deaths caused by ETEC in one of the herds were not prevented (Johansen et al. 1996a). These toxoid vaccines are not yet commercially available.

**Chemoprophylaxis**

At present, preventive feed medication is practiced in a majority of the affected herds in most countries despite serious drawbacks such as nonacceptance by the consumer, impaired buildup of immunity, and selection of resistant bacteria. Resistance is often induced within days or a few weeks. Isolates from *E. coli* PWD and ED show the highest rate of resistance within porcine *E. coli*. Besides the classes of antimicrobials mentioned above for parenteral therapy, the  aminoglycosides and colistin are widely used. The latter has the advantages of high stability, low toxicity, absence of infectious resistance, and slow development of resistance. With colistin, resistance cannot reliably be detected by the agar diffusion technique (Bertschinger et al. 1996). Investigators have reported that oxytetracycline reduces the adhesion of *E. coli* at concentrations below the minimum inhibitory concentration. Sarmiento and Moon (1988) reported that *E. coli* PWD induced by a tetracycline-resistant strain takes an identical course in pigs eating feed with and without tetracycline.

Zinc oxide offers an alternative to antimicrobials. Feeds with contents between 2400 and 3000 ppm of zinc reduce diarrhea and mortality and improve growth. The activity is explained by an antibacterial effect (Holm and Poulsen 1996). However, environmental considerations should be included in discussions of zinc oxide at such high levels.

**Dietary Measures**

Restriction of feed intake, high-fiber diets, or ad libitum feeding of fiber have been reported as effective deter- rents to the development of ED and postweaning diar- rhea (Smith and Halls 1968; Bertschinger et al. 1978; Rantzer et al. 1996). The nutritive value of the feed may be reduced by increasing fiber content to 15–20% and reducing crude protein and digestible energy to one-half of the normal values (Bertschinger et al. 1978). The addition of fiber to normal diets may be beneficial. Dunne (1975) advocated feeding high-quality alfalfa coupled with restriction of daily feed intake. To be effective, nutrient intake has to be low enough to maintain daily gain below 1% of body weight in the 2 weeks after weaning. Such diets prevent colonization and impair the development of immunity in the same way as antimicrobials. Later outbreaks are frequently seen.

A lower mortality due to *E. coli* enterotoxemia and improved weight gains were reported after introduction of rations with a reduced acid-binding capacity. A similar effect is ascribed to organic acids. Others were unable to reduce the mortality due to ED by the inclusion of a mixture of organic and inorganic acids in the feed (Johansen et al. 1996b). This result is not surprising in view of the highly regulated pH close to the mucosal surface (McEwan et al. 1990).

An improved weight gain and lower frequency of scour was observed in early weaned (10 days of age) pigs fed a spray-dried porcine plasma (SDPP)-based diet (Owusu-Asiedu et al. 2002). This was partly attributed to the presence of specific anti-ETEC antibodies in the SDPP. In another study, addition of SDPP to the ration of weaned pigs did not prevent losses due to experimental challenge with an ETEC strain, although improved weight gain was observed (Van Dijk et al. 2002). However, the lack of effect on losses could be due to the severity of the experimental model.

Exogenous as well as endogenous proteases lower the activity of intestinal F4 receptors. Bromelain, a protease from pineapple stems, applied orally to pigs reduced the binding of F4-positive ETEC to brush borders in a dose-dependent manner (Mynott et al. 1996). The efficacy in a clinical situation remains to be demonstrated.

Scandinavian workers have shown that antisecretory factor reverses secretory diarrhea induced by heat-labile enterotoxin. The levels of antisecretory factor in the blood plasma can be increased by addition of glucose and of some amino acids to the feed. Treated weaner pigs were reported to have a lower incidence of diarrhea and a greater weight gain (Göransson et al. 1993). Antisecretory factor probably exerts its effects on the enteric nervous system (Hansen and Skadhauge 1995).

**Bacterial Probiotics**

In recent investigations *Enterococcus faecium*, *Lactobacillus* sp., and *Bacillus cereus* strain “toyoi” were fed to experimentally infected (De Cupere et al. 1992) and to naturally infected (Johansen et al. 1996b) pigs. No preventive effect was recorded. Schulze (1977) confirmed earlier comparative quantitative studies of the gastrointestinal flora in weaned and in unweaned pigs, where no evidence was found for an interdependence between *E. coli* and the other components of the flora.

**General Management**

Management of the weanling pig should minimize environmental and other forms of stress such as unnecessary mixing of litters, chilling, transportation, and assignment to new pens. Wathes et al. (1989) observed a higher incidence of scours and greater mortality due to *E. coli* PWD in experimentally infected pigs kept at 15°C than in controls at higher temperatures. The experiment was not perfectly conclusive because genetic resistance was neglected.

**REFERENCES**


CHAPTER 38 ESCHERICHIA COLI INFECTIONS 661


**Systemic Infection**

**J. M. Fairbrother**

*Escherichia coli* may induce systemic infections, such as septicemia, or localized extraintestinal infections, such as meningitis or arthritis, resulting from bacteremia (Fairbrother and Ngeleka 1994; Fairbrother et al. 1989; Morris and Sojka 1985). Septicemia due to *E. coli* may be primary, occurring predominantly in newborn to 4-day-old pigs, or secondary, when associated with diarrhea or other compromising diseases in young pigs.

**ETIOLOGY**

Only a relatively small number of *E. coli* serogroups have been reported in natural cases of septicemia. Serogroups O6, O8, O9, O11, O15, O17, O18, O20, O45, O60, O78, O83, O93, O101, O112, O115, and O116 have most commonly been identified in isolates associated with septicemia (Morris and Sojka 1985; Nielsen et al. 1975a; Fairbrother et al. 1989). Other gram-negative bacteria such as *Klebsiella* spp. and *Pseudomonas* spp. have been reported to be associated with systemic infections in pigs (Nielsen et al. 1975b). In a 4-year study at the *Escherichia coli* Laboratory from 1989 to 1992, the most commonly observed serogroups in isolates from cases of primary septicemia were O9 (10%) and O20 (18%) (Fairbrother and Ngeleka 1994). Serogroups O1, O18, O60, O78, O101, O141, and O147 were isolated in relatively lower numbers (2–4% each), but 49% of isolates were nontypeable. Not all *E. coli* isolates are able to cause septicemia in colostrum-deprived piglets (Meyer et al. 1971; Murata et al. 1979).

The characteristics of *E. coli* involved in porcine septicemia have not been greatly studied. However, septicemia-inducing strains may express virulence determinants, which include fimbriae, polysaccharide capsule and O-antigen capsule, lipopolysaccharide (LPS), the aerobactin system, hemolysin, and other cytotoxins (Table 38.5). Fimbrial adhesins associated with *E. coli* isolates from piglets with septicemia include the F1651, F1652 (Contrepois et al. 1989; Fairbrother et al. 1986), and other fimbriae of the P, S, and F1C fimbrial families (Dozois et al. 1997).

ETEC may be associated with secondary septicemia, particularly in older piglets. These isolates most frequently belong to the virotypes listed in Table 38.3. The virulence determinants most frequently associated with isolates from primary septicemia in pigs or isolates inducing septicemia in newborn colostrum-deprived pigs are F1651, F1652, or other fimbriae of the P, S, and F1C fimbrial families, production of colicin V, production of the siderophore aerobactin, and resistance to the bactericidal effects of serum (Fairbrother and Ngeleka 1994). Isolates from cases of primary septicemia

---

**Table 38.5.** Important pathotypes, virulence factors, and O serogroups of *E. coli* causing extraintestinal disease in pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Pathotype</th>
<th>Virulence Factors</th>
<th>O Serogroups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Septicemia</td>
<td>SEPEC</td>
<td>Aerobactin</td>
<td>6, 8, 9, 11, 15, 17, 18, 20, 45, 60, 78, 83, 84, 93, 101, 112, 115, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urogenital tract infection</td>
<td>UPEC</td>
<td>P, S, aerobactin, CNF1</td>
<td>1, 4, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: The *Escherichia coli* Laboratory, Université de Montréal.
may occasionally produce cytotoxic necrotizing factor (CNF1).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Primary septicemia is most often seen as sporadic cases and rarely in the form of a small outbreak (Nielsen et al. 1975a). The disease may occur throughout the suckling period, with exceptional cases in pigs up to 80 days old. Epidemiology of the secondary systemic infection is determined by the underlying disease.

**PATHOGENESIS**

Primary neonatal septicemia occurs in piglets lacking immunity, due either to an absence of ingested colostrum or to ingestion of colostrum lacking specific antibody. The disease may develop after bacterial invasion of the respiratory or the gastrointestinal tract in the nonimmune host. Contamination of the umbilicus after birth may also lead to colisepticemia. However, the intestine is considered as a major route of invasion. The disease may develop after bacterial invasion of the respiratory or the gastrointestinal tract in the nonimmune host. Contamination of the umbilicus after birth may also lead to colisepticemia. However, the intestine is considered as a major route of invasion since the disease can be experimentally induced by oral or intragastric administration of the organisms (Ngeleka et al. 1993).

Secondary septicemia may develop after invasion of the host by ETEC, but in most cases development of primary neonatal septicemia is associated with intestinal permeability to macromolecules, to some defect of the immune system (e.g., low levels of maternal colostrum), to low birth weight, and to sublethal malformations (Gyles and Fairbrother 2004; Murata et al. 1979).

Bacteria may pass through the mucosa of the alimentary tract, probably by endocytic uptake into intestinal epithelial cells or through the intercellular spaces formed by lateral plasma membranes of adjacent epithelial cells, to locate in the mesenteric lymph nodes before entering the bloodstream. This bacterial invasion may result in a generalized infection (septicemia, polyserositis) with bacteria disseminated in different extraintestinal organs such as lung, liver, spleen, kidney, brain, and heart blood, or in a localized infection (meningitis or arthritis) (Morris and Sojka 1985). In the sow, a puerperal sepsis may be induced by an enteric *E. coli* soon after farrowing (Sojka 1965).

Septicemia may be produced experimentally in colostrum-deprived piglets by intragastric inoculation with isolates of porcine origin (Fairbrother and Ngeleka 1994; Ngeleka et al. 1993). However, the disease can also be reproduced in piglets with isolates from other sources, such as calves, cats, and poultry (Fairbrother et al. 1993; Murata et al. 1979; Meyer et al. 1971). Animals may develop fever, anorexia, diarrhea, dyspnea, or nervous signs, due in part to the effect of bacterial endotoxin or cytokotins or to the effects of inflammatory cytokines induced by these bacterial products (Nakajima et al. 1991; Jesmok et al. 1992). The role of some of the virulence determinants associated with *E. coli*-inducing septicemia is only partially understood. LPS, K capsule and O-antigen capsule, and production of siderophores such as aerobactin are thought to allow the bacteria to invade the host and escape its defense mechanisms. These determinants increase bacterial resistance to the bactericidal effect of complement and to phagocytosis and allow bacterial growth in body fluids with low concentrations of free iron (Crosa 1989; Ngeleka et al. 1992, 1993). Fimbriae appear to be important for the survival and spread of bacteria within the host and subsequent bacterial pathogenicity, in part by promoting bacterial resistance to the bactericidal effects of phagocytosis (Ngeleka et al. 1992, 1993, 1994). One mechanism for this resistance appears to be an inhibition of the oxidative response (Ngeleka and Fairbrother 1999).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Clinical signs of infection include depression, lameness, reluctance to move, anorexia, rough hair coat, and labored respiration (Nielsen et al. 1975a). The affected piglets may show sternal recumbency and the abdomen may be somewhat distended. Sometimes piglets become unconscious, with convulsions and paddling movements; they may be in good bodily condition but cyanosis of the extremities may be observed. Some piglets are found dead whereas others are comatose without any sign of diarrhea. These clinical signs may develop within 12 hours after birth and piglets can die within 48 hours (Taylor 1989). In older piglets, the clinical signs may include periodic scouring or other ailments that precede the onset of acute septicemia with clinical signs resembling those in the newborn pigs.

**LESIONS**

In acute primary septicemia, there may be no gross lesions other than congestion of the intestine, the mesenteric lymph nodes, and the extraintestinal organs. In subacute cases, subserous or submucosal hemorrhages and fibrinous polyserositis with gross signs of pneumonia are usually observed, often accompanied by fibrinopurulent arthritis and meningitis (Morris and Sojka 1985; Waxler and Britt 1972). Histological examination of the lung reveals interalveolar interstitial pneumonia with edema and neutrophilic infiltration, but alveoli are free of exudates. In secondary septicemia resulting from enteric colibacillosis, icterus, petechial hemorrhages in the serosal membranes, and splenomegaly accompanied by severe diarrhea and dehydration can be observed in some cases (Svendsen et al. 1975). In many cases of secondary systemic *E. coli* infection, presumably occurring at a very late stage in the underlying disease, the changes are slight or no lesions at all are recorded.
DIAGNOSIS

Systemic colibacillosis is generally suspected with the appearance of the clinical signs described above. However, in the case of polyserositis, a differential diagnosis between Mycoplasma hyorhinis and Haemophilus parasuis has to be made. In the former infection, gross lesions can be detected more than 6 days after infection. Mortality is lower than in E. coli infection. In polyserositis due to E. coli, the exudates encountered in piglets are serofibrinous or fibrinopurulent, whereas in H. parasuis infections they tend to be serofibrinous. In the central nervous system and joints, these exudates are fibrinopurulent to purulent (Waxler and Britt 1972). Infection due to H. parasuis is rarely seen in the early suckling period but is more common in piglets of 2–3 months of age. However, differential diagnosis can be established after a careful microbiological examination. In most of the cases, postmortem examination and bacteriology are useful for identifying the infection. Diagnosis of primary systemic colibacillosis is strengthened by the isolation in pure culture or by the predominance of E. coli in extraintestinal tissues, particularly E. coli of one of the above-mentioned serogroups or, more important, possessing one or more of the virulence factors, such as adhesins of the P or S families, serum resistance, or production of aerobactin (Table 38.5). The genes for these virulence factors may be detected by hybridization probes and the multiplex polymerase chain reaction (PCR), as described in the section on neonatal diarrhea. Diagnosis of secondary systemic colibacillosis is strengthened by the isolation in pure culture or by the predominance in extraintestinal tissues of E. coli possessing the genes for one or more of the enterotoxins LT, STa, or STb and possibly one of the fimbrial adhesins associated with ETEC, particularly F4.

PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

Inadequate hygiene and poor environmental temperature control increase the likelihood of infection. Thus, prevention of infection should focus on reduction or elimination of significant pathogenic E. coli populations in the environment of the piglets and in providing a plentiful supply of colostrum at birth. Hygiene, especially washing and disinfection of the farrowing pens, will efficiently contribute to reduction of the infection. Young piglets should be maintained at an even temperature of 35°C for the first week of life. They must be kept dry and warm in clean surroundings. Affected piglets should be treated if necessary, and other litters of susceptible age watched. However, in the case of small outbreaks, careful monitoring of the causative serogroup(s) and autovaccination of the pregnant sows might be beneficial.

Treatment may be attempted after diagnostic confirmation of E. coli infection and antibiotic sensitivity testing. Meanwhile, parenteral or oral administration of broad-spectrum antimicrobials to affected piglets is recommended while waiting for results of diagnostic tests. This treatment may be useful in subacute cases of infection but is mostly ineffective after the appearance of clinical signs. However, the remaining piglets in the litter and affected piglets and littermates in adjacent litters should be treated.

REFERENCES


Coliform Mastitis

J. M. Fairbrother

The term “coliform mastitis” (CM) is used to refer to puerpural mastitis in the pig, underlining the parallel of this disease with CM in the cow (Bertschinger 1999). Other terms used to denominate CM and related conditions are discussed in Chapter 4 of this book. In one study, it was found that 59 of 72 agalactic sows (82%) had gross lesions of mastitis (Ross et al. 1981).

CM has a worldwide distribution. Hermansson et al. (1978) reported an average incidence of postpartum agalactia of 12.8%, individual herds varying from 0.5–50%. In a Danish study, on farms with a high management level, an incidence of 9.5% of mastitis-metritis-agalactia (MMA) among 72,000 farrowings was observed (Jorsal 1986). In these studies, the precise incidence of CM was not determined. In another study, *E. coli* or *Klebsiella pneumoniae* was isolated from 79% of the 131 mammary complexes with mastitis examined in herds with an MMA problem (Wegmann et al. 1986).

Economic loss due to CM is difficult to estimate, being multifactorial. In the affected sows, mortality is low, and it is difficult to assess the cost of extra care and of treatment. On the other hand, the mortality in piglets nursing multiparous sows with MMA has been reported to be as high as 55.8%, compared to 17.2% in piglets nursing healthy sows (Bäckström et al. 1984) and 21% compared to 17% in another study (Madec et al. 1992). Mortality of piglets may result from lengthened farrowing time, crushing by the sow, starvation, and impaired immunity to infectious agents because of insufficient uptake of colostral immunoglobulins. The average milk yield of three sows affected with CM on the first 2 days after farrowing was about half the yield of healthy sows, and the piglets of the sick sows lost some weight (Ross et al. 1975). Piglets sucking glands with mastitis of sows with subclinical CM had smaller weight gains only for days 1–4 postpartum (Bertschinger et al. 1990).

**ETIOLOGY**

The term “coliform,” when used in the context of mastitis, refers to the bacterial genera *Escherichia*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, and *Citrobacter*. However, the methods used for identification in several studies were not adequate to determine the genera and even less the species of the bacterial isolates. *E. coli* was the organism most often identified in either milk samples or affected mammary tissue (Ringarp 1960; Armstrong et al. 1968; Bertschinger et al. 1977a; Ross et al. 1981; Wegmann et al. 1986). No one serotype has been associated with *E. coli* isolated from the milk of sows with CM (Morner et al. 1998). The virulence factors of *E. coli* from CM are not well known, although serum resistance and ability to bind to fibronectin have been associated with these isolates. Nevertheless, *E. coli* isolates from sows with mastitis are very heterogeneous, as shown by random amplified polymorphic DNA genotyping (Ramasoota et al 2000). *Klebsiella*, mostly *K. pneumoniae*, was prevalent in the cases investigated by Ross et al. (1975) and Jones (1976). *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and a variety of streptococci have also been found in the mammary glands of sows with signs of mastitis, either mixed with coliforms or as pure cultures. Nevertheless, noncoliform organisms were rarely associated with microscopic lesions of mastitis (Bertschinger et al. 1977a; Ross et al. 1981).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

CM of the sow appears to be noncontagious. Multiple serological types of isolate from cases of mastitis may be found within a herd and even within distinct glands of one sow. A significant proportion of subcomplexes harbor more than one type (Bertschinger et al. 1977a; Awad-Masalmeh et al. 1990). The great variety of coliform bacteria associated with CM indicates an abundant reservoir of potentially pathogenic bacteria. The coliforms causing mastitis may originate from the flora of the sow as well as from the environment. In about one-third of the sows with mastitis, identical isolates were found in mastitic glands, the uterine contents, and the urinary bladder (Bertschinger et al. 1977a). The intestinal flora of the sow, the oral flora of the neonatal piglet, and environmental bacteria may significantly contribute to contamination.
of the nipples. Awad-Masalmeh et al. (1990) found identical O serogroups of *E. coli* in mammary secretion and in feces of about one-fourth of 67 sows with CM. Muirhead (1976) considered the bedding of the sow of paramount importance. Dung and urine contaminate the udder. *Klebsiella* spp. may also originate from wood shavings used for bedding. Bertschinger et al. (1990) compared 12 farrowings each in conventional farrowing crates and in an experimental pen where the sows could lie down in a clean resting area. Sows in the experimental pen had much lower counts of coliform bacteria on their teat ends and an incidence of intramammary *E. coli* infections 10 times lower than that of the sows in the crates.

**PATHOGENESIS**

**Invasion of the Mammary Gland**

Mastitis was reproduced in the sow by intramammary instillation of not more than 120 organisms of a strain of *K. pneumoniae*. Following massive external contamination of the nipples with the same strain, the bacteria were recovered from 60 out of 142 subcomplexes examined. External contamination of the nipples was as successful on gestation day 111 as 2 hours after completion of farrowing (Bertschinger et al. 1977b). It is largely unknown at what time spontaneous invasion of the cistern takes place. McDonald and McDonald (1975) found significant numbers of coliform bacteria in about one-fourth of mammary glands cultured immediately prior to parturition. In a sequential examination of the mammary secretions, *E. coli* was isolated from 30 glands. In 17 of these glands, the bacteria were detected before the first piglet was born (Bertschinger et al. 1990). New infections appeared not later than day 2 postpartum.

The bacteria are located in the ductular and alveolar lumina, either free or within phagocytic cells. Little adhesion to surfaces is observed. At postmortem examination the causative bacteria are frequently isolated from regional lymph nodes, whereas isolations from the liver, spleen, or kidney are rare (Armstrong et al. 1968; Bertschinger et al. 1977a, b; Ross et al. 1981).

Multiplication of bacteria in the mammary secretion is controlled by antimicrobial mechanisms. The antimicrobial activity of cow’s milk is due to a variety of inhibitors acting in concert and conferring on the dry udder a nearly total resistance to coliform proliferation (Bramley 1976). A lower opsonic activity observed in mammary secretions of sows at parturition (Osterlundh et al. 1998), as well as a lower phagocytic capacity of polymorphonuclear (PMN) cells in colostrum as compared to in milk (Osterlundh et al. 2001) may explain the increased susceptibility to the development of CM at parturition. CM is a self-curing disease. The bacteria generally disappear between 1 and 6 days after parturition (Wegmann and Bertschinger 1984; Bertschinger et al. 1990). In severe cases, however, they persist in necrotic foci throughout lactation (Löpfe 1993).

**Mammary Inflammation**

CM in the sow is associated with massive accumulation of neutrophils in the lumina of affected glands. Simultaneous induction of CM in several mammary subcomplexes of sows from which the piglets had been removed resulted in severe leukopenia within 24 hours (Bertschinger et al. 1977b). Intracisternal instillation of identical bacterial inocula following a highly standardized protocol led to a spectrum of reactions ranging from very severe local and general signs to subclinical mastitis (Löpfe 1993; Mossi 1995). Severe reaction is the consequence of massive and persistent multiplication of inoculated bacteria. In the experiments of Löfstedt et al. (1983) susceptibility to experimental infection was associated with impaired function of circulating neutrophils. The cause of the impaired neutrophil function is still a mystery. Magnusson et al. (2001) showed that sows were more susceptible to experimental infection immediately prior to parturition than at 4 days before parturition, the number of neutrophils in the blood being greater in the former. This suggests a role for the number of circulating neutrophils at the time of infection in the development of clinical CM in the sow. Nevertheless, Osterlundh et al. (2002) have shown in experimental inoculation studies that impaired chemotactic or phagocytic capacity of blood granulocytes does not appear to be involved in susceptibility of sows to develop clinical CM at parturition. Cytological findings in the secretion must be interpreted with caution. Mammary glands not chosen by a piglet undergo involution soon after parturition. Involution is accompanied by an increase in the total somatic cell count as well as in the proportion of PMN cells (Wegmann and Bertschinger 1984). In some sows many glands show increases of total somatic and of PMN cells in the absence of cultivable bacteria (Bertschinger et al. 1990).

**Systemic Reaction**

The systemic signs of CM are brought about by the bacterial endotoxin. An outline of the systemic changes is given in Chapter 4. CM in the absence of systemic reaction is often revealed by methodical examination of mammary secretion (Wegmann 1985; Bertschinger et al. 1990; Persson et al. 1996b).

**Immunity**

CM apparently does not result in protection against homologous reinfection (Bertschinger and Bühlmann 1990). Ringarp (1960) reported a higher incidence in sows than in gilts, as well as repeated occurrence, up to 10 times, in individual sows.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Ross et al. (1975) described the clinical findings in sows with proven CM and demonstrated changes quite similar to those described earlier in sows with lactational
failure. Interpretation of clinical parameters is rendered difficult by the presence of subclinical CM in apparently healthy sows (Nachreiner and Ginther 1972; Middleton-Williams et al. 1977; Persson et al. 1996b).

The initial signs are most often detected on the first or second day and more rarely on the third day after farrowing. However, they may be observed as early as during parturition (Martin et al. 1967). The first symptoms are body temperature response, listlessness, weakness, and loss of interest in the piglets. Affected sows prefer sternal recumbency. In severe cases they become stiff, do not stand up, and may even become comatose. Consumption of feed and water is either reduced or absent. Body temperature is moderately elevated and only rarely exceeds 42° C. Afebrile cases have been reported; although the temperature was not taken continuously and temperature peaks may have been missed. On the other hand, many normal sows will have rectal temperatures that exceed the 39.7°C limit on the day of parturition and for 2 days thereafter (King et al. 1972). In affected sows, respiratory and heart rates are increased. In general, symptoms do not last for more than 2–3 days.

The behavior of the piglets is very helpful in the early detection of lactational failure. Undernourished piglets look gaunt. They frequently try to suck, move from nipple to nipple, nibble at litter, and lick urine from the floor. If access to the nipples is given by the sow, the periods of suckling are shortened. After suckling, the piglets wander instead of resting in close contact with their littermates.

Precise localization of mammary lesions is often not possible because reddening and heat of the skin extend over several subcomplexes. The reliable clinical assessment of the state of the actual mammary tissue is rendered difficult by subcutaneous fat and considerable subcutaneous edema. If palpable, the mastitic tissue is firmer and palpation may cause pain. The red color of the skin is blanched by finger pressure, which causes a depression of the tissue lasting for some time. Mere clinical examination will at best detect some of the affected subcomplexes (Persson et al. 1996b). The inguinal lymph nodes may be swollen.

The fluid expressed from a nipple originates from more than one subcomplex, because two or, rarely, three teat canals end in each nipple. Therefore, in samples taken from a nipple, secretion from the unaffected, productive subcomplex dominates. The exudate from inflamed subcomplexes looks serous to creamy, like pus. It may contain clots of fibrin or blood. The pH is of limited diagnostic value (Ross et al. 1981; Persson et al. 1996b), but cytological examination allows differentiation between healthy and mastitic complexes at least during the first 48 hours after parturition (Wegmann and Bertschinger 1984). Because mastitis is a local process, samples must be taken from individual complexes and not pooled. The threshold value of the total cell count varies depending on the investigator. Bertschinger et al. (1990) suggested $5 \times 10^6$ cells per mL and fewer than 70% PMN. In a recent study, Persson et al. (1996a) proposed $10 \times 10^6$ cells per mL. However, these authors did not distinguish between sucked and unsucked glands. Involution of some glands starts as early as 1 day after parturition (Wegmann and Bertschinger 1984). It leads to a significant increase of the total cell count accompanied by a transient increase of up to 60% of the proportion of PMN cells. As a consequence, cytological distinction between involution and mastitis may be difficult or impossible between 2 and 7 days postpartum (Wegmann 1985). Bacteriological examination of the secretion may be necessary in unclear cases. Infection persisting for several days is limited to severely affected complexes (Löpfe 1993).

**LESIONS**

Despite the high incidence of CM, there are not many reports of necropsy findings (Martin et al. 1967; Jones 1976; Middleton-Williams et al. 1977; Ross et al. 1981). In general, lesions are confined to the mammary glands and regional lymph nodes. The subcutaneous tissue may be edematous over affected parts of the udder. For reliable demonstration of mastitis, Middleton-Williams et al. (1977) recommended a longitudinal section at the level of the nipples through each row of glands. Using this technique, irregularly scattered foci of mastitis were detected in 1–23 subcomplexes (Figure 38.9). The appearance of affected mammary tissue varied from slightly increased firmness and grayish discoloration to sharply demarcated, red-mottled, hard, and dry areas.

**38.9. Distribution and intensity of histologic lesions on nine field cases of CM (modified from Middleton-Williams et al. 1977).**
The secretion was sparse and sometimes mixed with clots.

Histological examination permitted the detection of additional lesions that had not been recognized at gross examination. In every case there was an acute purulent exudative mastitis with congestion. An extreme variability in severity ranging from a small number of neutrophils in the alveolar lumina to severe purulent infiltration with necrosis was obvious (Figure 38.11). The severity of the lesions varied not only between but also within subcomplexes, where unaffected tissue was found adjacent to severely inflamed areas. Acute purulent lymphadenitis was present in the inguinal and iliac lymph nodes (Middleton-Williams et al. 1977). A sequential study of the microscopic lesions following experimental intracisternal inoculation revealed in severe cases the persistence throughout lactation of abscesslike large necrotic foci surrounded by granulomatous connective tissue (Löpfe 1993). A predilection of microscopic lesions for certain areas within a given complex was not evident. The mucosa lining the cisternae was not affected.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Any hypogalactia at the beginning of lactation arouses suspicion of CM. The diagnosis may be supported by fever, anorexia, reluctance to stand up, lying on the gland, and disinterest in the piglets. In severe cases some affected glands may be reddened, swollen, and firm, and the secretion may look abnormal. A reliable rapid test for use on the farm is not available. Due to the higher cell content of sow milk, tests developed for use with the cow cannot be recommended. Bacteriological and cytological...
cal examinations of the secretion are valuable only if all glands are sampled or if affected glands are known. The differential diagnosis of CM is reviewed in Chapter 4.

TREATMENT

Therapeutic measures are usually not taken before the sow shows signs of dysgalactia. Thus, treatment may at best shorten the period of underfeeding of the piglets.

Chemotherapy is complicated by the heterogeneous pattern of antimicrobial susceptibility of individual isolates, not only within a herd but also within a sow. Therefore, sensitivity testing is of little value in individual cases.

The pharmacokinetics of antimicrobials has received only limited attention. One injection of 20 mg/kg body weight of a slow-release formulation of oxytetracycline results in milk levels not surpassing 2 µg/mL, that is, just above the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of susceptible E. coli (Schoneweis et al. 1982). Enrofloxacin, a quinolone antibiotic, given at 2.5 mg/kg body weight orally twice daily, is concentrated in colostrum and milk to mean levels of 1.2 µg/mL, which is 20 times higher than the MIC (Oliel and Bertschinger 1990). Awad-Masalmeh et al. (1990) tested 107 strains of E. coli isolated from sows with CM from 43 herds and found no resistance to enrofloxacin (Table 38.6). Therapeutic trials are generally difficult to evaluate because the curative effect is not quantified and is often difficult to distinguish from spontaneous improvement. Options for supportive therapy are discussed in Chapter 4.

Much attention should be given to the piglets. They may either be fostered by other sows or remain with their mother and receive a milk substitute. Sweetened condensed milk diluted with water 1:1 can be used instead of commercial products. A sterile 5% glucose solution at a dose of approximately 15 mL can be repeatedly injected intraperitoneally every several hours, or a more concentrated solution may be administered intragastrically. When the pig obtains insufficient amounts of milk, protection against chilling is particularly important.

PREVENTION

Hygiene Measures

Muirhead (1976) and Jones (1979) suggested that protection of the teats from bacterial contamination might be an effective prophylaxis of CM. Bertschinger et al. (1990) performed a prospective study of farrowing in two types of pens. They concluded that the density of the coliform flora on the teat apex reflects the degree of contamination of the lying area. Optimal prophylaxis is achieved by designing farrowing accommodation in such a manner that the sow is prevented from lying down in her own excreta. On the other hand, washing and disinfection of the pen and of the newly housed sow contribute much less to efficient prophylaxis. If cases of CM accumulate, the bedding materials should be checked.

Nutrition of the Sow

Drastic reduction of the sow’s ration shortly before parturition is a widespread practice. In a carefully designed long-term study using pairs of full siblings, the reduction of the daily feed allowance from 3.2 to 1.0 kg of a commercial-type feed lowered the incidence of agalactia from 26.6% to 14.4% (Persson et al. 1989). Udder changes were observed in a high percentage of the agalactic sows, and significant numbers of bacteria were found in more than 80% of the agalactic sows. The two feed regimens did not influence the total cell count, the PMN levels, or the pH of the secretion (Persson et al. 1996b). Plonait et al. (1986) reported a corresponding observation. Experimentally induced CM takes a similar course with sows on high and low rations (H. U. Bertschinger and A. Bühlmann, unpublished data). This finding led to the suggestion that feed reduction might act through reduced exposure of the teats to microbial infection due to the much smaller amounts of feces and urine contaminating the lying area.

Immunoprophylaxis

Vaccination is not a promising method for control of mastitis. Induction of specific immunity is hampered by the wide range of antigenic types of coliforms isolated from sows with CM. Use of an E. coli bacterin induced poor protection in sows against intramammary challenge with the same strain used to prepare the bacterin (R. Ross, Ames, Iowa, unpublished data, 1982).

In the cow, there is considerable evidence that vaccination with an R-mutant of E. coli results in a dramatically reduced incidence of CM (Tyler et al. 1993). Vaccination has little impact on the frequency of new infections but decreases the incidence of overt disease. No reports have appeared to date on the efficacy of such vaccines in the sow.

Table 38.6  Sensitivity to antimicrobial agents of coliform isolates from mammary glands in Switzerland and Austria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antimicrobial agent</th>
<th>% Sensitive Isolates</th>
<th>Switzerland</th>
<th>Austria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n = 801</td>
<td>n = 1072</td>
<td>n = 1073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ampicillin</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloramphenicol</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptomycin</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neomycin</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentamicin</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrofloxacin</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Bertschinger et al. 1977a.
2Wegmann et al. 1986.
4Not tested.
Hormones

Some investigators found an extended period of gestation in sows developing lactational failure. The length of gestation can be controlled by use of prostaglandins. However, the prophylactic application led to conflicting results. Studies focusing on CM are not known.

Chemoprophylaxis

At present, chemoprophylaxis appears to be the most promising method of control where accommodation cannot be improved. The prevalence of drug resistance (Table 38.6) and the wide variety of bacteria associated with the disease in a given herd must be considered when the drug is selected. Feed medication should be replaced by individual application of the drug in a small amount of feed because the feed consumption of the sow in the periparturient period is quite variable. Minimizing the period of treatment helps postpone the emergence of drug resistance. In field trials, the morbidity from MMA was reduced from 30% to 12% by giving 0.4 g trimethoprim, 1 g sulfadimidine, and 1 g sulfathiazole/150 kg body weight twice a day. The treatment began on gestation day 112 and lasted for 4 days regardless of the day of farrowing (Bollwahn 1978). Six intramammary injections of apramycin (6.25 mg/kg) at 12-hour intervals reduced the severity of experimentally induced mastitis (Ross and Zimmermann 1982).

Oliel and Bertschinger (1990) evaluated the effect of oral chemoprophylaxis with enrofloxacin on experimentally induced CM. Three glands of each sow were inoculated with *E. coli* and three glands with *K. pneumoniae*. Eight sows were not treated (treatment I), eight sows received 2.5 mg (treatment II), and eight sows received 5.0 mg/kg body weight twice a day (treatment III). The inoculated bacteria were reisolated in treatment III from 2% of the inoculated glands. A beneficial effect on milk productivity would be expected but could not be demonstrated because the control sows did not develop systemic signs.

REFERENCES


Urinary Tract Infection

J. M. Fairbrother

Urinary tract infection (UTI) is present whenever any of the typically sterile sections of the urinary tract are colonized by microbes. UTI may or may not be accompanied by clinically manifest or subclinical disease. In the pig, specific UTI caused by *Actinobaculum suis* (Chapter 9) is distinguished from nonspecific UTI caused by a variety of microbes, the subject of this chapter. According to Liebhold et al. (1995), a nonspecific UTI often predisposes for *A. suis* infection.

UTI is the predominant cause of death in pigs over 1 year of age (Häni et al. 1976). In a survey of culled sows, significant bladder colonization was detected in 17% of the sows, and 80% of the colonized bladders exhibited histological lesions of cystitis (Colman et al. 1988).

Many authors have suggested a relationship between bacteriuria and reproductive disorders, including MMA. Sows developing MMA have a much higher prevalence of UTI in the preceding gestation period than sows with a normal puerperium (Miquet et al. 1990). According to Petersen (1983), examination of urine in late pregnancy allows recognition of sows at risk to develop MMA at a subsequent farrowing. However, similar prevalences of UTI in herds with and without MMA were reported by Becker et al. (1985). Potential pathogenetic relations between UTI and MMA were discussed in detail by Berner (1988).

**ETIOLOGY**

*A. suis* is often associated with severe cases of urinary tract disease. Nonspecific UTI may be caused by one or more of a number of bacterial species, often including *E. coli*. In one study of sows with acute urinary tract disease, *A. suis* was the bacterial species most commonly detected, mostly together with two or three other bacterial species, such as *E. coli*, *Streptococcus* sp., *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, *Klebsiella* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp., *Aeromonas* sp., and *Bacteroides* sp. (Stirnimann and Tschudi 1985). *A. suis* was also the bacterial species most commonly detected, mostly in mixed infections, in cases of pyelonephritis (Carr and Walton 1993). In this study, the isolation of large numbers of *E. coli* in the upper urinary tract was associated with linear renal scarring.

In a study of sows with severe acute urinary tract disease, mostly cystitis and often with pyelonephritis, *A. suis* was detected in fewer cases and *E. coli* was the prin-
principal pathogen, followed by streptococci and *Pseudomonas* (Stirnimann 1984). In another study, half of the sows with a significant bacteriuria but no pyelonephritis were infected with enterobacteria and streptococci but were free from *A. suis* (Liebhold et al. 1995).

In a study of aspirates taken at a slaughterhouse from sow bladders, *E. coli* was the most commonly isolated bacterial species, mostly in pure culture (Colman et al. 1988). *S. aureus, S. hyicus, E. faecalis, E. faecium, S. dysgalactiae*, and diverse gram-positive bacteria were also isolated, but to much lesser extent. Cystitis was present in most of the examined bacteriologically positive sows. *A. suis* was not detected in this study.

The urinary tract is a dynamic microbiological ecosystem. Dominant bacterial species change spontaneously in a significant proportion of sows surveyed over prolonged periods (Berner 1990). These changes become more frequent when sows are treated with antimicrobials.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Nonspecific UTI behaves like a noncontagious infectious disease of endogenous origin. In dogs, *E. coli* isolates from urine and from rectal samples of the same individual show identity in phenotypic and genotypic tests (Low et al. 1988). Corresponding studies with the pig are lacking. The fecal flora may achieve access to the urinary tract more efficiently in females than in males. Under intensive confinement conditions, sows' vulvas are often placed in direct contact with feces (Smith 1983). The dog-sitting position helps to force fecal material into the vagina. Sows resting for long periods void urine at longer intervals. However, housing conditions have not yet been studied with respect to UTI.

The age distribution of UTI favors the concept of continuous exposure to fecal contamination. The prevalence of UTI increases from 18% in young sows with 1–3 litters to 38% in older sows with 7 and more litters (Becker et al. 1985).

**PATHOGENESIS**

In humans and in dogs colonization of the lower genital tract and of the urinary tract by uropathogenic *E. coli* is greatly facilitated by fimbrial adhesins, particularly Type 1 and P fimbriae (Gyles and Fairbrother 2004). Similarly, P fimbriae and mannose-sensitive hemagglutination indicative of type 1 pili, were found in *E. coli* isolates from the urine of pigs with bacteriuria (de Brito et al. 1999). It is assumed that most agents ascend through the urethra (Smith 1983). Invasion is favored by the short, wide urethra of the female pig, the relaxation of the sphincter muscle in late pregnancy and puerperium, trauma to the urethra and bladder at coitus and parturition, abnormal bacterial colonization of the sinus urogenitalis and the genital organs, incomplete closure of the vulva, and catheterization of the bladder (Berner 1988). Repeated examination of individual sows led to the conclusion that asymptomatic bacteriuria may temporarily deteriorate to cystitis with spontaneous remission (Berner 1988). Liebhold et al. (1995) assumed that nonspecific infection promotes colonization of the bladder by *A. suis*. Carr et al. (1990) postulate that bacterial colonization leads to shortening and deformation of the ureteric valve and thereby promotes vesicooureteric reflux. The latter could be easily demonstrated postmortem in cases of acute pyelonephritis.

Serum antibody against the infecting *E. coli* strain can regularly be detected in sows with pyelonephritis, less often in sows with cystitis, and rather rarely in sows with asymptomatic bacteriuria (Wagner 1990). *E. coli* strains may persist in the urinary tract despite high antibody concentrations in the urine.

UTI predisposes to MMA in one of several ways (Berner 1988). Ascending invasion of the uterus at parturition and of the mammary glands from contamination of the lying area appears most likely. However, other routes cannot be ruled out. Identical OK serotypes of *E. coli* were found in the urinary bladders and in the uteri of 3 sows and in the bladder and mammary gland of 1 out of 9 sows with MMA killed for postmortem examination (Bertschinger et al. 1977).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

In the vast majority of nonspecific UTI cases there are no clinical signs (Berner 1988). Akkermans and Pomer (1980) concluded from an extended field study that sows with a significant bacteriuria tend to wean small litters, have increased intervals between litters, show a lower fertility rate, and exhibit an inferior body condition. In many sows with cystitis, careful observation reveals abnormal urination (Becker et al. 1988). The sows stand in one place before they void urine in small quantities with straining. They are more often seen in a dog-sitting position. Proteinuria, macrohematuria, and pH increases are more prevalent in sows infected with *A. suis* than with *E. coli* (Liebhold et al. 1995).

Vulval discharge may appear as dried deposits around the vulva, on the underside of the tail, or more often as a pool on the floor underneath the sows (Dial and MacLachlan 1988a). The discharge may be mucoid, mucohemorrhagic, or purulent and is observed most often during the final phase of urination. However, discharge may result from inflammation of any part of the urogenital tract. Significant discharge is more often the consequence of endometritis than of UTI.

Severe pyelonephritis becomes clinically manifest during the first 2 weeks postpartum in 40% of the cases (Stirnimann 1984). Typical cases exhibit a rectal temperature below 38.0°C, a heart rate over 120, polyphoea, cyanosis, ataxia, and more rarely generalized tremor (Stirnimann and Tschudi 1985). The blood concentrations of urea and creatinine are higher than normal.
LESIONS
Berner (1981) examined 118 culled sows for bacteria and lesions. Twenty-six out of 29 sows with a UTI presented a cystitis, and 12 sows presented an additional pyelonephritis.

The gross lesions of cystitis begin as focal or diffuse mucosal hyperemia (Dial and MacLachlan 1988b). Subsequently, there may be mucosal ulceration with fibrinopurulent exudate over affected areas. The bladder wall becomes thickened. Similar lesions occur in the ureters and the renal pelvis if infection ascends the urinary tract. In pyelonephritis the inflammatory process extends into the renal parenchyma. Wedge-shaped foci extend from the distorted pelvis to the cortex. Fibrosis of the kidneys may occur with time.

Microscopic bladder lesions can be found even in sows with nonspecific UTI and no proteinuria. They consist of a prominent goblet cell proliferation and of intraepithelial cysts containing a few granulocytes. The epithelial layer is infiltrated with neutrophils, whereas mononuclear cells dominate in the lamina propria (Liebhold et al. 1995).

DIAGNOSIS
Mere clinical examination of the animal is of little value in the diagnosis of UTI (Stirnimann 1984); urine must be examined in most cases. Bacteriology of the urinary tract is complicated by the presence of the normal flora colonizing the vagina and the distal part of the urethra. Therefore, distinction between contamination and infection is based on the number of bacteria in the urine. A viable count of \(10^5\) CFU/mL is interpreted as indicative of infection and \(10^4\) CFU/mL as suspicious. Dip slides (i.e., commercially available slides covered by bacterial culture media) give satisfactory quantitative results (Akermans and Pomper 1980). Nevertheless, dip slides have the shortcoming that anaerobes such as \(A.\) suis and slow growers will be missed.

Catheterization of the sow is possible (Stirnimann 1984) but does not circumvent contamination and involves the risk of setting up a new UTI. Voiding can be induced by rousing the sows in the morning before feeding time (Becker et al. 1985). When collecting midstream urine, the attendant should avoid contact with the urine, which may contain zoonotic agents such as leptospires.

Diagnostic test strips are applicable to the urine of pigs, except for nitrite. The sensitivity of the latter test is too low due to the low nitrite concentration in porcine urine (Becker et al. 1985). The most useful parameters are protein, hemoglobin, and pH. In cases due to \(A.\) suis, the pH is strongly alkaline (greater than 8.5) (Carr et al. 1995). Cytological examination may allow discrimination between bacteriuria, cystitis, and pyelonephritis. The presence and concentrations of antibodies in the urine are not well correlated with the severity of the condition (Wagner 1990). Test strips permit the rapid determination of blood urea (Liebhold et al. 1995). Concentrations greater than 10 mmol/L indicate uremia.

TREATMENT
Nearly all the treatments recommended in the literature are aimed at elimination of the bacteria by antimicrobials. The variable susceptibilities of the diverse bacteria involved and the frequent acquisition of R factors pose considerable problems (Table 38.7). With regard to the observed changes of infecting bacterial species or types in the course of antimicrobial treatments, Berner (1990) recommended the use of either broad-spectrum or combined antimicrobials and suggested intensifying the search for alternative strategies.

Becker et al. (1988) treated 9 sows twice daily for 2 weeks via feed with sulfadimidine 1.0 g, sulfathiazole 1.0 g, and trimethoprim 0.4 g/sow. Significant bacteriuria was present in 2 sows 1 week after the treatment and in 3 sows 7 weeks later. The same substances applied over 4 days gave greatly inferior results. Gentamicin, 2.5 mg/kg body weight, was injected intramuscularly to 15 sows on the first day, followed by 2.0 mg on the next 3 days. One week after this treatment, 10 sows were free of significant bacteriuria. The authors concluded that prolonged treatment should be preferred. Antimicrobial resistance was not checked.

Treatment of severely affected sows was reported by Stirnimann (1988). Injection of ampicillin 3 g/sow daily

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 38.7. Sensitivity to antimicrobial agents of significant isolates from porcine UTI in Belgium and Switzerland</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antimicrobial Agent</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillinase-stable Penicillins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ampicillin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amoxycillin/clavulanic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectinomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentamicin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloramphenicol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrofurane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfonamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim and sulfonamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macrolide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lincomycin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Colman et al. 1988.
\(^3\) Not tested.
for 4 days or of the same antibiotic combined with novamisulthon 10 g/sow was compared. The combined treatment led to a smaller number of emergency slaughters. Subclinical UTI persisted in about half of the successfully treated sows.

Dial and MacLachlan (1988b) concluded that treatment of urogenital infections of swine generally is frustrating.

**PREVENTION**

Results of long-term prospective studies are not available. Berner (1988) recommended that all pregnant sows be checked repeatedly for UTI and that positive sows be treated with antimicrobials shortly before parturition. Smith (1983) suggested medicating all dry sows on problem farms for 7–10 days at 6-week intervals. The interval between treatments can be increased gradually as experience dictates. Antibiotics such as tetracyclines or a suitable form of penicillin have been successfully used in the diet. In view of the disappointing results reported by Berner (1990), these recommendations should be viewed with caution.

According to Wagner (1990), immunoprophylaxis holds little promise. Thus, Smith (1983) and Carr et al. (1995) recommended the reduction of environmental exposure by improving fecal drainage and housing conditions. These factors as well as the role of water intake should be further investigated. Frequency of urination was increased by giving access to an exercise yard and by increasing water intake, which was achieved by a salt content of 1% in the diet (Smith 1983).

**REFERENCES**


Exudative epidermitis (EE) has been known by its clinical signs for over 160 years (Spinola 1842). The classic disease occurs as an acute or peracute infection in suckling and newly weaned piglets in which a generalized epidermitis may lead to dehydration and death. Early occurrence and distribution have been comprehensively reviewed by Jones (1956), who provided a good description of the disease and its effects on production. It has been recorded in most pig-rearing countries in both piglets and weaners. Major studies have been carried out by Sompolinsky (1953), Jones (1956), Underdahl et al. (1963, 1965), L’Ecuyer (1966), L’Ecuyer and Jericho (1966), Hunter et al. (1970), and Wegener and Skov-Jensen (1992). The condition is of sporadic occurrence in all countries but may be of great importance in individual herds, especially in newly established or re-populated herds (Pepper and Taylor 1977).

ETIOLOGY

Staphylococcus hyicus is the causal agent of the generalized form of the disease seen in piglets. Although it is present in profuse culture in lesions in adult pigs, the disease has not been reproduced in that age group. Strains of S. hyicus can be divided into virulent and avirulent types with regard to the ability to reproduce EE experimentally in piglets (Wegener et al. 1993). Both types can be present simultaneously on the skin of diseased, as well as healthy, piglets (Park and Kang 1986; Wegener et al. 1993). The production of an exfoliative toxin appears to be the single most important virulence determinant of S. hyicus (Amtsberg 1979; Sato et al. 1991; Wegener et al. 1993; Andresen et al. 1993; Andresen et al. 1997). However, a range of other factors may also be necessary, but not sufficient, to render S. hyicus capable of causing EE in piglets.

S. hyicus was first described by Sompolinsky (1953) as Micrococcus hyicus; it was then defined as a staphylococcus by Baird-Parker (1965). S. hyicus was separated into S. hyicus subsp. hyicus and S. hyicus subsp. chromogenes, a nonpathogen, by Devriese et al. (1978). S. hyicus subsp. chromogenes was subsequently elevated to species S. chromogenes by Hajek et al. (1986), making S. hyicus the taxonomically correct designation for the causal agent of EE. The organism is a gram-positive coccus that forms 3–4 mm porcelain-white nonhemolytic colonies on sheep blood agar after 24 hours’ incubation. It is coagulase negative using the slide test and is heat-stable DNase, lipase, and hyaluronidase positive, and mannitol and acetoin negative. These biochemical characteristics are of value in distinguishing the organism by conventional means from other staphylococci found in pigs (Devriese 1977). A selective indicator medium described by Devriese (1977) which utilizes the lipase activity as the indicative principle can be very useful for isolation of S. hyicus from pathological samples.

S. hyicus may be isolated from a range of other animals, including ruminants and fowl (Devriese et al. 1978). Phenotypic and genotypic differences from porcine isolates suggest that S. hyicus from other animals may belong to separate ecovars (Devriese et al. 1978; Schleifer 1986; Takeuchi et al. 1988). Their virulence with regard to EE is not known.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

EE has been described from all major pig-producing countries, and the incidence has been reported to be increasing in some regions (Anon. 1991; Wegener 1992). This increase may reflect changes in pig production toward larger units, earlier weaning, and higher animal densities. The disease may occur sporadically and with low morbidity among litters in some pig herds, whereas in others it reaches epidemic proportions affecting all litters. This suggests that immunity plays an important part in the cause of the disease in the individual animal as well as in the herd. The significance of immunity in relation to EE has, however, not been thoroughly investigated.

The disease occurs most commonly following the
introduction of carrier animals to a nonimmune herd and affects successive litters of piglets, usually those born to nonimmune sows. All litters in an affected herd may be affected, and up to 70% of affected piglets may die. Outbreaks are usually self-limiting and last for 2–3 months but may persist or recur if nonimmune sows are brought into infected buildings or exposed to infected animals. Outbreaks may start among the weaned piglets, possibly as a result of mixing nonimmune litters and litters of immune carriers, and then spread to the farrowing section of the herd.

*S. hyicus* can frequently be recovered from the nasal mucosa of healthy pigs, from the conjunctiva, the skin of the snout or ear, and from the vagina in gilts and sows (Hajsig et al. 1985; Wegener and Skov-Jensen 1992). *S. hyicus* strains indistinguishable from those present in the vaginas of sows have been recovered from the skin of their offspring, suggesting that colonization takes place during passage through the birth canal (Wegener and Skov-Jensen 1992).

*S. hyicus* is very resistant to adverse conditions (as most staphylococci are) and can persist in the environment for long periods. The organism can persist for weeks on fittings and surfaces, and it has been recovered from the air of infected units at levels up to $2.5 \times 10^4$/m$^3$, suggesting that airborne transmission is possible (Wegener 1992). Other species such as horses, dogs, cattle, goats, and chickens may be of little importance as sources of infection for pigs.

**PATHOGENESIS**

Application of pure cultures of virulent *S. hyicus* to the scarified skin of a nonimmune pig is sufficient to reproduce the disease (Underdahl et al. 1965; L’Ecuyer and Jericho 1966), but it can also be produced by subcutaneous injection in specific pathogen free (SPF) piglets (Underdahl et al. 1965; Wegener et al. 1993). Conventional animals may be resistant to such applications, suggesting that immunity may be an important protective factor. Studies indicate that other elements of the skin flora, especially other staphylococci, may contribute to this resistance to colonization (Allaker et al. 1988). Trauma from fighting, unclipped teeth, rough bedding, or pen walls leading to exposure of dermis may allow the organism to establish infection, although *S. hyicus* may also be able to penetrate the epidermis directly.

The earliest changes are seen as skin reddening accompanying the multiplication of the organism on the skin surface and its growth between the corneocytes of the epidermis, where microcolonies develop. Inflammation, marked hyperplasia of the stratum corneum, and invasion by neutrophils occur, with an increase in thickness of the epidermis, followed by its erosion. The stratum germinativum becomes disorganized and penetrates deeply into the dermis. Clinical signs develop in gnotobiotic piglets when the number of organisms on the skin exceeds $10^5$/cm$^2$ (Allaker et al. 1988). *S. hyicus* may adhere to fibronectin in the dermis by fibronectin-binding proteins on the bacterial surface (Lämmler et al. 1985).

The phagocyte-opsonin system is the pig’s first active line of defense against the infection. Many *S. hyicus* strains harbor determinants that may protect them from phagocytosis: protein A, present in the cell wall of most porcine *S. hyicus* strains, reduces opsonization by binding immunoglobulins at the Fc terminal (Takeuchi et al. 1990), and a capsule present in all virulent but not all avirulent strains of *S. hyicus* inhibits phagocytosis by neutrophils and macrophages (Wegener 1990). All porcine *S. hyicus* strains coagulate pig plasma, suggesting a potential for forming aggregates which may increase protection of the bacterium against phagocytosis. In addition, the production of catalase may protect the bacterium from being killed by the phagocytic cells. All of these properties may contribute to overcoming the initial immune response of the piglet.

The most important factor in the pathogenesis is probably the production of an exfoliative toxin of approximately 30 kDa. Crude or purified exfoliative toxin, which is demonstrable in culture supernates of the organism, can reproduce the skin alterations seen in clinical EE when injected subcutaneously in piglet skin locally (Wegener et al. 1993; Andreasen et al. 1993; Sato et al. 1991). There are different antigenic variants of the toxin; however, they all seem to exert the same activity in pig skin (Andresen et al. 1997). The effect of the purified toxin is separation of the cells in the epidermis, notably separation of cells in the upper stratum spinosum, allowing for rapid intraepidermal spread of the bacteria (Andresen et al. 1993). Exfoliation of the skin is accompanied by excess sebaceous secretion and serous exudate. *S. hyicus* is present in large numbers in the skin and may be isolated from the draining lymph nodes and blood. The mortality associated with this disease results from dehydration and possibly also septicemia.

Exudative epidermitis shares many similarities with the human infection called the staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome, which is a *Staphylococcus aureus* infection of the skin of neonates. The infection leads to a local or a generalized exfoliation of the epidermis and excessive sebaceous secretion and is caused by strains of *S. aureus* capable of producing exfoliative toxins. Two variants of the toxin are known: ET-A, which is encoded by a gene located on the chromosome, and ET-B, which is plasmid encoded. The exfoliative toxins of *S. aureus* and *S. hyicus* have different species specificity. ET-A and ET-B affect the skin of humans and mice but not pigs, whereas the exfoliative toxin of *S. hyicus* affects pigs and chickens but not mice.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Piglets usually develop the disease between 4–6 days and 5–6 weeks of age. Clinical signs begin with dejection
and a reddish or coppery skin color. Thin, pale brown scales of exudate develop in the axillae and groin and within 3–5 days spread to all parts of the body and rapidly become dark in color and greasy in texture (Fig. 39.1). The skin of affected piglets often feels hot, the hair coat is matted, and exudate may extend to the eyelashes. Ulcers may occur in the mouth, and separation of horn may occur at the bulbs of the heels. Anorexia and dehydration are features of this disease. Severely affected piglets lose weight rapidly and may die within 24 hours; death usually occurs within 3–10 days. There is no pruritis, and fever is not common.

Not all piglets in a litter are affected to the same extent, and some individuals will suffer from chronic disease in which smaller areas of the body are involved (Fig. 39.2). Mildly affected piglets may have a yellowish skin, appear hairy, and have only a few flakes of exudate in the axillae or groin or near facial scratches or damage on the knees or adjacent to badly clipped teeth. Growth depression is marked in survivors, and productivity of the herd may be depressed by up to 35% during an outbreak and up to 9% in the year following infection (Pepper and Taylor 1977). Disease in adults varies in severity but occurs as localized lesions on the back or flanks. Mild forms may appear as brownish areas of EE, but in some cases, there may be ulceration (Smith et al. 1990).

**LESIONS**

**Gross Lesions**

Early lesions of the infection include reddening of skin and the presence of a clear exudate. The abdominal skin can be peeled off by slight rubbing. Early lesions are usually present around the mouth, eyes, and ears as well as on the abdomen. Later cases are covered by a thick brownish, greasy, and odorous layer due to dirt and feces sticking to the affected skin. During the recovery phase, the skin is dry and crusted for a period of several days to weeks. The carcasses of pigs that have died from EE are dehydrated and emaciated. The superficial lymph nodes are usually edematous and swollen. Most animals have empty stomachs, and urate crystals may be seen in the medulla of the kidney on section. There is often an accumulation of mucoid or crystalline material in the pelvis of the kidney, and pyelonephritis may be present.

**Microscopic Lesions**

Early changes of the epidermis are exfoliation, exocytosis, crust formation, and formation of vesicles and pustules classified as an “intraepidermal vesicular and pustular dermatitis.” In the later stages, acanthosis (hyperplasia of the epidermis) is observed (Fig. 39.3). In the dermis, perivascular inflammation occurs (Andresen et al. 1993). In histological sections of the skin, bacterial microcolonies may occur in the keratinized layer of the epidermis.

**Bacteriology**

*S. hyicus* can usually be isolated from the lesions, from the superficial lymph nodes, and frequently also from the liver and spleen of untreated cases but may be difficult to demonstrate on nonselective culture media if treatment has been given or if secondary infection by *Proteus* sp. and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* has occurred. The use of a selective indicative agar facilitates isolation of *S. hyicus* from pathological samples (Devriese 1977). Both virulent and avirulent strains of *S. hyicus* can be isolated as mixed cultures from the skin, lymph nodes, and organs of diseased piglets (Wegener 1992). Whether the avirulent strains take any active part in the establishment or course of the infection remains unknown.
DIAGNOSIS

The clinical signs are generally sufficient to reach a diagnosis in young piglets. The lack of fever or of pruritis and the generalized nature of the lesions, their appearance, and the variation in severity within an affected litter are all features suggestive of the disease. Confirmation may be obtained by histological and bacteriological means. It may be necessary to confirm the identity of the staphylococci isolated as *S. hyicus* by conventional bacteriological means (Devriese 1977) or by use of strip tests such as the Staph-Zym test (Lämmler 1989). These have the advantage of revealing the identity of non-*S. hyicus* staphylococci.

*S. hyicus* from pigs are very heterogeneous with regard to phago-, sero-, and DNA fingerprinting types (Wegener 1993a; Park and Kang 1987). Diagnosis is complicated by the simultaneous presence of up to 8 different types of *S. hyicus* on diseased piglets. Wegener (1993b) found that each diseased piglet on average harbored 1.9 different phage types and 2.3 different antibiotic resistance patterns among 10 randomly selected isolates of *S. hyicus* recovered from the skin. Only a slightly lower diversity was observed for strains recovered from the liver or the spleen of the animals. In the absence of simple methods to differentiate virulent from avirulent strains in the diagnostic laboratory, all types of *S. hyicus* should be regarded as potentially virulent. Thus, antimicrobials for therapy which affect all types present should be chosen. Similarly, autogenous vaccines should be prepared from all types present on the diseased animals.

Diagnosis is less easy when the lesions are mild, localized around predisposing lesions such as fight wounds, or have been treated. The demonstration of *S. hyicus* and response to antimicrobials may help confirm uncomplicated disease of this type, but the organism may be present in lesions caused by a number of initiating agents.

Other skin conditions that may be confused with EE include swine pox (localized lesions, rarely fatal), mange (pruritis, demonstration of mites), ringworm (expanding superficial lesions, isolation of fungus), pityriasis rosea (expanding circles, nonfatal, lesions not greasy), zinc deficiency (weaners, symmetrical dry lesions), dermatosis vegetans (inherited in Landrace, fatal pneumonitis), and local wounds such as facial fight wounds and abraded knees in piglets and crate injuries in adults. The organism may be isolated from other pathologic conditions such as arthritis in piglets (Noda and Fukui 1986) and cystitis in sows as well as from the skin of healthy pigs.

TREATMENT AND PREVENTION

Treatment is most successful if carried out early in the disease; severely affected animals may not respond. The effect of systemic treatment is reduction in the severity of the skin lesions, development of only superficial lesions, and promotion of the healing process. *S. hyicus* is frequently resistant to antibiotics. This resistance has been shown to be predominantly mediated by plasmids (Wegener and Schwarz 1993). Combinations of trimethoprim and sulfonamides or lincomycin and spectinomycin have been shown to have good in vitro activity against *S. hyicus* (Wegener et al. 1994). Antimicrobial treatment should be accompanied by the provision of a fluid replacer or at least clean water for affected piglets and by local treatment with antibiotics or skin disinfectants such as cetrimide, hexocil, or Virkon X in order to speed recovery and prevent spread of the infection. Treatment may have to be continued for at least 5 days, and clinically affected piglets may make a slow recovery or remain stunted.

Vaccination of sows with autogenous bacterins made from strains isolated on the affected farm may be of value in protecting the litters of newly purchased sows when given before farrowing. Antibodies can effectively neutralize the effect of the exfoliative toxin in the skin. It is possible that the toxin may be able to serve as a single protective antigen; however, this has not yet been shown under field conditions. Therefore, autogenous vaccines should be prepared from both the bacterial cells and the culture supernatant, which contains the exfoliative toxin.
The incidence of the disease may be reduced by clipping the teeth of litters at risk, by ensuring that pen surfaces are not abrasive, and by providing soft and dry bedding, such as softwood sawdusts or chaffed straw. Sows entering farrowing accommodation should be washed and disinfected and placed in clean, disinfected, or fumigated pens. Prompt treatment of local lesions on both sows and piglets may also help.

REFERENCES


Once considered a sporadic disease of young pigs compromised by stress, porcine polyserositis and arthritis (Glässer’s disease), caused by *Haemophilus parasuis*, has emerged as one of the significant bacterial diseases affecting swine throughout the world. Adoption of new production technologies resulting in high-health-status herds and the emergence of new respiratory syndromes have contributed to an increase in prevalence and severity of the disease. Disease management with antibiotics, vaccination, and other strategies is not always successful in countering production losses due to *H. parasuis* infection. It has long been known that the immune status of a herd is a determinant of pathogenic outcome of infection (Nielsen and Danielsen 1975). However, the heterogeneity among *H. parasuis* strains is striking, and a better understanding of the association of these phenotypic and genotypic differences with virulence potential and protective immunity has emerged in recent years.

**ETIOLOGY**

Glässer (1910) first reported the association of a small gram-negative rod with fibrinous serositis and polyarthritis of swine. Initially, the causative agent was identified as *Haemophilus suis* by Hjärre and Wramby (1943) and as *Haemophilus influenza suis* by Lecce (1960). The name was changed to *H. parasuis* based on demonstration that the organism did not require X factor (haemin or other porphyrins) for growth (Biberstein and White 1969; Kilian 1976). The taxonomic position of *H. parasuis* within the Pasteurellaceae is still uncertain, due to a lack of nucleic acid homology with other *Haemophilus* species (De Ley et al. 1990; Dewhirst et al. 1992). Taxonomic studies on the NAD-dependent swine Pasteurellaceae based on nucleic acid hybridization or 16s rRNA gene sequencing have led to the classification of 6 bacterial species (Møller et al. 1996). However, considerable genetic, biochemical, serological, and virulence differences exist among strains provisionally classified as *Actinobacillus minor*, *Actinobacillus porcinus*, and *Actinobacillus indolicus*, indicating that these may represent groups of similar organisms rather than clearly defined species (Kielstein et al. 2001). Considerable genotypic heterogeneity has also been demonstrated among *H. parasuis* strains (Smart et al. 1986; Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1992a; Blackall et al. 1997; Rafiee et al. 2000; Ruiz et al. 2001; Oliveira et al. 2001b; De la Puente Redondo et al. 2003; Oliveira et al. 2003a). It has been proposed that more than one bacterial species may be represented by strains identified as *H. parasuis* (Morozumi et al. 1986; Dewhirst et al. 1992).

Microscopically, *H. parasuis* cells are small, nonmotile, pleomorphic rods, varying from single cocobacilli to long, thin, filamentous chains. A capsule can usually be demonstrated, but expression is influenced by in vitro culture (Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1992b). Thus, the significance of reports associating lack of capsule with virulence needs further investigation (Kobisch and Desmettre 1980; Morozumi and Nicolet 1986a; Kielstein 1991). Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD, or V factor) is required for growth and can be supplied by heated blood (chocolate agar) or by satellitic growth in the vicinity of a streak of a staphylococcus strain. After 24–48 hours’ growth, colonies are small, translucent, and nonhemolytic on blood agar.

The existence of serovars was first reported by Bakos et al. (1952). In subsequent years, expansion of this serotyping scheme by other investigators led to several proposals for new serovars (Schimmel et al. 1985; Morozumi and Nicolet 1986b; Nicolet et al. 1986; Kielstein 1991; Rapp-Gabrielson and Gabrielson 1992). Presently, 15 serovars based on immunodiffusion (ID) are recognized (Kielstein and Rapp-Gabrielson 1992). The type-specific antigen is heat-stable polysaccharide (Morozumi and Nicolet 1986b) presumed to be capsule or lipopolysaccharide (LPS). Although some geographic differences are apparent, serotyping of isolates from Japan, Germany, Australia, the United States, Canada, Spain, and Denmark shows serovars 4, 5, and 13 to be...
most prevalent (Table 40.1). Serovar 15, which is of low prevalence in most countries, was identified in 65% of outdoor units in Hungary/Romania/Serbia (Docic and Bilkei 2004). A large percentage of isolates are nontypeable, indicating that some isolates may not express sufficient type-specific antigen, the presence of antigenic diversity within serovars, or the existence of additional serovars. More recently, indirect hemagglutination (IHA) may also be used to serotype *H. parasuis* (del Rio et al. 2003; Tadjine et al. 2004a; Angen et al. 2004). Initial reports indicated that the IHA technique reduced the percentage of nontypeable isolates from 30% to less than 10% compared to ID. However, Turni and Blackall (2005) reported that a similar high percentage of field isolates were nontypeable by ID and IHA. Discordant results were evident for almost 36% of the isolates they examined, and the IHA test did not identify some serovar 4, 5, 13, and 14 field isolates. They recommend that ID be used as the primary typing method, with IHA as a secondary test.

The heterogeneity of *H. parasuis* isolates can also be demonstrated based on genomic fingerprints by Enterobacterial Repetitive Intergenic Consensus polymerase chain reaction (ERIC-PCR) testing (Figure 40.1) (Rafiee et al. 2000; Ruiz et al. 2001; Oliveira et al. 2003a). With this technique, extensive strain variation within serovar groups has been demonstrated. Analysis of strains from the United States identified at least 12 different strains among serovar 4 isolates. The remaining serovar groups contained either 1 (serovar 5), 2 (serovars 1, 3, and 7), 3 (serovars 12 and 14), or 4 (serovar 2) different strains. There was also high genetic diversity among nontypeable isolates, and at least 18 different strains were identified (Oliveira et al. 2003a).

### Table 40.1. Prevalence of *Haemophilus parasuis* serovars

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 or 10a</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,6,8,9,11 or 15</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nontypeable</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


aDifferences between the type strains and field isolates for serovars 7 and 10 have been reported and these serovars cannot always be distinguished by ID (Rapp-Gabrielson 1995, unpublished; Blackall et al. 1996; Rafiee and Blackall 2000; Tadjine et al. 2004).

bOnly tested for *H. parasuis* serovars 1–7.

cTyped by Indirect Hemagglutination (IHA).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The pig is the natural host for *H. parasuis*. This organism is commonly isolated from nasal secretions and tracheal swabs of healthy swine (Bertschinger and Nicod 1970; Harris et al. 1969; Smart et al. 1989; Cu et al. 1998) and from the lungs of pigs with pneumonia, but not generally from normal lungs (Little 1970; Møller et al. 1993). In conventional herds, *H. parasuis* is one of the earliest and most prevalent bacterial isolates from nasal swabs of pigs at 1 week of age (Kott 1983).

Historically, Glässer’s disease has been considered a sporadic disease of young swine compromised by stress. However, the epizootiologic picture in specific pathogen-free (SPF) or high-health-status herds that represent an immunologically naive population is much different (Nielsen and Danielsen 1975; Baehler et al. 1974; Menard...
and Moore 1990). Introduction of *H. parasuis* may result in systemic disease of high morbidity and mortality, affecting swine at any stage of production. In conventional herds that use segregated early weaning (three-site production), late infection with a virulent *H. parasuis* strain can have severe consequences if it occurs when maternal immunity is no longer present. Presently, *H. parasuis* is one of the most serious problems associated with mixing swine from different herds or introduction of new breeding stock into a herd (Smart et al. 1989; Menard and Moore 1990).

There is support for *H. parasuis* as a contributor in the swine respiratory disease complex as a predisposing agent, a secondary invader, or a primary pathogen involved in pneumonia. Demonstration of purulent rhinitis associated with *H. parasuis* colonization supports a possible role as a predisposing factor for other viral and bacterial pathogens (Gois et al. 1983; Vahle et al. 1995, 1997). In pneumonia, *H. parasuis* has often been assumed to be an opportunistic secondary invader, causing disease only in association with other viral or bacterial agents. Such a relationship was evident after accidental infection of pigs experimentally inoculated with pseudorabies virus with *H. parasuis* serovar 4 (Narita et al. 1994). Isolation of *H. parasuis* from pneumonia has increased substantially in recent years and is believed to be associated with the increased prevalence of mycoplasma pneumonia as well as viral respiratory pathogens such as porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) virus, swine influenza virus, and porcine respiratory coronavirus. *H. parasuis*, in combination with *Mycoplasma hyorhinis*, was isolated from 51.2% of lungs from PRRS-infected swine (Kobayashi et al. 1998, 1999). However, Solano et al. (1997) reported that in later stages of infection, pulmonary alveolar macrophages from PRRS virus–infected pigs had a decrease in ability to kill *H. parasuis*. A recent study indicated that pigs harboring a virulent *H. parasuis* strain may develop pneumonia by this agent following PRRS virus challenge (Oliveira et al. 2004d). Several reports support field observations that *H. parasuis* may be a primary agent in pneumonia without the involvement of other pathogens (Pöhle et al. 1992; Barigazzi et al. 1994; Solano et al. 1997; Brockmeier 2004; Müller et al. 2003).

The pathogenic potential of *H. parasuis* strain(s) occurring in a herd is also a factor in the severity and progression of systemic disease. Serovars and strains commonly isolated from upper respiratory sites in swine are not commonly isolated from systemic sites (Bloch 1985; Rapp-Gabrielson 1993; Oliveira et al. 2003a). There may be a subpopulation of *H. parasuis* strains occurring in the respiratory tract that is capable of invading systemically and causing disease (Rapp et al. 1986; Rapp-Gabrielson 1993).

An association between serovar and isolation from polyserositis was apparent in several studies (Bakos et al. 1952; Morozumi and Nicolet 1986b; Kielstein 1991; Oliveira et al. 2003a; Docic and Bilkei 2004). Differences in virulence among serovars were demonstrated by inoculation of SPF or cesarean-derived, colostrum-deprived (CDCD) swine and guinea pigs with strains representing the 15 serovars (Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1992b, 1995; Kielstein and Rapp-Gabrielson 1992; Nielsen 1993; Amano et al. 1994, 1996). In these studies, strains representing some serovars were highly virulent and strains representing other serovars were of lesser virulence or avirulent. Virulence of field isolates was consistent with that of the reference strain, indicating a causal relationship between serovar and virulence (Table 40.2). However, the demonstration that two serovar 14 strains differed in virulence for CDCD pigs indicates that factors other than serovar contribute to the virulence potential of a strain (Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1995).

Table 40.2. Virulence of strains representing *H. parasuis* serovars for SPF swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>H. parasuis</em> Serovar</th>
<th>No. of Strains Evaluated</th>
<th>Virulencea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1, 5, 10, 12, 13, 14</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Death within 96 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 4, 15</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Severe polyserositis and arthritis at necropsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mild clinical signs and gross lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3, 6, 7, 9, 11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>No clinical signs or gross lesions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aSwine inoculated intraperitoneally with $5 \times 10^8$ colony-forming units.

Sodium dodecyl sulfate-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) of whole-cell and outer-membrane (OM) proteins also demonstrates phenotypic heterogeneity among strains (Morozumi and Nicolet 1986a; Rapp et al. 1986; Morikoshi et al. 1990; Rosner et al. 1991; Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1992a; Ruiz et al. 2001; Oliveira and Pijoan 2004a). These reports indicate a possible association of virulence potential with specific protein patterns, particularly with the presence of 36–38 kDa proteins. However, the precise relationship between protein pattern, serovar, genotype, and virulence potential is complex. Heterogeneity of *H. parasuis* LPS has been demonstrated by SDS-PAGE patterns and immunoblotting with monoclonal antibodies, but LPS patterns have not been associated with virulence (Zucker et al. 1994, 1996; Hueller et al. 1999). Filamentous structures presumed to be fimbriae have been demonstrated on some *H. parasuis* strains, but their role in adhesion or pathogenicity remains to be defined (Münch et al. 1992).
A cell-associated neuraminidase that may function as a virulence factor has been characterized for *H. parasuis* (Lichtensteiger and Vimr 1997, 2003). The future understanding of virulence factors and differences among *H. parasuis* strains lies in newer molecular techniques, such as differential display reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (DDRT-PCR), which has recently been used in a search for virulence-associated genes (Hill et al. 2003). The development of new molecular techniques has made significant contributions to an understanding of the epidemiology within a herd and between related herds (reviewed by Oliveira and Pijoan 2004b). Although there is a high genetic diversity among strains affecting unrelated herds, only 2–3 prevalent strains are normally involved in mortality within a herd or related herds (Rafiee et al. 2000; Ruiz et al. 2001; Oliveira et al. 2003a, 2004c). These prevalent strains may persist in affected herds for periods of up to 1 year (Oliveira et al. 2003a, 2004c).

**PATHOGENESIS**

To overcome the influence of natural infection and maternal antibodies, experimental challenge models using CDCD or naturally farrowed, colostrum-deprived pigs have been developed (Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1995; Oliveira et al. 2003b). Vahle et al. (1995) examined sequential events in infection by inoculating CDCD pigs intranasally with a virulent strain of *H. parasuis*. Within 12 hours postinoculation, *H. parasuis* was isolated from the nasal cavity and trachea; within 36 hours, from blood cultures; and at 36–108 hours, from systemic tissues. Early colonization of the middle and caudal nasal cavity and trachea was also demonstrated by immunohistochemistry and transmission electron microscopy (Vahle et al. 1997). Colonization was associated with pyrogenic potential of the strains examined.

The observation by these investigators that *H. parasuis* preferentially colonizes the nasal cavity and trachea, and not the tonsil, is in concordance with the ability to isolate *H. parasuis* from the nasal cavity, but not tonsil or lung specimens, from slaughterhouse pigs (Møller et al. 1993). Other studies, however, have demonstrated that *H. parasuis* may not only be isolated from the tonsil of healthy pigs (Oliveira et al. 2001a; Råsbach 1992), but it can also be detected in tonsillar tissue by immunoperoxidase stain and electron microscopic examination (Amano et al. 1994). A recent study suggests that prior infection of the nasal cavity with *Bordetella bronchiseptica* may increase nasal colonization by *H. parasuis* (Brockmeier 2004). However, the role of increased colonization by *H. parasuis* on pathogenesis of infection still remains to be defined.

Mucosal injury may enhance invasion. Microbial and host factors involved with systemic infection are not known; however, the virulence of some strains is remarkable. Intratracheal inoculation of less than 100 colony-forming units of strains representing several serovars caused systemic disease and death in CDCD pigs within a few days (Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1995). Bacteremia is apparent in pigs in the early stages of infection (Vahle et al. 1995). Septicemic lesions consist of petechiae or ecchymoses in the liver, kidney, and meninges; high levels of endotoxin are detected in plasma, and fibrinous thrombi are present in many organs (Amano et al. 1994). Subsequent replication at multiple serosal surfaces produces the typical fibrinosuppurative polyserositis, polyarthritis, and meningitis observed in field cases (Amano et al. 1994; Vahle et al. 1995). Endotoxin shock and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) may be involved in acute deaths (Amano et al. 1997). Pneumonia was not prominent in one challenge model, even though *H. parasuis* was isolated from the lung (Vahle et al. 1997). Pneumonia was also not evident following inoculation of the reference strains of serovars 1, 4, or 5 (Amano et al. 1994). Differing observations on the ability of *H. parasuis* to produce pneumonia may be due to differences per se in the challenge models, the doses administered, or pathogenic potential of the strains examined.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND LESIONS**

Clinical presentation is dependent on the location of inflammatory lesions. In naive herds or pigs, onset is rapid, occurring a few days after exposure. Clinical signs include pyrexia and apathy followed by inappetence and anorexia. Dyspnea, pain (evidenced by squealing), swollen joints, lameness (Figure 40.2A), tremor, incoordination, cyanosis, recumbency, and death may follow. Abortion in gilts and chronic lameness in boars may be sequelae to acute infection. Even if infection of gilts is controlled by antibiotic treatment, pigs in subsequent farrowings may experience severe disease (Menard and Moore 1990). In conventional herds, chronic infections in nursery pigs may result in poorly performing pigs. Cough, dyspnea, weight loss, lameness, and rough hair coat are the primary clinical signs.

Primary macroscopic lesions are a serofibrinous to fibrinopurulent exudate at single or multiple serosal surfaces, including the peritoneum, pericardium, and pleura (Figure 40.2B); articular surfaces, particularly the carpal and tarsal joints, and the meninges may also be involved (Hjärre 1958; Amano et al. 1994). Microscopically, the exudate consists of fibrin, neutrophils, and lesser numbers of macrophages (Figure 40.3) (Vahle et al. 1995). Less commonly, *H. parasuis* infection may result in acute septicemic disease in which cyanosis, sub-
cutaneous and pulmonary edema, and death can occur without the typical serosal inflammation (Riley et al. 1977; Peet et al. 1983; Desrosiers et al. 1986). Fasciitis and myositis (Hoefling 1991) and purulent rhinitis (Gois et al. 1983; Vahle et al. 1995) have also been reported.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Diagnosis is usually based on herd history, clinical signs, and necropsy. Bacterial isolation, necessary for confirmation, is not always successful. This is due in part to the fragility and fastidious growth requirements of *H. parasuis* relative to other bacteria that may also be present in the specimen. Retrospective analysis of submissions to diagnostic laboratories in Ontario indicate that the true incidence of disease may be tenfold higher than reported, due in part to the inability to confirm the presence of *H. parasuis* from submitted specimens (Miniats et al. 1986). Detection of *H. parasuis* in clinical specimens by PCR or in-situ hybridization is useful for diagnosis when isolation is negative (Segalés et al. 1997; Calsamiglia et al. 1999; Oliveira et al. 2001b; Jung and Chae 2004; Jung et al. 2004). Although these newer molecular techniques may help define the role of *H. parasuis* in the disease process, they are not widely available as diagnostic tools. PCR must be interpreted with caution since the technique does not differentiate between virulent and avirulent organisms. Isolation is still necessary for further characterization of field isolates by serotyping and genotyping (Oliveira and Pijoan 2004b). Necropsies should be performed not only on pigs with severe clinical signs and lesions but also on pigs in the acute phase of disease, prior to administration of antibiotics. Isolation rates are considerably higher when samples are collected from euthanized pigs rather than from pigs found dead (Oliveira et al. 2002). The best chance for isolation is by culturing several serosal surfaces or exudates, cerebrospinal fluid, and heart blood, even if lesions are mild or not apparent. *H. parasuis* can be recovered from these fluids when inoculated into a transport medium prior to shipment to the diagnostic laboratory (Mendez-Trigo and Trigo 1996; del Rio et al. 2003a). Although somewhat laborious for routine diagnosis, special dilution techniques followed by plating on selective media containing antibiotics have been used successfully for culturing *H. parasuis* in high numbers from...
respiratory specimens (Møller and Kilian 1990; Møller et al. 1993; Kirkwood et al. 2001). The use of defibrinated horse blood and tryptose blood agar base, rather than bovine or sheep blood and trypticase soy agar, also appears to enhance growth.

Biochemical tests are required to distinguish H. parasuis from other NAD or V factor–dependent organisms belonging to the family Pasteurellaceae that have been isolated from swine (Table 40.3). Occasionally misidentified as H. parasuis, these other NAD-dependent organisms are present in high numbers in the nasal cavity, tonsils, or lungs and are generally believed to be of low pathogenic potential (Møller and Kilian 1990; Møller et al. 1993; Chiers et al. 2001). However, recent analysis of A. minor, A. porcinus, and A. indolicus strains indicate that it is not uncommon for these organisms to be isolated in pure culture from lungs with inflammatory changes and that their possible role in respiratory disease should be reevaluated (Kielstein and Wuthe 1998; Kielstein et al. 2001).

Several different strains, distinguishable by genotype or serovar may be present in a herd, or even in different specimens from a single pig (Smart et al. 1989; Rapp-Gabrielson and Gabrielson 1992; Rapp-Gabrielson 1993; Kirkwood et al. 2001; Oliveira et al. 2003a). Thus, recovery from systemic sites or gross lesions is the only assurance that the isolate obtained is involved in the disease process. Serotyping and genotyping, critical to understanding of the epidemiology of the disease outbreak and immune response to infection or vaccination, are available only at a few diagnostic laboratories.

Differential diagnosis should include septicemic bacterial infections caused by Streptococcus suis, Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae, Actinobacillus suis, Salmonella cholerasuis var. kunzendorf, and Escherichia coli. Mycoplasma hyorhinis polyserositis and arthritis in 3–10-week-old pigs produces lesions similar to H. parasuis. The significance of H. parasuis in bronchopneumonia can be ascertained only after identification of other viral and bacterial pathogens that may be involved in the multifactorial disease process.

TREATMENT

Prophylactic use of antibiotics or therapeutic oral medication may be of little value in severe H. parasuis outbreaks (Madsen 1984; Wiseman et al. 1989; Menard and Moore 1990). High antibiotic doses should be administered parenterally as soon as clinical signs have manifested, and all pigs in the affected group, not just those showing signs, should be treated (Desrosiers et al. 1986). Penicillin has been considered the drug of choice, but one study reported an increasing resistance to penicillin has been reported (Kielstein and Leirer 1990). Most H. parasuis strains are also sensitive in vitro to ampicillin, ceftiofur, ciprofloxacin, enrofloxacin, erythromycin, florphenicol, gentamicin, spectinomycin, tiamulin, tilimicosin, and potentiated sulfa (Kielstein 1985; Trigo et al. 1996; Vonahtrock 1998; Wissing et al. 2001; Aarestrup et al. 2004). In some regions, a number of strains show higher resistance to tetracycline, erythromycin, streptomycin, kanamycin, gentamicin, sulfonamide, and lincomamide (Trigo et al. 1996; Wissing et al. 2001). Oral amoxicillin, either administered through the water or as a feed additive, may be the drug of choice, but is effective mostly when given before clinical signs become apparent.

PREVENTION AND IMMUNITY

Because nasal mucosa of baby pigs may be colonized before 1 week of age, elimination of H. parasuis by early weaning alone is unlikely to be successful. Clark et al. (1994) evaluated several medicated early-weaning strate-

### Table 40.3. Differential biochemical reactions of swine NAD-dependent Pasteurellaceae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biochemical Characteristic</th>
<th>Haemophilus parasuis</th>
<th>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</th>
<th>Actinobacillus minor</th>
<th>Haemophilus Taxon C</th>
<th>Actinobacillus porcinus</th>
<th>Actinobacillus indolicus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urease</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemolysis</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indole</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fermentation of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sucrose</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannitol</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-Arabinose</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raffinose</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Note: A. minor was formerly known as Haemophilus taxon “Minor Group”; A. porcinus was formerly known as Haemophilus sp. taxons D or E; A. indolicus was formerly known as Haemophilus sp. taxon F. Taxon C has infrequently been isolated from swine.

Key: + indicates greater than 90% of isolates are positive; –, less than 10% of isolates positive; ±, variable reactions among isolates.
gies and found that \textit{H. parasuis} could be eliminated only when parenteral and oral administration of high doses of antibiotics to baby pigs was a part of the treatment. Elimination of \textit{H. parasuis} from a herd may not be desirable, inasmuch as subsequent mixing of naive pigs with pigs harboring \textit{H. parasuis} during later stages in production may result in a disease course with devastating economic losses. Introduction of new breeding stock from a herd with a different health background should include isolation and acclimation periods long enough to allow for development of protective immunity from either vaccination or natural exposure.

Maternal and natural immunity are critical factors for controlling the disease process (Nielsen and Danielsen 1975; Blanco et al. 2004). Swine previously exposed to nonpathogenic \textit{H. parasuis} strains develop resistance to subsequent challenge with virulent strains (Nielsen 1993). Vaccination of gilts resulted in protective maternal immunity for up to 4 weeks when weaned piglets were challenged with the same serovar contained in the bacterin (Solano et al. 1998; Solano-Aguilar et al. 1999; Baumann and Bilkei 2002; Hoffmann and Bilkei 2002). Because of the septicemic nature of the disease, antibodies are probably a major protective immune mechanism. Tadijine et al. (2004b) characterized two monoclonal antibodies that recognized an OM protein epitope or an LPS-associated polysaccharide epitope. Antibodies are probably a major protective immune mechanism. Tadijine et al. (2004b) characterized two monoclonal antibodies that recognized an OM protein epitope or an LPS-associated polysaccharide epitope, both of which were common to all \textit{H. parasuis} isolates. They demonstrated that both antibodies were involved in protecting mice against lethal infection and that antibodies to these same epitopes occurred in sera from naturally infected swine.

Controlled exposure has been proposed as an alternative technique to control disease in the field (Pijoan et al. 1997; Oliveira et al. 2001a, 2004c). The main objective of this technique is to expose young piglets to a low dose of the prevalent \textit{H. parasuis} strains involved in herd mortality while pigs are still protected by maternal immunity, thus allowing the piglet to develop natural immunity. Although this technique has been shown to effectively reduce nursery mortality, there are legitimate concerns regarding the safety of exposing young pigs to live, virulent \textit{H. parasuis}. Sow vaccination may reduce the risks of systemic infection in exposed piglets. Concurrent PRRS virus infection may predispose pigs to systemic infection by the \textit{H. parasuis} strain used for colonization (Oliveira et al. 2004d).

There are numerous reports of successful disease control by vaccination with commercial or herd-specific (autogenous) bacterins (Nielsen and Danielsen 1975; Riising 1981; Wiseman et al. 1989; Menard and Moore 1990; Schimmel et al. 1992; Kirkwood et al. 2001; Takahashi et al. 2001). There are also instances where bacterins are not efficacious, and these may be due to lack of cross-protection for the strain or serovar involved in the disease process or when the timing of vaccination is inappropriate. Cross-protection against other virulent strains is not always evident in experimental challenge models (Miniats et al. 1991; Kielstein and Raßbach 1991; Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1997). Although cross-protection is primarily a concern for commercial bacterins, autogenous bacterins may also lack efficacy because of the presence of more than one strain or serovar or the subsequent introduction of a new strain into the herd. Several factors should be taken into account when selecting isolates to be included in autogenous bacterins. Isolates recovered from systemic sites are preferred and genotyping can be used to define the clusters of genetically related strains affecting the herd. A representative isolate from each prevalent cluster should be included in the autogenous bacterin. Isolates recovered from new clinical cases should be genotyped and compared with those included in the vaccine (Oliveira et al. 2002, 2004c).

Efficacy of vaccination against challenge with different strains of the same serovar, as well as cross-protection against some heterologous serovars, has been demonstrated. A commercial bacterin containing \textit{H. parasuis} serovars 4 and 5 has been shown to protect against experimental challenge with strains representing serovars 12, 13, or 14, but not against serovar 2 (Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1996, 1997). Lack of cross-protection between serovar 2 and 5 bacterins was also reported by Takahashi et al. (2001). A bacterin containing \textit{H. parasuis} serovar 5 that is commercially available in Europe showed some cross-protection against serovars 1, 12, 13, and 14 (Bak and Riising 2002).

Strains representing nine serovars, as well as nontypeable strains, have been demonstrated to be virulent. Demonstration that virulent strains may not protect against challenge with different strains of the same serovar, or even against challenge with the homologous strain, indicates that the protective antigens may not be identical to the virulence factors or the type-specific antigens (Kielstein and Raßbach 1991; Rapp-Gabrielson et al. 1997). Because of the heterogeneity of strains with pathogenic potential and the current lack of understanding of protective antigens and virulence factors, it is unlikely that any bacterin will provide cross-immunity against all strains of etiologic significance in the swine population. Control programs may include vaccination and antibiotic treatments but also should address management practices to reduce or eliminate other respiratory pathogens, tighten weaning age and pig flow, and eliminate mixing of pigs at all stages of production.

**REFERENCES**


BACTERIAL DISEASES


Leptospirosis is a cause of reproductive loss in breeding herds and has been reported in swine from all parts of the world; however, knowledge of the incidence and economic impact of the disease is largely confined to the intensive pig industries of the Northern Hemisphere, Australia, New Zealand, Argentina, and Brazil.

Endemic infection in a herd of swine may produce little evidence of clinical disease, but when it is first introduced into a susceptible breeding herd, or during periods of waning herd immunity, it can cause very appreciable losses through abortion, the full-term birth of dead pigs or of weak pigs of reduced viability, or infertility.

Leptospires persist in the kidneys and genital tracts of carrier swine and are excreted in urine and genital fluids. Survival outside the host is favored by warm, moist conditions. Transmission is by direct or indirect contact with a carrier animal.

Interruption of transmission from an infected pig or other host to the pig is the critical factor in control.

Leptospirosis is an occupational zoonosis of those who work with pigs.

**ETIOLOGY**

Leptospirosis of swine is a disease caused by a variety of morphologically similar, but antigenically and genetically distinct, small, motile, aerobic spirochetes belonging to the genus *Leptospira*. They are thin, helical, motile, gram-negative organisms that are often hooked at one or both ends. They spin constantly on their long axis. They range in length from about 6 to 20 µm, with an amplitude of approximately 0.1–0.15 µm and a wavelength of about 0.5 µm. Under adverse nutritional conditions, leptospires may be greatly elongated, whereas under conditions such as high salt concentrations or in aging culture or tissues, leptospires may form coccoid forms of about 1.5–2 µm in diameter (Faine 1994). They divide by binary fission. They stain poorly with aniline dyes. Unstained cells are visible only by dark-field microscopy. In a suitable liquid environment, motility is accomplished by rotating along the long axis, but this changes to an undulating action in semisolid media. They require special media containing mammalian serum or albumin for cultivation.

The major structural components are an outer envelope, which surrounds a cell wall or peptidoglycan complex, and two polar endoflagella (originating subterminally at each end).

The taxonomy of the leptospires has been through a period of change which continues to cause considerable confusion to those not intimately acquainted with the subject. Until recently a single genus *Leptospira* was recognized in the family *Leptospiraceae*. Two groupings were recognized within the genus: those found in animal species (the parasitic strains) and those found in water (the saprophytic strains). These two groupings, which were referred to as the *interrogans* and *biflexa* complexes, can be differentiated by their growth requirements and biochemical reactions. Only the parasitic strains are of medical and veterinary interest.

For taxonomic purposes and as an aid to epidemiological studies, the parasitic leptospires were divided into serogroups on the basis of antigenic relationships as determined by cross-agglutination reactions and were further subdivided into serovars by agglutination-absorption patterns. About 23 serogroups are recognized, containing approximately 212 serovars.

The advent of genetic typing methods has provided rapid, reproducible typing protocols. The current recommendations on the taxonomy of leptospires (Ellis 1995) recognized eight species of pathogenic leptospires within the family *Leptospiraceae*. They are *Leptospira interrogans*, *L. borgpetersenii*, *L. inadai*, *L. kirschneri*, *L. noguchii*, *L. meyer*, *L. weilii*, and *L. santarosai*.

The species definition is based on a level of DNA-DNA homology of at least 70% and 5% or less divergence in DNA relatedness. Taxonomy at the subspecific level continues to be based on serovars as defined by Dikken and Kmety (1978), but other valid methods which give results comparable to conventional serotyp-
ing can be used for their identification. Such methods include monoclonal antibody agglutination profiles, factor analysis, and analyses in which restriction-fragment length polymorphisms or rRNA gene restriction patterns are used in pulsed-field gel electrophoresis analyses. The term “type” is used to indicate strain differences at the subspecies level (Ellis 1995).

**Molecular Biology**

The genus *Leptospira* is characterized by a guanine plus cytosine (G+C) ratio of 35–41 mol% in its chromosomal DNA, depending on species. The published genome size has varied between 3100 and 5000 kb depending on the techniques used to measure it and reflecting differences between strains. The *Leptospira interrogans* serovars *icterohaemorrhagiae* and *pomona* have two circular chromosomes: the large (4400–4600 kb) and the small (350 kb) replicons are regarded as chromosomal because the essential and gene is located on the smaller unit. *Leptospira interrogans* strains contain two 23S and 16S rRNA genes but only one 5S rRNA gene. The 5S rRNA gene is highly conserved among the pathogenic leptospires.

There are differences in the global distribution of some of the *Leptospira* species: *L. interrogans*, *L. borgpetersenii*, and *L. kirschneri* have a worldwide distribution, whereas *L. noguchii* and *L. santarosai* are found mainly in North and South America, and *L. welii* is found mainly in China and eastern Asia. Strains that cause disease in pigs are found mainly in the *L. interrogans* and *L. borgpetersenii* species.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

The epidemiology of swine leptospirosis is potentially very complicated, since swine can be infected by any of the pathogenic serovars. Fortunately, only a small number of serovars will be endemic in any particular region or country. Furthermore, leptospirosis is a disease that shows a natural nidality, and each serovar tends to be maintained in specific-maintenance hosts. Therefore, in any region, pigs will be infected by serovars maintained by pigs or by serovars maintained by other animal species present in the area. The relative importance of these incidental infections is determined by the opportunity that prevailing social, management, and environmental factors provide for contact and transmission of leptospires from other species to pigs.

Pigs act as maintenance hosts for serovars belonging to the *Pomona*, Australis, and Tarassovi serogroups, while strains belonging to the *Canicola, Icterohaemorrhagiae*, and *Grippotyphosa* serogroups are among the more commonly identified incidental infections in swine.

**Pomona Infection**

Serovar *pomona* has been the most common serovar isolated from pigs worldwide. Infection with this serovar has been extensively studied and it provides a suitable model with which to illustrate general concepts of swine leptospirosis. Many strains of serovar *pomona*, especially those of type kennewicki found in the United States and Canada, are adapted to swine. Serovar *pomona* has been the cause of widespread clinical disease in swine in North and South America, Australia, New Zealand, parts of Asia, and Eastern and Central Europe and is endemic in many of these regions. Such strains are apparently absent from the more westerly parts of Europe. Furthermore, not all strains of serovar *pomona* are adapted to pigs nor are the other serovars of the *Pomona* serogroup, but they have rodent hosts (Sebek et al. 1983).

In parts of North America, the prevalence of *pomona* infection in pigs has fallen from the high levels observed in the 1950s and early 1960s: no carriers were detected in a 1989 meat-plant survey carried out in Iowa (Bolin and Cassells 1992). In contrast, Baker et al. (1989) recovered serovar *pomona* (type kennewicki) from almost 10% of pigs in a small survey in Canada.

Leptospires have a particular affinity for the kidneys of infected pigs, where they persist, multiply, and are voided in urine. This characteristic is very important in the transmission of infection.

Infection is introduced into a susceptible herd by three possible routes: the introduction of infected stock, exposure to a contaminated environment, or contact with an alternative infected animal vector (Hathaway 1983). Carrier pigs are probably the most common route of introduction. Replacement gilts (Edwards and Daines 1979) or infected boars (Kemenes and Suveges 1976) have been identified as important means of introducing infection.

The importance of free-living species as possible sources of *pomona* infection of pigs depends on geographical location. In North America, the skunk has been incriminated as a source of *pomona* outbreaks in pigs (Mitchell et al. 1966).

Once *pomona* has been introduced into a pig population, a high prevalence of infection is established. Only low infective doses are required to transmit infection (Chaudhary et al. 1966a, b). If direct contact is prevented, indirect contact through contaminated effluent, water, or soil ensures transmission (Michna 1970; Buddle and Hodges 1977; Kingscote 1986). The presence of moisture is critical for indirect transmission; the organisms cannot withstand desiccation, but when infected urine is deposited in damp soil or water with a pH around or slightly on the alkaline side, the organisms may survive for extended periods (Mitscherlich and Marth 1984).

During the initial herd infection, clinical disease may occur in all ages of sows.

Following the initial establishment of infection, an endemic cycle typical of that in a maintenance host population is set up (Hathaway 1981). Piglets are passively protected in the first weeks of life by colostrum-
derived immunoglobulins from infected dams (Fish et al. 1963; Bolt and Marshall 1995a). The duration of this passive protection depends primarily on the quantity of immunoglobulins received in colostrum (Chaudhary et al. 1966b). A study of grower pigs in New Zealand has shown that leptospirosis infection becomes apparent in piglets from 12 weeks of age, and by slaughter up to 90% may be infected. The intensity of leptospiruria is greatest in the first 3–4 weeks of infection, after which it declines and becomes intermittent (Bolt and Marshall 1995a, b). Infection between groups of fattening pigs is often by urine-contaminated effluent from a common drainage system (Buddle and Hodges 1977).

In herds with endemic infection, clinical disease is usually restricted to gilts that either have been reared in isolation since weaning and reintroduced into the herd or, more commonly, have been brought in from an uninfected herd.

**Tarassovi Infection**

There is much less information available on the epidemiology of *tarassovi* infection in pigs. The pig acts as a maintenance host for some strains of *tarassovi* found in Eastern Europe and Australia. In these regions, it does not spread as rapidly in a pig population as does *pomona* (Kemenes and Suveges 1976), but endemic infection is readily maintained (Ryley and Simmons 1954b; Kemenes and Suveges 1976). Many strains of *tarassovi* have been recovered from free-living animals (Anon. 1966, 1975) and these may give rise to incidental pig infections. For example, *tarassovi* has not been recovered from swine in the United States, but there is serologic evidence of infection in pigs (Cole et al. 1983) in the southeastern states, where it has been isolated from racoons, skunks, and opossums (McKeever et al. 1958; Roth 1964).

**Australis Infection**

Serovar *bratislava* and to a lesser extent the closely related serovar *muenchen* have emerged as major swine-maintained leptospirosis infections in the last few years. Serologic data have indicated widespread *bratislava* infection in Germany (Weber and Fenske 1978), the United Kingdom (Hathaway and Little 1981; Hathaway et al. 1981), Czechoslovakia (Propopacakova et al. 1981), the Netherlands (Bercovich et al. 1983), Sweden (Sandstedt and Engvall 1985), Denmark (Jensen and Binder 1989; Nissen 1989), the United States (Hanson 1985, 1987), Canada (Kingscote 1988), Austria (Loimayr 1990), Australia (Chappel et al. 1992), Brazil (Oliveira et al. 1994), and South Africa (Potts et al. 1995). There is, as yet, no information from Russia but it would be reasonable to assume that infection is now present in all major pig-rearing countries.

Serovar *bratislava* was first recovered from a pig in the Netherlands by Hartmann et al. (1975) (Ellis 1992) and has now been recovered from pigs in the United Kingdom (Ellis et al. 1986a, b, c), the United States (Ellis and Thiermann 1986; Bolin and Cassells 1990, 1992), and Germany (Schonberg et al. 1992).

The epidemiology of these strains is poorly understood. There are specific pig-adapted strains, strains that are maintained by pigs, dogs, horses, and hedgehogs, and strains that are found only in wildlife.

Two very distinct serologic profiles may be seen in endemically infected herds. In indoor sow units infected with pig-adapted strains of *bratislava*, the prevalence of sows with antibody titers of greater than 1:100 in the microscopic agglutination test (MAT) is usually very low, although many sows will have titers of less than 1:100. This is thought to result from infection being primarily due to venereal transmission. In contrast, in units where the sows are kept outside, the seroprevalences (≥1:100) may be greater than 50%. This is thought to be due to the sows being infected systemically as a result of exposure to infected rodent urine.

Although the renal-carrier state does become established, urinary excretion is poor compared with *pomona* excretion, and transmission within the fattening house is inefficient. Important additional carrier sites have been identified, namely, the upper genital tracts of sows and boars (Ellis et al. 1986b, c; Power 1991; Bolin and Cassells 1992). Venereal transmission is thought to play an important role in the spread of *bratislava* infection.

**Canicola Infection**

Although organisms belonging to the *Canicola* serogroup have been recovered from swine in at least 11 countries (Hanson and Tripathy 1986), little is known of the epidemiology of *canicola* infection in pigs. The dog is the recognized maintenance host for this serovar and is the probable vector whereby this serovar enters a piggy, although a report from Peru (Paz-Soldan et al. 1991) incriminates wildlife as the source of an outbreak in sows. The long period of leptospiruria observed in infected pigs (at least 90 days) (Michna 1962) and the ability of *canicola* to survive for up to 6 days in undiluted pig urine (Michna 1962) suggest that there would be an opportunity for intraspecies transmission, but no studies have been done on this subject (Hathaway 1983).

**Icterohaemorrhagiae Infection**

Serologic evidence of *Icterohaemorrhagiae* serogroup infection has been reported in many countries but few isolations have been made from pigs (Hathaway 1985). It appears that both serovars *copenhagenii* and *icterohaemorrhagiae* may be involved. The maintenance host for these serovars is the brown rat (*Rattus norvegicus*), and it is probable that *copenhagenii* and *icterohaemorrhagiae* are introduced to susceptible stock via an environment contaminated with infected rat urine. Field investigation suggests that transmission between swine is inefficient (Hathaway 1985). Schnurrenberger et al. (1970) found that urinary excretion lasted less than 35 days in natu-
rally infected pigs, while Fennestad and Borg-Petersen (1966) failed to demonstrate leptospiruria in experimentally infected pigs. Low prevalences of renal infection have been found in those microbiological surveys in which Icterohaemorrhagiae strains have been recovered; Hathaway et al. (1981) reported a 0.7% prevalence in England, and McErlean (1973) found a 0.4% prevalence in Ireland. It is believed, in the absence of supporting isolation data, that vaccine-induced antibodies are responsible for the seroprevalences of *Icterohaemorrhagiae* observed in the United States.

**Grippotyphosa Infection**

Serovar *grippotyphosa* infection is maintained by wildlife hosts, and incidental infection of pigs gives rise to low prevalences of antibodies in swine in various regions, particularly Eastern and Central Europe and the United States. It has been recovered from pigs in the former USSR (Gorshanova 1964) and the United States (Hanson et al. 1965, 1971).

**Hardjo Infection**

Serovar *hardjo* infection is maintained by cattle worldwide, and where cattle and pigs come in close contact, the opportunity arises for infection in pigs to occur. There are now reports of the isolation of *hardjo* from pigs in the United Kingdom (Hathaway et al. 1983; Ellis et al. 1986a) and the United States (Bolin and Cassells 1992). Persistence in renal tissue was not a feature of experimental infection (Hathaway et al. 1983); therefore, intraspecies transmission is unlikely.

**Sejroe Infections**

Serovar *sejroe*, which is maintained by small rodents, has also been isolated from swine in Europe (Brandis 1956; Fuzi et al. 1957; Combiesco et al. 1958), and another serovar in this group (*serovar balcanica*) has been recovered from swine in the former USSR (Matveeva et al. 1977).

**PATHOGENESIS**

The most important route of natural infection has not been determined; however, it is thought to be via the mucous membranes of the eye, mouth, or nose (Alston and Broom 1958; Alexander et al. 1964; Michna and Campbell 1969). Infection via the vaginal route is also possible (Ferguson and Powers 1956; Chaudhary et al. 1966a). Transmission of leptospires through milk from an infected dam has been demonstrated experimentally (Tripathy et al. 1981). A period of bacteraemia, which may last for a week, begins 1 or 2 days after infection. During this period leptospires can be isolated from most organs of the body and also from cerebrospinal fluid. This primary bacteraemic phase ends with the appearance of circulating antibodies, which are detectable usually after 5–10 days (Hanson and Tripathy 1986). A secondary bacteraemic period (after 15–26 days) has been reported in experimental *hardjo* infection (Hathaway et al. 1983).

Antileptospiral agglutinins appear at detectable levels in the blood at approximately 5–10 days after infection and reach maximum levels at around 3 weeks (Ryley and Simmons 1954b; Ferguson and Powers 1956; Morse et al. 1958). Peak titers vary considerably (1:1000 to 1:100,000 in the MAT), and these may be maintained for up to 3 weeks, after which a gradual decline occurs. Low titers may be detectable for several years in many animals.

Following the period of leptospiremia, the leptospires localize in the proximal renal tubules, where they multiply and are voided in the urine. The duration and intensity of urinary shedding vary from pig to pig and with the infecting serovar. In the case of *pomona* infection, the intensity of excretion is highest during the first month of shedding, when more than a million leptospires may be present in each milliliter of urine (Morse et al. 1958); leptospiruria is very constant during this period (Hodges et al. 1979). A variable period of intermittent, low-intensity leptospiruria then ensues, and this may last for up to 2 years in some cases (Ryley and Simmons 1954a; Morse et al. 1958; Mitchell et al. 1966). Low levels of antibody may be detected in the urine of pigs (Morse et al. 1958), but the immunologic mechanism whereby infection is ultimately eliminated from the kidneys is not known.

Leptospires also localize in the uterus of pregnant sows, and abortion, production of stillborn pigs, and neonatal disease frequently result from intrauterine infections occurring in the last half of the gestation period. Abortions and stillbirths usually occur 1–4 weeks following infection of the gilt or sow (Hanson and Tripathy 1986), by which time most sows have developed detectable antibody titers. Since pig fetuses are capable of producing antibodies during the latter stages of gestation, some stillborn piglets will have detectable titers.

The pathogenesis of reproductive disease is poorly understood, but some authors believe that transplacental infection, occurring during the very limited period of maternal leptospiremia, is the sole cause (Fennestad and Borg-Petersen 1966). While this may be true for systemic infections such as *pomona*, the low antibody titers detected in sows aborting *brattislava*-infected fetuses has led to the hypothesis that infection occurs as a result of waning uterine immunity being unable to prevent transplacental infection by leptospires present in the genital tract. The possibility of transplacental infection during leptospiremia appears to increase with the stage of pregnancy (Wrathall 1975). From midpregnancy onward, it is likely that the majority of fetuses in a litter at risk will become infected. Fennestad and Borg-Petersen (1966) have suggested that horizontal transmission to littermates not infected during the period of maternal leptospiremia may also occur. Once the placental barrier is breached, septicemia results in large numbers of leptospires in all fetal tissues (Preston and Morter 1960). It is unlikely that placental insufficiency plays a role in
fetal death (Wrathall 1975); abortion is probably initiated by toxic products released from dead and autolyzing fetuses.

An additional feature seen in bratislava infection but not reported for the other swine leptospiral infections is the persistence of leptospires in the oviduct and uterus of nonpregnant sows (Ellis et al. 1986c; Ellis and Thiermann 1986; Bolin and Cassells 1992) and in the genital tracts of boars (Ellis et al. 1986b).

CLINICAL SIGNS

The vast majority of swine leptospiral infections are subclinical. Two groups of pigs are most likely to experience clinical infections: the young piglet and the pregnant sow.

Acute Leptospirosis

This phase usually coincides with the period of bacteremia (Morse et al. 1958; Sleight and Lundberg 1961; Chaudhary et al. 1966a, b). In experimental infections, many pigs exhibit transient anorexia, pyrexia, and listlessness at this time (Hanson and Tripathy 1986). However, the mild nature of these signs means that in natural infections, especially in endemically infected herds where perhaps only one or two animals may be affected, this phase of infection usually goes unrecognized.

There have been a few reports of jaundice and hemoglobinuria in naturally occurring outbreaks (Ferguson et al. 1956), particularly in cases of infection in piglets under 3 months of age by strains belonging to the Icterohaemorrhagiae serogroup (Klarenbeek and Winsmer 1937; Field and Sellers 1951; Urban and Androsov 1976). A high proportion of these undergo spontaneous recovery within a week of when symptoms develop. The small number of such reports suggests that this more severe form of disease is rare.

Chronic Leptospirosis

Abortions, stillbirths, and the birth of weak piglets of reduced viability are primary signs of chronic leptospirosis, particularly pomona infection, in pigs (Bohl et al. 1954; Fennestad and Borg-Petersen 1966) and it is this aspect of leptospirosis that can cause considerable economic loss. Weak litters have been reported as a feature of Icterohaemorrhagiae infection (Neto et al. 1997).

Information as to the importance of leptospirosis as a cause of abortion in national swine herds is not available, and if it were, it must vary from country to country depending on prevalence, epidemiological, and management factors, including the implementation of control measures. From the limited information available, it would appear that even in countries where vaccination has been widely practiced, leptospirosis is a common cause of swine abortion. In Ontario, for example, 6% of swine abortions were attributed to pomona infection (Anon. 1986). Endemic tarassovi infection was considered to be the cause of a 3% abortion rate in herds in Poland investigated by Wandurski (1982). Acute outbreaks can still give rise to severe losses; Saravi et al. (1989) described an outbreak in a herd in which 19% of pregnant sows aborted, while the number of dead piglets/sow rose from 8% prior to the outbreak to 28% during the outbreak. Differences in strain pathogenicity also contribute to different prevalences of clinical abortion in infected herds (Nagy 1993).

A very high prevalence of serovars belonging to the Australis serogroup has been observed in aborted pig litters in part of the United Kingdom. Ellis et al. (1986a) isolated either serovar bratislava or muenchen from 71% of the litters they examined. Similar strains have also been recovered from aborted piglets in the United States (Bolin and Cassells 1990), where a high prevalence in aborted fetuses has also been noted (Bolin et al. 1991). Rehmtulla et al. (1992) reported fetal bratislava infection following abortions in 16% of sows in a herd in Ontario. Egan (1995) reported fluorescent antibody test (FAT) positive prevalences ranging from 5% to 23% in diagnostic submissions in Ireland. Published experimental evaluations of the significance of such microbiological findings are not available. There has, however, been an absence of significant isolations of other abortifacient agents from these cases, and the lowering rate and the number of live piglets born/sow improve significantly following either bratislava vaccination (Frantz et al. 1989) or the use of an antibiotic medication program (Ellis 1989). Van Til and Dohoo (1991) failed to demonstrate a relationship between positive serology and stillbirths.

Following abortions due to pomona, there does not appear to be any subsequent limitation on reproductive performance, even in pigs that remain infected for long periods (Ferguson and Powers 1956; Mitchell et al. 1966; Kemenes and Suveges 1976).

Infertility is a feature of bratislava infection. An analysis of serological and clinical data by Hathaway and Little (1981) has shown a statistically significant relationship between Australis serogroup titers and infertility in sows. Similar associations have been observed by Jensen and Binder (1989) and Van Til and Dohoo (1991). Split-herd trials, carried out using a bratislava bacterin, have demonstrated significant improvements in sow fertility (Frantz et al. 1989).

LESIONS

The main pathological changes are essentially the same for all infections, with the primary lesion being damage to the membranes of the endothelial cells of small blood vessels.

In acute leptospirosis there are no pathognomonic gross changes. Pathological changes in acute pomona infection are very limited, reflecting the mild nature of acute clinical disease. Hanson and Tripathy (1986) re-
ported little gross or histopathological change in swine killed during the acute phase of leptospirosis. Burnstein and Baker (1954) reported that petechial and ecchymotic hemorrhages could be seen in the lungs of some pigs, and histological examinations have revealed minor renal tubular damage, focal liver necrosis, lymphocytic infiltration of the adrenal glands, and meningoencephalitis with perivascular lymphocytic infiltration (Burnstein and Baker 1954; Sleight et al. 1960; Chaudhary et al. 1966a).

In chronic leptospirosis, lesions are confined to the kidneys and consist of scattered small gray foci, often surrounded by a ring of hyperemia. Microscopic examination shows these lesions to be a progressive focal interstitial nephritis (Burnstein and Baker 1954; Langham et al. 1958; Cheville et al. 1980). The interstitial leukocytic infiltrations, which consist mainly of lymphocytes, macrophages, and plasma cells, may be extensive in some areas. Focal damage may also involve glomeruli and renal tubules. Some affected glomeruli are swollen, some atrophic, and others are replaced by fibrosis. The Bowman’s capsule may be thickened, containing eosinophilic granular material (Langham et al. 1958). Tubular changes involve atrophy, hyperplasia, and the presence of necrotic debris in the lumen in some areas. Occasionally, petechial hemorrhages may be present in interstitial spaces.

Older lesions mainly consist of fibrosis and interstitial infiltration. Chronic lesions with accompanying acute inflammatory changes are still noticeable as long as 14 months postinfection (Morter et al. 1960).

Experimental studies indicate leptospires can invade the mammary gland of pigs and produce a mild, focal nonsuppurative mastitis (Tripathy et al. 1981).

The gross pathology of fetuses aborted as a sequela of 
*Leptospira pomona* infection is nonspecific and includes edema of various tissues, serous or bloodstained fluid in body cavities, and sometimes petechial hemorrhages in the renal cortex (Ryley and Simmons 1954b; Fennestad and Borg-Petersen 1966; Wrathall 1975). These changes are probably the result of intrauterine autolysis. Jaundice may be seen in some aborted piglets (Hathaway et al. 1983). Focal necrosis, presenting as small grayish-white spots, is a frequent finding in the liver (Ryley and Simmons 1954b; Fish et al. 1963; Fennestad and Borg-Petersen 1966). Histological examination may reveal small foci of interstitial nephritis.

Placentas from aborted fetuses are grossly normal (Fish et al. 1963; Fennestad and Borg-Petersen 1966).

**DIAGNOSIS**

A diagnosis of leptospirosis in swine may be required not only for the clinician to confirm leptospirosis as a cause of clinical disease but also for other reasons, such as (1) the assessment of the infection and/or the immune status of a herd for the purposes of a control or eradication program on either a herd or a national basis; (2) epidemiological studies; or (3) a determination of the infectivity status of an individual animal to assess its suitability for international trade or for introduction into an uninfected herd.

The mild, often inapparent, clinical signs of acute leptospirosis make clinical diagnosis difficult; therefore, diagnosis is usually based on the results of laboratory procedures.

Laboratory diagnostic procedures for leptospirosis fall into two groups. The first group consists of tests for antibody detection; the second contains the tests for the demonstration of leptospires in pig tissues. The selection of tests to be carried out depends on the purpose for which a diagnosis is to be made and the resources available.

**Serologic Tests**

Serologic testing is the most widely used method for diagnosing leptospirosis, and the MAT (Cole et al. 1980; Faine 1982) is the standard serologic test. The minimum antigen requirements are that the test should employ representative strains of all the serogroups known to exist in the particular country, plus those known to be maintained by pigs elsewhere.

The MAT is used primarily as a herd test. To obtain useful information, at least 10 animals or 10% of the herd, whichever is the greater (Cole et al. 1980), should be tested. A retrospective diagnosis of both acute leptospirosis and *pomona* abortion may be made when the majority of affected animals have titers of 1:1000 or greater. Increasing the sample size and sampling a number of different cohorts markedly improve epidemiological information, investigations of clinical disease, assessments of vaccination needs, and public health tracebacks.

As an individual-animal test, the MAT is very useful in diagnosing acute infection; rising antibody titers in paired acute and convalescent serum samples are diagnostic. The presence of antibody in fetal serum is diagnostic of leptospiral abortion.

The MAT has severe limitations in the diagnosis of chronic infection in individual pigs, both in the diagnosis of abortion and in the identification of renal or genital carriers. Infected animals may have MAT titers below the widely accepted minimum significant titer of 1:100 (Ellis et al. 1986b, c).

Other serologic tests have been described for use in pigs, especially ELISA-based tests, but none of these have gained widespread acceptance for use as diagnostic tests.

**Demonstration of Leptospires in Pig Tissues**

The isolation of leptospires from, or their demonstration in, the internal organs (such as liver, lung, brain) and body fluids (blood, cerebrospinal, thoracic, and peritoneal) of clinically affected animals gives a definitive diagnosis of acute clinical disease or, in the case of a
facts can be mistakenly identified as leptospires. Their presence in the male or female genital tract, the kidney, or urine, in the absence of evidence of generalized infection, is diagnostic of chronic infection. Failure to demonstrate leptospires in the urine of a pig does not rule out the possibility of the animal being a chronic renal carrier; it merely indicates that the pig was not excreting detectable numbers of leptospires at the time of testing.

**Isolation.** Isolation, especially from clinical material, is difficult and time-consuming and is a job for laboratories specializing in the identification of isolates. Isolation from renal carriers is very useful in epidemiological studies to determine which serovars are present in an animal species or in a particular group of animals or geographic location.

The isolation of leptospires is the most sensitive method of demonstrating their presence, provided that antibiotic residues are absent, that tissue autolysis is not advanced, and that tissues for culture have been stored at a suitable temperature (4°C) and, in the case of urine, at a suitable pH since collection.

Culture should be carried out in a semisolid (0.1–0.2% agar) bovine serum-albumin medium containing either Tween 80 (Johnson and Harris 1967) or a combination of Tween 80 and Tween 40 (Ellis 1986), and preferably a small amount of fresh rabbit serum (0.4–2%) if the more fastidious leptospires such as *bratislava* are to be isolated. A dilution culture method should be used (Ellis 1986). Contamination may be controlled by a variety of selective agents (e.g., 5-fluorouracil, nalidixic acid, fosfomycin, and a cocktail of rifamycin, polymyxin, neomycin, 5-fluorouracil, bacitracin, and actidione). The use of selective agents will reduce the chance of isolation where there are only small numbers of viable leptospires. Culture media containing 5-fluorouracil at levels between 200 and 500 µg/mL should be used as transport media for the submission of samples (Ellis 1990).

Cultures should be incubated at 29–30°C for at least 12 weeks, preferably for 26 weeks (Ellis 1986). They should be examined by dark-ground microscopy every 1–2 weeks.

**Other Methods of Demonstrating Leptospires.** Leptospires do not stain satisfactorily with the aniline dyes, and silver-staining techniques lack sensitivity and specificity (Baskerville 1986). Dark-ground microscopy of fetal fluids or urine has been widely used in the diagnosis of leptospirosis and can be a useful tool in the hands of an experienced diagnostician, but many tissue artifacts can be mistakenly identified as leptospires.

The demonstration of leptospires by immunochemical tests (immunofluorescence, immunoperoxidase, and immunogold) is more suited to most laboratory situations; however, these tests are “number-of-organisms” dependent and lack the sensitivity of culture. They provide no information as to the infecting serovar (Ellis 1990) and require high-IgG-titer antileptospire sera, which are not available commercially. Immunofluorescence is the method of choice for the diagnosis of fetal leptospirosis. There have been a number of polymerase chain reaction methods published, but so far these have failed to deliver the promised increase in sensitivity which the underlying technology should theoretically deliver (Taylor et al. 1997).

**PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

Interruption of transmission from an infected pig or other host to a pig is the critical factor in control. Control of leptospirosis depends on the combined use of three strategies: antibiotic therapy, vaccination, and management. Unfortunately, not all these options are available in every country; for example, vaccines are not available in many Western European countries, including the United Kingdom, and problems of antibiotic residues may make the use of antibiotic therapy difficult in other situations. In the United States, the most useful antibiotic for leptospiral control/treatment programs, streptomycin, is no longer available for veterinary use. Control programs must therefore be modified to meet local conditions.

Vaccination induces immunity of relatively short duration. Immunity to infection is probably never 100% and, at best, lasts little more than 3 months (Kemenes and Suveges 1976; Ellis et al. 1989); immunity to clinical disease is believed to last somewhat longer, although the exact duration is not known. Vaccination will markedly reduce the prevalence of infection in a herd (Wrathall 1975; Kemenes and Suveges 1976) but will not eliminate infection (Hodges et al. 1976; Edwards and Daines 1979; Cargill and Davos 1981). Given the widespread use of tetracycline medication of feed in parts of Europe to control *bratislava* infection and all the attendant residue problems, there is an urgent need for the marketing of an effective *bratislava* vaccine in Europe.

Antibiotics alone will not eliminate pig-maintained leptospiral infections from the individual carrier animal or control infection in herds. Despite claims by some authors that either systemic streptomycin at 25 mg/kg body weight (Dobson 1974; Alt and Bolin 1996) or oral tetracyclines at levels of 800 g/ton of feed (Stalheim 1967) will eliminate carriers, others have reported that these regimes do not work (Doherty and Baynes 1967; Hodges et al. 1979). Recent work into the use of alternative antibiotic therapy regimes indicates that oxytetracycline (40 mg/kg for 3 or 5 days), tylosin (44 mg/kg for 5 days), or erythromycin (25 mg/kg for 5 days) may be effective in eliminating *pomona* from the kidneys of experimentally infected pigs (Alt and Bolin 1996).

The main management factor in the control of lep-
tospio sis is the prevention of direct or indirect contact with free-living vectors or other domestic stock. Strict biosecurity should be implemented and rodent control programs instigated in and around the production complex. When faced with an outbreak of clinical disease, the best option is to treat both affected and at-risk stock with streptomycin at 25 mg/kg body weight, to immediately vaccinate the at-risk stock, and then to introduce a regular vaccination program. If vaccination is not an available option, then a feed medication program, using either chlor- or oxytetracycline at 600–800 g/ton of feed, should be introduced. This ration is fed either continuously or on a 1-month-on/1-month-off basis. Alternatively, it may be fed for two periods of 4 weeks in the year, preferably one in the spring and the other in the autumn.

The use of artificial insemination is an important tool in the control of bratislava infection.

**ZOONOSIS**

Leptospirosis is an important occupational zoonosis of those who work with pigs, especially farmers and those involved in slaughtering pigs. Pigs are now being produced for intended xenografting. It is important to remember the potential risk to recipients posed by pig-associated leptospirosis (Bjoersdorff et al. 1995).

**REFERENCES**


Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae and the pneumonia associated with it remain a concern to the swine industry throughout the world. *M. hyopneumoniae*, associated with enzootic pneumonia, is also considered to play a primary role in the porcine respiratory disease complex (PRDC), a continuing problem to swine producers. Other important pathogenic mycoplasmas include *M. hyorhinis*, which induces polyserositis and arthritis, and *M. hyosynoviae*, also a cause of arthritis in grow-finish pigs. Although the majority of other swine mycoplasmas, including *M. flocculare, M. sualvi, M. hopharyngis*, and several species of *Acholeplasma* can be isolated from swine, they appear to be nonpathogenic.

**MYCOPLASMAL PNEUMONIA OF SWINE**

Both Mare and Switzer in the U.S. (1965) and Goodwin et al. in the U.K. (1985) isolated *M. hyopneumoniae* in 1965. Since that time the role of *M. hyopneumoniae* in the induction of chronic pneumonia in pigs throughout the world continues to be problematic to the swine industry. Pneumonia caused by *M. hyopneumoniae* alone is mycoplasmal pneumonia. However, enzootic pneumonia is the most common term used because it describes the epidemiology pattern of the disease in combination with the various other etiological agents or lesions involved. Enzootic pneumonia is characterized by infection with *M. hyopneumoniae* and other pathogenic bacteria, such as *Pasteurella multocida, Streptococcus suis, Haemophilus parasuis, or Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* (APP). When combined with porcine respiratory and reproductive syndrome virus (PRRSV), porcine circovirus type 2 (PCV2) and/or swine influenza virus (SIV), a syndrome known as the porcine respiratory disease complex (PRDC) has emerged as a serious health problem to the swine industry. Infection with *M. hyopneumoniae*, independent of terminology, is associated with respiratory disease and reduced productivity in pigs.

**Etiology**

Culture and isolation of *M. hyopneumoniae* is slow and complex. It can be grown in medium (Frisi 1975); however, culture and identification is tedious, time consuming, and often unsuccessful. Contamination by other bacteria or other mycoplasmas, especially *M. hyorhinis*, will often preclude successful culture and isolation of the organism. Media and methods for isolation of *M. hyopneumoniae* were reviewed by Ross and Whittlestone (1983).

In culture, *M. hyopneumoniae* grows slowly compared to other porcine mycoplasmas, producing turbidity and an acid color shift to the media 3–30 days after inoculation of the media. Inoculation of solid agar medium and incubation in a 5–10% carbon dioxide atmosphere results in barely visible colonies after 2–3 days incubation. The organism must be differentiated from other swine mycoplasmas, and the nonpathogenic *M. flocculare* has many morphological, growth, and antigenic similarities to *M. hyopneumoniae*.

Antigenic diversity between *M. hyopneumoniae* isolates was first identified by Frey (1992) and further supported by Artiushin and Minion (1996) and Kokotovic (1999). Recent studies have further demonstrated differences in virulence between field isolates of *M. hyopneumoniae* (Strait et al. 2003; Vicca et al. 2002, 2003).

**Epidemiology**

Transmission of *M. hyopneumoniae* by carrier swine is the most common source of infection in field conditions. Isolation of the organism in nasal samples from infected pigs was demonstrated by Goodwin (1972). More recently, the use of polymerase chain reaction assays (PCR) have confirmed the presence of the organism in the nasal cavity of infected pigs (Calsamiglia et al. 1999, 2000; Kurth et al. 2002; Mattsson et al. 1995). In addition, it was demonstrated that transmission of the organism can occur between penmates, independent of age (Etheridge et al. 1979; Piffer and Ross 1984). The
The transmission of *M. hyopneumoniae* in many herds occurs by sow-to-pig exposure (Calsamiglia and Pijoan 2000; Rautiainen and Wallgren 2001). After infection is established, transmission between penmates occurs. Differences in exposure times as well as production systems have been investigated and identified (Sibila et al. 2004; Vicca et al. 2002). These studies demonstrated that numerous factors including housing styles and ventilation, management practices including stocking density, climatic conditions, and 1- or 2-site production systems versus 3-site systems can influence the transmission and dynamics of disease within a herd. In the majority of herds, transmission among penmates occurs at weaning. In continuous-flow systems, *M. hyopneumoniae* and other respiratory pathogens may be transmitted in large numbers at that time. However, overt signs of mycoplasmal pneumonia are typically not observed in pigs under 6 weeks of age, although all ages of pigs are susceptible (Piffer and Ross 1984). Exceptions to the typical age of pneumonia has been shown to occur experimentally in the presence of PRRSV, where an increase in the percentage of mycoplasmal pneumonia occurred within 10 days of experimental infection with *M. hyopneumoniae* (Thacker et al. 1999). Use of early weaning strategies, where pigs are weaned at 7–10 days of age and removed to an isolated site significantly reduced, but does not always completely eliminate, the vertical transmission from sows (Dritz et al. 1996).

The incidence of mycoplasmal pneumonia varies between countries. A recent survey of U.S. swine populations in the National Animal Health Monitoring Survey (NAHMS) (USDA 2001) found that swine producers in the U.S. felt *M. hyopneumoniae* was a concern in 19.6% in nursery pigs on 29% of the farms surveyed. In large swine operations with more than 10,000 pigs, mycoplasma associated disease was important in 52.7% of the sites with nursery pigs and 68% sites with finisher pigs. A diagnosis of *M. hyopneumoniae* was made in over 50% of the sites. Other countries have indicated the prevalence of herds with pneumonia consistent with mycoplasma ranging between 38% and 100% (Guererro 1990). The exact prevalence of pneumonia due to *M. hyopneumoniae* is often difficult to ascertain due to the complication of co-infections with other respiratory pathogens including *P. multocida*, PRRSV, SIV and PCV2.

Eradication strategies for *M. hyopneumoniae* have been implemented in various countries with differing success. An eradication program using partial depopulation, consisting of a 2-week period during which no animals younger than 10 months were allowed on the farm, has been used successfully in a number of European countries including Switzerland, Denmark, Sweden, and Finland (Baekbo et al. 1996; Heinonen et al. 1999; Rautiainen et al. 2001; Zimmerman et al. 1989). In a follow-up to the Swiss eradication program, it was determined that 2.6% of the farms became reinfeected, which is a considerable reduction over the time prior to the implementation of the eradication program (Hege et al. 2002). However, the reinfection rate in Switzerland that attempted eradication on a national level is indicative of the difficulty in successful eradicating the organism on a wide scale basis.

Economic losses due to mycoplasmal pneumonia have been associated with reduced daily weight gain (DWG), increased mortality, reduced feed efficiency and increased costs due to medication. A review article found that the DWG was reduced from 2.8% to 44.1% in 24 different studies (Straw et al. 1989). Pointon et al. (1985) found the growth rate of pigs in contact with *M. hyopneumoniae*-infected pigs was reduced by 12.7%. Information related to the exact amount of economic loss and percentage of pneumonia can often be difficult to interpret. Scheidt et al. (1990) found no correlation between average daily gain and severity of pneumonia at slaughter. Paisley et al. (1993) reported that mycoplasma-like pneumonia, as well as other respiratory lesions, was related to reduced mean daily gain. However, they concluded that lesions present at slaughter were responsible for only 9–27% of the variation and suggested that the remaining variation was due to factors such as environment, feed, genetics, and management systems.

### Pathogenesis

The pathogenesis of *M. hyopneumoniae* is complex and consists of two separate methods of causing disease and affecting the overall health of the host. Colonization of the airways by *M. hyopneumoniae* begins with the binding of the organism to the cilia of epithelial cells in the airways of the pig (Zielinski and Ross 1992). Although the exact method of adherence of the organism to the cilia has not been fully identified, a number of proteins involved with adhesion have been identified. A protein, P97, has been recognized by Zhang, et al. (1994, 1995) to be involved in adherence of *M. hyopneumoniae* to the cilia, because monoclonal antibodies to this protein can...
block adherence to the organism in vitro. While P97 has been recognized as important in adherence to the cilia, vaccination against this protein alone has not produced protection against clinical disease or colonization in vivo (King et al. 1997). The P97 gene has been cloned and the binding region has been identified (Hsu et al. 1997; Hsu and Minion 1998). However, it has been determined that variation in this gene due to the addition or subtraction of repeated amino acids may result in alteration of the protein, making recognition by the immune system and thus immunization difficult (Wilton et al. 1998). Other glycoproteins (Chen et al. 1998) and cell surface features are probably also involved in the binding of the organism to the cilia (Zielinski and Ross 1992). Colonization of the cilia by *M. hyopneumoniae* results in ciliostasis, clumping and loss of cilia (DeBey and Ross 1994), and loss of epithelial cells and bronchial goblet cells (DeBey et al. 1992). Colonization of the airways by *M. hyopneumoniae* results in a significant reduction in the ability of mucociliary apparatus to function and clear the airways of debris and invading pathogens, especially bacteria. This is thought to be an important mechanism for the increased colonization of the airways by respiratory bacteria, including *P. multocida*, *B. bronchiseptica*, *A. pleuropneumoniae*, *A. pyogenes*, and other bacteria. This co-infection of *M. hyopneumoniae* with bacteria results in enzootic pneumonia.

The virulence factors associated with *M. hyopneumoniae* are largely unknown and appear to be extremely complex. The genome of one isolate has recently been sequenced (Dr. F. C. Minion, Iowa State University, personal communication), which should facilitate the identification of the genes and proteins that are important in the induction of disease and immunity. Virulence factors that contribute to attachment/colonization, cytoxicity, competition for substrates, and evasion and modulation of the respiratory immune system remain unknown. The various mechanisms of pathogenesis involved with *M. hyopneumoniae* infection are probably not due to a single gene, but rather to a multitude of gene products that will need to be identified.

The complex, chronic pathogenesis of *M. hyopneumoniae*-mediated respiratory disease appears dependent on the alteration or modulation of the respiratory immune response. Immunopathologic changes are a major component of mycoplasmal pneumonia, although little is known about the mechanisms of how the organism induces the immune and inflammatory responses associated with disease. The microscopic lesions associated with mycoplasmal pneumonia are characterized by an infiltration of the peribronchiolar and perivascular areas with mononuclear cells consisting of both macrophages and lymphocytes. This infiltration of both B and T lymphocytes over time can result in the formation of lymphoid nodules with germinal-like centers. The infiltration of mononuclear cells in association with *M. hyopneumoniae* infection impacts all of the components of the immune system, including macrophages from the innate immune system and B and T lymphocytes of the adaptive immune response. Pulmonary alveolar macrophages infected with both *M. hyopneumoniae* and APP were shown to have reduced phagocytic capability (Caruso and Ross 1990). *M. hyopneumoniae*-infection also induces macrophages to produce proinflammatory cytokines, including interleukin (IL)-1, IL-6, IL-8, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF) alpha, both in vivo (Asai et al. 1993, 1994; Thacker et al. 2000) and in vitro (Thanawongnuwech et al. 2001). Recent research has demonstrated that IL-10 and IL-12 levels are also increased in the bronchoalveolar lavage fluid 28 days after experimental infection with *M. hyopneumoniae* (Thanawongnuwech and Thacker 2003). Production of proinflammatory cytokines increases the inflammation in the lung, which further reduces the respiratory immune system’s ability to control other pathogens in the respiratory tract. Although an inflammatory response is important in the control of pathogens, the tissue injury and disease subsequent to *M. hyopneumoniae* infections appears to be caused more by the response from the host than the organism itself.

In addition to affecting macrophages, *M. hyopneumoniae* has an impact on both B and T lymphocytes. Evidence of the immunosuppressive effect of *M. hyopneumoniae* to nonspecific mitogens has been reported (Kishima and Ross 1985). A subsequent study found nonspecific stimulation (mitogenic) of lymphocytes by the organism (Messier and Ross 1991). Tajima et al. (1984) further confirmed the role of the immune system in the pathogenesis of mycoplasmal pneumonia by demonstrating that the pneumonia was less severe in thymectomized pigs treated with antithymocyte serum and inoculated with *M. hyopneumoniae*. These results suggest that a cell-mediated immune mechanism may be important in the development of pneumonia. However, in the same study *M. hyopneumoniae* was isolated from the spleen of one of the thymectomized pigs, indicating that containing and controlling invasion and systemic spread of the organism by T lymphocytes is crucial in preventing systemic spread of the organism. The alterations of the various effector cells in the respiratory immune system by *M. hyopneumoniae* in infected pigs is probably important in the ability of the organism to persist and cause disease in pigs.

Onset of mycoplasmal pneumonia may be dependent on the intensity of infection and the number of organisms that colonize the respiratory tract and the presence of other pathogens in the respiratory tract that contribute to disease. Recent research has determined that different isolates have different virulence capabilities that influence their ability to induce disease (Strait et al. 2003; Vicca et al. 2003). The incubation period for experimental infection as well as acute infections in the field is 10–14 days. Under natural field conditions it is more difficult to pinpoint the exact time of infection.
and thus the incubation period. Disease has been reported to occur as early as 2 weeks of age (Holmgren 1974), but more commonly it spreads slowly within the herd, and pigs begin showing clinical disease associated with mycoplasmal pneumonia at 3–6 months of age.

An important role of *M. hyopneumoniae* in swine respiratory disease is its interaction with other pathogens. Infections with *M. hyopneumoniae* alone induce a mild chronic pneumonia; however, in conjunction with other pathogens; the respiratory disease becomes a severe problem consistent with PRDC in the field. Numerous studies have investigated the impact of co-infections of other pathogens and *M. hyopneumoniae*. In most cases, it is the co-infecting organism that has an increased severity and potentially duration of disease associated with *M. hyopneumoniae*. Ciprian et al. (1994) did a nice review of the interaction of *M. hyopneumoniae* with the various bacteria of the respiratory tract. Enzootic pneumonia, attributed to *M. hyopneumoniae*, is centered on the interaction with other bacteria, including *P. multocida* and APP. With secondary bacterial infections, the pneumonia consistent with *M. hyopneumoniae* infection appears more severe resulting in enzootic pneumonia. In contrast, combination with viral respiratory pathogens, including PRRSV and PCV2, has changed the character of respiratory disease and has resulted in the term porcine respiratory disease complex (PRDC). In a first study investigating the interaction of *M. hyopneumoniae* and PRRSV, Van Alstine (1996) did not see a strong interaction between the two. However, since that time, Thacker et al. (1999) demonstrated that the viral pneumonia induced by PRRSV was significantly increased in both severity and duration when both pathogens were present. In this study, it was found that the presence of PRRSV resulted in increased acute mycoplasmal pneumonia. Similar findings were observed in the presence of pseudorabies virus (PRV) (Shibata et al. 1998). Recently it has been demonstrated that *M. hyopneumoniae* increases the pneumonia associated with concurrent infection with PCV2 (Opiessnig et al. 2003). In contrast, the interaction of *M. hyopneumoniae* with SIV lacks the interaction observed with the other viruses, and although the severity of pneumonia at the peak of infection is increased, the potentiation observed with PRRSV and PCV2 did not occur (Thacker et al. 2001). This interaction with other pathogens is probably the most important role that *M. hyopneumoniae* plays in swine respiratory disease.

**Clinical Signs**

Mycoplasmal pneumonia is chronic in nature with a high morbidity and a low mortality. Clinically it is characterized by a dry, nonproductive cough, although the presence or absence of cough is variable with individual animals. Experimentally, onset of clinical signs characterized by coughing, occurs within 7–14 days post infection; however, with natural infection clinical disease onset is less predictable (Robert 1974; Sorensen et al. 1997; Vicca et al. 2002). Onset of clinical signs in a herd tends to be gradual, with coughing within the herd lasting weeks to months. The presence of other clinical symptoms, such as fever, decreased appetite, labored breathing or prostration, is due to secondary pathogens. Many pigs with mycoplasmal pneumonia may appear unthrifty and feed intake is reduced, but overall the pigs remain normal in appearance.

**Lesions**

The macroscopic lesions of mycoplasmal pneumonia consist of purple to gray areas of consolidation of the cranial-ventral portions of the lung. The lesions tend to be in the ventral portions of the cranial and middle lobes, the accessory lobe, and the cranial ventral portions of the caudal lobes of the lungs; however, they can be spread throughout the lungs in severe cases. In the absence of secondary infections, the lesions tend to be focal and fairly well demarcated. In the presence of other organisms, the lesions become more diffuse and depending on the agent, difficult to differentiate from the other pathogens. When the lung tissue is cut, the consistency of the lung is thick and heavy although not excessively firm. A catarrhal exudate is often present in the airways. The regional lymph nodes are usually firm and enlarged.

Microscopic lesions are characteristic of a chronic pneumonia. Early in the disease process, accumulations of neutrophils in the airways are present microscopically. As the disease progresses, lymphocytes and monocytes infiltrate the peribronchiolar, peribronchial, and perivascular regions. Interstitial pneumonia may also be observed, with airways filled with cellular debris. Alveoli may contain eosinophilic fluid consistent with edema and increased numbers of mononuclear and polymorphonuclear cells. More advanced lesions can consist of lymphoid nodules associated with the airways. In recovering lesions, alveoli are collapsed and emphysematous and lymphoid nodules are common. The severity of the microscopic lesions increases with increased numbers of secondary pathogens as well as in pigs housed in poor environments with inadequate management strategies. Neither macroscopic nor the microscopic lesions are specific for *M. hyopneumoniae*, and other respiratory pathogens, including bacterial invaders and swine influenza virus (SIV) must be ruled out.

**Diagnosis**

Macroscopic lesions associated with mycoplasmal pneumonia combined with the onset of clinical disease and coughing lead to the suspicion of *M. hyopneumoniae* infection. It is important to remember however that the clinical signs, macroscopic and microscopic lesions, are not specific for mycoplasmal pneumonia, so other differential assays must be done to confirm the role of the organism in respiratory disease in a herd.
The pathogenesis of disease due to *M. hyopneumoniae* makes accurate diagnosis of the organism challenging. The organism’s location on the mucosal surface of the respiratory tract, gene expression variation and ability to modulate the respiratory immune response can make the diagnosis of mycoplasma pneumonia difficult. Although culture and isolation are considered the “gold standards” for detecting *M. hyopneumoniae*, isolation of the organism is difficult due to its requirement for specialized media and its slow growth properties, often requiring 4–8 weeks to grow to measurable levels (Friis 1975). Difficulty in culturing the organism is increased by the additional requirement for swine serum negative for *M. hyopneumoniae* antibodies. Due to the slow growth in culture, contamination by other swine mycoplasmas or bacteria may preclude the growth and isolation of *M. hyopneumoniae*. Combined, these factors make isolation and growth of the organism expensive, difficult and impractical. Culture is not recommended as a diagnostic technique and failure to isolate the organism under field conditions should not be used to deny the presence of the organism within a herd.

Serology is the most common tool used to determine the presence or absence of an organism within a herd situation and *M. hyopneumoniae* is no exception. However, as with most diagnostics associated with *M. hyopneumoniae*, interpretation of serological results can be challenging. Numerous studies have compared the various assays as well as their association with lung lesions and protection against disease. Originally complement fixation (CF) assays were used to detect antibodies to *M. hyopneumoniae*. However in several comparison studies, it was determined that an indirect ELISA assay was more efficacious at detecting antibody than the CF assay (Bereiter et al. 1990; Pfifer et al. 1984). Currently, ELISA assays are the most commonly used assay to detect antibodies to the organism. Serology is best suited to screening for infected herd status or evaluating vaccine responses. Care must be taken in their use on an individual animal basis, as well as in evaluating for vaccine compliance. Three ELISA assays are currently used in the United States to detect mycoplasmal serum antibodies. Indirect ELISA assays include the Tween-20 assay (Bereiter et al. 1990; Nicolet et al. 1980) and the HerdCheck *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* ELISA assay (Idexx Laboratories, Westbrook, Maine). The DAKO *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* ELISA (DAKO corporation, Carpenteria, California) is a blocking ELISA based on an antigenic internal protein. A recent study using serum from experimentally infected pigs found that all three assays had excellent specificity in recognizing antibody negative samples and thus few false positive results are observed (Erlandson et al. 2002). In contrast, the sensitivity of the assays was low and ranged from 37–49%. This low sensitivity results in a low negative predictive value and a high percentage of false negative results. Of the assays assessed, the DAKO ELISA was the most consistent in identifying infected pigs; however, a combination of assays appeared to improve the predictive ability of the tests. Sorensen et al. (1997) found similar results of high specificity and low sensitivity in *M. hyopneumoniae* ELISA assays. In addition, recent research has found that the assays varied in their ability to detect antibodies induced in pigs experimentally infected with different field isolates of the organism (Strait et al. 2003; Vicca et al. 2002). To further complicate the serological diagnosis of *M. hyopneumoniae*, *M. flocculare* antibodies can cross-react with a number of the serological assays and must be considered in the diagnostic workup within a herd. A study of nine naturally infected Danish swine herds found that most pigs seroconverted in the growing-to-finish units and the association of lung lesions at slaughter and seroconversion was complex (Andreasen et al. 2000, 2001). It was demonstrated that pigs seroconverting to *M. hyopneumoniae* close to slaughter had the highest percentage of pneumonia and early seroconversions appeared to be related to pleuritic lesions in the cranio-ventral regions of the lung (Andreasen et al. 2001). In addition, concurrent infection with PRRSV (Thacker et al. 1999), SIV (Thacker et al. 2001), or PCV2 (Opriessnig et al. 2003) appear to increase *M. hyopneumoniae* antibody levels. Antibody levels following vaccination with *M. hyopneumoniae* bacterins may vary depending on the vaccine, the infection status of the pig, and the serological assay used (Erlandson et al. 2002; Thacker 2001). No correlation between vaccine-induced antibody levels and protection from colonization and disease has been observed (Djordjevic et al. 1997; Thacker et al. 1998).

In addition to assessing serum samples for the presence of antibodies to *M. hyopneumoniae*, colostrum has been used to document freedom of a herd from infection (Rautiainen et al. 2000). Detection of antibodies in colostrums occurred weeks prior to clinical outbreak of mycoplasmal pneumonia in one case (Sorensen et al. 1993). However, sampling colostrum within the first 2 hours after farrowing is required for the most accurate detection of antibodies, which decreases the practicality under typical field situations. In addition, it has been demonstrated that parity is important in the accurate detection of antibodies in colostrums, with high-parity sows being a better source for the detection of antibodies to assess the herd status (Rautiainen et al. 2000).

Accurate diagnosis of *M. hyopneumoniae* has increased with the development of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays (Artiushin et al. 1993; Calsamiglia et al. 1999; Harasawa et al. 1991; Mattson et al. 1995; Stark et al. 1998; Stemke 1997; Stemke et al. 1994; Verdin et al. 2000). The various collection sites and potential uses of PCR to detect infection accurately have been investigated (Calsamiglia and Pijoan 2000; Calsamiglia et al. 2000, Kurth et al. 2002; Sorensen et al. 1997). On the basis of these studies, lung tissue and bronchial washings appear to be among the most reliable collection
sites, and detection of the organism from the nasal cavity appears more variable. To increase the sensitivity of the assay, nested PCR assays using two sets of primers are typically used. This results in an assay capable of picking up as few as four to five organisms. Although the ability to detect these low numbers of organisms may assist in the detection of *M. hyopneumoniae* on a herd basis, the potential for contamination may be problematic. It has been documented that PCR assays are capable of detecting the organism in the air of production units housing pigs infected with *M. hyopneumoniae* (Stark et al. 1998). In addition, recent research investigating the variability of the genetics of different field isolates of *M. hyopneumoniae* has documented potential differences in our ability to detect the organism through the use of PCR (Strait et al. 2003). These results suggest that additional research is required to determine the accuracy of detection of *M. hyopneumoniae* by PCR under field conditions.

Detection of *M. hyopneumoniae* by either fluorescent antibody (FA) or immunohistochemistry (IHC) assays is typically performed in diagnostic laboratories (Amanfu et al. 1983; Opriessnig et al. 2003). Frozen tissues are required to detect *M. hyopneumoniae* by FA assay, making sample collection problematic in the field. In situ hybridization of fixed tissues has also been described, although used less commonly (Kwon and Chae 1999). Because in situ hybridization and IHC assays can be performed on fixed tissues, these assays are more practical for samples collected on the farm. It is critical that the samples collected for all of these assays include airways with ciliated epithelial cells so the organism can be detected.

Ultimately the assay used to diagnose *M. hyopneumoniae* is dependent on whether it is to determine infection status as an aid in determining intervention strategy timing or to assess whether a herd is free of the organism in eradication protocols. Serology alone would be a poor choice to confirm that a herd is negative for *M. hyopneumoniae*, and PCR assays are not usually required to determine timing of vaccination or therapy, which can be based primarily on the occurrence of clinical disease. Sorensen et al. (1997) compared duration of disease and evaluation of four diagnostic assays, including serology and PCR following experimental challenge. He reported similar predictive values between all of the assays. Thus, for the greatest degree of accuracy on detecting the organism, multiple diagnostic procedures are probably required. The sensitivity and specificity of each of the assays should be considered both for accurate interpretation of clinical signs and serological and PCR test results, and according to the information required by the veterinarian and producer.

**Treatment**

Antibiotics against *M. hyopneumoniae* can help control the disease, but do not eliminate the organism from the respiratory tract nor heal existing lesions. A number of studies have assessed the efficacy of a number of antibiotics, including various quinolones (Hannan et al. 1989), tylosin, oxytetracycline (Cooper et al. 1993), and tilmicosin (Thacker et al. 2001), among others using a number of different testing systems (Tanner et al. 1993; Ter Laak et al. 1991; Williams 1978; Wu et al. 1997) to evaluate the susceptibility of each antimicrobial agent in vitro. In these studies, the quinolones tended to be highly effective; tiamulin, danfloxacino, chlortetracycline, lincomycin, tilmicosin, and other antibiotics were active against the organism, but many of these appeared to mycoplasmatic rather than ’cidal. However, care must be taken when comparing in vitro antibiotic studies on *M. hyopneumoniae* to their performance in the pig, due to the location of the organism on the cilia within the airways. In order for an antibiotic to be effective against the organism, it must be able to achieve significant levels within the mucus and fluids of the respiratory tract.

Studies assessing antibiotic efficacy in vivo have also been performed, occasionally with conflicting results. *M. hyopneumoniae* lacks a cell wall, which precludes the effectiveness of antibiotics that would interfere with cell wall synthesis, such as penicillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, and cephalosporin. Other antibiotics that would have little efficacy against *M. hyopneumoniae* include polymyxin, erythromycin, streptomycin, trimethoprim, and sulphonamides. The ability of *M. hyopneumoniae* to develop resistance to antibiotics is unknown; however, it has been reported in the field that resistance to the tetracyclines can occur (Maes et al. 1996). Tiamulin has been reported to reduce the severity of experimentally induced and naturally acquired mycoplasmal pneumonia (Han nan et al. 1982). In a separate study, Ross and Cox (1988) failed to observe beneficial effects of tiamulin on macroscopic or microscopic lesions or *M. hyopneumoniae* antigens detected by FA. Research has demonstrated that use of chlortetracycline in the feed administered prior to challenge reduces both the severity of pneumonia as well as the number of organisms (Thacker et al. 2001). Other studies have demonstrated the beneficial effects of tiamulin (Hsu et al. 1983), tilmicosin and tylosin (Mateusen et al. 2001), and doxycycline (Bousquet et al. 1998) on weight gain and clinical disease. However, these were field trials, and pigs were infected with multiple pathogens making assessment of antibiotic impact on *M. hyopneumoniae* more difficult to interpret. However, results of antibiotic use in the treatment of *M. hyopneumoniae* are often disappointing because the organisms tend to reappear after the medication is discontinued. In addition, infection with secondary pathogens makes therapy more challenging and often results in the need to use multiple antibiotics to control all of the various pathogens associated with respiratory disease. The successful use of combination therapies with antibiotics has also been reported (Burch et al. 1986; Stipkovits et al. 2001).
Antibiotics as a therapy for mycoplasmal pneumonia are best used during periods of stress in the life of the pig, including weaning or mixing. Knowing the other pathogens present in the respiratory tract is critical for the success of therapy as well as determining the optimal timing for the best results. Administration of medication prior to or early following exposure to the organism is also important for success in using medication as an aid in controlling mycoplasmal pneumonia. Overall, prevention of the development of mycoplasmal pneumonia is the only effective method for decreasing the economic impact of *M. hyopneumoniae* within a swine herd.

**Prevention**

Effective prevention and control of mycoplasmal pneumonia, enzootic pneumonia, or PRDC is based on providing an optimal environment for the pigs, which includes adequate quality of air, ventilation, ambient temperature, and the appropriate number of animals housed in the available space. Management practices such as all in/all out pig flow, medicated and segregated early weaning, and multisite operations further facilitate control of respiratory disease associated with *M. hyopneumoniae* infection. In addition, Maes et al. (1996) recommended other management strategies that help limit the impact of *M. hyopneumoniae* on pig production. These include a balanced and stable sow herd with fewer than 30% replacement gilts; closing the herd or minimizing the number of sources used to procure pigs; multisite production; biosecurity to prevent the spread and introduction of disease; reduction of stress on pigs; optimal stocking density; and adequate ventilation, air quality, and room temperature.

Eradication has become a goal for many production systems. The Swiss have used a program referred to earlier to eradicate the organism from the country (Zimmerman et al. 1989). Other protocols for eradication of the organism within a herd include medicated early weaning protocols where the sow is treated with antibiotics and the pigs weaned at 6 days of age (Alexander et al. 1980), and segregated early weaning with the use of multisite operations to decrease significantly the number of organisms transmitted from the sow to the pigs (Harris 1990). Using pigs that have been produced by cesarean section–derived, colostrum-deprived (CDCD) pigs to repopulate a herd is the only method guaranteed to produce *M. hyopneumoniae*-free pigs consistently. In all cases, reexposure and re-infection have been problems in maintaining *M. hyopneumoniae*-free pigs.

Vaccines against *M. hyopneumoniae*, produced from adjuvanted whole-cell or membrane preparations are commonly used to control the clinical disease associated with mycoplasmal pneumonia. Numerous commercial vaccines are now used throughout the United States and the world. More than 85% of the herds in the U.S. vaccinate with mycoplasma vaccine (USDA 2001). Numerous studies have been performed demonstrating the efficacy of these vaccines under both field and experimental settings. Currently in the U.S. both single- and dual-dose vaccination protocols are used successfully to control disease. The appropriate use of either of these strategies is based on a number of factors, including overall health of the farm, time of clinical disease associated with *M. hyopneumoniae*, level of maternal antibodies, and circulation of PRRSV virus in the herd.

The economic benefit of mycoplasma vaccination has been demonstrated in a number of studies (Dhoo and Montgomery 1996; Jensen et al. 2002; Maes et al. 1999). Analysis of the immune response induced by *M. hyopneumoniae* bacterins has demonstrated reduction in percentage of lung lesions, production of serum antibodies, production of local IgG and IgA in the respiratory tract, and reduction of proinflammatory cytokines (Djordjevic et al. 1997; Kobisch et al. 1987; Kristensen et al. 1981; Messier et al. 1990; Ross et al. 1984; Sheldrake et al. 1993; Thacker et al. 1998, 2000). In addition, the effectiveness of antibiotic use in conjunction with vaccination has been demonstrated as an efficacious method to reduce the clinical disease associated with *M. hyopneumoniae* infection (Mateusen et al. 2001, 2002). Vaccine failure has been reported in the field and the impact of maternal antibodies has been investigated. It appears that maternal antibody levels against *M. hyopneumoniae* inhibit vaccine efficacy only if levels of antibodies are very high (Jayappa et al. 2001; Thacker et al. 1998, 2000; Thacker and Thacker 2001). However, a major cause of decreased mycoplasma vaccine efficacy is the presence of PRRSV during or shortly after vaccination (Thacker et al. 2000). Vaccination against *M. hyopneumoniae* reduced the increased severity of PRRSV pneumonia in conjunction with mycoplasmal pneumonia; however, the presence of PRRSV, either through infection or use of a modified live vaccine, significantly decreased the efficacy of the vaccine against *M. hyopneumoniae*-induced disease. The current vaccines are effective in reducing the clinical disease associated with mycoplasmal pneumonia including percentage of lung lesions and coughing; however, they do not prevent colonization of the organism in the host (Thacker et al. 2000). Investigation of new vaccines is actively occurring, including the use of aerosol and feed-based vaccines as well as subunit vaccines (Fagan et al. 1996, 2001; Frey et al. 1994; Lin et al. 1991; Murphy et al. 1993).

**M. HYORHINIS**

Polyserositis, arthritis, and otitis are clinical disorders associated with *M. hyorhinis* infection. The organism is ubiquitous within the swine population and also a common cell contaminant in cultured cell lines from humans and all species of animals.
Etiology
If present, *M. hyorhinis* is typically the first mycoplasma that grows in culture when investigating mycoplasmal diseases in pigs. The protocol and media for isolation and growth of *M. hyorhinis* is well summarized by Ross and Whittlestone (1983). The presence of the organism in pigs frequently prevents the isolation of other mycoplasmas.

Epidemiology
*M. hyorhinis* is a common pathogen in swine production units, with pigs becoming infected from either the sows or older pigs in system. Ross and Spear (1993) demonstrated that the organism could be isolated from the nasal secretions of 10% of sows and 30–40% of weanling pigs. It is considered a normal member of the upper airways of young pigs (Ross and Young 1993). Following exposure, the organism spreads quickly through the upper respiratory tract and can frequently be isolated from the lungs and eustachian tube. The majority of infected pigs have no apparent clinical disease, although many clinical diseases, including pneumonia, arthritis, polyserositis, eustachitis, and otitis, have been described in conjunction with *M. hyorhinis* infection.

Pathogenesis
Little is known about the pathogenesis of *M. hyorhinis*. Like *M. hyopneumoniae*, *M. hyorhinis* adheres to ciliated epithelial cells within the upper and lower respiratory tract of pigs. Little is known about the virulence factors of *M. hyorhinis*. Within the respiratory tract, pneumonia has been reported to be associated with some strains of *M. hyorhinis* (Ross 1992). In addition, infection with *M. hyorhinis* can result in otitis media (Kazama et al. 1989; Morita et al. 1999). The presence of the organism in the auditory tube may impair the mucociliary apparatus as the organism adheres to the cilia of the epithelial cells. This enables ascending infection with other bacteria such as *P. multocida* and *A. pyogenes*. Co-infection of the respiratory tract with other pathogens, including PRRSV (Kawashima et al. 1996) or *B. bronchiseptica* (Gois et al. 1977) has been suggested as being important for the increased respiratory disease that occasionally occurs with *M. hyorhinis* infection.

Although *M. hyorhinis* is a common inhabitant of the respiratory tract of pigs, much of the disease is associated with invasion of the organism systemically resulting in polyserositis and arthritis. The mechanism that enables the *M. hyorhinis* to leave the respiratory tract and induce systemic disease is currently unknown, although the presence of other pathogens or stress may facilitate the spread of the organism systemically. Once systemic, the organism produces polyserositis and polyarthritis in pigs less than 8 weeks of age, and infection in 3–6-month-old pigs typically results in only arthritis (Potgieter et al. 1972; Potgieter and Ross 1972).

Isolation of the organism from areas of polyserositis or arthritis is most successful during the acute stages of disease. It may be possible to isolate the organism later in infection and the organism has been shown to persist as long as 6 months in some joints. In a study of arthritis in Canada, 56 of 153 joints with arthritis were positive for bacteria and 5 of those were a *Mycoplasma* sp, with 3 confirmed as *M. hyorhinis* (Hariharan et al. 1992). This suggests that, although infection with the organism is potentially capable of inducing arthritis in pigs, it is not a frequent cause. Genetic differences in the susceptibility of pigs to experimental inoculation with *M. hyorhinis* has been suggested and appears to be related to the production of proinflammatory cytokines (Magnusson et al. 1998; Reddy et al. 2000).

Clinical Signs
The polyserositis associated with *M. hyorhinis* infection generally occurs in 3–10-week-old pigs, although occasionally it can occur in older animals. Typically evidence of disease occurs 3–10 days after exposure or the precipitating cause of the systemic spread of the organism. Pigs become unthriftly in appearance with roughened hair coat, slight fever, depression, reduced appetite, reluctance to move, difficulty breathing, abdominal tenderness, lameness, and swollen joints. The acute clinical signs begin to resolve after 10–14 days depending on the severity of the clinical disease. Some pigs continue to do poorly or die acutely. If arthritis is involved, lameness and swollen joints will persist for 2–3 months, although many pigs will remain lame up to 6 months later. In addition, conjunctivitis has been associated with *M. hyorhinis* infection (Friis 1976).

Lesions
The polyserositis of the acute phase of the disease consists of fibrinopurulent pericarditis, pleuritis, and occasionally peritonitis. Over time, the membrane lesions consist of fibrous adhesions and thickened, cloudy, rough serosal membranes. Acute arthritis is associated with painful and swollen joints with increased amounts of serosanguineous synovial fluid. The synovial membranes are swollen and hyperemic. Over time, the synovial fluid increases in amount and fibrous adhesions occur. The lesions appear less active, although erosion of cartilaginous surfaces and pannus formation may occur.

Otitis due to *M. hyorhinis* is characterized by the appearance of mycoplasmas among the cilia in the auditory canal.

Diagnosis
The diagnosis of clinical disease in association with *M. hyorhinis* is commonly made by the appearance of the serofibrinous to fibrinopurulent lesions, although other pathogens such as *H. parasuis* and *S. suis* can cause similar lesions. The organism can be isolated during the acute and subacute stages of disease. Freshly necropsied
animals will increase the success in isolating the organism as autolysis reduces the chances of culturing *M. hyorhinis*.

PCR assays capable of detecting *M. hyorhinis* have been used to assist in differentiating the various mycoplasma species isolated from field cases; however, they are not routinely performed as a diagnostic procedure (Taylor et al. 1984, 1985).

**Treatment**

In vitro antibiotic susceptibility for *M. hyorhinis* has been shown to many antibiotics. However, treatment of clinically affected animals is usually unsuccessful because the majority of the lesions are chronic in nature and elimination of the organism does little to reduce the adhesions and inflammation. Treatment with tylosin or lincomycin may be beneficial (Ross 1992).

**Prevention**

Control programs should stress preventing the other medical conditions that may predispose the animals to the systemic spread of *M. hyorhinis*. No published information is available on the ability of antibiotics to reduce clinical disease and no vaccine is currently available on a commercial basis.

**M. HYOSYNVOIAE ARTHRITIS**

*M. hyosynoviae*-induced arthritis has been recognized throughout the world with reports from the United States (Ross and Duncan 1970), England (Blowey 1993; Roberts et al. 1972), Germany (Ross et al. 1977) and Denmark (Nielsen et al. 2001). It was demonstrated in 1995 that 8–9% of synovial fluid samples from Danish slaughter pigs with nonpurulent arthritis were positive for the organism (Buttenshon 1995), and Friis et al. (1992) isolated the organism from 20% of arthritic lesions of pigs in a Danish abattoir.

**Etiology**

A review of isolation techniques and the media required for isolating *M. hyosynoviae* are reported in Ross and Karmon (1970). Isolation of the organism is often complicated because of overgrowth by *M. hyorhinis* and bacteria. A selective media has been described that facilitates the ability to isolate *M. hyosynoviae* in the presence of *M. hyorhinis* (Friis 1979). Recent research has identified genetic variation between isolates of the organism with several genotypically distinct variants occurring in a single herd (Kokotovic et al. 1999, 2002).

**Epidemiology**

*M. hyosynoviae* colonizes the respiratory tract of pigs (Friis et al. 1991) and is primarily located in the upper portions (Ross and Spear 1973). The organism can persist in carrier swine indefinitely in the tonsils (Friis et al. 1991; Ross and Spear 1973). Although present in infected sows, the organism is not transmitted to the pigs until 4–8 weeks of age (Ross and Spear 1973). Large numbers of the organism are shed only during the acute phase of infection and only intermittently from persistently infected sows (Ross and Spear 1973). It is unknown why the organism can’t be isolated from pigs younger than 4 weeks of age; however, it does allow pigs to be obtained that are free of the organism.

Following infection of a few pigs at 4–8 weeks of age, it is thought the organism is spread throughout the pens from either acute or chronically infected animals (Hagedorn-Olsen et al. 1999). The rate of spread may be related to environmental factors as well as stocking density.

**Pathogenesis**

The acute phase of infection with *M. hyosynoviae* lasts 1–2 weeks, during which time the organism spreads systematically to the joints and various tissues throughout the body. Arthritis can occur after an incubation period of 4–9 days and the mycoplasma can be isolated from the joints during the acute phase, which is 1–2 weeks after the occurrence of lameness and typically 2–3 weeks post exposure. The subacute and chronic phases occur 3–16 weeks after clinical arthritis, during which time the tonsils remain infected and viable organisms can persist in joint and lymph nodes. Infection of pigs from chronically infected animals through pen contact may not result in the systemic spread of the organism, but infect the tonsils only. This suggests that animals are initially infected through the tonsils, which may then result in systemic spread (Hagedorn-Olsen et al. 1999). In a study by Hagedorn-Olsen et al. (1999), septicemia was found in 90% of experimentally infected pigs, 12 of 23 pigs developed clinical arthritis, and 20% of the joints from which the organism was isolated appeared normal, demonstrating that infection does not always result in clinical disease. Differences in genetics, body structure, management practices, and environment appear to play a role in determining whether clinical arthritis will result following infection with *M. hyosynoviae* (Ross 1973). Osteochondrosis or trauma-induced bursal lesions (Nielsen et al. 2001) may predispose pigs to arthritis induced by *M. hyosynoviae*.

**Clinical Signs**

Clinical lameness associated with *M. hyosynoviae* typically occurs in 3–5-month-old pigs. The lameness appears acutely and may occur in more than one leg. One study found only hindlegs were involved in clinical lameness associated with the organism (Nielsen et al. 2001). Rectal temperatures remain normal, and pigs may exhibit a slight reduction in appetite with an accompanying weight loss. Often soft fluctuating to no joint swelling is observed, with no evidence of suppurrative arthritis.

Acute signs persist for 3–10 days after which the
lameness gradually decreases in severity. Many animals recover with no further lameness or may exhibit stiffness of motion. Continued clinical signs are often due to osteochondrosis as well as *M. hyosynoviae*-induced arthritis. Mortality is low and morbidity ranges form 1–50% in affected herds (Ross 1992).

**Lesions**

Proliferation, swelling, edema, and hyperemia of synovial membranes are common in *M. hyosynoviae*-infected joints. Increased volumes of synovial fluid that is serofibrinous to serosanguineous in nature are frequently observed. Lame pigs may have cloudy to brownish-colored synovial fluid. The periarticular tissues surrounding the affected joint are often edematous. In chronic phases the joint membranes may be thickened with fibrosis with pannus formation occurring. Cartilaginous changes may be associated with either *M. hyosynoviae* infection or due to osteochondrosis. Pseudocysts or calluses on the cranial surface of the carpal joint or the plantar and lateral surface of the tarsal joint may occur (Nielsen et al. 2001). Microscopically, acute lesions are characterized by edema, hyperemia, hyperplasia of synovial cells, and perivascular infiltration with mononuclear cells, including lymphocytes, monocytes, and macrophages. As the infection progresses, increased numbers of plasma cells and lymphocytes are present, followed by fibrosis as the joint heals (Hagedorn-Olsen et al. 1999).

**Diagnosis**

Acute lameness in 10–20-week-old pigs that is not responsive to penicillin is suggestive of *M. hyosynoviae* (Ross 1992). Isolation of the organism from the joint that exhibits lesions consistent with *M. hyosynoviae* infection is required for a definitive diagnosis. Animals with a disease profile consistent with *M. hyosynoviae* infection and in the acute phase of the disease should be selected for diagnostic procedures. Joint fluids from several animals should be collected from live animals or at slaughter or necropsy.

Serology can be used to detect antibodies to the organism. Both complement fixation and ELISA assays have been described, although these assays are not generally available in the U.S. (Hagedorn-Olsen et al. 1999; Zimmermann and Ross 1982). Pigs with subclinical infections may develop antibodies in the absence of disease, so the use of paired serum samples collected during the acute and subacute or chronic phase of disease should be used to ascertain that the antibody levels are increasing with the clinical disease.

**Treatment**

An in vitro study demonstrated that enrofloxacin, lincomycin, tetracycline, and tiamulin are all active against *M. hyosynoviae* (Aarestrup and Friis 1998). In the same study, isolates collected between 1968–1971 appeared to be highly susceptible to tylosin activity, and isolates collected in 1995–1996 were divided between highly susceptible and relatively resistant, suggesting the development of resistance to tylosin by some isolates (Aarestrup and Friis 1998). Earlier studies had documented that *M. hyosynoviae* was sensitive to tylosin, lincomycin (Zimmermann and Ross 1975), and valnemulin (Hannan et al. 1997). In addition, Burch et al. (1984) demonstrated that the use of tiamulin and lincomycin was effective in improving production parameters and reducing lameness in a herd that was experiencing clinical disease associated with *M. hyosynoviae*. However, in a study of 9 Danish herds, treatment had no apparent impact on the outcome of clinical disease, with the majority of lameness resolving independent of the antibiotic therapy used (Nielsen et al. 2001).

**MYCOPLASMA HAEMOSUIS (SUIS) (EPERYTHROZOON SUIS)**

With the advent of molecular biology, *Eperythrozoon suis* has recently been reclassified as a member of the Mollicutes family based on the physical characteristic of the organism and the 16s ribosomal RNA gene sequences. Initially renamed *Mycoplasma suis*, it has been proposed to be called *M. haemosuis* and will be used in this chapter (Neimark et al. 2002). Independent of name, the organism remains the cause of anemia in pigs.

**Etiology**

*M. haemosuis* was originally observed as “a rickettsia-like or anaplasmosis-like disease in swine” characterized by icterohaemorrhagic, respiratory distress, weakness and fever occurring in 2–8-month-old pigs (Doyle 1932). In 1950, Splitter and Williamson described the organism responsible for the clinical disease observed earlier by Doyle and named the organism *Eperythrozoon suis* because of its similarity to similar organisms in cattle and sheep. Originally described as two species, *E. suis* and *E. parvum* due to differences in appearance, it was later determined that they were the same organism at different stages of maturity (Liebich and Heinritzi 1992; Zachary and Bag gall 1985).

*M. haemosuis* were originally classified in the family Anaplasmataceae due to biologic and phenotypic characteristics that were not consistent with regular bacteria (Moulder 1974). However, there was always a suspicion that they were a member of the class Mollicutes based on their lack of intracellular parasitism, small size, lack of cell wall, resistance, and susceptibility to tetracyclines (Tanaka et al. 1965). This was confirmed in 1997 when Rikihisa, et al. (1997) sequenced the 16s rRNA gene sequences of the organisms. The gene sequences were found to have little in common with other Rickettsial organisms, instead being closer to other mycoplasmal species (Johansson et al. 1999). As a result, it was proposed that *E. suis* be named *Mycoplasma suis* (Neimark et
al. 2002). However, rather than naming the organism after the species it was suggested that the name *M. haemosuis* be used (Neimark et al. 2001).

*M. haemosuis* is round to oval with an average diameter of 0.2–2 μm that adheres to the surface of erythrocyte membranes (Liebich and Heinritzi 1992; Zachary and Basgall 1985). It has not been cultured in media in the absence of cells to date.

**Epidemiology**

The disease has been reported to be widespread in the Midwestern U.S. (Splitter 1950a). Smith et al. (1977) tested 10,000 swine sera and found approximately 20% of the animals were seropositive at a titer of 40 or more using an indirect hemagglutination assay (IHA) (Smith and Rahn 1975). Morbidity ranges from 10–60% and mortality may reach up to 90% in association with acute disease (Anthony et al. 1962). Morbidity due to subclinical infection is much lower as is mortality and difficult to measure. Recently a PCR assay has been developed and a small study found that 29% of the serum of 60 pigs tested were positive for the organism (Messick 2004). Clinical disease is often closely associated with outbreaks of other infectious diseases present in the herd.

Transmission of the organism can be through direct exposure by oral uptake of blood and blood components by such practices such as licking wounds, cannibalism, or uptake of blood-contaminated urine. Indirect transmission also occurs by means of vectors, including ectoparasites and blood-sucking insects, and by nonliving vectors such as contaminated needles, surgical instruments, or snares. Transmission by semen occurs only in the case of blood contamination and thus is rare (Heinritzi 1999).

The incubation period in experimentally infected and splenectomized pigs is between 3 and 30 days. This results in an acute phase of the disease. However, a carrier state that can recrudesce is also possible (Splitter 1950b).

**Pathogenesis**

The initial decrease in PCV, total RBC count, and hemoglobin concentration observed with *M. haemosuis* infection is due to massive parasitism of RBC. The resulting reduction in RBC numbers may contribute to the development of anemia and bilirubinemia. Infected RBCs are more fragile, have altered membranes, and are recognized as abnormal and removed from the circulation by the spleen. In addition to the direct damage to RBC membranes, the host immune response appears to play a role in both acute and chronic forms of the anemia associated with *M. haemosuis*. This is due to the presence of autoantibodies present to the RBCs (Smith 1992). The production of cold-reacting agglutinins is directed at sialoglycoconjugates on the RBC membranes (Feizi and Loveless 1996). It has been suggested that the host’s immune response may exacerbate the hemolytic episodes.

A prerequisite for RBC agglutination is some type of membrane injury and blood from pigs with both spontaneous and experimentally produced infection agglutinated in the cold (Hoffman et al. 1981). The mechanism used by *M. haemosuis* to adhere to RBCs is unknown.

In the acute phase, an increased bleeding potential is observed occasionally resulting in a consumptive coagulopathy. The greater the number of RBCs affected by the organism, the more striking the changes. Similar effects on blood coagulation are not observed with latent infection with *M. haemosuis* (Plank and Heinritzi 1990). During acute infection, hypoglycemia and blood acidosis can occur due to the metabolic activity of the organism (Heinritzi 1999).

In addition to the changes in the RBCs, research has demonstrated that *M. haemosuis* infection results in a transient hyperglobulinemia that increases the IHA titers. Lymphocyte responses to the nonspecific mitogens, phytohemagglutinin, pokeweed, and *E. coli* lipopolysaccharide was reduced after massive parasitemia. This may be one of the mechanisms for the increased occurrence of diseases of the respiratory and enteric tracts observed following infection (Zachary and Smith 1985). Further support of the impact that the organism has on the immune response is demonstrated by the increased difficulty in controlling other diseases in *M. haemosuis*-infected herds (Henry 1979).

Clinical outbreaks may increase in frequency in infected herds, but eventually a certain equilibrium is reached between the organism and the pigs that results in minimal disease that can be attributed directly to *M. haemosuis*. This equilibrium can be disrupted by other pathogens, stress, or inadequate management practices resulting in a clinical outbreak, which makes management critical in controlling the disease in an infected herd. The primary importance of a *M. haemosuis* infection within a herd is the impact the infection has on production parameters.

**Clinical Signs**

*M. haemosuis* infection can cause acute hemolytic disease and death in young pigs, prepartum sows, and stressed weaned and feeder pigs (Henry 1979; Smith 1992). Pigs of any age can exhibit disease in association with *M. haemosuis*. Pallor, fever, occasional icterus, and cyanosis of the extremities, especially the ears, are observed clinically during the acute phases of the disease. More commonly, mild anemia and poor growth rates are observed in weaned and feeder pigs. Infection of sows may result in fever, anorexia, lethargy, decreased milk production, and poor maternal behavior. Clinical disease in sows typically occurs within 3–4 days of introduction to the farrowing room or immediately after farrowing.

Chronic infections in animals with low or undetectable numbers of parasites results in uthriftiness, pallor, and occasionally skin hypersensitivities character-
ized by urticaria. Chronic _M. haemossuis_ infections have been associated with decreased reproduction, resulting in sows with anestrus, delayed estrus, early embryonic death, and abortions. However, Zinn et al. (1983) found no appreciable impact on sow reproductive performance, but did see a reduced rate of gain in pigs farrowed from sows with high IHA titers.

In all cases, secondary bacterial or viral infections, poor management strategies, including overcrowding, poor environmental conditions, and the presence of parasites contribute to the severity of disease associated with _M. haemossuis_ infection. Frequent injections and vaccinations can also be an important factor in spread of the organisms as well as subsequent reinfection. The use of oral treatment with tetracycline in treatment of other diseases can mask the clinical signs.

**Diagnosis**

Diagnosis is based on clinical signs, hematology results, demonstration of the organism, IHA assays for antibodies, and PCR. Prior to the development of PCR assays, the best diagnostic test to detect or confirm latent infection in carrier animals was by splenectomizing a potentially infected pig or by inoculation of a splenectomized pig with blood from suspected pigs.

Sero logical assays include the IHA assay (Smith and Rahn 1975). The production of antibodies occurs in waves, with each reinfection or recrudescence episode resulting in the production of new antibodies. However, the antibody titers persist only 2–3 months resulting in frequent false negative results (Heinritzi 1999).

More recently a PCR assay has been developed that is more sensitive and allows increased detection of pigs that are either carriers or subclinically infected (Messick et al. 1999).

**Treatment**

The treatment of choice is oxytetracycline at a dose of 20–30 mg/kg administered parenterally (Heinritzi 1999). Acutely ill pigs require parenteral treatment due to lack of adequate feed consumption. Administration of oxytetracycline at times of stress or treatment in infected herds may help prevent acute disease. However, treatment does eliminate the organism from the pig. Oral chlortetracycline therapy can reduce the incidence of anemia, although will not prevent outbreaks. Supportive therapy and iron injections (200 mg iron dextran/pig) will help recovery and minimize mortality.

**Prevention**

Supportive and prophylactic measures should be included with therapy (Claxton and Klunish 1975). Stopping the spread of the organism and preventing reinfection are critical to controlling disease in the herd. Parasitic control and hygiene are critical for disease control. Transmission by needles and surgical instruments must be minimized by changing needles between sows and litters.

No vaccines are available and if a herd is _M. haemossuis_-free, new additions should also be from herds negative for the organism. Negative status can be assumed if serologic or PCR tests from serum of pigs in the farrowing unit are negative or if transfusion from at least 10 blood samples into splenectomized pigs has no effect.

**OTHER MYCOPLASMAS FROM SWINE**

A number of mycoplasmas are present in swine that are of less importance to the industry than those discussed earlier in this chapter. These include mycoplasmas that are typically in other species, strains that are not normally associated with disease in swine, and acholeplasmas, which are common in a wide variety of animals and plants.

A species of mycoplasma that is frequently isolated from swine, but considered nonpathogenic is _M. flocculare_. It was first isolated from the respiratory tract of pigs in Denmark (Friis 1972). Since that time, the organism has been isolated by researchers in the U.K., Sweden, and the U.S. (Armstrong and Friis 1981). It was demonstrated that _M. flocculare_ is capable of inducing lymphocytic infiltrations in the nasal tissues and peribronchial areas (Friis 1973). These findings were later confirmed by Armstrong et al. (1987). However the role of _M. flocculare_ in respiratory disease in the field remains poorly defined. _M. flocculare_ is of primary importance to the swine industry due to its antigenic similarities to _M. hyopneumoniae_, which can complicate their differentiation both antigenically following culture and isolation and more importantly, serologically (Bereiter et al. 1990). However, it has been confirmed using molecular techniques that the two organisms differ genetically (Blank and Stemke 2001).

Infection of the genitourinary tract with mycoplasmas in many animal species is common; however, little evidence has been presented reporting similar findings in swine. Shin et al. (2003) demonstrated a cytopathic species of _M. hyorhinis_ that was thought to be a cause of abortions in sows.

Other species of mycoplasmas that have been isolated from swine include _M. sualvi_, _M. hyopharyngis_, _M. arginini_, _M. bovigenitalium_, _M. buccale_, _M. gallinarum_, _M. iners_, _M. mycoides_, and _M. salivarium_. In addition to mycoplasmas, Acholeplasmas have occasionally been isolated from the respiratory tract of swine (Gois et al. 1969). Acholeplasmas differ from Mycoplasmas by having a larger genome and being capable of growing in media that lacks sterols (Ross 1992). No importance in their presence of pigs has been demonstrated.

REFERENCES

CHAPTER 42 MYCOPLASMAL DISEASES


Thacker EL, Young TF, Young TF, Erickson BZ, DeBey MC. 2001. Evaluation of tilimicosin’s ability to prevent adherence of *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* to cilia using a differentiated swine epithelial culture system. Veterinary Therapeutics 2:293–300.
Pneumonic pasteurellosis, the result of Pasteurella multocida infection of the lung, is the common final stage of enzootic pneumonia or porcine respiratory disease complex (PRDC). This syndrome is one of the most common and costly diseases of pigs, especially when they are raised under confinement. Published data suggest that pneumonic lesions at slaughter are very common, even in well-managed herds. Reports on the prevalence of pigs with pneumonic lesions at slaughter has varied from as low as 30% to as high as 80% in various studies through the years. Recent data from the United States found a prevalence of 75% of pigs with pneumonia and 13% with pleuritis in a sample of 6634 pigs inspected, with all herds studied showing some animals with lesions (Bahnson 1994), which highlights pneumonia as the most frequent lesion seen at slaughter.

Pneumonia in pigs also appears to be a very costly disease, although the actual cost has been difficult to calculate and has varied widely in published results. Noyes et al. (1990) performed a radiographic study of pigs’ lungs in a commercial herd in order to evaluate lifetime pneumonia and found a significant correlation between the extent of lifetime pneumonic lesions and the weight of the animals at 180 days. Bahnson (1994) compared batches of finishing pigs sent to slaughter. The batch with the highest pneumonia scores had a 7.8% lower rate of gain than the batch with the lowest score, a difference that has considerable economic impact.

Pneumonic pasteurellosis occurs worldwide and in all climates and husbandry conditions. Specific-pathogen-free (SPF) schemes, especially at the national level, do achieve a degree of control, presumably through the eradication of Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae. However, P. multocida, which is a common inhabitant of the pig’s nasal flora, is extremely difficult to eradicate and can be found in most high-health-status herds, such as SPF or minimal-disease herds. Since pasteurellae can interact directly with other agents, elimination of mycoplasmas does not give an absolute guarantee of controlling pneumonia.

A more recent strategy for raising high-health-status pigs has been to use a combination of segregation of the offspring together with early weaning. This program of segregated early weaning (SEW) has been extremely successful in controlling and minimizing most of the common diseases that affect the pig. However, its impact on pneumonic pasteurellosis has been variable. In most farms and groups of pigs, pneumonia at slaughter has decreased to negligible levels. However, some farms have presented with severe pneumonia during the late finishing stages, around 16–18 weeks of age. This late pneumonia has been attributed mostly to infection by M. hyopneumoniae, but P. multocida is also commonly isolated. SEW, at least when used with weaning at 15 days, does not eliminate P. multocida from the offspring. Elimination of M. hyopneumoniae is more variable and unpredictable, probably dependent on sow immunity, and is most probably the predisposing trigger for pneumonia in these systems.

ETIOLOGY

P. multocida is a gram-negative coccobacillus, 0.5–1 4×1–2 µm in size. The organism is a facultative anaerobe, growing well in most enriched media. It is oxidase positive, nonmotile, indole positive, and urease negative. It does not grow well in MacConkey and is nonhemolytic and does not require X and V factors. These reactions are helpful in differentiating P. multocida from a group of closely related bacteria that are also involved in pulmonary diseases of pigs, namely, P. haemolytica, Actinobacillus suis, and A. pleuropneumoniae.

P. multocida has five capsular serotypes, A, B, D, E, and F of which A, B, and D have been reported in swine. Serotype B however, is atypical in that it produces a much more severe disease. It is also rare, confined to regions of Southeast Asia, China, and India (Verma 1988). It has not been reported from natural outbreaks in pigs in North America or Europe. The most common serotype isolated from pneumonic lungs is A, although a variable proportion of serotype D strains is also found
VIRULENCE FACTORS

The virulence factors of *P. multocida* are not well defined. In particular, the importance of the dermonecrotic toxin (DNT) is unresolved. This toxin is central to the production of atrophic rhinitis (see Chapter 34) when only toxigenic strains of *P. multocida* are involved in the disease. Toxigenic strains of *P. multocida* from lungs were first reported by Pijoan et al. (1984). Since then, a number of authors have found increasing numbers of toxigenic strains (both type A and type D) in pneumonic lungs. Some reports (Kielstein 1986; Iwamatso and Sawada 1988) show that between 25% and 45% of strains isolated from lungs are toxigenic. Kielstein (1986) found that toxigenic strains were frequently isolated from acute cases but not from slaughterhouse lungs, suggesting enhanced virulence. However, Baekbo (1988) postulated that toxigenicity was not important in determining the virulence of *P. multocida* in experimentally infected animals.

The role, if any, of toxigenicity in pneumatic pasteurellosis is still under debate. For example, Hoie et al. (1991) found that 94% of serotype A and 90% of serotype D isolates from pneumonic lungs were toxigenic. In contrast, Rubies et al. (1996) found no toxigenic strains (either A or D) in 218 isolates from pneumonic lungs. Maheswaran and Thies (1979) reported that 94% of strains from acute cases but not from slaughterhouse lungs, suggesting enhanced virulence. However, Baekbo (1988) postulated that toxigenicity was not important in determining the virulence of *P. multocida* in experimentally infected animals.

The capsule appears to be an important virulence factor, especially in serotype A, for it may help the organism avoid phagocytosis by alveolar macrophages, at least in vitro. Maheswaran and Thies (1979) reported that *P. multocida* uptake by swine alveolar macrophages was very low, even in the presence of opsonins. Similar results were found by Fuentes and Pijoan (1986). More recent work, however, suggests that little capsule is expressed when the organisms are grown under iron-restricted conditions (Jacques et al. 1994). These growth conditions mimic the scenario found in vivo. Thus, the relevance of the capsule to virulence may have been overestimated in the past.

Some strains of *P. multocida* are able to produce pleuritis and abscessation in experimentally infected pigs (Pijoan and Fuentes 1987). The virulence factors that distinguish these strains from less virulent pneumonic strains are not defined. However, Iwamatso and Sawada (1988) found that strains of serotype D or toxigenic strains (of both serotypes) were associated with abscesses but not with pleuritis.

MUCOSAL COLONIZATION

The colonization of mucous surfaces by *P. multocida* has received some attention lately, as it is of paramount import ance in understanding the pathogenesis of this organism. Jacques (1987) found that both serotypes A and D adhered poorly to isolated tracheal epithelial cells, although serotype A strains were more adherent. He later showed that serotype A strains adhered mostly to ciliated epithelial cells. Pijoan and Trigo (1989) also found sparse colonization by serotype A and D strains but found that serotype D strains adhered mostly to nonciliated cells. Trigo and Pijoan (1988) and later Issacson and Trigo (1995) found that some strains, in particular toxigenic ones, had detectable pili on their surface, although the role of these structures in adhesion is still under debate. In contrast to their poor attachment to epithelial surfaces, *P. multocida* strains have been shown to attach readily to nasal mucus, raising questions as to where normal attachment and colonization take place.

The presence of capsule has been shown to decrease the attachment of *P. multocida* to respiratory tract mucus, as well as to cultured tracheal rings (Jacques et al. 1993). On the other hand, the same group has reported that preinfection of tracheal rings with *Bordetella bronchiseptica* enhanced subsequent attachment by *P. multocida* (Dugal et al. 1992). Some other authors, however, have had difficulties in confirming that *P. multocida* attached to immobilized mucus (Issacson and Trigo 1995).

Mucosal colonization of suckling pigs is becoming a very important issue in SEW systems. It has been postulated (Pijoan 1995) that pigs weaned early (at 15 days of age or less) are not homogeneously colonized with organisms such as *P. multocida* and *M. hyopneumoniae*. As a result, pigs are weaned into isolated nurseries in populations that have a variable prevalence of colonized animals. Populations with low prevalence of colonization are at risk of developing severe clinical disease, because some pigs in the population will become infected very late, at a time when no maternal immunity is available. This could explain why SEW systems sometimes present with delayed PRDC (the “18-week wall”) (Dee 1997).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The epidemiology of *P. multocida* is not well understood. The organism is present in practically all herds and can be readily isolated from the nose and tonsils of normal, healthy individuals. Transmission of the disease by aerosols has been postulated but is unlikely to be of importance. Baekbo and Nielsen (1988) measured airborne *P. multocida* in herds suffering from atrophic rhinitis. They were able to isolate the organism in 29 of 44 herds studied. However, the low number of organisms isolated (144 CFU/mL) led them to conclude that there was no relationship between the number of organisms recovered and the severity of the clinical problem.

Although aerosol transmission may occasionally occur within the herd, it is probable that nose-to-nose contact is the common route of infection. Both vertical and horizontal transmission occur, although within
PATHOGENESIS

Experimental infections with \textit{P. multocida} are very difficult to produce. Healthy pigs will readily tolerate large doses of organisms instilled intranasally or even intratracheally. Pulmonary clearance is very effective, and the bacteria cannot be reisolated 30 minutes after challenge. Recent work demonstrating that little capsule is present in vivo has clarified the apparent disparity between the poor phagocytosis observed in vitro and the ready clearance of bacteria found in healthy animals. Experimental models of the disease have used serotype B organisms (Farrington 1986), previous infections with immunosuppressive virus or mycoplasmas (Fuentes and Pijoan 1986; Ciprian et al. 1988), or massive instillation of infected fluids into the lung (Hall et al. 1988). This has led to the conclusion that \textit{P. multocida} is not a primary agent of pneumonia but rather follows infections with other agents. Vaccination against hog cholera virus (Pijoan and Ochoa 1978) and infection with Aujeszky’s virus (Fuentes and Pijoan 1987) or \textit{M. hyopneumoniae} (Ciprian et al. 1988) have all been shown to predispose the pig to superinfections with \textit{P. multocida}. In contrast, porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) virus could not be shown to interact with \textit{P. multocida} in the production of pneumonia (Carvalho et al. 1997).

Once established, the organism stimulates a rapid suppurrative reaction, characterized by neutrophil infiltration. This is probably a host reaction to bacterial lipopolysaccharide, which stimulates the release of inflammatory cytokines. Death is uncommon, probably the result of endotoxic shock and respiratory failure.

CLINICAL SIGNS

The clinical signs vary in severity depending on the strain of \textit{P. multocida} involved, together with the immune status of the animals.

Acute Form

This form is most commonly associated with serotype B strains. It is rare and is never seen in Europe or North America. The animals show dyspnea, labored breathing with abdominal “thumps” (sudden contractions of the abdomen), prostration, and high fever (up to 42.2°C, 108°F). Mortality may be high (5–40%) in these cases; dead and moribund animals may show purplish discoloration of the abdominal region, suggesting endotoxic shock.

Subacute Form

This is associated with \textit{P. multocida} strains that produce pleuritis. In these cases, cough and abdominal breathing can be detected in grower or finishing pigs up to market weight. Cough in this age pig is usually the hallmark of severe disease. Clinically, this form of the disease is very similar to pleuropneumonia due to \textit{A. pleuropneumoniae} (see Chapter 33). The main distinguishing feature is that pleuritic pasteurellosis rarely results in sudden death. Rather, pigs become extremely emaciated but may survive for a long time. Recently, outbreaks of PRDC in finishing pigs (about 16–18 weeks of age) on farms using SEW methods has resulted in cough and abdominal breathing in pigs but usually not pleuritis (Dee 1997).

Chronic Form

This is the most common form of the disease, characterized by occasional cough, thumping, and low or nonexistent fever. Animals affected are usually in the later stages of the nursery or are growers (10–16 weeks of age). The signs are indistinguishable from those following \textit{M. hyopneumoniae} infections, for \textit{P. multocida} causes the continuation and exacerbation of primary mycoplasmosis.

LESIONS

Lesions of \textit{P. multocida} are confined to the thoracic cavity and are superimposed on those of \textit{M. hyopneumoniae}. Typically, anterolateral consolidation of the lung is seen, together with froth in the trachea. There is a clear line of demarcation between affected and healthy lung tissue. The affected portion of the lung will have discoloration ranging from red to grayish-green, depending on the course of the infection (Figure 43.1).

Severe cases may present varying degrees of pleuritis and abscessation. Pleural adhesions to the thoracic wall are common in these cases, and the pleura has a translucent, dry appearance (Figures 43.2, 43.3). This is useful in differentiating pneumatic pasteurellosis from actinobacillus pleuropneumonia, in which moist, yellowish pleural adhesions with massive fibrin infiltration are more common (Pijoan 1989).

Histologically, a lobular, exudative bronchopneumonia is found. Severe bronchopneumonia, alveolar epithelial hyperplasia, and the presence of abundant neutrophils are seen with mucopurulent exudate in the bronchial lumen and in alveolar spaces. These lesions are not specific to \textit{P. multocida} infections and are similar for most bacterial pneumonias.

Evidence has also been presented for a relationship between pasteurella-induced bronchopneumonia and the presence of disseminated focal nephritis (Butten-
The author concluded that the two diseases are connected by a process of dissemination from the pulmonary lesions.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Since the lesions of *P. multocida* infection are not pathognomonic, they cannot be used as the only criteria to establish a definite diagnosis. The history of the outbreak, histopathology, and isolation of the organism should be used to confirm the original presumptive diagnosis. Serology has not proven effective for diagnosis, and no serologic test is routinely available for *P. multocida* infections.

*P. multocida* is a relatively easy organism to culture, provided proper specimens are submitted to the laboratory. Specimens yielding the best isolations include swabs of tracheobronchial exudate and affected lung tissue obtained from the border area between affected and normal tissue. Nasal swabs have also been shown to be good samples for isolation of *P. multocida* (Schoss and Alt 1995). Swabs should be immersed in an appropriate transport medium, such as Stuart’s. Lung samples should be obtained as aseptically as possible. All samples should be refrigerated (but not frozen) until cultured.

Culture of *P. multocida* can be successfully achieved in laboratories with minimal facilities. Good-quality specimens will yield the organism on direct culture onto blood agar or glucose agar plates. If the samples are more contaminated, they can be serially diluted tenfold in brain-heart infusion (BHI) broth, grown overnight, and then plated (Pijoan et al. 1983a). Alternatively, selective media can be used: Ackermann et al. (1994) successfully isolated *P. multocida* from tonsils and turbinates of adult pigs using blood agar with 3.75 U/mL of bacitracin, 5 µg/mL clindamycin, 0.75 µg/mL gentamicin, and 2.25 µg/mL penicillin.
CHAPTER 43  PNEUMONIC PASTEURELLOSIS 723

µg/mL of amphotericin B. Isolation can also be enhanced by injecting the specimen intraperitoneally into mice and then recovering the pasteurellae 24 hours later from liver and ascitic fluid.

Differential diagnosis must include influenza virus, A. pleuropneumoniae, B. bronchiseptica, Salmonella choleraesuis, and pure M. hyopneumoniae infections. Accurate clinical differentiation based on the epidemiology and lesions can be readily achieved for some of these conditions but may be difficult in cases of influenza, B. bronchiseptica, or M. hyopneumoniae. In these cases, histology and bacterial culture will be needed. Ramirez and Pijoan (1982) and Straw (1986a) have published tables for the differential diagnosis of these conditions.

TREATMENT

Treatment of P. multocida field infections with antibiotics is usually difficult or unsuccessful. This is partly due to widespread antibiotic resistance in P. multocida isolates in the United States and also to difficulties in achieving adequate antibiotic concentrations in consolidated, pneumatic lung.

A variety of antibiotics and antibiotic combinations have been commonly used (Farrington 1986). These include parenteral antibiotics such as oxytetracycline, 11 mg/kg; long-acting oxytetracycline, 20 mg/kg; procaine penicillin, 66,000 units/kg; benzathine penicillin, 32,000 units/kg; tiamulin, 10–12.5 mg/kg; and ampicillin, 6.6 mg/kg. Many of these drugs, however, are becoming increasingly less efficient due to widespread antibiotic resistance. Treatment via feed antibiotics has also been suggested, although, as in the case of other pneumonias, it is probably not very effective.

Cote et al. (1991) found some plasmid-mediated resistance to streptomycin and sulphonamides among 29 field isolates investigated. Gutierrez Martin and Rodriguez Ferri (1993) studied 59 Spanish isolates, finding good activity with penicillins, aminoglycosides, tetracyclines, erythromycin, colistin, and rifampicin, with some resistance to tylosin, vancomycin, and tiamulin. They reported that third-generation cephalosporins and fluorinated quinolones were the most effective drugs. Raemdonck et al. (1994) found good minimum inhibitory concentrations (MIC) for danofloxacin, ceftiofur, and trimethoprim-sulphonamide; they found variable to high resistance to erythromycin, gentamicin, lincomycin, oxytetracyclines, and spectinomycin. Finally, Salmon et al. (1995) tested isolates from several countries and found the best activity with cephalosporins and enrofloxacin, with poor activity shown in vitro by erythromycin, sulphonamide, spectinomycin, and lincomycin.

The effectiveness of all these antimicrobials will vary considerably depending on strain susceptibility. Since P. multocida readily exhibits resistance to various antimicrobials, antibiograms should be performed before instituting treatment.

As in other respiratory infections, antibiotics are more effective when used as prophylactic, rather than therapeutic, agents. Tetracyclines alone, tetracyclines combined with sulphonamide or sulfaflaxazole or penicillin, and tylosin combined with sulphonamide have been recommended for this purpose. It is probable that the most effective compound in these mixtures is sulphonamide. This antimicrobial has been the focus of controversy over residues. Because of this, its use has been severely limited and monitored. Tiamulin (40 ppm in feed) has been shown, in a number of trials, to improve average daily gain. However, since pneumatic lesions are not significantly reduced by this antibiotic (Pott and Edwards 1990), the mode of action by which these improvements are obtained is unclear. Tiamulin has been found to be of variable effectiveness against P. multocida. It is therefore probable that its main effect in pneumonia lies in the control of M. hyopneumoniae.

Some new antibiotics with claims for P. multocida treatment are not available in the United States but are

43.3. Lung from a case of pleuritic pasteurellosis. Note anteroventral, well-demarcated lesions, together with the presence of multiple abscesses. There is extensive interlobar adhesion.
used extensively in other countries. These include injectable lincomycin-spectinomycin, some cephalosporins, and various quinolones including enrofloxacin and danofloxacin. Injectable ceftiofur is available in the United States, however, and it has been shown by a number of authors to have good activity against *P. multocida*.

**PREVENTION**

**Management Approaches**

Since antibiotic therapy is often unsuccessful and even when successful may not prove cost-effective, prevention of pneumonia has received much attention. Prevention is usually obtained through changes in management. The management techniques that result in decreased pneumonia have been reviewed by several authors (Pijoan 1986; Straw 1986b). Caution must be taken when implementing these recommendations, since they derive mostly from retrospective epidemiological studies and not from experimental data. Also, they are intended to reduce pneumonia as a whole (and other respiratory problems) and do not differentiate between conditions of different etiology.

Management changes can be directed either at modifying the pigs’ environment or at reducing the possibilities of spreading the organism.

Environmental changes such as increasing ventilation flow rate, decreasing ammonia, and minimizing temperature fluctuations and dust are usually recommended. Some of these recommendations are antagonistic; increasing airflow, especially in winter, results in a decrease of both temperature and humidity, with an increase in dust. Most of these changes have not proven valuable in controlled, experimental conditions. Noyes et al. (1986) found that decreasing ventilation below minimal recommended levels (0.5 CFM/pig) had no effect on weaned pigs inoculated with both *B. bronchiseptica* and *P. multocida*. Similarly, Rafai et al. (1987) found that cold stress, even though it reduced immune function in suckling pigs, had no effect on weaned pigs inoculated with both *B. bronchiseptica* and *P. multocida*. Similarly, Rafai et al. (1987) found that cold stress, even though it reduced immune function in suckling pigs, had no effect on weaned pigs inoculated with both *B. bronchiseptica* and *P. multocida*.

Environmental changes frequently entail extensive remodeling. They are, therefore, expensive to institute and maintain. It is not clear that these changes are cost-effective in terms of reducing respiratory disease.

On the other hand, considerable improvement may be obtained by instituting management changes that reduce the spread of the organism. These include the following:

1. Segregated early weaning: SEW has a major impact on pneumonia and, when properly done, will reduce or eliminate pneumonia from most groups of pigs. This is probably based on the control of *M. hyopneumoniae*, which in many herds is virtually eliminated. Early weaning probably has less effect on *P. multocida*, since it has been shown that pigs are colonized as early as 10 days of age. Occasional farms or groups of pigs will experience acute outbreaks of pneumonia.

2. All-in/all-out production: In farms where SEW is not possible, efforts should be made to institute an all-in/all-out production program. Several workers have shown that this type of production system markedly decreases the incidence of pneumonia.

3. Closed herds: Minimizing the purchase of outside pigs, especially fatteners, will result in a decrease of pneumonia and other respiratory conditions. However, the pressure to improve genetics in modern farms has forced most producers to purchase their breeding animals. It has become increasingly important to evaluate the health status of the farm from which these animals are purchased, in order to minimize the probability of introducing disease.

4. Minimal mixing and sorting: This is a source of stress to the pigs, while also intensifying the probabilities of disease transmission. Pigs should be mixed as few times as possible during their productive life.

5. Reduction in building and pen size: Smaller rooms and smaller pens both have been shown to reduce levels of pneumonia. Rooms should have a maximum of 250 pigs, and pens a maximum of 20–25 pigs each. This again is difficult to achieve in modern farms. However, the recent trend of building wean-to-finish barns, where pigs are only mixed once, at weaning, will probably have a positive effect in decreasing pneumonia.

6. Reduction in animal density: Decreasing animal density has been shown by many authors to reduce levels of pneumonia. It is important therefore to find a reasonable compromise between densities that are appropriate for the animals’ health and those that maximize returns on the building’s cost.

**Vaccination**

Although several killed vaccines for the prevention of pneumonic pasteurellosis are available, their effectiveness is questionable. Since no reliable model of experimental disease exists, potency testing is usually performed in mice. It is doubtful, therefore, that this model truly replicates the disease in the pig. Under field conditions, clinicians frequently have disappointing results with these vaccines, and they do not appear to be cost-effective.

Some modern approaches to vaccination against *P. multocida* have been reported recently. The use of purified lipopolysaccharide (LPS) antigen and the use of aroA gene deletion mutants both resulted in protection against homologous, but not heterologous, challenge (Adler et al. 1996). The use of a cloned, 87 kDa outer-membrane protein had similar limitations (Ruttolo and Adler 1996). Cross-protection has been reported in chickens with the use of a protein preparation from cells grown under iron-deprived conditions, which mimic...
the in vivo environment (Wang and Glisson 1994). However, none of these fraction vaccines are commercially available or have been tested in pigs, where the disease is not septicemic as it is in chickens and mice. Therefore, there is at present no successful commercial vaccine against *P. multocida* in the pig.

**OTHER PASTEURELLA INFECTIONS IN PIGS**

Several authors have sporadically isolated *P. haemolytica*-like organisms from cases of severe necrotizing pleuropneumonia. The lesions seen are similar to those found in *A. pleuropneumoniae* infections but tend to be less severe. In this regard, they are also similar to lesions reported from *A. suis*. A new nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD)-independent biotype of *A. pleuropneumoniae* has now been recognized, and it is very probable that many of these severe pneumonias are related to these two organisms rather than to *P. haemolytica*.

All these organisms are very similar and differ in minor biochemical reactions such as indole formation or V-factor requirement. Bisgaard (1984) did a comprehensive study of these strains and concluded that they differed from *P. haemolytica* sensu stricto. Since the lesions produced (and the serologic reactions) are indistinguishable from *A. pleuropneumoniae*, it is possible that some field outbreaks have been misdiagnosed. At present, it is very difficult to assess the true prevalence and economic impact of these strains.

**REFERENCES**


Proliferative enteropathies (PE; also known as ileitis) are a group of acute and chronic conditions of widely differing clinical signs but with a common underlying pathological change visible at necropsy: a thickening of the mucosa of the small intestine and colon. Histologically, the affected tissues show marked proliferation of immature epithelial cells of the intestinal crypts, forming a hyperplastic to adenoma-like mucosa. These proliferating cells invariably contain numerous intracytoplasmic *Lawsonia intracellularis*, an obligate intracellular bacterium.

In growing pigs with uncomplicated proliferation of the mucosa, the condition is chronic proliferative enteropathy, also known as porcine intestinal adenomatosis (PIA) or ileitis. In some pigs, these changes can be mild and subclinical or, alternatively, can have additional changes superimposed on this basic lesion, including a necrotic enteritis, a granulomatous regional ileitis, or an acute proliferative hemorrhagic enteropathy (PHE, Rowland and Lawson 1975). The chronic, subclinical and acute hemorrhagic forms of PE are now important enteric diseases in the modern pig industry.

The lesions of PE were first described in pigs in Ames, Iowa, by Biester and others in the 1930s (Biester and Schwarte 1931; Biester et al. 1939) and were subsequently found to occur in other major pig-raising areas throughout the world, but it was not until 1973 that Alan Rowland and Gordon Lawson, investigating major outbreaks occurring in Scotland, developed a productive research program (Rowland and Rowntree 1972; Rowland and Lawson 1974). They found that whenever these proliferative changes in pigs were studied either ultrastructurally or using silver stains, intracellular bacteria were consistently present within the abnormal proliferating cells (Rowland and Lawson 1974). These bacteria lie free in the apical cytoplasm of infected epithelial cells and are not membrane-bound during the important stages of infection. The identity of these bacteria and their etiologic role in PE in pigs were finally resolved in 1993 with successful culture of the intracellular organism and the reproduction of the disease in pigs using a pure culture of this agent (Lawson et al. 1993; McOrist et al. 1993). Also in 1993, its taxonomic position was clarified (Gebhart et al. 1993); its definitive name is *Lawsonia intracellularis* (McOrist et al. 1995a).

Pathological changes closely resembling porcine PE and caused by intracellular *Lawsonia* species have been described in a wide range of host species as single case reports, including in macaques (Klein et al. 1999; Cooper and Gebhart 1998). However despite obvious infection opportunities, no case of PE or *Lawsonia* infection has been detected in humans. Natural disease outbreaks are reported in the laboratory hamster (Frisk and Wagner 1977; Williams et al. 1996; Lavoie et al. 2000), in the laboratory rabbit (Schoeb and Fox 1990; Duhamel et al. 1998), in deer (Drolet et al. 1996), and in ratite birds (Cooper et al. 1997; Lemarchand et al. 1997), but importantly, other farm birds and wild-type mice appear resistant (Collins et al. 1999; McOrist et al. 2003a). Experimental transmission studies, in situ immunostaining and DNA analysis across species have demonstrated that the one bacterial species can infect the intestinal cells of a wide variety of host species (Lawson and Gebhart 2000). The common infection among laboratory rabbits hampers simple production of specific polyclonal antibody. However, there is currently no evidence to link these other hosts directly with the onset of disease in farmed pigs. The disease has been detected in wild pigs (*Sus scrofa*) living in central Europe (Tomanova et al. 2002).

**ETIOLOGY**

The cause of PE is the obligately intracellular bacterium, *L. intracellularis*, which preferentially grows within the cytoplasm of intestinal epithelial cells. This bacterial growth is invariably accompanied by localized proliferation of infected immature crypt epithelial cells. It has not as yet been cultivated in cell-free media, due to a metabolic requirement for preformed mitochondrial
triphosphates or a similar energy source. Some earlier literature refers to the intracellular bacterium as a Campylobacter-like organism; however, that designation was based only on its morphologic similarity to that genus.

*L. intracellularis* forms curved to straight vibrioid-shaped rods with either tapered or rounded ends and measure 1.25–1.75 μm in length by 0.25–0.43 μm in width. It has a typical gram-negative trilaminar outer envelope. No fimbriae or spores have been detected. A long, single, polar flagellum and darting motility has been observed in some isolates co-cultured on cell lines, but only when the bacteria are located extracellularly. It has a small, single circular genome and 3 plasmids, totalling 1.72 million bp and 1,324 orf. It possesses the small genome, cell-dependent respiration, low G+C%, and significant expression of the gro EL heat shock proteins commonly seen in other symbiotic intracellular bacteria (Dale et al. 1998; McOrist and Gebhart 2004). Despite being placed in the Desulfovibrionaceae family on DNA sequence analysis, it does not appear to have sulfite reduction capacity. In vitro culture of *L. intracellularis* requires co-culture on a transformed cell line such as intestinal epithelial cells, in a microaerobic atmosphere of 82.2% nitrogen, 8.8% carbon dioxide, and 8% oxygen at 37°C (Stills 1991; Lawson et al. 1993). Isolates of *L. intracellularis* from pigs and those from a variety of origins and other host species (hamster, horse, deer) show a very high degree (>98%) of similarity among DNA sequences in key taxonomic sites and in their outer membrane proteins, indicating that a single “strain” of *L. intracellularis* may occur (Cooper et al. 1997; Al-Ghamdi 2003).

Experimental transmission studies using pure cultures of *L. intracellularis* as oral-challenge inocula for conventional pigs and using gnotobiotic pigs predosed with a minimal bacterial flora of nonpathogenic enteric species have resulted in reproduction of the specific lesions of PE (McOrist et al. 1993, 1994). Exposure of pigs to crude, or partially filtered, homogenized diseased mucosa resulted in reproduction of specific intestinal lesions and clinical disease in early challenge trials (Roberts et al. 1977; Mapother et al. 1987; McOrist and Lawson 1989a). This strategy was later revived into a well-characterized mucosal homogenate challenge exposure model for reproduction of PE in conventional pigs (Winkelman et al. 2002; Guedes and Gebhart 2003a, b). Intestinal lesions that develop as a result of artificial exposure to various isolates have had all the characteristics of the field disease, including the presence of mucosal proliferation and intracellular bacteria (McOrist et al. 1993; Guedes and Gebhart 2003a, b). *L. intracellularis* isolates derived from American or European origins and from acute or chronic lesions have proved capable of producing typical chronic or acute PE lesions (Mapother et al. 1987; Knittel et al. 1996), indicating that the differing clinical expression of PE cases (PIA, subclinical, PHE) are due to dosage and host response differences, not to separate bacterial strains.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

The disease is worldwide in distribution and occurs commonly in all pig-raising regions and in all pig farm management systems, including outdoor ones (McOrist et al. 2003b). The incidence of lesions in pigs at normal slaughter age is generally low, at 0.7–2.0%, and therefore unreliable for farm monitoring (Rowland and Hutchings 1978; Christensen and Cullinane 1990; Jensen et al. 1999).

The development and widespread use of Lawsonia-specific PCR suitable for fecal samples and serology methods has enabled a clearer understanding of the widespread prevalence and epidemiology of PE on pig farms. Recent surveys in Europe, Asia, and the Americas have indicated that practically all pig farms have at least a low level of infection and that some 20–40% of pig farms have a notable level of clinical and/or subclinical cases (Moller et al. 1998; Kim et al. 1998; Stege et al. 2000; Bane et al. 2001; Jacobsen et al. 2003; Marsteller et al. 2003).

Comparison of management systems with the onset of infection indicates that on pig farms with age-separation of groups (so-called multisite farm systems) *L. intracellularis* infection occurs rarely in breeding stock and is usually delayed in grower-finishers until they are 12–20 weeks old (Just et al. 2001; Bronsvoort et al. 2001; Chouet et al. 2003). This delayed infection may be associated with the onset of PIA or PHE cases, but antibiotic usage may complicate this simplistic pattern.

In contrast, on single-site farms with a continuous pig flow between different groups (so-called farrow-to-finish systems) there is early postweaning infection at approximately 5 to 7 weeks old, with frequent occurrence of related subclinical and clinical problems (PIA). Infection of piglets probably occurs soon after maternally derived passive immunity wanes, via positive feces exposure. The infection can then amplify over the next few weeks in groups of postweaned “nursery” pigs. In these farms, levels of recent exposure of at least 10% are also evident among healthy breeding females of all parities, with some (<5%) of these exposed sows shedding detectable *L. intracellularis* in their feces. Where group housing of breeding females occurs, this rate of recent exposure consistently rises above 30%, presumably due to higher contamination of the bedding (Stege et al. 2000; Chouet et al. 2003).

It is likely that the environment of many pig farms, particularly the grower-finisher areas, contains a sustained level of *L. intracellularis* infection “embedded” in the fecal material, fomites, pens, insects, and walkways in the buildings. This acts to reintroduce the infection to many new groups of pigs at various ages. However, even with use of the best diagnostic tests, it can be diffic-
cult to establish exactly when a group infection and/or its related clinical outbreak of ileitis starts on any given farm (Hammer 2004). In other words, the infection can build up slowly or quickly, with variations in the time of disease onset on different farms and, importantly, on the same farm between different groups in the same building or pens (Philips et al. 1998; Hammer 2004). The highest levels of exposure in all farms are usually seen in older finisher pigs (Moller et al. 1998; Marsteller et al. 2003). Transmission of positive feces from this contaminated area to other areas of a farm, such as those containing breeding animals, would occur more commonly on single-site farms. Modes of this transmission probably include passive transfer of feces on boots or fomites, such as within rodent feet. Although cross-species transmission of *L. intracellularis* infection has been demonstrated experimentally, an active role of infected vectors has not yet been clearly demonstrated on any *L. intracellularis*-infected farm.

Clinically important outbreaks of acute PHE are now very apparent and frequent, probably due to the persistence of this obvious and often fatal disease in the face of “high health” strategies, such as multisite farms and medicated early weaning (Guedes et al. 2002a). Particular management situations are thought to lend themselves to outbreaks of acute PHE. Young adults (4–12 months old) within boar and gilt performance testing stations, gilts within breeding programs that involve transportation to new units, and the movement and mixing of boars and gilts into breeding groups are commonly associated with PE outbreaks. Although this often partly reflects changes in exposure and use of antibiotics at these times, the occurrence of major stressors, such as extreme weather conditions, is a common feature prior to many outbreaks.

Overall epidemiologic features of PE include: *L. intracellularis* can remain viable in feces at 5 to 15°C for 2 weeks (Collins et al. 2000), the infectious dose is relatively low (McOrist et al. 1993; Guedes et al. 2003) and fecal excretion may be high in some infected “spreader” pigs (Smith and McOrist 1997; Guedes et al. 2002a). Sanitation methods are incompletely understood. Of 6 disinfectants tested in one study (Collins et al. 2000), only quaternary ammonium (3% cetrimide QA) and iodine-based (1% povidone-iodine) compounds showed full bactericidal activity. Isolates appeared somewhat resistant to a 0.33% phenolic mixture. In herds with endemic chronic PE, feces from infected pigs or on the boots of workers can clearly provide the likely source of new infections. Rigorous removal of feces from boots and between batches of pigs in buildings capable of complete “all-in/all-out” is likely to be more effective at control of PE than reliance on slatted floors and sunken pits for feces removal (Smith et al. 1998; Bane et al. 2001). It is possible but not considered likely that feces from infected gilts or sows are responsible for regular transmission to their progeny.

**PATHOGENESIS**

PE can be reproduced by exposing susceptible pigs to *L. intracellularis* or to diseased mucosa containing these intracellular bacteria (Roberts et al. 1977; McOrist and Lawson 1989; McOrist et al. 1993, 1994; Guedes and Gebhart 2003a). In typical oral challenge exposure studies of postweaned pigs (4 weeks old) with a standard inoculum of 10^8 *L. intracellularis* bacteria, numerous intracellular bacteria can be visualized in the developing proliferative intestines and feces 1–3 weeks following inoculation with a peak of infection and lesions 3 weeks after challenge. In most of these pigs, intestinal infection, proliferative lesions and excretion persists for approximately 4 weeks, but in some exposed pigs, excretion may persist for at least 10 weeks (Smith and McOrist 1997; Guedes et al. 2002a). At the peak of infection 3 weeks after challenge, moderate diarrhea and histologic lesions of PE are usually observed in 50% and 100%, respectively, of animals challenged with this inoculum. Infection and lesions in the large intestine generally occur a week or two after small intestinal infection following oral challenge (Guedes and Gebhart 2003b). Naive pigs of a wide age range (neonates to growersfinishers) are susceptible to oral challenge.

PE develops initially as a progressive proliferation of immature epithelial cells populated by numerous intracellular bacteria. In most cases, no significant inflammatory reaction occurs and the organisms remain in the epithelium at this stage. In severe cases of PE, *L. intracellularis* can also be observed in the mesenteric lymph node and tonsils (Roberts et al. 1980; Jensen et al. 2001), but these appear to be secondary sites. In vivo and in vitro studies have elucidated some of the early events in bacteria-cell interaction (McOrist et al. 1989b, 1995b; Lawson et al. 1995). Bacteria associate with the cell membrane and then quickly enter the enterocyte via an entry vacuole. Specific adhesins or receptors have not been identified, but *L. intracellularis* may possess a type III secretion system. The entry vacuole rapidly breaks down (within 3 hours), and the bacteria flourish and multiply free (not membrane-bound) within the cytoplasm. The entry of bacteria into cells is dependent on cell, but not necessarily bacterial, viability—that is, a type of induced phagocytosis (Lawson et al. 1995). The mechanism whereby the bacteria cause infected cells to fail to mature, but continue to undergo mitosis and form hyperplastic crypts, is not yet understood fully. It may reflect an inhibition of the normal crypt cell differentiation process, as regulated locally at the crypt neck.

*L. intracellularis*-infected intestinal crypts can become enormously elongated and often branched. Loss of body protein and amino acids into the intestinal lumen and the reduced nutrient absorption by the intestinal mucosa lacking mature enterocytes are the likely causes of the reduction in weight gain and feed conversion efficiency seen in pigs affected with chronic uncomplicated
When chronic or subclinical PE is suspected in a herd, Blood or mucus are not features of chronic PE diarrhea. Only a proportion of pigs affected with chronic PE show diarrhea, which varies from the clinically unremarkable to those showing severe loss of condition and often scour persistently. Affected epithelial cells contain a large accumulation of intracellular IgA (Lawson et al. 1979; McOrist et al. 1992), and intestinal lavages contain a high level of Lawsonia-specific IgA (Guedes et al. 2002c). Macrophage ingestion of L. intracellularis in developing lesions probably leads to a typical Th1 type immune cell response in the lamina propria (McOrist et al. 1992; MacIntyre et al. 2003). Both cell-mediated and humoral responses occur in the blood of affected pigs (McOrist and Lawson 1993; Knittel et al. 1998; Guedes and Gebhart 2003b). These are first detectable 2 weeks after exposure and can persist for up to 3 months in acutely infected pigs (Guedes et al. 2002c). It is therefore likely that animals exposed to L. intracellularis show a specific immune response.

Degenerative and reparative changes may be superimposed on the basic enterocyte proliferation, probably due to local secondary bacterial infections. Inflammatory changes range from a superficial fibrinous reaction to extensive, deep, coagulative necrosis, which is the lesion of necrotic enteritis. In some pigs a substantial granulation tissue reaction may occur, leading to fibrous tissue infiltration and muscular hypertrophy, which is the lesion of regional ileitis.

In most cases of uncomplicated chronic PE, recovery occurs 4–10 weeks after the onset of clinical signs with a return of appetite and growth rate to normal levels. However, although progress to slaughter weight can take place despite extensive lesions (Rowland and Hutchings 1978; Jensen et al. 1999), there will be a reduction in average weight gain, causing a significant extension of the time pigs take to reach market weight, with a consequent feed burden. The increase in feed required per unit weight gain in affected pigs is also a major cost in extra feed requirements. Careful feed and weight measurements during challenge studies have established that average weight gains are reduced 6–20% in affected pigs, and the increase in feed required per unit gain is 6–25%, compared to normal pigs (Gogolewski et al. 1991; McOrist et al. 1996b, 1997). The costs in increased “variation” in a group of pigs destined for breeding programs or a specific market target can be significant. The economic losses due to PE have been estimated from its negative impacts on slaughter weight, feed conversion efficiency, space utilization, breeding problems, and morbidity-mortality effects, totaling at from U.S. $0.50 to over U.S. $1 per affected growing pig, depending on the variable prices for pigs, building spaces and feed (McOrist et al. 1997; Veenhuizen et al. 2002).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Clinical cases of chronic PE are observed most commonly in the postweaned pig between 6 and 20 weeks of age. In many cases of chronic PE in growing pigs, the clinical signs are slight to subclinical, and little more is seen than variation in pig performance with a failure to sustain growth despite normal feed intake. Ileal lesions are a consistent feature of these pigs. In some pigs there may be a degree of anorexia, characterized by curiosity about food but refusal to eat. Thus, affected animals vary from the clinically unremarkable to those showing marked dullness and apathy. Diarrhea, when present, is generally moderate, with loose, sloppy to watery stools of normal grey-green color; this is probably a feature of only a proportion of pigs affected with chronic PE. Blood or mucus are not features of chronic PE diarrhea. When chronic or subclinical PE is suspected in a herd, milder cases can be relatively common but difficult to detect. Therefore, such farms should be inspected for apparent wasting of well-grown animals with anorexia and irregular diarrhea, with variable sizes of growing pigs in a group. Records should be carefully examined to detect changes in average weight gains and feed conversion efficiency in the postweaned group (Roberts et al. 1979; Gogolewski et al. 1991). More severely affected cases are often associated with varying degrees of inflammatory or necrotic change in the affected mucosa, and those that develop necrotic enteritis show severe loss of condition and often scour persistently.

Unlike chronic PE, cases of acute hemorrhagic PE occur more commonly in young adults 4–12 months old, such as breeding gilts, and present a clinical picture of acute hemorrhagic anemia. Black tarry feces are often the first visible clinical sign and these may become loose. However, some animals die without fecal abnormality and show only marked pallor. Probably around half of the animals clinically affected will die, the remainder recovering over some weeks. Pregnant animals that are clinically affected may abort, the majority within 6 days of the onset of clinical signs, with some residual reproductive losses possible (McOrist et al. 1999). Progeny from acutely affected breeding females are not protected from acquiring PE (Guedes et al. 2002a).

In most cases of uncomplicated chronic PE, recovery occurs 4–10 weeks after the onset of clinical signs with a return of appetite and growth rate to normal levels. However, although progress to slaughter weight can take place despite extensive lesions (Rowland and Hutchings 1978; Jensen et al. 1999), there will be a reduction in average weight gain, causing a significant extension of the time pigs take to reach market weight, with a consequent cost burden. The increase in feed required per unit weight gain in affected pigs is also a major cost in extra feed requirements. Careful feed and weight measurements during challenge studies have established that average weight gains are reduced 6–20% in affected pigs, and the increase in feed required per unit gain is 6–25%, compared to normal pigs (Gogolewski et al. 1991; McOrist et al. 1996b, 1997). The costs in increased “variation” in a group of pigs destined for breeding programs or a specific market target can be significant. The economic losses due to PE have been estimated from its negative impacts on slaughter weight, feed conversion efficiency, space utilization, breeding problems, and morbidity-mortality effects, totaling at from U.S. $0.50 to over U.S. $1 per affected growing pig, depending on the variable prices for pigs, building spaces and feed (McOrist et al. 1997; Veenhuizen et al. 2002).

**LESIONS**

**Chronic PE**

Chronic PE in growing pigs occurs most commonly in the terminal 50 cm of the small intestine and the upper
third of the proximal colon. In severe cases, the lesions will extend to the jejunum, cecum, and lower large intestine. The magnitude of the proliferation varies widely, but in the developed lesions the wall is visibly thickened and the overall diameter increased. In minor lesions, the area of the terminal ileum that is 10 cm proximal from the ileocecal valve should be carefully examined as the most likely site of infection. Care is needed to distinguish minor lesions from contracted mucosa over the Peyer’s patches. Some subserosal and mesenteric edema is common, and the normal corrugated pattern of the serosal surface is emphasized. The mucosal surface is moist but not mucoid, sometimes with flecks of inflammatory exudate loosely adherent. The affected mucosa itself is thrown into deep folds, longitudinal or transverse (Figure 44.1); similar changes in the large intestine may result in apparent plaque or polyp formation.

Histologically, the mucosa is composed of enlarged, branching crypts lined with immature epithelial cells. Compared to normal crypts, which are 1 cell layer thick, affected crypts are often 5, 10, or more cells thick (Figure 44.2). Numerous mitotic figures occurring throughout the crypt are evident. Other nuclei of affected cells may appear as enlarged vesicular structures or densely staining elongated spindles. Goblet cells are absent, and their reappearance in deep glands is an indication of impending resolution. In uncomplicated disease, the lamina propria is normal.

Silver staining, specific immunostaining or electron microscopy of affected intestinal sections reveals intracellular L. intracellularis, often in considerable numbers, lying in the apical cytoplasm of the affected epithelial cells (Figure 44.3). In recovering lesions, the organisms become aggregated and may be extruded in degenerate cells into the lumen or be consumed by activated macrophages in the lamina propria. Many cases show little evidence of inflammatory reaction. The recovering lesions are notable for the resumption of development of a population of mature epithelium, with goblet cells in the deep crypts, and a rapid disappearance of the adenomatous cells from the surface (McOrist et al. 1996a).

Necrotic Enteritis
This is evident as coagulative necrosis with marked inflammatory exudation superimposed on an established lesion of PE. Yellow-gray cheesy masses that adhere tightly to the jejunal-ileal mucosa are present and may closely follow the original thickened mucosal architecture for some distance. Histologically, the coagulative necrosis is clearly defined, with fibrin deposits and degenerative inflammatory cells. Diagnosis is confirmed
Regional Ileitis
This is recognized as a smoothly contracted, almost rigid length of lower small intestine; hence the traditional name “hose pipe gut” (Figure 44.4). The mucosa may contain ulceration, with granulation tissue and islands of surviving mucosa adjacent. The most striking feature is hypertrophy of the outer muscle coats. Regional ileitis lesions are now considered relatively rare.

Acute Hemorrhagic PE
Hemorrhagic PE generally affects the terminal ileum and colon. The affected intestine is thickened, dilated, and somewhat turgid with serosal edema. The lumen of the ileum and colon usually contains one or more formed blood clots, often with no other bloody fluids or feed contents evident. The rectum may contain black, tarry feces of mixed blood and digesta (Figure 44.5). The mucosal surface of the affected portion of intestine shows little gross damage except for the marked hyperplastic thickening. Bleeding points, ulcers, or erosions are not observed. Histological examination demonstrates extensive degeneration, congestion, and hemorrhage within the proliferative epithelium. There is marked accumulation of bloody cellular debris containing numerous *L. intracellularis* organisms above the af-
fected mucosa and in the lumina of affected intestinal crypts (Figure 44.6).

**DIAGNOSIS**

Because of the difficulty of culturing *L. intracellularis*, it has been necessary to develop alternative methods for its detection. Confirmation of a clinical diagnosis of PE may be obtained by demonstration of *L. intracellularis* in feces, either by a PCR assay using *L. intracellularis*-specific primers (Jones et al. 1993) or by using specific hyperimmune rabbit polyclonal antibody or, preferably, a specific anti-*L. intracellularis* monoclonal antibody (McOrist et al. 1987; Guedes and Gebhart 2003c) incorporated into immunoassay techniques. Pigs with active lesions are usually found to be excreting the agent over several weeks (Knittel et al. 1998; Kim et al. 1998; Guedes et al. 2002c). However, fecal analysis is unlikely to prove sufficiently sensitive for the diagnosis of all infections. The PCR assay can detect $10^2$–$10^5$ organisms per gram of feces, depending on the DNA extraction method and type of assay used (nested or direct). Animals 6–10 weeks old usually have the highest prevalence rates for screening of single-site farms. Older animals are usually sampled only during outbreaks of acute PE. Feces should be stored at 4°C or below for either test.

Methods described for the serologic diagnosis of PE have employed whole bacterial antigen incorporated into an indirect immunofluorescence assay (Lawson et al. 1988; Knittel et al. 1998) or an immunoperoxidase assay (Guedes et al. 2002b). Those assays used bacteria extracted from affected intestines or cultured *L. intracellularis*. Results from serologic assays suggest that the serum antibody response in pigs to *L. intracellularis* is specific and involves IgM and IgG. Although detectable antibody responses relate well to the presence of lesions, exposure to infection may not induce significant seroconversion in all cases. Although blood collection is considerably more time-consuming than feces collection, the serotests are probably cheaper to perform and more amenable to high throughputs.

At necropsy, the use of modified Ziehl-Neelsen stain or the Giminez stain on mucosal smears to demonstrate the intracellular organisms is a simple presumptive technique, requiring minimal time and equipment (Love et al. 1977). Histopathological examination of affected tissues will reveal the distinctive morphology of the proliferative lesions. Specific identification of *L. intracellularis* in these lesions can be achieved by immunohistochemical staining of fixed embedded tissues (Lawson et al. 1985; McOrist et al. 1987; Guedes et al. 2002c). In the absence of specific immunological reagents, silver-staining techniques will clearly show the presence of intracellular bacteria (Figure 44.7). Modifications of the Warthin-
Starry silver impregnation technique (Young 1969) are satisfactory for routine use. The affected crypts need to be examined carefully at high magnifications due to the small size of L. intracellularis. Where electron microscopic facilities are available, the presence of the intracellular organism can be confirmed. Cultivation of the obligate intracellular L. intracellularis in the laboratory requires establishment of a suitable cell line, such as IEC-18 rat enterocytes or IPEC-J2 pig enterocytes and the addition of purified L. intracellularis from pig intestines in the presence of antibiotics to retard the growth of other bacteria (Lawson et al. 1993; McOrist et al. 1995b). Maintenance and passage of the organism in co-culture require suitable microaerobic atmospheres and cell lysis conditions, respectively (Lawson et al. 1993). Most cells in a monolayer are typically infected with around 50 cytoplasmic bacteria (Figure 44.8), causing no apparent cytopathic effect.

**TREATMENT AND PREVENTION**

In vitro evaluations via a cell culture approach of the minimum inhibitory concentration of 20 antimicrobial agents and the minimum bactericidal concentration of 10 of these suggested a rather broad range of antibiotic groups with potential activity against L. intracellularis (McOrist et al. 1995c; McOrist and Gebhart 1995). However, challenge exposure and controlled field evaluations of treatment and prevention measures in commercial pigs have indicated that macrolides, lincomamides, and pleuromutilins are the most effective antibiotics, when given at an adequate dosage rate per kg of bodyweight (McOrist et al. 1996b, 1997; Walter et al. 2001; Schwartz et al. 1999; Winkelman et al. 2002). In the U.S., some quinoxalines are also available and effective. Acquired resistance to these active drug groups has not been proven in L. intracellularis (McOrist 2000). Apparent medication failures with these drugs are most likely to occur in pigs with ileitis that are underdosed on a bodyweight basis, such as breeding pigs with a low feed intake, or when pigs are medicated before or after actual peaks of infection. Antimicrobial drugs now known to be inherently ineffective against L. intracellularis in clinical cases of PE include the penicillins, bacitracin, aminoglycosides such as neomycin, virginiamycin, and the ionophores. Nonantibiotic therapies such as copper or zinc compounds or feed acidifiers have also shown no evidence of efficacy.

Various approaches to medication are possible, depending on the age and type of pigs involved. Treatment of acute PE in breeding herds requires a vigorous approach. Treatment needs to include both the clinically affected and the in-contact animals (which may be the whole herd). The preferred treatment would be tiamulin (120 ppm) or tylosin (100 ppm) for 14 days, delivered orally via a water-soluble formulation or an in-feed premix or by intramuscular injection of an equivalent dose to affected and in-contact pigs.

Severe chronic clinical disease manifested as wasting pigs with or without necrotic enteritis will often appear to be moderated by the use of tylosin, lincomycin, or tia-
mulin (or carboxad where available). If sufficient numbers of clinical cases are occurring in growing pigs, the removal of affected animals to separate accommodation, with supportive therapy, may limit losses. Controlled field trials now suggest that incorporation of in-feed or water-soluble antibiotics for control achieves best results if given just prior to the peak period of *L. intracellularis* infection; on many single-site farms this is around 8–11 weeks of age (McOrist et al. 1999, 2000). Medication of older pigs, such as breeding stock, is not likely to eliminate the infection from their progeny or from other groups. Because infection and PE disease can vary in the time of onset on different farms and between batches on the same farm, in-feed antibiotics for treatment might be added too late to stop damaging clinical signs and poor performance (Hammer 2004). Alternatively, if they are added too early, groups of “clean” pigs are not getting the chance to develop active immunity to the disease and may remain naïve and susceptible to later severe acute PE cases.

Despite the short time since the elucidation of the cause of PE, its endemic nature, major economic impact, and variable time of onset persuasively indicate that a vaccine approach is the most logical for long-lasting control. Oral administration of a single low titer dose (10^{4.9} TCID_{50}/dose) of an attenuated live vaccine (Enterisol Ileitis, Boehringer Ingelheim) to young pigs provided significant levels of protective immunity against subsequent challenge with virulent heterologous *L. intracellularis* (Kroll et al. 2004). This was confirmed by a significant reduction (p <0.05) in the primary parameter of gross and microscopic lesions in the ileum of vaccinates. This protection was independent of the route of oral administration chosen (individual oral drench or drinking water delivery to a group). Significantly improved weight gains and reduced fecal shedding of *L. intracellularis* were also noted after vaccine administration, particularly if given via drinking water. This vaccine has rapidly grown to widespread usage where available, with no safety concerns identified. Killed or subunit vaccine types are not available.

Where vaccine is unavailable, animals such as replacement breeding stock that are to be introduced into infected transport situations or into infected premises could be allowed a period of exposure followed by therapeutic levels of antimicrobial agents to impede the occurrence of clinical disease. The preferred treatment would be tiamulin (120 ppm), tylosin (100 ppm) or lincomycin (110 ppm), delivered orally via a stabilized in-feed premix for 14 days. Following the transport or on-farm period of exposure, no more than 2–3 weeks should elapse before the introduction of antibiotics (Love and Love 1977). Such an approach is most suited to the management of acute PE in young adult animals. However, even with this type of program, PE may occur in medicated animals following the end of therapy.

It remains a matter of concern that acute and chronic PE continue to be serious problems in high-health-status, minimal-disease herds, often with early weaning and high-quality commercial breeding lines in place. It cannot be overemphasized that in most conventional herds, the absence of clinical PE, even over a period of years, is no guarantee of freedom from the infection and disease. Apparently clean animals from such herds may be responsible for the introduction of PE into a hitherto uncontaminated environment, often followed by an explosive outbreak of acute hemorrhagic PE and later by a low level of endemic chronic PE.

REFERENCES


Members of the genus *Salmonella* are notorious for their ability to infect a broad range of hosts, which is a major factor in their success as pathogens. Taylor and McCoy (1969) observed that salmonellae have been isolated from virtually all vertebrate hosts from which they have been sought, with the possible exception of fish in unpolluted waters. Although many of the more than 2400 salmonella serotypes have a broad host range and are widely distributed, several serotypes are quite adapted to a single host species, most notably *S. typhi* (humans), *S. dublin* (bovine), and *S. choleraesuis* (swine). Many serotypes are not associated with overt disease and appear to have limited host and geographical range.

*Salmonella* infections of swine are of concern for two major reasons. The first is the clinical disease (salmonellosis) in swine that may result, and the second is that swine can be infected with a broad range of salmonella serotypes that can be a source of infection of pork products.

Salmon and Smith (1886) first associated salmonellae with disease when they described *S. choleraesuis* as the putative cause of classical swine fever (hog cholera). The identification and, in many swine-producing areas, eradication of the viral etiology of classical swine fever, relegated *S. choleraesuis* to an opportunistic pathogen in swine. The dramatic increase in salmonellosis during the 1980s in North America underscored the pathogenic potential of *S. choleraesuis* for swine.

Disease associated with host-adapted *S. choleraesuis* is referable to septicemia, enterocolitis, or bacteremic localization as pneumonia and hepatitis (Baskerville and Dow 1973) or occasionally as meningitis (Reynolds et al. 1967; McErlean 1968), encephalitis (Wilcock and Olander 1977c), and abortion (Schwartz and Daniels 1987). Only a handful of other serotypes are associated with disease in swine, usually as a cause of enterocolitis, the most notable being *S. typhimurium*. Reported rarely, *S. typhisuis* is associated with caseous lymphadenitis (Barnes and Bergeland 1968).

**ETIOLOGY**

The genus *Salmonella* is a morphologically and biochemically homogeneous group of gram-negative, motile, non-spore-forming, facultatively anaerobic bacilli with peritrichous flagella. The reservoir for salmonellae is, typical of the family *Enterobacteriaceae*, the intestinal tract of warm-blooded and cold-blooded animals.

*Salmonella* are hardy and ubiquitous bacteria. They multiply at 7–45°C; survive freezing and desiccation well; and persist for weeks, months, or even years in suitable organic substrates. Salmonellae were reported to survive in meat-meal fertilizer for 8 months (Mittermeyer and Foltz 1969) and in manure oxidation ditches for 47 days (Will et al. 1973). Survival is greatly shortened below pH 5.0 (Henry et al. 1983). Numerous reports of prolonged survival in water have been cited (Williams 1975; Wray and Sojka 1977; Pokorny 1988). The bacteria are readily inactivated by heat and sunlight as well as by common phenolic, chlorine, and iodine-based disinfectants (Rubin and Weinstein 1977). Ability to survive in the environment, as well as prolonged carrier states in innumerable hosts, ensures the widespread distribution of this genus worldwide.

Techniques for isolation of salmonellae vary widely, depending on the nature of the suspect material and sometimes with the specific serotypes sought. In sewage, feed, and polluted water, where salmonella numbers are likely to be low compared to other organisms, well-documented and sometimes elaborate techniques of pre-enrichment, selective enrichment, and selective plating are commonly used (Groves et al. 1971; Edwards and Ewing 1972; Skovgaard et al. 1985; Vassiliadis et al. 1987). It is important to note that some of the enrichment media are detrimental to the growth of certain serotypes of salmonellae. For example, Rappaport-Vassiliadis is commonly used for enrichment of food and environmental samples but is known to restrict the growth of those serotypes that are host-adapted. Occasionally enrichment techniques may be necessary for
the isolation of salmonellae from tissues or feces of carrier animals in which numbers are low, but in clinically affected animals the populations are such that direct plating of internal organs on routine selective and differential enteric media such as brilliant green agar and MacConkey agar are usually adequate (Committee on Salmonella 1969). The isolation of salmonellae is not sufficient for definitive diagnosis of salmonellosis, particularly if elaborate isolation techniques are required, since subclinical infections and environmental contamination are common. Isolation techniques for various types of specimens are detailed in most standard texts on clinical microbiology. Epidemiological investigations of zoonotic outbreaks occasionally demand more sophisticated techniques of phage typing, plasmid characterization, mapping of outer-membrane proteins (OMP), or DNA analysis to trace a specific isolate.

*Salmonella* is the type species for the genus *Salmonella* as described by Salmon, although it is now more commonly isolated as the hydrogen sulfide-producing variant *kunzendorf*. There is considerable disagreement over the nomenclature of the genus *Salmonella* and several proposals for altering it have been made. Convention is to refer to each of the over 2400 distinct serotypes as though it is a species. Serotype identification uses the Kauffmann-White schema, based on antigenic differences in somatic (O), surface or capsular (Vi), phase 1 flagellar, and phase 2 flagellar antigens determined by agglutination serology. Complete serotyping is laborious and is available at only a few reference laboratories. Most laboratories use commercially available antisera to determine the O antigen groups of isolates for rapid and preliminary identification. The serogroup designation will help predict the serotype present or, at least, can be used to rule out those serotypes found in other serogroups (Table 45.1).

In contrast to the large number of serotypes isolated from carcasses and pork products, disease in swine is almost always caused by either the hydrogen sulfide-producing variant of *S. choleraesuis* variety *kunzendorf* or by *S. typhimurium*. The former has been and continues to be the most frequent serotype causing disease in swine (Levine et al. 1945; Lawson and Dow 1966; Morehouse 1972; Wilcock et al. 1976; Mills and Kelly 1986; Schwartz and Daniels 1987; Schwartz 1997a), generally manifested as septicemia.

*S. typhimurium* is the second most frequently isolated serotype from diseased swine, usually associated with enterocolitis. Disease caused by *S. typhimurium* occurs with greater than expected frequency in what could be considered unusually clean herds: university research herds, testing stations, closed specific pathogen free (SPF) herds, or purebred breeding herds (Heard et al. 1965; Gooch and Haddock 1969; Lynn et al. 1972).

### Table 45.1. Serogroups of selected salmonella serotypes and ranking of frequency of isolation from diseased pigs, swine sources, and humans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serogroup</th>
<th>Serotype</th>
<th>Isolations from Diseased Pigs (Schwartz 1997a)</th>
<th>Isolations from Swine Sources (Ferris and Frerichs 1996)</th>
<th>Isolations from Humans (CDC 1996)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>S. paratyphi A</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>S. typhimurium</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. typhimurium var. copenhagen</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. derby</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. agona</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. schwarzengrund</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. hadar</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. saint paul</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. heidelberg</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. choleraesuis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. choleraesuis var. kunzendorf</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. mbandaka</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. typhisuis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. montevideo</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. oranienburg</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. infantis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. thompson</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. newport</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. muenchen</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. dublin</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. typhi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. enteritidis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. pullorum</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. anatum</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. newington</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. senftenberg</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. worthington</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Presumably, this is because of introduction to a previously immunologically naive population, a situation occurring with increasing frequency in modern production units using age-segregated rearing. This organism is also frequently isolated as a sequel to other enteric or debilitating diseases.

Localized epizootics of disease caused by the biochemically atypical \textit{S. typhimurium} have been reported in the American Midwest (Barnes and Bergeland 1968; Andrews 1976) and at least historically in Europe (Barnes and Sorensen 1975). This organism grows poorly in standard selective media for salmonella isolation, but the disease produced by \textit{S. typhimurium} is so characteristic that outbreaks are not likely to remain unnoticed (Barnes and Bergeland 1968).

Other serotypes are occasional causes of disease in swine but are usually transient and associated with predisposing factors, including other intestinal disturbances or disease, circumstances that allow immunologically naive pigs to be exposed to very large doses, or debilitated and immunologically compromised pigs. A variety of serotypes may be isolated from diarrheic piglets in the immediate postweaning period, but most are usually associated with concurrent enteric pathogens, inappropriate diets, poor hygiene and environment, or debilitation. The isolation of uncommon serotypes of salmonellae from diarrheic pigs generally warrants further diagnostic investigation. \textit{Salmonella enteritidis} has been associated with postweaning diarrhea, with lesions more typical of enterotoxigenic diarrheal disease than typical salmonellosis (Reed et al. 1985). Reports of naturally occurring disease, such as those for \textit{S. dublin} (Lawson and Dow 1966; McErlean 1968) and \textit{S. enteritidis} (Reynolds et al. 1967), should support the isolation of the offending serotype with clinical and pathologic evidence of salmonellosis. In the case of both \textit{S. dublin} and \textit{S. enteritidis}, the reports were of meningitis in suckling pigs.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

The reservoir for salmonellae is the intestinal tract of warm- and cold-blooded animals. Salmonellae have mastered virtually all of the attributes necessary to ensure wide distribution, including abundant reservoir hosts, efficient fecal shedding from carrier animals, persistence within the environment, and the effective use of transmission vectors (feed, fomites, vehicles, etc.). Inapparent, long-term carriers that can shed salmonellae in feces continuously or intermittently, often in high numbers, are common in most host species. Shedding of the organism can be exacerbated by a long list of stressors, including commingling of pigs, transportation, concurrent diseases, and food deprivation.

The epidemiology of salmonella infections in swine is two relatively separate problems: salmonella infection of pork carcasses and retail products and infections that cause salmonellosis in swine. Infection of swine by one or more serotypes is common, but primary clinical disease caused by serotypes other than \textit{S. choleraesuis} or \textit{S. typhimurium} is uncommon. It is important to understand that swine can be infected with a variety of serotypes that do not cause disease in swine but do represent a source of infection for pork products.

Extrapolation of epidemiological data from experimental studies where a single serotype with predetermined dose is administered to naive healthy pigs is not likely to represent field situations, where there are multiple serotypes, varying doses, intermittent exposures, variable host resistance, many management variables, and various intercurrent infections and diseases. Similarly, disease prevalence surveys must be carefully scrutinized to be sure that infection is not equated with disease, that multiple isolations are recorded from a single source, and that a source of infection is not inaccurately implicated.

**Salmonellae in Pork**

Data collected from various countries indicate salmonellae to be present in 0–48% of carcasses (Riley 1970; Nottingham et al. 1972; McCaughey et al. 1973; Gustafson et al. 1976; Talca and Lawrence 1980; Morse and Hird 1984; Jayara et al. 1989; Carr et al. 1996) and 0–30% of retail pork products (Gooch and Goo 1971; Surkiewicz et al. 1976; Tacal and Lawrence 1980; Silas et al. 1984; Fukushima et al. 1987; Anon. 1994). The marked variation is probably due, in part, to real variation in contamination and, in part, to differences in methods of survey and methods of meat processing. The high level of infection demonstrated in some of the studies is apparently the result of abattoir cross-contamination in holding pens prior to slaughter. There also may be some mechanical transfer of contamination among carcasses by dehairing machines, scalding tanks, and polishers (Galton et al. 1954; Hansen et al. 1964; Kampelmacher et al. 1965; Williams and Newell 1970; Michaud 1978; Morgan et al. 1987). Although much of the salmonella contamination of pork products occurs within abattoirs, infected pigs leaving the farm are considered the original source of abattoir infections. The stress of transport and feed deprivation increases shedding from inapparent carriers, which then contaminate the environment of the truck and abattoir (Williams and Newell 1970). The prevalence of infection within the group continues to increase with increasing length of stay in the pens prior to slaughter, rising by about 50% for each 24-hour period (Craven and Hurst 1982; Morgan et al. 1987). It should be noted that \textit{S. choleraesuis} is rarely associated with contamination of carcasses and pork products, although this may be an artifact of the isolation methods used. Although unusual as a cause of human disease, \textit{S. choleraesuis} is particularly severe when it does occur (Cherubin 1980).

There is currently an explosion of investigational
activity related to issues of food safety, including salmonella contamination of a variety of foods. Salmonellosis is considered to be one of the most common food-borne illnesses in humans. There has been an increased public awareness of microbiological hazards of food and improved monitoring. Although salmonella contamination of poultry and beef products exceeds that of pork, salmonella control programs in swine will continue to be a primary focus of food safety initiatives. Salmonella reduction programs are becoming commonplace, with long-range goals to include the production and marketing of salmonellae-free pork products. Numerous, dynamic programs are in place utilizing hazard analysis and critical control point (HACCP) principles. Those programs that have been in place for a sufficient period of time, such as the Danish program, have significantly reduced the rate of salmonella infection in pork products (Nielsen et al. 1995). Fortunately, most of the methods useful for preharvest salmonella reduction in swine populations are related to sound management practices that also improve the overall health of a swine operation. The Danish program using serology to identify salmonella-infected herds and thereby control the introduction of shedding swine into the abattoir has not been as successful as originally hoped.

Salmonellosis in Swine

Most salmonellosis outbreaks occur in intensively reared weaned pigs, and although disease in adults and suckling pigs is infrequent, infection is not (Gooch and Haddock 1969; Wilcock et al. 1976). The low frequency of salmonellosis in suckling pigs presumably results from lactogenic immunity, since neonatal swine are susceptible to oral challenge with salmonellae and develop a disease comparable to that in weaned pigs (Wilcock 1978). Disease occurs worldwide but varies markedly in estimated prevalence, morbidity, and mortality. This may be from incautious extrapolation of data gathered from microbiological surveys applied to actual disease incidence. In one correlative study in Indiana in 1974–1975, salmonellosis accounted for 19% of 327 consecutive porcine necropsies (Wilcock et al. 1976). In contrast, Hooper and Troutt (1971) reported that salmonella infection was considered the major disease process in only 2% of samples submitted in Missouri between 1967 and 1969. During a 4-year period in Ireland, salmonellosis was the diagnosis in 4.4% of 2180 swine necropsies (Lawson and Dow 1966). In Taiwan, salmonellae were isolated from about 10% of scouring pigs and 48% of fatal diarrheas or septicemias in weaned pigs (Hsu et al. 1983). A survey of diagnostic submissions to the Iowa State University Veterinary Diagnostic Laboratory from 1994 through 1996 revealed salmonellae to be present in 11% of 9109 porcine pneumonia cases, 9% of 3320 enteric cases, and 58% of 1612 cases of porcine bacterial septicemia (Schwartz 1997a).

Host-adapted _S. choleraesuis_, isolated almost exclusively from diseased swine, is the most common cause of salmonellosis in swine, and is usually manifested as septicemia. Midwestern U.S. diagnostic laboratories and veterinarians reported an increasing frequency of salmonellosis due to _S. choleraesuis_ from 1981 to 1990 and a decreasing frequency from 1991 to 1997 (Schwartz 1997b). The recent decrease in the Midwest is likely due to improvements in swine management and husbandry and the advent of efficacious attenuated live vaccines. Regional variation in salmonellosis incidence is loosely correlated to pig density, husbandry practices, and, in particular, commingling of pigs of different ages and/or origins.

_S. typhimurium_ accounts for most of the remaining cases of salmonellosis in swine. This serotype has worldwide distribution and is not host-specific. Enterocolitis is the primary disease referable to this serotype, most commonly seen in pigs with concurrent debilitating illnesses, in conditions of poor hygiene that allow exposure to high doses of the organism, or where immunologically naive pigs are exposed to sufficiently large doses. The latter situation appears to be more frequently encountered with modern production systems utilizing age-segregated production.

The attribution of primary pathogenic status to other serotypes should be made with caution. Most other serotypes are transient, sporadic causes of disease and often cannot be associated with disease experimentally without unique, qualifying criteria. _S. heidelberg_ has been associated with catarrhal enterocolitis in young pigs, with enterotoxigenic properties leading to accumulations of large amounts of fluid in the small intestine and colon as a rather unusual presentation of salmonellosis (Reed et al. 1985).

Sources of Infection

The number of potential sources of salmonella infection for a population of swine is seemingly endless. A task force study in the United States did not reach a consensus as to the most important source of salmonellae for pigs (Bixler 1978), in large part due to the diversity and the biology of the genus _Salmonella_. In general, the source of salmonellae virulent for swine is most likely to be other swine or environments contaminated by swine. _S. choleraesuis_ is the most frequent porcine isolate from clinically ill pigs, but it is a very infrequent isolate from pig feeds or nonporcine salmonella reservoirs. The conclusion seems clear that infected, shedding pigs and contaminated environments are the major sources of new infections of _S. choleraesuis_. Vertical (dam to offspring) and horizontal transmission both occur. Feed contamination and nonporcine species have not been implicated as a source of _S. choleraesuis_ infection of swine.

The source of infection for other serotypes is less clear, since the host and vector range for salmonellae is broad and they have amazing capability to persist in en-
environments outside the host. For serotypes other than S. choleræaus, pigs should be thought of as biological filters for the low numbers of various salmonella serotypes present in feed, water, or litter contaminated by birds, rodents, or other animals. There may be exceptions to this; for example, S. derby seems to be very common in some abattoir surveys of swine. Evidence linking sources of contamination to primary clinical outbreaks, without other concurrent diseases or predisposing conditions, is generally lacking. Feed containing ingredients of animal origin is widely accepted as a source of salmonella infection to herds, but it should be emphasized that ingredients of vegetable origin can also be a source of salmonellae-contaminated feed. Water is not as likely a source of infection unless surface water is used for consumption or pigs have access to recycled lagoon water. Birds, insects, rodents, and pets can all act as carriers, as can bedding and litter (Alfred et al. 1967; Williams et al. 1969; Nape and Murphy 1971). In a survey in the United States, salmonellae were isolated from feed or feed ingredients from 14 of 30 farms and 36 of 1228 samples (Harris et al. 1997). The isolation of salmonellae from feed was significantly associated with the lack of bird-proofing, with on-farm feed preparation, and with the housing of pigs in facilities other than total confinement, for all stages of production. Interestingly, salmonella isolation from complete feeds was more frequent from pelleted feeds than from ground feed. No S. typhimurium was isolated from feed samples in this study.

Transmission, Shedding, and Carrier State

Because of the dynamic relationship between salmonellae, host, and environment, and because infection does not equate with disease, definitive statements regarding transmission, shedding, and carrier states are apt to be misinterpreted, if not erroneous. Salmonella transmission and shedding within differing populations of animals in an endless variety of environmental, feeding, and management situations result in countless unique situations that cannot be experimentally reproduced. In general, fecal-oral transmission is the most likely mode of transmission of virulent salmonellae. Salmonella can be recovered from the intestinal tract of pigs within several minutes of oral exposure. Transmission can occur from pig to pig, contaminated environment to pig, or dam to offspring. Oral-pharyngeal secretions may contain salmonellae, largely due to the fact that tonsils become rapidly contaminated with salmonellae following oral transmission. This may allow nose-to-nose transmission. Aerolized secretions, feces, or contaminated dust particles make the potential for aerosol transmission for short distances quite real.

Salmonella infection of swine herds is much more common than disease. Longitudinal Dutch studies suggest that about 25% of herds are never infected, 24% are constantly infected, and 50% are infected most of the time. There appear to be infection cycles, with the endemic salmonellae having an ecological advantage over newly introduced salmonella serotypes. Infection occurs in the first weeks after arrival or commingling and reaches a maximum of 80–100% prevalence within another 2–3 weeks. About 5–30% of the pigs are still excreting salmonellae at the end of the finishing period. In 1995, the National Animal Health Monitoring Service (NAHMS) reported 30–60% of U.S. herds infected with at least one serotype of Salmonella, with the greatest percentage of positive herds found in the southeastern United States and in herds marketing greater than 10,000 head annually.

During acute disease, pigs will shed up to 10⁶ S. choleræaus/g feces (Smith and Jones 1967) or 10⁷ S. typhimurium (Gutzmann et al. 1976). The minimum disease-producing dose of either serotype has not been established in field situations, but disease is difficult to reproduce experimentally at low doses. There is one report of moderate disease following oral inoculation of 10⁸ cells (Dawe and Troutt 1976), but most authors report successful experimental disease production with doses of 10⁸–10¹¹ cells unless pigs are artificially stressed by injection of dexamethasone or in some other manner. Pigs infected with 10³ organisms remained clinically normal but uninoculated pigs in the same pen did become clinically ill (Gray et al. 1996). It is likely that dose (and perhaps virulence) is magnified when pigs are infected and sequential (pig-to-pig) transmission occurs in field situations, so that the initial infective dose in the field is considerably less than that required in experimental situations. High animal density, stress of transport, and intercurrent nutritional or infectious disease are assumed to increase the shedding by carriers as well as the susceptibility of exposed pigs (Committee on Salmonella 1969). Pigs with nondetectable shedding of salmonellae can begin shedding within hours of an applied stress. The transmission demonstrated between feeder pigs also occurs between pigs during market transport and lairage at abattoirs, with infection rates proportional to time spent in transport and lairage (Hurd et al. 2001a; Hurd et al. 2001b). It is likely that catecholamines are released in association with stress, resulting in decreased gastric acid production and increased intestinal motility. Increases in stomach pH increase the likelihood that salmonellae will survive passage through the stomach and will access and replicate in the intestine and colon.

Outbreaks of salmonellosis are usually characterized by spread from pen to pen. Situations of spread from pen to distant pen are likely because of vectors or caretaker transmission. When all animals sicken simultaneously, a common source such as feed, bedding, water, or a contaminated environment should be suspected. Salmonella infections tend to be more prevalent in continuous-flow systems than in barns managed by principles of all-in/all-out. Prevalence is also higher in
barns with open flush-gutters than in those with slotted floors, with the highest rates of infection observed in outdoor finishing systems (Davies et al. 1997).

Numerous studies in a variety of host species with a potpourri of serotypes have demonstrated prolonged carrier states following infection. The pattern of shedding and the duration of the carrier state after clinically apparent disease have been studied only in group-housed pigs with no barrier to repeated reinfection (Wilcock and Olander 1978; Wood et al. 1989). After experimental infection, S. typhimurium was isolated from feces daily during the first 10 days post infection and frequently during the next 4–5 months. When slaughtered 4–7 months after initial infection, over 90% of pigs were positive for S. typhimurium in the mesenteric lymph node, tonsil, cecum, or feces (Wilcock and Olander 1978; Wood et al. 1989; Wood and Rose 1992; Fedorka-Cray et al. 1994). S. newport has been shown to persist in mesenteric lymph nodes for 28 weeks. Infection of individual animals may be relatively short-lived (less than 8 weeks), but organisms may circulate within a population and between pigs and the environment for extended periods of time.

S. choleraesuis given by either the intranasal or the intragastric route has been demonstrated to persist within ileocolic junction, lymph nodes, tonsils, lungs, and colon for at least 12 weeks (Gray et al. 1995). Infection with low doses of S. choleraesuis produced a shorter period of infection than infection with moderate or high doses. S. choleraesuis has been shown to persist for at least 3 months in wet feces and 6 months in desiccated feces.

The influence of antibiotics on the frequency and duration of shedding of salmonellae in pigs has received little attention. In human enteric salmonellosis, the use of antibiotics has long been recognized to prolong the carrier state (Dixon 1965; Aserkoff and Bennett 1969). In pigs with enterocolitis, antibiotics do not reduce the duration or the magnitude of fecal shedding, but neither are they reported to prolong or intensify shedding (Finlayson and Barnum 1973; DeGeeter et al. 1976; Gutzmann et al. 1976; Wilcock and Olander 1978; Jones et al. 1983; Jacks et al. 1988). In contrast, vigorous antibacterial therapy early in the course of septicemia caused by S. choleraesuis may significantly reduce the magnitude and duration of fecal shedding (Jacks et al. 1981).

**PATHOGENESIS**

The clinical and pathological features of salmonella infections are extremely variable. Severity is influenced by serotype, virulence, natural and acquired host resistance, and route and quantity of the infective dose. Over 200 virulence factors have been associated with salmonellae but few have been completely characterized. Generally, those that promote virulence in pathogenic salmonellae are involved in adhesion, invasion, cytotoxicity, and resistance to intracellular killing, often working in combination to promote disease. Despite distinct differences in clinical signs, many parallels can be drawn between S. choleraesuis and S. typhimurium when discussing pathogenesis.

Although large doses (greater than 10⁷) are required to induce disease experimentally, intraluminal replication may be important with small inocula. Disease is facilitated by factors such as peristaltic impairment, interference with intestinal flora, and elevation of gastric pH (Clarke and Gyles 1993). Replication to about 10⁷ organisms/g of intestinal content is required for lesion production in pigs infected with S. typhimurium, a finding that probably also applies to other serotypes causing enterocolitis. Alterations in normal intestinal defenses by antibiotic-induced changes in normal flora or cold-induced alteration in intestinal motility may reduce the amount of replication required for disease or increase the ease of salmonella replication (Bohnhoff et al. 1954). Infection with S. choleraesuis may not require such massive luminal proliferation as prerequisite for disease, because it is inherently more invasive than other serotypes, can infect via the pharyngeal tonsil, and regularly causes signs of septicemia 24–72 hours before the onset of diarrhea (Smith and Jones 1967; Cherubin et al. 1974; Wilcock 1979; Reed et al. 1986).

The ability to invade is a requirement for pathogenesis and is encoded by a serotype-specific plasmid (Helmuth et al. 1985). Removal of this plasmid results in a lack of ability to invade but has no effect on ingestion or killing by murine macrophages, LPS production, or serum resistance (Gulig and Curtiss 1987). During the invasion process there is induction of synthesis of new proteins that probably enhance intracellular survival (Finlay et al. 1989). Peroxidase-antiperoxidase immunoenzymatic labeling and immunogold labeling techniques have demonstrated that S. typhimurium has a low tendency to invade the enteric mucosa and does not have a predilection for any specific intestinal location. While many epithelial cell types (enterocytes, M-cells, goblet cells) in the jejunum and ileum may be invaded, the predominant portal of entry into the submucosa may occur at Peyer’s patches (Meyerholz et al. 2002; Meyerholz et al. 2003; Schauer et al. 2004). S. cholerae suis locates preferentially in the colon on the luminal surface of ileal M cells of Peyer’s patches (Posspichil et al. 1990). Invasion is by endocytosis by M cells of gut-associated lymphoid tissue as well as enterocytes. Attachment of the bacteria to epithelial receptors triggers microfilament-controlled uptake, vacuole formation, vacuole transport through the cell cytoplasm, and entry into the lamina propria via exocytosis through the basement membrane (Takeuchi 1967; Takeuchi and Sprinz 1967). Passage through the epithelium causes mild and transient enterocyte damage. Salmonellae can synthesize over 30 proteins that are selectively induced
during infection of macrophages, making them facultative intracellular bacteria (similar to *Brucella*, *Myco- 
bacterium*, and *Listeria*) that can survive within macrophages and neutrophils in the lamina propria (Roof et 
al. 1992a, b). Spread to mesenteric lymph nodes is rapid, occurring within 2 hours of inoculation of ligated intesti-
tinal loops or 24 hours after oral challenge (Reed et al. 
1985, 1986). Knockout mice (CD18−/−) have been used to 
show that CD18+ phagocytes are important in the dis-
semination of the organism to the spleen and liver 
(Vazquez-Torres et al. 1999). Two leading cell candidates 
for this systemic transport are the macrophages and 
dendritic cells (Vazquez-Torres et al. 2000). Recent in 
vitro work has suggested that dendritic cells are capable 
of producing tight junction proteins to penetrate the ep-
ithelium and sample luminal bacteria including *Salmo-
nella* (Rescigno et al. 2001). Concurrent with bacil-
larry spread is the appearance of an acute, predomi-
nantly macrophagic, inflammatory reaction and promi-
nent microvascular damage with thrombosis within the 
lamina propria and submucosa. Other routes of sys-
temic invasion may be important. When administered 
intranasally to esophagotomized pigs, *S. chole-
raesuis* demonstrated primary colonization of the lung within 
4 hours (Fedorka-Cray et al. 1995; Gray et al. 1995).

Early intestinal inflammation is considered a key fea-
ture of pathogenesis for enteric forms of salmonellosis. 
Neutrophil recruitment and transmigration across the 
epithelium is considered the most significant compo-
nent (McCormick et al. 1995). Caspase-1 can act as a 
proinflammatory agent by cleaving interleukin-1 beta 
and interleukin-18 into active molecules (Fantuzzi and 
Dinarello 1999). SipA has also been shown to contribute 
to the inflammatory response by activation of phospho-
kine C (Lee et al. 2000). Salmonella-induced activation 
of inflammatory mediators such as nuclear factor kappa B 
and phosphokine C results in basolateral se-
cretion of interleukin-8 and apical secretion of 
pathogen-elicted epithelial chemotactant (Eaves-
Pyles et al. 1999; Lee et al. 2000). These molecules act as 
chemokines promoting the transepithelial migration of 
neutrophils into the intestinal lumen (Gewirtz et al. 
1999). In contrast, several studies using rabbits, mon-
keys, calves, or pigs have demonstrated fluid secretion 
independent of mucosal necrosis or inflammation 
(Giannella et al. 1973; Rout et al. 1974; Kinsey et al. 1976; 
Clarke and Gyles 1987). These studies present evidence 
that, at least early in the disease, the diarrhea is the 
result of decreased sodium resorption and increased 
chloride secretion due to cholera-like and shiga-like en-
terotoxins. Secretion stimulated by prostaglandins elab-
orated by endotoxin-stimulated neutrophils may also be 
important (Stephen et al. 1985). Toxic effects of certain 
OMPs, as well as lipid A associated with the LPS, are also 
important mediators of cell damage. Survival within 
phagocytes is an important attribute of virulent salmo-
 nellae, the mechanism of which is not clear. Sal-

monellae which possess smooth LPS, O side chains, and 
a complete LPS core are more resistant to phagocyte 
killing.

Mucosal inflammation and necrosis, as well as sep-
ticemia, occur in concert with the diarrhea but perhaps 
independently of it. Microvascular thrombosis and en-
dothehial necrosis in the submucosa and lamina propria 
are consistent early lesions in porcine salmonellosis 
(Lawson and Dow 1966; Wilcock et al. 1976; Jubb et al. 
1993; Reed et al. 1986), probably in response to locally 
produced endotoxin. Salmonellae are not directly asso-
ciated with the damaged vessels but direct the events 
from the protected intracellular niche of macrophages 
in the surrounding submucosa or lamina propria 
(Takeuchi and Sprinz 1967). Mucosal ischemia as a result 
of the microvascular thrombosis is probably a major 
contributor to the mucosal necrosis so typical of salmo-
nellosis in all species. The second major contribution to 
mucosal necrosis is probably from the chemical prod-
ucts of mucosal inflammation. The systemic signs and 
lesions of septicemic salmonellosis, in swine almost ex-
clusively *S. choleraesuis* infection, are most commonly 
attributed to endotoxemia from bacterial dissemina-
tion. The complex biology of endotoxin is beyond the 
scope of this chapter, and readers should consult Wolff 
Briefly, endotoxin interacts with plasma and with leuko-
cytes to initiate inflammation and fever. Most of the ef-
ects are mediated by interleukin-1, a lymphokine pro-
duced by macrophages stimulated by the endotoxin 
(Rubin and Weinstein 1977). Endotoxins have either di-
rect effects on tissue or effects via an array of cytokine 
mediators.

**CLINICAL SIGNS, PATHOLOGICAL FINDINGS, 
AND DIAGNOSIS**

The clinical signs of porcine salmonellosis are referable 
to septicemia or to enterocolitis, and this section de-
scribes each syndrome separately. Pigs surviving acute 
septicemia may develop clinical signs due to bacteremic 
localization: pneumonia, hepatitis, enterocolitis, and, 
occasionally, meningoencephalitis. Pigs initially suffer-
ing from enterocolitis may later develop chronic wast-
ing disease or, occasionally, rectal stricture.

The most available salmonella diagnostic method is 
bacterial isolation and identification, which, along with 
compatible lesions, remains the basis for diagnosis. 
Other tests using more sophisticated technology, in-
cluding polymerase chain reaction (PCR), are not re-
quired for routine diagnosis. PCR currently has value as 
a screening tool but has a relatively high cost and cur-
rently lacks sensitivity without preenrichment. Detec-
tion of salmonellae does not constitute diagnosis of sal-
monellosis.

Serology is becoming increasingly available, usually 
in the form of an ELISA test. Most tests use surface anti-

gens such as OMP or LPS. These tests, some of which use mixed antigens containing both OMP and LPS or antigens from several serotypes, thus far appear to lack specificity and sensitivity for individual-animal diagnosis but are useful for herd screening (Baum et al. 1996). A mixed-ELISA test using meat juice at slaughter to detect antibody to a broad range of serotypes has been useful in categorizing the level of salmonella infection in herds in Denmark (Nielsen et al. 1995; Mousing et al. 1997).

**Septicemic Salmonellosis**

This form of disease, usually caused by *S. choleraesuis*, occurs mainly in weaned pigs less than 5 months of age but may be seen occasionally in market swine, suckling piglets, or adult breeding stock either as a septicemia or as a cause of abortion.

**Clinical Signs.** Pigs ill with *S. choleraesuis* are inappetent, lethargic, febrile with temperatures of 105–107°F (40.5–41.6°C) and may have a shallow, moist cough with slight expiratory dyspnea. Icterus may be apparent. The first evidence of disease may be finding pigs reluctant to move, huddled in the corner of a pen, or even dead, with cyanosis of extremities and abdomens. Diarrhea is not usually a feature of septicemic salmonellosis until the third or fourth day of disease, when watery yellow feces may be seen. In most outbreaks, the case fatality rate is high; morbidity is variable but is usually less than 10%. Outbreaks are frequently associated with stressful situations. The duration of the disease in individual pigs, as well as the duration and severity of each epizootic, is unpredictable but will be prolonged without successful intervention. Evaluation of therapeutic regimens in naturally occurring outbreaks is difficult, making response to therapy a poor diagnostic criterion. Disease spread is by ingestion of contaminated feces or nasopharyngeal secretions, with an incubation period ranging from 2 days to at least several weeks. Surviving pigs may remain carriers and fecal shedders for at least 12 weeks.

**Gross Lesions.** Lesions at necropsy include cyanosis of ears, feet, tail, and ventral abdominal skin; congestion progressing to infarction of gastric fundic mucosa; splenomegaly with less severe hepatomegaly; and moist, swollen gastrohepatic and mesenteric lymph nodes. Lungs are firm and resilient, diffusely congested, often with interlobular edema and perhaps hemorrhage; cranoventral bronchopneumonia is not uncommon. Icterus can be severe, although not consistently present (Fig. 45.1). An inconsistent, subtle lesion is miliary, random white foci of necrosis in the liver. In pigs surviving the first few days of disease there may be serous to necrotic enterocolitis. The features of the intestinal lesion are described more fully in the section on salmonella enterocolitis. Petechial hemorrhages, when present, are usually best seen in the renal cortex or on the epicardium.

**Microscopic Lesions.** The most diagnostic lesion of systemic salmonellosis is the presence of paratyphoid nodules in the liver. These are clusters of histiocytes amid foci of acute coagulative hepatocellular necrosis, corresponding to the white foci seen grossly. These lesions are often present (Lawson and Dow 1966) and unique for this disease, although other agents can produce suppurative or necrotic foci in liver. Other lesions typical of salmonellosis include fibrinoid thrombi in

![45.1. Splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, and swollen mesenteric lymph nodes from S. choleraesuis infection.](image-url)
venules of gastric mucosa, in cyanotic skin, in glomerular capillaries, and less regularly in pulmonary vessels. There is hyperplasia of reticular cells of spleen and lymph nodes as well as generalized swelling of endothelial cells and histiocytes typical of gram-negative sepsis. A similar diffuse histiocytic interstitial pneumonia is present in lung. A complete discussion of the pathology of septicemic salmonellosis can be found in Lawson and Dow (1966) and Jubb et al. (1993).

**Diagnosis.** The diagnosis of septicemic salmonellosis cannot be made on the basis of clinical signs alone, which are similar to those of other causes of septicemia in pigs, particularly *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, *Streptococcus suis*, *Actinobacillus suis*, or death due to classical swine fever or *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae*. Gross lesions of splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, lymphadenopathy, interstitial pneumonia, or focal hepatic necrosis are very suggestive of septicemic salmonellosis, but are not seen in every case. In most situations, definitive diagnosis requires the isolation of large numbers of salmonellae from tissues of affected pigs, almost invariably *S. choleraesuis* var. *kunzendorf*. Samples of lung, liver, or spleen often yield pure cultures of the organism on brilliant green, bismuth sulfite, blood agar, or MacConkey agar. Enrichment techniques are seldom required unless the organs have been contaminated by feces or careless handling or have autolysis, in which case tetrathionate broth at 42–43°C is the enrichment medium of choice. Selenite broth is inhibitory for *S. choleraesuis* and should be avoided (Edwards and Ewing 1972). Attempts to isolate salmonellae from animals that have received antimicrobial therapy are often unrewarding. Intestine or feces are not reliable specimens for isolation of the organism in pigs with acute septicemia. Differential diagnosis must include agents associated with the particular systems affected, including those that may cause septicemia, pneumonia, hepatitis, encephalitis, or enterocolitis (Schwartz 1991).

**Salmonella Enterocolitis**

Salmonellosis manifested as enterocolitis is most frequent in pigs from weaning to about 4 months of age. Disease may be acute or chronic and can usually be ascribed to *S. typhimurium* (including variety copenhagen) or, less frequently, to *S. choleraesuis*. Although isolation of other serotypes of salmonellae from pigs with diarrhea occurs with some frequency, implication of serotypes other than *S. choleraesuis*, *S. typhimurium*, and perhaps *S. heidelberg* as primary pathogens should be done with caution.

**Clinical Signs.** The initial clinical sign is watery yellow diarrhea, initially without blood or mucus. The disease may spread rapidly to involve most pigs in a pen within a few days. The initial diarrhea in an individual pig usually lasts 3–7 days, but it typically may recur for second and third bouts, giving the impression of a waxing and waning diarrheal disease of several weeks’ duration. Blood may appear sporadically in the feces but rarely with the profuseness typical of swine dysentery or hemorrhagic porcine proliferative enteropathy (PPE). Affected pigs are febrile, have decreased feed intake, and are dehydrated, paralleling the severity and duration of the diarrhea. Mortality usually is low and occurs only after several days of diarrhea, presumably as the result of hypokalemia and dehydration. Most pigs make complete clinical recovery but a portion may remain as carriers and intermittent shedders for at least 5 months. A few pigs may remain unthrifty and, occasionally, may develop rectal strictures.

**Gross Lesions.** In pigs that have died of diarrhea, the major lesion is focal or diffuse necrotic enteritis, colitis, or typhilitis. The lesion is seen as adherent gray-yellow debris on the red, roughened mucosal surface of an edematous spiral colon, cecum, or ileum (Fig. 45.2). Colon and cecal contents are bile stained and scant, often with

![Image 45.2](https://example.com/salmonella-enterocolitis-45.2)
black or sandlike gritty material. Mesenteric lymph nodes, especially ileocecal nodes, are greatly enlarged and moist. The gross lesion may extend to involve the descending colon and rectum. The necrosis may be seen as sharply delineated button ulcers, particularly in resolving lesions. Necrotic ileitis has historically been attributed to several agents, including Salmonella, but in confirmed cases of salmonellosis, ileal involvement usually is seen as reddening and slight roughening of the mucosa, suggesting mild superficial necrosis. Salmonellae associated with necrotic enteritis may be a sequel to PPE. Lesions of septicemia may be present in those cases involving S. choleraesuis. In cases of S. typhimurium enterocolitis, the liver and spleen are not enlarged except by terminal congestion.

Microscopic Lesions. The typical enteric lesion is necrosis of cryptal and surface enterocytes that varies from focal to diffuse. The lamina propria and submucosa contain numerous macrophages and moderate numbers of lymphocytes; neutrophils are numerous only in the very early lesions. Thrombi containing fibrin, platelets, and leukocytes are numerous (Fig. 45.3). The necrosis frequently extends to involve muscularis mucosa, submucosa, and lymphoid follicles. Balantidium coli is commonly present in necrotic debris of chronic cases. In the ileum, necrosis is usually quite superficial and is often seen as villous atrophy. The Peyer’s patches may be necrotic in acute disease, but in pigs dying of the naturally occurring disease, lymphoid hypertrophy or even regenerative hyperplasia is more common. The liver may contain paratyphoid nodules but not with the consistency or the necrosis usually seen in the septicemic disease. A more complete discussion of the pathology can be found in Wilcock et al. (1976), Reed et al. (1986), and Jubb et al. (1993).

Diagnosis. The differential diagnosis of diarrhea in weaned pigs must include salmonellosis, swine dysentery, and PPE due to Lawsonia intracellularis. Other viral, bacterial, or parasitic diseases capable of causing diarrhea include rotaviral and coronaviral enteritis, post-weaning colibacillosis, trichuriasis, and coccidiosis. Salmonellosis concurrently present with other diseases is not uncommon.

Typical acute swine dysentery is distinguished from salmonellosis on the basis of the mucoid and bloody diarrhea in otherwise alert swine with dysentery, contrasted with depression and profuse yellow diarrhea of salmonellosis. PPE may be seen as acute intestinal hemorrhage or acute to chronic diarrhea with mucosal proliferation or necrosis. Differentiation among the three diseases at necropsy is primarily by recognition of differences in lesion distribution rather than by differences in character. Salmonellosis is usually in colon and occasionally small intestine, may be focal, and always involves marked mesenteric lymphadenopathy. The lesion of swine dysentery is diffuse, shallow, and restricted to large intestine; lymph node enlargement is absent or mild. In PPE ileal involvement usually overshadows the milder colonic lesions, and the mucosa underlying the necrotic membrane is markedly hyperplastic (Table 45.2). Whipworms (Trichuris suis) may also cause diffuse mucohemorrhagic colitis.

The diagnosis of salmonellosis is confirmed by microbiological and histological examination. The wide distribution of environmental salmonellae makes isolation alone unreliable for disease diagnosis, and a positive isolation should always be supported by appropriate lesions before a diagnosis of salmonellosis is made. A pool of ileum and ileocecal lymph node should enable detection of virtually all active or recently recovered cases, although tissues such as tonsil or cecal wall will usually yield positive cultures as well (Wilcock et al. 1976; Wood et al. 1989). From live animals, large (10 g) aliquots of feces or pharyngeal tonsil scrapings are preferable to rectal swabs for isolation, with tetraphionate enrichment the method of choice.
**Other Syndromes**

*Salmonellae* are occasionally involved in disease outbreaks in which the clinical signs may not suggest *Salmonellae* as the etiologic diagnosis. Outbreaks of neurologic disease resembling classical swine fever or pseudorabies have been reported (Wilcock and Olander 1978), and brain lesions sometimes occur with septicemic salmonellosis. The lesion in the brain is necrotic vasculitis and perivascular granulomatous lesions resembling typical paratyphoid nodules (Fig. 45.4). Rectal strictures in growing pigs have been ascribed to defective healing of ulcerative proctitis caused by *S. typhimurium* (Wilcock and Olander 1977a, b). The stricture reportedly represents fibrosis in an area of persistent ischemia, with the rectum predisposed because of a normally precarious blood supply (Fig. 45.5).

Infection with the fastidious, swine-adapted serovar *S. typhisuis* causes a relatively specific chronic syndrome of diarrhea and wasting in which caseous lymphadenitis, histiocytic interstitial pneumonia, or suppurative bronchopneumonia is added to the typical necrotic colitis (Barnes and Bergeland 1968; Andrews 1976; Fenwick and Olander 1987). In some pigs the intestinal lesions may have healed, leaving the lymphoid and pulmonary lesions to be distinguished from tuberculosis and infection with *Arcanobacterium pyogenes* (Barnes and Sorensen 1975).

### Table 45.2. Differential diagnosis of enterocolitis in swine at necropsy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Ileal Lesion</th>
<th>Colonic Lesion</th>
<th>Ileocecal Nodes</th>
<th>Extraintestinal Lesions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Salmonellosis</td>
<td>Mild, usually no pseudo-membrane</td>
<td>Focal to diffuse, deep necrotic lesions</td>
<td>Always enlarged two to five times normal</td>
<td>Variable, gastric infarction, interstitial pneumonitis, miliary hepatic necrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine dysentery</td>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>Superficial and usually diffuse necrosis, blood and/or mucus</td>
<td>Often normal, slight enlargement</td>
<td>None except gastric fundic infarction in natural deaths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine proliferative enteritis</td>
<td>Varies from hemorrhagic to necrotic or proliferative</td>
<td>Milder than in the ileum, usually only the proximal spiral colon</td>
<td>Variable with stage of disease</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

45.4. Histological section showing vasculitis and perivascular granulomatous inflammation in the brain stem from *S. choleraesuis* encephalitis.

45.5. Rectal stricture at necropsy.
TREATMENT

With either septicemic or enteric salmonellosis, the goals of treatment in an outbreak of salmonellosis are to minimize the severity of clinical disease, prevent spread of infection and disease, and prevent recurrence of the disease in the herd. With salmonellosis the attainment of these goals is particularly difficult. Both *S. choleraesuis* and *S. typhimurium* are often resistant in vitro to many antibacterial agents used in swine (Barnes and Sorensen 1975; Wilcock et al. 1976; Blackburn et al. 1984; Schultz 1989; Fales et al. 1990; Schwartz 1997a). During clinical disease, the organism inhabits a protected intracellular niche inaccessible to many common antibacterials. The use of various antibiotics to treat enteric salmonellosis is widely advocated (Morehouse 1972; Barnes and Sorensen 1975; Blood et al. 1979), but much of the information to support this recommendation has been taken from trials designed to test the prophylactic efficacy of drugs, not their therapeutic efficacy. Thus, pigs on medicated feed, when inoculated orally with salmonellae, have the antibiotic already present in the gastrointestinal tract to interact with the salmonellae, resulting in milder disease because of what amounts to a decreased inoculum. In the few trials designed specifically to test antibacterial drug efficacy against clinical enteric salmonellosis, such therapy was considered to have little merit (Heard et al. 1968; Gutzmann et al. 1976; Olson et al. 1977; Wilcock and Olander 1978). Although not therapeutic, oral medications may decrease efficiency of transmission and have a prophylactic effect on pigs not yet affected. Antimicrobials are ordinarily administered at maximum permissible levels in feed or, preferably, water. Ideally, the choice of antibacterial agent should be based on in vitro susceptibility testing of isolates from each outbreak. Since medication often must be initiated before such results are available, choices must be based on previous experience and results of controlled trials.

In contrast, vigorous therapy early in the course of septicemia caused by *S. choleraesuis* has been reported to significantly reduce the duration and severity of disease (Jacks et al. 1981). In that report, therapy was initiated after inoculation but prior to the onset of clinical signs. Evaluation of efficacy under field conditions is difficult because of the unpredictability of the disease and because husbandry changes often accompany the use of antibacterials in an outbreak. Reports and practitioner communications from the American Midwest, however, suggest that visibly affected animals respond to aggressive therapy with parenteral antimicrobials (Schwartz 1991). Mass medication of the population at risk to decrease severity of disease and transmission of salmonellae is also widely practiced. The choice of an appropriate antimicrobial is aided by antibiograms and previous herd experience. In the absence of either, amikacin, gentamicin, neomycin, apramycin, ceftriax, and trimethoprim-sulfonamide are effective in vitro against most isolates (Barnes and Sorensen 1975; Wilcock et al. 1976; Mills and Kelly 1986; Schultz 1989; Evelsizer 1990; Fales et al. 1990, Schwartz 1997b). Antiinflammatory agents are sometimes administered to critically ill animals to combat the effects of endotoxin (Schwartz and Daniels 1987; Schultz 1989; Evelsizer 1990).

Most salmonella antimicrobial resistance is plasmid-mediated. Of concern is the recent emergence of an *S. typhimurium* definitive type 104 (DT 104), isolated primarily from bovine and human populations, that has chromosomally integrated multiple antimicrobial resistance (Low et al. 1997). This isolate has a higher morbidity and mortality in humans than other *S. typhimurium* organisms and is increasing in prevalence in human and bovine populations. Carrier swine are generally asymptomatic. Although evidence linking emergence of such isolates to veterinary medical practices is generally lacking, the impact will affect public health initiatives as well as the availability of therapeutic agents for food-producing animals. It should be emphasized that salmonella control programs that rely strictly on antimicrobials are doomed to failure.

In addition to antimicrobial therapy, the successful treatment of salmonellosis relies heavily on routine husbandry procedures recommended for control of infectious diseases. The diarrheic pig contaminates its environment and is the single most important source of infection for other pigs. Removal and isolation of sick animals, minimizing exposure to infective material by scrupulous pen sanitation, frequent cleaning of water bowls, and restriction of animal or staff movement from potentially contaminated to clean areas are necessary. Efforts to modify management and environment to decrease crowding and stress and increase pig comfort are essential adjuncts to specific therapy.

PREVENTION

Prevention of infection of swine with salmonellae is not currently possible. Infection does not necessarily result in disease, and pigs may not sicken with disease until severely stressed long after initial exposure. The control of disease expression rests on efforts to minimize the exposure dose and to maximize pig resistance. The carrier pig and contaminated feed or environment are the most significant sources of infection to pigs, and pigs are most likely to develop disease during periods of stress or when exposed to massive numbers of salmonellae. The commingling and transport of weanling pigs from different sources to finishing farms enhance activation of latent carriers and ensure exposure of stressed pigs to salmonellae (Alldred 1972). The source of host-adapted *S. choleraesuis*, which is rarely, if ever, isolated from feed or feed ingredients, would seem to be limited to carrier pigs and facilities previously contaminated with this serotype. The fact that many outbreaks occur in facilities with...
good sanitation suggests that other stresses probably contribute to occurrence of the disease. Management practices that allow filling of grower and finishing rooms with single-source and single-age pigs are beneficial. Minimizing the variety of stresses often involved in acute outbreaks requires constant attention to details of management and husbandry, including proper animal density; dry, comfortable pens and temperatures; and adequate ventilation. On farms with enzootic disease, modifications to the facility and environment and implementation of management practices that emphasize all-in/all-out production should precede a prophylactic drug program. Antibiotics are probably useful as aids in preventing occurrence of disease when used prophylactically, but their use will not prevent infection and when relied upon for prevention of disease will eventually fail.

Nutritional approaches to prevent or alleviate swine salmonellosis include feeding of propionic or other volatile fatty acids, mannose, lactose, probiotics, and heavy metals. Although all of these practices are based on a sound theoretical basis and are reported to be successful experimentally or in other species, evidence for their efficacy in swine is lacking. Anecdotal reports suggest acidification of rations or water to be of some benefit.

As with other facultative intracellular bacteria, live vaccines that stimulate cell-mediated immunity are the most likely to be protective for salmonellosis in swine. Historically, an attenuated live *S. choleraesuis* vaccine was used widely in the United Kingdom for many years but was withdrawn when *S. choleraesuis* infection decreased in that country to negligible proportions. Recently, the introduction of effective and safe modified live attenuated vaccines for *S. choleraesuis* has had a major impact on the occurrence of systemic salmonellosis in North America. The isolates used in these vaccines are either naturally occurring avirulent *S. choleraesuis* or are derived from repeated passage through porcine neutrophils, the product of which was demonstrated to have been cured of a 50 kb virulence plasmid necessary for intracellular survival (Roof et al. 1992b; Kramer et al. 1987, 1992). When given at weaning, vaccine protected pigs for at least 20 weeks (Roof and Doitchinoff 1995) against homologous serotypes, with some cross-protection suggested with heterologous serotypes.

Partial protection can be obtained with bacterins, primarily because of the nonspecific mitogenic and immunostimulant effect of LPS (Fenwick et al. 1986). Killed vaccines for *S. typhimurium* are safe, but the bulk of the evidence suggests that they have little efficacy in preventing disease following strong challenge because resistance to disease rests primarily on cell-mediated immunity (Collins 1974; Davies and Kotlarski 1976). Extrapolation of information from experience in humans (Hornick et al. 1970; Welliver and Ogra 1978) and calves (Bairey 1978) suggests, however, that use of a potent killed vaccine may increase the dose necessary to cause disease and may offer some protection from septicemic salmonellosis, in which humoral immunity may play a role.

Monitoring herds for salmonellae has not been commonly practiced. The detection of carrier animals is difficult because of the unpredictability of fecal shedding. The detection of salmonellae by bacterial culture of feces and tonsils of diarrheic pigs in the nursery would likely be the most rewarding for identification of infected herds. However, even repeated negative fecal or tonsilar cultures do not guarantee that a herd or individual is not a salmonella carrier and thus a potential shedder. The use of salmonella serology can determine if an animal has had previous exposure to salmonellae, but this has little relevance to the carrier status or to the probability of shedding. Food safety concerns have stimulated renewed interest in serology as a method to determine the salmonella infection status of groups of market swine. This technology offers the possibility of sensitive and specific methods to identify infected herds, but it is not yet useful for determining the infection status of individual pigs.

REFERENCES

Clarke RC, Gyles CL. 1987. Virulence of wild and mutant strains of
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). 1996. Annual


Schwartz KJ. 1997b. Salmonellosis. Proc AASP, Quebec City, Quebec.


—. 1997b. Salmonellosis. Proc AASP, Quebec City, Quebec.


Porcine colonic spirochetosis (PCS), also known as porcine intestinal spirochetosis, is a spirochete-associated colitis that occurs mainly in weaner and grower pigs. The disease results from infection with a weakly hemolytic anaerobic intestinal spirochete that is distinct from Brachyspira hyodysenteriae, the agent of swine dysentery (Taylor et al. 1980; Zuerner et al. 2004). The spirochete causing PCS is now named Brachyspira pilosicoli (Ochiai et al. 1997), although it has also been referred to as “Anguillina coli” (Lee et al. 1993), “Serpulina coli” (Duhamel et al. 1993), a group IV weakly hemolytic intestinal spirochete (Fellström and Gunnarsson 1995) and, most recently, Serpulina pilosicoli (Trott et al. 1996a).

Infection with B. pilosicoli usually causes a mild to moderate typhlocolitis accompanied with either watery diarrhea or stools with the consistency of "wet cement," sometimes containing mucus. Based on the severity and extent of the colonic damage, affected pigs display variable loss of condition and reduced growth rate. Individual infected pigs may show increased time to reach market weight, thus disrupting efficient production flow through commercial units (Duhamel 1998).

A common histologic feature in the early phase of PCS is the presence of focal areas of inflammation in the cecum, colon, and/or rectum, where large numbers of spirochetes may be found attached by one cell end to the apical surface of the epithelium, forming a “false brush border” (Taylor et al. 1980; Girard et al. 1995) (Figure 46.1). This characteristic attachment of B. pilosicoli also is found in natural disease in other hosts, including humans (Trivett-Moore et al. 1998), nonhuman primates (Duhamel et al. 1997; Duhamel et al. 2003), dogs (Duhamel et al. 1996), domestic chickens (Trampel et al. 1994; McLaren et al. 1997; Stephens and Hampson 2001), and various species of wild birds (Webb et al. 1997; Jansson et al. 2001). Because isolation of B. pilosicoli from feces does not always correlate with the presence of diarrhea or end-on epithelial attachment of the spirochetes, the significance of identifying the spirochete needs to be interpreted in the context of a complete diagnostic investigation (Thomson et al. 1998). Experimental challenge studies in susceptible pigs have clearly shown that B. pilosicoli is associated with all of the clinical and pathological changes seen in spontaneous PCS (reviewed by Duhamel 2001).

PCS was first described by Taylor and colleagues (1980), who challenged 7- to 8-week-old susceptible weaned pigs with a weakly beta-hemolytic intestinal spirochete (strain P43/6/78T). The pigs developed a mucoid diarrhea containing flecks of blood, and lesions of colitis. This spirochete initially was thought to be a strain of the nonpathogenic weakly beta-hemolytic intestinal spirochete Brachyspira innocens, but it is now recognized as the type strain of the species B. pilosicoli. PCS with or without end-on attachment of spirochetes to the colonic mucosa has since been experimentally reproduced in pigs in several independent investigations, using other strains of B. pilosicoli besides P43/6/78T (e.g., Trott et al. 1996b; Thomson et al. 1997; Duhamel 1998; Jensen et al. 2000; Jensen et al. 2004a). PCS is increasingly recognized as an important cause of colitis worldwide. Reasons for this include the increased availability of improved diagnostic methods for differentiation of B. pilosicoli from other intestinal spirochetes, the withdrawal of routine antimicrobial growth promoters that might otherwise have been suppressing the growth of B. pilosicoli, and the fact that other major intestinal diseases such as salmonellosis and swine dysentery are now better controlled in many countries (Duhamel 1996). It is likely that at least some of the cases of “nonspecific colitis” reported in the United Kingdom may have been caused by B. pilosicoli, although a noninfectious, diet-responsive colitis also appears to exist (Wood 1991). PCS has been reported in most major pig-producing countries, including Australia (Hampson 1990; Lee et al. 1993), Belgium (Castryck et al. 1997; Hommez et al. 1998a), Brazil (Barcellos et al. 2000a), Canada (Jacques et al. 1989; Girard et al. 1995), Denmark (Møller et al. 1998), Finland (Heinonen et al. 2000), France (Pronost et al. 1999), Germany (Verspohl et al. 2001), Korea (Choi
et al. 2002), Spain (de Arriba et al. 2002), Sweden (Fellström et al. 1996), the United Kingdom (Taylor et al. 1980; Thomson et al. 1998; Thomson et al. 2001), and the United States (Ramanathan et al. 1993; Duhamel et al. 1995a). Much of the research concerning PCS has been undertaken in the last decade, and many important aspects of the disease are still poorly understood, including detailed epidemiology, virulence determinants of the spirochete, and pathogenesis of infection—including the role of host immune and inflammatory responses. The overall economic impact of PCS also has not been critically evaluated.

ETIOLOGY

*Brachyspira pilosicoli* is the etiologic agent of PCS (by definition), but, in the field, mixed infections with other enteric pathogens frequently occur. *B. pilosicoli* has a characteristic spirochete morphology and a general appearance similar to other species in the genus *Brachyspira* (formerly *Serpulina*). It is 6–10 µm long, 0.25–0.30 µm wide, and characteristically has 4–7 periplasmic flagella attached at each cell end, and pointed ends (Figure 46.2). The spirochete has a pronounced corkscrew like motility that helps it penetrate and move through mucus overlying the colonic epithelium. The outer envelope of the spirochete contains a semirough type lipo polysaccharide, and this is serologically heterogeneous among different strains (Lee and Hampson 1999). A number of outer membrane proteins and lipoproteins of *B. pilosicoli*

have been described, but more work is needed to define their potential role in disease, including whether they may be involved in attachment and/or in generating protective immunity (reviewed by Trott et al. 2001).

*Brachyspira pilosicoli* is cultured under the same anaerobic conditions as those described for *B. hyodysenteriae* (see Chapter 48). After 3–5 days incubation on trypticase soy blood agar, *B. pilosicoli* forms a thin spreading surface haze surrounded by a zone of weak beta-hemolysis. For isolation, plates containing colistin (25 µg/ml), vancomycin (25 µg/ml), and spectinomycin (400 µg/ml) are widely used (CVS; Jenkinson and Wingar 1981). The inclusion of rifampicin and spiramycin, sometimes recommended for the isolation of *B. hyodysenteriae*, inhibits the growth of *B. pilosicoli* and thus is not recommended (Duhamel and Joens 1994; Duhamel et al. 1995b; Trott et al. 1996c). Slicing the agar prior to primary inoculation, as reported for *B. hyodysenteriae* (Olson 1996), can improve the recovery of *B. pilosicoli*. However, by contrast with *B. hyodysenteriae*, a zone of enhanced hemolysis, or ring phenomenon, is not usually seen with *B. pilosicoli*. Once isolated, the spirochete grows readily in various liquid media, such as in a prerduced anaerobically sterilized (PRAS) medium based on trypticase soy broth (Kunkle et al. 1986) and in Brain Heart Infusion broth.

In the last decade, the taxonomy of the porcine intestinal spirochetes has undergone considerable revi-
sion (Hampson and Trott 1995; Hampson and Stanton 1997). Currently there are four species of weakly beta-hemolytic anaerobic spirochetes recognized as colonizing pigs, of which only B. pilosicoli is confirmed to be a pathogen. Other porcine intestinal spirochetes of unusual phenotypes and uncertain taxa also have been reported (Thomson et al. 2001). Although B. pilosicoli contains a copy of the hlyA gene that encodes a hemolysin in B. hyodysenteriae (Hsu et al. 2001), it is believed that this is either not expressed in B. pilosicoli or expressed in a form that results in reduced hemolytic activity (Zuerner et al. 2004).

Until recently the four named weakly hemolytic Brachyspira species colonizing pigs belonged to the genus Serpulina, but in 1997 the strongly hemolytic Serpulina hyodysenteriae and weakly hemolytic S. innocens and S. pilosicoli were transferred to the genus Brachyspira (Ochiai et al. 1997; Valiation list 1998). Unfortunately, two weakly beta-hemolytic spirochete species of pigs, Serpulina intermedia and Serpulina murdochii (Stanton et al. 1997), were not officially transferred. Nevertheless, by general agreement among spirochete scientists, they are now “unofficially” referred to as Brachyspira intermedia and Brachyspira murdochii (Hampson 2000). These four species of weakly hemolytic intestinal spirochete have a similar appearance on blood agar and can be differentiated only by biochemical and genetic typing techniques. B. innocens, B. intermedia, and B. murdochii have not been shown to cause disease in experimentally infected conventional pigs and are generally considered to be nonpathogenic commensals in pigs (Lee et al. 1993; Jensen et al. 2000). On the other hand, certain strains of avian B. intermedia are pathogenic in commercial chickens (Hampson and McLaren 1999), and a porcine strain caused cecal damage in experimentally infected 1-day-old chicks (Trott and Hampson 1998). Additionally, B. intermedia can cause lesions when inoculated into isolated porcine colonic loops (Binek and Szymkiewicz 1984) and on occasions has been associated with diarrhea in pigs in the field (Fellström and Gunnarsson 1995). Overall, however, it remains doubtful whether B. intermedia is a cause of enteric disease in pigs. Some strains of B. innocens isolated from pigs with diarrhea have been shown to cause diarrhea and lesions when inoculated into gnotobiotic pigs (Neef et al. 1994), but again whether or not they are capable of causing significant disease under field conditions (for example, under certain specialized circumstances) remains uncertain. The identification of virulence determinants among Brachyspira species should help resolve some of these questions. Currently, the main significance of the commensal weakly hemolytic intestinal spirochetes is that their presence may complicate attempts to diagnose PCS and/or swine dysentery. Recently, a Brachyspira-like spirochete was found associated with lesions of colitis in experimentally infected pigs in Finland. Surprisingly, this spirochete hybridized with a nucleic acid probe against Leptospira but not with a Brachyspira probe (Jensen et al. 2004b). The significance of this finding is not clear, but if such organisms exist and are widespread they also could complicate attempts to diagnose spirochete-associated colitis.

### Epidemiology

The detailed epidemiology of PCS has not been fully determined. Infection is believed to occur by the fecal/oral route, and, as previously shown with swine dysentery, PCS in naive herds may be introduced by carrier pigs. B. pilosicoli can persist in the environment; therefore, the disease can recur between batches of pigs if the premises are not adequately cleaned and disinfected. In fact, B. pilosicoli can survive in spiked feces kept at different temperatures for longer than B. hyodysenteriae (Barcellos et al. 2000b). Oxberry et al. (1998) showed that B. pilosicoli can survive in lake water at 4°C for 66 days, again surviving longer than B. hyodysenteriae. Other studies have shown that B. pilosicoli remains viable for 119 days in soil and 210 days both in soil with 10% pig feces and in pig feces kept at 10°C (Boye et al. 2001). The spirochete is susceptible to many commonly used disinfectants, but the efficacy of some of these products is reduced in the presence of organic matter, such as feces (Corona-Barrera et al. 2004a).

Various studies have demonstrated that B. pilosicoli may be isolated from pigs during any period of the growing stage, but infection is most common and significant in weaner and grower pigs. Lack of availability of serologic assays has hampered progress in determining antibody titers indicative of exposure in live animals. Instead, detection of B. pilosicoli in live animals is usually accomplished by bacteriological culture of feces as described above, followed by identification of suspected bacterial growth using amplification of Brachyspira species-specific nucleotide sequences by the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), as described below.

Using these detection techniques, the prevalence of B. pilosicoli among herds in different geographic regions has been estimated. In a study in Sweden, B. pilosicoli was isolated from 6 of 7 (85.6%) herds with diarrhea, and from only 1 of 8 herds without diarrhea (Fellström et al. 1996). In a survey conducted in the U.K. between 1992 and 1996 that involved 85 pig farms with colitis and diarrhea, B. pilosicoli was identified as the primary etiological agent on 21 (25%) units, and formed part of a mixed infection on another 23 (27%) units (Thomson et al. 1998). In a follow-up investigation conducted between 1997 and 1999 on 98 farms with problems of diarrhea and enterocolitis, B. pilosicoli was the primary etiologic agent in 18 (18.4%) units, and was involved as part of a mixed infection in 24 (24.5%) units—indicating that PCS continues to be a significant problem in the U.K. (Thomson et al. 2001). In Denmark, B. pilosicoli was isolated from 10 of 72 (13.9%) herds with diarrhea and...
from none of 26 herds where diarrhea was not a problem (Møller et al. 1998). In a subsequent study of 79 randomly selected herds, 15 (19.0%) were found to contain grower pigs colonized by \textit{B. pilosicoli}, whereas these having a within-herd prevalence rate of 5–10% (Stege et al. 2000). In a survey conducted in Finland in 1997, \textit{B. pilosicoli} was isolated from 14 of 50 (28%) high health status farms (Heinonen et al. 2000), whereas a survey conducted in 1998 in Brazil revealed \textit{B. pilosicoli} in the feces of growers in 7 of 17 (41.2%) farms where diarrhea was a problem (Barcellos et al. 2000a). A recent study from Sweden revealed that the presence of \textit{B. pilosicoli} and \textit{L. intracellularis} was significantly associated with herds having poor performance in growing pigs (Jacobson et al. 2003). Collectively, these studies indicate that a variable, but often very high, proportion of farms that have persistent diarrhea are also infected with \textit{B. pilosicoli}, whereas farms without diarrhea have very low or no infection. The specific prevalence values obtained in individual surveys must be interpreted with caution, because they can be influenced by several factors, including the concurrent administration of antibiotics, the age of the pigs examined, the methods of collection and handling of specimens, the limitations of culture and identification methods used, and the degree of contamination with other fecal organisms, all of which can affect the ability to detect \textit{B. pilosicoli}.

Relatively few detailed epidemiologic studies have examined the within-herd pattern of \textit{B. pilosicoli} infection. Recently, Oxberry and Hampson (2003) conducted cross-sectional and cohort studies on two Australian farms with PCS. Their study demonstrated that the on-farm epidemiology of \textit{B. pilosicoli} can be highly variable. The prevalence on farm A (>2,000 sows) was 2.4%, with infection largely confined to grower/finisher pigs. All isolates obtained were identical—a situation that resembles swine dysentery, where all infections on a farm usually can be attributed to a single strain of \textit{B. hyodysenteriae}.

On farm B, an 80-sow research farm that received replacement pigs from farm A, the prevalence among growers and finishers was 12.2%, and weaners also were infected. Here, not only was the prevalence higher, but the 10 isolates obtained were genetically heterogeneous, comprising seven different genetic types. The results were consistent with those from a small farm investigated in an earlier study, where nine genotypes of \textit{B. pilosicoli} were identified among 14 isolates obtained from different pigs (Trott et al. 1998). The presence of multiple \textit{B. pilosicoli} genotypes within certain farms might explain why PCS commonly recurs in convalescent animals or in those that have been treated with antimicrobials. In such cases, reinfection may be with a different strain, possibly having different antigenic determinants, antimicrobial susceptibilities, or potential to colonize and cause disease. Porcine strains of \textit{B. pilosicoli} with different pathogenic potentials probably do exist (Thomson et al. 1997; Jensen et al. 2004a).

The extensive genetic diversity of strains from within the species \textit{B. pilosicoli} is well established (Lee and Hampson 1994). Members of the species apparently are capable of undergoing genetic recombination and rearrangements (Trott et al. 1998; Zuerner et al. 2004), perhaps in part associated with the activity of a generalized transducing bacteriophage (Stanton et al. 2003). A recent study of strain diversity among isolates from pig herds in Finland revealed that most farms had their own distinct genotypes of \textit{B. pilosicoli}, whilst it was rare to find the same genotype on different farms (Fossi et al. 2003). Interestingly, the within-farm genotypes appeared fairly stable, because three farms that were re-examined after 3 years still had the same genotypes of \textit{B. pilosicoli} present.

In the study of Oxberry and Hampson (2003), on farm B, \textit{B. pilosicoli} also was detected in chickens, effluent pond water, and wild ducks on the effluent pond. An isolate from the pond belonged to the same genetic type as one from a pig, a finding consistent with a previous observation suggesting that feral waterbirds may contaminate water supplies and so represent a potential source of \textit{B. pilosicoli} infection for pigs (Oxberry et al. 1998). Although it is well established that rodents can be persistent carriers of \textit{B. hyodysenteriae}, they appear less likely to serve as a biologic reservoir of \textit{B. pilosicoli}. To date there appears to be only one report of a natural infection of a feral mouse with \textit{B. pilosicoli} (Fellström et al. 2004). The apparent rarity of this occurrence may relate to the fact that it is difficult to obtain colonization of laboratory mice with \textit{B. pilosicoli} unless they receive specialized diets that increase fermentation in the large intestine (Sacco et al. 1997; Jamshidian et al. 2004).

In addition to pigs, a wide range of animal species may be naturally infected with \textit{B. pilosicoli} (reviewed by Duhamel 2001), and typical clinical signs and lesions associated with PCS have been recorded in all host species, including humans. Although isolates from pigs, dogs, birds, and humans are genetically closely related (Lee and Hampson 1994; Trott et al. 1998), clear evidence for zoonotic transmission has not been obtained. Nevertheless, human strains of \textit{B. pilosicoli} can cause disease when inoculated into conventional pigs (Trott et al. 1996b) and can colonize 1-day-old chicks (Duhamel et al. 1995a; Trott et al. 1995; Munipha et al. 1997; Muniappa et al. 1998; Trott and Hampson 1998) and adult chickens (Jamshidi and Hampson 2003). Therefore, the potential for cross-transmission of \textit{B. pilosicoli} between humans and animals cannot be discounted. Colonization of humans with \textit{B. pilosicoli} is usually associated with either an immunocompromised state or poor hygiene, such as occurs in developing communities where fecal contamination of water supplies is often found (Margawani et al. 2004; Munsi et al. 2004). Consequently, industry workers who are healthy are unlikely to be at risk of developing disease from contact with pigs with PCS.
PATHOGENESIS

The pathogenesis of PCS is not well understood but is thought to differ from swine dysentery in several aspects (Johnston et al. 1999). Infection is often associated with the presence of large numbers of spirochetes attached by one cell end to the luminal surface of colonic and cecal epithelial cells. Additionally, the colitis associated with PCS is usually much less severe than swine dysentery and resembles the early stages of that disease.

As with swine dysentery, *B. pilosicoli* colonization and/or expression of disease can be influenced by the pig's diet. An analysis of risk factors on farms revealed that reduced prevalences can result from using home-mixed and/or nonpelleted diets (Stege et al. 2001). Reducing the energy and protein content of the diet also has alleviated clinical problems (Spearman et al. 1988; Wilkinson and Wood 1987). Addition of carboxymethylcellulose to a weaner pig diet, to experimentally increase the viscosity of the intestinal contents, enhanced colonization with *B. pilosicoli* (Hopwood et al. 2002). The authors speculated that high levels of soluble non-starch polysaccharide (“soluble fiber”), such as are present in grains like barley and rye, may similarly increase viscosity and enhance *B. pilosicoli* colonization. Consistent with this, pigs fed diets based on cooked white rice (highly digestible and low in soluble fiber) have shown reduced colonization with *B. pilosicoli* compared to pigs fed conventional diets (Hampson et al. 2000; Lindecrona et al. 2004). In the study of Lindecrona and co-workers (2004), feeding pigs a pelleted diet rather than meal increased the risk of colonization, but feeding fermented liquid feed or lactic acid did not influence colonization.

In order to be able to colonize, *B. pilosicoli* cells need to be able to penetrate and move through the mucus overlying the colonic mucosa. Cells of *B. pilosicoli* are motile, but are not attracted to colonic mucin in the same way as are virulent strains of *B. hyodysenteriae* (Miller and Sellwood 1994), and their chemotactic response appears to be modulated by the presence of certain substrates in the growth medium (Witters and Duhamel 1999). Pigs convalescent from PCS have serum IgG antibodies to a membrane lipoprotein of *B. pilosicoli* that is homologous to MglB, the glucose and galactose transport and chemoreceptor lipoprotein present in the pathogenic spirochetes *Borrelia burgdorferi*, the cause of Lyme disease, and *Treponema pallidum*, the syphilis spirochete (Zhang et al. 2000). As this protein is involved in motility-regulated signal transduction of the spirochete and is recognized by pigs recovered from PCS, it must be expressed during infection, perhaps during scavenging of glycoconjugate present in colonic mucin. Hence it likely plays a role in mucosal association.

Following experimental inoculation, *B. pilosicoli* may be shed in the feces within 2–7 days, although the incubation period may range up to 20 days. In the initial stage of infection, *B. pilosicoli* cells can adhere in large numbers to the surface of cecal and colonic epithelial cells, resulting in effacement of the microvilli and disruption of the terminal web microfilaments. Attachment occurs to only mature apical enterocytes between crypt units, and spirochetes do not attach to immature cells deeper within intestinal crypts (Trott et al. 1996b). Epithelial cell damage results in an increase in the crypt cell mitotic rate, crypt elongation, and the replacement of the mature columnar epithelium by squamous or cuboidal cells. Erosion of the epithelium is evident grossly as small adherent nodules on the surface of the mucosa (Figure 46.3).

*B. pilosicoli* cells have been observed inside dilated colonic crypts (Trott et al. 1996b), invading through tight junctions between colonic enterocytes, within

![Figure 46.3](image-url) *Colonic mucosa of a chronic case of porcine colonic spirochetosis. Note the coalescing erosions accompanied by mucosal hyperemia and hemorrhage.*
goblet cells (Thomson et al. 1997), and within the lamina propria (Duhamel 2001). The presence of *B. pilosicoli* within crypts and the lamina propria is associated with neutrophilic exocytosis (crypt abscesses) and colitis characterized by edema, with a mixed infiltrate of neutrophils and lymphocytes within the lamina propria and occasionally extending further into the gut wall. In chronic infections, the lamina propria is infiltrated with large numbers of monocytes, lymphocytes, and plasma cells (Duhamel 2001). Invasion has been observed both concurrent with and independent of attachment of spirochete cells to the epithelium. In humans, *B. pilosicoli* has been isolated from the bloodstream of individuals with severe clinical disease or impaired immunity, in association with colitis (Trott et al. 1997; Kanavaki et al. 2002). Although a systemic spread or spirochetemia with *B. pilosicoli* has not been directly observed in pigs, its occurrence cannot be excluded.

The epithelial damage followed by local invasion and subsequent colitis combine to cause an increase in the water content of the cecal and colonic contents, together with excess mucus production and occasionally flecks of blood. Erosion of the epithelium leading to replacement by immature cells may reduce available surface area of the colon for absorption of water, electrolytes, and volatile fatty acids, and consequently affect feed conversion efficiency and weight gain (Duhamel 1998; Thomson et al. 1997).

Besides the “virulence life-style” genes of *B. pilosicoli* involved in motility and chemotaxis, other virulence determinants that might contribute to the disease have yet to be identified. A search for the attachment and invasion determinants encoded by the *inv, ail, and yadA* genes of *Yersinia enterocolitica*, the *eae* gene from enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli*, and a virulence plasmid of *Shigella flexneri* failed to identify similar genes in *B. pilosicoli* (Hartland et al. 1998). Although the attachment of *B. pilosicoli* to epithelial cells has been confirmed using intestinal epithelial cell lines in vitro, to date putative adhesins or host cell receptors have not been identified (Muniappa et al. 1998). At least three different protease activities, including a subtilisin-like serine protease similar to that of other gram-negative bacteria have been found in the membrane of *B. pilosicoli* (Muniappa and Duhamel 1997; Dassanayake et al. 2004). However, the role of these enzymes in disease, if any, has not been determined. Identification of virulence determinants in *B. pilosicoli* has been hampered by a lack of genomic information for this spirochete. Furthermore, unlike the case with *B. hyodysenteriae*, no successful gene inactivation experiments have been described for *B. pilosicoli*.

The host immune mechanisms that may be directed against *B. pilosicoli* have not been determined. In early studies, agglutinating serum antibodies were demonstrated in pigs recovered from experimental infection (Taylor et al. 1980). The development of serum IgG antibodies against whole cell extracts and membrane preparations of *B. pilosicoli* has been recorded 2–7 weeks after challenge inoculation of conventional weaned pigs (Zhang et al. 1999; Zhang et al. 2000; Zhang and Duhamel 2002). However, in another study, significant titers against whole cell preparations of *B. pilosicoli* were not found within 18 days following experimental infection of pigs, even though colonization and mild colitis were present (Hampson et al. 2000).

Gnotobiotic pigs (Neef et al. 1994), 1-day-old chicks (Duhamel et al. 1995a; Trott et al. 1995; Muniappa et al. 1998; Trott and Hampson 1998), adult chickens (Jamshidi and Hampson 2003), and mice (Sacco et al. 1998; Jamshidian et al. 2004) have been used as experimental models of *B. pilosicoli* infection. In various experimental infections of conventional pigs, between 17% and 100% of pigs have become infected, with 17–67% developing diarrhea and 8–100% exhibiting lesions of colitis (reviewed by Duhamel 2001). Not all colonized or diseased pigs have shown end-on attachment of spirochetes to the colonic epithelium (Thomson et al. 1997).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

PCS has a clinical presentation similar to other forms of colitis and to the early stages of swine dysentery. It is commonly seen in the immediate postweaning period and in recently mixed growers placed on a new diet, but can be observed in finishers and occasionally pregnant sows and recently introduced breeding stock. PCS may affect groups of pigs of the same age in a unit or be present in pigs of mixed age on the same farm. It is not uncommon to observe various manifestations of PCS in weaners, growers, and finishers on the same farm. As a result of the large functional capacity of the cecum and colon, not all infected animals develop diarrhea; however, subclinical infections still may result in depressed growth rates.

The first clinical signs are hollowing of the flanks and the passage of loose, sometimes sticky feces that adhere to the pen floor. The consistency of the feces then changes to that of wet cement or porridge and may take on a glistening appearance. These may be the only clinical signs observed in finishers. Weaner and grower pigs usually develop a watery to mucoid diarrhea which is green or brown in color and occasionally characterized by thick tags of mucus and, rarely, flecks of blood. Diarrhea is usually self-limiting and lasts between 2 and 14 days, although some animals may relapse and again develop clinical signs after convalescence or treatment.

Affected pigs appear unthrifty, have fecal staining of the perineum, have a tucked-up appearance, and are sometimes febrile, but usually continue to eat. Pigs with PCS may have concurrent illness, particularly intestinal diseases such as swine dysentery, salmonellosis, or proliferative enteropathy. Mixed infections occur com-
monly in the field (Duhamel et al. 1995a; Girard et al. 1995; Møller et al. 1998; Thomson et al. 1998; Stege et al. 2000; Stege et al. 2001; Thomson et al. 2001). Pigs with uncomplicated PCS that develop loose feces may show significant loss of condition, decreased feed conversion, and delays in reaching market weight (Thomson et al. 1997; Thomson et al. 1998). Mortality is generally not a feature of PCS.

LESIONS

Gross Lesions

Gross lesions associated with PCS are limited to the cecum and colon and may be very subtle, particularly in the early stages of the disease. Postmortem examination soon after the onset of clinical signs often reveals a flaccid, fluid-filled cecum and colon with an edematous serosal surface and enlarged mesenteric and colonic lymph nodes. The large intestinal contents are abundant and watery green or occasionally yellow and frothy. Mild congestion and hyperemia of the mucosal surface might be apparent, with occasional erosions and necrotic foci. Inflammation in the later stages may result in multifocal erosive, ulcerative, or mucohemorrhagic colitis, but it is not as severe as that observed in swine dysentery. The mucosa becomes thickened, and local ecchymotic or petechial hemorrhages may be apparent on the surface. In chronic cases and in resolving lesions, the hemorrhages are covered by small tags of adherent fibrin, necrotic material, and digesta, which appear as conical scales adherent on the surface of the mucosa (see Figure 46.3). This material may be dislodged by rinsing, and can be found as a deposit after decanting the washings (Johnston et al. 1999).

Microscopic Lesions

PCS has been described as a catarrhal, multifocal, erosive or ulcerative colitis. Lesions are generally confined to the mucosa and submucosa, but may extend into the muscularis. The mucosa is thickened, edematous, and occasionally hyperemic and is characterized by the presence of dilated, elongated intestinal crypts filled with mucus, cellular debris, and degenerate inflammatory cells (Figure 46.4). The crypt cell mitotic rate is increased, and immature, cuboidal, or squamous epithelium may be present on the surface of the mucosa between crypt units. Where columnar epithelium is still present on the surface of the colon, it may be covered by a dark fringe of spirochetes attached by one cell end (see Figure 46.1). Silver stains (Muniappa et al. 1997), and more specifically either immunohistochemical staining with specific antibodies (Webb et al. 1997) or fluorescent in situ hybridization with specific oligonucleotide probes (Boye et al. 1998; Jensen et al. 2000), can be used to confirm the presence of spirochetes attached to the surface of colonic enterocytes, within dilated intestinal crypts, and occasionally within the lamina propria. The protozoan Balantidium coli is often seen in large numbers on the surface of the colon in pigs with PCS (Taylor et al. 1980; Trott et al. 1996b).

Electron Microscopy

Using transmission electron microscopy, polar-attached spirochetes with 4–7 periplasmic flagella may be observed invaginated into the terminal web cytoplasm, effacing microvilli and disrupting microfilaments without penetrating the host cell plasmalemma (Figure 46.5). Scanning electron microscopy reveals the adherent spirochetes as a patchy fringe on the surface of

![Image](https://example.com/image.png)

**46.4.** Light photomicrograph of a colon obtained from a pig 21 days after intragastric inoculation with B. pilosicoli. Note the overall loss of crypt columns accompanied with hyperplasia of the remaining crypt epithelium (arrows) and diffuse infiltration of the lamina propria between crypt units by large numbers of mixed mononuclear inflammatory cells, mostly macrophages and lymphocytes (arrowheads). Hematoxylin and eosin.
colonic epithelial cells. Spirochetes also may be observed invading between epithelial cells in the extrusion zone between adjacent crypt units (Duhamel 1996).

**DIAGNOSIS**

PCS should be suspected when typical clinical signs of mucoid or porridge-like diarrhea without blood and no mortality are found in weaned pigs. The clinical signs of PCS are difficult to differentiate from those associated with the proliferative enteropathies caused by *Lawsonia intracellularis*. In addition to proliferative enteropathy, PCS may occur concurrently with a number of other intestinal infections, including salmonellosis, postweaning colibacillosis, swine dysentery, yersiniosis, and trichuriasis. All of these should be considered in the differential diagnosis of PCS, as well as nonspecific colitis, an apparently diet-related condition possibly associated with a form of hypersensitivity to pelleted feed (Smith and Nelson 1987).

To obtain a diagnosis, postmortem examination of several affected pigs, including routine histologic and bacteriologic examination, should be undertaken (Johnston et al. 1999). Fecal samples for culture and/or PCR for *Brachyspira* spp. and other pathogens also should be obtained from a cross-section of affected pigs. Swabs taken directly from the colonic wall can be used to prepare wet smears for viewing by phase contrast microscopy, or they can be fixed and Gram-stained, in both cases to look for the presence of large numbers of spirochetes that might suggest a spirochetal etiology. In histologic sections from the cecum and particularly the colon, the presence of spirochetes attached to the colonic mucosa is diagnostic for PCS, but this change is not observed in every case of the disease. Other histologic lesions associated with PCS are often nonspecific, and a definitive diagnosis of PCS requires demonstration of *B. pilosicoli* by bacteriologic culture and/or PCR. While waiting for confirmation of results, medication should be initiated, because sometimes it can take 1-2 weeks to obtain a definitive diagnosis.

The four species of weakly beta-hemolytic spirochetes colonizing pigs can be differentiated from one another and from *B. hyodysenteriae* using a number of simple biochemical tests outlined in Table 46.1. Unfortunately, these tests generally require the growth of pure cultures, a process which can take several weeks to achieve, particularly if the initial plates are heavily contaminated with other fecal flora. In addition, the existence of isolates with unusual phenotypes, such as hippurate negative strains of *B. pilosicoli* (Fossi et al. 2004), can make interpretation difficult. Generally, laboratory

**Table 46.1.** Differentiation of the five recognized groups of porcine intestinal spirochetes by their hemolysis pattern on Trypticase Soy blood agar, biochemical reactions and utilization of sugars.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th><em>B. hyodysenteriae</em></th>
<th><em>B. intermedia</em></th>
<th><em>B. innocens</em></th>
<th><em>B. murdochii</em></th>
<th><em>B. pilosicoli</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hemolysis</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>weak</td>
<td>weak</td>
<td>weak</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indole</td>
<td>+&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hippurate</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API-ZYM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-ribose</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Positive reaction; - negative reaction
<sup>b</sup> Indole negative strains of *B. hyodysenteriae* and indole positive strains of *B. pilosicoli* have been recorded.
<sup>b</sup> Hippurate negative strains of *B. pilosicoli* have been recorded.
1 = alpha-glucosidase positive, alpha-galactosidase negative.
2 = alpha-glucosidase positive or negative, alpha-galactosidase positive.
3 = alpha-glucosidase negative, alpha-galactosidase negative.
4 = variable reactions, including positive reactions for both enzymes, beta-glucosidase negative.
confirmation of *B. pilosicoli* can be accomplished using strength of beta-hemolysis, hippurate hydrolysis, metabolism of ribose, and lack of beta-glucosidase activity in the API-ZYM profile (Fellström and Gunnarsson 1995; Trott et al. 1996c). Nowadays, diagnosis is more usually supported by the use of specific polymerase chain reaction (PCR) tests.

Several PCR assays that are based on either a unique 16S rRNA gene sequence (Park et al. 1995; Fellström et al. 1997; Muniappa et al. 1997), a 23S rDNA sequence (Leser et al. 1997), or the NADH oxidase gene (Atyeo et al. 1999) specific for *B. pilosicoli* have been described. When applied to growth harvested from the primary isolation plate, the combined culture/PCR technique is more sensitive than culture alone and can significantly reduce the time taken for a diagnosis, even if there is a large amount of contamination with other fecal microbiota (Atyeo et al. 1998). A recent improvement in diagnosis involves the use of a duplex PCR for the simultaneous detection of both *B. pilosicoli* and *B. hyodysenteriae*, which is applied directly to DNA extracted from the feces (La et al. 2003). Potentially this can be used to give a diagnosis on the day of sample submission. The duplex PCR has been further modified to introduce a *Lawsonia intracellularis* component in the reaction, increasing the range of potential pathogens that it can detect in a single fecal sample (La et al. 2004). When using these fecal PCRs, it is usual also to culture the samples to obtain isolates, so that these can be used for strain-typing and/or determining their antimicrobial susceptibility.

As previously mentioned, another recent adjunct to diagnosis has been the development of a fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) technique, which uses fluorescent oligonucleotide probes specific for sequences present in the 16S or 23S rRNA of *B. pilosicoli* (Boye et al. 1998; Jensen et al. 2000). The advantage of this technique is that identification and localization of the spirochetes associated with the intestinal mucosa can be done simultaneously. Localization of intestinal spirochetes in formalin-fixed and de-paraffinized tissue sections also has been accomplished using immunohistochemical staining with a *Brachyspira*-specific mouse monoclonal antibody (MAB) to FlaB periplasmic flagellar core proteins and the avidin-biotin-alkaline phosphatase complex method (Fisher et al. 1997; Webb et al. 1997; Johnston et al. 1999). These techniques are particularly useful in a research setting when investigating aspects of the pathogenesis of PCS.

A number of other schemes have been developed to detect and/or identify species of weakly hemolytic intestinal spirochetes of swine, as well as *B. hyodysenteriae*, without the need for culture and biochemical analysis. These involve PCR amplification of specific gene sequences, followed by restriction enzyme digestion of the products to give species-specific banding patterns after gel electrophoresis. Genes that have been used in this way include the 16S rRNA gene (Stanton et al. 1997), the 23S rRNA gene (Barcellos et al. 2000c; Thomson et al. 2001), and the NADH-oxidase gene (Rothe et al. 2002). Indirect fluorescent antibody tests using MABs that have been raised against specific outer-membrane proteins of *B. pilosicoli* also have potential for diagnostic use on feces (Lee and Hampson 1995; Tenaya et al. 1998). Unfortunately, a MAB-based immunomagnetic separation of *B. pilosicoli* from feces did not improve sensitivity of detection above those achieved with standard culture followed by PCR (Corona-Barrera et al. 2004b).

Typing of individual strains of *B. pilosicoli* can provide important epidemiologic information to help devise control measures. Early studies used multilocus enzyme electrophoresis (MLEE) to differentiate intestinal spirochete isolates into species and strains (Lee et al. 1993; Stanton et al. 1996), but this time-consuming technique is no longer commonly used. Pulsed field gel electrophoresis now is the most commonly used strain typing technique for *B. pilosicoli* and gives better strain discrimination than MLEE (Atyeo et al. 1996; Trott et al. 1998; Fossi et al. 2003).

As a result of significant serologic cross-reactivity among the weakly beta-hemolytic intestinal spirochetes, to date no reliable tests are available to measure species-specific serum antibody titers.

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL**

Although treatment and control of PCS are largely modeled on procedures developed for swine dysentery, some modifications are necessary because of the lesser economic impact of PCS on pig production. No effective vaccines have been developed to date. An autogenous bacterin vaccine induced good systemic antibody titers, but vaccinated pigs still became colonized and developed diarrhea after experimental challenge (Hampson et al. 2000).

Implementation of rational antimicrobial therapy can reduce *B. pilosicoli* infection and maximize productivity while improving the welfare of pigs raised under intensive management. Affected pigs should be treated by water or feed medication at similar levels and lengths of time as recommended for the treatment of swine dysentery (Chapter 48). Parenteral treatment may sometimes be warranted for severely ill pigs.

Although information on the in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility of *B. pilosicoli* is relatively limited, a number of antimicrobials that are effective against *B. hyodysenteriae*, including tiamulin, valnemulin, carbadox, dimetridazole, and to a lesser extent lincomycin, have been shown to have low minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) values when tested against collections of porcine *B. pilosicoli* isolates (Trott et al. 1996c; Cizek et al. 1998; Duhamel et al. 1998; Hommez et al. 1998b; Fossi et al. 1999; Kinyon et al. 2002; Brooke et al. 2003). Fewer isolates have been found to be susceptible to ty-
losin (Cizek et al. 1998; Hommez et al. 1998b; Kinyon et al. 2002). Olaquindox has been shown to have MIC values of less than 1.0 µg/mL against B. pilosicoli, and the organism could not be isolated from herds previously receiving olaquindox in the feed at 100 ppm (Fellström et al. 1996). However, despite its preventive attributes, the use of this agent is now very limited. Resistance to single antimicrobials, particularly tlosin, or to combinations of antimicrobials commonly used for treatment of PCS have been recorded (Kinyon et al. 2002). Of great concern is the recent emergence of B. pilosicoli strains resistant to tiamulin among field isolates obtained from pigs in Finland (Fossi et al. 1999) and North America (Kinyon et al. 2002).

Management strategies, particularly those aimed at limiting access of pigs to environments contaminated with manure, can be used to reduce the impact of PCS. Implementation of an all-in/all-out system (“batch production”) rather than a continuous flow system of production reduces the risk of infection (Stege et al. 2001). Improved pen hygiene can reduce transmission. Where practical, modification to the diet composition and/or physical form may help control the impact of the infection. The addition of zinc oxide in the feed at 3 kg/tonne can help control PCS (Love 1996). This method also has been effective in controlling uncomplicated cases of nonspecific colitis (Kavanagh 1992). Interestingly, in laying hens, the addition of 50 ppm zinc bacitracin to the diet actually enhanced colonization with B. pilosicoli (Jamshidi and Hampson 2002), but whether the same occurs in pigs is not known.

The methods described in Chapter 48 for the elimination of swine dysentery also may be effective for PCS, but because PCS is less severe and has less economic impact than swine dysentery, it generally does not warrant such drastic procedures. Fossi et al. (2001) reported eradicating B. pilosicoli from a 60-sow herd by tiamulin treatment, followed by relocation of the breeding herd, thorough cleaning and disinfection of the premises, and then returning the adult animals to the original location. This protocol would be more difficult to follow in larger herds, and the existence of reservoir hosts for B. pilosicoli, such as feral waterbirds, presents an ongoing threat of reintroduction of PCS.

Where PCS becomes endemic in a herd, regular periods of treatment with antimicrobials in the feed or water may be required to prevent sudden increases in morbidity due to recent introduction of naive pigs, change of diet, or other periods associated with stress.

As a result of the current global nature of the pig industry and the limited number of available antimicrobial agents with demonstrated efficacy against B. pilosicoli, the potential for emergence of resistant strains has become an international concern. To assist future control of PCS, a high priority should be given to monitoring the antimicrobial resistance patterns of B. pilosicoli, to improving understanding of the basic mechanisms of resistance, and to investigating the feasibility of producing vaccines or other methods to help control the disease.

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 46  PORCINE COLONIC SPIROCHETOsis / INTESTINAL SPIROCHETOsis  765


Several streptococcal species can be found in tonsils, intestines, and genital tracts of clinically healthy pigs, and some of them are potential pathogens. Among species considered as part of the intestinal microflora in swine, are *S. hyointestinalis* (Devriese et al. 1988), *S. suis*, *S. alactolyticus* (*S. intestinalis*), and *S. bovis* (Devriese et al. 1994b). *S. suis*, *S. porcinus*, and *S. dysgalactiae* subsp. *equisimilis* (Vieira et al. 1998) are generally found in tonsils (Devriese et al. 1994b). Vaginal microflora may comprise some of the above mentioned species, as well as *S. hyovaginalis* and *S. thoraltensis* (Devriese et al. 1997). Members of the genus *Enterococcus* such as *E. faecalis*, *E. faecium*, *E. durans*, *E. hirae*, and *E. villorum* are also important members of the intestinal microflora.

In this chapter, the different pathological conditions associated with streptococci and enterococci are presented. A particular emphasis was put on the infections caused by *S. suis* because of their importance in the swine industry during the last 15 years. Efforts were made to synthesize the more recent knowledge about the different aspects of these infections, particularly pathogenesis, clinical signs, diagnosis, and prevention. Importance was also given to the fact that *S. suis* is a zoonotic agent with severe consequences, and that its presence in a wide range of animal species and birds may influence the epidemiology and the control of the infection in swine. Comments about infections caused by other streptococci, such as *S. porcinus* (Lancefield groups E, P, U, and V), *S. dysgalactiae* subsp. *equisimilis* (Lancefield groups C, G, and L), have been included, as well as a discussion of diarrhea associated with enterococci.

**INFECTIONS CAUSED BY STREPTOCOCCUS SUIS**

**Etiology and Prevalence**

New alpha-hemolytic streptococci from septicemic infections in pigs were first biochemically and serologically characterized by de Moor between 1956 and 1963 as new Lancefield groups R, S, RS, and T (de Moor 1963). In England, Elliott (1966) suggested that de Moor’s group S was similar to his PM *Streptococcus* and that both belonged to Lancefield’s group D; he proposed the name *Streptococcus suis* serotype 1. In 1975, Windsor and Elliott isolated other porcine streptococci which corresponded to de Moor’s group R and named them *S. suis* serotype 2. Isolates reacting with both antisera against serotypes 1 and 2 were designated serotype 1⁄2 (originally RS group). Isolations of streptococci belonging to group T from tonsillar, vaginal, and preputial swabs were reported by Clifton-Hadley in 1984. The Lancefield group T reference strain was designated *S. suis* serotype 15 in 1989 (Gottschalk et al. 1989).

Between 1983 and 1995, a total of 32 new serotypes were described, out of a total number of 35 serotypes (Perch et al. 1983; Gottschalk et al. 1989; Gottschalk et al. 1991b; Higgins et al. 1995). Reference strains originated from diseased pigs except for capsular type 14, a human isolate, capsular types 17, 18, 19, and 21 isolated from clinically healthy pigs, capsular types 20 and 31 from diseased calves, and type 33 from a diseased lamb (Gottschalk et al. 1989; Higgins et al. 1995). The designation of *S. suis* as a new bacterial species was made official in 1987 by Kilpper-Balz and Schleifer. This species appeared genetically distinct and displayed no specific relationship with other streptococcal species examined (Chatellier et al. 1998). Genetic diversity among members of the *S. suis* species is important (Chatellier et al. 1999; Hampson et al. 1993), and this should be taken into account in diagnosis, surveillance, and control of the disease.

Initial reports of *S. suis* infections were published by Jansen and Van Dorssen in the Netherlands (1951) and by Field et al. (1954) in England. Since then, *S. suis* has been reported in all countries where the swine industry is important, and for more than 15 years, infections associated with this microorganism have been observed in both traditional and modern intensive swine operations. Most *S. suis* organisms isolated from diseased pigs
belong to a limited number of serotypes, often those between 1 and 8 (Galina et al. 1992; Higgins and Gottschalk 2001; Hogg et al. 1996; Kataoka et al. 1993; Reams et al. 1996). Although serotype 2 isolates predominate in most countries, the situation may be different depending on the geographical location. For example, the prevalence of this serotype recovered from diseased animals in Canada remained relatively low (below 25%) during the last 10 years (Higgins and Gottschalk 2001). This situation is very different from that observed in some European countries, where serotype 2 was frequently isolated in France, Italy, and Spain (Berthelot-Hérault et al. 2000; Wisselink et al. 2000). In this regard, it may be hypothesised that European and North American serotype 2 strains of \( \text{S. suis} \) possess a different virulence potential (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). In Japan, serotype 2 was also the most prevalent serotype (28%) (Kataoka et al. 1993).

Some strains belonging to less common serotypes have also been associated with severe cases of infection. Serotype 9 was reported to be most frequently isolated in Belgium, The Netherlands and Germany (Wisselink et al. 2000) and associated with outbreaks of septicemia, meningitis, and pneumonia in weaned pigs (Orr et al. 1989; Gogolewski et al. 1990). In the United Kingdom, serotype 14 is frequently isolated from piglets presenting clinicopathological findings similar to those associated with serotype 2 (Heath and Hunt 2001). The number of untypeable isolates is in general relatively low (Higgins and Gottschalk 2001). Most of the time, these isolates are recovered from sporadic cases of disease. It seems that there is no justification at the present time for the characterization of new serotypes.

Serotype 2 can also be isolated from clinically healthy pigs, but its prevalence has been reported to be low. British authors showed that in four herds without any history or clinical signs of the disease, two were negative for the presence of type 2, one had a prevalence of 1.5%, and another a prevalence of 20% (Clifton-Hadley et al. 1984). This is in accordance with Canadian studies that reported the presence of this serotype in relatively low number of herds without clinical signs of infection and in a low number of piglets within these herds (Brisebois et al. 1990; Monter Flores et al. 1993). However, the prevalence of a specific serotype may also be underestimated due to the lack of sensitivity of the isolation method used in these studies.

Hogg et al. (1996) noted a higher prevalence of serotypes 9–34 from nasal and vaginal swabs than from tissues taken from diseased pigs. It is noteworthy that several serotypes may be present in the same animal. In one study, 31% of pigs had only one serotype of \( \text{S. suis} \) in their nasal cavities, 38% had two or three serotypes, and 6% had more than four serotypes (Monter Flores et al. 1993). Isolation of multiple serotypes also has to be taken into consideration in diseased animals (see the section on diagnosis).

**Epidemiology**

**Natural Habitat.** The natural habitat of \( \text{S. suis} \) is the upper respiratory tract (particularly the tonsils and nasal cavities) and the genital and alimentary tracts of pigs (Devriese et al. 1994b; Hogg et al. 1996; Baele et al. 2001; Cloutier et al. 2003). \( \text{S. suis} \) is also increasingly isolated from a wide range of animal species and birds (Higgins et al. 1990b, 1995; Kataoka et al. 1993; Devriese et al. 1994a), and this may affect some epidemiological aspects of this infection. Finally, its presence in the environment is transitory (see the next section).

**Transmission.** Transmission of the infection between herds usually occurs by the movement of healthy carrier animals. The introduction of carrier pigs harboring virulent strains (breeding gilts, boars, weaners) into a non-infected herd may result in the subsequent onset of disease in weaners and/or growing pigs in recipient herds. Sows infect their own piglets during the birth process and probably through the respiratory route (Clifton-Hadley et al. 1986b; Robertson et al. 1991; Amass et al. 1997; Cloutier et al. 2003). It appears that although most weaned piglets carry \( \text{S. suis} \) strains, only a few of them carry strains capable of inducing the disease after weaning (Torremorell et al. 1998; Cloutier et al. 2003). It has been reported for serotype 2 and 5 that, even though different strains within the same serotype are present in the herd, only one of them is usually responsible for the clinical cases (Torremorell et al. 1998; Cloutier et al. 2003). For other serotypes, such as serotype 1/2, strains isolated from diseased animals seem to be similar to those recovered from carrier animals in herds without clinical disease (Martinez et al. 2002). Horizontal transmission seems to be significant especially in the presence of clinical signs, with a considerably higher number of bacteria in the environment that would increase transmission either by aerosol or direct contact. Aerosol transmission without nose-to-nose contact has been demonstrated for \( \text{S. suis} \) serotype 2 (Berthelot-Hérault et al. 2001).

\( \text{S. suis} \) also appears to be also transmitted via fomites (Robertson et al. 1991; Dee and Corey 1993). \( \text{S. suis} \) types 1 and 2 were isolated from the feed troughs of piglets and sows (Robertson et al. 1991). Enright et al. (1987) demonstrated that flies can carry \( \text{S. suis} \) type 2 for at least 5 days and can contaminate materials on which they feed for at least 4 days. Thus, flies could spread infection within farms and between farms. The importance of other animal species or birds as reservoirs or vectors of the infection has still to be determined. Carriage by humans also seems possible (Sala et al. 1989).

**Survival in the Environment.** Studies on the survival of \( \text{S. suis} \) in the environment have only been carried out with serotype 2. This organism survived in water at 4°C for 1–2 weeks. In experimentally inoculated feces, it sur-
vived at 0°C, 9°C, and 22–25°C for 104, 10, and 8 days, respectively, and in dust for 54, 25, and 0 days, respectively. Thus, at a summertime or weaner-accommodation temperature of 22–25°C, the organism could survive about 8 days in feces but less than 24 hours in dust (Clifton-Hadley and Enright 1984). *S. suis* serotype 2 was shown to survive in pig carcasses left rotting on farms. Survival time was 6 weeks at 4°C and 12 days at 22–25°C, potentially providing a source of infection for indirect spread by, for example, birds, rats, mice, or dogs (Clifton-Hadley et al. 1986c).

With regard to the cleaning of infected pens, disinfectants and cleaners commonly used in piggeries can kill *S. suis* type 2 in less than 1 minute, even at concentrations in distilled water less than those recommended by the manufacturers (Clifton-Hadley and Enright 1984; Robertson et al. 1991). The presence of dirt and organic material protects some organisms from the action of chemical disinfectants, and hence, removal of surface organic material protects some organisms from the action for indirect spread by, for example, birds, rats, mice, or dogs (Clifton-Hadley et al. 1986c).

The presence of dirt and or-

**Clinical Signs and Lesions**

Even when the pig carrier rate is near 100%, the incidence of the disease varies from period to period and is usually less than 5% (Clifton-Hadley et al. 1986a). However, in the absence of treatment, mortality rates can reach 20% (Cloutier et al. 2003). In most cases, affected animals are generally between 5 and 10 weeks of age, but cases in pigs up to 32 weeks of age and a few hours old have also been described (Nielsen et al. 1975; Reams et al. 1996; Maclnnnes and Desrosiers 1999; Lapointe et al. 2002; Cloutier et al. 2003). Reams et al. (1996) indicated that in 75% of *S. suis* cases reported in United States, pigs were aged of 16 weeks or less. The earliest sign is usually a rise in rectal temperature to as high as 42.5°C. This may occur initially without any other obvious signs. It is accompanied by a detectable bacteremia or pronounced septicemia, which, if untreated, may persist for up to 3 weeks. During this period, there is usually a fluctuating fever and variable degrees of in-appetence, depression, and shifting lameness (Clifton-Hadley et al. 1984).

In peracute cases, pigs may be found dead with no premonitory signs. Meningitis is the most striking feature and the one on which a presumptive diagnosis is usually based. Early nervous signs include incoordination and adoption of unusual stances, which soon progress to inability to stand, paddling, opisthotonus, convulsions, and nystagmus (Staats et al. 1997). The eyes are often staring, with reddening of mucous mem-

branes. Septicemia, arthritis, and pneumonia are less remarkable manifestations of the disease, and a tentative diagnosis may be difficult to make. Among other manifestations of *S. suis* infections, there are endocarditis, rhinitis, abortions, and vaginitis (Sanford and Tilker 1982; Sihvonen et al. 1988). In North America, *S. suis* is, by far, the infectious agent most frequently isolated from cases of endocarditis in pigs. Affected pigs may die suddenly or show various levels of dyspnea, cyanosis, and wasting.

In the United Kingdom, infections due to *S. suis* serotype 2 were primarily associated with septicemia and meningitis in weaned pigs (Windsor and Elliott 1975). In North America, early reports indicated that *S. suis* was predominantly isolated from cases of pneumonia (Koehne et al. 1979; Sanford and Tilker 1982; Erickson et al. 1984). Years later, reports from the United Kingdom mentioned septicemia, meningitis, and polyarthritus, but rarely pneumonia (MacLennan et al. 1996; Heath et al. 1996), whereas pulmonary lesions still predominated in North America (Reams et al. 1994, 1996; Hogg et al. 1996). In the Netherlands, *S. suis* type 2 was associated with pneumonia in 42% of the cases, followed by meningitis, endocarditis, and polyserositis in 18%, 18%, and 10%, respectively (Vecht et al. 1985). *S. suis* isolates belonging to serotypes other than 2 have been recovered from cases of bronchopneumonia in Argentina (Vena et al. 1991), Denmark (Perch et al. 1983), the Netherlands (Vecht et al. 1985), Belgium (Hommez et al. 1986), Finland (Sihvonen et al. 1988), Australia (Gogolewski et al. 1990), Canada (Higgins et al. 1990a; Gottschalk et al. 1991a, b), and the United States (Reams et al. 1994). The role of *S. suis* as a primary agent of pulmonary lesions, in the absence of other pathogens, is still controversial (Staats et al. 1997); so far, only one report indicated the presence of fibrinous pleurisy and bronchopneumonia in specific-pathogen-free piglets experimentally infected with *S. suis* serotype 2 (Berthelot-Hérault et al. 2001). In general, it is considered that neither clinical signs nor gross lesions are associated with specific serotypes (Reams et al. 1996).

Significant microscopic lesions are usually limited to the lung, brain, heart, and joints (Reams et al. 1994). The predominant lesions are neutrophilic meningitis and choroiditis, with hyperemic meningeal blood vessels, fibrinopurulent or suppurrative epicarditis and suppurative bronchopneumonia (Sanford and Tilker 1982; Erickson et al. 1984; Reams et al. 1994, 1996). Evidence of encephalitis, edema, and congestion of the brain may be present (Staats et al. 1997). The choroid plexus may have destruction of the plexus brush border and fibrin and inflammatory cell exudates may be present in the ventricles (Staats et al. 1997). Interstitial pneumonia is also seen and is considered a lesion secondary to septicemia (Reams et al. 1994). Microscopic lesions do not seem to be associated with serotype (Reams et al. 1994). Rare cases of fibrinohemorrhagic pneumonia and septal
necrosis have been seen, and it is suggested that certain strains of *S. suis* may cause vascular lesions (Reams et al. 1995). In this regard, it has been reported that hemolysin-positive strains are toxic for endothelial cells (Charland et al. 2000; Vanier et al. 2004). Unusual lesions of hemorrhagic and necrotizing myocarditis and subacute meningoencephalitis and meningoencephalomyelitis have also been reported by Sanford (1987a, b). In cases of arthritis, the carpal and tarsal joints are most commonly affected (Windsor and Elliot 1975).

**Virulence Factors and Pathogenesis of the Infection**

Most studies on *S. suis* virulence factors have been carried out with serotype 2 strains. Although there is confusion in the description of virulence, researchers agree on the existence of virulent and avirulent strains of this serotype (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). Different opinions or versions about the definition of the virulence of *S. suis* have contributed to hampering the studies on virulence factors of this bacterial species, because the concept of “virulence” may differ depending on the experimental infection model that is used. In fact, there is no universally accepted model, and different research groups use different animal species, pigs with different health status and different ages, different routes of infection, or variable bacterial doses. (Gottschalk et al. 1999a). As a consequence, important discrepancies exist in the literature regarding even the virulence of the same strain (Gottschalk et al. 1999a). One of the most important practical applications of the identification of virulence factors is their use as “virulence markers” to differentiate virulent from avirulent strains. So far, there is no such universal virulence marker for *S. suis*.

Despite the fact that knowledge on virulence factors is limited, the most important candidates in *S. suis* serotype 2 are the capsular polysaccharide (CPS), virulence-related proteins, such as the muramidase-released protein (MRP) and the extracellular factor (EF), the hemolysin or suilysin, and some adhesins (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). The CPS is an important antiphagocytic factor, and these findings significantly changed the studies on the pathogenesis of the meningitis (see below). Despite the fact that the CPS was shown to be a major virulence factor, most avirulent strains are encapsulated indicating that other virulence factors are essential (Charland et al. 1998).

The MRP and EF proteins were originally associated with virulence (Vecht et al. 1991). Variants of these proteins were later described with a series of phenotypes that can be found in several serotypes (Smith et al. 1997). A certain association of these proteins with virulence in European strains seems to exist, and most isolates harboring these factors are virulent. However, the absence of one or both of these proteins cannot necessarily be associated with a lack of virulence. In fact, some European and most virulent North American isolates do not produce these factors (Quessy et al. 1994; Galina et al. 1996; Gottschalk et al. 1998; Berthelot-Hérault et al. 2000). Similar observations have been made with the suilysin, a thiol-activated hemolysin produced by some strains of *S. suis* (Jacobs et al. 1994; Gottschalk et al. 1995). Although some authors reported a high association between virulence and the presence of this toxin (Staats et al. 1999; Tarradas et al. 2001), others showed that this hemolysin is absent in most North American virulent isolates (Gottschalk et al. 1998). Segers et al. (1998) also reported that the suilysin was present in 95% of the strains isolated in Eurasia, but only in 7% of the strains from North America. As is the case for the MRP and EF proteins, a certain association between the presence of the suilysin and virulence may be established, since avirulent suilysin-positive strains have never been reported so far (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). Isogenic mutants lacking either the MRP and EF proteins or the suilysin have been obtained and shown to be as virulent for pigs as the respective parent strain (Smith et al. 1997; Allen et al. 2001).

Adhesins, such as hemagglutinins (Haataja et al. 1993; Tikkanen et al. 1996), an albumin-binding protein (Quessy et al. 1997), an IgG-binding protein (Serhir et al. 1993) and a fibronectin-binding protein (de Greeff et al. 2002), have also been suggested as potential virulence factors. These binding proteins may participate in the establishment of the infection, but their role in the pathogenesis of *S. suis* infections remains to be confirmed.

The mechanisms that enable *S. suis* to disseminate throughout the animal are not well understood. The bacterium could spread systemically from the nasopharynx, occasionally resulting in septicemia and death (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). Both palatine and pharyngeal tonsils are considered as possible portals of entry for *S. suis* with subsequent hematogenous or lymphogenous spread (Madsen et al. 2002). An early theory suggested uptake of bacteria by monocytes, intracellular survival, and invasion of the central nervous system (CNS) by the Trojan horse theory (Williams and Blakemore 1990). Studies carried out by flow cytometry are controversial, with high (Busque et al. 1998) or low (Lun and Willson 2004) levels of phagocytosis. However, most studies carried out during the last decade suggest that bacteria may also use (an)other mechanism(s) to disseminate. It seems that most bacteria remain extracellular and the number of monocytes containing bacteria in septicemic pigs is low (≤2%) (Williams and Blakemore 1990). In addition, the CPS would confer antiphagocytic properties to *S. suis* (Charland et al. 1998; Smith et al. 1999). It is possible that bacteria travel either free in circulation or even externally attached to monocytes (modified Trojan horse theory) (Gottschalk and Segura 2000; Segura and Gottschalk 2002). Bacteria can then reach the CNS via the endothelial cells that form the brain blood barrier.
Methods are not used in routine diagnosis. However, these techniques, but many laboratories have adopted the coagglutination technique. Since the majority of typeable isolates belong to serotypes 1–8 and 1/2, it is advisable for diagnostic laboratories to only use antisera corresponding to those serotypes and to send untypeable isolates to a reference laboratory (Higgins and Gottschalk 1990; Hogg et al. 1996). Some isolates cross-react with more than one antiserum using the coagglutination, as well as the capsular reaction, tests. The most important cross reactions are serotype 1/2 isolates with antisera against serotypes 1 and 2, and serotype 1 isolates with antiserum against serotype 14 (Gottschalk et al. 1989; Gottschalk and Segura 2000).

Genetic tools could be of valuable help in distinguishing individual isolates of S. suis, in establishing the origin of the infection in a given herd, in monitoring the kinetics of an outbreak, or in ensuring that the right strain is included in a vaccine. It was demonstrated that an important diversity existed among S. suis isolates even for those belonging to the same serotype (Mogollon et al. 1990). Genomic fingerprinting has allowed the identification of outbreak isolates of S. suis serotypes 2 and 5 (Mogollon et al. 1991; Cloutier et al. 2003). One study carried out with isolates from diseased pigs from different geographical origins seem to be genotypically different. In fact, strains of S. suis, the isolation of different strains within the same herd, and the predominance of particular strains in some herds are evidence that infection by S. suis is a dynamic process and reinforce the idea that the epidemiology of S. suis infection is very complex (Vela et al. 2003). Isolates from different geographical origins seem to be genotypically different. In fact, strains of S. suis serotype 2 from Europe (presenting a MRP’, EF’, sulysin’ phenotype) seem to be different from North American strains, which are negative for these markers (Chatellier et al. 1999).

From Clinically Healthy Pigs. As mentioned before, S. suis is considered a normal inhabitant of the upper respiratory tract (Baele et al. 2001). Detection of S. suis from tonsils has no practical utility. These sites are highly contaminated and traditional bacterial isolation presents a low sensitivity (Gottschalk et al. 1999b).
ence of \textit{S. suis} in high numbers in nasal cavities may reflect an active transmission of the infection rather than a carrier state (Cloutier et al. 2003). In this regard, it has been reported that the use of selective isolation using immunomagnetic beads coated with serotype 2 specific antibodies significantly increased the isolation rate of this serotype from tonsils when compared to the standard isolation technique (Gottschalk et al. 1999b). This technique has also been used with serotype 5 infected herds (Cloutier et al. 2003). Wisselink et al. (1999) described a PCR for the detection of virulent strains of serotype 1 and 2 from tonsils, but based on the phenotypes EF and MRP, which are not present in North America. Untypeable isolates recovered from tonsils or nasal cavities must be confirmed as being \textit{S. suis} by genetic methods (Okwumabua et al. 2003), since biochemical identification may be misleading.

Different serologic tests for the detection of antibodies against \textit{S. suis} have been evaluated (del Campo Sepulveda et al. 1996; Kataoka et al. 1996). However, these tests are not useful to differentiate infected from noninfected herds and cannot be used routinely. It has been reported that the use of an ELISA test using a protein extract of \textit{S. suis} (homologous strain present in the herd) as coating antigen presented high interest. The development of a strain-specific ELISA allowed the evaluation of the serologic profiles of the maternal antibody levels in piglets to decide the time of vaccination as well as the induction of antibodies after either natural infection or vaccination (Lapointe et al. 2002; Cloutier et al. 2003).

**Treatment**

The choice of the best antibacterial agent against \textit{S. suis} infections must be based on several criteria such as the susceptibility of the organism, the type of infection, and the mode of administration. Using the Kirby-Bauer method, susceptibility of \textit{S. suis} isolates to penicillin appeared to be high (Kataoka et al. 2000; Han et al. 2001; Marie et al. 2002). The determination of minimal inhibitory concentrations allowed the demonstration of a large number of isolates moderately susceptible to penicillin, but the sensitivity rate to amoxicillin and ampicillin was around 90% (Shryock et al. 1992; Dee et al. 1993; Turgeon et al. 1994). It is now recommended that penicillin be used only in cases where sensitivity tests have shown that \textit{S. suis} is sensitive. Different authors have reported a high degree of resistance of \textit{S. suis} isolates to some antibacterial agents such as tetracycline, clindamycin, erythromycin, kanamycin, neomycin, and streptomycin (Estoepangestie and Lämmler 1993; Dee et al. 1993; Reams et al. 1993; Turgeon et al. 1994). Susceptibility to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole appeared to be variable (Sanford and Tilker 1989; Shryock et al. 1992; Turgeon et al. 1994; Kataoka et al. 2000). A Danish study showed a significant serotype-associated difference in the susceptibility to macrolides and tetracycline and demonstrated an increase in resistance among \textit{S. suis} isolates recovered during the last years to the two most commonly used antimicrobial agents (tylosin and tetracycline) in pig production in Denmark (Aarestrup et al. 1998). Marie et al. (2002) also described a higher proportion of resistance among non-serotype 2 isolates of \textit{S. suis}. On the other hand, Han et al. (2001) did not find any correlation between antimicrobial susceptibility and serotype. MacInnes and Desrosiers (1999) suggested that ampicillin, cefotiofur, gentamicin, tiamulin and a combination of trimethoprim and a sulfonylamine would seem to be the most useful antibacterial products for parenteral treatment.

Prompt recognition of the early clinical signs of streptococcal meningitis followed by immediate parenteral treatment of affected pigs with an appropriate antibiotic is currently the best method to maximize pig survival (Amass et al. 1997). Pigs in the early stages of meningitis may be difficult to detect, and groups of pigs should be checked 2–3 times daily. Affected pigs hold their ears back, squint their eyes, or exhibit dog-sitting (Amass et al. 1997). Adjunctive therapy with an antiinflammatory agent is recommended for treatment of \textit{S. suis} meningitis in pigs (Amass et al. 1997). In a segregated early-weaning (SEW) program where postweaning meningitis associated with \textit{S. suis} was observed, excellent results were obtained when piglets, in the very early stages of the disease, were injected with both penicillin and dexamethasone (Clark 1995). In peracute forms of the disease, the response to antibiotic treatment can be poor and it is sometimes advisable to treat all the pigs in a pen when one is affected or found dead (MacInnes and Desrosiers 1999).

Treatment can also be administrated via the drinking water or in medicated feed. However, due to the method of spread of the disease, treatment needs to be started very quickly. Whichever method of medication is to be used, it is important that treatment is continued for at least 5 days (Denicourt and Le Coz 2000).

**Prevention**

**Control of Predisposing Factors.** \textit{S. suis} is an example of an emerging infection associated with the intensification of the swine industry. Multiple factors are involved, and among them are the health status of the herd (such as concomitant infections and immunosuppression), the degree of virulence of the \textit{S. suis} strains involved, and the quality of the environment and of the management. It was also reported that minimizing variation in weaning age, with concurrent use of an autogeneous vaccine and antibiotic at processing and weaning, appeared to contribute to a decrease in nursery mortality (Villani 2003).

Overcrowding, poor ventilation, excessive temperature fluctuations, and mixing of pigs with an age spread of more than 2 weeks seem to be the most important stress factors involved in the development of \textit{S. suis} infection in susceptible pigs (Dee et al. 1993). Manage-
ment practices such as all-in/all-out pig flow can help reduce the incidence of the disease. Dividing large buildings into smaller rooms can help minimize temperature fluctuations and the age spread between pigs. Cleaning each room between groups of pigs reduces buildup of microorganisms and improves health status, average daily gain, and feed conversion (Dee et al. 1993).

It is likely that concomitant viral infections could potentiate the development of lesions in infections due to S. suis. Iglesias et al. (1992) concluded that clinical disease associated with S. suis type 2 was enhanced by concomitant infection with pseudorabies virus. In North America, swine practitioners generally agree with the concept that the infection with the porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRSV) significantly increases the susceptibility of animals to secondary infections, such as those caused by S. suis. This was confirmed by experimental infections (Galina et al. 1994; Thanawongnuwech et al. 2000). In addition, Feng et al. (2001) clearly demonstrated that in utero infection by PRRSV makes piglets more susceptible to infection and disease following challenge by S. suis type 2.

Production Technologies. Medicated early weaning and SEW have been used to improve the health status of pigs and to eliminate some infectious organisms (Alexander et al. 1980). It is now accepted that although early weaning can succeed in controlling diseases such as pleuropneumonia and swine dysentery, its capacity to reduce or eliminate early colonizers, such as S. suis, Haemophilus parasuis, and Actinobacillus suis, is questionable (Pijoan 1996). Control of these problems requires aggressive use of new diagnostic techniques, such as serum profiling, together with some manipulation of sow immunity and disease transmission in the nursery (Pijoan 1996). Other procedures, such as nursery depopulation, are under evaluation (Dee and Joo 1997).

Antimicrobial Preventive Medication. Antimicrobial preventive medication of groups of pigs via feed or water against S. suis infections must be based on several considerations. Bioavailability, route of administration (feed or water), competition (overcrowded pens), and serum concentration needed to kill S. suis have to be considered prior to prophylactic antimicrobial treatment (del Castillo et al. 1995; Amass et al. 1997).

Procaine penicillin incorporated into the feed was reported to significantly reduce the prevalence of streptococcal meningitis within a herd (McKellar et al. 1987). Oral administration of procaine penicillin G resulted in measurable systemic concentrations, although it is known that in humans, only about one-third of an orally administered dose is absorbed from the intestinal tract. Higher plasma concentrations are obtained with an equivalent dose of phenoxyethyl penicillin (McKellar et al. 1987). Del Castillo et al. (1995) indicated that of all types of oral treatments with penicillin, only penicillin V in water given to fasted piglets could reach serum concentrations greater than the target concentrations selected for S. suis isolates. In the same conditions, penicillin G concentrations were much lower and hardly stayed above the target serum level. In the presence of food, only penicillin V reached the target level, but only in a few piglets. Thus, penicillin should exclusively be orally administered through drinking water to reduce the interference in absorption due to feed (del Castillo et al. 1995).

Amoxicillin is also an antibiotic of choice, since it rapidly achieves high plasma levels, diffuses well into the extracellular space, and most S. suis strains present low MIC (Denicourt and Le Coz 2000). In addition, persistence of amoxicillin in lymph nodes and tonsils may be relevant to control pathogens such as S. suis. Other authors have reported less conclusive results using experimentally infected animals (Halbur et al. 2000; Schmitt et al. 2001). In these studies, the use of ampicillin and penicillin G did not significantly reduce disease in animals exposed to a co-infection with S. suis and SRPPV. Ceftiotur treatment was the only regimen that significantly reduced mortality, recovery of S. suis from tissues at necropsy and severity of gross lung lesions.

Immunization. Until now, most vaccines used in the field to protect against S. suis infections have been commercial autogenous bacterins and results have been inconsistent (Reams et al. 1996; Torremorell et al. 1997; Halbur et al. 2000). The exact reasons for vaccine failure are still unknown, but possible explanations are degradation of protective antigens or loss of antigenicity of the bacteria caused by heat or formalin processing (Holt et al. 1990a), production of antibodies to antigens not associated with virulence factors (Holt et al. 1988), and weak immunogenicity of the capsulated bacteria (del Campo Sepulveda et al. 1996). Since affected animals are in general between 6 and 10 weeks old, interference with maternal antibodies should be taken into consideration. This was demonstrated by Lapointe et al. (2002) with a serotype 1/2 S. suis strain in an autogenous vaccine using sonicated bacteria. The serologic profile revealed that antibody levels against the S. suis serotype 1/2 strain varied considerably among 2- and 4-week-old pigs. Differences in antibody levels among piglets in these age groups could be attributed to differences in maternal antibody levels and/or in the rate of absorption of maternal antibodies by the piglets. In that study, it was clear that animals with the lowest levels of antibodies against the strain of S. suis serotype 1/2 responded more effectively to vaccination (Lapointe et al. 2002). In addition, the adjuvant used seems to play an important role. Wisselink et al. (2001) showed that a bacterin with a water-in-oil emulsion as an adjuvant presented better results than the same bacterin but with aluminium hydroxide-based adjuvant.

Live avirulent strains have also been tested. Pro-
tection was obtained in pigs following the inoculation of live avirulent \textit{S. suis} serotype 2 strains (Holt et al. 1988; Busque et al. 1997). On the other hand, a live acapsular mutant was shown to fail to provide protection (Wisselink et al. 2002b). Since in some cases, live \textit{S. suis} strains appear to induce a protection similar to that produced by live virulent strains, it is suggested that the important immunogens may be different from \textit{S. suis} virulence factors (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). The use of a reduced dose of virulent \textit{S. suis} also showed good protective results although some residual virulence was observed (Schmitt et al. 2001).

The importance of humoral immunity was well established by succeeding in passively transferring protection against \textit{S. suis} type 2 (Holt et al. 1988, Andresen and Tegtmeier 2001). The role of antibodies against the capsule is still controversial. It was demonstrated that pigs experimentally or naturally infected with \textit{S. suis} type 2 produced only low levels of antibodies against the capsular polysaccharide (del Campo Sepulveda et al. 1996). Andresen and Tegtmeier (2001) obtained high titers of antibodies against the CPS in one of two horses immunized for more than 40 weeks with whole cells of \textit{S. suis} serotype 2. On the other hand, Wisselink et al. (2002b) showed that antibodies against the CPS and other bacterial components are essential for full protection against homologous challenge.

Studies have shown that different \textit{S. suis} type 2 proteins could induce a good protection (Holt et al. 1990b; Quessy et al. 1994). A vaccine using MRP and EF proteins completely protected pigs against a challenge with virulent \textit{S. suis} serotype 2 strains (Wisselink et al. 2001). These results disagree with those presented by Jacobs et al. (1996), who also reported that the sulysin was the only protein giving complete protection against \textit{S. suis} infection. However, as mentioned, these three proteins are not present in all virulent strains (Quessy et al. 1994; Galina et al. 1996; Gottschalk et al. 1998; Berthelot-Hérault et al. 2000).

Most studies have been carried out with piglets. However, vaccination of sows and gilts has also been proposed and shown to be effective to a certain extent (Torremorell et al. 1997; Amass et al. 2000).

Finally, and based on the fact that systemic strains of \textit{S. suis} are rarely found colonizing the upper respiratory tract of sows and gilts, and that a small number of piglets reach the nursery colonized with the herd’s systemic strains, it has been suggested that early colonization of young pigs with the systemic strain can be used as a method for disease prevention (Torremorell et al. 1999; Oliveira et al. 2001). These authors showed that although both colonization protocols were successful in getting the piglets colonized, direct inoculation of 5-day-old piglets with the herd’s systemic strain of \textit{S. suis} tended to be more effective in reducing the morbidity and mortality than the colonization of piglets by nose-to-nose contact with inoculated sows (Oliveira et al. 2001).

**Eradication**

Attempts to eradicate the infection have focused only on serotype 2. Medicated early weaning (Alexander et al. 1980) is in general poorly effective, since \textit{S. suis} is a very early colonizer (Torremorell et al. 1998). According to Clifton-Hadley et al. (1986b), only depopulation and restocking with clean pigs will ensure eradication of the infection, and in most herds this is not economic. Mills (1996) described the procedures that were used to establish a purebred minimal-disease herd from gilts found to be carriers of a virulent strain of \textit{S. suis} type 2. Amass et al. (1996), on the other hand, did not recommend such an approach. They emphasized optimization of management and environment of pigs coupled with strategic medication of clinically ill animals for control and prevention of mortality caused by streptococcosis.

Cesarean section can be used to derive pigs free of \textit{S. suis} from infected dams. Strict biosecurity measures are needed and they must include eliminating rodents and flies (Amass et al. 1997).

Considering that the infection is transmitted during farrowing, disease is often associated with respiratory problems and with multiple \textit{S. suis} serotypes, that some less common serotypes are more and more involved in severe outbreaks, that reliable diagnostic or monitoring tools such as serology will not be available in the short term, and, finally, that \textit{S. suis} is now isolated from a wide range of animal species and birds, it would appear reasonable to direct research efforts toward control measures rather than eradication.

**Infection in Humans**

\textit{S. suis} is a zoonotic agent which deserves attention. Since the first description in Denmark in 1968 (Perch et al. 1968), nearly 200 human cases of \textit{S. suis} infection have been reported. Several reports indicate “Lancefield group R streptococci”; these cases must be considered as \textit{S. suis} since the latter terminology has been abandoned (Gottschalk and Segura 2000). In general, the \textit{S. suis} disease is considered a rare event in man; however, it has been reported to be “one of the major causes of meningitis in adults in Hong Kong” (Chau et al. 1983). Most cases are caused by serotype 2 strains; but cases due to serotype 4 (one case) and serotype 14 (two cases) strains have also been observed (Gottschalk and Segura 2000; Watkins et al. 2001). Two recently found \textit{S. suis} serotype 1 cases in humans remain to be confirmed because the serotype of these strains was only established using biochemical criteria and was not confirmed with a serologic reaction using specific sera (Kopic et al. 2003). Unfortunately, these isolates are no longer viable to confirm the serotype (J. Kopic, personal communication 2004).

Cases have been reported in The Netherlands, Denmark, Italy, Germany, Belgium, United Kingdom, France, Spain, Sweden, Ireland, Austria, Hungary, Hong Kong, Croatia, Japan, Singapore, Taiwan, New Zealand,
and Argentina (Gottschalk 2004). In the United Kingdom and France, this infection has been listed as an Industrial Disease in 1983 and 1995, respectively (Walsh et al. 1992; Pedroli et al. 2003). Mysteriously, although human cases have been observed in Canada (Michaud et al. 1996), none has been reported in the United States. It seems that the lack of reports on this disease in humans in the U.S. is most probably due to the misidentification of the microorganism (Gottschalk 2004). Even though S. suis field isolates readily grow on media employed for culturing meningitis causing bacteria, many laboratories working in human diseases are not aware of this microorganism and it is usually misidentified as enterococci, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Streptococcus bovis, viridans group streptococci, or even Listeria spp. (Lüttkicken et al. 1986; Michaud et al. 1996). In many cases, the initial Gram stain diagnosis of the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) specimen is pneumococcal meningitis.

In man, S. suis usually produces a purulent or nonpurulent meningitis (Lüttkicken et al. 1986). In addition, endocarditis, cellulitis, rhabdomyolysis, arthritis, pneumonia, and endophthalmitis have also been reported (Gottschalk 2004). Severe cases of sepsis with shock, multiple organ failure, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and associated purpura fulminans, which lead to death within hours, have also been described (François et al. 1998). One of the most striking features of the infection is the consequence of deafness following S. suis meningitis (Lüttkicken et al. 1986). S. suis meningitis may have been missed in the past because of such confusion. S. suis infection in humans is observed more frequently in intensive pig farming areas or where people live in close contact with pigs (Strangmann et al. 2002). In fact, in nearly all reported cases, patients had close contact with pigs—as farmers, butchers, abattoir workers—or handled pork products (Arends and Zanen 1988). One documented case of a veterinary surgeon has been reported (Walsh et al. 1992). The most frequent transmission route is through skin abrasions or cuts, although in many cases, no skin laceration could be shown (Michaud et al. 1996). The finding that liquid soap inactivates S. suis type 2 in less than 1 minute at a dilution in water of 1 in 500 suggests that washing with soap and water would be a satisfactory way of removing skin contamination (Clifton-Hadley and Enright 1984). Since S. suis type 2 can survive in carcasses at 4°C for 6 weeks, chilled or frozen meat could be a hazard long after being butchered.

Information about the occurrence and frequency of human colonization by S. suis is scarce, with most data coming from abattoir workers (Strangmann et al. 2002; Sala et al. 1989). In New Zealand, relatively high antibody titer against S. suis serotype 2 were reported in people with occupational contact with the pig industry (Robertson and Blackmore 1989). However, these data should be taken with caution since no standardized serological test to detect S. suis antibodies exists.

In general, S. suis isolates from humans are phenotypically and genotypically similar to those recovered from pigs (Berthelot-Hérault et al. 2002) and they are also susceptible to beta-lactams. Gentamicin appeared also very active against S. suis, and a combination with penicillin is recommended in human cases of endocarditis due to this agent (Trottier et al. 1991).

**INFECTIONS CAUSED BY BETA-HEMOLYTIC STREPTOCOCCI**

**Streptococcus porcinus**

The name Streptococcus porcinus was proposed in 1984 by Collins et al. (1984) to represent streptococci of serological groups E, P, U, and V, which formed a single DNA-DNA homology group. S. porcinus has a unique phenotypic profile in addition to serologic differences that can be used to help identify the species. By rRNA sequencing, S. porcinus is closely related to the other beta-hemolytic streptococci, such as groups A, B, and C (Facklam et al. 1995).

S. porcinus group E has been associated, particularly in the United States, with a contagious clinical entity in growing pigs known as streptococcal lymphadenitis, jowl abscesses, or cervical abscesses. Transmission is possible by contact, drinking water, or ingestion of food contaminated by abscess discharge or infected feces. The organisms enter the swine host through the mucosa of the pharyngeal or tonsillar surfaces and are carried to the lymph nodes, primarily of the head and neck region, where abscesses are formed (Wessman 1986). Losses due to this disease in the United States were important in the 1960s, but its incidence has since declined. The disease is not recognized as an important economic entity in other countries, where the bacterium represents only a few percent of the microorganisms isolated from abscesses in swine (Wessman 1986). A report of an outbreak from Spain mentioned that 80% of 50 feeder pigs had mandibular and retropharyngeal purulent lymphadenitis (Real et al. 1992). Antibiotic treatment is not usually successful in abscessed swine or in elimination of carriers. Resistance to tetracycline has been recently reported (Facklam et al. 1995; Lämmler and Bahr 1996). Vaccination is possible but has not been widely used since the condition is not widespread.

S. porcinus group E can be isolated from tonsils, pharynx, and nasal cavities of clinically healthy pigs. It is also occasionally found in the vaginal mucus of sows and in the semen and prepuce of boars. It is considered to be more of a secondary invader than a primary pathogen in conditions such as pneumonia, enteritis, encephalitis, and arthritis (Wessman 1986). It was isolated in Canada from the lungs of a 2-year-old pig affected with an abscessative pneumonia, along with other bacterial agents (A. Désilets, personal communication 1995).

S. porcinus groups P, U, and V were isolated by
Hommez et al. (1991) from pig lungs, genital organs, and brains. However, no histological lesions could be associated with their presence. S. porcinus groups P and V were associated with abortions in pigs (Plagemann 1988; Lämmler and Bahr 1996). Hommez et al. (1991) cited a report of Hinterdorfer et al. (1990), in which S. porcinus group P was associated with hemorrhagic tractoritis in pigs.

Katsumi et al. (1997) found S. porcinus in 1.6% of slaughtered pigs with lesions of endocarditis. In 1998, the same authors reported that on a total of 170 beta-hemolytic streptococci isolated from lesions in slaughtered pigs, 22.4% were identified as S. porcinus. Of those, 3.0% belonged to group E, 3.0% to group P, 8.2% to group U, and 8.2% were ungroupable (Katsumi et al. 1998).

**Streptococcus dysgalactiae subsp. equisimilis**

In 1984, Farrow and Collins, using DNA-DNA hybridization, DNA base composition, and biochemical tests, indicated that *Streptococcus dysgalactiae*, *S. equisimilis*, and streptococci of Lancefield serologic groups C, G, and L were a single species. In 1996, Vandamme et al. proposed that the name *S. dysgalactiae* subsp. *dysgalactiae* be used for strains of animal origin, and the name *S. dysgalactiae* subsp. *equisimilis* be used for human isolates. However, in 1998, Vieira et al., based on multilocus enzyme electrophoresis typing and genomic DNA relatedness, proposed a new classification for these organisms: alpha- and non-hemolytic streptococci of Lancefield group C are defined as *S. dysgalactiae* subsp. *dysgalactiae*, and beta-hemolytic streptococci belonging to groups C, G, or L are named *S. dysgalactiae* subsp. *equisimilis*.

In swine, members of the *S. dysgalactiae* subsp. *equisimilis* species are all beta-hemolytic streptococci. Although members of the normal flora, they are considered the most important beta-hemolytic streptococci involved in lesions in pigs, and these agents were judged to be of etiological significance in autopsy reports (Hommez et al. 1991). *S. dysgalactiae* group C streptococci are common in nasal and throat secretions, tonsils, and vaginal and preputial secretions (Jones 1976). Vaginal secretions and milk from postparturient sows are the most likely sources of infection for the piglets (Woods and Ross 1977). Streptococci enter the bloodstream via skin wounds, the navel, and tonsils. A bacteremia or septicemia occurs, and the organisms then settle in one or more tissues, giving rise to arthritis, endocarditis, or meningitis. Insufficient consumption of colostrum or milk or inadequate levels of antibodies, especially in gilts, may predispose to disease (Windsor 1978).

Infection is usually first seen in pigs between 1 and 3 weeks of age. Joint swelling and lameness are the most obvious and persistent clinical signs. Elevated temperatures, lassitude, roughened hair coat, and inappetence may also be noted. Early lesions consist of periarticular edema; swollen, hyperemic synovial membranes; and turbid synovial fluid. Necrosis of articular cartilage may be seen 15–30 days after onset and may become more severe. Fibrosis and multiple focal abscessation of periarticular tissues and hypertrophy of synovial villi also occur. In lame pigs, up to 12 weeks of age, the causative agents of arthritis were, in decreasing order, *S. dysgalactiae* subsp. *equisimilis* (26.3%), *Staphylococcus hyicus* (24.6%), *Arcanobacterium pyogenes* (13.2%), *S. aureus* (7.9%), and *Haemophilus parasuis* (7.9%), and most of the pigs culled for arthritis were under 6 weeks of age (Hill et al. 1996). Hommez et al. (1991) mentioned that *S. dysgalactiae* is frequently isolated from pigs, in which the organisms cause septicemia, arthritis, or valvular endocarditis. In 1997, Katsumi et al. reported the isolation of *S. dysgalactiae* from lesions of endocarditis in 15.2% of slaughtered pigs, and *S. suis* was present in 25.7% of the animals. In 1998, Katsumi et al. mentioned that during a 7-year period, 77.6% of beta-hemolytic streptococci isolated from slaughtered pigs belonged to the *S. dysgalactiae* species. Of those, 45.8% belonged to Lancefield group C, 25.3% to group L, and 6.5% to group G.

Since baby pigs are virtually assured of being exposed to *S. dysgalactiae*, effective preventive measures should be followed. Adequate intake of colostrum may ensure that the piglets receive protective antibodies. Traumatic injuries to the feet and legs should be minimized by reducing the abrasiveness of the floor surface in the nursing area. Beta-hemolytic streptococci are sensitive to beta-lactam antibiotics. Long-acting antibacterial agents may be beneficial, and treatment should be given before the inflammatory process is well advanced (Sanford and Higgins 1992). There are no recent reports about vaccination against groups C or L streptococci. Autogenous bacteria have been used, and a reduction in incidence of arthritis has been reported when sows were vaccinated before farrowing (Woods and Ross 1977).

**Enteritis Associated with Enterococci in Piglets**

Some enterococcal species that show typical adhesion to the apical surface of the enterocytes of the small intestine of young animals have been described as associated with diarrhea in different animal species (Vancanneyt et al. 2001). Cases have been reported in piglets between 2 and 20 days of age. Most cases were sporadic (Johnson et al. 1983; Drolet et al. 1990), but an outbreak included 90% of the piglets in 16 of 20 litters (Cheon and Chae 1996). Taxonomic studies have shown that most of these enterococci are members of the *E. faecium* species group, mainly *E. durans* and *E. hirae*. In 2001, Vancanneyt et al. reported that some of the *E. hirae* or *E. hirae*-like isolates retrieved from piglets were genetically different from the reference strains and should be represented by a new species, *E. villorum*.
Enterococci are known as part of the intestinal flora, but some strains have the capacity to colonize the mucosal surface of the small intestine extensively. The pathogenesis of enteric disease associated with adherent enterococci is unclear. Adherence occurs with the help of fibrillar projections (Tzipori et al. 1984), and diarrhea is not associated with enterotoxin production or substantial mucosal injury (Cheon and Chae 1996). A decreased activity of brush border digestive enzymes such as lactase and alkaline phosphatase would interfere with digestion and absorption of the brush border (Drolet et al. 1990; Cheon and Chae 1996). Because of the natural resistance of enterococci to some antibacterial agents, antimicrobial susceptibility testing is advised before the institution of a treatment. Due to the lack of knowledge about the clinical and epidemiological aspects of this infection, preventive measures are difficult to establish.

REFERENCES


Swine dysentery (SD) is a mucohemorrhagic colitis affecting pigs primarily during the grow-finish period. The disease can be severe and may cause significant economic loss. SD has been reported worldwide and remains problematic in many major swine-rearing countries. The primary etiologic agent of SD is the strongly beta-hemolytic anaerobic intestinal spirochete *Brachyspira hyodysenteriae*. An emerging issue of concern to veterinarians is the existence of *B. hyodysenteriae* isolates with reduced susceptibility to a number of antimicrobial agents that were formerly effective for the control of SD. The presence of such isolates on certain piggeries, and their possible spread, reduces the options available for controlling SD.

**ETIOLOGY**

**Intestinal Spirochetes and Swine Dysentery**

The spirochetal etiology of SD was conclusively demonstrated in the early 1970s (Taylor and Alexander 1971; Glock and Harris 1972), when the causal strongly beta-hemolytic anaerobic spirochete was identified and named *Treponema hyodysenteriae* (Harris et al. 1972). Subsequently, the spirochete was transferred to a new genus *Serpula* (Stanton et al. 1991), then to *Serpulina* (Stanton 1992), and is now classified in the genus *Brachyspira* as *Brachyspira hyodysenteriae* (Ochiai et al. 1997; Validation list 1998). This genus includes four other named species of intestinal spirochete (all weakly beta-hemolytic) that colonize swine, as well as at least four other named or suggested *Brachyspira* species that are known to colonize other animal species or humans (Hampson 2000). Of the porcine intestinal spirochetes, besides *B. hyodysenteriae* only *Brachyspira pilosicoli* is confirmed to be pathogenic in swine, causing an often-mild colitis called “porcine colonic spirochetosis” or “porcine intestinal spirochetosis” (see Chapter 46). The other three species, *Brachyspira innocens*, *Brachyspira intermedia* and *Brachyspira murdochii* are generally considered to be nonpathogenic commensals in swine. *B. intermedia* occasionally has been suspected of causing diarrhea in pigs (Fellström et al. 1996), and it is known to cause wet litter and reduced egg production in adult chickens (Stephens and Hampson 2001).

*B. hyodysenteriae* produces typical signs and lesions of SD when orally inoculated into conventional or specific pathogen free pigs (Taylor and Alexander 1971; Glock and Harris 1972; Harris et al. 1972). Lesions also can be produced with pure cultures of *B. hyodysenteriae* in porcine colonic segments prepared by surgical anastomosis (Hughes et al. 1975), and in isolated ligated porcine colonic loops (Whipp et al. 1978). Mice are frequently used as an experimental model of SD (Joens and Glock 1979). The spirochete has been recovered from naturally infected rheas (a large flightless South American bird) in the United States, in which it causes a necrotizing typhlocolitis (Jensen et al. 1996). Strongly hemolytic spirochetes identified as *B. hyodysenteriae* recently have been isolated from Mallard ducks in Sweden, but whether they cause disease in this species is unclear (Jansson et al. 2004).

**Characteristics of *B. hyodysenteriae***

*Brachyspira hyodysenteriae* is a gram-negative, oxygen-tolerant, anaerobic spirochete. It is 6–8.5 µm long, 320–380 nm in diameter, loosely coiled (Figure 48.1), motile, and...
strongly beta-hemolytic on blood agar. It has 7–14 periplasmic flagella inserted at each cell end, and these overlap at the middle of the protoplasmic cylinder. The whole cell, including the periplasmic flagella, is covered by a loose outer membrane (Figure 48.2).

*B. hyodysenteriae* grows slowly in an anaerobic environment at 37–42°C on trypticase soy agar and on similar agar plates that are fortified with 5–10% defibrinated blood (usually ovine or bovine). After 3–5 days, the spirochetes can be seen as a low flat haze of growth surrounded by a zone of strong beta-hemolysis (Figure 48.3). The hemolysis can be enhanced by cutting slices into the agar at the time of inoculation (Olson 1996). Different combinations of antibiotics may be incorporated into the agar to make selective plates for isolation of the spirochete from feces (see diagnosis section).

*B. hyodysenteriae* can utilize oxygen with the aid of enzymes such as nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, reduced [NADH] oxidase (Stanton 1997). Stanton (1997) published a comprehensive description of the metabolic activities of *B. hyodysenteriae* and related intestinal spirochetes. Useful features that can help distinguish *B. hyodysenteriae* from other intestinal spirochete species include their ability to produce indole, their enzymic profile in the commercial API-ZYM kit, and the presence of strong beta-hemolysis (Fellström et al. 1997). Some comparative features of *B. hyodysenteriae* and other porcine spirochetes are tabulated in Chapter 46. It must be emphasized that none of these phenotypic properties can be completely relied upon to provide identification, because strains of intestinal spirochetes with unusual phenotypes are occasionally encountered (Thomson et al. 2001). For example, indole negative strains of *B. hyodysenteriae* recently have been described (Fellström et al. 1999), whilst *B. intermedia* is also indole positive.

The outer envelope of *Brachyspira hyodysenteriae* contains lipooligosaccharide (LOS: a semirough form of the more usual lipopolysaccharide [LPS] of gram-negative bacteria) (Halter and Joens 1988). Baum and Joens (1979) extracted LOS from *B. hyodysenteriae* using hot phenol/water, and used agar gel diffusion to react it with serum from rabbits that had been hyperimmunized with *B. hyodysenteriae*. Doing this, they were able to classify a set of 13 isolates into four LOS serotypes.

48.2. Electron micrographs of *B. hyodysenteriae*. (A) *B. hyodysenteriae* from the intestinal mucosa of a pig acutely affected with SD. The spirochete is negatively stained with potassium phosphotungstate. Arrows indicate areas of cross-over of periplasmic flagella (A. E. Ritchie and L. N. Brown, unpublished data, 1974). (B) *B. hyodysenteriae* in thin section. Transverse aspect illustrating diameters of periplasmic flagella and apposition to the outer envelope. The differences in periplasmic flagella diameter are presumably due to different stages of morphogenic assembly (A. E. Ritchie and L. A. Joens, unpublished data, 1978). (C) Bacteriophages ubiquitously associated with *B. hyodysenteriae*, in potassium phosphotungstate negative stain illustrating uniform morphology and close proximity of the receptor sites on a fragment of the outer envelope (Ritchie et al. 1978).

48.3. Blood agar plate showing zones of clear beta-hemolysis around *B. hyodysenteriae* (right) and weak beta-hemolysis around *B. innocens* (left).
Subsequent work uncovered the existence of considerably more antigenic diversity among LOS extracted from other isolates, and the typing system was extended to include new serotypes. The system was then modified to include a number of serogroups, some of which also contained individual serovars (Hampson et al. 1989). The serogroup is identified using unabsorbed sera, and the serovar is then identified using cross-absorbed sera. Currently 11 serogroups are recognized (Hampson et al. 1997). There is no indication that the virulence of an isolate correlates with its serotype, although LOS antigens appear important in stimulating protective immunity (see later section).

A number of attempts have been made to identify outer envelope proteins from *B. hyodysenteriae* (e.g., Chatfield et al. 1988; Joens et al. 1993), mainly in the course of attempts to identify potentially immunogenic molecules for use in vaccine production. Extraction of the outer membrane with Triton X-114 is considered the preferred method to reduce cellular contamination (Sellwood and Bland 1997), although osmotic lysis followed by isopycnic centrifugation also may result in spirochetal extracts that are free of cytoplasmic and flagellar contaminants (Trott et al. 2001). Well-characterized outer membrane lipoproteins include the 16 kDa “SmpA” (Thomas and Sellwood 1993), which has been renamed BmpA (Lee et al. 2000), and the 29.7 kDa BmpB (Lee et al. 2000). BmpB has also been referred to as BlpA, with the encoding gene sequence *blpA* being identified as a component of a locus designated *blpGFEA*, encoding four tandem paralogous *B. hyodysenteriae* genes encoding lipoproteins all of approximately 30 kDa (Cullen et al. 2003). A 39 kDa variable surface protein, encoded by eight linked gene copies, and possibly involved in immune avoidance, also has been described (Gabe et al. 1998; McCaman et al. 2003). A periplasmic ATP-binding cassette involved in iron importation has been characterized, which includes at least three lipoproteins (Dugourd et al. 1999).

**Genomic Organization and Population Genetics**

A physical and genetic map of the chromosome of the type strain of *B. hyodysenteriae* (B78) has been prepared (Zuerner and Stanton 1994). The chromosome is circular and is estimated to be about 3.2 Mbp in size, compared to about 2.45 Mbp for *B. pilosicoli* (Zuerner et al. 2004). Ritchie et al. (1978) demonstrated several different types of bacteriophages on the surfaces of cultures of *B. hyodysenteriae* and *B. innocens* (see Figure 48.2). A generalized transducing bacteriophage (VSH-1) from *B. hyodysenteriae* has been purified and characterized (Humphrey et al. 1997) and is believed to be important in transferring host genes between cells.

Analysis of the population structure of *B. hyodysenteriae* using multilocus enzyme electrophoresis (MLEE) has shown that the species is quite diverse, that it contains numerous genetically distinct strains, and that it includes at least four subgroups with similar phenotypes (including virulence) (Lee et al. 1993). Subsequent analysis of new MLEE data was used to deduce that the species is recombinant, and that it has an epidemic population structure (i.e., epidemic clones exist, which may be widespread) (Trott et al. 1997). In a study using pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) to analyze strains from individual farms, it was shown that over the course of several years new strains of *B. hyodysenteriae* may emerge as variants of the original parent strain (Atyeo et al. 1999a). Other than the occurrence of random mutational and recombination events, bacteriophages such as VSH-1 may contribute to this on-farm “micro-evolution” of strains through transduction of new sequences from other *Brachyspira* species or strains. New strains that emerge could have altered phenotypic properties, potentially including altered antimicrobial susceptibility, colonization potential, or virulence. Drifts in antigenicity of surface LOS among isolates on the same farm over a number of years have been recorded (Combs et al. 1992). Interestingly, chromosomal rearrangements and sequence drift also contribute to differences observed between the genomes of *B. hyodysenteriae* and *B. pilosicoli* (Zuerner et al. 2004).

**Virulence Attributes**

Virulence attributes of *B. hyodysenteriae* are likely to consist of a set of virulence “lifestyle” factors involved in initial colonization and fitness for survival in the microenvironment adjacent to the mucosa of the large intestine, as well as “essential” virulence factors that are required for lesion production. Avirulent isolates of *B. hyodysenteriae* that colonize pigs but do not induce disease have been described in the U.K. and Australia (Lysons et al. 1982; Lee et al. 1993; Thomson et al. 2001), and a study of these may help to define *B. hyodysenteriae* virulence factors. Some of these avirulent isolates have been reported to have a reduced motility in porcine mucus (Milner and Sellwood 1994), suggesting that motility is important in efficient colonization. Recent analysis of other avirulent isolates suggests that some lack a homologue of the *mglB* gene, encoding the glucose-galactose lipoprotein, which is believed to be a chemoreceptor in glucose and galactose chemotaxis (Walker et al. 2002). Both chemotaxis and motility are likely to be important mechanisms in allowing *B. hyodysenteriae* to associate with the gut mucosa (Kennedy et al. 1988). The role of motility in colonization has been confirmed in experiments where *B. hyodysenteriae* strains with disruptions introduced to their flagella genes (*flaA* and *flaB*) had both reduced motility and a reduced ability to colonize (Rosey et al. 1996; Kennedy et al. 1996). Another likely “lifestyle” virulence factor is the NADH oxidase activity of *B. hyodysenteriae*, which is believed to enhance the spirochete’s ability to colonize the
colonic mucosa by protecting it from oxygen toxicity. Consistent with this, *B. hyodysenteriae* strains with an inactivated *nox* gene show a reduced ability both to colonize swine and to cause disease (Stanton et al. 1999).

The hemolytic activity of *B. hyodysenteriae* is considered to be associated with its virulence, and the hemolysin is probably an “essential” virulence factor. Unfortunately, there has been considerable confusion about the nature of the hemolysin(s) involved. Various early studies suggested that *B. hyodysenteriae* hemolysins had molecular weights of 19 kDa, 68 kDa or 74 kDa (reviewed by ter Huurne and Gaastra 1995). The hemolysin or hemolysins were oxygen-stable and resemble another carrier-dependent toxin, streptolysin S. Purified hemolysin is cytotoxic for a number of tissue culture cell lines and to primary pig cells (Kent and Lemcke 1984). It has been shown to damage epithelial cells in porcine ligated intestinal loops (Lysons et al. 1991) and in the murine cecum (Hutto and Wannemuehler 1999). Three different genes (*tlyA*, *tlyB*, and *tlyC*) encoding putative hemolysins of *B. hyodysenteriae* were originally described, based on their ability to induce a hemolytic phenotype in *Escherichia coli* (ter Huurne et al. 1994). More recently, a distinct gene (*hlyA*) has been characterized that encodes an 8.93 kDa polypeptide of *B. hyodysenteriae*, which has hemolytic activity (Hsu et al. 2001). It now appears that the *tly* genes may be regulatory elements, rather than encoding hemolysins themselves. Nevertheless, inactivation of *tlyA* has been shown to reduce both the hemolytic activity and the virulence of *B. hyodysenteriae* (Hyatt et al. 1994). These results emphasize the likely role of hemolysin(s) in the virulence of *B. hyodysenteriae*.

LOS from *B. hyodysenteriae* has some of the same biological properties as LPS from other gram-negative bacteria and is likely to contribute to the pathology observed in SD. Nuessen et al. (1982) showed that *B. hyodysenteriae* LOS extracted by phenol/water was toxic for mouse peritoneal macrophages, increased uptake of red blood cells by murine peritoneal cells via Fc and C3 receptors, acted as a mitogen for murine splenocytes, red blood cells by murine peritoneal cells via Fc and C3 receptors, and generated chemotactic factors in fresh swine serum. Greer and Wannemuehler (1989b) found that endotoxin extracted from *B. hyodysenteriae* by butanol/water had more biological activity than the LOS extracted by phenol/water. It induced interleukin-1 and tumor necrosis factor from murine peritoneal cells and augmenting natural killer activity. Nevertheless, these authors also found that the biological activities of LOS and endotoxin from *B. hyodysenteriae* and *B. innocens* were similar, and therefore may not account for the different pathogenic potential of the two species (Greer and Wannemuehler 1989a). Subsequent in vivo studies in mice and pigs demonstrated that *B. hyodysenteriae* endotoxin also can induce production of proinflammatory cytokines such as interleukin-6 (Nibbelink et al. 1997). Other evidence that *B. hyodysenteriae* LOS has a potential role in virulence came from studies where the outcome of infection in C3H/HeJ mice (hyporesponsive to LPS) was compared to the response in C3H/HeB mice (normal responders) (Nuessen et al. 1983). Lesions were produced in the colons of endotoxin-sensitive mice but not in endotoxin-resistant mice. Nibbelink and Wannemuehler (1991) subsequently obtained similar results and again concluded that the host’s response to LOS influences their susceptibility to *B. hyodysenteriae*.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

**Distribution of SD**

SD is known to have a worldwide distribution, although the incidence of disease varies in different countries and regions, and alters with time. For example, in 1993 Mapother reported that 11% of U.S. herds showed serological evidence of infection with *B. hyodysenteriae*, with there being a 33% prevalence in the major pig producing state of Iowa. Now, even though there have been no recent surveys conducted, there is a general consensus that SD is much less common in the U.S. In part, this reduction in incidence may have resulted from rapid alterations in production systems, with the establishment of new high-health-status herds in nontraditional swine-rearing states, and with larger units, multisite production, and early-weaning systems now predominating.

In contrast to the U.S., SD still seems to be a relatively common and important problem in Europe. In the U.K., a postal survey of 105 pig units conducted in 1996 indicated that 50.5% had had scour problems in grower-finisher pigs in the last 3 years, and overall 10.5% had had a diagnosis of SD made (Pearce 1999). In a separate survey of 85 U.K. pig units where colitis was a problem, conducted in the period 1992–1996, *B. hyodysenteriae* was the primary etiological agent in 6 units (7%), and was isolated with other etiological agents of colitis in 3 other units (3.5%) (Thomson et al. 1988). Subsequently, in the period 1997–1999, Thomson et al. (2001) surveyed another 98 units with colitis problems, and found *B. hyodysenteriae* alone in 13% of these, and forming part of a mixed infection in another 16% of the units. In Denmark, among 72 units with diarrhea problems, 10 (14%) had *B. hyodysenteriae* infection, while the spirochete was not isolated from pigs on another 26 units where diarrhea was not a problem (Møller et al. 1998). In a subsequent study, examining samples from growing pigs in 79 randomly selected herds, only 2 herds (2.5%) were infected with *B. hyodysenteriae*, with a within-herd prevalence of 25–30% (Stege et al. 2000). In Sweden, a survey of diagnostic submissions over the period 1996–2003 indicated that SD remains a substantial ongoing clinical problem (Råsbäck et al. 2004). In parts of Europe, particularly where there are large numbers of pig units in close proximity to each other, the disease may be more widespread. In Poland, fecal samples from 8 of 23 (34.8%) herds with diarrhea were positive for *B.
*Porphyromonas hyo synthesiae* (Plawinska et al. 2004). In Spain, fecal samples from 86 of 225 (38.3%) herds with diarrhea contained *B. hyodysenteriae*, with a within–herd prevalence of 45.4% (Carvajal et al. 2003). Among 17 herds with diarrhea in Brazil, 6 (35.3%) were infected with *B. hyodysenteriae* (Barcellos et al. 2000a). In Australia, the disease occurs less commonly than it did 10 years ago, but it is still entrenched in certain large units.

There is little published information about the prevalence of SD in other parts of the world, although the disease is certainly present and is highly likely to be causing problems. For example, SD is reported to have been increasing in incidence in Thailand in recent years, possibly as a result of increased governmental regulations on antimicrobial use (Prapasarakul et al. 2004). Concerns have been expressed elsewhere that the incidence of clinical cases of SD will increase in association with restrictions on growth promoter use and the residence of clinical cases of SD will increase in association with antimicrobial use (Prapasarakul et al. 2004).

The disease occurs less commonly than it did 10 years ago, but it is still entrenched in certain large units.

There is little published information about the prevalence of SD in other parts of the world, although the disease is certainly present and is highly likely to be causing problems. For example, SD is reported to have been increasing in incidence in Thailand in recent years, possibly as a result of increased governmental regulations on antimicrobial use (Prapasarakul et al. 2004). Concerns have been expressed elsewhere that the incidence of clinical cases of SD will increase in association with restrictions on growth promoter use and the residence of clinical cases of SD will increase in association with antimicrobial use (Prapasarakul et al. 2004). It is likely that these agents currently may be masking disease in some infected piggyeries.

### Patterns of Disease in Infected Herds

SD is most commonly observed in grower and finisher pigs, with the disease especially becoming evident a few weeks after pigs are moved from the nursery. This coincides with removal of antimicrobial agents that are frequently administered to weaner pigs to control respiratory and enteric diseases. The disease also is seen in weaners, and may occur in adults, particularly in sows reared outdoors, and occasionally in suckling piglets.

On endemically infected piggeries, clinical signs of SD often recur in a cyclic manner. In large groups of affected pigs, symptoms in individual pigs and in the group as a whole may reappear at 3–4-week intervals. This reappearance often occurs after removal of therapeutic levels of drugs from the water or feed. Asymptomatic pigs also may develop diarrhea following management procedures, such as moving them to new pens, mixing with different animals, weighing, or a change in feed. Stresses such as overcrowding, and exposure to extreme changes in environmental temperatures also may precipitate disease. Where antibiotic medication is routine, any cause of loss of appetite, such as pneumonia, stops the intake of drug and the animal can then succumb to SD. Many pigs that survive the acute phase of the disease do recover from SD, and are capable of resisting subsequent challenge. However, chemotherapy during the acute phase may not allow the pig to initiate an immune response. In outbreaks of SD, morbidity in weaner pigs may approach 90% and mortality may be 30%, depending on the effectiveness of treatment. The severity in chronically affected herds may be mild, and disease may not be clinically evident, particularly if the herd is being medicated. Under experimental conditions in which pigs are not treated, mortality may reach 50%. The occurrence and severity of experimentally induced SD is related to a number of things, including the amount of stress on the pig, the quantity of infectious inoculum administered, the growth-phase of the culture (with active log-phase inoculum being most infectious), the diet, the group size, and the weight of the pig (Jacobson et al. 2004).

### Sources of Infection

On an endemically infected piggery, transmission of infection to susceptible pigs occurs primarily by ingestion of fecal material that originates either from clinically affected pigs or from asymptomatic pigs that are colonized by the spirochete. This sort of transmission is especially likely to occur in single-site, farrow-to-finish herds with continuous flow and poor on-farm biosecurity. Experimentally, transmission has been accomplished by exposure of susceptible pigs to previously infected animals that have had no clinical signs for 70 days (Songer and Harris 1978). *B. hyodysenteriae* in feces may be transmitted by animal caretakers who did not change clothing or footwear between isolation units containing diseased and healthy pigs. Transmission between pens is also likely to occur in older housing systems where open channels draining excreta run between pens. The infectious nature of this material is emphasized by the fact that lagoon water containing effluent of a herd affected with SD produced the disease when administered to susceptible pigs (Glock et al. 1975).

*B. hyodysenteriae* is relatively resistant in the environment of a pig house, particularly in feces in moist conditions. For example, Chia and Taylor (1978) demonstrated that *B. hyodysenteriae* will survive in dysenteric feces diluted in water for 48 days at between 0°C and 10°C, although it survived for only 7 days at 25°C, and less than 24 hours at 37°C. In a more recent study, *B. hyodysenteriae* survived for 10 days in soil held at 10°C, but this increased to 78 days in soil in the presence of 10% pig feces, and was 112 days in pure pig feces (Boye et al. 2001). Under laboratory conditions, *B. hyodysenteriae* survives at minus 80°C for more than 10 years.

Other potential reservoirs of infection on a piggery include feral and other animals. For example, *B. hyodysenteriae* was isolated from the feces of a dog that frequented pens containing pigs affected with SD (Songer et al. 1978). The organism also has been isolated from field mice captured on farms on which there were pigs affected with the disease (Joens and Kinyon 1982; Fellström et al. 2004). Hampson et al. (1991) isolated *B. hyodysenteriae* from the feces of a wild rat living on an Australian piggyery where SD was present. Mice probably represent a greater risk for recycling of infection than rats, since experimentally inoculated mice shed *B. hyodysenteriae* in their feces for over 180 days (Joens 1980), and rats apparently shed it for only 2 days (Chia 1977). Under experimental conditions, pigs exposed to the feces of infected mice developed clinical symptoms of SD within 11 days after the first contact with mouse
feces (Joens 1980). *B. hyodysenteriae* has also been isolated from the feet and feces of seagulls frequenting outdoor pig herds in the U.K. (J. R. Thomson, unpublished data). This suggests that transmission of infection between neighboring units by birds is a risk, particularly in outdoor farming systems.

Most new outbreaks of SD are associated with the introduction of asymptomatic carrier pigs into a herd, particularly where these new animals are not quarantined and/or treated prophylactically. However, outbreaks of the disease also occur in herds with no history of introduction of new animals. In these cases infection may be introduced through contaminated feed or animal trucks, or by visitors or others who have had contact with pigs on infected farms. When investigating risk factors for SD, Robertson et al. (1992) found a high odds ratio for infection for both allowing visitors onto farms, and there being rodents present. On the other hand, provision of boots and protective clothing for visitors, and the presence of security fencing around piggeries were protective. Interestingly, the use of home-mixed feed and acquisition of replacement breeders from the same source each year also both were protective.

**Molecular Epidemiology**

In recent years there has been an increased interest in understanding the molecular epidemiology of *B. hyodysenteriae* infections, particularly in the context of the need to understand and control the dissemination of problematic strains with reduced susceptibility to antimicrobials. The earliest strain-typing method used was serotyping, based on the LOS antigens (Baum and Joens 1979). It soon became apparent that a large number of serologically distinct strains of *B. hyodysenteriae* existed, with, for example, 91 Australian isolates being divided into eight serogroups (Combs et al. 1992). Interest in serotyping was stimulated by the finding that immunity against *B. hyodysenteriae* infection in a porcine colonic-loop model was largely LOS-serotype specific (Joens et al. 1983). In turn, this meant that bacterin vaccines would have to contain strains of the appropriate serotypes for use in a particular area, so these serotypes had to be determined. Subsequently, the use of bacterin vaccines for control of SD has not had great commercial success, so interest in serotyping has waned. Studies using MLEE showed that strains with the same serotype were not necessarily closely related genetically, and closely related strains were not necessarily of the same serotype (Lee et al. 1993). Other DNA-based typing techniques that have been applied to study the molecular epidemiology of *B. hyodysenteriae* include DNA restriction endonuclease analysis (Combs et al. 1992; Harel et al. 1994), DNA restriction fragment polymorphism analysis (Fisher et al. 1997), random amplification of polymorphic DNA (Dugourd et al. 1996), and pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) (Atyeo et al. 1999a). The latter technique now is most frequently applied, and, although DNA banding patterns for *B. hyodysenteriae* are usually not as clear as those for *B. pilosicoli*, PFGE has proved very useful for epidemiological studies—such as tracing strains with reduced susceptibility to tiamulin (Karlsson et al. 2004). All techniques have shown the species to be made up of large numbers of genetically distinct strains. In contrast to the situation with *B. pilosicoli*, generally only one strain of *B. hyodysenteriae* is found on a given infected piggery (Combs et al. 1992). Where two strains are found, one may have emerged as a variant of the original strain (Atyeo et al. 1999a, b). In two separate studies, strain-typing techniques have been used to demonstrate the presence of the same strain of *B. hyodysenteriae* in pigs and rats (Hampson et al. 1991) and pigs and mice (Fellström et al. 2004) on infected piggeries.

**FINANCIAL IMPACT**

SD causes considerable financial loss due to mortality, decreased growth rate, poor feed conversion, and expenses for treatment. Less tangible costs arise from the necessity to implement preventative measures in herds that do not have the disease, and particularly from the disruption to the supply and movement of pigs when the disease becomes introduced into stock in large breeding company herds. In the latter situation, the company’s losses potentially can be enormous. There have been no recent evaluations of these costs, but older figures illustrate how expensive this disease can be. For example, Cutler and Gardiner (1988) considered it to be the most costly endemic pig disease in Australia. Lysons (1983) calculated that in-feed medication for SD cost £1.50–£5.00 ($2.60–$8.60) per pig. Wood and Lysons (1988) demonstrated that the feed-conversion efficiency ratio in an infected herd deteriorated by 0.58, a cost increase of £7.31 ($12.60) per pig sold, and the cost of medication was £1.38 ($2.40) per pig. Walter and Kinyon (1990) found that the cost of medicating an infected herd was $8.30 per pig marketed, and that medication costs were reduced to US$0.08 per pig after eradication. Polson et al. (1992) projected the financial impact of SD via four simulation scenarios: SD-free, endemic SD, eradication by medication and disinfection, and total depopulation/repopulation. Net present value, internal rate of return, and benefit/cost ratio were calculated for each simulation scenario over a 10-year period. The profit margin per 100 kg liveweight produced was as follows: SD-free, $7.44; endemic SD, $1.67; eradication, $4.93; and depopulation/repopulation, $0.07. Ten years ago, total national losses to the U.S. swine industry were estimated to be $115.2 million (Duhamel and Joens 1994).

**PATHOGENESIS**

The pathogenesis of SD is complex and not completely understood. An important feature of the infection is the fact that various species of anaerobic bacteria that nor-
mally form part of the microbiota of the swine colon and cecum act synergistically with *B. hyodysenteriae*, facilitating spirochete colonization and augmenting inflammation and lesion production (Whipp et al. 1979; Joens et al. 1981). The diet consumed by pigs has a strong influence on the density and composition of the colonic microbiota (Durmic et al. 1998; Leser et al. 2000). Consistent with this, and consistent with there being a role for some other members of the normal microbiota in full expression of SD, it has been reported that colonization of *B. hyodysenteriae* can be inhibited by feeding pigs highly digestible diets that result in reduced fermentative activity in the large intestine (Pluske et al. 1996, 1998; Siba et al. 1996). Colonization of the ceca of mice with *B. hyodysenteriae* also can be influenced by diet and by the composition of the microbiota (Suenaga and Yamazaki 1984; Nibblink and Wanneumuehler 1992). Nevertheless, emphasizing the complexity of this situation, similar changes in the colonic microenvironment and/or inhibition of spirochetal colonization in pigs have not always been obtained using experimental diets designed to inhibit *B. hyodysenteriae* colonization (Durmic et al. 2000; Lindecrona et al. 2003).

Pigs become affected with SD following ingestion of dysenteric feces containing *B. hyodysenteriae*. Under experimental conditions an inoculum of \(10^5\) colony-forming units (cfu) is usually sufficient to produce SD (Kinyon et al. 1977), although much higher dose rates (e.g., \(10^{10}\) cfu) often are used for experimental challenge (e.g., Hampson et al. 1993). Optimal colonization is achieved using actively motile bacterial cells in mid-log phase and repeating the oral challenge daily over 2 or 3 days. Presumably the bacteria normally survive the acidic environment of the stomach protected in feces, and eventually they arrive at the large intestine.

As previously discussed under “Virulence Attributes,” spirochetal proliferation and colonization of the mucosa in the large intestine require a number of specialized bacterial features. These include the ability of *B. hyodysenteriae* to survive in the anaerobic environment of the large intestine, to utilize available substrate, to penetrate and move through viscous mucus down a chemotactic gradient into the crypts, and to avoid potential oxygen toxicity at the surface of the colonic mucosa. In infected pigs, the spirochetes may be seen close to epithelial cells in the lumen and crypts of the cecum and colon (Wilcock and Olander 1979a, b). At these sites they stimulate an outpouring of mucus into the lumen. Clinical signs and lesions of SD start to develop as numbers of spirochetes reach \(10^6/\text{cm}^2\) of mucosa (Hughes et al. 1977; Whipp et al. 1979). Spirochetes first appear in the feces 1–4 days before diarrhea commences (Kinyon et al. 1977). At this time, there is a shift in the composition of the rest of the colonic microflora, from predominantly gram-positive bacteria in healthy animals, to mainly gram-negative organisms in pigs with dysentery (Pohlenz et al. 1984).

It is not known whether spirochetal attachment to epithelial cells is an important feature of the disease. Both Knoop et al. (1979) and Bowden et al. (1989) demonstrated in vitro attachment of *B. hyodysenteriae* to animal cell cultures. Bowden et al. (1989) concluded that the *B. hyodysenteriae* binding adhesins for cultured Henlé intestinal epithelial (HIE 407) cells contain sialic acid residues. In these studies, cellular damage and invasion of the cultured cells did not occur. Although *B. hyodysenteriae* can be seen within epithelial cells, particularly goblet cells, and in the lamina propria of tissues with typical lesions, this invasion does not seem to be essential for lesion production (Glock et al. 1974).

Although the mechanism of tissue destruction in SD has not been fully elucidated, the hemolysin(s) and LOS of *B. hyodysenteriae* may play a role (see section on virulence). These toxic substances presumably act locally to disrupt the adjacent epithelial barrier in the colon, resulting in epithelial sloughing and subsequent submucosal invasion by spirochetes as well as other secondary bacteria and the protozoan *Balantidium coli*. *B. hyodysenteriae* does not invade beyond the lamina propria of the large intestine, and the lack of *B. hyodysenteriae* and significant lesions in other organs implies that the entire pathogenesis of the disease can be directly attributed to the enteric lesions (Kinyon et al. 1980). The primary systemic effects of typical SD are the result of fluid and electrolyte imbalance induced by enteritis. The pathogenesis of peracute deaths is not known, but may be attributable to endotoxin release.

A series of studies have been conducted on the pathophysiology of SD (Argenzio et al. 1980; Argenzio 1981; Schmall et al. 1983). These have shown that, in contrast to what might be expected from histologic interpretations, the diarrhea observed in pigs with SD is not the result of increased mucosal permeability and leakage of protein and extracellular fluid from blood to lumen because of increased tissue hydrostatic pressures. Instead, the fluid loss appears to be the result of colonic malabsorption as a consequence of the failure of the epithelial transport mechanisms to actively transport sodium and chloride ions from lumen to blood. Furthermore, cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) and cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) levels in colonic mucosa of infected pigs were normal, but their response to a stimulus (theophylline) was markedly attenuated. Thus, these studies strongly suggest that an enterotoxin and/or prostaglandins released from the inflamed mucosa are not involved in the production of diarrhea. Therefore, the pathogenesis of dysentery is unlike the diarrhea induced by enterotoxigenic *E. coli* or *Salmonella* spp. Consistent with this, Whipp et al. (1978) reported that sterile filtrates of broth cultures of *B. hyodysenteriae* failed to cause fluid accumulation in ligated colonic loops of pigs or in suckling mice. Furthermore, sterile filtrates did not produce changes in Y-1 adrenal cells. Inactivated whole cells and sonically disrupted suspensions of *B. hyo-
**odysenteriae** also do not cause lesions or fluid accumulation in ligated colonic segments of pigs.

Studies of small-intestinal function in infected pigs indicated that the glucose-stimulated fluid-absorptive mechanism was intact and that no additional small-intestinal secretory component was present. Therefore, the fluid losses are exclusively the result of failure of the colon to reabsorb the animals’ own endogenous secretions. Because as much as 30–50% of the extracellular fluid volume of these animals, in the form of endogenous secretions, is presented daily to the colon for absorption, colonic absorptive failure alone is sufficient to explain the progressive dehydration and death associated with the disease. These studies also imply that oral glucose-electrolyte solutions would be useful as a therapeutic measure in restoring these extracellular fluid losses.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

The incubation period of SD is variable. Specific reports range from 2 days to 3 months, but the disease usually occurs within 10–14 days in naturally exposed pigs. Diarrhea is the most consistent sign, but the severity may be quite variable. The disease usually spreads gradually through an infected herd, with new animals being affected daily. The course varies not only between individual animals within a herd but also between herds.

Occasional animals are peracutely affected and die after a period of a few hours with little or no evidence of diarrhea. The first evidence of the disease in most animals is soft, yellow to gray feces. Partial anorexia and increased rectal temperature of 104–105°F (40–40.5°C) may be evident in some animals. A few hours to a few days following infection, large amounts of mucus and often flecks of blood are found in the feces. As the diarrhea progresses, watery stools containing blood, mucus, and shreds of white mucofibrinous exudate are seen with concurrent staining of the perineum. The majority of animals recover over a period of several weeks, but their growth rate remains depressed. Where prolonged diarrhea occurs it leads to dehydration with increased thirst, and affected animals become weak, incoordinated, and emaciated. Where death occurs it is associated with dehydration, acidosis, and hyperkalemia. The cause of occasional peracute deaths is not known.

Suckling pigs are not commonly affected, except in older piglets in gilt litters where the gilt has not been exposed to *B. hyodysenteriae*, and in piglets in newly infected herds. Infected piglets may have catarrhal enteritis without hemorrhage.

**LESIONS**

**Gross Lesions**
Pigs that have died from SD are often emaciated and may have a rough hair coat with fecal staining. Dehydration is usually evident. A consistent characteristic is the presence of lesions in the large intestine but not in the small intestine, often with a sharp line of demarcation at the ileocecal junction.

Typical changes in the acute stages of SD include hyperemia and edema of the walls and mesentery of the large intestine. Mesenteric lymph nodes may be swollen and small amounts of clear ascitic fluid may be present. White, slightly raised foci on the serosa, particularly in subacute or chronic infections are caused by aggregates of mononuclear cells, mainly lymphocytes in the submucosa that form part of the inflammatory reaction. There is obvious swelling of the mucosa, with loss of the typical rugose appearance. The mucosa is usually covered by mucus and fibrin with flecks of blood, and the colonic contents are soft to watery and contain exudate.

As the condition progresses, the amount of edema within the wall of the large intestine may decrease. Mucosal lesions may become more severe with increased fibrin exudation and may form thick, mucofibrinous pseudomembranes containing blood. As lesions become more chronic, the mucosal surface is usually covered by a thin, dense, fibrinous exudate, often giving the appearance of marked necrosis, which is quite superficial. Lesions can be found in clinically healthy pigs and appear as discrete areas of reddening of the mucosa, usually covered with some mucus, but with colon contents of normal consistency.

The distribution of lesions within the large intestine varies. In some instances the entire organ may be involved, while at other times only certain segments may be affected. Lesions tend to become more diffuse in the later stages of the disease.

Other lesions may include hepatic congestion and hyperemia or congestion of the gastric fundus. However, these lesions are also associated with other diseases and are not specific for SD. The stomach may be full.

**Microscopic Lesions**
The only significant microscopic lesions are found in the cecum, colon, and rectum. Typical acute lesions include obvious thickening of the mucosa and submucosa due to vascular congestion and extravasation of fluids and leukocytes. There is also hyperplasia of goblet cells, and the epithelial cells at the base of the crypts may be elongated and hyperchromic in appearance. The spirochetes may enter goblet cells in the colonic crypts, and penetrate intercellular gaps in the epithelium (Sueyoshi and Adachi 1990). There is an associated loss of cohesion between colonic enterocytes, with subsequent necrosis and shedding of the epithelium. The organisms may attach to the lumenal surface and enter these disrupted epithelial cells. Increased numbers of various types of leukocytes may be present in the lamina propria, with excessive accumulation of neutrophils in and around capillaries near the lumen. Some spirochetes also may be observed in the lamina propria, particularly around blood vessels. Bleeding occurs from small vessels...
located under areas of eroded epithelium, which also may be invaded by other members of the colonic microflora. Blood becomes trapped in the overlying mucus, producing the typical blood-flecked appearance of the colonic contents in the acute stages of the disease.

Later changes include accumulation of large amounts of fibrin, mucus, and cellular debris in mucosal crypts and on the luminal surface of the large intestine. Superficial necrosis of the mucosa may be extensive, but deep ulceration is not typical. Increased numbers of neutrophils may be seen throughout the lamina propria. Large spirochetes with the appearance of *B. hyodysenteriae* are found in the lumen and within crypts at all stages of the disease but are most numerous in the acute phase (Figure 48.4).

Chronic changes are not particularly specific, with less hyperemia and edema being present. There is often more advanced superficial necrosis of the mucosa, which usually has a thick, fibrinous pseudomembrane.

Ultrastructural changes during the early stages of SD have been characterized. Large numbers of spirochetes with the appearance of *B. hyodysenteriae* are found at the luminal surface and within crypts (Figure 48.4). Adjacent epithelial cells have lesions, including destruction of microvilli, swelling of the mitochondria and endoplasmic reticulum, loss of other organelles, and decreased density. As damage becomes more pronounced, the epithelial cells often shrink and become dark. *B. hyodysenteriae* invade epithelial cells, goblet cells, and the lamina propria, and may be found in large clusters within some epithelial cells (Figure 48.5), suggesting that intracellular multiplication may occur (Taylor and Blakemore 1971; Glock et al. 1974).

**Hematology**

Hematologic changes in SD include marked alterations in many measurable factors. Total leukocyte counts may increase, but not consistently. A marked left shift usually occurs, with high numbers of immature neutrophils in circulation. Other changes include early transient increases in erythrocyte sedimentation rates and fibrinogen levels. Packed-cell volumes vary but do not indicate significant blood loss, and total plasma protein may be elevated as a result of dehydration. Serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase levels remain normal.

The most significant changes occur in blood electrolytes. Serum sodium, chloride, and bicarbonate levels decrease, and a marked metabolic acidosis develops, which may be fatal. Terminal hyperkalemia may be noted, and together with acidemia may be a significant cause of death (Glock 1971).

**IMMUNITY**

Pigs that have recovered from SD may be protected against subsequent experimental challenge with *B. hyodysenteriae* for up to 17 weeks (Olson 1974; Joens et al. 1979). Nevertheless, a proportion of recovered pigs (7–43%) remain susceptible (Jenkins 1978; Joens et al.
1979; Rees et al. 1989a), and about 10% may become fully protected only after two previous bouts of disease (Rees et al. 1989a).

As previously stated, immunity to B. hyodysenteriae appears to be quite strongly serotype-specific, directed against LOS antigens present in the cell envelope (Joens et al. 1983). Following experimental infection or vaccination with a bacterin vaccine, there is some limited protection against serotypes of B. hyodysenteriae other than those to which the animals have been exposed (Kennedy et al. 1992; Nuessen and Joens 1982; Parizek et al. 1985). This suggests that besides being targeted at LOS antigens, protective immune responses also are directed against other spirochetal components that are common to isolates of different serotypes.

Changes occur in both antibody titers and in cell-mediated immunity in pigs with SD, but their importance is unclear. Titers of serum IgG against B. hyodysenteriae correlate with the duration of clinical signs, and IgA titers in colonic washes are indicative of recent exposure (Rees et al. 1989b). Neither of these titers is strongly correlated with protection from developing SD (Joens et al. 1982, 1989; Fernie et al. 1983; Rees et al. 1989b). Other studies suggest that complement components, in conjunction with immune serum, may be involved in the clearance of B. hyodysenteriae from the colon (Joens et al. 1985). Cell-mediated immunity also may be involved in protection, since there is evidence of inhibition of peripheral blood leukocyte migration, a delayed hypersensitivity response, and a T cell proliferative response to B. hyodysenteriae antigens in pigs convalescent from SD (Jenkins et al. 1982; Kennedy et al. 1992). In contrast, in mouse models of the disease, no significant changes in T cell subsets in the lamina propria were observed (Nibbelink and Wannemuehler 1990). It seems unlikely that there are immune-mediated components to the lesions of SD, because in mouse models the changes observed in numbers of mast cells in the lamina propria are not correlated with lesion development (Nibbelink and Wannemuehler 1990). Recent studies have identified CD8αα cell proliferation in pigs recovered from SD (Waters et al. 2000a). Most recently, Jonsson et al. (2004) investigated levels of circulating leukocytes and lymphocyte subpopulations in pigs before and after experimentally induced SD. By comparing results from pigs that did or did not succumb to disease, the authors deduced that γδ T cells and CD8+ cells may be associated with susceptibility to infection, and monocytes and CD4+ CD8+ T cells appear to be the major responding lymphocytes. Further work is required to understand the mechanisms involved in host immunity to B. hyodysenteriae.

**DIAGNOSIS**

**Clinical Features**

The diagnosis of SD depends primarily on differentiating the condition from other potential causes of diarrhea. Factors that should be considered include history, clinical signs, gross lesions, microscopic lesions, as well as isolation or detection of B. hyodysenteriae.

SD may occur as a persistent problem within a herd, with phases of increased or decreased severity. Diagnostic problems are most likely to occur in a herd in which the disease has not been previously diagnosed. History may be helpful because it is not unusual to have an outbreak following the introduction of new (carrier) animals into the herd. Other situations that disrupt the normal environment may also precipitate outbreaks in herds that have been exposed to B. hyodysenteriae but in which the overt disease has not been detected.

Clinical signs such as depression, dehydration, and diarrhea with mucus and/or blood in the feces are quite suggestive but offer only presumptive evidence. Temperature increases are too moderate and inconsistent to be of any diagnostic benefit. Hematologic changes as previously described are characteristic, but not sufficiently unique to be of any great differential value.

**Necropsy and Histopathological Findings**

In acutely infected animals the essential finding at necropsy is diffuse enteritis limited to the large intestine. Mucofibrinous exudate and free blood in the lumen are characteristic of SD, but not pathognomonic. Typical microscopic lesions of mucosal edema and microfibrinous enteritis with superficial erosion, particularly if associated with the presence of numerous spirochetal bacteria, are very suggestive of SD. The organisms can best be demonstrated by staining with Warthin-Starry, Victoria blue 4-R, or Goodpasture stains.

**Laboratory Diagnosis**

**Sample Selection.** Diagnostic samples are best taken from several acutely affected animals that have not been medicated. Colonic contents from recently necropsied animals are optimal, but fecal samples obtained from several animals with mucohemorrhagic diarrhea are also satisfactory. Where disease is mild or subclinical, it may be necessary to examine very large numbers of fecal samples before a positive specimen is identified. Fellström et al. (2001) have recommended pooling batches of five rectal swabs to increase the sensitivity of detection in such herds. Samples should be transported to the laboratory with care taken not to let them dry out. Serum samples from convalescent or slaughter-age animals can also be taken where there is access to a laboratory that can evaluate them for specific antibody titers.

**Visual Examination of Samples.** It is usual to conduct direct examination of smears prepared on slides from colonic mucosa or feces of pigs suspected of being affected with SD looking for the presence of characteristic spirochetal bacteria. Clearly, this cannot distinguish between B. hyodysenteriae, the pathogenic B. pilosicoli, or other commensal spirochetes. Workers in the United States commonly use acridine or methylene blue stains, and some may use Giemsa or other stains. Any stain that highlights the typical spirochetal structure potentially can be useful, but Warthin-Starry staining is the gold standard in some laboratories.
Kingdom have traditionally utilized an absorbed antiserum in an indirect fluorescent antibody test to detect *B. hyodysenteriae* in such smears (Hunter and Saunders 1977). Unfortunately, even with extensive cross-absorption, it is technically difficult to prepare standard high titer polyclonal sera that are specific for *B. hyodysenteriae*, so false positive reactions can occur using this method. The use of specific monoclonal antibodies, as described by Lee and Hampson (1996), should improve this situation. Unfortunately, attempts to use this monoclonal antibody bound to magnetic beads to extract *B. hyodysenteriae* from feces has not increased the sensitivity of detection over that obtained with other currently used diagnostic techniques (Corona-Barrera et al. 2004).

**Culture and Identification.** A definitive diagnosis of SD requires specific demonstration of *B. hyodysenteriae* in the colonic mucosa or feces. This has traditionally been done by anaerobic culture, followed by examination of phenotypic properties of the organism. Optimal culture media and conditions are as described earlier under “Characteristics of *B. hyodysenteriae,*” but with the addition of 400 µg/mL spectinomycin and 25 µg/mL each of colistin and vancomycin to the agar to make the medium selective (Jenkinson and Wingar 1981). Alternatively, a more selective medium with lower concentrations of the previous three antimicrobials, but with 25 µg/mL spiramycin and 12.5 µg/mL rifampin also added, is frequently used (Kunkle and Kinyon 1988). Recently it has been suggested that isolation can be improved by briefly preincubating the sample in a selective broth medium prior to plating out (Calderado et al. 2001).

Pigs acutely affected with SD possess large numbers (10⁸–10⁹/g) of *B. hyodysenteriae* in their colonic mucosa and feces, and these are readily isolated. By contrast, pigs that are asymptomatic may only shed the organism periodically at detectable levels in their feces. Furthermore, medications commonly used to treat or prevent SD may reduce the number of organisms below culturally detectable levels. Therefore, caution must be used in interpreting the results of negative culture results, particularly from fecal samples.

On primary isolation, *B. hyodysenteriae* produces zones of strong beta hemolysis in which colonies are hard to distinguish, but a film of growth in the hemolytic zone is grossly visible. At 48-hour intervals for up to 10 days. False negative culture results can occur for a number of reasons, including inappropriate sample handling or storage between collection and culture—for example, high temperature or freezing, drying out, or delay during transport.

**Phenotypic Tests for *B. hyodysenteriae.*** After a strongly hemolytic spirochete is isolated, it is usual to examine selected biochemical properties, as described earlier under “Characteristics of *B. hyodysenteriae.*” It is important to obtain a pure culture of the isolate before phenotypic characterization, which can prove difficult unless microbiology technicians are highly experienced in this field. Mixed spirochete species can be present within the confluent culture growth, and exacting procedures are required to clone individual isolates to purity. Antigen detection-based methods have been described that also may help to confirm an isolate’s identity, although these largely have been superceded by PCR testing. Methods include using a fluorescent antibody test with absorbed antiserum (as described for fecal smears), a growth-inhibition test (Lemcke and Burrows 1979), and a rapid slide agglutination test (Burrows and Lemcke 1981).

**Nucleic Acid-Based Techniques.** In an attempt to increase the sensitivity of detection from clinical material, and to improve the identification process of spirochetal isolates, nucleic acid probes and polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification of specific sequences have been developed for *B. hyodysenteriae* and other intestinal spirochetes. Probes have been used to detect 10⁵ cells of *B. hyodysenteriae* per gram of pig feces (Jensen et al. 1990), but the technique is quite technically difficult and time-consuming. The use of probes in fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) on fixed colonic tissue is, however, a potentially useful tool for examining aspects of the pathogenesis of SD (Boye et al. 1998). The PCR is a simpler technique and generally can detect many fewer organisms. The most usual targets for DNA amplification are the 23S rRNA gene (Leser et al. 1997) and the NADH oxidase gene (Atyeo et al. 1999b). The PCR is usually conducted on growth harvested from the primary isolation plate. Even under these circumstances, where results are obtained in 3–5 days, PCR offers a more rapid, sensitive, and specific approach to diagnosis than does the more routine method of isolation followed by biochemical identification of the spirochetes (Atyeo et al. 1998). Use of PCR on growth from the primary isolation plates also is compatible with obtaining spirochetal isolates for subsequent antimicrobial sensitivity testing and/or strain typing, where required.

Another PCR-based methodology that can be used to detect and identify intestinal spirochetes to species level involves amplification of portions of specific genes, followed by restriction enzyme digestion of the products to give species-specific banding patterns after gel electrophoresis. Genes that have been used in this way include the 16S rRNA gene (Stanton et al. 1997a), the 23S rRNA gene (Barcellos et al. 2000b; Thomson et al. 2001), and the NADH-oxidase gene (Rohde et al. 2002). Unfortunately, in the U.K. “atypical” isolates of *B. hyodysenteriae* have been obtained that fail to amplify in this 23S rDNA PCR (Thomson et al. 2001).

Recently, the basic PCR test has been streamlined, such that it can be conducted as a duplex reaction iden-
tifying both *B. hyodysenteriae* and *B. pilosicoli* in DNA extracted directly from fecal samples (La et al. 2003). Potentially this test gives the opportunity to obtain same-day results, and it is also specific and highly sensitive for detection when applied to spiked fecal samples. It is anticipated that these tests will be improved further by the impending introduction of real-time PCR for *Brachyspira* species.

Molecular-based methods can be used to detect *B. hyodysenteriae* DNA in samples where spirochetes are dead on arrival at the laboratory (spirochetes are present in the sample but show lack of motility). In this case direct extraction of DNA from feces for PCR testing can be done in addition to attempted bacterial culture.

**Serologic Assays.** Several serologic tests have been reported that detect antibodies to *B. hyodysenteriae* in serum of experimentally affected pigs (reviewed by La and Hampson 2001). Generally these tests have not been based on species-specific antigens and consequently have had low specificity and/or sensitivity. Tests have included microtiter agglutination (Joens et al. 1978), indirect fluorescent antibody, passive hemolysis (Jenkins et al. 1976), and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) using various plate-coating antigens (Burrows et al. 1984). The most useful ELISA has used LOS as plate-coating antigen (Joens et al. 1982; Egan et al. 1983). This type of ELISA has proved helpful for use in identifying infected herds, but not for detection of individual pigs with SD. LOS-based ELISA systems also have the disadvantage that they require a knowledge of the serotypes of organisms present in the herds to be tested (Mhoma et al. 1992) so that the appropriate LOS can be used as plate-coating antigen, and consequently they are now rarely used. Recently, an ELISA using recombinant BmpB (the 29.7 Kda outer membrane lipoprotein of *B. hyodysenteriae*) as the plate-coating antigen has been described (La and Hampson 2001). Further work is required to evaluate this ELISA under field conditions before it can be made available for more general use.

**Differential Diagnosis**

A number of enteric diseases may be confused with SD. Also it is important to realize that SD often occurs concurrently with infections with other enteric pathogens (Møller et al. 1998; Thomson et al. 1998). Proliferative enteropathy caused by *Lawsonia intracellularis* may clinically resemble the signs of SD. However, unlike proliferative enteropathy, SD does not affect the small intestine. A definitive diagnosis of proliferative enteropathy depends on a positive PCR test from feces, herd serology, and/or demonstration of typical pathology including the presence of *L. intracellularis* in crypt enterocytes.

Salmonellosis, in particular infection with *Salmonella enterica* serovar Choleraesuis, easily can be confused with SD because clinical signs and lesions may be quite similar. Hemorrhage or necrosis in parenchymatous organs and lymph nodes may be expected with salmonellosis but not with SD. Mucosal lesions may be found in the small intestine with salmonellosis but not with uncomplicated SD. Deep ulcerative enteric lesions are also much more typical of salmonellosis. The definitive diagnosis depends on lack of *B. hyodysenteriae* in the mucosa of the large intestine and the isolation of *Salmonella* serovars from the intestine or other organs such as lymph nodes or spleen. The mere isolation of *Salmonella* does not constitute a positive diagnosis, since both normal animals and animals with SD may harbor these bacteria.

Trichuriasis may be differentiated on the basis of the presence of numerous *Trichuris suis* in the large intestine and the lack of *B. hyodysenteriae*. Concurrent infections can occur, and possible potentiation of SD by *T. suis* has been postulated.

Gastric ulcers and other hemorrhagic conditions may cause the presence of blood in the feces and confusion with SD. These conditions are easily differentiated at necropsy since they generally involve the anterior digestive tract. Feces also tend to be “tarry” due to digestion of the blood.

“Colitis” is a diet-related disease syndrome of growing pigs that can resemble SD both in clinical signs and in postmortem appearance (Lysons et al. 1988). There has been some confusion over this condition, and some reported cases actually might have been colonic spirochetosis/intestinal spirochetosis, caused by infection with *Brachyspira pilosicoli* (see Chapter 46). Typically, weaner or grower/finisher pigs aged 7 weeks or more are affected. They may develop a watery scour, or sometimes just soft feces, and lose body condition. Lesions are confined to the colon. In the early stages of the disease, the large intestine is filled with liquid contents and there is a mild reddening of the colon. Pigs in which the disease persists can become thin, excrete mucus in the feces, and have a mucoid or fibrous exudate on the mucosal surface of the colon. To eliminate SD from the diagnosis, it is necessary to autopsy pigs in the early stages of the disease and to carry out extensive screening for the presence of *B. hyodysenteriae*. Clearly, colonic spirochetosis represents the most difficult differential diagnosis, since it so closely resembles mild cases of SD. Although it responds to similar treatment, an accurate diagnosis is important because, in general, it has much less economic impact in individual herds than SD. Furthermore, it appears that aspects of the epidemiology of colonic spirochetosis differ from those described for SD (see Chapter 46).

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL**

**Principles of Antimicrobial Treatment**

Prior to implementing medication, the diagnosis of SD should be confirmed. At the same time it is important to
have a clear idea of the overall goal of the treatment and to have a long-term strategy for dealing with the disease on the farm. Eradication should be the preferred option, and this is discussed in a later section.

At present there are only a few effective drugs available for treatment of SD, and in recent years it has become increasingly evident that the development of resistance of *B. hyodysenteriae* strains to antimicrobials such as pleuromutilins presents a potential long-term threat to the pig industry. Therefore, the use of such drugs must be restricted to specific therapy and, specifically, they should be reserved for attempts to eradicate the disease or for use in cases where other drugs or control measures are not effective.

The route of administration of antimicrobials is also an important consideration. Severely affected animals may require parental (intramuscular) treatment for, e.g., 3 days; however, in most cases medication via the drinking water for 5–7 days is the preferable way of treating acute SD. If medication via the water is not possible, in-feed medication for 7–10 days may be considered, although this has the disadvantage that affected animals may have a low feed intake. Medication of acute SD should always be accomplished by free access to drinking water, with or without supplementation with electrolytes. Treatment of acute SD may be followed by in-feed medication at subtherapeutic levels for 2–4 weeks to prevent reinfection.

Medication should be used in conjunction with management practices that reduce the risk of reinfection of medicated pigs and spread of infection to other groups or batches. All-in/all-out management of pig buildings with thorough cleaning and disinfection between batches is an important part of the control process. Ideally, affected batches should be moved to clean buildings at the end of the course of SD medication, thereby breaking the cycle of infection. Careful disposal of infected bedding materials, the use of boot scrubbers and disinfectant footbaths, cleaning and disinfection of equipment used in infected areas and changing of protective clothing are all vital parts of successful control procedures. Furthermore, because outbreaks of SD are often associated with conditions that produce stress, such as pig handling, crowding, transportation, severe weather conditions or dietary changes, it is important to minimize these stresses where possible. Attention also should be paid to the form and composition of the diet, to determine whether this might be predisposing to disease expression (see section on pathogenesis).

A list of the four drugs most commonly used for the treatment of SD—tiamulin, valnemulin, tylosin, and lincomycin—together with their dose rates and potential side effects, is presented in Table 48.1. Based on consideration of pharmacokinetic properties and in vitro susceptibility data, it appears that the pleuromutilins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dosage and duration</th>
<th>Side effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tiamulin</td>
<td>10mg/kg bw; im for 1–3 days.</td>
<td>Rare: erythema. Local reactions at the injection site. Lethal side effects may occur in combination with ionophors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8mg/kg bw; po for 5–7 days in drinking water.</td>
<td>Adverse effects, including lethargy, depression, erythema, edema, pyrexia, ataxia, anorexia, and deaths have been reported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Or: in-feed medication with 100 ppm for 7–10 days, followed by 30–40 ppm for 2–4 weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valnemulin</td>
<td>In-feed medication 3–4 mg/kg bw for 1–4 weeks.</td>
<td>Diarrhea, pruritus, erythema, rectal edema, and prolapse have been reported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tylosin</td>
<td>10mg/kg bw; im twice daily for 3–5 days.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Or: 5–10 mg/kg bw; po in drinking water for 5–7 days.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Followed by: in-feed medication with 100 grams per ton feed for 3 weeks, followed by in-feed medication 40 grams per ton feed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lincomycin</td>
<td>8mg/kg bw; po in drinking water. Not to be used for more than 10 days and not for use in swine weighing more than 250 pounds (115 kg).</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In-feed medication 100 grams per ton feed for 3 weeks or until signs of disease disappear, followed by 40 grams per ton. Not for use in swine weighing more than 250 pounds (115 kg).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The information in this table is an abbreviated summary of product labeling. For information regarding withdrawal times (which vary extensively between countries), review national regulations and product labels. bw = body weight, im = intramuscular, po = per os (oral).
(tiamulin, valnemulin) are the most suitable antimicrobials available for the treatment of SD (Kitai et al. 1979; Messier et al. 1990; Rønne and Szancer 1990; Walter and Kinyon 1990; Weber and Earley 1991; Binek et al. 1994; Molnar 1996; Cizek et al. 1998; Karlsson et al. 2003). Unfortunately, in several countries such as the U.K. (Gresham et al. 1998), the Czech Republic (Lobova et al. 2004) and Sweden (SV ARM 2004), a decreased susceptibility to tiamulin among *B. hyodysenteriae* isolates has been reported. Strains with high MICs to pleuromutilins also have been reported from Germany (Rohde et al. 2004) and Sweden (SV ARM 2004), a decreased susceptibility to tiamulin among *B. hyodysenteriae* isolates has been reported. Strains with high MICs to pleuromutilins also have been reported from Germany (Rohde et al. 2004). The mechanism(s) of tiamulin resistance by *B. hyodysenteriae* are not known; however, one study indicates that resistance emerges slowly in vitro (Karlsson et al. 2001). Another recent study showed that tiamulin usage was sufficient to select several clones of *B. hyodysenteriae* with decreased tiamulin susceptibility on different farms in Germany (Karlsson et al. 2004). Therefore, to reduce the risk of emerging resistance to pleuromutilins, and if herd records or MIC determinations indicate that other drugs are effective for treatment of SD in a specific herd, such drugs should be preferred over pleuromutilins. The other two commonly used drugs, tylosin and lincomycin, have the disadvantage that high levels of resistance to them have been reported in *Brachyspira* spp., for example by Smith et al. (1991), Binek et al. (1994), Rønne and Szancer (1994), Hommez et al. (1998) and Karlsson et al. (2002, 2003). Macrolide and lincosamide resistance is caused by a single point mutation in the 23S rRNA gene, and tylosin resistance develops within 2 weeks in vitro (Karlsson et al. 1999).

Many other antibacterials, such as bacitracin, spiramycin, gentamicin, dimetridazole, ronidazole, virginiamycin, olaquindox, and carbadox have been used more or less successfully over the years in the treatment and prevention of SD. Unfortunately, the development of resistance by *B. hyodysenteriae* to several of those substances has been reported, and the availability of others is now much reduced internationally. For example, carbadox and olaquindox have been withdrawn from use in the European Union (EU) and in several other countries, while dimetridazole and ronidazole are no longer available either in the EU or the U.S.A. Olaquindox and carbadox usually have low MICs against *B. hyodysenteriae*. Nevertheless, their pharmacokinetic properties result in low concentrations of the drugs in relevant parts of the gastrointestinal tract, and this makes them unsuitable for the treatment of SD—although they work well as an effective prophylaxis (de Graaf et al. 1988).

Hopefully, new drugs, or old substances that have been modified to improve their efficiency, will become available to replace these antimicrobials. For example, acetylisovaleryltylosin (avilosin), a new macrolide antibiotic, recently was shown to prevent clinical SD, as well as to treat the disease when it was used for in-feed medication (Tasker et al. 2004).

Serious losses also may be prevented, even in exposed herds, by the use of growth promoters with antibacterial potential such as salinomycin and monensin (ionophores). It should be noted, though, that toxicity occurs when ionophores are used with pleuromutilins or with other drugs that potentially interfere with hepatic metabolism. For example, severe side effects have been reported when salinomycin was mixed in the feed with pleuromutilins (Kavanagh 1992). Growth promoters with potential antibacterial effects have the disadvantage that they may mask disease in apparently SD-free herds. They should not be used as a substitute for good management.

**Control of Vectors**

Studies using strain detection techniques have strongly indicated that mice and rats can act as a reservoir for *B. hyodysenteriae* in pig herds (Hampson et al. 1991; Fellström et al. 2004). Consequently, lack of efficient rodent control may be an important explanation for failures in SD eradication programs. The role of birds as possible vectors for *B. hyodysenteriae* is unclear, but should not be ignored. *B. hyodysenteriae* or isolates similar to *B. hyodysenteriae* are commonly found in the feces of Swedish mallards (Jansson et al. 2004). Whether these avian isolates are capable of causing disease in pigs is not known, although it was not possible to induce SD in pigs challenged with rhea isolates of *B. hyodysenteriae* (Stanton et al. 1997b). Mechanical transmission of infectious material by birds and other possible wildlife vectors is an important risk factor in outdoor pig units where effective control is impossible.

**Vaccination for SD**

To date vaccination has not played a large role in the control of SD, mainly because of the limited efficacy and availability of such vaccines. Even if available, it is unlikely that they would be used prophylactically in herds free of SD unless there was a perception that the herds were at a high risk of introducing the disease. Generally, if appropriate vaccines were available, they could be used to help manage SD. For example, in herds that were intended to be eradicated, vaccines could be used prior to this to help reduce shedding and environmental contamination. In other infected herds, vaccines could be used to replace or supplement current antimicrobial usage. This would reduce overall herd antimicrobial consumption, and remove selective pressures that might lead to the development of resistance in spirochete strains.

Bacterin vaccines are available commercially in some countries, and may provide a degree of protection against SD (Fernie et al. 1983; Parizék et al. 1985; Hampson et al. 1993; Diego et al. 1995; Waters et al. 2000b). Unfortunately, they tend to be LOS serogroup-specific, which then requires the use of autogenous or multivalent bacterins. Furthermore, they are relatively difficult and costly to produce on a large scale because of the fastidious growth requirements of the spirochete. One
publication reported that immunization with a *B. hyodysenteriae* bacterin actually exacerbated dysentery (Olson et al. 1994). A commercial proteinase-digested bacterin may offer a better level of protection than conventional bacterins, although the cellular immune responses generated by it in pigs were not different from those in bacterin-vaccinated pigs (Waters et al. 2000b).

Several attempts have been made to develop either attenuated or genetically modified live avirulent strains of *B. hyodysenteriae* as vaccines for SD. Naturally avirulent or low-virulence strains have been used experimentally (Hudson et al. 1976), sometimes in combination with bacterins (Lysons et al. 1986), while modified strains have been produced by inducing mutations in genes affecting motility (Rosey et al. 1996; Kennedy et al. 1997), hemolysis (Hyatt et al. 1994), and protection from oxygen toxicity (Stanton et al. 1999). These strains may have a reduced ability to colonize the large intestine, and, probably for this reason, have produced limited protective immunity. To date, none have become commercially available as live vaccines.

The use of recombinant subunit vaccines for the control of SD is an attractive alternative, since the products would be well defined (essential for registration purposes) and relatively easy to produce on a large scale. A recombinant 38-kDa flagellar protein from *B. hyodysenteriae* used as a trial vaccine failed to prevent *B. hyodysenteriae* colonization in pigs (Gabe et al. 1995), but recently the immunogenic 29.7 kDa outer-membrane lipoprotein of *B. hyodysenteriae*, designated BmpB, provided a 50% reduction in incidence of disease in pigs that were vaccinated and then experimentally infected (La et al. 2004). Although protection was not complete, it appears that recombinant vaccines have potential for use in this context. Apart from identifying appropriate recombinant vaccine candidates, a major issue is how to deliver them to pigs in a way to optimize protective immunity in the large intestine. Many different strategies are being considered, but as yet there is no consensus on how best to do this. The large intestine is a difficult site to protect, and ideally a vaccine would prevent colonization rather than just limit the extent of lesion formation. This requires the production of a persistent and effective local immune response.

**Elimination of SD**

**Eradication Programs without Depopulation.** In herds with SD, elimination of the disease should always be the aim, both because of the devastating effect of SD on feed-conversion efficiency and for animal welfare reasons. Furthermore, herds with SD represent a potential risk of disease for other pig herds, and a high consumption of antibacterials in infected herds increases the risk of development of antibacterial resistance and spread of resistant strains. Elimination programs have not always proved successful (Muirhead 1984; Wood and Lysons 1988), so, to improve the chances of success, consider-

1. The diagnosis should be verified by culture, biochemical tests, and/or PCR.
2. Since the herd may be infected by more than one clone of *B. hyodysenteriae*, several isolates should be tested for their susceptibility to antibacterials available for use in an eradication program. Susceptibility testing should use agar dilution or broth dilution to establish minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) values. In most cases pleuromutilins will be the agents of choice.
3. Herds practicing a continuous production system should be encouraged to change their production to a planned system based on batch production before the eradication program is performed.
4. The eradication program should be performed during a warm season since the survival time of *B. hyo-
**dysenteriae** in the environment is reduced and the efficiency of disinfectants is improved at higher temperatures.

5. The number of animals in the herd should be reduced to as few as possible. Ideally, all weaners, growers, and finishers should be removed from the herd before the start of the program.

6. An efficient rodent and insect control program should be introduced and protective measures taken to stop wild birds from entering buildings where pigs are housed.

7. Dogs and cats should not be allowed within the herd area. Alternatively, they should not be allowed to leave the house where they are kept and should be included in the medication program.

8. All possible sanitary measures to reduce environmental contamination with potentially infectious spirochetes should be taken, including thorough cleaning and disinfecting of all areas where pigs are housed or with which they have contact, the watering and feeding systems, all equipment, etc. Cleaning should be performed by high pressure washing with hot water to remove organic matter, followed by disinfection. *B. hyodysenteriae* is sensitive to most of the commonly used disinfectants. Where slatted floors are present, the slats have to be lifted before cleaning/disinfection. Slurry tanks must be emptied and subjected to the same cleaning and disinfection procedures. Effective cleaning and disinfection may be particularly problematic in outdoor production units or units where grower pigs are housed in shelters and bedded on straw or rice hulls over an earth floor. Relocation of cleaned and disinfected outdoor huts to fresh fields and burning any remaining organic material at the old location followed by ploughing and reseeding the ground should be effective in eliminating infection.

9. All sows, gilts, and boars should be medicated through the drinking water or feed for a minimum of 14 days and introduced into cleaned and disinfected buildings. Piglets born during the medication period should be weaned and finished offsite, receiving parenteral treatment with the antimicrobial agent of choice at weaning. All sow and boar accommodation, including the farrowing accommodation must be thoroughly cleaned and disinfected during the medication period. Ideally the program of cleaning should be started in advance of medication so that the buildings are empty for at least 2 weeks after completion of disinfection. Piglets born after the sows have completed the 14-day medication period can be weaned and finished onsite.

10. All replacement of stock should be stopped during the eradication program.

11. Outdoor lots that have held pigs affected with SD should remain free of pigs for a substantial time period (see Sources of Infection). Any liquid feces, such as in pits and lagoons, should be considered to contain infectious *B. hyodysenteriae* for several months, and lagoon water should not be used for recycling until an appropriate time period of 2–3 months has elapsed after an elimination program has been completed.

**Depopulation/Repopulation with SD-Free Stock.** Total depopulation, cleanup, disinfection, and repopulation with SD-free stock to reestablish an ongoing pig operation should not be made without accurate financial calculations (Wood and Lysons 1988). However, in some situations this alternative is the only method available to eliminate *B. hyodysenteriae* from the herd. The general guidelines described for elimination without depopulation should be carefully followed. Financial evaluations comparing medication/disinfection methods with depopulation/repopulation methods were made by Polson et al. (1992). Elimination without depopulation was financially more attractive than the depopulation/repopulation method. However, the probability of successful eradication would certainly influence the choice of eradication method.

**Prevention of SD**

Herd that have been established as free of SD and are either closed or maintained in a closed pyramid will remain free of SD if situated in an isolated location and precautions are taken to prevent contamination by feaces from carrier pigs or by vectors, especially rodents and birds. Infectious materials may also be carried into a herd by fomites such as workers’ boots, farm implements, and feed or animal trucks. However, introduction of new stock represents by far the greatest hazard. A reliable history of the source herd is the only assurance of safety, since no reliable methods of detecting carrier pigs from infected herds exist. Research efforts are being directed at various methods of identification of carrier animals, and it is hoped that sensitive and specific serologic tests or other detection methods will be available in the future. To avoid introduction of SD and other diseases into herds, purchased animals should always be kept in quarantine for at least 3 weeks. Quarantine is a highly recommended procedure, since clinical signs often appear in subclinically affected animals as a result of transportation. During quarantine, the newly purchased animals can be treated to eliminate *B. hyodysenteriae* from the intestinal tract.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

The authors wish to acknowledge Professors D. L. Harris and R. D. Glock for their input into earlier versions of this chapter, on which the current chapter was based.
REFERENCES


Durmic Z, Pethick DW, Mullan BP, Schulze H, Accioly JM, Hampson DJ. 2000. Extrusion of wheat or soorghum and/or addition of exogenous enzymes to pig diets influences the large intestinal microbiota but does not prevent development of swine dysentery following experimental challenge. J Appl Microbiol 89:678–86.


Glock RD. 1971. Studies on the etiology, hematology and pathol-

ogy of swine dysentery. Ph.D. diss., Iowa State Univ.


Glock RD, Vanderloo KJ, Kinyon JM. 1975. Survival of certain patho-


Hommez J, Devriese LA, Castrickx F, Misy C, Lein A, Haesebrock F. 1998. Susceptibility of different Serpulina species in pigs to antimi-


Hughes R, Olander HJ, Williams CB. 1975. Swine dysentery: Patho-


Humphrey SB, Stanton TB, Jensen NS, Zaerner RL. 1997. Purification and characterization of VSH-1, a generalized trans-


Hutto DL, Wannemuehler MJ. 1999. A comparison of the morpho-

logic effects of Serpulina hyodysenteriae or its beta-hemolysin on the murine mucosa. Vet Pathol 36:412–422.


Jenkins EM, Mohammad A, Klesius PH. 1982. Evaluation of cell-


Jensen NS, Casey TA, Stanton TB. 1990. Detection and identifica-

tion of Treponema hyodysenteriae by using oligonucleotide probes complementary to 16S rRNA. J Clin Microbiol 28:2717–2721.


BACTERIAL DISEASES


Pluske JR, Siba PM, Pethick DW, Durmic Z, Mullan BP, Hampson DJ. 1996. The incidence of swine dysentery in pigs can be reduced by feeding diets that limit the amount of fermentable substrate entering the large intestine. J Nutr 126:2920–2923.


Siba PM, Pethick DW, Hampson DJ. 1996. Pigs experimentally infected with Serpulina hydysenteriae can be protected from developing swine dysentery by feeding them a highly digestible diet. Epidem Infect 116:207–216.


Tuberculosis continues to cause significant economic losses to swine producers throughout the world. Although tuberculosis due to *Mycobacterium bovis* has been nearly eradicated in many developed countries, lesions continue to be reported in the cervical and mesenteric lymph nodes of swine during meat inspection. Available information indicates that 30–50% of the carcasses of slaughter swine from some large confined herds have granulomatous lesions from which *M. avium* complex serovars were isolated (Pritchard et al. 1977). The processing of tuberculous swine carcasses is costly and results in significant economic losses. Regulations of the Meat and Poultry Inspection Program of the USDA require that unaffected portions of swine carcasses with tuberculous lesions in more than one primary site, such as cervical and mesenteric lymph nodes, be cooked at 170°F (76.7°C) for 30 minutes before being approved for human food (National Archives and Records Services 1973). The value of a cooked carcass is only about 20–25% of the value of a carcass not cooked. In processing plants where facilities are not available for cooking, the carcass is condemned and there is no salvage value. The public health significance of *Mycobacterium avium* complex infections has been recognized. Of special interest are reports on the isolation of some of the same serovars of *M. avium* complex from patients with acquired immune deficiency syndrome and from swine (Chin et al. 1994; Komijn et al. 1999).

There has been no direct campaign to eradicate tuberculosis in swine. It was once believed that the campaign to eradicate bovine tuberculosis, which was started in 1917, would result in a reduction of the disease in swine in the United States. However, the percentage of swine with tuberculous lesions continued to increase for a number of years (Table 49.1).

**ETIOLOGY**

Swine are susceptible to infection with *M. avium* complex, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex, and *M. bovis*. *M. avium* complex serovars 1, 2, 4, and 8 are the most common isolates from tuberculous lesions in swine in the United States (Mitchell et al. 1975; Thoen et al. 1975). At least 15 other *M. avium* complex serovars have been isolated from swine in the United States (Thoen et al. 1975) as well as in other countries: Australia (Tammemagi and Simmons 1971), Brazil (Pestana de Castro et al. 1978), Denmark (Jorgensen 1978), France, Germany (Meissner et al. 1978), Hungary (Szabo et al. 1975), Japan (Nishimori et al. 1995; Yugi et al. 1972), South Africa (Kleeberg and Nel 1973), and the Czech Republic (Matlova et al. 2004). These reports indicate the worldwide distribution of tuberculosis in swine due to *M. avium* complex. The similarity of *M. avium* and so-called *M. intracellulare* has led to the proposal that the latter be considered serovars of *M. avium* complex (*M. avium ss avium–M. avium ss intracellulare*) (Wolinsky and Schaefer 1973; Thoen et al. 1984); this has been done in this chapter.

Molecular techniques including restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) and serotyping have been shown to be reliable for identifying *M. avium* complex isolated from swine (Thorensen and Saxegaard 1993; Ritacco et al. 1998; Komijn et al. 1999; Pavlik et al. 2000). *Mycobacterium avium* complex (serovars 1, 2, and 3) occur mainly in birds but also in swine and humans, whereas serovars 4–6 and 8–11 are found in swine and humans. Molecular evidence supports a proposal to refer to human/porcine type of *M. avium* as *M. avium ss hominus-suis* (Mijs et al. 2002).

The decrease in prevalence of tuberculosis in swine in the United States is largely attributable to a lowering of the incidence of tuberculosis in poultry, which in turn is the result of the increasing practice of maintaining all-pullet flocks of chickens (Table 49.1). The control of tuberculosis in swine is thus incidental to and a beneficial but secondary effect of a changing practice of poultry husbandry. However, tuberculosis has been observed in large confined swine herds, in which the infection is caused by *M. avium* complex serovars 4, 6, and 8.
The problem has been associated with the use of sawdust and peat for litter contaminated with M. avium complex (Dalchow and Nassal 1979; Songer et al. 1980; Pavlick 2000).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

Because swine are not routinely tested with tuberculin, the only sources of information on the prevalence and geographic distribution of tuberculosis in this species are the data obtained from meat inspection records. On this basis an increase in the rate of infection occurred in the United States until 1922 (Table 49.1). During 1922, 16.38% of all swine slaughtered under federal supervision had tuberculous lesions; in 0.2%, the disease was so extensive that the entire carcass was condemned. Since 1922, there has been a gradual decline; by 1995, the prevalence had decreased to 0.21%, with only 0.003% having evidence of generalized tuberculous disease.

Data on the prevalence of tuberculosis in swine from meat inspection records may be misleading because the diagnoses are made on the basis of the macroscopic appearance of lesions (Figure 49.1). A certain number of tuberculous infections will escape detection because the lesions are not grossly visible. Avian tubercle bacilli have been isolated from tonsils (Feldman and Karlson 1940) and lymph nodes of apparently normal swine (Langenegger and Langenegger 1981).

In studies in the United States and Canada, where presumably tuberculous lymph nodes of swine were collected at abattoirs and examined bacteriologically, a varying percentage failed to yield tubercle bacilli (Table 49.2). Similar observations have been made by workers in Australia (Clapp 1956), Denmark (Plum 1946; Jorgensen et al. 1972), England (Cochin 1943), Finland (Vasenius 1965), France (LaFont and LaFont 1968), and Germany (Retzlaff 1966; Dalchow and Nassal 1979). The failure to demonstrate tubercle bacilli in lesions that appear grossly to be tuberculous may be due to inadequacy in present-day methods for isolating tubercle bacilli, occurrence of healed processes that contain no viable tubercle bacilli, or cause of the lesions by some microorganism other than tubercle bacilli, such as Rhodococcus equi or R. sputi (to be discussed later).

**Sources of Infection and Their Control**

Swine are susceptible to infection with serovars of M. avium complex, M. tuberculosis, and M. bovis. The occurrence of tuberculosis in swine, therefore, is in part related to the opportunity for direct or indirect contact with tuberculous cattle, humans, and fowl or the organism in the environment.

Mycobacterium bovis is not a frequent cause of tuberculosis in swine in localities where the disease in cattle is controlled by a campaign of eradication. In the United States and Canada, for example, M. bovis is rarely found in lesions of swine (Table 49.2). In Great Britain during 1952–1955, the bovine type of tuberculosis in swine gradually declined concurrently with the eradication of the disease in cattle. The percentage of avian-type infection increased from 44% during the first 5 years of the study to 92% for the last 5 years (Lesslie et al. 1968). However, the occasional finding of M. bovis in swine is a reminder that the disease in cattle is a constant threat. Efforts to eradicate bovine tuberculosis should not be diminished.

Where tuberculosis does occur in cattle, the infection may be transmitted to swine by the feeding of un-

### Table 49.1. Prevalence of tuberculosis in swine in the United States as determined by inspection in abattoirs under federal supervision

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Number Slaughtered</th>
<th>Percent Tuberculosis</th>
<th>Percent Condemned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>34,966,378</td>
<td>4.69</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>40,210,847</td>
<td>9.89</td>
<td>0.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>34,416,439</td>
<td>16.38</td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>42,650,443</td>
<td>13.54</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1932</td>
<td>45,852,422</td>
<td>11.38</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1937</td>
<td>36,226,309</td>
<td>9.48</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942</td>
<td>50,133,871</td>
<td>7.96</td>
<td>0.026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1947</td>
<td>47,073,370</td>
<td>8.50</td>
<td>0.023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952</td>
<td>63,823,263</td>
<td>4.40</td>
<td>0.015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1956</td>
<td>66,781,940</td>
<td>4.76</td>
<td>0.010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>67,109,539</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1968</td>
<td>72,325,507</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972</td>
<td>83,126,396</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td>71,805,911</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1983</td>
<td>79,992,743</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1989</td>
<td>82,110,688</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1995</td>
<td>94,490,329</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


*Includes all carcasses with evidence of tuberculosis, varying in extent from only small foci in cervical lymph nodes to generalized involvement.

*Includes carcasses with evidence of generalized tuberculosis.

49.1. Tuberculous lesions in a mesenteric lymph node of a pig at slaughter (Thoen 1994).
pasteurized milk and dairy by-products. Feces of tuberculous cattle may contain viable tubercle bacilli; this provides an obvious hazard where swine and cattle are maintained in a common feedlot.

The practice of feeding swine the offal from abattoirs or uncooked garbage is obviously unwise, because such material may contain tuberculous material from beef carcasses. Fichandler and Osborne (1966) described an epizootic of tuberculosis in a herd of swine in Connecticut that was fed improperly cooked offal from tuberculous cattle. A serious outbreak of avian tuberculosis in a swine-feeding establishment in Denmark was traced to the improper cooking of offal from poultry plants (Biering-Sorensen 1959).

Mycobacterium tuberculosis is occasionally isolated from tuberculous lesions in swine. No person known to have active tuberculosis should be permitted to have contact with swine or other animals. Uncooked garbage is a potential means of transmitting tuberculosis to swine. Feldman (1939) recorded that 75 (28.4%) of 264 garbage-fed swine were found to have tuberculous lesions at the time of slaughter. Of these, 47 contained tubercle bacilli, of which 35 were avian type and 12 were human type. It was concluded that garbage may contain the offal of tuberculous chickens and that material from tuberculous human patients is not properly disposed of. The frequent occurrence of M. avium complex in lesions limited to the cervical and mesenteric lymph nodes in naturally infected swine indicates that infection usually occurs by ingestion. Janetschke (1963) found that the primary complex involved the alimentary tract in 97.3% of 1000 carcasses with tuberculous lesions; a pulmonary route of infection was noted in only 2.7%, as indicated by involvement of the bronchial lymph nodes.

Schalk et al. (1935) found that swine contracted tuberculosis when placed on ground that had not been occupied by tuberculous chickens for the previous 2 years. Viable and pathogenic avian tubercle bacilli were found in the soil and litter of a chicken cage after 4 years. Schalk and coworkers concluded that soil contaminated by feces of tuberculous fowl is the most important source of infection for swine. No success was obtained in controlling the disease merely by use of the tuberculin test and elimination of reactors, because the soil remained contaminated. They recommended that an ideal program to control avian tuberculosis is to rear young birds on clean ground and to dispose regularly of all fowl more than 1 year old.

Schliesser and Weber (1973) studied the survival of M. avium complex in sawdust. At 18–22°C, the survival time of two virulent strains was 153–160 days, and the survival time of two avirulent strains was 169–214 days. The survival times were greatly reduced when the contaminated sawdust was maintained at 37°C.

Wild birds may be incriminated as a source of M. avium infections in swine. Tuberculosis was found in starlings on a farm with a high incidence of tuberculosis in the swine but where no poultry had been kept for 8 years (Bickford et al. 1966). Tuberculosis due to M. avium has been found in various wild birds, some of which frequent feedlots (Thoen 1997).

The close contact of sows and slaughter pigs in yards and feeding pens provides opportunity for transmission of tuberculosis from animal to animal (Alfredsen and Skjerve 1993). The occurrence of intestinal lesions (Figure 49.2) allows spread of tubercle bacilli in feces. Feldman and Karlson (1940) and Pullar and Rushford (1954) demonstrated avian tubercle bacilli in the tonsils.
of pigs. The latter workers suggested that this may be a source of infection for other animals. Smith (1958) found *M. avium* in apparently normal lymph nodes of 7% of swine, 5% of sheep, and 5% of cattle but was unable to find them in adult normal chickens; he suggested, therefore, that domestic mammals may contract *M. avium* from each other as well as from tuberculous fowl.

Pulmonary, uterine, and mammary tuberculous lesions in swine constitute sources of infection for other animals. Jorgensen et al. (1972) described an enzootic of pulmonary tuberculosis resulting from *M. avium* in pigs. Lesslie and Birn (1967) found *M. avium* in the udder or milk of 18 cows and concluded that such animals may be a source of *M. avium* in pigs. Bille and Larsen (1973) reported congenital infection in swine caused by *M. avium*, suggesting that infected pregnant sows may have a role in the transmission of this infection. Sigurdardottir et al. (1994) reported granulomatous enteritis due to *M. avium* in a pig.

Where sawdust is used for bedding, serovars 4 and 8 of *M. avium* complex have been isolated from lesions in swine as well as from the sawdust. Reactions to avian and bovine tuberculin have been reported in boars exposed to sawdust from which *M. avium* or other nonphototrophic mycobacteria were isolated (Fodstad 1977). Schliesser and Weber (1973) found that *M. avium* would survive as long as 214 days in sawdust. In Hungary, Szabo et al. (1975) found that the incidence of tuberculous adenitis in swine was greater when sawdust was used as litter; when the use of sawdust was discontinued, the occurrence of such lesions decreased significantly. Dalchow and Nassal (1979) recorded that the same serovars of *M. avium* complex as found in swine could be isolated from sawdust. These workers also reported that sawdust could contain infectious mycobacteria even after 4 years of storage. Songer et al. (1980) investigated herds of swine in Arizona and found in at least one herd that the source was sawdust and wood shavings.

Investigations conducted in the Czech Republic and Slovakia indicate that *M. avium* complex serotype 8 may be spread by adult flies (Fischer et al. 2001).

### PATHOGENESIS

The development of disease in swine depends on the ability of the tubercle bacillus to multiply within tissues of the host and to induce a host response. Although acid-fast bacilli initially encounter granulocytes and humoral components, activated mononuclear macrophages are considered to be more important in protection of the host against mycobacteria.

The capacity of *M. avium* to produce progressive disease may be related to certain complex lipids present in the cell wall, such as the glycopeptidolipids (previously referred to as C-mycosides) localized in the exterior portion of the cell envelope (Rastogi and Barrow 1994). However, it appears that the effect of these components alone or together on phagolysosome fusion cannot account for virulence. Available information suggests that a combination of toxic lipids and factors released by virulent tubercle bacilli may cause disruption of the phagosome, interfere with phagolysosome formation, alter the release of hydrolytic enzymes from the attached lysosomes, and/or inactivate the lysosomal enzymes released into the cytoplasmic vacuole (Thoen and Bloom 1995). Certain serovars of *M. avium* are susceptible to bactericidal mechanisms of macrophages; however, the importance of reactive nitrogen intermediates and oxygen radicals in macrophages of swine exposed to virulent tubercle bacilli remains to be elucidated (Thoen and Barletta 2004). Although the mechanisms by which mycobacteria produce disease in swine have not been clearly defined, experimental studies in piglets revealed that nonspecific esterase activity was elevated in mononuclear macrophages of lymph nodes 7 days following inoculation of *M. avium* complex serovar 8 (Momotani et al. 1980). Granulomas of varying stages were observed in mesenteric and mandibular lymph nodes and intestinal mucosa at 14 days postinoculation. In other investigations, sensitized lymphocytes and detectable mycobacterial antibodies have been reported to occur at 14–28 days post exposure to *M. avium* or *M. bovis* (Muscoplat et al. 1975; Thoen et al. 1979a).
LESIONS

Tubercle Bacilli

Detailed discussions of the pathological anatomy of tuberculosis in swine may be found in Pallasse (1931), Feldman (1938a), Francis (1958), and Kramer (1962). As seen in the abattoirs, tuberculous lesions in swine are usually limited to lymph nodes of the cervical and the mesenteric regions. The lesions vary in appearance from small, yellowish white, caseous foci a few millimeters in diameter to diffuse enlargement of the entire node (Figure 49.1). The disease may be localized in one group of nodes or may involve a number of lymph nodes along the digestive tract.

Gross differentiation between tuberculous adenitis caused by avian tuberculosis bacilli and that caused by mammalian tuberculosis bacilli is difficult, but in general, some features are characteristic of each. In an infection of avian origin the lymph nodes may be enlarged and firm with no discrete purulent foci, or there may be one or more soft caseous areas with indistinct borders. Calcification is seldom demonstrable. The cut surface of the lesion has a neoplastic appearance with a few caseous foci. Although there may be diffuse fibrosis, there is little tendency to encapsulation. Relatively large areas of caseation may be present and occasionally will involve the entire lymph node. The lesions due to tubercle bacilli of the avian type are generally not easily enucleated. In contrast, when the infection is due to M. bovis or M. tuberculosis the lesions tend to be well encapsulated and are relatively easy to separate from the surrounding tissue. In addition, calcification is usually prominent in lesions. The individual foci appear to be discrete and caseous. These distinctions are by no means absolute, and there are many variations in the gross appearance of tuberculous lesions in lymph nodes of swine.

Clapp (1956) examined, by bacteriological procedures, 420 lymph nodes (mostly submaxillary) designated as tuberculous upon meat inspection. There was some association between the gross appearance and the cause. Localized lesions that were not easily enucleated and large, dry calcareous processes involving an entire lymph node were usually due to M. avium. Indistinctly mottled and streaked lesions, large encapsulated purulent abscesses, and lesions that could be easily enucleated were usually not caused by tubercle bacilli. Some of these yielded Corynebacterium equi, now reclassified as Rhodococcus equi (Goodfellow et al. 1982), which Clapp considered important in producing tuberculosis-like lymphadenitis in swine. In the series of 420 specimens, only 5 were from swine with generalized tuberculosis, and all of these were associated with M. bovis and M. avium. Microscopically, the changes induced in swine tissues are characterized by diffuse proliferation of epithelioid cells and giant cells. There may be some necrosis and calcification, especially in older lesions, but calcification is not usually prominent. Similar changes are observed in sows and slaughter pigs (Thoen et al. 1976). Proliferation of connective-tissue elements accompanies the process. Lesions caused by mammalian tuberculosis bacilli have a tendency to become encapsulated by a well-developed zone of connective tissue (Figure 49.3). In addition, there is often early caseation and marked calcification (Karlson and Thoen 1971). However, consistent histopathological differentiation between lesions caused by mammalian and avian tuberculosis bacilli is not possible (Himes et al. 1983).

Generalized tuberculosis in swine is not commonly seen. In most instances it is from infection with M. bovis, but it may also result from the M. avium (Feldman 1938b; Jorgensen et al. 1972). The extent and character of generalized involvement vary from the occurrence of a few small foci in several organs to extensive nodular processes involving the liver, spleen, lungs, kidneys, and many lymph nodes. Generalized lesions from infection with M. avium tend to be diffuse. The cut surface is usually smooth, and there is no great tendency toward encapsulation by fibrosis. There may be foci of caseation, but calcification is not pronounced. Lesions resulting from infection with mammalian tuberculosis bacilli, however, are likely to be discrete, caseous, and well circumscribed by fibrosis. Calcification is prominent.

Bacteria Other than Tubercle Bacilli

Various species of mycobacteria other than tubercle bacilli have been isolated from swine and other animals in different countries, but reports of such are few and usually concern only sporadic cases (Schliesser 1976). The significance of finding M. kansasii, M. xenopi, or M. fortuitum is not clear. It may be important, however, to learn if animals and humans become infected from the same sources (Thoen and Williams 1994). Of potential importance is the recovery of M. chelonae from swine because this bacterium has been isolated from prosthetic heart valves that were prepared from swine (Thoen and Himes 1977).

In Norway, M. avium paratuberculosis was isolated by culture from lesions in the mesenteric lymph nodes of swine as well as from normal swine that were closely associated with a herd of cattle in which Johne’s disease was present (Ringdal 1963). This microorganism was isolated in the United States from a slaughter pig (Thoen et al. 1975b). Jorgensen (1969) and Larsen et al. (1971) found that swine may be infected with M. avium ss paratuberculosis after oral administration of the organism. M. xenopi was isolated from tissues of slaughtered swine that originated in the southeastern region of the United States (Jarnagin et al. 1971). Another rare finding was the isolation of M. microti, from lymph nodes of three swine (Huitema and Jaartsved 1967).

Mention must be made of the occurrence of R. equi in localized lesions that cannot be easily differentiated from tuberculosis processes either macroscopically or
histologically (Feldman et al. 1940). Holth and Amundsen (1936) in Norway reported that of 162 tuberculous lymph nodes from swine, only 103 yielded tubercle bacilli (97 were typed, with 80 avian and 16 human strains and 1 bovine strain). Of the other 59, 38 contained a variably acid-fast “coccobacillus.” The acid-fastness, however, was not constant and was lost on subculture. The presence of this microorganism in localized tuberculosis-like lesions in swine was soon confirmed by other Scandinavian workers. Ottosen (1945) has shown that \textit{R. equi} occurs more frequently in the soil of hog pens than elsewhere. In Denmark, Plum (1946) studied a large number of tuberculous lymph nodes from swine and concluded that it is difficult for inspectors in abattoirs to differentiate between tuberculosis and \textit{R. equi} infection. Barton and Hughes (1980) recorded 32 reports of \textit{R. equi} infection in swine. \textit{R. equi} expressing a 20 kDa antigen has been observed in all pig isolates, and 2 of 5 plasmids from pig isolates were the same as those from human isolates, suggesting that the source of infection for humans may be pigs or the pig environment (Takai et al. 1996).

\textit{Rhodococcus sputi} has been isolated from tuberculosis lesions in the mesenteric lymph nodes of swine (Tsukamura et al. 1988).

**DIAGNOSIS**

A clinical diagnosis of tuberculosis in swine is presumptive at best. Generally, the tuberculous lesions are limited to small foci in a few lymph nodes of the digestive tract. It is difficult to conceive that such nonprogressive morbid changes may elicit signs detectable by physical examination. In extensive tuberculous infection, signs may be suggestive of an infectious disease, but the symptoms and changes are not sufficiently characteristic to establish a diagnosis of tuberculosis.

The necropsy and histopathological appearance of tuberculosis in swine has been described. Although the morbid changes are sufficiently characteristic to permit a tentative diagnosis of tuberculosis, they are not specific. The great similarity between localized tuberculous lesions and those associated with \textit{R. equi} and other bacteria has already been discussed. Also, chronic granulomatous lesions may be difficult to differentiate grossly because of parasitic nodules and neoplasms.

Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) has been described for detecting antibodies in swine infected with \textit{M. avium} complex (Thoen et al. 1979a, b). Positive ELISA reactions were observed in pigs experimentally infected and in those naturally infected. The
ELISA is a rapid test that can be automated and may be of value in testing replacement breeding animals.

The mere demonstration of acid-fast bacilli in exudates or in lesions may be misleading. Some workers have recorded that *R. equi* is acid-fast in smears of necrotic material from lymph nodes of swine (Ottosen 1945). Acid-fast microorganisms other than tubercle bacilli have been isolated from swine (Karlson and Feldman 1940; Brandes 1961).

The characteristic pathological features of tuberculosis in swine and the presence of acid-fast microorganisms in such lesions provide important indications on which to base a diagnosis of tuberculosis. However, an unequivocal diagnosis can be made on the basis of bacteriological procedures designed for the isolation, identification by biochemical and seroagglutination tests, and/or by molecular techniques (Kaneene and Thoen 2004).

**Tuberculin Test**

The tuberculin test for the diagnosis of tuberculosis in swine appears to be a useful procedure on a herd basis. Of the various techniques described for this test in swine, the operator should select the method that proves by experience to be most suitable. Separate simultaneous tests with *M. avium* and *M. bovis* tuberculin must be made (Thoen and Karlson 1970). A number of investigators have found that some tuberculous swine may fail to react to the intradermal tuberculin test. Therefore, tests should be repeated in a herd in which animals with positive reactions have been found and excluded.

The intradermal test, usually on the ear or vulva, may be employed. Because swine are susceptible to infection with *M. tuberculosis* complex and *M. avium* complex, avian and mammalian tuberculin should be used. Fichandler and Osborne (1966) described an extensive outbreak of *M. bovis* in swine in which animals reacted to mammalian tuberculin by developing erythema and swelling of the ear, compared with slight reactions to the *M. avium* tuberculin.

Feldman (1938a) recommended the use of 0.2 mL 25% Old Tuberculin applied into the dermis on the dorsal surface of the ear, slightly anterior to the base. A positive reaction is indicated in 24 hours by a flat, reddish swelling up to 3 cm in diameter, which in 48 hours reaches its maximal intensity. At this time the erythema and swelling are more pronounced; the central area becomes hemorrhagic, and ulceration may occur. McDiarmid (1956) described a means of testing swine in which restraint is not necessary. While the animals are feeding from a trough, 0.1 mL tuberculin is injected at a right angle into the skin at the junction of the ear and neck using a needle only 3.5 mm long. With this short needle, most of the tuberculin is deposited in the skin. Reactions are recorded in 48 hours. A positive reaction varies from “puffy” edema to inflammation, with purple discoloration and necrosis. McDiarmid used Weybridge purified protein derivative (PPD), which, according to Paterson (1949), has 3 mg protein/mL for mammalian tuberculin and 0.8 mg protein/mL for *M. avium*.

Lanz (1955) recommended injecting the tuberculin in the skin of the back about 10–20 cm caudal to the shoulders and slightly to the right of the midline. This was easier and less time-consuming than trying to use the ear. A dose of 0.1 mL PPD (as used for cattle in Switzerland) is injected intradermally. A positive reaction reaches its peak in 72 hours and consists of a painful erythematous swelling 22–35 mm in diameter. As determined by necropsy, no false-negative or atypical reactions were found among 316 animals.

Lesslie et al. (1968), using Weybridge PPD, tested 84 White pigs from a herd known to have tuberculosis. The avian tuberculin was given in injections of 0.1 mL, each containing 2500 tuberculin units (TU); and the mammalian tuberculin was given in injections of 0.1 mL, each containing 10,000 TU. The injections were made simultaneously, each at the base on an ear; in 48–72 hours a positive reaction was recorded when the reaction consisted of edema and erythema. Guinea pigs experimentally sensitized with *M. avium* serovars 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, and 9 each reacted similarly to tuberculin prepared from serovars 2 and 7 (Anz et al. 1970). Swine experimentally infected with *M. avium* serovars 4 and 8 reacted well to the USDA avian Old Tuberculin and to PPD prepared from *M. avium* serovar 1 (Thoen et al. 1976a; Thoen et al. 1979b).

At present, intradermal injection of PPD tuberculin in the dorsal surface of the ear is the recommended procedure for applying the tuberculin test in swine. The injection site should be observed at 48 hours.

**PREVENTION**

The eradication of tuberculosis in swine, as well as in other species, is dependent on the availability of an economical and specific means of detecting infected animals. Additional information is needed to determine adequate measures for cleaning and disinfecting the premises where *M. avium* complex persists in the soil, in buildings, or on equipment. Also, we need to know how long these organisms will remain viable in the environment. Investigations also should be made to determine the sources and modes of transmission of the different serovars of *M. avium* complex.

**REFERENCES**


Bacterial Diseases

814

SECTION III


nen in den Gekroslymphknoten des Schweines unter beson-


Mitchell CA, Walker RVL, Humphrey FA. 1934. Types of tubercle bacilli found in swine of two accredited areas. In Rep Vet Dir Gen Dep Agric Can, pp. 43–44.


Miscellaneous Bacterial Infections

David J. Taylor

Anthrax

Anthrax is relatively rare in swine compared to sheep and cattle, which are highly susceptible. Swine may become infected, however, along with other species of farm animals and may become important as a reservoir of infection.

Since anthrax is a zoonosis, infections in swine are a threat to human health. Infected swine represent a hazard to the farmworker and veterinarian, to the abattoir worker, and to those preparing and eating contaminated pig products. The importance of this relatively rare disease in swine is increased by the public health requirement for abattoir disinfection and the disposal of carcasses after the discovery of an infected animal at meat inspection. Meat processors are becoming unwilling to slaughter pigs from infected farms, retailers are increasingly concerned about their duty to consumers, and the safe disposal of manures can be a major problem. These factors add a wider importance to the disease.

Anthrax is present throughout the world, and the FAO-WHO report (1973) indicates that the disease occurred in swine in every continent during 1972. The incidence remains low and sporadic, but the disease presents a local problem in some areas.

ETIOLOGY

Anthrax is caused by Bacillus anthracis, a large gram-positive, aerobic, spore-forming, nonmotile rod. The individual bacilli are 1–5 µm in diameter and 3–8 µm long. When observed in tissue from an infected animal, the organisms are commonly in short chains surrounded by a well-developed capsule. Under suitable aerobic conditions, spores highly resistant to disinfectants, heat, and desiccation may be produced.

B. anthracis grows very luxuriantly on most common laboratory media. On blood agar plates, colonies can usually be detected within 12 hours. After 24 hours at 37°C, the colonies have a “ground glass” appearance, with irregular, wavy borders that give them the “medusa head” characteristic. No hemolysis is produced on blood agar; this is useful in distinguishing the colonies from those of certain nonpathogenic species of the genus (Norberg 1953). The colony of B. anthracis growing on blood agar on primary isolation possesses a stickiness that can be readily detected by touching with the bacteriological loop. The colonial growth tends to adhere to the loop and forms tenacious threads.

Bacteria in these colonies do not produce capsules unless grown on special media or in 5% carbon dioxide but do produce spores. B. anthracis may be distinguished from other members of the genus by biochemical tests. Those of use in differentiating the organism from related bacilli are listed in the section on diagnosis below. B. anthracis is pathogenic to laboratory animals and humans. Culture should not be attempted unless appropriate safety precautions such as safety cabinets and adequate disposal facilities are available. Personnel handling the organism should be vaccinated.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Anthrax is generally considered a soilborne infection in cattle, sheep, and horses. Animal-to-animal spread does not commonly occur, but rather, B. anthracis is deposited in the soil or the environment by the infected animal at the time of or following death. Spores are formed by some of the organisms, and these highly resistant bodies may remain viable for years, even under adverse conditions. Subsequently, the spores may be ingested by susceptible animals and anthrax may develop.

Swine can presumably become infected in this manner; however, because of the small number of spores likely to be picked up and the higher degree of resistance in swine, infection probably occurs only rarely. Rather,
anthrax in swine generally occurs following ingestion of feed that contains a large number of B. anthracis or viable spores. Swine that are permitted to eat the carcass of an animal dead of anthrax may consume large numbers of organisms and may therefore become infected. The use of bonemeal or other animal products containing spores of B. anthracis in feed is the most common source of infection in swine. Davies and Harvey (1955) isolated B. anthracis from 5 of 41 cargoes of bonemeal shipped to England from the Near and Middle East. Direct cultural methods were unsuccessful, but the authors isolated the organism from guinea pigs that were first protected from the various anaerobic species common in bonemeal by means of clostridial antiserum and antitoxins and that were then injected with a concentrated infusion from the bonemeal specimen.

The role of feed contaminated with spores of B. anthracis in the transmission of anthrax can be illustrated by a brief account of the 1952 outbreak that occurred in the midwestern United States (Ferguson 1986). Anthrax was confirmed on a farm in southern Ohio in February 1952, and further outbreaks occurred in rapid succession in widely separated areas. Within a week of the recognition of the first case, feed was incriminated as the source of infection. A number of feed companies were involved, but all had incorporated bonemeal obtained from a company in Columbus, Ohio, which had processed part of a shipment of 100 tons of raw bonemeal obtained from Belgium into a meat scrap concentrate. The companies purchased the concentrate and included it in many hundreds of tons of swine feed sold throughout Ohio and adjoining states. The organism was isolated from the raw bonemeal and from the meat scrap concentrate but not from any of the finished feeds.

The organism appears to be spread in wet-feed systems but rarely affects more than 1–2 animals in an infected herd. This was the classic picture, but accounts of continuing outbreaks exist (Jackson 1967; Jackson and Taylor 1989; Edgington 1990). The outbreak referred to by Jackson and Taylor (1989) and Edgington (1990) occurred in a 500-sow unit and persisted for 14 weeks, resulting in at least 18 cases in sows, suckling pigs, and weaned pigs. The development of disease in weaners may have been delayed by maternal immunity in this continuing outbreak. The origin of the outbreak was considered to be feed, but the disease persisted within the herd in spite of antimicrobial treatment. Persistence may have been in carrier pigs or as spores in slurry and housing. The role of flies in persistence and transmission was not clear, although recent studies in the United States indicate that biting flies (Stomoxys calcitrans) and mosquitoes (Aedes aegyptii and A. taeniorhynchus) transmit the disease experimentally 4 hours after feeding (Turell and Knudson 1987). Ticks (Dermacentor marginatus) were shown to harbor the organism for 76 days at 4°C and for 35 days at 22–25°C in the former Soviet Union (Akhermerov et al. 1982).

PATHOGENESIS

B. anthracis has two major sets of pathogenic determinants: a protective capsule composed of a polymer of d-glutamic acid and the complex exotoxin. Molecular biology studies have shown that toxin production results from the possession of a 110 MDa plasmid and that capsulation is related to the possession of a smaller 60 MDa plasmid (Uchido et al. 1985; Mikesell et al. 1983). The exotoxin (Smith et al. 1955; Harris-Smith et al. 1958; Davis et al. 1973) is composed of three fractions and is produced when bacteria reach 5–10 × 10⁶ organisms per milliliter of blood. The toxins share the same binding unit—the protective antigen (PA)—and are binary toxins. PA binds to cell surfaces and is activated by a host protease, allowing edema factor (EF) and lethal factor (LF) to enter cells. EF is a calmodulin-dependent adenylate cyclase and affects neutrophils, preventing the respiratory burst and thus protecting the organisms. It is also responsible for the progressive hyperglycemia and the severe terminal hypoglycemia seen in animals with the septicemic form. LF appears to be a zinc-dependent protease affecting macrophages. All three toxins are needed to produce typical anthrax.

The organism appears to enter the pig through the gut or tonsil. Septicemic disease is rare, and the organism multiplies locally, resisting phagocytosis by means of the polyglutamic acid capsule. Edema is commonly produced locally. Neutrophils and other phagocytes are killed by EF, and organisms multiply until LF is produced, resulting in the death of the animal as a result of its effect on the mitochondria. Immunity against anthrax is associated with antibodies against the exotoxin (PA) (Sargeant et al. 1960; Thorne et al. 1960). Antibody to the cell wall may be produced but is not protective.

CLINICAL SIGNS

The first indications of an outbreak of the disease may be an increase in mortality. Investigation of these extra deaths may indicate the presence of anthrax and the clinical signs described below may be identified. Three forms of anthrax have been observed in swine: pharyngeal, intestinal, and septicemic. The usual portal of entry is the oral cavity, and invasion occurs in the tonsils or mucosa of the pharynx. In some cases the infection may remain localized in the lymph nodes of this region, and the disease is classified as pharyngeal. In other cases the organisms may pass into the intestinal tract, where primary invasion may also occur. When B. anthracis is not localized but gains access to the general circulation, the septicemic form of the disease develops.

The clinical signs commonly observed in pharyngeal anthrax are cervical edema and dyspnea. General depression, inappetence, and vomiting are commonly seen. Fever with temperatures to 41.7°C may occur, but it is not consistent, and in some affected swine the temperature
may be subnormal. Death follows in many of the swine within 24 hours after the cervical edema is noticed. It is not uncommon for swine to recover even in the absence of treatment. The swelling may disappear gradually, and complete recovery appears to occur; however, such animals may continue to remain carriers of \textit{B. anthracis}.

Clinical signs of intestinal anthrax are not as obvious as those in the pharyngeal form. In severe cases an acute digestive disturbance may be evident, with vomiting, complete loss of appetite, and diarrhea with bloody feces. Death may follow in the most severely affected swine; however, recovery occurs in many affected with the milder forms (Brennan 1953). When 50 pigs were infected in an experimental study (Redmond et al. 1997), 33 developed anorexia, lethargy, dullness, shivering, constipation, loose feces, blood in the feces, and ataxia at some point between 1 and 8 days after infection. Only 2 died. Fever did not exceed 41.9°C, peaking 48 hours after infection.

Intestinal anthrax has been reported only rarely in the United States. Many cases may be unrecognized because of the usual practice of avoiding a complete necropsy of animals suspected of anthrax. It is possible that some of the animals dying of pharyngeal anthrax may also have had lesions in the intestinal tract. Brennan (1953) reported that intestinal anthrax was the most common form of the disease seen in the 1952 outbreak of anthrax in England.

Septicemic anthrax is the highly acute form that results from the entrance of \textit{B. anthracis} into the bloodstream, followed by rapid reproduction of the organisms throughout the body. Death frequently occurs in animals so affected, without any period of illness being noticed by the owner. In swine it is the uncommon form of the disease. Walker et al. (1967) reported the presence of viable spores of \textit{B. anthracis} in the lungs of dwarf swine for as long as 7 days following respiratory exposure. These authors suggested that resistance of swine may be related to some mechanism that inhibits germination of the spores. Of 30 swine examined at necropsy during the anthrax outbreak of 1952 in Ohio, only 3 had the enlarged, dark spleen so characteristically seen in cattle. It is possible that young pigs develop septicemia more frequently than older swine (Ferguson 1986).

**LESIONS**

In the interests of controlling anthrax, complete necropsy of animals is strongly discouraged. Pigs with anthrax may not be identified before necropsy because the disease is relatively rare. Large pigs which have died from the disease may have a bloody discharge from the nose (Edgington 1990), and small ones may appear very pale and dehydrated. The cervical region is edematous, but otherwise no superficial lesions are evident. Incision of the region reveals an extensive infiltration of the tissues with fluid, which is usually straw colored but may appear pink or hemorrhagic. The tissue, containing large amounts of fluid, may appear to possess a gelatinous consistency. The tonsils are usually covered with a fibrinous exudate, or extensive necrotic changes may be evident. The pharyngeal mucosa is frequently inflamed and swollen.

The mandibular and suprapharyngeal lymph nodes are enlarged to several times their normal size. The cut surface of the affected node may vary in color from deep brick red to strawberry red. In more chronic cases the color may be grayish yellow, indicative of necrotic changes in the node. In cases of the septicemic and intestinal forms the carcass may be opened before anthrax is suspected. The intestinal form is more common and there is usually copious pinkish peritoneal fluid, which may clot on exposure to air. The small intestine is usually inflamed, with fibrinous adhesions on the serous surface. The mesenteric lymph nodes may be swollen, hemorrhagic, or necrotic, and edema of the mesentery is common. The intestinal mucosa is covered with a diphtheritic membrane and may be hemorrhagic. The intestinal wall may be grossly thickened. In the septicemic form little may be seen other than the presence of bloodstained fluid in the peritoneal cavity and local petechiation. In some cases the spleen is enlarged and there may be marked petechiation of the kidney. Small abscesses may be present in the lymph nodes of recovered pigs (Redmond et al. 1997).

Microscopic lesions in the lymph nodes usually consist of hemorrhage and necrosis with encapsulated bacilli. These may also be seen in the necrotic diphtheritic lesions of the intestinal mucosa and in the capillaries of any organ in septicemia.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Anthrax should be suspected when swine show cervical edema and dyspnea. However, erysipelas or malignant edema from \textit{Clostridium septicum} may also provoke similar clinical signs. In malignant edema, the edema will often be more prominent in the shoulders or axillary spaces. The edematous fluid and enlarged cervical or mesenteric lymph nodes, as seen on necropsy, are very suggestive of anthrax. When the carcass has been opened, the presence of bloodstained fluid in the peritoneum, petechiation of the kidney or serosal surfaces, enlargement of the spleen, and thickening and inflammation of the small intestine should lead to suspicion of anthrax. A history of the type of feed products eaten by the affected swine is always of value.

The accurate diagnosis of anthrax is very important and in most cases is dependent upon the isolation and identification of \textit{B. anthracis}.

**Microscopic Examination**

Impression smears and cultures should be made from the cut surfaces of the cervical lymph nodes, spleen,
mesenteric lymph nodes, intestinal mucosa, or kidney as appropriate, and peritoneal fluid should also be sampled when present. Smears should be fixed in Zenker’s fluid, which kills spores, or by low heat, which does not, and then stained by polychrome methylene blue for 2 minutes and washed with water. The bacilli of anthrax appear as square-ended blue rods in a pinkish capsule. In smears made from decayed carcasses, other bacilli may be present, and where antimicrobial treatment has been given, the bacilli may be present only as capsules or in aberrant forms. The failure to find anthrax bacilli immediately should not rule out the disease, as up to 30 minutes’ examination may be required. Peritoneal fluid is more often positive than splenic smears in septicemia. Slides and reagents used for diagnosis should be disposed of by incineration or formaldehyde fixation.

Spores are not observed in slides prepared from fresh tissue or from freshly cut surfaces. Spore-forming anaerobes are frequently encountered in tissues of animals that have been dead several hours prior to necropsy. Differentiation is important in such cases, and the following points are helpful. Spores are rarely seen in *B. anthracis* in fresh-tissue preparations, whereas spores are regularly seen in clostridia. In the latter organism the rod is usually slightly enlarged by the spore. Capsules are very rarely observed in the clostridia, and any capsules seen do not stain purple with polychrome methylene blue.

**Cultural Studies**

*B. anthracis* grows readily on many common media and is characterized by very rapid colonial development. Typical colonies can be observed after 12–18 hours of incubation. This rapid growth is useful in differentiating *B. anthracis* from other pathogens.

*B. anthracis* is readily cultured from the enlarged lymph nodes, and it may also be demonstrated from the surrounding connective tissue in some cases. In the occasional septicemic case the organisms can be isolated from the blood, spleen, or liver—in fact, from essentially any tissue of the body. Since *B. anthracis* grows more rapidly than most of the saprophytic bacteria likely to be encountered, except other species of *Bacillus*, one should always examine the cultures after incubation for 12–18 hours.

Suspect colonies can be identified as *B. anthracis* by their biochemical characters using API systems or by the absence of hemolysis, lack of motility, growth on chloral hydrate agar, and susceptibility to anthrax phage. Final confirmation of pathogenic *B. anthracis* depends on the inoculation of culture into scratches on the footpad of a guinea pig or mouse under strict containment. All cultures and any experimental animals should be fixed in formaldehyde and incinerated.

**Serology**

A competitive enzyme immunosorbent assay (EIA) has been described (Turnbull et al. 1986, 1992) to identify the presence of IgG antibody to PA, and PA may be assayed in serum in pigs which have died using the capture EIA (Turnbull 1990).

**CONTROL**

Control of the spread of anthrax differs significantly from control of most of the other important animal diseases. The highly resistant spore formed by *B. anthracis* accounts for this difference. Some swine may become inapparent carriers, but there is little evidence to indicate that this forms an important source of infection to susceptible animals. Otherwise, animals that become infected do show clinical signs and generally develop an acute disease that terminates in death within a few days. Transmission from animal to animal rarely occurs, but soil contaminated by the organisms serves as a source from which susceptible animals subsequently ingest the spores. Because of this common form of transmission, anthrax can be controlled by preventing susceptible animals from contacting viable spores of *B. anthracis*.

Van Ness and Stein (1956) pointed out the importance of soil types in the survival of anthrax spores. The principal areas of enzootic anthrax are regions characterized by soils high in nitrogen and with adequate calcium. Where such soil types are lacking (e.g., central and eastern United States), anthrax does not appear to persist.

The spores can survive for years under a variety of environmental conditions. In the unopened carcasses of animals dead of anthrax, few spores are formed except at the body openings. When the animal is opened for a complete necropsy or when carnivorous animals are permitted to eat the carcass, there is usually extensive spore formation as the heavily infected blood and visera are exposed to the oxygen of the air. For this reason, the orifices and any cuts in a carcass should be covered with disinfectant-soaked cotton wool to prevent sporulation and spread of infection. The most productive control measures include the complete destruction of the carcasses of animals dead of anthrax by incineration or deep burial.

When an animal dies in the open, it is generally recommended that it be burned on the spot. If the animal must be moved, the carcass must be placed on a sled or some other vehicle that can be thoroughly disinfected and then hauled, not dragged, to an area for disposal. If burning is not an option, deep burial can be used. The carcass should be covered with lime and at least 4 feet (1.25 m) of soil. When carefully completed, these methods will minimize the chances of transmission of the infection.

Disinfection can be achieved with 5% freshly prepared sodium hydroxide or, more controllably, with 10% formaldehyde and the use of appropriate respirators. Only disinfectants capable of inactivating anthrax spores, such as those containing glutaraldehyde and
formaldehyde, should be used. Disinfectants should be used prior to clearing up infected premises, and contaminated articles should be burned. Exposed surfaces should be scrubbed or pressure washed with the disinfectant.

Edgington (1990) gives an account of the procedure adopted in depopulating and disinfecting a chronically infected 500-sow unit from which purchasers would no longer take pigs. All 5000 pigs were slaughtered and burned, all 300,000 gallons (1,364,000 L) of slurry were disinfected with 10% formaldehyde and disposed of in an approved toxic-waste site, and the buildings were formaldehyde-fumigated and cleaned—at a cost of £1,000,000 (US $1,700,000). Similar precautions may have to be adopted in contaminated meat plants to safeguard public health.

Following the outbreaks of anthrax in the midwestern United States in 1952, which were conclusively traced to imported bonemeal, regulations were established that prohibit the importation of raw bonemeal into the United States (Stein 1953). Comparable preventive legislation was adopted in Canada (Moynihan 1963). Bonemeal processed by an acceptable steam treatment may be imported under these regulations. In addition to this federal regulation, some states have laws pertaining to the operation of rendering plants and the use of animal products in feed. These regulations have proved effective. Similar regulations apply in most developed countries.

**TREATMENT**

Treatment of animals infected with *B. anthracis* is possible. Since swine may develop a chronic form of the disease, treatment can be successfully administered in some cases. In the outbreak in Ohio in 1952, penicillin in oil was used at a dosage level of 10,000 units/lb (22,000 units/kg) body weight. According to Ferguson (1986), pigs that were showing clinical signs of anthrax recovered completely after this treatment, and the losses were reduced considerably when the disease was recognized early in its course. Anthrax antiserum in doses of 20–75 mL was also used in treatment of a limited number of animals. The results were comparable to those following treatment with penicillin in that the pigs in the early stages of anthrax recovered promptly. Oxytetracycline is effective against *B. anthracis* and may be used parenterally in daily doses of 4.4–11.0 mg/kg body weight. Edgington (1990) reported the successful use of penicillin, oxytetracycline, and chlorotetracycline:sulfonamide:penicillin combinations to treat or suppress infection but had to withdraw treatment from animals intended for slaughter. Following the study of Redmond et al. (1997), it is clear that infection may persist for up to 21 days after infection in a population, and this factor must be considered before carcasses are submitted for human consumption.

**PREVENTION**

Kaufmann et al. (1973) evaluated the Sterne strain anthrax vaccine, an avirulent spore vaccine, in an outbreak of the disease in Louisiana. The results supported the efficacy of the vaccine in swine, but the number involved was too small to provide significant data for this species. Similar findings were obtained by Jackson (1967) in a continuing outbreak in the United Kingdom. Immunization of swine would probably reduce incidence of infection when they are exposed to massive doses of *B. anthracis*. Immunization on a large scale has not been recommended, however, since swine possess a level of natural resistance adequate to prevent the disease except following heavy exposure to *B. anthracis*.

Human infection can be prevented by the safe disposal of all contaminated carcasses, articles, and fluids on the farm by the methods outlined above. Persons exposed to the infection can be given prophylactic antimicrobials such as penicillin and tetracyclines, and any cases can be treated with them. Where longer-term exposure is likely, vaccination should be carried out.

**REFERENCES**


Davies DG, Harvey RW. S. 1953. The isolation of *Bacillus anthracis* from bones. Lancet 2:86.


Melioidosis (Burkoldaria pseudomallei Infection)

Melioidosis is a chronic bacterial infection of pigs in tropical and subtropical regions such as those of Asia and northern Australia. Pigs may become infected by Burkoldaria (formerly Pseudomonas) pseudomallei, which is a short, gram-negative rod, 0.8 by 1.5 µm, that produces rough or mucoid colonies on a wide variety of laboratory media. It is present in water and soil in tropical and subtropical areas and may infect pigs when water supplies are contaminated. Infection is often clinically inapparent but has been associated with clinical signs (Olds and Lewis 1955; Omar et al. 1962; Laws and Hall 1964; Rogers and Andersen 1970; Veljanov et al. 1994). Clinical signs include a raised rectal temperature (40–42°C, 104–108°F) for up to 4 days, unsteady gait, lameness or weakness, slight nasal discharge, and subcutaneous swellings of the limbs. Deaths may occur but are rare in adults, in which abortions and uterine discharges have been recorded.

Lesions are found in slaughter pigs in which clinical signs have not been seen and in those that have died from the disease. They consist of large abscesses in the lungs, liver, spleen, kidney, and mesenteric and subcutaneous lymph nodes. The organism can be isolated from them. Melioidosis may be suspected on clinical grounds especially when prolonged raised rectal temperatures and unsteady gait are associated with subcutaneous swellings of the limbs. More frequently, diagnosis is based on the creamy abscesses found at slaughter or on the bacteriological results needed to confirm the presence of B. pseudomallei (Ketterer et al. 1986; Veljanov et al. 1994). A hypersensitivity test resembling a tuberculin test (the melioidin test) and serum-agglutination and complement-fixation tests have all been described and can be used to confirm a diagnosis in the live pig.

Treatment with tetracyclines has been described, and the disease can be prevented by use of clean or chlorinated water supplies and preventing access to contaminated soil. As the disease is of public health importance, infected carcasses should be disposed of safely.

REFERENCES


in pig populations. The literature prior to 1983 was reviewed comprehensively by Stellmacher et al. (1983), and the account in the present chapter draws on earlier work only where it is relevant to current knowledge.

ETIOLOGY

Chlamydiae are gram-negative bacteria that can multiply only inside living cells. They are unusual among bacteria in that they exist outside the cell only as an inactive, trypsin-resistant, infectious particle 0.2–0.3 µm (200–300 nm) in diameter known as an elementary body (Figure 50.1). This body has an electron-dense core packed with DNA and surrounded by a trilaminar cytoplasmic membrane, outside which lies a further trilaminar envelope and then a cell wall with projections that may be associated with attachment to cells. The outer-membrane proteins of the chlamydiae have been studied in considerable detail, and sequences of the genes coding for outer-membrane protein A (ompA) have been obtained (Kaltenbroeck and Storz 1992; Kaltenbroeck et al. 1993; Anderson et al. 1996). These sequences have contributed to the current species classification and are now widely used in diagnosis. C. psittaci contains a plasmid, and DNA sequences of it have also been identified in C. pecorum.

Within 6–9 hours after an elementary body has entered a cell, it forms a reticulate body 1 µm (1000 nm) in diameter. This body divides by binary fission to form further reticulate bodies in an inclusion within the host cell. At this stage the infected host cell may divide to give infected daughter cells, which may account for latent infections seen in animal hosts. Within 20 hours of the first division of the reticulate body, some begin to mature into elementary bodies. The chlamydial inclusions may occupy up to three-quarters of the cell volume and contain up to 10,000 elementary bodies. C. trachomatis produces glycogen inclusions in cells at this stage; C. psittaci and C. pecorum do not. Infected cells may lyse to release the elementary bodies or these may be budded from persistently infected cells.

Chlamydiae can be grown in the laboratory by inoculation of the yolk sac of 6- to 8-day-old embryonated hen eggs and in neonatal mice. Most laboratories now use cell cultures, usually McCoy or L929 cells, in which the chlamydiae grow readily. Some strains and species can be maintained in Vero cells. In some cases, isolation can be improved by treatment of the cells, using irradiation or cycloheximide (1 µm/mL), and by centrifugation of the chlamydiae onto the cells.

The different species of chlamydiae and biotypes within them can be distinguished by their differential growth in cell cultures in the presence of tissue culture medium supplemented with amino acids such as arginine, isoleucine, and methionine (Johnson 1984) and by the presence of inclusions or the time taken to develop in a particular cell line. The main methods of differentiation are now (1) antigenic, based on differences between the outer-membrane proteins detected using monoclonal antibodies in immunoperoxidase, immunofluorescence, or ELISA methods, and (2) nucleic acid based, using genomic and ompA sequences for PCR (Anderson et al. 1996; Kaltenbroek and Storz 1992; Kaltenbroeck et al. 1993).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The recent development of methods to differentiate the three species of chlamydiae present in pigs has raised a number of questions about the epidemiology of infections with these species in the pig. All three species are found in other animals or birds, and experimental infections show that C. psittaci from species such as sheep can be transmitted to pigs and sometimes produces lesions (Harris et al. 1984; Vasquez-Cisneros et al. 1994). C. psittaci occurs in many avian species and is particularly common in pigeons and doves but may occur in almost any bird. Some mammals such as sheep, cattle, and rodents may be infected. All these species may form a reservoir of C. psittaci infection for the pig. The relationship between C. pecorum and C. trachomatis infections of other mammalian species and the pig has not yet been explored in detail. All chlamydiae can survive for considerable lengths of time as elementary bodies in the environment, where they are resistant to drying. The
major routes of transmission of *C. psittaci* to pigs are by inhalation of aerosols of elementary bodies, either fresh or in dust, from respiratory, genital tract, or enteric infections; by ingestion of contaminated feed; and by contact, particularly venereal in the case of genital tract infections. The exact methods by which *C. pecorum* and *C. trachomatis* are transferred are not yet clear but are probably similar, with the fecal-oral route being of importance for enteric infections and transmission by flies or dust being involved in *C. trachomatis* conjunctivitis (Rogers et al. 1993).

Chlamydial infection in the pig has been reported from the United States (Willigan and Beamer 1955; Possichil and Wood 1987), Britain (Wilson and Plummer 1966; Harris 1976), Rumania (Sorodoc et al. 1961), Germany (Stellmacher et al. 1983), and more recently from other countries. The early serologic surveys suggested that complement-fixing and microagglutinating antibodies were present in up to 23% of slaughter pigs (Wilson and Plummer 1966). Most antibody titers were low (1:8–1:128), but titers as high as 1:1024 were recorded (Wilson and Plummer 1966). More recent surveys using immunoperoxidase staining of histological sections of gut suggest that chlamydial inclusions can be found in up to 67% of piglets (Zahn et al. 1995) and 99% of finishing pigs (Szeredi et al. 1996). Serum antibody surveys of the same finishing animals using an ELISA method confirmed antibody in 82.6%, but the complement-fixation test (CFT) detected antibody in only 28.6%, a figure similar to that of Wilson and Plummer (1966). It is clear, therefore, that infection with chlamydiae is widespread among pigs.

Studies of the distribution of infection within infected herds suggest that infection can occur in animals of every age group. Samples from which chlamydiae have been isolated include semen samples from boars; fetuses, both live and aborted; sows; lungs, joints, and organs such as liver and spleen from piglets; store pigs; and pigs at slaughter. Enteric infection is uncommon in piglets of less than 4 weeks of age (6.9%) and more common (41.8%) in piglets aged more than 4 weeks (Zahn et al. 1995), and conjunctival infection was recorded by Rogers et al. (1993) as associated with clinical signs between 2 and 8 weeks of age. The presence of low levels of antibody in piglets may suggest maternal antibody transfer. The possibility of transmission of intestinal chlamydiae to humans from slaughter pigs was raised by Szeredi et al. (1996).

**PATHOGENESIS**

Experimental infections were carried out with "*C. psittaci*" or "chlamydiae" prior to the identification of the presence of three species of chlamydiae in pigs. The account which follows uses the term "*C. psittaci*" unless there is evidence that the organisms were of the other species.

Elementary bodies of *C. psittaci* enter by the respiratory, oral, or genital routes and enter epithelial cells, in which they multiply or are taken up by macrophages and distributed to lymph nodes. Infection may be local at the portal of infection and remain inapparent or latent; may cause local disease such as pneumonia, enteritis, or disturbances of reproduction; or may become generalized. *C. psittaci* isolates of avian, bovine, ovine, and porcine origin have been used in experimental infections; but strains of porcine origin appear to be most virulent for the pig, provided they have not become yolk sac or tissue culture adapted.

There appears to be some adaptation of strains to the method of transmission, in that strains of genital origin (Kielstein et al. 1983) do not appear to cause severe pneumonia, and parenteral inoculation was found necessary to reproduce arthritis with an arthritis isolate. Pneumonia has been consistently produced by intranasal or intratracheal inoculation with porcine strains (Kielstein et al. 1983; Martin et al. 1983; Stellmacher et al. 1983; Rogers et al. 1996), but infection was found to spread consistently to other organs. An acute exudative or interstitial pneumonia with peribronchiolar cellular cuffing and a lobular distribution occurs within 4–8 days of infection. Lesions are fully developed by 8–12 days postinfection and are largely resolved by 4 weeks after infection, although infection may still be present in the lungs. Similar lesions were produced in germfree pigs by Rogers et al. (1996) using a *C. trachomatis*-like isolate from a case of pneumonia. They identified mild multifocal rhinitis and diarrhea in addition to the pneumonic changes. Rogers and Anderson (1996) infected gnotobiotic piglets with isolates from diarrheic pigs to produce diarrhea after 4–5 days which lasted for 8 days. The apical part of the villus appeared to be colonized in the distal jejunum and ileum, with little or no infection in the colon. Villous atrophy developed and this was later followed (7–10 days postinfection) by mild focal serositis.

Contact infections suggest that natural infection is normally less severe and that reinfection after 3–4 weeks results in little or no further disease. This development of immunity is accompanied by development of complement-fixing antibodies to *C. psittaci*, which appear within 2 weeks and remain detectable for a variable period. Information on the time course of antibody detectable by ELISA and indirect immunofluorescence is lacking.

In genital infections, infected semen given to sows has resulted in the birth of weak piglets and continued shedding of chlamydiae for up to 20 months.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Many chlamydial infections are inapparent, but consistent features of respiratory tract and generalized infections include an incubation period of 3–11 days fol-
lowed by inappetence and a rise in rectal temperature to 39–41°C. Dyspnea, pneumonia and conjunctivitis may occur and may persist for 4–8 days. Evidence of pleurisy or pericarditis may be detected by auscultation, and articular involvement by lameness in one or more joints. In slaughter pigs, polyarthritis associated with synovitis has been reported. Other disturbances of gait include weakness in piglets and nervous signs in pigs of all age groups. Fatal infections are most commonly reported in younger animals.

Diarrhea has been reported to be associated with chlamydial infection (Pospischil and Wood 1987) and can be produced experimentally in gnotobiotic pigs with isolates from diarrheic animals (Rogers and Anderson 1996), but retrospective analysis of cases by Nietfeld et al. (1997) failed to confirm that infection (demonstrated by immunoperoxidase staining of the intestinal epithelium) was statistically associated with diarrhea. Many reports deal with genital tract infection and disturbances in reproduction. In the boar, infection is associated with orchitis, epididymitis, and urethritis; while infections in gilts and sows have resulted in late abortions and the birth of dead or weak piglets. Serologic and isolation studies suggest that many genital tract infections are clinically inapparent.

**LESIONS**

Lesions in which *C. psittaci* has been demonstrated often contain other agents, and many descriptions of the lesions found in field cases may not take into account the presence of agents such as mycoplasmas or viruses. The large body of work on respiratory disease suggests that lung lesions are distributed posteriorly in most cases, although occasional patches of pneumonia may occur in the anterior lobes (Harris et al. 1984).

Lesions are irregular and raised, are of firm consistency, extend deep into the lung tissue, are limited by lobular boundaries, and are clearly demarcated from adjacent grossly normal tissue. Early lesions are pale red, becoming grayish as they age. Enlarged bronchial lymph nodes may be present. The microscopic findings include thickening of the alveolar septae by capillaries, septal edema, and neutrophils in peribronchial and subepithelial sites. Neutrophils and macrophages are common in the alveolar lumina, and in some areas this exudate occludes terminal bronchioles. Edema and massive epithelial cell shedding have been reported in severely affected lung lobules (Martin et al. 1983). Foci of type II pneumocyte hypertrophy and hyperplasia and vacuolated pneumocytes and bronchial epithelium have been reported in *C. trachomatis*-like experimental infection (Rogers et al. 1996). Peribronchial accumulations of plasma cells, lymphocytes, and macrophages are also common. There appears to be no pleurisy in experimental infections, and no gross changes in other organs were reported beyond enlargement of the bronchial lymph nodes. Antigen can be demonstrated in bronchial and bronchiolar epithelial cells and in pneumocytes in experimental studies (Rogers et al. 1996) and in field cases (Done et al. 1992).

The other lesions reported to occur in field cases include pericarditis, pleurisy, hemorrhages of kidney and bladder, and enlargement of the spleen. There is little doubt that synovitis accompanies the arthritic changes and that orchitis in boars is accompanied by interstitial edema and tubular degeneration. Aborted piglets may be mummified; stillborn or weak piglets may have lung, liver, or enteric lesions. The organism has been isolated from pseudomembranous colitis in experimental *S. typhimurium* infections (Pospischil and Wood 1987), and extensive studies of pig intestines by immunoperoxidase (Zahn et al. 1995; Pospischil et al. 1996; Szeredi et al. 1996; Nietfeld et al. 1997) confirm the distribution of the inclusions in the small-intestinal villi in piglets and in the large-intestinal intercrypt epithelium in finisher pigs. Lesions in experimentally infected gnotobiotic piglets included watery colon contents with flakes of undigested curd, villous atrophy, lymphangitis, and multifocal necrosis of the apical portion of the villi (Rogers and Anderson 1996).

**DIAGNOSIS**

The clinical signs of chlamydial infection are not distinctive, but it must be considered as a possible cause of pneumonia, polyarthritis, enteritis, late abortion, stillbirths, mummified piglets, and orchitis. The gross lesions in the lung may be suggestive of chlamydial infection, but any firm diagnosis involves laboratory tests. These are serologic: complement fixation using heat-stable *C. psittaci* antigen, and ELISA using tissue culture antigen (Szeredi et al. 1996); microscopic agglutination (Wilson and Plummer 1966); and indirect immunofluorescence. Complement-fixing antibodies should ideally be found to rise in paired serum samples, but the presence of high levels of antibody (1:256) may be sufficient. As only low levels of complement-fixing antibodies may arise from infections in sites such as the respiratory, enteric, and genital tracts, the absence of high levels of complement-fixing antibody does not rule out chlamydiae as a cause of disease.

Chlamydiae may be detected in smears of discharges or postmortem specimens and in histological specimens after staining by Giemsa’s method. The organisms are tiny (0.2–1.0 µm) and are present in large numbers in cells. A more satisfactory method is to use Koster’s stain in which a fixed smear is stained for 5 minutes with carbol fuchsine, decolorized for 30 seconds with 0.25% acetic acid, and counterstained for 1 minute with 1% aqueous Loeffler’s methylene blue. The chlamydiae appear as clusters of intracellular red dots against a blue background (Figure 50.2). Most specific of all is the
immunofluorescence test using specific fluorescein-conjugated antibody to C. psittaci to demonstrate infected cells. Immunoperoxidase tests have been described (Chasey et al. 1981), and the immunoperoxidase staining of fixed tissue sections is now standard and appears to be the most sensitive method of detection (Szeredi et al. 1996) in tissue. Many laboratories are using PCR tests to confirm the presence of the three species in feces and tissue specimens. Primers include genomic DNA sequences, 16S rRNA gene sequences, ompA gene sequences, and plasmid sequences.

Isolation can also be carried out by the inoculation of young mice and of 6- to 8-day fertile hen eggs. More than one subculture may be necessary before infection can be detected. Cell cultures using L929 or McCoy cell lines treated with cycloheximide (1 µg/mL) may be inoculated by centrifugation (Farmer et al. 1982) in tissue culture medium at pH 7.0. Inclusions are at a maximum after 48 hours of incubation at 35–37°C.

Transport media for chlamydiae should contain streptomycin (50–100 mg/L) or gentamicin (10–20 mg/L) with vancomycin (100 µg/mL) and nystatin (25 mg/L). Samples can be stored at 4°C or at −70°C. Handling C. psittaci is dangerous, and severe human infections and death can result. Appropriate safety precautions should be observed.

**TREATMENT**

A number of antimicrobials have some effect on C. psittaci in vitro, but the most satisfactory compounds for treatment are the tetracyclines. Treatment for inadequate times may result in relapse; for complete elimination or suppression of infection to the latent state, 21-day treatment should be given at the therapeutic level. Tetracycline, oxytetracycline, and chlorotetracycline can all be used in drinking water or feed. Long-acting oxytetracycline injections are useful for treating individual infected animals.

**PREVENTION**

Pigs should be prevented from coming into contact with infected pigs, other mammalian species, and bird droppings. Infected pigs should be maintained in separate air and drainage spaces from susceptible animals. Any infected breeding stock should be used only after tetracycline treatment or kept with other infected stock in isolation until sufficient uninfected animals are available to replace them. Disinfection with phenols and formalin fumigation will eliminate elementary bodies from buildings.

**REFERENCES**


CHAPTER 50

MISCELLANEOUS BACTERIAL INFECTIONS

Actinobacillus suis

Septicemia and death caused by Actinobacillus suis and occasionally by A. equuli in suckling and recently weaned pigs have been reported sporadically from several pig-rearing countries (Van Dorssen and Jaartsveld 1962; Cutlip et al. 1972; Windsor 1973; Mair et al. 1974; MacDonald et al. 1976). A. suis outbreaks resembling erysipelas have been reported in older pigs and sows in Canada (Miniats et al. 1989), and the organism has also been the cause of disease resembling pleuropneumonia in older pigs in the United States (Yaeger 1996) and the United Kingdom. Most outbreaks occur as sudden death of one or several piglets in one, two, or, rarely, multiple litters in individual herds. Infection with A. suis is probably widespread but disease is seldom reported.

ETIOLOGY

A. suis is a gram-negative, nonmotile, nonencapsulated, aerobic, and facultative anaerobic coccobacillus, 0.5–3 µm long and about 0.8 µm in diameter. Filamentous forms occur. Grayish, adherent, circular, translucent colonies measuring 1–2 mm form on blood agar within 24 hours. On horse blood agar, colonies are surrounded by a narrow but distinct zone of alpha hemolysis, and on calf and sheep blood agars, by a wide zone of beta (complete) hemolysis. The organism grows on MacConkey agar. Biochemically, A. suis can be differentiated from other related bacteria isolated from pigs by its ability to produce catalase, oxidase, and urease; hydrolysis of esculin; and acid production without gas from arabinose, lactose, salicin, and trehalose, but not from mannitol or sorbitol. Its biochemistry and antigenicity have recently been studied by Bada et al. (1996). Distinction from isolates of A. pleuropneumoniae biotype II is difficult but can be achieved biochemically and using DNA analysis. A. equuli differs from A. suis by being nonhemolytic; producing acid from mannitol but not from arabinose, cellulose, and salicin; and not splitting esculin. A. suis is pathogenic for mice; A. equuli is not. A. suis and A. equuli are killed within 15 minutes at 60°C and are sensitive to most disinfectants. They die out within a few days in culture and pathologic material.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

A. suis can be carried in the tonsils and nostrils of healthy pigs of any age and in the vaginas of apparently healthy sows (Ross et al. 1972). Clinical disease occurs in neonates and suckling pigs up to and just after weaning age, and less commonly in sows and mature swine (Miniats et al. 1989; Sanford et al. 1990). With the separation of pigs and horses in modern farming systems, infection in pigs by A. equuli seems to have diminished.

Outbreaks of clinical disease associated with A. suis infection occur more frequently in minimal-disease and other high-health-status herds (Miniats et al. 1989; Sanford et al. 1990), possibly because the lack of immunity in these pigs allows virulent A. suis organisms to express their pathogenic potential, but the organism can be recovered from herds in which disease is not apparent.

PATHOGENESIS

The pathogenesis of A. suis infection has not been defined. Infection probably occurs via the upper respiratory tract, and the disease has been reproduced by intranasal inoculation (Fenwick et al. 1996), although invasion through abrasions in the skin and mucous membranes is also likely. In susceptible animals, septic
emboli then spread rapidly to multiple organs and tissues throughout the body and either are trapped in vessels or adhere to vessel walls, forming microcolonies surrounded by areas of hemorrhage and necrosis. Virulence factors of *A. suis* have not been specifically determined, but lipopolysaccharide, polysaccharides in the cell wall, outer-membrane proteins, and, in some strains, a 104 kDa hemolysin (ApxI) are all potential virulence factors likely to be involved in pathogenesis. Antibodies to ApxI have been demonstrated in the sera of pigs which have recovered from experimental infection (Fenwick et al. 1996). Pigs may die within 15 hours of infection.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Sudden death of suckling piglets, 2 days to 4 weeks old, in one or more litters is often the first indication of an outbreak of actinobacillosis. Deaths in piglets are sometimes mistakenly attributed to crushing. Cyanosis, petechial hemorrhages, fever (up to 40°C, 104°F), and panting, sometimes accompanied by shaking and/or paddling, may be seen prior to death in suckling pigs. Congestion of extremities (leading to necrosis of feet, tail, and ears) and swollen joints may occur. In weaned pigs, anorexia, fever, a persistent cough, respiratory distress (Yaeger 1996) and pneumonia are reported; recovered animals may remain unthrifty. In outbreaks in mature animals, fever, round and rhomboid erythematous skin lesions, inappetence, and sudden deaths are characteristic, but mortality is usually low. Metritis, meningitis, and abortion have been reported in sows. The disease may be confused with erysipelas, especially when skin lesions develop, and with pleuropneumonia when respiratory signs are present.

**LESIONS**

The most striking gross lesions are petechial to ecchymotic hemorrhages in any of the following organs: lung, kidney, heart, liver, spleen, skin, and intestines. The lesions are especially prominent and most frequently seen in the lung, where lobular necrosis and serofibrinous exudates also occur (Figure 50.3). Increased serous or serofibrinous exudates may occur in the thorax and the pericardium. Pleurisy, pericarditis, and miliary abscesses in the lung, liver, skin, mesenteric lymph nodes, and kidney may be seen in older suckling or weaned pigs. The pneumonic lesions may resemble those of pleuropneumonia. Arthritis (Van Dorssen and Jaartsveld 1962; Odin 1994) and valvular endocarditis (Jones and Simmons 1971) have been reported. In mature animals, numerous round, rhomboid, or irregular skin lesions are common.

Histologically, bacterial thromboemboli with accompanying fibrinothrombotic necrosis in randomly scattered vessels in the lung, liver, kidney, skin, spleen, heart, pericardium, meninges, and brain are characteristic (Figure 50.4). Bacterial emboli may be surrounded by radiating eosinophilic clublike colonies. These are most obvious in the lung, where there may be large coalescing areas of necrosis.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Sudden mortality in suckling pigs in individual litters in herds with previous *A. suis* outbreaks usually indicates a new outbreak. The gross lesions of hemorrhages and necrosis in the lung and/or skin and kidney and splenic enlargement are suggestive of *A. suis* infection. In mature pigs, fever, inappetence, and skin lesions resembling erysipelas, especially in herds already vaccinated against erysipelas, should raise a suspicion of *A. suis*. Microscopic lesions consisting of bacterial emboli, necrosis, and inflammatory cells in the lung and other organs are also suggestive. Diagnosis, however, depends on isolation of *A. suis* or *A. equuli* from the lesions. *A. suis* infection should be considered when pleuropneumonia is suspected in herds thought to be free from that disease. In these herds it may cause mild or atypical lung lesions and give rise to antibody to ApxI but not to the cytotoxin of *A. pleuropneumoniae* or to its somatic antigens (Fenwick et al. 1996). *A suis* can usually be isolated from the tonsils of piglets aged 2–10 days in such herds.
TREATMENT

*A. suis* is sensitive to most commonly used antibiotics. Since outbreaks in suckling pigs are so acute and unpredictable, however, treatment is usually too late. In older pigs, responses to treatment with ampicillin (5 mg/kg) orally or parenterally, injectable benzathine-procaine penicillin G (2.25–3.0 \* 10^6 IU/kg) intramuscularly (IM), injectable procaine penicillin (1.8–2.4 \* 10^6 IU/kg) IM, or in-feed medication with oxytetracycline hydrochloride (550 g/ton) and/or streptomycin for periods up to 1 week have all been excellent.

PREVENTION

Autogenous bacterins have not been critically evaluated but have been used in herds with repeated *A. suis* outbreaks with apparent success.

REFERENCES


Yeasts

Yeasts are fungi that are normally single celled but can form filaments (or pseudohyphae). Some can sporulate to produce resistant spores. They occur in the food of the pig and in dusts. Some species are commonly found on the skin and mucous membranes. In certain situations, yeasts of a number of species (but principally *Candida albicans*) may be isolated from inflammatory lesions of the oral cavity, gastrointestinal tract, urogenital tract, and skin. Their isolation from such lesions is often associated with use of therapeutic antimicrobials, especially in piglets. Yeasts belonging to the genus *Malassezia*, possibly *M. pachydermatis*, are present in the ears and on the skin of pigs, but their role in disease at these sites is not known. They can reach high numbers when skin or ear lesions develop, but so little is currently known about them and their role in disease that they will not be considered further.

Yeasts may also form a major part of the diet of the
pig, as either yeast wastes from brewing or distilling or yeast grown and treated specifically as a component of rations. These yeasts can provide high protein and, in particular, high lysine. Traces of paraffin waxes have been found in the fat of pigs fed on yeasts grown on that substrate, and there are some reports of diarrhea and increased kidney weights in yeast-fed pigs. Most reports indicate that inclusion of yeasts in the ration does not adversely affect the health of pigs.

**ETIOLOGY**

Yeasts identified in infections in pigs belong to a number of genera. Those of the genus *Candida* are most commonly isolated, although species of *Torulopsis*, *Trichosporon*, *Rhodotorula*, *Pichia*, *Pityrosporum*, and *Cryptococcus* have been recorded. *Cryptococcus neoformans* has been isolated from cryptococcosis in pigs, but the disease is rare in this species and occurs only where the organism is commonly found in other livestock.

*Candida albicans* is the species of *Candida* most frequently reported; but *C. tropicalis*, *C. pseudotropicalis*, *C. brumptii*, *C. slooffii*, *C. rugosa*, *C. lipolytica*, *C. krusei*, and *C. scottii* have been isolated from lesions or feces of apparently healthy pigs. Since *C. albicans* is associated most frequently with specific lesions, both it and its relationship to these lesions will be described here.

*Candida* spp. are spherical cells, 2.5–6 μm in diameter. They reproduce by budding (blastospores) and chlamydospores, which bud from filaments (or pseudohyphae) on chlamydospore agar, particularly under reduced oxygen tension at 25°C (Carter 1979). Pseudohyphae and oval yeast forms are found in lesions. *Candida* spp. grow readily on Sabouraud agar, malt agar, and often on blood agar incubated aerobically. They form 1–2 mm, creamy white, opaque, circular colonies within 24–48 hours at 37°C and within 2–4 days at 25°C. *C. albicans* produces chlamydospores and germ tubes but no pellicle when grown in broth and ferments glucose, maltose, and galactose but not sucrose or lactose. It is not known to produce toxins, although there have been suggestions that it can produce keratolytic enzymes in the presence of glucose.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

*C. albicans* has been identified in the bedding, feed, and water supplies of pigs. It occurs on the skin and in the oral cavity, stomach, and intestines of normal pigs in small numbers. It can be shed in the feces and exhaled in droplets by animals with oral infections. It may be isolated from the feces of birds, rodents, and other animal species and may cause disease in those species, which may become sources of the organism for pigs. Organisms in the environment may multiply in moist conditions in the presence of suitable substrates such as spilled meal or garbage.

**PATHOGENESIS**

*C. albicans* appears to colonize debilitated skin surfaces and lesions on other mucous surfaces. The predisposing factors appear to include the effects of artificial rearing of piglets (Osborne et al. 1960) and chronic enteritis often associated with treatment with broad-spectrum antimicrobials. Gastric ulcers appear to be colonized by yeasts rather than initiated by them, and cutaneous candidiasis often results from exposure to continually warm moist conditions that are accompanied by poor hygiene and food residues (Reynolds et al. 1968).

Invasion of mucous surfaces appears to follow accumulation of yeast forms on the debilitated surface and develops with pseudohyphal invasion of the superficial layers of the epithelium. Systemic invasion is rare and the inflammatory response to infection is slight.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Yeasts have been implicated in chronic gastroenteritis in piglets, gastric ulceration, and cutaneous and oropharyngeal infections. Piglets are often 3–5 days old (more commonly, 7–14 days) before yeast infection complicates the underlying problem. The clinical signs of gastroenteritis complicated by yeasts are not specific, but there is often a history of dullness, inappetence, vomiting, and chronic diarrhea that may be grayish or blackish depending on the diet and has failed to respond to the use of broad-spectrum antibiotics such as tetracyclines. Piglets may die after 10–14 days of illness. In many cases there are characteristic yellowish white, circular, 2–5 mm lesions on the tongue and hard palate, which resemble colonies of *C. albicans* on artificial media. When scraped off, no macroscopic changes are seen beneath them. Cutaneous candidiasis often presents as a moist gray exudate on the surface of the skin of the abdomen with little or no effect on the hair in early lesions, but later resulting in hair loss and thickening of the skin. Affected animals are often kept in moist conditions and exposed to food residues.

**LESIONS**

Piglets with candidiasis are often in poor condition with chronic diarrhea. There may be lesions in the oral cavity and throughout the gastrointestinal tract. These consist of white specks and circular patches 2–5 mm in diameter on the dorsum of the tongue, less frequently on the pharynx, and sometimes on the soft or hard palate. These patches may coalesce to form larger areas of pseudomembranous material that may occlude the lumen of the esophagus. The lesions may extend down the esophagus and may be seen on the gastric mucosa. There may be small hemorrhages in the cardiac area and white pseudomembranous lesions in the esophageal area. Descriptions of the lesions distal to the stomach
are rarely published, but in heavily infected animals they resemble those of chronic enteritis, with villous atrophy and thickening of the mucosa. When the white pseudomembranous material is removed, congestion of the mucosal surface may be seen, but ulceration is rare. In older pigs, \textit{C. albicans} may be isolated from gastric ulcers, but these do not differ grossly from uninfected ones. Gross lesions may be seen in cutaneous candidiasis and include a grayish surface deposit, thickening of the skin, and hair loss.

Microscopic lesions include the presence of numerous yeasts on the epithelial surface, with pseudohyphal filaments visible as 1.5–2.0 µm deeply staining threads in the epithelium. In lesions on the tongue, yeast cells and pseudohyphae may be seen in cavities beneath the papillae. They may also be present in large numbers in the periphery of infected gastric ulcers. Degenerative changes are frequently present in the infected epithelium. They include desquamation of epithelial cells, capillary dilation, edema of the submucosa or dermis (depending on the epithelial surface attached), and presence of inflammatory cells. These are neutrophils in the early lesions, later (in 4- to 5-day-old lesions) accompanied by eosinophils, macrophages, plasma cells, and lymphocytes.

**DIAGNOSIS**

In piglets the appearance of the white 2–5 mm lesions in the oral cavity may suggest that candidiasis is present, but diarrhea and association of infection with gastric ulceration may not be identified on clinical grounds. Skin changes may also suggest a diagnosis of candidiasis. A history of chronic enteritis and broad-spectrum antibiotic use or housing in moist conditions is often suggestive of candidiasis.

Confirmation of diagnosis is based on demonstration of the organism concerned in the lesions or, in life, isolation of large numbers from the feces. The presence of yeasts in lesions of the intestine may be established by their demonstration in Gram-stained smears in which oval or round, gram-positive, often budding, 2.5–6 µm cells may be seen (Figure 50.5). Similar bodies may be seen in histological sections stained by hematoxylin and eosin or, more easily, stained by periodic acid-Schiff or silver stains such as Grocott’s (Figure 50.6). None of these allow the complete identification of the organism.

Yeasts may be isolated using Sabouraud’s agar with or without chloramphenicol (Carter 1979). Some, such as \textit{C. albicans}, will grow readily on horse blood agar. Incubation at 25°C yields colonies 1–2 mm in diameter after 3–4 days, but incubation at 37°C can allow colonies to be identified within 24–48 hours. The genera can be separated using characters such as shape of the cells, presence or absence of pseudomycelium, presence or absence of capsule, production of chlamydospores, ability to split urea, and other characters (Carter 1979). Many yeast species may be identified in culture using commercial biochemical strips such as the API Yeast series.

Isolation of large numbers of yeasts from lesions may confirm a diagnosis of candidiasis, but their isolation in small numbers from the skin, vagina, or feces and intestines of clinically normal pigs may not be significant.

---

50.5. Photomicrograph of yeast cells (arrow) from the ileal mucosa in a 10-day-old piglet (Gram; original magnification ×1200).
**C. albicans** and other yeasts are sensitive in vitro to a number of compounds such as nystatin, miconazole, and amphotericin B, but only nystatin and amphotericin B have been used in treatment (Osborne et al. 1960). Nystatin suppressed the clinical signs but did not eliminate infection. Amphotericin B may be effective in young piglets given at a rate of 0.5 mg/kg twice daily. In many instances, correction of underlying disease or husbandry factors is sufficient. Cleaning up waste food and providing a dry environment caused resolution of cutaneous candidiasis (Reynolds et al. 1968). Treatment should also include discontinuation of the use of broad-spectrum antibiotics and their replacement with narrow-spectrum ones if they are a factor in yeast colonization. Animals with cutaneous candidiasis may also be scrubbed with suitable detergent or with hexetidine-based shampoos.

**PREVENTION**

Pigs should be maintained in warm, dry, clean conditions, and accumulations of moist fermenting food should be prevented. Enteric diseases in piglets should be treated with appropriate antimicrobials, and lengthy treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics should be avoided. Disinfection of pens and pen fittings can be carried out using formaldehyde vapor or 2% formaldehyde; cleaning and drying of the pens will reduce levels of yeasts to normal background levels.

**REFERENCES**


---

**Yersinias**

A number of species of *Yersinia* have been isolated from pigs, and reports of association between infection and clinical disease are increasing. *Y. enterocolitica* has increasingly become recognized as a cause of human food poisoning and enteritis since the late 1960s, and the pig is an important source. There are reports in the literature of many surveys of pig carcasses, offal, and feces for the presence of *Y. enterocolitica* (Doyle et al. 1981; Schiemann and Fleming 1981; Hunter et al. 1983). Results of these surveys show that infection is distributed worldwide in pigs, and serotypes considered pathogenic to humans are commonly present. This relationship to human disease has stimulated a number of reports of pathogenic determinants (Mosimbale and Gyles 1982) that have been demonstrated in *Y. enterocolitica* in both porcine and human isolates, and it seems clear from the work of Kwaga and Iversen (1993) that the pig and human strains are identical. Further reports deal with the antigenic relationships between *Yersinia* spp. and *Brucella* spp., since infections with certain strains of the former can cause interference with serologic tests for both *B. abortus* and *B. suis*. This interference is described in Chapter 35.

Infection in pigs is usually inapparent, but *Y. pseudotuberculosis* and *Y. enterocolitica* have been isolated from pigs with fever, enteritis, and diarrhea.

**ETIOLOGY**

Yersinias are aerobic or facultatively anaerobic, gram-negative coccobacilli (or short rods), 1.2 µm in length and 0.5–1.0 µm in diameter. They are nonmotile at 37°C,
but some are motile at lower temperatures. Species isolated from pigs include *Y. pseudotuberculosis*, *Y. pseudotuberculosis* subsp. *pestis* (the plague bacillus), *Y. enterocolitica*, *Y. intermedia*, *Y. frederiksenii*, and *Y. kristensenii*. Only two species (*Y. pseudotuberculosis* and *Y. enterocolitica*) have yet been associated with clinical disease in pigs.

Yersinias may be isolated in routine media, upon which they appear as grayish 1–2 mm colonies within 24–48 hours and as similar-sized non-lactose-fermenting colonies on MacConkey agar. The species are distinguished by biochemical tests. *Y. pseudotuberculosis* is motile at 22°C, grows on citrate media at 22°C, splits urea, and does not ferment sucrose or raffinose but does ferment mannose. *Y. pseudotuberculosis* subsp. *pestis* is negative for all these characters. *Y. enterocolitica* is also motile and splits urea but ferments sucrose and does not grow on citrate or ferment mannose. Individual species can be divided into biotypes and serotypes. Capsules, attachment antigens, and enterotoxins have been described in organisms of this genus.

*Y. enterocolitica* has been subdivided into at least 46 O groups and at least 5 biotypes. Of these, most human infections are associated with biotype 2, O9 and biotype 4, O3. Biotype 1, O8 is also associated with some human infections. *Y. enterocolitica* organisms of a number of O groups have been recorded from pigs. The actual O groups isolated may vary from one part of a country to another (Schiemann and Fleming 1981) but include O3, O5, O6, O7, O8, O9, O13, O18, and O46.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

*Y. enterocolitica* is found throughout the world and has been recorded from pigs in many countries (Bockemuhl et al. 1979; Cantoni et al. 1979; Barcellos and Castro 1981; Doyle et al. 1981; Schiemann and Fleming 1981; Hunter et al. 1983). Infection may not be general, since not all herds are infected (Christensen 1980). It persists on the tonsils of infected pigs for long periods and is shed in the feces of infected pigs for up to 30 weeks. It has been shown to be transmitted to human food and elsewhere on farms by flies (Fukushima et al. 1979). Feed has been found to be infected, and studies of the dissemination of infection in pig facilities (Fukushima et al. 1983) indicate that infection is transmitted from contaminated pens, in which infection can persist for 3 weeks. Other studies suggest that feces can remain infected for up to 12 weeks and that, in suitable substrates, the organism may multiply at 20–22°C. It appears that transmission from pig to pig is via fecal contamination of accommodation, water, and feed.

*Y. pseudotuberculosis* is less commonly demonstrated in America than in Europe or Japan and is less commonly identified in pigs than *Y. enterocolitica*. It is commonly found in rodents, which probably represent the main source of infection for pigs.

*Y. pseudotuberculosis* subsp. *pestis* may infect wild pigs in California, presumably from infection present in rodents (Clark et al. 1983).

**PATHOGENESIS**

*Y. enterocolitica* has been shown to infect pigs orally, to multiply and be found in the feces within 2–3 weeks of infection, and to disappear from the feces within 30 weeks (Fukushima et al. 1984). No clinical signs or lesions were described and none were found following infection of 6 pigs with the isolate obtained from the clinical outbreak described above. Experimental studies by Nielsen et al. (1996) have confirmed that infection of the feces may be found between 5 and 21 days after infection and that tonsillar carriage persists longer. A serum antibody response develops by 19 days after infection and has disappeared by 70 days postinfection. Studies in suckling mice have indicated that 10 of the 12 pig isolates tested produced enterotoxin and that one isolate could produce fluid in piglet gut loops. The Sereny test for invasiveness was negative in typical pig strains (Mosimbale and Gyles 1982). Pig isolates harbor the virulence plasmid (Kwaga and Iversen 1993) and possess the capsular material considered essential for pathogenicity and detected using the Congo red magnesium oxalate test. Studies by Erwerth and Natterman (1987) suggest that oral infection is followed by establishment of infection in the tonsils and the development of enteritis in the ileum and large intestine. Similar colonization was reported by Schiemann (1988) and has also been reproduced by Shu et al. (1995a, b) and Shu et al. (1997), who demonstrated that small-intestinal infection in piglets led to microabscesses at the base of the villi and to reductions in the levels of intestinal lactoses (Shu et al. 1997) and depressed growth (Shu et al. 1995b).

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Clinical disease has been associated only with *Y. enterocolitica* and *Y. pseudotuberculosis*. *Y. pseudotuberculosis* subsp. *pestis* is clearly capable of producing serologic reactions (Clark et al. 1983), but no clinical disease has been described.

*Y. enterocolitica* was isolated in profuse culture from outbreaks of diarrhea in weaned pigs from which no other infectious agents could be recovered. Mild fever (to 39.4°C, 103°F) was present, and the diarrhea contained no blood or mucus and was blackish in color. Clinical signs resembling those described above have been seen in animals receiving tylosin or lincomycin. Bloodstained mucus may also be found in some diarrheic feces and on solid feces passed by penmates. The organism has been isolated from the rectal mucosa in cases of rectal stricture. Experimental infections in suckling piglets result in anorexia, vomiting, diarrhea, and reduction in weight gain (Shu et al. 1995a).
Y. pseudotuberculosis has been associated with clinical signs by Morita et al. (1968), who described an outbreak in Japan. Affected pigs were dull and showed inappetence; bloodstained diarrhea; and edema of eyelids, lower face, and dependent parts of the abdomen. Diarrhea was also observed by Barcellos and Castro (1981). Neef and Lysons (1994) were able to reproduce diarrhea in 4 of 9 pigs infected with a colitis isolate of Y. pseudotuberculosis. The organism has been isolated from pigs with the rectal stricture syndrome.

**LESIONS**

The lesions caused by Y. enterocolitica infection have been described in detail by Erwerth and Natterman (1987) and consist of catarrhal enteritis in the small and large intestines. Microcolonies of the organism can be seen in the disrupted intestinal epithelium, and in pigs with rectal lesions, bacterial penetration and inflammation reach the muscularis mucosae. Shu et al. (1995a) confirmed this finding for the small intestine and describe the presence of microabscesses at the bases of the villi.

Lesions of Y. pseudotuberculosis have been described (Morita et al. 1968). They resembled those of pseudotuberculosis in other species, with milliary gray-white spots on the liver and spleen and swollen gray-white mesenteric lymph nodes. A catarrhal and diphtheritic change was described in the colon and rectum, as edema and ascites also occurred. Microscopic lesions included necrotic foci containing masses of bacteria surrounded by a thin layer of granulation tissue in the lung, liver, spleen, mesenteric lymph nodes, and lymphoid follicles of the large intestine. Similar findings were made by Neef and Lysons (1994), who noted the penetration of the microabscesses into the lamina propria. Y. pseudotuberculosis was isolated from the liver, spleen, lungs, duodenum, rectum, and mesenteric lymph nodes by Morita et al. (1968). Y. pseudotuberculosis can also be isolated from inflammatory lesions of the rectal mucosa similar to those described above.

**DIAGNOSIS**

The clinical signs are not distinctive, but the occurrence of mild fever and blood and mucus on solid feces can indicate yersinia infection in the absence of swine dysentery. Where rectal stricture is common, the organism may be responsible for diarrhea in younger age groups, and the organism may be involved in the “colitis” syndrome of mild diarrhea in growing pigs. Diagnosis of infection with most Yersinia spp. in pigs depends upon isolation of the organism and its identification. Serology has been used to identify Y. pseudotuberculosis subsp. pestis (Clark et al. 1983), but most accounts of yersinia infections suggest that although agglutinating antibody may result from infection, isolation methods are adequate for diagnosis. The indirect ELISA developed by Nielsen et al. (1996) for Y. enterocolitica O3 may be of value in the field but may not detect infections by other serotypes. Y. pseudotuberculosis can readily be isolated at 37°C on blood and MacConkey agar from lesions of the type described by Morita et al. (1968) and so may Y. enterocolitica. Most isolation methods for all yersinias involve use of a cold enrichment technique in which tissues or samples under investigation are placed in phosphate-buffered saline M/15 at pH 7.6 at 4°C for 6 weeks, with subculture at 3 and 6 weeks onto a selective medium (Hunter et al. 1983). The selective medium may be MacConkey agar incubated at 30°C or a specific medium for Y. enterocolitica. These methods may be used for direct isolation. Media are described by Hunter et al. (1983) and six are reviewed by Catteau et al. (1983). Recent studies by food microbiologists have resulted in a range of tests, such as the immunomagnetic separation and polymerase chain reaction technique of Rasmussen et al. (1995), which can detect as few as 200 cells per gram of feces.

**TREATMENT**

There is at present no general indication for the treatment of yersinia infections, since clinical signs are so rare. In vitro studies suggest that isolates are often sensitive to oxytetracycline, furazolidone, neomycin, sulfonamides, and spectinomycin. Tetracyclines have been used in feed to eliminate infection and clinical signs.

**PREVENTION**

Since spread of Y. enterocolitica from pig to pig appears to occur from contact with feces, hygiene coupled with housing groups of pigs in separate drainage areas will reduce infection. Control of flies and rodents and disinfection of pens before restocking will reduce transmission. Morita et al. (1968) found that pseudotuberculosis could be prevented by excluding birds and rodents. Current requirements for the control of Y. enterocolitica in pig meat concentrate on the removal of the tonsil at slaughter, so control programs have not been developed for the live animal. Control may be required when serologic cross-reaction in the brucellosis test is identified in herds selling breeding stock. The findings of Nielsen et al. (1996) suggest that serologic reactions peak at 33 days postinfection and have disappeared by 70 days postinfection, so pigs may be treated or managed at the time of infection to prevent the development of antibody or held and retested after antibody levels have declined.

**REFERENCES**


Staphylococci

Staphylococci are ubiquitous. They are present on every pig farm and involved in a wide range of lesions in pigs of all ages. The most easily recognized are those of exudative epidermitis caused by *Staphylococcus hyicus* and described in Chapter 39. Few, if any, of the other lesions can be unequivocally identified as being staphylococcal on clinical grounds; in the majority, staphylococcal involvement must be confirmed by laboratory means. In addition to their association with pig disease, some of the staphylococci that infect the pig, notably *S. aureus*, may be involved in human food poisoning if carcasses are contaminated or abscesses are present.

**ETIOLOGY**

Staphylococci are gram-positive, 0.5–1.5 μm in diameter, forming grapelike clusters when grown in serum broth or seen in pus. They grow primarily in aerobic conditions but can also grow anaerobically, are oxidase-negative but produce catalase, and metabolize a wide variety of sugars. They produce a wide range of enzymes and some toxins. The species are distinguished by the presence of enzymes such as coagulase, DNAase, hemolysins, and phosphatase and by the ability to utilize a variety of sugars. Major species reported from the pig are *S. aureus*, *S. hyicus*, and *S. epidermidis*, although *S. saprophyticus* has also been described.

*S. aureus* is the only species apart from *S. hyicus* to be consistently isolated from lesions in pigs. It forms yellowish-white, opaque, circular, domed colonies, 1–2 mm in diameter, on blood agar after 24 hours of incubation. These colonies may be surrounded by a zone of complete hemolysis, caused by alpha hemolysins, on horse blood agar. On sheep blood agar, the ring of complete hemolysis is surrounded by a wider area of incompletest hemolysis caused by beta hemolysins; this becomes complete on cooling of the plate. In addition to these hemolysins, the organism produces coagulase, DNAase, proteinases, hyaluronidase, and toxins that include the alpha toxin and the enterotoxins. Both have been demonstrated in strains of porcine origin (Engvall and Schwan 1983); protein A (Takeuchi et al. 1995) and polysaccharide capsules are also present. Isolates of *S. aureus* can be identified by phage typing and plasmid profiling, and those of public health significance may readily be traced. *S. aureus* is fairly resistant to drying but is readily inactivated by heat. It is sensitive to a wide
range of disinfectants, such as phenols, hypochlorites, iodine, and iodophors.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

*S. aureus* is widely distributed in the environment and has been recovered from pig feces, food, water following contamination of drinkers, pen floors and walls, and the air in pig facilities. The organism can be isolated from a wide range of hosts, including birds, rodents, dogs, cats, and humans. The extent to which isolates from lesions in pigs are of nonporcine origin is not yet known. Porcine strains capable of enterotoxin production have been identified on carcasses and represent a source of infection or possible food poisoning to humans (Engvall and Schwan 1983).

The pig is probably the major source of infection for other pigs; *S. aureus* can be isolated from the skin, oral cavity, upper respiratory tract, prepuce, vagina, and gut of healthy pigs on a very wide scale. Transmission of the organism may be by aerosol to the upper respiratory tract, directly by skin contact, or indirectly by contact with contaminated walls or fittings. Ingestion of *S. aureus* from food, contaminated water, or litter is common. Venereal contact may be responsible for some genital infections; local invasion of the mammary gland, navel, and skin lesions is common.

**PATHOGENESIS**

*S. aureus* appears to multiply on damaged mucosal surfaces or skin and can invade to cause bacteremia. In some cases, such as neonatal septicemia, animals may become fevered and die, but bacteremia usually leads to formation of multiple abscesses. These may occur in bones to give osteomyelitis; in joints; on the heart valves to give vegetative endocarditis; and in the liver, kidney, or lymph nodes. Vegetative endocarditis may give rise to septic emboli that cause abscess formation and infarction in the kidney. Most of these systemic infections occur in neonates or piglets and take 7–10 days to develop. They are also present in apparently normal pigs at slaughter. Abscesses contain neutrophils and microcolonies of bacteria in all stages of multiplication and heal by fibrosis.

Mastitis, vaginitis, and metritis appear to result from *S. aureus* can be isolated from the skin, oral cavity, upper respiratory tract, prepuce, vagina, and gut of healthy pigs on a very wide scale. Transmission of the organism may be by aerosol to the upper respiratory tract, directly by skin contact, or indirectly by contact with contaminated walls or fittings. Ingestion of *S. aureus* from food, contaminated water, or litter is common. Venereal contact may be responsible for some genital infections; local invasion of the mammary gland, navel, and skin lesions is common.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

The presence of *S. aureus* infection cannot readily be suspected on clinical grounds. *S. aureus* has been isolated from a wide variety of syndromes. Most of these occur in individual animals, and disease rarely spreads from animal to animal. It can cause neonatal septicemia and is often identified in small, hairy, stunted piglets of 7–10 days of age with umbilical abscesses, polyarthritis, and signs of cardiac enlargement due to vegetative endocarditis. It is a cause of subcutaneous abscesses associated with abrasions and foot lesions, especially in piglets. These often result in arthritis of the distal phalangeal joints, enlargement of the hoof, and sinus formation at the coronary band. Creamy pus is often seen to exude from the abscesses.

*S. aureus* has been isolated from enteritis in piglets and in older animals and from the rectal mucosa of animals with lesions of rectal stricture. No particular features of diarrhea are associated with staphylococci except that the enteritis is often chronic and antibiotic treatment may have been given. The organism is also present in a small percentage of cases of mastitis and has been isolated from pigs with metritis and agalactia. The only reason to suspect staphylococcal involvement may be the presence of a creamy white or bloodstained pus, but this often contains other organisms. It has also been isolated from aborted fetuses and placentas (Kohler and Wille 1980).

**LESIONS**

No gross lesions may be seen in piglet septicemia. In chronic infections, an inflamed mucosa may be associated with staphylococcal infection, but there is no specific feature that allows their identification with staphylococcal infection. Abscesses may occur in the umbilicus, liver, lungs, lymph nodes, spleen, kidneys, joints, and bones in osteomyelitis; bone abscesses may give rise to pathologic fractures, especially when in the vertebrae. Body cavities (peritoneal cavity, pericardial cavity, uterine lumen) may contain pus, especially in young animals, following umbilical infection. *S. aureus* is only one cause of such lesions. Both gross and microscopic lesions of mastitis may be found in the mammary glands, and in some cases fibrosis may be considerable. Occasionally, a granulomatous mass with fibrosis may be found in the abdominal cavity of piglets that have died after castration. In all cases, confirmation that the lesions are staphylococcal depends on demonstration of the organisms.

**DIAGNOSIS**

The clinical signs resulting from multiple abscess formation in individual pigs may be suggestive, and similar suspicions may arise from the postmortem findings.
Confirmation of involvement of staphylococci rather than *Arcanobacterium pyogenes* or streptococci in abscesses and arthritis is obtained from Gram-stained smears of the pus in which gram-positive cocci may be seen singly or in clusters. Only the isolation of staphylococci in culture confirms that they are involved. *S. aureus* can be isolated readily on blood and MacConkey agar, and its identity can be confirmed by coagulase and DNase tests and by its ability to ferment mannitol. Isolates may be phage typed if this is considered relevant, and any toxins produced may be identified.

In most abscesses the absence of other bacteria must be confirmed before *S. aureus* is considered to be the sole cause; exclusion of other agents is even more important in diseases at mucous surfaces.

**TREATMENT**

Individual abscesses may be opened surgically after skin cleaning and disinfection, but most treatments rely on antimicrobial treatment. Since *S. aureus* infection is an individual-animal problem, there is usually no need to treat the whole group. Parenteral treatment with an appropriate formulation and prompt treatment at any age can prevent the development of large and potentially extensive and fatal abscesses. The use of feed medication as a prophylactic cannot be justified unless a severe problem has been identified, since the development of antimicrobial resistance in staphylococci is likely to favor them over other organisms after a brief period during which they are suppressed. The use of bacterins has been described, but they are not widely available or extensively used.

**REFERENCES**


---

**Actinobaculum (Actinomyces-Eubacterium-Corynebacterium) suis**

Soltys and Spratling (1957) isolated, anaerobically, a diphtheroid bacterium from the urine and diseased tissue of adult pigs in the United Kingdom affected with cystitis and pyelonephritis and named it *Corynebacterium suis*. Soltys (1961) described the characteristics of *C. suis* in more detail. *C. suis* was subsequently assigned to the genus *Eubacterium* (Wegienek and Reddy 1982), *Actinomyces* (Ludwig et al. 1992), and finally *Actinobaculum* Lawson et al. 1997).

*A. suis* infection associated with urinary tract disease in sows has been reported from Canada (Percy et al. 1966), Norway (Aalvik 1968), Holland (Dijkstra 1969; Frijlink et al. 1969; Narucka and Westendorp 1972), Denmark (Larsen 1970, 1973), Hong Kong (Munro and Wong 1972), Australia (Glazebrook et al. 1973), Switzerland (Schallibaum et al. 1976), Finland (Kauko et al. 1977), Malaysia (Too et al. 1985), Germany (Muller et al. 1986; Waldmann 1987), Brazil (De Oliveira et al. 1988), and the United States (Walker and MacLachlan 1989). Disease caused by *A. suis* occurs in small outbreaks or individual sows, but carriage is much more widespread. The main features of the organism and the disease are described below.

**ETIOLOGY**

*A. suis* is a gram-positive pleomorphic rod, 2–3 µm long and 0.3–0.5 µm wide; the organism tends to be larger in tissues than in cultures. In tissues and cultures it occurs in the form of so-called Chinese letters and in a palisade fashion. It is nonmotile and does not form spores.

*A. suis* grows well on blood agar under anaerobic conditions. Colonies are evident at 2 days, having a diameter of 2–3 mm; they then begin to flatten and develop a characteristic dry, gray, opaque surface with a crenated edge; some colonies attain a size of 4–5 mm in 5–6 days. There is no hemolysis. Growth on nutrient agar, even after subculture, is poor. In liquid media such as cooked meat broth and brain-heart infusion, slight turbidity is produced in 2–4 days; growth is more luxuriant in trypticase soy broth and is further enhanced by the addition of urea to a final concentration of 1.2% (w/v). The addition of maltose to either solid or liquid media improves growth. Although *A. suis* has always been described as an anaerobic organism, prolonged aerobic incubation on blood agar results in the development of colonies within 5–10 days; on subculture, aerobically, colonies are evident in 1–3 days.

The organism is relatively inactive when subjected to conventional biochemical tests. Most strains ferment maltose and xylose and hydrolyze starch but do not attack other commonly used “sugars”; all produce urease. Catalase, methyl red, Voges-Proskauer, indole, and nitrate-reduction tests are negative. Coagulated serum and egg medium are not liquefied. A slight alkalinity is produced in litmus milk.
EPIDEMIOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Most male pigs aged 6 months or more harbor *A. suis* in the preputial diverticulum, which may become colonized when pigs are only a few weeks old. Uninfected males are readily infected when they are housed with carrier males (Jones and Dagnall 1984). The organism may be found on the floors of pens occupied by male pigs. Carr and Walton (1990) have isolated *A. suis* from the footwear of handlers working with boars but not from those working in the farrowing area. Only rarely is it found in the vagina of healthy females, but it may be that existing cultural techniques are insufficiently sensitive to demonstrate its presence there. There are no reports of *A. suis* being isolated from any sites in the pig other than the urogenital tract.

Cystitis and pyelonephritis caused by *A. suis* mainly affect adult females. Infection of the bladder and kidneys is by the ascending route. Most cases occur within 1–3 weeks of mating, suggesting that predisposing factors are operating at this time. Wendt et al. (1994) suggest that these may include infection with other organisms, because of a requirement for erosion of mature vesical epithelial cells to allow attachment by *A. suis*. Water restriction and the presence of crystaluria may also predispose to infection (Wendt and Sobestiansky 1995). The disease may become clinically evident at any time in the breeding cycle of the sow (e.g., after parturition), and in such cases it is not always clear whether infection of the urinary tract is recent or whether there has been a recrudescence of previously existing disease.

Studies on the adhesive properties of *A. suis* have been reported by Larsen et al. (1986). They have demonstrated that some strains are heavily fimbriated and are able to adhere to the epithelial cells of the porcine bladder; their findings support the hypothesis that glycoconjugates are specific receptor sites for the attachment of *A. suis*. Infection of the ureters and kidneys follows infection of the bladder.

CLINICAL SIGNS AND LESIONS

Hematuria is the main sign in the acute phase. As the disease progresses, there is loss of weight. Some sows may die suddenly, apparently from acute renal failure.

Inflammatory reactions in the mucosa of the urethra, bladder, and ureters may be catarrhal, fibrinopurulent, hemorrhagic, or necrotic. Affected kidneys often have irregular yellow areas of degeneration in the parenchyma that are visible on the surface. The renal pelvis may be dilated and contain mucoid fluid in which flakes of necrotic debris and altered blood are present. The medullary pyramids often show yellow or dark green to black foci of necrosis. The ureters are often dilated and filled with reddish purulent urine. There are no related lesions elsewhere in the body.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is based on clinical signs and bacteriological examination of urine. *A. suis* is easily seen in Gram-stained films, often with other bacteria, notably streptococci. For cultural examination it is essential to incubate the medium (e.g., blood agar), which has been inoculated with urine or other appropriate material, anaerobically for 4 days. Results of cultural procedures should not be reported as negative before that time. Rapid diagnosis can be achieved by the use of immunofluorescent techniques (Schallibaum et al. 1976; Kauko et al. 1977). A selective medium for the isolation of *A. suis* has been described by Dagnall and Jones (1982). Wendt and Amstberg (1995) evaluated the possibility of using serology to detect infection and tested indirect immunofluorescence in diagnosis. They found that antibody did not appear until 3 weeks after hemorrhagic cystitis had occurred and that when a titer of ++ at 1/16 was used as an endpoint to give 100% specificity, the sensitivity was only 79%. There was no relationship between antibody level and the degree of renal damage.

TREATMENT AND PREVENTION

*A. suis* is sensitive in vitro to several antibiotics, including penicillin and tetracyclines. Administration of antibiotics is frequently effective, at least in the short term. However, relapses commonly occur, and often it is best to advise early slaughter of affected animals. Prolonged treatment for 20 days with ampicillin given at 20 mg/kg may be used (Wendt and Sobestiansky 1995), and enrofloxacin given for 10 days at 10 mg/kg may also be effective. In Wendt and Sobestiansky’s studies (1995), pigs with lesions confined to the bladder recovered with antimicrobial treatment alone, but those with renal damage required infusion therapy for recovery.

There are no proven methods of prevention. *A. suis* may be transmitted from boars to sows at the time of mating. Culling of carrier boars has been suggested as a method of preventing infection of sows; this does not seem worthwhile, because replacement boars will almost certainly be infected. Culling might be of value if there are “pathogenic” and “nonpathogenic” strains of *A. suis*, but there is no evidence that such different strains exist. Currently, the only means of attempting prevention of the disease is to administer antibiotics to sows immediately after service or, if outbreaks of the disease are economically serious, to use artificial insemination.

REFERENCES

Rhodococcus equi

**Rhodococcus equi** is associated with granulomatous lymphadenitis affecting the lymph nodes of the head and neck of the pig. The lesions can be confused at slaughter with those of tuberculosis, and the organism is important for this reason rather than as a cause of clinical disease.

**ETIOLOGY**

The organism was first isolated from the pulmonary lungs of a foal by Magnusson (1923) and was given the name *Corynebacterium equi*; it is now called *Rhodococcus equi*. This gram-positive coccobacillus is a member of the nocardiform actinomycete group (Goodfellow et al. 1982). In common with other members of *Rhodococcus*, *R. equi* produces pinkish colonies on solid media. The mycolic acids of *R. equi* have a chain length of 34–48 C, and the DNA base composition is 66–72 mol% guanine plus cytosine. Chemical properties used in defining the species were summarized by Goodfellow (1987). Isolation of *R. equi* from clinical samples is easily achieved by aerobic culture on routine media at 37°C, although the optimum temperature is 28–30°C. Selective media, such as that developed by Woolcock et al. (1979), are required for fecal isolation. Colonies are slow growing, requiring 48 hours to reach a size of 2–4 mm. The typical colony is irregularly round, buff-pink, smooth, and mucoid, although colonial variation is common within and between strains (Mutimer and Woolcock 1982). *R. equi* is biochemically unreactive. It is not proteolytic and does not ferment carbohydrates. *R. equi* is catalase positive, usually urease positive, and oxidase negative. The API ZYM system has been found helpful in bacterial identification (Mutimer and Woolcock 1982). *R. equi* is not hemolytic but, in conjunction with the phospholipase D of *Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis* or the beta toxin of *Staphylococcus aureus*, produces complete hemolysis of sheep and cattle erythrocytes (Prescott et al. 1982). Semipurification of this factor, known as “equ factor,” has indicated that cholesterol oxidase is the major constituent (Linder and Bernheimer 1982).
R. equi possess an abundant acidic polysaccharide capsule, which is the basis for several serotyping schemes. Prescott (1981) has identified 7 serotypes, of which serotype 1 is the most frequently isolated in Canada, Australia, and India. Japanese workers have identified 27 serotypes, with the most common being equivalent to Prescott serotype 1 (Nakazawa et al. 1983). There is no relationship between capsular serotype and origin of the isolates. The capsular polysaccharides of 4 Prescott serotypes have been purified.

Recent studies of this species have confirmed that isolates from pigs possess a virulence-associated protein (vapA) that is encoded by a virulence plasmid. Takai et al. (1996) confirmed the presence of 79–95 kb plasmids coding for a 20 kDa virulence protein.

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

R. equi is primarily a soil resident. Environmental distribution favors soils enriched with herbivore manure, since fecal matter potentiates bacterial multiplication (Barton and Hughes 1984). R. equi is also a transient in the intestinal tract of many species, including pigs, cattle, deer, horses, sheep, goats, and wild birds (Woolcock et al. 1979; Carman and Hodges 1987). Being an obligate aerobe, R. equi is not likely to be a member of the normal flora. The bacterium is found in soil samples collected from arable land that has not pastured animals for many years, emphasizing its durability. R. equi is present in dust and even in cobwebs of farm buildings in areas where it occurs. R. equi is relatively resistant to chemical disinfectants, such as treatment with 2.5% oxalic acid and 0.5% sodium hydroxide over periods of 15–60 minutes (Karlson et al. 1940).

Little is known of the epidemiology or pathogenesis of the naturally occurring disease in swine. As in horses, R. equi infection is likely to be acquired from the environment (Woolcock et al. 1980). Ingestion is the normal mode of exposure in foals (Takai et al. 1986a), leading to the development of solid protective immunity in the majority of animals (Prescott et al. 1980; Chirino-Trejo et al. 1987). A similar situation probably occurs in swine housed on pasture or in yards contaminated with R. equi, as the bacterium is readily isolated from the feces of such pigs (Barton and Hughes 1984). Several slaughterhouse studies have also demonstrated recovery of R. equi from normal cervical and submaxillary lymph nodes at rates varying from 7% to 35% (Mutimer and Woolcock 1980; Takai et al. 1986b), although the organism may now be less common, as Takai et al. (1996) recovered it from only 3.1% of 1832 swine in Japan. However, no epidemiological studies have been carried out to correlate infection rates, disease prevalence, and environmental contamination of R. equi on pig farms, as has been done for horses. There have been suggestions that isolates from pigs differ somewhat from those from horses and that some pig isolates resemble those from humans. Takai et al. (1996) speculated that some human cases may be of porcine origin.

The way in which R. equi causes granulomatous lymphadenitis of the head and neck in the pig is not clear. R. equi can be recovered from normal nodes, and there are accounts of failure to reproduce the nodal lesions experimentally (Karlson et al. 1940; Cotchin 1943). Mycobacterium spp. may also be recovered in some cases. It is possible that the severity of the lesions reflects the possession of the virulence-associated protein, which may vary from strain to strain, the degree of immunity present when infection took place, or the duration of the infection at sampling. However, R. equi typically produces a granulomatous tissue reaction in lymph nodes of other species, consistent with its action as a facultative intracellular pathogen (Yager 1987).

R. equi has been associated with serious clinical disease, including one outbreak of oral abscesses and one of pneumonia (Thal and Rutqvist 1959; Rao et al. 1982), but pigs are extremely resistant to experimental infection. Following aerosolization, R. equi is cleared from the lungs very slowly, but clinical signs and pathological lesions of pneumonia are minimal despite exposure to 107 organisms on 7 consecutive days (Zink and Yager 1987). Pneumonia has, however, been induced by intratracheal inoculation of fluid inocula (Thal and Rutqvist 1959).

LESIONS

Lymphadenitis causes no significant clinical signs; lesions are detected only at slaughter. Affected submandibular and cervical nodes are enlarged, containing multiple yellow-tan foci, often in a subcapsular location. Caseation and calcification of these foci sometimes occur. Histologically, the lesion is a granulomatous lymphadenitis. Similar lesions reported in the mesenteric lymph nodes have yielded Rhodococcus sputi on culture (Tsukamura et al. 1988).

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is at postmortem. Microbiological identification of R. equi is necessary for it is not possible to differentiate the gross lesions of R. equi–induced lymphadenitis from those caused by Mycobacterium spp.

TREATMENT AND PREVENTION

R. equi–induced disease is not sufficiently important to necessitate antemortem diagnosis and treatment in swine. Therapy, which in foals requires long-term administration of rifampicin and erythromycin, is not feasible on economic grounds. While some economic loss may accrue from condemnation at slaughter, there are no studies that indicate the extent of this loss and there appears to be no incentive to institute control measures.
These would in any case be difficult; an effective vaccine is presently unavailable.

REFERENCES


Arcanobacterium pyogenes

Arcanobacterium pyogenes, previously known as Actinomyces pyogenes, and even earlier as Corynebacterium pyogenes, is a common cause of suppurative lesions in pigs throughout the world. Infection is opportunistic, resulting from the invasion of skin or mucous membranes by resident A. pyogenes. Clinical disease can result from vertebral osteomyelitis, arthritis, pneumonia, endocarditis, mastitis, and subcutaneous and deep-tissue abscesses.

ETIOLOGY

A. pyogenes is a small gram-positive pleomorphic rod. There is marked morphologic variation between and within strains. Growth is enhanced by the addition of serum or blood to media and occurs under both aerobic and anaerobic conditions. The optimal temperature for growth is 37°C. Colonies are translucent and small, taking 48 hours to reach a diameter of 1 mm. A. pyogenes colonies are surrounded by a narrow zone of complete hemolysis after 24 hours on blood agar. Strains isolated from pigs are more hemolytic than those isolated from cattle. A. pyogenes produces a hemolysin and an exotoxin that is dermonecrotic in rabbits and guinea pigs and lethal following intravenous injection in rabbits and mice (Lovell 1944). Glucose is fermented by all strains, but other carbohydrate reactions are variable. In general, porcine strains are more biochemically active than bovine strains (Roberts 1968; Tainaka et al. 1983). A. pyogenes is proteolytic, a series of serine proteases with molecular masses of 69, 59, and 55 kDa being produced along with one of 108 kDa that is only produced by pig strains (Takeuchi et al. 1995).

A. pyogenes had been classified into the genus Actinomyces by Collins and Jones (1982), chiefly on the basis of cell wall composition. The guanine-cytosine content of DNA is 58 mol%. Identification of Arcanobacterium pyogenes is rapid and reliable with the API 20 Strep system (Morrison and Tillotson 1988). Recent studies of vaginal isolates have allowed the differentiation of Arcanobacterium hyovaginalis (Collins et al. 1993).
EPIDEMIOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Arcanobacterium pyogenes is common on the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract and genital tract of several animal species, including the pig. Disease is therefore the result of endogenous infection and is sporadic, requiring some predisposing event, such as trauma, to initiate the process. For A. pyogenes to cause subcutaneous lesions, devitalized or inflamed tissue is an apparent prerequisite, since the inoculation of A. pyogenes subcutaneously does not, per se, lead to abscesses. Infection is often secondary. Tail biting may lead to abscessation and suppurative osteomyelitis, retention of the fetal membranes may lead to endometritis and infertility, lacerations of the mammary gland may lead to mastitis and arthritis, umbilical cord contamination may lead to omphalophlebitis, and iatrogenic abscesses may result from faulty injection or castration techniques. Local extension may produce pelvic lymphadenitis and peritonitis. A. pyogenes may act as a secondary invader in preexisting pneumonia.

Bacteremic spread from infective foci results in a variety of lesions, including embolic pneumonia, endocarditis, arthritis, and vertebral osteomyelitis. Experimental intravenous inoculation of A. pyogenes shows bacterial localization within the marrow of vertebral body epiphyses, initiating osteolysis, abscessation, and the formation of osteophytes (Vladutiu et al. 1982). Valvular endocarditis may result from bacteremia following tail-biting lesions (Van den Berg et al. 1981). A. pyogenes is occasionally recovered from fetuses and fetal membranes, but its role in abortion has not been established. Some of these isolates may be A. hyovaginalis.

A. pyogenes, as denoted by its name, causes suppurative lesions. Surprisingly little, however, is known of the virulence factors important in disease causation. Both the hemolytic protein exotoxin and protease have been proposed as toxic factors (Kume et al. 1983). A. pyogenes also binds alpha-2 macroglobulin (Lammler et al. 1985), a property that could interfere with local regulation of inflammation.

CLINICAL SIGNS AND LESIONS

The clinical signs are very variable, since A. pyogenes is responsible for a range of pathological lesions. Some, such as endocarditis and adhesive peritonitis, may be fatal. Others, such as vertebral osteomyelitis leading to posterior paralysis, may necessitate euthanasia. Suppurative osteomyelitis generally affects the vertebral bodies, leading to transverse pathological fractures, vertebral collapse, and compression of the spinal cord. Lameness results from polyarthritis or from cellulitis and periartitis. However, many lesions, including subcutaneous and intramuscular abscesses, are clinically inapparent and are discovered only at postmortem or slaughter. Such abscesses vary from a few millimeters to several centimeters in size, usually have a thick fibrous capsule, and contain a yellow-green pus of variable consistency. Mastitis may be confined to one gland or may involve several.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis in individual cases requires the demonstration of the organism in lesional material and confirmation by laboratory culture and identification. Carcass abscesses typically yield mixed cultures, including clostridia, Bacteroides spp., Propionibacterium granulosum, Pasteurella multocida, and unidentified anaerobes (Hara 1980; Jones 1980). Diagnosis of infection within a herd has been attempted serologically using an immunodiffusion test for antibody to A. pyogenes protease (Takeuchi et al. 1979). However, in a slaughterhouse survey, only 34.4% of pigs with abscesses had an antiprotease titer (Hara 1980).

TREATMENT

A. pyogenes is sensitive to a wide range of antimicrobial agents, including penicillin, tetracycline, and erythromycin. Some strains have been shown to be resistant to sulfonamides and trimethoprim. In vivo sensitivity does not necessarily reflect in vitro sensitivity, for the physicochemical properties of chronic abscesses tend to protect the bacteria from the action of antimicrobial drugs. Abscesses may be removed surgically.

PREVENTION

Surveys of serum antibodies to A. pyogenes protease show that approximately one-third of pigs are positive (Hara 1980). Antitoxin antibodies are also demonstrable and may increase with age. However, mice vaccinated with preparations of whole cells with or without toxoid or even given live organisms are not adequately protected against subsequent challenge (Derbyshire and Matthews 1963; Durner and Werner 1983). There is no effective vaccine available for swine. Prevention requires management of the environment to reduce or abolish the various conditions that predispose the development of A. pyogenes lesions. The treatment of sows with antimicrobials such as tetracyclines in the food prior to farrowing and throughout weaning can eliminate infection and reduce vulval discharges (Taylor 1984).

REFERENCES


IV Miscellaneous Conditions

51 Behavioral Problems
52 Coccidia and Other Protozoa
53 External Parasites
54 Gastric Ulcers
55 Internal Parasites
56 Occurrence of Mycotoxins in Grains and Feeds
57 Nutrient Deficiencies and Excesses
58 Porcine Stress Syndrome
59 Prolapses
60 Toxic Minerals, Chemicals, Plants, and Gases
Most behavioral differences between wild and domestic animals, including farm animals, are quantitative rather than qualitative in character and best explained in differences in response thresholds (Price 2003). Once a species has become adapted to its captive environment, reproduction and growth efficiency are generally improved through better nutrition and health, reduced energy expenditure, and, in some cases, reduced stress in this captive or domestic environment. Behavioral problems by definition involve behavioral changes as a consequence of either environmental or genetic change that compromise the fitness of the animals, and thus in the case of farm animals, we can consider that behavioral problems compromise the animals’ production efficiency, health, and welfare.

The term “abnormal behavior” in domestic animals often refers to behavior that either is not in the animal’s natural repertoire of behavior or differs in its pattern, frequency, or context from what is considered normal. This issue of “what is natural or normal?” in domestic species is a contentious one, and it is simpler and perhaps less ambiguous to use the term behavioral problem and define it as a behavior that compromises the animals’ production efficiency, health, and welfare. Such a definition incorporates implications for the animal, other animals, and the animal owner or caretaker. This review will focus on the major behavioral problems in commercial pigs, with the objective of recommending possible solutions to improve the productivity, health, and welfare of these pigs.

AGGRESSION

Agonistic behaviors are behaviors that occur in response to a conflict; may include offense, defense, submissive, or escape components (including dispersal, although this behavior is not possible in pig housing systems in which pigs are contained in pens or relatively small paddocks); and consist of contact (e.g., biting or pushing) or noncontact (e.g., body postures, gestures or vocalizations) behaviors. Aggressive behaviors strictly refer to attack and actual fighting and thus include parallel pressing, head-to-head knocks, levering, and bites in pigs (Fraser and Broom 1996).

An important behavioral trait that influenced the domestication of ungulate and galliform species was their social organization: these species had the ability to live in relatively large groups without marked year-round territoriality (Stricklin and Mench 1987). This trait has been further affected through artificial selection during domestication; the formation of social hierarchies and the tendency for subordinates to avoid dominant animals is considered an important mechanism that functions to control aggression in situations of limited resources (e.g., space and feed). Nevertheless social instability is an important social stressor for livestock. For instance, entire male pigs are reported to grow much less efficiently during the finisher phase of production than their genetic capability (De Haer and Merks 1992). The high level of aggression and social instability characteristic of entire boars in groups, was eliminated by application of an immuno-castration vaccine (Improvac), with concomitant improvement in feed intake and growth during the last few weeks of the finisher phase (Cronin et al. 2003).

In addition to aggression caused by competition over resources, such as feed, and meetings between unacquainted animals, some aggression in farm animals may function to maintain distance between individual animals (Fraser and Rushen 1987). Research on farm animals generally indicates that both increases in group size and decreases in space are associated with increased aggression, and high levels of aggression in pigs has been shown to lead to physical injury, including lameness, and acute stress and, if unresolved, chronic stress with consequences on immunity, disease, and productivity.

The results of growth studies on growing pigs generally indicate depressions in growth performance, either decreases in growth rate or increases in feed-to-gain ratio, with decreasing space allowance and increasing group
size (Kornegay and Notter 1984; Chapple 1993), with space allowance perhaps having the greater impact.

Reducing space in terms of either floor space or pigs per feeder will eventually reduce the growth performance of growing pigs (see Gonyou 2001), presumably through stress and/or access to feed. Reductions in space allowance may not be accompanied by changes in aggression since restrictions in space may restrict specific behavioral patterns, such as the species-specific motor patterns utilized in aggressive encounters. Indeed, Barnett et al. (1993) suggested that the reduced aggression observed in gestating gilts housed in narrow pens was due to insufficient space to fight using aggressive motor patterns such as parallel pressing. These adverse effects of space are generally a consequence of either stress or aggression and, in turn, injury and stress limiting growth in suboptimal social environments. Such effects also have obvious welfare implications. Since space requirements change with an animal’s size, the following allometric expression has proven to be useful in estimating space allowance to maximize growth over a wide range of liveweights (Gonyou 2001): space allowance is calculated when the constant 0.035 is multiplied by body weight \(^{0.667}\), with space allowance expressed as square meters and liveweight in kilograms.

Several studies have also examined the effects of space allowance on breeding female pigs (see Barnett et al. 2001). There is evidence of a chronic stress response and reduced reproductive performance if space allowance is insufficient. For example, elevated basal cortisol concentrations have been reported in breeding gilts in groups of six with a floor space allowance of 1 m\(^2\)/pig or less (Hemsworth et al. 1986a; Barnett et al. 1992). While the former study indicated that there may be reproductive performance advantages of housing at 3 m\(^2\)/pig rather than 2 m\(^2\)/pig, the physiological criteria indicated no differences between these space allocations. Weng et al. (1998) reported increased aggression and injuries in sows with decreasing space allowance and recommended a space allowance between 2.4 and 3.6 m\(^2\)/sow for groups of six pregnant sows.

While some research has indicated that increasing group sizes up to 80 will increase aggression and reduce growth in growing pigs (e.g., Petherick and Blackshaw 1987; Spoolder et al. 1999), other research has suggested no effect at least on growth if pigs are given ample space and the opportunity for ad libitum feed (e.g., Kornegay and Notter 1984; McConnell et al. 1987). Morrison et al. (2003) observed that growing pigs in groups of 200 on deep litter had a higher incidence of agonistic interactions per pig than pigs in groups of 20 on partially slatted concrete floors.

Mixing small groups of pigs results in vigorous fighting within the first 24 h, and by 48 h the dominance hierarchy can generally be identified (Meese and Ewbank 1973). Although olfactory, auditory, and visual cues have been suggested as important cues in individual pig recognition, it is still uncertain how the mechanism of individual animal recognition operates in pigs (Fraser and Broom 1997). Conventional thinking has been that small groups form stable social hierarchies and that as group size increases and individual animal recognition declines, aggression will increase. This has led to the widespread view in the literature that if animals regularly encounter unfamiliar animals in large groups in confined areas, aggression will increase with adverse effects on production and welfare. For instance, it is commonly believed that the total number of group members that can be recognized or remembered by each individual is 20 to 30 in pigs (Fraser and Broom 1997).

In contrast, there is recent evidence in laying hens and broiler chickens (Pagel and Dawkins 1997; Estevez 1998; Nicol et al. 1999) that aggression may actually decline as group size substantially increases with either total pen space or space per animal remaining constant. It is possible that the greater resources in very large groups, such as total and free space and availability of preferred lying areas, may reduce the need to form dominance hierarchies that function to control aggression in situations of limited resources. Pagel and Dawkins (1997) have also argued that if animals are able to adjust their behavior according to the size of the group, they may abandon all attempts to establish dominance hierarchies. Hughes et al. (1997) also suggested that animals might be more socially tolerant in large groups. While the effects of varying the size of small groups have been studied, neither maximal nor optimal group sizes have been identified for most livestock (Stricklin and Mench 1987).

There is some evidence that group size affects sow reproduction and welfare. Barnett et al. (1984, 1986) found that housing sexually mature gilts in pairs resulted in elevated basal cortisol concentrations compared to housing in groups of 4-8 with a similar space allowance. Both large group size (24 vs. 8 gilts) and small group size (3 vs. 9, 17, or 27 gilts) may reduce the expression of estrus (Christenson and Ford 1979; Christenson and Hruska 1984), while increasing group size and concomitantly decreasing space allowance may also reduce the expression of estrus in gilts (Cronin et al. 1983). Broom et al. (1995) compared sows in groups of 5 fed in stalls and a group of 38 sows with an electronic feeding station and while there was increased aggression in the larger group, particularly after initial mixing, any differences in aggression and stereotypes had disappeared by the fourth parity. Olsson et al. (1994) reported increased injuries as group size increased. Some limited research by Taylor et al. (1997) has shown varying group sizes, of 5, 10, 20, and 40 sows with a space allowance of 2.0 m\(^2\)/sow, had no effects on reproductive performance (farrowing rate and litter size). Although aggression immediately after mixing increased as group size increased, the number of lesions during gestation were similar across treatments. In the
same study, reducing space allowance for groups of 10 sows from 2.0 to 1.2 m²/sow increased aggression. Further research is required to determine the optimum space allowance and group size for pregnant pigs. There are no data on space allowance and group size interactions for adult female pigs.

The design of the group pen will affect gilt and sow aggression. Petherick et al. (1987) have shown some advantages of partial stalls in reducing aggression around feeding in pens of group-housed pigs. However, whether the reduced aggression was due to individual feeding or the provision of escape areas was not determined. Barnett et al. (1992) subsequently demonstrated welfare advantages of partial stalls within group pens based on a reduction in aggression immediately after grouping unfamiliar pigs and in the longer term by feeding in the partial stalls. Feeding in the partial stalls also resulted in long-term benefits, based on lower free cortisol concentrations and a higher cell-mediated immunity. However, a subsequent study examining effects of pen design in reducing aggression in groups showed no benefits of partial stalls within pens either in the short term or subsequently (Barnett et al. 1993), although in that study the pigs were not fed in the stalls. Thus, it would appear that partial stalls may confer advantages in reducing aggression if the pigs are routinely fed in the partial stalls. Similar design modifications—that is, incorporating stalls into group pens—have also been reported (Edwards 1985). Pen shape has some effects on aggression (Barnett et al. 1993). Aggression was less in rectangular pens than square pens as a result of grouping unfamiliar pigs, provided the space allowance was 1.4 m²/pig; the benefits were lost in larger pens providing 3.4 m²/pig. However, Olsson et al. (1994) recommended against using long narrow pens with liquid feeding on the basis of competition and variable intakes.

Aggression among recently grouped unfamiliar gilts and sows has obvious welfare and reproductive disadvantages. In spite of the research to date on minimizing aggression when grouping unfamiliar pigs, there are few rigorous recommendations. In reviewing the literature, Barnett et al. (2001) suggested that aggression can be reduced in gilts by

1. Modifying pen size and shape on the basis that pigs require a minimum space in which to fight
2. Modifying pen design on the basis that the provision of escape areas reduces aggression
3. Preexposing pigs to their new pen
4. Grouping after dark, on the basis that it is the “normal” sleeping time, or providing feed ad libitum on the basis that restrictively fed pigs may prefer to feed than fight
5. Using masking odors on the basis that anosmic pigs show reduced aggression
6. Using “mood-altering” drugs on the basis of their positive effects in animal models

However, all or some of these methods may be effective in only postponing aggression rather than reducing it. There are few rigorous recommendations and this subject needs further research to allow industry to manage group housing of sows successfully, and thus minimize risks to welfare and reproduction. In particular, the effects of and interactions between factors such as space allowance, group size, pen shape, and features on pig welfare require thorough investigation.

As recognized by Barnett et al. (2001), both stall and group housing during gestation have advantages and disadvantages for the sow. A combination of these housing systems may optimize sow reproduction and welfare. For example, group housing of sows at mating and during mid-late pregnancy when social contact (Barnett and Hemsworth 1991) and space and exercise (Barnett et al. 2001), respectively, may be important, and individual housing of sows early in pregnancy when the control of nutrition may affect embryo mortality and aggression may affect conception (Barnett et al. 2001). There may also be opportunities to improve the design of these systems, such as “turning around” stalls for periods of individual housing (Barnett and Taylor 1995) and providing feeding stalls during the period of group housing (Barnett et al. 1992).

FEAR OF HUMANS

Stockperson interactions with livestock have been shown in a number of livestock industries to influence the welfare and productivity of farm animals (see Hemsworth and Coleman 1998). While many of these human interactions may appear mild and harmless, research in many livestock industries has shown that the frequent use of some routine behaviors by stockpeople can surprisingly result in farm animals becoming highly fearful of humans. Labor savings that have occurred through facility design and automation have generally reduced the human contact that pigs receive in modern production units. Consequently, opportunities for positive human contact are probably reduced and this, together with the fact that many routine husbandry tasks undertaken by stockpeople often contain aversive elements, may lead to the stockperson’s interactions being biased toward negative ones.

Studies in the swine industry have shown, first, substantial variation between farms in the animals’ fear of humans and, second, significant sequential relationships between the stockperson’s attitudes and behavior toward their animals and the fear of humans and productivity of pigs farm animals (Coleman et al. 1998; Hemsworth et al. 1981; Hemsworth et al. 1989b). For example, negative attitudes to handling, such as beliefs that considerable verbal and physical effort is required to move pigs and that pigs do not require petting and stroking, were correlated or associated with a high percentage of negative behaviors used by stockpeople in
handling pigs. Negative tactile behaviors by stockpeople that were recorded included forceful hits and slaps as well as audible slaps and pushes while positive tactile behaviors included pats, strokes, and the hand of the stockperson resting on the back of the animal. Furthermore, a high percentage of negative behaviors used by stockpeople correlated with high fear levels in pigs. Surprisingly, high levels of fear of humans were best predicted at the farm when the classification of negative behaviors included not only forceful hits and slaps, but also negative behaviors used with less force, such as moderate slaps and pushes. This highlights the sensitivity of pigs to moderate negative interactions by humans, something that is not intuitively obvious to most of us.

Laboratory studies indicate that the likely mechanism responsible for the adverse effects of high fear on the productivity of pigs is a chronic stress response. Handling treatments that result in high fear levels, similar to those often seen in the swine industry, have been consistently shown to stress pigs as evidenced by a sustained elevation in the stress hormone cortisol (see Hemsworth and Coleman 1998). These stress effects of negative handling also accompany depressions in growth and reproductive performance (see Hemsworth and Coleman 1998).

Studies in the swine industry have shown that it is possible to improve the attitudinal and behavioral profiles of stockpeople and, in turn, reduce the level of fear and improve the productivity and welfare of commercial pigs (Hemsworth et al. 1994, Coleman et al. 2000). This approach in which cognitive-behavioral training is used to improve the attitudes and behavior of stockpeople has been described in detail by Hemsworth and Coleman (1998), but basically this type of training involves retraining people in terms of their behavior by, first, targeting both the attitudes that underlie the behavior and the behavior in question and, second, maintaining these changed attitudes and behavior. This process of inducing behavioral change is really a comprehensive procedure in which all the personal and external factors that are relevant to the behavioral situation are explicitly targeted. Clearly there is a strong case for introducing this training in the swine industry. A commercial multimedia training program called “ProHand,” which targets the attitudes and behavior of the swine stockperson, is available and is currently used in Australia, New Zealand, and the U.S. (see website www.animal-welfare.org.au for details). A similar training program is also available for swine stockpeople at abattoirs.

Recent research has also shown the potential value of selecting stockpeople using screening aids to predict the performance of stockpeople. The results of research by Coleman et al. (2000) and Coleman (2001) have shown that a number of job-related characteristics, such as empathy and attitudes toward animals and toward aspects of work, may be useful in identifying inexperienced people who are likely to be good stockpeople. Therefore such tests could be assembled into a kit for use in selection in the swine industry. In addition to assisting in selecting stockpeople, assessing the key job-related characteristics of stockpeople may also provide the swine industry with a good opportunity to monitor the potential impact of individual stockpeople on animal welfare. Screening aids such as attitude and job motivation questionnaires may identify both weakness in individual stockpeople and specific training needs for these individuals.

There is a clear need to reduce the limitations that human-animal interactions impose on the productivity and welfare of commercial pigs. Appropriate strategies to recruit and train stockpeople in the swine industry will be integral in safeguarding the productivity and welfare of commercial pigs.

A crude assessment of differences in the level of fear of humans by pigs between units or farms can be made by observing in a standard manner the behavior of pigs in the presence of humans. For example, for units that house sows in gestation stalls, observation of the avoidance responses of sows to a human approaching in a standard manner and placing his or her hand in the front of the stall may provide consultants or managers with a useful technique to assess the relative fear levels across a number of units.

TAIL BITING

Although the incidence of tail biting appears to be highly variable, the problem is widespread with its incidence probably increasing with intensification of pig production (Smith and Penny 1986). The incidence of tail biting is generally lower in outdoor and straw-based housing systems (Schroder-Petersen and Simonsen 2001). The pathology of tail biting has been described by Smith and Penny (1986), and van Putten (1969) lists the possible consequences of tail biting as restlessness, poor growth, possible paralysis and mortality due to infections, and condemnation of the carcass. There have been few experimental studies conducted on tail biting because it is difficult to reliably induce, and consequently its cause(s) is poorly understood.

Outbreaks of tail biting have been attributed to numerous factors, including crowding, poor ventilation, interruption in feed or water supply, poor quality diets, absence of straw and breed type (Smith and Penny 1986; van Putten 1969, Fraser 1987a). The underlying causation of tail biting is poorly understood, but van Putten (1969) argues that an outbreak of tail biting originates from the chewing and rooting of penmates that generally occur with groups of pigs. These low-intensity behaviors are probably a result of the pig’s natural tendency to root and chew on objects in its environment, but the behaviors are directed toward other pigs at least partly because of a lack of more suitable objects in a
commercial pig pen (van Putten 1969). Tail biting and aggression may occur when pen space is restricted (Jensen 1971; Bryant and Ewbank 1972; Randolph et al. 1981) and Beattie et al. (1996, 2000) showed that enriching the environment with the provision of straw reduced tail biting and persistent nosing of penmates, while increasing exploratory behaviors.

Since the tail is easy to chew and the chewing may not initially provoke an attack by the recipient because the distal half of the tail is relatively insensitive, it is the tail that is most likely to receive a wound. According to van Putten (1969), it is the vigorous tail waving, due to the irritation of a wound, that attracts further biting by other penmates as well as by the original biter. Fraser (1987b) has proposed that an attraction to blood from the wound may also lead to an escalation of tail biting. The large idiosyncratic differences between pigs in the degree of attraction to blood (Fraser 1987a, b) could explain the variable incidence of tail biting.

Removal of the distal half of the tail is a common industry practice: the remaining section of the tail is sufficiently sensitive to chewing to cause the recipient pig to respond (Fraser and Broom 1997). While clipping of the tail may reduce the incidence of tail biting, it may only mask the underlying problem. Attention to ventilation, temperature control, space allowances, feed trough space and drinking facilities may reduce the frequency of low-intensity chewing of penmates (Fraser 1987b; Fraser and Broom 1997), and the provision of distractions such as straw or other chewable objects may be beneficial (van Putten 1969). Injured animals obviously should be removed from the pen and the biter(s) should be identified if possible and housed separately from the group to avoid further occurrences of biting.

EAR AND FLANK BITING

As with tail biting, the cause(s) of outbreaks of these behaviors is poorly understood. However, the origins of outbreaks of ear and flank biting may be similar to those of outbreaks of tail biting: chewing and rooting penmates in an impoverished environment and reduced space may lead to a wound on the ear or a lesion on the flank, which in turn stimulates an outbreak of more biting by penmates. The pathology of ear and flank biting has been described by Smith and Penny (1986).

Treatment and control should be similar to that suggested for tail biting.

BELLY-NOSING

The nosing of the belly or the region between the hind legs of other pigs by weaned piglets, often in flat-deck cages, has been reported by a number of authors (see Fraser and Broom 1997). Belly-nosing for long periods may lead to inflammation of the nipples, umbilicus, penis or scrotum of the recipient.

Since access to straw has been shown to reduce its incidence (Beattie et al. 1996, 2000), the provision of straw or other chewable materials may reduce the incidence of belly-nosing in piglets. Early weaning is implicated in the incidence of belly-nosing (Fraser 1978; Gonyou et al. 1998).

PEN FOULING

The excretory behavior of penned pigs indicates that they have highly localized excretory habits (Baxter 1984), and although many pens are designed with specific excreting areas such as partly slatted areas or dung passages, this does not guarantee the use of these areas by pigs for excretion (Baxter 1989). Only limited research has been conducted on the excretory behavior of pigs; however, Petherick (1983) and Baxter (1984, 1989) have suggested that the main factors affecting the excretory behavior of pigs are security and the thermal environment.

Although objective data are limited, Baxter (1989) proposed a set of rules that can be utilized when designing a pig pen; those rules relating to excretory behavior can be considered when addressing a problem of pen fouling:

1. Pigs will choose a dry, warm, draft-free area in which to rest.
2. Pigs will not choose to rest in areas subject to commotion and disturbance such as around ad libitum feeders, drinkers, and grooming points.
3. Pigs will rarely excrete in the area chosen for resting, but they will excrete in any space that is left after the resting area has been established.
4. Pigs may choose to lie in wet, excretory areas if environmental temperatures are high enough to raise their body temperatures to their upper critical level.
5. Pigs will tend to defecate next to walls or corners of the excretory space where they have some protection when they adopt the somewhat unstable posture during excretion. Subordinates may be displaced from an overcrowded excretory area and may then excrete anywhere; this may give rise to a new focus for excretion.
6. A minimum of two drinkers should be provided in every pen, since competition for the drinker (as with feeders) may cause commotion, which in turn may encourage pigs to excrete away from the disturbance.

STEREOTYPIES

Stereotypic behavior can be defined as those behaviors that consist of morphological invariant movements that are regularly repeated, have no obvious function, or are unusual in the context of their performance (Cronin et al. 1986). Examples of these behaviors are bar biting, sham chewing, head weaving, chain chewing or rooting, and excessive drinking (Cronin and Wiepkema 1984).
Numerous authors have proposed explanations for stereotypies in pigs, and these proposed causes range from frustration of feeding to lack of environmental stimulation (Barnett and Hemsworth 1990). Stereotypies shown by pregnant sows in a range of housing systems have been studied by Vieille-Thomas et al. (1995). The proportion of sows developing stereotypies did not differ between stall-housed and tethered sows (90 vs. 94%) but was lower in group-housed than stall-housed sows (66 vs. 93%). Stereotypies shown by tethered sows mainly involved actions directed against the physical environment, such as licking and rubbing, whereas group-housed and stall-housed sows mainly displayed biting and vacuum oral (self-directed) activities (e.g., vacuum chewing, sucking, and yawning/mouth stretching).

While the cause(s) of the stereotypies is unclear, the function is even less clear and indeed controversial. Some authors have proposed that the occurrence of stereotypies is indicative of poor welfare: it has been suggested that the welfare of the animal is at risk if the stereotypies occur for 10% of the animal's waking life (Broom 1983) and if they occur in more than 5% of all animals (Wiepkema 1983). In contrast, there is limited evidence that some stereotypies may be adaptive for the animal. For example, evidence of either associations between changes in stress physiology, indicative of reduced stress, and stereotypic behavior or that the prevention of stereotypies leads to changes in stress physiology, indicative of increased stress, suggests the adaptive value of these behaviors (Cooper and Nicole 1991). Furthermore, Loijens et al. (1999) reported a negative association between the intensity of stereotypy performance and the density of naloxone binding sites (evidence of opiate receptors) in the hippocampus of tether housed sows. This finding, together with the subsequent finding that individual differences in the density of opioid receptors in the hypothalamus and the hippocampus in sows were related to behavioral and heart rate responses of the pigs in stressful situations (Loijens et al. 2002), adds to the speculation that different individuals may have different coping strategies, and stereotypic behavior may be thus adaptive for some animals in stressful situations. While the latter findings support an association between stereotypies and endogenous opioid activity (e.g., Cronin et al. 1986; Kennes et al. 1988; Zanella et al. 1996), other authors do not support this coping hypothesis (see Dantzer 1991; Rushen 1993). Furthermore, not all stereotypies are a response to stress since Mason (1991) has shown that different forms of stereotypies may have different causes. As concluded by Rushen (1993), the adaptive value of many oral stereotypies may relate to their effects on digestive processes rather than in response to stress.

Therefore, with our present knowledge of the cause and function of stereotypies, there are substantial difficulties in interpreting the implications of stereotypies for the welfare and productivity of pigs, except for those stereotypies that result in physical damage—e.g., the development of lesions in stall-housed sows that persistently rub their tail roots from side to side against stall fittings (Ewbank 1978).

MATERNAL BEHAVIOR

A significant proportion of live-born piglets do not survive the lactation period and a number of factors, such as the physical and climatic environments, health, and nutrition appear to be responsible (see Chapter 62). While savaging and overlying of piglets by sows may account for up to a third of preweaning losses (Cutler et al. 1989), the contribution of changes in maternal behavior of sows to preweaning mortality has received surprisingly little research attention.

Savaging of piglets is more common in primiparous sows (Harris and Gonyou 2003) and the savaging attempt is often directed to only the first-born piglet (English et al. 1984; Spicer et al. 1985). Anecdotal observations suggest that the presence of multiparous (experienced) sows in the farrowing room in the vicinity of nulliparous sows helps calm the inexperienced sows and may contribute to a lower likelihood of savaging. Sows that savage their litters, however, are more likely to be those mated at low body weights (Spicer et al. 1985). Although the cause(s) of savaging is unknown, Pomeroys (1960) suggested that pain and fear predisposed gilts to savage their piglets, while Luescher et al. (1989) suggested that additional factors may be involved, such as the inability of sows to isolate themselves and perform nest-building activities, climatic stress, and human interference during parturition. Some nulliparous sows savage the entire litter. While savaging was responsible for increased mortality in piglets born outside the working hours of the piggery staff (Spicer et al. 1986), this could be reduced if farrowing rooms were continuously lit (Harris and Gonyou 2003). In cases in which the stockperson is on hand when savaging occurs, massage of the sow's udder by the stockperson, an injection of a suitable tranquilizer (e.g., Azaperone) (English et al. 1984) followed by separation of piglets from the sow until farrowing is complete is usually all that is needed to settle the sow.

While malnutrition or illness of piglets may be implicated in many cases of overlying (English et al. 1984), many overlain piglets show no evidence of preexisting illness (Spicer et al. 1985). If a high incidence of overlying is suspected, consideration should be given to the recommendations made by Cutler et al. (Chapter 62) for the provision of a suitable thermal environment for the sow and litter.

The possibility that piglet mortality may be affected by disturbances to the maternal behavior of sows has been demonstrated in an increasing number of studies. Cronin and van Amerongen (1991) found that the pro-
vision of straw to and a hessian cover over the farrowing crates of primiparous sows, in order to simulate a completed farrowing nest, reduced preweaning mortality. It is also of interest that the sows in this treatment were more responsive to distress vocalizations of their piglets. Similarly, Cronin et al. (1993) found the addition of small amounts of sawdust to the farrowing crates of young sows (parity 1–3) reduced both the incidence of intrapartum deaths (litter size alive of 10.5 vs. 10.0) and overlying during and 6 hours after parturition (2% vs. 21% of sows). The authors proposed that the provision of sawdust stimulated prepartum activity in younger sows which may have promoted the process of parturition and the development of maternal behavior. While Thodberg et al. (2002) reported that sows appeared calmer before parturition in farrowing pens in which prepartum “nesting” behavior was stimulated, Cronin et al. (1998) found that small, narrow farrowing pens appeared to interfere with the sows’ prefarrowing nesting behavior, with consequent increases in sow restlessness during and after farrowing and piglet mortality. These limited results indicate that it may be possible to improve maternal behavior in order to reduce preweaning mortality by modifying the physical environment at parturition, and clearly further research is warranted on maternal behavior.

LOW LEVELS OF SEXUAL BEHAVIOR IN THE BOAR

While there is little documented evidence on poor sexual behavior in commercial boars, experience from artificial insemination centers and commercial piggeries indicate that up to 49% of culled boars are unable to copulate or copulate at sufficient frequency (Melrose 1966). This situation may not have changed much today. Low levels of sexual behavior result from either low sexual motivation or poor mating competency. The latter, if not too serious, may be overcome in some situations where matings are supervised and assisted by stockpeople. Poor mating competency leading to reduced mating success may lead in turn to poor sexual motivation.

Poor Mating Competency

Locomotor and penile injuries may not physically allow the achievement of copulation or may inhibit copulation because of pain (Christensen 1953), while injury sustained during copulation may produce a psychological effect for some time after physical recovery has occurred, again inhibiting copulation. Prevention of locomotor and penile injuries should include attention to the design and maintenance of the accommodation and mating areas, appropriate supervision and assistance at mating or semen collection, and selection for heritable conformational traits of the feet and legs. (See Physical Environment at Mating for a discussion on a suitable arena for mating.) Poor orientation of the mounting response, such as head mounting, is often seen in the young boar. However, proper orientation is probably a learned response, and if the boar is of satisfactory sexual motivation, mating competency should improve with the positive reinforcement of copulation.

Social Environment

Research has shown that the social environment around the time of puberty can have long-term effects on the sexual behavior of the boar. Isolation of young postpubertal boars from 6–9 months of age from female pigs has been shown to depress their subsequent sexual behavior in a series of mating tests (Hemsworth et al. 1983). This has clear implications for boars used in natural mating but may also have implications for boars used for semen collection, although sexual motivation above a low level may be less critical because of the moderate collection frequency generally required. Housing young postpubertal boars within several meters of females should provide them with sufficient female contact to promote their subsequent sexual behavior. The effects on the sexual behavior of boars of housing near mature boars or near a semen collection area in which olfactory, visual, and auditory stimulation are provided are unknown. However, the interest in using exogenous hormones such as PGF2α to expedite the training of young sexually inexperienced boars for semen collection suggests the need to improve our understanding in this area (Kozink et al. 2002).

Isolation of mature boars from female pigs will also depress their sexual behavior (Hemsworth et al. 1977); however, this effect is not permanent, and housing these isolated boars near females will restore their sexual behavior within 4 weeks. The estrous status of the females does not influence the effectiveness of females in stimulating the sexual behavior of mature boars (Hemsworth 1982). It appears that olfactory and perhaps auditory stimuli from the female are most likely involved in stimulating the sexual behavior of mature boars in natural mating situations (Hemsworth 1982).

As with the social environment around puberty, the social environment during rearing also appears to exert a long-term and perhaps even permanent effect on the sexual behavior of boars. Young boars up to 30 weeks of age require social contact, particularly tactile contact with other pigs, in order to develop high levels of sexual behavior (Hemsworth 1982). Failure to provide young boars with this contact will depress their subsequent sexual behavior. It is recommended that prepubertal boars that may eventually be selected for breeding should be kept in groups for as long as practical, so that sexual behavior develops normally. Young boars kept in groups also display a fully coordinated mating response at an earlier age than boars reared individually (Thomas et al. 1979). If it is necessary to measure individual feed intake, separate feeding stalls could be provided in the
group pens. Alternatively, since limited tactile contact with neighboring pigs through wire-mesh walls is sufficient for boars to develop normal levels of sexual behavior (Hemsworth 1982), young boars can be reared in individual pens with wire-mesh or barred divisions.

**Physical Environment at Mating**

The implications of the physical environment at mating for the reproductive performance of the pig are often neglected. A common practice in intensive units is to mate pigs in the boar's accommodation pen, even though the physical conditions for mating may be far from ideal. For example, the pens are often small and the floors may be slippery, yet research has demonstrated the importance of physical conditions at mating on the sexual behavior of the boar. Hemsworth et al. (1989a) found that the percentage of mating tests that resulted in copulations was lower for pigs mating in the boar's accommodation pen than for those mating in a specific mating pen that had a large, dry, nonslip floor. The sexual behavior of the gilts in the two treatments was similar, but there was a consistent trend between treatments to differ in average time taken by the boars to mount suggesting that the low mating rate of pigs in the boar pen may have been mediated through an effect on the sexual behavior of the boar rather than that of the gilt. The authors concluded that the sexual motivation of the boars may have been adversely affected by the poor physical conditions at the time of mating when matings occurred in the boars' accommodation pens. This study highlights the importance of mating conditions for boars used for both natural matings and semen collection. It is recommended that natural matings should be conducted in separate, specially designed pens with a large floor area (minimum dimension of 2.5 m) to provide the boar with good access to the female’s rear quarters; a nonslip floor surface, not abrasive to the animal’s feet, that should be kept dry; and an area free of obstructions or other features, such as damaged or wire-mesh walls, that may trap the leg of an unbalanced boar. Similar principles should apply to the area for semen collection.

To minimize moving the pigs, it is useful to have an area adjacent to the boar pens that can be used for both estrus detection and mating. A group of females can be briefly held in this area while the back-pressure test (or riding test, see later) is conducted, and those in estrus can be separated and mated in this pen. Research indicates that gilts detected and mated in such an area have larger litters than those mated in the boar's accommodation pen (Hemsworth et al. 1991). If there is insufficient space available to build a mating pen, a number of these features of a mating pen can be incorporated into the boar pens. For example, pen floors should be properly maintained and a light application of sawdust or straw prior to mating may overcome a slippery floor.

In “hand-mating” systems, the stockperson has a critical role in providing supervision and assistance at mating and in fact may be able to overcome the limitations of some mating systems. Stockpeople have an important role at the time of estrus detection and mating, particularly in terms of avoiding stress and injury to the sexually unreceptive female from a vigorously courting boar, providing the boar with good access to the rear quarters of the receptive female, assisting intromission to maximize the chances of mating, steadying the partners when there is a problem with their footing (e.g., slippery floor, slatted floor, etc.), and identifying those matings with a short duration of ejaculation (i.e., those where a repeat copulation should be attempted if the female is still sexually receptive).

An example of poor supervision that may compromise reproductive performance is found in observations on supervised matings in a large intensive piggery in Australia (Hemsworth, unpublished data). These observations found that one-third of the copulations by gilts and sows had mean durations of ejaculation of 2.5 and 3.2 minutes, respectively, and repeat copulations immediately following these copulations were not attempted. The number of sperm ejaculated during short copulations such as these may be insufficient to consistently achieve high fertility (Thiengtham 1991) and thus proper supervision in these cases may have enabled identification of most of these short copulations to allow a repeat copulation if the female was still receptive. Grigoriadis et al. (2000) has shown the importance of the quality of matings on the fertility of gilts in a dynamic group mating system.

**Genetic and Climatic Factors**

Evidence from other species (e.g., domestic fowl, McCollom et al. 1971), together with breed comparisons of boars (Einarsson 1968), suggests that the sexual behavior of the boar may have a heritable basis. Elevated environmental temperatures may reduce the sexual behavior of the boar, but this effect is generally only temporary (Winfield et al. 1981), and conducting matings during the cooler times of the day (e.g., early morning) should avoid this problem. Insulation, adequate ventilation, and sprinkler cooling in the mating shed should minimize the adverse effects of high external temperatures.

**LOW LEVELS OF SEXUAL BEHAVIOR IN THE FEMALE PIG**

Low levels of sexual behavior in female pigs will result in problems with estrus detection and sexual receptivity. It is generally recognized by pig producers that there is more difficulty in mating gilts than in mating sows (English et al. 1982), and thus this section concentrates on gilts; however, most of the principles considered apply to the sow. The literature indicates that in addition to delayed puberty, poor detection of estrus con-
tributes to mating difficulties in commercial gilts (Hemsworth 1982). The incidence and consequences of poor sexual receptivity in those gilts detected in estrus are unknown, although this condition does occur (Cronin et al. 1982). Nevertheless, problems with sexual receptivity and detection of estrus should be considered together, since receptivity or the standing response is generally the criterion used in the main procedures for detecting estrus (e.g., use of boars or the back-pressure test).

**Boar Contact**

The most common procedure for detecting estrus other than the use of boars is the back-pressure test (BPT) or riding test (Signoret 1970). Females reacting to pressure on their back by displaying the “standing” or lordosis response for at least 10 seconds are generally classified as being sexually receptive (Hemsworth et al. 1988). The efficiency of this procedure depends on the female receiving intense boar contact at the time of testing. Signoret (1970) reported that the maximum percentage of gilts displaying the standing response to the BPT in the absence of boars was 59% between 24 and 36 hours after the start of estrus. This percentage increased to 90% by providing the gilts with auditory and olfactory contact with boars and further increased to 100% with the addition of visual and tactile contact with boars. Similarly, Hemsworth et al. (1984) demonstrated the importance of intense contact with the boar at the time of conducting the BPT. Testing gilts at a distance of 1 m or more from the boar, which presumably reduced the amount of boar contact, reduced the efficiency of the test (52% of postpubertal gilts detected in estrus compared to 90% when gilts were tested adjacent to boars). Therefore, intense boar contact at the time of testing is vital in achieving a high efficiency with the BPT. Reducing boar contact at the time of detection will reduce sexual receptivity in estrous females. Langendijk et al. (2003) have shown the importance of boars in eliciting sexual receptivity, oxytocin release, and, in turn, uterine activity in estrous sows, and thus the stimulation from boars may be critical in situations that are suboptimal for fertilization, such as during seasonal infertility (Pena et al. 1998).

While it appears that boar contact has an important role in stimulating the female’s sexual behavior, there are situations where continuous stimulation from the boar may adversely affect sexual behavior. Research (Hemsworth et al. 1984, 1986a, 1988) has shown that housing postpubertal gilts adjacent to boars, with a wire-mesh wall separating them, generally results in a low estrus detection rate with the BPT (e.g., 53% vs. 93% for gilts housed near but not adjacent to boars, Hemsworth et al. 1988). It has been proposed that habituation by gilts to the important boar stimuli (e.g., auditory and olfactory stimuli), which facilitate the standing response of the estrous female to pressure on her back (Signoret 1970), is responsible for this detection problem (Hemsworth et al. 1988). Housing gilts adjacent to boars, which is not uncommon in the industry, may also produce problems in detecting estrus when boars are used for detection (Hemsworth et al. 1987). The results of these studies indicate that housing postpubertal gilts adjacent to boars, with a wire-mesh or barred wall separating them, may adversely affect the sexual behavior of the gilts to the extent that there are difficulties in detecting estrus. Housing weaned sows adjacent to boars does not adversely affect the detection of estrus, possibly because there is insufficient time for habituation to the boar stimuli to occur before the onset of estrus (Hemsworth and Hansen 1990).

Another behavioral problem that may arise through excessive boar stimulation is prolonged boar stimulation at the time of detection. Observations on the sexual receptivity of estrous gilts exposed for an extended period to boars during estrus detection with the BPT indicate that many estrous females may become temporarily refractory to this stimulation, resulting in failure to display the standing response. Levis and Hemsworth, (unpublished data), in studying the behavioral responses of estrous gilts to repeated testing about every 5 minutes, found that the percentage of females standing for the BPT declined from 100% when initially tested to 65% when tested 21 minutes later. This reduction in the sexual receptivity of estrous gilts with frequent stimulation may be due to sexual refractiveness, similar to the sexual refractiveness that occurs in both males and females after copulation. This observation has implication for those situations where females may be tested with the BPT or a boar for estrus over an extended period, but mating or insemination is delayed. There is the possibility that repeated stimulation over an extended period at estrus detection may result in estrous females temporarily experiencing a decline in their sexual receptivity before they can be either detected in estrus or mated.

There is substantial variability in the industry in procedures that use a boar to detect estrous females and yet these procedures have received little research attention. Hughes et al. (1985) reported that 6- to 7-month-old boars provide female pigs with less sexual stimulation than older boars. They found that while only 38% of estrous gilts displayed an immediate standing response to the mounting attempts of young boars, the artificial provision of olfactory and auditory stimulation from older boars increased this percentage to 59%. When stockpeople rely on boars for estrus detection, it is therefore essential that the stockpeople adequately supervise the detection and promptly address any detection problems. Stockpeople need to be particularly vigilant when young boars are used, or when there is variation in the motivation of boars, distractions to the boar’s courtship when testing occurs in an unfamiliar location for the boar, and insufficient time and opportunity for the boar to test each female when females are tested in groups. A
useful addition to procedures which directly rely on boars for estrus detection is for the stockperson to concurrently use the BPT.

**Space Allowance and Group Size**

As discussed earlier, there is limited evidence that space allowance and, to a lesser extent, group size of group-housed gilts may influence the efficiency of detecting estrus. Hemsworth et al. (1986b) examined the effects of housing groups of adult postpubertal gilts (6 pigs/group) with a space allowance of 1, 2, or 3 m²/gilt on sexual behavior. A lower percentage of gilts was detected in estrus when housed with a space allowance of 1 m²/gilt than with a space allowance of 2 or 3 m²/gilt (88% vs. 100% and 100%). A significant sustained increase in plasma-free-corticosteroid concentrations in gilts housed with a space allowance of 1 m²/gilt suggests that a chronic stress response may have reduced sexual receptivity. Clearly more comprehensive research is required, but in the meantime it is suggested that postpubertal gilts and weaned sows around the time of mating should be provided with at least 2 m²/animal.

Several studies have examined the effects of group size, however the effects of group size on the sexual behavior of female pigs appear equivocal, perhaps because of suboptimal space allowances in these studies (Hemsworth and Barnett 1990). There are the suggestions from these results that there may be problems in detecting estrus in small groups (groups of 3, Christenson 1984), large groups (groups of 24, Christenson and Ford 1979), and groups of 50 or more (Cronin et al. 1983). The interaction between group size and space allowance must be examined to clarify the optimal social and spatial conditions for group-housed gilts.

Subordinate pair-housed sows show lower levels of sexual receptivity to boars than dominant pair-housed sows or individually housed sows (Pedersen et al. 2003). Although the number of animals studied was low, there were no adverse effects reported on the reproductive performance of these subordinate animals housed in groups. Nevertheless these results further highlight the need for vigilance by stockpeople in detecting estrus in situations in which social effects may impact on the sexual behavior of gilts and sows.

**Climatic Environment**

Several studies have reported seasonal variation in the rate of detecting estrus in gilts. Christenson (1981) observed that a higher proportion of ovulating gilts were undetected in late summer than in the remainder of the year (16.7 and 8.4%, respectively). Cronin et al. (1983) reported that in the spring there was a lower percentage of unmated postpubertal gilts at 35 weeks of age that had not been detected in estrus than at other times of the year (3.2 and 6.5%, respectively). The effects of photoperiod and temperature are confounded in these two studies. There is some limited evidence that indicates that increased environmental temperatures may affect sexual behavior of gilts. In two of three trials, Warnick et al. (1965) reported that a total of 3 out of 13 gilts (23.1%) were not detected in estrus at an ambient temperature of 32°C although all had ovulated. In only one of a series of experiments reported by Godfrey et al. (1983), increased temperatures (38°C for 10 hours and 32°C for 14 hours) reduced the percentage of gilts detected in estrus (21 vs. 4% for control); however, it was not determined whether ovulatory activity or detection of estrus was affected. Several studies reported that the duration of detected estrus was reduced by high temperatures (see review by Paterson and Pett 1987).

**REFERENCES**


Coccidia (Isospora suis and Eimeria spp.)

Coccidia are obligatory intracellular protozoan parasites. Eimeria, Isospora, Cryptosporidium, Toxoplasma, and Sarcocystis are important genera of protozoal parasites of mammals and birds. Domestic animals may be infected with several species of coccidia but usually only a few species are pathogenic for a given host.

ETIOLOGY

The number of valid species of intestinal coccidia that infect swine is unknown because most are known only from the sporulated oocyst stage. Levine and Ivens (1986) list 13 named species of Eimeria and 3 species of Isospora from swine. Isospora suis, I. almataensis, and I. neyrai are the species of Isospora described from swine. Isospora almataensis and I. neyrai are known only from oocysts in the feces and have not been observed in the United States; they probably are not valid species. Neonatal coccidiosis caused by I. suis is the most important protozoal disease of swine. Although the causative agent, I. suis, was described from pigs in 1934 (Biester and Murray 1934), it was not until the middle 1970s that clinical coccidiosis was recognized as a disease problem in nursing pigs (Sangster et al. 1976). In 1978, it was demonstrated that I. suis was the cause of piglet coccidiosis in natural cases, and coccidiosis was experimentally reproduced in nursing pigs (Stuart et al. 1978). Neonatal piglet coccidiosis has a cosmopolitan distribution and is found anywhere pigs are raised in confinement.

Life cycle of I. suis

Coccidial life cycles are divided into three phases: sporogony, excystation, and endogenous development (Figure 52.1). Each coccidial phase is unique for each species and knowledge of life cycle phases is important in diagnosis, treatment, prevention, and control of coccidiosis.

Sporogony is the process by which the oocyst (environmentally resistant stage) develops from the unsporulated noninfectious stage passed in the feces to the infective stage (Figure 52.2). Proper temperature and moisture must be present for sporulation to take place. The oocysts of I. suis sporulate rapidly at temperatures between 20°C and 37°C (Lindsay et al. 1982). The supplemental heat of between 32°C and 35°C provided by producers for newborn piglets favors rapid development (within 12 hours) of I. suis oocysts in the farrowing crate. Oocysts are most sensitive to killing when in the unsporulated state and during sporulation. Once the oocysts are sporulated, they are resistant to most disinfectants. When fully sporulated, the oocysts of I. suis and all other Isospora species contain two sporocysts, each with four sporozoites.

Excystation is the phase of the life cycle that occurs immediately after the infectious oocysts are ingested. Passage through the stomach alters the oocyst wall and allows bile salts and digestive enzymes to activate the sporozoites. The activated sporozoites leave the sporocyst and oocyst and are freed into the intestinal lumen. The sporozoites then penetrate enterocytes and begin the endogenous phase of parasite multiplication.

The endogenous stages of the life cycle of I. suis occur in cytoplasm of enterocytes throughout the small intestine, with most stages being present in the jejunum and ileum. Occasionally, in heavy infections, parasites can be found in the cecum and colon as well. Coccidial stages are usually located on the distal portions of the villi and are in a parasitophorous vacuole below the host-cell nucleus (Lindsay et al. 1980). In severe clinical or experimental cases, stages may also be located in crypt enterocytes.

There are two distinct types of asexual stages in the endogenous life cycle of I. suis. Sporozoites enter enterocytes and become binucleated type 1 meronts, which
divide by endodyogeny in about 24 hours; each meront produces two type 1 merozoites. The characteristic side-by-side appearance of these type 1 merozoites is useful in diagnosis because none of the swine *Eimeria* species divide by endodyogeny. Several divisional cycles by endodyogeny can occur and produce cells with many type 1 merozoites. Type 2 meronts are multinucleated and form type 2 merozoites, which may be seen as early as 1 day postinoculation (PI). Type 2 merozoites are smaller than type 1 merozoites. Sexual stages consist of microgamonts, which produce biflagellated microgametes, and uninucleate macrogamonts. The microga-
metes fertilize the macrogamonts, and an oocyst is formed. These sexual stages also may be seen 4 days PI, whereas oocysts are first seen in the feces 5 days PI (rarely 4 days).

**Immunity to Isospora suis**

Pigs that have been infected with *I. suis* and recover are resistant to challenge infection (Stuart et al. 1982b). These challenged pigs excrete no or very few oocysts (in contrast to initial infection) and do not develop clinical signs. Administration of corticosteroids (methylprednisolone acetate) does not cause these previously exposed pigs to reexcrete oocysts, suggesting good immunity has developed. Colostral antibodies against *I. suis* do not protect piglets from developing clinical coccidiosis (Taylor 1984). Serum antibodies peak about 1 week after primary infection, and a secondary antibody response occurs following challenge infection. Serum antibodies against *I. suis* do not recognize sporozoites of *E. debliecki*, *E. neodebliecki*, *E. scabra*, or *E. porci* from pigs in an indirect fluorescent antibody test.

Pigs have age-related differences in susceptibility to experimental infection and disease (Stuart et al. 1982a; Koudela and Kucerova 1999). Pigs that are 1–2 days old develop much more severe disease than do pigs inoculated with an identical number of oocysts at 2 or 4 weeks of age.

**Clinical Signs**

Signs of disease occur in formerly healthy nursing pigs between 7 and 11 days of age (Stuart et al. 1978). Yellowish to grayish diarrhea is the major clinical sign. The feces are initially loose or pasty and become more fluid as the infection progresses. Piglets become covered with the liquid feces, causing them to stay damp and have a rancid odor of sour milk. The piglets usually continue to nurse, develop a rough hair coat, become dehydrated, and have depressed weight gains (Lindsay et al. 1985). Litters within the farrowing house vary in the degree to which they demonstrate clinical signs, and not all piglets within a litter are equally affected. Morbidity is usually high but mortalities are usually moderate. Concurrent bacterial, viral, or other parasitic infections may lead to extreme mortalities and complicate diagnosis.

Occasionally *I. suis* oocysts are present in the feces of recently weaned pigs, some of which may have diarrhea. Although this indicates a patent infection, whether or not *I. suis* is the etiologic agent of the diarrhea is unknown because of complicating factors such as diet and other management changes that occur at weaning. There is a report that *I. suis* caused postweaning diarrhea in 5- to 6-week-old piglets (Nilsson 1988). Diarrhea began 4–7 days after the piglets were weaned. Morbidity was high (80–90%) but mortalities were rare. *I. suis* infections do not cause disease in finishing pigs or in breeding stock.

**Pathologic Changes**

Experimental studies have shown that the degree of disease is dependent on the number of sporulated *I. suis* oocysts that a piglet ingests (Stuart et al. 1980). Inoculation of 200,000 or more oocysts usually produces severe disease and moderate to extreme mortalities (Stuart et al. 1980; Lindsay et al. 1985). Inoculation of fewer oocysts generally produces clinical disease characterized principally by diarrhea but few or no mortalities.

Necropsy examination may demonstrate gross lesions of neonatal coccidiosis characterized by a fibrinonecrotic membrane in the jejunum and ileum, but this is seen only in severely infected piglets. Hemorrhage is not seen even in extreme cases of natural infections or in experimental infections where large numbers of oocysts are given.

Microscopic lesions consist of villous atrophy, villous fusion, crypt hyperplasia, and necrotic enteritis (Stuart et al. 1980). The usual tall columnar enterocytes at the tips of the villi may be destroyed, exposing the underlying lamina propria, or they may be replaced by flattened immature enterocytes. The functional ability for absorption is diminished in this altered epithelium, resulting in fluid loss and diarrhea. Immunohistochemical studies indicate that infection alters carbohydrate residues on the enterocytes (Choi et al. 2003). Lesions develop about 4 days PI and are associated with the presence of the asexual stages. In most natural cases few parasites are present in the sections and most of these parasites are asexual stages. In severe cases piglets may succumb to coccidiosis before the sexual stages are produced. The extent of microscopic lesions produced is dependent on the number of *I. suis* oocysts a pig ingests.

The role of viral and bacterial copathogens with *I. suis* has been examined experimentally (Baba and Gaffer 1985; Vitovec et al. 1991). The responses of gnotobiotic and conventional pigs to *I. suis* and rotavirus infection are similar (Vitovec et al. 1991). The degree of observed clinical disease is more severe when the two pathogens are administered concurrently than when either is given singly. Both the virus and the parasite prefer to develop in the enterocytes on the central and distal portion of the villi in the small intestine, and competition for a suitable host cell is believed to be the cause for the observed increase in clinical disease and microscopic lesions. An established *I. suis* infection will interfere with the establishment of a *Salmonella typhimurium* infection (Baba and Gaffer 1985). The increased gut motility and destruction of host cells probably interfere with the bacterium’s ability to colonize the intestinal mucosa.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Diarrhea in nursing pigs 7–14 days of age that does not respond to antibiotic treatment is suggestive of neonatal *I. suis* infection. Other agents such as enteropatho-
genic *Escherichia coli*, transmissible gastroenteritis virus, rotavirus, *Clostridium perfringens* type C, and *Strongyloides ransomi* should be considered in the differential diagnosis.

Diagnosis of *I. suis* is best achieved by finding *I. suis* oocysts in the feces of clinically affected piglets (Figure 52.2A, B). This is the quickest method available for diagnosis. Fecal smears or fecal flotations should be made from several litters within the farrowing house that have been showing clinical signs for 2–3 days, because diarrhea starts about a day before oocysts are passed and peak oocyst production occurs about 2–3 days after clinical signs develop. Piglets excrete oocysts in several phases and may be negative during these phases. Pasty fecal samples are likely to contain more oocysts than are liquid samples. The oocysts of *I. suis* have characteristic structures called “hazy bodies” between the oocyst wall and the sporont (Figure 52.2A). These are diagnostic for *I. suis* because none of the oocysts of the swine *Eimeria* species have this structure (Lindsay et al. 1982). Additionally, some of the oocysts may be in the two-celled sporoblast stage (Figure 52.2B), which is also diagnostic for *I. suis*. Fecal fat may make identification of oocysts in Sheather’s sugar flotation preparations difficult. A solution of saturated sodium chloride and glucose (500 g of glucose in 1000 ml saturated sodium chloride solution) has been recommended as an alternative flotation medium (Henriksen and Christensen 1992).

Demonstration of developmental stages (Figure 52.3A–D) in mucosal smears can be used in the diagnosis of *I. suis* infection (Lindsay et al. 1983). The intestinal mucosa should be scraped with a scalpel or coverslip using just enough pressure to dislodge villi, and the scrapings should be prepared as a smear on a glass microscope slide. The smears are then stained with any of a number of routine blood stains.

The presence of paired type 1 merozoites (Figure 52.3D) is diagnostic. Other asexual stages (such as binucleated type 1 meronts or type 2 meronts and merozoites) and sexual stages (microgamonts and macrogamonts) will probably be present also, but their identification is more difficult and not needed for diagnosis.

Histologic diagnosis of *I. suis* in tissue sections is possible (Lindsay et al. 1983). As with mucosal smears, demonstration of paired type 1 merozoites is diagnostic (Figure 52.3E–H). The multinucleated type 2 meronts of *I. suis* are elongated and are often found in the same host cell. Finally, the macrogamonts of *I. suis* lack the characteristic eosinophilic wall-forming bodies seen in *Eimeria* species.
PCR (Ruttkowski et al. 2001) and autofluorescence (Daugschies et al. 2001) of oocysts are other methods that can be used to diagnose *I. suis* infection. These methods are limited to use by diagnostic laboratories using specialized equipment.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

*Eimeria* Species

Eight species of *Eimeria* occur in swine in the United States (Vetterling 1965). Reports of coccidiosis in swine caused by *Eimeria* species are rare (Hill et al. 1985). Experimental studies have demonstrated that inoculation of 3-day-old nursing pigs with up to 5 million oocysts of *Eimeria debliecki* does not cause clinical disease and that inoculation of up to 10 million oocysts does not cause disease in 4-week-old weaned pigs (Lindsay et al. 1987). Similar results were obtained in 2- to 3-month-old pigs given 4 million oocysts of *E. debliecki* (Vitovec and Koudela 1990).

*Eimeria spinosa* is not pathogenic for pigs under experimental conditions (Koudela and Vitovec 1992). Reports of natural cases of *E. spinosa* associated disease in weaned pigs suggest that this species can cause disease in appropriate conditions in the field (Lindsay et al. 2002, Yaeger et al. 2003). Coccidia vary in their inherent abilities to cause disease, and it appears that the *Eimeria* species infecting swine are generally non-pathogenic.

*Isospora suis*

Once *I. suis* coccidiosis was recognized as a problem in nursing pigs, most veterinarians and researchers assumed that piglets were infected by ingesting *I. suis* oocysts from the sow’s feces. However, studies have failed to confirm this assumption. Surveys of the swine population in the United States indicate that *Eimeria* infections are common (60–95%) in animals raised in lots or in the wild, but less than 3% of the animals sampled excrete oocysts of *I. suis* (Vetterling 1966; Lindsay et al. 1984). One study examined the species of oocysts excreted by sows on farms with and without a history of *I. suis* infections in nursing pigs; sows on all the farms underwent gestation on dirt lots (Lindsay et al. 1984). The study reported that 82% of the sows on farms with a history of coccidiosis had *Eimeria* infections but no detectable *I. suis* infections. The sows from farms with no history of neonatal coccidiosis had an infection rate of 95% with *Eimeria* species and less than 1% with *I. suis*.

In the United States, Stuart and Lindsay (1986) examined the transmission of *I. suis* on two farms in Georgia. Daily fecal samples were collected rectally from sows typically 1 week prior to farrowing, the day of farrowing, and for about 1 week after farrowing. Colostrum and placentas from several sows were examined microscopically for parasites. A coccidiostat (amprolium HC1, Amprol 25% feed grade) was given to half of the sows on each farm. *Eimeria* species were the only coccidia seen in the feces of sows. None of the sows given amprolium HC1 had oocysts in fecal samples at farrowing. No parasitic stages were seen in the colostrum or placentas examined. On Farm 1, 7 of 12 litters from nontreated sows and 9 of 12 litters from treated sows developed clinical coccidiosis. On Farm 2, all litters from nontreated sows and 11 of 12 litters from treated sows developed clinical coccidiosis. *I. suis* was the only species of coccidia seen in these piglets.

The results of these studies indicate that sows are not the primary source of *I. suis* infection for nursing pigs. It is still not known how *I. suis* becomes established on a farm; once it is established, it is probably transmitted through contaminated farrowing crates. The temperature (32–35°C) and moisture in the farrowing crate favor rapid sporulation of *I. suis*. High temperatures (32–35°C) may inhibit sporulation of the *Eimeria* species and could explain the absence of these species in nursing pigs.

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL**

Anticoccidials

Sows do not appear to be a major source of infection for nursing pigs; therefore, using anticoccidial drugs in the sow’s ration is of little value in controlling neonatal coccidiosis. Early studies that reported success with treating sows probably are due to improved sanitation once the producers were made aware that their pigs had coccidiosis. Studies that demonstrate anticoccidial activity of drugs in weaned or finishing pigs are of no value in predicting the ability of these drugs to control disease in nursing pigs. Addition of anticoccidial drugs to the drinking water of piglets or mixing drugs in oral iron may be beneficial in treating coccidiosis, but there is no way to ensure that every piglet gets a therapeutic/preventive dose. There are no controlled studies that have documented the effectiveness of this type of treatment. Individual dosing is still the best way to ensure that each piglet gets a proper dose of anticoccidial drug.

Toltrazuril, a triazinon antiprotozoal not available in the United States, appears promising as an effective means of preventing coccidiosis in nursing piglets (Driesen et al. 1995). Toltrazuril (Baycox 5% suspension) was given orally at 20–30 mg/kg as a single dose to 3- to 6-day-old piglets on five farms with coccidiosis problems. Coccidiosis was reduced from 71% to 22% in treated litters. The severity of diarrhea and oocyst excretion was reduced in toltrazuril-treated piglets. Experimentally, toltrazuril was effective in reducing clinical signs and oocyst production at a single 20 mg/kg dose given to 5-day-old pigs that had been inoculated at 3 days of age (Mundt et al. 2003). Toltrazuril’s excellent activity is probably based on its ability to kill asexual and sexual stages of coccidia and because it is slowly released from tissues of treated animals.

Controlled studies conducted to date in nursing pigs
Toxoplasmosis (Toxoplasma gondii)

Toxoplasmosis is caused by infection with Toxoplasma gondii, a protozoan parasite related to the coccidia. Infections are common in humans and animals. Postnatally, animals or humans become infected by ingesting food and water contaminated with sporulated T. gondii oocysts or by consuming meat containing tissue cysts. Cats (and other felines) are the only animals that can excrete resistant oocysts in their feces and are important in the transmission of T. gondii to pigs and other animals (Figure 52.4). Tissue cysts are found mainly in many edible tissues of infected animals, and they contain bradyzoites in various slowly multiplying stages (Figure 52.5B). Tissue cysts remain viable in the tissues for many years and probably the life of the animal. After ingestion, oocysts or bradyzoites can survive passage through the stomach. Once in the intestine of the host, sporozoites or bradyzoites change into a fast-multiplying stage called tachyzoites (Figure 52.5A). Tachyzoites multiply in the lamina propria of the intestine and eventually spread throughout the body. Prenatal infection may occur if the mother is infected during pregnancy. Tachyzoites from the mother’s blood may cross to the fetus via the placenta. Tachyzoites cause tissue damage and eventually develop into the bradyzoite stage and form tissue cysts. Toxoplasmosis is a zoonosis, and pork is considered a major meat source of human infection in the United States (Dubey 1990).

Clinical Signs
Most infections in swine are subclinical (Dubey 1986). Abortions due to T. gondii, although uncommon, may occur in sows infected during pregnancy. Transplacently infected pigs may be born premature, dead, or weak, or they may die soon after birth. Pigs that live may develop diarrhea, incoordination, tremors, or cough. Few reports exist on clinical disease in pigs that acquire infection postnatally, but epizootics of clinical toxoplasmosis have been observed in both young and adult pigs (Dubey et al. 1979; Dubey and Beattie 1988). Experimental studies indicate that ingestion of T. gondii oocysts by pigs is more likely to produce clinical disease than ingestion of tissue cysts (Dubey 1986). Severity of disease is dependent upon the number of oocysts ingested. Older animals are less likely to develop clinical disease.

Pathologic Changes
Pathologic changes are associated with necrosis of host tissue caused by the rapidly multiplying tachyzoites (Figure 52.6). Ingestion of oocysts is more likely to give rise to intestinal lesions than ingestion of tissue cysts. Enteritis, lymphadenitis, splenitis, hepatitis, pneumonia, and less frequently myositis and encephalitis are seen in naturally infected pigs (Dubey 1986).

DIAGNOSIS
Methods of diagnosis include bioassays of tissues in cats or mice, serology, and histology. Bioassays are the most sensitive but are costly and time-consuming, and few laboratories perform these tests. Several serologic tests are available for determining antibodies to T. gondii in pigs. These include the Sabin-Feldman dye test (DT), indirect hemagglutination test, direct agglutination (DAG) test, latex agglutination test, indirect fluorescent antibody test, and ELISA. The DAG test is the most sensitive and specific for the detection of latent T. gondii infection in swine (Dubey et al. 1995). Although finding T. gondii antibody in adult pigs only means exposure to T. gondii, finding antibody in a fetus indicates congenital infection because maternal antibodies are not transferred to the fetus in pigs. Histologic examination of tissues may be utilized for a presumptive diagnosis based
on lesion characteristics and parasite structure following routine histologic staining of tissue sections or identification of organisms in impression smears stained with Giemsa or other blood stains (Figure 52.5A). *Toxoplasma gondii* tachyzoites are lunate and about the size of a red blood cell. Tissue cysts are oval to round, up to 70 µm in diameter, and contain many bradyzoites (Figure 52.5B). For a definitive diagnosis if parasites are found in tissue sections, specific immunohistochemical tests (peroxidase-antiperoxidase test, avidin-biotin complex test) can be used.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The prevalence of congenital *T. gondii* infection in pigs is less than 0.01%. Prevalence of *T. gondii* antibodies in feeder pigs (younger than 6 months) is much lower (3–5%) than in sows (15–20%) based on large-scale surveys in Illinois (Weigel et al. 1995; Dubey et al. 1995b). The presence of *T. gondii*-infected cats and infected rodents were identified as the main sources of *T. gondii* infection for pigs (Weigel et al. 1995). Cats become infected with *T. gondii* by ingesting infected animals (rodents, birds) soon after weaning. Therefore, infected juvenile cats are considered to be the main source of *T. gondii* for farm pigs. Cats generally acquire good immunity to *T. gondii*, and cats that have excreted oocysts once are less likely to excrete oocysts again (Dubey et al. 1986).

### TREATMENT AND CONTROL

Because porcine toxoplasmosis is usually subclinical, little is known about the treatment of the disease (Dubey 1986). In general, drugs used to treat toxoplasmosis in humans have been effective. These include pyrimethamine or trimethoprim in combination with a systemically active sulfonamide.

Control of *T. gondii* infection in pigs is important because of public-health concerns over human infections. Toxoplasmosis causes mental retardation and loss of vision in congenitally infected children. Following experimental infection, viable tissue cysts of *T. gondii* can be found in most commercial cuts of pork, and studies have shown that the tissue cysts will be viable for at least 2.5 years (Dubey 1988). Freezing (−12°C) for 3 days or cooking pork until internal temperature reaches 60°C will kill tissue cysts in pork (Dubey et al. 1990). Low-dose gamma irradiation (0.5 kGy cesium 137) kills tissue cysts in pork.

Prevention of *T. gondii* infection in pigs can be achieved by practicing good husbandry. There is no vac-
cine. To prevent oocyst-induced infections, cats should never be allowed in buildings where pigs are housed or where feed is stored. Rodenticides should be used to control rodents and eliminate this possible source of tissue cysts. Any pigs that die should be removed promptly to prevent cannibalism. Wild-animal carcasses or uncooked garbage should never be fed to pigs. Feed should be kept covered to prevent cats from defecating in it.

Sarcocystosis

*Sarcocystis* spp. are coccidia parasites that have a two-host life cycle (Figure 52.7). Three species use pigs as the intermediate host and form tissue cysts (sarcocysts) in the pig muscles. *Sarcocystis miescheriana* has a pig-dog life cycle and is the only species found in the United States. Dogs excrete infective stages (sporocysts) in their feces. The other species are *S. suihominis*, which uses the human as the definitive host, and *S. porcifelis*, which uses the cat as the definitive host (Dubey et al. 1989). Surveys indicate that from 3–18% of commercial breed-
ing sows and 32% of wild swine examined in the United States have *Sarcocystis* infection (Dubey and Powell 1994). There are no reports of naturally occurring clinical disease due to *Sarcocystis* infection in swine (Dubey et al. 1989). Experimental infections indicate that *S. mescheriana* can cause abortion, death, dyspnea, weight loss, muscle tremors, and purpura of the skin. *Sarcocystis* infection in swine can be prevented by eliminating their exposure to canine feces. To prevent exposure in dogs, they should not be allowed to consume pig carcasses.
Cryptosporidiosis

Members of the genus Cryptosporidium differ from conventional coccidia that infect animals in that they develop in the microvillous border of enterocytes rather than deep down in the host-cell cytoplasm (Figure 52.8). Additionally, oocysts of Cryptosporidium are completely sporulated when excreted in the feces and contain four sporozoites and no sporocysts (Upton and Current 1985).

Cryptosporidiosis is caused by infection with Cryptosporidium parvum, which is a recognized zoonosis. Recent molecular and animal infectivity studies indicate that pigs are host for other species of Cryptosporidium referred to as “pig genotypes” (Enemark et al. 2003; Ryan et al. 2003) that are different from C. parvum. The prevalence of C. parvum compared to pig genotype infections in pigs is not known. Human infections with pig genotypes are rare (Xiao et al. 2002), and pigs do not appear to be a major source of infection for humans.

CLINICAL SIGNS AND PATHOLOGIC

Microscopic lesions associated with cryptosporidial infection in pigs are minimal or absent. The parasites are found in the jejunum, ileum, cecum, and colon, with most parasites being in the ileum. When lesions are present, they consist of mild villous atrophy and invasion of the lamina propria by large numbers of mononuclear inflammatory cells and fewer eosinophils (Sanford 1987). Microvilli in the area of the parasites may be displaced or hypertrophic.

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND DIAGNOSIS

Pigs are infected by ingesting oocysts in contaminated feed, from the environment, or in water. There is no seasonal pattern to the prevalence of infection (Sanford 1987).

Diagnosis can be achieved by finding the developmental stages of the parasite in histologic sections. The parasites are 2–6 µm and basophilic and appear to be embedded in the microvillous border of the enterocytes. Diagnosis can also be made by finding the characteristic oocysts in fecal flotations, but molecular methods are needed for speciation. The oocysts are small, 5.0 by 4.5 µm, and have a pinkish color and residual body when observed with light microscopy. Sheather’s sugar solution is the flotation medium of choice; a microscope
equipped with good objectives is needed to identify the oocysts in flotations. It is important to remember that in fecal flotations, the cryptosporidial oocysts will be in a slightly higher plane of focus than other coccidial oocysts. Several methods of staining fecal samples and examining for oocysts have been developed but these are not practical for use in pigs. Several serologic methods such as enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and indirect fluorescent antibody test (IFAT) have been developed for estimating the prevalence of cryptosporidial exposure, but these tests are not currently in widespread use.

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL**

There is no treatment for cryptosporidial infection. Sanitation methods used to control *I. suis* coccidiosis should also prove effective against cryptosporidial infections.

---

**Other Protozoa of Minor Importance or Potentially Transmissible to Humans**

**GIARDIA**

Giardia species are flagellated protozoan that cause fatty diarrhea in humans and companion animals. *Giardia* cysts contain four nuclei, median bodies, and are about 12 micrometers in length. These cysts can be found in the feces of many mammalian species, including pigs. The trophozoites of *Giardia* live in the lumen of the small intestine, usually the upper small intestine. They have two nuclei and an adhesive disk by which they attach to enterocytes. They are not considered pathogenic for pigs (Koudela et al. 1991). Molecular analysis of *Giardia* isolates obtained from pigs indicates that...
human infective *Giardia* may be found in pigs and that “Livestock” infective genotypes can be found in pigs (Ey et al. 1997). The role of pigs in the transmission of *Giardia* to humans is not presently known.

**MICROSPORIDIA**

Microsporidia are in the phylum Microspora. These organisms infect both vertebrates and invertebrates. They are intracellular pathogens and can be found in a variety of locations in the host’s body. Human and animal infections with the well-known *Encephalitozoon cuniculi* were recognized prior to the AIDS pandemic. However, overall awareness of this phylum as important parasites of warm-blooded animals came about only after the advent of AIDS. Hosts are infected by ingestion of spores passed in the urine or feces. The polar tube penetrates a cell, and the sporoplasm, containing the nucleus, is passed through the tube into the host cell. Inside the host cell the parasite replicates asexually until the host cell bursts, releasing newly formed spores. Most microsporidia are small (1 to 4 micrometers) and resemble bacteria when examined unstained with light microscopy.

Clinical microsporidiosis has not been reported in pigs. Pigs are naturally infected with *Enterocytozoon bieneusi* (Breitenmoser et al. 1999), an important cause of chronic diarrhea in AIDS patients. Self-limiting diarrhea occurs in immunocompetent patients. Several different genotypes of *Ent. bieneusi* occur in pigs and humans. An 18-month long survey of pigs from a slaughterhouse in Massachusetts revealed that 32% of the pigs were positive for *Ent. bieneusi* using a PCR test (Buckholt et al. 2002). Human infective genotypes were also isolated from the feces of these pigs.

Experimental infections of gnotobiotic pigs with *Ent. bieneusi* did not result in clinical signs (Kondova et al. 1998). Pigs excreted spores for at least 50 days. *Enterocytozoon bieneusi* was detected in enterocytes and feces of experimentally infected gnotobiotic pigs.

**BALANTIDIUM COLI**

*Balanatidium coli* is the only important ciliate found in pigs and in humans. It is transmitted by cysts in the lumen of the large intestine. Most infections in swine and humans are subclinical. Individual infection rates approaching 100% can be found in weaned pigs and breeding stock on farms where *B. coli* is present (Hindsbo et al. 2000).

**REFERENCES**


Hill JE, Lomax LG, Lindsay DS, Lynn BS. 1985. Coccidiosis caused


The importance of external parasites in swine production varies greatly among regions because of differences in climate and systems used to raise pigs. Unquestionably, the mite *Sarcoptes scabiei* var. *suis* is the most important external parasite of swine worldwide. Other external parasites include demodectic mites, lice, fleas, mosquitoes, flies, and ticks. Mites and ticks belong to the class Arachnida and are characterized by having four pairs of legs. Lice, fleas, flies, and mosquitoes belong to the class Insecta.

External parasites produce a range of clinical signs in pigs. Rubbing, scratching, and skin lesions, which are secondary to irritation, are the most common. Some parasites also cause significant economic effects due to reduced growth rate, reduced feed efficiency, and loss of carcass value at slaughter. The risk of chemical residues in meat is also increased because many products used to treat external parasites have a long withholding period and treatment of animals can complicate routine market and culling decisions. Furthermore, some external parasites are implicated in the transmission of pathogenic organisms.

**SARCOPTIC MANGE**

The mite *Sarcoptes scabiei* var. *suis*, the cause of sarcoptic mange, is the most important ectoparasite of swine throughout the world. Mange is considered the most detrimental skin disease affecting pigs, because of the economic losses from reduced growth rates and feed efficiency in growing pigs and decreased fertility in breeding sows (Zimmermann and Kircher 1998; Kessler et al. 2003). Its economic importance tends to be underestimated, especially by pig producers who fail to check for encrustations in the ears of sows and to recognize the importance of clinical signs in growing pigs.

Two clinical forms of the disease are recognized: a hyperkeratotic form (sometimes referred to as *chronic mange*) that most commonly affects multiparous sows and a pruritic or hypersensitive form that affects growing pigs. Earlier descriptions of sarcoptic mange referred to hyperkeratotic mange and described encrusted skin lesions from which mites were readily isolated (McPherson 1960; Sheahan 1970). More recent studies have shown that the hypersensitive form is the more common in growing pigs and is characterized by the development of delayed and immediate hypersensitive reactions to the mites. (Davis and Moon 1990a,b,c; Alonso de Vega et al. 1998; Cargill 2001, 2002).

**Distribution**

Sarcoptic mange mites are ubiquitous in swine herds, unless eliminated by specific eradication procedures (Yeoman 1984). Herd prevalence estimates of between 43% and 95% have been reported in numerous countries, including Australia, Belgium, Canada, the former Republic of Czechoslovakia, Denmark, France, Great Britain, Italy, Japan, Mexico, the Netherlands, Scotland, Spain, Sweden, and the United States (Wooten-Saadi et al. 1987b; Smeets et al. 1989; Horie 1990; McMullin et al. 1990; Davies et al. 1991a; Hasslinger and Resch 1992; Klopfenstein et al. 1992; McMullin et al. 1992; Mendez de Vigo et al. 1992; Garcia et al. 1994; Gualandi et al. 1994; Davies et al. 1996b). In many studies herd prevalences of 70–90% were recorded, with animal prevalences within herds ranging from 20% to 95%. As recently as 2003, herd prevalence in the U.S.A. and Canada was quoted at 29% and 38%, respectively (Melancon 2003).

**Etiology and Life Cycle**

*Sarcoptes scabiei* is a small, grayish-white, eight-legged arthropod, from the class *Arachnida*, order *Acariana*, belonging to the family *Sarcoptidae* (Hill 1997). The mite is circular, approximately 0.5 mm in length, and just visible to the naked eye when placed on a dark background. When viewed under a dissecting microscope, the mite readily moves away from bright light. It has four pairs of short stumpy legs, some of which are provided with long unjointed pedicles that terminate in sucker like or-
gans. These pedicles occur on the first two pairs of legs in the female and on the first, second, and fourth pairs in the male (Figures 53.1, 53.2).

Mites are permanent parasites in the epidermis, where eggs, larvae, nymphs, and adults all develop. The mites burrow by extra-oral digestion of the stratum corneum, and then consume cells of the stratum granulosum and stratum spinosum (Davis and Moon 1990a). After females mate, they lay 40–50 eggs in tunnels carved into the upper two-thirds of the epidermis and die approximately 30 days after maturity (Hill 1997). The eggs hatch in 3–5 days, larvae molt to nymphs, and then nymphs molt to adults, all within the tunnels. Mating occurs in the molting pockets or near the skin surface, after which the ovigerous females initiate new burrows. Reproduction can occur only on the host, and the entire cycle from egg to ovigerous female requires 10–25 days. Most studies in the pig suggest that most of the mite activity is confined to the inner surface of the ear (Walton 1967; Sheahan 1975; Davis and Moon 1990a, d). Although material from ear scrapings taken from an animal with an established infestation may contain very large numbers of mites, mites may be difficult to find on other parts of the body (Bogatko 1974; Cargill and Dobson 1979a). Using tissues dissected from mite-infested pigs, Magee (1974) demonstrated that mites burrow no deeper than the epidermis and make burrows parallel to the skin surface.

Epidemiology

Hyperkeratotic encrustations in the ears of multiparous sows are the main reservoir of mites within a herd. Boars, although less important with the increasing use of AI, can also be a source of infestation in breeding herds because they tend to be treated less often than sows. Although extensive hyperkeratotic lesions may occur on the body and hindlegs of adult animals (Martineau et al. 1984), only a small percentage of animals are affected in this manner. Hyperkeratotic lesions are
occasionally visible in the ears and on the body of growing pigs, especially where control measures for mange are poor. In most herds, mite populations are maintained within the ears of sows, and piglets become infested during suckling. Spread between sows and boars and between litters is mainly by direct contact between pigs, but according to Stegeman et al. (2000) the transmission of mites is slow. They estimated that the transmission of mange in housed pigs to be in the order of 0.06 new infestations for each infested pig per day. The newly fertilized adult female mite is thought to be the main means of spread and maximum opportunity for spread exists when groups of pigs huddle. Pig management practices such as group housing of sows, continuous-flow management systems for growing pigs, and current trends towards larger group sizes of growing pigs will facilitate the spread of mites.

Although environmental spread is much less important than direct contact between animals, pigs have become infested when placed in pens for as little as 24 hours immediately after infested pigs were removed from the pens (Smith 1986). Although mites have been kept alive for 3 weeks under optimum laboratory conditions (Soulsby 1968), survival of mites and eggs away from the host is limited. Their viability is reduced by desiccation and can be improved artificially by placing them in media such as mineral oil (Davis and Moon 1987). In our experience mites die within a few minutes in direct sunlight and after several hours in temperatures above 28°C. Even in colder climates mites do not appear to survive for more than 12 days in a piggery at temperatures of 7–18°C and relative humidity of 65–75% (Mikhalochkina 1975). In warmer climates, clinical evidence of sarcoptic mite hypersensitivity could not be demonstrated when noninfested pigs were exposed on repeated occasions to contaminated bedding vacated 3 days previously in either autumn or spring (Cargill and Dobson 1977). This was supported by laboratory experiments which demonstrated that mites did not survive longer than 96 hours at temperatures of less than 25°C, longer than 24 hours from 25–30°C, and less than 1 hour at temperatures above 30°C (Cargill and Dobson 1977). The prevalence and severity of sarcoptic mange have also been reported to increase in cooler months and decrease in warmer months (Davies et al. 1999b; Elbers et al. 1992; Davies et al. 1996b). Other species do not appear to play a role in porcine scabies (Magee 1974), and transmission from one herd to another usually occurs when pigs with subclinical infestations are moved.

The results of several studies indicate that only a small percentage of growing pigs will harbor significant numbers of mites on the internal surface of the pinna. In a study of 187 clinically healthy pigs (Bogatko 1974), mites could not be observed in skin scrapings from the head and neck region although 18% of skin scrapings from the luminal surface of the ears were positive. In other studies, the prevalence of mites in the ears was five times higher in groups of pigs with hypersensitive skin lesions compared to pigs without lesions (Hollanders and Vercruysse 1990). Davies et al. (1996b) found that the number of pigs in a group with positive skin scrapings was positively correlated with the level of popular dermatitis in the group at slaughter. The prevalence of positive skin scrapings ranged from 3–63%. In a group of pigs where 47% had signs of hypersensitive mange and 5% had hyperkeratotic mange, mites were found in 33% of hypersensitive pigs but in 81% of pigs with hyperkeratotic mange (Kambarage 1993). Although the level of pruritus in groups of pigs appears to be positively correlated with the number of pigs that are positive for mites, the presence of mites on individual pigs appears to be negatively correlated with the degree of pruritus and hypersensitivity (Cargill et al. 1996a). The level of immune hypersensitivity in individual pigs appears to affect both the host behavior and the development of encrusted lesions (Davis and Moon 1990b). It would appear that within a group of pigs there are two populations. A smaller population of pigs harbors significant numbers of mites, but do not develop a severe form of hypersensitive mange, and a larger population of pigs harbors few mites, but develops a marked hypersensitivity reaction (Davies et al. 1996a). In this latter population the number of mites declines over time as the level of hypersensitivity increases (Cargill and Dobson 1979a; Cargill and Wegiel 2000; Davis and Moon 1990a). Regular exposure to mites from penmates maintains the allergic reaction and clinical signs in the hypersensitive animals (Cargill and Wegiel 2000).

**Economic Importance**

The production effects of sarcoptic mange have been previously reviewed by Davies (1995). Based on our current understanding of the pathogenesis of mange, deaths are unlikely in the absence of concurrent disease (Davies 1995), although mortalities may occur in cases with severe hyperkeratotic lesions (Pullar 1941). Field studies indicate that improved mange control will improve milk production, reduce piglet mortalities due to overlying, and increase weaning weights (Hewett and Heard 1982; Schultz 1986; Martelli and Beghian 1990). However, other studies have failed to confirm these findings (Dalton and Ryan 1988; Arends et al. 1990) but have demonstrated that feed utilization efficiency improved following prefarrowing treatment of sows. The variations in results could have been due to differences in the degree of infestation in the herds (Davies 1995). Other economic effects include downgrading and trimming of carcasses at slaughter and damage to pens and fixtures caused by rubbing pigs.

The most significant economic effect of sarcoptic mange is reduced growth rate and feed efficiency in growing pigs (Cargill et al. 1997); the level of economic loss may be underestimated by producers who fail to ap-
preciate the severity of clinical signs. The effect of sarcoptic mange on growth rate has been investigated in a number of studies, by comparing experimentally infested pigs with noninfested controls (Sheahan 1974; Cargill and Dobson 1979b; Wooten et al. 1986; Davies 1995) or by comparing treated with untreated pigs (Sheahan and Kelly 1974; Hewett 1985; Alva-Valdes et al. 1986; Wooten-Saadi et al. 1987a; Arends et al. 1990; Martelli and Beghian 1990). Although some results are conflicting, where growth rate was measured over a period of 12 weeks or greater, or from less than 20 to more than 60 kg liveweight, the majority of studies demonstrate growth rate suppression of between 4.5% and 12%. In one study, the growth rate in infested pigs was decreased by 8% (Wooten-Saadi et al. 1987a), and in another study (Davies 1995) reductions in growth rate in infested pigs ranged from zero up to 5.7% and were associated with the severity of papular dermatitis among groups. In a recent report by Elbers et al. (2000), infested pigs grew significantly slower, with a reduced feed efficiency of 2%, when compared with the control. Smets et al. (1999) also showed that breeding sows needed 5% less feed after eradication of mange. In the same herd, returns to estrus were reduced by 4.5%, pigs born alive increased by 0.33 piglets per litter, and pigs weaned increased by 1.34 piglets per sow per year. In addition to effects on production performance, financial loss is also incurred in treatment costs (acaricides and labor), carcass downgrading, and due to the risk of chemical treatment residues in meat products.

Interaction between sarcoptic mange and other diseases has also been suggested (Yeoman 1984; Gaafar et al. 1986) but no objective reports are available.

Clinical Signs, Pathogenesis, and Lesions
Pruritus is the most consistent clinical sign of sarcoptic mange. Following infestation, intermittent body scratching may be observed in piglets born to an infested sow or in older pigs coming into contact with mites for the first time. True generalized pruritus occurs from 2–11 weeks after infestation (Sheahan 1974; Cargill and Dobson 1979a). This variation is similar to that reported in human scabies, where the period between exposure and the development of pruritus ranges from 9–10 days to 4–6 weeks (Sheahan and Kelly 1974). Following exposure, pigs go through several phases, which include a nonresponse phase, a delayed-type hypersensitivity phase, a delayed- and immediate-type hypersensitivity phase, and finally an immediate-type hypersensitivity phase (Davis and Moon 1990a). The development of pruritus and the intensity of rubbing will depend on the number of mites in the initial exposure and the level of ongoing exposure. When pigs were exposed to either low (100) or high doses (1000) of mites, the development of delayed-type hypersensitivity, but not the development of immediate-type hypersensitivity, was found to be dose dependent (Davis and Moon 1990a). Desensitization has not been documented but field evidence suggests that it occurs.

The pattern and chronological order of clinical events are similar in both natural and experimental infestations (Sheahan 1974, 1975; Cargill and Dobson 1979a; Cargill and Wegiel 2000). Pigs develop encrusted lesions that are rich in mites, especially on the luminal surface of the pinnae (Figure 53.3). These plaquelike lesions may coalesce to cover up to 70% of the surface of the pinnae but will regress with time as hypersensitivity develops. The epidermal changes and sequence of events have been well documented by Morsy et al. (1989), using electron microscopy. It has been suggested that papular lesions of human scabies may result from unsuccessful burrowing of immature mites that fail to survive to adulthood (Green 1989).

Focal erythematous skin papules associated with hypersensitivity occur in most animals as encrustations regress. The papules occur primarily on the rump, flank, and abdomen (Cargill and Dobson 1979a). Histologically, they contain large numbers of eosinophils, mast cells, and lymphocytes, but no evidence of mites. Immunoglobulin-secreting cells increase to a peak in the 2–5 weeks after infestation and then subside substantially after a few weeks (Morsy and Gaafar 1989). Repeated or multiple infestations result in only a small increase in immunoglobulin-secreting cells. The development of pruritus is signified by rubbing, which in severe cases results in the proliferation of connective tissue and keratinization, leading to hair loss, abrasions, and thickening of the skin, especially over the flanks of animals that rub frequently.

53.3. Photograph of the ear of a sow with encrustation caused by sarcoptic mange mites.
Lesions of hyperkeratotic mange are most common in mature animals. In growing animals they occur mainly in pigs that fail to develop the typical hypersensitivity response after infestation. The lesions, seen as thick asbestos-like scabs that are loosely attached to the skin, are very rich in mites and occur most frequently in the ears. The scabs may progressively cover the head, neck, and other parts of the body, although this is uncommon.

An interrelationship among immunity, inadequate nutrition, poor management, and hyperkeratotic sarcoptic mange has been noted. Hyperkeratotic mange has been described as a disease of poor management, and it is considered to be more common in poorly fed pigs. Studies have shown that low-protein diets and iron deficiency are associated with reduced hypersensitivity and a greater proportion of animals with hyperkeratotic mange (Sheahan 1974; Cargill and Dobson 1979a). The overall clinical picture is substantially influenced by the effectiveness of treatment and herd management. The influence of concurrent disease in the development of sarcoptic mange has not been elaborated.

**Diagnosis**

Sarcoptic mange is present in most herds unless they have been derived from specific pathogen free (SPF) sources or special measures have been taken to eradicate the parasite. Rubbing in growing pigs with small red papules on the body is the most obvious indication of sarcoptic mange. The small size of the parasite and its intracutaneous location, in combination with nonspecific signs (including pruritus), can make the diagnosis of scabies difficult to confirm (Smets and Vercruysse 2000). The majority of pigs in an infested herd may be subclinically infested and may not manifest obvious clinical signs of the disease (Kessler et al. 2003).

Diagnosis is confirmed by demonstrating the presence of mites within a herd, but the sensitivity of the methods available is low and the results depend on the location of the scrapings and the number of samples (Smets et al. 1999, Deckert et al. 2000). The best method is to use a flashlight to examine the luminal surface of the ears of breeding animals for encrusted lesions. About 1–2 cm² of the lesion can be removed and examined for mites. Mites can be observed by breaking the material onto a sheet of black paper and gently removing it after a few minutes, leaving mites adhering to the paper by the suckers on their feet. Mites can be observed directly or with a magnifying glass (Brakenridge 1958).

A more sensitive technique is to break down scabs with 10% potassium hydroxide and observe them under a low-power microscope. Large numbers of mites can be collected from encrusted ear lesions by vibrating material in a petri dish over low heat for 6–24 hours. This will cause mites to emerge in great numbers and adhere to the bottom of the dish (Sheahan and Hatch 1975).

The severity of sarcoptic mange in a herd can be assessed by quantifying the level of pruritus in various groups of pigs. This is achieved by calculating a rubbing index (RI) (Pointon et al. 1995; Cargill et al. 1997; Cargill 2001). A group of 25–30 pigs is observed for 15 minutes and the number of rubbing and scratching episodes is divided by the number of pigs in the group to give the RI. An RI of greater than 0.1 indicates the need to review mange control programs. Increased stocking density will reduce the RI, whereas wetting pigs will increase the RI. Although other, confounding factors need to be identified before using an RI with confidence to compare pigs on different farms, it does provide a simple means of assessing mange control programs on individual farms (Cargill et al. 1997).

Examination of carcasses at slaughter for papular lesions also provides a simple and objective method for assessing the prevalence and severity of sarcoptic mange in growing pigs. The causal association between sarcoptic mites and papular dermatitis was first suggested by Flesja and Ulvesaeter (1979) and was confirmed by Davies et al. (1991a). The original method for scoring lesions was described by Pointon et al. (1987, 1992), and categories were defined according to the severity of dermatitis (Pointon et al. 1999). Although the specificity of score 2 and 3 lesions is greater than 0.98, the specificity of score 1 lesions ranges from 0.7 to 0.9 (Davies et al. 1996b). In order to improve specificity, a modified scoring system has been recently introduced in Australia where minor spotting, which may be caused by insect bites and bedding, is ignored. Score 1 lesions include mild dermatitis about the shoulders, underline, and rump up to a more generalized distribution of mild lesions over the back and moderately dense lesions about the shoulders, underline, and rump. Score 2 lesions include a generalized distribution of moderately dense lesions over the back and dense lesions over shoulders, underline, and rump, and worse. Hollanders et al. (1995) have also suggested modifying the scoring system in a similar way to improve specificity. However, it is also important to validate and quantify the association between skin lesions and sarcoptic mange on a regional and geographic basis and to ensure repeatability among the observers recording lesions (Cargill et al. 1997). This will allow interpretation of the lesions in a herd regardless of the system used to record lesions.

Recently, several enzyme-linked immunosorbsent assays (ELISAs), which detect antibodies to *S. scabiei* in serum, have been used as diagnostic tools (Bornstein and Wallgren 1997; Bornstein et al. 2000; Deckert et al. 2000; Vercruysse and Smets 2000; Zalunardo et al. 2000). Although individual sensitivity varies from 29–64%, as a herd test, sensitivity approaches 95% (Deckert et al. 2000). Specificity of the antibodies in individual pigs ranges from 78–97% (Smets and Vercruysse 2000). Results of serological tests are affected by the stage of the disease process. Specific antibodies are not detectable until 5–7 weeks post-infestation or approximately 3–4
weeks following the onset of clinical signs of mange (Bornstein and Zakrisson 1993). Furthermore, following treatment and elimination of mites from heavily infested animals, detectable antibodies may persist for up to 9–12 months (Smets and Vercruysse 2000). Serological responses are also affected by the infective dose (Bornstein et al. 1994) and age of the pigs. Although antibodies can persist for at least 10 months in naturally infested sows following treatment (Bornstein et al. 1994), the half-life of specific antibody appears to be significantly shorter (less than 2 months) in younger pigs (Bornstein and Wallgren 1997). The ELISA has also been used to validate the efficacy of eradication programs (Jacobson et al. 1999; Cargill et al. 2004).

Differential diagnosis from other skin conditions is important. Conditions that can be confused with mange include parakeratosis, exudative dermatitis, niacin and biotin deficiencies, dermatomycosis, swinepox, sunburn, and photosensitization. The role of mosquitos and other insects in the differential diagnosis of papular dermatitis must also be considered. Occasionally in mange-free herds, ear scrapings may reveal the presence of mites and mite eggs but not clinical disease. That may occur when old straw is used for bedding.

Treatment, Control, and Eradication
Failure to control sarcoptic mange is due in part to the covert nature of the disease and to a failure to understand the epidemiology of mange. Commonly farmers regard rubbing, the main clinical sign of hypersensitive mange, as normal. Several strategies are open to producers to reduce the economic effects of mange.

Establishment and Maintenance of Mange-Free Pig Populations. The establishment and maintenance of mange-free herds and populations is facilitated by three important facts. First, piglets are born free of mites and become infested through contact with infested sows or older growing pigs. Second, the mites are highly host-specific and survive poorly away from the pig. Third, modern acaricides are very effective. Mange-free herds can be established with cesarean-derived pigs, by depopulation and repopulation from mange-free stock, by segregated rearing of treated pigs, and by eradication using avermectins and other products. Biosecurity measures, which focus on careful scrutiny of, and minimization of, sources of incoming stock are usually adequate to prevent introduction of the parasite. In a number of countries, major breeding-stock suppliers maintain mange-free herds, and large populations of pigs in integrated production systems have been kept free of the parasite for many years. This should be the goal of most farms.

The Dutch mange-free certification scheme is an excellent example of how to eradicate sarcoptic mange from a large number of farms (Rambags et al. 1998, 2000). The scheme relies on treatment programs designed for individual farms, and freedom is validated using slaughter checks and serology.

Treatment. The key to the successful eradication and control of mange is correct use of acaricides. In our experience, the majority of registered acaricides will keep mange under control, and even eradicate it, provided the correct dosage and treatment schedules are used. The acaricides available for treating sarcoptic mange have received considerable attention. Older remedies include crankcase oil, diesel oil, and lime sulfur (Dobson and Davies 1992). Oil mixtures are more effective than water-soluble products because oil assists in softening the hard scab; oil mixtures are still useful either as an alternative treatment or in conjunction with insecticides. The first insecticides used were mainly sprays of either organochlorinated hydrocarbons (lindane and toxaphene) or organophosphate compounds (malathion, trichlorfon, and diazinon) (Table 53.1). Because of their toxicity, chlorinated hydrocarbons have been deregistered in many countries and should no longer be used. Although the organophosphates are not as effective, they have shorter withholding periods than the chlorinated hydrocarbons and are safer. More recently developed acaricides include phosmet, used as a pour-on, amitraz used as a spray, and the avermectins (ivermectin, doramectin, and moxidectin), which are given as injections or, in the case of ivermectin, can also be given orally in the feed. The precise products available depend on the legislation of the country in question. Instructions on dilutions, withholding periods, dangers, and any precautions given by the manufacturer must be followed carefully.

Amitraz, used as a 0.1% spray (Johansson et al. 1980) and phosmet formulated as a 20% oily pour-on and applied at the rate of 1 mL/10 kg body weight (Hewett and Heard 1982) have been shown to be effective. In the case of phosmet, it is recommended that a small amount of the product be placed in the inner aspect of each ear.

The avermectins are broad-spectrum antiparasitcides effective against most internal parasites, as well as lice and sarcoptic mange mites, with varying levels of persistence (Arends et al. 1999; Cargill et al. 2000). Ivermectin can be given orally at 300–500 µg/kg (Lee et al. 1980; Alva-Valdes et al. 1984), and all the avermectins can be given by either subcutaneous (SC) or intramuscular (IM) injection at 300 µg/kg body weight (Courtney et al. 1983; Martineau et al. 1984; Dalton and Ryan 1988; Ohba et al. 1989; Satyavir and Chhabra 1992; Seaman et al. 1993; Hollanders et al. 1995; Cargill et al. 1996a; Logan et al. 1996; Yazwinski et al. 1997). They are more efficient because of their systemic action and ease of administration.

Eradication. Eradication of sarcoptic mange is possible if a sound program is developed. Keller et al. (1972) eradicated sarcoptic mange from six SPF herds, which be-
External Parasites 881

came infested accidentally. All pigs were treated three to four times with diazinon and lindane at 9- to 15-day intervals, and the environment was sprayed. Dobson and Cargill (1979) achieved eradication by washing sows in oil and using two treatments of trichlorfon at 7-day intervals prior to farrowing and isolating progeny from untreated pigs. Courtney et al. (1983), Henriksen et al. (1987), White and Ryan (1988), and Reddin (1997) eradicated sarcoptic mange from herds with a single SC injection of ivermectin, but Alva-Valdes et al. (1984) and Thomas et al. (1986) were unsuccessful with either a single oral treatment of ivermectin at 300 or 500 µg/kg or with three SC injections of 300 µg/kg within a month. Subsequently Ebbesen (1998) eradicated mange in three farrow to finish herds by medicating the breeding herd and all weaned pigs on the farm orally for 16 days with ivermectin and injecting piglets twice 14 days apart. Prefarrowing treatment of sows will prevent the transmission of mites to their progeny (Firkins et al. 2001) and mites have been eliminated from pigs using single or double administrations of an avermectin (Jacobson et al. 2000), as well as a single injection of doramectin (Jensen et al. 2002). More recently Cargill et al. (2004) described three eradication programs based on treatment of the breeding herd only, using either oral or injectable formulations of ivermectin. Sows were treated twice prefarrowing and progeny were reared in isolation. Boars were treated whenever sows were medicated. Eradication was validated using slaughter checks and serology, as described in the Dutch eradication program (Rambags et al. 1998, 2000).

Eradication programs involve several key points. If the whole herd is to be treated, all marketable pigs must be sold before each treatment to reduce the cost, and the

### Table 53.1. Guidelines for chemical treatment of external parasites of swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Concentration</th>
<th>Parasites Affected</th>
<th>Directions for use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amitraz</td>
<td>0.1% solution</td>
<td>Mites</td>
<td>Spray pigs and surroundings, repeat in 7 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciodrin</td>
<td>0.25%</td>
<td>Lice</td>
<td>Spray, repeat in 14 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coumaphos (Co-Ral)</td>
<td>0.06% solution</td>
<td>Lice, horn flies</td>
<td>Spray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diazanon</td>
<td>0.05% emulsion</td>
<td>Lice, mites</td>
<td>Treat wounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioxathion (Delnav)</td>
<td>0.15% solution</td>
<td>Lice, Ticks (Amblyomma, Dermacentor, Ixodes)</td>
<td>Apply to pigs; simultaneously apply 20g/m² to fresh bedding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doramectin</td>
<td>IM injection</td>
<td>Lice, mites, fleas</td>
<td>Spray or dip. Do not treat sows within 2 weeks of farrowing or while lactating. Do not repeat treatment within a 2-week period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ivermectin</td>
<td>SC injection</td>
<td>Lice, mites, fleas</td>
<td>300 µg/kg body weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orally in feed</td>
<td></td>
<td>300 µg/kg body weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lindane</td>
<td>0.06% emulsion</td>
<td>Lice, sarcoptic mites</td>
<td>Dip or spray. Do not use benzene hexachloride.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malathion</td>
<td>0.05% emulsion</td>
<td>Lice, ticks, mites</td>
<td>Treat all wounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moxidectin</td>
<td>6% dust</td>
<td>Fleas, lice</td>
<td>Spray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosmet</td>
<td>20% oily solution</td>
<td>Lice, mites, stable flies, fleas, houseflies</td>
<td>Dust head, neck, and back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polysulfide</td>
<td>2% solution</td>
<td>Sarcoptic mites</td>
<td>Spray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primiphos (Actelic 50 EC)</td>
<td>Powder</td>
<td>Control of fleas</td>
<td>Sprinkle through straw bedding (check withholding period).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabon</td>
<td>2% solution</td>
<td>Houseflies, stable flies, lice</td>
<td>Spray 4.5L/12–14g/m².</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ronnel (Korlan)</td>
<td>0.25% emulsion</td>
<td>Lice</td>
<td>Spray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roteneone</td>
<td>1% powder</td>
<td>Screwworm, blowflies</td>
<td>Apply to bedding 25g/m².</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxaphene</td>
<td>0.5% emulsion</td>
<td>Lice, ticks, mites</td>
<td>Treat wounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichlorfon (Neguvon)</td>
<td>0.125% emulsion</td>
<td>Lice, ticks, mites, houseflies, stable flies, mites</td>
<td>Spray.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Based on compilation by Bennet (1975) and Dobson and Davies (1992).

Note: It is important to follow the manufacturer’s recommendations and observe the withholding period specified for each chemical.
withholding period for the chemical must be observed. All pigs are treated twice at the recommended interval for the acaricide used. If only the sow herd is to be treated, two options are available. All sows and boars can be treated at the recommended interval, or individual sows can be treated prefarrowing and moved to clean pens or crates. If the latter approach is taken, boars should be treated every 3 months, and the progeny of treated sows must be isolated from the progeny of untreated sows. Eradication is made easier in growing pigs by changing from a continuous-flow management system to an all-in/all-out system, such as age-segregated-rearing or multiple-site production. However, changing the management system must be combined with effective prefarrowing treatment of sows. All of these approaches can be effective and are justified economically.

**Control.** Mange control involves identification of animals with chronic mange so that they can receive systematic and regular treatment to protect the younger animals in the herd. All control programs must target the breeding herd. Mercier et al. (2002) demonstrated that a single dose of ivermectin (300 µg ivermectin/kg live weight) administrated to the sows 8 days before farrowing was very effective in preventing the transmission of mites to piglets. Any animals with extensive hyperkeratotic lesions in the ears and over the body should be culled, and the remainder of the sows treated either simultaneously or alternatively in segregated groups prior to farrowing. The boars should be treated every 3–6 months to prevent the spread of mites at mating. Piglets born to sows that are free of mites and housed in clean pens will remain free of mites unless they are exposed to infested pigs after weaning (Cargill et al. 2004). If mange is present in both breeding and growing pigs, the whole herd must be treated along with all introductions into the herd. Contaminated bedding should be removed and the environment sprayed with insecticide. Humans who handle infested pigs can also transfer mites to uninfested animals on their clothing (Mock 1997). Therefore, it is important that workers work with only one herd (infested or uninfested) or change clothes and shower before moving onto work with another herd.

**DEMODECTIC MANGE**

In contrast to sarcoptic mange, demodectic mange is relatively unimportant in pigs. It is a condition identified occasionally at meat inspection and is seldom reported as a clinical entity in the field.

Distribution throughout the world and in pig populations is not well documented. It has been reported in many countries, including Australia, the United States, Kenya, New Zealand, and several European and Pacific island countries.

The agent of swine demodectic mange is the mite *Demodex phylloides* (Figure 53.4). This spindle-shaped mite measures about 0.25 mm in length and has four pairs of short, stumpy legs. It lives in the hair follicles, and for this reason the condition is often referred to as follicular mange. The life cycle of the mite is not well understood. The female lives in the hair follicle and lays spindle-shaped eggs, from which larvae with three pairs of legs hatch. The larval stage progresses through three nymphal instars to the adult (Soulsby 1968). Approximately 2 weeks are required to complete the life cycle, and the life span of the adult is 1–2 months.

Transmission of the mites is probably by direct contact of pigs, but it is difficult to produce artificial infestations. The parasites are able to survive for several days off the host in moist surroundings and up to 21 days under experimental conditions in pieces of skin kept moist and cool (Nutting 1976). However, the mites will live for only 1 or 2 days if removed from the host tissue and can be killed by desiccation in as little as 1 hour at 20°C on the skin surface.

Lesions observed are red pinpoint foci around the snout and eyelids, along the underside of the neck and abdomen, and inside the thighs (Walton 1967). Later, the lesions may take on a more scaly nodular appearance, particularly in the area of the mammary gland and flanks. These nodules resemble old pox lesions and when incised contain a thick, white, cheeselike material with innumerable mites (Harland et al. 1971). Mites
have been recovered in scrapings from the eyelids of swine that have shown no gross signs of infestation (Nutting et al. 1975) and most infestations are probably asymptomatic.

Diagnosis of the condition is confirmed by demonstration of *D. phylloides* in the lesions. Although there are no reports of successful treatment of pigs with any form of medication, either topical or systemic, both ivermectin and amitraz have been used successfully in dogs (Murthy et al. 1993). Severely affected animals should be culled from the herd.

**LICE**

Lice in pigs are readily observed and often blamed for damage due to mange because both conditions cause irritation and rubbing. Herds treated routinely to effectively control mange seldom carry significant louse populations, and many are probably free of lice. The sole species of lice that affects pigs (*Haematopinus suis*) belongs to the suborder Anoplura and has piercing and sucking mouthparts. It is grayish brown in color and has black markings. The females are about 6 mm long and the males slightly smaller (Figure 53.5). The pig louse is distributed almost worldwide. A survey of market pigs in Indiana in 1980–81 demonstrated lice in 22.5% of 821 herds surveyed (Wooten-Saadi et al. 1987b), but the parasite is likely to be much less prevalent in contemporary production systems.

The life cycle of *H. suis* was described by Florence (1921). The adult female lays 3–4 eggs (nits) each day, to a total of up to 90 over a period of about 25 days. Each egg is about 1–2 mm long and is attached by clear cement to the hair. Eggs hatch in 12–20 days. The nymphs develop through three instars, all of which feed on blood that is generally from a tender part of the body such as the inner surface of the ear. The third instar nymphs develop into adults. The whole cycle takes 23–30 days (Walton 1967) and epidemiology is uncomplicated. The pig louse is host-specific and cannot live for more than 2–3 days away from the host.

Lice are found on all parts of the body but particularly in the folds of the skin around the neck, jowl, and flanks, and on the inner surfaces of the legs. They often shelter inside the ears, where they are sometimes seen in "nests." The method of spread is by direct contact among pigs during huddling, although clean pigs placed in a yard just vacated by lousy pigs can become infested.

The economic importance of lice has not been critically evaluated to the same extent as sarcopic mange has. However, it is known that heavy infestations result in anemia in young pigs and may affect growth rate and efficiency of food conversion. One estimate of reduced growth was 50 g/day (Hiepe and Ribbeck 1975), though Davis and Williams (1986) failed to demonstrate any such effect. Lice have always been considered vectors of swinepox. It has also been reported that hides from pigs with lice are rendered unsuitable for manufacture into high-grade leather (Hiepe and Ribbeck 1975).

**Diagnosis**

Lice should always be considered in the differential diagnosis of pruritus in pigs. Infestation can be confirmed by identifying adult lice on the body and nits attached to the lower parts of hairs. Examination inside the ears of a number of breeding animals will assist in finding lice if they are present and will enable differential diagnosis from sarcoptic mange.

**Treatment and Control**

Treatment and control of lice are readily achieved because the parasites live on the skin surface and can survive for only a few days away from their host.

Therapeutic agents may be applied to the pig in the form of sprays, pour-ons, and dusting powders. Control can also be assisted by placing granules containing insecticides in the bedding. Pour-ons and powders have the advantage that pigs do not have to be sprayed in cold weather.

The older treatments of diesel oil and crankcase oil applied to the pig either directly or from rubbing posts are of limited value and have been largely superseded by insecticides of the organochloride and organophosphorus compounds, which are effective and easier to apply. Several of the organophosphorus compounds, such as rabon, ciodrin, ronnel, coumaphos, and methoxychlor,
are suitable for lice control but are less commonly registered for treatment of sarcoptic mange (refer to Table S3.1). In addition, avermectins have been shown to be effective in controlling lice (Barth and Brokken 1980).

Control and eradication strategies listed for sarcoptic mange apply equally to the treatment of lice. These include special attention to the ears, treatment of the boars, multiple treatment of sows prior to farrowing, segregation of clean and untreated animals if all the herd is not treated at one time, and treatment of all introduced animals. Eradication of lice by thorough treatment of the whole herd is an achievable goal.

FLEAS

Fleas are not host-specific and will parasitize any convenient mammal or bird to obtain a blood meal. The two fleas most commonly associated with swine are *Pulex irritans*, the human flea, and the stickfast flea *Echidnophaga gallinacea*. *Ctenocephalides canis*, the dog flea and *C. felis*, the cat flea, also occasionally infest young swine. *Tunga penetrans*, the chigger flea, has been associated with pigs in Africa.

The distribution of fleas in nature is wide, but they are seldom a serious problem in the well-managed pigery. These wingless insects are 2–4 mm in length, have a thick, brown chitinous exoskeleton, and have powerful legs.

Life cycles are similar for all flea species. The female lays eggs about 0.5 mm long, which drop off the host into the animal bedding. Larvae hatch in 2–16 days and feed on dry blood, feces, and other organic material. With moderate temperature and high humidity, the larvae mature in 1–2 weeks and pass through a pupal stage. The whole life cycle takes as little as 18 days but may take in excess of 1 year depending on environmental conditions (Soulsby 1968).

Only the adult flea is parasitic in that it requires periodic blood meals. The stickfast flea differs from the others, spending most of its adult life on a host animal.

Fleas can survive for many months in the absence of a host. Survival is dependent on whether they are fed and the degree of moisture in the environment. Under optimal conditions the human flea can live for over 2 years.

Although fleas appear to be relatively unimportant in pig production, severe infestations have been reported recently in outdoor pig herds in New Zealand (Dobinson 2000). Clinical signs recorded were bright red discoloration of the skin, fleabite marks over the mammary glands, edema of the prepuce in boars, and sows spending more time in wallows. Because infestations occurred primarily over summer, it was difficult to determine whether production losses were flea- or weather-related. An allergic dermatitis similar to that described in dogs has also been described in pigs, and its signs resemble those seen in the allergic form of sarcoptic mange (Nesbitt and Schmitz 1978).

*T. penetrans* infestation has been reported as being associated with agalactia in sows in the Republic of Zaire (Verhulst 1976). Clinical examination showed that the oviigerous females (chiggers) were localized in the teats and obstructed the ducts. This produced agalactia and death of piglets. An outbreak of *T. penetrans* was also reported in Tanzania in which adult pigs were affected around the feet, snout, and scrotum (Cooper 1967).

Diagnosis and Treatment

Diagnosis of flea infestation is not easy, because adult fleas may leave the host, and larvae and eggs are difficult to find. The bites are not readily differentiated from those of mosquitoes, lice, and mites, so the presence of those other parasites should be carefully checked before a diagnosis is made. Infestation of humans during contact with pigs is also a good diagnostic aid (Dobinson 2000).

The range of chemicals used to treat and control fleas include many of the products listed for other external parasites. According to Dobinson (2000), amitraz, coumaphos, malathion, doramectin, and ivermectin have all been used successfully to treat pigs and their bedding. However, although pigs are easily treated, ridding the environment of fleas is more difficult. Control is based on the location and treatment of the flea-breeding area, but it is important to use chemicals with published withholding periods so that pigs can be held in a chemical-free environment for the appropriate period before slaughter. Although litter, bedding, dirt, and manure should be removed and burned, this is not always practical until the pigs are moved. Environmental control has been achieved with primiphos and chlorpyrifos (Dobinson 2000) or 2.5% malathion.

MOSQUITOES

Mosquitoes, although considered primarily pests of humans, also attack livestock, causing discomfort and irritation. In some cases the affected carcasses of pigs must be skinned at slaughter.

*Aedes* spp. have been observed attacking swine in large numbers in Florida (Bennett 1975; Becker and Gross 1987). In South Australia the same species has bred in brackish pools of seawater left by high tides and has caused troubles in nearby piggeries (Dobson 1973). Lesions appeared on several or all the pigs within a pen in the form of raised edematous weals on the legs and abdomen. These tended to disappear spontaneously within 1–2 days but made pigs unacceptable for marketing at the time. Control was achieved by regular spraying with diazinon in the late evening. Mosquito screening and insect repellents are also helpful in minimizing the problem. Where possible, the breeding ground of the mosquitoes should be identified. The larvae can be destroyed by either draining water reservoirs or covering the surface with oil. A wide range of insecticides has been used successfully in breeding grounds.
Mosquitoes have a seasonal distribution, with populations disappearing in most temperate regions during winter. Mosquitoes are important vectors in the transmission of Japanese encephalitis virus, especially in rice-growing areas (Wada and Smith 1988). Vaccination has proved unsuccessful, and pigs must be separated from rice fields to prevent them from acting as amplifier hosts. Mosquitoes can also mechanically transmit porcine reproductive and reproductive syndrome virus (PRRSV), but do not serve as a biological vector of the virus (Otake et al. 2003a, 2002). The virus can also reside in the intestinal tract of the mosquito for up to 6 hours, but does not survive on the exterior surface of the insect. Mosquitoes also transmit Mycoplasma haemosuis between pigs (Prullage et al. 1993).

**FLIES**

Flies are important in pig production for several reasons, and they tend to be used as a measure of hygiene by local health authorities. Some flies annoy animals by their vicious bite, and others act only as a vehicle for transmission of infectious disease. Some species are associated with myiasis, that is, invasion of the tissues of animals by fly larvae.

The common housefly (Musca domestica) is ubiquitous and most active in summer. It prefers to breed either in the feces of animals or in decaying organic matter. The housefly is well known for its ability to transfer pathogenic bacteria mechanically via its hairy feet and legs or by regurgitation of fluid from its crop. It can also act as the intermediate host of several worm parasites of domestic animals, and it may act as a disseminator of the eggs of many others (Soulsby 1968). It has been demonstrated experimentally that it is capable of spreading hog cholera (HC) virus (Morgan and Miller 1976) and Streptococcus suis (Enright et al. 1987) from infected to susceptible pigs.

The stable fly (Stomoxys calcitrans) is about the size of the housefly, but it prefers to breed in moist, decaying vegetable matter such as straw and hay. Flies are most abundant in summer and prefer fairly strong light rather than dark stables or houses. Both male and female are bloodsuckers of humans and animals. When present in large numbers, the stable fly may become a source of annoyance, resulting in weight loss. However, Campbell et al. (1984) were not able to demonstrate reduced gain or feed conversion experimentally. The stable fly can also act as a vector of infectious organisms, including HC and Mycoplasma haemosuis (Prullage et al. 1993).

Horseflies of the Tabanidae family are large, robust flies with clear, powerful wings. The common breeding place is on the leaves of plants in the vicinity of water. Horseflies are active in summer, particularly on hot, sultry days. They attack animals, including pigs, by biting and feeding on blood (Tidwell et al. 1972). They are capable of transmitting infectious diseases, including HC (Tidwell et al. 1972).

Blackflies of the family Simuliidae, also known as buffalo gnats, occur in all parts of the world and can be troublesome in warm countries. They breed in streams below the surface of running water. They may cause inappetence and attack the legs, abdomen, head, and ears, resulting in vesicles and papules. Considerable numbers of stock have been killed in European countries. Grafner et al. (1976) reported the death of 3 sows and severe illness in another 27, together with reduced growth rate, in pigs in Germany.

Screwworm flies of the family Calliphoridae cause myiasis in humans and animals. Cochliomyia hominovora is present in Latin America, and Chrysomya bezziana, the Old World screwworm fly, occurs in Africa and southern Asia. The adult fly is 10–15 mm long and has a metallic green sheen to its thorax and abdomen. It has three longitudinal stripes on the thorax. It breeds in wounds on live animals, and each female lays 150–500 eggs at the edge of a wound. Larvae hatch in 10–12 hours and mature in 3–6 days, after which they leave the host to pupate in the ground. The pupal period lasts from 3 days to several weeks, depending on prevailing temperatures. Hibernation occurs most commonly in the pupal stage (Soulsby 1968).

Most cases of myiasis occur in rainy weather. Maggots penetrate the wound tissue, which they liquefy and thus extend the lesion. There is a foul-smelling exudate and deaths can occur. Loss can be prevented if surgical wounds are avoided during the fly season and prompt attention is given to lacerations and injuries. Wounds can be protected from myiasis by the application of a prophylactic wound dressing. Smear 62 (containing diphenylamine, benzol, turkey red oil, and lampblack) or, alternatively, EQ335 (containing 3% lindane and 35% pine oil) will protect wounds for at least 3 days (Bennett 1975). After wounds are invaded by larvae, they may be effectively treated with pressurized aerosols containing coumaphos, lindane, or rotenone (refer to Table 53.1). The larvae in wounds can be killed if penetration is not too deep.

Blowflies of the subfamily Calliphorinae differ from screwworm flies in that they deposit their eggs in necrotic wounds. Secondary blowflies deposit their eggs only on necrotic wounds that have been previously struck by either primary blowflies or screwworm flies. The damage caused by blowflies is similar to but less severe than that caused by screwworms. Treatment and prevention are similar.

Houseflies can also mechanically transmit PRRSV, but as with mosquitoes, they do not serve as biological vectors of the virus. According to Otake et al. (2004, 2003b), the virus also resides in the intestinal tract of the housefly for up to 12 hours, but not on the exterior surface of the fly.

**Control**

Fly control in all piggeries must be a continuing exercise in summer months. The aim is to prevent flies from...
breeding and to destroy adult flies. Breeding of flies can be prevented by regular removal of dung. At temperatures of 25°C or more, the life cycle of the housefly takes only 15 days; hence frequent cleaning is important. Manure should be removed at least weekly and spread thinly on soil to kill eggs and larvae by desiccation. Dung should be disposed of in the center of effluent ponds rather than at the edge, where flies can breed. A number of methods can be used to destroy flies within pig sheds. Insecticides are effective in the form of sprays, baits, or vapors strips (refer to Table 53.1). Some insecticides such as trichlorfon, given to pigs as a medication for internal parasites, are effective in destroying both the larvae and adult flies that settle on dung from treated pigs.

Sprays are applied to walls, ceilings, and pen partitions within sheds. With some insecticides, stock and feed may need to be removed first. Space or aerosol sprays (foggers) used twice daily with knockdown insecticides are also effective. Baits applied to clean concrete surfaces and pen divisions are effective and usually contain insecticides such as ronnel, diazinon, malathion, trichlorfon, and dichlorvos.

Fly electrocutors offer an automatic nonchemical method of controlling flies. Screens on openings help limit the number of flies entering buildings but can be impractical. Electric-light traps can be used as an auxiliary in fly control but are considered more efficient for midges rather than flies (Schmidt 1987).

TICKS

Ticks infest many species of mammals and birds and are generally not host-specific. Compared with grazing species, in which ticks and tick-borne diseases are of major economic importance, pigs are not commonly parasitized by ticks, and ticks essentially do not occur on pigs raised in confinement. The ticks of potential importance to pigs are of the suborder Ixodoidia, which includes two large families, the Ixodidae (or hard tick) and the Argasidae (or soft tick).

The diagnosis of tick infestation is based on the known location of ticks and the access of pigs to these areas. Ticks are readily seen by gross visual examination. Although found on any part of the body, they are more often seen around the ears, neck, and flanks. The tick differs from other arthropod parasites in that it is attached to its host. The size and appearance vary according to the degree of blood engorgement. A careful check should be made in the ear for the Otobius ear tick.

In the United States the following ticks have been reported as occurring on swine:

**Ixodidae**
- *Dermacentor andersoni* (Rocky Mountain spotted fever tick)
- *D. variabilis* (American dog tick or wood tick)
- *D. nitens* (tropical horse tick)
- *Amblyomma maculatum* (Gulf Coast tick)
- *Ixodes scapularis* (black-legged tick or shoulder tick)

**Argasidae**
- *Ornithodoros turicata* (relapsing fever tick)
- *Otobius megnini* (spinose ear tick)

In Australia, *I. holocyclus*, the dog paralysis tick, has been known to cause death in suckling pigs (Seddon 1968). In general, species of ticks are adapted to specific ranges of temperature and humidity, and the reader should seek local information to assist in identifying specific species.

Life cycles of ticks are characterized by the stages of egg, larva (seed tick), nymph, and adult. The six-legged seed tick, on hatching from the egg, climbs onto grass or shrubs, and waits until a suitable host passes. It attaches itself to the host and engorges with lymph and blood. It then molts and an eight-legged nymph emerges. This feeds on the host and molts to become an adult tick. After maturing, the female drops off the host, lays her eggs, and dies.

The main economic importance of ticks for all species is their ability to act as vectors in disease transmission. Pathogens transmitted by ticks include protozoa, rickettsias, and viruses. African swine fever virus, when introduced experimentally to the tick *Ornithodoros moubata*, could be recovered 50 weeks after infection (Greig 1972). Therefore, ticks could be of significance in the spread of viral diseases from wild pigs to domestic animals.

**Diagnosis**

The diagnosis of tick infestation is based on the known location of ticks and the access of pigs to these areas. Ticks are readily seen by gross visual examination. Although found on any part of the body, they are more often seen around the ears, neck, and flanks. The tick differs from other arthropod parasites in that it is attached to its host. The size and appearance vary according to the degree of blood engorgement. A careful check should be made in the ear for the *Otobius* ear tick.

**Treatment and Control**

The treatment and control of ticks in pigs is seldom problems. If only a few ticks are present, these can be removed manually and the pigs confined away from infested pasture. Many insecticides are effective as a spray or dip. Toxaphene as a 0.5% spray is recommended because it will protect against reinfection for 2 weeks or longer (McIntosh and McDuffie 1956). Other effective acaricides include coumaphos, dioxathion, and malathion (refer to Table 53.1). A 5% coumaphos dust has been used effectively in the ears to control the spinose ear tick.

**REFERENCES**


This chapter focuses on ulceration of the pars oesophagea, the non-glandular region of the pig’s stomach surrounding the esophageal entrance. This syndrome is distinct from ulceration of the fundic and pyloric regions. Often erosions in the glandular area of the stomach are associated with systemic diseases such as salmonellosis, erysipelas, or hog cholera infection. On the whole, ulceration of the pars oesophagea is the far more common and important of the two conditions and can lead to sudden death from acute intragastric hemorrhage or to chronic ill thrift. In addition to “gastric ulceration,” various terms have been used to describe this condition, including “esophagogastric ulceration” (Driesen et al. 1987), “gastroesophageal ulceration” (Deen 1993), “proventricular ulcer” (Ito et al. 1974), and “ulcerative gastric hemorrhage” (Hannan and Nyhan 1962).

The first description of pars oesophageal ulceration was made in 1897 (McIntosh 1897), but little attention was paid to this condition until modern husbandry practices were adopted. Epizootic outbreaks of pars oesophageal ulceration began to occur in North America and Europe in the late 1950s (Thoonen and Hoorens 1961; Curtin et al. 1963; Griffing 1963; Muggenburg et al. 1964) concurrent with new developments in housing and feeding. Wherever in the world the introduction of confinement rearing and the use of grain-based processed rations have occurred, the problem of gastric ulcers has arisen. This syndrome is of economic significance, and its relative importance is increasing despite a growing knowledge of the risk factors and therapeutic procedures.

**ETIOLOGY**

The exact cause or causes of gastric ulceration is not completely understood, but many of the risk factors are well known. A list of some of the factors that have been reported to be associated with gastric ulceration in pigs are presented in Table 54.1.

There is considerable interaction between many of these factors, particularly in their effect on the fluidity of the stomach content, the speed of passage of ingesta through the stomach, and whether or not the stomach contains feed. Generally, factors that increase the firmness of the stomach content help prevent gastric lesions and factors that cause increased fluidity of the contents increases the risk of ulcers (Nielsen and Ingvartsen 2000).

Fine particle size of feed has been shown to increase the prevalence of gastric lesions (Mahan et al. 1966; Reimann et al. 1968; Maxwell et al. 1970, 1972; Hedde et al. 1985; Potkins and Lawrence 1989a; Wondra et al. 1995a; Ayles et al. 1996a). In addition, pelleting of feed may also increase the likelihood of ulcers developing (Griffing 1963; Chamberlain et al. 1967; Potkins and Lawrence 1989b). The prevalence and severity of ulcers vary with the cereal component of the diet. Generally, oats and barley appear to have a sparing effect (Reese et al. 1966) and corn and wheat tend to be more ulcerogenic (Smith and Edwards 1996).

The method by which the grain is processed affects the prevalence of ulcers. Grain that is ground using a hammer mill tends to be more ulcerogenic than if a roller mill is used (Wondra et al. 1995b; Nielsen and Ingvartsen 2000). Feed particle size is affected by grain component, milling procedure, and processing. Grains such as wheat are more likely to shatter during grinding and result in finer particle size compared to oats or barley. If grain is processed using a roller mill, there is less chance of the grain kernel shattering and creating “fines.”

In addition, the pelleting process causes a further decrease in particle size. Neilsen and Ingvartsen (2000) showed that, in general, barley and rolling prevented stomach lesions while wheat grinding and pelleting increased the prevalence and severity of ulcers. The overall effect of a feed with very fine particle size is that the stomach content is very fluid and the emptying time is relatively rapid (Regina et al. 1999), and as a result, the pH gradient between the neutral proximal part of the stomach and the acidic distal region is lost.
Table 54.1. Risk factors associated with ulceration of the pars oesophagea in swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrition</th>
<th>Housing/Management</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feed particle size</td>
<td>Confinement rearing</td>
<td>Season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of grain</td>
<td>Herd size</td>
<td>Concurrent disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milling</td>
<td>Mixing pigs</td>
<td>Parturition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelleting</td>
<td>Overcrowding</td>
<td>Heredity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grinding vs. rolling</td>
<td>Holding and transport</td>
<td>Somatotropin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat processing</td>
<td>Feeding regimen</td>
<td>Histamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of fiber</td>
<td></td>
<td>Helicobacter infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E/Se deficiency</td>
<td></td>
<td>Porcine circovirus type II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rancid fat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withdrawal of feed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The method of feeding may be as important as feed processing and composition. A major risk factor of ulcer development is an interruption of feed intake (Henry 1996). Fasting of pigs has been a consistent method of experimentally producing gastric lesions (Pocock et al. 1968; Lawrence et al. 1998). Various workers have noted dramatic increases in ulcer severity and prevalence at slaughter in pigs examined after a 24-hour holdover period compared to pigs from the same herds slaughtered on the day of arrival at the abattoir (Chamberlain et al. 1967; Straw et al. 1992; Davies et al. 1994; Lawrence et al. 1998). There is at least one study that documented no association between a 24-hour feed withdrawal and an increased prevalence or severity of ulcers (Eisemann et al. 2002). Presumably, there is an interaction between factors affecting stomach emptying such as feed particle size and the effect of feed withdrawal that can explain the differences in findings between these studies.

Feeding regimen can influence ulcer development, although much of the work in this area is contradictory. For instance, Blackshaw et al. (1980) found fewer ulcer lesions in pigs fed twice daily than in pigs fed ad libitum, whereas Robert et al. (1991) found a similar prevalence of ulcers in pigs fed ad libitum and pigs fed twice daily but noted that ulcers were less severe in ad libitum–fed pigs. One can speculate that stability in the feeding regimen is critical and ultimately more important than whether pigs are routinely fed once a day, twice a day, or ad libitum.

Interruption of normal feed intake commonly occurs on almost all farms because of mechanical problems or human error. Periods of transition in feeding patterns such as when gilts are transferred to the breeding herd from a finishing barn or when sows approach the time of parturition, should be viewed as high risk for ulcerogenic events (Henry 1996). Hot weather resulting in dramatic reduction in feed intake is associated with gastric ulcer outbreaks (Deen 1993).

It is likely that factors such as acute infectious disease and season influence ulcer development in a similar manner to management practices that interrupt feed intake. Acute respiratory disease is associated with an increased likelihood of gastric ulceration (Dionissopoulos et al. 2001). In addition to respiratory disease causing inappetence, it is possible that increased levels of histamine as a result of infection could play a role, in that histamine is a powerful stimulant of gastric acid secretion. Injection of histamine has been shown to experimentally produce ulceration of the pars oesophagea (Muggenburg et al. 1966; Huber and Wallin 1965; Hedde et al. 1985). Experimental infection of gnotobiotic pigs with various viral pathogens, including porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus, does not result in gastric ulceration; however, experimental infection of porcine circovirus type II has caused gastric lesions (Harms et al. 2001).

There has been considerable interest in finding an infectious cause of porcine gastric ulcers similar to the situation in humans. Helicobacter-like organisms have been identified in the glandular region of the stomach (Mendes et al. 1990) and appear to be widespread in the pig population (Grasso et al. 1996; Magras et al. 1999; Melnichouk et al. 1999). Whereas some workers have observed a correlation between the presence of these bacteria and the prevalence and severity of gastric ulcers (Barbosa et al. 1995; Queiroz et al. 1996), other researchers have not (Magras et al. 1999; Melnichouk et al. 1999).

Inoculations of Helicobacter-like organisms from pigs and Helicobacter pylori from humans have both been used to infect gnotobiotic pigs (Krakowka et al. 1995). These organisms colonize and cause irritation and lesions in the glandular region, but have not been shown to cause ulceration of the pars oesophagea. More work is necessary to clearly understand what significance these organisms have in the pig, but it is unlikely Helicobacter play such a significant role in ulceration of the para oesophagea of the pig compared to their importance in human peptic ulcer disease. It should be noted that the stomach ulcer problem in pigs is more like the human condition “oesophageal-gastric reflux disease” than peptic ulcer disease.

Before H. pylori became recognized as the main cause of gastric ulceration in humans, the accepted theory was that ulcers were caused by excessive acid secretion stimulated by stress. This theory has been examined exten-
sively in pigs. The onset of the first cases of porcine gastric ulcers occurred at the time of confinement rearing and increased intensification were first adopted. Certain studies have shown that the prevalence increases as herd size increases (Christensen and Cullinane 1990) and as stocking density increases (Pickett et al. 1969). However, there are other studies contradicting the belief that overcrowding is a risk factor (Driesen et al. 1987; Eisemann and Argenzio 1999a). It is likely that factors such as available feeder space and environmental temperature interact with stocking density to cause these contradictory results. Research clearly demonstrates that ulceration of the pars oesophagea is not mediated by glucocorticoids (Zamora et al. 1980). Chronic elevation of corticosteroids in response to stressful conditions has been shown under controlled trials to not result in an increase in ulcer prevalence or severity (Jensen et al. 1996).

Genetic susceptibility may play a role in ulcer development. Researchers have reported a link between fast growth rate and/or low backfat and a high prevalence of gastric ulcers (Berruecos and Robinson 1972; Grondalen and Vangren 1974). It has also been reported that injection of swine with porcine somatotropin causes an increase in prevalence and severity of ulcers (Smith and Kasson 1991).

In summary, many of the factors associated with an increased risk of ulcer development are closely tied to economic competitiveness such as the use of finely ground feed and fast-growing, lean genetics. Therefore, steps to reduce the prevalence of gastric ulcers need to be carefully balanced between economic considerations and welfare concerns.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Gastric ulceration is common and widespread. Table 54.2 presents findings of various studies worldwide. Abattoir surveys demonstrate that the prevalence of stomach lesions, including parakeratosis, erosions, and ulcers, often approaches 90% when pigs are managed using modern confinement husbandry practices (Driesen et al. 1987). There is great herd-to-herd variation in prevalence and severity. Ulceration of the pars oesophagea can affect any age of pig but the highest rate of ulceration occurs in pigs 3–6 months of age. Mortality due to gastric ulceration among grower-finisher pigs has been reported to be about 1–2% on some farms, with much higher levels occurring sporadically (Deen 1993; Melnichouk 2002). Sows at the time of parturition are also a relatively high risk group. Examination of culled sows revealed 60% with stomach lesions and 10–15% with ulcerations (Hessing et al. 1992; O’Sullivan et al. 1996). Frequently, sow stomachs have extensive scar tissue, indicating previous severe ulcerative episodes. Gastric ulceration has been reported as a common cause of sow mortality (Sanford et al. 1994; Chagnon et al. 1991).

PATHOGENESIS

The pars oesophagea has a cornified stratified squamous epithelium and does not secrete protective mucus. It is generally assumed that chronic insult of this sensitive tissue results in hyperplasia of epithelial cells and thickening from layers of 10–20 cells to layers of 60–80 cells or more and keratinization (Driesen et al. 1987; Roels et al. 1997). Rapid cell development results in the production of immature cells, and the thickened layers of cells tend to outgrow their nutrient supply. As a consequence, the tight junctions between epithelial cells break down, allowing digestive juices access to underlying tissues. Initially, superficial layers of epithelium are lost, but if the insult continues, deeper erosions develop and affect the lamina propria and, eventually, the muscularis mucosa and submucosa. Erosion and damage can spread rapidly, destroying the entire pars oesophageal region. Ulceration ends abruptly at the junction of the glandular portion and the pars oesophagea,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Pigs Examined</th>
<th>% with Lesions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jensen and Frederick 1939</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtin et al. 1963</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Griffin 1963</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>610</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pocock 1966</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bivin et al. 1974</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>3,113</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ito et al. 1974</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kowács 1974</td>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>13,400</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Szemerédi and Solá 1979</td>
<td>Cuba</td>
<td>2,457</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driesen et al. 1987</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christensen and Cullinane 1990</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>2,661</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straw et al. 1992</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elbers et al. 1995a</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>274</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elbers et al. 1995a</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guise et al. 1997</td>
<td>UK</td>
<td>1,242</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robertson et al. 2002</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>15,741</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
resulting in a thick inflammatory ridge of edematous tissue separating normal and damaged areas.

There is still uncertainty as to the exact mechanism of insult that causes injury to the relatively unprotected pars oesophagea. In all likelihood there are several mechanisms that can cause tissue damage and various factors that might weaken the defensive barrier protecting the stratified squamous mucosa.

Because gastric ulceration is commonly associated with conditions that cause greater fluidity of the contents of the stomach and therefore a breakdown of the pH gradient between the distal and proximal portions, it is reasonable to assume that the increased acidity of the proximal stomach is a key factor in causing tissue damage. However, the stratified squamous mucosa of the pars oesophagea is relatively resistant to injury from HCl alone (Argenzio and Eisemann 1996). Studies have shown that pigs fed finely ground diets and/or are fasted tended to have high concentrations of bile acids in the proximal stomach (Lang et al. 1998). In vitro studies of pig tissue have shown that a combination of low pH and a conjugated bile salt concentration of \( \geq 1 \text{ mmol/l} \) can induce extensive tissue damage (Lang et al. 1998). Similarly, short chain fatty acids produced at relatively high concentrations by bacteria in the proximal portion of the stomach may be implicated in causing gastric ulceration, in that these acids can diffuse rapidly across tissue barriers as the luminal pH is reduced (Argenzio and Eisemann 1996).

It has been hypothesized that as HCl concentrations are increased, more of the short chain fatty acids would become undissociated, augmenting their rate of absorption. Lesions in the pars oesophagea were produced experimentally by feeding a carbohydrate-enriched diet to gnotobiotic pigs and inoculating the pigs with two different fermentative commensal bacteria, \textit{Lactobacillus sp} and \textit{Bacillus sp} (Krakowka et al. 1998). The importance of short chain fatty acids in causing gastric ulcers under farm conditions is uncertain. Generally, diets associated with producing the highest level of short chain fatty acids are the coarse-ground rations and nonulcerogenic finely ground diets (Argenzio 1999).

It is possible that in addition to the production of short chain fatty acids and the breakdown of the pH gradient caused by increased fluidity of the stomach contents and thus the combination of bile and HCl contacting the pars oesophagea, there may be other factors that interact with these agents. One obvious possibility is the hypersecretion of HCl which might occur with histamine release (Muggenburg et al. 1966) or by other mechanisms. It has been suggested that \textit{Helicobacter sp} may play a role in ulcer development by somehow inducing excess acid secretion (Yeomans and Kolt 1996). However, hyperacid secretion has not been observed in trials using experimental \textit{Helicobacter sp} infection (Krakowka et al. 1995 1998).

Diet may influence the defensive mechanisms of the pars oesophagea. Gastric ulcers have been observed in association with deficiencies of vitamin E or selenium (Van Vleet et al. 1970) presumably due to increased generation of reactive oxygen metabolites. In a recent study, focusing on the antioxidant defense system in stratified squamous mucosa, pigs fed a finely ground diet were found to produce higher levels of peroxides than pigs fed a coarse ration (Eisemann and Argenzio 1999a, b). These authors speculate that the generation of prooxidants and the antioxidant defense system may play a role in the predilection of gastric ulcers.

**CLINICAL SIGNS**

Ulceration occurs rapidly and the progression from normal pars oesophagea to complete ulceration may take less than 24 hours. Clinical signs tend to reflect the degree of blood loss associated with the gastric lesion. Frequently, a pig that had appeared to be healthy only a few hours earlier is found dead and the carcass is extremely pale. If blood loss occurs more slowly, signs associated with anemia will be apparent, such as palleness, lethargy, weakness, increased respiratory rate, and anorexia. In addition, black tarry feces may be noted, and some pigs show signs of abdominal pain by grinding their teeth and arching their backs. Vomiting may occur. Rectal temperatures of affected pigs are often below normal.

Sporadic outbreaks of gastric ulceration tend to occur among grower-finisher pigs, and frequently when one pig has suddenly died, careful observation will reveal others in the group that are showing signs of anemia. When ulceration occurs without significant blood loss, animals will generally appear to be in normal health. Evidence that subclinical ulceration reduces growth rate is inconsistent. Various researchers have attempted to correlate severity of stomach lesions at slaughter with growth performance during the grower-finisher phase. Certain studies have found no relationship (Pocock et al. 1969; Backstrom et al. 1981), whereas Elbers et al. (1995a) observed a 50–75 g per day decrease in growth rate for pigs with ulcers versus pigs with normal stomachs. This last result is in agreement with findings of a trial that followed pigs using endoscopic examination to measure gastric lesions (Ayles et al. 1996b).

Ulcers can occur rapidly and heal quickly, making it difficult to relate lesions at slaughter with performance during the grower-finisher stage. Evidence of past ulceration can sometimes be seen as cicatrization and a reduction in size of the pars oesophagea. In extreme cases, the pars oesophagea is entirely destroyed, and stenosis of the esophagus at its entry to the stomach occurs. Pigs afflicted with stenosis are observed to vomit shortly after eating but are hungry and therefore will immediately resume eating. These pigs tend to grow more slowly than penmates despite maintaining good appetites.
LESIONS

Lesions associated with ulceration of the pars oesophagea rarely extend into the contiguous esophagus or the glandular region of the stomach. Ulcerations and erosions of the pars oesophagea may involve only a small portion or all of the gastric squamous mucosa. The most common site for ulceration is at the junction of the pars oesophagea and the cardiac mucosa (Penny and Hill 1973). The normal epithelium of the pars oesophagea is smooth, white, and glistening and is easily distinguished from the surrounding glandular mucosa. It is believed that lesions usually progress from parakeratosis that causes a thickened, rough appearance to fissuring and peeling that result in erosion and eventually ulceration.

Frequently, the pars oesophagea is yellowish as a result of bile staining, particularly when the surface is rough and thickened due to parakeratosis. This type of corrugated surface may flake and peel off readily. When ulceration involves the entire pars oesophagea, the lesion has a punched-out or crater-like appearance with elevated ridges. The floor of the ulcer may be so smooth that it is misinterpreted as normal (Barker et al. 1993). The relationship between gross and microscopic lesions has been investigated by Embaye et al. (1990), who concluded that, generally, gross appearance was directly related to microscopic findings. However, these researchers found that in 155 apparently normal stomachs, 32% showed histologic evidence of parakeratosis, 30% had minor erosive lesions, and 23% had severe ulceration.

Gross evaluation of stomach lesions is commonly incorporated into an abattoir surveillance program to monitor disease status. To examine the pars oesophagea, the stomach should be incised along the greater curvature and inverted. Emptying the contents and rinsing the stomach before examination will improve the accuracy of the inspection. Various classification schemes have been used to grade stomach lesions at slaughter (Christensen and Cullinane 1990; Ayles et al. 1996a), and an example of such a system is presented in Table 54.3.

Histologically, the lesion is the result of thickening and parakeratosis, with nucleated cells present on the mucosal surface. Rete pegs and proprial papillae are elongated, and neutrophils and eosinophils are often present at the tips of the proprial papillae. Epithelial separation and erosion usually occur beneath a band of cells with cytoplasmic pallor and nuclear degeneration (Embaye et al. 1990). Ulcers of the pars oesophagea usually involve only the submucosa, but they may advance to the muscularis externa and occasionally to the serosa (Barker et al. 1993).

In the case of a pig that has died acutely of gastric ulceration, postmortem diagnosis is usually straightforward. The carcass is typically pale but in good body condition. The stomach may contain clotted and unclotted blood and fibrinous exudate enclosing a variable amount of food. Blood may be found in the intestine as well. A blood clot may be adhered to the surface of the ulcer, which is generally deep and extensive in the case of a fatal hemorrhagic episode.

Gastric ulcers can heal by granulation and reepithelialization. Scarring can occur and, if extensive, may lead to occlusion of the esophageal opening into the stomach.

DIAGNOSIS

Often diagnosis is accomplished on the basis of gross postmortem findings and clinical history. Typically, only one or two animals in a large group of grower-finisher pigs are noticed to be ill or are found dead. Lesions in the stomach are readily observed and generally diagnostic. Determining the prevalence and severity of ulcer lesions in the remaining animals in a herd or group poses more of a diagnostic challenge. Mild to moderate blood loss occurring over a period of several days or weeks will result in anemia and poor performance. Various conditions causing anemia need to be considered, including blood loss from tail biting, abdominal bleeding from other organs, swine dysentery, proliferative ileitis, hemorrhagic bowel syndrome, and possibly dietary deficiencies.

Anemia associated with porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) has been reported (Rathje et al. 1996). Slaughter checks (Elbers et al. 1995a) and necropsy information from pigs that die of various causes can help determine the extent to which ulceration of the pars oesophagea is a clinical problem in a herd. Care must be taken in interpreting necropsy data to determine disease prevalence in that an association exists between acute respiratory disease and gastric ulceration (Dionissopoulos et al. 2001).

Occasionally, swine practitioners are asked to make a diagnosis on an individual animal when sacrificing the animal in order to perform a postmortem examination is not an option, such as in the case of a valuable breeding boar or sow. Clinical signs of anemia and the presence of digested blood in the stool are suggestive of a gastric ulcer, but definitive diagnosis requires endoscopy (Kowalczyk et al. 1968; Mackin et al. 1997). Modern portable endoscopes are practical tools in the diagnosis of gastric ulcers in swine. They can be used to

---

**Table 54.3. Classification of stomach lesions at slaughter**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade 0</td>
<td>Normal, shiny, white, glistening surface over entire pars oesophagea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1</td>
<td>Evidence of parakeratosis such as thickening, roughened surface, corrugation, yellow color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2</td>
<td>Erosions of the epithelium, particularly at the border of the cardiac region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3</td>
<td>Active ulcers and cicatrization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
determine the specific phase in production when ulceration is occurring without sacrificing pigs. Early erosive lesions are easily distinguished as red lesions against the white background of the pars oesophageal surface. At postmortem, these lesions are commonly overlooked because of the lack of contrast (Mackin et al. 1997).

TREATMENT

Early intervention is important for successfully treating pigs with gastric ulceration. This is usually hampered by the rapid onset of the problem and the difficulty in diagnosing subclinical disease in the live animal. Pigs that are observed to be pale and weak should be segregated from penmates to avoid injury from bullying. If severe blood loss has occurred, euthanasia should be a consideration.

If a specific risk factor can be identified as a probable contributing cause, then steps should be taken to change the factor. For instance, replacing finely ground pelleted feed with a moderately coarse mash feed has been shown to result in healing (Ayles et al. 1996a). Similarly, nutritional deficiencies such as vitamin E deficiency should be immediately corrected, and concurrent respiratory disease must be treated with appropriate medication.

In the case of expensive breeding stock, one might initiate more extensive treatment than mere pen separation and symptomatic care. Parenteral administration of glucose with electrolytes and vitamin K or 8% gelatin has been recommended as an initial response (Kowalczyk 1975). A blood transfusion (of 1–2 liters of blood in an hour for animals weighing 150–200 kg) should be performed as soon as possible. Parenteral preparations of iron and B-complex vitamins to stimulate hemopoiesis and appetite are generally administered to pigs recovering from severe blood loss.

Numerous pharmaceutical agents have been used in an attempt to neutralize acid, reduce gastric secretions, and/or promote ulcer healing. Various antacid preparations have been studied for their ability to neutralize gastric acid. Sodium bicarbonate is the most commonly used, but with conflicting results. Gamble et al. (1967) found no effect on ulcer severity by feeding 3% NaHCO_3, whereas Wondra et al. (1995c) demonstrated a slight improvement with inclusion of 1% NaHCO_3 in the ration. Southern et al. (1993) found an increase in stomach lesions when 1% NaHCO_3 was fed. The ingestion of sodium bicarbonate in small amounts over time can result in an increase in acid secretion, and this may nullify the advantages of its buffering capability. Nonabsorbable antacids such as aluminum hydroxide and magnesium silicate may be preferable to sodium bicarbonate because they act more slowly and with a more prolonged effect. If buffering agents are to be used, there is good rationale to add them to the water rather than the feed (Ange et al. 2000).

Reduction of acid production should be a goal in treating the individual pig with ulceration of the pars oesophagea. Histamine H_2-receptor antagonists, including cimetidine, ranitidine, famotidine, and nizatidine, have been considered potentially useful drugs. In addition to inhibiting histamine-evoked gastric acid secretion, cimetidine and ranitidine also appear to effectively control upper gastrointestinal bleeding in humans. Unfortunately, researchers (Hedde et al. 1985) have shown that histamine H_2-receptor antagonists do not reduce the incidence or severity of ulcers associated with finely ground feed. Likewise, ranitidine (150 mg per day) administered by injection, three times per day, does not alleviate ulcers in porcine somatotropin-treated swine (Baile et al. 1994). Intramuscular administration of cimetidine (4.3 mg/kg) or ranitidine (0.75 mg/kg) causes gastric pH to rise above 3.5 for only about 2 hours in swine, compared to a much longer time in humans (Sangiah et al. 1990), possibly explaining the poor response in pigs.

The inhibitors of H^+ /K^+ ATPase (the proton pump in parietal cells) such as omeprazole (Friendship et al. 2000) and trioprazole (Adelstein et al. 1988) may be more useful agents in treating swine gastric ulcers. These benzimidazole compounds have been shown to successfully reduce severity and prevalence of ulcers in swine treated with porcine somatotropin (Baile et al. 1994). The E-type prostaglandins are widely used in human treatment. These drugs reduce acid secretion and promote mucus secretion. They have not been found to be effective in alleviating ulcer development in swine (Baile et al. 1994). However, other cytoprotectants may be more useful. Various inert and insoluble protectives such as bismuth subcarbonate, kaolin, and pectin have been used in an attempt to coat the ulcerated area and promote healing. Sucralfate, an aluminum salt of sulfated sucrose which adheres to ulcers and erosions and promotes healing while preventing further attacks, has been shown to prevent ulceration in bile duct-ligated pigs (Stapleton et al. 1989). However, the addition of 1 or 4 mg sucralfate per 3 kg of a finely ground pelleted diet fed to somatotropin-treated swine failed to alleviate ulcers of the pars oesophagea (Baile et al. 1994).

The role of *Helicobacter* spp. in swine gastric ulceration is unclear and may not be important. In humans, the recurrence rate of patients with *H. pylori* is 40–80% per year but is reduced to 0–4% when *H. pylori* is eradicated. The treatment for human *Helicobacter* infection is complex, involving the use of three or four pharmaceutical agents. For example, a patient may be prescribed a 1-week course of omeprazole (20 mg bid), bismuth subsalicylate (2 tabs qid), metronidazole (250 mg qid), and tetracycline (500 mg qid) (Chiba 1996). It is not likely appropriate to consider this regimen in swine practice. Even if it can be proven that infection with *Helicobacter* spp. is a factor in swine disease, reinfection from environmental sources may make eradication an impractical
approach in preventing the recurrence of gastric ulcers under farm conditions.

**PREVENTION**

Treatment for the most part is prohibitively expensive, laborious, and often unsuccessful. In addition, early diagnosis of gastric ulcer disease is difficult. Therefore, prevention of stomach lesions is generally considered the most appropriate approach to handling this problem. A cost-benefit analysis of the prevention program is important in determining what action should be taken to reduce losses from gastric ulcers on a particular farm. The risk factors and the losses from disease will vary from herd to herd, and each case needs to be considered separately. In general, it is very easy to overreact to the loss of one or two animals and institute changes that reduce overall herd performance and result in economic losses that far outweigh the benefits of reduced ulcer prevalence. For example, changing feed particle size from fine to coarse, decreasing the stocking density, and removing growth promotants from the ration are all common recommendations (Kowalczyk 1975), but each will have a significant effect on growth rate and/or feed efficiency.

On the other hand, the swine industry needs to be concerned about the welfare implications of a high level of stomach lesions and must take steps to decrease the prevalence if possible. Many causative factors and complex interactions of nutrition, environment, and management contribute to the expression of this disease, but a coordinated effort—although difficult by feed providers, owners, production personnel, and herd veterinarians—can result in feed preparation standards and management that limit gastric ulceration as a swine production problem without reducing animal performance (Henry 1996). The use of roller mills instead of grinding feed appears to be one of the best methods of reducing ulcers (Nielsen and Ingvertson 2000).

The feed industry must endeavor to produce a pellet that contains grain particles of a uniform and appropriate size, prepared at a proper temperature. Feed production practices that incorporate flour or “fines” in pellets increase the risk of ulcers. Likewise, high temperatures during pelleting might result in gelatinization of starches and therefore be more ulcerogenic. The addition of fat to the diet, if allowed to become rancid, can also contribute to an ulcer problem. Addressing these concerns can lead to better feed efficiency and reduce the incidence of gastric ulcers.

Feeding practices must be carefully monitored. An interruption of feed intake appears to be a major contributing factor to ulcer formation. Blocked feeders or waterers, heat stress, unpalatable feed, or the presence of vomitoxin in the feed can lead to ulcer problems. Good management practices can minimize the occurrence and influence of these factors.

Various attempts have been made to incorporate protective substances in swine feeds to prevent ulcer development. Increasing levels of antioxidants such as vitamin E and selenium beyond physiological requirements does not appear to be useful (Davies 1993). There is some evidence to suggest that the inclusion of vitamin U (methylmethionine sulphonium) reduces the prevalence and severity of ulcers (Hegedus et al. 1983; Elbers et al. 1995c). Alfalfa has been used at levels of up to 9%, because it is high in vitamins E and K, as well as a source of increased fiber. Alfalfa was not effective in reducing the level of severity of ulcers in pigs treated with porcine somatotropin (Baile et al. 1994). The production of sunflower hulls to diets was shown to be effective in reducing lesions (Dirkwzager et al. 1998).

Products that reduce gastric emptying have been examined and found somewhat effective, at least in an experimental setting. Melatonin has been reported to slow gut motility and when included at levels as low as 2.5 g/ton results in less ulcer development (Ayles et al. 1996b). Similarly, diets containing sodium polyacrylate are retained for longer periods of time in the stomach of swine, and gastric ulceration is reduced (Yamaguchi et al. 1981). There may be circumstances in which various therapeutic agents are useful for treatment or prevention, but because of the many contributing factors and the interactions of these factors, it is unlikely that a single pharmaceutical product or management technique will be found that completely prevents gastric ulceration caused by various combinations of factors in different herds.

**REFERENCES**


Internal parasites are ever present and must be considered in the economic production of pork. Infectious diseases are spread quickly through a herd and are often easily recognized by the presence of moribund or dead pigs. The internal nematodes, more specifically the worms, can also kill, but loss of appetite, reduction in rate of gain, poor feed utilization, and the potentiation of other pathogens that may be present are the more common results of parasitism. The less-than dramatic performance problems cannot be easily related directly to parasite infection or measured in terms of economic losses. Condemnation of parts of and even entire carcasses due to parasites can be dramatic and is easily documented; however, the more important losses come from insidious depressant effects of parasites on feed intake, daily gain, and feed conversion.

Controlled trials with single-species infections with the more common parasites of swine have shown that all of the nematode infections resulted in a reduction in average daily gain (ADG) of infected pigs compared to their controls. Similarly, the feed to gain ratio (F/G) for the infected pigs increased compared to control pigs. Differences at low levels of infection ranged from 2% to 21% reduction in ADG and from 3% to 6% increase in F/G for the infected pigs compared to their controls. At higher levels of infection, deaths occurred (Stewart 1996). Losses vary greatly in relation to geographic region, type of housing, management, nutrition, pig breed and strain, and species of parasite. The impact of swine parasites and the need for research have been reviewed (Stewart et al. 1985a), as well as the economic losses in production (Stewart and Hale 1988; Kennedy et al. 1988).

In a survey in the United States, based on examination of fecal samples from 84 hog farms judged to have good management in 15 states, the prevalence of *A. suum* was 70% (Kennedy et al. 1988). Utilizing available statistical data (U.S. Department of Agriculture) and calculating performance data on the basis of experimental low ascarid infections, the estimated loss in 1994 from ascarid infections was $174 million (Stewart 1996).

Most schemes for parasite control have been aimed at reducing condemnation of livers caused by *A. suum* or *Stephanurus dentatus*: for example, the “McLean County” system developed in the midwestern United States (Raffensperger and Connely 1927), the “Profit” program in North Carolina (Behlow and Batte 1974), and the “Gilt-Only” system developed in Georgia (Stewart et al. 1964). These systems incorporated sanitation, anthelmintics, and management, singly or in combination, to reduce condemnation and production losses. All anthelmintics introduced for swine since the 1950s have been highly efficacious against *A. suum*, yet it is still the most prevalentswine worm parasite in the world. Incidentally, this is also true of *A. lumbricoides* of humans.

More recently, biological systems of control have been researched. For example, daily doses of $5 \times 10^4$ units of chlamydomospores of the microfungus *Duddingtonia flagrans* fed in feed over a 2-month period to pasture fed pigs infected with known number of *Oesophagostomum dentatum* and *Hyostrongylus rubidus* resulted in lower herbage numbers of infective larvae of both species compared to the control pigs not receiving the microfungus (Nansen et al. 1996).

The organization of this chapter is by anatomic system infected by the important cosmopolitan parasites, beginning with the stomach. Other parasites are discussed in the section on miscellaneous parasites. The distribution, morphology, life cycle, pathology, and diagnosis of each parasite and, where appropriate, other special effects such as immune response, public health significance, and economic importance are discussed. Separate sections are included on prevention and on anthelmintic compounds currently being used and those under development.

**STOMACH**

*Hyostrongylus rubidus*

The trichostrongyloid nematode *Hyostrongylus rubidus*, the red stomach worm of pigs, becomes concentrated in
the lesser curvature in the fundic area of the stomach of pigs. The adult worms are less than 10 mm in length and are bright red when first removed from the host. They are essentially parasites of pastured animals.

**Morphology.** These slender red worms have cuticular striation (Figure 55.2). Males are 4–7 mm and females 5–9 mm in length. Males have a pair of short spicules and a bursa. The female vulva is located on the midposterior half of the body. Cervical papillae are present. The eggs are typical strongyle type and are in the 16- to 32-cell stage when passed in the feces. They are thin-shelled and measure 60–76 by 30–38 µm (Figure 55.1F).

**Life Cycle.** Eggs develop on the ground into infective larvae (L₃) in about 7 days. After ingestion, the infection becomes patent in about 21 days. The L₃ enter pits of the gastric glands, where they remain for about 2 weeks as they go through two molts, returning to the lumen as L₅ young adults. Larvae can remain in the mucosa for several months in a histotrophic stage similar to that of *Ostertagia* of cattle and sheep and cause formation of small nodules.

**Pathology.** Infections usually are not pathogenic, but if enough worms are present, hyperemia, catarrhal gastritis, submucosal edema, hyperplasia of the gastric gland area, erosion of the mucosa, and ulcer formation may result (Porter 1940; Kendall et al. 1960; Stockdale et al. 1973). *H. rubidus* is a bloodsucker; and in herds with clinical hyostrongylosis, emaciation and palling of the skin and mucous membranes may be apparent in adult animals (Davidson et al. 1968; Appert and Taranchon 1969). Clinically inapparent infections can lead to reduced weight gains, feed conversion, and N balance (Dey-Hazra et al. 1972; Stewart et al. 1985b).

**Diagnosis.** The eggs are almost indistinguishable from those of *Oesophagostomum* spp. in both size and morphology, although *H. rubidus* eggs are more advanced in development. Larval culture is a better method of differentiation (Homer 1967).

**SMALL INTESTINE**

**Strongyloides ransomi**

*Strongyloides ransomi,* the small-intestinal threadworm, is a rhabditoid nematode of cosmopolitan distribution. Its prevalence and importance are greater in the warmer climatic regions, where it is an important parasite of suckling pigs.

**Morphology.** Only parthenogenetic females are present in the parasitic generation. Adults are practically microscopic, measuring 3.3–4.5 mm in length. The filariform esophagus occupies about a third of the total body length. The vulva is located near the middle of the body.

The thin-shelled eggs passed in the feces contain larvae and measure 45–55 by 26–35 µm (Figure 55.1A).

**Life Cycle.** Larvated eggs that pass in the feces hatch in a few hours into L₁ rhabditiform larvae. These may develop either directly into infective larvae (homogonic cycle) or into males and females (heterogonic cycle), which in turn will produce infective larvae. In the homogonic cycle, infective larvae can appear in a little more than a day. In the heterogonic cycle, infective larvae can appear in 2.5 days. Different routes of infection have been proven for *S. ransomi*: percutaneous, oral, transcolostral, and prenatal.

Percutaneous penetration by larvae produces patency in 6–10 days after infection. Larvae enter the bloodstream, proceed to the lungs, undergo tracheal migration, and are swallowed. Oral infections are possible when the ingested larvae penetrate the mucous membranes and migrate to the lungs, L₃ being killed by gastric juices. Transcolostral infection may also occur, by 4 days after birth. This is considered the primary means of infection of neonates in the southeastern United States. Larvae in the sow colostrum differ physiologically from L₃ and pass through the stomach and develop into adults in the small intestine without migration. Larvae responsible for infection of the neonates are sequestered in the mammary fat of the sow and apparently are mobilized and included in thecolostrum (Moncol 1975; Stewart et al. 1976).

Prenatal infection producing patency in suckling pigs as early as 2–3 days after birth can occur. Larvae from the sow accumulate in various tissues of the fetus during the latter part of pregnancy, and complete migration to the small intestine of the newborn rapidly after birth.

**Pathology.** Diarrhea followed by progressive dehydration is the usual sign. In heavy infections, death generally occurs before pigs are 10–14 days old, but stunting and unthriftiness are the more usual sequelae of *S. ransomi* infection. No pathognomonic lesions are associated with field cases of strongyloidosis (Stewart et al. 1968). Larvae apparently can be distributed widely in most tissues of the body and lesions are dependent on the number of larvae and host response (Stone and Simpson 1967).

**Immune Response.** Breed differences in susceptibility to *S. ransomi,* which appear to be genetic (Johnson et al. 1975), have been reported. Duroc pigs were less susceptible to effects of infection than Hampshire pigs, and the F₁ cross of the two breeds was intermediate in response. Murrel and Urban (1983) showed that enteral exposure of pigs infected with milk larvae produced protective immunity to subsequent subcutaneous inoculation with *S. ransomi* L₃.
55.1. (A) Strongyloides egg, thin-shelled, lacking one of three layers, and larvated; (B) Ascarops egg, larvated and similar morphologically to those of Physocephalus and Gongylonema; (C) the Ascaris egg has an outer proteinaceous layer, often missing; (D) Metastrongylus egg; (E) Oesophagostomum egg; (F) Hyostrongylus egg; (G) Globocephalus egg; (H) Stephanurus dentatus egg passed in the urine; (I) Trichuris egg; (J) Macracanthorhynchus egg. (All eggs photographed and printed at the same magnification.)
Diagnosis. Identification of eggs in feces or finding the adults in the small intestine at necropsy, with a history of diarrhea and unthriftiness, confirms a diagnosis of strongyloidosis; however, care must be taken because clinical disease can be confused with colibacillosis and coccidiosis.

*Ascaris suum*

*Ascaris suum*, the large roundworm of swine, is an ascaridoid (ascarid) nematode of cosmopolitan distribution. It is the most common gastrointestinal worm parasite in pigs, with a prevalence of 50–75%. It is more common in growing pigs than in mature pigs. Although now recognized as a separate species, the large roundworm of humans, *A. lumbricoides*, was thought to be the same as that in pigs.

**Morphology.** Ascarids are large, stout-bodied, pinkish-yellow nematodes with three prominent lips surrounding the mouth (Figure 55.3). Females are 20–40 cm long, and the males 15–25 cm. The male tail is conical and bent ventrally. Males have two stout spicules. The female vulva is anterior to the middle of the body. Eggs are thick-shelled and brownish yellow with a mammillated proteinaceous coating on the exterior, and they measure 50–80 by 40–60 µm. The eggs are unsegmented when passed in feces (Figure 55.1C).

**Life Cycle.** The life cycle is direct and involves a hepatotraheal migration route. Eggs are laid in the intestine of the pigs and pass out in the feces. At room temperature the L₁ appeared in the egg at 17–22 days; the L₂ appeared at 22–27 days; and the L₃ first appeared on day 27 (Geenen et al. 1999). Additional time is needed for eggs to become infective, and they may remain infective for 7 years or longer in protected areas of lots and pastures.

When ingested, infective eggs hatch in the digestive tract. The liberated L₁ penetrate the intestinal wall and generally pass via the hepatic portal system to the liver. A few, however, may pass via the lacteals to the mesenteric lymph nodes; others may even be found in the peritoneal cavity and other locations. Most larvae are in the liver by the first or second day after ingestion and in the lungs by days 4–7. From day 8 to day 10 after infection, larvae leave the lungs by penetrating the bronchioles, are coughed up into the trachea, and are swallowed. By 10–15 days after infection the L₃ have returned to the small intestine and molted to L₄. At this time, some L₄ are spontaneously eliminated from the small intestine into the cecum and colon. L₄ molt to young adults (L₅) 21–30 days after ingestion of eggs. The prepatent period is 40–53 days. Female ascarids are phenomenal egg producers capable of laying hundreds of thousand to nearly 2 million eggs per day. The eggs are sticky and are easily transported by cockroaches and other arthropods, birds, boots, etc. Most disinfectants have no effect on the eggs, but heat (steam) and direct sunlight are effective in destroying their viability.

Most adults live in pigs only about 6 months, at which time they begin to be expelled, but pigs may continue to carry a light infection for a year or longer. In foreign hosts as in humans or domesticated and laboratory animals, larvae may migrate but are generally unable to develop to adults in the intestine and are expelled in the feces if they reach the digestive system.
Pathology. The larvae migrate through the liver and cause hemorrhagic foci which microscopically show mild eosinophilic infiltration and a few, small lymphoid nodules in portal areas. On repeated exposure to larvae, there is an increase in connective tissue, infiltrating eosinophils, and dilation of lymphatics, which grossly appear as whitish spots, commonly referred to as “milk spots.” Such lesions disappear within 25 days. In the lungs, migrating larvae cause verminous pneumonia, which may result in death if large numbers of larvae are involved. Clinical signs are those of pneumonia. Pigs have an asthmatic cough (“thumps”) and may breathe with difficulty. Hemorrhagic foci of various sizes are present. There may be an exudate, edema and emphysema with secondary bacterial pneumonia. Migration of A. suum larvae markedly enhances the pathogenicity of swine influenza as well as viral pneumonia.

Adult worms compete with the host for nutrients and interfere with absorption of nutrients by the host. They may occlude and rupture the small intestine (Figure 55.4). In addition, adults may migrate into the common bile duct and occlude it, causing icterus.

Immune Response. Acquired resistance can be induced in pigs by oral inoculation with infective eggs or L₃ pulmonary larvae (Eriksen 1982; Stewart et al. 1985c). The presence of adults or late larval ascarids can prevent development of additional larval stages (Stewart and Rowell 1986). High levels of protective immunity based on the number of lung larvae recovered after challenge with 10,000 larvae following repeated experimental or natural exposure was shown by Urban et al. (1989). Protective immunity was not altered by strategic anthelmintic treatment that prevented growth retardation of pigs constantly exposed to natural infection. Sterilizing immunity is transitory, and periodic boosting or anthelmintic treatment is necessary to eliminate both intestinal worms and lesions during the growing-finishing period (Urban et al. 1988, 1989). The intestine is considered important as a defense mechanism in preventing larval penetration of the gut mucosa (Bindseil 1970), and it has been shown that the intestinal phase of ascarids can induce circulating antibodies without prior somatic migration (Leigh-Brown and Harpur 1974). Protective immunity is characterized by antibody in serum and in intestinal washings (Urban et al. 1984).

Economic Importance. Ascariasis is undoubtedly the most important parasitism of pigs worldwide. The effects of ascarids on the performance of pigs were detailed by Spindler in 1947 and by many others since then. Controlled experimental single infections at different levels with the ubiquitous A. suum showed that low levels of infection depress feed intake and daily gain with a concomitant increase in maintenance cost; at higher levels of infection, depression in feed conversion also occurs. Periodic analyses of metabolic functions during the prepatent period showed a significant effect on nitrogen (N) metabolism on days 33–37, coincident with rapid growth of the immature worms in the small intestine. The average number of worms recovered at slaughter ranged from 13–18, although the infecting doses in the studies ranged from 600–60,000 (Hale et al. 1985). Such lack in correlation between infecting numbers and establishment of adults has been observed many times (Schwartz 1959; Andersen et al. 1973). Losses from condemnation of parts and lowered performance of pigs in the United Sates were calculated at more than $385 million annually (Levine 1980). More recently, losses due solely to lowered feed conversion from low-level A suum infections were estimated at $155 million for 1987 in the United States (Stewart and Hale 1988). There are no estimates of the value of losses incurred from the potentiation or exacerbation of other diseases by migrating ascarid larvae, or the effect of different management practices or nutritional levels (Underdahl 1958; Zimmerman et al. 1973).

Diagnosis. Typical eggs in fecal flotation or “milk spot” liver lesions at necropsy are diagnostic. In heavy infections the adult worms can be seen and felt in the intact intestine. In areas where the kidney worm is endemic, liver lesions must be differentiated because early S. dentatus lesions can be confused with those produced by A. suum.

Trichinella spiralis

Probably all mammalian species are susceptible to Trichinella spiralis infection, although natural cycles seem climatically based. In the Temperance Zone the usual cycle has swine and bears as natural hosts (Schad et al. 1984), and in the Arctic Zone polar bears and grizzly bears (Kim 1983) and walrus (MacLean et al. 1989) are natural hosts. Other species, including humans, are involved incidently. Trichinellosis is found less frequently in the Tropics. Regulation of garbage feeding to

![55.4. Ascaris emerging from a tear in the gut wall. (Photo by Mark Martinez.)](image)
swine, public health programs, and recently improved trichinoscopic and serodiagnostic techniques have reduced the incidence of this infection.

**Morphology.** The life stage most frequently observed is the encysted \((L_1)\) in muscle fibers. These cysts are 400–600 µm long and 250 µm in diameter. Prior to skeletal muscle fiber penetration, \((L_1)\) may be found in the circulatory system. Adult females occur in the lamina propria of the small intestine, have a stichosome type esophagus, produce larvated eggs in utero and are 3–4 mm long and 60 µm in diameter. Adult males are rarely seen but are about one-half the size of females.

**Life Cycle.** Muscle cysts are ingested and digested in the stomach and small intestine, and \(L_1\) are liberated into the small intestine. Molting from \(L_1\) to \(L_3\) then occurs in 2–6 days. Intracellular infection of enterocytes with the life stage most frequently observed is the encysted \((L_1)\) in muscle fibers. These cysts are 400–600 µm long and 250 µm in diameter. Prior to skeletal muscle fiber penetration, \((L_1)\) may be found in the circulatory system. Adult females occur in the lamina propria of the small intestine, have a stichosome type esophagus, produce larvated eggs in utero and are 3–4 mm long and 60 µm in diameter. Adult males are rarely seen but are about one-half the size of females.

**Pathology.** *Trichinella* is much less pathogenic for swine than for rats and humans. Experimental infections in pigs caused decreased weight gains and intense muscle pain, but most of these infected pigs recovered with rapid weight gain (Scholtens et al. 1966); in experimentally infected miniature pigs, eosinophilia and hypergammaglobulinemia were observed (Beck and Anfinson 1965). Clinical illness has not been described for natural infection with the muscle fiber cyst and infiltration of eosinophils is often the lesion observed.

**Immune Response.** Experimental inoculation of pigs with *T. spiralis* excretory-secretory products induced moderate but variable degrees of immunity to subsequent challenge per os with doses of 2500–2700 \(L_1\). These pigs harbored fewer adult worms, and the fecundity of female worms recovered (measured by shedding of newborn larvae) was significantly lower than that of females recovered from control pigs (Gamble et al. 1986). Prospects for potential use of targeted vaccine in an integrated control program for swine trichinosis are being investigated (Murrell 1985).

**Diagnosis.** Federal, until recently state, meat inspection regulations have not included examination for *Trichinella*, but procedures for diagnosis would be by digestion of muscle at slaughter or by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for serologic detection of *Trichinella*-specific antibodies (Gamble et al. 1983). A pooled-sample digestion method using 5–6 g diaphragm samples from lots of 20 pig carcasses has been adopted by several European countries but not by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (Zimmerman 1967). These pooled samples are digested and homogenized using 1% pepsin/1% HCl and a mixing action which simulates peristaltic motion of the stomach (using a stomacher device). Analysis of pooled samples can be accomplished in 1.5 hours (Oliver et al. 1985).

An ELISA test using an excretory antigen for diagnosis of trichinosis was evaluated in the field with sera from herds with ongoing transmission of *T. spiralis* (Murrell et al. 1986). Results showed a high sensitivity of 93–96% with sera from infected pigs. Of those that were false-negative, five-sixths had fewer than 5.0 larvae per gram (LPG). This should prove to be a major technique for antemortem diagnosis in herd screening.

**Public Health.** In Europe, trichinoscopic examination of pork appears to have practically eliminated *T. spiralis* from domestic swine. Incidence of swine trichiniasis in the United States was 0.125% in 1966–1970 (Zimmerman and Zinter 1971). Pork, mainly prepared sausage, apparently is the major source of human trichinellosis, accounting for 73.2% of 254 cases for which source was identified (USDHHS 1976). There are close to 40 million potential exposures each year based on the estimated number of infected pigs, the estimated number of human cases is 300,000, the majority of which cases cause no symptoms of infection (Leighty 1974). Non-pork products included meat from walrus, black bear, and horses and ground beef (James 1989), with beef likely adulterated with pork. Small custom slaughterhouses are important epidemiologically, for these often prepare fresh, whole dressed pork for social occasions where one animal is consumed by many persons (Schad et al. 1985). There have been several recent small epidemics among Indo-Chinese immigrants in the United States (USDHHS 1982); an update on trichinosis surveillance in the United States appeared in 1988 (USDHHS 1988).

In the United States, educating the public to recognize the hazard and to cook pork adequately to kill the organisms, and requiring freezing of manufactured pork products that need cooking have been the two principal patterns used by federal and state meat inspection programs (Leighty 1974). A more concerted effort to identify herds with active infections in order to provide a “safe” product was initiated by the state of Illinois with the introduction of a Trichinosis Control Act in 1986. The pooled-sample digestion and ELISA technique are
employed to identify and subsequently to quarantine, depopulate, and indemnify those herds found infected. Other states, such as North Carolina, are following suit with use of a semiautomatic ELISA to screen hogs in a packing plant at the rate of 400/hour; all recorded positives then are screened by the diaphragm technique.

For chemotherapy, ivermectin was confirmed as having no antiparasitic activity, whereas excellent efficacy was reported for albendazole. Calf thymus extract, cyclosporin A, and the experimental compound lux-abendazole have also been proven efficacious (James 1989).

CECUM AND COLON

Trichuris suis

Pigs and wild boars are considered the natural hosts of Trichuris suis, although primates, including humans, may be infected with T. suis. Whipworms are distributed widely and are a fairly common problem in swine.

Morphology. Adult females measure 6–8 cm long and males half that length. This trichuroid has a unique morphology, with the anterior or esophageal portion 0.5 mm in diameter and extending two-thirds of the body length. The esophagus is a stichosome-type consisting of a column of spiraling stichocytes, one cell layer in thickness. A microscopic lancet protrudes from the stoma in all stages. Glandular and muscular components are interspersed along the esophagus. The posterior third of the body is thicker, 0.65 mm, protrudes into the lumen and contains the midgut of the worm and its reproductive tract. Bipolar thick-shelled eggs may be seen in the uterus of the female, and a single copulatory spicule in the male. Eggs are 60 by 25 µm, yellow to brown, and in the one-cell stage (Figure 55.1).

Life Cycle. The eggs passed in the feces require 3–4 weeks to reach infectivity, still in the L1 stage, and can remain infective for as long as 6 years. Infective eggs hatch in the small intestine and cecum, with the released L1 penetrating cells lining the crypts. A histotrophic phase persists for 2 weeks with gradual larval migration from the deeper lamina propria to the submucosa. Luminal development begins the third week post infection with the posterior body coming into view and the anterior end remaining buried in the mucosa (Figure 55.5). Meanwhile, four molts have occurred, prepatency is 6–7 weeks, and life span 4–5 months (Beer 1973).

55.5. Trichuris worm. Note intracellular penetration (Batte et al. 1977.)
Pathology. *Trichuris* infections cause enterocyte destruction, ulceration of the mucosal lining, loss of capillary blood, and probably secondary bacterial infection. Thus, trichuriosis must be considered in the differential diagnosis of swine dysentery complex that does not respond to antibiotic therapy. The spectrum of gross lesions may be edema with formation of nodules containing exudates surrounding portions of worms to formation of a fibrinonecrotic membrane. Erosion of capillary beds and vasodilation results in hemorrhage, anemia, and hypoalbuminemia. Clinical signs include anorexia, mucoid to bloody diarrhea, dehydration, and death.

Immune Response. Susceptibility with accompanying clinical signs is up to 6 months of age, although mature hogs may show clinical infection when stressed. Light infections persist, allowing intermittent shedding of eggs. Infection of pigs with *Trichuris suis* was shown to induce suppression of mucosal immunity to resident bacteria and is linked to the pathogenesis of necrotic proliferative colitis (Mansfield and Urban 1996).

Diagnosis. Clinical signs, including bloody scouring, are presumptive. Eggs in stools and whipworms at necropsy are confirmative. Trichurids are sporadic egg layers therefore, little significance can be given to number of eggs per gram (EPG).

**Oesophagostomum spp.**

*Oesophagostomum* spp. are strongyloid nematodes, of which *O. dentatum* and *O. quadrispinulatum* are the most common in occurrence. *O. brevicaudum* occurs in the southeastern United States and other areas with similar climates. Two other species, *O. granatensis* in Europe and *O. georgianum* in the southeastern United States, are probably morphovariants of *O. dentatum* (Raynaud et al. 1974; Stewart and Gasbarre 1989).

Morphology. Adult *Oesophagostomum* have stout, slightly curved bodies; females are 1–2 cm long and males are slightly shorter. Species differentiation is by shape of esophagus, shape of buccal capsule, and length of tail and spicules (Figure 55.6). Eggs are 70 by 40 µm, morulated when passed, thin-shelled, and typically strongyloid (Figure 55.1E).

Life Cycle. The preparasitic cycle is of the strongylid type, with *L*₁ emerging from eggs and ensheathed *L*₃ appearing by 1 week. Larvae can survive on pastures for up to 12 months. Swine are infected by ingesting *L*₃ from contaminated pastures, by mechanical transmission by psychodid flies (midge), or from rats with encysted larvae (Jacobs and Dunn 1968). The *L*₃ enter the mucosa of the cecum and colon and molt to *L*₄, remain for 2 weeks, causing small nodules, and emerge into the lumen, molt to *L*₅, and reach patency in 3 weeks after ingestion.

Pathology. Formation of nodules from the cecum to the rectum is the major change (Taffs 1966). The sequelae are petechiation of the point of entry of the *L*₃ (Jacobs 1969); focal thickening of the mucosa consisting of lymphocytes, macrophages, and eosinophils; and then presence of luminal nodules by day 4. Encysted larvae may be found in the muscularis mucosa (McCracken and Ross 1970). By 1 week, nodules are up to 8 mm in diameter and plugged with yellow to black necrotic debris. Walls of the cecum and colon become edematous from extensive thrombosis of lymphatics; there is possibly a localized fibrinonecrotic membrane. Resolution begins the second week with some remnants of nodules and scarring. Secondary infection may occur and enhance clinical signs of depression, anorexia, and scouring.

Immunity. There is no apparent age immunity (Taffs 1956), but pigs over 3 months seem more susceptible (Haas et al. 1972). A periparturient rise of EPG is maintained through lactation with a subsequent expulsion of worms (Connan 1967; Haas et al. 1972).

**RESPIRATORY TRACT**

*Metastrongylus* spp.

Species include *M. apri* (elongatus), *M. pudendotectus* and *M. salmi*, which occur in the bronchi and bronchioles, especially in the diaphragmatic lobes, and exclusively in swine. Although *M. apri* is the most common, all occur worldwide and natural infections occur more often with two species present.

Morphology. Adults are slender and white, with females 50 mm in length and males 25 mm; males have paired spicules, Mucoid deposits around these adults makes it
difficult to separate individuals. Eggs are larvated, thick-shelled, and measure 40–50 µm (Figure 55.1D).

**Life Cycle.** Larvated eggs are coughed up, swallowed, and passed in feces. Earthworms ingest these eggs, which then hatch, and L₁ migrate to the heart. Infective larvae appear in 10 days and hogs rooting in the soil eat the infected worms. These L₃ penetrate the wall of the intestine and are transported to the mesentery lymph nodes, where they molt to L₄. These L₄ are then swept through the right heart to the lungs (Figure 55.7) and molt to L₅, with patency in 4 weeks.

**Pathology.** Dissecting the bronchioles reveals mucoid plugs in the diaphragmatic lobes of the lungs; these are adults and eggs. Parasites, mucus, and cellular exudate cause occlusion and induce atelectasis, observed as coughing or “thumps.” Apparently *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* is not transmitted with *Metastrongylus* via earthworms (Preston and Switzer 1976). Fewer parasites seem to occur in breeding stock.

**Diagnosis.** It is difficult to find *Metastrongylus* eggs in a fecal exam, but it is important to look for “fuzzy” areas in which eggs are held in mucus. At necropsy, lungworms can be extruded by clipping the posteroverentral margins or the tip of the diaphragmatic lobes of the lungs.

**URINARY TRACT**

*Stephanurus dentatus*
The kidney worm is a strongylid nematode of swine. Domestic and feral pigs raised on soil in warm climates are most often infected. In the United States, endemicity is from the Carolinas to southern Missouri, with interstate transport accounting for the worm’s appearance as far north as Canada (Smith and Hawkes 1978).

**Morphology.** Adults are thick-bodied with black and white mottling from contents of the reproductive and intestinal tracts showing through the cuticle; they are 1–3 cm long by 2 mm in diameter. The strongylid eggs are ellipsoïdal, thin-walled, morulated, and measure 120 by 70 µm (Figure 55.1H).

**Life Cycle.** Kidney worms are found in cysts in perirenal fat with fistulous openings into the ureters, in the kidney, and in ectopic sites such as the pancreas, lumbar muscles, spinal cord, and lungs. Eggs are voided, with the greatest numbers found at first urination from overnight accumulation in the bladder. Eggs may hatch in 1–2 days; molt to infective L₃ in 3–5 days; and survive for several months in warm, moist, shaded conditions. They are invasive by ingestion, skin penetration, and infected earthworms (Tromba 1955; Batte et al. 1960). Prenatal infection also has been reported (Batte et al. 1966).

Infected L₃ migrate from the small intestine to the mesenteric lymph nodes and molt to L₄, which move through portal veins to the liver (Lichtenfels and Tromba 1972). Bronchial lymph nodes, lungs, pancreas, and spleen also may be infected by L₃ (Waddell 1969). In the liver, L₄ increase from 0.4 to 6.0 mm, molt to L₅ in 2–4 months, and then leave the liver (Lichtenfels and Tromba 1972). They migrate through the body cavity to perirenal and mesenteric fat. Patency is uncommon before 9–12 months, and eggs are shed for 3 years after initial infection (Batte et al. 1966).

**Pathology.** Gross pathological changes may be found where there is migration. Mesentery lymph nodes are edematous and swollen; liver changes include inflammation, eosinophilia, abscessation, and extensive fibrosis, making this infection easily differentiated from ascarid migration. Similar lesions can be seen in other organs. Nodules are formed in perirenal fat, and fistulous tracts are present along the ureters. Posterior paralysis has been associated with migration around the spinal cord.

**Diagnosis.** Worms, abscessation, and liver scarring can be seen at necropsy. Eggs in urine are confirmatory ante-mortem.

**Economic Consideration.** At least 95% of liver condemnations are due to kidney worms and ascarids in hogs in the southeastern United States (Batte et al. 1975). Marked reduction in growth rate and feed efficiency was shown in pigs infected experimentally (Hale and Marti 1983).

**MISCELLANEOUS PARASITES**

Three spiruroid nematodes that require dung beetles as intermediate hosts infect pigs: *Ascarops strongylina* and...
Physocephalus in the stomach and Gongylonema pulchrums under the epithelial layer of the esophagus and tongue. The two thick stomach worms cause a gastritis if present in large numbers. For aesthetic reasons, tongues for human consumption should be scalded and the skin peeled off to remove G. pulchrums. The eggs of these spiruroids are thick-shelled. Eggs of Ascarops measure 34–40 by 18–22 µm (Figure 55.1B); eggs of Physocephalus measure 31–39 by 12–17 µm; and eggs of Gongylonema measure 57–59 by 30–34 µm.

The hookworm of swine, Globocephalus urusabulatus, of cosmopolitan distribution, is more common in the southern part of the United States in feral and pastured swine. It is apparently not as common or pathogenic as hookworms of carnivores and has received little attention. The eggs are typically strongyloid and measure 52–56 by 26–35 µm (Figure 55.1G). Macracanthorhynchus hirudinaceus, the thorny-headed worm of swine, is an acanthocephalan. It attaches to the ileal portion of the small intestine and causes nodular lesions, which are sometimes invaded by secondary organisms. Occasionally the gut wall is perforated by the proboscis, and peritonitis results. Eggs measure 110 by 65 µm, are brown, and have a three-layered shell (Figure 55.1J). A beetle is the required intermediate host.

Two trichostrongylid nematodes, commonly parasites of ruminants, can be found in pigs: Trichostrongylus axei in the stomach and T. colubriformis in the small intestine.

Of public importance, Taenia solium (Cysticercus cellulosae) has humans as the host for the adult tapeworm as well as the potential host for the cysticercus. Swine are the natural intermediate host. Humans are usually infected with a single worm; the adult measuring 3–5 m long, and with an armed rostellum. Gravid proglottids are 12 by 6 mm, have a single, lateral genital pore, and contain taeniid eggs 42 µm in diameter. Following ingestion of proglottids by swine, cysticerci develop in skeletal and cardiac muscles, measuring up to 18 mm in diameter. These are infective for 2–3 months and remain so for 2 years; prepatency in humans is 2 months. Cysticercosis in swine and taeniasis in humans are usually of no clinical significance, but cysticercosis in humans is life threatening, because cysticerci become space-occupying lesions in the central nervous system and have unrestricted growth with no outer limiting membrane (racemose).

Swine may also be infected with Fasciola hepatica and Echinococcus granulosus in the liver but with no apparent clinical problems. These infected swine are found in endemic areas where there is common pasture use with sheep.

The ciliated protozoan Balantidium coli is found primarily in the cecum and anterior colon of swine as a commensal. The motile form is pleomorphic, 30–150 µm by 25–120 µm, and 45–65 µm in diameter. Reproduction is by binary fission, resistant cysts are formed. B. coli feeds on starch, bacteria, and ingesta, including nematode eggs. It is a secondary invader into mucosal lesions by other invaders and produces hyaluronidase, which enlarges lesions. Humans, other primates, and dogs have been found clinically affected in zoos and in areas near hog farms. B. coli may cause an explosive bloody diarrhea in these species.

**PREVENTION**

Parasite control methods may be broadly categorized as either preventive or therapeutic. Those parasites requiring an intermediate host can be successfully prevented by removing pigs from contact with the intermediate hosts—for example, dung beetles and earthworms. Therefore, maintaining pigs on concrete will prevent infection with the spiruroids, acanthocephalans, and metastroglycoids. An added benefit would also be the reduction or prevention of infection by other parasites, such as Hysterophus, Globocephalus, and Trichostrongylus, that require pasture conditions for transmission.

Good sanitation is a critical element in controlling parasitic infections. The major mode of transmission of internal parasites is through contamination of food, soil, or bedding with feces or urine. Since parasite eggs need moisture and warmth to develop and survive, direct sunlight or dry conditions shorten egg and larval survival. Thorough cleaning of buildings, pens, and equipment with detergent and steam is the best way to control parasite eggs and larvae. Steam penetrates cracks and crevices and kills the tiny eggs and larvae. The common disinfectants used on the farm do not kill eggs of parasites such as ascarids.

Since parasites compete with the host for available nutrients, adequate nutrition aids in reducing the adverse effects on feed efficiency and average daily gain. It has been shown that increasing the protein and vitamins in the feed affects the performance of parasitized pigs by increasing the average daily gain and feed efficiency (Stewart et al. 1969).

A management system in which only gilts are used as breeders has been shown to be effective in eradicating kidney worms. This is possible because of the lengthy prepatent period of 6 months or longer and the fact that only animals 2 years old or older pass kidney worm eggs in significant numbers. Selling breeders as soon as first litters are weaned and maintaining boars separately or replacing them with young stock will prevent contamination of the premises. Eradication can be achieved in 2 years or less by using the “gilt-only” system (Stewart et al. 1964).

**TREATMENT**

Therapeutic treatment of pigs with anthelmintics may present only a temporary solution, unless the conditions under which the parasites were acquired are altered. No drug is effective against all parasites, and the
tissue damage prior to patency results in slower growth rates and increased nutrient requirements. A good management system will incorporate practices, such as sanitation, genetic selection, and nutrition, to prevent infections and will not use treatment as the sole method of controlling parasites. The choice of anthelmintic is dependent on the parasite species present and the relative cost of the products. Routine surveillance and strategic treatment for parasites is advisable on farms with a previous history of clinical disease. Treatment reduces the number of egg-producing parasites and keeps further premise contamination to a minimum.

The use of chemical agents such as pyrantel tartrate fed for several weeks can be helpful under lot or pasture conditions to control infections and reduce lesions from ascarids and nodular worms. Prophylactic use of pyrantel or repetitive treatments with fenbendazole reduces worm populations and also appears to stimulate immunity against Ascaris suum (Southern et al. 1989; Stankiewicz and Jeska 1990).

Treatment of sows 10–14 days before farrowing with ivermectin has been shown to be effective in preventing transmission of Strongyloides ransomi from sows to their piglets. Such treatment of sows is also beneficial in preventing transmission of Sarcopes scabiei.

**Anthelmintics**

From 1960–1996 several new classes of anthelmintic compounds were developed, approved by the Food and Drug Administration for use in swine, and marketed in formulations for administration in water or feed and by injection. The spectrum of activity varies by compound, with some effective against a few target species and others broader in effect.

**Macrocyclic Lactones.** Avermectins are derived from fermentation products of Streptomyces avermitilis. The mode of action is to stimulate the release of the inhibitory neurotransmitter gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) in target organisms. This inhibits neuromuscular transmission, leading to paralysis and death. The spectrum of activity includes internal and external parasites, including Ascaris, Oesophagostomum, and Metastrongylus, with less effect on Trichuris and excellent effect on Haematopinus (sucking lice) and Sarcopes.

Ivermectin is available as an injectable formulation and as a feed additive. The injectable formulation is approved for the control of A. suum, Haemonchus contortus, Oesophagostomum spp., S. ransomi (adults and somatic larvae), Metastrongylus spp., Haematopinus suis, and Sarcopes scabiei var. suis. It has an 18-day slaughter withdrawal. The feed formulation is approved for the control of A. suum, Ascarops strongyliina, H. rubidus, Oesophagostomum spp., S. ransomi (adults and somatic larvae), Metastrongylus spp., Stephanurus dentatus, Haematopinus suis, and Sarcopes scabiei var. suis. It has a 5-day slaughter withdrawal.

In a series of controlled trials doramectin, which is available in an injectable form, was shown to have an efficacy of 98% or greater against H. rubidus, A. suum, S. ransomi, Oesophagostomum dentatum, Oesophagostomum quadrispinulatum, Stephanurus dentatus, and Metastrongylus spp., but its efficacy against Trichuris suis varied (Logan et al. 1996). In two controlled studies the efficacy of doramectin against T. suis was 54% in mixed-species infections and 95% in single-species infections. In both types of population, efficacy was greater for female than for male worms (Stewart et al. 1996a). The efficacy of doramectin against S. dentatus was 100% against worms in all locations (Stewart et al. 1996b). It is approved for the control of A. suum, O. dentatum, O. quadrispinulatum, S. ransomi, H. rubidus, Metastrongylus spp., S. dentatus, S. scabiei var. suis, and H. suis. It has a 24-day slaughter withdrawal.

Moxidectin, a milbemycin related to the avermectins, has experimentally been shown to have efficacy as a pour-on against A. suum, Oesophagostomum spp., and Metastrongylus spp. with a variable efficacy against Trichuris (Stewart et al. 1999). Currently there is no approved formulation for swine in the United States.

**Benzimidazole Carbamates.** There are several efficacious compounds among the benzimidazole carbamates, but only fenbendazole (FBZ) is approved for use in swine in the United States. The progenitor of this class of anthelmintics is thiabendazole (TBZ), which has been available since the early 1960s. At 50 mg/kg body weight, TBZ had a greater than 95% efficacy against Haemonchus, Strongyloides, and Oesophagostomum but much less activity against ascarids and whipworms. Commercially, it was used in a paste form given therapeutically in a single oral dose for Strongyloides infections in baby pigs. Its pharmacologic action is to block nematode fumarate reductase activity. Absorption is a passive diffusion through the cuticle of the worm. TBZ has little solubility in water; therefore, only a small amount is rapidly absorbed from the intestinal tract. Its metabolites are excreted completely in feces and urine within 3 days. There is negligible mammalian toxicity, with 20 times the therapeutic dose producing no adverse effects.

FBZ was approved for use in swine in the United States in 1984. It is known to be effective against ascarids, whipworms, nodular worms, lungworms, and larval and adult kidney worms (Batte 1977). It is more potent than TBZ, especially against ascarids. Pharmacologic activity is inhibition of glucose uptake from luminal fluid of the nematode gut, which results in an inability of the parasite to produce adenosine triphosphate (ATP). Parasites are expelled over a 2- to 3-day period following treatment. FBZ may also affect fumarate reductase. It is administered in feed over a 3-day period (Corwin et al. 1984). It is approved for the control of A. suum, O. dentatum, O. quadrispinulatum, H. rubidus, etc.
Metastrongylus apri, Metastrongylus pudendotectus, T. suis, and S. dentatus. No slaughter withdrawal is required. Although approved for T. suis, its efficacy is variable (Marti et al. 1978).

**Imidazothiazoles.** Levamisole was introduced in the late 1960s and demonstrated a broad range of activity in the removal of gastrointestinal, respiratory, and urinary tract nematodes. It has good efficacy against Ascaris, Strongyloides, Hysterus, and Oesophagostomum and low efficacy against Trichuris (Marti et al. 1978). It has also demonstrated efficacy against Stephanurus (Stewart et al. 1977).

Levamisole has a paralyzing effect by blocking ganglionic transmission, with a rapid expulsion of living worms. It also blocks the metabolic pathway responsible for formation of ATP at the site of fumarate reduction and succinate oxidation. Parasites expelled from the proximal gut are decomposed and may not be apparent in the feces.

Only the hydrochloride form is approved for use in swine and is administered in the feed or water at 8 mg/kg body weight. Levamisole hydrochloride is marketed in a pelleted ready-to-use form with a dehydrated alfalfa carrier or as a powder for use in drinking water. It is intended to be consumed within a 24-hour period. It is highly soluble in water and is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, with 40% excreted in the urine in 12 hours and 41% in the feces over 8 days. It is approved for the control of A. suum, Oesophagostomum spp., Metastrongylus spp., and S. ransomi. It has a 72-hour slaughter withdrawal.

Resistance to levamisole and cross-resistance to pyrantel in swine Oesophagostomum spp. has been reported in Denmark (Bjorn et al. 1990).

**Organophosphate Compounds.** Dichlorvos is the only organophosphate compound approved for use as a swine anthelmintic. It was the first broad-spectrum compound for use in swine, with good efficacy against Ascaris, Oesophagostomum, Trichuris, and Hysterus with slightly lower efficacy against Strongyloides (Marti et al. 1978).

Dichlorvos inhibits nematode cholinesterase, leading to interference with neuromuscular transmission (Knowles and Cassida 1966). Nematode cholinesterase is removed by complexing with the organophosphate, whereas host cholinesterase may fail to complex, thus providing a margin of safety for the treated host. Dichlorvos is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and detoxified by the liver. Metabolites do not persist as tissue residues. Dichlorvos should not be given within a few days of other organophosphates, other anthelmintics, or modified live virus vaccines. There apparently are no adverse effects upon conception or gestation. The compound causes increased intestinal peristalsis.

Dichlorvos is a unique organophosphate in that it can be incorporated into polyvinyl chloride pellets which allow for slow release of the volatile active ingredient from these undigestible units during passage along the intestinal tract. Slow release allows for continued effect in the cecum, thereby producing the desired removal of whipworms. This also provides greater safety for an otherwise toxic compound, since the host can then detoxify dichlorvos as it is absorbed over a 2- to 3-day period. Dichlorvos is administered in the feed, mixed with one-third the regular ration. The recommended dose is 11.2–21.6 mg/kg body weight. It is approved for the control of A. suum, Oesophagostomum spp., T. suis, and Ascarops strongylina. There is no slaughter withdrawal when used at the recommended dosages.

**Tetrahydropyrimidines.** Pyrantel tartrate is the only tetrahydropyrimidine approved for swine and was introduced as a broad-spectrum anthelmintic compound in 1966. It is efficacious in the removal of adult and infective larval stages of Ascaris, Oesophagostomum, and Hysterus.

Pyrantel acts as a neuromuscular blocking agent by depolarization of synapses. The musculature contracts irreversibly. The powdered premix is given at a single therapeutic dose level of 22 mg/kg body weight with an overnight fast or as a prophylactic measure at 96 g/ton of feed. For maximum effect against luminal forms, it is administered dry in the feed to minimize absorption. It is most commonly used as a continuous dewormer in feed for starter and growing pigs and is given in combination with carbadox, which promotes growth. It has a great margin of safety and can be used concurrently with organophosphate insecticides. It is not recommended for use in severely debilitated animals because of more pronounced nicotinic activity. It is approved for the control of A. suum and Oesophagostomum spp., an aid in the prevention of larval migration and establishment of A. suum, and an aid in the prevention of establishment of Oesophagostomum. There is a 24-hour slaughter withdrawal. Resistance of swine Oesophagostomum spp. has been reported in Denmark (Roeperstorf et al. 1987).

**Piperazine Salts.** An older generation of antiparasitic drugs includes piperazine salts. Piperazine compounds are still widely used, being efficacious in removal of ascarids and nodular worms. Up to 100% of the lumendwelling stages may be eliminated with a single treatment, but mature worms are more susceptible than earlier stages. A second treatment is recommended 2 months later to remove emerging larval stages.

Piperazine is a diethylenediamine, with the hexahydrate formed in water. It is readily absorbed from the proximal region of the gastrointestinal tract. Some of the base is metabolized in tissues, with 30–40% excreted in the urine. The pharmacologic effect is an anticholin-
ergic action at the myoneural junction, producing a neuromuscular block. In addition, succinic acid production is inhibited. These combined activities produce an overall narcotic effect. Affected parasites are passively removed by intestinal peristalsis and voided live in the host feces. There are no known contraindications, and the compound can be given to animals with gastrointestinal distress.

Piperazine salts are administered in the feed or water. For example, piperazine citrate is given as a 1-day medication in feed, and the hexahydrate form is used in drinking water because of its suitability for storage in solution. Medicated feed or water should be consumed in an 8- to 12-hour period; therefore, withholding feed or water the previous night is beneficial. The recommended dosage is 275–440 mg/kg body weight. It is approved for the control of _A. suum_ and _Oesophagostomum_ spp. There is a 21-day slaughter withdrawal.

**REFERENCES**

References to publications prior to 1975 cited in the text are not included but can be found in the 8th edition of this book.


Mansfield LS, Urban JF. The pathogenesis of necrotic proliferative colitis in swine is linked to whipworm induced suppression of mucosal immunity to resident bacteria. Vet Imm Immunopath 50:1–17.


Mycotoxins are secondary metabolites of mold growth in grains or forages. They result from stress or altered conditions of fungal growth related to a variety of plant and environmental factors. Most mycotoxin problems in veterinary medicine involve the feed grains (e.g., corn, wheat, milo, cottonseed). Fungal growth requires a readily available carbohydrate (supplied by grains), adequate moisture, oxygen, and appropriate temperatures (often 12–25°C; Wilson and Abramson 1992). Plant or fungal stressors (e.g., drought, high ambient temperatures, insect damage, mechanical harvest damage, and reduced plant vigor) predispose crop plants to infestation by toxigenic fungi with subsequent mycotoxin production (Richard and Cole 1989; Ominski et al. 1994). Environmental and plant stress factors are sometimes used by plant pathologists to predict mold infestations and probable mycotoxin production.

Although specific fungi are associated with mycotoxin formation, simple visual or cultural examination of grain or feed cannot be used to determine safety for animals. Many toxigenic strains of molds can occur in grains without the production of mycotoxins, and there is little correlation between spore counts or degree of fungal growth and presence of mycotoxins. Conversely, absence of molds does not mean that a feed is safe from mycotoxins, since high temperature and pressure during milling may reduce fungal populations so that mold growth is not apparent. However, the common mycotoxins are resistant to the temperatures that kill molds and may persist in feeds when there is no evidence of fungal contamination (Osweiler et al. 1985).

Two general categories of fungi recognized are field fungi and storage fungi (Christensen and Kaufmann 1965; Wilson and Abramson 1992). Field fungi grow in crops prior to harvest. Fusarium spp. are recognized as a source of common mycotoxins. They require high relative humidity (>70%) and grain moisture (>23%) for growth. Field fungi often cause death of ovules, shriveling of seeds or kernels, and weakening or death of embryos. The grading term for this effect is “weathering.”

The field fungi grow poorly after harvest because storage to prevent spoilage precludes these conditions, and growth and toxin production appear not to occur readily if dry grain is remoistened (Christensen and Kaufmann 1965).

Storage fungi include the genera Aspergillus and Penicillium, which account for several mycotoxins important in swine production. These fungi may grow and produce mycotoxins even when moisture content ranges from 14–18% and at temperatures that vary from 10–50°C. Aspergillus flavus, normally considered a storage fungus, often produces significant concentrations of aflatoxin in crops prior to harvest.

Mycotoxins occur sporadically both seasonally and geographically (Pier 1981). Certain geographic regions are considered at high risk for specific mycotoxins. This regional predilection may be strongly influenced, however, by local conditions such as early frost, drought, and insect damage. In addition, long-distance transport of grains and finished feeds, as well as blending of grains, damage in transit, and improper storage, can obscure regional differences.

Environmental and management conditions may influence mycotoxin production and animal exposure to mycotoxins. Mycotoxin concentrations are higher in grain that is damaged, light, or broken, which occurs, for example, in screenings. When screenings are fed on the farm or sold locally at harvest time, there may be increased exposure to high concentrations of mycotoxins; grain producers who also have a farrowing operation may give lower-quality grain to sows for short periods of time during harvest. Grain that is slightly above optimum moisture for storage may continue to respire and produce water; eventually a portion of the storage bin will achieve free-moisture levels supportive of mold growth and toxin production. Alternating warm and cool temperatures during fall and spring may favor moisture migration and condensation within a storage bin. Each time a fungal-contaminated grain is cracked or ground, the protective seed coat is broken and the
grain is susceptible to molding. Feed stored in warm, humid conditions such as a nursery may mold and produce mycotoxins within only a few days. Table 56.1 shows the fungi and their growth conditions that favor production of specific mycotoxins.

**INTOXICATION BY MYCOTOXINS**

The most important factor in toxicosis is access to contaminated grain by a susceptible animal. Dietary deficiencies of protein, selenium, and vitamins have been suggested as predisposing factors in mycotoxicosis, but well-documented examples are rare. Drugs that reduce or enhance foreign-compound metabolism could influence response to mycotoxins, since most common mycotoxins are metabolized to intermediate or final products that differ in toxicity from the parent mycotoxin (Oswelier et al. 1985; Beasley et al. 1986). This type of drug interaction is more likely with aflatoxins and ochratoxin than with the trichothecenes.

Combinations of some mycotoxins may potentiate the action of one another, or at least exert an additive effect. One example of this is the combination of aflatoxin and ochratoxin (Huff et al. 1988; Harvey et al. 1989a). Currently there is little evidence that common mycotoxins act synergistically. Fortunately, conditions for production of several mycotoxins concurrently in the same grain appear to be relatively uncommon.

Some mycotoxins are reported to alter immune function under certain conditions. Aflatoxins, some trichothecenes, and ochratoxin A have been demonstrated to be immunosuppressive in domestic or laboratory animals. Common diseases influenced by aflatoxin under experimental conditions include swine erysipelas, swine dysentery, and salmonellosis. Generally, immunosuppressive effects of aflatoxins and trichothecenes are seen only at concentrations that cause subtle or chronic changes typical of the mycotoxin. Marin et al. 2002, reported that 4 weeks feeding of 280 ppb aflatoxin reduced weight gain in swine while also increasing leukocyte count and raising serum gamma globulin. This same study demonstrated that immune response to *Mycoplasma agalactiae* was reduced and that cytokine mRNA expression in phytohemagglutinin-stimulated blood cells was associated with decreased proinflammatory factors, IL-1 beta and TNF-alpha, but increased anti-inflammatory IL-10 cytokine expression. Because the mycotoxin interaction is usually expressed as the infectious disease, mycotoxin-facilitated disease is difficult to detect or confirm. Normal immune function is expected to return after exposure to the toxin ends (Pier 1981; Panangala et al. 1986; Richard and Cole 1989).

**CLINICAL MYCOTOXICOSES**

Clinical response of swine to mycotoxins may be acute, subacute, or chronic and is both dose and time dependent, similar to other chemical toxins. For known mycotoxins of clinical importance, response is usually subacute or chronic and the presenting signs are often subtle and vague. Many times problems are expressed only as alterations of the reproductive cycle, reduced feed intake, slow growth, or impaired feed efficiency. Nevertheless, an understanding of the range of effects for specific mycotoxins is important in differential diagnosis and evaluation of clinical prognosis for mycotoxin diseases. Common mycotoxins affecting swine are summarized in Table 56.2.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mycotoxin</th>
<th>Most Susceptible</th>
<th>Clinical Effects</th>
<th>Lesions</th>
<th>Diagnostic Specimens and Tests</th>
<th>Therapy and/or Prevention</th>
<th>Residue Concerns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aflatoxin</td>
<td>Piglets, feeder pigs</td>
<td>Reduced growth, hepatotoxicosis, Immune dysfunction</td>
<td>Hepatic necrosis, bile duct hyperplasia</td>
<td>Aflatoxin in feed; AF M1 in liver or urine</td>
<td>Vitamin E and selenium supplements, Aluminosilicate in diet</td>
<td>Residues occur in liver and milk for &lt;3 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DON</td>
<td>Feeder pig, Finishers Sows</td>
<td>Feed refusal, reduced growth</td>
<td>Weight loss</td>
<td>DON &gt;1 ppm in diet</td>
<td>Change feed</td>
<td>Not likely to cause residues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fumonisin</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Pulmonary edema, dyspnea, cyanosis, 2–4 hrs to death, Abortion in sows.</td>
<td>Pulmonary edema, hepatosis</td>
<td>Histological lesions of pulmonary edema or hepatosis; FB1 in feed</td>
<td>Change feed; treat for liver damage; avoid grain screenings in diet</td>
<td>Residues brief, most likely in liver and kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diacetoxy-Scirpenol or T-2 Toxin</td>
<td>Feeder pig, Finishers Sows</td>
<td>Feed refusal, Diarrhea, Leucopenia, Oral ulceration, Immune suppression</td>
<td>Oral ulcers, gastric ulcers, lymphoid and thymic depletion</td>
<td>Histological lesions of ulceration, lymphopenia, leucopenia, feed analysis</td>
<td>Change feed and treat for diarrhea/ulcers</td>
<td>Not likely to cause residues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergot</td>
<td>Sows Nursing pigs</td>
<td>Agalactia with piglet starvation, Peripheral gangrene</td>
<td>Piglet starvation</td>
<td>Ergot bodies or alkaloids in urine or diet; peripheral vascular lesions</td>
<td>Avoid ergot in grain</td>
<td>Residues brief, not likely to be significant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ochratoxin</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Reduced growth, Polydipsia, polyuria, renal failure</td>
<td>Gastric ulcers, Pale swollen kidneys</td>
<td>Histological evidence of gastric ulcers and renal tubular damage or fibrosis</td>
<td>Change feed; low protein diet for kidney damage recovery</td>
<td>High probability of persistent residues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zearalenone</td>
<td>Prepuberal gilts Cycling sows Young boars</td>
<td>Hyperestrogenism in young gilts, Pseudopregnancy, delayed cycling, early embryonic death, Reduced libido</td>
<td>Vulvovaginitis, Vaginal keratinization, Retained Corpora lutea, Reduced testicular size</td>
<td>Histological lesion of vaginal keratinization; Elevated serum progesterone; Zearalenone in feed</td>
<td>Change feed; treat gilts for prolapse; Administer 10 mg PGF2α to pseudopregnant sows</td>
<td>Rapidly excreted in urine; low residue probability</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Aflatoxins

Aspergillus flavus and A. parasiticus produce aflatoxins in grains and oilseeds both in storage and before harvest. Although many areas of North America have conditions supportive of aflatoxin production, conditions leading to aflatoxin production often occur in the southeastern United States (Richard and Cole 1989).

Aflatoxins B1, B2, G1, and G2 occur in grains. When Aflatoxin B1 (AFB1) is metabolized by mammals, it occurs in milk or urine as aflatoxin M1. Aflatoxin B1 is the most abundant and most toxic fraction under natural contamination (Jelinik et al. 1989; Richard and Cole 1989).

Aflatoxin B1 is metabolized by liver microsomal mixed-function oxidases to form at least seven metabolites. The major metabolite of aflatoxin is an epoxide, which binds covalently to nucleic acids and proteins and is believed to be responsible for causing hepatic cancer as well as toxic signs and lesions. Impairment of protein synthesis and subsequent inability to mobilize fats result in characteristic early lesions of hepatic fatty change and necrosis, as well as reduced growth rate. Animals on protein-deficient diets are more susceptible to aflatoxin, and increased dietary protein will protect against aflatoxin effects on weight gain (Coffey et al. 1989).

Toxicity of aflatoxin is affected by dosage, length of exposure, animal species, and age of animal. Acute toxicity is uncommon. The single oral dose LD50 for swine is 0.62 mg/kg body weight; dietary levels of 2–4 parts per million (ppm) are associated with acute fatal toxicity, while rations containing 260 ppm for several weeks were associated only with reduced growth rate (Allcroft 1969). Exposure to low or moderate concentrations in feed for several weeks is a common circumstance of exposure. Combined evidence from experimental reports, field cases, and my personal experience suggests that concentrations of naturally occurring aflatoxins above 300 ppb fed for a period of several weeks will likely cause reduced growth and feed efficiency (Allcroft 1969; Cook et al. 1989; Harley et al. 1987, 1989a; Richard and Cole 1989; Dilkin et al. 2003).

The experimental threshold dietary concentration for clinical effects varies widely. Young swine are more susceptible to aflatoxins than finishing hogs or adults, and mitigating factors may include dietary protein level, vitamin A deficiency, and inadequate selenium intake. Effects of aflatoxins may be both time and dosage dependent. Liver lesions have been reported caused by concentrations as low as 140 ppb fed for 12 weeks in 18–64 kg swine, and 690 ppb was associated with mild liver lesions in 64–91 kg finishing hogs (Allcroft 1969). In my experience, prolonged feeding of aflatoxin at concentrations above 400 ppb can cause microscopic liver lesions. Dilkin et al. 2003, fed 50 (ppb) of Aflatoxin B1 to weaned piglets for 28 days. Body weight gain and feed consumption were not affected, and there were no gross or microscopic lesions found. In addition, no evidence of changes in complete blood count or clinical chemistry were detected. Marin et al. (2002) fed Aflatoxin B1 (AFB1) to weanling pigs at 140 and 280 ppb for 28 days. AFB1 at 280 ppb caused significant decrease in weight gain, but caused no effect on total red blood cell count, differential leukocyte count, total globulin, albumins, or total protein concentration in serum. However, gamma globulin was significantly increased at both 140 ppb and 280 ppb. The lower concentration of AFB1 (140 ppb) resulted in reduced average daily gain that was not statistically significant (P <.05). Aflatoxin at 50 ppb when fed concurrently with 30 ppm Fumonisin B1 (FB1) caused decreased feed consumption and reduced feed conversion (Dilkin et al. 2003), but effects were attributed mainly to FB1. Much higher dietary concentrations of FB1 have resulted in significant clinical and pathologic effects. Harvey et al. (1995a, b) fed 2.5 ppm AFB1 to 17.5 kg barrows for 35 days. Body weight, gain, and feed consumption were significantly decreased by aflatoxin feeding. When 100 ppm of Fumonisin B1 (FB1) was fed with 2.5 ppm AFB1, mitogen-induced lymphoblastogenic stimulation index was decreased by aflatoxin and FB1 diets, and the combination diet significantly decreased cell-mediated immunity compared to single toxin diets. Thus AFB1 and FB1 in culture material, singly or in combination, can adversely affect clinical performance, serum biochemical, hematologic, and immunologic values and induce lesions in growing barrows. One should remember that the dosages of this study were very high and do not commonly occur under natural conditions.

Clinical signs of acute to subacute toxicosis are depression and anorexia. Anemia, ascites, icterus, and hemorrhagic diarrhea may develop. Coagulopathy characterized by hypoprothrombinemia may occur. Enzymes associated with hepatocellular damage are elevated, including aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase, alkaline phosphatase, and gamma glutamyl transferase. Other serum clinical chemistry changes observed have been decreases in serum total iron-binding capacity, total protein, albumin, cholesterol, blood urea nitrogen, and glucose (Harvey et al. 1989a). Total bilirubin, icterus index, sulfobromophthalein clearance, prothrombin time, and partial thromboplastin time are also elevated in clinical aflatoxicosis (Panangala et al. 1986).

Gross lesions associated with porcine aflatoxicosis include pale tan or clay-colored liver with centrilobular hemorrhages, subserosal petechial to ecchymotic hemorrhages, and intestinal and colonic hemorrhages. As the course of aflatoxicosis progresses, the liver becomes
yellow and fibrosis develops, characterized by a firm, hard liver with accentuated lobular pattern. The yellow discoloration of icterus occurs at serosal and mucosal surfaces (Cook et al. 1989; Harvey et al. 1989b).

Microscopic alterations are useful for diagnostic purposes and generally include hepatocyte vacuolization, necrosis, and fatty change, which is more predominant around central veins. As disease progresses to subacute or chronic, hepatomegaly and eosinophils are seen. Interlobular fibrosis and characteristic biliary hyperplasia develop in chronic cases (Cook et al. 1989; Harvey et al. 1988). Full evaluation and diagnosis of aflatoxicosis should include a search for the characteristic lesions.

Significant reproductive effects of aflatoxin in swine have not been documented. Sows fed aflatoxin have maintained normal reproduction through four successive gestations at dietary concentrations of 500 and 700 ppb. Although gestation and farrowing were normal, piglets nursing these sows had reduced growth rate due to aflatoxin excretion in the milk (Armbricht et al. 1972; McKnight et al. 1983).

Aflatoxins are recognized as immunosuppressive agents in many species. Aflatoxin is an immunomodulating agent that acts primarily on cell-mediated immunity and phagocytic cell function (Bondy and Pestka 2000). Piglets nursing on sows exposed to AFB1 may be immunocompromised. Sows fed diets containing either 800 or 400 ppb purified AFB1 throughout gestation and lactation had B1 and M1 residues in milk 5 and 25 days after parturition, at approximately 1000-fold lower than that in the feed and with increases during the 25 days after parturition. Lymphoproliferative response to mitogens was reduced and monocyte-derived macrophages failed to efficiently produce superoxide anions after oxidative burst stimulation in vitro. Ability of macrophages to phagocytose red blood cells was not compromised, but granulocytic cells showed a reduction of chemotactic response in vitro to chemoattractant bactria factor and casein (Silvotti et al. 1997).

Residues of aflatoxin M1 occur in tissues, milk, and urine of swine but are not persistent. Dietary concentrations of 400 ng/g resulted in tissue residues of 0.05 ppb or less, and these rapidly disappeared when aflatoxin feeding stopped (Trucksess et al. 1982).

Diagnosis of aflatoxicosis should be considered when acute icterus, hemorrhages, or coagulopathy are not explained by other causes. Chronic signs of slow growth, malnutrition, and persistent low-grade infectious diseases should also suggest investigation for aflatoxicosis. Characteristic liver lesions and clinical chemistry changes would strongly suggest aflatoxicosis. Chemical analysis of the ration and grain supply may identify aflatoxin, but sometimes the grain that initiated a chronic problem is no longer available or representative. Any grain sampling should be representative (see the section Prevention and Management of Mold and Mycotoxin Problems for sampling procedure). Examination of suspect grain sample under ultraviolet light has long been a screening approach. This simple procedure identifies kojic acid, a metabolite produced by aflatoxin-producing fungi. However, it may falsely implicate some samples and should never be relied upon without a confirmatory chemical analysis for AFB1.

Aflatoxicosis is generally a herd problem and not amenable to individual animal treatment. Specific practical antidotes for affected animals are not available. Work in poultry has shown some benefit from increased dietary selenium. Increased dietary levels of high-quality protein and supplementation with vitamins (A, D, E, K, and B complex) are recommended (Copco and Swanson 1986; Coffey et al. 1989). Hydrated sodium calcium aluminosilicate (HSCAS) at 0.5% in the diet provided substantial protection against loss of gain and occurrence of lesions induced by dietary aflatoxin in swine (Harvey et al. 1989c). Treatment of grain with anhydrous ammonia for 10–14 days has reduced aflatoxin concentration in grain. Swine accept ammoniated grain and their growth is comparable to controls. Presently, this method of treatment has not been cleared by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

Since aflatoxin may compromise the immune system, animals with concurrent infectious diseases should be aggressively treated with appropriate antimicrobial therapy and passive immunization if appropriate. However, specific studies with the antibiotics lincomycin and tylosin added to aflatoxin-contaminated diets neither decreased or enhanced the detrimental effects of aflatoxicosis in growing swine (Harvey et al. 1995b).

Ochratoxin and Citrinin
Ochratoxin is a fungal nephrotoxin produced by Aspergillus ochraceus and Penicillium viridicum. Citrinin, also a nephrotoxin, is produced by P. citrinum. Based on clinical and pathologic effects in swine, both toxins can be considered together. Toxins are associated with corn, barley, rye, and wheat, most commonly from eastern and northern Europe, Canada, and the northern United States (Jelinik et al. 1989; Juszkiewicz et al. 1992). Significant concentrations of ochratoxin can occur at temperatures as low as 4°C. Ochratoxin A has been prevalent in Denmark and is associated with the feeding of barley and oats (Carlton and Krogh 1979). In the United States, at least one case has been documented in swine fed contaminated corn (Cook et al. 1986). A survey of Romanian slaughter pigs revealed that 98% of serum samples were positive for ochratoxin A (OTA) at concentrations as high as 13.4 ng/g, although 85% of samples contained less than 5 ng OTA per ml. Measurable levels of OTA occurred in 75–80% of swine liver and kidney. (Curturi et al. 2001).

Toxicity appears related to binding of OTA in specific receptors for organic ion transporters of the renal tubule (Huessner et al. 2002). The mechanism of action appears

---

CHAPTER 56 OCCURRENCE OF MYCOTOXINS IN GRAINS AND FEEDS 919
to result from a combination of inhibition of phenylalanine metabolizing enzymes, inhibition of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) production, and accumulation of lipid peroxidation (Marquardt and Frohlich 1992). Resulting effects on protein synthesis may be related to inhibition of phenylalanine metabolism. Immunosuppressive effects are associated with a combination of suppressed lymphocyte proliferation and interference with the complement system (Bondy and Pestka 2000).

In swine, principal effects are manifest on proximal renal tubules. Ochratoxin A at 1 mg/kg body weight is lethal in 5–6 days. Concentrations of 1 ppm in the diet for 3 months cause polydipsia, polyuria, reduced growth, and lowered feed efficiency. Levels as low as 200 ppb for several weeks cause detectable renal lesions. Additional clinical signs are diarrhea, anorexia, and dehydration. Sometimes no clinical signs are noted and the only effect observed is the appearance of pale, firm kidneys at slaughter, commonly associated with ochratoxin in endemic areas such as Denmark and Sweden.

Clinical pathology changes include increases in blood urea nitrogen, plasma protein, packed-cell volume, aspartate aminotransferase, and isocitric dehydrogenase, as well as increased urinary glucose and protein. Citrinin, ochratoxin, and penicillic acid are synergistic and primarily produce nephrosis characterized by necrosis of the proximal convoluted tubules, followed by interstitial fibrosis. Liver damage, characterized by fatty change and necrosis, may be present but is less severe than for other primary hepatoses. Gastric ulceration is a characteristic and consistent lesion in prolonged clinical cases (Szczech et al. 1973; Carlton and Krogh 1979). Boars given 20 µg OTA per os for 6 weeks had reduced ejaculation volume, initial viability, and progressive motility. Viability, initial forward motility, and motility after 24 hours were significantly reduced during a 24-hour storage period (Biro et al. 2003).

Diagnosis should include demonstration of the toxin and/or its metabolite, ochratoxin alpha, in feed or fresh kidney. A simple HPLC method recently reported can detect from 0.3–3 ng ochratoxin A or B (Curturi and Gareis 2001). The approximate half-life for ochratoxin A in swine tissue is 3–5 days, and little or no ochratoxin can be found in kidneys 30 days after ochratoxin exposure ceases (Carlton and Krogh 1979). Mildly affected animals may recover if removed promptly from the contaminated feed. However, if the clinical course is prolonged, recovery is slow.

### Table 56.3. Clinical guide to mycotoxins in swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Toxin</th>
<th>Category of Swine</th>
<th>Dietary Level</th>
<th>Clinical Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aflatoxins</td>
<td>Growing-finishing</td>
<td>&lt;100 ppb</td>
<td>No clinical effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>200–400 ppb</td>
<td>Reduced growth and feed efficiency; possible immunosuppression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>400–800 ppb</td>
<td>Microscopic liver lesions, cholangiohepatitis; increased serum liver enzymes; immunosuppression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>800–1200 ppb</td>
<td>Reduced growth; decreased feed consumption, rough hair coat; icterus, hyoproteinemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brood sows and gils</td>
<td>&gt;2000 ppb</td>
<td></td>
<td>Acute hepatitis and coagulopathy; deaths in 3–10 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500–750 ppb</td>
<td>No effect on conception; deliver normal piglets that grow slowly due to aflatoxin in milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ochratoxin and Citrinin</td>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td>200 ppb</td>
<td>Mild renal lesions seen at slaughter; reduced weight gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1000 ppb</td>
<td>Polydipsia; reduced growth; azotemia and glycosuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4000 ppb</td>
<td>Polydipsia and polyuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sows and gils</td>
<td></td>
<td>3–9 ppm</td>
<td>Normal pregnancy when fed first month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichothecenes</td>
<td>Growing-finishing</td>
<td>1 ppm</td>
<td>No effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-2 and DAS</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 ppm</td>
<td>Decreased feed consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
<td>Decreased feed consumption; oral/dermal irritation; immunosuppression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20 ppm</td>
<td>Complete feed refusal, vomiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deoxynivalenol</td>
<td>Growing-finishing</td>
<td>1 ppm</td>
<td>No clinical effect; minimal (10%) reduction in feed consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(DON, vomitoxin)</td>
<td></td>
<td>5–10 ppm</td>
<td>25–50% reduction in feed consumption; taste aversion to same diet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20 ppm</td>
<td>Complete feed refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zearalenone</td>
<td>Prepuberal gilts</td>
<td>1–3 ppm</td>
<td>Estrogenic; vulvovaginitis, prolapse in prepuberal gilts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cycling sows and gils</td>
<td>&gt;30 ppm</td>
<td>Early embryonic death when fed 1–3 weeks post mating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergot</td>
<td>All swine</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sows last trimester</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>Gangrene of ears, tail, feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.0%</td>
<td>Decreased feed consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>Agalactia, reduced piglet birth weight; piglet starvation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fumonisins</td>
<td>All swine</td>
<td>25 ppm</td>
<td>Minimal changes in clinical chemistry – increased AST, AP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50–75 ppm</td>
<td>Minimal reduction in feed intake; possible mild hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>75–100 ppm</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake, reduced weight gain; hepatitis with icterus and increased bilirubin and GGT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;100 ppm</td>
<td>Acute pulmonary edema after 3–5 days consumption; survivors develop hepatitis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Trichothecenes
The trichothecenes include at least 148 structurally related compounds. Those of known veterinary importance are produced by Fusaria, especially *F. graminearum* and *F. sporotrichioides*. This group of sesquiterpene toxins has an epoxide group that is responsible for most toxic effects. The three receiving most attention worldwide are T-2 toxin, diacetoxyscirpenol (DAS), and deoxynivalenol (DON, vomitoxin). Even though much work has been done with the macrocyclic trichothecenes, T-2 and DAS, in swine, they rarely occur at toxic concentrations in North American grains.

Trichothecenes are metabolized in two phases. Initially (phase 1) oxidation and hydrolysis create transformation products that are then conjugated with glucuronic acid. In phase 2 the epoxide ring of trichothecenes is cleaved by gastrointestinal microflora (Bauer 1995; Beasley et al. 1986). Deoxynivalenol undergoes no extensive metabolism; only deoxynivalenol glucuronide and the de-epoxide product are produced. Serum, bile, and urine may contain DON after experimental feeding of as little as 4.3 ppm dietary DON. However, de-epoxy DON is found only in urine (Doll et al. 2003). The glucuronide is rapidly excreted, mainly in urine, and does not accumulate in plasma (Eriksen et al. 2003).

Trichothecenes can cause direct skin irritation and necrosis, profound lymphoid depletion, gastroenteritis, diarrhea, shock, cardiovascular failure, and death from experimental direct dosing. Chronic administration causes hematopoietic suppression and eventual pancytopenia. In addition, they are immunosuppressants (Coppock et al. 1985; Beasley 1993; Lundeen et al. 1986). Although T-2 and DAS are potent toxins, their strong tendency to induce feed refusal and/or vomiting in swine makes them somewhat self-limiting as toxins, except as potential causes of reduced feed consumption.

DON has great economic importance in world-wide feed grain use because it is established as a common mycotoxin of corn, barley and wheat and is well documented as a cause of feed refusal or reduced feed intake in swine (Trenholm et al. 1984; Russell et al. 1990; Bohm 1992; Bergsjo et al. 1993; Rotter et al. 1996). In corn, DON occurs at low levels during some harvest seasons, with an incidence as high as 50%. Grain contamination in other grains and in other parts of the world also occurs (Hietaniemi and Kumpulainen 1991). Swine begin to reduce voluntary feed consumption at DON concentrations of 1 ppm or more, and feed refusal may be complete at concentrations in excess of 10 ppm (Young et al. 1983; Pollman et al. 1985; Bohm 1992; Bergsjo et al. 1992; Rotter et al. 1996).

Many studies have demonstrated only feed refusal with concurrent health effects in swine that are consistent with effects of reduced nutrient intake (Lun et al. 1985). Among a variety of blood chemistry parameters in pigs fed DON, only alpha-globulin and possibly cortisol were altered in animals fed diets containing DON. Other sporadic differences appeared to be due to differences in feed intake; hematologic and blood chemistry tests are of limited value in diagnosing low-level dietary DON in swine (Prelusky et al. 1994a). At low dosages of DON, hematological, clinical, and immunological changes are transitory and decrease as compensatory/adaptation mechanisms are established (Rotter et al. 1994). Effects of a 3.5 mg DON/kg diet included increased liver weights, decreased serum proteins and albumin, and a temporary fall in packed-blood-cell volume, serum calcium, and serum phosphorus. No other effects on hematological, biochemical, or immunological parameters occurred (Bergsjo et al. 1993). Diets containing 3.0 mg DON/kg fed for 28 days appeared associated with increased skin temperature, depressed feed intake, reduction in thyroid size, and apparent hyperplasia and increased mucosal folding of the esophageal portion of the stomach. Serum T4 (thyroxine) levels were increased at 7 and 28 days of exposure. Other changes reported were elevated serum albumin levels, decreased alpha-globulin levels, increased albumin/globulin ratio, and delayed titer response to immunization with sheep red blood cells. An increase in the segmented neutrophil count was observed (Rotter et al. 1994).

Recent work has shown that DON in swine causes conditioned taste aversion, and flavoring agents will be ineffective in inducing swine to consume contaminated grain (Osweiler et al. 1990). Others have shown that T-2 toxin, closely related to DON, may affect brain neurotransmitters, such as serotonin or dopamine, contributing to feed refusal and lethargy (MacDonald et al. 1988). A number of studies have implicated changes in brain neurochemistry as a factor in feed refusal and/or vomiting induced by DON or T-2 toxin. Central serotoninergic (5-hydroxytryptamine [5HT]) pathways are believed to be involved in the mechanisms of anorexia and/or emesis evoked by DON (Prelusky et al. 1992). Low-level DON exposure (30 μg/kg intragastric [IG]) caused a rapid and sustained increase in cerebrospinal fluid 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5HIAA) for up to 20 hours post dosing, indicating that elevated brain serotonin turnover related to DON exposure is important in the decreased feed intake of animals fed DON (Prelusky 1993, 1996). DON causes elevated norepinephrine and depressed dopamine concentrations, while levels of 5HT increase initially and then drop significantly at 8 hours. However, DON has only weak affinity for 5HT receptors, suggesting that relatively high concentrations of the toxin are needed for this effect, and there may be other mechanisms of interaction with serotoninergic receptors at the central level. Feeding grain contaminated with 5.5 ppm DON and 0.5 ppm 15-acetyl DON, 26.8 ppm Fusaric Acid, and 0.4 ppm zearalenone caused an expected reduction in feed intake and weight gain (Swamy et al. 2002). In addition, there were significantly
reduced concentrations of dopamine in the hypothalamus and pons as well as concentration of dihydroxyindoleacetic acid and norepinephrine in the pons. Prelusky (1997) found that infusion of DON by intraperitoneal osmotic pump caused a more prolonged and sustained decrease in weight gain than an equivalent dietary exposure. Pigs fed DON tend to recover weight gain significantly after the initial 3 days of exposure to dietary DON. This was interpreted as evidence that the effect of DON on weight gain is due to more than just reduced feed intake. Although several neurochemical changes caused by DON are compatible with known neurochemical changes for chemical-induced anorexia, the feed refusal effects of acute DON exposure need further clarification.

Diagnosis of mycotoxin-related feed refusal presents a difficult problem to the clinician. Other toxins, drugs, concurrent disease, inclement weather, and reduced water intake may contribute to feed refusal. There is no apparent detectable effect of DON on plasma levels of brain neurotransmitters at DON doses that cause vomiting in swine. Thus, sampling of peripheral blood would not predict the central serotoninergic effects associated with DON toxicity (Prelusky 1994). Since trichothecenes are rapidly metabolized, diagnosis by analysis of tissue or blood samples is rarely possible or practical. Fortunately, due to rapid metabolism and excretion, significant residues of trichothecene mycotoxins in edible swine tissues are unlikely (Bauer 1995). Often the DON concentration detected chemically in feed is insufficient to fully explain feed refusal. One should remember that feed concentrations are approximations, that sampling is never completely representative, and that many factors in the herd and environment may not be apparent to either the clinician or the producer.

Treatment of DON toxicity with drugs has been studied very little. Antiemetics that are specific serotonin (5HT)-receptor antagonists (ICS 205-930, BRL 43694 A) have been shown to prevent DON-induced vomiting in swine. Anticholinergic compounds were moderately effective at high dosages by acting directly at the emetic center. However, antihistaminic and anti-dopaminergic antiemetics without anticholinergic activity were not effective antiemetics against DON (Pre- 
lusky and Trenholm 1993).

Attempts to prevent DON effects have centered on feeding adsorbents or on chemical or physical means of detoxification. These have included calcium aluminosilicate, bentonite, and sodium bisulfite. None of these have been successful in an economic and practical way. Recently, Avantaggiato et al. (2004) have shown in an in vitro gastrointestinal model significant reduction in intestinal absorption of DON and Nivalenol. With 2% activated carbon (charcoal) there was a reduction of absorption from 51% to 28% for DON and from 21% to 12% for Nivalenol. If the in vitro model is confirmed effective in feeding trials, this could offer another alterna-

tive to adsorption prophylaxis against DON. Feeding of yeast cell wall polymer (a glucomannan polymer, GM polymer) prevented some of the known effects of trichothecenes on brain neurochemistry and serum Ig concentrations (Swamy et al. 2002). Another novel detoxification method was described in which contents of the large intestine of chickens (CLIC) incorporated into swine diets reduced the feed refusal effects of 2.1 ppm dietary DON (He et al. 1993). Anaerobic incubation of swine colonic contents with DON demonstrated degradation of the epoxide ring of DON (Kollarzick et al. 1994). Additional data (Eriksen et al. 2002) has shown that different gastrointestinal microfloras of swine have different capacities to metabolize trichothecenes. They found that intestinal de-epoxidation ability is common on some Swedish swine farms, and that this characteristic may be transferred between pigs in a herd. These studies may suggest future means for management or prevention of the feed refusal effects from DON. Physical decontamination of deoxynivalenol from barley was recently demonstrated by use of an abrasive pearling procedure, which removed 66% of DON with loss of only 15% of the grain mass (House et al. 2003). This method could provide a practical means for reducing DON contamination to a manageable level in years of widespread crop contamination.

**Zearalenone (F-2 Toxin)**

*Fusarium graminearum (F. roseum)* produces zearalenone, an estrogenic mycotoxin in corn, milo, and wheat. *Fusarium roseum* can produce either zearalenone or deoxynivalenol (Diekman and Green 1992). High moisture (23–25%) is required for growth. Under laboratory conditions, optimum production of zearalenone occurs when *F. graminearum* is incubated at a water activity (a[w]) = 0.97 for 2 weeks at 28°C followed by 4 weeks at 12°C (Jimenez et al. 1996). Poorly dried ear corn and alternating high and low ambient temperatures favor zearalenone production (Christensen and Kaufmann 1965). Often it is produced in the field prior to harvest.

Zearalenone is a substituted resorcylic acid lactone similar in structure to the anabolic agent zearanol used in cattle. As an estrogen, zearalenone binds competitively to estrogen receptors of the uterus, mammary gland, liver, and hypothalamus. It will cause hypertrophy of the uterus and cornification of vaginal epithelium. Zearalenone is rapidly absorbed from the intestine and is metabolized to alpha- and beta-zearalenol and alpha- and beta-zearanol and then conjugated with glucuronic acid for excretion in bile and urine (Gajecki 2002; Meyer et al. 2000).

Clinical signs vary with dosage and age of swine exposed. In prepuberal gilts, concentrations as low as 1–5 ppm in the ration cause vulvovaginitis, which is characterized by tumescence and edema of the vulva and vagina and precocious mammary development. Tenesmus is common, occasionally with resultant rectal pro-
lapses (Osweiler 2000). Zearalenone at clinically effective dosage in sexually immature gilts is reported to have caused ovarian follicle atresia and apoptotic-like changes in granule cells. Intensified cell proliferation was observed in both uterus and oviduct (Obremski et al. 2003). Prepuberal gilts fed 2 ppm for up to 90 days attained normal sexual maturity with no adverse effects on subsequent reproductive function (Green et al. 1990; Rainey et al. 1990).

Reproductive effects of zearalenone on mature cycling sows are quite different from the effects seen in prepuberal gilts. As with other estrogens, zearalenone is luteotrophic in swine, and dietary concentrations of 3–10 ppm can induce anestrus in sows if consumed during the middle portion of the estrous cycle. Since estrogens are luteotrophic in swine, the probability of abortion in the last two trimesters of gestation appears very unlikely. Anestrus and elevated serum progesterone persist for several months; long after exposure to zearalenone has stopped (Edwards et al. 1987).

Fewer pigs per litter are seen in sows given high dietary concentrations of zearalenone. The susceptible period for reduced litter size appears to be in the preimplantation stage at 7–10 days post-mating (Long et al. 1983; Diekman and Long 1989). Zearalenone fed at 1 mg zearalenone/kg body weight (equivalent to approximately 60 ppm dietary zearalenone) on days 7 through 10 after mating resulted in milk blastocyst degeneration by day 11 and advanced degeneration by day 13. Viability of individual embryos is apparently not maintained beyond 21 days. During this time period zearalenone did not cause morphologic changes in the endometrium that could be associated with hyperestrogenism (height of the endometrial luminal epithelium and morphology of secretory vesicles in the endometrial glandular epithelium) (Long et al. 1992). Zearalenone at 22.1 ppm in the ration of breeding gilts caused a decrease in the number of corpora lutea, a decrease in ovarian weight, a decrease in the number of live embryos, and an increase in the number of dead-born piglets and abortions (Kordic et al. 1992).

Piglets born to sows receiving zearalenone may have enlarged external genitalia and uteri. Zearalenone and its metabolites, alpha and beta zearalenol, are present in milk of exposed sows and may contribute to estrogenic effects in piglets (Palyusik et al. 1980; Dacasto et al. 1995). A perinatal hyperestrogenic syndrome reported in swine herds and by experimental verification included lower conception rate, increased numbers of repeat breeders, decreased litter size, and increased numbers of stillbirths. Clinical signs in neonatal gilts were swelling of the vulva and teats and edematous infiltration of the perineal region, ventral abdomen, and umbilicus, usually accompanied by exudative, crusted inflammation and necrosis of the teats. An increase in splayleg and trembling piglets has been reported. Lesions of hyperestrogenism included enlargement of the ovary and uterus, ovarian follicle maturation, glandular proliferation of the endometrium, and epithelial proliferation in the vagina (Vanyi et al. 1994). Swine diets containing 2 ppm zearalenone from day 30 of gestation through weaning did not adversely affect reproduction in sows. Estrogenic effects on testes and on uterus and ovarian weights were observed in the piglets at 21 days of age, but subsequent breeding performance was not affected (Yang et al. 1995).

Preputial enlargement may occur in boars exposed to zearalenone. Young boars may have reduced libido and decreased testicular size, but mature boars are unaffected by concentrations of zearalenone as high as 200 ppm (Ruhr et al. 1983; Young and King 1983).

Differential diagnosis of zearalenone toxicosis should include estrogenic feed additives and natural estrogens such as coumestrol in mature alfalfa. Suspect rations of corn should first be analyzed for the presence of zearalenone, then for other estrogens. Feed samples available at the time of anestrus or return to service may not represent the contaminated feed that initiated the problem.

Treatment of zearalenone toxicosis depends on the nature of the effect and the age and reproductive status of swine. Removal of the feed from prepuberal gilts will allow regression of signs within 3–7 days. Medical and surgical treatment of vaginal and rectal prolapse may be necessary. For mature, nongravid sows with anestrus, administration of one 10 mg dose of prostaglandin $F_{2\alpha}$ or two 5 mg doses on successive days is useful in eliminating retained corpora lutea (B. N. Day, personal communication, 1982; Green et al. 1991). Dehydrated alfalfa has experimentally shown some protection from zearalenone-induced enlargement of the uterus of gilts (James and Smith 1982; Smith 1992), although the high concentrations needed (>20%) are not considered practical in swine diets. Activated charcoal or cholestyramine has been used at 2% in an in vitro gastrointestinal model system to evaluate its binding effect on zearalenone. Both activated charcoal and cholestyramine reduced absorption of zearalenone from 32% to 5% and 16%, respectively (Avantaggiato et al. 2003). The dramatic reduction caused by activated charcoal could be useful for contaminated grain if feeding trials are also effective.

**Ergot**

Ergot, *Claviceps purpurea*, is a parasitic fungus that affects cereal grains, especially rye, oats, and wheat. The fungus invades the grass ovary, forming a dark elongated body (sclerotium), which produces alkaloids that cause gangrene and reproductive interference. Major toxic alkaloids include ergotamine, ergotoxine, and ergometrine; total ergot alkaloid content commonly ranges from 0.2–0.6% of sclerotia weight. The U.S. Department of Agriculture has set a tolerance of 0.3% ergot in grain (Christensen and Kaufmann 1965).
Gangrenous ergotism is the result of a combination of vasoconstriction and endothelial damage, leading to prolonged ischemia of appendages and eventually gangrene. Because venous and lymphatic drainage remains intact, the gangrene is “dry” in nature. Signs occur over a period of days or weeks and include depression, reduced feed intake, rapid pulse and respiration, and general ill thrift. Lameness may occur, most commonly in rear limbs, and in advanced cases necrosis and sloughing of the tail, ears, and hooves can occur. Signs may be exacerbated by cold weather.

Ergot alkaloids affect reproduction indirectly by causing agalactia. Pregnant gilts fed either 0.3% or 1% sclerotia during gestation had low piglet birth weights, low piglet survival, and poor piglet weight gains. Agalactia occurred in 50% of gilts fed 0.3% sclerotia in the gestation and lactation rations (Nordskog and Clark 1945; Wiernusz and Schneider 1984). The agalactia induced is noninflammatory and results from the well-known ability of ergot to inhibit prolactin release in late gestation (Whitacre and Threlfall 1981). Both experimental and clinical evidence indicates that ergot in rations of pregnant sows is not generally a cause of abortion, and swine exposed to ergot during late gestation routinely suffer agalactia but rarely abortion (Osweiler et al. 1985).

Reduced weight gain may be caused by as little as 0.1% ergots in the ration. Higher levels (3.0%) have been implicated in feed wastage and slow growth (Roers et al. 1974).

Differential diagnosis should include zearalenone or other estrogenic factors, bacterial infections, and mastitis-metritis-agalactia syndrome. If the clinical signs suggest ergotism, grains should be examined for the presence of significant amounts of ergot sclerotia. In the case of ground or processed feeds, feed microscopy or chemical analysis for ergot alkaloids may be necessary to confirm the diagnosis.

Treatment of ergotism is general and supportive. Gangrenous areas should be cleaned and treated locally and secondary infections controlled with broad-spectrum antibiotics. Removal of the feed is followed by improvement within 2 weeks for gangrenous effects. When agalactia has occurred, milk production returns 3–7 days after feed is changed. In the interim, supplemental nutrition and milk replacers may be used to save the piglets.

**Fumonisins**

*Fusarium moniliforme* and *F. proliferatum* fungi are ubiquitous in white and yellow corn worldwide (Bezuidenhoudt et al. 1988; Steyn 1995; Shephard et al. 1996; Gelderblom et al. 1988). Recently, these fungi have been identified as the source of the fumonisin mycotoxins. Swine consuming fumonisins have been affected by the disease generally known as porcine pulmonary edema (PPE). Corn screenings contaminated with the fumonisin mycotoxins are the most likely source of fumonisin toxicosis (Harrison et al. 1990; Ross et al. 1991; Osweiler et al. 1992; Ross et al. 1992).

Fumonisins appear to be produced when corn is stressed by moderate drought followed by persistent rainfall or high humidity late in development, but full knowledge of the inciting conditions remain to be determined. Since corn screenings contain the highest concentrations of fumonisins, producers should be advised to clean poor-quality corn to remove damaged kernels before feeding.

Fumonisins commonly present in corn are fumonisin B1 (FB1), fumonisin B2 (FB2), and fumonisin B3 (FB3). They are water-soluble, heat-stable, and alkaline-resistant aliphatic hydrocarbons with a terminal amine group and two tricarboxylic acid side chains (Steyn 1995). The number and position of hydroxyl groups on the aliphatic hydrocarbon determine the structure as FB1, FB2, or FB3; the first two are of approximately equal toxicity, while FB3 is much less toxic.

In South Africa, fumonisin-contaminated corn is associated with esophageal cancer in a well-defined geographic area (Bezuidenhoudt et al. 1988). The fumonisins are known tumor promoters leading to precancerous liver nodules after appropriate initiation. Chronic fumonisin consumption by swine has experimentally caused esophageal hyperplasia and hepatic neoplasia (Casteel et al. 1993, 1994).

Acute PPE has been associated with increases in pulmonary intravascular macrophages and increased pulmonary arterial pressure (Smith et al. 1996). These responses have been hypothesized to lead to pulmonary edema either by increased pulmonary hydrostatic pressure or by pulmonary capillary endothelial cell damage.

Fumonisins are poorly absorbed orally (3–6% of ingested dose), and most ingested fumonisins remain in the gastrointestinal tract. Once absorbed, they are excreted readily and rapidly in both bile and urine (Prelusky et al. 1994b). Persistent tissue residues after toxicological or accidental exposure appear unlikely, but more work is needed to clarify the toxicokinetics of fumonisins.

**Mechanism of Action and Toxicity.** Fumonisins inhibit the enzyme-mediated conversion of sphinganine to sphingosine, thus raising the sphinganine/sphingosine (SA/SO) ratio and potentially interfering with cell cycle control and cell function (Norred et al. 1992; Riley et al. 1993; Ramasamy et al. 1995). FB1 affects several cell signaling proteins including protein kinase C (PKC), a serine/threonine kinase involved in a number of signal transduction pathways that include cytokine induction, carcinogenesis, and apoptosis (Gopee and Sharma 2004). Fumonisin B1 appears also to inhibit ceramide synthase in the sphingolipid signaling pathway on the ascending aortic impedance spectrum of pigs. This is associated with inhibition of myocardial L-type calcium
channels with a decrease in cardiac contractility, left heart failure, and pulmonary edema (Constable et al. 2003). The result clinically in pigs is massive pulmonary edema and hydrothorax. Smith et al. (2000) concluded that fumonisin-induced pulmonary edema is caused by left-sided heart failure and not by altered endothelial permeability. Interestingly, Zomborszky-Kovacs et al. (2002) reported that very low concentrations of FB1 fed for 8 weeks resulted in chronic pulmonary changes of connective tissue proliferation, in the subpleural and interlobular connective tissue of lungs and in peribronchial and peribronchiolar areas. Whether there is a relationship ranging from more acute to chronic low dose studies relative to porcine pulmonary edema is not clear from current literature.

More than 120 ppm dietary fumonisins for 4–10 days produces acute PPE (Haschek et al. 1992; Osweiler et al. 1992; Colvin et al. 1993). Surviving swine develop subacute hepatic toxicosis in 7–10 days. Dietary levels of more than 50 ppm cause hepatosis within 7–10 days. Although 25 ppm or less causes no apparent clinical effects, mild microscopic hepatic lesions are documented for dietary levels as low as 23 ppm (Moetlin et al. 1994). The serum SA/SO ratio has been altered experimentally by diets with as low as 5 ppm fumonisins, although the clinical relevance of this change is not known (Riley et al. 1993; Moetlin et al. 1994). FB1 and FB2 are similarly toxic to swine, and they appear to occur at a relatively constant ratio in field-contaminated corn (P. F. Ross, personal communication, 1996). FB3 appears to be nearly nontoxic to swine (G. D. Osweiler, unpublished data).

Fumonisins have been evaluated for their potential interactions with aflatoxins and deoxynivalenol (DON). Effects of aflatoxins and fumonisins were found to be additive when fed together, except for the variables cholinesterase and alkaline phosphatase, which showed a synergistic response to aflatoxins and FB1 (Harvey et al. 1995). For a combination of FB3 and DON, the effect on most variables was additive. However, for body weight, weight gain, hepatic weight, and mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration, the responses were interactive in a greater-than-additive manner (Harvey et al. 1996).

**Clinical Signs and Lesions.** Dietary concentrations of fumonisins greater than 120 ppm are likely to cause acute interstitial pulmonary edema and hydrothorax, with attack rates up to 50% and case fatality rates of 50–90%. Initially there is lethargy, restlessness, depression, and dermal hyperemia. Mild salivation, dyspnea, open-mouth breathing, posterior weakness, recumbence, and moist rales develop rapidly, followed by cyanosis, weakness, and death. Initial signs begin after 4–7 days of continuous fumonisin consumption (Colvin and Harrison 1992; Osweiler et al. 1992). Once signs appear, death usually occurs in 2–4 hours. Survivors may develop hepatic disease. Feeding fumonisins at concentrations from 75–100 ppm for 1–3 weeks, without development of pulmonary edema, causes hepatic disease characterized by icterus, anorexia, ill thrift, and weight loss (Osweiler et al. 1993).

Serum chemistry analyses show elevated concentrations of gamma glutamyl transferase (GGT), aspartate amino transferase (AST), alkaline phosphatase (ALP), lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), cholesterol, and bilirubin. Early increases in the serum enzymes and cholesterol are followed by increased GGT and serum bilirubin accompanied by clinical icterus (Osweiler et al. 1992; Colvin et al. 1993; Moetlin et al. 1994).

Based on current evidence, fumonisins are not considered potent immunosuppressants in swine. One study has shown transient reduction in lymphocyte blastogenesis and delayed titer response to pseudorabies vaccine (Osweiler et al. 1993). Others have also reported decreased lymphoblastogenesis (Harvey et al. 1995, 1996). Tornyos et al. (2003) determined humoral and cell-mediated immune response to FB1. Pigs were fed a high dose (100 mg/animal/day for 8 days) or in a low concentration for a longer period (1, 5, and 10 ppm for 3–4 months), and then vaccinated against Aujeszky’s disease with inactivated vaccine. Specific and nonspecific immune response in vitro cellular immune response was measured by the lymphocyte stimulation test (LST) induced by PHA-P, Con A, LPS, and inactivated suspension of the Aujeszky’s disease virus. Humoral immune response—e.g., specific antibody titer—was measured by virus neutralization (VN). None of the immunological parameters examined showed significant differences between groups. They concluded that fumonisin B1 had no significant effect on the humoral and cellular specific and nonspecific immune response.

The characteristic lesion of PPE is pulmonary edema and hydrothorax with 200–350 mL of clear, cell-free, straw-colored thoracic transudate. Lungs are heavy and wet with wide seams (3–10 mm) of interlobular edema. Bronchioles, bronchi, and trachea are relatively clear with little alveolar edema (Haschek et al. 1992; Osweiler et al. 1992; Colvin et al. 1993; Moetlin et al. 1994; Palyusik and Moran 1994). Acidophilic, fibrilar material is found in alveoli and interlobular lymphatics, and hyalinized alveolar capillary thrombi may be present. Increased numbers of pulmonary intravascular macrophages (PIM) filled with osmiophilic material have been reported by electron microscopy. This response is hypothesized to result from phagocytosis of damaged cellular components. Pancreatic necrosis and hepatitis with disrupted hepatic architecture, increased mitotic figures in hepatocytes, apoptosis and single-cell hepatic necrosis are typical lesions of subacute fumonisin toxicity (Haschek et al. 1992). Chronic exposure can include fibrosis, hepatic hyperplastic nodules and medial hypertrophy of small pulmonary arteries.

Abortions are common 1–4 days after onset of acute
signs (Osweiler et al. 1992; Becker et al. 1995), presumably due to fetal anoxia caused by severe pulmonary edema in the dam. Concentrations of 100 ppm FB₁ fed in the last 30 days of gestation did not cause abortion, fetal abnormalities, or infertility in sows (G. D. Osweiler, unpublished data). Persistent clinical signs or continuing reproductive problems after exposure is stopped have not been reported.

**Diagnosis.** Clinical signs of acute respiratory distress with high mortality and lesions of interstitial edema and hydrothorax suggest fumonisins toxicosis. A history of consumption of corn screenings or poor-quality corn is typical. Serum chemistry changes and elevated serum SA/SO ratios are expected, and the acute liver enzymes usually peak at from 4–7 days after initial exposure, while bilirubin and GGT continue to increase for 1–2 weeks if sublethal exposure continues. Serum SA/SO ratio is the most sensitive indicator of fumonisin exposure and appears unique to the fumonisins (Riley et al. 1993; Moetlin et al. 1994). However, this assay is currently not widely available as a diagnostic test. Many diagnostic and commercial laboratories can detect and quantitate fumonisins in corn and feeds, but routine chemical analysis to detect fumonisins in tissues is not available, and the metabolism and excretion rate of fumonisins from oral exposures are unknown but likely very rapid (Prelusky et al. 1994a).

**Treatment and Management.** There is no antidote to the toxin itself. The very acute and massive changes of PPE do not allow for effective symptomatic and supportive therapy. Because clinical signs appear after days to weeks of exposure, oral detoxification is usually not useful. Liver damage from fumonisin toxicosis may be lessened by appropriate supportive care.

Analysis of corn or feeds for fumonisins can identify a source and help in estimating the risk from a specific feedstuff (Ross et al. 1991). Contaminated corn should be cleaned and the good-quality grain analyzed to determine if all equipment should be completely dry before fresh feed is added.

Any suspect feed should be analyzed to determine if known mycotoxins were present. Although spore counts or fungal cultures alone do not confirm a diagnosis, they may give some indication of the potential for mycotoxin production. With this information, the swine producer can better formulate a preventive program.

If storage conditions are adverse or if grain moisture is too high, use of a mold inhibitor may be advisable. Most commercial mold inhibitors are based on an organic acid such as propionic acid and are effective in reducing or delaying mold growth. Mold inhibitors do not destroy preformed toxins, which commonly may have formed in the field prior to harvest. Except for ammoniation (not yet approved by the Food and Drug Administration) to destroy aflatoxin, there are no practical commercial treatments that effectively destroy preformed mycotoxins.

Dilution of contaminated grain with clean grain is commonly used to reduce mycotoxin effects; this is not an approved procedure for aflatoxin. For any mycotoxin problem, dilution may reduce exposure initially, but care must be taken that wet or contaminated grain does not introduce new fungi and conditions that eventually lead to the entire mixture being contaminated.

Mycotoxin contamination may not be suspected until most or all of a contaminated feed is consumed. A prudent practice is to save a representative sample of all grains and feeds purchased and hold them in stable condition until swine are marketed or at least a month past when the feed was consumed. When questions about feed quality arise later, these samples may be valuable in documenting whether specific feeds were involved in a problem.

Samples of feeds or grain should be representative of the entire supply. Representative sampling can best be done after feed is ground and mixed by passing a cup through the moving auger stream at frequent intervals, mixing these samples thoroughly, and saving a 4.5 kg (10-pound) sample for analysis (Davis et al. 1980). Alternatively, probe sampling of large bins may give some idea of contamination levels. Bins should be probed in at least 6–10 perimeter locations and 2–4 central locations for each 1.8 m (6 feet) of bin height. High-moisture samples should be either dried to 12% moisture or stored frozen. Long-term storage is recommended in paper bags permanently marked with the date and source of the feed or grain, and samples should be held in a dry, clean location.

Mycotoxins present formidable challenges to the swine producer and veterinarian. Diagnosis is sometimes difficult and effective therapy is virtually lacking. A sound and practical preventive program should be a part of every swine management system.

**PREVENTION AND MANAGEMENT OF MOLD AND MYCOTOXIN PROBLEMS**

When mycotoxicosis occurs or is suspected, the first action should be to change the source of feed. This may be beneficial, even when a specific mycotoxin cannot be identified. A thorough inspection of the grain storage bins, mixing equipment, and feeders may reveal caking, molding, or musty odors. All contaminated feed should be removed and the equipment cleaned. Additionally, walls and containers should be washed with a dilute solution of hypochlorite (laundry bleach) to reduce contaminating fungi. All equipment should be completely dry before fresh feed is added.

Any suspect feed should be analyzed to determine if known mycotoxins were present. Although spore counts or fungal cultures alone do not confirm a diagnosis, they may give some indication of the potential for mycotoxin production. With this information, the swine producer can better formulate a preventive program.

If storage conditions are adverse or if grain moisture is too high, use of a mold inhibitor may be advisable. Most commercial mold inhibitors are based on an organic acid such as propionic acid and are effective in reducing or delaying mold growth. Mold inhibitors do not destroy preformed toxins, which commonly may have formed in the field prior to harvest. Except for ammoniation (not yet approved by the Food and Drug Administration) to destroy aflatoxin, there are no practical commercial treatments that effectively destroy preformed mycotoxins.

Dilution of contaminated grain with clean grain is commonly used to reduce mycotoxin effects; this is not an approved procedure for aflatoxin. For any mycotoxin problem, dilution may reduce exposure initially, but care must be taken that wet or contaminated grain does not introduce new fungi and conditions that eventually lead to the entire mixture being contaminated.

Mycotoxin contamination may not be suspected until most or all of a contaminated feed is consumed. A prudent practice is to save a representative sample of all grains and feeds purchased and hold them in stable condition until swine are marketed or at least a month past when the feed was consumed. When questions about feed quality arise later, these samples may be valuable in documenting whether specific feeds were involved in a problem.

Samples of feeds or grain should be representative of the entire supply. Representative sampling can best be done after feed is ground and mixed by passing a cup through the moving auger stream at frequent intervals, mixing these samples thoroughly, and saving a 4.5 kg (10-pound) sample for analysis (Davis et al. 1980). Alternatively, probe sampling of large bins may give some idea of contamination levels. Bins should be probed in at least 6–10 perimeter locations and 2–4 central locations for each 1.8 m (6 feet) of bin height. High-moisture samples should be either dried to 12% moisture or stored frozen. Long-term storage is recommended in paper bags permanently marked with the date and source of the feed or grain, and samples should be held in a dry, clean location.

Mycotoxins present formidable challenges to the swine producer and veterinarian. Diagnosis is sometimes difficult and effective therapy is virtually lacking. A sound and practical preventive program should be a part of every swine management system.
REFERENCES


Proper nutrition is the foundation for sustained economic and environmental viability of any pork producing operation. Pigs perform best and excrete less manure nutrients when they consume diets that contain the correct amount and balance of essential nutrients. Occasionally pigs consume diets that contain insufficient or excessive amounts of one or more nutrients. The effects range from mild (slight, unnoticed reductions in weight gain and feed efficiency) to marked (obvious clinical and subclinical symptoms, including death).

The relationship between a nutrient deficiency and excess varies among nutrients (Figure 57.1). The absolute difference (the range of tolerance) between the nutrient intake associated with overcoming a deficiency (i.e., requirement) and the intake associated with a toxicity may be large (e.g., water-soluble vitamins) or small (e.g., selenium). This observation is critical in as much as it represents the window of safety for a particular nutrient.

This chapter presents clinical symptoms (outwardly apparent) and subclinical symptoms (evident only by necropsy or clinical methodology) of nutrient deficiencies and excesses that have occurred in pigs. Although it is rare today to observe symptoms of a single nutrient deficiency or excess, the recognition of faulty nutrition should be part of an overall approach to solving problems in swine operations.

The information presented herein was derived from research results with pigs and, in most instances, obtained by varying the intake of one nutrient at a time. However, nutrient interactions occur and it is unclear if the information would apply when multiple deficiencies or excesses of nutrients exist (e.g., when a vitamin and trace mineral mix is not added to the diet properly).

On farms today, vitamin and mineral deficiencies are less likely to occur than excesses. This is because diets are routinely fortified with vitamins and minerals. Also, it is important to consider that many of the nutrient deficiency symptoms reported here were observed in pigs fed purified or semipurified diets. This was necessary in order to provide a diet that contained a very low level of the nutrient of interest so deficiency symptoms could be observed. Ingredients used in practical swine diets contain a variety of essential nutrients (NRC 1998) which, even without recommended nutrient fortifications, would prevent the appearance of some symptoms.

CAUSES OF NUTRIENT DEFICIENCIES

Reduced Feed Intake
Pigs should consume a certain quantity of essential nutrients daily for optimum performance. Because diets are often formulated on a concentration basis, lower-than-expected feed intake by pigs could result in a nutrient deficiency. This situation is most commonly observed in gestating sows and breeding boars when feed intake is restricted to control weight gain, and in lactating sows, because they may consume less feed than needed for optimum performance. Furthermore, growing pigs with a high genetic capacity for lean-tissue accretion sometimes have reduced feed intake.

Low Nutrient Bioavailability in Ingredients
Nutrients present in ingredients are not fully available to the pig for maintenance, growth, and(or) lactation. The portion of the nutrient in the ingredient that is absorbed in a form utilizable by the pig is said to be bioavailable. The amount of that nutrient that is bioavailable depends primarily on the nutrient source. For example, the phosphorus in dicalcium phosphate is much more bioavailable than the phosphorus in grain and plant protein supplements. In these ingredients, the phosphorus is bound in a phytate complex and is not fully released during digestion. Thus, a phosphorus deficiency could occur if bioavailability is not considered in diet formulation. On the other hand, some feed ingredients contain nutrients that have a low bioavailability but that still release sufficient amounts of nutrients to meet the animal’s requirement. It should be
noted that estimates of bioavailability are relative to a reference ingredient or ingredients; therefore, one should closely examine the nature of the reference ingredients.

Variability in Nutrient Content of Ingredients
Deviations in the nutrient content of ingredients from expected or “book” values can result in nutrient deficiencies if not taken into account in diet formulations. For example, samples of corn from 15 states in the USA contained between 0.24% and 0.31% lysine; for soybean meal the range was from 2.7%–3.0% (NCR-42 1992). More variability has been reported for vitamins, and this has been attributed to agronomic, harvest, storage, and processing conditions (Hoffman-La Roche 1991).

Diet Formulation and Preparation Errors
There are a number of possible mistakes in diet formulation and preparation that can result in nutrient deficiencies. These include using the incorrect quantity or the wrong ingredients in the diet and not cleaning the mixer properly between batches. In addition, nutrient deficiencies can occur when commercial feed products that are not designed to complement each other are used to prepare the diet. Haphazard additions of an extra package of minerals to a diet already adequately fortified may cause certain minerals to interfere with the utilization of others, resulting in deficiencies. Furthermore, according to Traylor et al. (1994), cutting short the time the feed mixer runs can cause significant variation in the nutrient content of the final diet and reduce pig performance.

Variation in Nutrient Requirements of Pigs
Pigs have varying potentials for lean growth and reproduction and therefore have different nutrient requirements. For example, a given level of dietary lysine may be seemingly adequate for diseased, low-lean-gain pigs but deficient for high-health, high-lean-gain pigs (Williams et al. 1997). Stahly et al. (1991) also demonstrated that increasing the dietary lysine density improved performance to a greater extent as the lean-growth capacity of different genotypes increased, indicating a genotype by lysine density interaction. Moreover, within a contemporary group of pigs, some may show deficiency symptoms while others do not (Cunha 1977), indicating the need to carefully observe individual pigs for symptoms of nutrient deficiencies.

Nutrient Excesses
All essential nutrients must be digested and utilized by the pig to avoid deficiencies. To facilitate this process, it is important to maintain a proper balance of nutrients in the diet. There are common absorption sites for many nutrients in the small intestine. Thus, a high dietary concentration of one nutrient can impair the passage of another nutrient through the absorption sites and cause a deficiency. In addition, an excess of one nutrient can cause the formation of certain chemical complexes which are poorly absorbed. The more frequent nutrient interactions that can cause problems in practical situations are between calcium and phosphorus, calcium and zinc, and copper, iron, and zinc. In some cases, a nutrient excess can be associated with the deficiency symptom of the interacting nutrient it is
SYMPTOMS OF NUTRIENT DEFICIENCIES

Clinical and subclinical deficiency symptoms for several nutrients are presented in Tables 57.1, 57.2, and 57.3. There is wide variation in the amount of time that elapses before symptoms of nutrient deficiency begin to appear. For example, it takes 4–6 months for pigs fed a vitamin D–deficient diet to develop symptoms of a deficiency (NRC 1998), whereas a salt deficiency will be evident in a few days (Patience and Zijlstra 2001).

Nutrient requirements for swine were published by the NRC (1998). These can serve as a guide in formulating swine diets to minimize the occurrence of nutrient deficiencies. Because several factors are known to influence nutrient requirements (NRC 1998), it is prudent to add a margin of safety to these requirements to ensure optimum animal performance (Reese et al. 2000).

CAUSES OF NUTRIENT EXCESSES

Excessive Feed Intake

Sometimes gestating females and breeding boars are given more feed than they need for optimum performance. Consequently, they consume too much energy and get excessively heavy and fat, which reduces reproductive performance and longevity.

Diet Preparation Errors

The same mistakes in diet preparation that can cause nutrient deficiencies can also cause nutrient excesses.

Poor Water Quality

Water may contain large amounts of several minerals, some of which may be contributed to the water by industrial wastes and other sources of pollution (NRC 1980) and by natural mineral deposits. Few studies have been conducted to investigate nutrient excesses caused by consuming poor-quality water. However, it appears pigs can tolerate water containing high levels of total dissolved solids (5000 ppm) after a period of adaptation (Reese et al. 2000).

Contaminated Mineral Supplements

Mineral supplements, such as dicalcium phosphate and defluorinated rock phosphate, are added to swine diets to correct the deficiencies in diets formulated with grains and protein supplements. Often these mineral supplements contain elements other than those of primary interest. For example, defluorinated rock phosphate contains 3.27% and .84% sodium and iron, respectively (NRC 1998). In addition, some phosphorus sources may contain high levels of aluminum and fluoride, and some sources of calcium contain large amounts of magnesium and iron. Also, some zinc and copper sources may be contaminated with lead and cadmium (D. A. Hill, personal communication, 1997). These “extra” elements will not normally pose a problem to the pig if their contribution to the diet is accounted for during formulation. The type and amount of the “other” elements the mineral supplement contains depend on the raw material from which the supplement was made and the type of processing (NRC 1980).

SYMPTOMS OF NUTRIENT EXCESSES AND TOLERANCE LEVELS

Symptoms of excessive nutrient intake and estimated tolerance levels for several nutrients are presented in Tables 57.4, 57.5, and 57.6. Because many minerals interact with each other during the digestive and utilization processes, a high intake of one mineral (e.g., calcium) can result in a deficiency of another mineral (e.g., phosphorus or zinc). To solve this kind of problem, either reduce the dietary level of calcium, for example, or increase the level of phosphorus and(or) zinc in the diet.

Copper (at 250 ppm as copper sulfate) and zinc (at 3000 ppm as zinc oxide) are unique in that they promote additional growth in young growing pigs at dietary concentrations which far exceed the nutritional requirement for these nutrients (Hill and Spears 2001). However, like other minerals, too much copper or zinc in the diet will produce deleterious effects (see Table 57.5).

According to Lewis (2001) the deleterious effects of consuming incorrect amounts of amino acids have been classified into at least two main types: toxicity and imbalance. Toxicities result from the consumption of a large excess of an individual amino acid. Imbalances are also caused by excessive intake(s) of (an) amino(s), but in this case the excess exacerbates a deficiency of the most limiting amino acid in the diet. An imbalance is corrected by the appropriate addition of that amino acid. Under practical conditions, toxicities and imbalances would be caused only by mistakes in formulation or manufacturing of a diet with crystalline amino acids. The only amino acids currently available in feed-grade form are lysine, tryptophan, threonine, and methionine.

With the exception of the study by Wahlstrom and Libal (1974) where supplemental lysine and methionine were evaluated, the effects of excess levels of amino acids reported in Table 57.6 were observed when the amino acid of interest was added to a basal diet considered to be adequate in all essential amino acids. In other words, a constant level of soybean meal was maintained in the basal and amino acid–supplemented diets.

Wahlstrom and Libal (1974) added DL-methionine (0.2%) to a diet that contained less soybean meal than the basal diet. They observed a reduction in pig performance at a lower level of added methionine than other researchers have reported because they exacerbated a lysine deficiency (i.e., caused an amino acid imbalance). Nevertheless, according to Baker (1977), pigs appear to be particularly sensitive to excess methionine in the diet. It is important to recognize that there is probably a
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Subclinical Signs</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Incoordination; lordosis; paralysis of rear limbs; night blindness; congenital defects; reduced weight gain; respiratory dysfunction; roughness of skin; tilting of head; eye discharge; stillborn pigs; aborted fetuses with cleft palate, harelip, and deformed hind legs; impaired spermatogenesis; increased embryonic mortality</td>
<td>Retarded bone growth; increased cerebrospinal fluid pressure; degeneration of sciatic and femoral nerves; minimal visual purple; atrophy of epithelial layers of genital tract; decreased plasma vitamin A</td>
<td>NRC 1979, 1998; Ullrey 1991; Darroch 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>Rickets; osteomalacia; tetany; reduced weight gain; stiffness and lameness; posteri</td>
<td>Lack of bone calcification and proliferation of epiphyseal cartilage; rib and vertebra fracture; low plasma calcium, magnesium, and inorganic phosphorus; elevated serum alkaline phosphatase</td>
<td>NRC 1979; Cunha 1977; Crenshaw 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Lactation failure; reduced litter size; extended parturition time; weak pigs at birth; sudden death (fast-growing pigs); postweaning diarrhea</td>
<td>Liver necrosis (hepatosis dietetica); cardiac muscle degeneration (mulberry heart); increased fluid in pericardial sac; gastric ulcers; anemia; yellow discoloration of fat tissue; skeletal degeneration; increased serum glutamic oxalo-acetic transaminase and glutamic pyruvic transaminase; reduced prothrombin time, serum vitamin E, and immune response; testicular degeneration</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Mahan 1991, 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin K (menadione)</td>
<td>Pale newborn pigs with loss of blood from umbilical cord; massive subcutaneous hemorrhage; hematomas in ears; enlarged, blood-filled joints; sudden death following dicoumarin intake; blood in urine</td>
<td>Increased prothrombin and blood-clotting time; internal hemorrhage; anemia due to blood loss</td>
<td>NRC 1979, 1998; Fritschen et al. 1971; Crenshaw 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotin</td>
<td>Excessive hair loss, skin ulcerations, and dermatitis; exudate around eyes; inflammation of the mucous membranes of the mouth; transverse cracking of the hooves; cracking and bleeding of footpads; spasticity of hind legs; diarrhea; reduced litter size</td>
<td>Reduced serum biotin</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choline</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain, litter size, and farrowing rate; rough hair coat; unbalanced and staggering gait</td>
<td>Fatty infiltration of liver and kidney; reduced red blood cell count, hematocrit, and hemoglobin; increased plasma alkaline phosphatase</td>
<td>NRC 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic acid</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain and litter size; fading hair color</td>
<td>Normocytic and macrocytic anemia; leukopenia; thrombopenia; reduced hematocrit; bone marrow hyperplasia</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niacin</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain; rough hair coat; hair loss; severe diarrhea; dermatitis; vomiting</td>
<td>Buccal mucosa ulcers, ulcerative gastritis; inflammation and necrosis of cecum and colon; normocytic anemia</td>
<td>NRC 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pantothentic acid</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain; dry skin; rough hair coat; hair loss; unusual gait (goose-stepping); impaired sows reproductivity</td>
<td>Edema and necrosis of intestinal mucosa; increased connective tissue invasion of the submucosa; loss of nerve myelin; degeneration of dorsal root ganglion, fatty liver; enlarged adrenal glands; atrophic ovaries; infantile uterus; reduced immune response; intramuscular hemorrhage</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riboflavin</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain; cataracts; seborrhea; stiffness of gait; vomiting; hair loss; reduced farrowing rate; anestrus; higher piglet mortality</td>
<td>Increased blood neutrophil granulocytes; discolored liver and kidney tissue; fatty liver; collapsed follicles; degenerating ova; degenerating myelin of the sciatic and brachial nerves; elevated blood erythrocyte glutathione reductase activity coefficient; reduced immune response</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B₁ (thiamin)</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain; occasional vomiting; sudden death</td>
<td>Cardiac hypertrophy; bradycardia; increased plasma pyruvate; reduced body temperature; myocardial degeneration; flabby heart</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 57.1. (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Subclinical Signs</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B&lt;sub&gt;6&lt;/sub&gt; (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain; convulsions; exudate development around eyes; ataxia; vomiting; coma; death</td>
<td>Microcytic hypochromic anemia; elevated serum iron and gamma globulin; fatty infiltration of liver; reduced albumin, hemoglobin, red blood cells, lymphocytes</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain, litter size, and pig birth weight; hypersensitivity; rough hair coat; dermatitis; hind leg incoordination</td>
<td>Normocytic anemia; increased neutrophil and reduced lymphocyte count; enlarged liver</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Synthesized from d-glucose and related compounds in pigs. No deficiency signs have been observed; however, reports of improved pig performance from vitamin C additions to practical diets exist.

greater tolerance level of feed-grade forms of amino acids when they are added to a diet which contains an adequate quantity of the 10 essential amino acids than when they are added individually to a low-protein diet.

For some nutrients, no documentation was found to indicate a tolerance level, because no adverse effects from an excessive intake have been reported in swine. Thus, when “none documented” appears in the tables, one should not assume that the nutrient is completely safe for swine. There are reports of magnesium and potassium toxicity in other species (NRC 1980), as well as for niacin, vitamin K, vitamin E, and pyridoxine (NRC 1987). In general the vitamins that have not been observed to cause adverse reactions in swine are relatively safe at dietary concentrations much greater than the requirement. This is especially true for the “B vitamins” (e.g., riboflavin, folic acid), which are not extensively stored in the body and excesses are readily excreted in the urine.

Estimated tolerance for a nutrient is defined as the dietary concentration, when fed for a limited time, that is not likely to impair pig performance and should not produce unsafe residues in pork (NRC 1980). Although the tolerance level will vary with the age and physiological condition of the animal (NRC 1980), only one tolerance level is given in the tables for each nutrient, except where information was deemed sufficient to give more. The tolerance values listed may not represent the actual tolerance levels for production situations. Many of the research trials on which the tolerance levels were based were conducted for a limited time period using nutrient sources that may have different bioavailabilities from those used in practical swine diets. “Not determined” in the tables means insufficient data were available to suggest a tolerance level.

**INVESTIGATING A POSSIBLE FEED-RELATED DISORDER**

Good production records combined with close, daily observation of animals are important in identifying problems caused by faulty nutrition. Monitor gain, feed intake and feed efficiency, because they are typically impacted by many feed-related disorders. After it is apparent that growth performance is impaired or several animals appear abnormal, it is important to consider what aspects of feeding and nutrition could be a problem. Generally, feed-related disorders are caused by inadequate feed intake or impaired feed quality.

**Feed Intake**

Many feed-related problems on farms occur because pigs do not consume enough feed. For example, access to feed by lactating sows and growing pigs is too often restricted. Feed access is often restricted because of human error, feed bridging in the bins or feeders, or equipment failure. Other reasons for inadequate feed intake are water quantity or quality problems, overcrowding, and poor feeder space and design. Eliminate the possibility that inadequate feed intake may be causing suspected feed-related disorders before investigating feed quality.

**Feed Quality**

If a feed-related disorder cannot be explained by inadequate feed intake, look for possible feed quality problems. Observe for evidence of foreign contamination such as dirt, stones, rodent droppings, and other indicators such as color and odor. A significant change in color may indicate a change in ingredients (which is not necessarily a problem) or it may suggest improper processing such as overheating. Beware of moldy or mycotoxin-contaminated feed. Also, feed quality may be impaired because it contains too little or too much of one or more nutrients.

Nutrient deficiencies and excesses are seldom severe enough on farms to cause clinical or subclinical signs in pigs; however, some have occurred under practical conditions. Selenium/vitamin E, amino acid, biotin (in sows), zinc, phosphorus, and salt deficiencies have been observed. Problems with excess amounts of selenium, vitamin A and D, copper, and zinc have been seen.
Table 57.2. Signs of mineral deficiencies in swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Subclinical Signs</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Rickets; osteomalacia; low calcium tetany; humped back or camelback syndrome; reduced weight gain; stiffness of gait; lameness; enlarged and painful joints; spontaneous fractures; posterior paralysis (downer sow syndrome)</td>
<td>Reduced bone breaking strength; low plasma calcium level; elevated serum phosphorus and alkaline phosphatase; reduced bone mineralization</td>
<td>NRC 1979; Peo 1991; Crenshaw 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain; bowing of legs; spontaneous fractures; ataxia</td>
<td>Microcytic, hypochromic anemia; leukopenia; reduced serum ceruloplasmin; reduced erythrocyte life span; aortic rupture; cardiac hypertrophy</td>
<td>Miller 1991; NRC 1998; Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>Goiter; sows farrow weak, hairless pigs</td>
<td>Enlarged, hemorrhagic thyroid; hyperplasia of follicular epithelium of thyroid; reduced plasma protein-bound iodine</td>
<td>Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake, weight gain, and feed efficiency; rough hair coat; pallor; wrinkled skin; labored breathing; death</td>
<td>Hypochromic, microcytic anemia; enlarged heart and spleen; enlarged fatty liver; ascites; reduced serum iron, percent transferrin saturation and hemoglobin (≤ 7 g/100 mL); thin, watery blood; reduced disease resistance</td>
<td>NRC 1979, 1998; Miller 1991; Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Hyperirritability; muscular twitching; reluctance to stand; weak paresthes; loss of equilibrium; tetany; death</td>
<td>Low serum magnesium and calcium; reduced bone magnesium</td>
<td>NRC 1979, 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manganese</td>
<td>Lameness; enlarged hock joints with crooked and shortened legs; increased fat deposition; resorbed fetuses; small, weak pigs born; reduced milk production; irregular or absent estrous cycles; delayed postweaning estrus</td>
<td>Replacement of cancellous bone with fibrous tissue; early closure of distal epiphyseal plate; low serum manganese and alkaline phosphatase</td>
<td>NRC 1979, 1998; Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain and feed efficiency; rickets; osteomalacia; spontaneous fractures; posterior paralysis (downer sow syndrome)</td>
<td>Reduced bone breaking strength and mineralization; elevated serum calcium and alkaline phosphatase; enlarged costochondral junction (beading); reduced serum inorganic phosphorus</td>
<td>NRC 1979; Koch and Mahan 1986; Hall et al. 1991; Crenshaw 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain; rough hair coat; emaciation; ataxia; inactivity</td>
<td>Reduced heart rate; increased PR, QRS, and QT intervals on electrocardiogram; multifocal myocardial necrosis</td>
<td>Van Vleet and Ferrans 1986; NRC 1998; Patience and Zijlstra 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>Sudden death; reduced milk production; prolonged farrowing time; weak progeny; postweaning diarrhea; lower sperm production and motility; sperm tail abnormalities</td>
<td>Liver necrosis (hepatosis dietetica); cardiac muscle degeneration (mulberry heart); increased fluid in pericardial sac; gastric ulcers; skeletal degeneration; increased serum glutamic oxalo-acetic transaminase and glutamic pyruvic transaminase; reduced prothrombin time and immune response; reduced serum and skeletal muscle selenium; reduced glutathione peroxidase activity</td>
<td>Ullrey 1987; NRC 1998; Mahan 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium and chloride</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake, weight gain, and feed efficiency; low water intake; unthriftness; reduced pig birth weight and litter size; extended weaning-to-estrus interval; increased attraction to blood and possibly tail-biting</td>
<td>Reduced plasma sodium and chloride (sodium deficiency); elevated plasma potassium (sodium deficiency); elevated plasma urea nitrogen (sodium and chloride deficiency); elevated plasma total protein and albumin (sodium deficiency)</td>
<td>Fraser 1987; Cromwell et al. 1989; Seynaeve et al. 1996; Patience and Zijlstra 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain and feed efficiency; parakeratosis; extended parturition time; increased stillbirth rate; reduced litter size and pig birth weight; alopecia; poor wound healing</td>
<td>Reduced serum, tissue, and milk zinc; reduced serum albumin and alkaline phosphatase; reduced thymus weight; retarded testicle development; deleted fat depots; serous atrophy of fat; depletion of thymocytes; keratinization of tongue and esophagus; cardiomyopathy; reduced immune response</td>
<td>Kalinowski and Chavez 1986; Miller 1991; NRC 1998; Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Supplemental chromium (from chromium tripicolinate, chromium propionate, or chromium-L-methionine) has improved growth performance, muscling, and litter size (Southern and Payne 2003).
To facilitate identification of the nutrient(s) to focus on when troubleshooting suspected feed-related problems, use Table 57.7 as an initial screen. In this table the clinical symptoms presented in Tables 52.1–52.6 are arranged in alphabetical order. Locate the clinical symptom observed and determine the nutrient(s) that may be involved. For example, if pig feed intake is impaired, find “anorexia/reduced feed intake” in Table 57.7 for a list of nutrients that may be involved in decreased feed intake. If additional clinical symptoms are observed, use them to help narrow the list to fewer nutrients. Subsequently refer to the subclinical symptoms in Tables 57.1–57.6 to help make a more definite diagnosis. It is important to remember that some of the clinical symptoms in Table 57.7 may be caused by factors other than faulty nutrition (i.e., environment, infectious disease, etc.). Finally, collect a sample of the feed and analyze it for the nutrient(s) suspected to be involved.

**Sampling Procedures**

When sampling feeds for laboratory analysis, it is essential to get a representative sample; otherwise, the results may be misleading. The sampling technique will be most accurate by using a grain probe; it allows deep penetration into feeders, bags, and other containers while sampling. If a probe is not available, use your hand or a cup on a pole.

Obtain samples from feeders to maximize the chance of identifying a feed quality problem. Take a sample from at least one out of every two feeders, inserting the probe at two different locations. If you use your hand for sampling, be sure to insert your arm to elbow depth to obtain a sample. When sampling directly from the mixer or unloader, grab 10 single handfuls of feed per ton at various intervals as the feed is unloaded, except for the initial and final outputs. Collect the samples in a large, clean container and mix thoroughly. Obtain two .5 kg samples and seal each in individual, clearly marked and dated containers. Heavy plastic bags, plastic containers with lids and clean, widemouthed jars are excellent for storing samples. Submit one sample to the laboratory and keep the other in the freezer until the analysis is complete.

**Interpreting Laboratory Results**

Even if the feed sampled was made to perfection, there are errors in sampling and laboratory analyses that at best can only be minimized. These errors can cause differences in nutrient levels between what the laboratory reports and producer expects. Generally there is no need for concern as long as analyzed nutrient values are not significantly different from the calculated nutrient content of the diet. Comparing analyzed values to the calculated nutrient content of the diet is an essential step in interpreting laboratory results.

Calculate the nutrient content of the finished feed from the diet formula, appropriate feed labels, and nutrient contents of ingredients. Compare those values to the “as-fed,” “as-is,” or “as-received” values from the laboratory report.

How much difference can there be between the calculated and analyzed values before it is appropriate to conclude there is a feed quality problem? The expected amount of variation associated with sampling and laboratory analyses for some nutrients is shown in Table 57.8 (for phosphorus, 13%). From these values and the calculated nutrient content of the diet, an expected range for the amount of that nutrient in the diet can be estimated. For example, assume the calculated phosphorus content of a diet is .65%. To allow for normal sampling and laboratory variation, the acceptable range of phosphorus levels in the diet will be from .57 to .73%:

\[
.65\% \times .13 = .08; \quad .65\% - .08\% = .57\%; \quad .65\% + .08\% = .73\%
\]
### Table 57.4. Signs of vitamin excess and estimated tolerance level in swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Subclinical Signs</th>
<th>Estimated Dietary Tolerance Level</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A^b</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake and weight gain; skeletal malformation; rough hair coat; hyperirritability; incoordination; blood in urine and feces; joint pain and swelling; skin thickening; death</td>
<td>Bone lesions; internal hemorrhage; bone fractures; reduced spinal fluid pressure, liver and serum tocopherol and uralnic acid in joint cartilage; increased blood clotting time</td>
<td>20,000 IU/kg (growing pig) 40,000 IU/kg (breeding herd)</td>
<td>NRC 1987; Blair et al. 1992, 1996; Darroch 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D^c</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake, feed efficiency and weight gain; rough hair coat; lameness; stiffness; arching of the back; paralysis; vomiting; death</td>
<td>Reduced liver, radius, and ulna weight; calcification in aorta, heart, kidney, and lung; hypercalcemia; hyperphosphatemia; osteoporosis; hemorrhagic gastritis</td>
<td>22,000 IU/kg (&lt;60 days)^d 2,200 IU/kg (&gt;60 days)^d</td>
<td>Long 1984; Hancock et al. 1986; NRC 1987, 1998; Crenshaw 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined^e</td>
<td>Mahan 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin K (menadione)</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>500 mg/kg</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Crenshaw 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotin</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>0.2–0.5 mg/kg</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choline</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake and weight gain^f</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined^g</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic acid</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicin</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pantothenic acid</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riboflavin</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined^h</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B1 (thiamin)</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined^i</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined^j</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Dove and Cook 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: All references are as noted in the text.

^aWhen higher dietary levels were provided certain clinical and subclinical signs were either observed or could appear under experimental conditions. These levels may not represent actual tolerance levels in production situations and they generally apply to growing pigs allowed ad libitum access to feed.

^bIncreased dietary levels of vitamins D, E, and K may reduce vitamin A toxicity.

^cToxicity is reduced when the diet is low in calcium or high in vitamin A.

^dApplies to vitamin D3. Vitamin D2 is significantly more toxic.

^eFeeding 11349 1000 IU/kg of feed has not caused any ill effects in growing swine.

^fObserved when 2000 mg/kg choline was fed throughout the nursery, growing, and finishing phases (Southern et al. 1986)

^gNo ill effects were observed when 37 kg pigs were fed diets supplemented with 0.1, 0.3, 0.5, and 0.7% riboflavin for 70 days.

^h100 mg/kg has been fed to young pigs with no ill effects.

^iNo detrimental effects were observed when a diet containing 9.2 mg/kg was fed to early weaned pigs.

^jNo adverse effects were observed when a diet containing 10 g/kg was fed to young pigs.

If the analyzed value falls within the acceptable range (e.g., between .57% and .73%), a feed quality problem associated with that nutrient probably does not exist. However, if the level of all or any one of the nutrients falls outside the acceptable range and proper sampling procedures were used, submit a portion of the retained sample to the same or another laboratory for a repeat analysis. If the results from the second analysis also fall outside the normal range, a feed quality problem may exist. Review the causes of nutrient deficiencies and excesses presented earlier in this chapter to help determine an explanation for the quality problem. Again it is important to remember that a nutrient deficiency may be manifested by the antagonism or excess of another nutrient. Therefore, deficiency symptoms may be observed in the presence of seemingly adequate dietary nutrient concentrations. This situation is most likely to occur between zinc and copper and calcium and zinc.

**PREVENTING NUTRIENT DEFICIENCIES AND EXCESSES**

Emphasis should be placed on reducing the opportunity for pigs to consume diets with inadequate or excessive...
Table 57.5. Signs of mineral excess and estimated tolerance level in swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Subclinical Signs</th>
<th>Estimated Dietary Tolerance Levela</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake, weight gain and feed efficiency; parakeratosisb</td>
<td>Elevated plasma calcium; increased prothrombin clotting timec</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
<td>NRC 1980; Foley et al. 1990; Hall et al. 1991; Crenshaw 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>Anorexia; diarrhea; depression; inactivity; labored breathing; tremorsd</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>3,000 ppm (oxide)</td>
<td>Vishnyakov et al. 1985; Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced weight gain; stiff-legged; humped back; incoordination; muscle tremorsd</td>
<td>Anemia</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
<td>NRC 1980, 1998; Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake and weight gain</td>
<td>Decreased blood hemoglobin and liver iron</td>
<td>400 ppm</td>
<td>NRC 1980; Miller 1991; Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake, weight gain, and feed efficiency; profuse diarrhea; incoordination; shivering; tetanic convulsions; labored breathing; coma; dyspnea; drowsiness; death</td>
<td>Edema of stomach wall; hyperemia; extensive mucosal necrosis; pallor of skeletal muscles; swollen kidneys; epigastric hemorrhage; hypepercardium; hydrotrohorax; severe degeneration of muscle and nephrosis; necrosis of liver; reduced disease resistance</td>
<td>3,000 ppm &lt;100 mgf</td>
<td>NRC 1980, 1998; Miller 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>NRC 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manganese</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake and weight gain; stiffness</td>
<td>Reduced hemoglobin</td>
<td>400 ppm</td>
<td>NRC 1980, 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain and feed efficiency</td>
<td>Urinary calculi; osteodystrophia fibrosa; metastatic calcification in soft tissue</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>Hall et al. 1991; Crenshaw 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Abnormal electrocardiogram</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>Patience and Zijlstra 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium1</td>
<td>Anorexia; reduced feed intake and weight gain; hair loss; separation of hoof and skin at coronary band; reduced conception rate and litter size; pigs small, weak, or dead at birth; labored breathing; vomiting; prostration; frothing at mouth; abnormal staggering movement; muscle twitching; squeal when approached; spinal paralysis; death</td>
<td>Degenerative changes in liver and kidney; pulmonary edema; elevated serum selenium and glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase; high liver selenium; fatty infiltration of liver</td>
<td>0.5 ppmg</td>
<td>NRC 1991, 2001; Mahan 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium and chloride</td>
<td>Anorexia; weight loss; edema; nervousness; weakness; staggering; diarrhea; epileptic seizures; paralysis; death</td>
<td>Hemorrhage in axillary spaces; gastritis; osteochondrosis in sows; increased liver zinc; decreased liver iron and copper</td>
<td>8%i</td>
<td>NRC 1998; Pretzer 2000; Patience and Zijlstra 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain, feed intake, feed efficiency, litter size, and pig weight at weaning; arthritis; lameness; depression</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,000 ppm (weanling pigs)m</td>
<td>Poulsen 1995; NRC 1998; Hill and Spears 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*When higher dietary levels were provided certain clinical and subclinical signs were observed under experimental conditions. These levels may not represent actual tolerance levels in production situations and they generally apply to growing pigs allowed ad libitum access to feed.

bWith limited dietary zinc.

cIn the absence of supplemental vitamin K in the diet.

dTrivalent chromium given via stomach tube (3g/kg body weight) to 60-day-old pigs.

eSelenium, vitamin E, and cysteine have provided some protection against excessive levels of cobalt.

f250 ppm has resulted in symptoms of excess when fed throughout the starter, growing, and finishing phases and when dietary iron, zinc, and sulfur intake was limited. Nursery pigs can tolerate diets with 500 ppm as copper sulfate for 28 days.

gIncreasing dietary phosphorus has alleviated the rickets.

hAs iron dextran administered IM to pigs born from vitamin E-deficient dams.

iThe amount of calcium in the diet is important. A deficiency of calcium may lower the tolerance level.

jChronic selenosis can be treated by supplementing the diet with 40 ppm arsenic or 50–100 ppm arsenilic acid (Osweiler et al. 1985).

kTolerance may be higher, but less than 5 ppm.

lAssumes ample water supplies are available. Water restriction will lower the tolerance level.

mAs zinc oxide for a maximum of 35 days.
Table 57.6. Symptoms of excess and estimated tolerance level for other nutrients and dietary components in swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Subclinical Signs</th>
<th>Estimated Dietary Tolerance Level</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Reduced sow feed intake in lactation; increased carcass backfat; reduced embryo survival</td>
<td>Impaired development of mammary secretory tissue; elevated plasma nonesterified fatty acid level; reduced plasma insulin</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Kirkwood and Thacker 1988; Weldon et al. 1991, 1994a, 1994b; Australian Agricultural Council 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat</td>
<td>Increased carcass backfat</td>
<td>Soft carcass fat</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Wood et al. 1994; Azain 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain, feed efficiency, and carcass backfat; mild diarrhea</td>
<td>Increased plasma urea</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Hansen and Lewis 1993; Dewey 1993; Chen et al. 1995; NRC 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysine</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain and feed efficiency</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Wahlstrom and Libal 1974; Edmonds et al. 1987; Goodband et al. 1989; Campbell and Combs 1990b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methionine</td>
<td>Reduced weight gain, feed intake and feed efficiency</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Wahlstrom and Libal 1974; Edmonds et al. 1987; Edmonds and Baker 1987; Campbell and Combs 1990c; Van Heugten et al. 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threonine</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake and weight gain</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>Edmonds et al. 1987; Edmonds and Baker 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tryptophan</td>
<td>Reduced feed intake, weight gain, and feed efficiency; diarrhea</td>
<td>None documented</td>
<td>1% (100 kg pigs); 2% (10 kg pigs)</td>
<td>Edmonds et al. 1987; Edmonds and Baker 1987; Chung et al. 1991</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When higher dietary levels were provided, certain clinical and subclinical signs were observed under experimental conditions. These levels may not represent actual tolerance levels in production situations and they generally apply to growing pigs allowed ad libitum access to feed. Variable indicates tolerance levels are generally known, but they are too situation-dependent to describe here.

Result of excessive energy intake during gestation.

Result of excessive energy intake during rearing, the estrus cycle, and early pregnancy.

Occurs when high iodine number (highly unsaturated) fat(s) is present in the diet.

L-lysine–HCL (0.7% of the diet) provided to 31 kg pigs for 85 days did not affect performance. In addition, L-lysine–HCL (1.03% of the diet provided to 61 kg pigs for 50 days did not affect performance.

Tolerance level appears to be impacted by pig age and dietary amino acid concentration and ingredient composition. The tolerance level is less than 0.2% added DL-methionine in finishing pigs fed a lysine-deficient diet. However, no ill effects were observed in nursery pigs fed diets containing 1 or 1.08% DL-methionine.

levels of nutrients. Proper nutrition ensures that the goals of economy, performance, health, and environmental stewardship are realized.

Meet The Pigs’ Nutrient Requirements
Several factors, including gender, age, season, and genotype affect nutrient requirements of pigs. Therefore, it is important to monitor pig performance (e.g., rate of lean gain, feed intake, etc.) on individual farms and formulate diets based on observed production rather than using a general set of nutrient recommendations. In addition, as pigs grow their nutrient requirements decrease when expressed as a percentage of the diet. Thus, as pigs approach market weight they should be fed diets that contain a lower density of nutrients. This is commonly called “phase feeding.” In typical phase-feeding programs, pigs growing from 25–120 kg would be fed four or more different diets. Also, because barrows consume more feed than gilts during the growing-finishing period, amino acid requirements (percent of the diet) for barrows are lower. Thus, it is recommended that barrows be separated from gilts and fed diets containing different amino acids densities (Reese et al. 2000). Nutrient recommendations for various classes of swine were provided by NRC (1998) and Reese et al. (2000). Typically, separate requirements for barrows and gilts relative to other nutrients are not provided.

Implement a Quality Control Program
Monitor the nutrient content of ingredients and finished feeds on a periodic basis to help prevent problems associated with faulty nutrition. Collect samples carefully to ensure they are representative and submit them to a reputable laboratory for analysis. It is not practical to analyze ingredients and diets for all the nutrients pigs require. Instead, analyze for the major nutrients provided by an ingredient or contained in the diet. In general, these include crude protein, calcium, and phos-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Signs</th>
<th>Caused by a Deficiency of:</th>
<th>Caused by an Excess of:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aborted fetuses</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin D, chromium, cobalt, copper, iodine, iron, manganese, selenium, zinc, calcium, sodium and chloride, energy (in gestation sows), methionine, threonine, tryptophan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anestrus</td>
<td>Riboflavin, manganese, energy, protein/amino acids</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin D, chromium, cobalt, copper, iodine, iron, manganese, selenium, zinc, calcium, sodium and chloride, energy (in gestation sows), methionine, threonine, tryptophan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anorexia/reduced feed intake</td>
<td>Niacin, pantothenic acid, vitamin B₁, vitamin B₆, vitamin B₁₂, copper, iron, potassium, sodium and chloride, zinc, protein/amino acids, water</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin D, chromium, cobalt, copper, iodine, iron, manganese, selenium, zinc, calcium, sodium and chloride, energy (in gestation sows), methionine, threonine, tryptophan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia</td>
<td>Vitamin B₆, copper, potassium</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood-filled joints</td>
<td>Vitamin K</td>
<td>Chromium, iron, selenium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood, increased attraction to</td>
<td>Sodium and chloride, protein/amino acids</td>
<td>Iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bloody feces</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bloody urine and feces</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breathing, labored</td>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coma</td>
<td>Vitamin B₆, energy</td>
<td>Iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital defects</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Vitamin B₆, magnesium, energy, water</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin D, iron, selenium, sodium and chloride, energy (in gestation sows), methionine, threonine, tryptophan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death, sudden</td>
<td>Vitamin E, selenium, vitamin B₁</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dehydration</td>
<td>Water</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depression</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>Chromium, zinc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatitis</td>
<td>Biotin, niacin, linoleic acid, vitamin B₁₂, pantothenic acid</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
<td>Niacin, biotin, selenium, vitamin E, water</td>
<td>Chromium, iron, protein, tryptophan, sodium and chloride, energy (in gestation sows), methionine, threonine, tryptophan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embryo survival, reduced</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epileptic seizures</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>Sodium and chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye discharge</td>
<td>Vitamin A, biotin, vitamin B₆</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farrowing rate, reduced</td>
<td>Choline, pantothenic acid, riboflavin, energy, protein/amino acids</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed efficiency, reduced</td>
<td>Iron, phosphorus, sodium and chloride, zinc, protein/amino acids</td>
<td>Calcium, phosphorus, iron, zinc, vitamin D, protein, lysine, methionine, tryptophan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractures, spontaneous</td>
<td>Calcium, copper, phosphorus</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frothing at mouth</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>Selenium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gait, goose-stepping</td>
<td>Pantothentic acid</td>
<td>Calcium, manganese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gait, stiff and stilted</td>
<td>Riboflavin, calcium</td>
<td>Calcium, manganese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goiter</td>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>Selenium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hair coat, rough</td>
<td>Choline, niacin, pantothenic acid, vitamin B₁₂, iron, potassium</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hair loss (alopecia)</td>
<td>Biotin, niacin, pantothenic acid, riboflavin, linoleic acid, zinc</td>
<td>Selenium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhage, subcutaneous</td>
<td>Vitamin K</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoof cracks</td>
<td>Biotin</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoof, skin separate at coronary band</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>Selenium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humped back</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Cobalt, vitamin D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypersensitivity/irritability</td>
<td>Vitamin B₁₂, magnesium</td>
<td>Vitamin A, sodium and chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactivity</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>Potassium, chromium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoordination/staggering movement</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin B₁₂, choline</td>
<td>Vitamin A, cobalt, iron selenium, sodium and chloride, energy (in gestation sows), methionine, threonine, tryptophan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joints, enlarged</td>
<td>Calcium, manganese</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactation failure</td>
<td>Vitamin E, selenium</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lameness</td>
<td>Vitamin D, manganese, calcium</td>
<td>Vitamin D, zinc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legs, bowed</td>
<td>Copper, manganese</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Litter size, reduced</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin E, biotin, choline, folic acid, pantothenic acid, vitamin B₁₂, sodium and chloride, selenium, zinc, manganese, energy, protein/amino acids, water</td>
<td>Selenium, zinc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk production, reduced</td>
<td>Manganese, selenium</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night blindness</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteomalacia</td>
<td>Vitamin D, calcium, phosphorus</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pallor</td>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parakeratosis</td>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paralysis</td>
<td>Vitamin A, vitamin D, calcium, phosphorus</td>
<td>Vitamin D, sodium and chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parturition time, extended</td>
<td>Vitamin E, selenium, zinc</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
phorus for complete diets. Analyze protein supplements for crude protein and refer to NRC (1998) for coefficients to estimate amino acids from crude protein content. Analyze for calcium, phosphorus, at least one trace mineral (e.g., zinc), and vitamin A or E in base mixes and premixes. Compare the analyzed values to the expected nutrient content of the ingredient or diet when interpreting the results.

In situations where animals are not performing as expected, it is sometimes appropriate to collect a water sample for chemical analysis. Some commercial laboratories offer a “livestock suitability” test which includes an analysis for various minerals. Minerals from water should not substitute for quantities recommended in the feed. Furthermore, when water contains a higher-than-normal mineral content, always compare the pig’s daily requirement for that mineral to that which would be consumed through the water. Then decide whether the mineral content of the diet should be adjusted to prevent a problem with mineral excess. Often the mineral contribution from water is minute compared to the pig’s requirement, and thus no adjustment in the mineral concentration of the diet is warranted.

### Table 57.7. Analytical variations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Variation, %</th>
<th>Calculated level</th>
<th>Normal range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crude protein</td>
<td>±3</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>15.5–16.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysine</td>
<td>±40</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>.56–.84%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>±26</td>
<td>.70%</td>
<td>.52–.88%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus</td>
<td>±13</td>
<td>.65%</td>
<td>.57±.73%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>±25</td>
<td>250 ppm</td>
<td>188–313 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>±20</td>
<td>100 ppm</td>
<td>80–120 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>±25</td>
<td>.3 ppm</td>
<td>.23–.38 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>±30</td>
<td>5,500 IU/kg</td>
<td>3,850–7,150 IU/kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from AAFCO 2004.
usage to ensure feed is being prepared according to specifications. Also, use feed within 30 days of manufacture.

**Maximize Nutrient Intake and Minimize Nutrient Excretion**

Only a portion of the nutrient content of a feed ingredient and(or) diet is available to the pig. The inefficiencies of digestion and metabolism are associated with nutrients excreted in the feces and urine, respectively. Therefore, to account for the variability of nutrient availability among feedstuffs (especially by-product feedstuffs), diets should be formulated based on digestible nutrient content (i.e., apparent digestibility or true ileal digestibility). In addition, nutrient concentration for amino acids, minerals, and vitamins can be corrected according to estimates for relative bioavailability (see Ammerman et al. 1995). Relative bioavailabilities of nutrients from several ingredient sources have been reported by NRC (1998).

**Blend Adulterated Feed**

Feed that contains higher-than-intended levels of a nutrient(s) is sometimes identified before it is offered to pigs. Often the adulterated feed can be handled as a new ingredient and used to manufacture other diets.

**CONCLUSION**

Pigs will exhibit certain symptoms when they are not provided optimum nutrition. The challenges for producers and their advisors are to ensure that pigs continually receive the correct balance and amount of all essential nutrients and effectively monitor for and recognize symptoms of faulty nutrition.

**REFERENCES**


Porcine stress syndrome (PSS) is a well-known concern in the swine industry. The genetic mutation responsible for PSS is widespread and commercially important and produces dramatic features. In swine homozygous for the gene causing PSS, effects are conspicuous: heavy muscling and leanness (decreased fat deposition), predisposition to postmortem muscle deterioration, and a susceptibility to stress and anesthetic agents that may produce death and severe loss of pork quality. The PSS mutation was first captured in Pietrain swine in Belgium by selection and development for extreme muscularity, formerly referred to as “double-muscling” or culard. In the early 1950s, the PSS gene began to spread rapidly throughout the intensive swine industry worldwide until it reached near-epidemic proportions. Its spread was fueled by the demand for increased lean-meat production and decreased fat deposition but disregard for poor meat quality.

The heavy muscling is associated with other economically beneficial traits (leaness and increased growth efficiency) but also with economically deleterious traits: stress susceptibility and predisposition to development of inferior pork quality. The expression of the deleterious susceptibilities, however, is highly variable since it can be modified by environmental and managerial factors.

There is reasonably good understanding of the pathophysiological basis of the abnormalities associated with the PSS gene (O’Brien 1987, 1995; O’Brien et al. 1990a). They reflect inappropriate and excessive metabolic and contractile responses to all forms of stimulation of skeletal muscle. This includes stimulation associated with exertional, thermal, and social stressors—especially during transport and mixing of swine—and the electrical, mechanical, and anoxic stimulation occurring with stunning and exsanguination at slaughter. PSS is the first genetic disease for which the molecular basis is known and the mutation identified and for which a DNA-based diagnostic test is used on a wide, international, and commercial scale. The PSS mutation occurs in the ryr-1 gene (first known as the Hal gene) coding for the calcium-release channel (ryanodine receptor) of sarcoplasmic reticulum of skeletal muscle.

CLINICAL SIGNS

Ludvigsen (1953, 1954) first reported an often fatal syndrome, occurring in Danish swine, characterized by increased temperature, dyspnea, muscle twitches, and light cyanosis. It was also associated with the exertional, thermal, and social stress of transporting and processing swine for slaughter. The syndrome resulted in pale, “juicy,” sour-smelling pork, which he called muskeldegeneration. In the late 1950s this condition was recognized in other countries and described as la myopathie exudative dépigmentaire du porc in France (Henry et al. 1955), pale, soft, and exudative (PSE) pork in the United States (Judge et al. 1959; Briskey et al. 1959a; Briskey 1964), “back muscle necrosis” in Belgium (Thoonen and Hoorens 1960), and “white muscle condition” in England (Lawrie 1960).

The condition was found to be associated with pigs that were “stress-susceptible” (Judge et al. 1967, 1968; Forrest et al. 1968). When excited in a warm environment, they developed marked metabolic and respiratory acidosis, oxygen desaturation of venous blood, and tachycardia and tachypnea which progressed to cardiac and respiratory failure. Postmortem, their muscle was extremely PSE. The clinical syndrome was further described and named “porcine stress syndrome” (PSS) (Topel et al. 1968). In Europe, it was referred to as “acute stress syndrome” (Allen et al. 1970a), “malignant hyperthermia syndrome” (Eikelenboom and Minkema 1974), or “acute back muscle necrosis” (Thoonen and Hoorens 1960; Bickhardt et al. 1975; Bradley et al. 1979). PSS was also noted to occur on-farm and to be associated with other social stressors, including mixing, fighting, and mating. Topel et al. (1968) noted that rapid tail tremors were often the first sign, followed by dyspnea progressing to open-mouthed breathing, hyperthermia, irregu-
lar skin blanching and erythema, reluctance to move, collapse, and death within as little as a few minutes of the stress, and rigor mortis occurring almost immediately postmortem.

Pharmacologic induction in pigs of a fatal syndrome with a genetic basis was first recognized during anesthesia of Landrace pigs for experimental surgery using depolarizing muscle relaxants such as succinylcholine (Hall et al. 1966; Harrison 1994) and volatile anesthetics such as halothane (Harrison et al. 1968). Malignant hyperthermia rapidly developed, characterized by muscle rigidity, “blotchy blueeness” of the skin, and circulatory failure with gross metabolic and respiratory acidosis. The similarity of this malignant hyperthermia syndrome to PSS was soon recognized (Eikelenboom and Sybesma 1969; Sybesma and Eikelenboom 1969; Allen et al. 1970a), and a halothane challenge test was developed as a field test for identification of swine with susceptibility to PSS (Christian 1974) and formation of PSE pork (Eikelenboom and Minkema 1974) and gained widespread, international use (Webb 1980). Induction of malignant hyperthermia has also been reported using α-adrenergic agents SHT2A serotonin receptor agonists (Hall et al. 1977b; Lüoscher et al. 1990; Fiege et al. 2003) and high doses of ryanodine receptor agonists such as 4-chloro-m-cresol (Wappler et al. 1999).

**EPIDEMIOLOGY**

**Origin**

Occurrence of PSE pork was reported in the German literature in the early twentieth century (Wismer-Pedersen 1969). It was associated with inbreeding, the stress of management and transport, and acute heart failure (Hupka 1939). The mutation was first recognized and concentrated in swine near the small village of Pietrain in the province of Brabant in Belgium about 1920 (Ollivier 1980; Porter 1993). It was used to create the Pietrain breed, which was based on crossings of swine of the local (Normand) and Berkshire breeds (Porter 1993). With the development of demand for high-quality fresh meat, the leaness (decreased fat deposition) and musculature of the Pietrain gained greater importance, and it was recognized as a breed, with a Belgium herd book being established in 1953 (Porter 1993). Recent haplotype DNA sequence analyses (Fujii et al. 1991) and extensive DNA testing throughout the world (O’Brien et al. 1993; Vögel et al. 1993, 1994; McPhee et al. 1994; Lackovic et al. 1997; Yun et al. 1998; Bastos et al. 2000; Morioka 2002; EuiKyung and YeonSoo 2002; Sabre et al. 2003) confirm that PSS arose from a single founder pig.

**Spread**

The PSS mutation apparently spread from Belgium to adjacent Germany, France, and the Netherlands, and to other European countries. It may have spread to the United States via Danish Landrace, which were imported into the United States in 1934, released to the public in 1950, and became important in establishing the American Landrace herd (Porter 1993). In the United States, the PSS gene first became well known in Ohio’s Poland China breed, where the mutation might also have been introduced from its Berkshire ancestry (Lynch 1914), which it has in common with the Pietrain breed. During the Second World War, due to the development of vegetable fats and consequent decrease in demand for lard, the Poland China began to be bred for a leaner carcass (Porter 1993). By the late 1950s this breed was recognized for its high incidence of PSE pork (Judge et al. 1959; Briskey 1964), by the mid-1960s for its associated high prevalence of stress susceptibility (Judge et al. 1967, 1968; Briskey 1969; Forrest et al. 1968), and soon afterward for its high prevalence of halothane sensitivity (Jones et al. 1970, 1973; Nelson et al. 1972). In the 1970s, the pattern of spread of the PSS mutation was indicated by national prevalences within the Landrace breed of reactors in the halothane challenge test: approximately 90% in Belgium; 70% in West Germany; 20% in France and the Netherlands; 15% in Sweden, Switzerland, and South Africa; 10% in Britain, Denmark, Finland, and French Canada; and 5% in Norway, Ireland, Australia, and English Canada (Jensen 1979; Webb 1980, 1981; DeRoth et al. 1981; Mitchell and Heffron 1982; Seeler et al. 1984; Kallweit 1985).

Prior to the early 1980s, in marked contrast to the Pietrain, Landrace, and Poland China breeds, positive responders to the halothane challenge test were not reported for Duroc, Large White, and American Yorkshire swine, and Hampshires and Dutch Yorkshire had fewer than 3% responders (Webb 1981).

The rapid spread of the PSS mutation was based on a number of factors other than the conspicuous increase of muscularity and leanness in PSS gene homozygotes. Propagation was, and still is in North America and many other countries, facilitated by pork-packing plants providing financial incentives for carcasses with high lean yields. Consequently, swine breeders emphasized selection for decreased backfat and for increased lean carcass weight. Spread was further propagated by the lack of penalty for production of inferior-quality pork, especially in countries such as Belgium, Germany, Great Britain, and the United States, which were primarily importers of pork, compared with countries that were primarily exporters of pork, such as Denmark and the Netherlands (Kallweit 1985). The speed and pervasive nature of the spread were facilitated by the pyramidal structure of the modern swine industry, which amplifies the genetics of a small proportion of the population into a large proportion of slaughter hogs, and by the rapid national and international exchange of breeding stock. The major impetus for its spread was the intense selection pressure for leaness that began in the mid- to late 1950s and intensified through the early 1970s, resulting in PSS achieving near-epidemic proportions.
There is a noteworthy implication of the rapid spread of the PSS mutation from a single founder animal across numerous breeds in many countries. Crossbreeding must have occurred between supposedly purebred breeds of swine. This is especially evidenced by the high frequency of the PSS gene that developed in Yorkshire, Duroc, and Hampshire breeds (O’Brien 1995), which in the 1970s had been considered to be free of PSS susceptibility (Webb 1981). Furthermore, local swine breeds raised for pork production in areas where modern intensive selection programs have not been used may be free of the PSS mutation, such as in Siberia (Knyazev et al. 1996) or the Guanling pigs in Guizhou, China (ShanHua 1997), or Manchado de Jabugo pig of Portugal (Ramos et al. 2000).

In the 1970s, the relationships of PSS and muscularity and PSE, and the adverse economic impact of mortality and severe PSE pork in homozygotes for the PSS gene, became widely recognized (Topel 1981a; Kallweit 1985). This, and the availability of the halothane challenge test (and blood-typing tests in Europe), led to intense selection against homozygotes for the PSS gene and a rapid and substantial decline in their numbers from the late 1970s and early 1980s (Topel 1981a; Webb 1981; Kallweit 1985; Vögeli et al. 1985), especially in countries with a national swine selection program. From 1978, the percentage of halothane test reactors dropped from 18% to 1% in 1982 in Swiss Landrace; from 18% to 5% in 1984 in French Landrace; from 12% to 5% in 1984 in Finnish Landrace; and from 6% to 2% in 1983 in Norwegian Landrace. In the early 1990s in North America and England, DNA tests of breeding stock indicated that 1–2% of swine, especially Landrace swine, were homozygous for the PSS mutation and therefore likely to be halothane test responders (O’Brien 1995).

Prevalence

Estimates of the prevalence of the PSS mutation in 25,000 swine of various breeds used in breeding programs were made using a DNA-based blood test (O’Brien et al. 1993; O’Brien 1995). Blood was submitted from 200 American swine breeders, of which 50% were from Illinois, Indiana, and Iowa; from 150 Canadian swine breeders, of which 50% were from Ontario; and from 5 British farms. The percentage of swine heterozygous for the PSS mutation varied in different breeds and countries but was highest in England and in the Landrace: in England, 40% of Landrace, 20% of Large White, and 30% of all pigs; in the United States, 40% of Landrace, 35% of Duroc, 25% of Hampshire and of all swine; and in Canada, 30% of Landrace and 15–20% of Yorkshire, Hampshire, Duroc, and all swine. The percentage of swine homozygous for the PSS mutation was 1% in Canada and 2% in the United States and England. In Canada, selection against swine with the PSS mutation over the last 10 years has apparently decreased the incidence of PSS gene heterozygotes by up to 75% (Du 2003).

Mortality is the most conspicuous and dramatic effect of the PSS mutation but is uncommon, typically occurring in substantially fewer than 0.5% of North American and European swine (Tarrant 1993). However, prior to selection against PSS gene homozygotes and improvement of transport conditions (Tarrant 1993), mortality in transported swine was as high as 4–10% (Devloo et al. 1971; Lendfers 1971; Korolija 1979). Mortality from PSS occurs at rates of up to 10–15% of homozygotes for the PSS mutation (Webb and Jordan 1979; Rundgren et al. 1990; McPhee et al. 1994). These deaths may be largely eliminated by not using PSS gene homozygotes as slaughter pigs and by “stress”-free management practices (Topel 1981b). Finnish studies showed that reduction of the prevalence of halothane reactors from 12% to near 0% resulted in a decrease in mortality rates during transport from 0.8% to 0.1% (Kuosmanen and Puonti 1993). In Denmark, where the PSS gene has been largely eradicated, transport death rates are less than 0.02% (Barton-Gade et al. 2003).

The average frequency of PSS gene heterozygotes in North America was approximately twofold higher in tested breeding stock, 20–25% (O’Brien et al. 1993; O’Brien 1995), than in pigs used for slaughter, 11–15% (Pommier et al. 1992; Goodwin 1994a, b; Goodwin and Burroughs 1995; Gibson et al. 1996). This difference probably reflects use of the gene in breeding stock, especially in terminal sire lines, but removal of PSS gene homozygosity from slaughter hogs.

Introduction of the DNA-based test for the PSS mutation has enabled more recent estimates of the frequency of heterozygotes to be made in additional countries, including 28% in Brazil (Bastos et al. 2000), 6% in Japan (Morioka 2002), 9% in Estonia (Sabre et al. 2003), 15% in Korea (EuiKyung and YeonSoo 2002), 28% in Taiwan (Yun et al. 1998), and 11% in Croatia (Lackovic et al. 1997).

Because of possible negative commercial effects, few estimates of the prevalence of PSE pork are published, especially in countries exporting pork (Cassens et al. 1980). Estimates vary depending on the criteria used for defining PSE. In Europe, in the early 1960s, PSE pork was reported in high proportions, in up to 40% of Danish Landrace and 90% of Belgium Pietrain carcasses (Briskley 1964). As previously indicated, the proportion of Landrace swine testing positive in the halothane challenge test was high, and 80% of these swine developed PSE pork (Eikelenboom 1985; Jensen and Barton-Gade 1985). In some countries, such as Switzerland and Finland, where there was intense selection pressure against halothane reactors and where meat quality was used in breeding selection programs, the incidence of PSE pork has decreased. Frequency of PSE pork in Swiss Landrace decreased from 33% in 1978 to 7% in 1983 (Vögeli et al. 1985). In 1998, the incidence of PSE, based on an initial postmortem measurement of semimembranosus pH of less than 6, was reported to be 69% for
Portugal, 23% for the Netherlands, 8% for Italy, and only 2% for Denmark. (Warriss et al. 1998). In contrast, the incidence of PSE pork increased over this time period in Great Britain: in 1964 and 1972–73, 6% of 5000 carcasses were found to have PSE pork as defined by a pH of less than 6 occurring 45 minutes after slaughter; but in 1983, the figure was 13% (Kempster and Cutherton 1975; Chadwick and Kempster 1983). In two surveys reported in 1981 of 10,000 hogs in Canada, 20% and 22% were found to have PSE pork based on this pH measurement (Thompson 1981). Subjective determinations on swine carcasses of PSE pork scores based on color, firmness, and wetness are apparently little changed in the United States since the early 1960s. A survey of 15,000 swine indicated a prevalence of 18% PSE pork (Briskey 1964). Assessment of more than 10,000 hams at 14 different slaughterhouses in the early 1990s found PSE pork prevalence to average 16% but to vary widely from 6% to 33% (Kauffman et al. 1993; Bäckström and Kauffman 1995). In Ireland in the late 1990s the annual average PSE prevalence was estimated at 26%, although the frequency varied substantially over the year, depending in part on the weather but also on slaughtering rates and variation in resting periods before slaughter (O’Neill et al. 2003).

PATHOGENESIS

The PSS gene causes increased sensitivity and responsiveness of swine and of their isolated skeletal muscle to pharmacologic, neural, anoxic, endocrine, and physical stimulation (Lister et al. 1970; Gronert et al. 1980; Ahern et al. 1985). This muscle hypersensitivity is associated with abnormal intracellular calcium release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum, the organelle primarily regulating intracellular calcium concentration and, therefore, muscle activity. When loading calcium into isolated sarcoplasmic reticulum to study calcium release, release occurred prematurely, especially in the presence of caffeine (Ohnishi et al. 1983; Nelson 1983). Calcium was released in abnormally greater amounts and at faster speeds (Kim et al. 1984). Specifically, the sarcoplasmic reticulum’s calcium-release channel, which plays a critical role in the biochemical coupling of muscle stimulation and activity (Ogawa 1994), was activated by lower concentrations of agonists and inhibited by higher concentrations of antagonists than for controls (O’Brien et al. 1985a; O’Brien 1986a). This hypersensitivity of the calcium-release channel causing calcium release at greater speeds and in higher amounts than normal was proposed to result from a submolecular defect that facilitated the opening of the channel or else inhibited its closure (O’Brien 1985; O’Brien 1990). The channel defect arises from a DNA point mutation of cytosine to thymine at the 1843rd nucleotide of the ryr-1 gene near the centromere of chromosome 6. This causes replacement of arginine by cysteine at the 615th amino acid of the channel (Fujii et al. 1991). This gene was first referred to as the Hal gene in swine, based on linkage studies of halothane sensitivity and blood types (Andresen and Jensen 1977).

Various forms of muscle stimulants activate the hypersensitive calcium-release channel by different mechanisms (O’Brien 1986a; Ogawa 1994). Caffeine and calcium itself are calcium-release channel agonists. Neural and electrical stimulation and depolarizing muscle relaxants depolarize the muscle surface membrane and thereby activate a voltage sensor (itself a vestigial calcium channel) that is coupled to, and regulates, the calcium-release channel. Activation may also occur due to an increased intracellular influx of calcium down its steep concentration gradient into the cell. Nonspecific membrane-perturbing agents, such as volatile anesthetics, increase membrane permeability to calcium (O’Brien 1986a). Stimulation of surface-membrane α-adrenergic or serotonin 5HT2A receptors triggers inositol phosphate formation and opening of an associated calcium channel (Scholz et al. 1991, 1993; Gerbershagen et al. 2003). During anoxia, several factors operate to increase calcium influx, including energy depletion, acidosis, free-radical formation, and activation of membrane-degradative enzymes and loss of calcium-sequestration activity by sarcoplasmic reticulum (O’Brien 1986b; O’Brien et al. 1991).

Stress Susceptibility

Stress susceptibility (PSS) is largely restricted to swine homozygous for the PSS gene (see below) and can be attributed to the inappropriate and excessive metabolic and contractile responses of skeletal muscle to stimulation. Hypermetabolism results in accelerated oxygen and muscle glycogen consumption, with release of excessive heat, acids, potassium, carbon dioxide, and muscle proteins into the blood (Berman et al. 1970; Clark et al. 1973; Gronert and Milde 1976; Hall et al. 1980a). Thermogenesis, in conjunction with peripheral vasoconstriction, leads to hyperthermia (Clark et al. 1973; Hall et al. 1976). Rapid rates of aerobic metabolism desaturate venous oxygen, leading to cyanosis (Hall et al. 1976; Gronert 1980). Developing metabolic and respiratory acidosis causes tachypnea and dyspnea. Marked activation of the sympathetic neuroendocrine system causes tachycardia and enhanced cardiac output, but with the developing hypercatecholamine, hyperthermia, hyperkalemia, acidosis, and hemoconcentration, this rapidly progresses to cardiac arrhythmia and eventually arrest (Gronert and Theye 1976; Gronert et al. 1977). The rapid depletion of intramuscular glycogen and adenosine triphosphate (ATP) results in almost immediate onset of rigor mortis (Briskey 1964).

Although sympathetic neuroendocrine responses in PSS-susceptible swine are exaggerated and prolonged, they are clearly consequences and aggravators, rather than initiators, of the exaggerated and prolonged re-
sponses of muscle to stimulation (Gronert et al. 1977, 1980). The PSS reaction may be aggravated by sympathetic enhancement of muscle glycogenolysis, facilitation of neuromuscular transmission, vasoconstriction in skin or muscle, leading to decreased heat loss or muscle ischemia (Lister et al. 1970; Gronert et al. 1980) and to direct stimulation of skeletal muscle by alpha-adrenergic receptor activation (Lister et al. 1976; Hall et al. 1977b). Serotonin may also have a secondary role in PSS. Its release in the brain and its serum concentration are increased by stress, may facilitate motor neuron transmission, have a vasoconstrictive effect that impairs oxygenation of ischemic muscle (Komiyama et al. 2004), and directly stimulate skeletal muscle (Löschter et al. 1990, 1994; Gerdes et al. 1992).

Inferior Meat Quality (PSE Pork)

Muscle Characteristics. Formation of PSE pork is due to postmortem glycogenolysis and glycolysis generated by the sudden anoxia and catecholamine, motor nerve, and mechanical stimulation that occur with stunning and exsanguination at slaughter (Lawrie 1960; Briskey 1964; McLoughlin 1971). The combined effects of the resultant increases in acid and heat production cause denaturation of sarcoplasmic and myofibrillar proteins and contraction of the intermyofilament fluid compartment as negative electrostatic repulsion between filaments decreases (Bendall and Swatland 1988). These changes result in loss of water-binding capacity, increased light scattering, altered refractive indices, and sarcomere lengthening, which collectively produce PSE pork (Bendal and Swatland 1988; Swatland 1989, 1993). Furthermore, during the early hypermetabolic state, osmotically active end-products cause a transient influx of water from the extracellular space into the sarcoplasmic fluid compartment (Berman et al. 1970; Frøystein et al. 1984; Janzen et al. 1994).

The PSE pork develops primarily in muscles of the hams and loins, especially the longissimus dorsi, semimembranosus, and gluteus muscles (Ludvigsen 1953; Briskey et al. 1959b; Lawrie 1960; Thoonen and Hoorens 1960). These muscles have a higher proportion of “white” fibers with high glycolytic capacities: 70–85% in the longissimus dorsi, 79–93% in the white semitendinosus, and 81% in the gluteus (Gallant 1980; Rahelic and Puac 1981; Essén-Gustavsson and Lindholm 1984).

Selection for increased muscularity has resulted in domestic swine having skeletal muscle with increased susceptibility to PSE, which is further increased if they have the PSS gene. Compared to wild pigs, their skeletal muscle has more fast-twitch (type II) fibers, and more of these fibers have a high capacity for glycolysis but poor fatigue resistance (Szentkuti et al. 1981; Rahelic and Puac 1981; Essén-Gustavsson and Lindholm 1984). Swine with PSS susceptibility have increased muscle fiber diameter (Dilday et al. 1970; Sair et al. 1972) in association with decreased numbers of capillaries and oxidative capacity (Essén-Gustavsson et al. 1992; Fiedler et al. 1999), although proportions of fiber types do not differ (Gallant 1980; Heffron et al. 1982; Essén-Gustavsson and Lindholm 1984), or are mildly increased for fast twitch glycolytic fibers (Fiedler et al. 1999), from those of nonsusceptible swine of the same breed. Apparently because of their hypersensitivity to stimulation, muscle fibers from PSS-susceptible swine frequently are supercontracted in histologic preparations (Ludvigsen 1953; Henry et al. 1955; Lawrie 1960), especially the type II fibers (Palmer et al. 1977). Swine with PSS susceptibility also have increased numbers of fibers with internal nuclei and increased numbers of angular fibers and of giant fibers, which may represent accumulation of mild muscle injury (Cassens and Cooper 1969; Palmer et al. 1977; Dutson et al. 1978; Handel and Stickland 1986; Fiedler et al. 1999).

Environmental and Managemental Factors. Because muscle affected by the PSS mutation is hypersensitive to stimulation, postmortem development of PSE pork is more frequent and severe than in normal muscle. However, there are several environmental and swine/carcass management factors that modify the degree of development of PSE pork in swine with the PSS mutation. These factors exert their effect primarily by affecting the degree of muscle stimulation and the amount of muscle metabolic substrate, glycogen. Since the speed and duration of the postmortem glycolytic reaction, and the associated production of acid and heat, are primarily dependent on glycogen content, then pre-slaughter factors that decrease glycogen concentration will limit the development of PSE pork (Briskey et al. 1959b). If muscle glycogen is substantially reduced prior to slaughter, and the animal given time to normalize any perturbations in acid-base balance, then muscle from PSS swine does not develop PSE. If the glycogen depletion is severe, as with exhaustion or excessive fasting, the opposite to PSE pork may develop, namely, dry, firm, and dark (DFD) pork (Briskey et al. 1959b; Lundström et al. 1989; Bäckström and Kauffman 1995; Gispert et al. 2000). Since swine with the PSS mutation are more sensitive and reactive to muscle stimulation and therefore to initiation of glycogenolysis, they may be more sensitive to development of DFD.

Specific environmental and swine management factors shown to enhance the development of PSE pork are pre-slaughter transport more than 500 km, high stocking density during transport; increased ambient temperatures of summer and autumn, and stress immediately before slaughter. Factors known to decrease the development of PSE pork are pre-slaughter transport of 50–300 km; pre-slaughter fasting for 12–22 hours; pre-slaughter lairage holding times of 2–3 hours to allow recovery from stresses prior to the abattoir; rubber-textured floor surface allowing stable footing; and preconditioning to stressors such as handling, mixing, and crowding.
mortem glycogenolysis (Gibson et al. 1996). The traditional use of electrical prods and restrainers to drive pigs in single file to the stunning machine was replaced with an automated system of driving small groups of pigs with a sliding door from the piggery to the machine.

Compared with using captive-bolt instruments, carbon dioxide, or low-voltage for stunning for slaughter, muscle stimulation was thought to be reduced and development of PSE pork decreased with the use of short-duration stunning with high voltage (300 V) followed within 30 seconds by bleeding (van der Wal 1971a, b; Ratzliff 1971; Grandin 1980a, 1982; van der Wal and Eikelenboom 1981). Conversely, several more recent studies suggest that high-voltage stunning may produce more PSE pork than when pigs are stunned without restraint and with low voltage or, especially, with carbon dioxide (Bäckström and Kauffman 1995). In a Spanish study, PSE was reduced from 36% to 5% and the incidence of petechiae, ecchymosis, and hematomas was substantially reduced by replacing electrical stunning with carbon dioxide stunning (Velarde et al. 2001). Drip loss was reduced from 7.3% to 5.8% in an Australian study by use of carbon dioxide rather than electrical stunning (Channon et al. 2000).

High rates of postmortem glycolysis stimulated by slaughter and leading to PSE pork are reduced by prior inhibition of neuromuscular transmission with curare (Bendall 1966), nondepolarizing muscle relaxants (Hallund and Bendall 1965), magnesium (Sair et al. 1970; Lahucky et al. 2004), or by prior administration of dantrolene (Yang et al. 1983); whereas rates of postmortem glycolysis are increased by preslaughter administration of epinephrine (Althen et al. 1979). Liquid nitrogen chilling prevents formation of PSE (Borchert and Briskey 1964). Use of rapid chilling within the first half hour postmortem causes decreased rates of pH drop and decreased incidence of PSE, with heterozygotes having normal drip loss (Maribo et al. 1998). However, too rapid a chilling rate is associated with cold shortening of muscle fibers with loss of water binding capacity and development of tough pork (Rosenfeld and Anersen 2003).

Hampshire swine have a high prevalence of the RN gene, which causes a 70% increase in glycogen content of white muscle (Sair et al. 1963; Monin and Sellier 1985; Le Roy et al. 1990). Consequently, postmortem glycolytic metabolism is prolonged—although at a normal rate—the final pH is abnormally low, and the meat quality is decreased. Carcasses with both the RN and ryr-1 genes are especially susceptible to developing severe PSE pork, because of increased duration and rate of postmortem glycolysis (Gibson et al. 1996).

Environmental and swine/carcass management factors may play a more important role than genetic factors in determining the prevalence and severity of PSE pork. Although it has long been known that PSE pork develops in swine without the PSS gene (Mitchell and Heffron 1982), the proportion of PSE pork caused by the PSS gene may be highly variable, depending on the PSS gene frequency, definition of PSE pork used, the severity of the preslaughter stress, and the extent of control over postmortem carcass deterioration. Jensen and Barton-Gade (1985) reported that inclusion of pork of doubtful quality into the category of PSE pork increased the incidence of PSE pork from 5% to 15%, 27% to 38%, and 81% to 90% in swine without, heterozygous for, and homozygous for the PSS gene, respectively. Kauffman et al. (1993) introduced the terms RSE (red, soft, and exudative) and RSN (red, soft, and normal) to classify non-PSE pork of questionable quality and of optimal quality, respectively. Only 15% of pork was considered ideal, with more than 50% being of questionable quality because of exudation despite acceptable color. Barton-Gade found that an increase in preslaughter stress increased the incidence of PSE pork from 0% to 33%, 13% to 33%, and 79% to 100% in swine without, heterozygous for, and homozygous for the PSS gene, respectively (Lundström et al. 1989). The development of the DNA test for PSS allowed a recent study of a slaughterhouse with a high (20–30%) incidence of PSE and revealed that nongenetic causes of PSE pork were twice as important as the PSS gene (Pommier and Houde 1993). Loins deemed by visual appraisal to be PSE pork were objectively assessed for PSE pork using a surface colorimeter. Swine normal, heterozygous, and homozygous for the PSS gene, respectively, had PSE pork frequencies of 54%, 80%, and 91% and produced 68%, 29%, and 4% of the PSE pork at that slaughterhouse. In a Spanish study, meat quality assessed by measuring electrical conductivity in the semimembranous muscle was unaffected by the heterozygous state (Gispert et al. 2000). However, lack of effect of the heterozygous gene in this study may be related to the slower postmortem rate of decrease in pH in semimembranosus than in longissium muscle for heterozygotes (Fernandez et al. 2002).

Revenue loss related to PSE muscle is caused by increased drip loss during storage, transport, and processing of the carcass and pork. This increased water loss from pork causes shrinkage and weight loss, which decrease its dollar value (Kauffman et al. 1978). Additionally, PSE muscle may be rerouted for processing into less-valuable pork products, such as sausage. Shorter shelf life and, especially, decreased consumer acceptance of PSE pork appearance and taste cause retail loss to the swine and pork industries (Buchter and Zeuthern 1971; Topel 1976; Smith and Lesser 1982; Goodwin 1994a, b; Casteels et al. 1995; Jeremiah et al. 1996). For the swine and pork industries of the United States, estimates of revenue loss due to PSE pork exceed $50 million annually (see below).
Superior Musculature, Leanness, and Growth Efficiency
The calcium-release channel defect caused by the PSS mutation can plausibly explain the associated muscularity, leanness, and increased growth efficiency, although the physiological mechanisms have not been defined. For the same amount of stimulation as for muscle without the PSS mutation, activity of muscle with the PSS mutation is more frequent, intense, and longer lasting. Because contractile activity is a stimulus for muscle hypertrophy, swine with the PSS mutation develop greater muscularity. This increased demand for muscle growth must also result in increased demand for conversion of feed into lean muscle than into adipose tissue, resulting in greater leanness. And, because the energy content of muscle is lower than that of adipose tissue, less feed is required per unit body weight.

Although a calcium-release channel defect may plausibly explain the phenotypic changes associated with the PSS mutation, it is not implausible that expression of other genes linked to this mutation might modify these phenotypic traits. Several genes with trophic or regulatory effects on skeletal muscle and adipose tissue have been linked to the PSS mutation, including apolipoprotein E, hormone-sensitive lipase, transforming growth factor β-1, and the extended black (E) locus for the melanocortin 1 receptor for α-melanocyte-stimulating hormone (Vögeli et al. 1993; Mariani et al. 1996). In this regard, it is interesting to note the relationship of the black-spotting phenotype associated with the e-locus and the black coloration of Pietrain and Poland China swine, which have had the highest incidence of PSS, and of their common ancestor, the Berkshire. Recently, the increased muscle mass and decreased fat deposition of the Pietrain compared to Large White pigs has been attributed to similar but separate abnormalities of neurotransmitter concentrations in brains from swine with the PSS mutation (Altrogge et al. 1980; Adeola et al. 1993). This interpretation is supported by the association of the mutation of *ryr-1* in swine hippocampus with decreased expression of *ryr-1* and the calcium-binding protein, calsequestrin (Weaver et al. 2000). Alternatively, these alterations in catecholamine and serotonin concentration may be secondary to stress susceptibility. Stress increases the brain release and serum concentration of serotonin, which is a mediator of psychological stress by facilitation of motor neuron excitation, and has a vasoconstrictive effect that impairs oxygenation of ischemic muscle (Komiyama et al. 2004), and directly stimulates muscle (Löscher et al. 1990, 1994; Gerdès et al. 1992).

The increased sensitivity of lymphocytes from individuals with the PSS mutation to halothane-induced increases in intracellular calcium (Klip et al. 1987; O’Brien et al. 1989; O’Brien et al. 1990b) has been attributed to the B lymphocyte expressing the *ryr-1* gene (Girard et al. 2001; Sei et al. 2002). There was increased sensitivity to other triggers of *ryr-1*-mediated calcium signaling, including caffeine, and 4-chloro-m-cresol. The physiological significance of this lymphocyte hypersensitivity is unknown and has not been associated with any pathophysiology of the immune system or inflammatory response. It is noteworthy, however, that B cells produce inflammatory cytokines, which may elicit a pyrogenic response that could contribute to abnormal temperature regulation in PSS.

In addition to primary involvement of tissues expressing the *ryr-1* gene, there is secondary involvement of other tissues. As described above, the amount and distribution of fat deposition are decreased in swine with the PSS mutation, probably because of their enhanced muscle growth. Also, as described above, PSS is characterized by marked stimulation of the sympathetic neuroendocrine system, causing cardiac arrhythmia and arrest (Gronert et al. 1977). Mild erythrocyte membrane abnormalities (Harrison and Verburg 1973; O’Brien et al. 1985b) and increased sensitivity platelets (Miller et al. 1991; Fink et al. 1992) to halothane-induced increases in cytoplasmic calcium also occur in swine with the PSS mutation. These abnormalities may be secondary to altered muscle metabolism, although a direct effect of the mutation cannot yet be definitively excluded.

Extramuscular Tissue Effects
Tissues other than skeletal muscle that might be directly affected by the PSS mutation can be deduced from the tissues that express the *ryr-1* gene. Although cardiac and smooth muscle, adipose tissue, and viscera do not express it, the *ryr-1* gene is expressed in the brain, particularly in the thalamus, hippocampus, striatum, and cerebellum, and especially in Purkinje cells (Furuichi et al. 1994; Giannini et al. 1995). Although the physiological relevance of brain *ryr-1* expression is unknown, it may be related in part to the observation of regional abnormalities of neurotransmitter concentrations in brains.

Secondary Degenerative Effects
In addition to calcium’s role in metabolic and contractile activities, it activates degradative processes, including proteolysis by neutral proteases and free-fatty-acid release from phospholipids by calmodulin-dependent phospholipase A₂ (Cheah et al. 1986; Sensky et al. 1999). Furthermore, as a side-product of increased mitochondrial activity, free radicals are formed and cause lipoperoxidation and further damage (Duthie and Arthur 1993). These processes likely contribute to the postmortem deterioration of pork quality.
INHERITANCE OF THE PSS GENE AND ITS EFFECTS IN THE HETEROZYGOUS STATE

Historically, definition of the pattern of inheritance of the various traits associated with the PSS gene has been controversial. However, with refinement and improved accuracy of methods for detection of the heterozygote, patterns have become more clear. The appearance of the inheritance pattern is dependent upon a number of factors, including nature of the trait being considered, gene dosage needed for the trait to be exhibited, sensitivity and precision with which the trait is measured, presence of exacerbating or obscuring modifying factors, variability in the trait due to other genetic factors, and accuracy with which the genotypes can be separated. Finally, as attention focuses on the heterozygote, it is becoming apparent that there are breed and strain effects modifying the expression of the gene in various live-performance and carcass traits.

Halothane Sensitivity and Stress Susceptibility
Breeding experiments by Christian (1974) and Mabry et al. (1981) using American Yorkshire and Poland China swine first indicated that the pattern of inheritance of reactivity in the standardized halothane challenge test was monogenic and autosomal recessive. This was confirmed in studies of Pietrain (Ollivier et al. 1975; Reik et al. 1983), Pietrain-Hampshire (Smith and Hampton 1977; Webb and Smith 1977), and Dutch (Minkema et al. 1977) and Australian Landrace (McPhee et al. 1979). The average penetrance estimate was high, near 90%, but ranged from 64–130%. Lowered penetrance estimates were caused by false-negative test results (Gallant and Rempel 1987), which in turn were due to various causes, including testing pigs that were less than 8 weeks old (Carden and Webb 1984; Fay and Gallant 1990), in poor body condition, or with poor muscularity (Mabry et al. 1981); using suboptimal halothane exposure (McGrath et al. 1984); and the inherent inaccuracy of the test (Webb and Jordan 1979). Accurate definition of the pattern of inheritance depended on knowledge of the genotype of breeding swine testing negative, which could be determined after mating them with positive responders. Otherwise, offspring from matings of positive with negative responders would frequently yield positive responders and the pattern of inheritance would be confounded (Carden et al. 1983; O’Brien et al. 1985b). Understanding of the pattern of inheritance was further confused by the finding of dominant inheritance when the challenge test was made more vigorous by prolongation of halothane exposure (Williams and Lasley 1977; Britt et al. 1978) or by coadministration of succinylcholine (Webb et al. 1986; Seeler et al. 1984), resulting in identification of heterozygotes.

The pattern of inheritance of susceptibility to PSS has not been well studied but appears recessive. Stress-induced mortality was approximately tenfold higher in halothane test reactors than nonreactors (Eikelenboom et al. 1980a, b). In one study, deaths occurred in none of the PSS gene heterozygotes but occurred in 15% of PSS gene homozygotes (Rundgren et al. 1990). Transport of swine in tropical Australia caused the death of 14% of PSS gene homozygotes, 2.6% of heterozygotes, but only 1.4% of normal swine (McPhee et al. 1994). The adverse effect of the PSS gene on mortality was almost twofold higher in swine selected for rapid lean-growth rates.

Beneficial and Deleterious Carcass Traits
Ollivier (1967, 1980) studied backcrosses of offspring (F1) of Pietrain and Large White matings and was the first to report that increased muscularity in association with the PSS gene was inherited in an autosomal, monogenic, dominant pattern. Heterozygotes had immediately greater conformation scores for increased muscling, shorter carcass length measurements, and increased ham and loin yields. After the discovery of the halothane test, further studies confirmed these results and showed that positive reactors had shorter carcasses, lower backfat thicknesses, greater ham and loin yields, and increased dressing compared with nonreactors (Eikelenboom and Minkema 1974; Webb and Jordan 1979; Gerwig et al. 1979; Monin et al. 1981) and that heterozygotes typically had intermediate values (Eikelenboom et al. 1980a, b; Kukoyi et al. 1981).

Detection and quantification of the effects of the PSS gene in heterozygotes on carcass characteristics were further facilitated by the development of linked blood markers and the DNA test for the PSS gene. Using these tests, heterozygotes, compared with normal swine, were typically shown to be shorter, leaner, more muscular, and slower but more efficient growers. The effects of the gene varied substantially according to breed and strain but produced up to 4–5% slower daily weight gain, 0.5–0.9% shorter carcasses, 0.5–1% increased carcass weights, 0.5–1.2% increased dressing percentage, 2–6% increased lean yield, 2.5–4% increased daily gain of lean tissue, 2–6% increased ham yield, 3–15% increased loin-eye area, 0–8% decreased backfat, 10–36% decreased marbling, and 2–9% decreased feed consumption per liveweight gain (Jensen and Barton-Gade 1985; Rundgren et al. 1990; Pommier et al. 1992; De Smet et al. 1993; O’Brien et al. 1994; McPhee et al. 1994; Goodwin and Burroughs 1995; Leach et al. 1996; Fabrega et al. 2002).

Although these advantageous effects were found in swine heterozygous for the PSS gene in both purebred and various crossbred lines of Hampshire, Berkshire, Duroc, Landrace, Pietrain, Large White, and Yorkshire origin, they were not found in some strains of Yorkshire, Large White, Duroc, and spotted swine. Data from three large studies, each including 1000–3000 swine of various breeds, and in which breeds were not separated, indicated that the only consistent effects of the heterozygous gene in all swine were 0.5–0.6% increased dressing
percentage, 8–11% decreased marbling scores, and 2–9% increased loin-eye area (Goodwin 1994a, b; Goodwin and Burroughs 1995; Gibson et al. 1996). A Spanish study of 1300 genotyped swine found that the gene in the heterozygous state increased loin depth by 6% and mean lean content by 1.5%, although other unidentified factors across abattoirs could cause up to 2.5% difference in lean content (Gispert et al. 2000).

Early studies on the inheritance of adverse meat quality due to the PSS gene were inconsistent. MacDougall and Disney (1967) found in crossbreeding studies of Pietrain and British Landrace swine that heterozygotes had intermediate-quality pork, although it was closer to that of normal swine than to that of the PSS homozygous Pietrains. Studies of Dutch Landrace by Eikelenboom et al. (1980a, b) indicated that poor meat quality was a recessive trait; heterozygotes and normal swine carcasses were indistinguishable by subjective scoring. Later studies, in which genotypes could be more accurately distinguished, indicated that heterozygotes for the PSS gene had meat quality characteristics that were intermediate between those of normal and PSS gene homozygotes, but closer to normal. In Danish Landrace, heterozygotes had intermediate meat quality, although it was significantly closer to normal than to that of PSS gene homozygotes (Jensen and Barton-Gade 1985). The frequency of PSE pork in these Danish carcasses was 81% for PSS gene homozygotes, 5% for normal swine, and 27% for heterozygotes. In Spanish commercial swine, incidence of PSE was 25% for heterozygotes and 8% for normal swine (Velarde et al. 2001). Numerous studies found drip loss after 24 hours at 4°C was increased by 5–50% in heterozygous compared with normal loin muscle. Also, intermediate scores for muscle color, firmness, and pH were found in heterozygotes (Jensen and Barton-Gade 1985; Lundstrøm et al. 1989; De Smet et al. 1993; Pommier and Houde 1993; Goodwin 1994a, b; Goodwin and Burroughs 1995; Casteels et al. 1995; Leach et al. 1996; Gibson et al. 1996). Scores for sensory characteristics, such as tenderness and juiciness of cooked pork, and for retail appearance were also found to be intermediate for heterozygotes but closer to normal than to PSS gene homozygotes (Goodwin 1994a, b; Goodwin and Burroughs 1995; Casteels et al. 1995; Jeremiah et al. 1996; Monin et al. 1999; Van Oeckel et al. 2001; Moelich et al. 2003). Untrained consumers, however found no differences in taste of pork from heterozygous compared to normal swine (Van Oeckel et al. 2001). Sensory traits of cured-cooked ham, in contrast to fresh meat, was unaffected by heterozygosity for the PSS gene (Fernandez et al. 2002a, b).

As for beneficial live-performance and carcass traits, the effect of the heterozygous gene on pork quality varied substantially according to breed and strain. All strains were affected at least partially, with Berkshire less affected than other swine, Hampshires more affected than other swine, and Yorkshires more affected than Landrace (O’Brien et al. 1994; Goodwin and Burroughs 1995; Gibson et al. 1996).

Abnormal physiological and biochemical responsiveness of skeletal muscle to stimulation is also inherited in a dominant fashion. Dose-response relationships for heterozygotes are intermediate between those of the homozygotes and those of normal swine for agonist-induced calcium release from isolated calcium-release channels, caffeine-induced contracture of isolated skeletal muscle, and high-energy phosphate depletion and acid production of muscle biopsy specimens (O’Brien 1986a, 1987; Lundstrøm et al. 1989; Fujii et al. 1991; Shen et al. 1992; Geers et al. 1992).

DIAGNOSIS

Visual Appraisal

Visual appraisal by an experienced swine handler may be 40–80% accurate in identification of homozygotes for the PSS gene. The homozygote can frequently be identified by its shorter body, bulging oval hams, thin layer of body fat, and rapid tail tremor when excited.

Necropsy

Postmortem findings after fatal PSS are nonspecific. There may be lesions of acute heart failure, including pulmonary congestion and edema with froth in trachea and bronchi, hepatic congestion, and hydrothorax. In a fresh carcass, rapid onset of rigor mortis and dark blood, due to oxygen desaturation, may be observed. The muscle is pale or gray, watery, and soft-textured with a sour smell (Ludvigsen 1953). Histopathologic examination of muscle frequently reveals hypercontracted fibers, occasional myofiber degeneration, and separation of fibers by edema, especially in longissimus dorsi and semitendinosus muscles (Ludvigsen 1953; Henry et al. 1955; Lawrie 1960). Cardiac muscle may show multifocal myofiber degeneration and fragmentation (O’Brien et al. 1987).

Halothane Challenge Test

In the typical halothane challenge test, 2- to 3-month-old swine are physically restrained and forced to inhale 3–6% halothane in oxygen (2–5 liters/minute) through a face mask for 3–5 minutes or until the development of extensor muscle rigidity (Webb and Jordan 1979; Webb 1981). Those developing rigidity are considered to have a positive response. Rigidity in responders typically starts after 1–3 minutes of exposure (Reik et al. 1983; McGrath et al. 1984; O’Brien et al. 1985b). Halothane exposures of less than 3% for 4 or 5 minutes may cause false-negative responses, whereas exposures of 4% or more only slightly increase frequency of reaction and decrease time of onset but may increase mortality (Webb and Jordan 1979; McGrath et al. 1984). The potency of inhalant anesthetic used is also critical to obtaining an accurate test result, with potency decreasing...
in the order halothane, isoflurane, enflurane, desflurane, and methoxyflurane (McGrath et al. 1981b; Wedel et al. 1993).

Sensitivity to halothane is increased by prior exertional (Van den Hende et al. 1976), thermal (örding et al. 1985), or pharmacologic stimulation of muscle by caffeine, succinylcholine, and α-adrenergic and serotonergic agents (Hall et al. 1977b; Chapin et al. 1981; Seeler et al. 1984; Löscher et al. 1990). Halothane sensitivity can be reduced, but not prevented, by poor body condition or musculature (Mabry et al. 1981), prior tranquilization (Ahern et al. 1977; McGrath et al. 1981a), administration of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants (Gronert and Milde 1981) or magnesium (Flewelling and Nelson 1980), and epidural blockade (Kerr et al. 1975; Gronert et al. 1977; Gronert 1980). However, the reaction can be prevented by administration of dantrolene (Harrison 1975; Gronert and Milde 1976; Hall et al. 1977a) or its analog azumolene (Dershitz and Sreter 1985a)

Responsiveness in the halothane test is also affected by the age of the pig. Pigs homozygous for the PSS gene but less than 8 weeks old had positive tests less frequently, with only 50% of the pigs reacting at age 3 weeks and 75% reacting at 5 weeks (Webb 1981; Carden and Webb 1984). Although the younger pigs did not always develop muscle rigidity, they did develop a non-rigid form of malignant hyperthermia, with increased body temperature and metabolic and respiratory acidosis (Fay and Gallant 1990).

Mortality, occurring within 24 hours of a positive reaction, is an important disadvantage of the halothane test. Rates of mortality among reactors in the halothane test are variable and apparently breed and strain dependent: 0.5% of approximately 360 Dutch Landrace reactors (Eikelenboom et al. 1978) to 9% of 229 Pietrain-Hampshire reactors (Webb and Jordan 1979) and 9% of French and Belgian strains of Pietrain and Landrace (Ollivier et al. 1976). Mortality rates are substantially increased if a more severe challenge is given, such as by prolonging anesthesia or additionally using succinylcholine (Williams and Lasley 1977; Britt et al. 1978; Seeler et al. 1984; Webb et al. 1986). In one Minnesota study of swine of Pietrain or Yorkshire parentage, mortality over an 18-month period averaged 10% of 200 reactors but varied from 4% to 40%, with Pietrain swine dying more often and in hot, humid weather (O’Brien et al. 1985b).

Although the standard halothane challenge test identifies only homozygotes for the PSS gene, used in combination with either progeny testing or blood-typing it has been highly effective at identification of heterozygous swine. However, such time-consuming, labor-intensive tests have been largely replaced with the more accurate and precise DNA-based test, which can be used to identify the PSS genotype in the absence of any pedigree information or ancillary tests.

### Serum Enzymes

Early studies of PSS/PSE pork demonstrated that susceptible swine had two- to tenfold greater than normal activities of muscle enzymes in the blood, especially 10–20 hours following stress. These enzymes included the skeletal muscle isozymes of lactate dehydrogenase and creatine kinase (CK), aldolase, aspartate transaminase, malate dehydrogenase, and pyruvate kinase (Hessel-De Heer 1969; Allen et al. 1970b; Woolf et al. 1970; Blickhardt 1971; Duthie and Arthur 1987). Various “CK-tests” for PSS-susceptible swine were subsequently developed, based on measurement of plasma CK activity after a standardized exercise or thermal or pharmacologic stress (Bickhardt et al. 1977; Hwang et al. 1978; Hallberg et al. 1979). Although blood CK activity gained widespread use in screening for PSS susceptibility, its variability and relatively small difference from normal make it inaccurate. Blood CK activity is increased by numerous other factors, including rapid growth phase, increased muscle mass, mild physical injury occurring during routine handling, unaccustomed exertion, and even intramuscular injections (Mitchell and Heffron 1975; Allen et al. 1976). The test was found to be unreliable, especially when the frequency of susceptible swine was low or for identification of heterozygotes (O’Brien et al. 1985b; McDonell et al. 1986).

### Clinical Chemistry

Clinical chemistry changes associated with PSS reflect the increased metabolic rate of skeletal muscle (Berman et al. 1970; Gronert and Theye 1976; Hall et al. 1982; Löscher et al. 1994). In a fulminating syndrome, there are marked increases in serum concentration of side-products of metabolism, including phosphate by 3-fold, lactic acid by 25-fold, venous carbon dioxide by 2-fold, potassium by 2- to 3-fold, glucose (from glycogenolysis) by 3-fold, adenosine (vasodilator) by 5-fold, glycerol (from muscle lipolysis) by 2-fold, magnesium by 2-fold, and body temperature by 4–6°C. Blood pH may decrease to 6.6. Because aerobic metabolism is stimulated in addition to anaerobic metabolism, oxygen uptake by muscle is increased 2- to 3-fold and venous blood is two-thirds desaturated of oxygen. Release of potassium and glucose due to glycogenolysis occurs from liver as well as muscle (Hall et al. 1980b). As metabolic end-products accumulate within the muscle cell, its osmotic activity is increased. The resulting influx of water from the extracellular space produces a 30% hemoconcentration (Berman et al. 1970; Frøystein et al. 1984). Due to muscle membrane injury, there may be 20-fold increased leakage of CK into blood. Up to 80-fold increases in epinephrine and norepinephrine develop in association with the endocrine response.

### Blood-Typing

Inheritance of PSS susceptibility can be traced through family lines with almost 90% accuracy by haplotype
analysis of marker loci linked to the PSS gene, in conjunction with the halothane test (Gahne and Juneja 1985; Vögeli et al. 1985). This method was used extensively in Europe in national breeding selection programs. The locus for the halothane sensitivity gene (Hal or ryr-1) is closely linked to genes for the H blood group system (H; Rasmussen and Christian 1976), suppressing effect on the A-O blood group system (S; Rasmussen et al. 1980), erythrocyte phosphohexose isomerase (Phi; Jorgensen et al. 1976) and 6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase (6-Pgd; Jorgensen et al. 1976), and serum postalbumin (Po-2; Juneja et al. 1983), which are close to the centromere of chromosome 6 (Davies et al. 1988; Harbitz et al. 1990). However, this accuracy is too low for reliable application of the test to an individual, requires knowledge of the genotypes of the parents, and is substantially more labor intensive and less cost effective than the DNA test. It has poor accuracy when the frequency of halothane responders is low. Furthermore, it requires the halothane challenge test, which may be inaccurate and fatal. Thus, use of blood-typing for diagnosis of PSS susceptibility has been largely replaced by the DNA test.

**DNA Testing**

Identification of the defective protein responsible for PSS (O’Brien et al. 1985a; O’Brien 1986a, 1987), studies of the molecular biology of this protein in the rabbit by muscle biologists (Takeshima et al. 1989; Marks et al. 1989; Zorzato et al. 1990), and its recognition as a candidate for predisposition to the human form of PSS (McCarthy et al. 1990; MacLennan et al. 1990) precipitated the sequencing of the PSS gene (O’Brien et al. 1990a). Identification of the precise mutation site (Fujii et al. 1991) for PSS defined a now-patented, DNA-based test (MacLennan and O’Brien 1992), which allowed, for the first time, the specific, unequivocal, and direct diagnosis of PSS susceptibility on a wide, cost-effective scale for the eradication or control of PSS (O’Brien et al. 1993).

In this definitive test for PSS susceptibility, DNA is isolated from a small amount of tissue, usually blood collected into a sterile heparinized tube or dropped onto absorbent paper, although hair roots or muscle and adipose tissue have been used. The sequence immediately surrounding the mutation site is copied approximately one million times via the polymerase chain reaction. This amplified DNA is then subjected to restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) analysis, in which it is cut at two sites by a restriction endonuclease enzyme: the mutation site and a site common to both mutated and nonmutated DNA. The number and size of the resulting fragments are determined via agarose gel electrophoresis and a fluorescent stain. The staining pattern unambiguously identifies the PSS genotype (O’Brien et al. 1993).

A patent has been issued in several countries (MacLennan and O’Brien 1992) for the detection of the PSS mutation, and a trademark has been registered for the classification of the PSS genotype of tested animals or their progeny. The trademark is based on the (former) name for the gene locus of the PSS mutation (Hal), on the nucleotide number identifying the site of the single-point mutation (1843), and on additional descriptors that indicate whether the animal is unaffected by the PSS mutation (Hal-1843 nm [nonmutant]), heterozygous for the mutation (Hal-1843 mm [monomutant]), or homozygous for the mutation (Hal-1843 dm [dimutant]).

**TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL**

In addition to use of the muscle relaxant dantrolene (Harrison 1975) or its analog azumolene (Dershvitz and Sreter 1990), symptomatic treatment of acidosis, hyperthermia, hyperkalemia, hypoxia, and cardiac arrhythmia is necessary (Gronert and Milde 1976). Cooling and intravenous administration of bicarbonate have been effective components of treatment.

Several factors must be considered in developing an optimum strategy for use of the PSS mutation. Whereas it is clear that swine homozygous for the PSS mutation have too high a risk of developing PSS and severe PSE pork to make them economically viable as slaughter pigs, heterozygous swine may offer significant economic advantage under certain conditions. The occurrence of PSE pork in heterozygous swine is not a major deterrent if there is no demerit for pork quality or if swine/carass management practices are optimized so as to substantially reduce PSE pork in normal and heterozygous swine. Since technology is presently unavailable for rapid online determination of pork quality and for discrimination between genetic and management causes of PSE, producers cannot be penalized for inferior pork quality. In contrast, producers may be paid premiums for decreased backfat, or increased lean yields, which are conferred by the PSS gene. Premiums on lean yield, which may be increased up to several percent in heterozygous swine, significantly increase producer profits because of the narrow profit margins in the swine industry.

Although the producer is not penalized for PSE pork, its occurrence is economically important to the swine industry. Abnormal shrinkage, rerouting to sausage and other less valuable products, and decreased consumer acceptance reduce the value of ham and loin yield by approximately 5%, or $5 per pig ($2 per pound for 50 pounds of ham and loin) (Hall 1972; Kauffman et al. 1978; Brown 1981; Holland 1981; Smith and Lesser 1982). Assuming a PSE pork incidence of 16% (Kauffman et al. 1993) and 90 million pigs slaughtered, PSE pork causes an annual loss of $70 million. Annual losses in each of the U.K. and Australia for the late 1980s were estimated at $20 million (Cassell et al. 1991; Guise 1987). However, less than one-third of heterozygotes usually
produce PSE pork (Jensen and Barton-Gade 1985; Lundström et al. 1989), and even when the PSE pork prevalence is high, heterozygotes have produced less than one-third of it, with most of the remainder arising due to effects of management practices on normal swine (Pommier et al. 1992). In comparison, the economic gain from the PSS gene is a 2–6% increase in ham and loin yield, or $2–$6 per pig, depending on breed and strain. Assuming that one-third of heterozygotes develop PSE, the net economic benefit of the PSS gene to the swine and pork industries ranges from approximately $0.3–$4.3 per pig, although benefit to the swine producer, in the present absence of penalties for PSE, is $2–$6 per pig (Pommier et al. 1992; De Smet et al. 1993; O’Brien et al. 1994; McPhee et al. 1994; Goodwin 1994a, b; Goodwin and Burroughs 1995). 

Accordingly, it may be more advantageous to reduce PSE pork by optimizing management practices than by eradication of the PSS gene and its associated economic benefits. The combination of preslaughter feed restriction to reduce muscle glycogen, reduction of other pre- and perimortem stressors, and rapid chilling of carcasses may dramatically reduce the incidence of PSE pork to an acceptable level in swine with or without the PSS mutation (Borchert and Briskey 1964; Topel 1981b; Grandin 1986, 1996; Tarrant 1993). Short-term dietary supplementation with magnesium oxide may also reduce incidence and severity of PSE (Sair et al. 1970; Ludvigsen 1985; Lahucky et al. 2004), although a study of supplementation with magnesium aspartate (Caine et al. 2000) indicated the effects of magnesium on pork yield and quality were dependent upon diet and genotype. If PSE pork was controlled by such management practices, the prevalence and profit of PSS gene heterozygotes could be increased substantially.

Occurrence of the PSS gene is highly controlled and used to economic advantage in several countries on a wide scale, including Belgium, Germany, Austria, and Norway (Porter 1993; Knap 1996; Burlot and Naveau 2003). An effective strategy for using the PSS gene is to limit it to the sire line to boost performance and carcass quality in the slaughter generation. This strategy requires knowledge of the PSS genotype of replacement breeding stock and payment for testing or royalty costs of the patented testing procedure. However, this should be cost effective given that a breeding boar may produce thousands of slaughter offspring, with each having up to several dollars of added value.

Alternatively to maintaining and controlling the expression of the PSS mutation, it could be eradicated from herds. With the current high prevalence of PSE pork from nongenetic factors, this may be an advantage to the pork-packing and pork-retailing industries and the consumer, although it may be a disadvantage to the swine producer. However, since nearly three-quarters of the top North American breeding stock is free of the PSS mutation, it is clearly not a prerequisite for good muscularity and leanness. Furthermore, as genetic selection for leanness, growth rate, and feed efficiency has continuously improved performance of normal swine, the magnitude of the beneficial effects of the PSS gene may have diminished. This point is made by recent findings for Pietrain swine, in which breed a polymorphism affecting the insulin-like growth factor 2 gene confers increased lean muscle equivalent to that of the PSS gene (Nezer et al. 1999). In use of Pietrain terminal sires, exclusion of the PSS mutation may maintain high yield of lean muscle but decrease PSE in the progeny (Fabrega et al. 2004).

Attempts at eradication of the PSS mutation have been undertaken in some countries, such as Switzerland (Vögeli et al. 1985) and Finland (Kuosmanen and Puonti 1993), with good success and without long-term deleterious effects on swine carcass quantity and pork quality. In the late 1990s, some countries, such as Denmark, and international breeding companies removed the PSS mutation from their selection lines (Rosenvold and Anersen 2003; PIC 2003). In Denmark, the swine population is largely free of the PSS mutation; the percentage of heterozygotes was only 2% (Aaslyng and Barton Gade, 2001). In Canada, the percentage of heterozygotes in Canadian swine has dropped from approximately 20% in the early 1990s (O’Brien 1995) to 5% in 2003 (Du 2003). Eradication has been promoted by the National Pork Producers Council (NPPC: Miller 1996) and is being implemented by the National Swine Registry (NSR 2004) in the United States. However, Germany, Belgium, and Austria use heavily Pietrain boars homozygous for the PSS gene (Burlot and Naveau 2003) and in France, Pietrain and Pietrain crossed (with Large White) boars are still used in some terminal boar production programs (Burlot and Naveau 2003). Elimination of the PSS gene may cause the loss of an easily accessible, predictable, and cost-effective selection criterion for favorable carcass and live-performance characteristics.

REFERENCES


The rectum and vagina are held in place by a complex matrix of fascia, collagen fibers, muscles, and ligaments. This support mechanism may become heavily infiltrated with fat in some animals. In theory, rectal prolapse will occur if the support mechanism is either overcome by pressure or is weakened for some reason. Pressure on the support mechanism may be brought about by straining (proctitis, urethritis, constipation, coughing, and farrowing) or by physical pressure (excessive slope on the floor or increase in abdominal pressure for any reason). Brockman et al (2004) produced rectal prolapse in 10 49–74 kg pigs by insufflating the abdominal cavity with water at pressures of 222–343 mmHg (mean 292 mmHg). In humans, lifting from a flexed position causes intraabdominal pressure to increase to 187 mmHg. Weakness of the support mechanism may be brought about by edema (including that due to mycotoxins), fat infiltration, tumor infiltration, certain drugs, and genetic susceptibility. In most animals, and especially growing pigs, rectal and/or vaginal prolapse is almost an all-or-nothing phenomenon, with the early stages rarely being observed. The prolapse in the growing pig usually protrudes about 10–13 cm. This relatively constant degree of prolapse is probably due to anchorage by the short mesorectum and muscles of the pelvic diaphragm (Hindson 1958; S. H. Done, personal communication, 1990). Although the stockperson is usually presented with a complete rectal prolapse, some pigs have a temporary protrusion of a portion of the rectal mucosa on defecation. This phenomenon is also seen during coughing, and one might conjecture that such pigs might be prime candidates for complete rectal prolapse at a later stage.

The comparative anatomy of the pelvic and perineal regions of several species, including the pig, has been studied by Bassett (1971).

INCIDENCE

Most swine production units experience cases of rectal or vaginal prolapse in swine of various ages. Correction of rectal prolapse is the most commonly performed gastrointestinal surgical procedure in swine (Welker and Modransky 1991). Cases are nearly always sporadic in nature, and most often the cause is not determined. However, outbreaks do occur and may occasionally be prolonged. Kjar (1976) noted that the incidence of rectal prolapse was highest in pigs 6–12 weeks of age and concluded that the cause was unknown but that the incidence, which varied from 1–10%, increased during a change from cold to damp weather.

In a study of one finishing herd over 7 years (total throughput: 56,363 pigs), Garden (1988) noted that the incidence varied from 0.7%–4.7% on an annual basis. In another study in one herd over 6 months, Gardner et al. (1988) noted that 30 (1%) of 2862 pigs of 12–28 weeks of age suffered from rectal prolapse, with a peak incidence between 14 and 16 weeks of age. Becker and Van der Leek (1988) noted an estimated 10–15% prevalence of rectal prolapse over a 12-month period in pigs of 2–4 months of age in a herd of 125 sows (farrow to finish). Perfumo et al (2002) found that rectal prolapse was responsible for 7.7% of deaths that occurred in pigs from weaning to market. In a herd with 8.62% annual emergency-culling mortality, Baumann and Bilkei (2002) found that rectal stricture and rectal prolapse were responsible for 7.5% and 5.9% of the deaths.

Smith has noted (unpublished data) that rectal prolapse was most common in pigs 3–5 months of age; the incidence in three herds of 1000, 600, and 120 sows (all in confinement) was 0.7%, 0.9%, and 0.6%, respectively. The affected pigs ranged from 45 to 180 days of age and from 10–90 kg in weight. Swine were not observed to be ill before prolapse occurred, and the only common factor was mild constipation. Straining was not observed in any of these pigs before prolapse of the rectum occurred, but this clinical sign may have been missed due to the intensity of confinement.

Daniel (1975) noted that rectal prolapse in sows could occur in all sizes of units and that the incidence varied from 0.5%–1%. Two-thirds of the cases occurred
around the time of parturition. Although prolapse of the rectum and vagina and/or cervix was not mentioned as a specific reason for culling sows from U.K. pig herds (Anonymous 1964), Jones (1967) reported an 8.9% frequency of culling for rectal prolapse in one herd. In Australia 7.1% of sows culled in a 2500-sow unit were cases of rectal or vaginal prolapse (Penny 1972).

Schulz and Bostedt (1995) noted that vaginal prolapse affected 33 of 523 farrowing sows and was a significant cause of dystocia. Information regarding the incidence of vaginal and uterine prolapse is sparse, apart from outbreaks of vulvovaginitis associated with mycotoxins, when vaginal prolapses can occur in 30% of affected females (McNutt et al. 1928).

CAUSES AND PREDISPOSING FACTORS

Inflammation

Vaginal prolapse is very rare in suckling swine. However, rectal prolapse is sometimes associated with enterocolitis caused by viral, bacterial, parasitic, or mycotic infection (Pfeifer 1984; Straw 1987). In cases where the inflammation is severe and irritation of the rectum occurs, tenesmus results and rectal prolapse may be a sequel. Outbreaks of prolapse have been seen in association with swine fever, although fewer than 0.1% of piglets with diarrhea will suffer from rectal prolapse. Although many outbreaks of colitis, both infectious and noninfectious, have been observed in Scotland, rectal prolapse was not noted as a sequel. In older swine, urethritis and vaginitis from any cause may lead to straining, which may in turn lead to prolapse of the rectum or vagina or both.

Nutritional Factors

P. L. Shanks (personal communication, 1955) observed an outbreak of rectal prolapse in a group of pigs that had been fed waste food material from the floor of a feed mill. He concluded that unusual constituents in the diet led to straining, with resultant prolapse. Morbidity was approximately 30%. More recently, E. N. Wood (personal communication, 1979) described an outbreak of rectal prolapse in early weaned pigs between 2 and 6 weeks of age. Thirty-one of 235 piglets (13.2%) died during the outbreak and all were males. Subsequent investigation revealed the cause of death to be uremia from blockage of the urethra with calculi—a sequel to an unusually high level (2.25%) of calcium in the diet. Partial or complete obstruction of the urethra had caused excessive straining and subsequent prolapse of the rectum. During the outbreak, the piglets fed for short periods only, making frequent visits to the automatic drinker. The food consisted of a mixture of denatured skim milk, dried whey, fish meal, and soya meal.

Sudden changes in the diet (e.g., from meal to whey) may lead to occasional cases of rectal prolapse. Chronic shortage of water will lead to constipation with rectal prolapse as a sequel. Diets that are low in fiber (e.g., those without bran or wheat feed) may also lead to constipation. Constipation produced by this means may also be aggravated by lack of exercise (e.g., sows confined in farrowing crates or dry sow stalls). A higher incidence of rectal prolapse is therefore to be expected in confinement, although the daily feeding of a little straw may help prevent the condition.

In a 250-sow, breeding-to-finishing unit, the author found the number of rectal prolapses in the growing pigs decreased from five to one a week when the barley ration was replaced by a variety with a higher fiber content. Reintroduction of the lower-fiber barley and its removal repeatedly worsened or improved the situation, respectively.

In a 300-sow, breeding-to-finishing unit, 15 kg weaners were randomly divided and placed into strawed kennels or second-stage flat decks, both units being contained in the same large general-purpose building. The pigs were fed the same ration and the stocking density in both types of housing was almost identical. Prolapse of the rectum was a chronic problem only in the pigs in the strawed kennels. When the barley straw was replaced with wheat straw from a neighboring farm, the prolapse problem disappeared during the time the wheat straw was used. As soon as the barley straw was reintroduced (three times), the prolapse problem reappeared (Anonymous 1985). It was later postulated that the barley straw might have contained mycotoxins.

Prolapse of the rectum and vagina was a chronic problem in a 400-sow herd in Spain. The sows were housed in level, partly slatted stalls and fed brewers’ grains as part of the ration. The grains were kept in an outside pit, which held enough to last about 3 weeks. Prolapses increased toward the end of the 3-week period, by which time the contents were heavily contaminated with fungi. No mycotoxin assays were carried out (E. Marco, personal communication, 1990). Sudden outbreaks of rectal and vaginal prolapse were noted by the author in pigs over 30 kg every time whey feeding was reintroduced after a few days of absence. The pigs in this 2000-sow herd were normally fed a mixture of meal and whey without access to water. When whey was unavailable (e.g., Christmas holidays), the pigs were fed meal and water, which they did not like and intake dropped markedly. As soon as whey was reintroduced (on a restricted basis), the hungry pigs gorged themselves and the incidence of prolapse rapidly rose to about 1.5% for a short period. Deaths due to torsion also rose.

Muirhead (1989) investigated a chronic problem of rectal prolapse in finishing pigs. The incidence varied from 4–6% at 12–18 weeks of age. Reducing the density of the diet reduced the incidence of prolapse to less than 1%, but this measure also reduced growth rate significantly. In this particular herd most of the prolapses occurred within 1–2 hours of the lights being switched on.
at 7 a.m.; this observation might be of some significance. Amass et al. (1995) noted that an experimental ration containing a high lysine level was 6.73 times more likely to cause rectal prolapse than a controlled diet. Casper et al. (1991) noted rectal prolapses in sows as a sequel to lupin bean meal toxicosis.

It has to be admitted that many outbreaks of rectal prolapse respond to a change in diet, but the reason for this response is rarely found.

Physical Factors
Injury to the rectum or urethra from service by the boar may also lead to tenesmus and prolapse. In addition, gradual weakening of the pelvic diaphragm may arise as sows age or during pregnancy as the abdominal contents become heaviest. Rupture of one or more of the supporting structures may then occur, with prolapse of either rectum or vagina or both as a sequel.

Outbreaks have been observed when sows are confined in stalls or in tethers with an excessive slope to the floor. When the fall is greater than 1 in 20, increased intraabdominal pressure may overcome the resistance of one or more structures of the pelvic diaphragm, especially as the abdominal contents increase in weight as pregnancy progresses (S. M. Richmond, personal communication, 1979). An outbreak of rectal and vaginal prolapse was also observed in a herd where the dry sows were tethered in stalls with solid floors that were shorter than usual and there was a 13 cm drop from the solid lying area to the dunging passage; the rear end of the sows hung over the dunging passage. Partial or complete rectal or vaginal prolapse was seen in 14%. Sometimes the rectum prolapsed, sometimes the vagina, and in a few cases both. When the sows were recumbent, the first clinical sign was an outward bulging of the vaginal mucous membrane (partial prolapse). In the standing position the prolapse usually disappeared, but as pregnancy progressed and the uterine load increased, the prolapse became more evident when the sow was lying down. Eventually, bacterial contamination occurred, inflammation gradually became more severe, and the partial prolapse became complete. Complete prolapse was prevented by removal of affected animals to a spacious pen with a level, solid floor.

Physical damage to the vaginal tract may also occur during parturition, either by natural means or by human interference. This may damage some of the structures of the pelvic diaphragm or may lead to inflammation, which will cause excessive straining. In either case, vaginal prolapse may result.

Le Bret (1980) noted that sows in five herds from the same origin were most likely to suffer from rectal prolapse at farrowing. These sows were characterized by a particular pelvic conformation shown by measuring different pelvic angles. The larger the angle between the coccygeal vertebrae and the pelvis, the higher the risk of rectal prolapse.

Guise and Penny (1990) noted that rectal prolapses occurred when pigs were transported at high stocking density; no prolapses were noted in the low-stockinger-density treatment groups. These authors also reported that haulers had observed prolapses occurring as pigs struggled up steep ramps. V. R. Fowler (personal communication, 1980) noted a high incidence of rectal prolapse in weaner pigs shortly after being tethered in metabolism cages. These cases may have been a sequel to increased abdominal pressure during episodes of struggling.

Drugs
The repeated use of estrogens or any estrogenic substance to stimulate estrus in sows or gilts may lead to excessive swelling of the vulva, with vulvovaginitis and prolapse as sequels. Rectal prolapse has been described in growing pigs fed therapeutic levels of tylosin in the diet. It is not known why this occurs (J. D. Mackinnon, personal communication, 1979), but A. Hogg has suggested (personal communication, 1979) that tylosin may alter the normal bacterial flora of the gut, with overgrowth of fungi such as Monilia spp. as a sequel. Moniliasis may cause proctitis and straining, leading to prolapse. Smith has noted (unpublished data) that when Tylasul (tylosin/sulfadimidine) was added to the diet (5 kg/ton) of 10 experimental feeder pigs, 3 suffered from rectal prolapse within 10 days. It was noticeable that the pigs in this group seemed to suffer from a form of anal irritation, manifested as frequent episodes of rapid tail shaking.

Rectal prolapse due to edema has been noted when pigs were medicated with lincomycin. This reaction is frequently observed when swine are first placed on the drug, but clinical signs usually subside within 72 hours (Kunesh 1981).

Genetic Factors
A. Hogg (personal communication, 1979) reported a severe problem characterized by vaginal and uterine prolapse in a large breeding herd in the United States; uterine prolapse occurred both before and after farrowing. Apparently inbreeding had emphasized a recessive genetic factor.

In a commercial swine herd in California, pigs sired by Yorkshire boars were 3.3 times more likely to suffer from rectal prolapse; one Yorkshire boar in particular was 9.4 times more likely to sire affected pigs. In the same herd, sows of low parity (1, 2, and 3) were likely to farrow pigs more susceptible to rectal prolapse, but it was not possible to determine if this was a genetic effect (Gardner et al. 1988). In their studies, Hindson (1958) and Saunders (1974) concluded that hereditary factors were involved. Becker and Van der Leek (1988) concluded that genetic factors were strongly implicated in an outbreak of rectal prolapse in a commercial 125-sow, farrow-to-finish herd.
Environmental Factors
It is generally agreed that rectal prolapse occurs more commonly during winter months; and there is some evidence to support this (Kjar 1976; Wilson 1984; Gardner et al. 1988; Prange et al. 1987). However, in one study over 7 years in a finishing herd (throughput: 56,363 pigs; average incidence: 2.9%), Garden (1988) found no evidence of seasonal effect. It has been suggested that cold weather causes pigs to pile, thus increasing the likelihood of prolapses; no objective data have been produced to support this hypothesis.

Muirhead (1989) reported a problem of rectal prolapse in recently weaned pigs on flat decks. The problem resolved when the climatic environment was improved, particularly temperature and ventilation. Perramón and Muirhead (1998) reported similar findings in another herd in which rectal prolapses were associated only in the winter with a specific building housing 30–60 kg pigs.

Mycotoxicosis
Rectal and/or vaginal prolapse is a common sequel to vulvovaginitis caused by mycotoxicosis (see Chapter 56 for further details).

Other Factors
In a study in one commercial herd, Gardner et al. (1988) noted that male pigs were more likely to suffer from rectal prolapse than females. However, in a study of one herd over a much longer period and with a higher incidence of prolapse, Garden (1988) could find no evidence of a sex effect. In another, very small experimental study, Smith (1980) observed that 6 (32%) of 19 randomly acquired pigs with rectal prolapse were males. On the other hand, Perramón and Muirhead (1998) found 73% of prolapses in females.

Gardner et al. (1988) noted that pigs of low birth weight (less than 1000 g) were more likely to suffer from rectal prolapse later in life. It was hypothesized that low-birth-weight pigs that have fewer muscle fibers at birth have an inherently weaker rectal support mechanism, which may fail when a period of rapid growth occurs. Muirhead (1989) noted that a behavioral aberration, anal nuzzling, in recently weaned pigs led to a rectal prolapse problem (4–6% incidence). Improvement to the climatic environment prevented further cases from arising. An outbreak of anal nuzzling was reported by van Sambraus (1979).

When pigs cough, the rectal mucosa often protrudes temporarily. As with piling, it has been suggested that coughing may precipitate rectal prolapse, but again there are no objective data to support this hypothesis. Indeed, Gardner et al. (1988) could find no relationship between coughing and the prevalence of rectal prolapse. In another study, the prevalence of rectal prolapse was dramatically reduced from 4.7% to 0.7% when weaners (30–35 kg) were placed in a strawed yard for 3 weeks between being held in the second-stage flat decks and the fully slatted finishing accommodation (Garden 1985).

Diarrhea is not a common precursor of rectal prolapse, and in one herd studied by Gardner et al. (1988) an outbreak of transmissible gastroenteritis did not increase the prevalence.

Henry (1983) suggested that lack of anal sphincter control due to infection or trauma of pelvic nerve centers such as might occur after docking (especially short docking) or tail biting could lead to rectal prolapse.

Jennings (1984) noted that a significant number of sows with hypocalcemia suffered from uterine prolapse.

In a survey of sow mortality, Chagnon et al. (1990) noted that uterine prolapse was the cause of death of 6.6% of sows. The average parity was 6.0, and it is possible that some weakness of the support mechanism may have been the main determinant (see Chapter 63).

RECTAL STRICTURES
In the United States, rectal strictures were first reported in Illinois (Gibbons 1967); later outbreaks were observed in Indiana (Lillie et al. 1973) and those authors reported more cases during the coldest months, although in Argentina, the incidence was 10% in the summer months for all-age pigs and in September and December for nursery and grower pigs, respectively (Perfumo et al 2002). Outbreaks have also been noted in the United Kingdom (D. G. Taylor, personal communication 1988). Rectal stricture is considered to be a sequel to rectal prolapse (Saunders 1974; Van der Gaag and Meijer 1974; Håni and Scholl 1976; Von Muller et al. 1980; Prange et al. 1987; Becker and Van der Leek 1988; Jensen 1989). Perfumo et al. (2002) reported a mean age for rectal prolapse of 115.8 ± 4.2 days, and that for rectal stricture was 164.2 ± 6.1 days.

In a more detailed study of 25 pigs with rectal prolapses that were allowed to heal naturally without treatment, Smith (1980) noted that 3 developed complete rectal stricture and died; the remainder grew normally, but in every case there was evidence of partial rectal stricture at slaughter (Figure 59.1).

Harkin et al. (1982) considered that a strong genetic component was implicated in the etiology of rectal stricture. Lillie et al. (1973) and Perfumo et al. (2002) reported that routine microbiological procedures failed to demonstrate an infectious agent, and Harkin et al. (1982) failed to detect any salmonellae. However, Wilcock and Olander (1977a) noted that many cases of rectal stricture were preceded by severe enteric disease. Salmonella typhimurium was frequently isolated, and ulcerative proctitis, a possible precursor of rectal stricture, was also noted. In later studies Wilcock and Olander (1977b) produced rectal strictures experimentally by injecting chlorpromazine into the cranial hemorrhoidal artery and suggested that rectal prolapses may be a sequel to ischemic proctitis induced by thrombosis associated with salmonellosis.
TREATMENT AND CONTROL

Apart from treatment and noting any factors peculiar to each case, it is not considered worthwhile to implement any specific control or preventive measures for sporadic cases of rectal prolapse. If an outbreak occurs, however, attempts should be made to identify the causes and predisposing factors. Whatever conclusion is reached, measures taken must be cost effective; for example, if the lack of exercise in farrowing sows is the main factor, the cost of providing that exercise in confinement may be greater than the cost of the disorder. Treatment should also be cost effective. In the United Kingdom it is now common practice to deal with rectal prolapse in feeder pigs by isolation only. No surgical treatment is carried out, and the prolapse is simply left to resolve naturally in 10–14 days. However, this practice is not good welfare, and a simple nonsurgical amputation technique such as described by Douglas (1985) should be considered. Many surgical procedures for treating rectal prolapses have been described (Hindson 1958; Chalmin 1960; Daniel 1975; Ivascu et al. 1976; Kjar 1976; Vonderfecht 1978; Schon 1985; Moore 1989; Kolden 1994; Grosse-Beilage and Grosse-Beilage 1994).

It should be noted that amputation of the uterus often results in high mortality. Prolapse of the uterus is best treated by surgical replacement; a laparotomy technique, which ensures that each horn of the womb can be properly repositioned, has been successful. Surgical techniques for treating the general prolapse have been described by Toth and Huszeniczca (1983). Nonsurgical intervention is greatly assisted by general anesthesia and hoisting the hindquarters of the sow with a block and tackle or similar device.

Treatment of rectal stricture is rarely cost effective, but a surgical technique has been described (Boyd et al. 1988).

REFERENCES


Although modern confinement facilities, accurately formulated rations, and improved management practices have reduced some risks of poisoning associated with outdoor swine production, cases of poisoning in swine still occur. The occurrence of swine toxicoses associated with the environment, feed, or management practices is frequent enough to warrant their inclusion in differential diagnostic considerations for swine health problems. The following discussion summarizes the impact of potentially toxic agents to which swine may be exposed.

MINERALS

Trace Minerals
Most swine formula feeds are properly fortified with trace elements. However, some trace minerals are deliberately added in excess for various reasons. They include copper (Cu), selenium (Se), and occasionally iron (Fe) and zinc (Zn). The existence of concentrated premixes of these minerals raises the risk of feed mismixes resulting in the accidental feeding of high, potentially toxic levels of these elements.

Copper. Dietary requirements of 5–6 ppm Cu have been established for swine. A dietary level of 250 ppm is generally considered the maximum tolerable level (MTL) of Cu for swine, and ration levels ranging from 300–500 ppm cause reduced growth and anemia. The tolerance to Cu is related positively to dietary levels of Fe and Zn. For example, animals consuming feed containing 750 ppm Cu are essentially normal if also supplemented with 750 ppm Fe and 500 ppm Zn. Icterus, anemia, hemoglobinuria, and nephritis associated with a hemolytic crisis may be observed in swine, although not as commonly as in sheep. Diagnosis can be suggested by clinical signs and a history of feeding excess Cu. Liver and kidney Cu levels greater than 250 and 60 ppm, respectively, on a wet-weight basis are diagnostically supportive.

Iron. The recommended dietary levels of Fe range from 40–150 ppm, the highest requirements being in the youngest pigs. Many factors influence the risk of Fe toxicosis. Elemental Fe and iron oxides are relatively nontoxic, whereas iron salts are more toxic. Dietary phytate, phosphate, cobalt (Co), Zn, Cu, manganese (Mn), and disaccharides competitively depress Fe absorption. Ascorbic acid, sorbitol, fructose, and several amino acids improve Fe absorption, which is facilitated by being chelated with citric, lactic, pyruvic, and succinic acids; Fe chelated by desferrioxamine is poorly absorbed.

Pigs fed 1100 ppm Fe as a salt have shown reduced weight gains. Animals fed 5000 ppm have displayed depressed feed intake and rates of gain as well as rickets characterized by hypophosphatemia and reduced bone ash. The condition has not been prevented by providing 0.92% dietary phosphorus (P). Injections of Fe, usually as the dextran, have caused intoxications characterized by cardiovascular shock and death within hours after administration as well as staining at injection sites and in regional lymph nodes, liver, and kidneys. The incidence of this acute toxicosis appears to be decreasing. High single doses of iron salts will cause gastroenteritis, followed by apparent recovery and then, frequently, collapse and death within 2 days. Diagnosis may be facilitated by consideration of history, clinical signs, and necropsy changes. Feed and serum should be analyzed for Fe. Normal serum Fe levels are approximately 100 mg/dL and will increase during toxicosis. Iron toxicosis should be differentiated from other forms of rickets. There is no practical individual treatment for Fe toxicosis. Desferrioxamine (Desferal) may be used in selected cases. Dietary imbalances should obviously be corrected.

Selenium. The recommended dietary level of Se varies from 0.1 to 0.3 ppm. Selenium, as the selenate or selenite, is approved for addition to swine feeds at up to 0.3 ppm.

Accidental oversupplementation of swine feeds with selenium premixes has been a sporadic problem. When
Se levels of 5–8 ppm have been fed to growing swine, anorexia, alopecia, separation of hooves at the coronary band, and degenerative changes in the liver and kidney have occurred. Liver changes may look remarkably like those seen with vitamin E–Se deficiency. A level of 10 ppm fed to breeding sows has caused retarded conception and pigs dead or weak at birth. Misformulated feeds containing from 10 to 27 ppm Se produced a paralytic disease in growing swine characterized by quadriplegic or posterior paralysis while the pigs remained mentally alert and continued to eat and drink. Focal symmetrical poliomyelomalacia was found in affected swine (Harri-son et al. 1983; Casteel et al. 1985).

Several injectable products containing varying concentrations of Se are currently available for treatment or prevention of Se-responsive diseases. Death losses have approached 100% when Se overdose occurred from the mistaken use of a more concentrated product or from miscalculation of the recommended dosage. The minimum lethal dose of injectable Se is about 0.9 mg/kg body weight, with pigs that are Se deficient being the most susceptible to toxicosis (Van Vleet et al. 1974). Weakness and dyspnea progressing to irregular gasps and death occur within 24 hours of the parenteral overdose.

Diagnosis of Se toxicosis in swine can be made by consideration of a history of Se supplementation, clinical signs, necropsy findings, and chemical analysis of tissues and feeds. Liver and kidney Se concentrations greater than 3 ppm (wet weight) are seen with toxicosis.

**Zinc.** Recommended dietary levels of Zn for swine vary from 15–100 ppm based on age, sex, stage of production, and other ration components. A level of 2000 ppm Zn produced growth depression, arthritis, intramuscular hemorrhage, gastritis, and enteritis. The MTL is probably less than 300 ppm, possibly because zinc salts in large concentration are unpalatable. Zinc interacts competitively for absorption with Fe, Ca, and Cu. Pigs fed 268 ppm Zn developed arthritis, bone and cartilage deformities, and internal hemorrhages. However, feeding 3,000 ppm Zn as zinc oxide for 14 days has shown increased weight gains and reduction of postweaning scours without adverse signs. Diagnostic considerations should include clinical signs, history, and chemical analyses of feed and tissues. Normal kidney and liver Se concentrations of up to 290 µg/dL (Lassen and Buck 1979). If pigs have refused to consume 1000 ppm in the feed. Clinical signs of acute As poisoning colic, vomiting, diarrhea, dehydration, collapse, convulsions, and death within hours to days. Prominent necropsy findings are dehydration and severe hemor-rhagic gastritis and enteritis with sloughing of mucosa and edema. Diagnostic considerations should include history, clinical signs, lesions and chemical analyses. Kidney and liver tissues levels of 10 ppm (wet weight) are significant. Prognosis is generally poor and depends on the degree of tissue damage and dehydration.

**Fluorine.** Fluorosis may be observed in animals consuming water or forages contaminated by nearby industrial plants or eating crops raised on soils high in fluo-rine (F). A common source is consumption of minerals high in F. Feed-grade phosphates by law must contain no more than one part F to 100 parts P. It is recommended that swine be fed feeds containing no more than 70 ppm F during their lifetime to prevent fluorosis. Sodium fluoride has been used as an ascaricide at levels of 500 ppm; higher levels have caused vomiting. Other signs of acute toxicosis are diarrhea, lameness, tetany, collapse, and death. A tentative diagnosis of chronic flu- orosis may be difficult, since the lameness may appear similar to rickets, mycoplasmosis, and erysipelas. Normal bone F levels in swine are 3000–4000 ppm. Higher levels are associated with fluorosis. Normal urine F levels are 5–15 ppm; higher levels are diagnostically significant. Necropsy findings may reveal exostoses on the long bones and tooth mottling. Treatment should be aimed at reducing dietary F and feeding aluminum or calcium (Ca) mineral supplements.

**Lead.** Swine are quite resistant to elevated lead (Pb) exposure. Consequently, field cases of lead poisoning in swine are extremely rare. Experimentally, pigs fed 35.2 mg lead (as the acetate)/kg body weight for 90 days did not die from lead poisoning despite blood lead concentra-

**Nonessential Minerals**

**Arsenic.** Inorganic arsenicals, which are distinctly dif-ferent from the phenylarsionic feed additives discussed later, have been used in antiquated ant baits, herbicides, insecticides, and some animal medications. Pigs are relatively resistant to inorganic arsenic (As) poisoning with 100–200 mg/kg body weight of sodium arsenite being a lethal oral dose. This is equivalent to about 2000–4000 ppm in the feed. However, pigs have refused to consume 1000 ppm in the feed. Clinical signs of acute As poisoning colic, vomiting, diarrhea, dehydration, collapse, convulsions, and death within hours to days. Prominent necropsy findings are dehydration and severe hemor-rhagic gastritis and enteritis with sloughing of mucosa and edema. Diagnostic considerations should include history, clinical signs, lesions and chemical analyses. Kidney and liver tissues levels of 10 ppm (wet weight) are significant. Prognosis is generally poor and depends on the degree of tissue damage and dehydration.

**Mercury.** Mercury (Hg) has been used in paints, batteries, paper, and fungicides, but most uses have been re-

**Nonessential Minerals**

**Arsenic.** Inorganic arsenicals, which are distinctly different from the phenylarsionic feed additives discussed later, have been used in antiquated ant baits, herbicides, insecticides, and some animal medications. Pigs are relatively resistant to inorganic arsenic (As) poisoning with 100–200 mg/kg body weight of sodium arsenite being a lethal oral dose. This is equivalent to about 2000–4000 ppm in the feed. However, pigs have refused to consume 1000 ppm in the feed. Clinical signs of acute As poisoning colic, vomiting, diarrhea, dehydration, collapse, convulsions, and death within hours to days. Prominent necropsy findings are dehydration and severe hemorr-hagic gastritis and enteritis with sloughing of mucosa and edema. Diagnostic considerations should include history, clinical signs, lesions and chemical analyses. Kidney and liver tissues levels of 10 ppm (wet weight) are significant. Prognosis is generally poor and depends on the degree of tissue damage and dehydration.

**Fluorine.** Fluorosis may be observed in animals consuming water or forages contaminated by nearby industrial plants or eating crops raised on soils high in fluo-

**Nonessential Minerals**

**Arsenic.** Inorganic arsenicals, which are distinctly different from the phenylarsionic feed additives discussed later, have been used in antiquated ant baits, herbicides, insecticides, and some animal medications. Pigs are relatively resistant to inorganic arsenic (As) poisoning with 100–200 mg/kg body weight of sodium arsenite being a lethal oral dose. This is equivalent to about 2000–4000 ppm in the feed. However, pigs have refused to consume 1000 ppm in the feed. Clinical signs of acute As poisoning colic, vomiting, diarrhea, dehydration, collapse, convulsions, and death within hours to days. Prominent necropsy findings are dehydration and severe hemorrhagic gastritis and enteritis with sloughing of mucosa and edema. Diagnostic considerations should include history, clinical signs, lesions and chemical analyses. Kidney and liver tissues levels of 10 ppm (wet weight) are significant. Prognosis is generally poor and depends on the degree of tissue damage and dehydration.

**Fluorine.** Fluorosis may be observed in animals consuming water or forages contaminated by nearby industrial plants or eating crops raised on soils high in fluoride (F). A common source is consumption of minerals high in F. Feed-grade phosphates by law must contain no more than one part F to 100 parts P. It is recommended that swine be fed feeds containing no more than 70 ppm F during their lifetime to prevent fluorosis. Sodium fluoride has been used as an ascaricide at levels of 500 ppm; higher levels have caused vomiting. Other signs of acute toxicosis are diarrhea, lameness, tetany, collapse, and death. A tentative diagnosis of chronic fluorosis may be difficult, since the lameness may appear similar to rickets, mycoplasmosis, and erysipelas. Normal bone F levels in swine are 3000–4000 ppm. Higher levels are associated with fluorosis. Normal urine F levels are 5–15 ppm; higher levels are diagnostically significant. Necropsy findings may reveal exostoses on the long bones and tooth mottling. Treatment should be aimed at reducing dietary F and feeding aluminum or calcium (Ca) mineral supplements.

**Lead.** Swine are quite resistant to elevated lead (Pb) exposure. Consequently, field cases of lead poisoning in swine are extremely rare. Experimentally, pigs fed 35.2 mg lead (as the acetate)/kg body weight for 90 days did not die from lead poisoning despite blood lead concentra-

**Nonessential Minerals**

**Arsenic.** Inorganic arsenicals, which are distinctly different from the phenylarsionic feed additives discussed later, have been used in antiquated ant baits, herbicides, insecticides, and some animal medications. Pigs are relatively resistant to inorganic arsenic (As) poisoning with 100–200 mg/kg body weight of sodium arsenite being a lethal oral dose. This is equivalent to about 2000–4000 ppm in the feed. However, pigs have refused to consume 1000 ppm in the feed. Clinical signs of acute As poisoning colic, vomiting, diarrhea, dehydration, collapse, convulsions, and death within hours to days. Prominent necropsy findings are dehydration and severe hemorrhagic gastritis and enteritis with sloughing of mucosa and edema. Diagnostic considerations should include history, clinical signs, lesions and chemical analyses. Kidney and liver tissues levels of 10 ppm (wet weight) are significant. Prognosis is generally poor and depends on the degree of tissue damage and dehydration.

**Fluorine.** Fluorosis may be observed in animals consuming water or forages contaminated by nearby industrial plants or eating crops raised on soils high in fluoride (F). A common source is consumption of minerals high in F. Feed-grade phosphates by law must contain no more than one part F to 100 parts P. It is recommended that swine be fed feeds containing no more than 70 ppm F during their lifetime to prevent fluorosis. Sodium fluoride has been used as an ascaricide at levels of 500 ppm; higher levels have caused vomiting. Other signs of acute toxicosis are diarrhea, lameness, tetany, collapse, and death. A tentative diagnosis of chronic fluorosis may be difficult, since the lameness may appear similar to rickets, mycoplasmosis, and erysipelas. Normal bone F levels in swine are 3000–4000 ppm. Higher levels are associated with fluorosis. Normal urine F levels are 5–15 ppm; higher levels are diagnostically significant. Necropsy findings may reveal exostoses on the long bones and tooth mottling. Treatment should be aimed at reducing dietary F and feeding aluminum or calcium (Ca) mineral supplements.

**Lead.** Swine are quite resistant to elevated lead (Pb) exposure. Consequently, field cases of lead poisoning in swine are extremely rare. Experimentally, pigs fed 35.2 mg lead (as the acetate)/kg body weight for 90 days did not die from lead poisoning despite blood lead concentra-

**Nonessential Minerals**

**Arsenic.** Inorganic arsenicals, which are distinctly different from the phenylarsionic feed additives discussed later, have been used in antiquated ant baits, herbicides, insecticides, and some animal medications. Pigs are relatively resistant to inorganic arsenic (As) poisoning with 100–200 mg/kg body weight of sodium arsenite being a lethal oral dose. This is equivalent to about 2000–4000 ppm in the feed. However, pigs have refused to consume 1000 ppm in the feed. Clinical signs of acute As poisoning colic, vomiting, diarrhea, dehydration, collapse, convulsions, and death within hours to days. Prominent necropsy findings are dehydration and severe hemorrhagic gastritis and enteritis with sloughing of mucosa and edema. Diagnostic considerations should include history, clinical signs, lesions and chemical analyses. Kidney and liver tissues levels of 10 ppm (wet weight) are significant. Prognosis is generally poor and depends on the degree of tissue damage and dehydration.
ings, and chemistry should aid in the diagnosis. Kidney and liver normally contain less than 1 ppm Hg but will contain much higher levels following Hg toxicosis. Treatment is usually disappointing.

**FEED ADDITIVES**

Adverse effects of drug additives are rare except in cases of misuse or misformulation of rations (Lloyd 1978). Details of specific drug effects have been reviewed recently (Adams 1996).

**Phenylarsonic Compounds**

The phenylarsonic compounds, occasionally referred to as organic arsenicals, have at times been used as growth promotants and to treat swine dysentery and eperythrozoonosis. Arsanilic acid and roxarsone (3-nitro-4-hydroxyphenylarsonic acid) have been approved for use in swine rations, and their sodium salts have been used in drinking water. Arsanilic acid was approved for continuous use in complete swine rations at levels ranging from 0.1 to 2 ppm in water. Arsanilic acid and roxarsone (3-nitro-4-hydroxyphenylarsonic acid) have been approved for use in swine rations, and their sodium salts have been used in drinking water. Arsanilic acid was approved for continuous use in complete swine rations at levels ranging from 0.1 to 2 ppm in water.

Clinical signs of arsanilic acid toxicosis will start within a few days at levels of 1000 ppm, 2 weeks at 400 ppm, and 3–6 weeks at 250 ppm and include ataxia, posterior paresis, blindness, and quadriplegia. Paralyzed animals will continue to live and grow if provided food and water. Swine that receive lower doses for extended periods are prone to develop goose-stepping (a chronic posterior nerve affliction) and total blindness from optic nerve damage. Swine that receive very large doses, for example, 10,000 ppm in the ration, may exhibit a gastroenteritis resembling poisoning by inorganic arsenic compounds.

Roxarsone is approved for continuous use in swine rations at levels of 25–37 ppm and at 200 ppm for 5–6 days. Poisoning may result with feed roxarsone levels of 250 ppm or more for from 3–10 days. Clinical signs include uncontrolled urination and defecation as well as muscle tremor and convulsive seizures, all of which are induced by physical stimulation. Ataxia may be observed, although not as severe as the “drunken sailor” incoordination of arsanilic acid toxicosis. In advanced stages, pigs show paraparesis and paraplegia, but will continue to eat and drink.

Clinical signs and a history of administration of arsenicals in feed or water may be the best basis for suspecting phenylarsonic toxicosis. Necropsy findings are generally nonproductive, but histopathologic examination of peripheral nerves, especially the sciatic, may reveal a demyelination.

Chemical analysis of tissues for the specific phenylarsonic compound will provide more diagnostic evidence. Deficiencies of B-complex vitamins, especially pantothenic acid and pyridoxine, may cause a similar demyelination of peripheral nerves. Chronic phenylarsonic toxicosis may also resemble rickets. Although water deprivation, organic mercurial poisoning, and viral diseases affect the CNS primarily, they may be confused with phenylarsonic compound toxicosis. Toxicoses are reversible if arsenicals are promptly removed from the feed and water.

**Carbadox**

Carbadox (Mecadox, Pfizer) is incorporated in feed at 11–27.5 ppm as a growth promotant or at 55 ppm to control swine dysentery or enteritis. A feed level of 100 ppm has caused decreased feed consumption and growth retardation. Higher levels have caused feed refusal and emesis. Mild lesions in the glomerular zone of the adrenal cortex are reported with 50 ppm carbadox in the feed for 10 weeks, while more extensive lesions are seen at feed levels of 100–150 ppm after 5 weeks of consumption (Van der Molen 1988).

When fed a ration containing from 331 to 363 ppm carbadox, recently weaned pigs refused to eat and showed poor weight gains, posterior paresis, the passing of hard, pellet feces, and death in 7–9 days (Power et al. 1989).

**Dimetridazole**

Dimetridazole is listed as an antihistomoniasis drug used in turkey rations and for treatment and prevention of swine dysentery in some countries. A level of 1500 ppm has caused no toxicosis, but 17,000 ppm have caused diarrhea in swine. Large overdoses of dimetridazole would cause ataxia, bradycardia, dyspnea, salivation, muscle spasms, prostration, and death. Death or recovery would be rapid.

**Monensin**

Monensin is marketed as Rumensin for cattle supplements or as Coban, a poultry coccidiostat. Use levels are up to 120 ppm for poultry and 30 ppm in cattle feeds, although some premixes may contain up to 1320 ppm. Swine may be fed monensin by mistake, but the drug is not highly toxic to them. Pigs fed levels ranging from 11 to 120 ppm in the feed for 112 days were not affected as far as feed consumption and weight gains were concerned. Gilts fed 110–880 ppm had a transient anorexia for 14 days; thereafter, only weight gains were depressed. The LD50 of monensin in swine is 16.8 mg/kg. Pigs suffering from monensin toxicosis showed open-mouth breathing, frothing around the mouth, ataxia, lethargy, muscle weakness, and diarrhea. These signs were visible within 1 day of exposure and persisted for about 3 days. Myocardial and skeletal muscle necrosis was present in
pigs receiving 40 mg monensin/kg (Van Vleet et al. 1983).

The greatest risk of poisoning from monensin in swine appears to be with the concurrent administration of tiamulin, an antibiotic approved for use in treatment of swine dysentery that potentiates the effect of monensin (Van Vleet et al. 1987). Swine poisoned from this combination show acute massive necrotizing myositis of the skeletal muscles, myoglobinuria, and acute death.

**Lasalocid**
Lasalocid is a polyether antibiotic marketed as Bovatec for feedlot cattle to improve feed efficiency and weight gains. Swine fed lasalocid at 2.78 mg/kg and 21 mg/kg showed no adverse effects. However, transient muscle weakness occurred at a dose of 35 mg/kg (equivalent to about 1000 ppm of lasalocid in the feed), and death occurred at 58 mg/kg when fed for 1 day.

**Sulfonamides**
The sulfonamide drugs are antibacterials commonly used in swine medicine. Overdoses will cause crystalluric nephroses. Pigs are not likely to be intoxicated from drinking water containing sulfonamides because of the lack of palatability, but overdosing in the feed, coupled with low water intake, may cause nephrosis and uremia. Nephrototoxic mycotoxicoses such as those caused by citrinin and ochratoxin will predispose sulfonamide toxicoses. Sulfonamide residues in pork are related to persistence of the drugs in feed and excreta and are not a toxicosis.

**Urea and Ammonium Salts**
Swine may be fed cattle feeds containing nonprotein nitrogen compounds such as urea and ammonium salts. Urea is relatively nontoxic for swine, a level of 2.5% causing only reduced feed intake and growth rate, elevated blood urea nitrogen (BUN), polydypsia, and polyuria. Higher levels of urea should not cause signs of acute toxicosis. Ammonia and ammonium salts are toxic for swine, however, with individual doses of 0.25–0.5 g/kg body weight causing intoxication and doses of 0.54–1.5 g/kg being lethal. Considering that growing swine consume feed equal to 5–10% of their body weights, the expected toxic and lethal levels of ammonium salts are 0.25–1% and 1.5–3%, respectively. Pigs poisoned with ammonia and ammonium salts would be expected to become depressed, have tonic-clonic convulsions, and either die or recover within a few hours.

**PESTICIDES**

**Insecticides**
Concurrent production of both livestock and crops on the same premises may provide a unique opportunity for exposure of swine to agricultural chemicals. Among the chemicals presenting the greatest potential hazard of poisoning are the organophosphorus (OP), carbamate, and the older chlorinated hydrocarbon insecticides.

Poisoning may occur when insecticides are accidentally incorporated into swine feed. Discarded or unlabeled portions of granular insecticides can be mistaken for mineral mixes or dry feed ingredients and added to swine feeds. When farm equipment used for feed handling is also used for insecticide transportation, contamination of this equipment may result in insecticides being inadvertently mixed into animal feeds. In addition, swine may have accidental access to insecticides when they are stored or spilled on the farm premises. Improperly operating back rubbers and oilers may provide an additional source of these insecticides for livestock.

Miscalculation of insecticide concentrations in spraying, dipping, and pour-on procedures may also result in toxicosis. Re-treating animals with OP or carbamate preparations within a few days’ time may result in poisoning.

**Organophosphorus and Carbamate Insecticides.** The OP and carbamate insecticides are discussed together because of their similar mechanisms of action.

Cholinergic nerves utilize acetylcholine as a neurotransmitter substance. Under normal conditions, acetylcholine released at the synapses of parasympathetic nerves and myoneural junctions is quickly hydrolyzed by cholinesterase enzymes. When the hydrolyzing enzymes are inhibited, the continued presence of acetylcholine maintains a state of nerve stimulation and accounts for the clinical signs observed with poisoning from these insecticides.

**Clinical Signs.** The clinical syndrome produced by OP and carbamate insecticides is characterized by a rapidly progressing overstimulation of the parasympathetic nervous system and skeletal muscles. Earliest clinical signs of acute poisoning frequently include mild to profuse salivation, defecation, urination, emesis, stiff-legged or “sawhorse” gait, and general uneasiness. As the syndrome progresses, signs observed include profuse salivation; gastrointestinal hypermotility resulting in severe colic, vomiting (especially common in swine), and abdominal cramps; diarrhea; excessive lacrimation; miosis; dyspnea; cyanosis; urinary incontinence; muscle tremors of the face, eyelids, and general body musculature; and acute death. Hyperactivity of the skeletal muscles is generally followed by muscular paralysis, as the muscles are unable to respond to continued stimulation. Swine may exhibit increased CNS stimulation but rarely, if ever, convulsive seizures. More commonly, severe CNS depression occurs.

Death usually results from hypoxia caused by excessive respiratory tract secretions, bronchoconstriction, and erratic, slowed heartbeat. The onset of clinical signs
Lesions. Lesions associated with acute OP or carbamate toxicosis are usually nonspecific but may include excessive fluids in the respiratory tract as well as pulmonary edema.

Diagnosis. A history of exposure to OP or carbamate insecticides associated with clinical signs of parasympathetic stimulation warrants a tentative diagnosis of poisoning with these compounds.

Chemical analyses of animal tissues for the presence of insecticides are usually unrewarding because of the rapid degradation of OP and carbamate insecticides, resulting in low tissue residue levels. However, finding the insecticide in the stomach contents and the feed or suspect material can be quite valuable in establishing a diagnosis. In addition, the degree of inhibition of cholinesterase enzyme activity in the whole blood and tissue of the suspected animal should be assessed. A reduction of whole-blood cholinesterase activity to less than 25% of normal is indicative of excessive exposure to these insecticides. The cholinesterase activity level in the brain tissue of animals dying from these insecticides will generally be less than 10% of normal brain activity.

Whole-blood and brain samples should be well chilled but not frozen for best laboratory results. Samples of stomach contents as well as the suspect feed or material should be submitted to a laboratory for chemical analysis.

Treatment. Treatment of animals poisoned by OP or carbamate insecticides should be considered on an emergency basis because of the rapid progression of respiratory distress in the clinical syndrome. Initial treatment for poisoned swine should be the intramuscular use of atropine sulfate at approximately 0.5 mg/kg body weight. One-quarter of this dose may be given intravenously for a quick response in especially severe cases. Atropine does not counteract the insecticide-enzyme bond but blocks the effects of accumulated acetylcholine at the nerve endings. Although a dramatic cessation of parasympathetic signs is generally observed within a few minutes after administration of atropine, it will not affect the skeletal muscle tremors. More atropine at approximately one-half the initial dose may be required but should be used only to control recurring parasympathetic signs. Although the use of atropine alone is generally adequate, especially if vomiting has occurred, specific cases may warrant the use of pralidoxime chloride or activated charcoal.

Oral activated charcoal is recommended for treatment of any ingested insecticide to reduce continued absorption of the insecticide from the gut. Although a useful treatment, the need for activated charcoal in swine may be reduced when vomiting helps empty the gut and thereby reduces further absorption of the insecticide.

The use of the oximes (e.g., TMB-4, 2-PAM, pralidoxime chloride) in large animals, although efficacious, may be economically unfeasible. If used, pralidoxime chloride is recommended at a dose of 20 mg/kg body weight. The oximes are of no benefit in treating carbamate toxicoses.

Dermally exposed animals should be washed with soap and water to prevent continued absorption of these compounds.

Morphine, succinylcholine, and phenothiazine tranquilizers should be avoided in treating OP poisoning.

Chlorinated Hydrocarbons. The chlorinated hydrocarbon (CH) insecticides (e.g., toxaphene, chlordane, aldrin, dieldrin, and lindane) produce toxicosis in swine by acting as diffuse but powerful stimulants of the CNS. Even though these are old products that have been restricted from the market for over 30 years, improperly discarded leftover products may become available to animals when older barns or storage areas are cleaned out.

Clinical Signs. Clinical signs often appear 12–24 hours after exposure. Initially, animals may appear apprehensive. A period of hyperexcitability and hyperesthesia characterized by exaggerated responses to stimuli and spontaneous muscle spasms is usually observed. The spontaneous tremors and fasciculation are usually in the facial region and involve lips, muscle, eyelids, and ears, progressing caudally to involve the heavy muscles of the shoulder, back, and hindquarters. These spasms may progress into a tonoclonic convulsive seizure. Abnormal posturing, elevation of the head, and chewing movements may be observed. Varying degrees of respiratory paralysis occur during the seizures, with periods of depression and inactivity between successive seizures.

The rapidity of onset and severity of clinical signs provide a poor index of the prognosis of the episode in individual animals. Occasionally, animals will die during seizures, while others may completely recover following several severe episodes.

Lesions. Specific lesions other than those from the physical trauma of the seizures are not observed.

Diagnosis. Clinical signs of hyperexcitability and tonoclonic convulsive seizures with a known exposure to CH insecticides should yield a tentative diagnosis of toxicosis.

The presence of significant levels of CH insecticide in liver, kidney, and brain tissue is essential for confirming a diagnosis. Samples of these tissues as well as stomach contents and suspect material such as feed or spray should be submitted to a laboratory. Avoid contamination of specimens with hair or gut contents to prevent erroneous analytic results.
Laboratory tests are usually required to differentiate this toxicosis from pseudorabies, water deprivation, or gut edema.

**Treatment.** Treatment is essentially symptomatic, since there is no specific antidote for the CH insecticides. Animals should be sedated with long-acting barbiturates to control convulsive seizures. Animals with dermal exposure should be washed with warm, soapy water to remove the chemical and prevent continued contact. If the chemical is orally ingested, activated charcoal in a water slurry may be used to prevent further absorption. Oil-based cathartics should be avoided, as they may hasten absorption of the chemicals. Intravenous fluids plus glucose may be needed in protracted cases.

**Residues.** Because of the persistence of CH insecticides and their concentration in fat deposits of the body, the carcasses of animals dying from CH insecticide toxicosis are a source of contamination for feed ingredients such as tankage, meat and bone meal, and fats. Therefore, proper disposal of contaminated carcasses is very important. Tissue residues of these chemicals in swine surviving an episode of insecticide exposure should be an important consideration in market animals. In some cases the time required for excretion of these residues is too long to make decontamination economically feasible.

**Synthetic Pyrethroids.** Several synthetic pyrethroids (e.g., permethrin, fenvalerate) are commercially available for fly and external-parasite control. As a class, the synthetic pyrethroids are relatively nontoxic to mammals and are unlikely to produce poisoning in swine.

**Formamidines.** Amitraz is a formamidine pesticide with insecticidal and acaricidal properties. It is available in the United States as Taktic for control of lice and mange on swine. This compound has low mammalian toxicity and is unlikely to produce toxicosis in swine.

**Fungicides**

**Captan.** Captan has been widely used as a seed treatment although some newer fungicides are now being employed. Field corn seed produced commercially in the United States has generally been treated with captan at a level of approximately 1000 ppm. Consumption of captan-treated seed corn represents little hazard of poisoning by these compounds under normal conditions of use is low. When large doses have been administered experimentally, depression, anorexia, weight loss, muscular weakness, and incoordination have been observed.

**Organomercurials.** The organomercurials include phenyl mercuric chloride, phenyl mercuric acetate, various aliphatic compounds such as ethyl mercuric chloride, and complex aromatic derivatives like hydroxy mercuric cresol. The toxicoses associated with mercury-based seed treatments are discussed above, in the section on mercury.

**Pentachlorophenol.** Pentachlorophenol (PCP) has been employed for over 45 years as a wood preservative and fungicide. PCP- or “penta”-treated wood has found application in livestock handling and housing facilities, where wood is in contact with soil, manure, or moisture. Acute poisoning is not a major problem from PCP-treated wood, although toxicosis, including stillborn pigs, may occur when livestock have contact with surfaces that have been freshly treated with PCP preparations (Schipper 1961). A single oral dose of 80 mg/kg was not fatal to a weanling pig. If toxicosis occurs, depression, emesis, muscular weakness, accelerated respiratory rate, and posterior paralysis are clinical signs that may be observed. A problem of greater concern may be the recognition of blood and tissue PCP residues in swine that have been in contact with PCP-treated facilities. Finding from 10 to 1000 ppb PCP in whole blood is apparently unrelated to manifestations of toxicosis.

**Chromate–Copper Arsenate.** Chromate-copper arsenate (CCA) is widely used as a wood preservative in consumer lumber intended for outdoor use. CCA-treated wood generally presents a negligible hazard to swine, as the metallic salts are bound in the wood fibers. However, the residual inorganic arsenic in the ashes of burned CCA wood can produce poisoning in swine.

**Herbicides**

**Phenoxy Herbicides.** 2,4-D; 2,4,5-T, MCPA; and silvex are selective herbicides widely used in crop production and pasture and range management. Because the toxic dose of 2,4-D and 2,4,5-T is greater than 300 mg/kg body weight for several days, the hazard of poisoning by these compounds under normal conditions of use is low. When large doses have been administered experimentally, depression, anorexia, weight loss, muscular weakness, and incoordination have been observed.

**Dipyridal Herbicides.** Paraquat, a plant desiccant type of herbicide, has found widespread application in no-till farming technology. Accidental, as well as malicious, poisoning of swine with paraquat has resulted in toxicosis. An approximate lethal dose of paraquat for swine is 75 mg/kg. Acute effects involving necrosis and erosion of the oral and gastric mucosa are attributed to the carrier solvent. The more classic effects, however, occur 7–10 days after ingestion and are characterized by pulmonary congestion and edema. The pulmonary lesions progress to a severe diffuse interstitial pulmonary fibrosis. Initial clinical signs include emesis and diarrhea, and the later stages are characterized by respiratory distress. Once clinical signs suggesting pulmonary involvement develop, therapeutic measures are usually futile.

**Rodenticides**

The rodenticides are used to control rat and mouse populations in or around farmsteads, feed storage areas, and
swine production facilities. Accidental access to these compounds constitutes the usual route of exposure, although malicious poisoning of swine with rodenticides has also occurred.

Anticoagulant Rodenticides. The anticoagulant rodenticides (e.g., warfarin, diphasacinone, chlorophacinone, bromadiolone, brodifocoum, pindone) compose the largest group of rodenticides available through retail outlets. Swine are quite susceptible to this class of compound, as evidenced by toxicosis occurring after a single oral dose of warfarin at 3 mg/kg body weight. Repeated oral doses of only 0.05 mg/kg per day for 7 days also produced toxicosis in swine (Osweiler 1978). These rodenticides produce lowered prothrombin levels by interfering with vitamin K utilization. The physiologic result is increased blood-clotting time, which is manifested clinically as mild to severe hemorrhage. The clinical signs— including lameness, stiffness, lethargy, recumbency, anorexia, and dark tarry feces—are related directly to extravasation of blood. Observed lesions include hemotoma, articular swelling, epistaxis, intermuscular hemorrage, anemia, and melena.

A diagnosis of anticoagulant rodenticide toxicosis should include demonstration of a defect in the clotting mechanism as evidenced by increases in clotting time, one-stage prothrombin time, or activated partial thromboplastin time. The chemical detection of the rodenticide in samples of blood, liver, or suspect baits is also helpful.

Injectable vitamin K and oral vitamin K supplements are included in a successful treatment regime. Whole-blood transfusions may be utilized successfully in special cases.

Strychnine. Strychnine, an indole alkaloid, is widely available commercially, often as either a green- or red-dyed pellet or grain or as a white powder. This alkaloid acts by selectively antagonizing certain types of special inhibitory neurons, thereby allowing uncontrolled and relatively diffuse reflex activity to proceed unchecked. The approximate oral lethal dose of strychnine for swine varies from 0.5 to 1 mg/kg body weight. Clinical signs appear within 10 minutes to 2 hours after ingestion and are characterized by violent tetanic seizures that may occur spontaneously or in response to external stimuli such as touch, light, or sound. The intermittent seizures are usually separated by periods of relaxation. Death occurs from anoxia and exhaustion during the seizures, often in less than 1 hour. Diagnosis is best confirmed by detection of the strychnine alkaloid in either the stomach contents or urine. Treatment consists of controlling seizures with long-acting barbiturates and other muscle relaxants.

Cholecalciferol. Rodenticides containing cholecalciferol (vitamin D₃) are commercially available as Rampage, Quintox, or Ortho Rat-B-Gone. Toxic doses of these products produce vitamin D poisoning with hypercalcemia, mineralization of soft tissues, and clinical signs of depression, weakness, nausea, anorexia, polyuria, and polydipsia.

Bromethalin. Bromethalin-based rodenticides, marketed as Assault, Vengeance, or Trounce, produce cerebral edema and signs of rear-leg ataxia and/or paresis and CNS depression. Hyperexcitability, muscle tremors, and seizures may be seen with higher doses of bromethalin in the dog (Dorman et al. 1990).

TOXIC PLANTS

Amaranthus retroflexus (Redroot Pigweed)
A distinct disease syndrome of swine called perirenal edema occurs during the summer and early fall months. Its onset is associated with sudden access to pastures, barn lots, or fencerows containing moderate amounts of *Amaranthus retroflexus* (redroot pigweed).

Clinical signs appear suddenly 5–10 days after access to the pigweed. Initial signs are weakness, trembling, and incoordination. The disease progresses rapidly to knuckling of the pastern joints and finally to almost complete paralysis of the rear legs. Affected pigs usually lie in sternal recumbency, and if disturbed, attempts to walk will be in a crouching gait or with the rear legs dragging. The body temperature is usually normal and the eyes are bright. Coma and death generally occur within 48 hours of the onset of clinical signs, but affected swine may live from 5 to 15 days, with progression from signs of acute nephrosis to those of chronic fibrous nephritis. In affected herds, new cases may appear for as long as 10 days after removal from the source. Morbidity ranges from less than 5% in some herds to 50% in others, and the mortality is usually about 75–80% in those showing clinical signs.

Gross necropsy findings are dramatic and characterized as edema of the connective tissue around the kidneys. The amount of fluid in the perirenal area varies, at times occupying the greater portion of the abdominal cavity. The edematous fluid may contain considerable blood, although the kidney itself is usually of normal size and pale. Edema of the ventral body wall and perirectal areas as well as ascites and hydrothorax may be observed. Histologic lesions of affected swine are characterized by hydropic degeneration and coagulative necrosis of both proximal and distal convoluted tubules. Glomeruli may be shrunken, with dilation of Bowman’s capsules. Proteinaceous casts are numerous in distal and collecting tubules.

As a consequence of severe renal disease, there are elevations in BUN, serum creatinine, and serum potassium. The electrocardiograph of affected swine is characteristic of hyperkalemic heart failure (Osweiler et al. 1969). The changes include bradycardia, a wide and
slurred QRS complex, and an increase in magnitude and deviation of the T wave. The probable cause of death is hyperkalemic heart failure.

Immediate removal of affected pigs from the source of the water is the only definite therapeutic recommendation that can be made at this time.

**Xanthium spp. (Cocklebur)**

Cockleburs, including *Xanthium strumarium* and other species, are annual herbs that reproduce only from seed. They may be found throughout the world in cultivated fields, fencerows, and ditches and may heavily infest pastures as a result of being washed in from adjacent cropland.

The greatest potential for cocklebur poisoning arises when the more toxic two-leaf seedling stage or ground seeds are ingested. The unpalatable more mature plant contains less of the toxic principle, carboxyatractylloside. Within 8–24 hours after ingestion, swine develop signs of depression, nausea, weakness, ataxia, and subnormal temperature. Spasms of the cervical muscles, vomiting, and dyspnea may occur. Death occurs within several hours after the onset of symptoms. Lesions typically include ascites with large fibrin strands on the surface of the liver and other viscera and congestion and centrilobular accentuation of the liver. Microscopically acute centrilobular hepatic necrosis is observed (Stuart et al. 1981).

Treatment includes mineral oil per os to delay absorption of the carboxyatractylloside. Intramuscular injection of 5–30 mg physostigmine may produce a dramatic response in some cases (Link 1975).

**Solanum nigrum (Black Nightshade)**

Even though black nightshade is easily recognized and found in woods, permanent pastures, and fencerows, actual cases of poisoning are rare. The alkaloid solanine is found principally in the leaves and green berries, but the plant is generally not palatable and is usually consumed under conditions of its abundant growth and lack of other suitable forage.

Affected animals display anorexia, constipation, depression, and incoordination. Poisoned swine may vomit. Dilation of the pupils and muscular trembling are neurologic signs observed. Animals may be seen lying on their sides and kicking with all feet, progressing then to coma and death. Necropsy may reveal some degree of gastrointestinal irritation. The toxic alkaloid is rapidly eliminated through the urine (Kingsbury 1964).

**Nitrates and Nitrites**

As monogastric animals, swine are relatively resistant to the effects of nitrate, especially when compared with cattle. Nitrate or nitrite toxicity occurs most commonly when these ions accumulate in either plants and/or water sources. Some fertilizers, such as ammonium nitrate or potassium nitrate, may also be a source of nitrate for animals. Several different plants may accumulate nitrate, depending on varying climatic and soil fertility conditions. Nitrate may accumulate in the lower stalk and perhaps leaves of corn and other plants, but not in the fruit or grain.

The nitrates from both water (see the section on water quality below) and plant sources are additive and should be evaluated together in particular field cases. The nitrate ion (NO3) itself is not particularly toxic and may produce no more than gastrointestinal irritation. However, nitrite (NO2), the reduced form of nitrate, is quite toxic. The nitrite ion oxidizes ferrous iron in hemoglobin to the ferric state, forming methemoglobin, which cannot accept and transport molecular oxygen. The result is tissue hypoxia from poorly oxygenated blood.

Pigs given single oral doses of greater than 10–20 mg nitrite-nitrogen (as potassium nitrite)/kg body weight developed clinical signs of poisoning but recovered, whereas those given doses greater than 20 mg nitrite-nitrogen/kg body weight died within 90–150 minutes after ingestion (London et al. 1967). Clinical signs became apparent when approximately 20% of the total hemoglobin was present as methemoglobin; death was associated with methemoglobin levels of approximately 80%. Clinical signs observed with acute nitrite toxicosis include increased respiratory rate, salivation, miosis, polyuria, weakness, ataxia, and terminal anoxic convulsive seizures. The blood and tissues are a chocolate brown color from the methemoglobin. Treatment of acute nitrite toxicosis consists of intravenous injection of 10 mg methylene blue/kg body weight in a 4% solution (Link 1975).

**WATER QUALITY**

Water is one of the most important nutrients for swine. The availability of adequate quantities of good-quality water is essential for successful swine production. Even though it may be easy to incriminate water as the cause of poor performance and vague disease conditions in swine, water evaluation should be part of a thorough diagnostic investigation. A detailed history of the animals as well as the water source, careful clinical evaluation, and submission of representative animal and water specimens should be included in the investigation. Results of water tests should be evaluated in view of existing standards for livestock water quality. Some general guidelines for evaluating water quality parameters for livestock are presented in Table 60.1.

Information about the source of the water should be recorded. Ponds, wells, and regional rural water systems are the most common water sources, and each may influence the quality of the water supplied. The depth of wells may also be helpful, as deeper wells tend to have a higher mineral content, while shallower wells are more likely to have higher nitrate levels and coliform counts.
Sometimes the age of the well and type of pumping device may suggest certain mechanical problems, including a cracked casing or defective sanitary seal. Estimates of the amount of water consumed may also be helpful when investigating potential water problems.

### Microbiologic Standards

Microbiologic examination of water samples determines the general sanitary quality of the sample and indicates the degree of contamination of the water with waste from human and animal sources.

In general, these examinations do not attempt to isolate pathogenic bacteria but detect the presence of indicator organisms. The coliform group of bacteria has traditionally been the indicator used to assess the degree of water pollution and thus the sanitary quality of the particular sample. As an advance in the microbiologic examination of water, the differentiation of fecal coliforms as a subgroup within the general category of coliforms is encouraging. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (1973) proposed that acceptable levels for water to be used directly by livestock should not exceed 1000/100 mL. Many believe, however, that as long as animals are allowed to range freely and drink surface waters, these proposed limits will be unenforceable and of doubtful value.

The standard plate count, which enumerates the number of bacteria multiplying at 35°C, is of doubtful significance in evaluating livestock water sources other than helping to judge the efficiency of various water treatment processes.

### Salinity

Salinity, or total dissolved solids (TDS), generally expressed in milligrams per liter, is an expression of the amount of soluble salts in a particular water sample and is one of the most important parameters used to evaluate water quality. The ions most commonly involved in saline waters are calcium, magnesium, and sodium in the bicarbonate, chloride, or sulfate form. Hardness is sometimes confused with salinity, but the two are not necessarily correlative. Hardness is expressed as the sum of calcium and magnesium reported in equivalent amounts of calcium carbonate. Although hardness of water may affect the mechanical function of valves and waterers because of the formation of mineral deposits, hardness itself has a minimal impact on animal performance.

Water containing less than 1000 mg soluble salts/L should present no serious hazard to any class of swine. Water containing between 1000 and 5000 mg soluble salts/L may cause mild temporary diarrhea or be refused at first by swine not accustomed to it, although health or performance should not be greatly affected (NRC 1974; Anderson and Strothers 1978; Paterson et al. 1979). Water containing 5000–7000 mg soluble salts/L may present a health risk for pregnant, lactating, or stressed animals. Water containing more than 7000 mg soluble salts/L should be considered unsafe for swine.

In some regions, sulfates are a major portion of the TDS in water. A recent study (Fleck Veenhuizen et al. 1992) demonstrated that except for an increase in fecal moisture content, water containing up to 1800 mg of sodium, magnesium, or a combination of sodium and magnesium sulfate per liter had no effect on nursery pig performance. An epidemiologic study of water on swine farms did not find an association between sulfate concentrations and prevalence of diarrhea, although water sulfate levels increased with the depth of the wells tested (Fleck Veenhuizen 1993). A recent study of water quality on 173 Iowa swine farms found a mean TDS of 343 mg/L (range 100–2,500), but measured no significant effects of elevated TDS on several performance parameters (Ensley 1998).

### Nitrates and Nitrites

Nitrates and nitrites are water soluble and thus may be leached from the soil or soil surface into groundwater. Animal wastes, nitrogen fertilizers, decaying organic matter, silage juices, and soils high in nitrogen-fixing bacteria may be sources of contamination through surface-water runoff to adjacent poorly cared, shallow, or low-lying wells or reservoirs.

---

**Table 60.1.** Water quality guidelines for livestock

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Maximum Recommended Limit (ppm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Major ions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrate + nitrite</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrite alone</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfate</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total dissolved solids</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heavy metals and trace ions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arsenic a</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beryllium</td>
<td>0.1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boron</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cobalt</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper (swine)</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoride c</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>No guideline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manganese</td>
<td>No guideline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molybdenum</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uranium</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanadium</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>50.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Canadian Task Force on Water Quality 1987.

a5.0 if not added to feed.
bTentative guideline.
c1.0 if fluoride is present in feed.
The upper limit for nitrate in human drinking water is 45 mg nitrate/L (USEPA 1975). This level has the intent of preventing the methemoglobinemia of “blue baby” syndrome in human infants who receive formulas made from high-nitrate waters. Although it has been suggested that neonatal swine are also quite susceptible to elevated nitrates, evidence to support this theory is unavailable. Emerick et al. (1965) concluded, however, that 1-week-old pigs are no more susceptible to nitrate-induced methemoglobinemia than older growing swine. A review of water quality for livestock (NRC 1974) proposed 440 mg nitrate/L as the maximum nitrate that could safely be allowed in livestock water.

Reports of experimental production of a chronic or low-level nitrate-poisoning syndrome in livestock have been extensively reviewed (Turner and Kienholz 1972; Emerick 1974; Ridder and Oehme 1974). The bulk of the evidence indicates that sublethal or chronic effects are more toxic to neonates than to adults, especially growing pigs. No effect on the performance of growing pigs up to 18.3 mg nitrite-nitrogen/kg body weight for 124 days without serious effects developing. No effect on the performance of growing-finishing swine or on reproductive performance of gilts was observed when the drinking water contained 1320 ppm nitrate (Seerley et al. 1965).

**MISCELLANEOUS TOXICANTS**

**Sodium Ion Toxicosis**

Sodium ion toxicity, also called water deprivation or salt poisoning, is a common problem in swine. The occurrence of sodium ion toxicity is inversely related to water intake and is almost always related to water deprivation caused by inadequate water supply or to changes in husbandry. The likelihood of toxicosis will also increase with increased dietary salt, but the condition may occur when rations contain normal levels of added salt, for example, 0.25–1%. It has also been associated with the feeding of whey and other milk by-products. Sodium ion toxicosis may occur after water deprivation of only a few hours, but in most cases the time exceeds 24 hours.

The initial clinical signs are thirst and constipation, followed by CNS involvement. Intermittent convulsions start within 1 to several days after water deprivation and may be exacerbated by rehydration. The frequency of characteristic tonoclonic convulsions with opisthotonos, often starting from a sitting position, increases. Affected animals may also wander aimlessly and appear to be blind and deaf. Moribund pigs become comatose, often lying on their sides with continuous paddling. Most affected animals die within a few days. Some pigs that appear to be unaffected may succumb later to a subacute polioencephalomalacia. Salt poisoning, from eating excess salt or consuming brine, usually causes vomiting and diarrhea.

Diagnosis is best accomplished by establishing that water deprivation occurred, which may be difficult in some cases. If water deprivation is not evident, other means must be used to aid the diagnosis. Necropsy findings may reveal a gastritis, gastric ulcers, constipation, or enteritis. Chemical analysis of serum and cerebrospinal fluids may confirm a hypernatremia with levels of Na above 160 mEq/L (Osweiler and Hurd 1974). However, after rehydration, normal values of 140–145 mEq/L may exist. Brain sodium levels above 1800 ppm (wet weight) are consistent with a diagnosis of sodium ion toxicosis. Histologic examination of brain tissue, especially cerebrum, will usually reveal the presence of a pathognomonic eosinophilic meningoencephalitis characterized by cuffing of meningeal and cerebral vessels with eosinophils. However, when pigs live several days, the eosinophils may disappear or be replaced by mononuclear cells. Brains of pigs affected subacutely may have a laminar subcortical polioencephalomalacia. Analysis of feed for sodium is usually of limited value. Differential diagnosis should include viral encephalitic diseases such as pseudorabies and hog cholera, chlorinated hydrocarbon insecticide poisoning, and edema disease. In known cases of water deprivation, rehydration should be gradual, but the prognosis is poor.

**Coal Tar Pitch**

Coal tars are a mixture of condensable, volatile products formed during the destructive distillation of bituminous coal. The phenolic portions of these products have the greatest acute toxicity. Sources of these substances for swine are clay pigeons, lignite tar flooring slabs, tar paper, and tar used in waterproofing and sealing. Because of the rapid clinical course, sudden death is often the first physical sign observed. Weakness, depression, and increased respiratory rate can be observed in animals that may live for several hours or even days. Icterus and a secondary anemia may develop. Necropsy of pigs poisoned by coal tar pitch reveals a greatly enlarged friable liver. The hepatic lobules are very distinct grossly; some are darkened in color, and others are yellowish orange. Microscopically, this lesion is observed as severe centrilobular necrosis with subsequent intralobular hemorrhage. Ascites and large turgid kidneys may also be observed.

There is no specific treatment for this condition. Removal of animals from the source of the coal tar is important to prevent recurrence of poisoning.

**Ethylene Glycol**

Most permanent antifreeze/coolant mixtures for liquid-cooled engines contain approximately 95% ethylene glycol. A hazard of poisoning exists when animals have accidental access to antifreeze solutions during periods of engine maintenance or when these solutions are used in plumbing systems to prevent freezing. Swine may be poisoned by ingesting 4–5 mL ethylene glycol/kg body weight. Ethylene glycol toxicosis is exhibited in two
clinical phases. Initially the glycol may enter the cerebrospinal fluid, producing a narcotic or euphoric state of intoxication. Subsequent clinical signs of acidosis and renal failure are associated with the highly toxic metabolites of the glycol and formation of calcium oxalate crystals in the kidney tubules. Renal tubular blockage with development of uremia is observed 1–3 days after ingestion. Clinical signs generally include emesis, anorexia, dehydration, weakness, ataxia, convulsions, coma, and death. The entire course of illness may be as short as 12 hours following consumption of large quantities of ethylene glycol. Oxalate nephrosis can be demonstrated histopathologically and is characterized by finding pale yellow birefringent oxalate crystals in the tubules. Polarizing filters greatly aid in the detection of oxalate crystals in kidney sections or in impression smears of freshly incised kidney.

Once clinical signs of renal failure are evident, treatment is usually of no avail. If treated within the first 6–12 hours after ingestion, reasonable response has been achieved in ethylene glycol–poisoned dogs by using 5.5 mL/kg body weight of 20% ethyl alcohol intravenously and 98 mL/kg body weight of 5% sodium bicarbonate intravenously.

**Gossypol**

Cottonseed meal (CSM), a by-product of the cotton fiber and cottonseed oil industries, is an important protein supplement for livestock rations in cotton-producing regions. Its use as a protein supplement for swine, however, is limited by gossypol content, which varies with the strain of the cotton plant, its geographic location, climatic conditions, and the oil extraction procedure used. Gossypol, a polyphenolic binaphthalene, is a yellow pigment in glands of decorticated cottonseed. The toxic “free” gossypol becomes partially inactivated (bound) during the extraction and milling processes, as well as spontaneously in the prepared meal. Toxicity of gossypol depends on the species and age of the animal and on various components of the diet, particularly the protein, lysine, and iron concentrations (Eisele 1986).

Toxicosis only follows prolonged feeding (weeks to months) of CSM with a high content of free gossypol and may be manifested simply as ill-thrift or as an acute respiratory problem followed by death. The main pathologic changes are cardiomyopathy, hepatic congestion and necrosis, skeletal muscle injury, and severe edematous changes throughout the animal. A decrease in hemoglobin total serum, protein concentration, and packed-cell volume is seen in pigs fed a diet containing ≥200 mg of free gossypol/kg (Haschek et al. 1989).

Recommendations for growing and fattening swine include feeding no more than 9% CSM in the diet, with less than 100 mg (0.01%) of free gossypol/kg, in a 15–16% protein diet. Tolerance to gossypol can be induced by adding FeSO$_4$ (≥400 mg/kg) at a 1:1 weight ratio with free gossypol. Increasing the amount of crude protein or supplementing with lysine can also induce tolerance (Pond and Maner 1984).

**VENTILATION FAILURE AND TOXIC GASES**

Confinement of swine in closed structures increases the risk of potential gas toxicosis and other dynamics dependent upon mechanical ventilation. Fortunately even at relatively low ventilation rates used during cold weather, concentrations of ammonia and hydrogen sulfide, the two most potentially dangerous gases associated with manure decomposition, usually remain below toxic levels. Unfortunately, however, accidents, poor design, and improper operation may result in insufficient ventilation and the concentration of poisonous gases to toxic levels.

The most important gases released by the decomposition of urine and feces either in anaerobic underfloor waste pits or in deep litter or manure packs are ammonia and hydrogen sulfide. Carbon dioxide and methane are also produced but seldom reach significant concentrations. A number of vapors responsible for the odors of manure decomposition are also produced. These include organic acids, amines, amides, alcohols, carbonyls, skatoles, sulfides, and mercaptans. Concentrations of toxic gases are usually expressed as parts of the gas per million parts of air (ppm) by volume.

**Ventilation Failure**

Even more common than the accumulation of toxic gases are swine deaths associated with failure of a mechanical ventilation system. The failure of ventilation may occur in whole confinement buildings and result in high death losses at any time of the year. Similar dynamics and death losses occur in tightly sealed insulated trucks used to transport young pigs. When ventilation stops because of storms, power outages, or mechanical failure, the dynamics of air, heat, and moisture in the confined space may become critical. The retention of heat and moisture leads to high relative humidity and poor evaporative cooling and consequently hyperthermia as the most critical factor in these confined swine. Death losses may approach 95% under these circumstances. Although there is no method to specifically confirm hyperthermia as a cause of death, a history of ventilation failure, rapid carcass decomposition, a pale “cooked” appearance to the muscles, and blood-tinged foam in the trachea are usually seen.

**Ammonia**

Ammonia (NH$_3$) is the toxic air pollutant most frequently found in high concentrations in animal facilities, and production is especially common where excrement can decompose on a solid floor. This gas has a characteristic pungent odor that humans can detect at approximately 10 ppm or even lower. The NH$_3$ concentration in enclosed animal facilities usually remains
below 30 ppm even with low ventilation rates; however, it may frequently reach 50 ppm or higher during long periods of normal facility operation.

Ammonia is highly soluble in water, and as such will react with the moist mucous membranes of the eye and respiratory passages. Consequently, excessive tearing, shallow breathing, and clear or purulent nasal discharge are common symptoms of aerial NH₃ toxicity.

At concentrations usually found in practical animal environments (<100 ppm), the primary impact of this gas is as a chronic stressor that can affect the course of infectious disease as well as directly influence the growth of healthy young pigs. The rate of gain in young pigs was reduced by 12% during exposure to aerial NH₃ at 50 ppm and by 30% at 100 or 150 ppm (Drummond et al. 1980). Aerial NH₃ at 50 or 75 ppm reduced the ability of healthy young pigs to clear bacteria from their lungs (Drummond et al. 1978). At 50 or 100 ppm, aerial NH₃ exacerbated nasal turbinate lesions in young pigs infected with Bordetella bronchiseptica but did not add to the infection-induced reduction in the pigs’ growth rate (Drummond et al. 1981a). In another study, aerial NH₃ at 100 ppm reduced the rate of gain by 32% and ascariid infection by 28%; however, effects of the NH₃ and infection, when imposed on the pigs at the same time, were additive, and the rate of gain was reduced by 61% (Drummond et al. 1981b). More extensive reviews of aerial NH₃ and its effect on animal production are provided by Curtis (1983) and the National Research Council (1979a).

**Hydrogen Sulfide**

Hydrogen sulfide (H₂S) is a potentially lethal gas produced by anaerobic bacterial decomposition of protein and other sulfur-containing organic matter. The source of H₂S which presents the greatest hazard to swine is liquid manure holding pits. Most of the H₂S, which may be continuously produced, is retained within the liquid of the pit. However, agitation of waste slurry to resuspend solids prior to being pumped out causes the rapid release of much of the H₂S that may have been retained within it. Hydrogen sulfide is heavier than air and consequently is found in, and will move to, pits, tanks, and other low areas of a facility. The concentration of H₂S usually found in closed animal facilities (less than 10 ppm) is not toxic, but the release of gas upon agitation may produce concentrations of H₂S up to 1000 ppm or higher within the facility.

Acute H₂S poisoning is directly responsible for more deaths in closed animal facilities than any other gas, with the possible exception of carbon monoxide. Additionally, several human deaths are recorded each year from H₂S accidents associated with animal facilities.

Humans can detect the typical “rotten egg” odor of H₂S at very low concentrations (0.025 ppm) in air. Exposures to these low concentrations have little or no importance to human health, and thus the olfactory response is a useful warning signal of its presence. However, at higher concentrations (greater than 200 ppm), H₂S presents the distinct hazard of a paralyzing effect on the olfactory apparatus, thus effectively neutralizing the warning signal (NRC 1979b).

Hydrogen sulfide is an irritant gas. Its direct action on tissues induces local inflammation of the moist membranes of the eye and respiratory tract. When inhaled, the action of H₂S is more or less uniform throughout the respiratory tract, although the deeper pulmonary structures suffer the greatest damage. Inflammation of the deep lung structures may appear as pulmonary edema. If inhaled at sufficiently high concentrations, H₂S can also be readily absorbed through the lung and can produce fatal systemic intoxication (O’Donoghue 1961).

At concentrations in air exceeding 500 ppm, H₂S must be considered a serious imminent threat to life; between 500 and 1000 ppm, it produces permanent effects on the nervous system. If spontaneous recovery does not occur and artificial respiration is not immediately provided, death results from asphyxia.

Management is the most important part of preventing animal deaths from H₂S. When manure stored in a pit beneath a building is agitated, animals should be moved out of the building if at all possible. When movement of the animals is not possible, other steps should be taken to protect the animals during agitation. In mechanically ventilated buildings, the fans should run at full capacity, even during the winter; in naturally ventilated buildings, manure pits should not be agitated unless there is a brisk breeze blowing. Immediate rescue of affected swine should not be attempted for the rescuer may quickly become a victim of H₂S toxicosis.

**Carbon Dioxide**

Carbon dioxide (CO₂) is an odorless gas present in the atmosphere at 300 ppm. It is given off by swine as an end product of energy metabolism and by improperly vented, though properly adjusted, fuel-burning heaters. It is also the gas evolved in the greatest quantity by decomposing manure. Despite all this, CO₂ concentration in closed animal facilities rarely approaches levels that endanger animal health (Curtis 1983).

**Methane**

Methane (CH₃), a product of microbial degradation of carbonaceous materials, is not a poisonous gas. It is biologically rather inert and produces effects on animals only by displacing oxygen in a given atmosphere and thereby producing asphyxiation. Under ordinary pressures, a concentration of 87–90% CH₃ in a given atmosphere is required before irregularities of respiration and eventually respiratory arrest due to anoxia are produced. The chief danger inherent in this material is its explosive hazard as concentrations of 5–15% by volume in air are reached (Osweiler et al. 1985).
Carbon Monoxide

Carbon monoxide (CO), which is produced from the inefficient combustion of carbonaceous fuel and is present in the exhaust fumes of gasoline-burning internal-combustion engines, is also potentially lethal to swine. Poisoning occurs when improperly adjusted and improperly vented space heaters or furnaces are operated in tight, poorly ventilated buildings such as farrowing houses.

Ambient background levels of CO are 0.02 ppm in fresh air, 13 ppm in city streets, and 40 ppm in areas with high vehicular traffic.

Carbon monoxide acts by competing with oxygen for binding sites on a variety of proteins, including hemoglobin, with which most of the compound is associated in the body. The affinity of hemoglobin for CO is some 250 times that for oxygen. When CO becomes bonded to the heme group, forming carboxyhemoglobin, the molecule’s oxygen-carrying capacity is reduced. This results in tissue hypoxia.

High concentrations of CO (>250 ppm) in swine farrowing houses can produce an increased number of stillborn piglets. Clinical history generally associated with these stillbirths reveals (1) nonexistent ventilation, (2) inadequate ventilation due to blocked apertures of natural systems or reduction to minimal winter rates for mechanical systems, (3) use of unvented or improperly vented LP gas-burning space heaters, (4) a high percentage of near-term sows delivering dead piglets within a few hours of being put in an artificially heated farrowing facility, (5) sows that appear clinically normal but that produce whole litters born dead, and (6) negative laboratory results for the detection of infectious causes of abortion (Carson 1990).

Exposure to high levels of CO can be confirmed by actually measuring the CO level in the air or by measuring the percentage of carboxyhemoglobin in the blood of the affected animal. In addition to these two parameters, carboxyhemoglobin concentration of greater than 2% in fetal thoracic fluid may be used as an aid in diagnosing CO-induced stillbirth in swine (Dominick and Carson 1983).

Anhydrous Ammonia

On occasion, swine may be exposed to anhydrous ammonia (gas-NH₃) used as an agricultural fertilizer nitrogen source. This gas presents a unique risk of exposure to both animals and people because of its presence on farms and the fact that it is stored, transported, and applied under high pressure. Poisoning with gas-NH₃ is associated with gas release from broken hoses, failure of valves, and errors in operating transport or application equipment. Once released, gas-NH₃ rapidly combines with water and forms caustic ammonium hydroxide. The cornea, mouth, and respiratory tract are high in moisture and especially susceptible to the resulting strong alkali burns. Acute death from laryngospasm and accumulation of fluid in the lungs can occur within a matter of minutes. Blindness from corneal opacity and sloughing epithelium in the respiratory tract may be seen in swine surviving initial exposure. Residual respiratory damage and secondary bacterial invasion may not allow affected animals to regain full productive status.

REFERENCES


Veterinary Practice

61 Genetic Influences on Susceptibility to Acquired Diseases
62 Preweaning Mortality
63 Longevity in Breeding Animals
64 Effects of the Environment on Productivity and Disease
65 Nursery Pig Management
66 Management of Growing-Finishing Pigs
67 Animal Welfare
68 Swine Disease Transmission and Prevention
69 Disease Surveillance in Swine Populations
70 Anesthesia and Surgical Procedures in Swine
71 Drug Therapy and Prophylaxis
The use of genetic information in pig breeding to improve productivity is a successful and an expanding area of research and development, as exemplified by the routine genetic screening, in breeding stock, for the mutant ryanodine receptor allele in malignant hyperthermia (Fujii et al. 1991). The main areas of genetic applications have been on muscle production and reproductive performance (Rothschild et al. 1996; Bidanel and Rothschild 2002). In recent years, there has been increasing focus on the development of genetic markers to be used for enhancement of resistance to porcine diseases in breeding stock. This chapter reviews the current knowledge of porcine genetics and genomics that is relevant to infectious diseases. A consequence of its commercial importance has been the limited amount of publicly available information on specific diseases. Nonetheless, it is anticipated that DNA markers for disease resistance will be in regular use in pig breeding in the not too distant future.

Infectious diseases are realities of pig farming. The demand for improved standards of animal welfare and food safety, as well as farming economics, require that the incidence of disease be minimized. However, modern trends may be increasing the impact of specific diseases. The shift toward more intensive systems of production will reduce soil-transmitted infections such as gastrointestinal nematodes but may exacerbate other conditions like respiratory diseases. With the ban of growth-promoting antibiotics in several countries, there has been some deterioration in animal health, in particular, a rise in the number of gastrointestinal infections in early postweaning piglets, with a concomitant increase in the use of therapeautic antibiotics, which could have the inadvertent and paradoxical effect of promoting antibiotic resistance (Casewell et al. 2003).

Methods to control disease include good management to reduce exposure to pathogens and parasites as well as increasing the ability of animals to resist infection by vaccination and improved nutrition. Genetics also has a role to play in disease control. The identification of resistant or susceptible animals for selective breeding could reduce or prevent outbreaks of disease. A quantitative genetic analysis can indicate how much of the variation among animals in disease incidence is genetic in origin, whereas a study of molecular genetic variation can help identify the mechanisms underlying resistance and susceptibility to disease. Arguably without knowledge of genetic variation, our understanding of the disease process is meager and unsatisfactory. At the very least, genetic studies can target future research more effectively.

DEFINING DISEASE RESISTANCE

In any study of disease, the definition of resistance requires careful consideration. A variety of traits can be used alone or in conjunction, and the most appropriate traits to define disease resistance may vary with the type or nature of disease. Pathogens with different predilection sites of infection (e.g., intestine or lung) will present different clinical signs. However, their systemic effects could be similar, such as pyrexia, inappetance and emaciation (Taylor 1999). With the same pathogen, host responses could vary between individuals, in clinical severity (asymptomatic to peracute), in duration of infection (transient to chronic), and in transmission of infection (no to high infectivity). Hosts could vary in exposure to the disease agent because of differences in behavior. Variation among hosts could also be due to variation in response to infection. The distinction between disease resistance (the ability to prevent infection establishing) and disease resilience (the ability to prevent the infection producing clinical signs or reducing performance) has long been recognized (Albers et al. 1987). However, these terms are commonly used interchangeably. An animal could show disease resistance, in comparison with its exposed cohorts, if it shows no or mild clinical signs, recovers rapidly, or blocks transmission to other pigs. A subclinical infection, compared with a full-blown acute state, with little effect on production could...
be desirable. Likewise, a clinically affected animal that is able to prevent or reduce horizontal transmission could be regarded as disease resistant and would confer resistance at the herd level. Variation in clinical symptoms could be due to failure of the pathogen or parasite to establish, to rapid clearance by the host innate response, or to effective acquired immune response. Clinical, biochemical, or immunological parameters that can distinguish resistant animals from the rest of the population are phenotypic indicators of disease resistance.

The relationship between disease resistance and production traits is unpredictable and will vary among different environments, diseases, herds, and intensities of infection (Stear et al. 2001). A rational approach to improving disease resistance would be to genetically target improvement of host responses to selected diseases of major economic importance. Any improvement in recovery time and in reduction in mortality, clinical signs, and pathogen shedding in the face of a serious challenge is welcome.

GENETIC CONTRIBUTION TO DISEASE RESISTANCE/SUSCEPTIBILITY

Essentially every disease that has been seriously investigated has shown genetic variation among hosts in disease resistance (Nicholas 1996). Genetic variation could be shown in immune response traits as well as in host responses to direct pathogen exposure. The challenge is to use such information most effectively.

Geneticists divide diseases into different categories depending upon the nature of the genetic variation. Diseases that are entirely caused by the presence or absence of a single abnormal gene are classified as Mendelian diseases. These are subdivided into four categories depending upon the nature of inheritance: autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, sex-linked dominant, and sex-linked recessive. There are a large number of different Mendelian diseases in pigs, although many are noninfectious (www.morgan.angis.su.oz.au). They are due to mutations in specific genes, either in the coding or regulatory regions. They can be recognized by examining the pedigree of affected animals.

Autosomal dominant diseases are caused by a single copy of a defective gene on one of the autosomes (non-sex chromosomes). They have three characteristic features: They affect approximately equal numbers of males and females. Breeding an affected sire with an affected dam can produce unaffected offspring. If the pedigree of an affected individual is traced back, the disease is present in every generation until the original mutation. Dominant diseases are rare in pigs because breeders do not usually breed from obviously diseased animals. This is an example of deliberate selection. Natural selection will also reduce the frequency of autosomal dominant disorders.

Autosomal recessive diseases occur when both copies of an autosomal gene are defective. They have three characteristic features. They occur in approximately equal numbers of males and females. Crossing an affected sire with an affected dam gives only affected offspring. The disease can also skip generations when tracing the inheritance back to an affected individual, since the offspring is unaffected, although being a carrier, when at least one parent is not a carrier of the defective gene. Autosomal recessive diseases are much more common than autosomal dominant diseases because carriers with only one copy of the disease appear normal.

Sex-linked dominant diseases are caused by a mutation on the X chromosome. The small Y chromosome carries relatively few genes, which include those involved in sex determination. Sex-linked dominant diseases are rare and none are known in pigs. Sex-linked recessive diseases are relatively common and include some hemophilies. They occur at a greater frequency in males than females. All offspring of two affected parents are affected and as with autosomal recessives the disease may skip generations.

If a disease is suspected of being inherited in a Mendelian fashion, the most useful strategy is often to draw up a pedigree and check inheritance against the simple rules outlined above. It can be useful to check whether a similar disease has been shown to be inherited in the same or other species. The simplest way to avoid dominantly inherited diseases is to avoid breeding with affected individuals. The strategy to avoid recessive diseases is to ensure that at least one parent is not a carrier. For many diseases, carriers or noncarriers can be identified among potential parents. Where DNA tests do not exist, crossing a sire with a number of known carriers (females that have given birth to diseased individuals) can indicate whether the sire is a carrier.

Many important diseases are complex: influenced by more than one gene and the environment. A multifactorial model of liability with a threshold describes these diseases. Here statistical methods that utilize the similarity among relatives can indicate what proportion of the variation among individuals in disease prevalence is genetic in origin. This is known as the heritability (Nicholas 1996). The heritability is the ratio of the variation due to the average effects of genes divided by the total variation. If the heritability is close to 0 most of the variation is due to nongenetic forces. Conversely, if the heritability is close to 1, most of the variation is genetic in origin.

GENETIC VARIATION IN DISEASE RESISTANCE

Controlling complex diseases by genetic methods is possible and uses the same methods developed by breeders to enhance production traits. A crucial decision is deciding whether to breed for resistance to one disease or for resistance to a range of diseases. For dairy
cattle the most economically important disease is mastitis; for sheep the dominant problem is nematode infection. Selective breeding has therefore concentrated on controlling these diseases. For pigs, there is no single overwhelmingly important disease worldwide and research has concentrated on identifying pigs with superior immune responses (Wilkie and Mallard 1999). It may not be possible to breed an animal that is completely immune to all known infectious diseases, but results certainly indicate that animals with enhanced resistance to a variety of important diseases can be identified.

Selection strategies are unlikely to be solely based on clinical symptoms. Selection based on host responses to specific disease challenge is the most direct route to identify resistant animals but is inconvenient and risky in intensive pig production. A sensible approach would be to target responses to diseases of major economic importance. Ideally, phenotypic markers that predict resistance should be detectable in the live animal to facilitate subsequent breeding.

**Variation in Immune Responsiveness**

Several studies have demonstrated differences in immune traits between individual pigs reared under the same conditions (Edfors-Lilja et al. 1994; Hessing et al. 1995; van Diemen et al. 2002). Immune parameters that were found to vary between individuals included total white blood cell count, neutrophil number and phagocytic capacity, CD2 and CD4 lymphocyte numbers, lymphocyte proliferation rate, antibody level and interleukin-2 (IL-2) production (Edfors-Lilja et al. 1994; Mallard et al. 1998). Differences in immune parameters were also detected between breeds. Several immune traits, like leucocyte number and concanavalin-A induced cell proliferation, were quantitatively different between Large White and Duroc pigs (Nguyen et al. 1998), and C3 complement activity showed breed differences between Duroc and Berlin Miniature pigs (Mekchay et al. 2003). High immune activity is not necessarily a predictor of better protection from disease (Mallard et al. 1998; Visscher et al. 2002).

**Variation in Response to Specific Diseases**

There are breed differences in neutralization antibody response to vaccination against Aujeszky’s disease (Rothschild et al. 1984); Yorkshire and Chester White pigs were found with higher postvaccinated antibody titers than Duroc and Landrace pigs. The humoral response is only part of the immune response, and, as suggested earlier, high postvaccinated titres on their own do not inevitably mean greater resistance to Aujeszky’s infection. However, this finding does serve to demonstrate a genetic basis for variation in humoral immune response to vaccination against Aujeszky’s disease.

*Sarcocystis miescheriana* is a coccidial parasite that accumulates as cysts in the skeletal muscle of pigs acting as intermediate hosts. Experimental infection with *S. miescheriana* showed breed differences in host response (Reiner et al. 2002a). Pietrain pigs displayed greater clinical severity and parasite load in skeletal muscles than Meishan pigs.

Finally, a challenge experiment with *Salmonella choleraesuis* was conducted on a reference family bred from full-sister F1 gilts and four selected boars from two commercial lines (van Diemen et al. 2002). Infected pigs showed significant variation in bacterial recovery from liver and spleen, pyrexia response, weight gain, and several immune parameters. The most resistant pigs, as evidenced by low bacterial recovery from liver and spleen and better growth performance, had higher neutrophil numbers and better neutrophil functions (oxidative burst and intracellular killing of *S. choleraesuis*) but lower proliferation rate of lymphocytes and lower antibody response. In this study, it appears that the innate response is more critical than the acquired immune response in deciding on the outcome of *S. choleraesuis* infection.

The above viral, protozoal, and bacterial examples of infection illustrate the range of host response to different types of infection and the genetic contribution to variation in disease response for each type of infection. There is therefore considerable opportunity for genetic improvement of immune capacity since immune traits show wide genetic variation between pigs and moderate heritability (Visscher et al. 2002). However, as exemplified by the *Salmonella* infection experiment (van Diemen et al. 2002), the difficulty lies in the determination of the effective set of innate and/or acquired immune traits to be used as selection markers that are critical in alleviating the severity of a particular disease.

**SELECTIVE BREEDING FOR DISEASE RESISTANCE**

Unlike muscle and fat traits, which are relatively straightforward to select in breeding programmes (Rothschild 2000; Gulbrandtsen et al. 2002), breeding for disease resistance is more challenging but, in recent years, there has been a noticeable rise in research into porcine disease resistance, conducted in both academia and industry.

**Phenotypic Markers**

There has been success in selecting pigs for enhanced immunity. Pigs were selected over eight generations for high and low responses in general IgG antibody production and in certain cell-mediated functions (Mallard et al. 1998). Following *Mycoplasma hyorhinis* infection, high responder pigs had reduced pulmonary damage but more severe arthritis, the latter probably due to accumulation of immune complexes. Although protection was incomplete, high responder pigs appeared better equipped than the low responders to deal with *M. hyorhinis*. Additionally, the high response pigs grew
more rapidly. As cited earlier, in S. choleraesuis infection, the innate immune parameters of neutrophil number and performance seemed able to predict relative resistance (van Diemen et al. 2002).

Genetic Markers

Postweaning Diarrhea: Resistance to Fimbriated F18 Escherichia coli. With few exceptions, susceptibility to infectious disease seldom follows a simple pattern of Mendelian inheritance. One such exceptional example of single-gene control of resistance is found in the condition of postweaning diarrhea associated with F18 E. coli.

The permissive expression of E. coli F18 receptor by the host on its gut lining leads to susceptibility to fimbriated F18 colonization and is controlled by a dominant allele (Meijerink et al. 1997). The gene responsible for F18 bacterial susceptibility has been recently identified as α(1,2)-fucosyltransferase (FUT1), which exhibits α(1,2)fucosylation of glycolipid and glycoprotein acceptors, and is involved in the formation of blood group antigen structures on cell membranes, structures that determine the adherence of F18 bacteria. The causal mutation within FUT1 has been narrowed to a point mutation at nucleotide position 307 where the residue guanine (M307G), corresponding to a codon for alanine, is replaced by the residue adenine (M307A), coding for threonine (Meijerink et al. 2000). There is a high correlation between the single-nucleotide polymorphism and F18 E. coli susceptibility, such that the dominant F18 susceptibility genotypes are homozygous M307GG and heterozygous M307GA, where at least one allele has the alanine codon, whereas the recessive F18 resistant genotype is homozygous M307AA, where both alleles house the threonine codon (Frydendahl et al. 2003). It should be mentioned that pigs with the resistant M307AA genotype are more, but not completely, resistant to F18 E. coli infection as other, as yet undetermined, factors are likely to be involved in the pathogenesis of the disease. Meanwhile, other fimbriated enterotoxigenic E. coli will continue to pose a threat for postweaning diarrhea syndrome.

Neonatal Diarrhea: Resistance to Fimbriated F4 E. coli. The E. coli fimbrial types that are responsible for neonatal diarrhea are F4 (K88), F5 (K99), F6 and F41, of which most is known about type F4. There are three F4 antigenic variants: F4ab, F4ac and F4ad (Python et al. 2002). Like fimbriated F18 in postweaning diarrhea, adherence of F4 E. coli to the small intestinal epithelium, leading to host susceptibility, is a dominant trait (5), inherited in a Mendelian manner. Only pigs with the homozygous recessive ss genotype are resistant to F4 bacteria challenge (Sellwood 1979). By linkage analysis, a candidate locus, designated F4bcR, has been identified that relates to F4ab and F4ac bacteria colonization (Python et al. 2002). The locus is located on chromo-

Salmonella Resistance: Nramp1. Nramp1 (Natural resistance-associated macrophage protein) is an integral membrane protein that resides in late endocytic vacuoles of macrophages where it removes divalent ions (Fe²⁺ and Mn²⁺) from the vacuolar compartment (Boyer et al. 2002; Dangl 2003; Kehres and Maguire 2003). An environment deficient in Mn²⁺ and Fe²⁺ is detrimental to bacterial growth, and hence an effective Nramp1 would render greater host resistance to intracellular pathogens, like Salmonella. Its function in resisting disease is evident in several animal species. Inbred mice susceptible to infections are associated with a single substitution of aspartic acid for glycine at position 169 of the protein (Vidal et al. 1993). Polymorphisms found in human and poultry Nramp1 are associated with susceptibility to tuberculosis and Salmonella enteritidis, respectively (Kramer et al. 2003; Abe et al. 2003). Porcine Nramp1 has been mapped to chromosome 15 (Sun et al. 1998) and cloned (Zhang et al. 2000). No association study between porcine Nramp1 polymorphism and Salmonella resistance has been reported. However, genetic variation in porcine resistance to Salmonella infection was recently demonstrated (van Diemen et al. 2002), and a causal relationship between Nramp1 and Salmonella resistance may well be found in the near future.

Swine Influenza: Porcine Mx Genes. Swine influenza, caused by influenza A virus, an orthomyxovirus, is a major cause of respiratory disease, and together with porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) significantly contribute to the problem of postweaning respiratory disease. Additionally, swine influenza has wider significance in the evolution of human and avian influenza viruses. Human and avian influenza are effectively species specific due to species differences in cell surface sialyloligosaccharides. The pig, however, is potentially susceptible to both human and avian influenza strains and could act as an intermediate host to the emergence of new viral strains with the potential to cause devastating epidemics, in the animal or human population (Wentworth et al. 1997). Measures that can reduce the incidence of swine influenza will promote pig welfare as well as carry substantial indirect benefits to human and avian health. One strategic approach to re-
Reducing swine influenza in pig herds is to identify and breed from animals that display enhanced resistance to the disease.

The best-documented innate antiviral protein that specifically inhibits influenza virus is encoded by the α/β interferon-inducible Mx gene family, whose GTPase protein products are localized either in the nucleus (e.g., murine MxI) or cytoplasm (e.g., human MxA). The specific antiviral activity of MxI protein is dependent on its GTPase activity (Melen and Julkunen 1994; Toyoda et al. 1992). Three porcine MxI proteins have been cloned (Müller et al. 1992; Horisberger 1992). The two porcine genes are arranged in tandem on chromosome 13 (own unpublished data). Early work on the in vitro induction of porcine Mx proteins correlated with inhibition of influenza virus and VSV (Horisberger 1992). Three porcine MxI polymorphisms, comprising a silent mutation and a deletion-frame shift mutation, have been identified from several pig breeds (Morozumi et al. 2001; Asano et al. 2002). It will be interesting to see if polymorphisms in MxI or Mx2 gene are related to differences in influenza susceptibility.

QUANTITATIVE TRAIT LOCI (QTL) AND MARKER-ASSISTED SELECTION

The genetic markers listed above are examples of QTL because they are genetic loci that contribute to variation in the analyzed quantitative (complex) trait of the chosen population. QTL can also be identified by whole genome scans as well as targeted searches on specific areas of the genome. The strength of this approach is that we do not need to make many assumptions about physiological mechanisms. The disadvantage is that preexisting knowledge is not taken into account in the study. Chromosomal regions harboring QTL can be detected by linkage or association analyses, but further work is usually necessary to identify the causative mutation and here knowledge of physiological mechanisms can be very useful (Segal and Hill 2003). A variety of QTL for disease resistance have been identified including resistance, as assessed by rectal temperature and neurological signs, to the neurological syndrome of Aujeszky’s disease (Reiner et al. 2002b). Although all infected pigs developed fever and nearly all Large White pigs showed neurological signs, none of the Meishans was neurologically affected. QTL for leucocyte counts, neutrophil phagocytosis, lymphocyte proliferation, IL-2 production, virus-induced IFN-α production, and antibody response to F4 E. coli vaccination (Edfors-Lilja et al. 2004) were found in 200 F2 wild pig-Swedish Yorkshire crosses.

In summary, in the struggle to minimize the effects of infectious diseases in pig production, there is increasing attention given to the genetic development of disease-resistant animals. The prospects of breeding pigs that are resistant to specific diseases are real and, given current research efforts, many more genetic markers for porcine diseases can be expected in the not too distant future.

REFERENCES


Preweaning mortality is a major cause of wastage in pig production. On the best farms with young herds as few as 7% of those born alive die before weaning. Throughout the world on commercial farms preweaning mortality rates generally fall between 10 and 20% (Table 62.1).

In the U.K. the Meat and Livestock Commission (2003) reported a preweaning mortality rate for liveborn piglets of 12.2% in indoor herds and 9.9% in outdoor herds. Some data (MLC 1986) suggested that as litter size born alive has increased, so too has preweaning mortality, but, in 2002 litter sizes in the MLC (2003) study were about 0.5 pigs higher than they were in 1986 and preweaning mortality rates remained steady.

Over half the preweaning deaths occur in the first 4 days of life, and most of these occur in the first 36 hours. The majority of sows successfully rear their litters, but aged sows, sows with large litters, litters with unevenly sized pigs, and sick sows have disproportionately high preweaning mortality (Friendship et al. 1986; Pettigrew et al. 1986; Spicer et al. 1986a, Holyoake et al. 1995).

Although some disease outbreaks have a profound impact on neonatal pig survival, the resolution of day-to-day preweaning mortality problems relates to the attitude, diligence, and skill of the farrowing-house staff in supervising farrowing, providing weak pigs with colostrum, and making sure the piglets are warm. Contributing factors also include the distribution of creep heat, farrowing-crate and farrowing-pen design, the thermal comfort of the sow, disease control, and sow nutrition. Some studies (Dyck and Swiestra 1987) conclude that an inadequate milk supply is the primary factor contributing to piglet deaths and may account for in excess of 85% of the losses.

**FACTORS AFFECTING PREWEANING MORTALITY**

**Birth weight**

Birth weight is the single largest predictor of survival in pigs (Stanton and Carroll 1974). It is directly correlated with the energy intake of the sow during pregnancy but there is a considerable variation in response and it is often quite small. Baker et al. (1969) and Libal and Wahlstrom (1977) found that weights of newborn pigs increased as sow gestation energy intake increased but leveled out at about 26.4 MJDE/day. Feeding levels that increase net sow body weight by about 30 kg during gestation will be sufficient to sustain acceptable birth weights.

As litter size increases from 11 to 16, birth weight decreases from 1.59 to 1.26 kg, or about 35 g for each piglet born. In these large litters the number of pigs weighing less than 1 kg increases from 7% to 23% of total born. Below 1 kg more than 11% of pigs are stillborn and thereafter more than 17% die in the first 24 hours, compared with 4% and 3%, respectively, in pigs weighing more than 1 kg at birth (Quiniou et al. 2002). Uterine blood flow per fetus and hence fetal nutrition decreases as litter size increases (Pere et al. 1997), so within-litter variation in birth weight is already established by 35 days of pregnancy (van der Lende et al. 1990). In litters of low average birth weight, it is the high variation in birth weight that contributes to reduced survival (Milligan et al. 2002).

Low birth weight pigs have an increased risk of dying from asphyxia during delivery (Herpin et al. 1996). This was directly responsible for the deaths of 5.5% of the liveborn pigs. Nonetheless it does not necessarily follow that pigs of low birth weight will always have higher mortality rates. For example stillbirths and preweaning mortality rates for Jan Xin and Large White breeds are similar, yet the Jan Xin average birth weight is only 50% that of the Large White (0.7 kg vs. 1.4 kg) (Le Dividich citing Bidanel personal communication 1999). Biensen et al. (1998) argued that the growth of Meishan fetuses between day 90 and term depends on a combination of increases in placental size and density of placental blood vessels, whereas Yorkshire fetuses relied exclusively on placental growth to increase the surface area for nutrient exchange between the sow and her litter.
Fetal weight gain is most rapid in the last 10 days of pregnancy. More than 50% of fetal energy reserves are deposited in the last month. Moser and Lewis (1981) concluded that supplemental fat in sow diets increased the fat content of milk and colostrum and decreased the preweaning mortality from 18% to 15.4%. Pettigrew (1981) indicated that it was necessary to feed 1 kg/day of fat to the sow in the last 10 days of gestation to demonstrate an effect on the piglets. Improvement in survival is unlikely if the average piglet birth weight is normal (i.e., 1.3–1.4 kg) and preweaning survival is more than 85%. Although the value of feeding fat in the last 10 days of gestation is equivocal, higher energy intakes for longer periods may be worthwhile. Cromwell et al. (1989) demonstrated that feeding an extra 1.36 kg/day of a maize or sorghum diet (14% protein) from day 90 of gestation resulted in greater sow weight gain to term, more piglets born alive, and, as a consequence, more pigs alive at 21 days. Pigs born to high-feeding-level sows were heavier both at birth and at 21 days of age.

Unlike most newborn mammals pigs do not possess brown adipose tissue so the maturity and hence capacity of skeletal muscle to shiver and preserve body temperature is critical. Indeed explanations for increasing neonatal survival are likely to be found in a higher degree of maturity or fetal development during late gestation (Leenhouwers et al. 2002). Heavier pigs at birth have a lower critical temperature (LCT) and can more readily mobilize their fat or glycogen reserves. Pettigrew et al. (1986) were unable to increase survival solely by feeding corn oil to baby pigs, indicating survival is due more to environmental factors than individual-pig nutrition.

**Farrowing Crate Design**

Where sows are closely confined, neonatal mortality from trauma has generally been reduced compared to sows farrowing in unconfined conditions. The farrowing crate is that portion of the pen that confines the sow. Jones et al. (2003) assessed seven different farrowing systems including nonrestraint systems. They found that the best and most consistent system was a crate with a fully slatted floor, with a preweaning mortality rate (PWMR) of 11.81%. A nonrestraint system with fully slatted floors and a hinged gate, which when opened allowed the sows to turn around five days postpartum, performed next best (PWMR 15.11%). Nonrestraint systems with straw performed worst (PWMR 20.22%). The research of Weber (1997) indicates that piglet production and survival can be as good in loose pens with straw bedding as in crates, provided genetic selection for careful behavior by sows has occurred and the environmental conditions of the farrowing room are correct.

**Spatial Arrangements**

Environmental factors influence neonatal mortality. In farrowing pens, two zones can be identified: a safe zone for the piglets, where they can rest free from the sow; and an interaction zone, where the sow and the piglets occupy a common space. The safe zone (creep area) must be attractive and large enough for suckling pigs of all ages, and the piglets must find it comfortable (and prefer it) for resting.

The space requirements of piglets are relative to the thermal environment. In cool conditions piglets huddle and use about 60% of the space they would in warm conditions. Under hot conditions, rectangular creep areas of about 1.3 m² will provide adequate space for about 10 pigs of 3 weeks of age (Baxter 1989).

The interaction zone is the most dangerous area in the farrowing pen. For the piglet, the greatest risk occurs when the sow changes posture (to stand, sit, lie down, or move about), especially during feeding, and when the pen is being cleaned (Svendsen et al. 1986). The danger is compounded because piglets prefer to lie against walls or close to the sow even when the temperatures in the pen are very high.

Danger increases if the sow acts suddenly; gentle, deliberate movements are readily tolerated provided there is enough space within the crate for the sow to change posture. However, movement is often restricted due to the length of the crate, in which case sows adapt their

---

**Table 62.1. Preweaning mortality rates from published studies**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Data Set</th>
<th>Number Weaned per Litter</th>
<th>Preweaning mortality Rate* (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Cleary et al. 2003</td>
<td>22,000 sows</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Friendship et al. 1986</td>
<td>30 farms</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>18.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>PigChamp¹</td>
<td>69 farms</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>Quéméré et al. 1993</td>
<td>53 farms</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>Anon. 1986</td>
<td>36,000 farms (national survey)</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>MLC 1986</td>
<td>270 farms</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MLC 2003</td>
<td>360 indoor herds</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>10.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PIC UK 1996</td>
<td>122 outdoor herds</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Cromwell et al. 1989</td>
<td>1080 litters</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>16.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>PigChamp¹</td>
<td>515 farms</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>Gonzalez et al. 1987</td>
<td>461 litters</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>12.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Rate of pigs born alive.

posture or movement but often at the risk of injury to themselves or their piglets (Baxter 1989).

Heating
Curtis (1970) demonstrated that although newborn piglets can mobilize carbohydrate energy reserves in response to cold stress, they utilize it poorly due to physiological immaturity. By 2 days of age the pig can mobilize and use efficiently both glycogen and lipids in response to cold. Thus, the 2-day-old pig has a much better response to cold stress. Protecting the newborn pig is the key priority.

Sows and piglets have different heat requirements. The newborn pig has a LCT of about 30–34°C, whereas the sow’s LCT is 15–19°C (Baxter 1989). When the deep body temperature is 39°C at the LCT (34°C), the piglet can generate heat through increased metabolism and conserve heat to a limited degree by piloerection and vasoconstriction. When the environmental temperature falls below 34°C, the single newborn pig is subjected to cold stress and must utilize glycogen and fat reserves to maintain body temperature. Coldness impairs the development of thermostability and induces hyperthermia. In farrowing rooms maintained at 17°C, as many as 72% of newborn pigs have rectal temperatures below 37°C. If deep body temperature is reduced by 2°C, piglet vigor is severely reduced. Sucking is less vigorous, and, hence, less colostrum is consumed. As a result, serum IgG levels are lower in piglets kept warm (Le Dividich and Noblet 1981; Kelley et al. 1982).

Due to their higher surface-area-to-mass ratio, light pigs experience a larger body temperature decrease soon after farrowing than do heavier pigs, further emphasizing the importance of warmth for neonates (Ahlmann et al. 1983). In the creep area, overhead heaters are better than heated pads for lightweight pigs because of the pigs’ higher surface area.

Electric or gas heaters are the most common methods of providing warmth for young pigs, but additional comfort factors are required to attract the neonate away from the sow toward the creep area. Large amounts of straw bedding have been the traditional method, but heated floors or heat pads, covered creeps, insulated or heated creep boxes, and carpet have replaced straw on many farms for convenience and safety. Good-quality, deep bedding (sawdust, shredded paper, wood shavings) raises the effective environmental temperature relative to concrete floors by 8°C and is attractive to piglets (Welch and Baxter 1986).

The Importance of Properly Applied Heat. Following birth the piglet has an instinctive desire to remain close to the udder for the first 24–48 hours of life. An extra heat source needs to be provided for this period (Morrison et al. 1983).

With creep areas on both sides of the sow, piglets spent less time lying in the danger zone and mortality was reduced from 19.3% to 6.9% in the first week of life. Svendsen et al. (1986) reduced mortality in the first week from 7.0% to 1.1% by providing a movable heat source. The addition of a third heat source behind the sow (100 W light bulb) did not further reduce piglet mortality (Ogunbameru et al. 1991). Xin et al. (1996) reported a 19% reduction in piglet mortality for 175 W (5.0%) compared with 250 W radiant heat lamps (6.2%). Piglets subjected to the 250 W heat lamp tended to avoid staying directly under the lamp, an indication of excessive heat. By contrast, piglets under the 175 W heat lamp spread more evenly. In addition, the 175 W heat lamps saved 21% on energy costs and had a 45% lower failure rate than the 250 W lamps. The lower wattage lamps may also benefit the sow, keeping her cooler, due to a narrower radiant beam spread. Where heat sources go unchecked or uncontrolled, very high temperatures have been recorded, as high as 60°C under some heat lamps (Prime et al. 1989).

The effectiveness of electrically heated floor mats (110 W) for piglets after the first day of lactation was compared with 250 W infrared heat lamps by Rousseau et al. (1994). Litters in the heat mat treatment were reported to have a lower level of piglet mortality (6.1% vs. 9.2%), however, 250 W heat lamps were supplied in both treatments: behind the sow during farrowing, then beside the udder for the first day of lactation.

Morrison et al. (1983) also demonstrated the effect of farrowing-house temperature on survival. As farrowing-house temperature was increased from 13.6°C to 20.5°C, liveweight gain to 7 days increased (135 g/day vs. 169 g/day) and 7-day mortality fell (15.1% vs. 10.7%). Ziron and Hoy (2003) tested the effect of a warm flexible piglet nest heating system. Piglets reared in this system weighed 7.72 kg, 0.46 kg heavier at 28 days of age than piglets reared in concrete floored pens with gas heating systems. Pigs reared in the warm nest also had fewer skin lesions than the pigs in the other systems.

Interaction of People and Pigs
Prime et al. (1989) demonstrated how training staff had a positive effect on pigs weaned and how it reduced neonatal mortality. Spicer et al. (1987) described how the successful operation of a crib care system for neonates depended heavily on the diligence of the individual operator. Two operators supervised the care of 600 farrowing sows and their progeny over a 4-week period. Operator A obtained 6.1% mortality (range, 5.5–7.0%) in the first week of life, whereas operator B achieved a piglet mortality of 1.3% (range, 0.95–1.65%) over the same period. Hemsworth et al. (1999) found some moderate correlations between the withdrawal response (as an indicator of fear of humans) of lactating sows at days 16–18 of lactation to an experimenter and stillbirth rate. Sows that were apparently more fearful of humans were more likely to have a higher stillbirth rate. This behavioral variable accounted for about 18% of the variance in stillbirth rate at the farm.

Ravel et al. (1996b) examined personality profiles on independent and integrated farms in Canada. On both
types of farm stock people were more reserved, emotionally stable, serious, conscientious, unsentimental, controlled, introverted, and less anxious than the average person in the general population. High levels of self-discipline in the stockperson were associated with high preweaning performance on both integrated and independent farms, whereas poor preweaning performance was associated with exaggerated self-assuredness and boldness (Ravel et al. 1996a).

**Tooth Clipping**

Sibling fights occur during establishment of the teat order in the first few days and subsequently as piglets defend their teat-order position against littermates (Fraser 1975; Hartsock et al. 1977). Injury may be inflicted to the faces of littermates or the sow's udder and although the occurrence of the latter is generally reported as low to negligible (Robert et al. 1995; Weary and Fraser 1999), serious udder and teat damage occasionally occurs (Wilkinson and Blackshaw 1987). In addition, clipping per se can result in injury to gums or infection (Weary and Fraser 1999; Hay et al. 2004).

Piglets are born with eight very sharp, fully erupted “needle teeth” (the deciduous canines and the corner incisors) (Weary and Fraser 1999). To avoid potential problems, on many farms all eight needle teeth are routinely clipped for all piglets during the first 1–2 days after birth (Robertson and Arey 1998). The literature is equivocal as to whether clipping is associated with exaggerated self-assuredness and boldness (Robertson and Arey 1998). The tooth consists of a crown (encased in enamel) and a root, with the gum forming a living seal between the crown of the tooth and the root. During tooth clipping, the crown is fractured close to the gum leaving a cross-section of tooth which contains exposed regions of dentine and pulp. Pulp is connective tissue containing numerous nerves. It is therefore sensitive and a potential route of infection to reach the tooth socket and enter the bloodstream. In addition, when force is applied to the tooth during the clipping process, there is potential for significant movement in the area where the gum meets the tooth. Poorly performed teeth clipping can result in serrated or splintered teeth and gum damage, which could greatly increase the risk of infection and contribute to morbidity and mortality (Robertson and Arey 1998). The literature is equivocal that tooth clipping is associated with increased incidence of arthritis and mortality (Hay et al. 2004). Nevertheless, care and hygiene are critical factors during the tooth clipping process.

Concern over the potential adverse impacts of tooth clipping on piglet health and welfare has led to questioning of routine tooth clipping and stimulated investigation of alternatives such as selective clipping, partial clipping, and tooth grinding.

Partial clipping was examined by Weary and Fraser (1999). Three clipping treatments were compared: intact, clipped to the gum line, or partial, in which about one-third of the visible tooth was removed. All piglets of a litter received one treatment on one side of the mouth and a different treatment on the other side, with the three treatments balanced over the two sides in different litters. Facial lesions were negligible on the side facing either partially clipped or fully clipped teeth, while lesions on the side facing intact teeth were greater. In the first week after birth, piglets with fully clipped teeth gained the least, those with partially clipped teeth were intermediate and those with intact teeth gained most. There was no effect of treatment however, on later weight gain or the number of piglet deaths.

**Fostering**

English and Smith (1975) reported that a major factor affecting preweaning mortality was the degree of variation in birth weight. They argued that piglets of average birth weight were not competitive when mixed with larger piglets. Marcatti Neto (1986) found that piglets with a birth weight of 800 g had a preweaning mortality of 62.5% if left on their dam, compared with 15.4% if fostered into groups with equivalent birth weights. Piglets fostered according to weight also grew faster and had half the mortality of piglets fostered without regard to weight.

Straw (1997) cautions against fostering and questions its value, particularly for older piglets. She argues that fostered pigs grow less rapidly than pigs that remain with their dams. Straw's data indicated that although litter weight variation was reduced by fostering, it came at the expense of individual pig performance. Price et al. (1994) reported that 6 hours after being moved to their new dam, fewer than half the pigs fostered after 2 days of age had suckled. Robert and Martineau (1997) reported increased levels of fighting in fostered litters and an increase in lacerations in fostered piglets, in sow aggressiveness, and in nonproductive milk letdowns. Horrell and Bennett (1981) found that piglets fostered at 7 days had reduced weight gains. McCaw and Desrosiers (1997) demonstrated the success of fostering systems if the pigs were fostered only on the first day, only available teat space was filled, pigs were not moved between different rooms, severely sick piglets were euthanized, and no pigs that were doing poorly were moved back to younger age groups. Their program was targeted at porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) control, but the recommendations apply equally to herds where PRRS is not present. In contrast Kirkwood et al. (1998), in a study of 120 sows, found no advantage in creating litters of uniform bodyweight. They found that mortality rates were always highest in the smallest pigs regardless of uniformity. Nonfostered pigs always had better survival and the light pigs always had higher mortality rates (20%) than heavy pigs (8.7%).

If fostering is to be applied, it must be done on the first day of life. Creating teat space by weaning a good litter early and then filling the teat space with pigs of the same size will alleviate the concerns of those cautious...
about fostering and those wanting to safeguard small pigs. Fostering piglets after teat order has been established, after a day of age, or from older litters to younger litters is contraindicated.

**Hygiene**

Good shed hygiene is important in reducing preweaning mortality. It may spell the difference between a microbial challenge that the piglet can cope with and an overwhelming infection. Thorough cleaning and disinfecting of empty sow crates help to reduce environmental microbial burdens and more specifically to reduce pathogens that may be exclusive to newborn piglets. Svendsen et al. (1975) demonstrated that both morbidity and mortality associated with gastrointestinal disease were higher in herds with poor hygiene standards. The prevalence of diarrhea fell from 28 to 5% during the year an organized hygiene program was developed. Ravel et al. (1996a) showed that high preweaning performance was associated with routine washing of farrowing crates between litters. Sanitation programs based on thorough cleaning followed by application of disinfectants effective in the presence of organic matter are preferred.

Field data on litters of unvaccinated gilts indicate that piglets born early in the week take 3–4 days before commencing to scour, whereas piglets born later in the week, when the environmental microbiological load is heavy, may show profuse diarrhea within 24 hours of birth (V. A. Fahy 1997, unpublished data). Studies on coccidiosis in pigs reveal that as hygiene measures lessen in intensity, coccidiosis emerges in herds where it had earlier been controlled, indicating that the severity of the disease reflects the intensity of the challenge dose (Stuart and Lindsay 1985).

**SOW FACTORS AFFECTING PREWEANING MORTALITY**

**Prefarrowing Behavior**

Studies investigating the effects of manipulating the environment of the young sow have suggested that, apart from affecting prefarrowing behavior, the environment may also affect the course of parturition, postfarrowing behavior of the sow, and piglet survival (Cronin and Smith 1992; Cronin et al. 1993, 1994, 1998; Thodberg et al. 1999, 2002a, b).

Cronin et al. (1993), McGlone et al. (1996), and Thodberg et al. (2002a) demonstrated that by stimulating nesting behavior in young sows, the sows appeared calmer before parturition, had shorter intrabirth intervals or fewer stillborns. Further, Cronin et al. (1998), who investigated sow behavior and piglet survival in loose farrowing pens, reported that small, narrow farrowing pens appeared to interfere with the sows’ prefarrowing nesting behavior, with a consequent increase in sow restlessness during and after farrowing and a reduction in piglet survival.

**Litter Size**

Litter size increases with parity. Although preweaning mortality increases in numerical terms, more pigs are weaned from the larger litters, including those of older sows, until a plateau is reached between four and six litters. As litter size increases, the number of deaths during parturition increases, birth weight decreases, and the number of small pigs per litter increases (Table 62.2) (Spicer et al. 1986a; Dyck and Swiestra 1987).

**Sow Health**

Spicer et al. (1986a) indicated that 15% of overlain pigs that died were associated with sow illness. An assessment of sow health using the checklist below is an important part of farrowing-house management.

1. Assess water availability. Sows require up to 40 L/day during hot summer days (R. H. King 1997, personal communication). To consume this amount, they need a drinker flow rate of 1.5–2.0 L/minute.
2. Assess feed intake. The target is an average of 6–7 kg/day (80 MJDE/day) between farrowing and weaning.
3. Observe fecal consistency, urine (color and pus), vulval discharge, vomiting, skin pallor, skin wounds, udder condition, abdominal bloat, and lameness.

### Table 62.2. Effects of litter size on stillbirth and birth weight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Litter Size</th>
<th>Number of Litters</th>
<th>Total Born</th>
<th>Preparturient Deaths</th>
<th>Parturient Deaths</th>
<th>Number Weaned</th>
<th>Birth Weight (kg)</th>
<th>Piglets/Litter &lt;0.8 kg</th>
<th>% Litters with Pigs &lt;0.8 kg</th>
<th>Length of Parturition (minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2, 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2.7 ± 0.3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.4 ± 0.3</td>
<td>1.60 ± 0.22</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>53 ± 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, 5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4.4 ± 0.1</td>
<td>0.07 ± 0.2</td>
<td>0.27 ± 0.6</td>
<td>3.9 ± 0.2</td>
<td>1.56 ± 0.05</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>44 ± 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, 7</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>6.7 ± 0.1</td>
<td>0.08 ± 0.3</td>
<td>0.16 ± 0.5</td>
<td>6.1 ± 0.1</td>
<td>1.51 ± 0.04</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>117 ± 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8, 9</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>8.6 ± 0.1</td>
<td>0.27 ± 0.6</td>
<td>0.31 ± 0.9</td>
<td>7.2 ± 0.2</td>
<td>1.44 ± 0.03</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>17.8</td>
<td>79 ± 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10, 11</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>10.6 ± 0.1</td>
<td>0.41 ± 0.9</td>
<td>0.48 ± 0.6</td>
<td>8.8 ± 0.1</td>
<td>1.35 ± 0.02</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>154 ± 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12, 13</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>12.4 ± 0.1</td>
<td>0.14 ± 0.4</td>
<td>1.02 ± 1.5</td>
<td>9.7 ± 0.2</td>
<td>1.33 ± 0.02</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>45.1</td>
<td>207 ± 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14, 15</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>14.3 ± 0.1</td>
<td>0.46 ± 0.7</td>
<td>1.08 ± 1.1</td>
<td>11.0 ± 0.3</td>
<td>1.29 ± 0.04</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>66.7</td>
<td>158 ± 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16, 17</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>16.3 ± 0.1</td>
<td>1.50 ± 1.1</td>
<td>0.66 ± 0.8</td>
<td>11.8 ± 0.7</td>
<td>1.26 ± 0.06</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>66.7</td>
<td>131 ± 35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Spicer et al. 1986a.
4. The normal rectal temperature is 39°C ± 0.5°C, but it may exceed 40°C during hot weather.
5. The normal resting respiration rate is 12–30 breaths per minute. Observers should allow for an increase during hot weather.
6. Consider past history, including genetic susceptibility to stress.

Stillbirths
Stillborn pigs represent about one-quarter of all deaths between parturition and weaning. The percentage of pigs born dead varies from 4% to 10%; veterinary intervention is suggested when stillbirths exceed 8%. Approximately 70% of pigs classified stillborn are alive at birth. Although the heart is beating, the piglets are severely anoxic and die within minutes of birth. The anoxia can be related to compression or premature rupture of the umbilical cord during farrowing (Randall 1978). In general, stillborn pigs weigh less than normal pigs and are born after a longer interpig interval (Spicer et al. 1986a) (Table 62.3); however, up to 9% of stillborn pigs may be heavier than average (Evangelista et al. 1996).

Pigs are relatively neurologically mature at birth; hence, a period of anoxia can be serious. As the duration of farrowing increases beyond 4–5 hours, or after 80% of the pigs have been born, the number of stillbirths increases. Most stillbirths occur among the last three pigs born. Svendsen and Andreasson (1980) found that sows kept in stalls during gestation had higher stillbirth rates than sows kept in pens, the difference due to the longer farrowing time in stalls. In fact, the duration of farrowing has a greater impact on stillbirths than parity. Long farrowing times also reduce neonatal survival.

Cutler and Prime (1988) found that about 60% of sows farrowed litters without stillborn pigs; a small percentage of the sows farrowed most of the stillborn pigs. Sows farrowing two or more stillborn pigs per litter delivered 70% of the total number of stillborn pigs, whereas these sows composed only 17.5% of the farrowings. Bilkei-Papp and Papp (1994) found an increase in stillbirths in fat sows in addition to a greater mortality during the first 3 days postpartum.

Parity. As sows age, the duration of parturition increases, and, consequently, the percentage of stillborn pigs farrowed increases. An exception occurs for parity 1 sows, which have a higher percentage of stillbirths than might be expected if the relationship between parity and stillbirths was linear. Parity 1 sows and aged sows (parity 7–10) have the greatest risk of farrowing multiple stillbirths.

Previous History of Stillbirth. It is unusual for a sow to repeatedly farrow stillborn pigs. However, sows that had multiple stillbirths at the previous farrowing have an increased chance of farrowing multiple stillbirths at the next.

Season. The percentage of stillbirths is higher for sows farrowing during summer (7.3%) than winter (6.4%), although the number of affected sows remains the same.

Strategies available to farrowing-house staff to reduce stillbirths include cooling sows in summer, inducing parturition in old sows, and providing close supervision of high-risk sows, including manual assistance after the seventh pig has been delivered and interpig intervals exceed 30 minutes. Attempting to influence stillbirth rates by chemotherapy is generally unrewarding.

Induction of Parturition
Effective supervision of farrowing can reduce stillbirths and preweaning mortality on farms (Holyoake et al. 1995). Several techniques exist for manipulating the timing and duration of parturition. Although parturition can be induced 3 days on either side of the average gestation length for the herd, piglet survival and vigor are highest when farrowing is induced on the due date for the sow. Farrowing sows earlier than day 112 or after day 118 generally results in increased numbers of stillbirths.

Early farrowings can be prevented by daily injections of progesterone (100 mg) from day 112 to 114 or the use of altrenogest (Regumate) at a dose rate of 20 mg from day 110 (Guthrie et al. 1987). Farrowing is most commonly initiated with an intramuscular injection of natural prostaglandin F2α (PGF2α) or a synthetic analog...
Sows farrow 2–44 hours following injection of PGF$_{2\alpha}$, with a mean time of 22–26 hours. This technique has proved valuable where all-in/all-out systems are practiced to ensure that all farrowings occur within a week.

Several authors have used PGF$_{2\alpha}$ injection followed by 20–30 IU oxytocin 18–24 hours later in an attempt to more closely control the time of parturition (Welp et al. 1984; Wilson 1984). This amount of oxytocin can induce uterine spasms in some sows, which increases the number of stillbirths and the number of manual interventions required (Welp et al. 1984). Holtz and Welp (1984) achieved reliable induction of parturition by combining 5 IU oxytocin with 1.5 mg of carazolol, a beta-blocker that effectively blocks adrenaline receptors in the uterus and allows a lower level of oxytocin to initiate parturition. Carazolol shortens farrowing time and can reduce stillbirths, especially in older sows (Bostedt and Rudloff 1983).

Despite attempts to control the time of parturition with PGF$_{2\alpha}$, many sows still farrow overnight, making supervision difficult. To overcome this, Zerobin and Kundig (1980) injected 150 µg of clenbuterol during labor but before the birth of the first piglet and delayed parturition for up to 15 hours. Zerobin (1980) showed that clenbuterol-induced uterine relaxation could be overridden with higher doses of oxytocin (20–40 IU) without uterine spasms. The following schedule using PGF$_{2\alpha}$ to initiate parturition followed by clenbuterol and carazolol/oxytocin has been successful for farrowings needing special supervision: 9:00 a.m., the sows are dosed with 10 mg PGF$_{2\alpha}$; sows not farrowed by 4:00 p.m. are injected with 150 µg clenbuterol to reduce the chance of overnight farrowing; parturition is reinitiated the following morning using 10 IU oxytocin plus 1.5 mg carazolol (Spicer et al. 1986b).

The success of these regimes in improving piglet survival relies heavily on the quality and assistance of the staff during and soon after farrowing. Some caution with oxytocin administration is indicated. Mota-Rojas et al. (2002) found that although oxytocin-treated sows had a significant decrease in farrowing time and expulsion intervals, they also had significantly more stillbirths than the controls.

**CAUSES OF PREWEANING MORTALITY ON INTENSIVE PIG FARMS**

Several papers have documented the causes of piglet mortality (Nielsen et al. 1974; English and Smith 1975; Glastonbury 1976). These studies have been based mainly on the autopsy of dead piglets. English and Smith (1975), Spicer et al. (1986a), and Dyck and Swiestra (1987) supplemented autopsy findings with case histories or piglet weights so factors predisposing to illness and death could be documented. The causes of preweaning mortality (Table 62.4) are discussed in the light of the authors’ experience, from veterinary diagnostic laboratory submissions, and from the documentation of other investigators.

**Enteritis**

Enteritis is the most common infectious cause of mortality in suckling pigs. Whereas Glastonbury (1977) found that 5% of all deaths were due to enteritis, the Veterinary Investigation Service (Anonymous 1959), Svendsen et al. (1975), and Spicer et al. (1986a) put the figure at 15%. All these data were recorded before the advent of vaccines to control neonatal colibacillosis and effective coccidial chemotherapy. The causative agents of enteritis in suckling pigs are transmissible gastroenteritis virus, porcine adenovirus, porcine epidemic diarrhea virus (coronavirus), rotavirus, calicivirus, Aujeszky’s disease virus, enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli*, *Clostridium perfringens* types A and C, *Salmonella* spp., *Candida* spp., coccidia, and *Strongyloides ransomi*. The

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 62.4. Causes of preweaning mortality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cause of Death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparturient deaths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parturient deaths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overlay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small, weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splayleg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Savaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noninfectious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nil diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total deaths</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Spicer et al. 1986a.

$^a$Mean ± SE.

$^b$Significantly (P <0.05) less than the average birth weight of all piglets that survived to weaning (1.39 ± 0.01 kg).
Risk Factors. The following factors associated with an increasing risk of enteritis are drawn from Svendsen et al. (1975).

1. Parity. Diarrhea was more prevalent in gilt litters, suggesting a lack of specific antibodies.

2. Litter size. The incidence of diarrhea increased with litter size, suggesting lack of access to protective milk antibodies. Similarly, there was an increase in enteritis in litters where the sow was ill or dysgalactic.

3. Season. There was a higher incidence in winter, probably due to the effect of cold stress, particularly on small piglets.

4. Hygiene. A significantly higher level of mortality was associated with low levels of hygiene.

5. Age. More than 60% of deaths occurred during the first week of life, with 10.5% occurring in the second week and 1.3% each week thereafter until weaning. The mortality is inversely proportional to age at onset and directly proportional to the duration of diarrhea (Table 62.5). Deaths from enteritis occurring during the first 5 days of life are usually due to colibacillosis. Deaths associated with enteritis from day 5 to weaning are more likely associated with coccidial infection (Driesen et al. 1993) and enterotoxigenic E. coli (F4) (Fahy et al. 2003).

6. Intercurrent disease. Fifty-three percent of animals that died with enteritis had intercurrent disease or disabilities, such as polyarthritis, respiratory disease, were small or starved pigs, or had been overlain.

Prevention. Immunity to enteric infections is acquired primarily from passive antibodies, which bathe the intestine and prevent attachment and multiplication of pathogens. Piglets must receive adequate antibodies from colostrum and milk. Parenteral vaccination of the dam is effective against neonatal colibacillosis and clostridial infections occurring in the first 5 days of life. Enteric infections occurring after the first week of life are not well controlled by parenteral vaccination as the IgG levels of colostrum have plummeted to about 10% of their original levels by day 7. Oral vaccination of the dam is the most effective way to stimulate lactogenic IgA antibodies, which will protect the pig for the duration of lactation. In this regard oral vaccination of breeders at around 11 weeks of gestation with F4 hemolytic E. coli has proven highly effective at preventing diarrhea and death in suckling pigs (Fahy et al. 2003). Supplementary feeding of fostered and small pigs with colostrum will prevent them from scouring and contaminating the environment. In addition to adequate immunity, both warmth and hygiene play pivotal roles in the prophylaxis of neonatal diarrhea. With the advent of vaccination to control fimbriated enterotoxigenic E. coli, it is highly unusual to find these strains as a cause of neonatal scour, or indeed to isolate any common enteric pathogens of suckling pigs. The only thing in common with farms that have this problem is inadequate creep heating for newborn pigs. Invariably when this is corrected the problem disappears.

Treatment. Piglets with diarrhea die when they lose approximately 10% of their total body fluid. In addition to specific antimicrobial therapy, piglets should be rehydrated. Although parenteral rehydration can be given by subcutaneous or intraperitoneal injection, oral rehydration via a stomach tube is the preferred method. The volume to be given daily is 10% of total body water, which is 75% of body weight. A 1 kg pig requires 75 ml/day. Piglets will drink water within a few hours from birth, so the provision of electrolytes in troughs is warranted. These troughs should be wall mounted to prevent them becoming contaminated with feces.

Overlay/Trauma
Overlay, the most common noninfectious cause of death for suckling pigs, accounts for the death of up to 20% of all pigs born alive. Most deaths occur within 4 days of birth (see Table 62.4).

Table 62.5. The association between age at onset and duration of diarrhea and preweaning mortality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Piglets</th>
<th>Number of Deaths</th>
<th>Number of % Deaths</th>
<th>Duration of diarrhea (days)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No diarrhea&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1648</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12.2&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16.1&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age at onset of diarrhea (days)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–4</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>22.8&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–7</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8–11</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Includes deaths from all causes.
<sup>b</sup>Excludes piglets that died before 2 days of age.
<sup>c</sup>Significantly (P <0.05) different from no diarrhea.
result in the crushing of healthy, viable piglets. Factors that cause sows to be restless increase the chance of overlay: inadequate water supply, sore teats, too many piglets for the number of active teats, and fear of humans. Highly fearful sows are likely to be restless in the presence of stockpersons.

An increased incidence of postural changes (i.e., from standing to lying and vice versa) and increased time spent standing led, in one set of observations, to a higher incidence of overlays for those sows farrowing during, compared with after or before, the stockpersons’ work time (G. M. Cronin 1997, unpublished data). This increased overlay rate may be the direct result of the two feeding sessions that occurred during the stockpersons’ work time. Olsson and Svendsen (1989) found that 80% of overlay incidents occurred when the sow was standing or changing posture and that almost 30% of these incidents occurred around feeding times. Since the stockperson may be present during feeding, it is not possible to separate the possible effects of feeding per se from the presence of the stockperson in these studies. Vieville et al. (2003) found that in outdoor herds, crushing occurred in the evening or at night in the first 12 hours after farrowing.

Spicer et al. (1986a) reported that 44% of deaths due to overlay were secondary to illness in the sow or piglet. Sow illness was associated with overlay in 15% of cases. The illnesses included mastitis, agalactia, purulent vulval discharge, rectal prolapse, and inappetence.

Piglet illness or defect was associated with 26% of overlays. These included enteritis, anemia, splayleg, weakness, and pneumonia. Inadequate creep heating is a common risk factor for overlays. Creep heaters that are too hot or too cold result in piglets lying next to the sow, with consequent risks. It is a common mistake for farrowing house staff to try to make up for inadequate creep heating by raising the temperature of the farrowing house. This may exacerbate the problem by making the sow uncomfortable and hence more restless; it will certainly decrease the lactating sows’ feed intake (Muirhead and Alexander 1997).

**Necropsy Findings.** Overlain pigs display gross deformity and marked bruising. The pigs are flat sided, with the tongue protruding. Death is caused by suffocation or internal hemorrhage. In the former case there is often extensive bruising and edema of the subcutaneous tissue and muscles, particularly of the head and neck. The lungs are usually edematous and petechial hemorrhages may be present in the upper respiratory tract. In those animals that die of internal hemorrhage, the former lesions may be present in addition to the thoracic or abdominal cavities containing extravasated blood. Skull fractures may be evident.

**Prevention.** Sows should be monitored closely for the first 48–72 hours after farrowing for signs of illness or restlessness, evidence of mastitis, udder edema, and vulval discharge. Check to determine whether the sow is eating and is passing feces. If there is inappetence, make sure that the water supply is adequate and not overly hot, as can happen when plumbing is exposed to direct sunlight. Conversely, frozen pipes will prevent delivery of water.

Since a disproportionate number of traumatic injuries occur during feeding, particular diligence should be applied at these times. Where splayleg pigs are fostered, the foster mother should be a gilt, for they seem more attentive to the shrieking sounds of an overlain piglet, are more agile, and will stand up to release it. Walker et al. (1996) identified certain combinations of farrowing-crate design and floor type that were associated with higher incidences of piglet overlay. Producers should therefore consider avoiding the following combinations to prevent overlay: either free stall or finger-bar crate with tri-bar metal floor, and bow-bar crate with either polygrate plastic or rubber-coated expanded metal.

**Very Small Pigs**

The newborn pig is very susceptible to cold stress and hypoglycemia. Coldness impairs the development of thermostability and induces hypothermia. Glycogen and fat reserves are used as major energy substrates for heat production within the first 24 hours of life (Close 1992). Piglets have no brown fat for thermogenesis (Le Dividich and Noblet 1983). They rely first on an increased metabolic rate and then shivering to maintain warmth (Mellor and Cockburn 1986). In the shivering process muscles initially use glycogen stores. Once these are depleted, they use blood glucose, which in turn is replenished from liver glycogen. However, the liver contains a limited supply of glycogen. In addition, glycogenolysis and glycolysis are poorly developed and cannot keep pace with the demand. To avoid hypoglycemia and hypothermia, the piglet needs an exogenous source of energy. They obtain this from colostrum, which provides lactose and fat. Both play a major role in the supply of energy and in glucose homeostasis in the neonatal pig (Le Dividich et al. 1994). Colostrum supplies 60% of the energy required for heat production.

Piglets feed about 15 times in the first 12 hours of life. They take in 15 ml per feeding (Werhahn et al. 1981) and consume about 7 g of lactose, 16 g of fat, and 19 g of immunoglobulin during this time. Not only does colostrum provide lactose but it also has an enhancing effect on the hormonal and metabolic mechanisms controlling blood glucose levels. A fasting newborn piglet can resist hypoglycemia for 18 hours under favorable conditions (28–32°C). However, this is reduced to 12 hours if the temperature is low (18–26°C) (Mellor and Cockburn 1986). Cold stress of the neonate reduces its acquisition of colostral immunoglobulins and results in increased mortality (Blecha and Kelley 1981). Additionally, a delay
in the intake of colostrum after birth will affect the absorption of immunoglobulins: A 4-hour delay in access to colostrum results in 15% of piglets having very low levels of serum immunoglobulin (Coalson and Lecce 1973). Low serum immunoglobulin is associated with higher mortality (Werhahn et al. 1981).

It is against this background that the fate of small pigs weighing less than 800 g is considered. There are two problems: There is a tendency for them to be born weak, and they cannot compete with larger littersmates. In the study of Spicer et al. (1986a) pigs less than 800 g had a higher stillbirth rate (25% vs. total stillborn rate of 8.3%), and 62% of those born alive perished, compared with the average of 11.3%. These pigs were assessed as being unable to survive under standard husbandry conditions because they were too weak or small. There was a relationship between birth weight and vitality as determined by the time taken to achieve an adequate first suck (see Table 62.3). The number of small piglets increased markedly in litters with more than 11 piglets; 67% of the litters with more than 13 piglets had some pigs weighing less than 800 g (see Table 62.2). This may reflect a degree of fetal growth retardation due to a small placenta for some of the piglets (Mellor and Cockburn 1986).

The number of mammary glands per pig varies between 8 and 18, with an average of 12. However, 95% of sows have between 10 and 14 glands (Schmidt 1971). The small pig born in a large litter will be the one most likely to miss out. Even if there are enough teats, in older, higher-parity sows with large udders, the top row of teats tends to point upward when the sow is lying down. The small piglet is often unable to reach such teats and will starve to death in the midst of plenty. Because the little pig may be hungry, it is continually at the teat and therefore at a significantly greater risk of being overlain.

**Necropsy Findings.** Spicer et al. (1986a) found the average age of these small weak pigs at death was 2.3 days; those pigs that survived to that time appeared emaciated and dehydrated. At autopsy there was little, if any, food in the stomach. Glastonbury (1977) found that 17% of 538 dead suckling pigs had empty alimentary tracts. Bille et al. (1974) described a characteristic red-brown color of the striated muscle, which they considered almost pathognomonic for pigs dying of starvation. Often in pigs less than 24 hours of age there are no gross abnormalities, but the size of the pig and absence of food in the stomach prompt a diagnosis of hypoglycemia or hypothermia. Nielsen et al. (1975) reported that 65% of cases of death from septicemia were secondary to low birth weight and starvation and presumably low levels of serum antibody.

**Prevention and Treatment.** There is much controversy about whether small pigs that are not in excess of functional teats should be fostered. However, where the small pig is in a litter with insufficient functional teats available, it needs to be transferred to a foster sow which has farrowed on the same day and which has an entire litter made up of small pigs. The foster dam also should have a teat line that is accessible to small piglets, hence gilts are favored as foster dams. If a piglet is splaylegged as well as small, a special crate or crib may be required where extra heating is provided. The crib is essentially a temperature-controlled box (30–32°C) where ill or disadvantaged piglets are kept for a limited period of time (usually less than 24 hours) to prevent them from being overlain or dying from hypoglycemia or hypothermia. While they are in the crib, piglets are fed colostrum milked from a sow during farrowing or a commercially available powdered colostrum. Svendsen et al. (1990) found that underweight pigs, both those apparently normal and weak ones, had a greater capacity for absorption of macromolecules, including colostral antibodies, than did apparently normal pigs over 1 kg. The piglets are fed 20 ml of colostrum every 1.5–2 hours using a standard human baby bottle and teat during the period staff are available. Le Dividich et al. (1994) suggested a colostral intake of 12 ml/kg/hour during the first day of life. An electrolyte and a colostrum solution is provided for the piglet to drink overnight. If they do not have a swallowing reflex (or will not drink), they can be fed using a human infant nasogastric tube (French Gauge 8, 40 cm in length). Colostrum can be obtained from the sow by injecting 1–2 ml of oxytocin intramuscularly after one or two pigs have been born; after a few minutes, colostrum can be milked into a wide-necked container and stored at 4°C or frozen until needed.

Piglets selected to be placed in the crib—for example, the small, weak, or splayleg pigs—are those with a high risk of perishing if left in the farrowing pen. Piglets that have survived overlay also respond well to a period in the crib. The rule is, “if in doubt, do not hesitate, place them in the crib.” Piglets suffering from hypothermia should be warmed in a bucket of warm water (43°C) for 5–10 minutes, dried, given 20 ml of colostrum via a stomach tube, and placed in the crib.

After receiving nourishment and warmth for 24–48 hours, most piglets can be fostered back to a sow selected for having small nipples and a low teat line to ensure they can readily gain access to milk. Using these approaches small, weak piglet mortality can be reduced to 10–20%, compared with 40–60% under normal husbandry practices.

**Neonatal Hemorrhagic Anemia**
Spicer et al. (1986a) reported that of 2224 live-born piglets from 238 litters, 4.8% were born anemic (as determined clinically by skin pallor) or became anemic shortly after birth as a result of navel cord bleeding. The preweaning mortality of anemic piglets was 35%, compared with 10% for the remainder of the population.
Anemia was the primary cause of death in 75% of cases and was a major predisposing factor in the death of the remainder. In subsequent studies, using packed-cell volume (PCV) as an indicator, it was found that 6.8% of piglets were anemic (PCV <20%), and 30% of litters had at least one anemic piglet. Statistical analysis indicated that there was a familial effect (Connaughton et al. 1986; Spicer et al. 1986a). Factors contributing to piglet anemia include deficiency of vitamins K or C; toxicity due to mycotoxins, pentachlorophenol, and warfarin; isoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura and isoimmune hemolytic anemia; erythrophagocytosis; and anemia in the sow. Muirhead and Alexander (1997) report that periparturient anoxia will result in excessive retention of blood in the placenta at birth. Martelli et al. (1989) reported that the propensity to bleed is due to a hypofibrinogenemia. Penny (1980) cited data showing that some pale pigs have below-normal levels of platelets. These effects may follow blood loss and the consequent platelet dilution, which accompanies movement of extracellular fluid into the vascular compartment.

Necropsy Findings. Often the umbilical cord is large and fleshy. The skin, muscles, mucous membranes, and internal organs are pale. There is no evidence of internal bleeding, which allows differentiation from pale over-lain pigs. PCVs as low as 5% have been recorded.

Treatment. Piglets at risk of bleeding can be identified by their large fleshy umbilical cords; there is also excessive blood on the floor of the farrowing pen. The umbilical cord should be ligated as soon as possible in these pigs. Because they appear to bleed for longer than normal pigs, tail docking and ear notching should be left until 10–14 days of age. Iron is best given orally or in drinking water because excessive bleeding from the injection site follows intramuscular injection. Physical stress of handling should be avoided, for this may greatly increase the tissue demand for oxygen and acute cardiac failure may ensue.

Splayleg
Piglets with splayleg assume a posture in which the hindlimbs or all four legs are laterally extended (Ward 1978). Splayleg is usually evident within 2–4 hours of birth, and the problem has resolved in piglets that survive to 5 days of age. One or several pigs in a litter are usually affected but on occasions the whole litter may be affected. According to van der Heyde et al. (1989), splayleg occurred more often in large than in small litters, with a remarkable breakpoint at eight piglets, and was more than twice as common in male as in female piglets.

Spicer et al. (1986a) demonstrated that splayleg occurred in 5.5% of piglets born alive, and 24% of these died. This is higher than the 0.5% incidence reported by Ward (1978). In the former study afflicted piglets were unable to compete with littermates and died of starvation, hypoglycemia, hypothermia, or overlaying. The death rate was higher (66% vs. 24%) in pigs with both fore- and hindlimbs affected. The average age at death (2.6 days) was similar to that of small weak pigs (2.3 days). There was a greater incidence of splayleg from older sows (0.8/litter) than gilts (0.1/litter).

Splayleg piglets were generally lighter than average (1.20 ± 0.07 kg) and took longer than average to obtain a first suck. Those that survived to weaning had a reduced growth rate to weaning. Offspring from Landrace boars had a 13.7% incidence of splayleg, compared with 4.5% for Large White boars and 3.4% for hybrid boars (P <0.01). Ward (1978) states that in Britain the disease is particularly prevalent within the Landrace and Large White breeds. Identical matings do not always result in splayleg piglets being born (Dobson 1968). The etiology of splayleg is multifactorial, comprising genetic and environmental components (Ward 1978). Slippery floors are an important predisposing environmental factor in the development of splayleg (Kohler et al. 1969). Deficiencies of choline and thiamine may result in splayleg, as does the presence of zearalenone mycotoxin in sow feed, but correction of these problems does not universally eliminate the abnormality.

Treatment and Prevention. The standard treatment for splayleg is to tape (electricians insulating tape) the legs 2–3 cm apart so that they cannot abduct further than in the normal standing position. Where the hindlimbs extend forward beneath the animal after taping, a strip of tape is attached to the middle of the first tape and taken back over the tail to join to a third strip encircling the body in the flank region. A variation of this favored by Gadd (2003) is to tape the hindlimbs in normal position, but to then tape the legs to the body, slightly to one side by placing the tape around the body and the legs just anterior to the pelvis. The animal is left like this for 3–4 hrs and the body tape removed. The theory is that in struggling to get free the muscles regain function much faster than if they are not body-taped. This method will most probably require use of a hospital crib or a creep box in the farrowing pen.

If an animal can move adequately after taping, it can be left with the sow. If, however, they still have difficulty in walking, as is often the case with small piglets that are splayed or piglets splayed in both front and back legs, they need to be transferred to a crib to avoid starvation and crushing. Provision of sows' colostrum is important. Burkin et al. (1995) detected a nonnutrient component of colostrum that has an effect on muscle protein synthesis. By 3–4 days of age the problem has usually resolved. This coincides with the disappearance of histological signs of myofibrillar hypoplasia.

Savaging
Spicer et al. (1986a) found that savaging accounted for 11% of mortalities and was confined predominantly to
Necropsy Findings. The lesions of savaging are essentially caused by the crushing effect of the sow’s teeth and jaw. In some cases savaged piglets may be difficult to distinguish from overlain pigs. However, the lesions are more focal and the skin is often broken.

Prevention. Little can be done to prevent savaging in the absence of staff. Therefore, if savaging is a problem, induced farrowing will ensure that the majority of gilts farrow when staff is present. Savage gilts may be tranquilized (1–2 mg/kg of azaperone). Piglets can be placed in a small cage in the creep area as they are born. Once farrowing is over, the piglets can be removed from the cage, and the gilt usually makes no further attempt to savage. The birth weight of savaged piglets was significantly lower than the average birth weight of pigs that survived to weaning (see Table 62.4). Gilts that savage their litters were likely to be those mated at lower body weights (Spicer et al. 1985). The lower weights at mating were due to inadequate feed intake between selection and mating of submissive pigs penned in groups of 20. The problem was overcome by periodically drafting off those animals that appeared to be losing weight. It is unusual for dams to savage more than one of their litters; therefore, there is no valid reason to cull them. However, Knap and Merks (1987) and van der Steen et al. (1988) indicate that it is possible to select against aggressiveness in sows. The selection of boars and gilts from mothers with normal behavior will probably be the most efficient procedure.

Pneumonia
Pneumonia is responsible for the death of around 1% of all live-born piglets (Fahmy and Bernard 1971; Bille et al. 1975; Spicer et al. 1986a). The pneumonia is primarily a bronchopneumonia, and gilt litters are more often affected than sow litters. Bille et al. (1975) found a higher incidence in winter, but the pneumonia was unrelated to the indoor climate or level of hygiene. In most cases, only one pig per litter was affected, with an average incidence of 10% per litter. Organisms isolated include Streptococcus spp., Bordetella bronchiseptica, Pasteurella spp., Moraxella spp., Escherichia coli, and Arcanobacterium pyogenes (Bille et al. 1975), and Staphylococcus aureus, Pasteurella multocida, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, and Citrobacter freundii (Spicer et al. 1986a).

In a study of pneumonia in 55 baby pigs, Kott (1983) isolated Haemophilus parasuis, Mycoplasma hyorhinis, and Bordetella bronchiseptica. Pleuropneumonia due to Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae has been reported by Bille et al. (1975) and Cameron and Kelly (1979). Septicemia due to the same organism has been reported in sucking pigs (Thomson and Ruhnke 1965).

Although Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae infections are commonly thought to begin in weaned pigs, the organism has been reported from pneumonic sucking pigs; however, microbiological evidence that it is common in such lesions has not been forthcoming (Ross 1986).

Treatment and Prevention. With low mortality levels treatment is probably not a practical procedure due to the difficulty of identifying the affected animals. However, where the problem exceeds a 1% level of mortality, injecting gilts at farrowing with an appropriate antibiotic to lower excretion rate may be warranted. Ensuring piglets adequate access to colostrum is recommended, for the low incidence of the disease and its occurrence in predominantly gilt litters suggest that lack of specific antibodies is a major contributing factor.

Generalized Infections and Septicemia
Field data indicate that as many as 2% of the piglet population die of septicemia (Driesen 1990). Affected piglets were all less than 48 hours of age. Nielsen et al. (1975) surveyed 28,000 live-born pigs and found that 2.1% died from septicemia, 37% of which were primary septicemias, and the remainder were secondary to low-birth-weight starvation or preceding illness; 44% of mortalities occurred before 3 days of age. In a study by Spicer et al. (1986a), septicemias in the first week of life were a secondary manifestation of other causes of mortalities. However, generalized infection was responsible for most deaths in the second and third week of life. Organisms isolated and associated conditions included Actinobacillus suis: septicemia, arthritis, peritonitis, and meningitis; Citrobacter freundii: septicemia, meningitis, alpha-hemolytic streptococci septicemia: arthritis and meningitis; E. coli: septicemia and peritonitis. Glaston-
bury (1977) and Nielsen et al. (1975) found that *E. coli* and beta-hemolytic streptococci were the most common causes of septicemia in dead suckling pigs.

A major predisposing factor in generalized infection would appear to be the quantity and specificity of maternal antibodies absorbed by piglets. In this regard Nielsen et al. (1975) found (1) a significantly higher incidence in piglets of sows with mastitis and agalactia, (2) an increase in mortality from septicemia with larger litters, (3) a higher incidence in open versus closed herds, and (4) a higher incidence in winter.

**Necropsy Findings.** Often excess fluid and small amounts of fibrin are found in the serous cavities. Lungs may be edematous and fail to collapse. Jaundice, subserosal petechial hemorrhage, and mild dehydration may be seen.

**Treatment and Prevention.** The most common isolates are *Streptococcus* spp. and *E. coli*; thus broad-spectrum antibiotics may be of use. Therapeutically the success rate is low (Driesen 1990), but prophylactic treatments are worthwhile. Prevention should be aimed at ensuring adequate intake of colostrum for all piglets and providing adequate heating.

**Miscellaneous Causes of Death**

This group includes anal atresia, cleft palate, renal hypoplasia, hydrocephalus, and accidental death and accounts for 1.2% of all pigs born alive (Spicer et al. 1986a). A summary of the prevalence of specific congenital defects of pigs is provided by Edwards and Mulley (1999). A summary of their prevalence and etiologies is presented in Table 62.6.

**Reducing Preweaning Mortality**

Cutler et al. (1989) reported farm studies where preweaning mortality rates were reduced by paying attention to staff training and attention to detail in the farrowing house. After an intensive period of “hands-on” staff training and demonstration, farrowing-house performance was monitored and preweaning deaths fell by 5–7%. Holyoake et al. (1995) in a study of 250 sows were able to decrease both stillbirths and preweaning deaths by inducing sows to farrow with cloprostenol (250 µg) combined with constant staff supervision from three hours before farrowing to 3 days after. Through supervision, stillbirths were decreased from 0.68 to 0.26 per litter, preweaning deaths per litter decreased from 1.26 to 0.86 and numbers weaned increased from 9.44 to 10.17 per litter. White et al. (1996) reduced preweaning mortality, including stillbirths, by approximately 44% (about a pig per litter) and increased weaning weight in pigs through attending farrowing and implementing a piglet care protocol involving provision of oxygen, drying the pigs, tying the umbilicus, bovine colostrum supplements, and placing the newborn piglets on a teat. In addition to increasing the intensity of staff training and staff awareness, the following measures provide a basis for decreasing neonatal mortality:

1. Provision of written instructions about piglet survival for staff.
2. Thorough hygiene programs for the farrowing house and processing equipment.
3. Creep areas that are draft free and comfortable. Sawdust, wood shavings, shredded paper, or straw are suitable bedding materials.

### Table 62.6. Common developmental defects of swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Defect</th>
<th>Prevalence</th>
<th>Etiology</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Micrencephaly</td>
<td>0.07%</td>
<td>Heat stress midpregnancy</td>
<td>History of heat stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unknown (most cases)</td>
<td>An agent affecting development in early or midpregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin A deficiency</td>
<td>Multiple defects in affected litters; heavy neonatal mortality; history;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hog cholera (HC) infection</td>
<td>diet analysis; serum and liver vitamin A analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Heritable</td>
<td>HC infection in herd; virus isolation; fluorescent antibody test; serology;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>congenital tremor AI present in herd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin A deficiency (hydrocephalus)</td>
<td>Mode of inheritance uncertain; dominant gene (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neural tube defects</td>
<td>0.04%</td>
<td>HC virus (type AI)</td>
<td>An agent affecting embryos at 12–16 days of development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(anencephaly, encephalocele,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple defects in affected litters; heavy neonatal mortality; history;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrocephalus, spina bifida)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>diet analysis; serum and liver vitamin A analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital tremor</td>
<td>0.20%</td>
<td>Type AII (unidentified virus)</td>
<td>HC infection in herd; virus isolation; fluorescent antibody test; serology;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Type AIII</td>
<td>affects piglets of all breeds and both sexes; hypomyelinogenesis; cerebellar hypoplasia; neurochemical analysis of myelin lipids of spinal cord; small cross-sectional area of the spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hypomyelinogenesis of spinal cord; analysis of myelin lipids of spinal cord; small cross-sectional area of the spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Monogenic sex-linked gene mutation in Landrace affecting only males and associated with defect in myelin sheath</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 62.6. Common developmental defects of swine (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Defect</th>
<th>Prevalence</th>
<th>Etiology</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Autosomal recessive gene in Saddleback affecting both sexes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies (PR) virus</td>
<td></td>
<td>PR infection in herd; virus isolation; serology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neguvon (metrifonate, trichlorfon)</td>
<td></td>
<td>History of dosing sows in midpregnancy; hypoplasia of cerebrum and cerebellum; Purkinje-cell loss; changes in neurotransmitters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobacco stalks, jimsonweed, poison hemlock, wild black cherry</td>
<td>0.10%</td>
<td>History of exposure to plants in early to midpregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A deficiency</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple defects in affected litters; heavy neonatal mortality; history; diet analysis; serum and liver vitamin A analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC attenuated vaccine virus</td>
<td></td>
<td>History of vaccination during early pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC infection</td>
<td></td>
<td>HC infection in herd; virus isolation; fluorescent antibody test; serology; congenital tremor AI in herd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paramyxovirus infection</td>
<td></td>
<td>Menangle virus infection during pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heritable</td>
<td></td>
<td>Recessive gene (?); autosomal recessive in Yorkshire pigs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown (most cases)</td>
<td></td>
<td>An agent affecting development in early or midpregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micromelia</td>
<td>0.10%</td>
<td>Possibly caused by limb vascular defects in early pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleft palate/harelip</td>
<td>0.07%</td>
<td>Possibly a recessive gene; cleft palate in Poland China pigs probably genetic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deformed tail</td>
<td>0.08%</td>
<td>An agent affecting development in early or midpregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myofibrillar hypoplasia</td>
<td>1.05%</td>
<td>Most common in Landrace, less in Large White; probably polygenic mode of inheritance; incidence modified by maternal stress, slippery floor, birth weight, maternal nutrition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusarium toxin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Higher mortalities than other forms; feed analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inguinal hernia</td>
<td>0.40%</td>
<td>Mode of inheritance uncertain; incidence modified by environment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umbilical hernia</td>
<td>1.00%</td>
<td>Possibly polygenic mode of inheritance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anal atresia</td>
<td>0.40%</td>
<td>Possibly polygenic inheritance or an autosomal recessive or autosomal dominant form of transmission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypotrichosis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mode of inheritance uncertain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine deficiency</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stillbirths and high neonatal mortality; enlarged thyroids; skin edematous; feed analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epitheliogenesis imperfecta</td>
<td>0.05%</td>
<td>Possibly autosomal recessive gene; hydromeophrosis associated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatosis vegetans</td>
<td></td>
<td>Autosomal recessive; associated with fatal giant-cell pneumonia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pityriasis rosea</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mode of inheritance uncertain; affects young pigs, especially Landrace; benign and self-limiting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Von Willebrand’s disease</td>
<td></td>
<td>Recessive gene in Poland China pigs; excess bleeding from minor wounds; decrease in factor VIII and platelet retention time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navel bleeding</td>
<td>0.14–1.2%</td>
<td>Cords edematous, familial linkage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac defects</td>
<td>0.03%</td>
<td>Most cases recognized at 4–8 weeks; mostly males</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryptorchidism</td>
<td>0.39%</td>
<td>Polygenic transmission; left testicle most commonly involved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female genital hypoplasias, duplications</td>
<td>0.68%</td>
<td>Mode of inheritance uncertain; genital tract incomplete or duplicated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male pseudo-hermaphroditism</td>
<td>0.06%</td>
<td>Mode of transmission uncertain; testicles in abdomen together with female tubular tract</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True hermaphroditism</td>
<td>0.2–0.6%</td>
<td>Mode of inheritance uncertain; testicular and ovarian tissues usually with female tubular tract</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. An additional heat lamp provided toward the rear of the sow during the farrowing period and for 24 hours afterward to reduce the chance of chilling newborn pigs and to provide an extra (lateral) creep area. At birth pigs can be positioned under the heater.

5. Freeing newborn pigs from placenta, drying them, clearing airways of mucus.

6. A heated crib for the care of sick pigs and to house temporarily small pigs (<800 g bodyweight) or pigs from large litters during split suckling sessions.

7. Supervision of pigs to ensure access to colostrum, or supplementation with colostrum substitutes (up to 100 ml/day) or milk replacer by bottle or stomach tube especially for small or weak pigs or for pigs in large litters.

8. An active fostering program based on cross-fostering within 48 hours of birth.

9. Regular inspection of sows and prompt treatments

10. A vaccination program against neonatal colibacillosis.
REFERENCES


Poor sow longevity in commercial breeding herds can lead to economic inefficiency and animal welfare concerns. Thus effective culling strategies should be an essential part of herd health management. Culling policies influence herd economic performance in many different ways. A high sow turnover is generally associated with a shift toward younger females, which are less productive, and with an increase in the number of nonproductive sow days. A high removal rate requires larger replacement gilt pools, which will increase disease risks and the cost of production. Difficulty in supplying replacement animals may also lead to a suboptimum population that will decrease the herd output and disrupt pig flow. On the other hand, an excessively low removal rate will be associated with a higher proportion of older sows, which are more prone to certain diseases and may have lower production levels.

Evaluation of a culling program should include determination of the average longevity in the herd, reasons for culling and death, nonproductive days associated with removal, lifetime productivity, and risk factors for poor longevity.

MEASURES OF LONGEVITY

Determining the average longevity of animals is the first step in assessing a herd culling program, and several measures have been used to define sow longevity: removal rate, culling rate, replacement rate, percent gilts in the herd, mean parity of females in inventory, and mean parity at removal. Others have proposed the use of more economic indicators, such as pigs weaned per day of life or number of herd days per pig weaned (Culbertson and Mabry 1995; Lucia 1997).

The term “removal rate” covers all types of removal, including culling, natural death, and euthanasia. This rate is defined as the number of animals removed from the herd during a year, divided by the average inventory, and multiplied by 100. Culling and death rates should be analyzed separately; in some instances, the number of euthanasias, which are usually included in the mortality, should also be assessed. Annual removal rates of 35–55% for sows have been reported in different surveys (Dagorn and Aumaitre 1979; Pattison et al. 1980a; Friendship et al. 1986; D’Allaire et al. 1987; Dijkhuizen et al. 1989; Marsh et al. 1992; Paterson et al. 1997a; Boyle et al. 1998).

Because these values represent average rates, higher or lower rates may be found on individual farms, ranging from 20% to 70%. However, high removal rates seem to be more frequent than excessively low rates. A target of 39–40% is recommended: 35–36% for culling and 3–5% for death (Muirhead 1976; Dial et al. 1992). Target values should be adjusted for individual farms, because the removal rate is influenced by many factors, such as herd size, genetic turnover desired, breeds, definition of the average inventory, and population dynamics. Higher rates are to be expected for seed stock herds to ensure genetic improvement and to reduce the genetic lag for commercial producers. Market trends and economic conditions also influence a producer’s culling decision and timing (Brandt et al. 1999; Stalder et al. 2004).

A breed difference in longevity has been observed by some authors, with Yorkshire and Large White sows having longer lifetimes than Landrace sows (Dagorn and Aumaitre 1979; Kangasniemi 1996). Others have found no difference between these breeds (Cederberg and Jonsson 1996). In general, purebred sows are less robust than hybrid sows (Kangasniemi 1996; Sehested and Schjerve 1996; Jorgensen 2000); however, this finding might be confounded by the genetic selection occurring in nucleus herds. Nevertheless, several researchers have reported heritability estimates for longevity ranging from 0.05–0.27 (Tholen et al. 1996; Lopez-Serrano et al. 2000; Yazdi et al. 2000; Fortin and Cue 2002). A difference of almost one parity at removal was observed between some genetic lines (Rodriguez-Zas et al. 2003). Collectively these results indicate that selection of a source of breeding stock might impact the producer’s ability to improve sow longevity.
Comparisons of sow removal rates between herds or studies are often difficult because the definition of “average female inventory” may be different. The inventory may refer to sows only or to sows and gilts, with gilts being introduced at different times in their production cycle. For a better standardization of terminology, it has been suggested that only mated females be considered in the calculation of the annual removal rate. On some farms, however, culling of gilts introduced into the breeding herd but not yet mated is very high and may require more investigation.

The annual removal rate for the herd is also influenced by specific circumstances, such as a change in the inventory, a change in the culling policies, and the average length of the lactation period. A decrease in the inventory will increase the culling rate for the corresponding year; conversely, an increase in the inventory may decrease the rate if the producer culls less extensively in order to increase the number of females. On some farms, an involuntary cycle is established in culling patterns. For example, a producer realizes that the herd is getting older and reacts by culling more extensively that year. The following year, the rate may be lower because a large proportion of the herd is now very young. This is not counterproductive in itself but it makes production planning more difficult and herd output less constant. Information on such changes in culling policies is needed to evaluate a program. A cycle in culling patterns may also occur in newly established or repopulated herds.

The average length of lactation for the herd may also influence the annual removal rate. Herds with shorter lactation periods tend to have higher removal or death rates even though the mean parity at culling is similar (D’Allaire et al. 1989; Paterson et al. 1997a; Koketsu 2000). A reasonable explanation is that the number of litters per sow per year is higher when the lactation period is shorter. Because a sow has a certain probability of being removed during each farrow-to-farrow interval, more farrowings per year result in a higher annual probability of being removed.

Longevity of sows in the herd can also be evaluated by the replacement rate, which is defined as the total number of animals entering the herd divided by the average inventory and multiplied by 100. The removal rate and replacement rate should be similar in a stable herd if the inventory remains constant. However, in a herd undergoing expansion, the replacement rate may be higher than the removal rate. Conversely, when reduction in herd size occurs, the replacement rate may be lower than the removal rate. Therefore, population dynamics should be considered when analyzing these rates.

The mean parity of sows at removal indicates the average length of time that sows stay in the herd; however, because the mean can be influenced by extreme values, a parity distribution of removed sows is usually more informative. Breeding-life expectancy is low in most swine breeding herds. Several studies reveal that the average parity at removal is between 2 and 5.6, but it can vary from 2 to 8 for a particular herd (Arganosa et al. 1981b; D’Allaire et al. 1987; Stein et al. 1990; Pedersen 1996; Koketsu et al. 1999; Lucia et al. 2000). Sows are removed from breeding herds at a very young age considering that the “natural” longevity would most likely be 12–15 years (Pond and Mersmann 2001).

A high proportion of females are removed in their early parities. Gilts and first-parity females often represent a large proportion of the cullings, with percentages of up to 40%. Considerable losses are involved with such high removals of young females (see section on “Effects of Sow Longevity on Herd Productivity”). Many authors have reported that from 50–69% of the removals occur before the fourth litter (Dagorn and Aumaitre 1979; Arganosa et al. 1981b; D’Allaire et al. 1987; Kangasniemi 1996; Lucia 1997; Paterson et al. 1997a). The probability of being removed is highest for parity 7 and over, followed by parities 0 and 1 (Tiranti et al. 2004). The risk of being removed for some specific reason is also different among parity groups; for example, there is a higher risk of culling for reproductive and locomotor problems in first-parity females and for inadequate performance and old age in advanced-parity sows (Lucia et al. 1996; Paterson et al. 1997a, b; Boyle et al. 1998).

The parity distribution of the herd is also useful to evaluate the longevity, because it indicates when the sows are more likely to be removed. As stated by Dial et al. (1992), it is difficult to recommend a standard parity distribution. The optimum parity distribution for litter size on one farm may be different from that on another farm, considering the breed, the cost of replacement, the type of facilities, and the husbandry skills. The relationship among parities should, however, be optimized to achieve an ideal parity distribution. To obtain an optimum herd maturity, 90% of the gilts that are started in the herd should reach parity 1, and 90% of the parity 1 animals should reach parity 2 (Leman 1992). Other optimal parity distributions of females in commercial breeding herds have been suggested (Table 63.1). To achieve these targets, it is imperative to limit the culling of younger females from the herd.

**REASONS FOR REMOVING SOWS**

Sows are culled when they are considered unsuitable for further production. A knowledge of the reasons for removal can be beneficial in identifying underlying diseases or management problems. The list of reasons can be as complete as desired, but for the purpose of data analysis, the reasons should be summarized according to a few categories. Although the classification of reasons has varied between studies, there is reasonable agreement and detailed information to allow regrouping and comparison of reasons. Data from different studies reveal
a general pattern of removal in which reproductive failure is the main reason for culling, followed by old age, inadequate performance, locomotor problems, death, and milking problems (Table 63.2). The culling pattern, however, varies slightly over time and according to the country. The predominant causes of removal may also vary among herds and among parities.

Some authors have used the terms “voluntary” (planned) and “involuntary” (unplanned) removal. A strict definition is difficult; ultimately all removals except death are voluntary. In general voluntary removal refers to culling for old age, inadequate performance, poor progeny, and poor milking, for which the producer makes the decision concerning the cause and the time of removal. Involuntary removal refers to other causes, such as locomotor and reproductive problems, for which the producer does not have as much control. Voluntary culling allows minimization of nonproductive days and better planning of the introduction of replacement animals.

Reasons for removal can be analyzed according to two rates: a proportionate rate, which is the percentage of all removals attributable to a specific reason, and a reason-specific removal rate (D’Allaire 1987). The proportionate rate is useful in indicating the relative importance of a given reason in the total culling picture and helps in determining priorities for improving the herd. The reason-specific removal rate is defined as the number of animals removed for a specific reason divided by the average inventory, multiplied by 100, and measures the annual probability of an animal being removed for that specific reason and indicates the extent of a problem. This latter rate is more informative and is not influenced as much by the number of animals removed for other reasons as the proportionate rate is. As an example, two herds, A and B, both have 15% of their removals due to death (proportionate rate). Herds A and B have an annual removal rate of 20% and 60%, respectively. In herd A, the removal rate for death (reason-specific removal rate) is acceptable, at 3% (20%/15%); in herd B, this rate is three times higher, at 9% (60%/15%), although the percentage of all removals for this reason is identical. Unfortunately, in most of the literature, only the proportionate rate is used. In Table 63.3, the average and range of reason-specific removal rates and the mean parity at removal are reported for seven reasons.

Reproductive Failure
Reproductive failure is used to define a variety of conditions: no observed puberty in gilts, no observed postweaning estrus, regular and irregular returns to estrus, negative pregnancy diagnosis, failure to farrow, and abortion. Reproductive failure is the predominant reason for culling, representing between 13% and 49% of all removals. The greatest number of nonproductive days since the last weaning is observed for this category (Paterson et al. 1997a). Thus, good reproductive management with an increased awareness of the reproductive state of each sow at all times should be emphasized.

Table 63.1. Recommendations for optimal parity distribution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Parity</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parsons et al. 1990</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muirhead and Alexander 1997</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morrison et al. 2002</td>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Values within a row indicate the percentage of females that should be in each parity group.

Note: NA = not available.

Table 63.2. Reasons for removing sows and percentage of removals for each reason: Results obtained from 16 studies involving more than one herd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Reproductive Failure</th>
<th>Old Age</th>
<th>Inadequate Performance</th>
<th>Locomotor Problems</th>
<th>Death</th>
<th>Other</th>
<th>No. of Herds or Sows</th>
<th>Country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lucia et al. 2000</td>
<td>33.6</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>7973 sows</td>
<td>USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boyle et al. 1998</td>
<td>29.8</td>
<td>31.3</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>25 herds</td>
<td>Ireland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paterson et al. 1997a</td>
<td>40.3</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>17.6</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>21 herds</td>
<td>Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kangasniemi 1996</td>
<td>28.2</td>
<td>16.8</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>23.9</td>
<td>1224 herds</td>
<td>Finland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedersen 1996</td>
<td>34.5</td>
<td>18.8</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>23.7</td>
<td>4471 sows</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stein et al. 1990</td>
<td>29.6</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>28.2</td>
<td>774 sows</td>
<td>USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dijkstra 1989</td>
<td>34.2</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>20.1</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>24.2</td>
<td>12 herds</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D’Allaire et al. 1987</td>
<td>32.4</td>
<td>16.8</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>7242 sows</td>
<td>USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friendship et al. 1986</td>
<td>25.8</td>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>14.9</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>22 herds</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joo and Kang 1981</td>
<td>32.6</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>15.7</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>25.3</td>
<td>6 herds</td>
<td>Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone et al. 1981</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>33.4</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>140 herds</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jossé et al. 1980</td>
<td>49.1</td>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>22.2</td>
<td>593 sows</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattison et al. 1980a</td>
<td>37.5</td>
<td>24.4</td>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>60 herds</td>
<td>England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dagorn and Aumaitre 1979</td>
<td>39.2</td>
<td>27.2</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>5118 herds</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karlberg 1979</td>
<td>31.3</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>27.1</td>
<td>75 herds</td>
<td>Norway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Svendsen et al. 1975</td>
<td>41.4</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>11.9</td>
<td>17.4</td>
<td>9 herds</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Young females are more likely than older sows to be culled for reproductive failure (Dagorn and Aumaitre 1979; D’Allaire et al. 1987; Dijkhuizen et al. 1989; Stein et al. 1990; Lucia 1997; Paterson et al. 1997a). The average number of litters produced by these culled sows is between two and four. Inefficient estrous detection, mating at an early age, improper male stimulation, use of young boars that are less mature and can more easily be overused, improper nutrition, infectious or toxic agents, management practices, and environment may be responsible for these high levels of culling for reproductive failure in young females. Older sows that have stayed in the herd also have undergone a selection process and may be less prone to reproductive failure.

Failure to conceive, to maintain pregnancy, or to farrow after a successful mating are the major problems reported. The risk of being removed for failure to farrow was greatest for parity 0 sows (Paterson et al. 1997a). Females that did not conceive are often found only late into their presumed gestation. Sows culled for return to estrus stayed in the herd for an average of 75–79 days, whereas sows removed because they failed to farrow remained for 121–132 days after weaning (Pattison et al. 1980a; Paterson et al. 1997a). It is important to decrease this period of nonproductive days, for it is very costly because of the extra feed and labor required as well as the underutilization of production facilities. To decrease this period, management must differentiate between late loss of pregnancy and late detection of nonpregnant females; these two variables indicate different problems that necessitate different solutions on a farm.

The proportion of females culled because they do not exhibit estrus either at puberty or at weaning is lower than that of sows failing to conceive. However, gilts and first-parity sows are more likely to be removed for anestrus than older sows (Lucia 1997; Paterson et al. 1997a). The acceptable period between introduction or weaning and mating differs among farms and may be partly responsible for the variation in proportion of animals culled. The length of the period allowed is worth investigating; on some farms it might be too short, especially for younger females, which usually have a longer interval from weaning to breeding, thus unnecessarily increasing the number culled. Comparing farmers’ decisions to cull with economic model recommendations, Dijkhuizen et al. (1989) found that females culled for absence of estrus were removed too early from the herd, particularly the younger and high-producing sows. The calculated allowable interval from weaning to removal averaged 66 days for first-parity sows, whereas the actual interval was 36 days. Abortions do not seem to be a major reason for removal, generally representing less than 3% of all cullings, except in herds experiencing an outbreak of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS).

When the proportion of culling for reproductive failure is high, a slaughter check may be useful to compare the reasons given by the producer and the physiologic status of the reproductive tracts. Josse et al. (1980) examined 338 reproductive tracts and compared the findings with the reasons for culling reported by producers. The reason for removal could not be substantiated in 36% of the cases. Einarsson et al. (1974) found similar results in a study of genital organs in gilts: of 54 gilts culled for anestrus, 23 had apparently active corpora lutea and 2 were pregnant. Possible explanations for these discrepancies are inefficient estrous detection or pregnancy testing, silent heat, or physiologic changes occurring between the decision of culling and slaughtering.

Old Age
Old age is often the second most likely reason for removal, accounting for 3 to 33% of all removals; the average parity at culling varies between 7 and 9. As the proportion of sows removed for other reasons decreases, the percentage of sows culled because of old age increases. Overlapping between “old age” and “inadequate performance” are likely to occur, for old sows may experience a decrease in productivity. Old age is relative; some producers routinely cull sows as soon as the fifth or sixth parity, and others only after the tenth litter. Some researchers suggest culling older sows when productiv-

### Table 63.3. Average and range of reason-specific removal rates and average parity at removal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Removal Reasons</th>
<th>Reason-Specific Removal Rate (%)</th>
<th>Average Parity at Removal</th>
<th>Reason-Specific Removal Rate (%)</th>
<th>Average Parity at Removal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reproductive failure</td>
<td>21.3 (5.5–42.0)</td>
<td>2.66</td>
<td>15.1 (0.0–49.5)</td>
<td>2.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old age</td>
<td>7.2 (3.0–15.4)</td>
<td>7.32</td>
<td>7.1 (0.0–40.6)</td>
<td>7.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inadequate performance</td>
<td>2.3 (0.0–6.2)</td>
<td>4.32</td>
<td>7.7 (0.0–28.0)</td>
<td>5.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locomotor problems</td>
<td>9.3 (1.9–14.1)</td>
<td>3.06</td>
<td>4.1 (0.0–18.7)</td>
<td>2.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>5.0 (2.0–8.4)</td>
<td>3.13</td>
<td>5.5 (0.0–14.3)</td>
<td>3.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Various diseases</td>
<td>3.5 (1.0–5.4)</td>
<td>3.38</td>
<td>0.9 (0.0–30.7)</td>
<td>2.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>4.5 (0.0–15.7)</td>
<td>4.14</td>
<td>8.5 (0.0–41.3)</td>
<td>3.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>52.8 (35.3–68.3)</td>
<td>3.71</td>
<td>48.6 (14.5–85.1)</td>
<td>3.77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Study A involved 19 Australian herds with 9096 removed females, including mated gilts. Adapted from Paterson et al. 1996, 1997a.

*Study B involved 89 American herds with 7242 females, including selected but unmated gilts. Adapted from D’Allaire et al. 1987.
ity in terms of live-born pigs is comparable with that of gilts. This method, however, takes into account only the number of live-born pigs. According to a model developed by Dijkstra et al. (1986), the economic optimal herd life for average-producing sows is generally 10 parities. Rarely is it economically beneficial to cull sows before parity 8, considering the economic losses associated with the cost of replacement, the lower litter size and farrowing rate, and the longer interval from weaning to mating in younger sows. Their model took into account the annual replacement rate, the average parity of farrowing and removed sows, the average slaughter price of culled sows, and the cost of replacement gilts.

**Inadequate Performance**

This category includes a variety of reasons: small litter size at farrowing or weaning, high preweaning mortality, and low piglet birth or weaning weights. Inadequate performance is usually ranked as the second or third most common reason for culling sows, with a range of 4–21% of removals attributable to this category. Pomeroy (1960) reported that inadequate performance was the main reason for removal, accounting for 33% of all cullings. However, management was different in those years; herds were smaller, usually fewer than 10 sows, and were farrowing outside. The preweaning mortality was also high, up to 48% during certain months of the year.

In a herd with a high level of culling for inadequate performance, a parity analysis is useful. If too many young animals are culled for this reason, action should be taken because it is well known that litter size increases with parity until the third litter. In such a herd, the benefit of culling sows for the purpose of improving productivity might be lost because of a decrease in herd productivity associated with a high proportion of young sows. Culled females will have to be replaced by gilts, which are not very predictable. Dijkstra et al. (1986) asserted that parity 1 sows with a litter size of even 50% below average should not be culled on economic grounds. Moreover, that predicting the next production from the previous one is very inaccurate.

**Locomotor Problems**

Locomotor problems refer to a variety of conditions, including osteochondrosis, osteoarthritis, osteomalacia, arthritis, leg weakness, posterior paralysis, foot rot, foot and leg injuries, and fracture. Dewey et al. (1993) examined 51 sows culled for lameness and found that osteochondrosis, followed by infectious arthritis and foot lesions, was the major underlying cause. The proportion of sows removed for locomotor disorders varies between 9% and 20%; some reports, however, have indicated a percentage as high as 45%. It is imperative when investigating culling for locomotion and leg problems to analyze concurrently the death rate (see section on “Death”).

In sporadic cases of very high removal for locomotor disorders, housing and flooring types have often been incriminated (Jones 1967; Smith and Robertson 1971). In general, group housing is associated with more injuries, presumably because several animals of different ages are kept together; whereas individual housing is related to a higher incidence of joint, foot, and leg problems, possibly because of a lower frequency of movement. Housing sows individually during gestation limits the amount of exercise and results in decreased muscle weight. Restricting movement may also cause biomechanical stress (Marchant and Broom 1996).

In swine breeding herds, flooring and housing are closely related, and thus it is often difficult to separate the effects of one from the other. Certain types of housing will rarely be found with certain types of flooring; for example, crates will rarely, if ever, be seen on an earthen floor. There may also be an interaction between the flooring type and the housing type. Levels of culling are also influenced by the housing and flooring types used during the rearing period of the replacement gilts; high density of animals and slatted floors during the finishing period are associated with a greater risk of removal in sows (Dewey et al. 1992).

Flooring can vary in many respects, including design, material, quality, the hygienic conditions associated with it, and other characteristics. The adverse effects of slatted floors have often been associated with foot and leg problems, but most of these reports have pertained to faulty slats that were damaged or were poorly designed with rough edges, too wide apart, or with an improper distribution of nonslippery and nonabrasive materials in the concrete (MAFF 1981; Muirhead 1981; Dewey et al. 1992).

The association between housing and flooring types might be further confounded by the type of feeding system used. For group housing during gestation, longevity was shorter for sows individually fed in an electronic feeding system than for sows fed as a group in individual feeding stalls: 3.0 and 3.9 litters, respectively (Olsson 1996). Competition, queue formation, and aggressive incidents were more frequent around the feeding station in the electronic system and rearing period is associated with a greater risk of removal in sows (Dewey et al. 1992).

Proper selection for conformation is essential to improve sow longevity, as buck-kneed forelegs, upright pasterns on hindlegs, and swaying hindquarters have been associated with an increased risk of removal for sows (Grinfeld and Sehested 1996; Jorgensen 1996). Some of these conformational traits associated with sow longevity have been shown to be moderately heritable (Rothschild and Christian 1988a; Serenius et al. 2001). Low level of backfat has been associated with leg weakness problems (Rothschild and Christian 1988b), suggesting that the selection against backfat used by seedstock producers might have contributed to the increased...
locomotor problems recently observed in breeding animals.

The likelihood of a sow being culled for lameness is greater for younger sows, particularly gilts and parity 1 sows (Jovic et al. 1975; Dagorn and Aumaitre 1979; D’Allaire et al. 1987; Dewey et al. 1993; Lucia et al. 1996; Paterson et al. 1997b). Dewey et al. (1992) found that the culling rate due to lameness was higher in start-up than in established herds: 26% and 8%, respectively. Sows culled for locomotor problems produce, on average, only three litters. The reasons that culling for locomotor problems is more frequent in young females are numerous; among the possibilities are marginal nutritional problems, poor selection for conformation and locomotion of gilts, management or environment differing for young females compared with older sows, or a selection process by which sows less prone to problems are kept in the herd. Moreover, clinical signs of osteochondrosis, which is one of the leading causes for removal of lame sows (Dewey et al. 1993), are mostly observed in animals between 6 and 15 months of age (Grondalen 1974). Some authors have also reported that osteomalacia and osteoporosis are more frequent in first-litter sows (Douglas and Mackinnon 1993). On the other hand, older sows are more likely to have foot problems than younger sows (Dewey et al. 1993).

Sows removed for locomotor problems represent the highest economic losses related to culling (Dijkhuizen et al. 1989). In a study by Paterson et al. (1997b), 25% (range 0–62%) of the sows removed for locomotor problems had to be euthanized for humane reasons; this has an important economic impact due to the loss of the sale value of the animal but also suggests animal welfare problems.

When investigating a problem of high removal rate for locomotor problems, it is important to determine the major causes for lameness and to assess the associated risk factors, for example, housing, flooring, nutrition, genetics, selection process, and management. For more details on risk factors for locomotor disorders, see Chapter 5.

**Milking Problems**

Milking problems include mastitis, agalactia, low milk production, and poor mothering abilities. This category may overlap with inadequate performance, for milk failure can influence weaning weights and preweaning mortality. The proportion of sows culled for these reasons ranges from less than 1% up to 15%. In some reports, milking problems are included with peripartum problems. In a study from Minnesota (United States), sows culled because of milking problems produced an average of 4.6 litters (D’Allaire et al. 1987). Svendsen et al. (1975) reported that parity 2 sows were more prone to culling for mastitis. Halgaard (1983) observed that the risk of mastitis increased with increasing age up to the third or fourth litter.

**Death**

Annual death rates of 3–10% are frequently observed; however, they can reach 20% on some farms (Abiven et al. 1998). Recently mortality risks in breeding herds appear to be increasing, especially in the U.S. (Koketsu 2000; Deen and Xue 1999). These high levels of mortality represent significant economic losses and are indicative of compromised welfare. Moreover, they are a concern to employees and can affect their morale (Deen and Xue 1999). High levels of death or euthanasia in a herd result in some of the greatest losses per sow (Dijkhuizen et al. 1989, 1990; Paterson et al. 1997a) because of the increased number of nonproductive days, the extra costs (such as veterinary costs before removal and rendering costs), the lack of income associated with unslaughtered sows, or the loss of whole litters, since sow death often occurs around farrowing.

Variation in death rates can be attributed to differences in management, nutrition, environment, and culling policies. Some producers prefer to cull their sick sows quickly, hence reducing the death rate. Also, death rate is often negatively correlated with culling rate in order to keep the sow inventory constant within a herd.

In most recording systems, natural death and euthanasia are both included in the mortalities. It is recommended in herds with high mortality that euthanasia rates and reasons be analyzed separately since euthanasia may contribute significantly to the death losses. In a study of 59 herds, the combined death/euthanasia rate was 9%, with 5% for natural deaths and 4% for euthanasia (Paterson et al. 1997a). Similar results were found by Christensen et al. (1995), who reported that among 263 sows submitted to a rendering plant, 36% were euthanized, most of them having locomotor problems. High levels of euthanasia are indicative of a health or welfare problem or a failure to identify and quickly treat sick animals. In that, the work force plays an important role. Employees lacking pig experience and having limited husbandry skills are less likely to recognize sows at risk quickly and institute a prompt and effective treatment before a problem becomes life threatening (Loula 2000). Inappropriate treatments of sows with a product having a long withdrawal period may also preclude the sending of animals to slaughter, hence increasing the euthanasia rate if the health condition of the animals deteriorates. Similarly, a limited availability of transportation as is often observed in large organizations, does not allow timely culling of animals, leading subsequently to euthanasia or death when recovery is not possible.

Christensen et al. (1995) observed that the risk of death for sows was three times higher in herds with more than 100 sows than in herds with fewer than 50 sows. In a study of 130 herds, the death rate was significantly higher in herds with 200 or more sows than in those with fewer than 200 sows: 8% versus 6% (S.
D’Allaire and R. Drolet, 1996 unpublished data). Straw (1984) suggested a target death rate of 3% for herds of 150 sows or less, and 5% for herds of 200 or more sows. Koketsu (2000) observed that as herd size increases by 500 females the mortality risk increases by 0.44%.

Seasonal patterns in sow losses have been observed. In the United Kingdom, Jones (1967, 1968) observed that more than 55% of the dead sows had died during the winter months. These sows were kept inside during winter and outside during summer. A higher incidence of mortality during summer months is reported in studies where herds were kept mainly in total confinement (Chagnon et al. 1991; Drolet et al. 1992; Deen and Xue 1999; Koketsu 2000). A significant percentage of yearly deaths may be associated with thermal stress during periods of warm weather in sows housed indoors (D’Allaire et al. 1996). The annual mortality in Hungarian breeding herds was 5.1% and 12.2% for indoor and outdoor production units, respectively (Karg and Bilkei 2002).

Sows appear to be at risk most during the lactation period (Abiven 1995), and particularly during the peripartum period (Madec 1984; Chagnon et al. 1991; Deen and Xue 1999; Duran 2001). Therefore, particular attention and care should be given to sows during this period of the reproductive cycle to limit sow losses. Older sows are in general at higher risk of dying (Deen and Xue 1999; Koketsu 2000).

The mean parity at death varies between 3.4 and 4.2; the variation among studies and possibly among herds may be a reflection of the relative incidence of certain causes of sow losses, as some of them appear to be age related. Cystitis-pyelonephritis occurs more frequently in older sows (Madec 1984; Paterson et al. 1997a), whereas some locomotor problems seem to be more prevalent in young breeding stock (Spencer 1979; Doige 1982; D’Allaire et al. 1991; Dewey et al. 1993).

Assessing the reasons for death is essential to understand and control the factors influencing sow losses due to mortality. Many conditions responsible for death in sows are often reported by the producers as sudden deaths or rapid deaths associated with some rather non-specific premonitory clinical signs. When trying to ascertain the causes of death in a particular herd, it is imperative to have a significant number of sows necropsied during the year in order to identify the general pattern of causes of death. Standardized protocols and diagnostic approaches have been proposed to help determine the causes of mortality in herds (Chagnon et al. 1991; Pretzer et al. 2000).

The relative proportions of deaths due to different causes vary between studies, and several factors can be responsible for these differences: the system of recording used, and the size and the number of herds. Environment, management practices, and geographical area also influence the occurrence of certain diseases and may explain some of the variation among herds. The material examined may also not be representative of the entire sow population if investigations are based on submissions to diagnostic laboratories; causes of death that can be readily identified by producers (heat stress, uterine prolapse) are obviously underrepresented. Studies based solely on macroscopic post-mortem examinations may introduce bias by excluding some causes of death that need laboratory assistance (microbiology, histopathology, toxicology) to reach a diagnosis.

Although sows die from a variety of causes, some of the causes seem to have a greater incidence. Torsion and other accidents involving abdominal organs, heart failure, and cystitis-pyelonephritis are overall the major causes of natural death in sows, whereas locomotion and leg related problems are the most frequent causes for euthanasia.

**Torsions and Accidents Involving Abdominal Organs.**

Torsions and accidents involving abdominal organs probably are among the most significant causes of death in breeding stock. Gastric, splenic, and hepatic lobe torsions are the most common conditions reported within this category (Figure 63.1). Lethal gastric dilation can also occur without concurrent torsion (Ward and Walton 1980; Sanford et al. 1994). Intestinal accidents such as volvulus are also observed in breeding animals but are less frequent than in growing pigs. In studies on sow mortality published before 1980, torsions of abdominal organs are not reported as significant causes of death. The emergence of these problems, recognized in the early 1980s (Ward and Walton 1980; Morin et al. 1984; Sanford et al. 1984), might have been concurrent
with the intensification of swine production and the associated changes in management practices. In one study, the proportion of deaths attributable to torsions of abdominal organs was 20.5% for herds kept indoor compared to 4.1% for outdoor units (Karg and Bilkei 2002). In some herds, these conditions may represent a serious problem.

Torsions of abdominal organs are often found in older sows (Morin et al. 1984; Sanford et al. 1984, 1994; Chagnon et al. 1991; Christensen et al. 1995). Although affected sows are usually pregnant, sows may die at any stage of the reproductive cycle. Rough movements and manipulations, noise, and excitement among sows have been incriminated in the pathogenesis of torsion of abdominal organs (Morin et al. 1984). Feeding management and possibly housing type can influence the incidence of these conditions (Abiven et al. 1998). It has been suggested that any factors that provoke a rapid intake of food and water in excited animals predispose to gastric dilation or torsion; such factors include the number of meals per day, omitting a meal, as often occurs during the weekend, and possibly the fineness of the ground feedstuffs. Gastric contents in these cases are generally abundant and fluid.

Torsions and other accidents involving abdominal organs are usually easily recognized grossly on field postmortem examination without the need for further confirmatory laboratory testing, as is the case for some other conditions, such as septicemia.

**Heart Failure.** Heart failure has been reported as being among the main causes of death in sows (Senk and Sabec 1970; Svendsen et al. 1975; Smith 1984; Chagnon et al. 1991; D’Allaire et al. 1991; Maderbacher et al. 1993; Abiven 1995; Karg and Bilkei 2002), accounting for up to 31% of the mortalities. However, in several other studies, heart failure per se either is not even reported among the causes of death or is considered of negligible incidence in sows (Jones 1967, 1968; Ward and Walton 1980; Madec 1984; Hsu et al. 1985). The diagnosis of heart failure can be difficult to make, particularly in acute cases and has to rely on all current diagnostic procedures available. Diagnosis should be based on the presence of lesions indicative of heart failure such as cutaneous cyanosis; transudate in the pericardial, thoracic, and abdominal cavities; cardiac chamber changes; pulmonary edema; and passive congestion of lungs and liver, along with the absence of other gross, microscopic, and microbiological findings to carefully exclude other diseases (Figure 63.2).

Some of the predisposing factors for this condition have to be regarded in light of the way pigs often overreact to exogenous factors and, probably more important, of their particularly delicate cardiovascular system. The porcine heart has many anatomic and physiologic peculiarities, namely, low volume and small weight, abnormal systolic-to-diastolic ratio, and exceptional myocardial sensitivity to oxygen deficiency. In swine the heart weight to body weight ratio decreases as the size of the animal increases (Stünzi et al. 1959), and in adults, this ratio is considered to be among the smallest of domestic animals (Lee et al. 1975). The swine heart weight to body weight ratio, which is about 0.3% in sows, is much smaller than that of the less sedentary or more athletic species such as the dog, which is about 0.8% (Bienvenu and Drolet 1991). This precarious situation may easily lead to irreversible overload of the circulation and to acute heart failure (Thielscher 1987). The lack of exercise in sows raised in total confinement may also affect cardiovascular fitness. Thus, any factor that requires increased effort from the cardiovascular system in sows may be considered to predispose to heart failure: obesity, parturition, high ambient temperature, and stressful events such as mating, fighting, and transport (Drolet et al. 1992).

Drolet et al. (1992) and Christensen et al. (1995) found that sows that died of heart failure were heavier and fatter than sows dead of other causes. Therefore, in gestation units, sows should be fed properly and not be allowed to put on excessive weight and fat. In a study involving 137 dead sows of which 43 had heart failure, more than 60% of the heart failure deaths occurred during the peripartum period, suggesting that parturition is a demanding event for the cardiovascular system of the sow (Chagnon et al. 1991). Cardiovascular failure associated with high ambient temperatures may be responsible for significant losses in some herds. In a recent study involving 130 breeding herds in which sows were housed indoors, 11% of the yearly deaths occurred during 3 consecutive days of warm weather, which represent only 0.8% of a year (3/365 days) (D’Allaire et al. 1996). Interestingly, only 3 dead sows were submitted for necropsy to the nearby diagnostic laboratory during the week. Causes of death that can be readily identified by producers, such as those occurring on hot days, are underrepresented in submissions to diagnostic laboratories, as was pointed out by Sanford et al. (1994). Sows in total confinement are particularly susceptible to heat.
stress; they are not allowed to wallow in mud to decrease their body temperature nor are they exposed to winds that would decrease the ambient humidity and increase heat dissipation. Proper ventilation obviously plays a major role within these confinement systems, especially for periparturient females in the farrowing house. When the ambient temperature and humidity are high, the use of portable fans or other cooling system in the farrowing houses may be beneficial for sows. Other precautions may include removing heat sources (e.g., infrared lamp), less handling of animals to limit stress, and modifying the feeding schedule to avoid the heat of the day.

It is important to distinguish heart failure from malignant hyperthermia (porcine stress syndrome), a genetically transmitted disease. In the latter, prevention through selection of resistant animals will decrease the incidence. Many of the predisposing factors associated with heart failure in sows are also considered triggering factors for the development of malignant hyperthermia in pigs. Both conditions also share many clinical and pathological similarities, which make them difficult to differentiate. Lambert et al. (1996) examined, by molecular biology techniques, tissues from 84 sows previously collected by Chagnon et al. (1991) for the presence of the defective gene responsible for malignant hyperthermia. From these selected sows, 42 were identified as having died from heart failure and 42 as having died from various other causes (control group). The majority of the sows dead from heart failure did not possess the halothane gene mutation on any allele, suggesting that these cases were not related to malignant hyperthermia. Furthermore, the proportion of animals carrying at least one mutant allele (monomutant or dimutant) was not significantly different between sows dead of cardiac failure and the control group.

Cystitis-Pyelonephritis. The proportion of all deaths attributable to cystitis-pyelonephritis generally varies between 3% and 15% (Jones 1968; Senk and Sabec 1970; Svendsen et al. 1975; Hsu et al. 1985; Ward and Walton 1980; Chagnon et al. 1991; D’Allaire et al. 1991; Abiven 1995; Christensen et al. 1995). However, in some studies, urinary tract infection represented the major cause of mortality, accounting for up to 40% of all deaths (Jones 1967; Madec 1984; Smith 1984; Karg and Bilkei 2002).

Bacteria most commonly isolated from cases of cystitis-pyelonephritis (Figure 63.3) are *Escherichia coli* and *Actinobaculum suis* (formerly *Actinomyces suis*) (Madec and David 1983; Smith 1984; D’Allaire et al. 1991; Carr and Walton 1993). Other bacteria commonly associated with urinary tract infection include *Proteus* spp., streptococci, enterococci, micrococci, klebsiellae, and *Arcanobacterium pyogenes*.

Determination of urea concentration in ocular fluids can be a useful aid in diagnosing cystitis-pyelonephritis in dead sows, particularly when a complete necropsy is not possible or when it is difficult to ascertain that the lesions found in the urinary tract are responsible for death (Drolet et al. 1990). A significantly higher aqueous humor urea concentration was found in sows dead of cystitis-pyelonephritis (45–52 mmol/L) than in those dead of other causes (9–10 mmol/L) (Chagnon et al. 1991; Arauz and Perfumo 2000).

The risk of cystitis-pyelonephritis increases with age (Jones 1967; Madec 1984; Pointon et al. 1990; Chagnon et al. 1991; D’Allaire et al. 1991; Paterson et al. 1997a). The underlying reasons for this age-related susceptibility have not yet been fully investigated. Lack of exercise, limb injuries (Madec and David 1983), and obesity (Smith 1983) appear to be more frequent in old sows and predispose to urinary tract infection. These factors are associated with a decreased frequency of micturition, hence leading to a decreased flushing of bacteria and potentiating microbial growth (Smith 1983; Carr et al. 1991). It has also been reported that restricted water intake is one of the major risk factors for cystitis-pyelonephritis (Madec and David 1983; Carr et al. 1991). Urinary problems are also more common when sows are tethered or kept in stalls, possibly due to the lack of exercise and to hygiene conditions (i.e., confined sows often having to lie in their own feces and urine) (Madec and David 1983; Muirhead 1983; Carr et al. 1991). A flooring type that does not allow easy cleaning and good elimination of urine and feces can also lead to urogenital diseases and serious reproductive problems (Madec and David 1983; Muirhead 1983). For detailed information on cystitis-pyelonephritis, see Chapters 9 and 38.

Locomotor Problems. Locomotor problems are a common cause of euthanasia and may significantly increase the mortality in some herds (Senk and Sabec 1970; Svendsen et al. 1975; Christensen et al. 1995; Karg and Bilkei 2002; Perfumo et al. 2003). When investigating the extent of locomotor problems on a farm, it is impor-
tant to assess both the death rate and the culling rate associated with these conditions, since culling policies influence both rates, especially for these problems.

Gastric Ulcers. Lethal gastric ulcers are highly prevalent in some herds. Factors responsible for high mortality due to gastric ulceration are not always easy to pinpoint. Gastric ulceration is a multietiologic condition with several recognized risk factors. Most of these factors are related in some ways to housing management–associated stress, to concurrent diseases, or to some feed processing and dietary factors, including feed particle size, feed intake, grain type, and milling process (see Chapter 54).

Infectious Diseases. Proliferative enteropathy and PRRS, among other infectious diseases, may also increase the death rate. But usually, they will appear as outbreaks or will be of short duration. The mortality can reach up to 10% during these episodes (Yates et al. 1979; Halbur and Bush 1997). The incidence of infectious diseases due to pathogens, such as Haemophilus parasuis, is higher in start-up herds and in high-health-status herds.

In most studies, endometritis represents less than 9% of all deaths. This condition can be associated with concurrent urinary tract infection or, less frequently, with mastitis (the latter is an uncommon cause of death in sows).

Pneumonia is not a major cause of mortality; it rarely represents more than 5% of all deaths. Pneumonia is often more severe in young growing pigs than in full-grown pigs (Pijoan 1986). This could partly explain why pneumonia is not a frequent cause of death in adult sows and is more likely to affect younger females (Chagnon et al. 1991).

Sow deaths have also been attributed to Clostridium novyi in some countries (Walton and Duran 1992; Abiven 1995). The diagnosis of C. novyi sudden death (clostridial hepatopathy) is difficult mainly because this organism is a common and early postmortem invader, especially of adult swine in warm weather (Taylor and Bergeland 1992). Different aspects of this disease have been examined by Duran and Walton (1997). They reported that affected sows had generalized edema, subcutaneous infiltration with bubbles, and foul smelling bloody fluid in body cavities. The liver was enlarged and the parenchyma was infiltrated with gas bubbles, giving a spongy appearance. Several deaths in periparturient sows have been attributed to Clostridium difficile; sows had been previously treated with enrofloxacin (Mauch and Bilkei 2003). Septicemia and endocarditis have been observed as sporadic causes of death in some earlier studies.

Uterine Prolapse and Complications at Parturition. Uterine prolapses are generally responsible for fewer than 7% of all deaths (Figure 63.4). This condition is mostly observed in old sows, and the reasons for this increased frequency are unclear. Among possibilities are large pelvic inlet, long and flaccid uterus, and excessive relaxation of the pelvic and perineal region, which are probably mostly encountered in full-grown females (Roberts 1986).

Although dystocia or complications at parturition are occasionally reported as causes of death, we must be careful not to ascribe every death occurring in the peripartum period to these causes. As mentioned previously, sows are most at risk of dying during the peripartum period, due to a variety of causes. They may be apathic or suffer from exhaustion or downer sow syndrome which may be interpreted as a difficult farrowing by the producer.

EFFECTS OF SOW LONGEVITY ON HERD PRODUCTIVITY

High removal rates can affect herd productivity by causing a shift in the herd age distribution toward younger females, which usually have fewer pigs born alive per litter, a lower conception rate, and a greater number of nonproductive days. They are also more likely to be culled for reproductive failure and locomotor problems. Considerable losses are involved with high removal rates of young females. Kroes and Van Male (1979) reported that the cost per weaner is highest in the first litter and decreases over the next two litters.

The interval between a production event and the removal of a breeding female affects the number of nonproductive days in a herd, which is one of the best biologic predictors of litters per sow per year (Wilson et al. 1986; Duffy and Stein 1988; Dial et al. 1992). A high removal rate is generally associated with an increase in the number of nonproductive sow days. Target values for intervals between different production events and removal have been proposed by Polson et al. (1990). The interval between a production event and culling is determined by two factors: the interval from the produc-
tion event to the decision to cull, and the period between when the decision to cull is made and the actual culling. An excessively long interval may be due to the manager’s inefficiency in identifying animals that will eventually have to be culled or to the manager’s holding animals to be removed too long after the decision to cull is made. The time lost from cullings, deaths, and abortions was found to add the equivalent of 11 days to the farrowing interval and to result in a decrease of 0.16 in the number of litters per sow per year (Pattison et al. 1980b). Kroes and Van Male (1979) observed an increase of 6–8 days in the farrowing interval for each increase of 12% over an annual removal rate of 31%, which was considered to be the base value.

Lifetime productivity has traditionally been defined as the parity at removal or as the number of pigs weaned at removal. More recently, Lucia (1997) reported that the number of herd days per pig weaned by removed sows is a better estimator of lifetime productivity since it takes into account the number of nonproductive days as well as the number of pigs weaned. This parameter was evaluated at 20–21 days and was lower for older sows, 16–18 days, and higher for younger sows, 25–27 days.

High annual removal rates decrease herd productivity by influencing the herd age distribution and the number of nonproductive sow days. Many authors have documented that high removal rates are associated with a decrease in litters per sow per year and pigs weaned per sow per year (Dagorn and Aumaitre 1979; Kroes and Van Male 1979; Pattison et al. 1980a).

Using a sow replacement model, the loss by premature removal represented the equivalent of 16% of pig farm income, at an annual removal rate of 50% (Dijkhuizen et al. 1989). From different models, it appears rarely economical to cull a sow before her eighth or ninth parity. Improving longevity is highly profitable when the average parity at removal is low (Dijkhuizen et al. 1990; Sehested 1996). For example, increases in average parity at removal from 2.8 to 3.8 and from 3.8 to 4.8 improve the income per sow per year by US$25–35 and US$20–25, respectively (Dijkhuizen et al. 1990). Similarly, improving average longevity by one parity was shown to have the same impact as improving meat lean by 0.5% (Sehested 1996). However, improving longevity above an average value of 5 does not seem as beneficial (Sehested 1996). Several software programs have been developed to determine optimal economic

time to cull sows (Dijkhuizen et al. 1986; Stalder et al. 2003).

### Longevity in Boars

In herds where artificial insemination (AI) is not used extensively, good boar-culling policies are important, for they facilitate the replacement program. Planning problems associated with boar introduction may be considerable, because boars should be kept in quarantine for a certain period and their full workload is attained only at 1 year of age. High boar removal rates seem to be more frequent than excessively low rates. In a study involving 84 commercial herds, the annual removal rate for boars averaged 59% (D’Allaire and Leman 1990). The lifetime breeding expectancy for boars is estimated at 15–20 months but varies considerably between 0.3 and 38.5 months (Le Denmat et al. 1980; Arganosa et al. 1981a; D’Allaire and Leman 1990).

Overweight and old age, reproductive problems, and locomotor problems are the major reasons for culling boars in commercial herds (Table 63.4). The general pattern of removal may vary according to the breed of the boars: culling for reproductive or leg problems was higher in purebred than in crossbred boars, whereas culling for old age and overweight was more frequent in crossbred than in purebred boars (Le Denmat and Runavot 1980). Accordingly, reasons for culling boars from commercial herds would most likely be different from those in AI centers.

#### Overweight and Old Age

Since overweight and old age are not always easily distinguishable, they are often grouped into one category to avoid the risk of misclassification. Indeed, some producers use these two reasons interchangeably, because older boars are frequently considered too heavy to appropriately serve younger sows without the risk of injuring them. Both overweight and old age are often in relation to the sow herd. The introduction of many replacement gilts into the herd and the necessary introduction of young boars may require culling older or large boars that are not necessarily aged. This aspect of culling is peculiar to commercial herds; overweight and old age are rarely reported as causes of culling in testing stations or artificial insemination centers (Melrose 1966; Navratil and Forejtek 1978). High rates of removal

#### Table 63.4. Reasons for removing boars and percentage of removals for each reason: results obtained from 3 studies involving more than one herd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Reproductive Failure</th>
<th>Old Age and Overweight</th>
<th>Locomotor Problems</th>
<th>Death</th>
<th>Other</th>
<th>No. of Boars</th>
<th>Country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Le Denmat et al. 1980</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le Denmat and Runavot 1980</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D’Allaire and Leman 1990</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>USA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: NA = not available.*
caused by overweight may also reflect a feeding-management problem, in which case feeding management on the farm should be reviewed and corrected to improve boar longevity.

**Reproductive Problems**
The proportion of boars culled for reproductive problems is considerably lower in commercial herds than in artificial insemination stations (Melrose 1966; Navratil and Forejtek 1978). These differences may be attributed partly to the fact that semen quality is regularly evaluated for boars from artificial insemination centers. Consequently, boars may be removed more quickly and at a higher rate; the culling rate for poor semen quality can be as high as 23% in these stations (Navratil and Forejtek 1978). In two French studies conducted in commercial breeding herds, reproductive problems represented 20% and 32% of all removals and were considered one of the two major causes of culling (Le Denmat and Runavot 1980; Le Denmat et al. 1980). Breed difference may also be responsible for the variations in the proportion of boars culled for reproductive problems; purebred boars are more likely to be culled for this reason than crossbred boars (Le Denmat and Runavot 1980).

In commercial herds, the reason most frequently reported by producers in this culling category is poor libido or behavioral problems that preclude efficient mating. Culling for low reproductive performance is also reported but to a lesser extent. Low reproductive performance is difficult to confirm for boars in commercial herds. A great amount of information is required to make a valid decision; it takes approximately 50 litters to show a one pig per litter difference from the herd average. Therefore, culling for that reason without sufficient data is rarely justified. On the other hand, by the time this information is available, the boar has often completed his productive life in the herd.

**Locomotor Problems**
Although locomotor problems are rarely the main cause of culling, the percentage of removal can be very high on certain farms (Einarsson and Larsson 1977; D’Allaire and Leman 1990). In herds with high culling for locomotor disorders, the environment of the boars, such as housing and flooring types, should be evaluated carefully. Attention should be given to selection for locomotion and conformation, particularly in artificial insemination centers, as it has been shown in sows that these traits are associated with longevity (Grindflek and Sehested 1996; Jorgensen 1996). Misclassification between locomotor and reproductive problems may also occur, for locomotor problems often result in poor libido or inability to mate.

**Death**
Death generally accounts for less than 7% of all removals, giving a herd death rate of lower than 4% (D’Allaire and Leman 1990). In a study by Senk and Sabec (1970), the causes of death in 30 boars were found to be heart failure (50%), locomotor problems (23%), splenic torsions (10%), gastric ulcer (7%), endocarditis (3%), and unknown (7%).

**GENERAL GUIDELINES TO ASSESS REMOVAL POLICIES**
Determination of the annual removal rate is the first step in evaluating a culling program. Rates that are too high seem to be more common than excessively low rates. Unusual circumstances, such as a change in inventory or culling policy, may temporarily increase the removal rate. Calculating the mean parity at removal is also useful, but a parity distribution of culled females may be more informative. The removal rate for each category of reasons can indicate the extent of a problem. Analysis of reasons by parity may reveal which group of females is more susceptible or whether some cullings are unjustified, either physiologically or economically. An assessment of the interval between a production event and removal is important because it influences the number of litters per sow per year and pigs weaned per sow per year, and these measures of productivity are important factors in economic loss and gain. Clearly, the failure to identify and remove nonproductive sows at an early stage will increase the number of nonproductive sow days. Factors influencing negatively the longevity of breeding animals should be investigated. They have been reviewed by Stalder et al. (2004). To improve breeding-life expectancy of sows and boars in commercial herds, greater attention to the environment, nutrition, and management should be emphasized.

**REFERENCES**


Environment is a very broad term referring to all factors that impinge upon the animal. It can be divided into two major aspects, the physical and the biological, which in turn can be further subdivided. Not only is the environment complex, but the means by which animals interact with the environment is beyond the simple stimulus-response paradigm. Moberg (1985) outlined the response of animals to environmental stressors as consisting of three general levels of response. The least costly response is behavioral. But if behavioral responses are not capable of alleviating the stress, a change in biological function occurs. Such changes may involve a redirection of energy or substrates from what we view as productive functions, such as growth or reproduction, to defense strategies. One such change in biological function involves the activation of the pituitary-adrenal axis, resulting in release of corticosteroids. A result of this change in function is an altering of the immune response, making the animal more susceptible to some pathogens (Kelley 1982). Moberg (1985) indicates that if the environment is stressful enough, the animal enters a pathological state (Figure 64.1).

Webster (1988) has divided the means by which the environment contributes to pneumonia into three components. First, the environment includes factors that affect the level of pathogens to which the pig is exposed. Second, the environment affects mechanisms by which the pig resists the invasion of pathogens, such as clearance from the lungs. Finally, the environment affects the immune system and how well it can resist the pathogen load. The resulting complexity means that diseases must be viewed as multifactorial in terms of causative factors (Hartung 1994) and in terms of response and susceptibility.

The model presented in Figure 64.1 moves beyond the responses outlined by Moberg (1985) to include the predisposition of the animal (Gonyou 1993). Each animal will respond differently to environmental stressors because of its unique genetic and experiential makeup. Species have different behavioral and physiological characteristics. Some species, such as pigs, react strongly to repel unfamiliar individuals, while others, such as sheep, do not. Some species, such as cattle, react to high environmental temperatures by sweating, while others, such as pigs, do not. But within a species, within a genetic line, or even among genetically identical individuals, predispositions will differ due to experience. Behavior is greatly affected by learning, and physiology may adapt to the environment by relatively permanent changes in pelage, fat cover, and energy partitioning. Changes in the immune system brought about by “experience” with a pathogen are recognized in our immunization programs. Thus the impact of the environment on the animal is a complex combination of environmental features, the predisposition of the animal, and a variety of possible responses.

The multifactorial nature of the relationship of the environment and productivity and disease is illustrated in a series of papers by McFarlane et al. (1989a, b) and McFarlane and Curtis (1989). Using chicks as a model they demonstrated that five different environmental stressors were capable of reducing productivity and affecting physiological and immune responses. When applied in combination, the stressors affected these responses in an additive manner. An extension of this model to swine using high temperatures, crowding, and unstable social conditions confirmed the additive response to multiple stressors (Hyun et al. 1998). In a review of environmental factors recognized to contribute to various pathological conditions in swine, Whittemore (1993; Table 64.1) indicates that several diseases are affected by more than one environmental factor. In assessing the possibility that the environment is contributing to a clinical condition, the practitioner must expect that multiple factors are involved (Curtis and Backstrom 1992) and will likely suggest several changes to the environment in order to remedy the situation. For example, Done (1991) suggests 20 environmental factors to consider when treating for pneumonia. In any one case it is unlikely that only one such factor applies.
Although each case of reduced productivity or disease may have multiple environmental factors contributing to it, it is necessary to understand each factor adequately to determine the likelihood that it is involved and how it might be corrected.

THERMAL ENVIRONMENT

The pig is a homeothermic animal with a deep body temperature of 39°C (Baxter 1984). Because the pig’s environment is generally lower in temperature than its body, the pig loses heat. Heat is lost through various mechanisms: convection with ambient air; conduction to pen floor, walls, and other pigs; radiation to surrounding surfaces; and evaporation into ambient air. By physiological and behavioral means the pig modifies its heat production to balance heat losses.

The thermoneutral zone is defined as the interval of the thermal environment, usually characterized by temperature, within which an animal’s total heat production is approximately constant for a given energy intake (CIGR 1984). Total heat production is at a minimum and independent of ambient temperature in the zone of thermoneutrality (Verstegen et al. 1982; Baxter 1984). According to Bruce and Clark (1979), below the thermoneutral zone heat production is increased, and this can occur in the growing pig only if energy is diverted from productive purposes.

Lower Critical Temperature

The thermoneutral zone is limited by the lower and upper critical temperatures. Swine buildings are not usually provided with a cooling system, and therefore the reduction of inside temperature during the summer is not possible. A properly designed ventilation system will maintain the indoor air temperature less than 3°C above the ambient temperature. In most commercial buildings, no further control of high indoor temperatures can be achieved and the upper critical temperature is thus of lesser concern in the following discussion. With a temperature colder than the lower critical temperature (LCT), the pig uses a larger proportion of its feed intake energy to increase its total heat production. It is therefore important to define the limits of the thermoneutral zone to minimize wastage of energy intake through higher heat losses.

The LCT is calculated with the thermoneutral total heat production and the minimum latent heat production. It depends upon the heat losses of the pig and consequently the pig body weight, feed intake, air velocity, radiative temperature of surrounding surfaces, type of floor, and the number of pigs. Bruce and Clark (1979)

Table 64.1. Environmental factors associated with diseases in swine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>General</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
<th>Crowding</th>
<th>Hygiene</th>
<th>Social</th>
<th>Gases</th>
<th>Dust</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colibacillosis</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine dysentery</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycoplasma pneumonia</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrophic rhinitis</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actinobacillus pleuropneumonia</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastitis</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leptospirosis</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcal meningitis</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Whittemore 1993.
developed an extensive model to predict the LCT of pigs. Recently, Brown-Brandl et al. (1998) demonstrated that current design criteria derived from Bond et al. (1959) underestimate heat production at thermoneutral conditions (18–24°C) by approximately 26%, probably due to the increase of lean tissue deposition for the modern high-lean genetic lines. Even if heat production levels increased over time, the pig still dissipates heat through the same mechanisms, and the Bruce and Clark (1979) model continues to be a relevant tool to describe the impact of the thermal environment on the animal’s performance and well being.

With an air velocity of 0.15 m s⁻¹, a feeding level three times the maintenance energy requirement, and a concrete floor, the LCT of a 20 kg pig in a group of 15 pigs is 16°C. The value for a 100 kg pig in the same conditions is 9°C. A reduction of the feeding level to twice the maintenance requirement increases the LCT of 20 and 100 kg pigs to 21°C and 14°C, respectively.

For a 20 kg pig fed three times the maintenance requirement in a group of 15 pigs housed on concrete slatted floors, the LCT increases from 15°C to 18°C when air velocity increases from 0.15 to 0.55 m s⁻¹ (Baxter 1984). A higher air velocity increases pig heat losses and consequently the LCT as well. The heavier the pig, the better the pig can tolerate lower temperatures (Nicks and Dechamps 1985). CIGR (1992) indicates that with an air velocity of 0.15 m s⁻¹ and the same feeding level, the LCT decreases from 21°C to 11°C as the pig grows from 20 kg to 60 kg.

The thermal resistance between the pig body temperature and the floor temperature is influenced by the type of floor. Verstegen and Van Der Hel (1974) mentioned that the effective critical temperature of animals weighing 40 kg is 11–13°C on straw bedding, 14–15°C on asphalt, and 19–20°C on concrete slats. A single 34 kg pig fed 3.3 times the maintenance requirement has an LCT of −5°C when it is 70% embedded in straw (Sällvik and Wejfeldt 1993). A group of 16 pigs has an LCT of −20°C in the same conditions. A group of pigs will huddle in the cold (Bruce and Clark 1979), which explains the lower LCT. In fact, postural behaviors can be used to classify the thermal environment of pigs. Shao et al. (1997) captured pictures of postural behaviors of early weaned pigs submitted to four different air temperature regimes varying from 24.4°C to 31.1°C. As their neural network analysis was capable of properly classifying 78% and 96% of testing and training images, their work demonstrated that a picture of animal behavior can be used as an input variable for an environmental controller instead of the conventional approach of using air temperature.

From a production point of view, the LCT is of prime interest. It is the temperature at which the pig will divert some feed energy to produce more heat. However, air temperature alone is insufficient to characterize pig thermal comfort. To choose the right temperature set-point ensuring the animal’s well being and optimal performance, all the parameters previously mentioned should be considered.

**Performance**

To define the effect of temperature on pig performance, it is necessary to make a distinction between restricted and ad libitum feeding levels. With restricted feeding it appears that the optimum rate of gain is recorded around 20°C, and feed conversion (feed/gain) is minimal from 20–25°C (Verstegen et al. 1978). At similar feed intakes, the rate of gain decreases by 14.3 g day⁻¹ °C⁻¹ as the temperature drops from 20°C to 12.5°C (Le Dividich et al. 1985). The growth rate can be maintained constant by an additional supply of food of 38 g day⁻¹ °C⁻¹. When pigs are housed at a constant number of degrees below thermoneutrality, the reduction in gain is 14 g day⁻¹ °C⁻¹ during the growing period from 25–60 kg (Verstegen et al. 1982). Between 60 kg to 100 kg, the decrease is between 8 and 18 g day⁻¹ °C⁻¹ below thermoneutrality. For both growing periods pigs need 25 and 39 g day⁻¹ of feed to compensate for each degree lower than the thermoneutral zone, respectively.

With pigs fed ad libitum, the maximum growth rate is obtained at an air temperature of 20°C (Nichols et al. 1982; Nienaber et al. 1987a). However, there is no statistical difference in gain observed between 10°C and 20°C or in feed conversion between 15°C and 25°C. As the temperature drops from 10°C to 5°C, the reduction in gain varies from 4 to 21 g day⁻¹ °C⁻¹. During summer months, elevated barn temperature reduces animal growth rate by decreasing feed intake (Nienaber et al. 1987a; Lopez et al. 1991; Nienaber et al. 1997). This negative effect on pig performance lengthens the growth period and reduces the productivity level. Experiments showed that when ambient temperature was increased from 20°C to 30°C, the rate of gain was reduced by 17.6–40.0 g kg⁻¹ day⁻¹ °C⁻¹ (Lopez et al. 1991; Nichols et al. 1982; Nienaber et al. 1987a; Massabie et al. 1997).

Massabie et al. (1998) measured growth performance of grower-finisher pigs at 17°C and 24°C and at three feed intake levels. For pigs fed ad libitum, the average daily gain of pigs at 17°C (981 g kg⁻¹ day⁻¹) was 8% higher than at 24°C (907 g kg⁻¹ day⁻¹), reduction of 10.6 g kg⁻¹ day⁻¹ °C⁻¹. However, feed conversion ratio and the percentage of muscle in the carcass were similar at both temperatures.

Diet formulation can have an impact on how pigs will cope with elevated housing temperatures. Bellego et al. (2002) submitted barrows from 27–100 kg body weight and studied the combined effect of reducing the crude protein content of the diet with two housing temperatures (29°C versus 22°C). Overall, increasing the temperature from 22°C to 29°C resulted in a 15% reduction in average daily feed intake and 13% lower average daily gain. The results indicate that a 4-percentage unit reduction of dietary crude protein level does not affect...
growth and carcass composition as long as the ratio between essential amino acids and net energy is kept optimal. They also concluded that diets with reduced crude protein limit the effect of high ambient temperature on average daily feed intake.

Previous data suggest that, to maximize growth rate and minimize feed conversion rate, grower-finisher pigs should be housed between 15°C and 20°C. It is apparent that the optimum environmental temperature is a temperature zone in which performance and heat production are not significantly different (Nienaber et al. 1987a).

### Health Status

Except in extreme cases, a cold air temperature alone cannot precipitate health problems (Nicks and Dechamps 1985). Outbreaks of respiratory diseases can occur only when the microbial agents are present (Tielen 1987). However, fast air temperature fluctuations can trigger a disease outbreak by changing pathogen supply or animal resistance. For example, the results of Narita et al. (1992) indicate that the stress induced by fluctuating temperatures from 4°C to 30°C enhanced the progress and severity of Aujeszky’s disease in pigs.

In an experiment by Hessing and Tielen (1994), weaned pigs exposed to draft and low environmental temperature had more pronounced clinical disease signs (i.e., diarrhea, coughing, sneezing, and cyanosis of the ear) than the control group. Le Dividich and Herpin (1994) recommend a stable ambient temperature for piglets penned on a perforated floor. They conclude that data suggest a complex effect of weaning, level of food intake, and nonoptimal climatic conditions on the health status of the weaned pig.

For grower-finisher pigs, there is evidence that the incidence of respiratory problems can be exacerbated by varying air temperature (Christison 1988). Considering the mortality and the incidence of coughing and tail biting, the air temperature for pigs less than 50 kg should be between 17°C and 25°C, with the allowance of an increasing day-night air temperature variability toward the end of this period (Geers et al. 1988). Above 50 kg liveweight, the air temperature should not be higher than 24–26°C, and day-night air temperature fluctuations should be small. In fact, Nienaber et al. (1987b) submitted growing-finishing pigs to constant temperatures of 5°C and 20°C and to similar average temperatures with ±12°C daily cycles in a sine wave pattern. No effect of cyclic temperature was observed for growing pigs, but the results indicated that cycles of ±12°C were stressful to finishing pigs.

Other research has shown limited adverse effects of lower or fluctuating temperature on either piglets or grower-finisher pigs. Nienaber and Hahn (1989) reported that a reduced nocturnal temperature regimen of 6°C resulted in an increased feed intake for nursery pigs. No performance difference was measured when young piglets were subjected to ambient temperature as low as 15°C (Jacobson et al. 1984). Nursery piglets from 4–8 weeks of age that had been exposed to a fluctuating diurnal air temperature showed no performance difference on daily gain and feed efficiency (Jacobson et al. 1988). Shelton and Brumm (1986) measured slightly improved performance on pigs that were exposed to a nocturnal temperature that had been lowered by 9°C compared to daytime level.

Brumm et al. (1985) conducted an experiment to expose pigs weaned at 23 ±2 days to either a constant regime (30°C for the first week and then decreased by 1.5°C per week for 5 weeks) or a cycling daily temperature regime (the same day temperature as the control, but temperature lowering to 20°C at night during the first week and further reduced by 1°C per subsequent week). Pigs with a reduced nighttime temperature regime grew 6.1% faster as their daily feed intake increased by 7.8%, and feed efficiency was unaffected.

Lemay et al. (2001) conducted two trials over two summers to evaluate the effect of reduced nocturnal temperature on the performance and carcass quality of growing-finishing pigs. Control rooms had a typical temperature setpoint and the temperature setpoint for treatment rooms was 6°C lower. In Saskatchewan, a reduced temperature setpoint resulted in a lower nocturnal room temperature (1.6°C cooler over 8 weeks), but it had no influence on room daytime temperature. The average daily temperature fluctuation in treatment rooms was increased by 2.1°C. During trial 1, pig average daily gain in the treatment room was increased by 5.2%. For trial 2, feed intake was 3.2% higher in treatment rooms, which increased average daily gain by 2.1% on average over 8 weeks. However, no statistical differences were found for pig performance, feed conversion, and backfat thickness (P >0.05). The results suggest that healthy pigs are not negatively affected by a large daily temperature fluctuation (up to 14.8°C) as long as this fluctuation is progressively achieved.

Sow mortality is affected by high environmental temperatures. D’Allaire et al. (1996) examined data from 130 herds and determined sow mortality during a 7-day period with the highest maximum daily temperatures. During one 3-day period, representing less than 0.8% of the year, more than 10% of the annual death loss occurred.

Pigs’ health status is not altered by cold air temperature alone. Moreover, some results show that pigs can develop an important mechanism of acclimation to a cold environment (Derno et al. 1995). However, sudden changes in weather have been cited frequently as important factors in the precipitation of disease, and these may be more important than steady extremes of temperature, to which the animal may adapt (Dennis 1986). To maintain a healthy herd, rapid air temperature fluctuations should be avoided.
Setpoint Temperature

The thermal comfort zone of the pig depends on many environmental factors and changes with pig weight. This fact and the results of previous experiments suggest management should be based on temperature intervals rather than a single setpoint value.

Sows and piglets require different temperatures. The farrowing barn should be maintained between 15°C and 21°C (McFarlane and Cunningham 1993). Sows will have a distinct preference for the floor temperature around farrowing. Phillips et al. (2000) concluded that sows showed a pronounced increase in preference for a warm floor (35°C) during 3 days after the start of farrowing. This change in preference may explain why sows tend to avoid metal flooring at the time of farrowing.

Piglets in the first 2 weeks after birth need a 30°C ±2°C temperature to maintain their body temperature and functions (Zhang 1994). Supplemental heat should be provided for piglets. During the first 2 weeks after weaning, Le Dividich and Herpin (1994) recommend an ambient temperature of 26–28°C for piglets penned on a perforated floor. A study by VIDO (1991) suggests that the nursery temperature at weaning should be 27–32°C. Therefore, a temperature of 26–30°C is acceptable for nursery rooms. To choose the best temperature within this range, the pigs’ lying behavior should be observed (VIDO 1991). Comfortable pigs lie stretched out on their sides without huddling or piling. Once regular food intake is established, the ambient temperature may be decreased by 2–3°C/week until the finishing-house temperature is reached (Le Dividich and Herpin 1994). Table 64.2 summarizes literature concerning setpoint temperatures for the pig. Because pig thermal comfort depends upon body weight, floor type, air velocity, and the radiant environment as well as temperature, these values should only be used as guidelines and should be refined by observation of the pigs’ behavior.

AIRBORNE DUST IN PIG BARNs

Air is a critical factor to living things. People, on average, consume 15 kg of air per day compared to 1 kg of food and 1.5 kg of water. A market size hog breathes about 40 kg of air per day (compared to 2.7 kg of feed and 4 kg of water). People are now beginning to realize how important high quality air is for health and well-being in humans and animals. Of the air quality in pig facilities, airborne dust and toxic gases are two major concerns.

Dust from pig facilities is primarily responsible for health problems in human workers and animals (Zejda et al. 1993, 1994). Toxic gases, especially odorous gases (e.g., ammonia and hydrogen sulfide), are primarily responsible for nuisance smell and for stresses in public relations. These gases can also become major environmental air pollutants in high-density production areas such as the Netherlands and Denmark. Dust tends to be lived with as part of the job and may be ignored until permanent damage is done. Toxic gases cause discomfort (or more dramatic symptoms) that attracts immediate attention and requires quick action to solve the problem.

It is the small dust, or respirable dust, that is responsible for the problems of health and well-being in humans and animals. Dust particles smaller than 10 microns (some say smaller than 5 microns) are called respirable dust, because they can be inhaled into respiratory systems of human and animals. Grain dust was once considered to be the largest of all dust particles primarily affecting the airways (nose, throat). However, respirable dust, primarily from fecal materials and other organic compounds, permits more particulate material to reach the lung tissue where it can produce serious health hazards. Very fine particles (smaller than 1 micron) can even penetrate into lung tissues and cause permanent lung damage. Dust particles larger than 10 microns likely bypass a human nose and pose less danger to health (Figure 64.2). To put dust particles into perspective, a naked human eye can only see particles larger than 50 microns in a ray of sunlight. Cigarette smoke contains largely particles ranging from 0.1–1 microns. Dust particles of all sizes suspended in the air are called total dust. Thus, air may not be as clean as it appears in a

---

Table 64.2. Summary of pig temperature requirements for different stages of production

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage of Production</th>
<th>Body Mass (kg)</th>
<th>Temperature Range (°C)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gestation</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>15–24&lt;sup&gt;a,b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactation: sow</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>15–21&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactation: piglet</td>
<td>4–7</td>
<td>25–32&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaning</td>
<td>7–25</td>
<td>21–27&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growing</td>
<td>25–60</td>
<td>15–24&lt;sup&gt;a,b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td>60–100</td>
<td>14–21&lt;sup&gt;a,b,c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Zhang 1994.<br><sup>b</sup>McFarlane and Cunningham 1993.<br><sup>c</sup>Le Dividich and Herpin 1994.<br><sup>d</sup>VIDO 1991.<br><sup>e</sup>Midwest Plan Service 1983.

---

64.2. Dust particle size and a human respiratory system.
pig barn if it is filled with respirable dust particles because you can not visualize them.

Dusts in pig barns are biologically active and different from ordinary dusts such as field dusts. Swine building dusts are primarily generated from feed grains, fecal materials, animal skin and hair, insects and microorganisms (Donham 1986). They are composed of viable organic compounds, fungi, endotoxins, toxic gases and other hazardous agents (Table 64.3). A dust particle is a very complex mixture with many hazardous agents attached to it. To understand the pathology of health problems caused by dust, it is important to know the dust’s microbiological content. Organisms have been isolated and identified as the most important contaminant in swine confinement airspaces (Martin et al. 1996). Some of the organisms such as Streptococcus suis and Alternaria species are considered particularly hazardous to animals and human beings.

Dust is a carrier of odor. When odor is floated in the air as free molecules, it tends to be diluted quickly into the atmosphere to a less annoying concentration. However, if the odorous molecules are attached to dust particles, they can be carried a long distance and remain present for a long time. For example, a piece of equipment from a pig barn may smell for a couple of months due to the dust adhering to it. Thus, reducing dust concentration could have a positive effect on odor reduction. In one study when dust concentration was reduced by 80%, ammonia and hydrogen sulfide were also reduced by 30% and odor was reduced significantly (Zhang et al. 1996).

Threshold values of respirable dust concentration have been recommended to be less than 5 mg/m³ for workplaces with exposure of 40 hours per week (ACGIH 2003). This threshold limit was established primarily for working environments with inorganic dust, such as the coal-mining industry. A more stringent threshold limit, typically ten times less than that for inorganic dust, has been suggested for pig barn dust concentration because of its biological nature and adverse effects on humans and animals (Donham et al. 1989). High dust concentration is a cause of respiratory problems in pigs, such as bronchitis, coughing, and lung lesions. Dust also has an adverse effect on animal welfare. However, there are few data relating dust concentration to animal performance; one reason is that pigs do not live long enough to develop serious illnesses. Recommendations of threshold limits for dust concentration for animals are not currently available.

The characteristics (e.g., property, behavior and transportation) and pathogenesis of dust in pig barns still remain unclear. However, there is little argument on its adverse effect on the health of people and animals. Therefore, dust in pig barns should be minimized. Improvements to all aspects of swine building design and management practices, such as adding oil to feed have led to a significant reduction in dust (total and respirable) concentration levels in the past decade. The total dust levels in buildings are usually below 3 mg/m³ compared with the 10 mg/m³ a decade ago (Barber et al. 1991). However the respirable dust has not been reduced successfully because its origin is primarily the fecal materials and dead microorganisms (Welford et al. 1992). Conventional air cleaning technologies (e.g., fiber and electrostatic filters) for other types of buildings are usually neither efficient nor economical for pig barns due to the high dust concentration. Some new dust control technologies for pig barns have been developed and more research is in process. Dust control strategies involve scrubbing, electrostatic precipitation, ionization, ventilation, filtration and source control technology.

### Table 64.3. Dust sources and microorganisms in swine buildings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dust Sources</th>
<th>Bacteria and Fungi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feed particles:</td>
<td>Gram-positive cocci:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain dust</td>
<td>Staphylococcus spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>(coagulase negative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth promotants</td>
<td>Staphylococcus haemolyticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine protein:</td>
<td>Staphylococcus hominis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feces</td>
<td>Staphylococcus simulans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine</td>
<td>Staphylococcus sciuiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dander</td>
<td>Staphylococcus warneri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serum</td>
<td>Micrococcus spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other agents:</td>
<td>Arsococcus spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedding materials</td>
<td>Streptococcus suis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endotoxin</td>
<td>(presumptive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dust mites</td>
<td>Enterococcus durans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mold</td>
<td>Gram-positive bacilli:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pollen</td>
<td>Corynebacterium spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insect parts</td>
<td>Corynebacterium xerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral ash</td>
<td>Bacillus spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field dust</td>
<td>Gram-negative bacilli:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building materials</td>
<td>Acinetobacter calcoaceticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microbial proteases</td>
<td>Nonfermentative gram-negative bacillus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonia adsorbed</td>
<td>Enterobacter agglomerans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to particles</td>
<td>Pasteurella spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infectious agents</td>
<td>Vibrio spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungi</td>
<td>Alternaria spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cladosporium spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Penicillium spp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Donham 1986; Martin et al. 1996.

GASES AND HUMIDITY

The primary gases that may affect productivity and the incidence of disease are ammonia, carbon dioxide, hydrogen sulfide (H₂S), methane, and carbon monoxide. Hydrogen sulfide and carbon monoxide may be direct causes of death in pig facilities, whereas the other gases are likely to affect production and health indirectly. For example, ammonia at the levels of 50 and 75 ppm has been shown to reduce the ability of young pigs to clear bacteria from their lungs (Drummond et al. 1978). It is
generally recommended, for the comfort of the staff, that ammonia levels be kept at less than 25 ppm. These levels have not been demonstrated to have an effect on the productivity or health status of pigs, but pigs will avoid ammonia levels as low as 10 ppm (Jones et al. 1996).

Under normal barn operation, H2S concentrations normally stay under 5 ppm. However, manure handling operations within the building, such as pulling plugs to drain pits or power washing rooms, can generate H2S concentrations many times the levels generally used by occupational health and safety agencies (Chénard et al. 2003). Any manure handling procedure completed in swine facilities should be developed considering the risk associated with H2S. Readers are referred elsewhere in this volume for more information on these toxic gases (Chapter 60).

Although often ignored as part of the gaseous environment, water vapor is recognized as a contributing environmental factor. Pathogens are best controlled at relative humidity levels between 60% and 80%. Higher or lower levels of humidity result in higher pathogen loads. Respiratory problems are the most commonly observed health problems associated with high levels of humidity. During hot weather high humidity levels may contribute to heat stress because evaporative cooling methods are less effective.

The sources of water vapor include spillage from drinkers, urine, feces, wash water, and water in the feed. Humidity problems are most common during cold weather when ventilation is reduced to conserve heat. Feeding wet feed, particularly on a virtually continuous basis, is a major contributor to humidity problems. The use of water bowls, which waste less water than nipples do, will reduce humidity levels in confinement buildings. The effect of spilled water and of urine will be reduced if the floors are sufficiently sloped for good drainage. Within heated rooms electric heat will result in a drier environment than will gas heaters, which produce water vapor during combustion.

In addition to health concerns, adverse impacts of gases including odor, particulate matter (PM), ammonia (NH3), hydrogen sulfide (H2S), carbon dioxide (CO2), methane (CH4) and nitrous oxide (N2O) emitted from animal production facilities have created significant public concerns. These gases are produced by animals or by decomposing manure (Zhang et al. 1992). Current federal and state air quality regulations typically use emission estimates and air dispersion modeling to assess the impact of specific industries or production process on the environment and human health.

Air emissions typically arise from four main sources: the buildings where the animals are confined, outdoor lots where animals are held, manure storage structures, and land application of manure. One of the most effective methods to reduce gas emissions from confinement animal facilities is to reduce the gas concentration in the rooms because most of the gases are emitted via exhaust fans. Many good management practices (power washing, regular cleaning and flushing, sufficient water in the pit) can substantially reduce the odor and gas production and emission in the building, which in turn reduces emission and complaints.

**NOISE**

Pigs encounter two types of disturbing noises. The first type consists of sudden, startling noises such as sonic booms. The second type of noise is the persistent background noise from fans or other equipment within barns. Sonic booms or other aircraft noises appear to have little effect on the productivity of pigs (Bond 1971), but the noise of burner ignition on low-flying balloons has been claimed to startle animals, sometimes resulting in injury or death (Penny et al. 1995).

Sows and piglets communicate during the nursing/suckling sequence via grunts and squeals. Loud fan noise (85 decibels) has been shown to interfere with this communication and result in disrupted nursings (Algers and Jensen 1985). Behavioral problems such as tail biting sometimes occur more often near exhaust or recirculation fans. The noise of these fans may contribute to the general discomfort of the pigs, which leads to tail biting. Fan noise may be reduced by regular servicing.

**LIGHT**

Pigs have been reported to be both diurnal (day-active) (Stolba and Wood-Gush 1989) and nocturnal (Blasetti et al. 1988). The degree of contact with humans may determine which activity pattern is displayed, as shifts from diurnal to nocturnal have been reported during hunting seasons (Hansen and Karstad 1959). Within barns pigs have been reported to perform well in total darkness (Comberg and Doenen 1968, as cited by Curtis and Backstrom 1992). When given the opportunity to control lighting through operant conditioning, pigs will work to obtain as little as 2 min of light a day (Baldwin and Meese 1977). Lighting patterns affect feeding behavior, but not in terms of total intake. Pigs in continuous light evidence a sinusoidal eating pattern, peaking during midday (Gonyou et al. 1992). Pigs on an alternating light/dark cycle display peaks of eating when the lights turn on or off, little eating during darkness, and intermediate levels during midday (Walker 1991; de Haer and Merks 1992). These results suggest that pigs are remarkably adaptable to lighting patterns.

Lighting has been implicated in three areas of production: reproduction, growth, and injuries. Pigs are reported to be short-day breeders (although only moderately so), because the gradually decreasing day length during the summer stimulates the reproductive performance of both boars and sows (Claus and Weiler 1985). Shortening the photoperiod during lactation
also improves the return to estrus (Prunier et al. 1994). Longer daylight periods have been demonstrated to increase the growth of suckling pigs (Mabry et al. 1982), primarily through increasing the frequency of nursing (Mabry et al. 1983). One of the few situations in which long photoperiods improve feed intake is during the postweaning period (Bruininx et al. 2002). Although the common recommendation is to use low levels of illumination in grower-finisher barns to reduce activity and aggression, Tuovinen et al. (1992) reported that pigs on farms providing only 48 lx of light had more injuries at the time of marketing than did those on farms providing 77 lx. Christison (1996) reported no differences in postweaning aggression or wound scores under diverse light intensity levels.

**EQUIPMENT AND PENNING**

A common cause of leg injuries in pigs is slippery floors. Pigs are less likely to slip on concrete floors that are dry and broom- or wood-float–finished than on steel-trowel–finished floors (Applegate et al. 1988). Plastic floors are suitable for creep areas and nurseries but are less desirable for finishing pigs or sows. In addition to slippage, the thermal insulation and comfort value of a floor should also be considered, particularly for young animals. Piglets prefer to lie on plastic-coated metal than on expanded-metal, plastic, or fiberglass slats (Pouteaux et al. 1983). Fully slatted floors are becoming a norm of the industry, even though they are generally recognized to result in more leg problems. A compromise would appear to be flooring with normal slatting around the periphery, where dunging occurs, and a lower percentage of slats in the middle or traffic areas of the pen.

Open penning between pens is also becoming the most common type of pen divider. Such penning is particularly important if convective cooling is heavily relied upon. However, solid walls have advantages in terms of controlling dunging patterns (Hacker et al. 1994) and reducing the movement of manure and pathogens between pens. In general, if convective cooling is desirable, open penning should be used and floors should be fully slatted. In cooler climates in which air movement over the pig is undesirable, solid penning and partially slatted floors work well. Penning materials should be easily cleaned and disinfected. Polyvinylchloride is an easily cleaned material suitable for solid penning.

In general, pens for growing finisher pigs should be 1.5–2.5 times as long as they are wide. This shape facilitates good dunging patterns and easy handling of pigs. Pens should be a minimum of 1.5 times the length of a pig wide (approximately 2 m). This width is necessary to maintain free movement within the pen, particularly if the feeder position requires pigs to stand perpendicular to the pen divisions. If it is compatible with feeder design, in narrow pens feeders should be situated so that pigs stand parallel to pen divisions while eating in order to improve freedom of movement. Pigs perform well on floors with slopes as great as 8%, which facilitates drainage and results in dry sleeping areas (Bruce 1990; Arey and Bruce 1993).

Equipment should be properly sized for the pigs using it. Linear dimensions of the pig, such as length and width, are proportional to body weight (BW)\(^{0.333}\). To reduce water wastage (a source of humidity) and injuries, nipple drinkers should be mounted slightly above shoulder level of the pig. The appropriate height for downward-pointing nipples, in centimeters, can be calculated as 18 × BW\(^{0.333}\), where weight is in kilograms (Gonyou 1996). The number of pigs that can eat simultaneously from a feeder is dependent on the shoulder width of the pigs rather than the number of dividers in the feed trough. The appropriate width of a feeding space is 67 × BW\(^{0.333}\), where width is in centimeters and weight is in kilograms (Baxter 1991). Injuries from feeders are caused by rubbing against parts of the feeder while eating and by feeding-related aggression. Aggression can be reduced by protecting feeding spaces with panels extending back to the shoulder of the pig (Baxter 1991). Injury from feeder contact can be reduced by providing easy access to the feed using a spacious feeding trough and by avoiding sharp edges in construction.

The dimensions of farrowing crates are not as well defined as those for feeders. Even small deviations in the height of the bottom bar or the width of the crate can have significant effects on the behavior of sows and piglets (Rohde Parfet et al. 1989). Studies using existing commercial equipment reported lower piglet mortality for farrowing crates in which the sow was closely confined (Svendsen et al. 1986; Vermeer et al. 1993).

**SPACE ALLOWANCE**

The allometric relationship for space allowance, a two-dimensional factor, is \( k \times BW^{0.667} \), where space allowance is in square meters and body weight is in kilograms (Baxter 1985). Use of an allometric equation for determining space allowance has several advantages over standard tables. An equation allows the producer to determine the space allowance for pigs at the weights they have when they are moved or marketed, rather than extrapolating from a table. This is particularly helpful when market weights are increasing beyond those listed in tables. The \( k \) for space used by a lying pig is approximately 0.027 (Baxter 1985). Maximum growth is obtained at \( k \) values between 0.034 and 0.039 (Gonyou and Stricklin 1998; Edwards et al. 1988). Growth is depressed approximately 5% when a \( k \) value of 0.030 is used. Space allowance should be increased during summer months. The space allowance for a pen should be determined using the average weight of the pigs in the pen when the first pig is removed. For grower facilities this is the average of the pen when they move
to the finishing barn. The average weight of the pigs in a pen in the finishing barn is assumed to be approximately 10 kg less than the weight of the largest pig. The weight used for calculating space allowance in finishing facilities should be 10 kg less than market weight.

Overcrowding of pigs results in slower growth and a higher incidence of behavioral problems. Because overcrowding also reduces feed intake, it has been suggested that the performance reduction is due to limited access to the feeding area. If such is the case, increasing the nutrient density of the diet, and thus reducing the time required to consume the feed, should resolve the problem. However, overcrowding results in similar reductions in intake and growth for pigs that are fed high-density energy (Brumm and Miller 1996), protein (Edmonds et al. 1998), or lysine (Kornegay et al. 1993) diets as well. Chapple (1993) has suggested that stressful conditions may reduce the lean growth potential of pigs, and hence reduce intake. There does not appear to be an effect of crowding on the incidence of stomach ulcers (Eisemann and Argenzio 1999), humoral immune response (Kornegay et al. 1993a), corticosteroid levels, or adrenal weights (Kornegay et al. 1993b). The reduction in growth and feed intake and the increase in behavior problems are indicative of reduced welfare of the animals. However, profitability may be greater under more crowded conditions due to more efficient use of space and capital investment (Edwards et al. 1988; Powell and Brumm 1992). Selection of a space allowance is an ethical decision in which the welfare of the animal must be considered as well as the profitability of the enterprise.

Quality of space refers to how well the space accommodates the behavior of the pig necessary to maintain productivity and comfort. Improving the quality of the space will improve the living conditions of the pigs or at least maintain the quality of life in less space than poor-quality space. Enrichment of the environment is seen as one means of improving the quality of space. Although mechanical toys have not proven to be beneficial (Pedersen 1992), chewable material such as straw or hanging ropes may be useful in reducing behavior problems such as tail biting (Bruce 1990; Feddes and Fraser 1993). Partial partitions in pens for groups of sows allow the formation of subgroups and avoidance of aggressive animals.

SOCIAL

Wild and feral pigs normally live in small groups comprised of closely related individuals (Graves 1984). Even though the animals are related, recognition is based on familiarity rather than genetic similarity (Stookey and Gonyou 1998). When unfamiliar pigs are grouped together, aggression is intense and lasts for several hours. This results in injuries, short-term reduction in growth, and a reduction in immune response. Pigs that are re-grouped when young usually recover by the time they reach market weight. However, when near market weight animals are moved to a new pen and regrouped, they are delayed by 3–5 days in reaching market (Stookey and Gonyou 1994). Regrouping may potentiate susceptibility to other stressors such as crowding (Brumm et al. 2001).

There is some evidence that the composition of a group of pigs can affect their performance. Littermates continue to associate with each other more than with nonlittermates within the same pen throughout the growing-finishing period. However, this association does not confer an advantage on the animals, as small groups of littermates perform just as well as large groups of littermates within the same pen (Gonyou 1997). Pens comprised of very uniform pigs at the time of grouping become more variable as the pigs grow until the within-pen variation is similar to that of highly variable groups (Tindsley and Lean 1984). Within highly variable pens the greatest social stress, as indicated by reduced performance compared to uniform groups, is among the medium-weight pigs (Gonyou et al. 1986). Pens combining pigs of different temperament are more productive than those consisting of pigs with similar personality (Hessing et al. 1994).

Social stress is prevalent in groups of gestating sows that experience the additional stressor of restricted feed intake. Sows added to an established group form a subgroup of their own and are relegated to sleeping in the poorer areas of the pen (Moore et al. 1993). Regrouping during the period of embryonic implantation in bred sows (15–21 days) may result in high return to estrus rates. Social stress in groups of sows can be reduced by providing adequate space (in excess of 2 m²/sow), straw bedding, and partial partitions to allow subgrouping.

STOCKPERSONS

Stockpersons are part of the biological environment of the pig. The importance of the attitude of stockpersons and their interaction with animals on productivity has been reviewed by Hemsworth et al. (1993) and elsewhere in this volume (Chapter 51). Placing greater emphasis on the training of stockpersons and encouraging them to identify and correct problems early are warranted.

HYGIENE

Control of the pathogen load within the pigs’ environment is a critical part of management. Management programs such as sourcing of breeding stock, all-in/all-out pig flow, segregated early weaning, and three-site production are discussed elsewhere in this volume (Chapter 68). Within each of these systems of management there is a need for good hygiene to control pathogens. One of the most common sources of pathogens is the feces of other pigs. Solid divisions between pens or smaller rooms are means of restricting
movement of material from pig to pig. Frequent cleaning and disinfection of surfaces is the most effective means of reducing pathogen loads in the barn. Morgan-Jones (1987) emphasizes four steps in the cleaning process: removal of gross dirt, particularly organic matter; disinfection; a period of rest before refilling; and fumigation, if possible. Disinfectants include cresols, phenols, quaternary ammonium compounds, iodophors, hypochlorite, and sodium hydroxide (Curtis and Backstrom 1992). Facilities disinfected with cresols should be washed with water once surfaces are dry to prevent skin irritation on pigs. The most effective fumigant for pigs barns is formaldehyde gas, but it must be used carefully due to its toxicity. For most operations the use of all-in/all-out pig flow is the best way to facilitate such cleaning.

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 64  EFFECTS OF THE ENVIRONMENT ON PRODUCTIVITY AND DISEASE  1037


Verstegen MWA, Van Der Hel W. 1974. The effects of temperature and type of floor on metabolic rate and effective critical temperature in groups of growing pigs. Anim Prod 18:1–11.


The young pig is capable of extremely rapid growth after weaning, but unfortunately a number of factors limit the extent to which this inherent genetic potential can be expressed. Whittemore and Green (2001) suggested that growth rates of 100, 200, and 400 g/day in the first, second, and third weeks after weaning, respectively, were commercially acceptable targets under good nutritional, management, disease and environmental conditions. However, it has been recognized for more than 30 years that young, artificially reared pigs (i.e., weaned at 1–2 days of age) given ad libitum access to milk liquid diets can grow in excess of 500 g/day (Hodge 1974; Williams 1976). Excellent growth rates and feed conversion are achievable also in the postweaning period. For example, Pluske et al. (1996) demonstrated that 28-day-old, individually penned weaned pigs fed cow’s whole milk every 2 hours for 5 days also grew in excess of 500 g/day and converted milk dry matter to empty bodyweight gain at ratios approximating 1.0 (Table 65.1). Williams (2003) commented that if studies such as these were repeated with modern genotypes, young pigs might grow even faster and hence demonstrate a higher potential for lean tissue gain. There is little doubt, therefore, that the commercially reared piglet, both before and after weaning, substantially underperforms relative to what is possible.

Major considerations when discussing overall management and performance of the weanling pig are associations and interactions that occur before and after weaning that can determine future growth. Whittemore and Green (2001) stated that the growth of a pig from birth to maturity is best described by a Gompertz function, which means that the pig has a predetermined growth path and that there are large, fast growing animals and smaller, slower growing animals. The function also means that a larger genotype or a pig with a greater propensity for growth will, at any age, be bigger and grow faster than a smaller genotype, such that pigs heavier at birth and (or) weaning should maintain this advantage as they attain a more mature body size (grow older) (Williams 2003). The Gompertz function fails, however, to describe the postweaning period where pigs commonly lose weight and then slowly recover. The challenge to people involved in most facets of pig production is to minimize the “growth check” after weaning so that the young pig reestablishes its genetically determined growth path and reaches market weight as quickly as possible.

This chapter commences with a brief description of the variation in piglet weaning age around the world. The chapter then discusses the changes that occur at weaning and is followed by a summary of research concerning the generalized effects of behavior, nutrition and management before weaning on postweaning performance, including the influence of bodyweight at weaning and easing the transition before and after weaning. The chapter concludes with discussion on nutritional and water management and some key nutritional perspectives to promote increased voluntary feed intake and faster gain after weaning.

THE WEANING PROCESS

Weaning generally occurs between 14 and 28 days of age in the major pig producing countries of the world, although key differences exist between and within countries. For example, in the U.S. the majority (60–70%) of pigs are weaned between 16 and 20 days of age, although approximately 15% of the pigs are early-weaned, between 7 and 14 days of age (M. C. Brumm, personal communication) when the passive immunity that the piglet has derived from colostrum and milk is still at a high protective level. In this situation, pigs are moved to off-site facilities or to a nursery physically isolated from older pigs. In contrast, weaning earlier than 21 days of age is banned in the European Union (EU), and legislation might raise this to a minimum of 28 days of age. Moreover, the ban on the use of growth-promoting antibiotics as feed additives in the EU, and legislated reductions in the levels of dietary zinc and copper that can
help to control postweaning disorders, have caused an increase in weaning age in countries such as Sweden, where piglets are weaned at closer to 35 days of age. Moreover, in France the issue of saving supernumerary piglets from hyperprolific sows is causing a reexamination of weaning age and practices (Le Dividich et al. 2003). Regardless of weaning age, the process of weaning is a stressful experience because a number of simultaneous and unique problems not experienced elsewhere in other phases of pig growth occurs. These problems can be classified broadly as nutritional (i.e., change from milk liquid diet to a dry, solid diet differing in texture and composition), environmental (e.g., temperature differences, characteristics of the housing system), social (i.e., separation from the dam, mixing with non littermates) and physical (e.g., transportation, adaptation to new feeding and drinking systems) (Mormède and Hay 2003). Under natural or seminatural conditions, weaning is a progressive process that occurs at 12–17 weeks of age, which is in obvious and stark contrast to commercial pig production. Summaries of the key differences between natural and commercial weaning are described by Brooks and Tsourgiannis (2003).

The collective effect of these actions and events contributes to the postweaning growth check, or lag, which is distinguished by a well-defined period of time in which growth is in deficit (Figure 65.1). The extent of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diet Treatment After Weaning</th>
<th>Level of Significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Starter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaning</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slaughter</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gain, g/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BW</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty BW²</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry matter (DM), g/day</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCR, g DM:g EBWG³</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Pluske et al. (1996).

¹NS: not significant at $P<0.05$.

²Empty bodyweight is bodyweight of the pig minus contents of the bladder and the gastrointestinal tract.

³EBWG: empty bodyweight gain.

Table 65.1. The performance of piglets in the first 5 days after weaning when given either a dry, pelleted starter diet (Starter) offered on an ad libitum basis, or cow’s whole milk offered at a calculated maintenance (M) level, a calculated 2.5 times maintenance level (2.5 M), or offered on an ad libitum (Ad Lib) basis.

![Graph showing growth potential](image)

**65.1.** The growth potential of piglets and an illustration of the effects of weaning on the growth deficit (“check”) that occurs. The least-squares fitted equation of growth rate during the post-weaning phase is as follows:

$$y = 650 (±53) - 784 (±57) e^{-0.103 (± 0.02)x},$$

where $y$ = growth rate (g/day), and $x$ = day postweaning (adapted from Le Dividich and Sève 2000).
the growth check appears to be greater the younger the pig is weaned (Dunshea et al. 2002a; Main et al. 2004), partially because of incomplete and hence compromised gastrointestinal development and function (Pluske et al. 2003). Given the nature of the changes imposed it is not surprising that the relative rate of growth of the piglet decreases after weaning. The extent and severity of the growth check depends largely on how resilient the piglet is to the changes and how rapidly it can adjust to its new circumstances and regain homeostasis (Williams 2003).

The extent and duration of the growth check is also highly variable, with some piglets seemingly being unaffected while the condition of others can deteriorate very quickly after weaning. Minimizing the growth check at weaning depends to a large extent on the time taken for a pig to commence eating and the subsequent amount of food eaten, although other factors such as water intake, environmental temperature (see Madec et al. 2003), light schedule (Bruininx et al. 2002a), disease burden and so on must also be considered. Behavioral studies by Bruininx et al. (2001, 2004) and data summarized in Brooks and Tsourgiannis (2003) illustrate that although most pigs in a pen have taken their first meal within 24 hours of weaning, in some pigs it is 50–60 hours before they take their first meal. This causes the variability in performance generally seen in the weaner phase of growth, which can persist through to finishing. Fowler and Gill (1989) calculated that if a pig weaned at 21 days of age was to grow at 280 g/day, a growth analogous to that while sucking the sow, it would need to eat approximately 500 g of a starter diet containing 15.5 MJ of DE, an intake that is never seen under experimental conditions let alone in commercial practice (Williams 2003).

Commercially, the metabolizable energy (ME) requirement for maintenance is not met until day 3 to 5 after weaning (Le Dividich and Herpin 1994; Bruininx et al. 2002a) (Figure 65.2), and the level of ME intake attained at the end of the first week after weaning accounts for only 60–70% of the preweaning milk ME intake. Usually, 10–14 days are required for pigs to regain their preweaning ME intake. Thereafter, ME intake increases at a rate of 100–120 kJ ME/kg BW\(^{0.75}\)/day until a plateau is attained at 14–21 days after weaning. Voluntary ME intake attained at the plateau averages 1.5 MJ ME/kg BW\(^{0.75}\)/day, which is about three times the ME required for maintenance.

Associated with the growth check are changes to the structure and function of the gastrointestinal tract that can predispose to the proliferation of undesirable bacteria (such as enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli*), leading to general gastrointestinal malaise, diarrhea, morbidity and occasionally mortality. It is not our intention to describe the structural and functional changes occurring in the gastrointestinal tract around weaning because these have been fully and adequately described elsewhere (Hampson 1994; Pluske et al. 1997; Hopwood and Hampson 2003; Miller and Slade 2003; Vente-Spreeuwenberg and Beynen 2003). The continuous intake of nutrients by the piglet in the immediate postweaning period is generally regarded as being essential to maintain structural and functional integrity of the small intestine (Pluske et al. 1997;
Brooks and Tsoungiannis 2003; Vente-Spreeuwenberg and Beynen 2003) and promote large intestinal function (van Beers-Schreuers et al. 1998). Restrictions on the use of antimicrobial agents in some parts of the world however have led to readvocation of restricted feeding to reduce postweaning diarrhea, although some authors (Madec et al. 1998) have reported that higher levels of feed intake after weaning were associated with a reduced risk of diarrhea. Nevertheless, Geary and Brooks (1998) demonstrated the importance of feed intake per se in the postweaning period because they calculated that each 50 g per day increase in dry matter intake in the week following weaning increased bodyweight at day 28 postweaning by 0.87 kg. Dry matter intake in the week after weaning accounted for as much variation in bodyweight at 28 days after weaning as any combination of weaning weight, weaning age, gender and diet (Geary and Brooks 1998). Although pigs in this analysis were fed fermented liquid feed that generally promotes a higher level of feed intake than dry feed, the general principles would also apply to pigs eating solid feed.

BEHAVIOR AFTER WEANING

Pigs are rarely kept in their litter groups after they are weaned, but are mixed with pigs from other litters to form the desired group size. Group size for conventional indoor pens that have fully or partially slatted floors has traditionally ranged from 15–30 pigs per pen. Some production systems however, such as outdoor deep-litter hoops, can contain in excess of 250 weanling pigs per pen. Mixing piglets from different litters causes vigorous fighting for the first few hours after weaning and promotes adverse behaviors such as belly-nosing, but eventually a dominance hierarchy and new social order is formed based on dominance-subordination relationships between the pigs in the group. McGlone (1986) commented that social stability is usually observed within 48 hours of weaning, although sporadic fighting events can continue for up to 120 hours after weaning. These behavioral observations have generally been conducted indoors with small group sizes. Housing newly weaned pigs in larger groups in outdoor hoops most likely changes group behavioral dynamics, as has been observed with growing pigs (Morrison et al. 2003a). Unfortunately little or no research appears to have been conducted in this area with weanling pigs.

Associated with these behavioral events are neuroendocrine changes in response to the stress of weaning (Fitko et al. 1992; Mormède and Hay 2003) or to alterations in energy metabolism, although the latter is thought to be of relatively minor physiological importance (Heetkamp et al. 1995). In this respect, regardless of the age at weaning, a transient increase in plasma cortisol or of urinary excretion of cortisol is usually observed (Carroll et al. 1998; Hohenshell 2000; Hay et al. 2001). Changes in the cortisol level are commonly used as an index of stress. Cortisol is also a catabolic hormone, with its secretion being enhanced during periods of feed deprivation (Farmer et al. 1992). Therefore, the increased cortisol secretion could reflect both the weaning stress and the catabolism of energy stores occurring at weaning (see review in Le Dividich and Sève 2000). Urinary excretion of catecholamines are also enhanced after weaning and fasting and implicate low feed intake in altered sympathetic nervous system activity (Young and Landsberg 1977; Hay et al. 2001).

A considerable body of research exists examining ways to ameliorate the stress response at weaning and examine subsequent production effects, mostly with equivocal findings. For example, Pluske and Williams (1996b) attempted to minimize some of the social stress at weaning by comingling (familiarizing) piglets from different litters for the last 14 days of a 28-day lactation period and then grouping these piglets together after weaning. Piglets allowed to familiarize with each other in this manner showed significantly reduced aggressive behaviors after weaning compared to piglets that were mixed directly at weaning. However, this practice showed no lasting stimulatory effects on production indexes such as feed disappearance and daily gain. Other researchers have reported similar findings (Friend et al. 1983; McConnell et al. 1987; Pitts et al. 2000; Weary et al. 2002).

Some of these studies have used alterations in pen design/structure as a means of reducing piglet aggression. For example, McGlone and Curtis (1985) and Waran and Broom (1992) reduced aggressive behaviors and increased growth in the first week after weaning when pigs were provided with “hide or escape areas” in the pen, although long-term positive effects on performance were not evident. It appears that the major advantage of reducing aggression at weaning is on pig welfare.

THE IMPORTANCE OF BODYWEIGHT

Piglet weight at weaning and soon thereafter appears to be a major determinant of the subsequent growth performance, although the manner in which pigs reach a heavier weight also appears crucial. Williams (2003) reviewed numerous studies showing that birth weight is correlated to weaning weight, that weight at 1 week of age is correlated to weaning weight, and that weight at weaning is correlated to subsequent performance after weaning. In addition, Tokach et al. (1992) and Azain (1993) reported that pigs growing well (225–340 g/day) in the first week after weaning reached market weight 10–28 days before pigs exhibiting poor gain in that same week (0–110 g/day). The effects of weight gain (and hence feed intake) in the first week after weaning and weaning weight have been shown to be additive and account for 80% of the variation in body weight on day 20 after weaning and 34% at 118 days of age (Miller et al. 1999; Ilsley et al. 2003). Furthermore, Lawlor et al.
Weaning to 10 kg bodyweight, rate to slaughter. The effects of birth weight (Heavy vs. Light), Table 65.2. Recommended feeding a high-density diet after weaning to take advantage of this relationship.

Pigs that are heavier at weaning seem to continue their weaning weight advantage to slaughter weight (Mahan and Lepine 1991; Lawlor et al. 2002a; Dunshea et al. 2003). However, the manner by which a piglet attains that weight, such as higher creep feed intake during the lactation period, appears to have a marked influence on subsequent growth performance. Williams (2003) argued that if food intake is genetically determined to drive growth that is also genetically determined, which it must be, then it is most unlikely that a transient period of higher-than-normal nutrition will change a long-term hypothalamic food “setting.” Consequently, any increase in weight caused by an increase in growth would, at best, be maintained and, at worst, disappear with time.

Several data sets support this theory and may help to explain the apparent paradox in the literature surrounding this issue. Wolter et al. (2002a) found that increasing weaning weight by means of supplemental milk replacer during a 21-day lactation had no significant effect on performance to 14 kg after weaning or on performance in the period from weaning to slaughter at 110 kg. On the other hand, piglets that were inherently (genetically) heavier at weaning, partially because they were heavier at birth, ate more and grew faster to slaughter (Table 65.2). Nevertheless, piglets fed milk replacer took 3 days fewer to reach slaughter than piglets not offered milk replacer. Lawlor et al. (2002a) reported a 0.6 kg increase in weaning weight at 28 days, attributable to creep feeding. This weight advantage was lost by day 26 after weaning, whereas pigs inherently heavier at weaning (7.1 vs. 5.8 kg) remained heavier 26 days later (17.5 vs. 15.4 kg) because they ate more feed. These data are consistent with those of Fraser et al. (1994) who estimated that creep feed intake in lactation accounted for only 1–4% of the variation in bodyweight gain after weaning. In another study, Wolter and Ellis (2001) reported that weaning weight had a greater effect on age at slaughter than growth rate in the first 2 weeks after weaning, which was manipulated by offering a liquid milk replacer.

In contrast, Dunshea et al. (1997) found that providing skim milk powder (20% dry matter content) from day 10 of a 20-day lactation not only increased weaning weight (0.7 kg), but had a significant positive effect on bodyweight at 42 and 120 days after weaning compared to piglets that did not receive the milk supplement. These contrasting data sets are difficult to reconcile, but Williams (2003) postulated that consumption of skim milk powder during suckling, with its more favorable protein-to-energy ratio compared to sow’s milk for lean tissue gain (Campbell and Dunkin 1982; Williams 1995), might have allowed the piglets to compensate for the inferior quality of sow’s milk and hence shifted their preprogrammed growth curve.

Management techniques have also been tried to increase weaning weight. Split weaning is a practice whereby half the litter, or some other proportion, usually the heavier piglets, is weaned. The lighter pigs remain to suck the sow, say for an extra 5–7 days, to obtain more milk. Several workers have shown that the light piglets that remain with the sow grow faster than their counterparts that have to compete with their larger littermates (summarized in Le Dividich 1999). For example, Pluske and Williams (1996a) split-weaned the heavier piglets from litters at 22 days of age and showed that the bodyweight of the remaining lighter piglets could be increased by 60% in the following week because of increased milk intake, relative to counterparts not split-weaned. Lighter piglets in the split-weaned litters weighed 15% more (7.7 vs. 6.7 kg) than their counterparts in the full litters at weaning at 29 days of age. However by 9 weeks of age the difference in weight had disappeared (19.3 vs. 19.3 kg).

**Table 65.2.** The effects of birth weight (Heavy vs. Light), weaning weight and supplementary milk replacer during lactation (Milk vs. No Milk) on voluntary feed intake and growth rate to slaughter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bodyweight, kg</th>
<th>Birth</th>
<th>Weaning (21 days)</th>
<th>Weaning to 110 kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birth Weight</td>
<td>Heavy</td>
<td>Light</td>
<td>Milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed intake, kg/day</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>1.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth rate, g/day</td>
<td>851</td>
<td>796</td>
<td>827</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Wolter et al. (2002a).

**MANAGEMENT OF THE PIGLET DURING LACTATION**

Associations are believed to occur between the preweaning nutrition and behavior of the piglet and subsequent postweaning performance. The piglet relies predominately on the sow for its nutritional requirements before weaning, at least under modern-day pig husbandry and weaning management systems. Piglets consume colostrum in the first 24–36 hours after parturition and then consume milk at regular intervals during the day and night until weaning (Pluske and Dong 1998). Colostrum intake before closure of the small intestine to immunoglobulins is of critical importance to both the subsequent survival and performance of the young pig, even in the postweaning period (Pluske and Dong 1998; King and Pluske 2003). Giving colostrum to weaker piglets, or to litters where the sow is suffering agalactia,
is generally used as a management technique to increase survival rates and weaning weight and possibly reduce the variation in weaning weight (King and Pluske 2003). Alternatively, practices such as split weaning/cross suckling immediately after farrowing offer potential to allow a more equitable transfer of colostral immunoglobulins across the spectrum of weights within a litter (Donovan and Dritz 2000). Many studies show the benefits of colostrum for gut development, as an energy source for thermoregulation of the newborn piglet, a substrate for protein synthesis, and a passive supply of protection against enteric pathogens (Le Dividich and Noblet 1981). Collectively, these functions are important in establishing the pig during lactation and, ultimately, after weaning.

**Supplementary Feeding during Lactation**

Many studies have investigated the effects of “creep” feeding (i.e., offering a solid diet) during lactation on weaning weight and performance thereafter (reviewed by Pluske et al. 1995; King and Pluske 2003). The major argument for offering suckling piglets supplementary food during lactation is to counteract the growing gap between the piglet’s energy requirements and sow milk production as lactation advances. For example, Harrell et al. (1993) calculated that the supply of sow’s milk probably begins to limit piglet growth at about 10 days of age and that the sow would need to produce an additional 18 kg of milk per day by day 21 of lactation to support equivalent piglet growth rates. This is clearly not possible. A further argument, although one that is less convincing, is that the consumption of creep feed prepares the gastrointestinal tract for the digestion of complex carbohydrates and plant protein that will be supplied after weaning. However, Chapple et al. (1989) reported that the variation in amylolytic activity in the pancreas of piglets was more a function of the sow (litter of origin) than of the intake of solid feed during lactation and immediately after weaning. Lindemann et al. (1986) and de Passille et al. (1989) found that pepsin and maltase activities in the gastrointestinal tract could not be related to weaning weight or to the duration of creep feeding during lactation. More recently, Bruininx et al. (2002b) reported the lack of any association between creep feed intake before weaning and gut structure at 5 days after weaning.

Finally, creep feeding has been said to familiarize piglets to solid feed so that the transition at weaning will be less stressful, but again, there is no robust evidence to support this sentiment. For instance, Kuller et al. (2004) conducted a study in which sows were either (a) intermittently suckled (IS) for 12 hours/day starting from day 11 to encourage their piglets to become familiar with creep feed before weaning and eat more of it during lactation, or (b) continuously suckled (CS), over a 27-day lactation. They found that although IS piglets consumed more creep feed during and after lactation than CS piglets, their bodyweights were the same by the seventh day after weaning.

**Creep Feed Intake.** In spite of the large body of evidence dealing with supplementary feeding, evidence to support the notion that supplying pigs with dry creep food during lactation will improve preweaning and postweaning growth performance is equivocal. Pluske et al. (1995) and Brooks and Tsourgiannis (2003) reviewed a number of studies presented in the literature and found an enormous variation in the intake of creep-fed piglets. Pluske et al. (1995) calculated that the contribution of creep feed to daily energy intake prior to weaning at 21–35 days of age ranged from 1.2–17.4%. Lawlor et al. (2002a) more recently confirmed this level of contribution to overall energy intake of the piglet. The intake of dry creep food during lactation is generally small and variable and unlikely to significantly influence weaning weight, particularly in piglets weaned at 3 weeks of age or younger (King and Pluske 2003). However, Appleby et al. (1991) reported that creep feed intake during a 27-day lactation was enhanced when piglets were provided a feeder with eight spaces compared to two spaces, and that piglets that ate more solid feed before weaning gained more weight in the 14 days after weaning. In spite of this, pigs with the higher intake were also heavier at birth, thereby confounding the effects. In another study, Appleby et al. (1992) found an inverse relationship between birth weight and creep feeding behavior, but by 42 days of age there was no difference in body weight between the groups.

Notwithstanding the positive responses of creep feeding observed in some studies, the literature suggests that growth rate after weaning is often poorly related to the intake of creep food before weaning (Barnett et al. 1989; Pajor et al. 1991; Fraser et al. 1994). Creep feed consumption varies tremenously both within litters and between litters. Fraser et al. (1994) estimated that creep feed intake accounted for only 1–4% of the variation in bodyweight gain in piglets in their first 14 days following 28-day weaning, even though there were significant litter effects on the intake of dry feed during lactation. Pluske et al. (1995) and King and Pluske (2003) commented that there is a highly significant effect, 30–60% of the total variance, of litter on weaning weight and subsequent postweaning performance. This indicates that one or more factors before weaning are having a major influence on both weaning weight and subsequent growth rate, with both prenatal and postnatal components likely having an effect. Rooke et al. (1998) reported that the relative importance of these events was 3:1 in favor of the prenatal effects, begging the question of where one begins to investigate the phenomenon of variation in pig weights. These issues currently remain largely unresolved.

One possible reason for the discrepancy seen between published studies is the methodology used to as-
scess intake of creep feed. The consumption of creep feed has generally been measured on either a litter basis or on an individual piglet basis, where litter consumption of the diet is divided by the number of piglets in the litter to achieve a per piglet consumption. The latter method of expression is erroneous because piglets in the same litter will not all consume the same amount of creep feed. In a unique experimental approach, Bruininx and colleagues (2002b) in The Netherlands used fecal Cr₂O₃ as a marker for classifying piglets as “good,” “moderate,” or “non” eaters of creep feed during lactation. Using this approach, in conjunction with computerized feeding stations that recorded individual feed intake after weaning, Bruininx et al. (2002b) found that pigs classed as “good eaters” preweaning showed less time between weaning and first feed intake compared to the other groups, and consumed more feed in the first 8 days after weaning. By day 34 after weaning the effect of greater creep feed consumption during the lactation period on feed intake was less pronounced, although daily gain was still higher. The methodology used in this study indicated that some individual pigs eat more than others after weaning because of their higher preweaning consumption of dry feed.

In this regard some pork producers, especially those weaning later than 21 days of age, continue to offer high-quality creep diets to suckling pigs irrespective of the general lack of effects seen at the litter level. In some countries, such as Sweden and Denmark, where weaning age is now 28 days of age or greater and the use of growth-promoting antibiotics and antimicrobial agents such as zinc oxide are banned or strictly regulated, the importance of enhancing the intake of solid feed before weaning is not questioned, and is receiving renewed attention.

**Liquid Diets to Enhance Feed Intake Before and After Weaning.** In contrast to the generally equivocal results reported with the intake of dry creep feed, providing young pigs with liquid feed, either dry diets in a gruel/slurry form or milk liquid diets, would appear to offer more promise as a management tool to increase both weaning weight and postweaning performance. Brooks and Tsourgiannis (2003) argued that in view of the problems the piglet usually encounters in discriminating between hunger and thirst in the immediate postweaning period, then offering a liquid diet has three potential advantages:

1. It provides a diet with a dry matter content more akin to that of sow’s milk.
2. It can provide a diet more closely matched to the piglets’ needs for nutrients and water.
3. It overcomes some of the issues piglets face in having to learn to satisfy drives for both hunger and thirst.

The feeding of a solid diet in gruel/slurry form allows piglets to associate feed and water together, which in turn could enhance dry matter intake. Toplis et al. (1999) stimulated piglets to consume an average of 374 g/day of gruel (1:2 meal to water ratio) in the last 10 days of a 24-day lactation; yet they weighed 0.2 kg less than piglets allowed to only suck the sow. This practice, however, stimulated performance after weaning, with gruel-fed pigs growing 150% faster (150 vs. 49 g/day) than piglets that ate no creep feed during lactation, and they grew 30% faster (416 vs. 317 g/day) for 5 weeks after weaning. Lawlor et al. (2002b) found no consistent effects of feeding liquid feed or acidified liquid feed to pigs weaned at 28 days of age, while Le Dividich et al. (unpublished data) showed superior performance of 28-day-old weaned pigs fed liquid diets using a programmable, automated liquid feeder. However, long-term advantages of the system on performance were not seen. From a limited number of studies it would appear that benefits derived from feeding weaner diets in liquid (gruel/slurry) form are equivocal.

Many more studies have investigated feeding milk replacer diets to young pigs. For example, Reale (1987) offered cow’s whole milk to piglets from 10.00 h each day, adding fresh milk every 2 hours until 23.00 h, from day 7 to day 28 of lactation. Growth was stimulated by 151 g/day (71%) in the fourth week of lactation and by 87 g/day from day 7 to 28. This practice increased weaning weight by 1.8 kg in comparison to controls that were offered a dry creep feed. King et al. (1998) found that piglets offered liquid skim milk powder from day 5 of lactation were 1.6 kg heavier at weaning at 28 days of age than piglets that received no supplemental nutrients. In addition, piglets appeared to still prefer milk from the sow, because the supply of supplemental milk did not reduce the amount of milk that the piglet obtained directly from the sow.

King and Pluske (2003) reviewed a number of studies and reported a weight advantage of 11–35% at weaning in favor of offering a liquid milk replacer during lactation. Heo et al. (1999) reported that 14-day-old weaned piglets fed a liquid milk replacer achieved a growth rate of 470 g/day in the first 7 days after weaning. Kim et al. (2001) showed that feeding 11-day-old weaned piglets a liquid milk replacer through an automated milk machine for the first 14 days after weaning significantly increased weight at 28 days of age by 1.62 kg. This growth advantage was maintained to market weight with no evidence of compensatory gain in the dry-fed control pigs, with the liquid-fed pigs reaching market weight 3.7 days earlier than the dry-fed pigs. These results demonstrate the potential benefit of additional nutrients on weaning weight and a clear benefit of supplemental milk replacer to increase weaning weight. However, Armstrong and Clawson (1980) failed to stimulate growth in piglets offered liquid milk replacer during a 21-day lactation, perhaps suggesting that the sow was providing sufficient milk.

The use of a liquid milk replacer during the weaning
period has also been shown to reduce the severity and extent of the growth check. Dunhea et al. (1997) attempted to alleviate the postweaning growth check by providing extra milk around the time of weaning. Pigs provided with liquid milk replacer, in addition to access to dry starter feed, gained 1.2 kg during the first week after weaning, whereas pigs that received only dry starter feed gained 0.4 kg in the same period. Supply of a liquid milk replacer to piglets both before weaning and in the first week after weaning had an additive effect; pigs that received liquid milk replacer before and after weaning were 10% heavier at 120 days of age than pigs that suckled the sow only and were weaned onto dry starter feed (Dunsea et al. 1997). Much of this improvement was most likely attributable to the extra nutrient intake from supplemental milk replacer prior to and immediately after weaning.

It would appear that offering newly weaned pigs a liquid milk replacer offers the best potential for overcoming the postweaning decline in dry matter intake that occurs and hence increasing growth rate after weaning. Liquid feeding milk-based diets however can be labor intensive and hygiene must be adhered to for the practice to be successful.

Large-Scale Liquid Feeding and Fermented Liquid Feeding for Weanling Pigs. Large-scale, fully automated liquid feeding systems are used commonly throughout the world to feed growing and finishing pigs, especially to take advantage of cheaper co-products and by-products and modulate the bacterial environment in the fermentation vessel and in the pig. Liquid feeding on a similar scale for weaner pigs has met with less success, largely because of problems in maintaining the feed in a palatable and fresh manner, higher labor costs, poor feed hygiene, and feed wastage, particularly in the first week after weaning. Nevertheless, recent technological advances in liquid feeding, a trend for later weaning ages, a greater understanding of fermentation kinetics and the way fermented feed can modulate the gastrointestinal microbiota (e.g., Jensen and Mikkelsen 1998), and some convincing data showing marked improvements in dry matter intake and daily gain (e.g., Russell et al. 1996) offer exciting opportunities for managing the weanling pig in order to improve production and minimize enteric disturbances.

Use of Flavors in Diets
Research has been conducted in an attempt to increase weaning weight and reduce the growth check after weaning by using various sweeteners and aromatic compounds to increase feed consumption (reviewed by Brooks and Tsourgiannis 2003; King and Pluske 2003). Results have generally been variable. Campbell (1976) added a feed flavor into a creep diet and failed to increase creep food consumption or weaning weight, but unexpectedly the pigs that had been weaned from sows given a flavored diet and then given a flavored diet after weaning consumed more feed, particularly in the first 2 weeks after weaning. King (1979) confirmed this interaction on feed intake after weaning and also demonstrated that when the flavor was added to the sow diet, it was detected in milk samples collected from those sows. Madsen (1977) indicated that feed preferences could be transferred from lactating sows to their litter by incorporating a nonmetabolizable substance into both the lactating sow diet and the diet offered to piglets after weaning. Any positive effects of feed flavors observed in young pigs are more likely to be due to this transference of feed preferences via flavors incorporated in sow’s milk, or by masking unacceptable tastes to improve the palatability of the creep feed (King and Pluske 2003).

In some regions of the world it is common practice to include flavors/sweeteners in commercial diets for young pigs, both before and after weaning, and various manufacturers actively promote their inclusion in diets. There is very little, if any, peer-reviewed published information relating to the use of flavors/sweeteners and their effects on production before and after weaning, although their continued use in diets suggests they are perceived to be of some benefit.

NUTRITION, NUTRITIONAL MANAGEMENT, AND THE IMPORTANCE OF WATER IN THE POSTWEANING PERIOD

Many review articles, peer-reviewed papers, popular press articles, and book chapters have been written on different aspects of nutrition and nutritional management of the weanling pig. Some of the more recent and comprehensive articles include those by Nelsens et al. (1999), Mavromichalis and Varley (2003) and Tokach et al. (2003). It is not our intention to reiterate this information; however, the principles of a successful nutritional program for the weanling pig will differ around the world according to a variety of factors, such as weaning age, weaning weight as alluded to previously, ingredient availability and cost, physical environment (e.g., indoor pigs kept on fully slatted floors vs. outdoor pigs kept on deep litter), regulations (e.g., restrictions on the use of antimicrobial agents and animal proteins, if any), the system of weaning (e.g., multisite production vs. farrow to finish), method of feeding (e.g., dry diets vs. liquid diets), nutrition during lactation, sow feeding programs, and adoption or not of phase feeding after weaning. For example, Mavromichalis and Varley (2003) commented that in North America the focus after weaning is predominately on reducing production costs, especially for the large integrated operations, by feeding pigs the cheapest diets as soon as possible after weaning (e.g., a phase feeding program; Tokach et al. 2003), whereas the European approach is based more on achieving maximum growth performance and optimum health status after weaning. Consequently a suc-
cessful transition between lactation and weaning is a multifaceted process that must consider the entire pig production system of any particular enterprise, and not only nutrition.

Campbell (1989) argued that practical nutrition of the young pig at weaning is more of an art than a science and suggested that a dietary regimen that is highly successful and repeatable under research conditions may not apply to commercial practice. This comment presumably reflects the large number of factors that impinge and interact on the piglet at weaning, as outlined previously. Nevertheless, Williams (2003) remarked that high feed intake after weaning, and hence high growth rates, with minimal digestive disturbances can be achieved consistently only with high-density, highly digestible diets. Starter (link) diets are generally required to ease the transition from milk (high-fat, high-lactose) to plant-based diets that are much lower in fat and contain high levels of antinutritional factors, such as non-starch polysaccharides. Such diets generally need to contain high-quality animal products of milk origin, such as lactose, or products derived from blood. The younger the pig is at weaning the more important this becomes, and this is aptly demonstrated in recent data from Dunshea et al. (2002a). These authors offered piglets a weaner diet containing wheat (550 g/kg), Australian sweet lupins (50 g/kg), soybean meal (50 g/kg), meatmeal (66 g/kg), fishmeal (83 g/kg), skim milk (20 g/kg), blood meal (26 g/kg) and whey powder (100 g/kg), and weaned them at either 14 or 24 days of age. Pigs weaned at the older age gained weight during the first week after weaning; the younger pigs lost weight.

A key factor that has made weaning less problematic in the last 15 years, particularly when weaning at less than 16–18 days of age, is the use of specialized diets containing proteins derived from blood. Products from porcine blood, particularly porcine plasma, are mandatory for diets in parts of the world such as North America because they stimulate voluntary feed intake (Pluske et al. 1995; van Dijk et al. 2001; Tokach et al. 2003). The most favored explanation for this phenomenon is the presence of immunoglobulins, although the exact mechanism(s) of action is/are yet to be elucidated. However, because of the concern about feeding animal proteins to the same species and a ban on the use of plasma/blood proteins in the EU, there is interest in looking at other sources of milk proteins—for example, from cows—to see whether similar effects can be achieved in young pigs.

In New Zealand, Pluske et al. (1999) weaned pigs at 4 weeks of age and found that adding a spray-dried colostrum preparation (containing 150 g/kg IgG) at 50 g/kg diet stimulated food intake by 12% in the first week after weaning. They increased the amount to 10% and stimulated food intake by 25%. This extra food intake boosted growth by 40% and 80%, respectively, so that pigs on the highest level of colostrum grew in excess of 200 g/day in the first week after weaning. King et al. (2001) reported a 25% increase in voluntary food intake in the first 7 days postweaning by adding 60 g/kg of bovine colostrum to a diet after weaning, while Dunshea et al. (2002b) compared porcine and bovine plasma, bovine colostrum and commercially produced skim milk and found relatively little difference between the protein sources in the performance of pigs weaned at 14 days. However, Dunshea et al. (2002b) reported that their studies were conducted in a clean research environment, a factor thought critical in determining whether products such as porcine plasma prove efficacious after weaning (Coffey and Cromwell 1995). Grinstead et al. (2000) indicated that a high protein diet (780 g/kg) with whey protein concentrate provided pig performance comparable to animal plasma in weanling pig diets. More recently, Le Huérou-Luron et al. (2004) found a 22% increase in daily feed intake commensurate with a 33% increase in daily gain in pigs fed a bovine colostrum preparation in the first week after weaning. It appears, therefore, that high-quality proteins based on colostrum/milk stimulate growth in the immediate postweaning period in a way analogous to porcine plasma, and depending on prevailing price and availability, could be used in regions of the world where blood products are banned or restricted in their use.

After the initial phase after weaning, however, plant proteins such as soybean meal, rapeseed meal, peas, beans, and lupins generally form an increasing percentage of diets to minimize the cost per unit gain.

Feeding Management after Weaning
A successful nutritional regimen is one that encourages newly weaned pigs to commence eating as soon as possible after weaning, usually by offering feed on an ad libitum basis, while minimizing feed wastage, simply because diets fed in the immediate postweaning period are expensive. In this chapter, strategies that can be used before and after weaning to promote weight gain have already been discussed, and the intention here is to examine more practical ways to ensure piglets make a good start after weaning. In this regard, Tokach et al. (2003) remarked that the two major keys in management of the feed program are (i) a proper management protocol to encourage feed intake, and (ii) correct adjustment of feeders to reduce wastage.

Mat Feeding after Weaning. Supplying feed on temporary mats and (or) in small trays for several days after weaning has been shown to improve feed intake and growth rate (Mavromichalis and Varley 2003), provided correct management is adhered to. This generally includes adopting a “little but often” feeding policy (100–150 g feed/pig/day in 3–4 feeding episodes) and removing stale and fouled feed regularly. Feed must concurrently be available in self-feeders. Dritz et al. (1996) commented on the importance of trained staff in iden-
tifying “starve out” pigs and then managing them properly, for example, by teaching them how to eat. Mavromichalis and Varley (2003) remarked that pellets and blends of pellets with mash (meal) are best because pigs tend to waste more pellets if they are fed alone. Beattie et al. (1999) attempted to increase feed intake after weaning by providing wet feed in a trough in the pen for 5 days after weaning, and although intake was increased, there were no long-term effects on production. Beattie et al. (1999) remarked that the trough containing wet feed incurred additional labor costs.

Management of the Feeder. Proper adjustment of feeders is a labor- and time-consuming process but is key to good feed efficiency and hence lower feed cost per unit gain. Feed wastage is notoriously difficult to measure or estimate, although Mavromichalis and Varley (2003) estimated wastage of 5–7% in properly managed feeders. Mavromichalis and Varley (2003) and Tokach et al. (2003) recommended that the adjustment gate in the feeder must be closed before filling it with feed, because placing pelleted feed into an empty feeder with the adjustment gate open could increase wastage and cause subsequent problems in proper feeder adjustment.

Tokach et al. (2003) recommended managing the flow of feed into the feeder pan to stimulate the development of feeding behavior by allowing only 50% of the pan to be visible in the first few days after weaning. Mavromichalis and Varley (2003) recommended a 66% coverage with feed. Too much feed in the pan can cause the build-up of fines, leading to blockages. Regardless, as pigs become accustomed to feeding, the amount of feed in the pan can be gradually reduced—for example, to 25–33%, which reduces wastage and reinforces feeding behavior. Care also needs to be taken of feeding pellets or mash (meal) because mash diets, particularly if high in milk products, tend to bridge feeders more than pellets. Mavromichalis and Varley (2003) suggested that observing pigs and looking for wastage underneath the pens and around the feeder were the best ways to assess wastage, and that environmental conditions, such as higher humidity, can cause feed to stick to gate openings. The build-up of fines should also be avoided.

The Importance of Water Intake after Weaning
Voluntary or involuntary deprivation of water in the period after weaning can have dire consequences for piglet physiology, health, and performance. Gill (1989), for example, showed that it could take more than a week after weaning for piglets to restore their daily fluid intake to preweaning levels. There are important behavioral components associated with water intake after weaning that presumably influence the extent and volume of water consumed after weaning. Brooks and Tsourgiannis (2003) explained that sucking pigs have been conditioned to consume milk to satisfy their needs for volumetric “fill,” and in the early postweaning period may fail to distinguish between the separate drives for hunger and thirst. Having been conditioned to a liquid milk diet, newly weaned piglets may mistakenly believe that water is also a source of nutrients.

Part of the reason for low water intake after weaning is most likely related to piglets’ having to locate and use the drinker. There is no convincing evidence that familiarization with water and drinkers before weaning enhances water intake and performance after weaning. Even after weaning, using a drip to try and encourage water consumption has proven largely unsuccessful (Ogunbameru et al. 1991). Rather, factors such as drinker design, placement, height, cleanliness, and number of drinkers per pen have been cited as influencing water intake.

Unfortunately, published data relating these factors to water consumption and then to postweaning performance are both scarce and contradictory. Drinkers placed at an incorrect height and angle or in an appropriate part of the pen will discourage intake of water and could promote its wastage. For example, Gill (1989) showed differences in daily gain and water efficiency use after weaning between drinker types. Torrey and Widowski (2004) demonstrated in 15-day-old weaned piglets that providing water via drinker bowls caused higher apparent feed intake in the first 2 days after weaning and that pigs spent less time engaged in drinking behavior, compared to pigs using a nipple drinker. Overall water use was also lower in piglets drinking from bowls. Pigs allowed access to bowl drinkers also spent less time belly-nosing. Horvath et al. (2000) reported that for the subsequent 8 weeks, piglets weaned at 35 days of age drank more water from a trough placed in each pen versus a nipple drinker. In contrast, Phillips and Phillips (1999) offered water to piglets from a number of dispenser options (nipple, float-controlled bowl with contents replaced daily with fresh water, float-controlled bowl that was not cleaned, or a nipple and float-controlled bowl cleaned daily). They found no differences in performance in the first 4 days after weaning, although they did report lower water intake from nipples on the first day following weaning and more wastage. Anecdotally, the use of bell-shaped turkey drinkers that are placed directly onto the floor of the pen after weaning have purportedly shown good results in terms of both water and feed intake (Brooks and Tsourgiannis 2003).

The rate and velocity of water delivered by the drinker have also been shown to influence feed intake and growth after weaning. Barber et al. (1989) reported a positive correlation between water delivery rate (175–700 ml/min) and voluntary feed intake after weaning, although Celis (1996; cited by Brooks and Tsourgiannis 2003) reported no improvement in performance with an increase in flow rate from 70–700 ml/min in piglets weaned at 28 days of age. Such differences between studies are difficult to explain, but they are
likely related to factors such as drinker design, the number of drinkers and pigs per pen, water quality, drinker cleanliness, and the type of diet(s) fed to pigs. Brooks and Tsourgiannis (2003) remarked, however, that the amount of feed the piglet eats after weaning is determined by the amount of water that it consumes and not the reverse, and so strategies that promote water intake, albeit variable such as the use of sweeteners, can have a positive effect on feed intake after weaning.

FACTORS RELATED TO THE PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT

Another important consideration regarding management of the weanling pig is the pen structure, which includes flooring materials, feeder and waterer designs, stocking density, and group size. Madec et al. (2003) recently conducted an extensive review of these factors; however, some points require reiteration. Additionally, aspects of the environmental requirements of pigs are covered elsewhere in this book (see Chapter 64).

Feeder Space and Feeder Location

Conventional understanding says that nursery pigs should have sufficient feeder space that allows at least half the pigs in a pen to eat at any one time. In practice this “rule” varies enormously and is not necessarily adhered to. For example, Pluske and Williams (1996c) reported no differences in production indexes in the 28 days after weaning when pigs were offered feed from either a linear trough or a single-space feeder. Laitat et al. (1999) reported similar results comparing a tubetype feeder, allowing piglets to mix feed and water, to a conventional feeder where drinking and water places were separated. Baxter (1989) presented an equation incorporating bodyweight and shoulder width that described the minimum feeding space a pig needs, with a pig weighing 10 kg requiring a minimum feeder space of 13 cm. Commercially, however, this rule is not necessarily followed, particularly in outdoor hoops where feeding behavior patterns can vary dramatically to those for indoor-housed pigs (Morrison et al. 2003b).

In a comprehensive study investigating the interaction between feeder location and group size, Wolter et al. (2000a) used 1,760 17-day-old weaned pigs to examine the effects of three pen designs on pig performance. The designs were (a) large group size (100 pigs/pen) with five two-sided feeders in a single, central location in the pen, (b) large group size (100 pigs/pen) with five two-sided feeders in multiple (five) locations in the pen, and (c) small group size (20 pigs/pen) with a single two-sided feeder in a single central location in the pen. Each feeder provided two 20.3 cm–wide feeding places on each side, and for all treatments, feeder trough space (4 cm/pig) and floor space (0.17 m²) were the same. A slight yet significant reduction in growth performance (15 g/day) was found due to increased group size, but the approach to providing multiple feeding locations had no effect on production indexes.

Stocking Density

Floor space per pig is usually based on the space required for sternum and fully recumbent resting positions. Using various prediction equations, literature data, and commercial experience on perforated flooring, the current recommendations are 0.25–0.30 m² per pig between 5 and 30 kg bodyweight, with pigs on bedded solid floors requiring 20–25% more space (Madec et al. 2003). Extensive housing systems such as hoops on deep litter systems generally provide a more generous space allowance, although there is a dearth of information in this general area relating to the weanling pig.

In a series of studies Wolter et al. (2002b; 2003a, b) investigated the interactive effects of stocking density, feeder trough space, and diet complexity with large numbers of pigs. They reported that although performances to 10–12 weeks after weaning were initially negatively affected by increasing stocking density, reducing feeder space, and feeding a less complex diet, subsequent performances to slaughter at 25 weeks of age were largely unaffected. For example, Wolter et al. (2003b) found that pigs with restricted growth due to low floor space (0.32 m² vs. 0.63 m²) until either 12 or 14 weeks after weaning showed increased growth rate and feed efficiency in the subsequent period to slaughter at 25 weeks postweaning, with only a slight effect on bodyweight and no effect on carcass measures.

Group Size

The optimum group size for maximum performance and efficient feed conversion in the postweaning period is always an area of controversy and interest, particularly in view of the tendency in some countries toward large group sizes (>250 pigs) in outdoor-based, deep-litter housing systems that do not adhere to conventional group size–performance dynamics, as originally proposed by Kornegay and Notter (1984). Moreover, increased group size is sometimes confounded with a decrease in stocking density, so caution needs to be adopted when interpreting data.

In a recent study, Wolter et al. (2000b) used 1,920 weaned piglets weighing 5.3 kg in a 2 x 2 factorially designed study to investigate the effects of group size (20 vs. 100 pigs) and floor-space allowance (calculated requirement vs. calculated requirement minus 50% of free space) on performance after weaning. These authors reported that large groups and reduced floor-space allowance reduced postweaning performance, with pigs in large groups also showing a greater within-pen coefficient of variation in bodyweight at 9 weeks of age. The extent of the difference in bodyweight after 9 weeks of age was less than 5%. In contrast, O’Connell et al. (2001) found no difference in the performance of weaners from 4–10 weeks of age when grouped in pens of 10, 20, 30,
CONCLUSIONS
The first weeks after weaning are regarded as being crucial in the pork production cycle because they represent a period of adaptation and stress on the young pig. Differences in weaning age, and weaning, housing, and feeding practices worldwide, make it difficult to make blanket recommendations for successful feeding management after weaning. However, nutritional and management strategies should be adopted that minimize the stress response and encourage piglets to consume dry matter as soon as possible after the weaning event. A myriad of factors occur that can influence the subsequent performance of pigs and the variability of body-weight gain. Bodyweight at weaning appears to have a major influence on subsequent production indexes; however, the manner in which a pig becomes heavier at weaning—for example, through having a higher birth weight or consuming supplemental nutrients during lactation—appears also to affect postweaning performance. Consequently, responses to various feeding strategies tend to be variable. Supplementation of piglets before and around weaning with liquid milk diets appears to offer the greatest potential to stimulate preweaning growth rate and to eliminate the postweaning check.

REFERENCES


Le Dividich J, Martineau GP, Madec F, Orgerre P. 2003. Saving and rearing underprivileged and supernumerary piglets, and improving their health at weaning. In The Weaner Pig: Concepts and


The main aim in managing growing-finishing pigs is the efficient production of high quality pork meat while considering animal well-being and the potential negative impact of pig production on the environment. With the move toward larger growing-finishing pig units, the impact of relatively minor improvements in production efficiencies will have substantial impact on overall profitability. The main determinant of pork meat production efficiency is lean tissue growth, the accretion rate of dissectible muscle in the pig’s body. The pigs’ lean tissue growth potential is ultimately under genetic control, and the expression of the pig’s lean tissue growth potential is determined by environmental factors such as the presence of disease causing organisms, animal density, the effective environmental temperature, and feeding management. Because feed represents the single biggest cost factor in commercial pork production, close attention should be paid to the development of effective feeding programs and the amount of feed that is consumed by growing-finishing pigs. In this chapter, the importance of accurate production records and monitoring growth and feed intake patterns of growing-finishing pigs is presented briefly. Feeding management and other important aspects of growing-finishing pig management are then addressed.

**PRODUCTION RECORDS AND PRODUCTION OBJECTIVES**

Both for making meaningful management decisions and to ensure that changes in management result in the anticipated changes in pig performance accurate production data need to be collected. The move towards all-in/all-out production systems has made data collection easier and more accurate. As a minimum the following data is required: cost per feeder pig placed in the barn, number and average body weight of pigs entering the barn and shipped for slaughter, mortality, number of pigs culled or sold as a lightweight pig, total feed usage, average carcass weight and carcass lean yield, and average carcass value. This will allow for calculation of average daily gain, feed efficiency, feed costs per pig, and a simple estimate of gross margin per pig. The latter can be calculated as carcass value over feed costs and cost of feeder pigs. These production parameters can be adjusted to a common basis such as a constant initial and final body weight and diet nutrient density, which allows for comparison to reasonable production targets (Table 66.1; Tokach and de Lange 2001). Additional useful information relates to seasonal effects on the aforementioned performance parameters, downtime between groups of pigs and variability in final body weight and carcass characteristics. This additional information can serve as a basis for seasonal adjustments to management, to assess space utilization and to relate variation in carcass characteristics to average carcass value and profitability.

An important consideration in managing growing-finishing pig units is the value of average daily gain and barn throughput. When the supply of feeder pigs is unlimited, gross margin per pig may be compromised—for example, by feeding ractopamine to increase preslaughter growth rates or shipping pigs somewhat lighter to optimize gross margin and profit per pig place per year. On the other hand, when the supply of feeder pigs is limited, the production objective in commercial growing-finishing pig units should be to optimize gross margin and profit per pig. In addition, in areas where the potential negative impact of pigs’ production on the environment is a concern, reducing nitrogen and phosphorus excretion with manure or controlling the release of odorous compounds from the pig facility should be considered (de Lange 2004). The aforementioned production records allow for benchmarking and some changes to management of growing-finishing pigs. However, to optimize production efficiencies, profits, and nitrogen and phosphorus utilization within individual pig units, more detailed information on lean tissue growth and feed intake patterns is required.
In growing-finishing pigs, lean tissue growth is closely related to daily gain, feed efficiency, and carcass quality (Schinckel 1994; Table 66.2). Furthermore, lean tissue growth gain is closely related to body protein deposition, the main determinant of dietary amino acid requirements and one of the main determinants of dietary energy requirements (NRC 1998; Schinckel et al. 2002). Across groups of pigs, muscle or lean tissue represents between 28 and 60% of the pigs’ body weight (Gu et al. 1992; Quiniou and Noblet 1995). The other main body tissues include visceral organs, fat, integument and bones (de Lange et al. 2001b). The relationships between lean tissue, visceral organs, integument and bones are relatively constant. Therefore, variation in body lean content between groups of pigs is largely influenced by the amount of fat tissue, which can vary between 12 and 30% of the pigs’ body weight. Dissectible lean tissue in growing pigs contains about 72% water, 20% protein, and the remainder is made up of lipid, minerals, and some carbohydrates. In contrast, fat tissue contains more than 85% lipid. To minimize feeding costs and optimize carcass value it is thus in the pork producers’ interest to optimize carcass lean content in slaughter pigs. Unfortunately, definitions and methods to quantify carcass lean tissue content and lean tissue growth in pigs can vary considerably between countries and individual pig slaughter facilities. For example, the lean tissue content of pigs may be standardized to a fat-free lean tissue content. Alternatively, the trimmed belly that contains fat tissue as well as lean tissue may be considered part of body lean content. Therefore, it is probably more appropriate and objective to characterize groups of pigs in terms of whole body protein deposition rates (Table 66.2). According to NRC (1998) in the United States fat-free lean tissue can be calculated as body protein deposition \( \times 2.55 \), but this relationship is likely to vary with pig type and body weight range. The mean average fat-free lean tissue growth rate for groups of growing-finishing pigs may vary between 200 and 450 g/day (NRC 1998; de Lange et al. 2001a).

Estimates of average lean tissue gain for individual groups of growing-finishing pigs may be derived from the average initial and final body weight, the number of days required to grow pigs from initial to final body weight, carcass dressing percentage, and the carcass lean tissue content. Given the relatively low variation in lean tissue content of feeder pigs entering the growing-finishing barn the fat-free lean content of feeder pigs may be estimated from live body weight (NRC 1998).

For the estimation of the pigs’ optimum slaughter weight and for the development of the effective multiple phase-feeding programs, the change in lean tissue growth (and feed intake) with increasing body weight needs to be considered as well. In general, there are three segments to a typical lean tissue growth curve. During the early stages of growth, generally up to about 50 kg body weight, the daily lean tissue growth rate increases. Between approximately 50 and 80 kg body weight the daily lean tissue growth rate is relatively constant. Thereafter, the daily lean tissue growth rate starts to gradually decline towards zero when the pigs’ mature body weight has been reached. The weight at which pigs are slaughtered generally coincides with the weight at which the daily lean tissue growth rate starts to decline substantially.

Lean tissue growth curves can be established using three different methods: (1) Calculate the average lean tissue growth over the entire growing-finishing periods, as indicated above, and combine this with a standard lean gain curve shape to establish the actual lean gain curves. This is the easiest method and is used in NRC (1998) to estimate nutrient requirements of pigs at the various stages of growth. This is also the least preferred

### Table 66.1. Feed to gain targets for growing-finishing pigs consuming corn-soybean meal-based diets.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry BW, kg</th>
<th>Market BW, kg</th>
<th>Meal Diets</th>
<th>Pelleted Diets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>2.92 2.63</td>
<td>2.74 2.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>2.97 2.67</td>
<td>2.79 2.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3.02 2.72</td>
<td>2.84 2.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>2.97 2.67</td>
<td>2.79 2.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>3.02 2.72</td>
<td>2.84 2.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3.07 2.76</td>
<td>2.89 2.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>3.02 2.72</td>
<td>2.84 2.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>3.07 2.76</td>
<td>2.89 2.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3.12 2.81</td>
<td>2.93 2.64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Derived from Tokach and de Lange (2001). The values may be adjusted for diets with energy densities that differ from that in a typical corn-soybean meal–based diet (3400 kcal DE/kg), by multiplying the values by 3400 ÷ (actual diet DE content).

\( \text{BW} = \text{body weight.} \)

### Table 66.2. Impact of fat-free lean tissue growth potential on growth performance of growing-finishing pigs between 25 and 110 kg body weight.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lean Tissue Growth Potential</th>
<th>High</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Unimproved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fat-free lean tissue growth potential, g/day</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum body protein deposition rate, g/day</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average daily gain, g</td>
<td>842</td>
<td>794</td>
<td>743</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed: gain, g/g</td>
<td>2.66</td>
<td>2.82</td>
<td>3.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dressing percentage, %2</td>
<td>79.1</td>
<td>79.4</td>
<td>79.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean yield, %2</td>
<td>60.7</td>
<td>59.0</td>
<td>57.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Derived from de Lange et al. (2001a). Diets contain 3400 kcal DE/kg and optimum levels of amino acids and other nutrients; feed intake is 90% of voluntary intake according to NRC (1998). A feed wastage of 3% is included.

2 Canadian carcass grading system.
method because it ignores differences in the shape of lean gain curves between different growing-finishing pig units. (2) Establish a growth curve by relating body weight versus time in the barn based on measurements on at least 40 pigs. To do so, make serial B-mode real-time ultrasound measurements at least four, preferably five, different body weights that are equally spread out over the entire growing-finishing phase on at least 40 pigs. The main sources of error in this approach are the inaccuracies of the real-time ultrasound measurements and the prediction of lean contents of real-time ultrasound measurements at the various body weights. Relationships between real-time ultrasound measurements and body lean content differ between lines of pigs (Hicks et al. 1998). (3) Establish a growth curve, based on at least four equally spread data points that relate body weight to the number of days in the barn and with observations from at least 40 pigs per data point. Combine this information with an actual feed intake curve and diet nutrient content and use mathematical models that represent nutrient utilization for growth to estimate whole body protein deposition (lean tissue growth) as well as whole body lipid deposition (de Lange et al. 2001a). This approach is sensitive to assumptions about maintenance energy requirements and to the accuracy of the feed intake curve.

Care should be taken with the interpretation of lean tissue growth curves. Various factors, including genotype, gender, environmental stresses (health status, crowding) and nutrient intake affect observed lean tissue growth rates. Lean tissue growth has a medium to high heritability and has received considerable attention in pig breeding strategies over the last years (Schinckel and de Lange 1996). In terms of gender, entire male pigs have a higher lean tissue growth potential than gilts, and barrows have the lowest lean tissue growth potential; the differences between genders varies with pig genotype (Schinckel 1994). The presence of subclinical levels of disease can reduce lean growth rates by more than 30% (Williams et al. 1997). Furthermore, lean tissue growth is generally affected by different factors at the various stages of growth. At lower body weights and when daily lean tissue growth are increasing with increasing body weight, lean tissue growth is generally determined by nutrient intake and most often energy intake. To estimate performance potentials of specific groups of growing-finishing pigs, ideally lean tissue growth curves will be established under conditions where nutrient intake is unlikely to limit lean tissue growth. However, because of environmental stressors pigs may not express their full performance potential under commercial conditions (Black et al. 1995). For practical management purposes, the pigs’ operation lean tissue growth potential may be considered, which represents the maximum lean tissue growth rates that pigs can achieve under commercial conditions. This implies that for a specific pig genotype the operation lean tissue growth potential may vary with environmental conditions, and the difference between the actual and operation lean tissue growth potential provides an indication of the ability of particular pig genotypes to deal with environmental stressors. Mathematical models that represent nutrient utilization for growth, such as the NRC (1998) model, may be used to identify whether nutrient intake affects lean tissue growth and to establish whether an increase in nutrient or energy intake would increase lean tissue growth.

Feed intake can have substantial impacts on animal performance, carcass quality, and profits. In growing pigs, up to approximately 50 kg live body weight, energy intake generally limits lean tissue growth. In these pigs the daily energy and feed intake should be maximized. Finishing pigs, especially those with medium or unimproved lean tissue growth potentials and consuming large quantities of feed, consume more energy than what is required for maximum lean tissue growth. In these pigs excessive body fat is deposited and as a result, carcass value is reduced. In finishing pigs with unimproved or average lean growth potentials, carcass value and feed efficiency can be improved by restricting the daily energy intake. It should be pointed out that as lean growth potentials continue to improve, energy intake is likely to determine lean growth rates up to higher body weights. The body weight at which pigs change from a grower pig, where energy intake limits lean growth, to a finisher pig, where energy intake no longer limits lean growth, remains to be determined for the various modern pig genotypes. At least three recent studies suggest that energy intake limits lean growth up to market weight (Schinckel and de Lange 1996).

Feed intakes can vary considerably between groups of pigs and are affected by a whole range of factors associated with the animal (body weight, gender, genotype, health), feed (diet energy density, nutrient imbalances, freshness, presence of toxins, processing), and environment (effective environmental temperature, pig density, feeder design location and management, quality and availability of water, etc.) (NRC 1987). Indeed the accurate prediction and control of voluntary feed intake in specific groups of pigs is one of the main challenges in commercial pork production. Theoretically the pig’s feed intake at a particular body weight may be predicted from the pigs’ body protein and body lipid deposition rates. This does require, however, accurate estimates of the lipid deposition in the pigs and assumptions about the pigs’ maintenance energy requirements (NRC 1987, 1998; Schinckel et al. 2002).

Increasingly on commercial farms feed intake is monitored in representative groups of growing-finishing pigs and the main factors that are known to influence voluntary feed intake are monitored as well: effective environmental temperature, pig health, feeder design and management, pig genotype, water, and feed quality. Reasonable feed intake curves can be established when
feed intake is measured accurately in representative monitoring pens over at least a 2-week period and at least three different stages of growth that are equally spread over the growing-finishing period (Schinckel and de Lange 1996). Per body weight range, feed intake and body weight data should be obtained from at least two feeders with at least 40 pigs per body weight range. The highest body weight range should be as close to market weight as possible. Relatively simple and inexpensive devises are now available to measure feed disappearance in individual feeders. As an alternative to measuring feed intake in representative monitoring pens, feed intake may be determined for an entire room or barn if these are managed on an all-in/all-out basis. The latter requires that feed deliveries and inventories, as well as the total number of pigs in inventory, be monitored accurately and frequently. Software packages are now becoming available to aid in collection and interpretation of feed intake data. An additional benefit of continuously monitoring feed intake and in particular water usage is that the onset of disease or changes in the pigs' environment can be identified early, allowing a fast response and reducing the long term impact of these stresses on animal productivity. However, closely monitoring feed and water usage is no substitute for daily inspection of pigs for normal growth, comfort and behavior.

Typical levels of feed intake, feed delivered minus feed wastage, of pigs managed under commercial conditions are about 90% of voluntary feed intake according to NRC (1998; Table 66.3) but may vary between 70 and 100% of NRC (1998). If feed intake levels are below average, check feed quality, feeder type and settings, water availability, environmental temperature, animal health, and pig genotype. Poor feeder designs or improper adjustments of feeders can result in substantial feed intake restrictions or substantial feed wastage (Gonyou and Lou 2000). The effect of gender on feed intake differs between pig genotypes; it may be between 3 and 15% higher in barrows than in gilts, and the gender effect increases with body weight (Schinckel 1994).

**FEEDING MANAGEMENT**

**Establishing Optimum Dietary Nutrient and Energy Intake Levels**

Energy, lysine, threonine, other amino acids, and phosphorus contribute generally to more than 80% of the dietary nutrient costs and deserve special consideration when formulating pig diets. However, in some situations specific feed additives that provide health or environmental benefits can increase feed costs substantially. The value of additives should be questioned regularly, considering nonnutritional means to deal with health and environmental issues, solid scientific evidence to support efficacy of feed additives, and costs. The impact of some feed additives, such as synthetic lysine and phytase, on nutrient excretion with manure and feed costs has been amply demonstrated (NRC 1998); for other feed additives the cost effectiveness is not established.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body Weight Range, kg</th>
<th>Average Daily Gain, g</th>
<th>Daily Feed Intake, kg</th>
<th>Feed:Gain</th>
<th>Cumulative Feed Usage, kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Marginal</td>
<td>Cumulative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25–30</td>
<td>679</td>
<td>679</td>
<td>1.337</td>
<td>1.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30–35</td>
<td>728</td>
<td>703</td>
<td>1.518</td>
<td>2.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35–40</td>
<td>769</td>
<td>724</td>
<td>1.683</td>
<td>2.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40–45</td>
<td>804</td>
<td>742</td>
<td>1.835</td>
<td>2.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45–50</td>
<td>834</td>
<td>759</td>
<td>1.974</td>
<td>2.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50–55</td>
<td>858</td>
<td>774</td>
<td>2.101</td>
<td>2.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55–60</td>
<td>878</td>
<td>787</td>
<td>2.218</td>
<td>2.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60–65</td>
<td>893</td>
<td>799</td>
<td>2.324</td>
<td>2.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65–70</td>
<td>905</td>
<td>809</td>
<td>2.422</td>
<td>2.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70–75</td>
<td>912</td>
<td>819</td>
<td>2.511</td>
<td>2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75–80</td>
<td>916</td>
<td>827</td>
<td>2.593</td>
<td>2.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80–85</td>
<td>916</td>
<td>834</td>
<td>2.668</td>
<td>2.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85–90</td>
<td>913</td>
<td>839</td>
<td>2.737</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90–95</td>
<td>907</td>
<td>844</td>
<td>2.800</td>
<td>3.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95–100</td>
<td>897</td>
<td>847</td>
<td>2.858</td>
<td>3.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100–105</td>
<td>884</td>
<td>849</td>
<td>2.910</td>
<td>3.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105–110</td>
<td>868</td>
<td>850</td>
<td>2.959</td>
<td>3.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110–115</td>
<td>848</td>
<td>850</td>
<td>3.003</td>
<td>3.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115–120</td>
<td>826</td>
<td>849</td>
<td>3.044</td>
<td>3.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Growth follows the Bridges function (Schinckel and de Lange 1996), and feed intake is equivalent to 90% of voluntary daily feed intake according to NRC (1998). Marginal average daily gain represents growth over the specific 5 kg body weight range. Cumulative average daily gain represents average daily gain from 25 kg body weight. Daily feed intakes and feed usage may be adjusted for changes in diet digestible energy content (Table 66.1).
clearly or does not vary considerably between pig units. Moreover, feed additives, and medication in particular, that are used to treat specific disease problems too often continue to be included in the diet after the problem has disappeared.

The optimum energy content of pig diets will vary with the cost of the various energy yielding feed ingredients such as corn, fat, wheat, barley, and wheat shorts. A good starting point in feed formulation is to determine the dietary available energy content at which the cost per unit of available energy ($ per Mcal or KJ digestible energy) is the lowest, whereby the levels of all other essential nutrients are balanced against available energy. This is the dietary energy density that generally results in the lowest feed costs per kg of body weight gain. However, when throughput and average daily gain have economical value, increasing the energy density in the diet will have additional value. The latter applies in particular to growing pigs up to approximately 60 kg of body weight and to growing-finishing pigs that are under mild heat stress. In these two scenarios either the animals’ physical feed intake capacity or the animals’ capacity to lose body heat will limit pigs from reaching their desired available energy intake.

The optimum dietary levels of lysine, threonine, other amino acids, and phosphorus should be established based on the pigs’ body weight, operational lean tissue growth potential, feed intake level, and dietary energy density (Table 66.4). In addition, the body weight range over which subsequent diets are fed in phase-feeding programs and the marginal cost-benefit response may be considered, which requires the use of dynamic models that represent utilization of dietary nutrients for growth in the pig (Black et al. 1986; de Lange et al. 2001a). The importance of accurate estimates of feed intake and matching dietary feed intake and nutrient levels with pig performance potentials is demonstrated with the simulation results presented in Table 66.5.

These results indicate that the cost of suboptimal feeding programs can be very substantial. The data also suggest that pigs with unimproved lean gain potentials perform well when feed is restricted, and feed intake in pigs with improved lean gain potentials should be maximized.

To closely meet the nutrient requirements of specific groups of pigs the genders may be raised separately and different diets may be fed in sequence with increasing pig body weight. When multiple-phase and split-sex feeding concepts are applied, it is critical that the main factors that determine the optimum dietary available nutrient levels are identified at the various stages of growth and that animal productivity is closely monitored. Establishing feed budgets—i.e., determining the amount of each of the diets that need to be fed—provides an effective means to ensure that diets are switched at the proper time (see Table 66.3). Also, the use of an excessive number of diets in a phase-feeding program makes scheduling feed deliveries more difficult and increases the chance of errors. In general terms, separate feeding of barrows and gilts should be applied when three or more diets are used in a phase-feeding program. Moreover, it is important to realize that the incremental financial benefit of including an additional diet in a phase-feeding program diminishes with the number of diets that are used. For example, if the benefit of changing from feeding a single diet to a two-phase feeding program for growing-finishing pigs is $2.00 per pig, the benefit will be approximately $1.00, $0.50, and $0.25 per pig when the third, fourth, and fifth diet are introduced, respectively. The same principle applies to the impact of phase feeding on nitrogen and phosphorus excretion with manure.

**Feed Ingredient Sourcing and Feed Preparation**

The following aspects should be considered when sourcing pig feed ingredients: available nutrient content, vari-

---

**Table 66.4.** Estimated dietary requirements (%) for true ileal digestible lysine (Lys), true ileal digestible threonine (Thr), and available phosphorus (P) for different pigs with different fat-free lean tissue growth potentials at different levels of feed intake (90% and 80% of voluntary digestible energy intake according to NRC 1998) and at two different body weights.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fat-free Lean Tissue Growth Potential, g/day</th>
<th>Intake 90% of NRC</th>
<th>Intake 80% of NRC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lys</td>
<td>Thr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 kg body weight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 kg body weight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Adjusted from Tokach and de Lange (2001) and de Lange (2004). Based on diet digestible energy content of 3400 kcal/kg. If diet energy density differs, the target diet nutrient levels may be changed proportionally to diet-digestible energy content.
ability, effect on diet palatability, effects on carcass and meat quality, content of antinutritional factors and mycotoxins, storage and handling, availability, and cost.

Tables are available that provide mean contents of available (true or standardized ileal digestible) amino acids, digestible or metabolizable energy, and available phosphorus in a wide range of pig feed ingredients (NRC 1998). For various reasons, such as variation in growing conditions and/or ingredient processing, available nutrient contents of individual batches of feed ingredients can deviate substantially from published means. Routine sampling of ingredients, especially at harvest time, for analyses of dry matter, protein, and fiber contents is recommended. Dry matter content should be considered as part of any nutrient analyses and provides information about potential spoilage during storage. Protein and fiber contents can be used to estimate amino acid and available energy content, respectively. The need for additional analyses will vary with ingredient type and local conditions. Additional analyses may include fat content (high oil corn, full-fat soybeans, and canola seed), ash, calcium and phosphorus (meat meals, mineral sources), and mycotoxins (corn and wheat samples). In order to reduce costs of nutrient analyses, samples of purchased and variable ingredients may be stored in a dark and cool place and analyzed only if problems with animal productivity are observed.

Based on ingredient specific effects on diet palatability (canola meal, peas) and carcass quality (full-fat soybeans and canola seed) the maximum inclusion level in the diet may be restricted. Alternatively, some ingredients or elevated levels of nutrients in the preslaughter diet, such as vitamin E, can enhance pork meat quality (Rosenvold and Andersen 2003).

To establish the actual value of pig feed ingredients, least cost—or best cost—feed formulation systems should be used. These systems provide information on the actual financial value versus the actual cost based on the costs of other available ingredients. Clearly, the price of pig feed ingredients has a substantial impact on feed costs and profit in growing-finishing pig units.

Three key aspects of feed preparation are grinding, mixing, and pelleting. The fineness of grinding of feed ingredients is closely associated with nutrient digestibility and thus feed efficiency. Based on a summary of research at Kansas State University (KSU Swine Nutrition Guide 1997) feed efficiency improves by 1.2% for every 100 micron reduction in average feed particle size. This substantial impact of grinding effectiveness on pig productivity warrants a routine monitoring of mean feed particle size, while the benefits of fine grinding should be weighed against the cost of grinding, flow and dustiness of feed, which is less of a concern when diets are pelleted or when fat is included, as well as increased risks of development of stomach ulcers in growing pigs. A reasonable target mean particle size is between 600 and 800 microns. The adequacy of feed mixing can be assessed based on the variability of nutrient content in 10 or more mixed feed samples. These samples may be analyzed for one or more easily analyzed nutrients, such as sodium or chloride, and the coefficient of variation of nutrient content should be targeted at 10% or less. A coefficient of variation larger than 15% can reduce animal productivity, especially of younger pigs (Patience et al. 1995).

Table 66.5. Interactive effects of feed intake, pig lean tissue growth potentials, and feeding programs on pig performance and profits.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feed allowance, % of NRC</th>
<th>Unimproved Pig Type</th>
<th>Improved Pig Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optimal 100</td>
<td>Optimal 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feeding program</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean tissue gain, g/d</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily gain, g</td>
<td>793</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average days to market</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Days per rotation</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed:Gain</td>
<td>2.97</td>
<td>2.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dressing%</td>
<td>80.55</td>
<td>79.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcass lean yield,%</td>
<td>57.48</td>
<td>60.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcass index</td>
<td>104.2</td>
<td>109.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed cost, $/pig</td>
<td>48.07</td>
<td>49.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margin, $/pig</td>
<td>–3.48</td>
<td>–0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margin, $/pig place/year</td>
<td>–10.42</td>
<td>–0.18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Derived from de Lange et al. (2001a). Based on: performance between 20 and 105.5 kg body weight; 5% feed wastage; 1% mortality; 14 open days per rotation; standard deviations on carcass lean yield and carcass weight of 2% and 4 kg, respectively; weaner pig price $55.00; variable costs per pig $15.00; price per kg carcass at index 100: $1.30; corn ($130/tonne), soybean meal (47.5% CP;$310/tonne) and premix (3% inclusion; $600/tonne) based diets in a 2-phase feeding program; mixed costs are $15/tonne; diets are switched at 65 kg body weight. For all feeding programs, diet soybean meal levels have been adjusted to maximize profit for each pig type and feeding level.

2For the suboptimal feeding program, diet soybean meal levels are the same as the optimum diet soybean meal for this pig type at the high feed allowance. Margin ($/pig) is calculated as: carcass value – feed costs – weaner pig price – variable costs per pig. Margin ($/pig place per year) is calculated as: $/pig × 365 + days per rotation. Calculations are conducted using PGM—Purina Pork Growth Model (1997).
Pelleting of pigs diets can improve feed handling and pig performance and allows the use of a wider range of feed ingredients in the diet. Improved feed efficiency due to pelleting can be attributed to reduced feed wastage, improved nutrient digestibility, and increased available nutrient intake. The benefits of pelleting will vary with feed ingredient composition and pig body weight. In growing-finishing pigs fed corn-soybean meal–based diets feed efficiencies may be improved 5–8%; this value is somewhat higher in diets that contain more fibrous feed ingredients, 7–9% for barley-based diets (Patience et al. 1995; KSU Swine Nutrition Guide 1997). Improvements in average daily gains are slightly smaller than improvements in feed efficiency. These improvements in animal performance should be weighed against the cost of pelleting. A concern with using pelleted diets is pellet quality. Poor pellet quality results in increased amounts of fines in feed, which can reduce feed flow, buildup of fines in the feeder, and increased feed wastage. A recent observation has been that feed pelleting, as well as fine grinding of feed, can influence gut microbiota in pigs in a negative manner (Mikkelsen et al. 2004). In particular the fecal shedding of Salmonella, which is a food safety concern, can be reduced by changing from a finely ground pelleted feed to a coarsely ground mash feed. Such a change in feed form will coincide with reductions in pig growth performance.

An important practical consideration is to prepare feed on the farm versus purchasing a complete feed from a commercial feed mill. In this consideration the cost of feed ingredients, feed preparation, ingredient storage, liability, and quality control should be weighed against the cost of purchased feed. Advantages that commercial feed mills can have over on-farm feed preparation facilities include increased access to a wider range of inexpensive feed ingredients, advanced feed processing, better quality control systems, and the use of multiple feed ingredients to reduce the impact of variation in nutrient content of individual ingredients on nutrient content of the complete feed.

**GROUP SIZE, SPACE ALLOWANCE, AND MOVEMENT OF PIGS**

In North America, growing-finishing pig facilities have traditionally been designed with pens to house groups of 20–30 pigs. In Western Europe group sizes have generally been smaller and close to the size of a large litter of pigs. Recently there has been a renewed interest in accommodating group sizes of more than 100 pigs. Reasons for this move toward larger group sizes include marginally lower construction costs, the potential to increase stocking density, the ability to mix pigs while minimizing aggressive encounters between pigs, and the use of auto-sort technology to separate pigs destined for slaughter (Brumm 2004). The major limitations of handling large groups of pigs are the difficulty of isolating individual pigs for medical treatment and additional effort or equipment required to select pigs for slaughter. In the Unites States the movement to larger groups of growing-finishing pigs has coincided with the adoption of wean-to-finish technology, where pigs are maintained in the same pen from weaning until slaughter (Wolter et al. 2001, 2002). The latter is driven largely by labor savings, as a result of reduced pig movement and reduced cleaning of facilities, and to a lesser extent by the negative impact of moving and mixing pigs on growth performance. Weaned pigs are typically placed in wean-to-finish pens at double the pig density expected at the end of the finishing phase. When the pigs reach the grower stage, half of the pigs from the pen are moved to a new pen. This allows the producer to make best use of available space without causing pigs to be crowded as finisher pigs.

In contrast to previous beliefs and observations on starter pigs, recent data suggest no reduction in growth performance of finishing pigs managed in larger groups as compared to conventional group sizes of 20–30 pigs per pen, provided that adequate feeder and drinking space is provided (Wolter et al. 2001; Turner et al. 2003; Table 66.6). Increasing group size and total pen space will result in more space per pen not occupied by pigs. This free space is available for eating, drinking, defecation, urination, and sleeping. It also provides more op-
portunity for submissive pigs to avoid dominant pigs and for individual pigs to seek their optimum thermal microenvironment. Pigs show more tolerant behavior in larger groups. In large pens it is apparently possible to introduce new pigs into an existing group without apparent disturbance of the social order (Brumm 2004). Because of the larger amount of total free space, total floor space area per pig may be reduced to 0.65 m² per finishing pig, which is below the typical value of 0.69 m² per pig in the United States for pens with fully slatted floors and the 0.93 m² per pig required to achieve maximum growth rates in finishing pigs between 54 and 113 kg body weight kept on partly slatted floors and with 7 or more pigs per pen (NCR-89 1993). In this extensive study average daily gains and feed efficiencies improved linearly with space allocation from 0.71 kg/day and 0.265 kg/kg at 0.56 m² per pig to 0.80 kg/day and 0.274 kg/kg at 0.93 m² per pig.

The allometric relationship between body weight (BW) and area of a pen per pig can be expressed by \( k = \frac{A}{BW^{0.667}} \), where \( A \) is the area in m². The constant \( k \) represents a critical value relating to productivity. If growing-finishing pigs are raised on fully slatted or partially slatted floors, the critical values for \( k \) are 0.0327 and 0.0337, respectively. When \( k \) is below this critical value, average daily gain will decrease. The impact of space restriction on productivity is most evident when pigs are close to market weight. To lessen the impact of space restriction, producers may market the fastest growing animals at 5 kg below target weight. This will add 3% to available space, which essentially removes the overcrowding typically observed just prior to marketing the first group of pigs from a barn (Gonyou and Stricklin 1998).

One of the main determinants of space utilization efficiency is within-group variability in pig body weights. In order to meet the target slaughter weights, pigs are usually removed from the growing-finishing unit in three or more uniform body weight groups. In an all-in/all-out production facility, throughput is thus largely determined by the growth rate of the slowest growing or tail-end pigs in the group. In extreme cases and to clean out the pig unit before the planned arrival of the next group of pigs, the tail-end pigs need to be shipped at below-optimal body weight. The latter can have severe implications for carcass value of the tail-end pigs, as well as mean carcass value for the entire group, space utilization efficiency, and profitability. In a survey of seven commercial operations Dewey et al. (2001) reported coefficients of variation of 20–31% for body weights of pigs at different ages, which are substantially higher than values observed under closely controlled studies (Tables 66.6, 66.7). The main determinants of variation in body weight in growing-finishing pigs appear to be presence of diseases in the herd and the use of all-in/all-out versus continuous flow management (de Grau et al. 2001); variation in body weight of feeder pigs that are placed in the barn and restricted access to good quality feed and water can contribute to this variation as well. Group size and space allocation per pig do not appear to influence within-group variability (Turner et al. 2003).

A common management practice used to be to sort pigs by gender and weight when placing feeder pigs in the growing-finishing unit. Although this practice can be beneficial from a feeding management perspective, it does not result in better overall growth rates and reduced variability in pig body weights at slaughter (O’Quinn et al. 2001; Table 66.7). Apparently, pigs managed in groups have an inherent desire to vary in body weight. The coefficient of variation for within-pen body weight does not change when pigs are placed in pens with a large initial body weight variation, and the coefficient of variation will increase when pigs placed in pens have minimal within-pen initial body weight variation. In units where feeder pigs are placed at a similar age, the practice of sorting pigs for body weight appears to have limited impact on production efficiencies.

### EFFECTIVE ENVIRONMENTAL TEMPERATURE AND AIR QUALITY

When pigs are kept dry and in a draft-free environment, the room temperature should be maintained at approximately 18–20°C when feeder pigs first enter the grower barn at approximately 25 kg body weight. Once pigs are adjusted to the new environment and have achieved good levels of feed intake the environmental temperature can be gradually decreased to about 15°C when pigs are approaching market weight (Close 1987; ASAE 1991; Le Dividich et al. 1998). Depending on environmental conditions the actual room air temperature can differ substantially from the effective environmental...
temperature—i.e., the environmental temperature that the pig actually “feels” (Close 1987). For example, each 0.30 m/s increase in air movement is equivalent to approximately a 1°C reduction in effective environmental temperature for group-housed growing pigs; a cold and wet floor may have a thermal equivalent of 7–10°C. The temperature of walls will influence the radiant heat loss from pigs; in cold climates and in poorly insulated pig facilities a temperature difference between ambient air and walls of 1–2°C is equivalent to a 1°C change in air temperature. In hot environments and when pigs rely largely on heat loss through evaporation of water the negative impact of high relative humidity of the air on pig well-being can be quite substantial.

When the effective environmental temperature is below the pigs’ comfort zone, some of the ingested feed will be used to maintain the pigs’ body temperature constant, resulting in reduced feed efficiency and growth rates. For example, Close (1987) estimated that pigs at a body weight of 20, 60, and 110 kg body weight will require 14, 32, and 47 g/day, respectively, of extra feed per 1°C below the thermal comfort zone to maintain a constant body temperature. When the effective environmental temperature is too high, feed intake can be reduced substantially. Per 1°C increase in environmental temperature feed intake will be reduced by approximately 2% in pigs around market weight and by approximately 1% in feeder pigs at approximately 25 kg body weight. These reductions in feed intake will be associated with reductions in growth rate of approximately 3 and 1.5%, respectively. Extreme environmental temperatures can also compromise the pigs’ immune response and carcass quality. Clearly compromises need to be made in choosing the environmental temperature when pigs at different stages of growth are all kept in a common airspace.

Both mechanical and natural ventilation systems can be used to control the environmental air temperature and air quality (Baxter 1984). Increasingly these ventilation systems are computer-controlled and driven by actual (real-time) versus targeted air temperatures in the pig room and real-time measures of air quality. Mechanical ventilation systems now include several fixed and variable speed fans to control air exhaust from pig barns in incremental steps and air inlets that are all computer-controlled. In cold climates a minimum amount of air in the pig rooms, about 17.6 m³ per hour per pig (1.47 m³/sec or 3 cfm per pig), needs to be replaced with fresh air in order to remove air contaminates, such as ammonia, carbon dioxide, dust and water vapor. In extremely cold environments and when there is limited opportunity to preheat fresh incoming air, additional heat may be provided to maintain air temperature in the pig rooms above minimum levels. On the other hand, in warm climates or during the summer time, the optimum ventilation rate will be determined by the amount of body heat that is produced by pigs and needs to be removed from the pig room. These maximum ventilation rates will vary with the temperature and humidity of incoming air and may be as high as 150 m³ per hour per pig (12.5 m³/sec or 70 cfm per pig) (Baxter 1984). In well-designed pig facilities, control of air movement can be used to manipulate manuring patterns within pens and thus the comfort and cleanliness of pigs as well as air quality.

CONCLUSIONS AND IMPLICATIONS

With the move toward larger and highly specialized facilities it is becoming increasingly important to refine management within individual growing-finishing pig units, considering profitability, pig well-being, pork meat quality, and the impact on the environment. In order to make effective management changes, accurate production records need to be collected, and special consideration should be given to monitoring the dynamic changes in lean tissue growth, feed intake, and water usage within pig units. In particular, lean tissue growth is related closely to various aspects of pork production efficiency, such as average daily gains, carcass quality, and feed efficiency. As presented in this chapter, suboptimal feeding programs can have substantial impact on pig productivity, carcass quality, profitability, and nutrient excretion with manure. The recent trend toward all-in/all-out, wean-to-finish management of large pig groups represents a means to reduce production costs, while it may enhance growing-finishing pig productivity. A key challenge in any growing-finishing pig production system remains the control and management of variation in within-group pig body weights. The practice of sorting feeder pigs for body weight when moved into the unit has limited impact on within-group pig body weights at the time of slaughter and production efficiencies in units where feeder pigs are placed at a similar age. Improving the health status of pigs appears to be the most effective means to reduce within-group variability of pig body weights, as well as animal productivity. Computer-controlled and automated ventilation systems are used increasingly to ensure that the animals’ thermal environment and air quality requirements are met.

The various aspects of growing-finishing pig management, such as feeding program, pig space allocation, and control of the thermal environment are all interconnected. Current developments toward integrated management systems that involve real-time analyses of pig growth and mathematical models that represent nutrient utilization for growth (Green et al. 2004) provide opportunities to truly optimize management in individual pig production units.

REFERENCES

At the beginning of the 21st century, many of the industrialized countries saw the emergence of new standards for the welfare of farmed animals. For example:

- In 1999, the United Kingdom enacted a ban on keeping pregnant sows individually in tethers or stalls, and the European Union (EU) passed a directive to phase out the standard battery cage for laying hens within 12 years.
- In 2000, a major fast food chain restaurant in the United States (U.S.) announced animal welfare standards that their suppliers would be required to meet, mainly in the slaughter and egg industries.
- In 2001 another fast food chain restaurant in the U.S. adopted a similar program; the EU passed a directive to ban individual stall housing of pregnant sows effective in 2013; and two Washington-based organizations (the Food Marketing Institute and the National Council of Chain Restaurants) began developing a set of food animal welfare standards on behalf of the U.S. grocery and chain restaurant sectors.
- In 2002 the member countries of the World Organization for Animal Health (OIE), which is recognized by the World Trade Organization as the principal standard-setting body in matters of animal health, unanimously voted to begin developing internationally harmonized animal welfare standards.

In one sense, the appropriate treatment of animals is one of the long-standing ethical issues of human civilization, which different cultures and religious traditions have addressed in different ways over the centuries (Preece 1999). In the 1800s many industrialized countries created some form of legal protection for animals, particularly to deal with antisocial acts such as deliberate cruelty and gross neglect. In many countries the mid 20th century saw an expansion of legal protection for food animals—for example, through requirements for humane treatment of animals at slaughter plants and humane animal transportation. Throughout the late 20th century, public attention and sympathy toward animals appeared to show a widespread increase, especially in European and English-speaking countries. Many aspects of animal use—including animal-based research, animals in entertainment, and production of animal-based food—were questioned and debated as never before.

During roughly the same period, swine production in the industrialized world underwent profound changes. Average herd size increased steadily, such that fewer and fewer producers operated increasingly large units. Housing and technology also changed in ways that reduced production costs, generally by keeping animals in indoor environments where labor requirements could be reduced and space could be used efficiently. These changes had complex effects on the health and welfare of the animals, but another significant result was a change in public perception of swine production, away from traditional positive images of the small-scale family-run farm with careful attention to individual animals, and toward more negative images of swine production as a depersonalized, industrial activity. With this change came a greater public scepticism over the humaneness of animal production and a greater will to have animal welfare standards imposed on the industry.
WHAT IS ANIMAL WELFARE?

In debate and discussion of animal welfare, three different but overlapping types of concern have been expressed about the quality of life of animals (Duncan and Fraser 1997; Fraser et al. 1997). A traditional set of concerns centers on the basic health and functioning of animals. This includes freedom from disease, parasites, and injury together with normal growth, development, and functioning of the animal's physiological and behavioral systems. A second major concern centers on the affective states of animals—emotions and feelings, especially unpleasant states such as fear, pain, hunger, and distress. Concern arises, for example, over pain caused by castration, over fear caused by rough handling, and over separation distress caused by abrupt weaning or social isolation. A third concern, arising especially over animals kept in very restrictive or barren environments, is that animals be allowed to live reasonably natural lives, in environments that are well suited to the species. For example, philosopher Bernard Rollin (1995) noted that contemporary concern about animal welfare goes beyond issues of pain and suffering and involves respecting the “nature” of animals.

These different views of animal welfare are by no means mutually exclusive. For example, allowing an overheated sow to wallow should be good for her welfare by all three criteria: it will reduce the negative effects of heat stress (a basic health and functioning criterion), it allows her to carry out her natural thermoregulatory behavior (a natural living criterion), and she will presumably feel more comfortable (an affective state criterion). However, the different views can also lead to different conclusions about some issues. For example, those who emphasize basic health and functioning may conclude that housing sows in narrow stalls throughout most of pregnancy is good for their welfare because it prevents fighting-related injuries and promotes uniform weight gain, whereas those who emphasize natural living criteria might conclude that the stalls are incompatible with good welfare because they prevent most forms of natural behavior. Complicating the resolution of such disagreements, the different views of animal welfare tend to be favored by different sectors of the population. Producers and livestock veterinarians tend to interpret animal welfare in terms of basic health and functioning, whereas consumers, together with some small-scale and organic producers, tend to emphasize natural living criteria (te Velde et al. 2002).

Given this diversity, probably no account of animal welfare will be widely acceptable unless it takes all three of the major concerns into consideration to at least some degree. One general description of animal welfare, which nicely combines the different concerns, is the “Five Freedoms” adapted from Webster (1994):

1. Freedom from malnutrition: the diet should be sufficient in both quantity and quality to promote normal health and vigor.
2. Freedom from thermal and physical discomfort: the animal’s environment should be neither excessively hot nor cold and should allow normal rest and activity.
3. Freedom from injury and disease: the husbandry system should minimize the risk of injury and disease and facilitate the immediate recognition and treatment of any cases that do occur.
4. Freedom to express most normal patterns of behavior: the physical and social environment should provide the necessary components to enable the animal to carry out behaviors it has a strong motivation to perform.
5. Freedom from pain, fear, and distress.

SCIENTIFIC APPROACHES TO ANIMAL WELFARE

All three perspectives on animal welfare have given rise to productive research to understand, assess, and improve animal husbandry systems. However, each perspective tends to lead to somewhat different approaches and to emphasize different measures to improve animal welfare.

Functioning of Animals: The Physiology of Stress

When animals experience certain welfare challenges, such as physical injury or fear of a dominant penmate, characteristic physiological responses occur that presumably have evolved as adaptive measures to prepare the animal for “fight or flight” (Stephens 1980). Such “stressors” activate both the sympathetic nervous system and the hypothalamo-pituitary-adrenocortical axis. Sympathetic stimulation results in rapid transmission of signals to key organs in the body and secretion of catecholamines (adrenaline and noradrenaline) into the circulation from the adrenal medulla. Concurrent with this immediate response is a more sustained endocrine cascade whereby corticotropin-releasing factor from the hypothalamus causes release of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) from the anterior pituitary, which, in turn, stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete corticosteroid hormones (cortisol and other glucocorticoids) into the circulation. Both neural and endocrine responses mobilize body reserves for activity by releasing glucose into the bloodstream, increasing heart rate and directing blood flow to muscles rather than skin and viscera. A negative feedback of plasma corticosteroid on the hypothalamus restores normal conditions when the stressor is removed.

In assessing welfare from a viewpoint of physiological function, measurements of plasma cortisol or ACTH levels are often made to judge the extent of stress experienced by an animal in a given situation. For example, many studies have shown increased plasma cortisol among sows that are kept tethered during pregnancy, al-
though this may have been due to poorly designed tether stalls, which resulted in unresolved aggression between neighboring animals (Barnett et al. 2001). However, there are a number of problems in using these simple measures. Taking a blood sample to assess hormone levels may, in itself, induce a greater adrenal response than any treatment difference under investigation (Moss 1981), and single blood samples are unreliable because corticosteroid release is pulsatile and shows diurnal patterns that can vary with different circumstances (Johnson and Levine 1973). Some of these problems can be overcome by measurement of corticosteroids and their metabolites in saliva, urine, or feces, which can be obtained noninvasively, but these are still subject to temporal fluctuations. Better measures of chronic stress often rely on detection of changes in morphology or function that result from long-term stimulation of physiological pathways or organs. Such measures include the weight of the adrenal glands, the activity of the enzymes controlling catecholamine synthesis (Stanton and Mueller 1976), and the "adrenal function test" whereby a standard amount of ACTH is injected and the resulting blood level of corticosteroid is measured (Ladewig et al. 1986). Interpretation of such results is still difficult because of genetic differences between animals in adrenal response to ACTH (Hennessy et al. 1988) and because some animals in adverse conditions appear to cease adrenal responsiveness after a period.

For short-term challenges it is sometimes simpler to measure the secondary consequences of the stress response rather than the underlying endocrinology. For example, heart rate, which can be monitored noninvasively using skin surface electrodes, increases when animals encounter a fearful situation such as close proximity to a dominant penmate (Marchant et al. 1995), but heart rate also requires careful interpretation because of possible confounding factors such as activity level.

**Functioning of Animals: Production, Health, and Animal Welfare**

It is often said by veterinarians and producers that good production performance indicates a high level of animal welfare. In support of this argument, the hormonal stress responses just described influence key metabolic and reproductive processes governing production performance. High corticosteroid levels reduce protein synthesis and lean tissue growth (Spencer 1985), resulting in slower growth and poorer conformation. In breeding animals, physiological stress responses also influence the hypothalamo-pituitary-ovarian axis (Arey and Edwards 1998), resulting in delayed onset of estrus, suppressed estrous activity, and development of cystic ovaries. Furthermore, stress in early pregnancy, at the time of implantation, results in increased embryo mortality and reduced litter size. The effects of stress on performance were well illustrated in experiments by Hemsworth and collaborators (1991) on the adverse effects of negative handling of pigs by stockpersons. Unpleasant handling, in comparison with sympathetic handling, resulted in pigs with chronically elevated corticosteroid levels, slower growth rate, a lower pregnancy rate in gilts, and delayed reproductive development in young boars.

A key link between welfare and performance is the maintenance of good pig health. Premature death and poor health are unquestionably indicators of impaired welfare, although the converse may not necessarily be true. Thus, health measures such as the incidence of infectious disease, lameness, or lesions of the skin (Backstrom 1973; de Koning 1985) are useful in assessing welfare in many practical circumstances. Moreover, stressful environmental conditions may increase the susceptibility of pigs to disease, partly because stress influences the immune system (Kelley 1980). In particular, sustained high levels of corticosteroid hormones in the blood can reduce proliferation of lymphocytes and decrease antibody production, thus impairing the ability of the pig to resist infection. Because stressors may reduce immune responsiveness, immune challenge techniques provide another potential measure of animal welfare. For example, sows tethered in a barren environment show a poorer immune response when challenged with a novel antigen, and their piglets also have lower antibody levels (Metz and Osterlee 1981). Thus, stressful conditions would be expected to induce higher corticosteroid levels, which are associated with poorer health, higher mortality levels, poorer growth and food conversion efficiency, and depressed reproductive performance.

In addition to these indirect effects on performance, inadequate environments or husbandry can directly affect both performance and welfare. Examples include lesions and lameness that result from faulty floors or inadequate pen design and aggression and vice resulting from poorly managed groups. Similarly, inadequate environmental temperature and nutrition can affect the welfare and performance of the pig. Close (1987) noted that keeping pigs either below their lower critical temperature or above their upper critical temperature can influence comfort, food intake, growth, food conversion efficiency, health, and viability. Nutritional deficiencies, in addition to predisposing to metabolic diseases and reduced growth and reproductive performance, may also contribute to outbreaks of tail biting (Fraser 1987). Inadequate diets have particularly clear effects on animal welfare in the case of early-weaned pigs, where low-cost diets that are not suited to the immature digestive system can cause severe depression in intake and growth and greatly increase the incidence of scouring and death.

In these various cases, welfare and productivity are correlated, and poor productivity can be a useful indicator of a welfare problem. However, the relationship does not always hold. Low growth rate and food conversion efficiency may, for example, be the result of feeding a
low-density diet, which is nevertheless nutritionally ade-
quate and cost-effective in a particular situation. Equally, high productivity does not necessarily indicate a high standard of welfare. For example, the effects of in-
adequate housing on disease and performance can be mask-
yed by the routine use of antibiotics. Similarly, pigs 
treated with growth hormone or repartitioning agents 
may deposit lean meat very quickly but at greater risk of 
metabolic disease, and hyperprolific sow lines carry ad-
ditional welfare risks for both the lactating sow and her 
piglets.

Affective States of Animals: Behavioral Measures of Welfare
The behavior of pigs has always been used by stock-
persons or veterinarians to identify the onset of problems 
with health or environment. Simple examples are the 
apathy of a sick pig or the huddling of a group of pigs 
that are too cold. Similarly, behavior that results in in-
jury to an animal (such as rooting on inappropriate sur-
faces) or that inflicts injury on others (such as tail, ear, 
and flank biting, discussed below) are also generally ac-
cepted indicators of impaired welfare.

Behavioral indicators are also used to help under-
stand the “affective states” of animals such as pain, fear, 
and distress. For example, vocalizations have been used 
as a metric of separation distress. Piglets that are sud-
denly separated from the sow call in a pattern so charac-
teristic that experienced pig-keepers immediately recog-
nize the calls as coming from an isolated piglet. The calls 
begin with quiet grunts made with the mouth closed, 
progressing to louder grunts made with the mouth open, 
and then a mixture of loud grunts and squeals. Piglets 
that are in greater need of being reunited with 
the sow because they are cold or hungry give more calls, 
especially more of the high-pitched squeals, and sows 
respond more vigorously to calls given by such piglets. 
The calls thus appear to form a communication system 
which helps reunite sows and isolated piglets, with the 
number and type of calls reflecting the animals’ level of 
distress at being separated (Weary and Fraser 1995). The 
calls may be useful for testing ways to reduce separation 
distress. For example, experiments show that piglets 
newly separated from the sow vocalize much less if there 
are several familiar littermates close by. Similar research 
has used vocalizations to assess pain in piglets when cas-
trated in different ways (Taylor and Weary 2000).

Pig behavior has also been used in experiments de-
signed to assess the needs and preferences of pigs that 
might contribute to improved welfare (Fraser and 
Matthews 1997). When given a choice between different 
circumstances, pigs can express their relative prefer-
ences on matters such as diet, floor type, thermal envi-
ronment, and degree of social contact. However, results 
of such preference tests must be interpreted with cau-
tion, since any preference is relative to the other options 
available and may be modified by temporary motiva-
tional state and previous experience. A refinement on 
this approach is the use of instrumental conditioning 
techniques in which pigs are trained to work for a re-
ward such as food, light, heat, or rooting substrate. The 
importance of the reward to the pig can then be assessed 
by measuring the amount of work animals will do to 
continue receiving that reward. These techniques, when 
correctly applied, allow the animal to inform us about 
its relative priorities, and the strength of its motivation 
to attain them (Ladewig and Matthews 1996). Such 
knowledge then indicates what we should seek to incor-
porate in improved husbandry systems.

“Abnormal” behavior has also been interpreted as an 
indicator of impaired welfare, although the definition 
of abnormal is not straightforward. Following an inter-
national survey of expert opinion, a list of behaviors 
widely accepted as “abnormal” has been published 
Commission of the European Communities 1983). 
These include vices such as ear, flank, and tail biting, 
plus stereotypic behaviors as discussed below.

Natural Living: Incorporating Natural Elements into Animal Husbandry
In some cases, the natural behavior of pigs has been 
used as a guide to improving housing systems for pigs. In 
a novel approach, Stolba and Wood-Gush (1984) ob-
served pigs that had been turned loose in a hilly, 
wooded area and identified certain characteristic fea-
tures of the animals’ behavior. In particular, the pigs 
rooted in the soil, exercised their neck muscles by lever-
ing against fallen logs, built nests in secluded areas be-
fore giving birth, and used dunging areas well removed 
from their resting areas. The research also identified cer-
tain key stimuli in the environment which were impor-
tant for these behaviors to be performed. This led to the 
design of a complex commercial pen which incorpo-
rated these key stimuli, with a dunging passage in the 
front, an area where the pigs could root in soil, a log for 
levering, separate feeding areas, and secluded areas at 
the back where sows could be enclosed to farrow. The 
authors claimed that the animals’ welfare was signifi-
cantly improved by the complex pen. However, because 
some aspects of basic health and functioning (such as 
piglet survival) were less good in this system than in 
more restrictive systems (Edwards 1995), some critics 
have disagreed with this conclusion.

In contrast to this somewhat radical approach, more 
conservative approaches have tried to incorporate spe-
cific elements of natural behavior into typical commer-
cial production systems in order to solve specific prob-
lems. For example, free-living pregnant sows would 
typically spend much of the day foraging for food. In 
commercial production they are normally fed a very 
dense diet which is cheaper to transport and store than 
a bulky, fiber-rich diet. However, the sow’s intake of a 
dense diet needs to be strictly limited so that the ani-
mal do not gain too much weight. The result is that
sows may consume their daily ration in a matter of minutes and remain strongly motivated to find food for much of the day (Lawrence and Terlouw 1993). Under these conditions sows often develop stereotypes—repetitive behaviors that are fixed in form and serve no obvious function for the animal—such as the repetitive head-waving and bar-chewing that some sows perform for several hours per day. Some sows also toy with water dispensers to the point of drinking huge quantities of water. Providing sows with straw or other roughage, or providing a fiber-rich diet, can allow the animals to spend a more natural amount of time in finding and consuming food, and the abnormal behavior and water intake can be greatly reduced (Meunier-Salaun et al. 2001).

Although “natural” behavior provides a useful starting point, the relation between natural behavior and animal welfare is complex. Many behavior patterns are responses to the environment in which the animal is kept. The fact that a pig in intensive housing behaves differently from one in the wild is not in itself an indication of impaired welfare but may provide a useful starting point to explore whether the change reflects an animal welfare problem. For example, the stereotyped behavior of pregnant sows in barren environments does appear to indicate a welfare problem because it seems to reflect a state of chronic hunger in the animals (Appleby and Lawrence 1987), and the development of stereotyped behavior has been linked to neural pathology in at least some species (Garner et al. 2003).

In summary, there are many different approaches for assessing and improving the welfare of pigs. Each approach has its own strengths and associated difficulties, and a sensible combination of some or all of the methods outlined is likely to provide a better understanding of animal welfare than the use of any one approach alone.

CURRENT WELFARE ISSUES IN PIG PRODUCTION

With increased public awareness and concern about pig welfare, there is growing pressure to modify or abolish a number of practices that are currently widespread in the pig industry. Unlike most early welfare concerns and legislation, which were designed to penalize deliberate cruelty toward animals, some more recent concerns (and in some countries legislation) have focused on husbandry systems. The debate has highlighted the many difficulties in generalizing about welfare in a given system and the need to balance different welfare considerations, including cases where benefits to some animals occur at the expense of others.

Gestation Housing

The pregnant sow in a gestation stall has little opportunity for exercise and cannot walk or socialize freely with other animals. From a natural living viewpoint, a preferred system is to house pregnant sows in groups in an environment which provides greater freedom to move, explore, and socialize. However, because pregnant sows are offered very limited amounts of concentrate diets, there can be severe competition for feed when group feeding is practiced, with the dominant sows eating too much and the timid (and younger) sows too little. Although group housing can be improved by providing individual feeders to protect the timid sows during feeding, aggression can still occur at other times (Petherick 1989). In particular, competition for space, chronic hunger, and reestablishment of the dominance hierarchy when sows are regrouped can all result in increased aggression (Edwards 1992). Thus greater behavioral freedom for all sows is sometimes achieved at the expense of increased risk of injury and chronic fear in some individuals.

Farrowing Crates

The farrowing sow and her newborn litter provide another case of conflicting interests. The sow is often confined to a crate during and after farrowing to minimize the risk of crushing her piglets, to facilitate beneficial intervention by the stockperson, and to allow specially warmed creep areas to be arranged adjacent to the udder. These areas provide the temperature required by the newborn piglet to minimize the risk of hypothermia and resulting problems of starvation, crushing, and disease (English 1993). However, this system of housing the sow renders her unable to perform the normal farrowing behaviors seen in the wild, especially preparturient locomotion and nest building. When unable to carry out such behavior, sows show indications of stress in the form of increased corticosteroid levels combined with stereotyped behavior such as floor-nosing and bar chewing (Lawrence et al. 1994). Recent data indicate that confinement per se causes bigger problems in the preparturient period than lack of nesting material (Jarvis et al. 2002); hence, the current EU recommendation for provision of nesting material in farrowing crates is at best only a partial solution. However, no system has yet proven capable, under large-scale indoor commercial conditions, of both permitting full behavioral freedom to the sow and safeguarding the survival and welfare of her piglets (Edwards and Fraser 1997).

Early Weaning

Under natural conditions, pigs are weaned in a gradual process that begins at about 3 weeks after farrowing and is not completed until the young are 3–4 months of age (Jensen 1995). Under commercial conditions, economic pressures to maximize sow output have resulted in abrupt early weaning of pigs at 3–4 weeks of age in the EU (where weaning at less than 28 days is restricted to specific situations, and weaning at less than 21 days is generally forbidden) and sometimes at even younger ages.
elsewhere in the world in segregated early weaning. This practice is designed to improve herd health by restricting transfer of pathogens from older animals to the piglet. When weaned at this young age, the piglet has little experience of solid food intake, and an immature digestive and immune system (Curtis and Bourne 1973; de Passillé et al. 1989). These physiological challenges are accompanied by psychological challenges associated with separation from the mother, first experience of a novel environment and, frequently, social regrouping. The piglets often show both behavioral and physiological indications of reduced welfare. Abnormal oral behaviors such as belly-nosing and ear biting can occur at high levels, particularly with earlier weaning ages, and may continue into later life as tail, ear, and flank biting (Gonyou et al. 1998). There is thus conflict between piglet welfare and the commercial need to maximize sow output.

**Space Allowance**

The cost of high quality housing creates financial pressure on producers to minimize the amount of space per pig. In many countries there are no minimum legal space allowances, and even in Europe, where space allowance is regulated, the adequacy of the allowance is being increasingly questioned (Ekkel et al. 2003). When pigs are overcrowded, they show higher levels of stress hormones, reduced growth and greater probability of health problems and abnormal behaviors such as tail biting (Meunier-Salaun et al. 1987). However, a degree of overcrowding often yields the best financial returns despite some reduction in individual performance. Here again we see some trade-off between animal welfare and commercial goals.

**Bedding and Environmental Enrichment**

The provision of adequate, good-quality bedding (usually straw) is frequently cited as contributing to the welfare of pigs of all ages because it helps to provide physical comfort, insulation, and recreation (Day et al. 2002). However, straw can also pose a problem for pig health and welfare by increasing the animals’ exposure to microbes, dust, fungal spores, and ammonia in the air. An alternative may lie in providing the benefits of bedding in other ways that do not involve the same drawbacks.

One advantage of straw-based systems is the constant availability of a substrate for the exploratory and manipulatory behaviors that comprise a major component of the time budget of pigs under seminatural conditions. In the absence of adequate environmental provision, such behavior can be directed toward penmates and lead to development of injurious behaviors, such as tail biting (van de Weerd et al. 2004). The amount of straw necessary to serve this purpose, and the extent to which alternative bedding materials or toys can replace straw, are still the subject of research. Instrumental conditioning studies indicate that the reward value of full-straw bedding is greater than that of chopped straw or straw presented in a rack (Ladewig and Matthews 1996). However, a small amount of straw seems effective in providing pigs with recreation (Fraser et al. 1991b; Lyons et al. 1995). Although “toys” (simple enrichment devices such as tires and chains) can provide occupation in the short term, habituation often occurs quite rapidly, and they often provide only 10% of the occupation time provided by full straw bedding, indicating either a lack of the appropriate stimulus properties or inadequate availability to all animals in the group. To attract and maintain interest from pigs, enrichment materials should provide olfactory/gustatory stimulation and respond by changes in form to the chewing behavior of the pigs (Feddes and Fraser 1994; van de Weerd et al. 2003). An ongoing challenge is to develop functional enrichment strategies that meet the needs of pigs but are also practical in large-scale slatted-floor housing.

**Invasive Procedures on Piglets: Teeth Clipping, Tail Docking, and Castration**

Currently many farms carry out invasive and painful procedures whose long-term benefits are thought to outweigh the transient distress that they cause. Thus, teeth clipping is deemed to be justified because it reduces injury to the faces of littermates during competition for teat position, damage and discomfort to the udder of the sow, and resultant restlessness that might increase the risk of crushing of piglets. Similarly, tail docking is justified on the grounds that it reduces the risk of tail biting in later life, and castration is deemed to be justified because it reduces aggression and harmful sexual behavior in later life while also preventing “boar taint,” which renders the meat unpalatable. While such arguments undoubtedly have merit, there is growing public pressure to find alternative methods to achieve the desirable outcomes in less invasive ways. Many farms have found it possible to cease teeth clipping or restrict its use to high-risk litters with temperamental sows, large litter size, or extensive cross-fostering. Castration is more difficult to abolish if pigs are to be slaughtered at heavy weights, but may be superseded in the future by immunological rather than surgical techniques.

Tail biting in growing pigs is a widespread behavioral vice with very significant animal welfare and economic consequences. It is a multifactorial problem, with a variety of identified environmental and nutritional risk factors (Schröder-Petersen and Simonsen 2001). Despite research over many years, the problem has remained intractable in commercial pig production. Where pigs are left with intact tails, serious welfare issues associated with tail biting can be endemic under some environmental conditions (van de Weerd et al. 2004). One reason for the failure to find effective solutions to the vice is that most research into tail biting has involved surveys of only the tail-bitten animals, either on farms or in abattoirs. There is relatively little information on the pigs that actually do the biting and no real understand-
ing of what might initiate the behavior in these individuals, but not others in the same group. Predisposition to tail bite has been shown to have both genetic and metabolic components (Fraser 1987; Fraser et al. 1991a; Breuer et al. 2005), which are exacerbated when pigs are housed in relatively barren environments and subject to other environmental stressors such as overcrowding, extreme temperatures, or drafts. If tail docking is to be rendered unnecessary in the future, a better understanding of the determinants of tail biting is needed to develop effective preventive strategies.

Stockmanship
There is a prevalent and long-held belief that the quality of the stockperson has a more important influence on pig welfare than the choice of production system (Brambell 1965). Increasing scientific evidence suggests that the empathy between stockpersons and the animals in their care is a major factor contributing to animal welfare and performance (English et al. 1992). As highlighted previously, pigs that receive frequent and sympathetic handling are easier to manage and have lower levels of circulating corticosteroid hormones, faster growth rates, and better reproductive performance than those that receive minimal handling or unpleasant handling (Hemsworth et al. 1991). In a comparison of otherwise similar farms, Hemsworth et al. (1981) found that reproductive performance of the unit was higher on those farms where the sows showed little fear of humans. Later work showed that the attitudinal and behavioral profiles of individual stockpersons affected both welfare and performance of their animals (Hemsworth et al. 1989). Legislation in the EU emphasizes the importance of stockmanship, and requires national training programs to be established. However, the quality of stockmanship is still a major limitation on many commercial farms because of the difficulties in attracting and retaining good staff and dealing with the economic pressures to reduce staff time per animal (English et al. 1992).

RESOLVING ANIMAL WELFARE ISSUES
With so many pressures for changes to current practices that are deemed to compromise animal welfare, producers must carefully weigh their future strategy. As detailed previously, a focus on animal welfare should in many cases improve the productivity of farm animals and the quality of their products. In some cases, however, there are likely to be costs associated with conforming to animal welfare standards. For example, requirements to provide straw or to eliminate individual stalls for pregnant sows may create some increase in production costs or at least incur certain expenses during the period of transition. In such cases, producers are understandably concerned about having to compete against lower-priced imports from jurisdictions with less demanding standards.

By the 1990s, debate had arisen about whether countries with high animal welfare standards could block imports from countries lacking equivalent standards. Various mechanisms involving the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade were proposed, but in each case there are significant difficulties and counter-arguments. The development and acceptance of internationally harmonized standards is an obvious way to avoid conflict among countries over animal welfare standards. As noted above, the World Organization for Animal Health has begun developing international animal welfare standards, initially in the areas of slaughter, killing of animals for disease control, and transport of animals by land and sea. If, and as, standards are adopted, they could help create a level playing field for the industry in different countries. International agreement on contentious production issues, such as minimum weaning age and use of gestation stalls has not yet been attempted outside the European Union.

Resolving animal welfare issues has been made more complicated by the acrimonious and polarized views of modern animal production that are widely presented to the public. On the one hand are thoroughly negative views claiming that confinement systems are inherently bad for animal welfare and for the environment, and that the products of such systems are dangerous for human health. On the other side of the debate are thoroughly positive portrayals of animal agriculture, largely originating from animal producers and their organizations, which claim that modern production is beneficial for animal welfare and the environment, while producing safe and nutritious products (Fraser 2001). With an activity as diverse as swine production, proponents of each of these highly simplified views can cite facts and examples to support their claims.

In this polarized debate, it is sometimes difficult to separate fact from polemic. Some of the modern changes in swine production have had positive effects on animal welfare. The use of indoor housing has eliminated some problems related to predation and cold weather. In some cases confinement has allowed disease prevention through the exclusion of common pathogens. Advances in feeding technology and nutritional knowledge have made it more feasible to meet animals’ nutritional needs. Veterinary knowledge and technology allow vaccination, medication, and other disease prevention measures that would not have been possible a half-century ago. However, the changes in production methods have also created a new set of animal welfare problems and dilemmas, as outlined previously. In the midst of the acrimonious debate and the highly charged political environment that has resulted, it will be important for swine producers and veterinarians to retain a constructive focus on animal welfare by building on the positives while solving the problems that current production methods entail.
REFERENCES


References


Many factors influence whether an animal will become clinically ill after exposure to a pathogen. Factors affecting host susceptibility include age, immunocompetency, vaccination status, genetic predisposition, concurrent illnesses, stress, environment, management, and nutrition. For example, day-old pigs cleared 50% of a lung bacterial load within 3 hours, whereas 26-day-old pigs cleared 95% of the bacterial load in the same period (Curtis et al. 1976). Moreover, ambient temperatures of 6°C inhibited lung clearance of bacteria in 1-day-old pigs as compared to thermoneutral temperatures, but cold temperatures had little effect on pulmonary clearance in 26-day-old pigs (Curtis et al. 1976). Pertinent characteristics of the organism include pathogenicity, infectiousness, contagiousness, viability inside and outside of the host, and the route of transmission (direct contact, aerosol, arthropod mediated, ingestion, coit) (Thrusfield 1995).

**SOURCES OF INFECTION**

Pigs are exposed to organisms either through direct contact with an infected animal or other biological vector, or indirect contact with an animal product, fomite, or contaminated environment. The duration of shedding of pathogens by infected animals and information regarding pathogen survival outside of the host are crucial when preparing protocols to minimize sources of infection. The duration of shedding of a pathogen by an infected animal will vary according to host and pathogen factors; however, scientific reports can be used to approximate this time period. Survival of organisms outside of the host animal is also dependent on a variety of factors. Scientific data regarding organism survival are obtained under experimental laboratory conditions and do not necessarily reflect survival times under natural conditions. However, estimations of pathogen survival time can be derived from these data. Survival time of select swine pathogens in air, water, manure, and on fomites are listed in Tables 68.1 to 68.4.

Data in Tables 68.1 to 68.4 reflect isolation of viable organisms. Results from other methods such as PCR were not included because the viability or infectiousness of the organism cannot be determined with these techniques. For example, *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* was detected in air samples of rooms housing acutely infected pigs using a nested PCR assay; however, survival times and transmission distances could not be determined since the viability of the organisms were not evaluated (Stärk et al. 1998).

**Semen**

Many swine pathogens have been isolated from semen (Table 68.5). Semen can become contaminated naturally from infected boars or postcollection during processing, storage, or transport (Foley et al. 1971; Thacker 1984). Semen collected using an artificial vagina contained 100–1,000,000 cfu per ml (Koppang and Filseth 1958), whereas semen collected using a gloved hand contained 0–3,800 cfu per ml (Waltz et al. 1968). *Alcaligenes xylosoxydans*, *Burkholderia cepacia*, *Enterobacter cloacae*, *Escherichia coli*, *Serratia marcescens*, and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* of both animal and nonanimal origin were isolated from semen. These bacteria are not porcine pathogens but were spermicidal (Althouse et al. 2000). *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Proteus*, micrococci, streptococci, enterococci, *Candida*, *Bordetella*, *Aerobacter*, *Corynebacterium*, and *Staphylococcus* have also been isolated from boar semen (Koppang and Filseth 1958; Waltz et al. 1968). Staphylococci, streptococci, *Alcaligenes*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Corynebacterium* were isolated from semen but not the genital tract of respective boars; therefore, contamination likely occurred during collection (Foley et al. 1971). Semen has inherent cytotoxic and antiviral activity (Richmond 1978). Extension of semen could dilute this natural defense. Clinically normal boars can shed pathogens in their semen. Classical swine fever virus, foot-and-mouth dis-
ease (FMD) virus, and swine vesicular disease virus were isolated from semen of clinically normal boars (McVicar et al. 1978; de Smit et al. 1999). Pseudorabies virus was also isolated from semen of clinically normal, vaccinated boars (Medveczky and Szabó 1981). A 5 mm loopful of semen from a clinically normal boar naturally infected with brucellosis yielded 800–1000 colonies of Brucella suis (Hutchings and Andrews 1946). Shedding of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) virus in semen was variable and was not related to the viremic state or the serostatus of the boar (Christopher-Hennings et al. 1995a).
Dust

*Streptococcus suis* (Clifton-Hadley and Enright 1984), rotavirus (Fu et al. 1989), *Mycobacterium avium* (Nel 1981; Ichiyama et al. 1988), *Clostridium perfringens* (Sidorenko 1967), *Salmonella* spp. (Eld et al. 1991; Letellier et al. 1999), and pseudorabies virus (Vannier et al. 1989) have been isolated from dust. The length of time that the organisms survived in dust was only reported for *S. suis*: 30–54 days at 0°C, 1–25 days at 9°C, and less than 24 hours at 22–25°C (Clifton-Hadley and Enright 1984).

Soil

Swine raised outdoors can contact pathogens contaminating soil. Laboratory tests found that *E. coli* and *S. typhimurium* added to liquid manure generally penetrated sand and garden soil columns to a depth of 160 cm. Rarely, organisms penetrated soil to depths greater than 160 cm and this was only under conditions of simulated rainfall, and survival was less than 2 weeks at these depths. Organism survival decreased with increasing soil depth regardless of soil type (Tamasi 1981). Survival times for select swine pathogens in manure are documented in Table 68.3.

### Table 68.3. Documented survival times for select swine pathogens in manure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism</th>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>Survival Time</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>African swine fever virus</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>60–160 days</td>
<td>Strauch 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascaris suum eggs</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Up to 5 years</td>
<td>Strauch 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachyspira hyodysenteriae</td>
<td>10–17</td>
<td>&lt;16 weeks</td>
<td>Gaasenbeek and Borgsteede 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical swine fever virus</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>&gt;6 weeks</td>
<td>Haas et al. 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR: Disease had not been diagnosed for up to 5 years</td>
<td>Wood and Packer 1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli</td>
<td>6–9</td>
<td>4.8 weeks</td>
<td>Munch et al. 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot-and-mouth disease virus</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>&gt;14 weeks</td>
<td>Haas et al. 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastrongyulus eggs</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>At least 68 days</td>
<td>Marti et al. 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastrongyulus larvae</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>36 days</td>
<td>Marti et al. 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oesophagostomum eggs</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4 days</td>
<td>Marti et al. 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oesophagostomum larvae</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>Marti et al. 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pasteurella multocida</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>Thomson et al. 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine parvovirus</td>
<td>5 and 20</td>
<td>&gt;40 weeks</td>
<td>Haas et al. 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>At least 14 weeks</td>
<td>Mengeling and Paul 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies virus</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>15 weeks</td>
<td>Bøtner 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotavirus</td>
<td>20–25</td>
<td>4 months</td>
<td>Fu et al. 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salmonella</em> spp.</td>
<td>6–9</td>
<td>1.6–5.9 weeks</td>
<td>Munch et al. 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus suis</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>72 hours</td>
<td>Dee and Corey 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmissible gastroenteritis virus</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>&gt;8 weeks</td>
<td>Bøtner 1991</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 NR: Not reported.
times for select organisms in soil have been documented (Table 68.6).

**Insects**

Insects have been reported to carry swine pathogens. *Escherichia coli* was recovered from flies for no more than 8 days after contamination of a barn (Marshall et al. 1988) and from flies exposed to experimentally infected pigs (Marshall et al. 1990). *Mycobacterium avium* (Fischer et al. 2001), *Salmonella* sp. (Letellier et al. 1999), transmissible gastroenteritis (TGE) virus (Gough and Jorgenson 1983), and *Yersinia enterocolitica* (Fukushima et al. 1979) have been isolated from flies in swine herds. African swine fever virus was detected in *Ornithodoros moubata* residing in warthog burrows in Tanzania (Plowright et al. 1969b). The survival times of pseudorabies virus in *Musca domestica* varied with the age of the fly and the ambient temperature but the virus did not appear to replicate in living or dead flies (Zimmerman et al. 1989).

**Domestic and Feral Animals**

Feral swine can be reservoirs of pathogens (Fritzemeier et al. 2000; Artois et al. 2002). Swine pathogens have also been isolated from domestic and feral animals other than swine. *Salmonella* sp. and *Brachyspira hyodysenteriae* have been isolated from dogs and cats (Schnurrenberger et al. 1968; Songer et al. 1978; Weber and Schramm 1989; Eld et al. 1991; Barber et al. 2002). *Salmonella* spp. was also isolated from opossums (Schnurrenberger et al. 1968). *Leptospira interrogans* serovar *pomona* was isolated from skunks trapped in and near a swine herd during a leptospirosis outbreak (Kingscote 1986). *Streptococcus suis* has been isolated from dogs, cats, horses, a deer, and a zebra from which there was no contact with swine or contact was not reported (Devriese and Haesebrouck 1992; Devriese et al. 1993; Salasia and Lämmler 1994). Pseudorabies virus was isolated from raccoons and cats found dead on or near farms infected with pseudorabies (Kirkpatrick et al. 1980). *Brucella suis* was isolated from hares in Denmark in the same area as a brucellosis epizootic in swine (Kingscote 1986). *Toxoplasma gondii* was detected in cat feces collected on swine farms (Dubey et al. 1995). *Trichinella spiralis* has been detected in a farm cat (Hanbury et al. 1986), a red fox, coyotes, raccoons, badger, raccoon dogs, mink, wild boar, wolf, and bear (Hirvelä-Koski et al. 1985; Snyder 1987).

### Table 68.4. Documented survival times for select swine pathogens on fomites

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism</th>
<th>Fomite</th>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>Survival Time</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Classical swine fever virus</td>
<td>Brick</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>Slavin 1938</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytomegalovirus (Human)</td>
<td>Naturally contaminated fomites</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Several hours</td>
<td>Pirtle and Beran 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
<td>Painted wallboard, glass, wood, paper</td>
<td>15.5–27.2</td>
<td>≤10 days</td>
<td>Marshall et al. 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>towels, metal, insulation, feed bag</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot-and-mouth disease virus</td>
<td>Hay</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>20 weeks</td>
<td>Pirtle and Beran 1991; Cottral 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Barns (brick, adobe, wood)</td>
<td>winter</td>
<td>11 weeks</td>
<td>Cottral 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Barns (brick, adobe, wood)</td>
<td>summer</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cotton clothing, leather shoes, rubber</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>14 weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>boots</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Influenza A virus</td>
<td>Steel, plastic</td>
<td>27.8–28.3</td>
<td>48 hours</td>
<td>Beon et al. 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clothing, paper</td>
<td>27.8–28.3</td>
<td>8–12 hours</td>
<td>Beon et al. 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mycobacterium avium</em></td>
<td>Bedding</td>
<td>22–45</td>
<td>Detected</td>
<td>Nel 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae</em></td>
<td>Paper, cloth</td>
<td>15–26</td>
<td>≤96 hours</td>
<td>Goodwin 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine parvovirus</td>
<td>Uncleaned room</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>14 weeks</td>
<td>Mengeling and Paul, 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus</td>
<td>Alfalfa, wood shavings, straw, plastic, boot rubber, stainless steel</td>
<td>25–27</td>
<td>≤24 hours</td>
<td>Pirtle and Beran 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plastic, metal, cardboard, styrofoam,</td>
<td>−2</td>
<td>2–12 hours</td>
<td>Dee et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concrete, rubber</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plastic, metal, cardboard, styrofoam,</td>
<td>10 and 20</td>
<td>≤1–8 hours</td>
<td>Dee et al. 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concrete, rubber</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies virus¹</td>
<td>Steel, plastic, rubber, straw, concrete, wood, denim, sawdust</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>2–18 days</td>
<td>Schoenbaum et al. 1991; Pirtle and Beran 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salmonella</em> spp.</td>
<td>Boots</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Detected</td>
<td>Barber et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Streptococcus suis</em></td>
<td>Plastic flooring, concrete, painted</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>&lt;20 hours</td>
<td>Dee and Corey 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plywood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine vesicular disease virus</td>
<td>Survived on premises after depopulation and disinfection</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>11 weeks</td>
<td>Pirtle and Beran 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmissible gastroenteritis virus</td>
<td>Dried and putrefied ground gastrointestinal tract</td>
<td>19.5–21.1</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>Bay et al. 1952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ground gastrointestinal tract</td>
<td>−28</td>
<td>At least 3.5 years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NR: Not reported.

¹Saline-glucose or saline-moistened fomites.
Table 68.5. Documented detection of select swine pathogens in semen from infected boars

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism</th>
<th>Boar Infection Type</th>
<th>Timing of Detection (Test Used)</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adenovirus</td>
<td>Experimental inoculation</td>
<td>65 DPI (virus isolation) Detected (bacteriological isolation)</td>
<td>McAdaragh and Anderson 1975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brucella suis</td>
<td>Natural infection</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lord et al. 1997; Hutchings and Andrews 1946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical swine fever virus</td>
<td>Experimental inoculation</td>
<td>7 and 11 DPI (virus isolation) 7–63 DPI (RT-PCR); 11, 18, 21, and 53 DPI (virus isolation)</td>
<td>De Smit et al. 1999; Floegel et al. 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine circovirus</td>
<td>Natural infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine enterovirus</td>
<td>Natural infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine parvovirus</td>
<td>Natural infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies virus</td>
<td>Natural infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reovirus</td>
<td>Experimental inoculation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine vesicular disease virus</td>
<td>Exposed to experimentally inoculated pen mates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DPI: Days postinoculation.
PCR: Polymerase chain reaction; RT-PCR: reverse transcriptase—polymerase chain reaction.

Table 68.6. Documented survival times for select swine pathogens in soil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism</th>
<th>Soil Type</th>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>Survival Time</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brachyspira hyodysenteriae</td>
<td>Sandy clay soil</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td>Boye et al. 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachyspira pilosicoli</td>
<td>Sandy clay soil</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>119 days</td>
<td>Boye et al. 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clostridium perfringens</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Detected (bacteriological isolation)</td>
<td>Hang’ombe et al. 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae</td>
<td>Sand, silt, clay</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>35 days</td>
<td>Wood 1973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>18 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>2 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Swine pen soils</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11–16 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli</td>
<td>Sand</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>90–131 days</td>
<td>Tamási 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Garden soil</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>37–108 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>31–102 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Garden soil</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>8–54 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Humus boggy-peaty</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Detected (bacteriological isolation)</td>
<td>Karaseva et al. 1977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lake shore soil</td>
<td>0.5–18.5</td>
<td>Detected (bacteriological isolation)</td>
<td>Henry and Johnson 1978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycobacterium avium</td>
<td>Soil and ditch mud</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Detected (bacteriological isolation)</td>
<td>Ichiyama et al. 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pasteurella multocida</td>
<td>Siltic clay loam</td>
<td>−1.5–13.3</td>
<td>&lt;20 days</td>
<td>Backstrand and Botzler 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonella spp.</td>
<td>Sand</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>16–131 days</td>
<td>Tamási 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>74–131 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Garden soil</td>
<td>8 and 20</td>
<td>76–96 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Agricultural soil</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>76–96 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichuris suis ova</td>
<td>Chalky, flinty</td>
<td>3–22</td>
<td>&gt;2 years</td>
<td>Burden and Hammet 1979</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NR: Not reported.
Antibodies to *Toxoplasma gondii* were detected in cats, opossums, raccoons, and skunks that were live-trapped on 19 Iowa swine farms. The authors hypothesized that *Toxoplasma* oocysts from cat feces may be a source of contamination for swine (Smith et al. 1992). * Lawsonia intracellularis* was detected in fecal samples of dogs, calves, hedgehogs, hamster, horse, deer, ostrich, and one giraffe by polymerase chain reaction (Cooper et al. 1997; Herbst et al. 2003). Finally, foot-and-mouth disease virus has been isolated from naturally and experimentally infected deer (Forman and Gibbs 1974).

**Rodents**

Swine pathogens that have been isolated from rodents or rodent feces include *Bordetella bronchiseptica* (Le Moine et al. 1987; Bemis et al. 2003), *Salmonella* sp. (Davis 1948; Schnurrenberger et al. 1968; Le Moine et al. 1987; Letellier et al. 1999; Barber et al. 2002), *E. coli* (Le Moine et al. 1987; Marshall et al. 1990), rotavirus (Le Moine et al. 1987), *Brachyspira hydysenteriae* (Joens and Kinyon 1982; Blaha 1983), *Leptospira* spp. (Songer et al. 1983), *Toxoplasma gondii* (Dubey et al. 1995), and *Trichinella spiralis* (Martin et al. 1968; Hirvelä-Koski et al. 1985; Hanbury et al. 1986). Rats and mice have also been shown to seroconvert to TGE virus (Le Moine et al. 1987). Rodents do not appear to be field reservoirs of PRRS virus (Hooper et al. 1994) or pseudorabies virus, even though rats were susceptible to experimental inoculation with pseudorabies virus (Maes et al. 1979).

**Birds**

Swine pathogens that have been isolated from birds include *Bordetella bronchiseptica* (Farrington and Jorgen son 1976), *Mycobacterium avium* (Bickford et al. 1966), *Streptococcus suis* (Devriese et al. 1994), and *Salmonella* sp. (Schnurrenberger et al. 1968; Eld et al. 1991; Barber et al. 2002; Kirk et al. 2002). Virus isolation from Muscovy ducks, Mallard ducks, guinea fowl, and chickens orally inoculated with PRRSV was attempted on several days after inoculation with pseudorabies virus (Maes et al. 1979). Antibodies to *Toxoplasma gondii* were detected in cats, opossums, raccoons, and skunks that were live-trapped on 19 Iowa swine farms. The authors hypothesized that *Toxoplasma* oocysts from cat feces may be a source of contamination for swine (Smith et al. 1992). * Lawsonia intracellularis* was detected in fecal samples of dogs, calves, hedgehogs, hamster, horse, deer, ostrich, and one giraffe by polymerase chain reaction (Cooper et al. 1997; Herbst et al. 2003). Finally, foot-and-mouth disease virus has been isolated from naturally and experimentally infected deer (Forman and Gibbs 1974).

**People**

Multiple swine pathogens have been detected on people and outerwear including *E. coli*, FMD virus, PRRS virus, *Salmonella* sp., *Mycobacterium avium*, and swine vesicular disease. Two people that entered a barn in which *E. coli* was experimentally aerosolized were sampled. *Escherichia coli* was recovered from their hair for up to 5 hours, clothing for at least 2 hours, and skin for up to 70 minutes after aerosol release (Marshall et al. 1988). Foot-and-mouth disease virus was isolated from the nasal passages of one of eight people at 28 hours, but not at 48 hours, after exposure to infected animals (Sellers et al. 1970). In another study, human nasal carriage of FMD virus was detected in one of four people upon exit of a containment facility after having been exposed to infected animals for the previous 10 hours. Nasal carriage of FMD virus was not detected in any of the four people at time points up to 4 days after exit of the containment facility (Amass et al. 2003b). Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus has been isolated from contaminated boots and coveralls (Otake et al. 2002b). *Salmonella* sp. have been isolated from boots on a swine farm (Letellier et al. 1999). *Mycobacterium avium* was detected in the sputa of healthy people (Nel 1981). Swine vesicular disease virus was detected in the nasal passages of people that had contacted infected pigs for at least 5 minutes (Sellers and Herniman 1974). The duration of nasal carriage was not reported. Conversely, *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* was not detected from the hair of a swine caretaker (Goodwin 1985).

**Vehicles**

Contaminated vehicles are a potential source of pathogen introduction to farms. Salmonellae were isolated from swab samples of the grain box of 3 of 22 feed delivery trucks (Fedorka-Cray et al. 1997). *Salmonella* and *E. coli* have been isolated from flooring of trailers used to haul pigs. *Salmonella* was isolated from the flooring of 25 of 32 trailers sampled and *E. coli* was isolated from the flooring of all 32 trailers sampled immediately after pigs were unloaded. Trailer contamination with *Salmonella* and *E. coli* was not found to be related to distance traveled hauling pigs or season (Rajkowski et al. 1998). Similarly, *Salmonella* was isolated from the floors of transport trucks before loading pigs. *Salmonella* serovars isolated from transported pigs matched the serovar detected in the truck, but not serovars from the farm of origin. Thus, infection during transport to slaughter is of concern (Gebreyes et al. 2004).

**Carcasses**

The process of composting swine carcasses in piles was sufficient to kill *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* and pseudorabies virus under experimental conditions. Survival of *Salmonella* varied but most cultures were killed. *Salmonella* cultures placed at the top and bottom of the pile survived (Morrow et al. 1995). *Salmonella* sp. have also been isolated from dead swine and manure from dead swine (Letellier et al. 1999).

**Animal Feed**

*Salmonella* sp. (Schnurrenberger et al. 1968; Mårtensson et al. 1984; Eld et al. 1991; Fedorka-Cray et al. 1997; Harris et al. 1997; Letellier et al. 1999), *Mycobacterium avium* (Nel 1981) and *Toxoplasma gondii* oocysts (Dubey et al. 1995) have been isolated from samples of feed or feed ingredients. Researchers have not examined whether the number of organisms detected in feed samples were sufficient...
to or had adversely affected the health of pigs consuming the feed. In contrast, a field survey of six swine farms in Illinois did not detect *Salmonella* in any of 221 feed samples collected. These farms produced most of their own feed and samples were collected from closed feed bags or the top layer of feed in bins (Barber et al. 2002).

**Contaminated Foods**

Contaminated foods pose a potential risk of introduction of exotic diseases to countries free of those diseases. For example, the 2000 outbreak of classical swine fever (CSF) in the U.K. was thought to have originated from a tourist throwing a CSF-contaminated ham sandwich to a pig (Dudley and Woodford 2002). Some porcine pathogens survive for extended periods in contaminated foods. Swine vesicular disease virus survived for at least 200 days in dry salami, pepperoni sausage, and intestinal casings but not in hams heated to internal temperatures of 68.8°C (McKercher et al. 1974). In one case, swine vesicular disease virus survived in a Serrano ham for 539 days, exceeding the curing time of 365 days (Mebus et al. 1997). Swine vesicular disease virus survived for 90–300 days in Parma hams; however, Parma hams are not considered a risk for introduction of swine vesicular disease because Parma hams are cured for at least 365 days (McKercher et al. 1985). Foot and mouth disease virus survived in salt-cured ham for 89 days, salt-cured bacon for 10 days, and salt-cured sausages for 4 days at 1–7°C (Savi et al. 1962; Cottral 1969). Foot-and-mouth disease virus, African swine fever virus, and CSF fever virus appear to be inactivated by commercial curing processes (Mebus et al. 1993). Classical swine fever virus was detected in Italian salami for up to 75 days of curing (Panina et al. 1992); however, heating ham to 65°C for 30 minutes eliminated all virus (Terpstra and Krol 1976).

**ROUTES OF TRANSMISSION**

Pathogens are spread by biological, mechanical, and aerosol transmission. Biological transmission can occur from sow to pig or pig to pig or through exposure to infected semen or embryos. Biological transmission of swine pathogens among swine and people is also possible. Mechanical spread of pathogens can occur via contaminated fomites, people, other animals, and pests. The route of transmission traditionally thought to offer the greatest risk of infection is direct contact with an infected animal. However, instances of area spread in which no movement of infected animals was reported have occurred. Alternative methods of area spread such as transmission by aerosol, insects, other animals, vehicles, or people have been hypothesized in these cases.

**Sow to Pig**

Pathogens can be transmitted from sow to pig in utero (Mengeling et al. 1996), during passage of pig through the vagina or by direct or indirect contact after parturition. Technologies such as cesarean-derived pigs and various modifications of early weaning can assist in minimizing transmission from dam to pig (Young et al. 1955; Meyer at al. 1964; Alexander et al. 1980; Mészáros et al. 1985; Harris et al. 1992). Dam-to-pig transfer of *Acholeplasma laidlawii* and *Pasteurella multocida*, and in all but one case, *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae* was prevented by weaning pigs at 14 days of age and rearing pigs with age-matched cohorts. *Streptococcus suis* and *Haemophilus parasuis* were not eliminated from these pigs. Transfer of pseudorabies virus but not PRRS virus was prevented (Clark et al. 1994). Mycoplasma pneumonia and *A. pleuropneumoniae* were eliminated from pigs weaned at 7–10 days of age (Dritz et al. 1996). Many factors will determine the feasibility of using early weaning to prevent sow to pig transmission of pathogens on a commercial farm, including facilities, pig husbandry skills, immune status of herd, pathogen characteristics, and timing of infection. Early weaning can exacerbate some diseases (Pyburn and Schwartz 1995; Fangman and Tubbs 1997; Amass 1998a).

**Pig to Pig**

Pathogens can be spread when susceptible pigs either contact infected pigs directly or contact the secretions or excretions of infected pigs.

**Semen and Embryo Transfer**

Some organisms have been reported to be transmissible by semen or embryo transfer. Only three swine pathogens have been proven to be transmissible by semen under experimental conditions: CSF after experimental inoculation of semen. Pathogens and embryos is limited; thus, pathogens of interest should be individually tested to determine transmissibility by embryo transfer (Shelton 1987). Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus was isolated from embryos of experimentally infected gilts at 20 days of gestation but not at 10 days of gestation (Prieto et al. 1997a). However, PRRS virus was not transmitted to embryos, recipient gilts, or resultant piglets when embryos from experimentally infected gilts were transferred to susceptible recipient gilts (Randall et al. 1999). Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus did not infect the 4- to 16-cell-stage embryos cultured in vitro with PRRSV (Prieto et al. 1996). Porcine parvovirus was not isolated from 4-day-old, 15-day-old, and 32-day-old embryos of experimentally infected gilts (Gradil et al. 1994), but was isolated from the 4- to 8-cell-stage embryos after in vitro incubation with virus (Bane et al. 1990). Pseudorabies virus was not detected in intact or zona pellucida-free 2- to 16-
cell-stage porcine embryos that were exposed to virus in vitro for at least 1 hour (Bolin et al. 1981). However, pseudorabies-neutralizing antibodies were detected at 21 days after embryo transfer in recipients of embryos exposed to pseudorabies virus in vitro or embryos collected from experimentally infected donors (Bolin et al. 1982). African swine fever virus, FMD virus, vesicular stomatitis virus, and CSF virus have been detected on zona pellucida–intact, 4-day-old embryos after exposure to respective viruses in vitro for 2–18 hours followed by washing (Singh et al. 1984; Singh et al. 1986; Singh and Thomas 1987; Dulac et al. 1988).

**Aerosol**

Evidence points to aerosol transmission in the field under specific conditions of large numbers of pathogens being shed by a large population of animals, low temperatures, high humidity, low wind speeds, smooth topography, and low sunlight (Gloster et al. 1981; Christensen et al 1990; Grant et al. 1994; Stärk 1999). However, the ideal temperatures and relative humidity required for aerosol transmission vary for individual pathogens (Stärk 1999). A Gaussian diffusion model was used to explain an epizootic of pseudorabies virus that affected 10 farms across a 150 km² area (Scheidt et al. 1991; Grant et al. 1994). Evidence of aerosol transmission of pseudorabies virus over distances of 15–80 km has been reported (Christensen et al. 1990). Experimental transmission of CSF virus was reported after air was forced by positive pressure from handmade large rectangular metal cans containing pigs inoculated with the virus to cans containing susceptible pigs (Hughes and Gustafson 1960) and under experimental conditions without forced air flow (Laevens et al. 1999). Multiple instances of long distance spread of FMD virus by aerosol have been reported (Sellers and Gloster 1980; Donaldson et al. 1982; Gloster et al. 1982). However, aerosol transmission of FMD virus as a consequence of burning infected animal carcasses has not been established (Gloster et al. 2001; Champion et al. 2002; Jones et al. 2004). Aerosol transmission of pathogens outside of experimental laboratories cannot be definitively proven due to the variety of confounding factors. Moreover, replicating field conditions for laboratory studies of aerosol transmission is difficult due to the limitation of animal numbers. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus did not spread between two buildings located 1 meter apart that housed infected and sentinel pigs, respectively, under controlled field conditions; moreover, PRRS virus was not detected in the air exhausted from the barn containing infected pigs (Otke et al. 2002a). Consequently, pathogens generally travel for short distances by aerosol under experimental conditions (Table 68.7). With the exception of virus, swine pathogens rarely have been reported to travel greater than 3.2 km by air.

**People**

Biological transmission of swine pathogens by people is possible when zoonotic organisms are considered. Pig-to-person transmission has been documented for zoonotic agents such as *S. suis* and swine influenza virus. *Streptococcus suis* is considered an occupational health hazard for those working in the pork industry in some areas of the world. Over 150 cases of human infection with *S. suis* have been documented (Amass 1998b). However, a pilot study of personnel on five Indiana swine farms did not detect human carriage of *S. suis* (Amass et al. 1998). Similarly, H1N1 swine influenza virus was transmitted to humans after exposure to experimentally infected pigs (Wentworth et al. 1997). Transmission of these pathogens from people back to pigs has little documentation aside from anecdotal evidence. Finally, xenotransplantation of pig organs into human beings offers the potential risk of xenozoonoses (Borie et al. 1998); however, the risk of pig contamina-

### Table 68.7. Documented aerosol transmission for select swine pathogens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism</th>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>Humidity (%)</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>At least 2.5 m</td>
<td>Jobert et al. 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27–32</td>
<td>60–80</td>
<td>1 m</td>
<td>Torremorell et al. 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>African swine fever virus</em></td>
<td>8–25.3</td>
<td>73–100</td>
<td>At least 2.3 m</td>
<td>Wilkinson et al. 1977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em></td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>1 m</td>
<td>Brockmeier and Lager 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Classical swine fever virus</em></td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Laevens et al. 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae</em></td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Hughes and Gustafson 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus</em></td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Czaja et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27–32</td>
<td>60–80</td>
<td>1 m</td>
<td>Torremorell et al. 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–5–6.3</td>
<td>84–94</td>
<td>1 m</td>
<td>Brockmeier and Lager 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.5–19.3</td>
<td>45–89</td>
<td>1 m</td>
<td>Kristensen et al. 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–0.7–7.8</td>
<td>84–97</td>
<td>1 m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pseudorabies virus</em></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Gillespie et al. 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Streptococcus suis</em></td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>40 cm</td>
<td>Berthelot-Hérault et al. 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NR: Not reported; if under transmission, transmission was reported but the distance was not specified.
tion by humans with porcine xenotransplants has not been determined.

People can mechanically transmit a pig-infectious dose of certain swine pathogens from infected to susceptible pigs. Contact with contaminated people has been implicated in the spread of CSF virus (Fritzemeier et al. 2000). Transfer of the FMD virus from people to one of four susceptible steers was reported when people exhaled directly into the nasal passages of susceptible steers after showering, but within 30 minutes of contacting FMD virus-infected pigs (Sellers et al. 1971). Similarly, personnel in contact with FMD virus-infected pigs mechanically transmitted an infectious dose to susceptible pigs and sheep (Amass et al. 2003b). Mechanical transmission of E. coli (Amass et al. 2003a) and TGE virus of swine (Alvarez et al. 2001) by people from infected to susceptible pigs has been reported under conditions simulating natural field exposure levels. Mechanical transmission by people of PRRS virus from infected to susceptible pigs has been reported when personnel took extraordinary measures to contaminate hands and outerwear with blood, nasal secretions, saliva, and manure, and then allowed pigs direct contact with contaminated outerwear for 24 hours after the exit of personnel from the room (Otake et al. 2002b). Mechanical transmission by people of PRRS virus from infected to susceptible pigs was not demonstrated when contamination of personnel reflected levels found on a typical pork production unit (Amass et al. 2000a). Contact with contaminated boots and clothing did not significantly contribute to the spread of CSF virus (Laevens et al. 1998).

Rodents
Rodents are potential mechanical and biological vectors of disease. Transmission of swine disease by rodents in the field has not been definitively proven; although rodents are considered a risk factor in the spread of swine dysentery and leptospirosis. Pigs exposed to feces from mice that had been experimentally infected with B. hyodysenteriae developed clinical swine dysentery after 11–13 days (Joens 1980).

Insects
Insects can act as biological and/or mechanical vectors of swine pathogens (Table 68.8). Musca domestica reportedly traveled 1.5 km to adjacent farms (Denholm et al. 1985). Marked mosquitoes (Anopheles vestitipennis) were 80.48% faithful in returning to the original animal host for a second blood meal (Ulloa et al. 2002). Most reports of transmission of pathogens by insects represent the result of experimental data and may not reflect the actual risk of insects as vectors of these pathogens.

Domestic and Feral Non-Swine Animals
Susceptible non-porcine hosts can act as biological vectors, in which case, the animals would become infected with the pathogen and then shed the pathogen in secretions and excretions to susceptible pigs by direct or indirect contact. Nonsusceptible species can act as mechanical vectors by tracking the pathogen-laden excretions (manure) to areas containing susceptible pigs, which can then become exposed. There is little definitive evidence that non-swine animals are vectors of swine path-

### Table 68.8. Insects experimentally capable of transmitting swine pathogens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism</th>
<th>Insect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>African swine fever virus</td>
<td>Ornithodorus ticks</td>
<td>Plowright et al. 1969a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ornithodorus savignyi</td>
<td>Mellar and Wilkinson 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ornithodorus turicata</td>
<td>Hess et al. 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ornithodorus marocanus</td>
<td>Endris and Hess 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stomoxys calcitrans</td>
<td>Mellar et al. 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical swine fever virus</td>
<td>Hematopinus suis</td>
<td>Bernasky 1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tubanus spp.</td>
<td>Tidwell et al. 1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Musca domestica</td>
<td>Dorset et al. 1919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stomoxys spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Axodes aegypti</td>
<td>Stewart et al. 1975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycoplasma haemosuis</td>
<td>Stomoxys calcitrans</td>
<td>Prullage et al. 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus</td>
<td>1Musca domestica</td>
<td>Otake et al. 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Axedes vexans</td>
<td>Otake et al. 2002d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudorabies virus</td>
<td>Musca domestica</td>
<td>Medveczky et al. 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonella sp.</td>
<td>Flies</td>
<td>Barber et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cockroach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spider</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus suis</td>
<td>Musca domestica</td>
<td>Enright et al. 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine pox virus</td>
<td>Hematopinus suis</td>
<td>Shope 1940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vesicular stomatitis virus</td>
<td>Simulium vittatum Zetterstedt</td>
<td>Mead et al. 2004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Note: *Musca domestica* are not biting flies. Experimental transmission occurred when flies fed on blood from experimentally scarified areas of skin on the backs of pigs.
ogens. Under experimental conditions, pseudorabies virus was isolated from nasal discharges of pigs 8 days after pigs were fed the viscera of raccoons that were experimentally inoculated with pseudorabies virus (Kirkpatrick et al. 1980). In the field, a watchdog was implicated in the reintroduction of *B. suis* to a swine herd 2 years after the infected herd was depopulated and re-populated with brucellosis-free stock. *Brucella suis* was isolated from the asymptomatic watchdog used to guard the original infected herd, and subsequently the newly populated herd (Körmenedy and Nagy 1982). Transmissible gastroenteritis virus was transmitted to pigs that had been fed jejunal material from experimentally infected dogs (Larson et al. 1979). A risk association study in the United States reported that pigs on farms were 6.33 and 6.95 times more likely to be seropositive to *Trichinella* when pigs had access to wildlife and wildlife carcasses (Gamble et al. 1999).

**Birds**
Introduction of swine pathogens to farms by birds has been hypothesized but not definitively documented. Pigs fed droppings from starlings that were experimentally fed a suspension of transmissible gastroenteritis virus developed clinical signs of transmissible gastroenteritis but virus isolation was not performed (Pilchard 1965). English sparrows mechanically transmitted CSF under experimental conditions (Hughes and Gustafson 1960). An influenza A strain originating in wild ducks was thought to be responsible for an outbreak of influenza in pigs in Belgium. The strains of influenza isolated from the pigs were related to influenza viruses isolated from wild ducks in North America and Germany (Pensaert et al. 1981).

**Fomites**
Iatrogenic mechanical transmission by use of contaminated needles has been reported for PRRSV (Otake et al. 2002c).

**Carcasses**
Cannibalism of infected pig carcasses was determined to be the mode of transmission of *Trichinella spiralis* on an Illinois swine farm (Hanbury et al. 1986).

**Vehicles**
Contact with contaminated vehicles was implicated in the spread of CSF virus (Fritzemeier et al. 2000). Farms with more than two animal transport vehicles per month, greater than 30 rendering trucks per year, and greater than one veterinarian or technician vehicle entering every 2 months had an increased risk of occurrence of two or more respiratory disease outbreaks per year by 5.1, 3.2, and 5.5 times, respectively, than farms with less vehicle entries (Rose and Madec 2002). Under experimental conditions, carriers composed of non-chlorinated well water and snow were injected with 10^4.4 TCID50 of PRRSV and attached to the rear wheel wells of a truck to simulate potential transport of PRRSV by a contaminated vehicle in winter. The truck was driven 50 km at temperatures of <0°C to a truck wash. The truck was manually cleaned to ensure that the carriers fell to the cement floor of the truck wash. The carriers were then stepped on. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus was recovered by virus isolation from the floor of the truck wash facility in 5 of 10 replicates (Dee et al. 2002). This experiment was repeated in warm weather (10–16°C) using a carrier composed of a ball of soil inoculated with PRRS virus, and the virus was recovered by virus isolation from the floor of the truck wash facility in 6 of 10 replicates (Dee et al. 2003). These experimental conditions might not reflect the level of vehicle contamination that naturally occurs in the field.

**ASSESSING RISK OF INFECTION**
Assessing the exact risk of infection is difficult because of the numerous factors involved in disease transmission. However, risk can be estimated by using mathematical models. One can estimate the average number of new cases of an infection that would result from the introduction of a single infected animal to the population, given information regarding the pathogen and the specific population of swine. This number is called the basic reproduction number, basic reproduction ratio or basic reproductive rate, and is symbolized by R0. The basic reproduction number (R0) is calculated by multiplying the probability of infection after contact with the infectious animal (p), the number of contacts per unit time with the infectious animal (c), and the duration of infectiousness of that animal (D). Thus, \( R_0 = pcD \) (Anderson and Nokes 1991). The probability of an epizootic through direct contact is calculated as \( P_{epizootic} = 1 - (1 + R_0) \) (Anderson and May 1982; Anderson and Nokes 1991). A major limitation of these equations is that the calculations do not account for indirect contact with the pathogen. However, swine veterinarians can use these formulas as a starting point to estimate risk of infection and subsequent costs. The R0 of the CSF virus during the 1997–1998 epidemic in The Netherlands was estimated to be 2.9 (Stegeman et al. 1999), whereas the R0 for CSF under experimental conditions has ranged from 13.7 (Laevens et al. 1999) to 81.3 (Laevens et al. 1998). The R0 for pseudorabies virus in unvaccinated and vaccinated pigs was 10 and 0.36–0.5, respectively (de Jong and Kimman 1994; Bouma et al. 1995). The R0 for transmissible gastroenteritis virus was estimated at 2 for the breeding animals and 4 for growing pigs (Hone 1994).
CHAPTER 68 SWINE DISEASE TRANSMISSION AND PREVENTION 1085

BIOSECURITY: CONTROL OF ENZOOTIC, EPIZOOTIC, AND EXOTIC DISEASES

Location
Increased distance between animal facilities reduced the risk of aerosol infection (Müller et al. 1978). Farms located within 2 km of five or more farms were 2.9 times more likely to experience two or more respiratory disease outbreaks per year than farms located within 2 km of less than five farms (Rose and Madec 2002). Risk factor indices for infection with M. hyopneumoniae were developed using characteristics of 55 infected herds and 57 uninfected herds. The most important risk factor for infection was the reciprocal of the square of the distance to the nearest farm. Distances within 3.2 km had the highest risk (Goodwin 1985). Further modeling has suggested that the risk of a noninfected herd becoming infected with Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae increased as the distance between that herd and the nearest infected farm decreased (Jorsal and Thomsen 1988; Stärk et al. 1992; Thomsen et al. 1992).

Factors that can be used to prevent aerosol transmission among farms include vaccination of animals to prevent infection and decrease shedding of organisms and selection of a low pig density area. Increasing the distance between the nearest swine farm and manure spreading area is preferable but cannot absolutely prevent airborne infections (Stärk 1999). Within barns, PRRS virus was transmitted among pigs, without direct contact, over short distances in two of five trials. Transmission by aerosol could not be confirmed because experimental design did not prevent the transfer of feed, feces, and urine among pens; however, the authors hypothesized that separation of pens by short distances (46–102 cm) could result in subpopulations of noninfected pigs (Wills et al. 1997). Factors that can be used in general to prevent aerosol transmission within buildings include dust reduction through adding fat to feed, minimizing animal movement, maintaining relative humidity <60%, and optimizing ventilation (Stärk 1999). There was no difference in the concentration of organisms isolated from the air of mechanically ventilated and naturally ventilated swine barns (Predicala et al. 2002).

Introduction of Genetics
Limiting the number of genetic sources can minimize the risk of pathogen introduction to a herd. Danish SPF herds purchasing stock from more than one source per year were 2.7 times more likely to become reinfected with M. hyopneumoniae than herds purchasing from a single source (Jorsal and Thomsen 1988). Additionally, introduction of live boars to a herd poses a greater risk of pathogen introduction than bringing in semen (Bouma 2000). However, similar questions should be asked of your semen supplier as of your live animal supplier to determine the health risk posed by the semen source. Moreover, a boar stud could unintentionally distribute infected semen to large numbers of animals in a wide geographic range; therefore, semen distribution should cease during a disease outbreak in the study (Bouma 2000). The American Association of Swine Veterinarians has published guidelines for boar studs distributing semen within United States (Althouse et al. 2003). Additionally, procedures to minimize contamination of semen during collection and processing have been published (Althouse et al. 2000). Removal of the preputial diverticulum is a surgical method to decrease contamination of semen (Aamdal et al. 1958).

Veterinarians of the source and the recipient herds should work together to determine the health status and testing procedures to minimize risk of disease introduction. Animals can be tested prior to purchase to determine whether they meet the herd health standards. Animals can then be tested on arrival to establish baseline exposure to disease and any change in health status. Incoming stock can be isolated, monitored for signs of disease, and tested before introduction to the herd. Finally, animals can be retested before exiting isolation facilities. All animals should appear healthy and test negative to diseases of concern, prior to entering the existing herd facilities.

Isolation of incoming animals is one method to lessen the risk of disease introduction to a herd. Isolation provides the opportunity to recognize clinical signs of disease in incoming animals before carrier animals can infect the entire herd. Models have estimated that 6–30 days would elapse before clinical signs of transmissible gastroenteritis virus were detected in a herd after the introduction of a carrier pig (Hone 1994). Isolation also provides an opportunity to test incoming animals for pathogens and acclimatize incoming animals by direct exposure or vaccination before entry to the main herd. The duration of isolation will vary with the pathogen of concern, but it generally lasts at least 30 days.

People
A study of swine herds consisting of greater than 2000 pigs in three California counties reported that swine herds were contacted by people (and vehicles) that had contacted other livestock facilities between 374.9–1239.5 times per month with an average indirect contact rate of 807 times per month (Bates et al. 2001). The ease of transportation in the modern world has resulted in increased frequency of contacts, which could increase the risk of disease transfer.

African swine fever virus was not detected in nasal swabs of people immediately after 30 minutes of exposure to infected pigs (Wilkinson et al. 1977). Moreover, downtimes were not needed to prevent mechanical transmission of E. coli, FMD virus (O/UK/35/2001), TGE virus, or PRRS virus by people in experimental trials, provided that the appropriate decontamination methods for each pathogen were implemented (Amass et al.
Showering and donning clean coveralls, boots, and gloves was sufficient to prevent mechanical transmission of FMD virus (O/UK/35/2001) from infected pigs to susceptible pigs (Amass et al. 2003b). Hand washing and donning clean outerwear was sufficient to prevent mechanical transmission of FMD virus (O/UK/35/2001) from infected pigs to susceptible pigs, but sheep remained susceptible (Amass et al. 2003b).

Pigs are more resistant to FMD virus (O/UK/35/2001) compared to sheep (Donaldson and Alexandersen 2001). Presumably, hand washing and changing outerwear reduced the dose mechanically transmitted by people to that below the infectious dose for swine, but a sheep-infectious dose was still transmitted (Amass et al. 2003b). Similarly, showering and donning clean outerwear was effective in preventing the mechanical transmission of E. coli by people from infected to susceptible pigs, while hand washing and donning clean outerwear did not prevent such transmission (Amass et al. 2003a).

Hand washing or showering and donning clean outerwear were both effective in preventing a person from mechanically transmitting TGE virus of swine from infected pigs to susceptible pigs (Alvarez et al. 2001). Finally, hand washing or showering and donning clean outerwear were both sufficient to prevent the mechanical transmission of PRRS virus under conditions of extraordinary contamination of people (Otake et al. 2002b).

Scientific studies regarding effective showering procedures are absent, with the exception of those studies cited above wherein showering was used as an intervention for disease transmission. Presumably, showering procedures should ensure that sufficient time is spent to remove all organic material from body surfaces. Similarly, most hand washing studies were performed under experimental or hospital conditions that do not reflect the extent of hand contamination following procedures performed in a swine unit. Both resident and transient bacteria colonize hands. The goal of hand washing is to remove the transient bacteria. The effectiveness of hand washing as a hygiene tool will vary with the contaminant organisms. For example, the percentage reduction in E. coli on hands after 10 seconds of hand washing was significantly greater than the percentage reduction of human rotavirus, regardless of the washing media (antimicrobial soap, unmedicated soap, or tap water) used (Ansari et al. 1991). The efficacy of medicated soap in reducing transient bacterial flora after 30 seconds of hand washing varied according to bacterial type, with some medicated soaps more efficacious than others for certain classes of bacteria (Puthucheary et al. 1981).

Current hand washing recommendations for visibly contaminated hands consist of wetting the hands, then using plain or antimicrobial soaps to wash the hands by vigorously rubbing together all hand surfaces for at least 15 seconds. The hands should then be thoroughly rinsed and dried (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2002). Fifteen seconds of washing might not be sufficient for grossly contaminated hands; therefore, washing presumably should continue for 15 seconds after the time that hands are visibly free of organic material.

Generally, in cases where hands were not visibly contaminated, use of at least 1–3 ml of an alcohol-based hand antiseptic reduced bacterial counts more than washing with medicated or unmedicated soap and water. Applying less than 0.5 ml of alcohol-based antiseptic to hands was not more effective than washing hands with plain soap and water. The exact volume of alcohol-based solution that is most effective likely varies among products, but generally, hands should still feel wet from the alcohol after rubbing them together for 15 seconds to ensure that a sufficient volume of product was used. Swine care workers should be cautioned that alcohols are not effective on visibly contaminated hands (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2002).

Drying hands following washing is an important part of hand hygiene. Drying hands for either 10 seconds with a cloth towel or 20 seconds with an air dryer reduced bacterial transfer from hands to pieces of plastic by 99% when compared to bacterial transfer from wet hands (Patrick et al. 1997). Electric air-drying of hands for 10 seconds was more effective in reducing numbers of both E. coli and rotavirus compared to drying hands with a paper or cloth towel for 10 seconds (Ansari et al. 1991).

Wearing gloves can decrease the gross contamination of hands but does not prevent the need for hand washing. Hands can become contaminated through holes in the gloves and/or during glove donning and doffing (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2002). Thus, hand washing is recommended following the removal of gloves.

There is little evidence to require restrictions regarding off-farm contact among personnel working at different swine farms to prevent indirect transmission of swine pathogens from farm to farm. Person-to-person transfer of swine pathogens is possible but the frequency of occurrence under field conditions is unknown. Transfer of FMD virus between people was documented after persons in contact with infected animals spoke to unexposed colleagues in a box for 4 minutes (Sellers et al. 1970). Circumstantial evidence of transmission of swine influenza virus among people has been documented but not definitively proven. The 1976 outbreak of swine influenza A at Fort Dix affected at least
230 military personnel and was probably introduced by a new trainee (Top and Russell 1977). However, the initial human source of the virus was never proven and there was no evidence, aside from the viral strain, linking the outbreak to contact with swine (Kendal et al. 1977). Circumstantial evidence exists that a woman attending a county fair in which there was a flu-like illness became infected with swine influenza virus from the pigs and subsequently spread the virus to health care workers (Wells et al. 1991). In contrast, an 8-year-old boy that was infected with swine influenza virus and lived on a swine farm did not transmit the virus to his parents or to his five siblings, despite close contact (O’Brien et al. 1977). Notably, definitive evidence of people infected with swine influenza virus transmitting the virus to swine has not been documented, despite some evidence of person-to-person transmission.

Non-Porcine Vectors
Farm management plans should include procedures for the control of wildlife and feral animals that can act as disease vectors.

Insects
Sanitation is the key measure for controlling insects (Williams 1992). From observations of Musca domestica in England, it was reported that fly numbers were fairly constant in closed buildings with fly numbers dropping when rooms were cleaned between groups of pigs, but increasing when rooms were restocked (Denholm et al. 1985). Manure, spoiled feed, and wet areas should be removed at least twice a week (Williams 1992). Flies and mosquitoes can be controlled by spraying pigs with insecticides or treating the environments with sprays, fogs, baits, and larvicides (Williams 1992). Persistent use of the same insecticide, especially in houseflies overwintering in indoor buildings was thought to contribute to maintenance of insecticide-resistant fly populations (Denholm et al. 1985). Traps and screens can be used to mechanically rid an area of insects (Williams 1992). Nematodes can be used to control housefly populations. Fewer flies were counted on a farm when baits of the nematode Steinernema feltiae were used compared to methomyl baits (Renn 1998).

Cleaning and Disinfecution
One route of infection for pigs is through contact with a contaminated environment. Therefore, thorough cleaning and disinfection of all surfaces is crucial to a successful biosecurity program. Swine exposed to a Salmonella Typhimurium-contaminated environment for as little as 2 hours became infected (Hurd et al. 2001). Cleaning prior to disinfection is the most important step. All visible organic material (feed, urine, manure, secretions) should be removed from the surface(s) to be disinfected. A general target for the number of aerobic bacteria present following cleaning of surfaces and prior to disinfection is $10^6$ cfu/cm$^2$ (Böhm 1998).

Disinfectants should be applied according to label directions. Extralabel use of most disinfectants is a violation of United States federal law. Disinfectant classes have general properties (Table 68.9) but an individual formulation could have a broader or more limited spectrum of activity (Jeffrey 1995; McDonnell and Russell 1999). Human health risks have been associated with some classes of disinfectants (Table 68.9) (Bruins and Dyer 1995).

The field efficacy of a disinfectant is dependent on a variety of factors, including but not limited to the surfaces to be disinfected, pathogens present, water quality,
and organic material. Thus, label claims do not always translate into effectiveness in field situations (Kennedy et al. 1995).

An initial disinfectant choice should be based on disinfectant class properties, label claims, and independent data if available. Disinfectants should be prepared and applied according to label directions. Ideally, the disinfectant should be allowed to dry, or, at minimum, the contact time recommended on the label should elapse. Cleaning and disinfection protocol effectiveness can be determined by sampling the environment for specific pathogens or by using aerobic bacterial counts as a marker for contamination. The target for number of aerobic bacteria present after disinfection is 1 cfu/cm² (Tamasi 1995). However, a target of 10³ cfu/cm² has been suggested for disinfection of livestock facilities and transport vehicles (Böhm 1998). Sentinel animals can also be used to monitor for specific pathogens following depopulation of a facility.

**Processing Equipment.** Dipping processing instruments in disinfectant is a common method of decontaminating instruments between litters of pigs. However, dipping tail clippers in chlorhexidine diacetate solution after a single use did not significantly reduce the mean aerobic bacterial counts on the blade when compared to untreated clippers (Alvarez et al. 2002). Wiping the blade with a clean cloth did significantly reduce the mean aerobic bacterial counts on the clippers (Alvarez et al. 2002). Wiping the blade physically removes organic contamination that dipping does not eliminate. Moreover, dipping instruments in disinfectant does not allow the minimum contact time needed for the disinfectant to work.

**Boots.** Farms maintain boot baths with the goal of preventing mechanical transmission of pathogens among groups of pigs. Frequently boot baths are grossly contaminated with organic matter as their maintenance is often lacking. They are also inconvenient and people commonly avoid the bath or step through the bath without stopping to clean their boots.

One suggestion for effective utilization of boot baths consisted of cleaning boots in a preliminary bath filled with dilute detergent, followed by immersion of clean boots to a depth of 15 cm, for at least 1 minute, in a second bath filled with detergent (Quinn 1991). Additionally recommendations included that large units prepare new boot baths daily or when visibly contaminated, and small units prepare new boot baths every 3 days (Quinn 1991).

Glutaraldehyde, chlorhexidine, sodium hypochlorite, iodine, phenolic, quaternary ammonium, and peroxide disinfectants were evaluated utilizing various boot bath protocols. Bacterial counts on boots were not effectively lowered when the boots were contaminated with manure and then dipped in disinfectant (Amass et al. 2001) or soaked in disinfectant for 2 minutes (Amass et al. 2000b, 2001). Bacterial counts were effectively reduced when manure was removed from the boots by either scrubbing off manure in a clean disinfectant boot bath (Amass et al. 2000b, 2001) or scrubbing off manure in water and then dipping boots in a clean disinfectant boot bath (Amass et al. 2001). Contaminated boot baths, even those used only once previously, increased bacterial contamination of the boot (Amass et al. 2000b).

Dipping disposable plastic boots that were experimentally contaminated with PRRSV virus into a fresh bath of undiluted 6% sodium hypochlorite for 5 seconds reduced the number of boots that were PCR-positive for PRRSV virus as compared to boots that were experimentally contaminated and then dipped in a water bath without disinfectant (Dee et al. 2004). Similar results were reported when this experiment was repeated using fecal contamination in addition to virus contamination of boots (Dee et al. 2004). The disinfectant was not neutralized after sampling in these trials; therefore, the effective contact time likely exceeded 5 seconds. Moreover, virus isolation was not used to determine PRRSV viability.

**Laundry.** Contaminated clothing is a potential fomite in disease transmission. Poliovirus and vaccinia virus were experimentally transferred from contaminated to sterile fabrics when dry pieces of fabric were randomly tumbled in a jar. Maximum virus transfer occurred between 1 and 30 minutes (Sidwell et al. 1970). Microorganisms were also transferred from contaminated to sterile fabrics during laundering in a washing machine (Wiksell et al. 1973).

The effect of water temperature during laundering varies and is likely dependent on the contaminating pathogens, detergents and laundry chemicals used, and water characteristics such as hardness and pH. Early research recommended that hospital laundry be washed for 13 minutes at 60°C for optimal bacterial reduction (Walter and Schillinger 1975). Later, bacterial counts from hospital towels and sheets laundered at 71°C (160°F) and 22°C (72°F) were reported as not significantly different (Blaser et al. 1984). Washing at 47.8°C (118°F) to 60°C (140°F) with detergent and bleach was just as effective at removing bacteria as washing using similar procedures at 73.9°C (165°F) to 77.2°C (171°F) (Christian et al. 1983). Increased concentrations of bleach could compensate for lower washing temperatures (Christian et al. 1983). In contrast, water temperatures of 54°C to 60°C were more effective at removing poliovirus from contaminated fabrics than laundering at water temperatures of 21°C to 27°C or 38°C to 43°C (Sidwell et al. 1971). Laundering cloth contaminated with enterococci at temperatures of 71°C to 80°C for 3.5–10 minutes was effective even though the enterococci strains used survived for 30 minutes at 85°C under laboratory conditions (Orr et al. 2002). Thus, a correla-
tion cannot always be found between the thermotolerance of an organism and survival during laundering (Orr et al. 2002).

Rinse water discharged from washing machines can contain viable bacteria and viruses. Concentrations of viable bacteria in rinse water were detected at levels from 100–5,000 cfu per ml at wash temperature of 38°C, 12–398 cfu/ml at wash temperature of 49°C, and 3–302 cfu/ml at wash temperature of 60°C. The final rinse had less than or equal to 20 cfu per ml regardless of wash water temperature used (Walter and Schillinger 1975). Viable poliovirus was not recovered from rinse water when laundering at water temperatures of 54°C to 60°C, but it was recovered when water temperatures of 21°C to 27°C or 38°C to 43°C were used (Sidwell et al. 1971).

The target for the number of bacteria adhered to fabric after laundering is 0.2 cfu/cm² (Walter and Schillinger 1975). However, quantification of bacteria on fabrics is difficult. Results from impression cultures using RODAC plates (replicate organism detection and counting) do not correlate well with more accurate destructive techniques such as cultures of macerated fabric samples (Nicholes 1970; Wetzler et al. 1971). Thus, the effectiveness of laundry procedures is more accurately determined by culturing fabrics for specific pathogens of concern instead of general quantification of total microbiotics located within 300 meters of the farm site were 9.28 cases (Rajkowski et al. 1998). The principles of vehicle sanitation follow those outlined for facilities and equipment (Poumian 1995). However, cleaning and disinfesting vehicles can be difficult because surfaces are irregular and multiple materials are involved (Böhm 1998). Moreover, low outdoor temperatures prevent adequate decontamination if an indoor washing facility is not available (Böhm 1998). Ideally, vehicles should be decontaminated in an indoor facility at temperatures above 10°C (Böhm 1998). Selection of disinfectants for vehicles should ensure that the disinfectant used is not corrosive.

**Water**

On-farm water supplies range from freshwater to rural water. They also include sources such as rainwater, including runoff, ground water, rivers, and streams. Reducing the risk of pathogens in water depends on several possible approaches that take into account the source of water, physical treatment (filtration, sedimentation), and chemical treatment (disinfection). Water safety and quality can be determined by bacterial analysis of water samples. Depending on previous history of the water source, a water analysis may need to be done annually at a minimum.

**Carcass Disposal**

Carcasses of previously ill pigs have the potential to be a source of pathogens. Prompt carcass disposal is recommended for aesthetic as well as biosecurity reasons. Farms storing carcasses inside the perimeter of the farm premises were 3.4 times more likely to experience two or more respiratory disease outbreaks per year than farms that did not maintain carcasses on site (Rose and Madec 2002). Approved carcass disposal options vary according to local regulations. Options for carcass disposal include burial, landfills, composting, rendering, tissue digestion, and incineration (Sander et al. 2002).

**Manure**

Inactivation of viruses in liquid manure is not practical but could be necessary prior to repopulation after a disease outbreak. Long-term storage of manure for at least 6 months at 4°C without addition of new manure should be effective assuming a virus titer reduction of 1–2 log₁₀ units per month. A directive of the Federal Ministry of Agriculture in Germany recommends the following methods for disinfection of manure: 40% solution of lime hydrate at a concentration of 40–60 liters per cubic meter of liquid manure can be used at temperatures between 0 and −10°C; or a 50% solution of sodium hydroxide at a concentration of 16–30 liters per cubic meter of liquid manure can be used at temperatures between 0 and 10°C. Manure should be stirred prior to, during, and for 6 hours after chemical disinfection. The duration of exposure of manure to chemicals should be at least 4 days and preferably 1 week. Peracetic acid at a concentration of 25–40 liters per cubic meter of liquid manure can be used at temperatures between 0 and 10°C. The exposure time in this case is at least 1 hour and often is not practical due to excessive foaming (Haas et al. 1995).

**Feed**

Outbreaks of exotic diseases such as classical swine fever have been traced back to swill feeding (Fritzemeier et al. 2000). United States federal law states “No person shall feed or permit the feeding of garbage to swine unless the garbage is treated to kill disease organisms . . .” (9 CFR Ch. 1, Part 166—Swine Health Protection, Section 166.2, 1-1-98 Edition). However, some individual states forbid feeding both treated and untreated garbage. Feed and feed ingredients can be proactively monitored for pathogens and toxins.
Control of Movement

Modifications of pig flow can be used to control disease transmission. Sow-to-pig transmission of certain pathogens can be prevented or minimized by weaning pigs while they still have colostral immunity to their dam’s pathogens to a pathogen-free environment with other pigs of similar health status (Clark et al. 1994; Dritz et al. 1996). Strategic medication and vaccination can be used as adjunct procedures for early weaning programs (Alexander et al. 1980; Mézázros et al. 1985; Harris et al. 1992).

Similarly, segregating pigs in groups by age minimizes transfer of pathogens from older to younger pigs. Age-segregated growing pigs can then be moved in cohorts in all-in/all-out fashion by filling and emptying rooms, buildings or sites over a short time frame, and cleaning and disinfecting pig areas between groups of pigs. These procedures are thought to minimize transmission of pathogens from older infected pigs or contaminated environments to susceptible pigs. In contrast, continuous flow systems that continuously commingle pigs of various ages without periodic cleaning of the environment offer increased possibilities of disease transmission from infected to susceptible pigs or through contact with a contaminated environment. The process of age segregation has recently been applied to the breeding herd and designated parity segregation. Parity segregation houses the gilts separately from the existing breeding herd. The gilts are exposed to the sow herd pathogens in the same way as gilts in acclimation. The gilts will farrow at this separate site. They will enter the existing breeding herd after weaning the first litter. This allows a longer “cool down” period for infectious organisms.

Pig Movement

In several countries, a national animal identification plan is used or is being developed to assist tracking pig movement intrastate, interstate, and internationally. In 1924, the Office International des Epizooties (OIE) was formed to encourage and coordinate research for the worldwide monitoring and control of animal diseases. The OIE provides information on the animal disease status of member countries and publishes international animal health standards for import and export of animals and animal products.

People Movement

Limiting visitors to essential personnel is one method of minimizing the risk of pathogen introduction by people. People who have been on farms with disease outbreaks should, at minimum, shower and change clothing before entering a population of susceptible swine. Generally, people movement should flow from healthy pigs to sick or carrier pigs. People flow from young to old pigs is also recommended.

Vaccination and Medication

Strategic vaccination and medication are an essential part of any herd health program. An effective vaccination program should reduce transmission of pathogens within a herd. An experiment to quantify pseudorabies virus transmission among vaccinated and unvaccinated pigs found that the number of secondary cases of pseudorabies per infected pig was 10 in unvaccinated pigs, but only 0.5 in vaccinated pigs (de Jong and Kimman 1994).

Surveillance Testing Programs

Periodic testing can be used to assess herd health status. Tests used will be determined by the pathogens of interest. Sample size will be dependent on expected disease prevalence in the population. Sampling can be simple and random or systematic (Thrusfield 1995). Cross-sectional and longitudinal sampling methods are often used in a complementary fashion. For more detailed information on surveillance programs, see Chapter 69 on disease surveillance in swine populations.

Record Keeping for Surveillance and Regulated Diseases

Morbidity, mortality, reproductive, and growth performance records can be used proactively to identify indicators of pathogen introduction.

Records also become important when regulated diseases are suspected. Information regarding the origin of all animals, animal products (including modified live vaccines, biologicals, and semen), feedstuffs (grain, supplements), equipment, vehicles (for livestock, feed, swine specialists), and people (sales and feed representatives, visitors, veterinarians, technicians, mail delivery personnel, service personnel) that have visited the farm prior to the outbreak is used in “traceback” procedures to identify the source of the pathogen and determine how the pathogen was introduced. Procedures can be implemented to minimize future risk of disease introduction once the source of the pathogen has been identified. Similar information regarding animal and equipment movements off the farm are used in “traceforward” procedures to determine other premises that possibly received infected animals, animal products, or contaminated equipment.

Maintaining herd records and updated back-up copies of records routinely can assist in both traceforward and traceback procedures when needed. Attempting to acquire information during an outbreak situation is difficult due to the chaotic nature of a disease outbreak. Regular herd records allow the producer to rapidly and accurately produce movement records facilitating the tracking procedures. Moreover, individual animal identification (within sow herds) will enhance the efficiency of tracking procedures. A single individual on each premise should be responsible for maintaining accurate records although every employee should know how to access the records in case of an emergency.
The following are recommendations for records to be kept on a regular basis:

1. Inventory of animals in the herd: number of animals, animal identification, breed, age, species, origin. Animals that die or are culled from the herd should be identified.
2. Animal movement to and from the farm: date, animal identification, origin, destination, reason, driver, vehicle used, previous owners’ name and phone number.
3. Visitor: names, phone numbers, reason for visit, time since last contact with livestock, facilities entered. Visitors include all nonemployees: veterinarians, feed salesman, livestock dealers, repairmen, neighbors, etc.
4. Vehicles: driver, dates, origins, destinations. All vehicles other than those recorded in the visitor log should be included, e.g., those used for package delivery, propane trucks, trash pick-up, electric company, etc.
5. Equipment, feed, semen movement: dates, origins, destinations, delivery person, salesman.
7. Vaccination and treatment records: animal identification, date, reason for treatment/vaccination, medication used.
8. Employee records: name, address, phone number, whether the employee has contact with other livestock.
9. Pets and other animals located on the premises.
10. Cull animals sold: number, date, location.

Additional information will be requested in the event of an outbreak of a regulated disease (United States Department of Agriculture 1992). Immediately after a presumptive and/or confirmed diagnosis of a regulated disease, investigators require information regarding all movements of animals (livestock and pets), products (meat), manure, equipment, vehicles, people, and feed to the farm premises for the 21 days preceding the outbreak. Information designated above will be used.

CERTIFICATION PROGRAMS

Certification programs can be used to establish that a herd is free of a specific pathogen. Certification programs can be used on a local level as a transition step for large eradication projects. The Trichinae Certification Program is one example of a program recently initiated to control a pathogen (Pybrun 2003).

ERADICATION PROGRAMS

Eradication programs can be designed on the herd, local, regional, national, or international level. Eradication can sometimes be achieved through normal replacement of breeding stock. In other cases, programs such as test and removal with or without vaccination, partial depopulation or total depopulation are required.

Emergency vaccination as a tool for eradication of List A diseases has been reviewed (Laddomada 2003). Attempts have been made to eliminate porcine reproductive and respiratory disease virus from swine herds by using test and removal, and nursery depopulation with or without vaccination of the breeding herd (Dee and Joo 1994; Dee et al. 1998, 2001). Transmissible gastroenteritis virus has been eliminated from swine herds by depopulation and test and removal (Gunn 1996). Partial depopulation by removing all animals under 10 months of age from the farm, cleaning and disinfecting facilities, and medicating adult animals was successful in 81% of the attempts to eradicate M. hyopneumoniae (Heinonen et al. 1999).

Herd factors will determine the best strategy for eradication. Pseudorabies eradication was used in one decision-making model. Vaccination was preferred in large herds with low seroprevalence in sows and high farm density, partial depopulation was preferred with high seroprevalence in sows, and test and removal was preferred with low seroprevalence in sows. Finally, outdoor operations tended toward depopulation and repopulation (Siegel and Weigel 1999).

Depopulation and repopulation protocols are expensive to implement and require much planning. Briefly, the herd should first be assessed to determine current and desired performance, cost of the enzootic diseases, cost of medications and veterinary care, value of current genetics, labor requirements, antibiotic usage, feed costs, and psychological costs of the disease on personnel. Next, protocols for the timing of depopulation, downtime, cleanup procedures, and methods of repopulation should be investigated to determine whether the plan is feasible (McNaughton 1988). Available data is insufficient to be dogmatic about downtimes needed before repopulation. For example, a review of research on FMD virus survival led to estimates of downtimes of at least 3 months for hot climates (>20°C) and greater than 6 months for cold climates (Bartley et al. 2002).

Depopulation is mandatory for many exotic disease eradication programs. Euthanasia of infected animals and preemptive culling of surrounding susceptible livestock are thought to be the most effective means of controlling a FMD outbreak (Ferguson et al. 2001). In some cases, clinically healthy animals must be euthanized because animal and feed movement restrictions impair their well-being. Animal welfare should be considered when designing and implementing depopulation protocols with a euthanasia component (Whiting 2003). The American Association of Swine Veterinarians and the National Pork Board have published acceptable swine euthanasia options. Additionally, options for euthana-
sia of large numbers of swine have been published (Lambooy and van Voorst 1986).

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 68

SWINE DISEASE TRANSMISSION AND PREVENTION


Swine Disease TRANSMISSION AND PREVENTION


CHAPTER 68
SWINE DISEASE TRANSMISSION AND PREVENTION


Animal disease surveillance is in a phase of rapid evolution and innovation. The impetus for this change arises from several factors including greater recognition of the frequency and impact of emerging diseases, increasing volumes of international trade in animal products, requirements of trading countries and obligations specified under agreements of the World Trade Organization (WTO), ongoing consolidation of animal production worldwide into fewer and larger populations, and the threat of agriterrorism in the wake of September 11. Collectively these factors translate into greater demand among government agencies and other entities for more powerful tools for detecting changing patterns of disease in animal populations. In the contemporary global business environment, efficient disease surveillance provides the foundation for trust in international trade in animals and animal products (Salman et al. 2003). Ongoing advances in communications technology and information management, and technological advances in diagnostics (Risatti et al. 2003), are creating new opportunities for animal disease surveillance.

A recent text edited by Salman (2003) provides a comprehensive overview of the fundamentals of animal disease surveillance and survey systems, principally from the perspective of government agencies responsible for regulated disease control and eradication programs. However, disease surveillance has a growing role in other arenas, particularly at an industry level and in large corporate production systems that make up much of the swine industry of many developed countries (Table 69.1).

Wildlife populations can be important reservoirs for animal diseases (Elbers et al. 2000; Morner et al. 2002), and increased wildlife surveillance has been prompted by increased recognition of the role of wildlife in emerging diseases. At the level of individual commercial herds, disease surveillance has historically involved recording of gross lesions in slaughtered pigs. Readers seeking specific information on slaughter surveillance in swine are referred to the previous edition of Diseases of Swine (Pointon et al. 1999). In contrast, due to cost considerations, routine surveillance using laboratory testing has been traditionally less frequent at the herd level. However, demographic changes in the industry (increased herd sizes, consolidation, multiple-site production), improved diagnostic tests, and persistent problems with porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) in many countries including the U.S., have altered both the need for and feasibility of herd-level surveillance systems (Torrison 1998). In this chapter we attempt to provide an update on current developments in animal health surveillance, and identify opportunities for enhancing surveillance efforts in the context of modern swine production in developed countries.

**THE SCOPE OF SURVEILLANCE IN SWINE PRODUCTION**

Disease surveillance is a management information tool. In essence, surveillance encompasses activities undertaken to measure disease events in defined populations in order to obtain information of value to decision makers (e.g., producers, veterinarians, industry, government agencies). Surveillance information is applicable to support decisions about health status certification; compliance with customer requirements; compliance with regulatory requirements; and health management decisions, including treatment and preventive measures and altering pig flow. Fundamental objectives of surveillance are to establish the qualitative status of animal populations (groups, sites, pods, companies, regions, or countries) with respect to the presence or absence of a specific disease or agent, or to quantify frequency of disease in affected populations and its distribution in space and time (determining disease trends). Salman et al. (2003) addressed the distinction between monitoring and surveillance that pervades the veterinary literature, and adopted the acronym “MOSS” (designating “monitoring or surveillance system”) as an umbrella term to
1100

SECTION V

Table 69.1.

VETERINARY PRACTICE

Overview of overall objectives and purposes of surveillance activities in different arenas

Arena
National (State)

Industry/Corporate

Objective
Demonstrate freedom from disease
Outbreak detection
Disease control and eradication
Monitor notifiable diseases
Monitor zoonotic and foodborne pathogens
Monitor emerging diseases
Assure freedom from disease
Outbreak detection
Define herd disease status
Monitor endemic production diseases
Monitor zoonotic and foodborne pathogens

Commercial production
Wildlife

Indexes of animal welfare
Monitor endemic production diseases
Outbreak detection
Establish disease status

discuss the relevant concepts. Similarly, for simplicity
we will use the term surveillance in a generic sense to include the spectrum of activities that encompass either
surveillance or monitoring.
The cornerstone of any epidemiologic endeavor is
case definition. Historically the primary focus of animal
disease surveillance has been agent-defined infectious
diseases, such as diseases listed by the Office International des Épizooties (OIE), or zoonotic or other diseases
targeted in national control programs (tuberculosis,
brucellosis, hog cholera, pseudorabies). As such, case
definition is typically founded on use of agent-specific
diagnostic tests (see Chapter 10 on interpretation of laboratory results). Growing concerns about the emergence
of apparently novel diseases and of bioterrorism targeting human or animal populations, have led to development of systems for “syndromic” surveillance in both
the human and animal arenas (de Groot et al. 2003;
Pavlin 2003). Case definition in syndromic surveillance
is based on clinical symptoms rather than agent-specific
diagnostic testing. For both agent-defined and syndromic surveillance, the precision and accuracy of data
are influenced by case definition and other factors and
can be enhanced by implementation of standard approaches for quality control (Stärk et al. 2002; Salman et
al. 2003).
Although the term syndromic surveillance is now
very much in mode, both the concept and practice are
established pillars of population medicine in food animals. Most of the standard indexes that veterinarians
and producers use to assess herd population health
and performance are syndromic. Obvious examples are
mortality incidence in different age groups of stock,
prevalence of stillbirths and mummification in neonatal pigs, and lameness or abortion rates. Typically, fail-

Purpose
Maintain trade access
Facilitate response capability to exotic and novel diseases
Optimize operational efficiency of regulatory programs
Gather epidemiologic intelligence to support regulatory
decisions
Protect public health; maintain trade access
Early detection of novel pathogens
Breeding stock suppliers; boar studs—protect production
pyramids
Protect production pyramids
Inform pig flow decisions
Epidemiologic intelligence to support health management
decisions
Public health and trade access; quality assurance and product
differentiation
Address consumer concerns; quality assurance
Support health management decisions
Early response to minimize disease impact
Support regulatory decisions and control programs

ure to meet predetermined targets triggers further investigation or corrective actions, and these concepts
have been widely addressed in the production medicine literature (Deen at al. 2001). For this reason, we
will focus our discussion on surveillance opportunities
in relation to known and emerging diseases of swine.
Because government and regulatory perspectives on
surveillance issues have been well covered elsewhere
(Salman 2003), our emphasis will be in the arena of
modern commercial production, where veterinarians
are confronted with rapid change and increasingly
complex decisions about disease surveillance in large
systems.

COMPONENTS OF A SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM
Surveillance comprises collection, analysis, and interpretation of disease data, coupled with dissemination of
the information to decision-makers responsible for implementing appropriate actions (Buehler 1998). At the
herd level in traditional farrow-to-finish production,
surveillance of pig health has included monitoring of
clinical signs, production indexes, and lesions in slaughtered pigs as predominantly syndromic indicators, triggering more specific diagnostic efforts when aberrations
were detected. Structural (e.g., multiple-site production
in large systems) and operational (e.g., artificial insemination based around boar studs) changes in the industry
have ushered in new challenges in surveillance as a tool
for managing health risks in swine populations. Veterinarians serving these systems are now confronted with
more complex problems of designing sampling and testing programs to obtain the information they require at
acceptable cost.
There are many potential sources of surveillance


data, ranging from surveys of producers about animal health to results of diagnostic tests performed in national or international reference laboratories (Doherr and Audige 2001). Inevitably there are trade-offs between the reliability and scope of data, and at a regulatory level diagnostic laboratories have provided the bulk of surveillance data. However, different sources of data provide different (and probably complementary) perspectives on the frequency of health events in herds (McIntyre et al. 2002). Because the utility of disease surveillance is in part determined by timeliness, ideally the processes of data collection and analysis should approach real time, and the value of diagnostic data decays over time (Schlosser and Ebel 2001).

**DESIGN ASPECTS OF POPULATION SURVEILLANCE**

The principles underlying the use and interpretation of diagnostic testing are reviewed elsewhere in this text (see Chapter 10). It is imperative for veterinarians who confront complex surveillance decisions to have a strong theoretical understanding of the relationships between diagnostic test performance, sampling theory, and disease prevalence that underpin the interpretation of aggregate (herd-level) testing. In evaluating testing strategies for classical swine fever in Denmark, Stärk et al. (2000) list the following factors for consideration in designing testing protocols: diseases to be selected and their epidemiology, unit of analysis (e.g., animal, herd, or region), target population (age group or farm type), test characteristics, and sample size. In recent years, there have been important theoretical advances in diagnostic test interpretation in veterinary medicine, particularly at the aggregate level (Cameron and Baldock 1998; Christensen and Gardner 2000; Greiner and Gardner 2000; Cannon 2001; Johnson et al. 2004). These have led to the development of some practical tools to facilitate quantitative approaches to the design and interpretation of population testing protocols. For example, Survey Toolbox is a suite of software programs designed to support planning and analysis of animal health surveys. One component of this suite is an epidemiological probability calculator (FreeCalc) to support testing to evaluate freedom from disease. FreeCalc has two modules that enable calculation of sample sizes and analysis of test results for freedom from disease. It accounts for imperfections in diagnostic tests and population size and requires inputs for test sensitivity and specificity, population size, minimum expected prevalence of disease (if present). FreeCalc also allows the user to define acceptable error levels. More sophisticated tools are becoming available that extend this approach to incorporate uncertainty in test performance characteristics and expected prevalence (Audige et al. 2001; Johnson et al. 2004). The latter publication explains freely available software (BayesFreeCalc) for evaluating the probability of freedom from disease allowing for uncertainty in input parameters. A further extension that is required is the incorporation of testing costs as well as the respective costs of misclassification errors (false positive, false negative) that need to be considered when designing surveillance strategies (Greiner 1996; Hilden and Glasziou 1996; Smith and Slenning 2000).

**RISK-BASED SURVEILLANCE**

The term *risk-based surveillance* is becoming more prevalent in government documents in various countries, and has been applied in relation to residue monitoring, disease surveillance and foodborne hazards. This term conveys the economic axiom that limited surveillance resources need to be applied where risk is greatest and so that the greatest economic return will be realized (Stärk et al., submitted). At any level (farm, company, region, nation), establishing a disease surveillance system is an investment decision for allocating limited financial resources. Logically this requires designing sampling and testing protocols weighted to yield the most valuable mix of disease information. The most topical and controversial example of risk-based approaches to disease is the surveillance options for bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE) (Doherr et al. 2001). The strategy of focusing on high-risk population subgroups (older cattle, emergency slaughter, and fallen stock in the case of BSE) to improve the sensitivity of surveillance programs is intuitively obvious. Similarly, swine veterinarians increasingly are sampling nursery pigs for evidence of PRRS virus infection acquired in breeding herds and will usually focus on poorly doing pigs that are assumed more likely to be infected. In the absence of unlimited resources for diagnostic testing, a level of residual risk of disease must be tolerated, and at some point further investment in surveillance becomes unwise because resources would be more effectively allocated to other areas (e.g., improving biosecurity or response capability). The effective implementation of risk-based (or targeted) surveillance strategies is reliant on valid epidemiologic intelligence that accurately reflects the risk profile of the population involved.

In the context of food safety, risk-based approaches are also being developed. The Codex Alimentarius Commission is proposing risk-based systems for meat inspection. In such a system, inspection of carcasses at slaughter may be conducted in alternative ways depending on the health and/or hygiene status of the farm of origin. Surveillance data from farms will be needed at slaughter in order to decide whether a simplified inspection is acceptable or whether intensified inspection with or without laboratory testing is required. This concept has already been included in the new meat hygiene legislation of the European Union.
DEMONSTRATING FREEDOM FROM DISEASE—THE BOAR STUD DILEMMA

Demonstrating freedom of a population from disease is problematic for a number of reasons, recently expounded by Cameron et al. (2003):

- Freedom from disease implies complete absence of disease in the population. This means that a large population may not contain a single infected animal.
- Detection of disease at very low prevalences (e.g., the detection of a single infected animal) is not possible using sampling techniques. To guarantee that a population is free from disease, all animals in the population must be examined.
- The test that is used to detect disease in individual animals must have perfect sensitivity (i.e., always correctly identify diseased animals). Hardly any tests currently available are able to achieve this.
- Because disease may enter a population at any time, it is conceivable that the population has become infected by the time the last animal is tested.

As concluded by those authors, freedom from disease can be guaranteed only if all animals in a population are evaluated simultaneously with a perfectly sensitive test; yet usually herds (and countries) are perpetually exposed to the possibility of disease introduction. The report by Cameron et al. (2003) provides a thorough discussion of issues involved in assuring disease freedom in the context of assessing the status of Denmark with respect to classical swine fever (hog cholera).

Thurmond (2003) provides an insightful discussion of problems derived from temporal delays between the introduction of a disease and its ability to be detected using conventional sampling and testing protocols. This is most relevant to the challenge of surveillance of boar studs to prevent shipment of semen contaminated with PRRS virus. In hog-dense areas in the U.S., introductions of PRRS virus continue to occur despite extensive biosecurity efforts. Given the likely financial consequences of shipping infective semen to multiple breeding farms, considerable investment is warranted to prevent it, both in surveillance and in improving biosecurity of boar studs. From a surveillance perspective, key decisions include the samples to be collected (blood vs. semen), the tests to be applied (e.g., ELISA or PCR), and the frequency and intensity (sample size or census) of sampling. In this scenario, where rapid detection of disease at very low prevalence is desired, serological surveillance is of limited value due to the delay in antibody production following infection. Although PCR testing of semen for PRRS virus is routinely performed in many studs (because sample collection is convenient), the sensitivity of PCR testing of semen for detecting infected animals during the early stages of infection appears to be much lower (approximately tenfold) than PCR testing of serum (Reicks et al. 2004). Ongoing studies point to the future availability of practical approaches for routine blood sampling of boars during semen collection (Darwin Reicks, personal communication).

VETERINARY CLINICAL SURVEILLANCE

While historically focused on diseases under regulatory control, improved surveillance systems can also contribute to improved control of endemic diseases (McIntyre et al. 2002). Concerns about emerging human diseases have led to the development of surveillance systems such as the Rapid Syndrome Validation Project (RSVP) for detecting changing patterns of disease at a broad population level or similar programs involving health care providers (Lombardo et al. 2003). Although veterinarians are the frontline of response to disease problems in food animals, the collective efforts of veterinarians are a virtually untapped resource for epidemiologic intelligence (McIntyre et al. 2003; de Groot et al. 2003).

Consolidation of food animal production (and its veterinary services) together with advances in information technology have increased the potential for harnessing the efforts of veterinary clinicians for purposes of disease surveillance. Pioneering efforts to capture “coal face” food animal disease data from practicing veterinarians have been initiated with dairy cattle veterinarians in New Zealand (McIntyre et al. 2003) and beef veterinarians in Kansas (de Groot et al. 2003). The latter project (RSVP-Animal) is based conceptually on the human RSVP project. Both these veterinary initiatives use palm-held computers for field data capture, integrate data into centralized databases, analyze disease trends, and enable practicing veterinarians to access summary data by location. The Multi-Hazard Threat Database (MHTD) project of the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services represents a significant step forward in integrating veterinary clinical and government regulatory activities. The system, designed to minimize the impact from any disaster or disease on agriculture, integrates information systems of numerous federal, state, and local agencies to offer extensive, real-time information in the event of an emergency, natural disaster, or bioterrorism attack. While primarily designed to support emergency responses, it also provides decision support for veterinarians by enabling web access to real-time maps of endemic disease status (currently PRRS and TGE).

We believe that these initiatives using modern communications technology to capture veterinary activities offer great potential for enhanced surveillance and regional approaches to disease control in the U.S. swine industry. However, there remain numerous issues to address with respect of ownership and confidentiality of data, the sensitivity, specificity of clinical diagnoses, and value (vs. cost) of the information obtained.
SYNDROMIC SURVEILLANCE

Syndromic surveillance is arguably the most novel dimension of contemporary disease surveillance. The key distinction of syndromic surveillance is that, unlike conventional disease reporting, the data collected are not diagnoses of defined diseases, but data on clinical symptoms or other events (e.g., emergency room visits). The Center for Disease Control estimates that syndromic surveillance systems have been implemented by more than 100 public health entities in the U.S., with the goal of achieving earlier detection and public health responses to epidemics (Buehler et al. 2004). The principal motive for syndromic surveillance has been elevated concern about emerging diseases and bioterrorism, and the concept has been enabled through rapid advances in the field of biomedical informatics. The RSVP system exploits Internet connectivity for low-cost capture of data from a network of sentinel physicians who report signs and symptoms, and who are able to view map displays depicting regional disease patterns. Syndromic surveillance systems for public health use statistical tools for cluster detection, such as time series analysis and statistical process control, and may incorporate integrated alarms when threshold levels are exceeded (Reis and Mandl 2003). In common with other diagnostic systems, syndromic systems are evaluated in terms of sensitivity, specificity, and timeliness, and the cost effectiveness of syndromic surveillance as a tool for improving outbreak detection remains to be determined. In order to evaluate the operational performance of syndromic surveillance systems, Duchin (2003) pointed out that it will be necessary to conduct ongoing investigations of clusters identified through syndromic systems. Identifying appropriate epidemiological responses to surveillance signals will depend on effective standardization of methods for the collection, analysis, and interpretation of data (Duchin 2003).

We are aware of two initiatives to apply syndromic surveillance in veterinary medicine. The RSVP-Animal project in Kansas has been developed to enhance detection of emerging diseases in feedlot cattle based on veterinary clinical observations (de Groot et al. 2003). A large companion animal electronic database linking 360 hospitals in 47 U.S. states is being used to detect changes in patterns of clinical signs in dogs and cats (Moore et al. 2004). Syndromic definitions have been defined using CDC descriptions of likely bioterrorism agents, based on the concept that changes in animal health may have sentinel value for the human population.

SURVEILLANCE RELATED TO PUBLIC ISSUES—FOOD SAFETY, ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE, AND ANIMAL WELFARE

Surveillance activities in swine populations already extend beyond the domain of animal health. Over the last 10 years, general advocacy of the concept of preharvest food safety has stimulated efforts to develop suitable surveillance systems for foodborne hazards in animal populations. Although the objective has been to determine the status of animals on farms, for logistic reasons diagnostic testing has been generally confined to samples collected at harvest. The effectiveness of preharvest strategies for reducing foodborne disease risk depends on the efficacy of preharvest interventions for reducing the prevalence of infection in conjunction with post-farm procedures that ensure a low probability of recontamination of animals or food products (Davies et al. 2004). For several decades the Swedish government has maintained Salmonella control programs in its swine and poultry industries based on bacteriologic surveillance and regulatory controls (Boqvist et al. 2003). More recently, industrywide serological surveillance of herds for Salmonella enterica was implemented in Denmark, and it was subsequently implemented by other European countries (Mousing et al. 1997; Sorensen et al. 2004). Although the use of serological testing has greatly reduced the cost of testing compared with bacteriology, testing costs remain substantial, and considerable research continues to be directed at establishing the validity and reducing the costs of serological testing for Salmonella (Alban et al. 2002; Ekeroth et al. 2003; Sorensen et al. 2004). In the U.S., bacteriologic culture of Salmonella on swine carcasses is mandated under the Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point/Pathogen Reduction Act of 1995. However, this testing is conducted as part of the evaluation of hygienic measures in slaughter plants rather than for evaluating Salmonella in farm animal populations. Serological methods have also been developed for monitoring other foodborne pathogens occurring in swine, including Trichinella spiralis (Gamble 1998), Toxoplasma gondii (Dubey et al. 1995), and Yersinia enterocolitica (Thibodeau et al. 2001). However, routine surveillance for these agents as part of a coordinated control programs is still limited. National surveys conducted by the USDA-National Animal Health Monitoring System in 1990 and 1995 demonstrated a very low and declining prevalence (0.16% and 0.013%, respectively) of antibodies to T. spiralis in commercial pigs (Gamble and Bush 1999). Similarly, surveys of domestic and wild pigs in Canada indicate that the parasite is essentially absent from those populations (Gajadhar et al. 1997). Clearly, there is questionable rationale to implementing routine surveillance when infection occurs at low prevalence, and intermittent surveys are to be preferred. In Europe, the Zoonosis Directive (2003/99/EC) is expanding the demands for systematic surveillance of zoonoses and zoonotic agents along the food production chain in member countries. In addition to Salmonella spp., the directive now includes—apart from others—also Campylobacter spp., verotoxigenic E. coli, and antimicrobial resistance surveillance. Results of these surveillance efforts are published as annual reports.
The persistent controversy over the significance of the contribution of antimicrobial use in food animals to the problem of antimicrobial resistance in human pathogens has prompted calls for improved monitoring of patterns of antimicrobial use and of resistance profiles of animal pathogens and commensal organisms (Anderson et al. 2003). Systematic surveillance of antimicrobial use, and of antimicrobial resistance, has yet to be widely implemented in many countries. Again, Danish national surveillance programs set the standard, documenting patterns of antimicrobial use under veterinary prescription (Stege et al. 2003) and trends in antimicrobial resistance in selected animal and human pathogens and commensal organisms (Bager 2000). The Danish swine industry has also implemented a program of surveillance of skin lesions in slaughtered sows assumed to reflect poor welfare conditions on farms, which may provide a basis for classifying farms by welfare status (Cleveland-Nielsen et al. 2003) and trends in antimicrobial resistance, has yet to be widely implemented in many countries. Again, Danish national surveillance programs set the standard, documenting patterns of antimicrobial use under veterinary prescription (Stege et al. 2003) and trends in antimicrobial resistance in selected animal and human pathogens and commensal organisms (Bager 2000). The Danish swine industry has also implemented a program of surveillance of skin lesions in slaughtered sows assumed to reflect poor welfare conditions on farms, which may provide a basis for classifying farms by welfare status (Cleveland-Nielsen et al. 2004). International recommendations on the surveillance of antimicrobial resistance and antimicrobial usage are available (Anonymous 2003).

FUTURE POSSIBILITIES

Doherr and Audige (2001) state that “the health and safety of the animal and human generations depend on our continuous ability to detect, monitor and control newly emerging or reemerging livestock diseases and zoonoses rapidly.” To do so will require scientific approaches that incorporate technological and conceptual advances as well as effective cooperation between stakeholders (government, researchers, industry, clinicians). Over the last 15 years, apparently novel diseases have affected the world’s swine populations with surprising frequency. However, with few exceptions, our systems for recognizing and responding to these events have not advanced greatly. On a regional scale, disease surveillance efforts in the swine industry are not yet capturing the available technological opportunities. Integration of near-real-time clinical disease surveillance with geographical information systems and advanced tools for temporospatial analysis of disease is becoming increasingly feasible, and this has the potential to deliver epidemiologic intelligence that far exceeds existing capability. There is a great opportunity to build upon initiatives such as the MHTD program in North Carolina and the RSVP, a syndromic surveillance system in Kansas, to increase the level of sophistication with which the swine veterinary profession addresses both endemic and emerging diseases.

NOTES

3. www.codexalimentarius.net/download/standards/169/CXP_041e.pdf

REFERENCES

ROLE OF THE SURGEON

Veterinarian’s roles in the swine industry have changed markedly over the past 20 years. Surgical procedures increasingly conflict with economic goals. The veterinarian must critically evaluate economic benefit versus cost and prognosis of surgery. In most scenarios, services offered by the veterinarian are directed to the need of the enterprise. Surgery on an individual pig is not always cost efficient. However, pigs selected for genetic improvement, show pigs, and pet pigs have individual value, and surgery may be performed with little regard to costs. Some conditions like hernia, prolapse, dystocia, and atresia that can occur in large numbers of animals can be very costly and need to be investigated so that a solution and treatment can be applied. In a commercial swine operation, the veterinarian is often a teacher, showing the manager and experienced personnel how to perform some minor surgical procedures during baby pig processing (castration, ear notching, canine teeth clipping, tail amputation) in a cost-effective fashion. It is the veterinarian’s role to make sure that these procedures are done properly.

Among purebred and pet pigs, or pigs used as animal models in biomedical research (because of their anatomic and physiologic similarities to human beings), the individual animal often is of high perceived value, and surgery often is requested. A veterinarian who is able to offer excellent surgical service to swine producers often will have greater credibility as a herd consultant. The purpose of this chapter is to describe clinical swine anesthesia and review baby pig processing, hernia repair, and some common surgical procedures of the digestive, urogenital, and musculoskeletal systems in swine.

ANESTHESIA

Minor surgical procedures (ear notching, teeth clipping, tail amputation, castration) in young swine often are performed without anesthetizing the animal. Performed skillfully, these surgical procedures are tolerated well by young pigs without an anesthetic. Sometimes economics has an influence in the use of an anesthetic. However, public scrutiny of management practices increasingly demands attention to pain and prevention of unnecessary distress. Management of swine anesthesia presents some difficulties. Swine resist mechanical restraint more and are usually more difficult to hold than other species. Strong assistance often is needed. When possible, adult swine should be held off feed for 24 hours before general anesthesia, whereas piglets, which are prone to hypoglycemia, should be held from suckling for only 1–2 hours before anesthetic induction.

Malignant hyperthermia or porcine stress syndrome is a heritable condition in swine that can be triggered in a susceptible pig by any stress and many injectable (acepromazine, ketamine, succinyl choline) and inhalant anesthetics. Susceptible pigs are extremely muscular and usually have reduced subcutaneous fat. Halothane traditionally has been incriminated, but delayed onset of malignant hyperthermia can occur with exposure to isoflurane (Wedel et al. 1993). The clinical signs of malignant hyperthermia can be any of the following: a severe increase in body temperature, muscle rigidity, tachycardia, tachypnea, hypoxemia, cardiac arrhythmias, unstable blood pressure, and myoglobinuria. Death of an affected animal appears to be the result of peripheral circulatory changes that are produced by severe acidosis, vasoconstriction, hyperkalemia, decreased cardiac output, and hypotension. This susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia is due to an autosomal recessive defect in the gene that codes for the ryanodine receptor calcium channel in skeletal muscle (Rosenberg and Fletcher 1994). In response to a trigger, intracellular calcium rises abruptly, which causes muscle contracture and release of heat. Treatment of malignant hyperthermia is largely symptomatic. Early recognition is the key to successful treatment. Whenever malignant hyperthermia is suspected, volatile anesthetics should be dis-
continued. Aggressive cooling should be instituted using iced packs and alcohol baths. Dantrolene sodium is effective in the treatment of a malignant hyperthermia or as a prophylaxis when given before the anticipated trigger. Suggested doses for swine are 1 to 3 mg/kg IV for treatment and 5 mg/kg orally given prophylactically. (For more information on porcine stress syndrome, please refer to Chapter 58).

Anticholinergics (atropine and glycopyrollate) are recommended before sedation and anesthetic techniques in pigs. Atropine sulfate (0.04 mg/kg IM) or glycopyrollate (0.02 mg/kg IM) will decrease the risk of bradycardia, excessive salivation, bronchoconstriction, and excessive airway secretion. In healthy swine receiving light surgical anesthesia, administration of supportive fluids is not considered necessary, unless the animal was off feed and water for more than 24 hours. However, long general anesthesia is best managed with intravenous fluid support. In swine that are hypovolemic or showing other signs of shock, fluid therapy is essential preferably before or during anesthesia. Fluid therapy is best administered in the ear vein. In the authors' experience, fluid therapy using balanced electrolyte solution before and during anesthesia is essential during cesarean section with dead piglets in utero.

Anesthetic considerations for swine cesarean are important. One needs to remember that sow-fetal drug distribution is quite complete. Therefore, it must be assumed that any drug in the maternal circulation reaches the fetus rapidly in relatively high concentration. Because the fetal blood-brain barrier is extremely permeable, these drugs exert a profound anesthetic effect on the fetus. Also, anesthesia tends to persist after delivery because of the neonate's poorly developed liver enzymes and renal function. Anesthetic agents should be chosen that will minimize fetal depression. General anesthesia will induce greater neonatal depression than regional anesthesia.

Injectable Anesthetics
Injectable agents are most appropriate for field use. With injectable agents, a minimum of equipment is needed, requiring only a small investment. The drugs can be transported easily to the animal, compared to inhalation anesthetics, which are more expensive and can be difficult to transport to a field situation. Pigs have few superficial veins and arteries suitable for catheter placement and intravenous drug administration (Sakaguchi et al. 1996). Also, variation in accessibility of these vessels exists among swine breeds. The auricular (ear) vein is the safest and most accessible vein. It usually is located along the caudal margin of the ear. To inject or place a catheter in the ear vein, the pig can be restrained. The vein is held at the base of the ear by the fingers, forceps, or a rubber band to distend it. Rubbing the ear with alcohol and vigorous massage seem to create better visualization for needle insertion. Inserting a small catheter (20-gauge) will allow the administration of fluid or injection of additional anesthetic solution intravenously. The medial saphenous vein can be catheterized easily in the anesthetized or well restrained pig (Figure 70.1). Anesthesia can be induced using IM drug protocols or gas anesthetics via face mask followed by catheterization for IV fluids therapy or drug administration. Intramedullary cannulation should be considered when vascular access is vital but an IV catheter has not been established. An 18 gauge cannula can easily be inserted into the greater tubercle of the humerus or via the trochanteric fossa of the femur for intramedullary infusions. Fluid and drug administration is easily done in immature pigs. Older pigs may have sufficient fat and fibrosis of the medullary canal so as to limit administration rate.

Intramuscular injections should be given with a 2 inch needle in the cervical muscles to assure that the drug goes into the muscle and not in the fat. To obtain the maximal effect with the drug the pig should be in a quiet environment if possible. Combinations of anesthetic agents administered in appropriate doses are often superior to any one agent (Table 70.1).

Few drugs currently are approved for use in swine. Practically all anesthetics used are unapproved drugs for swine, and their use is considered extra label (Papich 1996). However, veterinarians often recognize the necessity of relieving pain, anesthetizing a swine for a procedure, or administering a drug as an anesthetic adjunct. Often, no alternative exists to using the drug in an extra label manner. For public protection, steps must be taken to ensure that no harmful residues occur from treated animals by assigning an appropriate withdrawal time before the marketing of meat.

The reader is encouraged to consult the Food Animal Residue Avoidance Data Bank for appropriate withdrawal times in swine (www.farad.org; phone 1-888-873-2723; e-mail farad@ncsu.edu).
Barbiturates. Barbiturates as a group are poor analgesics. Pentobarbital and thiopental are the most commonly used barbiturates. Pentobarbital is a potent central nervous system depressant and can be administered intravenously, intraperitoneally, and intratesticularly. We do not recommend intraperitoneal injection because of the risk of peritonitis. Because young pigs do not have the hepatic enzymatic capacity of adults, pentobarbital should not be used as a general anesthetic in young piglets.

In adults, an intravenous dose of 10–30 mg per kg will provide 20–30 minutes of relatively safe anesthesia, provided a patent airway is established and maintained until swallowing and other airway protective reflexes have returned. Preanesthetic medication (e.g., diazepam, acepromazine, xylazine) will decrease the amount of pentobarbital required for surgical anesthesia (Table 70.1). Recovery from pentobarbital administration often is prolonged and requires close patient surveillance.

For intratesticular injections, 45 mg per kg of body weight of a 30% solution is injected below the tail of the epididymis in the upper one-third of each testicle. The maximum volume is 20 ml per testicle, the onset of anesthesia is in 10 minutes, and recovery takes 20–40 minutes. Castration must be performed as quickly as possible to prevent continued absorption of the drug and a potentially lethal overdose (Henry 1968). The testes must be disposed of in a safe place. There are reports of fatal poisoning of dogs as a result of eating testes containing the residual drug. Blood on the floor is also dangerous (Henry 1968).

The shorter-acting barbiturate thiopental (10–20 mg/kg) is used sometimes for induction before inhalation anesthesia or for very short procedures. A 2.5–5% solution should be used and one-half of the calculated dose quickly injected. When the pig lies down, incremental amounts are injected until the desired plane of anesthesia is achieved. Apnea often is observed, and means of assisting ventilation should be readily available.

Acepromazine. Acepromazine decreases spontaneous motor activity. Used alone, it usually provides only

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Route</th>
<th>Onset (min)</th>
<th>Duration (min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pentobarbital</td>
<td>10–30 mg/kg</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>1–10</td>
<td>15–45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45 mg/kg</td>
<td>each testicle</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiopental</td>
<td>10–20 mg/kg</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Immediate</td>
<td>2–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acepromazine and Ketamine</td>
<td>0.1–0.5 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>20–30</td>
<td>30–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acepromazine</td>
<td>0.4 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>15–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acepromazine and Ketamine</td>
<td>0.03 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>2–4</td>
<td>40–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diapetemol</td>
<td>1–2 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20–40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam and Ketamine</td>
<td>0.1–0.5 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>5–10</td>
<td>20–40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azaperone</td>
<td>2–8 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>5–15</td>
<td>60–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylazine and Ketamine</td>
<td>0.5–3 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylazine and Ketamine</td>
<td>2 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>7–10</td>
<td>20–40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylazine and Ketamine</td>
<td>2.2 mg/kg/hour</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Immediate</td>
<td>As needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylazine and Ketamine and Guaiifenesin</td>
<td>4.4 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketamine and Thiopental</td>
<td>6–11 mg/kg</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Immediate</td>
<td>5–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medetomidine and Butorphanol and Ketamine</td>
<td>80 µg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>1–5</td>
<td>60–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketamine and Butorphanol and Ketamine</td>
<td>200 µg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>1–5</td>
<td>75–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketamine and Butorphanol and Ketamine</td>
<td>10 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>1–5</td>
<td>60–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylazine and Butorphanol and Ketamine</td>
<td>2 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>1–5</td>
<td>60–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylazine and Butorphanol and Ketamine</td>
<td>200 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>1–5</td>
<td>60–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylazine and Butorphanol and Ketamine</td>
<td>10 mg/kg</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>1–5</td>
<td>60–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propofol and Fentanyl</td>
<td>11 mg/kg/hour</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Immediate</td>
<td>Continuous infusion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
slight inconsistent sedation in swine. Acepromazine also will predispose to hypotension and hypothermia and should not be used in debilitated pigs. The maximum dose recommended is a total of 10 mg. Acepromazine has been reported to decrease the incidence of malignant hyperthermia (Moon and Smith 1996). It is useful when combined with ketamine or tiletamine-zolazepam (Table 70.1).

**Benzodiazepines (Diazepam and Midazolam).** Diazepam (1–2 mg/kg IM) can be used in combination with ketamine or xylazine (Table 70.1). Midazolam can be absorbed more rapidly and completely than diazepam because it is water soluble. They both ensure a smooth recovery and have a longer effect than xylazine. The expense associated with these drugs may make them impractical in some swine commercial operations.

**Azaperone.** Azaperone is a neuroleptic agent and can be given to tranquilize or immobilize swine (Table 70.1). The degree of sedation is dose dependent and should not exceed 1 mg/kg in large boars, because priapism has been reported (Moon and Smith 1996). Azaperone must be given intramuscularly, because intravenous injection often results in excitement. Excessive salivation, hypothermia, sensitivity to noise, and hypotension has been seen in pigs receiving azaperone (Greene 1979). Azaperone is not an analgesic and often is used in combination with other drugs for surgical procedure. Deep tranquilization from azaperone should be obtained before ketamine is given. If azaperone is used alone for surgical procedures, local or regional anesthesia should be administered.

**Alpha-2 Receptor Agonists (Xylazine, Medetomidine).** Swine are fairly resistant to xylazine compared to other meat-producing animals (Table 70.1). Sedation will result, but animals are aroused easily. Xylazine usually is used in combination with other drugs to produce good muscle relaxation and a smooth recovery. Vomiting has been seen following the use of xylazine in pigs with digestive disturbances.

Medetomidine is a more potent alpha-2 agonist than is xylazine (Sakaguchi et al. 1992). Medetomidine in combination with atropine induces deeper sedation than does xylazine and its effects are enhanced by butorphanol. The anesthetic state is characterized by profound somatic analgesia, but visceral analgesia is poor. Medetomidine, butorphanol, and ketamine induce excellent surgical anesthesia in pigs (Table 70.1). This anesthetic regimen can be reversed by atipamezole (240 µg/kg), a selective and potent alpha-2 antagonist.

**Ketamine.** Ketamine induces rapid onset of unconsciousness (Thurmon 1986). The anesthetic state is characterized by somatic analgesia, but visceral analgesia is poor. Ketamine has been used as a major component of many regimens to induce chemical restraint or anesthesia in pigs. Ketamine can be given IM, IV, or intrathecally. Intrathecally, a combination of ketamine (6 mg/kg) and xylazine (2 mg/kg) has been used successfully for castration (Thurmon 1986). When ketamine is used alone, it exerts some undesirable effects, such as poor muscle relaxation and analgesia-emergence delirium, tachycardia, and hypertension. Ketamine commonly is combined with a muscle relaxant or sedative such as acepromazine, diazepam, xylazine, or droperidol (Table 70.1).

**Tiletamine—Zolazepam (Telazol).** Telazol provides some muscle relaxation and sedation and also immobilizes swine (Moon and Smith 1996). Telazol requires a smaller volume of injectable compared to ketamine. Telazol frequently is combined with xylazine or acepromazine to provide better muscle relaxation and an easier recovery (Table 70.1).

**Propofol.** Propofol has recently been used for IV anesthesia in pigs (Martin-Cancho et al. 2004). One dosage regimen reported was 11 mg/kg body weight per hour for abdominal surgery. This was done in combination with fentanyl (2.5 mg/kg IV every 30 min). Compared with pigs anesthetized with isoflurane, propofol-anesthetized pigs required significantly longer to recover consciousness.

**Guaifenesin.** Guaifenesin is a centrally acting muscle relaxant. Because it produces little analgesia, it should not be used alone. Intravenous infusion of guaifenesin combined with thiobarbiturates and with ketamine and xylazine has been used for induction and maintenance of anesthesia (Thurmon 1986). The authors recommend adding 500 mg of ketamine and 500 mg of xylazine to each 500 ml of 5% guaifenesin in 5% dextrose in water. The mixture is given rapidly in a catheter in the ear vein at a dose of 0.5–1 ml per kg for induction. Anesthesia is maintained by continuous infusion at a rate of 2.2 mg per kg per hour. At the end of the surgery, recovery time may be hastened by administration of yohimbine (0.125 mg/kg) or tolazoline (2.5–5 mg/kg) to reverse the effect of guaifenesin (Thurmon 1986).

**Combination Injectable Anesthesia.** Combinations of injectable drugs have been used to increase quality, duration, and analgesia of anesthesia when they can be administered safely. A recent study compared three regimes for maintaining anesthesia in pigs induced using azaperone (1 mg/kg, IM) and ketamine (2.5 mg/kg IM). These pigs were divided into three groups: (I) etomidate (200 µg/kg IV) and midazolam (100 µg/kg IV); (II) ketamine (2 mg/kg IV) and midazolam (100 µg/kg IV); (III) pentobarbitone (15 to 20 mg/kg IV) (Clutton et al. 1997). Pentobarbitone provided the least satisfactory anesthesia because of profound respiratory depression,
difficulty completing orotracheal intubation, and prolonged time to standing. Another study compared metedonidine-butorphenol-ketamine (MBK: 80 µg/kg–200 µg/kg–10 mg/kg, respectively, all IM) with xylazine-butorphenol-ketamine (XBK: 2 mg/kg–200 µg/kg–10 mg/kg, respectively, all IM) (Sakaguchi et al. 1996). MBK was found to provide longer and more satisfactory anesthesia as compared with XBK.

**Inhalation Anesthetics**

For debilitated swine, for surgical procedures lasting more than 30 minutes, for difficult procedures, or for valuable swine, an inhalation anesthetic provides a more controlled plane of anesthesia. For economic reasons, halothane is the most commonly used inhalation anesthetic in swine. Halothane possesses physical properties and potency consistent with rapid induction, alteration of anesthetic depth, and recovery from anesthesia. Inhalation anesthetics can be administered to small pigs by an open or semiopen method; in larger swine, the semiclosed or closed system is preferred. Swine weighing up to 140 kg can be anesthetized with an inhalation anesthetic machine designed for small animals (Tranquilli 1986).

Selection of induction technique and anesthetic protocol depends on the size and special needs of the swine, preference of the veterinarians, and availability of drugs and equipment. Sedation is desirable to reduce the stress of physical restraint before induction of anesthesia (Table 70.1). Swine up to 100 kg can be restrained in a webbed stanchion. Large swine can be restrained in a crate with a head catch or by a snare. Induction of anesthesia can be accomplished with a rapid bolus of injectable agent (barbiturate), by rapid infusions of a combination of drugs (Table 70.1), or by using a face mask delivering a high concentration of anesthetic agent (5% halothane). Tracheal intubation assures a patent airway for delivery of anesthetic and protects the airway from aspiration pneumonia. In the authors’ experience, facial, pharyngeal, and laryngeal anatomy of the pig makes endotracheal intubation more challenging than in other meat-producing species. It is often difficult to open the jaws wide enough for good laryngeal exposure, and the pig has a small narrow larynx that deviates ventrally, creating a sharp angle from the pharynx to the tracheal opening. Also laryngeal spasms occur frequently and are induced easily. Occurrence of spasms can be reduced by achieving a sufficient depth of anesthesia prior to intubation or by spraying the larynx with lidocaine.

Following induction, the pig should be placed in sternal recumbency, and the jaws should be held open with small rope. The tongue is pulled forward by an assistant. A laryngoscope and blades of different lengths are needed. For adult swine, the blade length must be at least 25 cm. The blade of the laryngoscope is placed at the base of the tongue and downward pressure is applied until an unobstructed view of the larynx is provided. Endotracheal tubes should be available in sizes from 3 to 20 mm outside diameter and lengths of 25–50 cm. A malleable metal rod with the first 5 cm bent at a 30° angle is placed inside the endotracheal tube to act as a guide. With the laryngeal opening visualized, the endotracheal tube with the stylet extending slightly beyond the tip is placed into the laryngeal opening. The endotracheal tube is pushed over the tip of the stylet and with a twisting motion is passed through the larynx into the trachea. The tracheal diameter is surprisingly small in the pig. A 50 kg pig often requires only a 7–9 mm tube, and a 10–14 mm tube often is adequate for adult sows (Tranquilli 1986).

Safe maintenance of inhalation anesthesia requires knowledge of the signs associated with anesthetic depth and continual monitoring of the patient and anesthetic equipment. Routinely monitored signs should include pulse quality and rate, respiratory rate, color of mucous membranes, capillary refill time, blood pressure, and electrocardiogram. The body temperature should be evaluated regularly, and appropriate padding should be placed. The pulse can be palpated over the median auricular artery. Direct auscultation of the heart also should be done. The normal heart rate in swine ranges from 60–90 beats per minute and may vary greatly during inhalation anesthesia.

During recovery from inhalation anesthesia, frequent and careful monitoring is necessary, because life-threatening complications can occur (Moon and Smith 1996). Recovery should be in a quiet place, and the pig should be placed in sternal recumbency as soon as possible. The endotracheal tube should be maintained until the pig is spontaneously moving its head or will not tolerate the tube. The pig should not be returned to the herd until it is fully awake.

**Local Anesthesia**

The use of local anesthesia without additional chemical restraint is limited in swine. Pigs, even in the absence of pain, will resist physical restraint by continuing to struggle. In addition to chemical restraint, infiltration of 2% lidocaine around the surgical site will facilitate surgery involving the skin and superficial underlying tissues. Local infiltration of lidocaine is used commonly for surgical repair of umbilical and inguinal hernias and scirrhous cord removal.

**Epidural Regional Anesthesia**

Lumbosacral epidural anesthesia is the most commonly used form of regional analgesia in swine (Figure 70.2) (Skarda 1996). Minimal equipment and expense are necessary to perform the procedure during epidural anesthesia. Compared to general anesthesia, the swine is in an awake state so the risk of aspiration pneumonia is minimal. Local infiltration of lidocaine compared to epidural anesthesia has several disadvantages. Infiltra-
tion requires a larger amount of lidocaine and can retard wound healing and muscle relaxation, and analgesia is not as profound. Lumbosacral epidural anesthesia is relatively easy to perform and greatly facilitates cesarean section; repair of rectal, uterine, or vaginal prolapses; repair of hernia; and surgery of the prepuce and penis or rear limbs (Skarda 1996). Lumbosacral epidural anesthesia should be avoided in patients that are in shock or toxemic because of sympathetic blockade and consequent depression of blood pressure (Skarda 1996). Also, general anesthesia may be more appropriate then regional anesthesia when the sow is very aggressive.

Complications that may result from faulty techniques during lumbosacral epidural injection include cardiovascular and respiratory collapse after overdose or subarachnoid injection, meningitis associated with septic technique and tremor, and vomiting and convulsions after injection of the analgesic into the vertebral venous sinus.

The block can best be administered while the animal is standing and restrained with a hog snare, lariat, or head catch. Large hogs can be restrained by placing their heads in the head catch of a cattle chute. The site for injection for epidural anesthesia in the pig is the lumbosacral space. The conus medullaris of the cauda equina of the pig terminates in the region of the first or second sacral vertebra. The filum terminale terminates at the sixth or seventh coxigeal vertebra. Although the meninges extend beyond the lumbosacral articulation, there is only a very slight probability of entering the subarachnoid space. The lumbosacral space is on the midline and identified by drawing a line across the animal’s back from tuber coxa to tuber coxa. This line will be just cranial to the point of the stifle joint (Skarda 1996). The

The site of injection is prepared by clipping or shaving the hair, thoroughly scrubbing the site with a surgical soap, and applying a skin antiseptic. The location is infiltrated with a local anesthetic agent prior to needle insertion. A 6–8 cm 20-gauge needle is used for pigs up to 30 kg. A 10 cm 18-gauge needle is used for pigs between 35 and 90 kg, and a 12–16 cm needle for pigs over 90 kg. The needle is inserted with the level directed cranially and at an angle 10° caudal to perpendicular between the last lumbar and first sacral vertebrae. The needle penetrates the skin, back fat, muscle, and then the fibrous interarticular spinous ligament. The needle passes through a definite area of resistance as it encounters the ligament and a slight pop is felt as the needle passes into the epidural space and drops to the floor of the spinal canal. The lumbosacral space is large in the pig (1.5 × 2.5 cm) and allows for a relatively large margin of error (Skarda 1996). Aspiration should be attempted before injection of the anesthetic to ensure that the subarachnoid space or a blood vessel has not been entered. Little resistance to injection will be encountered if the needle is located properly in the epidural space.

The anesthetic agent most commonly used is 2% lidocaine. The dose is calculated by either weight or length of the pig (Skarda 1996). Generally, a dose of 1 ml/9 kg of body weight is adequate. Analgesia should be present within 10 minutes and last approximately 2 hours. A total dose of 20 ml must not be exceeded regardless of the weight. Four ml per 100 kg and 6 ml per 200 kg of body weight are sufficient for standing castrations (Skarda 1996). Ten ml per 100 kg, 15 ml per 200 kg, and 20 ml per 300 kg have given satisfactory results for cesarean section (Skarda 1996). If the pig is restrained in lateral recumbency, it is important that the head not be placed in extension. In swine with the head extended, the soft palate can occlude the airway, and the patient can suffocate (Benson 1986).

In 28–35 kg pigs, epidural injections of xylazine (2 mg/kg diluted in 5 ml of 0.9% NaCl solution) at the lumbosacral intervertebral space induce immobilization, mild sedation, and regional anesthesia that extends from the anus to the umbilicus within 10 minutes and lasts at least 2 hours (Ko et al. 1992). The injection of a xylazine (1 mg/kg 10% solution) and lidocaine (10 ml, 2% solution) combination into the lumbosacral epidural space has produced excellent anesthesia for cesarean in large sows (Ko et al. 1993). The forequarters in these sows were immobilized by IV injection of 0.003 ml of telazol, mixture containing 50 mg of telazol per ml, 50 mg of ketamine per ml, and 50 mg of xylazine per ml per kg of body weight (Ko et al. 1993). In preparing the telazol, ketamine, and xylazine combination, 2.5 ml of 10% ketamine (250 mg) and 2.5 ml of 10% xylazine (250 mg/kg) is added to 2 ml of 0.9% NaCl solution. In 60–90 kg pigs, the combination of ketamine and xylazine was not as profound. Lumbosacral epidural anesthesia is relatively easy to perform and greatly facilitates cesarean section; repair of rectal, uterine, or vaginal prolapses; repair of hernia; and surgery of the prepuce and penis or rear limbs (Skarda 1996). General anesthesia may be more appropriate then regional anesthesia when the sow is very aggressive.

Complications that may result from faulty techniques during lumbosacral epidural injection include cardiovascular and respiratory collapse after overdose or subarachnoid injection, meningitis associated with septic technique and tremor, and vomiting and convulsions after injection of the analgesic into the vertebral venous sinus.

The block can best be administered while the animal is standing and restrained with a hog snare, lariat, or head catch. Large hogs can be restrained by placing their heads in the head catch of a cattle chute. The site for injection for epidural anesthesia in the pig is the lumbosacral space. The conus medullaris of the cauda equina of the pig terminates in the region of the first or second sacral vertebra. The filum terminale terminates at the sixth or seventh coxigeal vertebra. Although the meninges extend beyond the lumbosacral articulation, there is only a very slight probability of entering the subarachnoid space. The lumbosacral space is on the midline and identified by drawing a line across the animal’s back from tuber coxa to tuber coxa. This line will be just cranial to the point of the stifle joint (Skarda 1996). The

The injection site (needle placement) for a lumbosacral anesthesia in swine. L6 is the sixth lumbar vertebra; S1 is the first sacral vertebra.

**Figure 70.2**.
mg xylazine) were used as the diluent instead of sterile water. A mean of 3 ml of this combination was given per sow; the sows were quiet and immobilized for an average of 105 minutes (Ko et al. 1993). The sows were able to walk 12 hours after surgery, and the piglets were without signs of sedation or tranquilization. Intravenous tolazoline (2.2 mg/kg) partially reversed the telazol, ketamine, xylazine-induced sedation after surgery but did not antagonize the xylazine-lidocaine epidural effect (Ko et al. 1993).

Epideridal analgesia used in combination with general anesthesia allows a light plane of anesthesia with good muscle relaxation distal to the midthoracic region. Medetomidine (0.5 mg/kg diluted in 5 ml of 0.9% NaCl solution) injected epidurally in the lumbosacral space of swine produced sedation and decubitus but minimal analgesia caudal to the umbilicus. The onset of these effects occurred in 10 minutes, and they lasted for less than 30 minutes. Intravenous administration of atipamezole (0.2 mg/kg of body weight) reversed epidurally administered detomidine-induced sedation and immobilization (Ko et al. 1992). Atipamezole had no effect on epidurally administered xylazine-induced sedation and immobilization (Ko et al. 1992).

**PAIN MANAGEMENT**

Pain management through drug therapy has received relatively little attention in pigs, possibly because of the massive scale of pig operations, because of economics, and because many procedures are done in young pigs at ages where distress can be minimized. One study evaluated postoperative pain and compared transdermal fentanyl patches (25 µg/hour and 50 µg/hour) with buprenorphine (0.1 mg/kg, as needed) (Harvey-Clark et al. 2000). Assessment of analgesia was variable, but 50 µg/hour transdermal patches placed on 26 kg pigs achieved blood concentrations similar to that considered to be in the analgesic range for humans. Another study evaluated the use of isoflurane anesthetic gas for piglet castration at 14 days old (Walker et al. 2004). In that study, piglets castrated under isoflurane gas had significantly fewer reactions to the surgical procedure but stress hormone concentrations after castration were similar among groups. Application of local anesthesia immediately prior to castration of pigs 10–14 days old was associated with less resistance to the procedure (Horn et al. 1999).

**GENITOURINARY SURGERY**

**Castration**

Castration of male pigs is routinely performed with the intention to improve performance, feed conversion, and carcass traits (Kiley 1976). Also, management of castrated pigs through finishing may be easier than for intact male pigs. With the onset of puberty, boar meat becomes tainted with an unpleasant odor and taste. However, recommendations for pig age at the time of castration are variable. Stress of castration was evaluated for pigs castrated at 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, and 24 days of age (White et al. 1995). This study indicated that pigs castrated after administration of lidocaine anesthetic subcutaneously and around the spermatic cords had lower heart rate and less vocalization than pigs castrated without local anesthesia. This effect was greatest for pigs castrated after 8 days old. Castration associated behavioral changes were evaluated for pigs castrated at 1, 5, 10, 15, and 20 days old (McGlone et al. 1993). Castration caused reduced suckling, reduced standing, and increased lying time compared with intact male pigs at all ages. Pigs castrated at 14 days old were heavier at weaning and had a higher rate of gain compared with pigs castrated at 1 day old. Administration of aspirin or butorphenol failed to improve castration associated reduction in feeding time and weight gain. Administration of lidocaine anesthesia prior to castration prevented castration-induced nursing behavior suppression (McGlone and Hellman 1988) in 2-week-old pigs. This effect was not observed for pigs castrated at 7 weeks old. Pigs castrated at 2 weeks old had less pronounced behavioral changes than pigs castrated at 7 weeks old. Castrating baby pigs at 2 weeks old minimizes the stress of castration and maximizes performance to weaning.

Castration of 14-day-old pigs is done by suspending the pig by the hind limbs while lying the pig across a smooth rail. The surgical site is wiped clean with alcohol or 2% tincture of iodine. If used, lidocaine anesthetic is injected subcutaneously (0.5 ml per site), overlying each testicle, and over each spermatic cord (0.5 ml per site) in the inguinal canal. A 1 cm long incision is made over each testicle and the testicles pulled from the scrotum. Hemorrhage is minimal at this age. Transfixation ligation of the spermatic cord is recommended for older pigs (see the section on castration of older pigs). Topical antiseptic ointment or spray may be applied at this time. Systemic antibiotics are usually not required, except when castrating older pigs. Castrated baby pigs are placed under a heat lamp in the farrowing crate for convalescence.

**Castration of Older Pigs.** Pigs are routinely castrated prior to or at 2 weeks old. However, veterinarians may be asked to castrate older pigs that are intended for show or mature boars that are no longer to be used for breeding. Castration of older pigs is best performed with the pig sedated or under general anesthesia (see the section on anesthesia), but manual restraint and local anesthesia may be adequate for pigs weighing 50 kg or less (Becker 1986). The boar is restrained in lateral recumbency and the surgical site aseptically prepared. A 4–6 cm incision is made overlying the testicle at the ventral aspect of the scrotum. The testicle should be removed with the vaginal tunic intact. Inguinal fat and soft tissue are stripped.
from the spermatic cord and evaluated for the presence of an inguinal hernia. The vaginal tunic and the spermatic cord are twisted until the cord is tightly compressed to the level of the external inguinal ring (Figures 70.3 and 70.4). Two transfixation ligatures (no. 1 chromic gut) are placed securing the vaginal tunic and spermatic cord to the medial aspect of the external inguinal ring. These sutures are intended to close the vaginal tunic and prevent the development of postoperative inguinal hernia. An emasculator may be used, but this method for orchectomy does not result in closure of the vaginal tunic nor prevent inguinal hernia. Closure of the surgical wound should only be performed if asepsis has been maintained. Subcutaneous tissues may be sutured with no. 0 chromic gut in simple continuous pattern to reduce dead space and minimize postoperative swelling. Skin sutures are placed in a Mayo (Ford) interlocking pattern. We prefer to administer antibiotics for 3 days, beginning the day of surgery, to reduce the incidence of postoperative infection. Also, the barrow should be kept in a clean, dry stall during this period.

Complications of Castration. The most common complications following castration of pigs are hemorrhage, abscess, scirrhus cord, inguinal hernia, and seroma or hematoma formation. Fatal hemorrhagic shock has been reported after castration of 7-week-old pigs by a lay person (Libke 1967). The testicles had been pulled through a 10 cm incision and cut using a knife. Fatal hemorrhage occurred into the pelvic canal and abdomen; thus, the cause of death was not recognized until necropsy. This report emphasizes the need for routine necropsy examination of all deaths for which the cause is not apparent.

Meat inspection of 131 pigs with postcastration abscesses revealed that Arcanobacterium pyogenes, β-hemolytic streptococci, Streptococcus viridans, Staphylococcus aureus, and Pasteurella multocida were the most common bacteria isolated (Százados 1985). Approximately 65% of the abscesses were monomicrobial and 35% were polymicrobial infections. Evidence for bacteremia and septicemia was found in 28% and 11%, respectively. Of the 131 pigs inspected, 11% were judged to be unfit for human consumption. Bilateral hydronephrosis also has been reported as a complication of castration in a Hampshire pig castrated at 8 weeks old (McGavin and Schoneweis 1972). A ventral midline incision was used to remove both testicles and tincture of iodine applied after castration. Infection of the soft tissues occurred and the ensuing infection resulted in progressive occlusion of urethra at the level of the sigmoid flexure. Chronic resistance to urine outflow caused hydronephrosis and the pig died 4 weeks after castration. This case illustrates the importance of adequate ventral drainage after castration.

Unilateral Castration. Indications for removal of only one testicle include testicular trauma, hematoma, seroma, and orchitis or periorchitis (Becker 1986). The damaged testicle may cause enough swelling, heat, and pressure to reduce fertility. The boar is placed under general anesthesia, a 6 cm incision is made over the testicle starting at the most ventral aspect of the scrotum, and the testicle is removed by transfixation ligation and excision. The wound may be left open or closed. Strict asepsis and clean housing are required for closure of the wound to prevent abscess formation. We prefer to leave the wound open for second intention healing. Antiseptic ointment is placed in the defect, antibiotics are administered for 5–7 days, and daily hydrotherapy is used to minimize postoperative swelling. Affected boars may return to productive service 30–60 days after surgery.

Testicular Abnormality (Cryptorchidism, Testicular Atrophy, Ectopic Testicle) Veterinarians may be presented with barrows demonstrating “boar-like” traits for removal of retained testicular tissues. The testicles of swine descend in the last 30 days of gestation and should be palpable at birth (Van
True cryptorchidism (testicle not descended at birth) is a common congenital defect in swine. A homozygous recessive trait involving two gene loci has been postulated based on a breeding trial of cryptorchid Duroc swine (Rothschild et al. 1988). A progeny study of Lacombe and Yorkshire true cryptorchid boars resulted in 10.9% and 31.4% of male progeny being cryptorchid (Fredeen and Newman 1968). Of boars with "late-onset" cryptorchidism (normal at birth but having only one testicle at 42 days old), 3.8% of male progeny were cryptorchid. Cryptorchid testicles are usually intraabdominal and are usually found midway between the ipsilateral kidney and the inguinal ring (Thornton 1972). However, the affected testicle may be located within the inguinal canal and not readily palpable from either the inguinal region or from the peritoneal cavity (Lachmayr 1966). Previous removal of the descended testis makes surgical removal of the retained testis more difficult because the incision is best made over the affected inguinal ring. Often, determination of which testicle has been removed is difficult.

Manual restraint and local anesthesia may be adequate for pigs less than 50 kg, but we prefer to perform cryptorchid surgery with the pig under general anesthesia. A 6 cm incision is made over the appropriate inguinal ring. Laparotomy may be performed by making a 4 cm incision 1–2 cm medial to the inguinal canal (parainguinal incision), or the inguinal ring may be enlarged by starting the incision at the cranial commissure of the external inguinal ring. The fingers of one hand are used to perform an exploration of the abdominal cavity starting at the pelvic brim and searching along the dorsal and lateral abdominal wall until the kidneys are encountered. For show pigs, we prefer to perform laparoscopic exploration and removal of abdominal testes because better cosmesis, fewer incisional complications, and more rapid incisional healing is achieved.

True cryptorchidism should be differentiated from testicular atrophy or degeneration (late-onset cryptorchidism) and ectopic testicular tissue. Pigs affected by testicular atrophy are reported to have palpably normal testicles at birth and weaning but having only one testicle present at 42 days old (Fredeen and Newman 1968). Of 122 cryptorchid studied, 21 had “late onset” cryptorchidism. At slaughter, only one testicle can be found and, occasionally, a small mass of lymphoid tissue or epididymis is identified. Ectopic testicular tissue has been observed in numerous pigs at the time of slaughter (Todd et al. 1968). These tissues occur as smooth, pink or tan nodules on the surface of the liver, spleen, mesentery, and other abdominal viscera. Initially, these masses may be interpreted as metastatic neoplasia, but histology reveals the presence of convoluted seminiferous tubules and interstitial cells. No evidence for neoplasia is seen. Ectopic testicular tissues may be found in castrated or intact male pigs.

Prolapsed Penis
Penile and preputial prolapse have been seen after administration of neuroleptic drugs, but also may occur as a result of trauma to the penis or congenital defect (Figure 70.5). While prolapsed, the penis is at great risk of further injury. The penis and prepuce must be returned to their normal position as soon as possible after prolapse. Treatment of penile prolapse usually required that the boar be placed under general anesthesia. The penis is thoroughly cleaned with cold water and a topical antiseptic ointment applied to the surface of the penis. If a penile wound is present, debridement may be done. Penile wounds typically are not sutured closed unless they have occurred recently (within 2–4 hours) because of the likelihood of formation of an abscess. The penis and prepuce are gently massaged until reduction into the sheath is completed. Use of hydroscopic agents (e.g., anhydrous glycerin) may help reduce the swelling by resolving edema. After the penis and prepuce have been repositioned, a purse-string suture may be used to prevent reoccurrence of the prolapse. The purse string should be removed in 5–7 days. If wounds or abrasions are present, daily preputial lavage or administration of systemic antibiotics and antiinflammatory drugs is indicated. If wounds are not present, sexual rest should be enforced for at least 14 days. If wounds requiring treatment are present, sexual rest should be enforced for 30–60 days (depending on the severity of the wound). Reevaluation of the penile injury is advisable prior to use for mating.

70.5. Congenital penile and preputial prolapse in a miniature breed pig.
Preputial Diverticulum

Abnormalities of the preputial diverticulum may cause reproductive unsoundness. Preputial diverticulitis, diverticular ulcers, diverticular stones, urine retention, and penile deviation into the diverticulum may be found (Figure 70.6) (Wieringa and Mouwen 1983; Dutton 1997; Tyler et al. 2000). Preputial diverticulectomy may restore breeding soundness to affected boars. The boar is placed under general anesthesia and prepared for surgery. Any of three procedures for diverticulectomy may be performed:

1. Preputial diverticulectomy via the preputial orifice is done by passing forceps through the preputial orifice, into one lobe of the bilobate diverticulum, gently everting the lobe out through the orifice, and repeating this procedure for the remaining lobe (Figures 70.7 and 70.8). After both lobes of the preputial diverticulum are everted, the diverticulum is excised. Suturing is not required for young boars, but the opening to the diverticulum may be sutured closed in adults.

2. A 6 cm incision is made overlying the lateral aspect of one lobe of the preputial diverticulum. The diverticulum is everted through the preputial orifice, excised, and sutured closed.

3. A 6 cm incision is made as above, but the diverticulum is dissected free from the surrounding soft tissues, excised, and sutured closed (Figure 70.9).

For methods 2 and 3, extreme care must be taken not to perforate the diverticulum prior to removal because contamination will result in incisional infection. Flushing of the preputial diverticulum with antiseptic solutions before surgery is recommended to reduce this possibility. Also, filling the diverticulum with antiseptic solution or gauze pads before surgery makes identification of the diverticulum easier at the time of surgery.

70.7. Insertion of forceps into one lobe of the preputial diverticulum of an immature boar.

70.8. Eversion of the preputial diverticulum through the preputial orifice of an immature boar.

70.9. Surgical dissection and isolation of the preputial diverticulum in a mature boar.
**Preputial Prolapse**

Prolapse of the prepuce may occur with penile prolapse or may result from preputial injury and swelling. If wounds to the prepuce are not present, the prepuce may be repositioned within the sheath, as described for penile prolapse, and a purse-string suture used to maintain the reduction (Schoneweis 1971). Careful evaluation of the preputial swelling should be done to ensure that urination is possible. Preputial edema may be reduced by application of hydroscopic agents (anhydrous glycerin, saturated magnesium sulfate solution). A preputial retaining tube, constructed from rubber or polyurethane tubing, may be placed into the preputial space to prevent prolapse but allow exit of urine. Stay sutures are placed through the tubing and attached to the skin at the preputial orifice. Four sutures are placed 90° from each other suture to maintain the proper position of the tube. Alternatively, a 1.25 cm diameter Penrose drain may be sutured to the tip of the penis (no. 2-0 chromic gut suture) to ensure urine outflow. Often, the prolapsed prepuce has been traumatized and surgical removal of the affected tissues is indicated. Preputial amputation may be performed, but the opening to the urethral diverticulum must be maintained. Alternatively, the preputial diverticulum may be removed at the time of surgery.

The boar is placed under general anesthesia, the prepuce is pulled cranially until normal preputial epithelium is exposed, and stay sutures or crossed pins (7.6 cm, 18-gauge needles) are placed through the exposed prepuce to prevent premature retraction into the sheath. The damaged tissues are amputated and the two layers of the prepuce are sutured closed using an interrupted suture pattern (no. 2-0 chromic gut, PDS, or polyglycolic acid suture). After anastomosis, antiseptic ointment is placed on the prepuce and it is replaced into the sheath. A purse-string suture is placed at the preputial orifice for 7–10 days and sexual rest is enforced for 30–60 days. Systemic antibiotics should be administered perioperatively.

**Vasectomy or Epididymectomy**

Vasectomy or epididymectomy is done to produce teaser boars used for heat detection in sows for artificial insemination or breeding to valuable boars, or to promote onset of cyclicity in confined gilts (Becker 1986). For vasectomy, the boar is placed in dorsal recumbency under general anesthesia and a 4 cm incision is made over each spermatic cord approximately 6 cm cranial to the ventral aspect of the scrotum. Each spermatic cord is elevated, incised, and the vas deferens isolated. The vas deferens lies next to the spermatic artery, is firm and pale, and an arterial pulse is not present. A 3–4 cm segment of the vas deferens is excised and each end ligated. The incision through the tunica is sutured with no. 2-0 PDS or polyglycolic acid, and the skin is sutured with no. 0 polymerized caprolactam in a Mayo (Ford) interlocking suture pattern. An alternative technique for vasectomizing boars enables the surgery to be done with the boar in lateral recumbency (Althouse and Evans 1997).

Epididymectomy is done by making a 2 cm incision in the scrotum overlying the tail of the epididymis. The tail and 1 cm of the body of the epididymis is isolated. Ligatures are placed between the testicle and the tail of the epididymis and around the exposed portion of the body of the epididymis. The epididymis is excised between these two ligatures. The skin is closed with no. 0 polymerized caprolactam in an interrupted pattern.

**Persistent Frenulum**

The epithelial attachment of the penis and prepuce atrophies and these tissues separate between 4 and 6 months old in boars. Sexual maturity is achieved by 7–8 months old. Persistence of the frenulum attachment between the penis and prepuce beyond sexual maturity causes failure of breeding soundness and has been observed in boars (Roberts 1986). Surgical removal of the persistent frenulum is performed with the boar under general anesthesia or during a hand mating exercise. Resection of the tissue may be performed with scissors. Ligation is not required in most cases and minimal bleeding is observed after excision. Sexual rest should be enforced for 7–10 days after surgery.

**Vaginal Prolapse**

Vaginal prolapse occurs as a prepartum event. The cause of vaginal prolapse is unknown, but straining to urinate or defecate may be involved. Sows with lateral deviation of the bladder and difficulty urinating or with inflammation associated with cystitis and urethritis may develop vaginal prolapse because of straining. When the cause can be found, treatment should be aimed at resolving the initial lesion. The vagina is cleaned with cold water, hydroscopic agents (anhydrous glycerin, sugar, etc.) are applied, a towel is wrapped around the prolapsed portion, and constant gentle pressure used to reduce the edema and swelling. The prolapse can usually be reduced in 15–20 minutes. The vagina should be cleansed and topical antibiotic or antiseptic ointments used to reduce the secondary bacterial vaginitis that invariably occurs. Administration of antiinflammatory drugs may reduce straining and shorten convalescence. The bladder should be evaluated to ensure that it is in a normal position (see the section on urinary bladder displacement). Often, partial rectal prolapse accompanies vaginal prolapse. The rectal prolapse should be treated appropriately (see the section on rectal prolapse). A Bühner suture is placed around the vagina to prevent reoccurrence of the prolapse. The sow should be closely monitored and the Bühner suture removed at the first indication of farrowing. If excessive swelling of the soft tissues in the pelvic canal has occurred, a cesarean section is indicated and should be performed early in the process of farrowing.
Bladder Displacement (Lateroflexed)
Displacement of the bladder occurs in multiparous sows in the latter stages of gestation. The bladder is displaced laterally and, occasionally, may become displaced caudally. When this occurs, urination is difficult. The displaced bladder may give the appearance of a vaginal prolapse when the sow is lying down. Affected sows may be seen straining because of the difficulty urinating, and this may lead to true vaginal prolapse. Decompression of the urinary bladder by cystocentesis or catheterization may allow permanent replacement of the bladder. When displacement recurs, an indwelling urinary catheter may be used to allow urination until after parturition. Ascending bacterial cystitis is a complication of the indwelling urinary catheter.

Urethral Obstruction
Urethral obstruction has been observed in miniature pigs most commonly. Clinical signs include signs of abdominal pain, tail flagging, straining to urinate, blood in urine, decreased activity or restlessness, decreased appetite, and teeth grinding. Potential causes of urethral obstruction to be considered include urolithiasis, urethral polyps, and urethral stricture or trauma. Retrograde catheterization of the pelvic urethra and bladder is difficult because of the urethral recess and mucosal flap, which prevent passage of the catheter. Tube cystostomy with positive contrast urethrography was reported to be useful for diagnosis of obstruction of the distal urethra (Palmer et al. 1998). Urethral polyps were reported as a cause of urethral outflow obstruction in Vietnamese potbellied pigs (Helman et al. 1996). Surgical management of urethral outflow obstruction include urethrotomy, cystostomy with normograde flushing, tube cystostomy, perineal urethrostomy, prepubic urethrostomy, and prepubic cystostomy. Prepubic cystostomy was successful in two Vietnamese pigs with urethral injury from castration or urethral stricture (Leon et al. 1997). In these two pigs, the pelvic urethra was exteriorized cranial to the brim of the pelvis and the urethra spatulated and the mucosa sutured to the skin. Both pigs maintained urinary continence. Urethroscopy with laser lithotripsy was used successfully in two potbellied pigs to alleviate urethral obstruction caused by uroliths (Halland et al. 2002).

Tube Cystostomy Procedure. Patients are placed in dorsal recumbency under general anesthesia. An 8–10 cm paramedian approach is made 4 cm lateral to the prepuce and extending from immediately caudal to the preputial orifice to 4 cm cranial to the brim of the pelvis. The bladder is exteriorized and two stay sutures placed near the apex. A cystotomy is performed near the apex, and suction and lavage with saline used to evacuate urine and debris from the bladder. A gallstone scoop may be used to facilitate removal of stones if present. Particular attention is paid to suctioning the region of the trigone and urethral origin to remove debris that may have migrated into the urethra during positioning for surgery. Normograde flushing is attempted to clear the urethra of debris. The cystotomy incision is then closed in two inverting layers using no. 0 or 2-0 absorbable monofilament suture material. A purse-string suture is then preplaced in the ventrolateral aspect of the bladder, near the apex on the same side as the celiotomy incision. A Foley catheter of size appropriate to the animal (range 12–18 F) is placed through a stab incision lateral to the paramedian body wall incision to enter the abdominal cavity. The end of the Foley catheter is then placed through a stab incision in the bladder within the purse-string suture. The purse-string suture is then tied tightly and the catheter balloon inflated with saline. The bladder is pulled close to the body wall using tension on the Foley catheter, which was secured to the skin with a trapping suture pattern. The celiotomy incision is closed routinely using various suture materials, depending on surgeon preference.

Oophorectomy
Removal of the ovaries is rarely indicated in swine. However, oophorectomy may be requested to facilitate research or for pet pigs. For pet pigs, removal of the ovaries is easier, faster, and has less risk of fatal hemorrhage than ovariohysterectomy (OVX). The blood vessels of the broad ligaments of the uterus are extensive and require ligation when OVX is chosen. Both ovaries may be removed from a paralumbar (flank), ventrolateral, paramedian, or ventral midline incision. We prefer to perform ovariec-tomy via a flank or ventral midline incision. Access to the abdomen is excellent with these incisions, and, in our experience, the risk of postoperative complications (incisinal infection, hernia) is less. In either case, we prefer to use general anesthesia while performing the surgery.

For ventral midline approach, the incision may be started immediately caudal to the umbilicus and extended caudally. For a paralumbar approach, the incision is started ventral to the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae, midway between the tuber coxae and the last rib. Each ovary is elevated through the incision, two hemostatic forceps are placed on the ovarian pedicle, two ligatures (no. 2-0 polygalactin 910) are placed proximal to the first hemostat, the pedicle is cut between the two hemostats and the ovary removed. Each ovarian artery must be observed for hemorrhage prior to closure. Closure of the ventral midline is done using no. 1 PDS or polygalactin 910 in an interrupted suture pattern. Chromic gut suture should not be used in the linea alba because of the increased risk of postoperative incisonal hernia. The skin is closed with no. 2 polymerized caprolactam in a Mayo (Ford) interlocking suture pattern. Paralumbar incisions are closed in three layers (transversus abdominis muscle and peritoneum, internal and external abdominal oblique muscles, and skin).
Ovariectomy, alone, may be performed in pet pigs that have not begun normal estrous cycles. Uterine atrophy is expected to occur after ovariectomy. We recommend OVX in sexually mature pigs because of the potential risk for pyometra in a uterus where the cervix has been open.

**Uterus**

**Hysterectomy.** Hysterectomy may be performed as part of cesarean section, and is discussed below. Elective hysterectomy is rarely done in swine. However, hysterectomy may be requested for research purposes or for pet pigs (Figure 70.10). When hysterectomy is performed for pet pigs, the ovaries also are removed. General anesthesia should be used during hysterectomy. The uterus may be removed via a flank, ventrolateral, paramedian, or ventral midline incision. We prefer to perform hysterectomy via either flank or ventral midline incision. The uterus is elevated through the incision, the ovaries are removed as described above, the broad ligament of the uterus is ligated using two to four overlapping simple interrupted sutures for mass ligation of the blood vessels, and transfixation ligatures are placed in the uterine body immediately cranial to the internal os of the cervix. The uterus and ovaries are removed and the incision closed as described above. All sutured pedicles should be checked for adequate hemostasis prior to closure.

![Uterus and ovaries exteriorized for ovariohysterectomy in a 4-month-old pet pig.](image)

**Cesarean Section: Indication and Decision Analysis.** Cesarean section is required when transcervical extraction of pigs from the uterus is not possible (complicated dystocia) and to obtain gnotobiotic or specific pathogen free (SPF) pigs. Cesarean section for gnotobiotic pigs is usually performed with the sow under general anesthesia and is discussed below. The most common reported causes of dystocia in swine are uterine inertia, small pelvic size, inadequate dilation of the birth canal, fetal-to-maternal disproportion, fetal malpresentation, and abnormalities of the birth canal (Titze 1977).

Cesarean section for dystocia is usually chosen as a “last-resort” procedure for fetal extraction because of economic pressures. Therefore, the mortality rate among sows and gilts having cesarean section is expected to be higher than for other species. This is not surprising because affected swine suffer extreme physical exhaustion, stress, and shock by the time the decision for cesarean section is made. Interestingly, multiparous sows had a higher frequency of collapse (25.8%) prior to cesarean section compared with primiparous pigs (16.4%) (Dimigen 1972). Owners and veterinarians may become reluctant to perform cesarean section because of expense, previous experiences with fatalities, and the high rate of dead pigs delivered. It is our opinion that unnecessary delays in the decision for surgery is the principle cause of sow and baby pig mortality associated with cesarean section. When the veterinarian is presented with a sow in dystocia, the decision as to whether the owner is willing to incur the costs of cesarean section should be ascertained as early as possible during the initial examination. Other factors influencing the decision for cesarean section includes the cause of dystocia, how long the sow has been in labor, how long the owner has tried to extract the pigs manually, and how swollen or traumatized the sow’s pelvic canal has become. Many owners are adept at extracting pigs, and their failure to remove pigs successfully may justify immediate cesarean if the cause of dystocia is not apparent. The most common indications for cesarean section in pigs are undersized pelvic canal, inadequate cervical and soft tissue dilation, prolonged labor (including uterine inertia), fetal-to-maternal disproportion, and trauma to the birth canal (Titze 1977). In our experience, cesarean section performed at the earliest indication has a high success rate for survival of the sow and a higher rate of live pigs obtained (Table 70.2).

### Table 70.2. Outcome of cesarean section in sows with respect to duration of labor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Duration of Labor</th>
<th>Number of Sows</th>
<th>% Sows Having &gt;50% Live Pigs</th>
<th>% Sows Having &lt;50% Live Pigs</th>
<th>% Sows Having All Dead Pigs</th>
<th>% Sows Died or Culled</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;18 hours</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>66.7</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>13.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18–48 hours</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>66.7</td>
<td>32.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;48 hours</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>95.3</td>
<td>28.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>43.7</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>46.6</td>
<td>21.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Dimigen 1972.
Swine that are physically exhausted, stressed, or in shock must be stabilized prior to cesarean section. Thirteen percent of sows in labor for less than 18 hours died or were salvaged, compared with 60% of sows in labor for more than 18 hours (Dimigen 1972). Among sows necropsied after sudden death, retained fetuses and toxemia were found in approximately 10% (Sanford et al. 1994). Stabilization of the sow often is simple and readily achieved. We routinely place a 16 or 18 gauge, 2-inch intravenous catheter in an ear vein. This catheter is sutured or glued in place and intravenous fluids (0.9% saline or lactated Ringer’s solution) administered rapidly (initially 20–40 ml/kg of body weight/hour; then, 4 ml/kg/hour once stabilized) and continued for the duration of the surgery. We prefer to add dextrose (1.25% final solution) and calcium (1 ml/kg) to intravenous fluids after the patient has been stabilized. Further, the shock status of the sow may be improved by administration of dexamethasone (0.5 to 1.0 mg/kg, IV) or flunixin meglumine (1 mg/kg, IV). Because extensive manipulation of the intruterine environment prior to cesarean section increases the risk for postoperative septic peritonitis, we prefer to administer preoperative antibiotics (procaine penicillin G, ceftiofur HCl, or oxytetracycline).

In severely compromised sows, sedation (see the section on anesthesia section) and local or regional anesthesia may be adequate for surgery. Intravenous fluids should be administered continuously. Epidural anesthesia (lumbosacral level) also may be useful. Overall, we prefer to perform general anesthesia rather than attempt cesarean using physical restraint and epidural anesthesia. In our experience, this causes the least stress on the patient, surgeon, and assistants. The respiratory rate and heart rate should be monitored and supportive therapy adjusted appropriately.

**Surgical Approach for Cesarean Section.** Multiple surgical approaches have been described for cesarean section. Selection of the surgical approach depends upon the preference of the surgeon, the condition of the patient, and means of restraint and anesthesia used for surgery. The most common approaches are paralumbar fossa, ventrolateral (horizontal low flank), ventral midline, paramedian, or paramammary (Mather 1966; Turner and Mcllwraith 1989). With a ventral or paramedian approach, movement by the sow must be prevented because of the risk for contamination of the incision. Also, the mammary veins must be carefully avoided or ligated to prevent excessive loss of blood during the procedure. In our experience, ventral and paramedian incisions have the highest risk for development of postoperative incisional infection (contamination on the floor and trauma from pigs searching for nipples).

The ventrolateral incision is made parallel and ventral to the flank, and lateral to the mammary chain (Mather 1966). The incision is started approximately 10 cm cranial to the inguinal region and extended cranially for 15 cm.

For paralumbar fossa incision, the sow is placed in lateral recumbency and the incision is started cranial and ventral to the tuber coxae. The incision is extended ventrally to a point approximately 5 cm dorsal to the cranial skin fold of the flank.

Ventrolateral and paralumbar incisions are relatively easy to perform, have little blood loss during surgery, and are less likely to become infected after surgery. Fewer fat deposits are encountered with ventrolateral incisions, and the meat portion of the flank is left undisturbed. After exteriorizing the closest uterine horn, a 6–8 cm long incision is made parallel with the uterine horn and as close to the bifurcation of the uterine horns as possible. All pigs may not be able to be removed from a single incision in the uterus (Figure 70.11).

Closure of cesarean section incision is based upon the conditions under which the surgery was performed. For a healthy uterus containing live or recently dead pigs, we use no. 1 chromic gut or no. 0 PDS or polyglycolic acid placed in a cushing or Utrecht (modified cushing) pattern for closure of the uterus. Some veterinarians have advocated hysterectomy when performing cesarean section (Schoneweis 1971). This practice allows rapid removal of all pigs soon after entering the abdomen, ensures culling of the sow after the pigs have been weaned, and minimizes surgery time because removal of individual pigs is done by an assistant after removal of the uterus. The uterine arteries are ligated with no. 0 chromic gut, the broad ligaments are divided along the axis of the uterine horns, and the uterine body is ligated using rubber tubing. The rubber tubing may be secured to the uterine body using no. 1 chromic gut suture. Alternatively, sterile 1 cm cotton tape (umbilical tape) suture may be used to perform transfixation.
ligation of the uterine body. Then, the gravid uterus is removed. We urge caution with hysterectomy that precise hemostasis must be achieved prior to removal of the uterus. Ligation of abdominal bleeders after removal of the uterus is difficult, and life-threatening hemorrhage may occur if the uterine arteries are inadequately ligated. We close the transversus abdominis muscle and peritoneum, together, and the external abdominal oblique and internal abdominal oblique muscles, together, using no. 2 chromic gut or no. 1 PDS or polyglycolic acid placed in simple continuous pattern. For closure of ventral midline or paramedian incisions, we do not recommend the use of chromic gut because of the higher rate of postoperative hernia formation. We use no. 1 PDS or polyglycolic acid suture placed in simple interrupted or interrupted cruciate pattern. Skin is closed using no. 0 polymerized caprolactam in a Mayo (Ford) interlocking pattern. The sow should remain confined for a minimum of 14 days after surgery.

**Gnotobiotic Pigs.** The production of gnotobiotic or SPF pigs is an accepted model for scientific research. The selected sow should be placed under general anesthesia and the surgery site aseptically prepared. Several methods have been described for obtaining gnotobiotic pigs including hysterectomy, closed hysterotomy (using a sterile chamber attached to the side of the sow through which surgery is performed), and open hysterotomy with germicidal trap. All methods are expected to have a baby pig mortality rate of less than 15%, except open hysterotomy performed with local anesthesia which may have a 35% baby pig mortality rate (Tavernor et al. 1971; Miniats and Jol 1978). When a hysterectomy technique is selected, baby pig survival is better when the surgery is performed with the sow under general anesthesia rather than euthanized prior to hysterectomy.

**Uterine Prolapse.** Prolapse of the uterus is occasionally seen in sows during or up to several days after parturition. Excessive straining because of fetal malpositioning, fetal-to-maternal disproportion, or trauma with swelling and inflammation in the birth canal is thought to cause uterine prolapse. Prolapse of the entire uterus has the greatest potential for a life-threatening crisis because of profuse hemorrhage, but partial prolapse also may occur. The sow must be stabilized prior to attempts to replace the uterus into its normal position. If hemorrhage, hypovolemia, or shock (tachycardia, peripheral cyanosis) are present, the sow should be placed into a warm environment, an IV catheter placed into an auricular vein, and intravenous fluids administered. Hypertonic saline may be administered rapidly (5–7 ml/kg body weight, IV over 5–10 minutes) followed by isotonic crystalline fluids (5–10 ml/kg/hour).

For replacement of the prolapse, the sow may be placed on an inclined floor or platform in sternal recumbency with the hindquarters elevated. Epidural anesthesia (administered at the lumbosacral space), sedation, or general anesthesia may be required to eliminate struggling, straining, and agitation of the sow. The uterus is thoroughly cleaned with cold water and assessed for the presence of lacerations and necrosis. Small lacerations may be cleaned, superficially debrided, and sutured closed (no. 0 chromic gut, simple continuous pattern). Hemorrhage may be stopped by ligating affected vessels or by performing en bloc tissue imbrication. Sutures may be placed over stents to increase the region of pressure to control hemorrhage. Then, hydroscopic agents (e.g., anhydrous glycerin, sugar, etc.) may be applied to the uterus to assist in reducing edema. The uterus is wrapped into a towel and gentle pressure applied, starting from the tip of the uterine horn and working toward the body of the uterus. After approximately 15 minutes, the edema should be sufficiently reduced to allow manipulation of the uterine horns. Each horn should be inverted starting with the tip and gradually reduced until the uterine body has been reached.

Often, progress is impeded because of the extensive edema and swelling of the soft tissues of the pelvic canal. When this occurs, left paralumbar fossa laparotomy is indicated (Raleigh 1977). After appropriate preparation of the surgical site and surgeon, a 10 cm long, vertically oriented incision is made in the middle of the left paralumbar fossae. The left arm is passed into the peritoneal cavity and into the everted uterus. One of the uterine horns is grasped and pulled back into the peritoneal cavity. The right arm or an assistant helps by applying gentle pressure on the everted horn from the exterior. After the uterus has been repositioned, all remaining fetuses should be removed. The laparotomy incision should be closed in three layers (transversus abdominis muscle and peritoneum, internal and external abdominal oblique muscles, and skin). Chromic gut (no. 3) or a synthetic absorbable suture (polidioxinone, polyglactin 910, polyglycolic acid) is placed in simple continuous suture patterns in the muscle layers. Polymerized caprolactam (no. 2 braunamide) is placed in a Mayo (Ford) interlocking pattern in the skin. Antimicrobial and antiinflammatory medications are desirable, but strict attention should be paid to drug residues in the meat prior to slaughter. Finally, a Bühner suture should be placed around the vulva to prevent reoccurrence of the prolapse. The Bühner suture (6.4 mm wide sterile cotton tape) should be deeply placed at the junction of the labia and the skin of the perineum to recreate the function of the vestibular sphincter muscle. The Bühner suture may be removed in 7–10 days with minimal risk of prolapse. Oxytocin (20 units) is routinely administered to facilitate contraction and involution of the uterus and cervix. If prolapse reduction using laparotomy is not used as a “last resort” treatment, sows should survive partial prolapse of the uterus (>75% survival), but complete prolapse carries a guarded prognosis (<50% survival).
Amputation of the Uterus. Amputation of the uterus is indicated when excessive bleeding, extensive laceration, trauma, or necrosis of a uterine prolapse is found. The prognosis with uterine prolapse is guarded to poor for survival and affected sows must be provided with supportive care as soon as possible (shelter, IV fluids via ear vein catheter, etc.). Focal lacerations and bleeders can be repaired and the uterus replaced into the abdomen. When severe injury has occurred, amputation of the uterus provides the best option for salvage of the sow. Prior to amputation, the uterus should be closely inspected to ensure that the bladder or small intestine are not entrapped. Hypovolemic or hemorrhagic shock may be present and should be addressed during the course of treatment. If the uterus is swollen, it should be elevated above the pig to encourage drainage of venous congestion. We recommend placing towels around the uterus so that pressure may be applied without further trauma to the wall of the uterus. Hydroscopic agents (e.g., anhydrous glycerin, granular sugar) may be used to help resolve edema of the uterine tissues.

After venous congestion has been reduced, amputation is more easily performed. Transfixation ligatures are placed around the circumference of the uterus. Heavy suture material (0.5 cm sterile cotton tape, no. 3 polymerized caprolactam) is used because the thickness of the uterus requires extreme tension to completely occlude the uterine arteries. Stay sutures or cross pins (using 15 cm long 18 gauge needles) are placed in the vital uterus and the prolapsed portion amputated. Then, any bleeders are ligated with no. 1 chromic gut before the remaining tissues are released and placed back into the pelvic canal. A Bühner suture or purse-string suture should be placed into the labia at the level of the vestibular sphincter to prevent prolapse of the remaining tissues. Affected sows are salvaged as soon as possible or after weaning of the litter.

Mastectomy
Chronic infection of the mammae may result in the formation of abscesses, granulomas, and mammary fistulas (Figure 70.12). The swellings may become large and problematic for the sow. Surgical removal of the mammae is indicated for return of the sow to production soundness. Sows with at least 12 intact mammary glands and that are not in the first week or last 4 weeks of gestation are suitable candidates for surgery (Bollwahn 1992). The sow is placed under general anesthesia and the affected mammary gland prepared for surgery. An elliptical incision is made approximately 1 cm from the base of the swelling so that enough tissue remains to allow closure of the tissues with minimal tension. A combination of sharp and blunt dissection is used to extirpate the gland, granuloma, and abscesses. The cranial superficial epigastric vein (subcutaneous abdominal vein) should not be compromised, but hemostasis is essential. Hemostasis is ensured by using 2-0 chromic gut ligature of transected blood vessels. The wound is closed in three layers: deep subcutaneous, superficial subcutaneous, and skin. Each subcutaneous tissue layer is sutured with a simple continuous suture pattern (no. 0 chromic gut, no. 2-0 PDS or polyglycolic acid). Each suture is anchored to the deeper tissue layer in an attempt to close all dead space, thus minimizing the formation of postoperative seroma, hematoma, and abscess. Administration of perioperative antibiotics is indicated.

ABDOMINAL SURGERY
Umbilical Hernia
Umbilical hernia is a developmental defect of pigs. An umbilical hernia is a discontinuity of the abdominal wall at the umbilicus with protrusion of abdominal content into a hernia sac formed by the skin and surrounding connective tissue (Figure 70.13). In swine herds, the frequency of umbilical hernias ranges from 0.4 to 1.2% and varies with breed and sex (Searcy-Bernal et al. 1994). In addition to heredity, the etiology of umbilical hernia may be navel infection and umbilical abscess. After the umbilical cord is cut at birth, iodine should be applied to decrease the likelihood of infection. Pigs with umbilical hernias may suffer from growth retardation and may die from intestinal strangulation. In one study, pigs sired by American Spotted and Duroc boars were more likely to develop hernia than those sired by Yorkshire, and umbilical hernias often were detected in pigs between 9 and 14 weeks of age (Searcy-Bernal et al. 1994). One possible reason for the recognition of the condition at that age may be the rapid growth of pigs, combined with increased weight of the abdominal contents, leading to a hernia of significant size. Females were at an increased risk of developing umbilical hernia. As with many other swine surgical conditions, the cost of treatment may preclude surgical correction. In that case, pigs should be consigned to an early slaughter soon (within 1 month) after detection of the hernia, before evisceration or intestinal strangulation or fistula oc-
curs. A case of intestinal umbilical fistula has been described in a 30 kg castrated male pig (Lewis 1973). The risk of intestinal incarceration and strangulation is more frequent with an umbilical hernia of small dimension, i.e., hernia ring smaller than 8 cm. However, a pig with an umbilical hernia often will be discounted when it goes to slaughter.

Reduced growth rate in untreated pigs with umbilical hernias may encourage surgical correction of the defect. However, whether surgical correction of umbilical hernia will restore the growth potential is unknown. In purebred show animals and pigs kept as pets, surgical correction often is indicated.

Herniorrhaphy should be performed early in life. Following anesthesia, the pig is restrained in dorsal recumbency in a V-shaped trough. The surgical area then is cleaned and prepared for surgery. If surgical correction is performed on a male, the prepuce, preputial diverticulum, and penis should be reflected posteriorly or to one side. The hernia sac then is isolated, and dissection is performed to the hernia ring. The hernia sac with an abscess, if present, should be removed, and the edges of the ring freshened. If intestinal contents are adhered to the hernia sac, the adhesions are separated and bowel viability is assessed; if judged acceptable, the bowel is replaced in the abdomen. If intestinal viability is compromised, resection and anastomosis of viable intestine should be performed. If no infection is present, the hernia sac also can be inverted into the abdomen. The abdominal defect then is closed using an overlapping or simple continuous pattern. The prepuce, preputial diverticulum, and penis then are repositioned and sutured to the abdominal muscle with absorbable suture material. The skin then is sutured using a simple interrupted pattern of nonabsorbable suture material.

For surgical correction of umbilical hernia in the female, an elliptical incision is made around the hernia sac, and the excess skin is discarded. With a combination of sharp and blunt dissection, the hernia sac then is cut and removed and the abdominal muscle closed, as in the male. The subcutaneous tissue and skin then are closed. Systemic antibiotic should be administered for 5 days, and the skin suture removed in 10 days.

**Inguinal or Scrotal Hernia**

Inguinal hernia and scrotal hernia are variants of a defect in which intestines or other abdominal organs pass into the inguinal canal. The hernia develops when there is an abnormally large and patent vaginal orifice through which the vaginal process and peritoneal cavity communicate. Scrotal hernia is the more exaggerated form of the defect in that the organs protrude into the scrotum (Vogt and Ellersieck 1990). These hernias are common in swine and have been the most common defect observed in swine (Vogt and Ellersieck 1990). The frequency of scrotal hernia among the porcine population varied between 0 and 15.7% with a realistic number of about 1% (Vogt and Ellersieck 1990). The development of these hernias seems to be genetically influenced. One study indicated that the variation associated with anatomic structures relevant to scrotal hernia is influenced polygenically. In that study, the heritabilities of susceptibility to scrotal hernia development were estimated to be 0.29, 0.34, and 0.34 in Duroc-, Landrace-, and Yorkshire-sired pig groups, respectively (Vogt and Ellersieck 1990). Inguinal and scrotal hernias need to be differentiated from hydrocele, scirrhous cord, and hematoma of the testicle. Taking a good history (e.g., a pig that has been castrated before is more likely to have a scirrhous cord) and direct manipulation often will give the diagnosis. If necessary, ultrasonography and needle aspiration can be used. Inguinal hernias often are encountered at the time of castration. Some of these hernias will reduce spontaneously but recur later. With chronic inguinal hernia, intestinal incarceration and strangulation may be observed.

Surgical repair of an inguinal or scrotal hernia is easier if done before the pig is castrated. With the pig restrained in dorsal recumbency and its rear quarters elevated, the inguinal and scrotal area is thoroughly cleaned and prepared for surgery. An oblique incision is made over the affected external inguinal ring. Once through the skin, the subcutaneous tissue is dissected bluntly. Also by blunt dissection, the tunica vaginalis is isolated. The tunica vaginalis should be kept intact, because this will keep the intestine contained. While external pressure is put on the scrotum, the tunics are gently pulled free from their scrotal attachment. The entire hernia sac is removed through the scrotal incision. The tunica and testicle then are twisted to force the intestines into the peritoneal cavity. The tunics and spermatic cord are transfixed as close to the inguinal ring as possible. The tunica and cord then are cut, and the inguinal ring is closed with interrupted or horizontal mattress suture. The herniorrhaphy then is checked by applying external pressure on the abdomen. The skin then is closed using absorbable sutures. The authors always
recommend checking the other side for possible bilateral herniation before performing a castration.

If the surgery was done to repair a large hernia in which marked serum accumulation in the scrotum is expected, an incision in the most ventral aspect of the scrotum should be performed via the inguinal incision before suturing to provide ventral drainage. If intestinal adhesion and incarceration are observed during surgical correction of a scrotal hernia, the vaginal tunic should be opened and the intestine dissected free or an intestinal resection and end-to-end anastomosis performed. If an inguinal hernia occurs after castration, one needs to clean and lavage the herniated bowel, enlarge the inguinal ring and replace the prolapsed intestine (if it is judged to still be viable), and then suture the inguinal ring.

Visceral Torsion or Volvulus
In one series of cases, acute abdominal accidents were characterized clinically by sudden death and were observed more commonly in dry sows (Morin et al. 1984). It was proposed that feeding dry sows in large breeding units once a day or every other day might be an important provoking factor. This feeding method often will make sows ingest large quantity of feed and water rapidly. In swine with gastric torsion, death was preceded sometimes by a short period of anorexia, abdominal distension, shortness of breath, cyanosis, and salivation. At necropsy, clockwise torsions were more common than counterclockwise. The torsions were about the longitudinal axis of the organ and the stomach was distended severely with fluid, gas, and food (Morin et al. 1984). The spleen had rotated with the stomach in some sows; affected spleens were congested severely and some had ruptured, causing hemoperitoneum. Torsion of the liver also was seen occasionally (Morin et al. 1984). In eight sows, intestinal volvulus was observed and it was more common in younger sows. In four sows the entire small intestine was included in the volvulus, the posterior half of the small intestine in one, the small intestine and colon in one, and the cecum and colon in the last one (Morin et al. 1984).

Intestinal Obstruction
In swine with intestinal obstructions from intussusceptions or foreign bodies, clinical signs observed may include depression, vomiting, abdominal distension, and decrease in the amount of feces, sometimes with blood and mucus in it. These two conditions are diagnosed rarely in live animals. If the condition is diagnosed early, a ventral midline celiotomy and an enterotomy are performed for the foreign body obstruction, and an intestinal resection and anastomosis are done for the intussusception. Spiral colon obstruction was diagnosed in an 8-year-old potbellied pig with depression, inappetence, and abdominal distension (Gallardo et al. 2003). Exploratory laparotomy found a stricture at the proximal centripetal loop of the spiral colon and megacolon proximal to the stricture. A side-to-side colonic anastomosis was performed and the pig returned to normal after surgery. A 7-month-old female potbellied pig was diagnosed with idiopathic megacolon based on abdominal palpation, abdominal radiographs, and exploratory surgery (Bassett et al. 1999). A subtotal colectomy was performed and an ileocolonic anastomosis performed. The pig survived and, after a period of diarrhea, stool returned to normal.

Gastric Ulcers
Gastric ulcers are common conditions of the gastrointestinal tract of the pig. Clinical signs are pale mucous membrane (anemia) and dark, tarry feces. In valuable pigs, sometimes gastrotomy can be the best treatment option. With the animal in dorsal recumbency, an incision is made on the ventral midline starting at the xiphoid cartilages. The stomach is isolated from the rest of the abdomen, and the serosal surface is evaluated for changes in color and appearance that would indicate an ulcer. A gastrotomy then is done, and the stomach contents are removed. If an ulcer is found, it can be surgically dissected and the edges electrocoagulated or ligated with some suture material. The wall of the stomach then is closed with a double row of suture material using an inverting pattern. If multiple bleeding ulcers are present, the prognosis is poor even with surgery (see Chapter 54 on gastric ulcers).

Atresia Ani and Rectal Stricture
Atresia ani occurs more frequently in the pig than any other species and is possibly the most important cause of intestinal obstruction. This congenital defect is transmitted genetically. The diagnosis is made by an absence of anal opening, abdominal distension, slower growth rate, and vomiting (Figure 70.14). Because the pigs are able to vomit, the diagnosis of atresia ani may not be made until 3–4 weeks of age. In the female piglet, a fistula may occur between the rectum and vagina, so that the feces may be voided through the vulva. Surgical treatment of atresia ani is necessary for survival. Following anesthesia, a circular piece of skin is excised below the tail over the bulging rectum. Feces usually are discharged immediately. If the rectum is not present at the skin opening, pelvic dissection may be necessary. Depending on the location of the rectum, or if atresia of the rectum is also present, surgical correction may not be possible. In these extreme cases, a celiotomy and colostomy may be necessary but rarely justifiable economically.

Pigs with rectal stricture often show similar clinical signs as pigs with atresia ani, except that they have an anus and are generally older. In one series of cases, pigs with rectal stricture were 16–18 weeks of age (Saunders 1974). After being affected for 2 weeks, these pigs suffered from weight loss compared to their herdmates, no
feces were passed, and the abdomen continued to distend. These pigs were slaughtered or killed by other pigs (Saunders 1974). Most cases of rectal stricture are the result of a rectal prolapse that has constricted after repair causing an obstruction. At necropsy, these pigs show a distended cecum and colon. The rectum usually is occluded for 3–5 cm by a band of fibrous tissue. It is speculated that inflammation of the rectal mucosa leads to rectal scar formation with subsequent stenosis and eventually possible complete obstruction (Saunders 1974). Pigs with rectal stricture may respond to celiotomy with colostomy or ileocutaneous anastomosis. Ileocutaneous anastomosis has been successfully performed in pigs as young as 10 days old (Anderson et al. 2000).

Rectal Prolapse and Rectal Amputation
Rectal prolapse is a common occurrence in swine. Prolapse of the rectal mucosa occurs following straining to defecate. The mucosa rapidly becomes edematous and often shows bleeding lesions. Many factors have been associated with the development of rectal prolapse, including genetics, a birth weight of less than 1 kg, being male, diarrhea, coughing, short tails, autumn and winter piling as a consequence of chilling, chronic water shortage, certain antibiotics, zearalenone toxicity, and a diet containing excess lysine (20% more than required) (Amass et al. 1995). Diagnosis of rectal prolapse is not difficult, but care should be taken that the prolapse does not contain other organs.

The simplest procedure for correction of rectal prolapse is reduction by gentle massage and retention by application of a purse-string suture pattern using umbilical tape. The suture is passed in and out through the skin around the anal opening at a distance of 1 cm from the anus. A one-finger opening should be left when tying the purse string. The suture usually is left in place for 5 days. This should be done only if the rectal mucosa is viable and no laceration is present on close inspection.

If the mucosa is too necrotic to replace, correction of the prolapse can be approached in different ways (Vonderfecht 1978). One technique is a surgical amputation. For this surgery, required instruments are hemostats, blade, scissors, thumb forceps, two 18-gauge needles 8–10 cm long, suture material, and a small-diameter rubber tube. Following anastomosis, the tube is inserted in the rectum until 5 or 8 cm protrude. The tube is fixed in the rectum by inserting the two needles through the rectum at right angles to each other so that they pass through the rectum and tube and emerge from the opposite side. The dissection is started about one centimeter from the mucocutaneous border where the mucosa is still healthy, and the entire circumference of the exposed mucosa of the rectum is cut down to the serosa of the inner wall. Hemorrhaging is usually minor and controlled with gauge until all the layers have been dissected and the dorsal artery of the rectum is cut. Once the dissection is completed around the prolapse, the rectum is held in place because it is attached to the rubber tube with needles. Instead of using tubing and needles, one could use forceps applied at two or three places as the prolapsed rectum is amputated to prevent telescoping into the animal’s body (Kjar 1976). To suture the ends of the rectum together, the authors suggest using size 0 absorbable suture material in an inside-out continuous pattern. After the simple continuous pattern has been placed around the rectum, the needles are pulled from the tube, and the tube is removed from the rectum. The rectum then automatically retracts into place.

An alternative method of rectal amputation is to use a prolapse ring, PVC tubing, syringe case, or corrugated tube (Douglas 1985). The ring or tubing is placed in the rectum, and the halfway point on the tube needs to be inserted as far as the anal sphincter. A ligature or rubber band then is applied over the prolapse as near as possible to the anus. The ligature or rubber band must be tight enough to disrupt blood supply to the prolapse. Feces may go through the tube or may block the tube. Usually, the necrotic prolapse falls in 5–7 days with the implant in place, and then fecal production returns to normal.

Three possible complications seen with rectal prolapse are bladder retroversion, eventration of the small intestine, and rectal stricture (Peyton et al. 1980). In a 1-month-old castrated pig, eventration of the small bowel was seen concurrently with a rectal prolapse. The rectal prolapse was 5 cm long, edematous, and purple-black. A small tear was found in the rectum in the pelvic area, and eventration of small intestine was observed. It was speculated that the prolapse was of long duration, al-
lowing necrosis to occur. This provided a friable area, and during straining to defecate, the small intestine perforated this necrotic area (Peyton et al. 1980).

Surgical correction of small intestine evagination in the pig is usually not economically feasible. If treatment is requested, preoperative medical management is often necessary, because these pigs are often in shock. Under general anesthesia, the intestine then is examined and most likely will have to be resected. A ventral midline incision then is made to occlude the lumen of the intestine that remained within the abdominal cavity, and the portion of the intestine that is going to the rectal laceration is resected close to the rectum. The viable end of intestine then is exteriorized through the ventral midline incision, and an end-to-end anastomosis performed (Peyton et al. 1980).

Bladder retroversion with rectal prolapse has been observed in a sow 2 days after normal farrowing (Greenwood 1989). The sow had a grapefruit-sized rectal prolapse with protrusion and tension of the perineal area. The bladder was drained by passage of a polypropylene catheter. One week postpartum, the prolapsed rectum was amputated. The sow reared nine piglets to 6 weeks of age and was sent for slaughter 1 week after weaning the piglets (Greenwood 1989).

MUSCULOSKELETAL SURGERY

Septic Arthritis

Septic arthritis may be caused by bacteremia, direct inoculation of bacteria into the joint, or extension of a local infection into the joint. Bacteremia and polyarthritis are discussed in Chapter 5. Septic arthritis caused by direct inoculation or local extension are treated by wound management, joint lavage, and systemic antibiotic therapy. Infected joints may require daily, or every other day, lavage for 7–10 days or until granulation tissue has covered the wound. Sterile isotonic electrolyte solutions (0.9% saline, lactated Ringer’s solution) are lavaged through the joint by inserting an 18- or 14-gauge needle into the joint, injecting the solution under pressure into the joint, and inserting a second needle into the joint with as much separation as possible between the two needles. Approximately 500 ml of the solution are flushed through the joint. After lavage, antibiotics may be instilled directly into the joint to achieve maximal local antibiotic concentration. Success of treatment is assessed by improvement in lameness and wound appearance.

Digit Amputation

Digit amputation is indicated when severe foot abscesses or septic arthritis of the interphalangeal joints have caused unmanageable damage to a single digit. These injuries are most commonly caused by wounds from trauma on concrete flooring or metal side panels. The decision for amputation should not be delayed. If the infection has extended to the fetlock or more proximally on the limb, digit amputation will not be curative. Also, the soundness of the opposite digit should be assessed to determine if the pig will be able to ambulate on the remaining digit after amputation.

After induction of general anesthesia, the affected digit is cleaned and prepared for surgery. A tourniquet is placed proximal to the surgery site to prevent extensive hemorrhage during surgery. A circumferential incision is made through the skin and soft tissues at a 45° angle to the coronary band, starting at the axial aspect of the digit and continuing proximally to the abaxial surface. The skin is reflected proximal to the site for amputation, and a sterile obstetrical wire is used to amputate the digit. The third phalanx and a portion of the second phalanx is removed by this procedure. The remainder of the second phalanx also should be removed. The remaining tissues are debrided, cleaned thoroughly, and the skin is opposed over the wound. A sufficient opening is left to allow drainage or a Penrose drain is placed into the wound. The foot is placed in a padded bandage for 7–10 days. Then, the foot is cleaned daily with water until the wound is healed. Perioperative antibiotics and antiinflammatory drugs are indicated.

Ankylosis of the Proximal or Distal Interphalangeal Joint

Septic arthritis of the proximal or distal interphalangeal joint is an indication for digit amputation. However, the lateral claw of the hind limb is important to normal ambulation and breeding activity. Salvage of the digit by facilitated ankylosis is an option to preserve normal ambulation. The affected pig is placed under general anesthesia and the digit prepared for surgery. A 1 cm incision is made into the affected joint. The distal interphalangeal joint is approached by placing a 3.75 cm long needle into the joint by inserting the needle immediately proximal to the coronary band and inserting the needle distally. The proximal interphalangeal joint may be located by palpation or insertion of the needle in the midpasterian region.

After the arthrotomy has been made, a 4 or 6 mm diameter drill bit is used to destroy the articular surfaces of the joint. Curettes are used to debride the joint and remove all infected subchondral bone. A distinct difference in texture and hardness will be noted between the necrotic (gritty and irregular) and healthy (smooth and hard) bone. Thorou cyclic excision of all infected bone is critical to establishing effective joint ankylosis. The tissues are extensively lavaged with normal saline and antibiotics are administered for 10–14 days. Strict confinement for 6–8 weeks is needed for ankylosis to occur. A cast extending from the ground to the carpus or hock will hasten convalescence.

Fracture Repair

Swine with fracture of long bones are often salvaged because economic considerations preclude treatment.
However, veterinarians may be asked to treat fractures in swine of potential value for genetic improvement. Treatment of fractures can be rewarding and Vaughan (1966) reported clinical experiences with fracture fixation in commercial swine. Fractures were associated with breeding injury (2 pigs), injury on concrete flooring (3 pigs), fighting injury (1 pig), and were of unknown cause in 5 pigs. The most common fractures treated were tibia and fibula (5 pigs), femur (3 pigs), humerus (2 pigs), and tibiotarsal joint luxation with fracture of the fibula (2 pigs). Affected pigs weighed between 64 and 168 kg and were 6 months to 2 years old. Fractures of the tibia and fibula were treated by open reduction and internal fixation using a bone plate and a full limb cast (3 pigs) or by using a full limb cast alone (2 pigs). Fracture of the femur was treated by application of a bone plate (3 pigs). Humerus fractures were treated by confinement (1 pig) or by application of a bone plate (1 pig). Tibiotarsal joint luxation with fracture of the fibula was treated by application of a bone plate and use of a full limb cast (2 pigs). Of these 12 pigs, 10 returned to normal production use and 2 were salvaged; 1 pig with tibiotarsal joint luxation developed *Escherichia coli* osteomyelitis, and 1 pig with humeral fracture repaired by internal fixation suffered permanent radial nerve damage.

Surgical repair of articular fracture of the humeral condyles have been reported for miniature pigs (Figures 70.15 and 70.16) (Payne et al. 1995). The medial humeral condyle was most commonly fractured, but Y-type fractures and supracondylar fractures of the humerus have been found in some miniature pigs. Fractures were repaired using lag screw and Kirschner wire fixation. Five pigs were reexamined 2 months after surgery and all were walking sound at that time.

Femoral fractures were diagnosed in 20 pigs over a 6-month period (Rousseaux et al. 1981). Nutritional analysis revealed inadequate calcium and phosphorus (both in absolute concentration and calcium to phosphorus ratio) in the feed. Affected pigs were approximately 20 weeks old and weighed between 80 and 90 kg. Pigs walked with a stilited gait and arched back. Necropsy found separation of the proximal femoral epiphysis from the femoral neck. After correction of dietary calcium and phosphorus, clinical evidence of femoral fracture was not observed in any additional pigs. Femoral, pelvic, and vertebral fractures have been found in pigs after accidental electrical shock (Bildfell et al. 1991). Multiple trauma injuries and fractures associated with nutritional deficiency are poor candidates for surgical repair. Fracture of the greater trochanter of the femur also has been identified as causes of lameness in pigs (Blowey 1992, 1994). A simple, oblique fracture of the mid-diaphysis of the femur was successfully repaired in a 10-month-old 150 kg Berkshire boar using a bone plate (Grisel and Huber 1996). The boar returned to normal breeding 190 days after surgery.

**CANINE TOOTH (TUSK) REMOVAL AND RESECTION**

Removal of the canine teeth of adult boars is challenging because of the long dental root embedded in the mandible. Canine tooth extraction is done with the boar under general anesthesia. The gingiva and perios-
teum of the mandible are reflected laterally and ventrally using a periosteal elevator. Then the lateral alveolar plate of the tooth alveolus is resected following the course of the tooth root. After the periapical region of the alveolus has been reached, a periodontal elevator is used to disrupt the periodontal membrane around the circumference of the tooth and the tooth is removed. The alveolus is debrided, rinsed, and sutured closed. Alternatively, the alveolus can be left open to heal by second-intention healing.

Resection of the mandibular canine teeth is an easy and rapid method of preventing tusk injuries to personnel and other pigs. The boar is placed under general anesthesia and obstetrical wire is placed around the tooth. The wire is used to saw through the tooth approximately 3 mm above the gingival margin to prevent exposure of the pulp cavity. This procedure is repeated every 6–12 months as needed to restrict growth of the tusks.

REFERENCES


Bildfell RJ, Carnat BD, Lister DB. 1991. Posterior paresis and electroesthesia and obstetrical wire is placed around the tooth. The wire is used to saw through the tooth approximately 3 mm above the gingival margin to prevent exposure of the pulp cavity. This procedure is repeated every 6–12 months as needed to restrict growth of the tusks.

REFERENCES


Bildfell RJ, Carnat BD, Lister DB. 1991. Posterior paresis and electroesthesia and obstetrical wire is placed around the tooth. The wire is used to saw through the tooth approximately 3 mm above the gingival margin to prevent exposure of the pulp cavity. This procedure is repeated every 6–12 months as needed to restrict growth of the tusks.

REFERENCES


Bildfell RJ, Carnat BD, Lister DB. 1991. Posterior paresis and electroesthesia and obstetrical wire is placed around the tooth. The wire is used to saw through the tooth approximately 3 mm above the gingival margin to prevent exposure of the pulp cavity. This procedure is repeated every 6–12 months as needed to restrict growth of the tusks.

REFERENCES


Bildfell RJ, Carnat BD, Lister DB. 1991. Posterior paresis and electroesthesia and obstetrical wire is placed around the tooth. The wire is used to saw through the tooth approximately 3 mm above the gingival margin to prevent exposure of the pulp cavity. This procedure is repeated every 6–12 months as needed to restrict growth of the tusks.

REFERENCES


This chapter gives an overview of some of the major drugs and biological agents used in swine, with a particular focus on antimicrobial drugs and the basic principles on which effective drug use are based.

USE OF DRUGS: MAJOR CONSIDERATIONS

Managing the effective use of drugs or biological agents for prevention and treatment of disease is an important responsibility of swine veterinarians, which involves detailed knowledge of these agents, including the risks involved in their use and the national and sometimes international regulations governing their use. The major regulatory and industry consideration is the production of safe, uncontaminated meat, followed by considerations of the welfare of the animals, cost, efficacy, and ease of application. However, many other factors need to be considered before implementing drug treatment or prophylactic use, with the underlying recognition that all such use involves a calculation that benefits of use exceed the risks involved in using most drugs or biological agents. The underlying goal is to make the minimum use of drugs in swine consistent with the production of healthy animals in a humane, cost-effective, and consumer and environmentally safe manner. Changes in swine production practices have reduced reliance on antimicrobial drugs, but there is still considerable room for further reduction in their untargeted use in many countries.

Routes of Drug Treatment

In general, individual animal treatment through injection is reserved for serious, rapidly developing infections such as acute systemic infections (septicemia, acute pneumonia, or streptococcal meningitis), but mass medication is preferred because of ease, efficacy, and lack of necessity to handle and disturb animals. Intramuscular (IM) injection is preferred for serious infections since it usually results in more complete absorption of drug and higher tissue concentrations than oral administration. Parenteral therapy of individual animals by IM injection is administered just behind the ear on the lateral side of the neck. This site is chosen in case the drug preparation causes local tissue damage as well as to prevent the possible additional effect of sciatic nerve damage if the ham muscles were used.

Oral medication is easier to apply to groups of pigs and reduces injection-related problems of broken needles, abscesses, and tissue damage. Water medication is a more rapid method of treating a group of sick pigs than feed medication, with the advantages of immediate implementation and that sick pigs will drink when they will not eat. However, the disadvantages are that not all drugs are water soluble, that water may be spilled, and that some drug carriers may block nipple watering systems. Administration of drugs by water is through an in-line proportioner containing a concentrated drug solution or by a water tank containing the appropriately dosed drug. Pigs drink about 8–10% of their body weight daily (Table 71.2), depending on environmental temperature and palatability of the drug. An approximate rule is that pigs should be dosed through water at 5–6 liters (1.32 U.S. gallons) per 60 kg weight (145 lbs).

In-feed medication is the most common route of administration of anthelmintic and antimicrobial drugs. The disadvantage for treatment of acute infections is not only that sick pigs may not eat but also that existing nonmedicated feed needs to be either removed or eaten. For this reason, in-feed medication is often reserved for long term use in the prevention or treatment of chronic infections.

Principles of Treatment

The general principle of treatment is to maximize therapeutic efficacy while minimizing adverse effects such as toxicity, antimicrobial resistance, harmful tissue residues, or adverse environmental impact. This implies a confirmed or reasonable clinical diagnosis with the actual drug chosen according to the required purpose and administered to give optimal effect, consistent usually
with labeled dosage and always within regulations concerning the use of the drugs. For antimicrobial drugs, discussed below, many of the principles of optimal treatment are well established. Duration of treatment depends on the drug and disease process but should be based on scientific data and/or on clinical experience.

**Evaluation of Clinical Trials**

The best method for evaluating animal health interventions and to guide clinical decision-making is to conduct on-farm clinical trials (Dohoo et al. 2003). In a clinical trial, exposure to disease occurs naturally and the pigs are housed and managed under normal farm conditions but the treatment is randomly assigned with a second group used as a control population. Clinical trials are difficult to conduct and there is considerable potential for errors in design and misinterpretation of findings. The consequences of these failings may be inappropriate therapeutic recommendations and overall lack of success in treatment programs. Practitioners need to be aware of proper methodology as it relates to design and interpretation in order to evaluate therapeutics either by conducting a trial on a client’s farm, or in interpreting claims for a new drug as presented by a pharmaceutical company.

First, a study should have a limited number of objectives, generally one primary and possibly two or three secondary objectives, and these must be clearly stated (Dewey 1999). For example, a trial examining the use of a drug to control pneumonia in a finishing unit might have decreased mortality as its primary objective, and as secondary objectives the researchers may be interested in improved growth rate and reduced weight variation. The design of the trial would likely be different if the primary objective was reduced weight variation.

Other important elements of a clinical trial include a defined study population, random allocation of subjects, masking or blinding of the observer, thorough follow-up, and appropriate analysis (Dewey 1999). A common error in the design of a trial is to base the statistical analysis on individual pigs but to assign treatments on the basis of pen or even barn. Statistical analysis should be conducted at the smallest level at which the treatment can be applied. Therefore, in a feed trial where all the pigs in a pen are assigned one feed and all the pigs in the next pen are given a second feed, the pen is the unit of concern. The number of animals or pens or barns required to assess whether a drug is beneficial or not can be calculated using formulas that can be found in standard statistics text books. The number of units will depend on the variation you expect and the magnitude of the difference you consider important. For example, if one assumes a coefficient of variation (mean ± standard deviation) of 7% for growth rate, one would need approximately 43 pens per treatment to detect a difference in average daily gain of 5%. Whereas it would require only 12 pens per treatment to detect an average daily gain of 10%.

Typically, the confidence interval is chosen to be 95%, implying that the probability that the results were real and not due to chance alone is 95%. The P-value or level of significance is the opposite (i.e., P = 0.05 means there is a 5% chance that the results are due to chance alone). Statistical power is typically set at 80%, implying that there is an 80% probability that we will find a difference when a difference truly exists. Therefore, 20% of the time such a trial will not distinguish a difference between treatment and control when there really is a difference. Statistical power can be increased by increasing sample size.

It is important that bias is minimized wherever possible. Therefore, subjects need to be assigned to a treat-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major Consideration</th>
<th>Further Considerations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Human safety</td>
<td>Direct drug toxicity to user; toxicity to consumer through tissue residues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal welfare</td>
<td>Prevention or reduction of disease; ease of administration for animal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host damage and adverse effects</td>
<td>Direct toxicity to pig; tissue damage; adverse drug interactions. Indirect adverse effects: resistance in microorganisms; disruption of microflora.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulations</td>
<td>Availability of products; national regulations on use; international regulations for export; extra-label drug use (AMDUCA in U.S.); veterinary-client relationships; withdrawal period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efficacy and cost</td>
<td>Assessment of efficacy; cost; benefit of treatment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug dosage and application</td>
<td>Route, ease of administration; physicochemical properties; pharmacokinetic properties; pharmacodynamic properties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principles of treatment</td>
<td>Dosage; dosage modification; duration; clinical evidence; drug trial data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principles of prophylaxis</td>
<td>Dosage; duration; clinical evidence; drug trial data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record keeping</td>
<td>Drug use records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability of drug</td>
<td>Storage conditions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 71.2. Average daily water consumption**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight or Type of Pig</th>
<th>Liters/Head/Day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7–20 kg body weight</td>
<td>2–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20–50 body weight</td>
<td>4–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50–100 body weight</td>
<td>6–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnant sow</td>
<td>8–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactating sow</td>
<td>14–20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ment group in a truly random manner, and if this is not possible, an alternatively systematic assignment may be used. The intervention given to the control group needs to be similar to the treatment group. For example, if the treatment group needs to be restrained and injected with a product, the controls need to be handled in a similar manner and given a placebo. Ideally, the animal care givers and whoever records the clinical observations should be kept blind to which animals are in the treatment group and which are in the control group.

Even when animals are assigned in a random manner and trials are carefully designed, confounding factors and other sources of error can be introduced so that a great deal of care is needed in assessing the information gained from a clinical trial, but this is still the best basis to judge efficacy of therapeutic measures, and no amount of in vitro studies can match the value of this type of on-farm assessment.

**ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS**

**Major Classes of Antimicrobial Drugs**

A brief overview of some key aspects of the major classes of antimicrobial drugs, their antimicrobial activities, pharmacokinetic properties, toxic or other adverse effects, and major clinical applications is given in Table 71.3. Further details are available through manufacturer's package inserts or through pharmacology and related textbooks (Prescott et al. 2000).

**Antimicrobial Therapy**

Rational use of antimicrobial therapy first requires a diagnosis. This may be made clinically and preferably confirmed by laboratory diagnosis, which would include antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Antimicrobial treatment will, however, usually start before laboratory results are available. The selection of a particular drug depends on knowledge of the likely or actual susceptibility of the microorganism, knowledge of factors affecting drug concentration (dosage, pharmacokinetic properties) and activity (pharmacodynamic properties) at the site of infection, knowledge of drug toxicity and factors that enhance it, cost of treatment, and consideration of regulations about drug use, including withdrawal times. The ideal drug is one to which the organism is most susceptible and that achieves effective concentration at the site of infection without damaging the host. Bactericidal drugs are required in serious life-threatening infections, when host defenses are impaired, and in infections of vital tissues such as meninges, endocardium, and bones where host defenses are also not fully functional. In other cases bacteriostatic agents may be equally useful. Where feasible, a narrow spectrum drug may be more appropriate than a broad spectrum antibacterial because the narrow spectrum drug interferes less with the normal microbial flora and is less likely to select for widespread resistance.

To some extent, drug dosage can be tailored to the susceptibility of the organism, the site of infection, and the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic properties of the selected antimicrobial agent. However, in vitro susceptibility data are laboratory-derived and the standardized conditions under which the susceptibility data are generated do not exist at the site of infection. Factors involved in tailoring a dosing regimen include, among other things, the susceptibility of the pathogen in terms of minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC), the concentration of the antimicrobial agent at the site of infection in active form (pharmacokinetic properties of the drug), and the pharmacodynamic properties of the antimicrobial agent. Some antimicrobials (aminoglycosides, fluoroquinolones) are concentration-dependent (optimum action of the drug depends on concentration of the drug above MIC), whereas others (beta-lactams, lincosamides, macrolides, trimethoprim-sulfamethazine) are time-dependent (optimum activity depends on time above MIC). The complex issues involved in optimal antimicrobial therapy are beyond the scope of this chapter although it can be concluded that some dosage recommendations for drugs licensed in the past have not taken modern understanding into account and are suboptimal or inappropriate. Labeled recommendations can therefore be expected to change in the future. In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration's professional flexible labeling approach allows veterinarians to adjust the dose based on the MIC of the pathogen. Although a number of factors determine optimal dosage, the factor that most frequently limits dosage is toxicity. The upper level of the recommended dosage should not be exceeded, because this is often determined by toxicity. Sometimes, however, a drug's antibacterial effects may be limiting and may determine the upper level of dosage. For example, the killing rate of beta-lactam drugs has an optimal concentration, whereas that of the aminoglycosides or fluoroquinolones is proportional to drug concentration. Penicillin G is virtually nontoxic in nonallergic patients, but its dosage is limited by its antibacterial action. By contrast the dosage of aminoglycoside is limited not by antibacterial effects but by its toxicity.

In terms of duration of treatment, the variables affecting length of treatment have not been defined. Responses of different types of infections to antimicrobial drugs vary, and clinical experience with many infections is important in assessing response to treatment. For acute infections, it will usually be clear within 2 days whether or not therapy is clinically effective. If no response is seen by that time, both the diagnosis and treatment should be reconsidered. Treatment of acute infections should be continued for at least 2 days after clinical and microbiologic resolution of infection. For serious acute infections, treatment should probably last 7–10 days. For chronic infections, treatment will be considerably longer.
Table 71.3. Overview of major classes and identities of antimicrobial drugs used in swine, their antimicrobial activities, pharmacokinetic properties, toxic or other adverse effects, and major clinical applications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug Class</th>
<th>Specific Agent or Example of Agents</th>
<th>Antibacterial Activity, Resistance</th>
<th>Pharmacokinetic Properties</th>
<th>Toxic or Adverse Effects</th>
<th>Major Applications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sulfonamides</td>
<td>Sulfamethazine intermediate acting; others also used</td>
<td>Bacteriostatic; broad-spectrum, gram+, gram – aerobes; anaerobes; acquired resistance very widespread. Active intra-cellular bacteria, protozoa</td>
<td>Rapidly absorbed from intestine, well distributed in tissues</td>
<td>Violative kidney residues from feed use through recycling, feed contamination if feed not withdrawn 15 days before slaughter</td>
<td>Minor value; largely growth promotional, possible disease prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfonamide-diaminopyrimidine combinations</td>
<td>Sulfamethazine-trimethoprim</td>
<td>Bactericidal; gram+, gram – aerobes; anaerobes. <em>Mycoplasma, Leptospira</em> resistant</td>
<td>Rapidly absorbed from intestine, well distributed in tissues; crosses uninflamed blood-brain barrier</td>
<td>Wide safety margin</td>
<td>Largely IM use for acute infections (pneumonia, streptococcal meningitis). In feed for atrophic rhinitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-lactam</td>
<td>Penam penicillins, Group 1: Penicillin G</td>
<td>Bactericidal; highly active many gram+, some fastidious gram – aerobe, e.g., <em>H. parasuis, P. multocida</em>; anaerobes; <em>Leptospira</em>. Enteric bacteria and <em>Mycoplasma</em> resistant</td>
<td>Poorly absorbed from intestine, relatively poorly distributed in tissues; crosses only inflamed blood-brain barrier. Procaine penicillin is long-acting form for IM use since unconjugated drug rapidly excreted</td>
<td>Safe drug; possible anaphylaxis or procaine-induced excitement</td>
<td>Excellent for IM use in enterics, streptococcal infections including meningitis, clostridial infections. Some bacterial pneumonias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-lactam</td>
<td>Penam penicillins, Group 4: ampicillin, amoxy-cillin</td>
<td>As penicillin G, broader activity against gram – aerobes, but resistance widespread</td>
<td>As penicillin G, but better absorbed orally and distributed through tissues</td>
<td>Safe drug</td>
<td>Similar to penicillin G. Addition of beta-lactamase inhibitors (e.g., clavulanic acid) has resurrected penam penicillins use in other species Excellent for IM use in gram – aerobic infections, including colibacillosis, salmonellosis, gram – bacterial pneumonias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-lactam</td>
<td>Group 4, “third generation” cephalosporins; cefotiofur</td>
<td>Bactericidal; gram – aerobes especially, including <em>E. coli</em>, <em>Salmonella</em>, gram+ aerobes, anaerobes. <em>Mycoplasma</em> resistant</td>
<td>Poorly absorbed from intestine, relatively poorly distributed in tissues; crosses only inflamed blood-brain barrier</td>
<td>May predispose to <em>Clostridium difficile</em> colitis if used in neonatal pigs. Resistance emerging in <em>Salmonella</em> may represent human health hazard</td>
<td>Gentamicin IM for neonatal <em>E. coli</em> infections; neomycin orally for <em>E. coli</em> infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminoglycoside</td>
<td>Gentamicin, neomycin</td>
<td>Bactericidal; gram – aerobes, including enterics</td>
<td>Poorly absorbed from intestine, relatively poorly distributed in tissues</td>
<td>Nephrotoxic with prolonged parenteral use; persistent kidney residues</td>
<td>Gentamicin IM for neonatal <em>E. coli</em> infections; neomycin orally for <em>E. coli</em> infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminocyclitol</td>
<td>Apramycin, spectinomycin</td>
<td>Bactericidal; gram – aerobes, including enterics</td>
<td>Poorly absorbed from intestine, relatively poorly distributed in tissues</td>
<td>Nephrotoxic with prolonged parenteral use; persistent kidney residues</td>
<td>Orally for <em>E. coli</em> infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lincosamide</td>
<td>Lincomycin</td>
<td>Bacteriostatic; gram+ aerobes, anaerobes including <em>B. hyodysenteriae</em>, <em>Mycoplasma</em></td>
<td>Well absorbed from intestine and well distributed in tissues</td>
<td>Safe drug in swine</td>
<td>Oral use for control of <em>Brachyspira</em>; oral or IM use for control of <em>Mycoplasma</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macrolide</td>
<td>Tylosin</td>
<td>Bacteriostatic; gram+ aerobes, anaerobes, some gram – aerobes; <em>Mycoplasma</em></td>
<td>Well absorbed from intestine and well distributed in tissues</td>
<td>Safe drug in swine; IM irritant, may cause edema, pruritis, anal protrusion</td>
<td>Oral use for control of proliferative enteropathy, atrophic rhinitis, possibly leptospirosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Treatment failure has many causes. The antimicrobial selected may be inappropriate because of misdiagnosis, inactivity at the site of infection, failure to culture infections, inaccurate or inapplicable laboratory results, resistance of pathogens, chronic nature of the infection (which may affect metabolic state of the pathogen), or errors in sampling. These factors are more likely to cause failure than inadequate dosage although this may also be important. It is important that producers comply with dosing instructions. When failure occurs, diagnosis must be reassessed and samples collected for laboratory analysis.

### Principles of Prophylaxis

Antimicrobial drugs are administered to swine for the prevention of particular diseases. The generally accepted principles of antimicrobial prophylaxis are:

- Medication should be directed against specific pathogens or diseases.
- Prophylaxis should be used only where efficacy is established. Prophylaxis should be of a duration that is as short as possible consistent with efficacy.
- Dosage should be the same as that used therapeutically.
- Adverse effects itemized earlier should be minimized.

In general, as discussed below, antimicrobial drugs of therapeutic importance in both humans and animals have been markedly overused for both growth promotional and disease prophylactic purposes in swine, in a manner inconsistent with generally accepted principles of prophylaxis. Alternatives to these antimicrobial use practices need to be found, as discussed below.

One reasonable prophylactic practice is that of “pulse medication,” whereby a therapeutic level of a specific drug is included in the feed at therapeutic concentrations for a short period for the prevention of endemic diseases, such as proliferative enteropathy or enzootic pneumonia before the predictable onset of these diseases in a particular setting.

### Regulations

The use of antimicrobial drugs in animals is regulated by law in many countries, so that veterinarians need to know and abide by the regulations. The regulations involve an approval process of drugs produced by a particular manufacturer only if they meet human and animal safety standards as well as being shown to be efficacious at specified dosages for particular purposes (the labeled dose/purpose). An example of regulated use of antimicrobial drugs, that of the United States, is outlined in Table 71.4. In the United States, failure to comply with the regulations may result in fines or imprisonment.

### Antimicrobial Drug Withdrawal

Most antimicrobial drugs must not be used near slaughter, to avoid any significant residues in meat products. The precise period varies with the drug and the dosage. For drugs used at the labeled dosage, this will be specified on the package insert. For extra-label drug use, withdrawal information may be obtained from the manufacturer or in some cases from national or international databases such as, in the United States, the Food Animal Residue Avoidance Databank (toll-free number in the United States, 1-800-USFARAD). Examples of preslaughter medication withdrawal time in the United States are shown in Table 71.5.
There is both need and considerable scope to reduce the use of antimicrobial drugs in swine. Human medicine is experiencing an antimicrobial resistance crisis because of the surge of resistance in important human pathogens in the last decade. The emergence of this crisis has resulted from many causes, including widespread use and overuse of some drugs for many years, changing social practices including daycare centers and group homes for the elderly, the increasing number of immunosuppressed people, and possibly changes in the drugs being used. As medical science tries to reduce resistance, it again focuses on the widespread use of antimicrobial drugs in farm animals. Agriculture uses about half of all antimicrobials produced, with use in swine being a major component. Why antimicrobials can be administered to animals on a wide scale over long periods to promote growth and prevent endemic disease cannot be understood by physicians desperate to preserve effective antimicrobials. The extent of the contribution of farm animal use to resistance in human pathogens has been the subject of vigorous debate for many years. Although it is easy to document that bacteria, including resistant bacteria, move from farm animals including swine to people, the scale and to some extent the importance of the movement is unclear. The extent and type of resistance in commensal E. coli isolated from swine has been shown to be directly proportional to the extent and type of antimicrobial use in pigs (Dunlop et al. 1998). On a broader scale, the use of antimicrobial drugs over many years may not only have selected for resistant bacterial pathogens and an enormous reservoir of resistance genes in commensal bacteria, but it may also have promoted or enhanced the ability of bacteria to move resistance and other genes through enhancement of mobile genetic elements such as transposons, plasmids, and integrons, and thus perhaps to change more rapidly. There is a high frequency of resistance to multiple antimicrobial drugs in porcine enterotoxigenic E. coli, with some evidence that the emergence of resistant new serotypes with apparently enhanced virulence may have virulence genes linked to those of resistance (Noamani et al. 2003), so that use of antimicrobial drugs may not only maintain resistant but also virulent bacteria.

In 1999, the European Union banned the use of growth-promoting antimicrobial drugs in food animals. The impetus for the ban on avoparcin, bacitracin, spiramycin, tylosin, and virginiamycin was because of the entry of Sweden into the Union. Sweden had banned these growth promoters in 1986 but, because it needed to harmonize its regulations with those of the EU, it persuaded the EU to change the Union’s regulations. This ban was supported by Denmark and Danish pork producers, who had agreed on a voluntary ban shortly before 1999. The impetus for the Danish ban was the convincing evidence that avoparcin use in poultry, swine, and calves...
was selecting for vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VREs), which were reaching the European population through the food chain (Bager et al. 1997). Vancomycin-resistant enterococci have become major nosocomial pathogens in human hospitals, particularly in the United States. *Enterococcus faecium* are innately highly resistant bacteria for which vancomycin is often the only drug to which they are susceptible; VREs are essentially untreatable infections. The ban on these growth promoters in Denmark led to an over 50% reduction in antimicrobial drug use, a dramatic reduction in enterococci resistant to the growth promoters and a minor increase in the cost of production of swine estimated at about one Euro (World Health Organization 2002).

Numerous reports have recommended that all stakeholders concerned with the use of antimicrobials in both food animals and humans must be involved in an overarching global strategy to contain resistance (e.g., World Health Organization 2000a) and have recommended steps to enhance the prudent use of antimicrobials in animals, including the removal of growth promoters if these drugs are important in human medicine (e.g., World Health Organization 2000b). At the international level, the World Organization for Animal Health (Office International des Epizooties) (2003, 2004) continues to formulate recommendations and options for risk management relating to antimicrobial use in animals. Outside the EU, other countries are in the process of assessing or starting to reassess the use of antimicrobials in food animals based on the importance of the drug in human medicine and the likelihood of exposure of humans to resistant bacteria or resistance genes arising from animals (e.g., Health Canada 2002; Center for Veterinary Medicine, U.S. Food and Drug Administration 2004).

In recent years many countries have started to monitor resistance in both important pathogens (e.g., *Campylobacter jejuni, Salmonella*) as well as “indicator” commensal bacteria (e.g., *Enterococcus* species) isolated from animals, foodstuffs, and humans. For example, in the United States the National Antimicrobial Resistance Monitoring System (NARMS) established in 1996 is designed to document emerging resistance problems, as well as to provide data on which public health policy decisions can be made for the use of antimicrobial drugs in food-producing animals. In Canada, the Canadian Integrated Program for Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance has taken a similar approach to NARMS.

One emerging resistance problem that will likely become of even greater concern in the future is expanded-spectrum cephalosporin resistance in multidrug-resistant *E. coli* and *Salmonella* serovars (Winokur et al. 2001; Zhao et al. 2003), in which the *cmy-2* gene encoding expanded-spectrum cephalosporin resistance may be found on several different plasmids that can readily be transferred through bacterial conjugation (Caratolli et al. 2002).

### Prudent Use Guidelines

The widespread concern about antimicrobial resistance and the animal-human resistance link has led most major national veterinary organizations to improve antimicrobial drug use by development of prudent use guidelines. Such guidelines represent first steps in the more judicious use of antimicrobial drugs that may become considerably more complex over time if they address antimicrobial drug choice for particular diseases. An example of such guidelines, that of the American Association of Swine Veterinarians, is shown in Table 71.6.

### Drug Selection for Specific Diseases

Table 71.7 contains recommendations for treatment of specific bacterial disease conditions commonly encountered in North America. It is beyond the scope of this

### Table 71.6. American Association of Swine Veterinarians Basic Guidelines of Judicious Therapeutic Use of Antimicrobials in Pork Production

| 1 | Preventive strategies, such as appropriate husbandry and hygiene, routine health monitoring, and immunization, should be emphasized. |
| 2 | Other therapeutic options should be considered prior to or in conjunction with antimicrobial therapy. |
| 3 | Judicious use of antimicrobials, when under the direction of a veterinarian, should meet all requirements of a veterinarian-client-patient relationship. |
| 4 | Prescription, Veterinary Feed Directive, and extra-label use of antimicrobials must meet all the requirements of a valid veterinarian-client-patient relationship. |
| 5 | Extra-label antimicrobial therapy must be prescribed only in accordance with the Animal Medicinal Drug Use Clarification Act amendments to the Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and its regulations. |
| 6 | Veterinarians should work with those responsible for the care of animals to use antimicrobials judiciously regardless of the distribution system through which the antimicrobial was obtained. |
| 7 | Regimens for therapeutic antimicrobial use should be optimized using current pharmacological information and principles. |
| 8 | Antimicrobials considered important in treating refractory infections in humans or veterinary medicine should be used in animals only after careful review and reasonable justification. Consider using other antimicrobials for initial therapy. |
| 9 | Utilize culture and susceptibility results to aid in the selection of antimicrobials when clinically relevant. |
| 10 | Therapeutic antimicrobial use should be confined to appropriate clinical indications. |
| 11 | Therapeutic exposure to antimicrobials should be minimized by treating only for as long as needed for the desired clinical response. |
| 12 | Limit therapeutic antimicrobial treatment to ill or at risk animals, treating the fewest animals indicated. |
| 13 | Minimize environmental contamination with antimicrobials whenever possible. |
| 14 | Accurate records of treatment and outcome should be used to evaluate therapeutic regimens. |

Note: The AASV website elaborates on these basic guidelines listed above (http://www.aasp.org/aasv/jug.html).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Causative Agent</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Suggested Drug(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ENTERIC DISEASES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clostridial enteritis</td>
<td><em>Clostridium perfringens</em> type A and C</td>
<td>Treatment of sick piglets affected with type C is not effective. Medicate sows to reduce shedding.</td>
<td>Bacitracin in sow diet (100 gm per ton of feed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coccidiosis</td>
<td><em>Isospora suis</em></td>
<td>Treatment must begin before diarrhea occurs (3–6 day-old piglets). Treatment must begin before diarrhea occurs (3–6 day-old piglets).</td>
<td>Ampicillin (6 mg/kg, oral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colibacillosis</td>
<td><em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
<td>Neonatal piglets must be treated promptly and provision of electrolytes helps minimize effects of dehydration. Post-weaned pigs best treated with antibiotics in water.</td>
<td>Gentamicin (5 mg per kg, oral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Neomycin (7 mg per kg, oral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spectinomycin (50 mg twice a day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Wanlings</em>: Apramycin (12.5 mg/kg per day, in water)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colitis</td>
<td><em>Brachyspira pilosicoli</em></td>
<td>Disease is often mild and responds to change in feed, but if more severe, treat in similar fashion to swine dysentery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proliferative enteropathy</td>
<td><em>Lawsonia intracellularis</em></td>
<td>All-in/all-out management and good hygiene may minimize the need for antibiotics. Feed medication can prevent clinical signs.</td>
<td>Tylosin (100 g per ton of feed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonellosis</td>
<td><em>Salmonella typhimurium</em></td>
<td>Antimicrobials may be contraindicated in that they prolong shedding and promote resistance.</td>
<td>Lincomycin (100 g per ton of feed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and other serovars</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tiamulin (35 g per ton of feed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine dysentery</td>
<td><em>Brachyspira hyodysenteriae</em></td>
<td>Resistance against older drugs is common. Treatment for extended period after clinical signs disappear is necessary. Water medicate in acute outbreak.</td>
<td>Tiamulin (200 g/ton of feed to treat) (35 g/ton to prevent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carbadox (50 g/ton of feed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MULTISYSTEMIC DISEASES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Actinobacillus</em></td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus suis</em></td>
<td><em>A. suis</em> is sensitive to most antibiotics but disease occurs acutely so treatment may not be in time.</td>
<td>Procaine penicillin G 20,000 IU/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septicemia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Procaine penicillin G 20,000 IU/kg IM or higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erysipelas</td>
<td><em>Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae</em></td>
<td>Resistance to penicillin does not appear to be a problem.</td>
<td>Ceftriaxone, 3 mg/kg IM but also tylosin, tetracyclines, or lincomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glasser’s disease</td>
<td><em>Haemophilus parasuis</em></td>
<td>High dosages, administered parenterally to all members of the affected group. Some resistance to penicillin.</td>
<td>Procaine penicillin G 20,000 IU/kg IM or higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycoplasma polyserositis</td>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyorhinis</em></td>
<td>High dosages, administered parenterally, but results tend to be poor.</td>
<td>Ceftriaxone, 3 mg/kg IM but also tylosin, tetracyclines, or lincomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonellosis</td>
<td><em>Salmonella choleraesuis</em></td>
<td>Vigorous treatment early can reduce duration and severity.</td>
<td>Ceftriaxone 3 mg/kg IM and Trimethoprim-sulfadoxine 16 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MUSCULOSKELETAL DISEASES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot rot</td>
<td><em>Arcanobacterium pyogenes</em></td>
<td>Improved flooring and sanitation. Topical disinfectants may help. Generally poor response to treatment.</td>
<td>Procaine penicillin G 20,000 IU/kg IM Oxytetracycline 6.6 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Fusobacterium necrophorum</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycoplasma arthritis</td>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyosynoviae</em></td>
<td>Injectable antibiotics and possibly corticosteroids.</td>
<td>Lincomycin 10 mg/kg IM Tiamulin 11 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonatal polyarthritis</td>
<td><em>Staphylococcus</em> spp.</td>
<td>Treatment is ineffective unless started early.</td>
<td>Tiamulin 9 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and others</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppurative arthritis</td>
<td><em>Arcanobacterium pyogenes</em></td>
<td>Treatment is generally ineffective.</td>
<td>Procaine penicillin G 20,000 IU/kg IM Oxytetracycline 6.6 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NEUROLOGICAL DISEASES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edema disease</td>
<td><em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
<td>Sick pigs eat and drink very little and must be treated parenterally.</td>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfadoxine 16 mg/kg IM Ceftriaxone 3 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otitis media (Middle ear infection)</td>
<td><em>Staphylococci</em> spp.</td>
<td>Abscesses can occur and relapses are common.</td>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfadoxine 16 mg/kg IM Ceftriaxone 3 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetanus</td>
<td><em>Clostridium tetani</em></td>
<td>Poor prognosis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
text to discuss all product indications and cautions, but the user should always review the information provided by the package insert and the product label. Nor is it within the scope of this text to include all possible treatment options; instead, this table should be considered a general guideline.

**ALTERNATIVES TO ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS**

**Management and Biosecurity**

Modern housing and husbandry methods that tend to segregate age groups, allow for cleaning of the environment between production groups, and minimize the risk of disease introduction through strict biosecurity measures, are the most important methods of reducing the use of antimicrobials and other therapeutic products. Immune system stimulation results in decreased feed efficiency and growth rate whether or not clinical disease occurs. The value of in-feed antibiotics is questionable when high-health status grower-finisher pigs are raised in a clean, biosecure environment (Van Lunen 2003). However, even under ideal management there are circumstances when treatment is required and success of therapy very much depends on the diligence of stockpeople to identify clinical signs of illness early, to treat appropriately, and to provide an environment for the sick pig that promotes healing.

**Vaccines**

Vaccines are extensively used in swine production, and in fact there are few diseases for which a vaccine is not available. Unfortunately, the fact that a vaccine is licensed and available does not mean it works (Ribble 1990). The usefulness of vaccination varies from disease to disease and even from herd to herd. Despite rapid advances in the fields of immunology and molecular biology there are still diseases for which vaccines have only moderate to poor efficacy (Haesebrouck et al. 2004). Details of the mechanisms of pathogenesis and immune response are covered elsewhere in this text.

There are a number of important considerations that a veterinarian needs to evaluate in order to decide upon a vaccination program for a particular herd. The cost-benefit of vaccination needs to be considered, and this includes estimating the cost of the program, including labor to administer the vaccine; estimating the improvement one would expect from the vaccination program, which requires a knowledge of the vaccines efficacy and an understanding of the disease costs present in the herd; and evaluating the value of alternative control measures. In addition, the veterinarian needs to be aware of possible negative side effects, such as a potential tissue reaction that might lead to trimming losses or a transient loss of appetite that could cause a reduction in growth.

---

**Table 71.7. (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Causative Agent</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Suggested Drug(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>REPRODUCTIVE DISEASES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leptospirosis</td>
<td><em>Leptospira</em> spp.</td>
<td>Antibiotics may not eliminate carrier state.</td>
<td>Streptomycin 25 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chlor or oxytetracycline at 600–800 g/ton of feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ampicillin 6 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastitis and/or metritis</td>
<td>Generally gram-negative bacteria</td>
<td>Attention needs to be paid to cross-fostering piglets. Treatment varies depending on microorganism and sensitivity.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RESPIRATORY DISEASES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enzootic pneumonia</td>
<td><em>Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae</em> and secondaries</td>
<td>Preferably sick animals are treated parenterally to achieve high tissue levels.</td>
<td>Oxytetracycline 6.6 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfadoxine 3 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ceftiofur 3 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tulathromycin 2.5 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleuropneumonia</td>
<td><em>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</em></td>
<td>Parenteral treatment because acutely sick pigs eat and drink very little.</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive Atrophic Rhinitis</td>
<td><em>Bordetella bronchiseptica</em> and toxigenic strains of <em>Pasteurella multocida</em></td>
<td>Responsive to housing/management and vaccination programs.</td>
<td>Oxytetracycline 20 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sulfamethazine 400–2000 g/ton of feed in nursery ration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SKIN DISEASE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exudative epidermitis</td>
<td><em>Staphylococcus hyicus</em></td>
<td>May see resistance to penicillin, need to treat fresh wounds topically.</td>
<td>Procaine penicillin G 20,000 IU/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Greasy pig disease)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>URINARY TRACT DISEASE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystitis</td>
<td><em>Actinobaculum suis</em> and possibly others</td>
<td>Relapses are common.</td>
<td>Procaine penicillin G 20,000 IU/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ampicillin 6 mg/kg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chlor or oxytetracycline 600–800 g/ton of feed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The decision to institute a vaccination program is complex, and unfortunately there is a scarcity of unbiased data regarding the efficacy of vaccines used under practical farm conditions (Moon and Bunn 1993). There are good examples of vaccines that have worked well in controlled experimental infection models but are of no value in the field. Many of the important diseases of swine are a complex of one or more infectious agents and of host, environmental, and management factors.

Swine practitioners are sometimes faced with an unexpected vaccination failure in a situation when using a product that has worked well under similar circumstances in the past. Possible causes of a failure include improper storage and handling of the vaccine, such as failure to refrigerate or protect from light; incorrect administration, such as subcutaneous injection when an intramuscular injection is required; or possibly omitting to vaccinate whole groups of animals. In the case of vaccines administered via the drinking water, there are a number of concerns but possibly the most important is chlorine present in the water, which may kill live attenuated bacteria in vaccines (Kolb 1996).

Timing of a vaccination program is often a problem. In order to maximize compliance and minimize labor, the swine industry prefers to use combination vaccines that require a single injection to be given at a time when animals are ordinarily handled (such as at weaning). Among the problems associated with this approach is the concern that for newly weaned pigs there may still be high levels of passive immunity present to interfere with the stimulation of immunity from vaccination. Therefore, one has to weigh the consequences of vaccinating at a time of greatest convenience versus the extra labor costs and stress to the animals of vaccinating at the most appropriate time to ensure vaccine efficacy.

**Passive Immunity**

Spray-dried animal plasma has been widely used in diets for newly weaned pigs and is associated with increased growth rates in the order of 27% (van Dijk et al. 2001). The mode of action of spray-dried animal plasma is not fully understood but is assumed to be at least partly due to the presence of immunoglobulins, which may provide a certain level of protection to the newly weaned piglet at a time when the supply of immunoglobulins from sow’s milk has ceased. The ability of plasma proteins to neutralize the effect of specific organisms is dependent on the immunizations and disease history of the pigs from which the blood is collected.

Specific antibodies from chicken egg-yolk have been examined as a source of passive immunity for newly weaned pigs as well. Laying hens are vaccinated against specific pig pathogens such as *E. coli*. Antibodies are secreted into the yolk of the egg (IgY) in large quantities (up to 200 mg/egg) (Marquardt and Li 2001), and dried yolk is incorporated in nursery pig rations. Trials using specific egg-yolk products to prevent postweaning *E. coli* diarrhea have produced inconsistent results (Cherny-sheva et al. 2004). Stability of the product during feed processing and passage through the pig’s gastrointestinal system are major concerns.

**Other Biological Products**

**Direct-Fed Microbials (Probiotic).** Probiotics are defined as live microbials provided in the feed in an attempt to encourage proliferation in the intestine of the specific microorganism fed with the objective of providing health benefits to the host animals (Fuller 1989). The most commonly used probiotics include species of *Lactobacillus*, *Enterococcus*, *Bifidobacterium*, and *Saccharomyces* (Alverez-Olmos and Oberhelman 2001; Holzapfel et al. 2001; Rolfe 2000). Most studies involving probiotics have concentrated on improving intestinal health, particularly during the weaning period when the pig gut microflora undergoes dramatic change.

It is generally accepted that with careful attention to the criteria used to select the particular probiotic strain, there may be a place for probiotics in prevention of enteric disease, but results to date are inconsistent. There are a number of criteria that potential probiotic strains must meet in order to be considered for use as a probiotic, including the ability to demonstrate predictable and measurable health benefits. The screening and selection of a probiotic includes testing in vitro or in vivo of the following criteria:

- It must be nonpathogenic and proven safe.
- It must have stability in an acid environment, in the presence of bile, and resistant to degradation by digestive enzymes.
- It must adhere to gut epithelial tissue and be able to persist in the gastrointestinal tract of the host.

In addition, the microbials used as probiotics must retain viability and stability during commercial production, feed processing, storage, and delivery, and must be cost-effective.

The main mechanisms whereby probiotics exert protective or therapeutic effects are not fully understood, but several ways have been postulated. Probiotics produce antimicrobial substances such as organic acids, fatty free acids, ammonia, hydrogen peroxide, and bacteriocins (Alverez-Olmos and Oberhelman 2001). In addition, probiotics may enhance specific and nonspecific host immunity (Kailasapathy and Chin 2000), and probiotics may prevent colonization of pathogenic microorganisms by competitive inhibition for microbial adhesion sites.

Inconsistent findings have been observed when probiotics have been used in trials to control pig disease or improve growth performance (Conway 1999). It is unlikely they will be capable of replacing antibiotics in the control of disease but they may have a place alongside...
other techniques for improving the health of the gut microflora and reducing the shedding of pathogens such as *Salmonella*.

There is considerable interest in the use of fermented liquid feed and there appears to be an association between its use and a reduction in *Salmonella* prevalence (van der Wolf et al. 2001). A possible explanation for the beneficial effect of fermented liquid feed is that the reduced pH of the diet and the presence of large numbers of organic acid producing bacteria in the feed have a positive effect on the gut microflora and create an environment unsuitable for *Salmonella* and other coliform bacteria.

**Bacteriophages.** Bacteriophages or phages are bacterial viruses that invade bacterial cells and in the case of lytic phages, disrupt bacterial metabolism and cause the bacterium to lyse (Sulakvelidze et al. 2001). From a clinical standpoint, phages appear to be innocuous, do not attack normal gut flora, and are extremely common in the environment. In spite of all the positive properties of lytic phages, they are not commonly used prophylactically or therapeutically and their efficacy is still a matter of controversy almost 100 years after their initial discovery.

**Nutrients**

There are a plentiful supply of physiologically active feed ingredients that can improve pig performance and health by modifying the environment of the digestive tract (Pettigrew 2003). Zinc oxide added to nursery rations at a level of 2500 ppm for 2 weeks will result in increased growth rate and reduced prevalence of diarrhea (Jensen-Waern et al. 1998). In vitro studies have shown that zinc has antimicrobial effects, but in vivo studies show no reduction in *E. coli* numbers and no change in function of circulating neutrophils. There are concerns that high levels of zinc oxide will cause liver toxicity if fed longer than 3–4 weeks.

Likewise, copper sulfate at levels of up to 250 ppm has been added to pig feed to promote growth. However, the combination of zinc and copper does not result in an additive growth response (Hill et al. 2000). In the case of both copper and zinc, there are environmental concerns regarding their use because of the build up of these minerals in manure.

The quest for alternatives to antibiotics in pig feed has caused interest in natural remedies, including herbs, spices, botanicals, and essential oils. These products may improve performance by improving feed palatability and by exerting antibacterial effects, but there needs to be further evidence of their effectiveness (Pettigrew 2003).

Organic acids (fumaric, formic, and lactic) are commonly added to feed or water in order to improve growth and reduce diarrhea during the postweaning period (Tsiloyiannis et al. 2001). Modes of action claimed for the growth-promoting effect of organic acids include decreased gastric pH, reduced coliform population, stimulated pancreatic exocrine secretion, increased pepsin activation, altered gut morphology, and improved intake and digestibility (Partanen 2001).

Response to acidification has been variable and may be attributed to feed and animal factors as well as differences in the properties of the various organic acids. Two problems that are associated with the use of high levels of organic acids are the acids may have a negative effect on palatability and the feed is corrosive to cement and steel in swine housing (Canibe et al. 2001).

An alternative approach to altering the gut microflora is to feed nondigestible material that provide a substrate for beneficial bacteria such as lactic acid-producing bacteria. These products are often referred to as prebiotics. In order for a feed to be classified as a prebiotic it must be neither hydrolyzed nor absorbed in the upper part of the gastrointestinal tract, be a selective substrate for one or a limited number of potentially beneficial commensal bacteria, and induce luminal or systemic effects that are beneficial to the host’s health (Roberfroid 2001). Nondigestible oligosaccharides are the most common type of prebiotics, including fructooligosaccharides and mannan-oligosaccharides. In general, prebiotics are considered to provide small but positive improvements in growth rate, and are widely used in the swine industry. However, their role in providing health benefits, such as reducing *Salmonella* shedding, needs to be clarified.

Enzymes added to feed to encourage improved feed efficiency and in some cases potential health benefits are used widely. For example, feed can be supplemented with phytase to allow swine to digest plant phosphorus that is in the form of phytate. It has been hypothesized that the use of enzymes may allow the industry to utilize coarse feed particle size as a means of reducing gastric ulcers and the prevalence of *Salmonella* but still maintaining acceptable feed conversion.

There is a possibility that in-feed antimicrobials for growth promotion could be reduced through a combination of feeding manipulations, such as the use of various combinations of liquid feeds or coarse particle size, enzymes, probiotics, prebiotics, and acidifiers.

**OTHER THERAPEUTICS**

**Anesthetics, Tranquilizers**

There are few products licensed for use in swine. Most commonly a combination of drugs used in an off-label manner are employed in order to provide satisfactory anesthesia in the field. This has become a controversial area because the swine industry has come under pressure to reduce the potential suffering of pigs during and following routine surgical procedures, such as castration or after a traumatic injury, and yet minimize the use of drugs without proper licensing approval.
**Table 71.8.** Common swine anthelmintics and dosages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dichlorvos</td>
<td>11.2–21.6 mg/kg body weight in feed with 1/3 of regular ration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doramectin</td>
<td>300 µg/kg body weight IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenbendazole</td>
<td>9 mg/kg body weight over 3–12 days via feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ivermectin</td>
<td>300 µg/kg SQ or 100 µg/kg body weight for 7 days via feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperazine</td>
<td>275–440 mg/kg body weight in feed or water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrantel tartrate</td>
<td>22 mg/kg of body weight as 1 day treatment or 96 g/ton of feed as prophylactic dose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antiparasitics**

In modern confinement operations, there are few parasitic problems (Roepstorff and Jorsal 1989). Under conditions of good hygiene and management, the regular application of anthelmintics may be of little or no benefit (Roepstorff 1997). Ascariasis is generally the main concern, and strategic medication with a wide range of effective products can easily control this parasite.

External parasitism caused by mange mites and lice is no longer a significant problem because of good husbandry practices and effective drugs, particularly the avermectins. Failure to control sarcoptic mange or lice infestation is generally due to a poor understanding of the epidemiology of the organisms and apathy on the part of the herdsman (Cargill et al. 1997). Antiparasitic products and their application are presented in Table 71.8.

**Hormones**

Oxytocin is widely used as an aid in stimulating parturition and milk letdown. Prostaglandin F₂α, or a synthetic analog can be used to induce parturition. Puberty can be induced in gilts by treatment with a single injection of 200 IU of human chorionic gonadotropin and 400 IU of equine chorionic gonadotropin. The injection of follicular stimulating hormone at weaning and an injection of lutestinizing hormone approximately 72–80 hours later has been shown to induce a predictable ovulation (Barnabe 2002) and can be used in artificial insemination programs where these hormones are licensed for this purpose. Estrus can be synchronized by administering a progestin for 14–18 days. The progestin inhibits follicular maturation until the progestin is withdrawn.

Hormones are also used in certain countries for growth manipulation. Daily injection of porcine somatotropin (PST) strongly influences feed efficiency, growth, and carcass composition. Ractopamine, a phenethanolamine or β-agonist is used as a feed additive in several countries. Its function is as a repartitioning agent causing improved feed efficiency and a lean carcass at slaughter.

**REFERENCES**


Index

α (1,2)-fucosyltransferase, 990
Abortion
  B. suis, 606
causes, 127
diagnosis, 259
EMC, 332
fumonisin, 925
induction, 122
leptospirosis, 695
PRRSV, 394
Abscess, 188, 721, 836, 842
  jowl or cervical, 777
Acepromazine, 1 109
Actinobaculum suis, 201, 209, 671, 837
Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae, 156, 563
diagnosis
ELISA, 162
PCR, 162
  serology interpretation, 282
Actinobacillus suis, 827
Acute phase proteins, 23
Adenovirus, 287
Adjuvant, 16
Aedes spp., 884
Aflatoxin, 916, 918
African swine fever, 291
  skin lesions, 190
Agalactia, 71, 884
diagnosis, 273
  ergot toxicity, 924
Aggression, 847
  reduction, 849
Air
  velocity, 1029
disease, 1030
Airborne transmission
APP, 565
  M. hyopneumoniae, 702
  S. suis, 770
All-in/all-out, 167
Alopecia, 182, 190
  iodine deficiency, 194
  selenium toxicity, 972
Altenogest, 121
Aluminosilicate, 919, 922
Alveolar macrophage, 18, 151
Amaranthus retroflexus, 205
toxicity, 977
Amino acid
  imbalance, 933
Amitraz, 880, 884, 976
Ammonia, 159, 251, 1032
  concentration, 256, 982
toxicity, 981
Ammonium salts
toxicity, 974
Anemia, 248, 258
cotar toxicity, 980
copper toxicity, 971
gastric ulcers, 894
neonate, 1002
Anesthesia, 1107, 1141
effect on PSS, 953
Anestrus
causes, 279
  ovarian cysts, 130
zearealenone, 923
Anhydrous ammonia, 919
toxicity, 983
Animal density (see stocking density)
Anthrax, 817
Antibody, 22
titer (see serology)
Anticoagulant
toxicity, 977
Antimicrobial peptides, 15
Aphthovirus, 287
Arcanobacterium pyogenes, 841
Arsanilic acid, 98
toxicity, 973
Arsenic
toxicity, 972
Arthritis, 89, 92
  bacterial causes, 778
treatment, 1126
  zinc toxicity, 972
Arthrosis, 95
Ascaris suum, 904
Ascarops spp., 909
Aspergillus spp., 918
Atipamezole, 1110
Atresia ani, 45
  surgery, 1124
Atrophic rhinitis, 577
  human carriers, 166
Atropine sulfate, 975
dose, 1108
Aujesky's disease, 419
  genetic resistance, 991
  latency, 220
Avermectins, 911
Avoparcin, resistance, 1136
Azaperone, 1110
Bacillus anthracis, 817
Bacitracin, resistance, 1136
Back muscle necrosis
  PEDV, 369
  PSS, 945
Backfat
  gastric ulcers, 893
  lameness, 91
  pneumonia, 159
Bacteriophage, 1141
Balantidium coli, 791, 872, 910
Bats
  JEV, 361
  Menangle virus, 461, 462
Bears
  trichinellosis, 905
Behavior
  natural, 1068
  post weaning, 1042
  problems, 847
  stereotyped, 1069
Belly-nosing, 851, 1070
  drinkers, 1048
Benign enzootic paresis, 337
Bentonite, 922
Bifidobacterium spp., 40
Biotin, 98
Birds
disease transmission, 1084
diseases carried, 1080
Eastern equine encephalomyelitis, 555
influenza, 470, 471
JEV, 360, 361
swine dysentery, 790
tuberculosis, 809
WNV, 360, 361
Birth weight, 993
Biting, 850
Blackflies, 885
Blackleg, 622
Bladder, 199
displacement, 1118
infection, 671
Blindness, diagnosis, 258
Blood
color, 978
collection, 12
Blood urea nitrogen, 201
Blowflies, 885
Blue eye disease, 105, 455
Boar
disease surveillance, 1101
infertility
blue eye disease, 457
examination, 141
JEV, 361
Body condition, 8
lameness, 95
Bone, density, 98
Boots, disinfection, 1088
Border disease virus, 309
Bordetella bronchiseptica, 154, 577, 578
Botulism, 103, 624
Bovine viral diarrhea virus, 309
Bowel edema, 649
Brachyspira hyodysenteriae, 785
British Saddleback, 251
Bromethalin, toxicity, 977
Brucella suis
reproductive failure, 127
Brucellosis, 603
test sensitivity-specificity, 228
serology interpretation, 282
Bulbourethral gland, 137
Buprenorphine, 1113
Burkholderia pseudomallei, 822
Bush foot, 95
Bush pigs, 291
Button ulcers, 46
salmonella, 748
Calcium supplementation, 74
Callus, 194
Campylobacter spp., 40
Canadian integrated program for antimicrobial resistance surveillance, 1137
Candida, 191
Candida albicans, 829
Captan, toxicity, 976
Carazolol, 998
Carbadox
toxicity, 973
Carbamate, toxicity, 974
Carbon dioxide, 982
concentration, 159
Carbon monoxide, toxicity, 983
Carboxyhemoglobin, 983
Carcass
diseases contained, 1080
E. rhusiopathiae, 630
S. suis, 771, 777
Caretaker, attributes, 995
Cassia, toxicity, 100
Castration, 1113
Cat
diseases carried, 1078
Nipah virus, 464
TGE, 494
toxoplasmosis, 866
Cataracts, diagnosis, 258
Catarrhal enteritis, 834
Cattle, Aujesky's disease, 419
Cefalosporin, resistance, 1137
Cerebrospinal angiopathy, 103
Cesarean section, 1120
Chlamydiae, 822
Chlorinated hydrocarbon, toxicity, 974, 975
Chlorine dioxide, 42
Cholecalciferol (vitamin D3), 977
Choline, splayleg, 88
Chromate–copper arsenate, toxicity, 976
Circovirus, 299
serology interpretation, 282
Citric acid, 211
Citric acid, 211
Citrinin, 919
Classical swine fever, 103, 309
engineered vaccine, 483
skin lesions, 190
Claviceps purpurea, 923
Cleft palate, 43
Clenbuterol, 998
parturition delay, 122
Clostridium botulinum, 624
Clostridium chauvoei, 622
Clostridium difficile, 618
Clostridium novyi, 622
sow death, 1020
Clostridium perfringes, 613
type A, 617, 621
Clostridium septicum, 619
Clostridium tetani, 623
Clothing
disease transmission, 1086, 1088
diseases carried, 1080
Coal tar
toxicity, 980
Coccidia, 861
Cocklebur, toxicity, 978
Colibacillosis, 103
diet influences, 41
Colum, duration, 58
Complement, 16
Condemnations, 905
Confinement, 1069
Conformation, lameness, 93
Congenital tremors, 106
Conjunctivitis, 825
diagnosis, 256
Convulsions
organochlorines, 99
porcine circovirus type 2, 105
salt poisoning, 980
Copper
deficiency, 97
toxicity, 971
Copulation
difficulty, 853
length, 854
Corneal opacity, blue eye disease, 456
Cortisol, 1066, 1067
collection, 1066
post weaning, 1042
Cottonseed meal, 981
Cough
diagnosis, 248
H. parasuis, 684
Nipah virus, 463
PCMV, 325
Creatine kinase
PS, 954
Creatinine, 201
Cresol
toxicity, 51
Critical temperature, 1067
Cross-fostering, 114, 996
sow type, 62
Cryptorchid, 1114
Cryptosporidium, 870
Ctenocephalides spp., 884
Culex spp., West Nile Virus 361
Culex tritaeniorhynchus, Japanese encephatitis, 360
Culling, 4
Cyanosis, 182
salmonellosis, 189
Cystitis, 208, 838, 1019
Cystostomy, 1118
Cytokines, 22
Cytomegalovirus, 259
Defecation, patterns, 851
Dehydration, treatment, 43
Demodex phylloides, 882
Deoxynivalenol (DON, vomitoxin), 921
Dermacentor spp., 886
Dermatosis vegetans, 195
Dermonecrotic toxin, 720
Diacetoxyscirpenol (DAS), 921
Diagnostic test interpretation, 219
Diarrhea, 241
adenovirus, 288
arsenic toxicity, 972
B. pilosocoli, 755
bloody, 792
coccidia, 863
E. coli, 641
diagnosis, 241
fluorine toxicity, 972
hemorrhagic, 613
onset age, 242
PEDV, 369
porcine astrovirus, 351
porcine enteric caliciviruses, 348
rotavirus, 442
salmonella, 747
TGE, 493, 495
Versinia spp., 832
Diazepam, 1110
Dichlorvos, 912
Dimetridazole, toxicity, 973
Disease
airborne transmission, 154, 310, 1082
diagnosis, 241
multiple tests, 227
inherited, 988
likelihood by farm location, 1085
prevalence, 231
gender, 159
prevention, 1075
surveillance, 1099
syndromic, 1103
susceptibility
due to PPRSV, 396
transmission, 1075
Disinfectants, 1087
Dog
diseases carried, 1078
Nipah virus, 464
sarcocystosis, 868
swine dysentery, 789
TGE, 494
Dog-sitting, osteochondrosis, 94
Dominate, 881, 884, 911
Double-muscling, 945
Draft, 158
Drug
therapy, 1131
resistance, 1136
withdrawal, 1135
Duddingtonia flagrans, 901
Dunging, patterns, 851
Duroc, 196
parasites, 902
Dust, 159
organisms isolated, 1077
PRRSV, 395
respirable, 1031
Dyspnea, 248, 721, 818
Dystocia, 125
infection, 621
Ear
biting, 851, 1070
parasites, 876, 883
necrosis, 187
Earthworms, lack of SIV, 470
Eastern equineencephalomyelitis virus, 554
Echidnophaga gallinacea, 884
Edema
disease, 103, 182, 649
lung, 99
neck, 818
skin, 182
Eimeria spp., 861
ELISA, 221
Encephalomyelitis, HEV, 354
Encephalomyocarditis virus, 331
Endocarditis, 842
Endotoxin, concentration in air, 159
Enrofloxacin, 669
Enterococcus spp., 778
Enzootic pneumonia, 701
Eosinophil, 17
Eperythrozoon suis (see Mycoplasma haemosuis)
Epididymectomy, 1117
Epididymis, 137
Epitheliogenesis imperfecta, 195
Epostane, 122
Equipment
contamination, 1088
Ergot, 923
lactation suppression, 75
Erysipelas, 629
arthritis, 89
skin lesions, 189
Erysipeloid, 629
Escherichia coli, 639
genetic resistance, 990
gut adhesion
inulin, 40
Esophagus, mycotic infection, 43
Extrone sulfate, 123
Estrus, 118
detection, 123, 855
seasonal effects, 856
group size, 848
induction, 120
light, 1033
refractory, 855
space allowance, 856
synchronization, 121
Ethylene glycol, 206
toxicity, 980
Exercise, lameness, 96
Exudative epidermitis, 184, 675
Facial necrosis, 188
Farrowing
crate, 6, 994, 1069
delayed, gut maturation, 37
induction, 998
splayleg, 88
rate, 4, 6, 131
Fasciola hepatica, 910
Fat
in diet, 994
percentage, 1056
Fear, of humans, 849, 995
Feed
acidification, 42
creep, 1044
disease contamination, 1080
flavor, 1046
frequency, 7
intake, 1057
interruption, 892
light, 1034
liquid, 42
particle size, 1060
gastric ulcers, 891
pelleting, 1061
gastric ulcers, 891
preparation, 1060
refusal, 922
salmonella, 743
sampling, 937
Feedback, 343
Feeder
electronic, 7
culling, 1015
space, 7, 1034
Fenbendazole, 911
Fentanyl, 1113
Fetus
age, 259
immunoglobulin, 259
Fiber
behavior, 1069
fight or flight, 1066
Fish meal, E. rhusiopathiae, 630
Five freedoms, 1066
Flank biting, 851
Flies, 884
Fluorine, toxicity, 972
Foot-and-mouth disease, 114
Foot-and-mouth disease, 190, 518
INDEX 1147
Foot rot, 95
Foxes, TGE, 494
Fracture, 96
repair, 1126
Fumonisin, 924
Fusarium spp., 921, 922, 924
Fusarium graminearum, 921, 922
Fusarium sporotrichoides, 921
Fusarium moniliforme, 924
Fusarium proliferatum, 924
Fusarium roseum, 922
Gangrene

gas, 621
ergot, 924
Garbage feeding, 297
skin lesions, 191
tuberculosis, 809
Gas gangrene, 621
Gastric ulceration, 41, 891, 830
HAMMER mill 891
mycotoxins, 920
porcine somatotropin 893
surgery, 1124
Gastroenteritis, 830
Gastrointestinal tract
anatomy, 37
histology, 38
Gender, disease prevalence, 159
Gestation
length, 88
mummies, 377
prolonged, 998
Gliada spp., 871
Gilt
development, 95
handling, 1067
replacement rate
disease, 707
Glässer’s Disease, 681
Globoccephalus urusubulatus, 910
Gomerulonephritis, 203
Glossitis, 184
Glutamine, 39
Glycopyrollate, dose, 1108
Gnats, vesicular disease, 526
Gnotobiotic pigs, surgical production, 1121
Gongylonema pulchrum, 910
Goose-stepping, 973
Gossypol
toxicity, 981
Greasy Pig (see Exudative Epidermitis)
Group, size, 1049
Grow-finish, 1056
Growth
group size, 847
nursery, 1039
piglet, 68
promotants, 41
ban, disease, 987
rate, 3
osteochondrosis, 93
reduced by
ersipelas, 89
handling, 850
iron toxicity, 971
M. hyorhinis, 90
zinc toxicity, 972
space, 847, 1062
Growth hormone, lactation, 70
Guaifenesin, 1110
Haemophilus parasuis, 90, 154, 681
Haemophilus parasuis, 90, 154, 681
Hair, 179
Halothane, 1111
Halothane challenge test, 953
Halothane sensitivity, 952
Hammer mill, gastric ulcers, 891
Hamshire, 159
parasites, 902
PSS, 950
Handling, 1071
Head tilt, 105
Heart
hemorrhage, 99
failure, 1018
rate, 8, 1067
Heat lamps, 995
Heat mats, 995
Heat stress, lactation, 67
Helicobacter-like organisms, 892
Hemagglutinating encephalomyelitis virus, 108, 251, 353
Hematuria, 838
diagnosis, 266
Hemoglobinuria, 695
Hemorrhages, 293, 326
subcutaneous, 26
Hepatic encephalopathy, 105
Hepatitis, 541
Hepatitis E, 537
Herbicides, toxicity, 976
Hermaphrodite, 130
Hernia
inguinal, 1123
surgical repair, 1123
scrotal, 1123
umbilical
surgical repair, 1122
Hog cholera (see classical swine fever)
HooF, 6
selenium toxicity, 972
Horse
JEV, 360
WNV, 360
Horseflies, 885
Hose pipe gut, 732
Housing
gestation, 1069
outdoor, 6
role in skin disease, 182
sows, 848
Humidity, 1033
Hydrocephalus, 104
JEV, 363
Hydrogen sulfide, 1033
toxicity, 981
Hydronephrosis, 213
Hydrothorax, fumonisin, 925
Hystrostrongylus rubidus, 901
Hyperkeratosis, 183
Hypersensitivity, 25
Hyperthermia, ventilation failure, 981
Hypoglycemia, 104
Hysterectomy, 1119
Icterus, 919
ccoal tar toxicity, 980
copper toxicity, 971
leptospirosis, 695
PMWS, 301
Ill-thrift
diagnosis, 258
gossypol toxicity, 981
PMWS, 301
Immune system, inherited traits, 989
Immunity
effect of nutrition, 28
fetal, 24
mucosa, 23
neonatal, 24
passive, 25, 29, 68, 152, 1140
Immunodeficiency, 26
Immunoglobulin, 21, 151
neonatal absorption, 39
Immunosuppression, mycotoxins, 916
Immunotolerance, PPV, 376
Inclusion body
adenovirus, 288
PCMV, 325
rhinitis, 323
Infertility, 695
Inguinal hernia, 1123
Insemination, 119
dose, 120
timing, 119
Interferon, 18
Interleukin, 18, 19
Intersexuality, 130
Interstitial nephritis, 207
Intestine, 45
microflora, 40
obstruction surgery, 1124
torsion, 45, 1124
Insulin, 40
Iron
injection complications, 621
toxicity, 51, 971
Isoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura, 203
Isospora suis, 861
Ivermectin, 880, 884, 911
Jan Xin, 993
Japanese encephalitis flavivirus, 105, 359
Ketamine, 1110
Kidney, 199
hemorrhage, 196, 202, 293, 326
infarction, 203
infection, 671
Kojic acid, 919
Kyphosis, osteochondrosis, 94
Lacrimation, diagnosis, 256
Lactation
length, 4
nutrition during, 70
Lactobacillus spp., 40
Lairage, duration and disease, 169
Lameness
culling, 1015
diagnosis, 259
fluorine toxicity, 972
H. parasuis, 684
Landrace, 88, 159, 182, 194, 195, 251, 580, 1003, 1011,
PMWS, 299
PSS, 946
Large White, 88, 251, 580 993, 1003, 1011
Lasalocid, 974
Lawsonia intracellularis, 727
Lead, toxicity, 972
Lean, gain, 1056
Leptospirosis, 691
kidney lesions, 207
reproductive failure, 128
serology interpretation, 282
Manganese, deficiency, 97
Mange
demodectic, 192, 882
sarcoptic, 191, 875
treatment, 880
Manure, pathogen content, 1089
Mastitis, 73
E. coli, 665
Mating, housing, 854
Meckel's diverticulum, 45
Medetomidine, 1110
Melanoma, 196
Meliodosis, 822
Meloxicam, 95
Menangle virus, 459
Menangle virus, genetic resistance, 989
Menangle virus, 460
Meningitis, 107
Mercury, toxicity, 972
Metastrongylus spp., 908
Methane, 982
Methemoglobin, 978
Methionine, splayleg, 88
Methylenedipyrimidine, 978
Metrifonate, 106
Miconia, 191
Microsporum, 191
Microsporidia spp., 872
Mizidamol, 1110
Milk
BVDV-contaminated, 311
composition, 59
consumption, 1001
production, 58, 63
replacer, 669, 1002, 1045
Milk spots, 905
Mold inhibitors, 926
Momensin, toxicity, 973
Mortality
boar, 1022
finishing pig, 4
neonatal, 4, 828
nursery, 4
piglet, 68
preweaning, 852, 993
splayleg, 88
sow, 4, 7, 1016
lameness, 91
Mosquitoes, 884
disease transfer, 1083
JEV, 360
PRRSV, 390
vesicular disease, 526
WNV, 360
Moxidectin, 911
Mucociliary clearance mechanism, 151
Mummified fetuses, 4
diagnosis, 259
EMC, 332
JEV, 361
Menangle virus, 460
PCMV, 325
PPV, 376
PRRSV, 394
Musca domestica, 885
Mx gene, 990
Mycobacterium avium, 807
Mycobacterium bovis, 807
Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 807
Mycoplasma flocculare, 712
Mycoplasma haemossis, 710, 885
serology interpretation, 282
Mycoplasma hominis, 807
ELISA, herd sensitivity-specificity, 229
PCR test, 162
sensitivity, 222
serology interpretation, 283
Mycoplasma hyorhinis, 90, 154, 707
gene, 989
Mycoplasma hyosynoviae, 709
treatment, 89
Mycotoxins, 915
Myelin, splayleg, 88
Myocardiitis, 333
Nasal discharge, bloody, Nipah virus, 463
National animal identification, 1090
National antimicrobial resistance monitoring system (NARMS), 1137
Natural killer cell, 18
Natural resistance-associated macrophage protein, 990
Necropsy, 243, 269
PSS, 953
Necrotic enteritis, 727, 731
Nephritis, 696, 721
Nephroblastoma, 211
Neurologic signs
blue eye disease, 457
diagnosis, 251
PRV, 425
Neutrophil, 16
Niacin, deficiency, 97
Nipah virus, 463
Nitrate
In water, 979
toxicity, 978
Nitrite
In water, 979
toxicity, 978
Noise, 1033
Nonproductive sow days, 4, 131, 133
Nursing
behavior, 69
frequency, 58, 65
Nursery pig, 1039
Nutrition
deficiencies, 97, 931
excesses, 931
lactation, 69
mammary development role, 62
Obstetrics, lactation problems, 77
Ochratoxin, 919
Oesophagostomum spp., 908
Omeprazole, 896
Orchitis
B. suis, 606
blue eye disease, 458
JEV, 361
Organochlorines, 99
Organophosphate, 912
toxicity, 98, 974
Omphalodorus spp., 291
Osteochondrosis, 92
treatment, 94
Osteoporosis, 98
Otitis media, 105, 708
Ovary, 113
cystic, 130
surgical removal, 1118
Overcrowding, 1034
Oxidation, 17
Oxytocin, 76
injection route, 76
stillbirths, 998
with prostaglandin, 122
Palatoschisis, 43
Pallor, 182
Palpebral edema, diagnosis, 258
Pantothenic acid, deficiency, 97
Parakeratosis, 194
Paralysis
posterior, 101
selenium, 98
Paramyxoviruses, 455
Paraquat, 976
Parasites
external, 875
internal, 901
Paratyphoid nodules, 51, 746
Parity
at removal, 1012
distribution, 1012
Pars oesophagea, ulceration, 891
Pasteurella multocida, 577, 579, 719
Pen
configuration, 1034
dividers, 1034
pneumonia, 158
size, 1061
Penicillin
abortion, 128
oral absorption, 775
Penis, 138
errection
failure, 138
prolapse, 1115
Pentachlorophenol, toxicity, 976
Pentobarbital, 1109
People
diseases carried, 1080
fear of, 849, 995
Pericarditis, 825
Perirenal edema, 977
Peritonitis, 842
Persistent frenulum, 1117
Phosmet, 880
Phosphorus, availability, 931
Photosensitization, 193
Pietrain, PSS, 946
Piglet
behavior, 69, 667
growth, 68
mortality, 68
Pigweed, 205
toxicity, 977
Piperazine, 912
Pityriasis rosea, 194
Pleurisy, 825
Pleuritis, 153, 721
Pneumonia
APP, 568
ascarids, 905
B. bronchiseptica, 589
chlamydial, 825
control, 164
embolic, 153
ezootic, 701
H. parasuis, 683
interstitial, 153
mycoplasma, 152, 701
necrotizing, 153
pasteurellosis, 719
treatment, 168
Poland China, PSS, 946
Polioencephalomyelitis, 340
Polyarthritis, 259
Polyarthritis, 259
Poly cystic kidney disease, 202
Polydipsia
diagnosis, 266
ochratoxin, 266
Polyserositis, 89
E. coli, 664
Polyuria
diagnosis, 266
ochratoxin, 266, 920
Porcine astrovirus, 350
Porcine circovirus type 2, 299
potentiation by vaccination, 168
Porcine colonic spirochetosis, 755
Porcine cytomegalovirus, 323
Porcine dermatitis and nephropathy syndrome, 196, 203, 299, 302
Porcine enteric calicivirus, 347
Porcine enteric picornaviruses, 337
Porcine enterovirus, 337
Porcine epidemic diarrhea, 367
Porcine intestinal adenomatosus, 727
Porcine lymphophoric herpesvirus, 550
Porcine parvovirus, 373
prevalence determination, 236
reproductive failure, 127
serology interpretation, 283
skin lesions, 190
Porcine pulmonary edema, 924
Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome, 387
control, 166
diagnosis, variation between laboratories, 220
H. parasuis, 90
IHC, sensitivity, 233
reproductive failure, 127
reversion, 389
serology interpretation, 282
surveillance, 1102
Porcine respiratory coronavirus, 493
Porcine reproductive disease complex, 704
Porcine retroviruses, 545
Porcine somatotropin, gastric ulcers, 893
Porcine stress syndrome, 945
anesthetic induction, 1107
prevalence by breed, 947
Porcine teschovirus, 337
Pork
classical swine fever, 311
disease contamination, 1081
drip loss, 950
dry, firm, and dark, 949
E. rhusiopathiae, 630
infectious agents, 292
foot and mouth virus, 520
pale, soft, and exudative, 945
ph, 947
PRV, 423
S. suis, 777
salmonella, 741, 1141
swine vesicular disease, 529
toxoplasmosis, 866, 867
Posterior paralysis
B. suis, 606
HEV, 355
pigweed, 977
selenium toxicity, 972
Soybean, hypersensitivity, 26
Space allowance, 1034
preweaning, 994
Specific pathogen free (SPF) herds, 165
Specificity, 220
herd level, 229
parallel testing, 228
series interpretation, 228
Spermatogenesis, 138
Splayleg, 88, 1003
prevalence, 88
zealalenone, 923
Splenomegaly, 293, 825
Stable fly, 885
Stachybotryotoxicosis, 103
Stalls, 4
vs. pens, lameness, 96
Staphylococcus aureus, 835
Staphylococcus hyicus, 184, 675, 835
Staphylococcus epidermidis, 835
Starlings, TGE, 494
Stephanurus dentatus, 214, 909
Stereotypies, 851
Stillbirths, 998
carbon monoxide, 983
diagnosis, 259
EMC, 332
JEV, 361
leptospirosis, 695
PCMV, 325
PRRSV, 394
selenium toxicity, 972
swine pox, 484
Stocking density
growth rate, 4
pneumonia, 158, 167
Stomach
over-distention, 44
torsion, 44
Stomoxys calcitrans, 885
Straw, 96, 1070
Streptococcus dysgalactiae, 778
Streptococcus porcinus, 777
Streptococcus suis, 107, 769
Strongyloides ransomi, 902
Strychnine, toxicity, 977
Sudden death
causes, 268
Clostridium novyi, 622
EMC, 334
Sulfates, in water, 979
Sulfonamides, toxicity, 974
Sunburn, 43, 192
Surveillance, risk-based, 1101
Swine dysentery, 785
diet influences, 41
Swine fever, 103
Swine influenza, 469
genetic resistance, 990
serology interpretation, 283
Swine leukocyte antigen, 19
Swine pox, 189, 483
genital, 195
Swine production, 1065
Swine vesicular disease, 190, 528
T-2 toxin, 921
Tail
biting, 850, 1070
noise, 1033
docking, 89
tremor, PSS, 953
Talfan disease, 104, 337
Tapeworms, 910
Teat
necrosis, 193
order, 69
Teeth
cutting, 89, 996, 1070
baby pig, 995
farrowing, 77
effective environmental, 1062, 1063
finishing pigs, 1062
fluctuating, disease, 1030
lactation, 67, 72
Teschen disease, 104, 337
Test-and-removal, 430
Testis, 136
Tetanus, 623
Thermoneutral zone, 1028
Thiabendazole, 911
Thiopenal, 1109
Thrombocytopenia purpura, 26
Tiamulin
skin lesions, 183
toxicity in association with monensin, 974
Ticks, 886
Tone
amputation, 1126
ankylosis, 1126
Tolazoline, 1110
Toll-like receptors, 16
Toltrazuril, coccidiosis, 865
Tongue, hypertrophy, 43
Tonsil, 43
swab, 14
Total dissolved solids, 979
Toxicities, 971
Toxoplasma gondii, 128
MAT sensitivity, 223
Toxoaplasmosis, 108, 866
Toxins, 1035, 1070
Transmissible gastroenteritis, 489
serology interpretation, 283
Transportation
gut permeability, 38
PSS, 947
Treatment
duration, 1133
principles, 1131, 1133
Trials, clinical, evaluation, 1132
Trichinella spiralis, 905
diagnosis, 906
prevalence, 1103
Trichlorfon, 106, 886
Trichophytion, 191
Trichothecenes, 921
Trichurus suis, 907
Trioprazole, 896
Tuberculosis, 807
Tubular necrosis, 205
Tungia penetrans, 884
Turbinate atrophy, 587
Turkeys, erysipelas, 629
Tusk removal, 1127
Tylosin
rectal prolapse, 967
esistence, 1136
Ulcereate dermatitis, 188
Ultrasound, 124
Umbilical cord bleeding, 1002
Umbilical hernia, surgical repair, 1122
Urea
ocular fluids, 1019
toxicity, 974
Ureter, 199
Urethra, 199
obstruction, 1118
Urine, 201
collection, 14
culture, 673
pH, 201
Urithithiasis, 212
Urticaria, 182
Uterus, 113
prolapce, 126, 965
prolapce repair, 1121
surgical amputation, 1122
surgical removal, 1119
Vaccination, 28
efficacy, 1139
failure, 29
Vaginal prolapse, 266, 965, 1117
Vasectomy, 1117
Vehicles, disease transmission, 1080, 1084
Vein, auricular, 1108
Ventilation
pneumonia, 167
systems, 1063
Vertebral osteomyelitis, 842
Vessicles, sunburn, 43
INDEX

Vesicular diseases, 517
Vesicular exanthema, 190
Vesicular gland, 137
Vesicular stomatitis, 190, 525
Virginiamycin, resistance, 1136
Vitamin A, deficiency, 97, 104
Vitamin D
deficiency, 97
toxicity, 214
Vitamin E, 28
deficiency, 97
lactation, 77
Vocalization, 1068
Vomiting
diagnosis, 243, 249
fluorine toxicity, 972
HEV, 354
TGE, 493, 495
Vomiting and wasting disease, 353
Vomitoxin, 921
Vulva
discharge, 128, 266
enlargement, 114, 125, 266
zearealenone, 922
sticky, 114

Wart hogs, 291
Water, 978
bacterial contamination, 979
chlorination, 334
consumption, 6, 1131
during lactation, 67
deficiency, 97
medication, 1131
quality, 933
Waterers, 7, 979, 1048
location, 1034

Waterfowl
B. pilosicoli, 758
swine dysentery, 785
Weaning
age, 1039
eyear, 1069
disease prevention, 1081
H. parasuis, 686
immune system, 39, 152
immune suppression, 27
split, 1043
to-estrus interval, 4
villus height, 38
Weight range, 1063
Welfare
standards, 1065
surveillance, 1104
West Nile Virus, 359
Wheels, 183
Whey
BVDV-contaminated, 311
salt poisoning, 980
Wild animals, diseases carried, 1078
Wild boars, 318
Wound infections, 619
World Organization for Animal Health, 1071
Xanthium spp.
toxicity, 978
Xenotransplantation
cytomegalovirus, 323
EMC, 335
HEV, 543
porcine lymphotropic herpesvirus, 550
zoonosis, 1082
Xylazine, 1110

Yeast, 829
Yersinia spp., 832
Yohimbine, 1110
Yorkshire, 159, 204, 993, 1011
rectal prolapse, 967
Zearealenone (F-2 toxin), 922
Pseudopregnancy, 118
reproductive failure, 128
Zinc
deficiency, 194
oxide, 42
toxicity, 972
Zoonosis, 537, 1082
anthrax, 820
brucellosis, 603
cryptosporidiosis, 870
Eastern equine encephalomyelitis, 554
erysipeloid, 629
influenza, 469, 471
JEV, 360
Menangle virus, 461, 462
Nipah virus, 463
porcine enteric calicivirus, 348
S. suis, 776
tapeworms, 910
toxoplasmosis, 866
trichinellosis, 906
vesicular disease, 526
WNV, 360